

KV5x Sub-Family Reference Manual

Supports: MKV56F1M0Cxx22, MKV56F512Cxx22,
MKV58F1M0Cxx22, MKV58F512Cxx22, MKV58F1M0Vxx20,
MKV58F512Vxx20, MKV56F1M0Vxx20, MKV56F512Vxx20

Document Number: KV5XP144M220RM
Rev. 2.1, 10/2015

Contents

Section number	Title	Page
----------------	-------	------

Chapter 1 About This Document

1.1	Overview.....	67
1.1.1	Purpose.....	67
1.1.2	Audience.....	67
1.2	Conventions.....	67
1.2.1	Numbering systems.....	67
1.2.2	Typographic notation.....	68
1.2.3	Special terms.....	68

Chapter 2 Introduction

2.1	Overview.....	69
2.2	Block diagram.....	69
2.3	Module Functional Categories.....	70
2.3.1	ARM® Cortex®-M7 Core Modules.....	72
2.3.2	System Modules.....	72
2.3.3	Memories and Memory Interfaces.....	73
2.3.4	Clocks.....	74
2.3.5	Security and Integrity modules.....	74
2.3.6	Analog modules.....	75
2.3.7	Timer modules.....	75
2.3.8	Communication interfaces.....	77
2.3.9	Human-machine interfaces.....	77
2.4	Orderable part numbers.....	78

Chapter 3 Core Overview

3.1	Cortex CM7 Core Introduction.....	81
3.1.1	Buses, interconnects, and interfaces.....	83

Section number	Title	Page
3.1.2	System Tick Timer.....	83
3.1.3	Debug facilities.....	83
3.1.4	Core privilege levels.....	83
3.2	Nested Vector Interrupt Controller (NVIC) configuration.....	84
3.2.1	Interrupt priority levels.....	84
3.2.2	Non-maskable interrupt.....	84
3.2.3	Interrupt Vector Assignments.....	84
3.3	Asynchronous Wake-up Interrupt Controller (AWIC) configuration.....	88
3.3.1	Wake-up sources.....	88
3.4	Floating Point Unit (FPU) configuration.....	89

Chapter 4 Memories and Memory Interfaces

4.1	Flash memory types.....	91
4.2	Flash Memory Sizes.....	91
4.3	Flash Security.....	91
4.4	Flash Modes.....	92
4.5	Erase All Flash Contents.....	92
4.6	FTFE_FOPT Register.....	92
4.7	RAM Memory Sizes.....	92
4.8	Other SRAM arrays.....	93
4.9	SRAM accesses.....	93
4.10	SRAM retention in low power modes.....	93
4.11	System Register file.....	94

Chapter 5 Memory Map

5.1	Introduction.....	95
5.2	System Memory Map.....	95
5.3	AIPS slot assignments.....	96

Section number	Title	Page
Chapter 6		
Clock Distribution		
6.1	Introduction.....	105
6.2	High-level device clocking diagram.....	105
6.2.1	Clock definitions.....	106
6.3	Internal clocking requirements.....	107
6.3.1	Clock divider values after reset.....	109
6.3.2	VLPR mode clocking.....	109
6.4	Clock Gating.....	110
6.5	Module clocks.....	110
6.5.1	Nano-edge clocking.....	112
6.5.2	WDOG clocking.....	112
6.5.3	Debug trace clock.....	112
6.5.4	PMC 1-kHz LPO clock.....	113
6.5.5	PORT digital filter clocking.....	113
6.5.6	LPTMR clocking.....	114
6.5.7	FlexCAN clocking.....	114
6.5.8	UART clocking.....	115
6.5.9	Ethernet Clocking.....	115
6.5.10	Flexbus Clocking.....	116
6.6	External clocks	116
Chapter 7		
Reset and Boot		
7.1	Introduction.....	117
7.2	Cortex CM7 platform.....	117
7.3	Reset.....	118
7.3.1	Power-on reset (POR).....	118

Section number	Title	Page
7.3.2	System resets.....	118
7.3.3	Debug resets.....	122
7.4	Boot.....	123
7.4.1	Boot sources.....	123
7.4.2	FOPT boot options.....	123
7.4.3	Boot sequence.....	124

Chapter 8 Power Management

8.1	Introduction.....	127
8.2	Clocking Modes.....	127
8.2.1	Partial Stop.....	127
8.2.2	DMA Wakeup.....	128
8.2.3	Compute Operation.....	129
8.2.4	Peripheral Doze.....	130
8.3	Power modes.....	131
8.4	Module Operation in Low Power Modes.....	132
8.5	Power modes shutdown sequencing.....	135
8.6	Clock Gating.....	136
8.7	Flash program restrictions.....	136

Chapter 9 Security

9.1	Introduction.....	137
9.2	Flash Security.....	137
9.3	Security Interactions with other Modules.....	138
9.3.1	Security Interactions with Debug.....	138

Chapter 10 Debug

10.1	Introduction.....	139
10.1.1	References.....	141

Section number	Title	Page
10.2	The Debug Port.....	141
10.2.1	JTAG-to-SWD change sequence.....	142
10.2.2	JTAG-to-cJTAG change sequence.....	142
10.3	Debug Port Pin Descriptions.....	143
10.4	JTAG status and control registers.....	143
10.4.1	MDM-AP Control Register.....	144
10.4.2	MDM-AP Status Register.....	146
10.5	Debug Resets.....	147
10.6	AHB-AP.....	147
10.7	Instrumentation Trace Macrocell (ITM).....	148
10.8	Core Trace Connectivity with ETM.....	149
10.9	Embedded Trace Macrocell v4 (ETM).....	149
10.10	TPIU.....	150
10.11	DWT.....	150
10.12	Debug in Low Power Modes.....	151
10.12.1	Debug Module State in Low Power Modes.....	151
10.13	Debug and security.....	152

Chapter 11

Signal Multiplexing and Signal Descriptions

11.1	Signal Multiplexing Introduction.....	153
11.2	Signal Multiplexing Integration.....	153
11.2.1	Port control and interrupt module features.....	154
11.2.2	Clock gating.....	155
11.2.3	Signal multiplexing constraints.....	155
11.3	Pinout.....	155
11.3.1	KV5x Signal Multiplexing and Pin Assignments.....	155
11.3.2	KV5x Pinouts.....	163
11.4	Module Signal Description Tables.....	166
11.4.1	Core Modules.....	167

Section number	Title	Page
11.4.2	System Modules.....	167
11.4.3	Clock Modules.....	168
11.4.4	Memories and Memory Interfaces.....	168
11.4.5	Analog.....	170
11.4.6	Timer Modules.....	171
11.4.7	Communication Interfaces.....	174
11.4.8	Human-Machine Interfaces (HMI).....	178

Chapter 12

Port Control and Interrupts (PORT)

12.1	Chip-specific PORT information.....	181
12.1.1	Digital filter registers.....	181
12.2	Introduction.....	181
12.3	Overview.....	181
12.3.1	Features.....	181
12.3.2	Modes of operation.....	182
12.4	External signal description.....	183
12.5	Detailed signal description.....	183
12.6	Memory map and register definition.....	184
12.6.1	Pin Control Register n (PORT _x _PCR _n).....	191
12.6.2	Global Pin Control Low Register (PORT _x _GPCLR).....	194
12.6.3	Global Pin Control High Register (PORT _x _GPCHR).....	194
12.6.4	Global Interrupt Control Low Register (PORT _x _GICLR).....	195
12.6.5	Global Interrupt Control High Register (PORT _x _GICHR).....	195
12.6.6	Interrupt Status Flag Register (PORT _x _ISFR).....	196
12.6.7	Digital Filter Enable Register (PORT _x _DFER).....	196
12.6.8	Digital Filter Clock Register (PORT _x _DFCR).....	197
12.6.9	Digital Filter Width Register (PORT _x _DFWR).....	197
12.7	Functional description.....	198
12.7.1	Pin control.....	198

Section number	Title	Page
12.7.2	Global pin control.....	199
12.7.3	Global interrupt control.....	199
12.7.4	External interrupts.....	200
12.7.5	Digital filter.....	201

Chapter 13 System Integration Module (SIM)

13.1	Introduction.....	203
13.1.1	Features.....	203
13.2	Memory map and register definition.....	204
13.2.1	System Options Register 1 (SIM_SOPT1).....	205
13.2.2	System Options Register 2 (SIM_SOPT2).....	206
13.2.3	System Options Register 4 (SIM_SOPT4).....	208
13.2.4	System Options Register 5 (SIM_SOPT5).....	211
13.2.5	System Options Register 7 (SIM_SOPT7).....	212
13.2.6	System Options Register 8 (SIM_SOPT8).....	215
13.2.7	System Options Register 9 (SIM_SOPT9).....	218
13.2.8	System Device Identification Register (SIM_SDID).....	220
13.2.9	System Clock Gating Control Register 1 (SIM_SCGC1).....	222
13.2.10	System Clock Gating Control Register 2 (SIM_SCGC2).....	223
13.2.11	System Clock Gating Control Register 3 (SIM_SCGC3).....	224
13.2.12	System Clock Gating Control Register 4 (SIM_SCGC4).....	225
13.2.13	System Clock Gating Control Register 5 (SIM_SCGC5).....	227
13.2.14	System Clock Gating Control Register 6 (SIM_SCGC6).....	229
13.2.15	System Clock Gating Control Register 7 (SIM_SCGC7).....	232
13.2.16	System Clock Divider Register 1 (SIM_CLKDIV1).....	233
13.2.17	Flash Configuration Register 1 (SIM_FCFG1).....	236
13.2.18	Flash Configuration Register 2 (SIM_FCFG2).....	237
13.2.19	Unique Identification Register High (SIM_UIDH).....	238
13.2.20	Unique Identification Register Mid-High (SIM_UIDMH).....	238

Section number	Title	Page
13.2.21	Unique Identification Register Mid Low (SIM_UIDML).....	239
13.2.22	Unique Identification Register Low (SIM_UIDL).....	239
13.2.23	System Clock Divider Register 4 (SIM_CLKDIV4).....	240
13.2.24	Miscellaneous Control Register 0 (SIM_MISCTRL0).....	241
13.2.25	Miscellaneous Control Register 1 (SIM_MISCTRL1).....	242
13.2.26	WDOG Control Register (SIM_WDOGC).....	245
13.2.27	Power Control Register (SIM_PWRC).....	246
13.2.28	ADC Additional Option Register (SIM_ADCHOPT).....	248
13.3	Functional description.....	250

Chapter 14 Kinetis Flashloader

14.1	Chip-specific Kinetis Flashloader information.....	251
14.1.1	Kinetis Flashloader pin configuration.....	251
14.2	Introduction.....	252
14.3	Functional Description.....	253
14.3.1	Memory Maps.....	253
14.3.2	Start-up Process.....	254
14.3.3	Clock Configuration.....	256
14.3.4	Flashloader Protocol.....	256
14.3.5	Flashloader Packet Types.....	261
14.3.6	Flashloader Command API.....	268
14.4	Peripherals Supported.....	290
14.4.1	I2C Peripheral.....	290
14.4.2	SPI Peripheral.....	291
14.4.3	UART Peripheral.....	293
14.4.4	CAN (or FlexCAN) Peripheral.....	296
14.5	Get/SetProperty Command Properties.....	298
14.5.1	Property Definitions.....	299
14.6	Kinetis Flashloader Status Error Codes.....	301

Section number	Title	Page
Chapter 15		
Reset Control Module (RCM)		
15.1	Introduction.....	303
15.2	Reset memory map and register descriptions.....	303
15.2.1	System Reset Status Register 0 (RCM_SRS0).....	304
15.2.2	System Reset Status Register 1 (RCM_SRS1).....	305
15.2.3	Reset Pin Filter Control register (RCM_RPFC).....	307
15.2.4	Reset Pin Filter Width register (RCM_RPFW).....	308
15.2.5	Sticky System Reset Status Register 0 (RCM_SSRS0).....	309
15.2.6	Sticky System Reset Status Register 1 (RCM_SSRS1).....	310
Chapter 16		
System Mode Controller (SMC)		
16.1	Introduction.....	313
16.2	Modes of operation.....	313
16.3	Memory map and register descriptions.....	315
16.3.1	Power Mode Protection register (SMC_PMPROT).....	316
16.3.2	Power Mode Control register (SMC_PMCTRL).....	317
16.3.3	Stop Control Register (SMC_STOPCTRL).....	319
16.3.4	Power Mode Status register (SMC_PMSTAT).....	320
16.4	Functional description.....	321
16.4.1	Power mode transitions.....	321
16.4.2	Power mode entry/exit sequencing.....	324
16.4.3	Run modes.....	326
16.4.4	Wait modes.....	328
16.4.5	Stop modes.....	329
16.4.6	Debug in low power modes.....	332
Chapter 17		
Miscellaneous Control Module (MCM)		
17.1	Introduction.....	335
17.1.1	Features.....	335

Section number	Title	Page
17.2	Memory map/register descriptions.....	335
17.2.1	Processor core type (MCM_PCT).....	336
17.2.2	Control Register (MCM_CR).....	337
17.2.3	Interrupt Status and Control Register (MCM_ISCR).....	338
17.2.4	Compute Only Operation Control Register (MCM_CPO).....	340
17.2.5	Local Memory General Descriptor Register (MCM_LMEM _n).....	342
17.3	Functional description.....	344
17.3.1	Interrupts.....	344

Chapter 18

Miscellaneous System Control Module (MSCM)

18.1	Overview.....	345
18.2	Chip Configuration and Boot.....	345
18.3	MSCM Memory Map/Register Definition.....	346
18.3.1	CPU Configuration Memory Map and Registers.....	346
18.3.2	Processor X Type Register (MSCM_CPxTYPE).....	347
18.3.3	Processor X Number Register (MSCM_CPxNUM).....	348
18.3.4	Processor X Master Register (MSCM_CPxMASTER).....	349
18.3.5	Processor X Count Register (MSCM_CPxCOUNT).....	350
18.3.6	Processor X Configuration 1 Register (MSCM_CPxCFG1).....	350
18.3.7	Processor X Configuration 3 Register (MSCM_CPxCFG3).....	351
18.3.8	Processor 0 Type Register (MSCM_CP0TYPE).....	353
18.3.9	Processor 0 Number Register (MSCM_CP0NUM).....	354
18.3.10	Processor 0 Master Register (MSCM_CP0MASTER).....	354
18.3.11	Processor 0 Count Register (MSCM_CP0COUNT).....	355
18.3.12	Processor 0 Configuration 1 Register (MSCM_CP0CFG1).....	356
18.3.13	Processor 0 Configuration 3 Register (MSCM_CP0CFG3).....	357
18.3.14	Processor 1 Type Register (MSCM_CP1TYPE).....	358
18.3.15	Processor 1 Number Register (MSCM_CP1NUM).....	359
18.3.16	Processor 1 Master Register (MSCM_CP1MASTER).....	360

Section number	Title	Page
18.3.17	Processor 1 Count Register (MSCM_CP1COUNT).....	361
18.3.18	Processor 1 Configuration 1 Register (MSCM_CP1CFG1).....	361
18.3.19	Processor 1 Configuration 3 Register (MSCM_CP1CFG3).....	362
18.3.20	On-Chip Memory Descriptor Register (MSCM_OCMDRn).....	364

Chapter 19 Power Management Controller (PMC)

19.1	Introduction.....	369
19.2	Features.....	369
19.3	Low-voltage detect (LVD) system.....	369
19.3.1	LVD reset operation.....	370
19.3.2	LVD interrupt operation.....	370
19.3.3	Low-voltage warning (LVW) interrupt operation.....	370
19.4	High-voltage detect (HVD) system.....	371
19.4.1	HVD reset operation.....	371
19.4.2	HVD interrupt operation.....	371
19.5	I/O retention.....	372
19.6	Memory map and register descriptions.....	372
19.6.1	Low Voltage Detect Status And Control 1 register (PMC_LVDSC1).....	372
19.6.2	Low Voltage Detect Status And Control 2 register (PMC_LVDSC2).....	374
19.6.3	Regulator Status And Control register (PMC_REGSC).....	375
19.6.4	High Voltage Detect Status And Control 1 register (PMC_HVDSC1).....	376

Chapter 20 Low-Leakage Wakeup Unit (LLWU)

20.1	Chip-specific LLWU information.....	379
20.2	Introduction.....	380
20.2.1	Features.....	380
20.2.2	Modes of operation.....	381
20.2.3	Block diagram.....	381
20.3	LLWU signal descriptions.....	382

Section number	Title	Page
20.4	Memory map/register definition.....	383
20.4.1	LLWU Pin Enable 1 register (LLWU_PE1).....	384
20.4.2	LLWU Pin Enable 2 register (LLWU_PE2).....	385
20.4.3	LLWU Pin Enable 3 register (LLWU_PE3).....	386
20.4.4	LLWU Pin Enable 4 register (LLWU_PE4).....	387
20.4.5	LLWU Pin Enable 5 register (LLWU_PE5).....	388
20.4.6	LLWU Pin Enable 6 register (LLWU_PE6).....	389
20.4.7	LLWU Pin Enable 7 register (LLWU_PE7).....	391
20.4.8	LLWU Pin Enable 8 register (LLWU_PE8).....	392
20.4.9	LLWU Module Enable register (LLWU_ME).....	393
20.4.10	LLWU Pin Flag 1 register (LLWU_PF1).....	394
20.4.11	LLWU Pin Flag 2 register (LLWU_PF2).....	396
20.4.12	LLWU Pin Flag 3 register (LLWU_PF3).....	398
20.4.13	LLWU Pin Flag 4 register (LLWU_PF4).....	399
20.4.14	LLWU Module Flag 5 register (LLWU_MF5).....	401
20.4.15	LLWU Pin Filter 1 register (LLWU_FILT1).....	403
20.4.16	LLWU Pin Filter 2 register (LLWU_FILT2).....	404
20.5	Functional description.....	405
20.5.1	VLLS modes.....	405
20.5.2	Initialization.....	405

Chapter 21

Crossbar Switch (AXBS)

21.1	Chip-specific AXBS information.....	407
21.1.1	Crossbar Switch Master Assignments - with System MPU.....	407
21.1.2	Crossbar Switch Slave Assignments - with System MPU.....	407
21.1.3	PRS register reset values.....	408
21.2	Introduction.....	408
21.2.1	Features.....	408

Section number	Title	Page
21.3	Memory Map / Register Definition.....	409
21.3.1	Priority Registers Slave (AXBS_PRSn).....	410
21.3.2	Control Register (AXBS_CRSn).....	412
21.3.3	Master General Purpose Control Register (AXBS_MGPCRn).....	414
21.4	Functional Description.....	415
21.4.1	General operation.....	415
21.4.2	Register coherency.....	416
21.4.3	Arbitration.....	416
21.5	Initialization/application information.....	419

Chapter 22 Peripheral Bridge (AIPS-Lite)

22.1	Chip-specific AIPS-Lite information.....	421
22.1.1	Master Privilege Register A (AIPSx_MPRA) reset value.....	421
22.2	Introduction.....	421
22.2.1	Features.....	421
22.2.2	General operation.....	421
22.3	Memory map/register definition.....	422
22.3.1	Master Privilege Register A (AIPSx_MPRA).....	423
22.3.2	Peripheral Access Control Register (AIPSx_PACRn).....	426
22.3.3	Peripheral Access Control Register (AIPSx_PACRn).....	431
22.4	Functional description.....	435
22.4.1	Access support.....	436

Chapter 23 System Memory Protection Unit (MPU)

23.1	Chip-specific MPU information.....	437
23.1.1	MPU Slave Port Assignments.....	437
23.1.2	MPU Logical Bus Master Assignments.....	437
23.1.3	MPU access violation indications.....	438
23.1.4	Reset values for RGD0 registers.....	438

Section number	Title	Page
23.1.5	Write access restrictions for RGD0 registers.....	438
23.2	Introduction.....	439
23.3	Overview.....	439
23.3.1	Block diagram.....	439
23.3.2	Features.....	440
23.4	Memory map/register definition.....	441
23.4.1	Control/Error Status Register (MPU_CESR).....	444
23.4.2	Error Address Register, slave port n (MPU_EAR _n).....	445
23.4.3	Error Detail Register, slave port n (MPU_EDR _n).....	446
23.4.4	Region Descriptor n, Word 0 (MPU_RGD _n _WORD0).....	447
23.4.5	Region Descriptor n, Word 1 (MPU_RGD _n _WORD1).....	448
23.4.6	Region Descriptor n, Word 2 (MPU_RGD _n _WORD2).....	448
23.4.7	Region Descriptor n, Word 3 (MPU_RGD _n _WORD3).....	451
23.4.8	Region Descriptor Alternate Access Control n (MPU_RGDAAC _n).....	452
23.5	Functional description.....	454
23.5.1	Access evaluation macro.....	454
23.5.2	Putting it all together and error terminations.....	456
23.5.3	Power management.....	457
23.6	Initialization information.....	457
23.7	Application information.....	457

Chapter 24

Direct Memory Access Multiplexer (DMAMUX)

24.1	Chip-specific DMAMUX information.....	461
24.1.1	DMA MUX request sources.....	461
24.1.2	DMA transfers via PIT trigger.....	465
24.2	Introduction.....	465
24.2.1	Overview.....	465
24.2.2	Features.....	466
24.2.3	Modes of operation.....	466

Section number	Title	Page
24.3	External signal description.....	467
24.4	Memory map/register definition.....	467
24.4.1	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFGn).....	468
24.5	Functional description.....	469
24.5.1	DMA channels with periodic triggering capability.....	469
24.5.2	DMA channels with no triggering capability.....	472
24.5.3	Always-enabled DMA sources.....	472
24.6	Initialization/application information.....	473
24.6.1	Reset.....	473
24.6.2	Enabling and configuring sources.....	473

Chapter 25

Enhanced Direct Memory Access (eDMA)

25.1	Introduction.....	477
25.1.1	eDMA system block diagram.....	477
25.1.2	Block parts.....	478
25.1.3	Features.....	479
25.2	Modes of operation.....	480
25.3	Memory map/register definition.....	481
25.3.1	TCD memory.....	481
25.3.2	TCD initialization.....	481
25.3.3	TCD structure.....	481
25.3.4	Reserved memory and bit fields.....	482
25.3.1	Control Register (DMA_CR).....	505
25.3.2	Error Status Register (DMA_ES).....	508
25.3.3	Enable Request Register (DMA_ERQ).....	510
25.3.4	Enable Error Interrupt Register (DMA_EEI).....	514
25.3.5	Clear Enable Error Interrupt Register (DMA_CEEI).....	517
25.3.6	Set Enable Error Interrupt Register (DMA_SEEI).....	518
25.3.7	Clear Enable Request Register (DMA_CERQ).....	519

Section number	Title	Page
25.3.8	Set Enable Request Register (DMA_SERQ).....	520
25.3.9	Clear DONE Status Bit Register (DMA_CDNE).....	521
25.3.10	Set START Bit Register (DMA_SSRT).....	522
25.3.11	Clear Error Register (DMA_CERR).....	523
25.3.12	Clear Interrupt Request Register (DMA_CINT).....	524
25.3.13	Interrupt Request Register (DMA_INT).....	525
25.3.14	Error Register (DMA_ERR).....	528
25.3.15	Hardware Request Status Register (DMA_HRS).....	532
25.3.16	Enable Asynchronous Request in Stop Register (DMA_EARS).....	538
25.3.17	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI _n).....	541
25.3.18	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD _n _SADDR).....	542
25.3.19	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD _n _SOFF).....	543
25.3.20	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD _n _ATTR).....	543
25.3.21	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD _n _NBYTES_MLNO).....	544
25.3.22	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD _n _NBYTES_MLOFFNO).....	545
25.3.23	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD _n _NBYTES_MLOFFYES).....	546
25.3.24	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD _n _SLAST).....	548
25.3.25	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD _n _DADDR).....	548
25.3.26	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD _n _DOFF).....	549
25.3.27	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD _n _CITER_ELINKYES).....	549
25.3.28	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD _n _CITER_ELINKNO).....	550
25.3.29	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD _n _DLASTSGA).....	551
25.3.30	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD _n _CSR).....	552
25.3.31	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD _n _BITER_ELINKYES).....	554

Section number	Title	Page
25.3.32	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCDn_BITER_ELINKNO).....	555
25.4	Functional description.....	556
25.4.1	eDMA basic data flow.....	556
25.4.2	Fault reporting and handling.....	559
25.4.3	Channel preemption.....	562
25.4.4	Performance.....	562
25.5	Initialization/application information.....	566
25.5.1	eDMA initialization.....	566
25.5.2	Programming errors.....	568
25.5.3	Arbitration mode considerations.....	569
25.5.4	Performing DMA transfers.....	570
25.5.5	Monitoring transfer descriptor status.....	574
25.5.6	Channel Linking.....	576
25.5.7	Dynamic programming.....	577
 Chapter 26 External Watchdog Monitor (EWM)		
26.1	Chip-specific EWM information.....	583
26.1.1	EWM clocks.....	583
26.1.2	EWM low-power modes.....	583
26.1.3	EWM_OUT pin state in low power modes.....	583
26.2	Introduction.....	584
26.2.1	Features.....	584
26.2.2	Modes of Operation.....	585
26.2.3	Block Diagram.....	586
26.3	EWM Signal Descriptions.....	586
26.4	Memory Map/Register Definition.....	587
26.4.1	Control Register (EWM_CTRL).....	587
26.4.2	Service Register (EWM_SERV).....	588

Section number	Title	Page
26.4.3	Compare Low Register (EWM_CMPL).....	588
26.4.4	Compare High Register (EWM_CMPH).....	589
26.4.5	Clock Control Register (EWM_CLKCTRL).....	589
26.4.6	Clock Prescaler Register (EWM_CLKPRESCALER).....	590
26.5	Functional Description.....	591
26.5.1	The EWM_out Signal.....	591
26.5.2	The EWM_in Signal.....	592
26.5.3	EWM Counter.....	592
26.5.4	EWM Compare Registers.....	592
26.5.5	EWM Refresh Mechanism.....	593
26.5.6	EWM Interrupt.....	593
26.5.7	Selecting the EWM counter clock.....	594
26.5.8	Counter clock prescaler.....	594

Chapter 27 Watchdog Timer (WDOG)

27.1	Chip-specific WDOG information.....	595
27.1.1	WDOG clocks.....	595
27.1.2	WDOG low-power modes.....	595
27.2	Introduction.....	596
27.3	Features.....	596
27.4	Functional overview.....	597
27.4.1	Unlocking and updating the watchdog.....	599
27.4.2	Watchdog configuration time (WCT).....	600
27.4.3	Refreshing the watchdog.....	601
27.4.4	Windowed mode of operation.....	601
27.4.5	Watchdog disabled mode of operation.....	601
27.4.6	Low-power modes of operation.....	601
27.4.7	Debug modes of operation.....	602

Section number	Title	Page
27.5	Testing the watchdog.....	602
27.5.1	Quick test.....	603
27.5.2	Byte test.....	603
27.6	Backup reset generator.....	605
27.7	Generated resets and interrupts.....	605
27.8	Memory map and register definition.....	606
27.8.1	Watchdog Status and Control Register High (WDOG_STCTRLH).....	607
27.8.2	Watchdog Status and Control Register Low (WDOG_STCTRL).....	608
27.8.3	Watchdog Time-out Value Register High (WDOG_TOVALH).....	609
27.8.4	Watchdog Time-out Value Register Low (WDOG_TOVAL).....	609
27.8.5	Watchdog Window Register High (WDOG_WINH).....	610
27.8.6	Watchdog Window Register Low (WDOG_WINL).....	610
27.8.7	Watchdog Refresh register (WDOG_REFRESH).....	611
27.8.8	Watchdog Unlock register (WDOG_UNLOCK).....	611
27.8.9	Watchdog Timer Output Register High (WDOG_TMROUTH).....	611
27.8.10	Watchdog Timer Output Register Low (WDOG_TMROUTL).....	612
27.8.11	Watchdog Reset Count register (WDOG_RSTCNT).....	612
27.8.12	Watchdog Prescaler register (WDOG_PRESC).....	612
27.9	Watchdog operation with 8-bit access.....	613
27.9.1	General guideline.....	613
27.9.2	Refresh and unlock operations with 8-bit access.....	613
27.10	Restrictions on watchdog operation.....	614

Chapter 28

Crossbar AND/OR/INVERT (AOI) Module

28.1	Chip-specific AOI information.....	617
28.1.1	AOI signal assignment.....	617
28.2	Introduction.....	618
28.2.1	Overview.....	618
28.2.2	Features.....	619

Section number	Title	Page
28.2.3	Modes of Operation.....	620
28.3	External Signal Description.....	620
28.4	Memory Map and Register Descriptions.....	620
28.4.1	Boolean Function Term 0 and 1 Configuration Register for EVENTn (AOIx_BFCRT01n).....	622
28.4.2	Boolean Function Term 2 and 3 Configuration Register for EVENTn (AOIx_BFCRT23n).....	623
28.5	Functional Description.....	625
28.5.1	Configuration Examples for the Boolean Function Evaluation.....	626
28.5.2	AOI Timing Between Inputs and Outputs.....	627

Chapter 29

Inter-Peripheral Crossbar Switch A (XBARA)

29.1	Chip-specific XBARA information.....	629
29.1.1	XBARA input signal assignment.....	629
29.1.2	XBARA signal output assignment.....	631
29.2	Introduction.....	632
29.2.1	Overview.....	632
29.2.2	Features.....	633
29.2.3	Modes of Operation.....	633
29.2.4	Block Diagram.....	633
29.3	Signal Descriptions.....	634
29.3.1	XBAR_OUT[0:NUM_OUT-1] - MUX Outputs.....	635
29.3.2	XBAR_IN[0:NUM_IN-1] - MUX Inputs.....	635
29.3.3	DMA_REQ[n] - DMA Request Output(s).....	635
29.3.4	DMA_ACK[n] - DMA Acknowledge Input(s).....	635
29.3.5	INT_REQ[n] - Interrupt Request Output(s).....	635
29.4	Memory Map and Register Descriptions.....	635
29.4.1	Crossbar A Select Register 0 (XBARA_SEL0).....	637
29.4.2	Crossbar A Select Register 1 (XBARA_SEL1).....	638
29.4.3	Crossbar A Select Register 2 (XBARA_SEL2).....	638
29.4.4	Crossbar A Select Register 3 (XBARA_SEL3).....	639

Section number	Title	Page
29.4.5	Crossbar A Select Register 4 (XBARA_SEL4).....	639
29.4.6	Crossbar A Select Register 5 (XBARA_SEL5).....	640
29.4.7	Crossbar A Select Register 6 (XBARA_SEL6).....	640
29.4.8	Crossbar A Select Register 7 (XBARA_SEL7).....	641
29.4.9	Crossbar A Select Register 8 (XBARA_SEL8).....	641
29.4.10	Crossbar A Select Register 9 (XBARA_SEL9).....	642
29.4.11	Crossbar A Select Register 10 (XBARA_SEL10).....	642
29.4.12	Crossbar A Select Register 11 (XBARA_SEL11).....	643
29.4.13	Crossbar A Select Register 12 (XBARA_SEL12).....	643
29.4.14	Crossbar A Select Register 13 (XBARA_SEL13).....	644
29.4.15	Crossbar A Select Register 14 (XBARA_SEL14).....	644
29.4.16	Crossbar A Select Register 15 (XBARA_SEL15).....	645
29.4.17	Crossbar A Select Register 16 (XBARA_SEL16).....	645
29.4.18	Crossbar A Select Register 17 (XBARA_SEL17).....	646
29.4.19	Crossbar A Select Register 18 (XBARA_SEL18).....	646
29.4.20	Crossbar A Select Register 19 (XBARA_SEL19).....	647
29.4.21	Crossbar A Select Register 20 (XBARA_SEL20).....	647
29.4.22	Crossbar A Select Register 21 (XBARA_SEL21).....	648
29.4.23	Crossbar A Select Register 22 (XBARA_SEL22).....	648
29.4.24	Crossbar A Select Register 23 (XBARA_SEL23).....	649
29.4.25	Crossbar A Select Register 24 (XBARA_SEL24).....	649
29.4.26	Crossbar A Select Register 25 (XBARA_SEL25).....	650
29.4.27	Crossbar A Select Register 26 (XBARA_SEL26).....	650
29.4.28	Crossbar A Select Register 27 (XBARA_SEL27).....	651
29.4.29	Crossbar A Select Register 28 (XBARA_SEL28).....	651
29.4.30	Crossbar A Select Register 29 (XBARA_SEL29).....	652
29.4.31	Crossbar A Control Register 0 (XBARA_CTRL0).....	652
29.4.32	Crossbar A Control Register 1 (XBARA_CTRL1).....	654

Section number	Title	Page
29.5	Functional Description.....	656
29.5.1	General.....	656
29.5.2	Functional Mode.....	657
29.6	Resets.....	657
29.7	Clocks.....	657
29.8	Interrupts and DMA Requests.....	657

Chapter 30 Inter-Peripheral Crossbar Switch B (XBARB)

30.1	Chip-specific XBARB information.....	659
30.1.1	XBARB signal input assignment.....	659
30.1.2	XBARB signal output assignment.....	660
30.2	Introduction.....	661
30.3	Memory Map and Register Descriptions.....	661
30.3.1	Crossbar B Select Register 0 (XBARB_SEL0).....	662
30.3.2	Crossbar B Select Register 1 (XBARB_SEL1).....	662
30.3.3	Crossbar B Select Register 2 (XBARB_SEL2).....	663
30.3.4	Crossbar B Select Register 3 (XBARB_SEL3).....	663
30.3.5	Crossbar B Select Register 4 (XBARB_SEL4).....	664
30.3.6	Crossbar B Select Register 5 (XBARB_SEL5).....	664
30.3.7	Crossbar B Select Register 6 (XBARB_SEL6).....	665
30.3.8	Crossbar B Select Register 7 (XBARB_SEL7).....	665

Chapter 31 Multipurpose Clock Generator (MCG)

31.1	Chip-specific MCG information.....	667
31.1.1	MCG oscillator clock input options.....	667
31.2	Introduction.....	667
31.2.1	Features.....	668
31.2.2	Modes of Operation.....	670
31.3	External Signal Description.....	671

Section number	Title	Page
31.4	Memory Map/Register Definition.....	671
31.4.1	MCG Control 1 Register (MCG_C1).....	672
31.4.2	MCG Control 2 Register (MCG_C2).....	673
31.4.3	MCG Control 3 Register (MCG_C3).....	674
31.4.4	MCG Control 4 Register (MCG_C4).....	675
31.4.5	MCG Control 5 Register (MCG_C5).....	676
31.4.6	MCG Control 6 Register (MCG_C6).....	677
31.4.7	MCG Status Register (MCG_S).....	679
31.4.8	MCG Status and Control Register (MCG_SC).....	680
31.4.9	MCG Auto Trim Compare Value High Register (MCG_ATCVH).....	682
31.4.10	MCG Auto Trim Compare Value Low Register (MCG_ATCVL).....	682
31.4.11	MCG Control 8 Register (MCG_C8).....	682
31.5	Functional description.....	683
31.5.1	MCG mode state diagram.....	683
31.5.2	Low-power bit usage.....	688
31.5.3	MCG Internal Reference Clocks.....	688
31.5.4	External Reference Clock.....	688
31.5.5	MCG Fixed Frequency Clock	689
31.5.6	MCG PLL clock	689
31.5.7	MCG Auto TRIM (ATM).....	690
31.6	Initialization / Application information.....	691
31.6.1	MCG module initialization sequence.....	691
31.6.2	Using a 32.768 kHz reference.....	693
31.6.3	MCG mode switching.....	694

Chapter 32 Oscillator (OSC)

32.1	Chip-specific OSC information.....	703
32.1.1	OSC modes of operation with MCG.....	703
32.2	Introduction.....	703

Section number	Title	Page
32.3	Features and Modes.....	703
32.4	Block Diagram.....	704
32.5	OSC Signal Descriptions.....	705
32.6	External Crystal / Resonator Connections.....	705
32.7	External Clock Connections.....	706
32.8	Memory Map/Register Definitions.....	707
32.8.1	OSC Memory Map/Register Definition.....	707
32.9	Functional Description.....	709
32.9.1	OSC module states.....	709
32.9.2	OSC module modes.....	711
32.9.3	Counter.....	713
32.9.4	Reference clock pin requirements.....	713
32.10	Reset.....	713
32.11	Low power modes operation.....	714
32.12	Interrupts.....	714

Chapter 33 Flash Memory Controller (FMC)

33.1	Chip-specific FMC information.....	715
33.1.1	Number of masters.....	715
33.1.2	PFB1CR register.....	715
33.2	Introduction.....	715
33.2.1	Overview.....	715
33.2.2	Features.....	716
33.3	Modes of operation.....	716
33.4	External signal description.....	716
33.5	Memory map and register descriptions.....	716
33.5.1	Flash Access Protection Register (FMC_PFAPR).....	718
33.5.2	Flash Bank 0 Control Register (FMC_PFB0CR).....	720
33.5.3	FMC_Reserved.....	721

Section number	Title	Page
33.6	Functional description.....	722
33.6.1	Default configuration.....	722
33.6.2	Configuration options.....	722
33.6.3	Speculative reads.....	722
33.7	Initialization and application information.....	723

Chapter 34 Flash Memory Module (FTFE)

34.1	Introduction.....	725
34.1.1	Features.....	725
34.1.2	Block diagram.....	726
34.1.3	Glossary.....	727
34.2	External signal description.....	728
34.3	Memory map and registers.....	729
34.3.1	Flash configuration field description.....	729
34.3.2	Program flash 0 IFR map.....	729
34.3.3	Register descriptions.....	730
34.4	Functional Description.....	739
34.4.1	Flash Protection.....	739
34.4.2	Interrupts.....	741
34.4.3	Flash Operation in Low-Power Modes.....	741
34.4.4	Functional modes of operation.....	742
34.4.5	Flash memory reads and ignored writes.....	742
34.4.6	Flash Program and Erase.....	742
34.4.7	FTFE Command Operations.....	743
34.4.8	Margin Read Commands.....	747
34.4.9	Flash command descriptions.....	748
34.4.10	Security.....	764
34.4.11	Reset Sequence.....	766

Section number	Title	Page
Chapter 35		
External Bus Interface (FlexBus)		
35.1	Chip-specific Flexbus information.....	767
35.1.1	FlexBus clocking.....	767
35.1.2	FlexBus signal multiplexing.....	767
35.1.3	FlexBus CSCR0 reset value.....	769
35.1.4	FlexBus Security.....	769
35.1.5	FlexBus line transfers.....	769
35.2	Introduction.....	769
35.2.1	Definition.....	769
35.2.2	Features.....	770
35.3	Signal descriptions.....	770
35.4	Memory Map/Register Definition.....	772
35.4.1	Chip Select Address Register (FB_CSAR _n).....	773
35.4.2	Chip Select Mask Register (FB_CSMR _n).....	774
35.4.3	Chip Select Control Register (FB_CSCR _n).....	775
35.4.4	Chip Select port Multiplexing Control Register (FB_CSPMCR).....	778
35.5	Functional description.....	779
35.5.1	Use cases.....	779
35.5.2	Address comparison.....	779
35.5.3	Address driven on address bus.....	780
35.5.4	Connecting address/data lines.....	780
35.5.5	Bit ordering.....	780
35.5.6	Data transfer signals.....	781
35.5.7	Signal transitions.....	781
35.5.8	Data-byte alignment and physical connections.....	781
35.5.9	Address/data bus multiplexing.....	783
35.5.10	Data transfer states.....	784

Section number	Title	Page
35.5.11	FlexBus Timing Examples.....	785
35.5.12	Burst cycles.....	803
35.5.13	Extended Transfer Start/Address Latch Enable.....	812
35.5.14	Bus errors.....	813
35.6	Initialization/Application Information.....	814
35.6.1	Initializing a chip-select.....	814
35.6.2	Reconfiguring a chip-select.....	814

Chapter 36

Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC)

36.1	Introduction.....	815
36.1.1	Features.....	815
36.1.2	Block diagram.....	815
36.1.3	Modes of operation.....	816
36.2	Memory map and register descriptions.....	816
36.2.1	CRC Data register (CRC_DATA).....	817
36.2.2	CRC Polynomial register (CRC_GPOLY).....	818
36.2.3	CRC Control register (CRC_CTRL).....	818
36.3	Functional description.....	819
36.3.1	CRC initialization/reinitialization.....	819
36.3.2	CRC calculations.....	820
36.3.3	Transpose feature.....	821
36.3.4	CRC result complement.....	823

Chapter 37

Memory-Mapped Cryptographic Acceleration Unit (MMCAU)

37.1	Introduction.....	825
37.2	CAU Block Diagram.....	825
37.3	Overview.....	827
37.4	Features.....	828

Section number	Title	Page
37.5	Memory map/Register definition.....	828
37.5.1	Status Register (CAU_CASR).....	830
37.5.2	Accumulator (CAU_CAA).....	831
37.5.3	General Purpose Register (CAU_CAn).....	831
37.6	Functional description.....	832
37.6.1	CAU programming model.....	832
37.6.2	CAU integrity checks.....	834
37.6.3	CAU commands.....	836
37.7	Application/initialization information.....	843
37.7.1	Code example.....	843
37.7.2	Assembler equate values.....	844

Chapter 38 True Random Number Generator

38.1	Standalone True Random Number Generator (SA-TRNG).....	847
38.1.1	Standalone True Random Number Generator Block Diagram.....	847
38.1.2	TRNG Functional Description.....	848
38.1.3	SA-TRNG hardware functional description.....	849
38.1.4	Another TRNG usage example.....	900

Chapter 39 16-bit SAR Analog-to-Digital Converter (ADC)

39.1	Chip-specific ADC information.....	901
39.1.1	ADC instantiation information.....	901
39.1.2	DMA Support on ADC.....	901
39.1.3	ADC0 Connections/Channel Assignment.....	901
39.1.4	ADC Channels MUX Selection.....	904
39.1.5	ADC Reference Options.....	904
39.1.6	ADC triggers.....	905
39.1.7	Alternate clock.....	905
39.1.8	ADC low-power modes.....	905

Section number	Title	Page
39.2	Introduction.....	906
39.2.1	Features.....	906
39.2.2	Block diagram.....	907
39.3	ADC signal descriptions.....	908
39.3.1	Analog Power (VDDA).....	909
39.3.2	Analog Ground (VSSA).....	909
39.3.3	Voltage Reference Select.....	909
39.3.4	Analog Channel Inputs (ADx).....	910
39.3.5	Differential Analog Channel Inputs (DADx).....	910
39.4	Memory map and register definitions.....	910
39.4.1	ADC Status and Control Registers 1 (ADCx_SC1n).....	911
39.4.2	ADC Configuration Register 1 (ADCx_CFG1).....	915
39.4.3	ADC Configuration Register 2 (ADCx_CFG2).....	916
39.4.4	ADC Data Result Register (ADCx_Rn).....	917
39.4.5	Compare Value Registers (ADCx_CVn).....	919
39.4.6	Status and Control Register 2 (ADCx_SC2).....	920
39.4.7	Status and Control Register 3 (ADCx_SC3).....	922
39.4.8	ADC Offset Correction Register (ADCx_OFS).....	923
39.4.9	ADC Plus-Side Gain Register (ADCx_PG).....	924
39.4.10	ADC Minus-Side Gain Register (ADCx_MG).....	924
39.4.11	ADC Plus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLPD).....	925
39.4.12	ADC Plus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLPS).....	926
39.4.13	ADC Plus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLP4).....	926
39.4.14	ADC Plus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLP3).....	927
39.4.15	ADC Plus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLP2).....	927
39.4.16	ADC Plus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLP1).....	928
39.4.17	ADC Plus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLP0).....	928
39.4.18	ADC Minus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLMD).....	929
39.4.19	ADC Minus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLMS).....	929

Section number	Title	Page
39.4.20	ADC Minus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLM4).....	930
39.4.21	ADC Minus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLM3).....	930
39.4.22	ADC Minus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLM2).....	931
39.4.23	ADC Minus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLM1).....	931
39.4.24	ADC Minus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLM0).....	932
39.5	Functional description.....	932
39.5.1	Clock select and divide control.....	933
39.5.2	Voltage reference selection.....	934
39.5.3	Hardware trigger and channel selects.....	934
39.5.4	Conversion control.....	935
39.5.5	Automatic compare function.....	943
39.5.6	Calibration function.....	944
39.5.7	User-defined offset function.....	946
39.5.8	Temperature sensor.....	947
39.5.9	MCU wait mode operation.....	948
39.5.10	MCU Normal Stop mode operation.....	948
39.6	Initialization information.....	949
39.6.1	ADC module initialization example.....	950
39.7	Application information.....	952
39.7.1	External pins and routing.....	952
39.7.2	Sources of error.....	954

Chapter 40

12-bit 5MSPS Analog-to-Digital Converter (HSADC)

40.1	Chip-specific 12-bit SAR HSADC information.....	959
40.1.1	HSADC instantiation.....	959
40.1.2	HSADC interconnect assignments.....	959
40.1.3	HSADC clock sources.....	965
40.2	Introduction.....	965
40.2.1	Overview.....	965

Section number	Title	Page
40.2.2	Features.....	965
40.2.3	Modes of Operation.....	967
40.2.4	Block Diagram.....	967
40.3	Memory Map and Registers.....	968
40.3.1	HSADC Control Register 1 (HSADCx_CTRL1).....	977
40.3.2	HSADC Control Register 2 (HSADCx_CTRL2).....	980
40.3.3	HSADC Zero Crossing Control 1 Register (HSADCx_ZXCTRL1).....	983
40.3.4	HSADC Zero Crossing Control 2 Register (HSADCx_ZXCTRL2).....	984
40.3.5	HSADC Channel List Register 1 (HSADCx_CLIST1).....	986
40.3.6	HSADC Channel List Register 2 (HSADCx_CLIST2).....	988
40.3.7	HSADC Channel List Register 3 (HSADCx_CLIST3).....	990
40.3.8	HSADC Channel List Register 4 (HSADCx_CLIST4).....	992
40.3.9	HSADC Sample Disable Register (HSADCx_SDIS).....	994
40.3.10	HSADC Status Register (HSADCx_STAT).....	994
40.3.11	HSADC Ready Register (HSADCx_RDY).....	997
40.3.12	HSADC Low Limit Status Register (HSADCx_LOLIMSTAT).....	998
40.3.13	HSADC High Limit Status Register (HSADCx_HILIMSTAT).....	998
40.3.14	HSADC Zero Crossing Status Register (HSADCx_ZXSTAT).....	999
40.3.15	HSADC Result Registers with sign extension (HSADCx_RSLTn).....	999
40.3.16	HSADC Low Limit Registers (HSADCx_LOLIMn).....	1001
40.3.17	HSADC High Limit Registers (HSADCx_HILIMn).....	1001
40.3.18	HSADC Offset Register (HSADCx_OFFSTn).....	1002
40.3.19	HSADC Power Control Register (HSADCx_PWR).....	1002
40.3.20	HSADC Scan Control Register (HSADCx_SCTRL).....	1005
40.3.21	HSADC Power Control Register 2 (HSADCx_PWR2).....	1006
40.3.22	HSADC Control Register 3 (HSADCx_CTRL3).....	1007
40.3.23	HSADC Scan Interrupt Enable Register (HSADCx_SCINTEN).....	1008
40.3.24	HSADC Sampling Time Configuration Register (HSADCx_SAMPTIM).....	1008
40.3.25	HSADCs Calibration Configuration (HSADCx_CALIB).....	1009

Section number	Title	Page
40.3.26	Calibration Values for ADCA Register (HSADC _x _CALVAL_A).....	1011
40.3.27	Calibration Values for ADCB Register (HSADC _x _CALVAL_B).....	1011
40.3.28	MUX6_7 Selection Controls Register (HSADC _x _MUX67_SEL).....	1012
40.4	Functional Description.....	1013
40.4.1	HSADC Sample Conversion Operating Modes.....	1017
40.4.2	HSADC Calibration.....	1022
40.4.3	HSADC Data Processing.....	1022
40.4.4	Sequential versus parallel sampling.....	1024
40.4.5	Scan Sequencing.....	1025
40.4.6	Power Management.....	1026
40.5	Clocks.....	1029
40.6	Interrupts.....	1030
40.7	Timing Specifications.....	1032

Chapter 41 Comparator (CMP)

41.1	Chip-specific CMP information.....	1033
41.1.1	CMP instantiation information.....	1033
41.1.2	CMP Signal Assignments.....	1033
41.1.3	CMP external references.....	1035
41.1.4	External window/sample input.....	1035
41.2	Introduction.....	1035
41.2.1	CMP features.....	1036
41.2.2	6-bit DAC key features.....	1037
41.2.3	ANMUX key features.....	1037
41.2.4	CMP, DAC and ANMUX diagram.....	1037
41.2.5	CMP block diagram.....	1038
41.3	Memory map/register definitions.....	1040
41.3.1	CMP Control Register 0 (CMP _x _CR0).....	1041
41.3.2	CMP Control Register 1 (CMP _x _CR1).....	1041

Section number	Title	Page
41.3.3	CMP Filter Period Register (CMPx_FPR).....	1043
41.3.4	CMP Status and Control Register (CMPx_SCR).....	1043
41.3.5	DAC Control Register (CMPx_DACCR).....	1044
41.3.6	MUX Control Register (CMPx_MUXCR).....	1045
41.4	Functional description.....	1046
41.4.1	CMP functional modes.....	1046
41.4.2	Power modes.....	1056
41.4.3	Startup and operation.....	1057
41.4.4	Low-pass filter.....	1057
41.5	CMP interrupts.....	1060
41.6	DMA support.....	1060
41.7	CMP Asynchronous DMA support.....	1060
41.8	Digital-to-analog converter.....	1061
41.9	DAC functional description.....	1061
41.9.1	Voltage reference source select.....	1061
41.10	DAC resets.....	1062
41.11	DAC clocks.....	1062
41.12	DAC interrupts.....	1062
41.13	CMP Trigger Mode.....	1062

Chapter 42

12-bit Digital-to-Analog Converter (DAC)

42.1	Chip-specific DAC information.....	1063
42.1.1	12-bit DAC Instantiation Information.....	1063
42.1.2	12-bit DAC Output.....	1063
42.1.3	12-bit DAC Reference.....	1063
42.2	Introduction.....	1064
42.3	Features.....	1064
42.4	Block diagram.....	1064

Section number	Title	Page
42.5	Memory map/register definition.....	1065
42.5.1	DAC Data Low Register (DACx_DATnL).....	1067
42.5.2	DAC Data High Register (DACx_DATnH).....	1067
42.5.3	DAC Status Register (DACx_SR).....	1068
42.5.4	DAC Control Register (DACx_C0).....	1069
42.5.5	DAC Control Register 1 (DACx_C1).....	1070
42.5.6	DAC Control Register 2 (DACx_C2).....	1071
42.6	Functional description.....	1071
42.6.1	DAC data buffer operation.....	1071
42.6.2	DMA operation.....	1073
42.6.3	Resets.....	1073
42.6.4	Low-Power mode operation.....	1073

Chapter 43

FlexTimer Module (FTM)

43.1	Chip-specific FTM information.....	1075
43.1.1	Instantiation Information.....	1075
43.1.2	External Clock Options.....	1075
43.1.3	Fixed frequency clock.....	1076
43.1.4	FTM Interrupts.....	1076
43.1.5	FTM Fault Detection Inputs KV5x.....	1076
43.1.6	FTM Hardware Triggers KV5x.....	1076
43.1.7	Input capture options for FTM module instances.....	1077
43.1.8	FTM Hall sensor support.....	1077
43.1.9	FTM modulation implementation.....	1078
43.1.10	FTM output triggers for other modules.....	1079
43.1.11	FTM Global Time Base.....	1081
43.1.12	FTM BDM and debug halt mode.....	1081
43.2	Introduction.....	1082
43.2.1	FlexTimer philosophy.....	1082

Section number	Title	Page
43.2.2	Features.....	1083
43.2.3	Modes of operation.....	1084
43.2.4	Block diagram.....	1085
43.3	FTM signal descriptions.....	1087
43.4	Memory map and register definition.....	1087
43.4.1	Memory map.....	1087
43.4.2	Register descriptions.....	1088
43.4.3	Status And Control (FTMx_SC).....	1094
43.4.4	Counter (FTMx_CNT).....	1095
43.4.5	Modulo (FTMx_MOD).....	1096
43.4.6	Channel (n) Status And Control (FTMx_CnSC).....	1097
43.4.7	Channel (n) Value (FTMx_CnV).....	1100
43.4.8	Counter Initial Value (FTMx_CNTIN).....	1100
43.4.9	Capture And Compare Status (FTMx_STATUS).....	1101
43.4.10	Features Mode Selection (FTMx_MODE).....	1103
43.4.11	Synchronization (FTMx_SYNC).....	1105
43.4.12	Initial State For Channels Output (FTMx_OUTINIT).....	1107
43.4.13	Output Mask (FTMx_OUTMASK).....	1108
43.4.14	Function For Linked Channels (FTMx_COMBINE).....	1110
43.4.15	Deadtime Insertion Control (FTMx_DEADTIME).....	1115
43.4.16	FTM External Trigger (FTMx_EXTTRIG).....	1116
43.4.17	Channels Polarity (FTMx_POL).....	1118
43.4.18	Fault Mode Status (FTMx_FMS).....	1120
43.4.19	Input Capture Filter Control (FTMx_FILTER).....	1122
43.4.20	Fault Control (FTMx_FLTCTRL).....	1123
43.4.21	Quadrature Decoder Control And Status (FTMx_QDCTRL).....	1126
43.4.22	Configuration (FTMx_CONF).....	1128
43.4.23	FTM Fault Input Polarity (FTMx_FLTPOL).....	1129
43.4.24	Synchronization Configuration (FTMx_SYNCONF).....	1130

Section number	Title	Page
43.4.25	FTM Inverting Control (FTMx_INVCTRL).....	1132
43.4.26	FTM Software Output Control (FTMx_SWOCTRL).....	1133
43.4.27	FTM PWM Load (FTMx_PWMLOAD).....	1136
43.5	Functional description.....	1137
43.5.1	Clock source.....	1138
43.5.2	Prescaler.....	1139
43.5.3	Counter.....	1139
43.5.4	Input Capture mode.....	1145
43.5.5	Output Compare mode.....	1149
43.5.6	Edge-Aligned PWM (EPWM) mode.....	1150
43.5.7	Center-Aligned PWM (CPWM) mode.....	1152
43.5.8	Combine mode.....	1154
43.5.9	Complementary mode.....	1161
43.5.10	Registers updated from write buffers.....	1162
43.5.11	PWM synchronization.....	1164
43.5.12	Inverting.....	1180
43.5.13	Software output control.....	1181
43.5.14	Deadtime insertion.....	1183
43.5.15	Output mask.....	1186
43.5.16	Fault control.....	1186
43.5.17	Polarity control.....	1190
43.5.18	Initialization.....	1191
43.5.19	Features priority.....	1191
43.5.20	Channel trigger output.....	1192
43.5.21	Initialization trigger.....	1193
43.5.22	Capture Test mode.....	1196
43.5.23	DMA.....	1196

Section number	Title	Page
43.5.24	Dual Edge Capture mode.....	1197
43.5.25	Quadrature Decoder mode.....	1205
43.5.26	BDM mode.....	1210
43.5.27	Intermediate load.....	1211
43.5.28	Global time base (GTB).....	1213
43.6	Reset overview.....	1215
43.7	FTM Interrupts.....	1216
43.7.1	Timer Overflow Interrupt.....	1217
43.7.2	Channel (n) Interrupt.....	1217
43.7.3	Fault Interrupt.....	1217
43.8	Initialization Procedure.....	1217

Chapter 44 Low-Power Timer (LPTMR)

44.1	Chip-specific LPTMR information.....	1219
44.1.1	Low power timer instantiations.....	1219
44.1.2	LPTMR prescaler/glitch filter clocking options.....	1219
44.1.3	LPTMR pulse counter input options.....	1220
44.2	Introduction.....	1220
44.2.1	Features.....	1220
44.2.2	Modes of operation.....	1221
44.3	LPTMR signal descriptions.....	1221
44.3.1	Detailed signal descriptions.....	1221
44.4	Memory map and register definition.....	1222
44.4.1	Low Power Timer Control Status Register (LPTMR _x _CSR).....	1222
44.4.2	Low Power Timer Prescale Register (LPTMR _x _PSR).....	1223
44.4.3	Low Power Timer Compare Register (LPTMR _x _CMR).....	1225
44.4.4	Low Power Timer Counter Register (LPTMR _x _CNR).....	1225
44.5	Functional description.....	1226
44.5.1	LPTMR power and reset.....	1226

Section number	Title	Page
44.5.2	LPTMR clocking.....	1226
44.5.3	LPTMR prescaler/glitch filter.....	1226
44.5.4	LPTMR compare.....	1228
44.5.5	LPTMR counter.....	1228
44.5.6	LPTMR hardware trigger.....	1229
44.5.7	LPTMR interrupt.....	1229

Chapter 45 Programmable Delay Block (PDB)

45.1	Chip-specific PDB information.....	1231
45.1.1	PDB Instantiation.....	1231
45.1.2	PDB's DAC External Trigger Input Connections.....	1234
45.1.3	Pulse-Out Connection.....	1234
45.1.4	Pulse-Out Enable Register Implementation.....	1234
45.2	Introduction.....	1234
45.2.1	Features.....	1234
45.2.2	Implementation.....	1235
45.2.3	Back-to-back acknowledgment connections.....	1236
45.2.4	DAC External Trigger Input Connections.....	1236
45.2.5	Block diagram.....	1236
45.2.6	Modes of operation.....	1238
45.3	PDB signal descriptions.....	1238
45.4	Memory map and register definition.....	1238
45.4.1	Status and Control register (PDBx_SC).....	1240
45.4.2	Modulus register (PDBx_MOD).....	1243
45.4.3	Counter register (PDBx_CNT).....	1243
45.4.4	Interrupt Delay register (PDBx_IDLY).....	1243
45.4.5	Channel n Control register 1 (PDBx_CHnC1).....	1244
45.4.6	Channel n Status register (PDBx_CHnS).....	1245
45.4.7	Channel n Delay 0 register (PDBx_CHnDLY0).....	1245

Section number	Title	Page
45.4.8	Channel n Delay 1 register (PDBx_CHnDLY1).....	1246
45.4.9	DAC Interval Trigger n Control register (PDBx_DACINTCn).....	1246
45.4.10	DAC Interval n register (PDBx_DACINTn).....	1247
45.4.11	Pulse-Out n Enable register (PDBx_POEN).....	1247
45.4.12	Pulse-Out n Delay register (PDBx_POnDLY).....	1248
45.5	Functional description.....	1248
45.5.1	PDB pre-trigger and trigger outputs.....	1248
45.5.2	PDB trigger input source selection.....	1250
45.5.3	DAC interval trigger outputs.....	1250
45.5.4	Pulse-Out's.....	1251
45.5.5	Updating the delay registers.....	1252
45.5.6	Interrupts.....	1253
45.5.7	DMA.....	1253
45.6	Application information.....	1254
45.6.1	Impact of using the prescaler and multiplication factor on timing resolution.....	1254

Chapter 46

Quadrature Encoder/Decoder (ENC)

46.1	Chip-specific ENC information.....	1255
46.1.1	ENC signal assignment.....	1255
46.1.2	Clocks.....	1255
46.2	Introduction.....	1256
46.2.1	Features.....	1256
46.2.2	Decoder Block Diagram.....	1256
46.2.3	System Block Diagram.....	1257
46.2.4	Glitch Filter.....	1257
46.2.5	Edge Detect State Machine.....	1258
46.2.6	Position Counter.....	1258
46.2.7	Position Difference Counter.....	1259
46.2.8	Position Difference Counter Hold.....	1259

Section number	Title	Page
46.2.9	Revolution Counter.....	1259
46.2.10	Pulse Accumulator Functionality.....	1259
46.2.11	Watchdog Timer.....	1259
46.3	Signal Descriptions.....	1260
46.3.1	Phase A Input (PHASEA).....	1260
46.3.2	Phase B Input (PHASEB).....	1260
46.3.3	Index Input (INDEX).....	1260
46.3.4	Home Switch Input (HOME).....	1261
46.3.5	Trigger Input (TRIGGER).....	1261
46.3.6	Position Match Output (POSMATCH).....	1261
46.4	Memory Map and Registers.....	1262
46.4.1	Control Register (ENC_CTRL).....	1263
46.4.2	Input Filter Register (ENC_FILT).....	1265
46.4.3	Watchdog Timeout Register (ENC_WTR).....	1266
46.4.4	Position Difference Counter Register (ENC_POSD).....	1267
46.4.5	Position Difference Hold Register (ENC_POSDH).....	1267
46.4.6	Revolution Counter Register (ENC_REV).....	1268
46.4.7	Revolution Hold Register (ENC_REVH).....	1268
46.4.8	Upper Position Counter Register (ENC_UPOS).....	1268
46.4.9	Lower Position Counter Register (ENC_LPOS).....	1269
46.4.10	Upper Position Hold Register (ENC_UPOSH).....	1269
46.4.11	Lower Position Hold Register (ENC_LPOSH).....	1269
46.4.12	Upper Initialization Register (ENC_UNIT).....	1270
46.4.13	Lower Initialization Register (ENC_LINIT).....	1270
46.4.14	Input Monitor Register (ENC_IMR).....	1271
46.4.15	Test Register (ENC_TST).....	1272
46.4.16	Control 2 Register (ENC_CTRL2).....	1273
46.4.17	Upper Modulus Register (ENC_UMOD).....	1275
46.4.18	Lower Modulus Register (ENC_LMOD).....	1275

Section number	Title	Page
46.4.19	Upper Position Compare Register (ENC_UCOMP).....	1276
46.4.20	Lower Position Compare Register (ENC_LCOMP).....	1276
46.5	Functional Description.....	1276
46.5.1	Positive versus Negative Direction.....	1277
46.5.2	Prescaler for Slow or Fast Speed Measurement.....	1277
46.5.3	Holding Registers and Initializing Registers.....	1277
46.6	Resets.....	1278
46.7	Clocks.....	1278
46.8	Interrupts.....	1278

Chapter 47

Enhanced Flex Pulse Width Modulator (eFlexPWM)

47.1	Chip-specific eFlexPWM information.....	1279
47.1.1	PWM0 with nano-edge placement.....	1279
47.1.2	PWM1 without nano-edge placement.....	1281
47.2	Introduction.....	1282
47.2.1	Features.....	1282
47.2.2	Modes of Operation.....	1283
47.2.3	Block Diagram.....	1284
47.3	Signal Descriptions.....	1286
47.3.1	PWMx_A[n] and PWMx_B[n] - External PWM Output Pair.....	1286
47.3.2	PWMx_X[n] - Auxiliary PWM Output signal.....	1286
47.3.3	FAULT[n] - Fault Inputs.....	1287
47.3.4	PWMx_EXT_SYNC[n] - External Synchronization Signal.....	1287
47.3.5	EXT_FORCE - External Output Force Signal.....	1287
47.3.6	PWMx_EXT_A[n] and PWMx_EXT_B[n] - Alternate PWM Control Signals.....	1287
47.3.7	PWMx_OUT_TRIG0 and PWMx_OUT_TRIG1 - Output Triggers.....	1287
47.3.8	EXT_CLK - External Clock Signal.....	1288
47.4	Memory Map and Registers.....	1288
47.4.1	Counter Register (PWMx_SMnCNT).....	1304

Section number	Title	Page
47.4.2	Initial Count Register (PWMx_SMnINIT).....	1304
47.4.3	Control 2 Register (PWMx_SMnCTRL2).....	1305
47.4.4	Control Register (PWMx_SMnCTRL).....	1307
47.4.5	Value Register 0 (PWMx_SMnVAL0).....	1309
47.4.6	Fractional Value Register 1 (PWMx_SMnFRACVAL1).....	1310
47.4.7	Value Register 1 (PWMx_SMnVAL1).....	1311
47.4.8	Fractional Value Register 2 (PWMx_SMnFRACVAL2).....	1311
47.4.9	Value Register 2 (PWMx_SMnVAL2).....	1312
47.4.10	Fractional Value Register 3 (PWMx_SMnFRACVAL3).....	1312
47.4.11	Value Register 3 (PWMx_SMnVAL3).....	1313
47.4.12	Fractional Value Register 4 (PWMx_SMnFRACVAL4).....	1313
47.4.13	Value Register 4 (PWMx_SMnVAL4).....	1314
47.4.14	Fractional Value Register 5 (PWMx_SMnFRACVAL5).....	1314
47.4.15	Value Register 5 (PWMx_SMnVAL5).....	1315
47.4.16	Fractional Control Register (PWMx_SMnFRCTRL).....	1315
47.4.17	Output Control Register (PWMx_SMnOCTRL).....	1317
47.4.18	Status Register (PWMx_SMnSTS).....	1319
47.4.19	Interrupt Enable Register (PWMx_SMnINTEN).....	1320
47.4.20	DMA Enable Register (PWMx_SMnDMAEN).....	1322
47.4.21	Output Trigger Control Register (PWMx_SMnTCTRL).....	1323
47.4.22	Fault Disable Mapping Register 0 (PWMx_SMnDISMAP0).....	1325
47.4.23	Deadtime Count Register 0 (PWMx_SMnDTCNT0).....	1326
47.4.24	Deadtime Count Register 1 (PWMx_SMnDTCNT1).....	1326
47.4.25	Capture Control A Register (PWMx_SMnCPTCTRLA).....	1327
47.4.26	Capture Compare A Register (PWMx_SMnCPTCOMPA).....	1329
47.4.27	Capture Control B Register (PWMx_SMnCPTCTRLB).....	1329
47.4.28	Capture Compare B Register (PWMx_SMnCPTCOMPB).....	1331
47.4.29	Capture Control X Register (PWMx_SMnCPTCTRLX).....	1332
47.4.30	Capture Compare X Register (PWMx_SMnCPTCOMPX).....	1333

Section number	Title	Page
47.4.31	Capture Value 0 Register (PWMx_SMnCVAL0).....	1334
47.4.32	Capture Value 0 Cycle Register (PWMx_SMnCVAL0CYC).....	1334
47.4.33	Capture Value 1 Register (PWMx_SMnCVAL1).....	1335
47.4.34	Capture Value 1 Cycle Register (PWMx_SMnCVAL1CYC).....	1335
47.4.35	Capture Value 2 Register (PWMx_SMnCVAL2).....	1335
47.4.36	Capture Value 2 Cycle Register (PWMx_SMnCVAL2CYC).....	1336
47.4.37	Capture Value 3 Register (PWMx_SMnCVAL3).....	1336
47.4.38	Capture Value 3 Cycle Register (PWMx_SMnCVAL3CYC).....	1337
47.4.39	Capture Value 4 Register (PWMx_SMnCVAL4).....	1337
47.4.40	Capture Value 4 Cycle Register (PWMx_SMnCVAL4CYC).....	1337
47.4.41	Capture Value 5 Register (PWMx_SMnCVAL5).....	1338
47.4.42	Capture Value 5 Cycle Register (PWMx_SMnCVAL5CYC).....	1338
47.4.43	Output Enable Register (PWMx_OUTEN).....	1339
47.4.44	Mask Register (PWMx_MASK).....	1340
47.4.45	Software Controlled Output Register (PWMx_SWCOUT).....	1341
47.4.46	PWM Source Select Register (PWMx_DTSRCSEL).....	1342
47.4.47	Master Control Register 0 (PWMx_MCTRL0).....	1344
47.4.48	Master Control Register 1 (PWMx_MCTRL1).....	1345
47.4.49	Fault Control Register (PWMx_FCTRLn).....	1346
47.4.50	Fault Status Register (PWMx_FSTS _n).....	1347
47.4.51	Fault Filter Register (PWMx_FFILT _n).....	1348
47.4.52	Fault Test Register (PWMx_FTST _n).....	1350
47.4.53	Fault Control 2 Register (PWMx_FCTRL2 _n).....	1350
47.5	Functional Description.....	1351
47.5.1	PWM Capabilities.....	1351
47.5.2	Functional Details.....	1360
47.5.3	PWM Generator Loading.....	1380
47.6	Resets.....	1383
47.7	Interrupts.....	1384

Section number	Title	Page
47.8	DMA.....	1385
<p style="text-align: center;">Chapter 48 Periodic Interrupt Timer (PIT)</p>		
48.1	Chip-specific PIT information.....	1389
48.1.1	PIT Instantiations.....	1389
48.1.2	PIT/DMA Periodic Trigger Assignments	1389
48.1.3	PIT/ADC Triggers.....	1389
48.1.4	PIT Trigger Output Assignments.....	1389
48.2	Introduction.....	1390
48.2.1	Block diagram.....	1390
48.2.2	Features.....	1391
48.3	Signal description.....	1391
48.4	Memory map/register description.....	1392
48.4.1	PIT Module Control Register (PIT_MCR).....	1392
48.4.2	PIT Upper Lifetime Timer Register (PIT_LTMR64H).....	1394
48.4.3	PIT Lower Lifetime Timer Register (PIT_LTMR64L).....	1394
48.4.4	Timer Load Value Register (PIT_LDVAL _n).....	1395
48.4.5	Current Timer Value Register (PIT_CVAL _n).....	1395
48.4.6	Timer Control Register (PIT_TCTRL _n).....	1396
48.4.7	Timer Flag Register (PIT_TFLG _n).....	1396
48.5	Functional description.....	1397
48.5.1	General operation.....	1397
48.5.2	Interrupts.....	1399
48.5.3	Chained timers.....	1399
48.6	Initialization and application information.....	1399
48.7	Example configuration for chained timers.....	1400
48.8	Example configuration for the lifetime timer.....	1401

Section number	Title	Page
Chapter 49		
Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI)		
49.1	Chip-specific SPI information.....	1403
49.1.1	SPI instantiation information.....	1403
49.1.2	SPI clocking.....	1403
49.1.3	Number of CTARs.....	1403
49.1.4	TX FIFO size.....	1403
49.1.5	RX FIFO Size.....	1404
49.1.6	Number of PCS signals.....	1404
49.1.7	SPI Operation in Low Power Modes.....	1404
49.1.8	SPI Doze Mode.....	1405
49.1.9	SPI Interrupts.....	1405
49.1.10	SPI clocks.....	1405
49.1.11	Writing SPI Transmit FIFO.....	1406
49.1.12	Receive buffer overflow.....	1406
49.1.13	Back to back frames when using Modified SPI/DSI Transfer Format.....	1406
49.2	Introduction.....	1406
49.2.1	Block Diagram.....	1406
49.2.2	Features.....	1408
49.2.3	Interface configurations.....	1410
49.2.4	Modes of Operation.....	1410
49.3	Module signal descriptions.....	1412
49.3.1	PCS0/SS—Peripheral Chip Select/Slave Select.....	1412
49.3.2	PCS1–PCS3—Peripheral Chip Selects 1–3.....	1413
49.3.3	PCS4—Peripheral Chip Select 4.....	1413
49.3.4	PCS5/PCSS—Peripheral Chip Select 5/Peripheral Chip Select Strobe.....	1413
49.3.5	SCK—Serial Clock.....	1413
49.3.6	SIN—Serial Input.....	1413
49.3.7	SOUT—Serial Output.....	1414

Section number	Title	Page
49.4	Memory Map/Register Definition.....	1414
49.4.1	Module Configuration Register (SPLx_MCR).....	1417
49.4.2	Transfer Count Register (SPLx_TCR).....	1420
49.4.3	Clock and Transfer Attributes Register (In Master Mode) (SPLx_CTAR _n).....	1420
49.4.4	Clock and Transfer Attributes Register (In Slave Mode) (SPLx_CTAR _n _SLAVE).....	1425
49.4.5	Status Register (SPLx_SR).....	1427
49.4.6	DMA/Interrupt Request Select and Enable Register (SPLx_RSER).....	1430
49.4.7	PUSH TX FIFO Register In Master Mode (SPLx_PUSHR).....	1432
49.4.8	PUSH TX FIFO Register In Slave Mode (SPLx_PUSHR_SLAVE).....	1434
49.4.9	POP RX FIFO Register (SPLx_POPR).....	1434
49.4.10	Transmit FIFO Registers (SPLx_TXFR _n).....	1435
49.4.11	Receive FIFO Registers (SPLx_RXFR _n).....	1435
49.5	Functional description.....	1436
49.5.1	Start and Stop of module transfers.....	1437
49.5.2	Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) configuration.....	1437
49.5.3	Module baud rate and clock delay generation.....	1441
49.5.4	Transfer formats.....	1445
49.5.5	Continuous Serial Communications Clock.....	1454
49.5.6	Slave Mode Operation Constraints.....	1456
49.5.7	Interrupts/DMA requests.....	1456
49.5.8	Power saving features.....	1458
49.6	Initialization/application information.....	1459
49.6.1	How to manage queues.....	1460
49.6.2	Switching Master and Slave mode.....	1460
49.6.3	Initializing Module in Master/Slave Modes.....	1461
49.6.4	Baud rate settings.....	1461
49.6.5	Delay settings.....	1462

Section number	Title	Page
49.6.6	Calculation of FIFO pointer addresses.....	1463
Chapter 50		
10/100-Mbps Ethernet MAC (ENET)		
50.1	Chip-specific ENET information.....	1465
50.1.1	Ethernet Clocking Options.....	1465
50.1.2	RMII Clocking.....	1465
50.1.3	IEEE 1588 Timers.....	1465
50.1.4	Ethernet Operation in Low Power Modes.....	1466
50.1.5	Ethernet Doze Mode.....	1466
50.1.6	Ethernet Interrupts.....	1466
50.1.7	Ethernet event signal.....	1467
50.2	.....	0
50.3	Features.....	1467
50.3.1	Ethernet MAC features.....	1467
50.3.2	IP protocol performance optimization features.....	1468
50.3.3	IEEE 1588 features.....	1469
50.4	Block diagram.....	1470
50.5	.....	0
50.5.1	.....	0
50.5.2	.....	0
50.6	.....	0

Section number	Title	Page
50.7.7	Interrupt Event Register (ENET_EIR).....	1475
50.7.8	Interrupt Mask Register (ENET_EIMR).....	1478
50.7.9	Receive Descriptor Active Register (ENET_RDAR).....	1481
50.7.10	Transmit Descriptor Active Register (ENET_TDAR).....	1481
50.7.11	Ethernet Control Register (ENET_ECR).....	1482
50.7.12	MII Management Frame Register (ENET_MMFR).....	1484
50.7.13	MII Speed Control Register (ENET_MSCR).....	1485
50.7.14	MIB Control Register (ENET_MIBC).....	1487
50.7.15	Receive Control Register (ENET_RCR).....	1488
50.7.16	Transmit Control Register (ENET_TCR).....	1491
50.7.17	Physical Address Lower Register (ENET_PALR).....	1493
50.7.18	Physical Address Upper Register (ENET_PAUR).....	1493
50.7.19	Opcode/Pause Duration Register (ENET_OPD).....	1494
50.7.20	Descriptor Individual Upper Address Register (ENET_IAUR).....	1494
50.7.21	Descriptor Individual Lower Address Register (ENET_IALR).....	1495
50.7.22	Descriptor Group Upper Address Register (ENET_GAUR).....	1495
50.7.23	Descriptor Group Lower Address Register (ENET_GALR).....	1496
50.7.24	Transmit FIFO Watermark Register (ENET_TFWR).....	1496
50.7.25	Receive Descriptor Ring Start Register (ENET_RDSR).....	1497
50.7.26	Transmit Buffer Descriptor Ring Start Register (ENET_TDSR).....	1498
50.7.27	Maximum Receive Buffer Size Register (ENET_MRBR).....	1499
50.7.28	Receive FIFO Section Full Threshold (ENET_RSFL).....	1500
50.7.29	Receive FIFO Section Empty Threshold (ENET_RSEM).....	1500
50.7.30	Receive FIFO Almost Empty Threshold (ENET_RAEM).....	1501
50.7.31	Receive FIFO Almost Full Threshold (ENET_RAFL).....	1501
50.7.32	Transmit FIFO Section Empty Threshold (ENET_TSEM).....	1502
50.7.33	Transmit FIFO Almost Empty Threshold (ENET_TAEM).....	1502
50.7.34	Transmit FIFO Almost Full Threshold (ENET_TAFL).....	1503
50.7.35	Transmit Inter-Packet Gap (ENET_TIPG).....	1503
50.7.36	Frame Truncation Length (ENET_FTRL).....	1504
50.7.37	Transmit Accelerator Function Configuration (ENET_TACC).....	1504
50.7.38	Receive Accelerator Function Configuration (ENET_RACC).....	1505

Section number	Title	Page
50.7.10	Timer Compare Capture Register (ENET_TCCR _n).....	1535
2		
50.103	.....	0
50.103.1	.....	0
50.104	Ethernet MAC frame formats.....	1536
50.104.1	Pause Frames.....	1538
50.104.2	Magic packets.....	1538
50.105	IP and higher layers frame format.....	1539
50.105.1	Ethernet types.....	1539
50.105.2	IPv4 datagram format.....	1539
50.105.3	IPv6 datagram format.....	1540
50.105.4	Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) datagram format.....	1541
50.105.5	User Datagram Protocol (UDP) datagram format.....	1542
50.105.6	TCP datagram format.....	1543
50.106	IEEE 1588 message formats.....	1543
50.106.1	Transport encapsulation.....	1543
50.106.2	PTP header.....	1545
50.107	MAC receive.....	1547
50.107.1	Collision detection in half-duplex mode.....	1548
50.107.2	Preamble processing.....	1548
50.107.3	MAC address check.....	1549
50.107.4	Frame length/type verification: payload length check.....	1551
50.107.5	Frame length/type verification: frame length check.....	1551
50.107.6	VLAN frames processing.....	1551
50.107.7	Pause frame termination.....	1552
50.107.8	CRC check.....	1552
50.107.9	Frame padding removal.....	1552
50.108	MAC transmit.....	1553
50.108.1	Frame payload padding.....	1554

Section number	Title	Page
50.108.2	MAC address insertion.....	1554
50.108.3	CRC-32 generation.....	1554
50.108.4	Inter-packet gap (IPG).....	1555
50.108.5	Collision detection and handling — half-duplex operation only.....	1555
50.109	Full-duplex flow control operation.....	1557
50.109.1	Remote device congestion.....	1557
50.109.2	Local device/FIFO congestion.....	1558
50.110	Magic packet detection.....	1559
50.110.1	Sleep mode.....	1559
50.110.2	Magic packet detection.....	1559
50.110.3	Wakeup.....	1560
50.111	IP accelerator functions.....	1560
50.111.1	Checksum calculation.....	1560
50.111.2	Additional padding processing.....	1561
50.111.3	32-bit Ethernet payload alignment.....	1561
50.111.4	Received frame discard.....	1562
50.111.5	IPv4 fragments.....	1563
50.111.6	IPv6 support.....	1563
50.112	Resets and stop controls.....	1564
50.112.1	Hardware reset.....	1565
50.112.2	Soft reset.....	1565
50.112.3	Hardware freeze.....	1565
50.112.4	Graceful stop.....	1565
50.113	IEEE 1588 functions.....	1568
50.113.1	Adjustable timer module.....	1568
50.113.2	Transmit timestamping.....	1570
50.113.3	Receive timestamping.....	1570
50.113.4	Time synchronization.....	1570

Section number	Title	Page
50.113.5	Input Capture and Output Compare.....	1571
50.114	FIFO thresholds.....	1572
50.114.1	Receive FIFO.....	1572
50.114.2	Transmit FIFO.....	1573
50.115	Loopback options.....	1574
50.116	Legacy buffer descriptors.....	1575
50.116.1	Legacy receive buffer descriptor.....	1575
50.116.2	Legacy transmit buffer descriptor.....	1576
50.117	Enhanced buffer descriptors.....	1576
50.117.1	Enhanced receive buffer descriptor.....	1576
50.117.2	Enhanced transmit buffer descriptor.....	1580
50.118	Client FIFO application interface.....	1583
50.118.1	Data structure description.....	1583
50.118.2	Data structure examples.....	1584
50.118.3	Frame status.....	1585
50.119	FIFO protection.....	1586
50.119.1	Transmit FIFO underflow.....	1586
50.119.2	Transmit FIFO overflow.....	1587
50.119.3	Receive FIFO overflow.....	1587
50.120	Reference clock.....	1588
50.121	PHY management interface.....	1589
50.121.1	MDIO clause 22 frame format.....	1589
50.121.2	MDIO clause 45 frame format.....	1590
50.121.3	MDIO clock generation.....	1591
50.121.4	MDIO operation.....	1591
50.122	Ethernet interfaces.....	1592
50.122.1	RMII interface.....	1592
50.122.2	MII Interface — transmit.....	1594
50.122.3	MII interface — receive.....	1595

Section number	Title	Page
50.123	0
50.123.1	0
50.123.2	0
50.123.3	0
50.123.4	0
50.123.5	0
50.123.6	0
50.123.7	0
50.123.8	0
50.123.9	0
50.123.10	0
50.123.11	0
50.123.12	0
50.123.13	0
50.123.14	0
50.123.15	0
50.123.16	0
50.123.17	0
50.123.18	0
50.123.19	0

Chapter 51 Inter-Integrated Circuit (I2C)

51.1	Chip-specific I2C information.....	1597
51.1.1	Number of I2C modules.....	1597
51.2	Introduction.....	1597
51.2.1	Features.....	1597
51.2.2	Modes of operation.....	1598
51.2.3	Block diagram.....	1598
51.3	I2C signal descriptions.....	1599

Section number	Title	Page
51.4	Memory map/register definition.....	1600
51.4.1	I2C Address Register 1 (I2Cx_A1).....	1601
51.4.2	I2C Frequency Divider register (I2Cx_F).....	1601
51.4.3	I2C Control Register 1 (I2Cx_C1).....	1602
51.4.4	I2C Status register (I2Cx_S).....	1604
51.4.5	I2C Data I/O register (I2Cx_D).....	1606
51.4.6	I2C Control Register 2 (I2Cx_C2).....	1606
51.4.7	I2C Programmable Input Glitch Filter Register (I2Cx_FLT).....	1607
51.4.8	I2C Range Address register (I2Cx_RA).....	1609
51.4.9	I2C SMBus Control and Status register (I2Cx_SMB).....	1609
51.4.10	I2C Address Register 2 (I2Cx_A2).....	1611
51.4.11	I2C SCL Low Timeout Register High (I2Cx_SLTH).....	1611
51.4.12	I2C SCL Low Timeout Register Low (I2Cx_SLTL).....	1612
51.5	Functional description.....	1612
51.5.1	I2C protocol.....	1612
51.5.2	10-bit address.....	1617
51.5.3	Address matching.....	1619
51.5.4	System management bus specification.....	1620
51.5.5	Resets.....	1622
51.5.6	Interrupts.....	1622
51.5.7	Programmable input glitch filter.....	1625
51.5.8	Address matching wake-up.....	1625
51.5.9	DMA support.....	1626
51.6	Initialization/application information.....	1626

Chapter 52

Universal Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter (UART) / FlexSCI

52.1	Chip-specific UART information.....	1631
52.1.1	UART configuration.....	1631
52.1.2	UART signals.....	1631

Section number	Title	Page
52.1.3	UART wakeup.....	1632
52.1.4	UART interrupts.....	1632
52.2	Introduction.....	1634
52.2.1	Features.....	1634
52.2.2	Modes of operation.....	1636
52.3	UART signal descriptions.....	1637
52.3.1	Detailed signal descriptions.....	1637
52.4	Memory map and registers.....	1638
52.4.1	UART Baud Rate Registers: High (UARTx_BDH).....	1648
52.4.2	UART Baud Rate Registers: Low (UARTx_BDL).....	1649
52.4.3	UART Control Register 1 (UARTx_C1).....	1649
52.4.4	UART Control Register 2 (UARTx_C2).....	1651
52.4.5	UART Status Register 1 (UARTx_S1).....	1653
52.4.6	UART Status Register 2 (UARTx_S2).....	1656
52.4.7	UART Control Register 3 (UARTx_C3).....	1658
52.4.8	UART Data Register (UARTx_D).....	1659
52.4.9	UART Match Address Registers 1 (UARTx_MA1).....	1660
52.4.10	UART Match Address Registers 2 (UARTx_MA2).....	1661
52.4.11	UART Control Register 4 (UARTx_C4).....	1661
52.4.12	UART Control Register 5 (UARTx_C5).....	1662
52.4.13	UART Extended Data Register (UARTx_ED).....	1663
52.4.14	UART Modem Register (UARTx_MODEM).....	1664
52.4.15	UART Infrared Register (UARTx_IR).....	1665
52.4.16	UART FIFO Parameters (UARTx_PFIFO).....	1666
52.4.17	UART FIFO Control Register (UARTx_CFIFO).....	1667
52.4.18	UART FIFO Status Register (UARTx_SFIFO).....	1668
52.4.19	UART FIFO Transmit Watermark (UARTx_TWFIFO).....	1670
52.4.20	UART FIFO Transmit Count (UARTx_TCFIFO).....	1670
52.4.21	UART FIFO Receive Watermark (UARTx_RWFIFO).....	1671

Section number	Title	Page
52.4.22	UART FIFO Receive Count (UARTx_RCFIFO).....	1671
52.4.23	UART 7816 Control Register (UARTx_C7816).....	1672
52.4.24	UART 7816 Interrupt Enable Register (UARTx_IE7816).....	1673
52.4.25	UART 7816 Interrupt Status Register (UARTx_IS7816).....	1674
52.4.26	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register (UARTx_WP7816).....	1676
52.4.27	UART 7816 Wait N Register (UARTx_WN7816).....	1677
52.4.28	UART 7816 Wait FD Register (UARTx_WF7816).....	1677
52.4.29	UART 7816 Error Threshold Register (UARTx_ET7816).....	1678
52.4.30	UART 7816 Transmit Length Register (UARTx_TL7816).....	1678
52.4.31	UART 7816 ATR Duration Timer Register A (UARTx_AP7816A_T0).....	1679
52.4.32	UART 7816 ATR Duration Timer Register B (UARTx_AP7816B_T0).....	1680
52.4.33	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register A (UARTx_WP7816A_T0).....	1680
52.4.34	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register A (UARTx_WP7816A_T1).....	1681
52.4.35	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register B (UARTx_WP7816B_T0).....	1681
52.4.36	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register B (UARTx_WP7816B_T1).....	1682
52.4.37	UART 7816 Wait and Guard Parameter Register (UARTx_WGP7816_T1).....	1682
52.4.38	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register C (UARTx_WP7816C_T1).....	1683
52.5	Functional description.....	1683
52.5.1	Transmitter.....	1683
52.5.2	Receiver.....	1689
52.5.3	Baud rate generation.....	1703
52.5.4	Data format (non ISO-7816).....	1705
52.5.5	Single-wire operation.....	1708
52.5.6	Loop operation.....	1709
52.5.7	ISO-7816/smartcard support.....	1710
52.5.8	Infrared interface.....	1715
52.6	Reset.....	1716

Section number	Title	Page
52.7	System level interrupt sources.....	1716
52.7.1	RXEDGIF description.....	1717
52.8	DMA operation.....	1718
52.9	Application information.....	1719
52.9.1	Transmit/receive data buffer operation.....	1719
52.9.2	ISO-7816 initialization sequence.....	1719
52.9.3	Initialization sequence (non ISO-7816).....	1721
52.9.4	Overrun (OR) flag implications.....	1722
52.9.5	Overrun NACK considerations.....	1723
52.9.6	Match address registers.....	1724
52.9.7	Modem feature.....	1724
52.9.8	IrDA minimum pulse width.....	1725
52.9.9	Clearing 7816 wait timer (WT, BWT, CWT) interrupts.....	1726
52.9.10	Legacy and reverse compatibility considerations.....	1726

Chapter 53

Flex Controller Area Network (FlexCAN)

53.1	Chip-specific FlexCAN information.....	1729
53.1.1	Instantiation information.....	1729
53.1.2	FlexCAN glitch filter.....	1729
53.1.3	FlexCAN Supervisor Mode.....	1729
53.2	Introduction.....	1730
53.2.1	Overview.....	1730
53.2.2	FlexCAN module features.....	1731
53.2.3	Modes of operation.....	1733
53.3	FlexCAN signal descriptions.....	1734
53.3.1	CAN Rx	1735
53.3.2	CAN Tx	1735
53.4	Memory map/register definition.....	1735
53.4.1	FlexCAN memory mapping.....	1735

Section number	Title	Page
53.4.2	Module Configuration Register (CAN _x _MCR).....	1741
53.4.3	Control 1 register (CAN _x _CTRL1).....	1746
53.4.4	Free Running Timer (CAN _x _TIMER).....	1750
53.4.5	Rx Mailboxes Global Mask Register (CAN _x _RXMGMASK).....	1751
53.4.6	Rx 14 Mask register (CAN _x _RX14MASK).....	1752
53.4.7	Rx 15 Mask register (CAN _x _RX15MASK).....	1753
53.4.8	Error Counter (CAN _x _ECR).....	1753
53.4.9	Error and Status 1 register (CAN _x _ESR1).....	1755
53.4.10	Interrupt Masks 1 register (CAN _x _IMASK1).....	1761
53.4.11	Interrupt Flags 1 register (CAN _x _IFLAG1).....	1761
53.4.12	Control 2 register (CAN _x _CTRL2).....	1764
53.4.13	Error and Status 2 register (CAN _x _ESR2).....	1768
53.4.14	CRC Register (CAN _x _CRCR).....	1769
53.4.15	Rx FIFO Global Mask register (CAN _x _RXFGMASK).....	1770
53.4.16	Rx FIFO Information Register (CAN _x _RXFIR).....	1771
53.4.17	CAN Bit Timing Register (CAN _x _CBT).....	1771
53.4.18	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN _x _RXIMR _n).....	1773
53.4.70	Message buffer structure.....	1774
53.4.71	Rx FIFO structure.....	1780
53.5	Functional description.....	1782
53.5.1	Transmit process.....	1782
53.5.2	Arbitration process.....	1783
53.5.3	Receive process.....	1787
53.5.4	Matching process.....	1789
53.5.5	Move process.....	1794
53.5.6	Data coherence.....	1795
53.5.7	Rx FIFO.....	1799
53.5.8	CAN protocol related features.....	1802
53.5.9	Clock domains and restrictions.....	1810

Section number	Title	Page
53.5.10	Modes of operation details.....	1811
53.5.11	Interrupts.....	1816
53.5.12	Bus interface.....	1817
53.6	Initialization/application information.....	1818
53.6.1	FlexCAN initialization sequence.....	1818

Chapter 54 General-Purpose Input/Output (GPIO)

54.1	Chip-specific GPIO information.....	1821
54.1.1	GPIO access protection.....	1821
54.1.2	Number of GPIO signals.....	1821
54.2	Introduction.....	1821
54.2.1	Features.....	1822
54.2.2	Modes of operation.....	1822
54.2.3	GPIO signal descriptions.....	1822
54.3	Memory map and register definition.....	1823
54.3.1	Port Data Output Register (GPIOx_PDOR).....	1825
54.3.2	Port Set Output Register (GPIOx_PSOR).....	1826
54.3.3	Port Clear Output Register (GPIOx_PCOR).....	1826
54.3.4	Port Toggle Output Register (GPIOx_PTOR).....	1827
54.3.5	Port Data Input Register (GPIOx_PDIR).....	1827
54.3.6	Port Data Direction Register (GPIOx_PDDR).....	1828
54.4	Functional description.....	1828
54.4.1	General-purpose input.....	1828
54.4.2	General-purpose output.....	1828

Chapter 55 JTAG Controller (JTAGC)

55.1	Introduction.....	1831
55.1.1	Block diagram.....	1831
55.1.2	Features.....	1832

Section number	Title	Page
55.1.3	Modes of operation.....	1832
55.2	External signal description.....	1833
55.2.1	TCK—Test clock input.....	1833
55.2.2	TDI—Test data input.....	1834
55.2.3	TDO—Test data output.....	1834
55.2.4	TMS—Test mode select.....	1834
55.3	Register description.....	1834
55.3.1	Instruction register.....	1834
55.3.2	Bypass register.....	1835
55.3.3	Device identification register.....	1835
55.3.4	Boundary scan register.....	1836
55.4	Functional description.....	1836
55.4.1	JTAGC reset configuration.....	1836
55.4.2	IEEE 1149.1-2001 (JTAG) Test Access Port.....	1836
55.4.3	TAP controller state machine.....	1837
55.4.4	JTAGC block instructions.....	1839
55.4.5	Boundary scan.....	1842
55.5	Initialization/Application information.....	1842

Chapter 56

Release Notes for Revision 2 and 2.1

56.1	General changes throughout document	1843
56.2	About This Document chapter changes.....	1843
56.3	Introduction chapter changes.....	1843
56.4	Core Overview changes	1843
56.5	Memories and Memory Interfaces changes.....	1844
56.6	Memory Map changes	1844
56.7	Clock Distribution changes.....	1844
56.8	Reset and Boot chapter changes.....	1844
56.9	Power Management chapter changes.....	1844

Section number	Title	Page
56.10	Security chapter changes.....	1844
56.11	Debug chapter changes.....	1845
56.12	Signal Multiplexing and Signal Descriptions chapter changes.....	1845
56.13	PORT changes.....	1845
56.13.1	Chip-specific PORT information changes.....	1845
56.13.2	PORT changes.....	1845
56.14	SIM changes.....	1845
56.15	Kinetis Flashloader changes.....	1845
56.15.1	Chip-specific Kinetis Flashloader information changes.....	1845
56.15.2	Kinetis Flash Bootloader changes	1846
56.16	RCM changes.....	1846
56.17	SMC changes.....	1846
56.18	MCM changes.....	1846
56.19	MSCM changes.....	1846
56.20	PMC changes.....	1847
56.21	LLWU changes.....	1847
56.21.1	Chip-specific LLWU information changes.....	1847
56.21.2	LLWU changes.....	1847
56.22	AXBS changes.....	1847
56.22.1	Chip-specific AXBS information changes.....	1847
56.22.2	Crossbar switch module changes.....	1847
56.23	AIPS-Lite changes.....	1847
56.23.1	Chip-specific AIPS-Lite information changes.....	1847
56.23.2	AIPS module changes.....	1848
56.24	MPU changes.....	1848
56.24.1	Chip-specific MPU information changes.....	1848
56.24.2	MPU module changes.....	1848
56.25	DMAMUX changes.....	1848
56.25.1	Chip-specific DMAMUX information changes.....	1848

Section number	Title	Page
56.25.2	DMAMUX module changes.....	1848
56.26	eDMA module changes.....	1849
56.27	EWM changes.....	1849
56.27.1	Chip-specific EWM information changes.....	1849
56.27.2	EWM changes.....	1849
56.28	WDOG changes.....	1849
56.28.1	Chip-specific WDOG information changes.....	1849
56.28.2	WDOG changes.....	1849
56.29	AOI changes.....	1850
56.29.1	Chip-specific AOI information changes.....	1850
56.29.2	AOI changes.....	1850
56.30	XBARA changes.....	1850
56.30.1	Chip-specific XBARA information changes.....	1850
56.30.2	XBARA changes.....	1850
56.31	XBARB changes.....	1850
56.31.1	Chip-specific XBARB information changes.....	1850
56.31.2	XBARB changes.....	1850
56.32	MCG changes.....	1851
56.32.1	Chip-specific MCG information changes.....	1851
56.32.2	MCG changes.....	1851
56.33	OSC changes.....	1851
56.33.1	Chip-specific OSC information changes.....	1851
56.33.2	OSC changes.....	1851
56.34	FMC changes.....	1851
56.34.1	Chip-specific ADC information changes.....	1851
56.34.2	FMC changes.....	1851
56.35	FTFE changes.....	1852
56.36	FlexBus changes.....	1852
56.36.1	Chip-specific FlexBus information changes.....	1852

Section number	Title	Page
56.36.2	FlexBus changes.....	1852
56.37	CRC changes.....	1852
56.38	MMCAU changes.....	1852
56.39	SA-TRNG changes.....	1852
56.40	16-bit ADC changes.....	1853
56.40.1	Chip-specific ADC information changes.....	1853
56.40.2	ADC changes.....	1853
56.41	HSADC changes.....	1853
56.41.1	Chip-specific HSADC information changes.....	1853
56.41.2	SAR ADC 12b5Msps changes.....	1853
56.42	CMP changes.....	1853
56.42.1	Chip-specific CMP information changes.....	1853
56.42.2	CMP changes.....	1854
56.43	DAC changes.....	1854
56.43.1	Chip-specific DAC information changes.....	1854
56.43.2	DAC changes.....	1854
56.44	FlexTimer changes.....	1854
56.44.1	Chip-specific FlexTimer information changes.....	1854
56.44.2	FTM changes.....	1854
56.45	LPTMR changes.....	1855
56.45.1	Chip-specific LPTMR information changes.....	1855
56.45.2	LPTMR changes.....	1855
56.46	PDB changes.....	1855
56.46.1	Chip-specific PDB information changes.....	1855
56.46.2	PDB changes.....	1855
56.47	ENC changes.....	1855
56.47.1	Chip-specific ENC information changes.....	1855
56.47.2	ENC changes.....	1856

Section number	Title	Page
56.48	eFlexPWM changes.....	1856
56.48.1	Chip-specific eFlexPWM information changes.....	1856
56.48.2	eFlexPWM changes.....	1856
56.49	PIT changes.....	1856
56.49.1	Chip-specific PIT information changes.....	1856
56.49.2	PIT module changes.....	1856
56.50	SPI changes.....	1856
56.50.1	Chip-specific SPI information changes.....	1856
56.50.2	SPI module changes.....	1857
56.51	ENET changes.....	1857
56.51.1	Chip-specific ENET information changes.....	1857
56.51.2	ENET module changes.....	1857
56.52	I2C changes.....	1857
56.52.1	Chip-specific I2C information changes.....	1857
56.52.2	I2C changes.....	1857
56.53	UART changes.....	1858
56.53.1	Chip-specific UART information changes.....	1858
56.53.2	UART changes.....	1858
56.54	FlexCAN changes.....	1858
56.54.1	Chip-specific FlexCAN information changes.....	1858
56.54.2	FlexCAN module changes.....	1858
56.55	GPIO changes.....	1858
56.55.1	Chip-specific GPIO information changes.....	1858
56.55.2	GPIO changes.....	1859
56.56	JTAGC module changes.....	1859

Chapter 1

About This Document

1.1 Overview

1.1.1 Purpose

This document describes the features, architecture, and programming model of the microcontroller.

1.1.2 Audience

This document is intended for system architects and software application developers who are using (or considering using) the microcontroller in a system.

1.2 Conventions

1.2.1 Numbering systems

The following suffixes identify different numbering systems:

This suffix	Identifies a
b	Binary number. For example, the binary equivalent of the number 5 is written 101b. In some cases, binary numbers are shown with the prefix 0b.
d	Decimal number. Decimal numbers are followed by this suffix only when the possibility of confusion exists. In general, decimal numbers are shown without a suffix.
h	Hexadecimal number. For example, the hexadecimal equivalent of the number 60 is written 3Ch. In some cases, hexadecimal numbers are shown with the prefix 0x.

1.2.2 Typographic notation

The following typographic notation is used throughout this document:

Example	Description
<i>placeholder, x</i>	Items in italics are placeholders for information that you provide. Italicized text is also used for the titles of publications and for emphasis. Plain lowercase letters are also used as placeholders for single letters and numbers.
code	Fixed-width type indicates text that must be typed exactly as shown. It is used for instruction mnemonics, directives, symbols, subcommands, parameters, and operators. Fixed-width type is also used for example code. Instruction mnemonics and directives in text and tables are shown in all caps; for example, BSR.
SR[SCM]	A mnemonic in brackets represents a named field in a register. This example refers to the Scaling Mode (SCM) field in the Status Register (SR).
REVNO[6:4], XAD[7:0]	Numbers in brackets and separated by a colon represent either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A subset of a register's named field For example, REVNO[6:4] refers to bits 6–4 that are part of the COREREV field that occupies bits 6–0 of the REVNO register. A continuous range of individual signals of a bus For example, XAD[7:0] refers to signals 7–0 of the XAD bus.

1.2.3 Special terms

The following terms have special meanings:

Term	Meaning
asserted	Refers to the state of a signal as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> An active-high signal is asserted when high (1). An active-low signal is asserted when low (0).
deasserted	Refers to the state of a signal as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> An active-high signal is deasserted when low (0). An active-low signal is deasserted when high (1). <p>In some cases, deasserted signals are described as <i>negated</i>.</p>
reserved	Refers to a memory space, register, or field that is either reserved for future use or for which, when written to, the module or chip behavior is unpredictable.
w1c	Write 1 to clear: Refers to a register bitfield that must be written as 1 to be "cleared."

Chapter 2

Introduction

2.1 Overview

This chapter provides high-level descriptions of the modules available on the devices covered by this document.

2.2 Block diagram

The block diagram shows the features of this chip. Within each category, the diagram shows the superset of modules and number of module instances on the 144-pin member of the family.

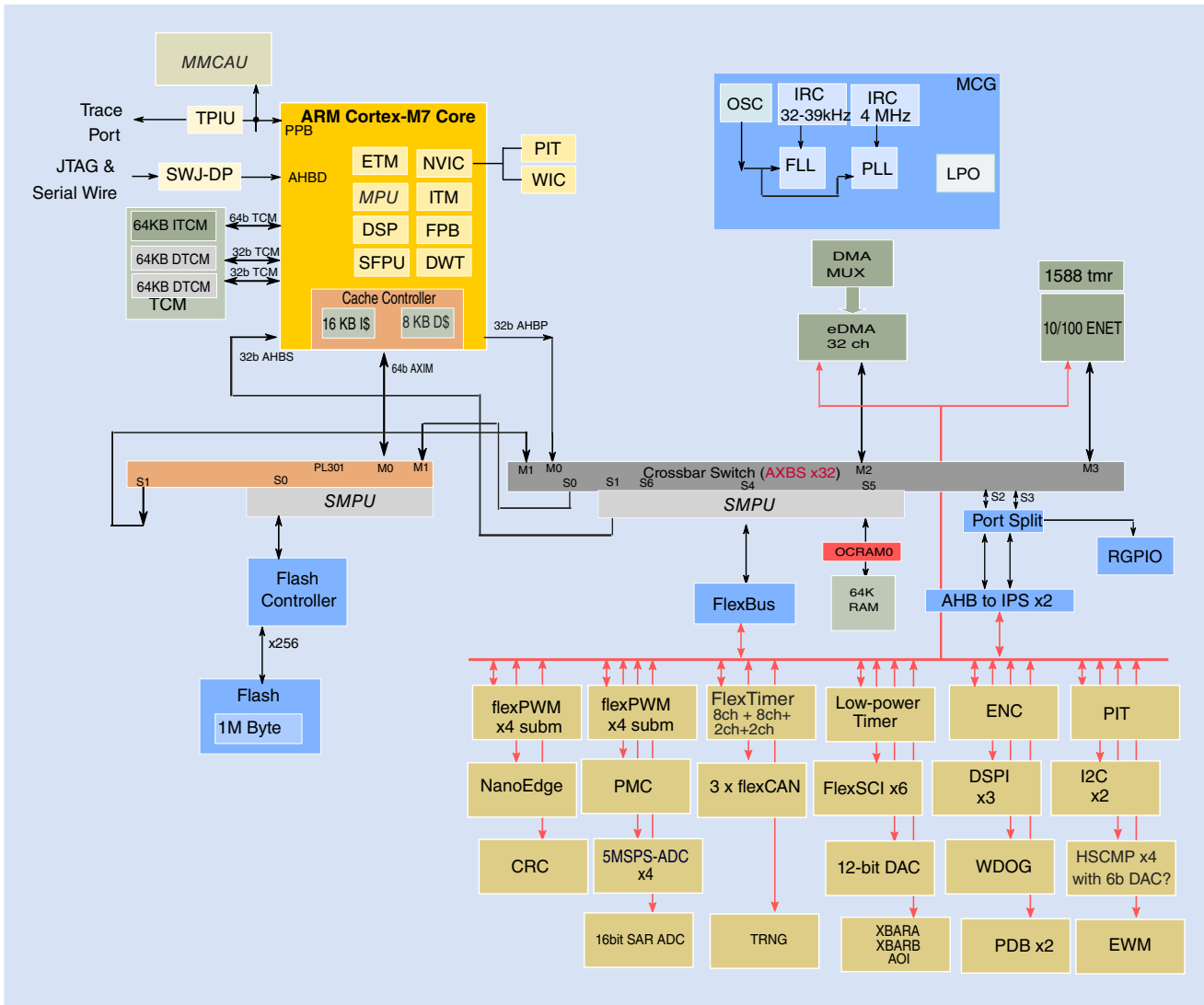


Figure 2-1. KV5x series block diagram

2.3 Module Functional Categories

The modules on this device are grouped into functional categories. The following sections describe the modules assigned to each category in more detail.

Table 2-1. Module functional categories

Module category	Description
ARM® Cortex®-M7 based core	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Cortex-M7 is ARM's highest-performing Cortex-M processor. It combines a six-stage, superscalar pipeline with flexible system and memory interfaces including AXI, AHB, caches and tightly-coupled memories, and delivers high integer, floating point, single precision, and DSP performance in an MCU.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 2-1. Module functional categories (continued)

Module category	Description
System	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • System integration module (SIM) • System mode controller (SMC) • Power management and mode controllers (PMC) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Multiple power modes available based on high speed run, run, wait, stop, and power-down modes • Low-leakage wakeup unit (LLWU) • Miscellaneous control module (MCM) • Miscellaneous System Control Module (MSCM) • Crossbar switch (AXBS) • NIC301 Crossbar • System Memory protection unit (MPU) • Peripheral bridges (AIPS-Lite) • Bit Manipulation Engine (BME2) • Direct memory access (DMA) controller with multiplexer to increase available DMA requests. DMA can handle transfers in VLPS mode • DMA multiplexer (DMAMUX) • External watchdog monitor (EWM) • Software watchdog (WDOG)
Memories	<p>Internal memories include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Program flash memory • SRAM <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • OCRAM • Tightly Coupled Memory (TCM) • Instruction TCM (ITCM) • Data TCM (DTCM) • Cache memory (ICACHE and DCACHE) • 32-bit System Register File • Flexbus external memory interface
Clocks	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Multiple clock generation options available from internally- and externally-generated clocks • System oscillator to provide clock source for the MCU
Security	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cyclic Redundancy Check module for error detection • Hardware encryption, along with a random number generator
Analog	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 12-bit (5MSPS) High speed analog-to-digital converter • Comparator • 16-bit SAR ADC • Digital-to-analog converter • Internal voltage reference • Bandgap voltage reference
Timers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Programmable delay block • FlexTimers • Periodic interrupt timer • Low power timer • Quadrature Encoder/Decoder • Pulse Width Modulator
Communications	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ethernet MAC with IEEE 1588 capability • FlexCAN • Serial peripheral interface (DSPI) • Inter-integrated circuit (I²C) • Universal Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter (UART)
Human-Machine Interfaces (HMI)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • General purpose input/output controller

2.3.1 ARM® Cortex®-M7 Core Modules

The following core modules are available on this device.

Table 2-2. Core modules

Module	Description
ARM Cortex-M7	The ARM Cortex-M7 is a member of the Cortex M Series of processors targeting microcontroller cores focused on very cost sensitive, deterministic, interrupt driven environments. The Cortex-M7 processor is a highly efficient high-performance, embedded processor that features low interrupt latency, low-cost debug, and has backwards compatibility with existing Cortex-M profile processors. The processor has an in-order super-scalar pipeline and supports dual-issue of load/store instruction pairs to multiple memory interfaces.
Floating point unit (FPU)	A single-precision floating point unit (FPU) that is compliant to the <i>IEEE Standard for Floating-Point Arithmetic</i> (IEEE 754).
NVIC	The ARMv7-M exception model and nested-vector interrupt controller (NVIC) implement a relocatable vector table supporting many external interrupts, a single non-maskable interrupt (NMI), and priority levels. The NVIC replaces shadow registers with equivalent system and simplified programmability. The NVIC contains the address of the function to execute for a particular handler. The address is fetched via the instruction port allowing parallel register stacking and look-up. The first sixteen entries are allocated to ARM internal sources with the others mapping to MCU-defined interrupts.
AWIC	The primary function of the Asynchronous Wake-up Interrupt Controller (AWIC) is to detect asynchronous wake-up events in stop modes and signal to clock control logic to resume system clocking. After clock restart, the NVIC observes the pending interrupt and performs the normal interrupt or event processing.
Debug interfaces	Most of this device's debug hardware is based on the ARM CoreSight™ architecture. Four debug interfaces are supported: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • IEEE 1149.1 JTAG • IEEE 1149.7 JTAG (cJTAG) • Serial Wire Debug (SWD) • ARM Real-Time Trace Interface

2.3.2 System Modules

The following system modules are available on this device.

Table 2-3. System modules

Module	Description
System integration module (SIM)	The SIM includes integration logic and several module configuration settings.
System mode controller	The SMC provides control and protection on entry and exit to each power mode, control for the Power management controller (PMC), and reset entry and exit for the complete MCU.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 2-3. System modules (continued)

Module	Description
Power management controller (PMC)	The PMC provides the user with multiple power options. More than ten different modes are supported that allow the user to optimize power consumption for the level of functionality needed. Includes power-on-reset (POR) and integrated low voltage detect (LVD) with reset (brownout) capability and selectable LVD trip points.
Low-leakage wakeup unit (LLWU)	The LLWU module allows the device to wake from low leakage power modes (LLS and VLLS) through various internal peripheral and external pin sources.
Miscellaneous control module (MCM)	The MCM includes miscellaneous control functions and local memory descriptors.
Miscellaneous System Control Module (MSCM)	The MSCM includes CPU configuration information and system memory descriptors.
Crossbar switch (AXBS)	The AXBS connects bus masters and bus slaves, allowing all bus masters to access different bus slaves simultaneously and providing arbitration among the bus masters when they access the same slave.
NIC301 Crossbar	Provides interconnections between the CM7's 64-bit AXI bus and the AXBS to the flash memory.
System Memory protection unit (MPU)	The System MPU provides memory protection and task isolation. It concurrently monitors all bus master transactions for the slave connections.
Peripheral bridges	The peripheral bridge converts the crossbar switch interface to an interface to access a majority of peripherals on the device.
DMA multiplexer (DMAMUX)	The DMA multiplexer selects from many DMA requests down to a smaller number for the DMA controller.
Direct memory access (DMA) controller	The DMA controller provides programmable channels with transfer control descriptors for data movement via dual-address transfers for 8-, 16-, 32- and 128-bit data values.
External watchdog monitor (EWM)	The EWM is a redundant mechanism to the software watchdog module that monitors both internal and external system operation for fail conditions.
Software watchdog (WDOG)	The WDOG monitors internal system operation and forces a reset in case of failure. It can run from an independent 1 KHz low power oscillator with a programmable refresh window to detect deviations in program flow or system frequency.
Bit Manipulation Engine2 (BME2)	The second-generation BME2 provides hardware support for atomic read-modify-write operations to the peripheral address space.

2.3.3 Memories and Memory Interfaces

The following memories and memory interfaces are available on this device.

Table 2-4. Memories and memory interfaces

Module	Description
Flash memory	Program flash memory — non-volatile flash memory that can execute program code
Flash memory controller	Manages the interface between the device and the on-chip flash memory.
SRAM - OGRAM	Internal system RAM. Partial SRAM kept powered in VLLS2 low leakage mode.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 2-4. Memories and memory interfaces (continued)

Module	Description
SRAM - TCM	Internal tightly-coupled RAM. Partial SRAM kept powered in VLLS2 low leakage mode.
Cortex-M7 ITCM, D0TCM, D1TCM controllers	Manage simultaneous accesses to tightly-coupled memory by multiple master peripherals and core.
System register file	32-byte register file that is accessible during all power modes and is powered by VDD.
FlexBus	External bus interface with multiple independent, user-programmable chip-select signals that can interface with external SRAM, PROM, EPROM, EEPROM, flash, and other peripherals via 8-, 16- and 32-bit port sizes. Configurations include multiplexed or non-multiplexed address and data buses using 8-bit, 16-bit, 32-bit, and 16-byte line-sized transfers.

2.3.4 Clocks

The following clock modules are available on this device.

Table 2-5. Clock modules

Module	Description
Multipurpose clock generator (MCG)	The MCG provides several clock sources for the MCU that include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Phase-locked loop (PLL) — Voltage-controlled oscillator (VCO) • Frequency-locked loop (FLL) — Digitally-controlled oscillator (DCO) • Internal reference clocks — Can be used as a clock source for other on-chip peripherals
System oscillator	The system oscillator, in conjunction with an external crystal or resonator, generates a reference clock for the MCU.

2.3.5 Security and Integrity modules

The following security and integrity modules are available on this device:

Table 2-6. Security and integrity modules

Module	Description
Cryptographic acceleration unit (CAU)	Supports the following algorithms: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DES • 3-DES • AES • SHA-1 and SHA-256 • MD5 Via simple C calls to optimized security functions provided by Freescale.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 2-6. Security and integrity modules (continued)

Module	Description
True Random number generator (TRNG)	Supports the key generation algorithm defined in the Digital Signature Standard. A hardware entropy source which can be used to seed a software random number generator.
Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC)	Hardware CRC generator circuit using 16/32-bit shift register. Error detection for all single, double, odd, and most multi-bit errors, programmable initial seed value, and optional feature to transpose input data and CRC result via transpose register.

2.3.6 Analog modules

The following analog modules are available on this device:

Table 2-7. Analog modules

Module	Description
16-bit analog-to-digital converters (ADC)	16-bit successive-approximation ADC
12-bit High Speed analog-to-digital converter	12-bit SAR High Speed ADC
Analog comparators	Compares two analog input voltages across the full range of the supply voltage.
12-bit digital-to-analog converters (DAC)	Low-power general-purpose DAC, whose output can be placed on an external pin or set as one of the inputs to the analog comparator or ADC.

2.3.7 Timer modules

The following timer modules are available on this device:

Table 2-8. Timer modules

Module	Description
Enhanced Flex Pulse Width Modulator (eFlexPWM)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> eFlexPWM module contains four identical submodules, with up to three outputs per submodule 16 bits of resolution for center, edge aligned, and asymmetrical PWM PWM0 with NanoEdge high resolution <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Fractional delay for enhanced resolution of the PWM period and edge placement Arbitrary PWM edge placement NanoEdge implementation: 260 ps PWM frequency and duty-cycle resolution PWM outputs can operate as complementary pairs or independent channels Interrupt generated on Timer Compare Independent control of both edges of each PWM output Enhanced input capture and output compare functionality on each input <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Channels not used for PWM generation can be used for buffered output compare functions

Table continues on the next page...

Table 2-8. Timer modules (continued)

Module	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Channels not used for PWM generation can be used for input capture functions Enhanced dual edge capture functionality Up to four fault inputs can be assigned to control multiple PWM outputs All outputs can be programmed to change simultaneously via a FORCE_OUT event Option to supply the source for each complementary PWM signal pair from any of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Crossbar module outputs External ADC input, taking into account values set in ADC high and low limit registers
Flexible timer modules (FTM)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Selectable FTM source clock, programmable prescaler 16-bit counter supporting free-running or initial/final value, and counting is up or up-down Input capture, output compare, and edge-aligned and center-aligned PWM modes Operation of FTM channels as pairs with equal outputs, pairs with complimentary outputs, or independent channels with independent outputs Deadtime insertion is available for each complementary pair Generation of hardware triggers Software control of PWM outputs Up to 4 fault inputs for global fault control Configurable channel polarity Programmable interrupt on input capture, reference compare, overflowed counter, or detected fault condition Quadrature decoder with input filters, relative position counting, and interrupt on position count or capture of position count on external event DMA support for FTM events
Programmable delay block (PDB)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 16-bit resolution 3-bit prescaler Positive transition of trigger event signal initiates the counter Supports two triggered delay output signals, each with an independently-controlled delay from the trigger event Outputs can be OR'd together to schedule two conversions from one input trigger event and can schedule precise edge placement for a pulsed output. This feature is used to generate the control signal for the CMP windowing feature and output to a package pin if needed for applications, such as critical conductive mode power factor correction. Continuous-pulse output or single-shot mode supported, each output is independently enabled, with possible trigger events Supports bypass mode Supports DMA
Periodic interrupt timers (PIT)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Four general purpose interrupt timers Interrupt timers for triggering ADC conversions 32-bit counter resolution DMA support
Low-power timer (LPTimer)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Selectable clock for prescaler/glitch filter of 1 kHz (internal LPO), 32.768 kHz (external crystal), or internal reference clock Configurable Glitch Filter or Prescaler with 16-bit counter 16-bit time or pulse counter with compare Interrupt generated on Timer Compare Hardware trigger generated on Timer Compare
Quadrature Encoder/Decoder (ENC)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Includes logic to decode quadrature signals

Table continues on the next page...

Table 2-8. Timer modules (continued)

Module	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Configurable digital filter for inputs to remove glitches and ensure only true transitions are recorded 32-bit position counter register 16-bit position difference register Maximum count frequency equals the IPBus clock rate Position counter can be initialized by software or external events Position counter and resolution counter can be captured by external trigger signal (new feature) Preloadable 16-bit revolution counter Inputs can be connected to a general purpose timer, aiding low speed velocity measurements Watchdog timer to detect a non-rotating shaft condition Optional use as a single phase pulse accumulator
IEEE 1588 timers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The 10/100 Ethernet module contains timers to provide IEEE 1588 time stamping

2.3.8 Communication interfaces

The following communication interfaces are available on this device:

Table 2-9. Communication modules

Module	Description
Ethernet MAC with IEEE 1588 capability (ENET)	10/100 MB/s Ethernet MAC (MII and RMII) with hardware support for IEEE 1588
Controller Area Network (CAN)	Supports the full implementation of the CAN Specification Version 2.0, Part B
Serial peripheral interface (SPI)	Synchronous serial bus for communication to an external device
Inter-Integrated Circuit (I ² C)	Allows communication between a number of devices. Also supports the System Management Bus (SMBus) Specification, version 2.
Universal asynchronous receiver/transmitter (UART)	Asynchronous serial bus communication interface with programmable 8- or 9-bit data format and support of ISO 7816 smart card interface

2.3.9 Human-machine interfaces

The following human-machine interfaces (HMI) are available on this device:

Table 2-10. HMI modules

Module	Description
General purpose input/output (GPIO)	<p>All general purpose input or output (GPIO) pins are capable of interrupt and DMA request generation.</p> <p>Configurable slew rate on all output pins.</p> <p>High drive configurable option on 8 pins</p>

Table 2-10. HMI modules

Module	Description
	(PTB0, PTB1, PTD4, PTD5, PTD6, PTD7, PTC3, and PTC4).

2.4 Orderable part numbers

The following table summarizes the part numbers of the devices covered by this document.

Table 2-11. Orderable part numbers summary

Freescall part number	CPU frequency (MHz)	Ambient operating temperature (°C)	Package	Flash/SRAM	Ethernet	CAN	GPIO
MKV58F1M0CMD22 ¹	220	85	144 MAPBGA	1 MB/256 KB	Yes	3	111
MKV58F1M0CLQ22	220	85	144 LQFP	1 MB/256 KB	Yes	3	111
MKV58F1M0CLL22	220	85	100 LQFP	1 MB/256 KB	Yes	3	74
MKV56F1M0CMD22 ¹	220	85	144 MAPBGA	1 MB/256 KB	No	2	111
MKV56F1M0CLQ22	220	85	144 LQFP	1 MB/256 KB	No	2	111
MKV56F1M0CLL22	220	85	100 LQFP	1 MB/256 KB	No	2	74
MKV58F512CMD22 ¹	220	85	144 MAPBGA	512 KB/128 KB	Yes	3	111
MKV58F512CLQ22	220	85	144 LQFP	512 KB/128 KB	Yes	3	111
MKV58F512CLL22	220	85	100 LQFP	512 KB/128 KB	Yes	3	74
MKV56F512CMD22 ¹	220	85	144 MAPBGA	512 KB/128 KB	No	2	111
MKV56F512CLQ22	220	85	144 LQFP	512 KB/128 KB	No	2	111
MKV56F512CLL22	220	85	100 LQFP	512 KB/128 KB	No	2	74
MKV58F1M0VLQ20	200	105	144 LQFP	1 MB/256 KB	Yes	3	111
MKV58F1M0VLL20	200	105	100 LQFP	1 MB/256 KB	Yes	3	74
MKV56F1M0VLQ20	200	105	144 LQFP	1 MB/256 KB	No	2	111

Table continues on the next page...

Table 2-11. Orderable part numbers summary (continued)

Freescal e part number	CPU frequency (MHz)	Ambient operating temperature (°C)	Package	Flash/ SRAM	Ethernet	CAN	GPIO
MKV56F1M0VLL20	200	105	100 LQFP	1 MB/256 KB	No	2	74
MKV58F512VLQ20	200	105	144 LQFP	512 KB/128 KB	Yes	3	111
MKV58F512VLL20	200	105	100 LQFP	512 KB/128 KB	Yes	3	74
MKV56F512VLQ20	200	105	144 LQFP	512 KB/128 KB	No	2	111
MKV56F512VLL20	200	105	100 LQFP	512 KB/128 KB	No	2	74

1. The 144-pin MAPBGA package for this product is not yet available. However, it is included in a Package Your Way program for Kinetis MCUs. Visit freescal e.com/KPYW for more details.



Orderable part numbers

Chapter 3

Core Overview

3.1 Cortex CM7 Core Introduction

The Cortex-M7 processor is a highly efficient high-performance, embedded processor that features low interrupt latency, low-cost debug, and has backwards compatibility with existing Cortex-M profile processors. The processor has an in-order super-scalar pipeline and supports dual-issue of load/load and load/store instruction pairs to multiple memory interfaces.

Memory interfaces that the processor supports include:

1. Tightly Coupled Memory (TCM) interface.
2. Harvard instruction and data caches and AXI master (AXIM) interface.
3. Dedicated low-latency AHB-Lite peripheral (AHBP) interface.

The processor has a Memory Protection Unit (MPU) that you can configure to protect regions of memory.

The Cortex-M7 processor includes floating-point arithmetic functionality, with support for single-precision arithmetic.

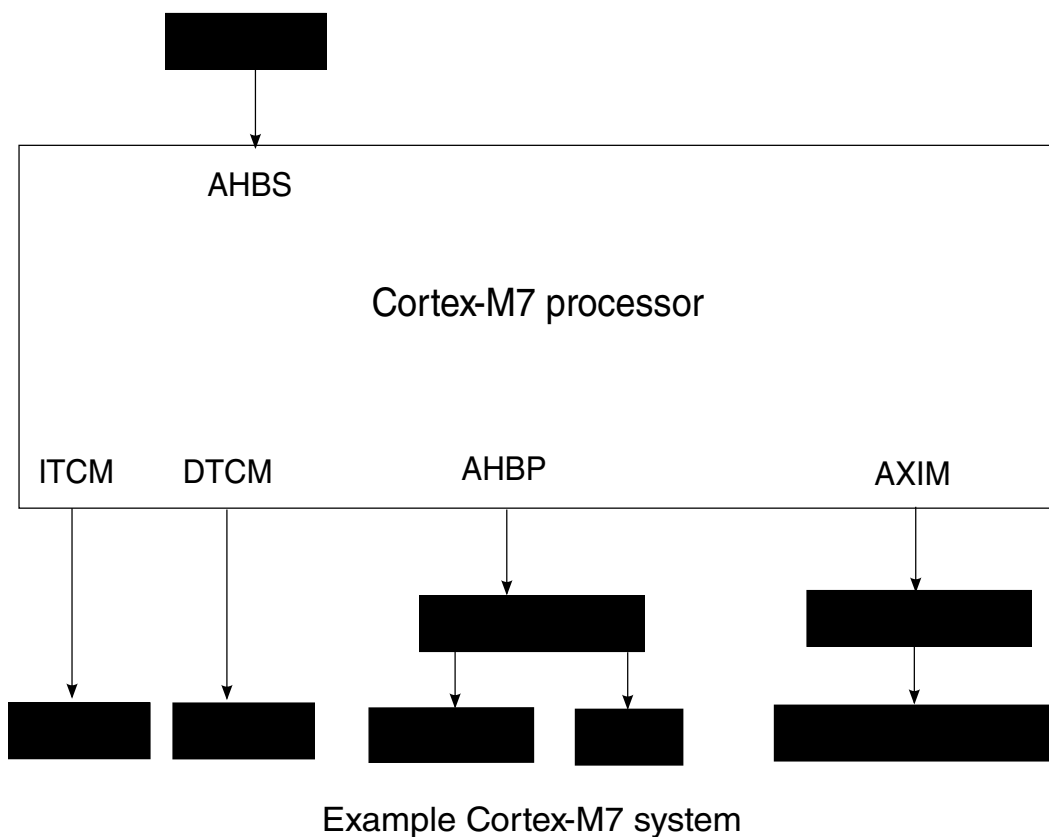
The CM7 core has several memory interfaces:

1. 64-bit ITCM (Instruction Tightly Coupled Memory) – connected to fast memory, RAM, to provide no wait state instruction execution.
2. 64-bit DTCM (Data Tightly Coupled Memory) – split into two interleaved 32-bit interfaces named D0TCM and D1TCM. RAM is expected to be connected to these interfaces and provide no wait state data fetches.
3. 64-bit AXI AMBA4 memory interface with I-cache and D-cache for efficient access to external resources.
4. 32-bit AHBP Peripheral port for interfacing to low latency on chip peripherals.
5. 32-bit AHBS Slave port for interfacing to slaves such as DMA.

The CM7 core also includes:

- Nested Interrupt Controller
- Asynchronous Wake-up Interrupt Controller (AWIC)
- Debug and Trace Unit (Coresight components)

The CM7 processor is intended for deeply embedded applications that require fast interrupt response features, and a typical system implementation is shown:



This chip has the following system modules:

- Single Precision Floating Point Unit, SPFPU
- Memory Protection Unit MPU, with capability to segment into 16 memory regions
- ITCM Controller connected to 64 KB of RAM
- DTCM Controller connected to 128 KB of RAM (D0TCM – 64KB, D1TCM – 64KB)
- 16 KB Instruction cache and 8 KB Data cache

This device has two crossbars:

1. Crossbar Switch AXBS with 4 Master Ports and 7 Slave Ports. This provides interfaces for the CM7 to access peripherals, off platform RAM, external memory access, DMA and other Masters
2. The PL301 crossbar provides the 64-bit AHB interface to the embedded flash.

3.1.1 Buses, interconnects, and interfaces

The ARM Cortex-M7 core has four buses as described in the following table.

Bus name	Description
AXI Master (AXIM) bus	This bus is connected to the PL301 and to a separate master on the crossbar.
AHB Slave (AHBS) bus	The AHBS (TCM) interface is connected to a separate crossbar slave for system access.
AHB Peripheral (AHBP) bus	The AHBP interface is connected to a separate master on the crossbar. It accesses AIPSO and AIPS1.
Private Peripheral bus (PPB)	The PPB provides access to these modules: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ARM modules such as the NVIC, ETCM, ITM, DWT, FBP, and ROM tables • Freescale Miscellaneous Control Module (MCM) • Memory-Mapped Cryptographic Acceleration Unit (MMCAU)

3.1.2 System Tick Timer

The System Tick Timer's clock source is always the core clock, FCLK. This results in the following:

- The CLKSOURCE bit in SysTick Control and Status register is always set to select the core clock.
- Because the timing reference (FCLK) is a variable frequency, the TENMS bit in the SysTick Calibration Value Register is always zero.
- The NOREF bit in SysTick Calibration Value Register is always set, implying that FCLK is the only available source of reference timing.

3.1.3 Debug facilities

This device has extensive debug capabilities including run control and tracing capabilities. The standard ARM debug port that supports JTAG and SWD interfaces. Also the cJTAG interface is supported on this device.

3.1.4 Core privilege levels

The ARM documentation uses different terms than this document to distinguish between privilege levels.

If you see this term...	it also means this term...
Privileged	Supervisor
Unprivileged	User

3.2 Nested Vector Interrupt Controller (NVIC) configuration

3.2.1 Interrupt priority levels

This device supports 16 priority levels for interrupts. Therefore, in the NVIC each source in the IPR registers contains 4 bits. For example, IPR0 is shown below:

	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	IRQ3				0	0	0	0	IRQ2				0	0	0	0	IRQ1				0	0	0	0	IRQ0				0	0	0	0
W																																

3.2.2 Non-maskable interrupt

The non-maskable interrupt request to the NVIC is controlled by the external $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ signal. The pin the $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ signal is multiplexed on, must be configured for the $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ function to generate the non-maskable interrupt request.

3.2.3 Interrupt Vector Assignments

Table 3-2. Interrupt vector assignments - KV5x

Address Offset	Vector	IRQ	Source Module	Source Description
ARM Core System Handler Vectors				
0x0000_0000	0	–	ARM Core	Initial Stack Pointer
0x0000_0004	1	–	ARM Core	Initial Program Counter
0x0000_0008	2	–	ARM Core	Non-Maskable Interrupt (NMI)
0x0000_000C	3	–	ARM Core	Hard Fault

Table continues on the next page...

Table 3-2. Interrupt vector assignments - KV5x (continued)

Address Offset	Vector	IRQ	Source Module	Source Description
0x0000_0010	4	–	ARM Core	MemManage Fault
0x0000_0014	5	–	ARM Core	Bus Fault
0x0000_0018	6	–	ARM Core	Usage Fault
0x0000_001C	7	–	–	–
0x0000_0020	8	–	–	–
0x0000_0024	9	–	–	–
0x0000_0028	10	–	–	–
0x0000_002C	11	–	ARM Core	Supervisor Call (SVCall)
0x0000_0030	12	–	ARM Core	Debug Monitor
0x0000_0034	13	–	–	–
0x0000_0038	14	–	ARM Core	Pendable request for system service (PenableSrvReq)
0x0000_003C	15	–	ARM Core	System Tick Timer (SysTick)
Non-Core Vectors				
On-Platform Vectors				
0x0000_0040	16	0	DMA Controller	DMA Channel 0 / 16 Transfer Complete
0x0000_0044	17	1	DMA Controller	DMA Channel 1 / 17 Transfer Complete
0x0000_0048	18	2	DMA Controller	DMA Channel 2 / 18 Transfer Complete
0x0000_004C	19	3	DMA Controller	DMA Channel 3 / 19 Transfer Complete
0x0000_0050	20	4	DMA Controller	Channel 4 / 20 Transfer Complete
0x0000_0054	21	5	DMA Controller	Channel 5 / 21 Transfer Complete
0x0000_0058	22	6	DMA Controller	Channel 6 / 22 Transfer Complete
0x0000_005C	23	7	DMA Controller	Channel 7 / 23 Transfer Complete
0x0000_0060	24	8	DMA Controller	Channel 8 / 24 Transfer Complete
0x0000_0064	25	9	DMA Controller	Channel 9 / 25 Transfer Complete
0x0000_0068	26	10	DMA Controller	Channel 10 / 26 Transfer Complete
0x0000_006C	27	11	DMA Controller	Channel 11 / 27 Transfer Complete
0x0000_0070	28	12	DMA Controller	Channel 12 / 28 Transfer Complete
0x0000_0074	29	13	DMA Controller	Channel 13 / 29 Transfer Complete
0x0000_0078	30	14	DMA Controller	Channel 14 / 30 Transfer Complete
0x0000_007C	31	15	DMA Controller	Channel 15 / 31 Transfer Complete
0x0000_0080	32	16	DMA Controller	Error Interrupt, Channels 0-15 / 16-31
0x0000_0084	33	17	MCM	All Interrupts
Off-Platform Vectors				
0x0000_0088	34	18	Flash	Command Complete
0x0000_008C	35	19	Flash	Read Collision
0x0000_0090	36	20	Power Management Controller (PMC)	Low-Voltage Detect / Low-Voltage Warning
0x0000_0094	37	21	Low Leakage Wake-Up (LLWU)	All Interrupt Sources

Table continues on the next page...

Table 3-2. Interrupt vector assignments - KV5x (continued)

Address Offset	Vector	IRQ	Source Module	Source Description
0x0000_0098	38	22	Watchdog (WDOG) and External Watchdog Monitor (EWM)	All Interrupt Sources
0x0000_009C	39	23	True Random Number Generator (TRNG)	All Interrupt Sources
0x0000_00A0	40	24	I2C0	All Interrupt Sources
0x0000_00A4	41	25	I2C1	All Interrupt Sources
0x0000_00A8	42	26	SPI0	All Interrupt Sources
0x0000_00AC	43	27	SPI1	All Interrupt Sources
0x0000_00B0	44	28	UART5	Status Sources
0x0000_00B4	45	29	UART5	Error Sources
0x0000_00B8	46	30	–	–
0x0000_00BC	47	31	UART0	Status Sources
0x0000_00C0	48	32	UART0	Error Sources
0x0000_00C4	49	33	UART1	Status Sources
0x0000_00C8	50	34	UART1	Error Sources
0x0000_00CC	51	35	UART2	Status Sources
0x0000_00D0	52	36	UART2	Error Sources
0x0000_00D4	53	37	ADC0	All Sources
0x0000_00D8	54	38	HSADC0 and HSADC1	Error (HSADC0 and HSADC1)
0x0000_00DC	55	39	HSADC0A	Scan Complete
0x0000_00E0	56	40	Comparator 0 (CMP0)	All Interrupt Sources
0x0000_00E4	57	41	Comparator 1 (CMP1)	All Interrupt Sources
0x0000_00E8	58	42	FlexTimer 0 (FTM0)	8 Channels
0x0000_00EC	59	43	FlexTimer 1 (FTM1)	2 Channels
0x0000_00F0	60	44	UART3	Status Sources
0x0000_00F4	61	45	UART3	Error Sources
0x0000_00F8	62	46	UART4	Status Sources
0x0000_00FC	63	47	UART4	Error Sources
0x0000_0100	64	48	Periodic Interrupt Timer (PIT)	Channel 0
0x0000_0104	65	49	Periodic Interrupt Timer (PIT)	Channel 1
0x0000_0108	66	50	Periodic Interrupt Timer (PIT)	Channel 2
0x0000_010C	67	51	Periodic Interrupt Timer (PIT)	Channel 3
0x0000_0110	68	52	Programmable Delay Block 0 (PDB0)	All Interrupt Sources
0x0000_0114	69	53	FlexTimer2 (FTM2)	2 Channels
0x0000_0118	70	54	Crossbar A (XBARA)	All Interrupt Sources
0x0000_011C	71	55	Programmable Delay Block 1 (PDB1)	All Interrupt Sources
0x0000_0120	72	56	DAC0	All Interrupt Sources
0x0000_0124	73	57	Multipurpose Clock Generator (MCG)	All Interrupt Sources

Table continues on the next page...

Table 3-2. Interrupt vector assignments - KV5x (continued)

Address Offset	Vector	IRQ	Source Module	Source Description
0x0000_0128	74	58	Low Power Timer (LPTMR)	All Interrupt Sources
0x0000_012C	75	59	Port A	Pin Detect
0x0000_0130	76	60	Port B	Pin Detect
0x0000_0134	77	61	Port C	Pin Detect
0x0000_0138	78	62	Port D	Pin Detect
0x0000_013C	79	63	Port E	Pin Detect
0x0000_0140	80	64	Software	All Interrupt Sources
0x0000_0144	81	65	SPI2	All Sources
0x0000_0148	82	66	Encoder (ENC)	Compare
0x0000_014C	83	67	Encoder (ENC)	Home
0x0000_0150	84	68	Encoder (ENC)	Watchdog / Simultaneous A and B Change
0x0000_0154	85	69	Encoder (ENC)	Index / Roll Over / Roll Under
0x0000_0158	86	70	Comparator 2 (CMP2)	All Interrupt Sources
0x0000_015C	87	71	FlexTimer 3 (FTM3)	8 Channels
0x0000_0160	88	72	–	–
0x0000_0164	89	73	HSADC0B	Scan Complete
0x0000_0168	90	74	HSADC1A	Scan Complete
0x0000_016C	91	75	FlexCAN0	OR'ed Message Buffer (0-15)
0x0000_0170	92	76	FlexCAN0	Bus Off
0x0000_0174	93	77	FlexCAN0	Error
0x0000_0178	94	78	FlexCAN0	Transmit Warning
0x0000_017C	95	79	FlexCAN0	Receive Warning
0x0000_0180	96	80	FlexCAN0	Wake-Up
0x0000_0184	97	81	PWM0	Submodule 0 Compare
0x0000_0188	98	82	PWM0	Submodule 0 Reload
0x0000_018C	99	83	PWM0	Submodule 1 Compare
0x0000_0190	100	84	PWM0	Submodule 1 Reload
0x0000_0194	101	85	PWM0	Submodule 2 Compare
0x0000_0198	102	86	PWM0	Submodule 2 Reload
0x0000_019C	103	87	PWM0	Submodule 3 Compare
0x0000_01A0	104	88	PWM0	Submodule 3 Reload
0x0000_01A4	105	89	PWM0	Input Captures
0x0000_01A8	106	90	PWM0	Reload Error
0x0000_01AC	107	91	PWM0	Fault
0x0000_01B0	108	92	Comparator 3 (CMP3)	All Interrupt Sources
0x0000_01B4	109	93	HSADC1B	Scan Complete
0x0000_01B8	110	94	FlexCAN1	OR'ed Message Buffer (0-15)
0x0000_01BC	111	95	FlexCAN1	Bus Off
0x0000_01C0	112	96	FlexCAN1	Error Sources

Table continues on the next page...

Table 3-2. Interrupt vector assignments - KV5x (continued)

Address Offset	Vector	IRQ	Source Module	Source Description
0x0000_01C4	113	97	FlexCAN1	Transmit Warning
0x0000_01C8	114	98	FlexCAN1	Receive Warning
0x0000_01CC	115	99	FlexCAN1	Wake-Up
0x0000_01D0	116	100	Ethernet MAC (ENET)	1588 Timer Sources
0x0000_01D4	117	101	Ethernet MAC (ENET)	Transmit Sources
0x0000_01D8	118	102	Ethernet MAC (ENET)	Receive Sources
0x0000_01DC	119	103	Ethernet MAC (ENET)	Error and Miscellaneous Sources
0x0000_01E0	120	104	PWM1	Submodule 0 Compare
0x0000_01E4	121	105	PWM1	Submodule 0 Reload
0x0000_01E8	122	106	PWM1	Submodule 1 Compare
0x0000_01EC	123	107	PWM1	Submodule 1 Reload
0x0000_01F0	124	108	PWM1	Submodule 2 Compare
0x0000_01F4	125	109	PWM1	Submodule 2 Reload
0x0000_01F8	126	110	PWM1	Submodule 3 Compare
0x0000_01FC	127	111	PWM1	Submodule 3 Reload
0x0000_0200	128	112	PWM1	Input Captures
0x0000_0204	129	113	PWM1	Reload Error
0x0000_0208	130	114	PWM1	Fault
0x0000_020C	131	115	FlexCAN2	OR'ed Message Buffer (0-15)
0x0000_0210	132	116	FlexCAN2	Bus Off
0x0000_0214	133	117	FlexCAN2	Error Sources
0x0000_0218	134	118	FlexCAN2	Transmit Warning
0x0000_021C	135	119	FlexCAN2	Receive Warning
0x0000_0220	136	120	FlexCAN2	Wake-Up

3.3 Asynchronous Wake-up Interrupt Controller (AWIC) configuration

The primary function of the AWIC block is to detect asynchronous wake-up events in stop modes and signal to clock control logic to resume system clocking. After clock restart, the NVIC observes the pending interrupt and performs the normal interrupt or event processing.

3.3.1 Wake-up sources

The device uses the following internal and external inputs to the AWIC module.

Table 3-3. AWIC Stop and VLPS Wake-up Sources

Wake-up source	Description
Available system resets	RESET pin and WDOG when LPO is its clock source, and JTAG
Low-voltage detect	Mode Controller
Low-voltage warning	Mode Controller
High-voltage detect	Power Mode Controller
Pin interrupts	Port Control Module - Any enabled pin interrupt is capable of waking the system
ADC0 (16-bit SAR)	The ADC0 can be functional in STOP VLPS mode
CMPx	Since no system clocks are available, functionality is limited
I ² C	Address match wakeup
UART	Active edge on RXD
LPTMR	Functional in Stop/VLPS modes
FlexCAN	Functional in Stop mode
Ethernet	Magic Packet Wake-up
NMI	Non-maskable interrupt

3.4 Floating Point Unit (FPU) configuration

This device includes ARM's Single Precision Floating Point Unit (FPv5-SP FPU).

The FPv5-SP FPU supports:

- FP extension registers that the software can view as either 32 single-precision or 16 double-precision registers
- Single-precision floating-point arithmetic
- Conversions between integer, single-precision floating-point, and half-precision floating-point formats
- Data transfers of single-precision and double-precision registers
- Identical load/store instruction support to FPv4 extensions that already includes support

for 64-bit data types

NOTE

FPv5-SP is a single-precision only variant of ARMS's FPv5-D16 module.



Chapter 4

Memories and Memory Interfaces

4.1 Flash memory types

This chip contains a non-volatile program flash memory that can execute program code.

4.2 Flash Memory Sizes

The amounts of flash memory for the devices covered in this document are:

Table 4-1. KV5x flash memory size

Device	Flash (Bytes)	Block 0 (flash) address range
MKV58F1M0VMD22 ¹	1M	1000_0000 - 100F_FFFF
MKV58F1M0VLQ22		
MKV58F1M0VLL22		
MKV56F1M0VMD22 ¹		
MKV56F1M0VLQ22		
MKV56F1M0VLL22		
MKV58F512VMD22 ¹	512K	1000_0000 - 1007_FFFF
MKV58F512VLQ22		
MKV58F512VLL22		
MKV56F512VMD22 ¹		
MKV56F512VLQ22		
MKV56F512VLL22		

1. The 144-pin MAPBGA package for this product is not yet available. However, it is included in a Package Your Way program for Kinetis MCUs. Visit freescale.com/KPYW for more details.

4.3 Flash Security

How flash security is implemented on this device is described in [Chip Security](#).

4.4 Flash Modes

The flash memory is always configured in NVM normal. There are no operating conditions in which the flash is configured for NVM special mode.

4.5 Erase All Flash Contents

An Erase All Flash Blocks operation can be launched by software through a series of peripheral bus writes to flash registers. In addition the entire flash memory may be erased external to the flash memory from the SWJ-DP debug port by setting DAP_CONTROL[0]. DAP_STATUS[0] is set to indicate the mass erase command has been accepted. DAP_STATUS[0] is cleared when the mass erase completes.

4.6 FTFE_FOPT Register

The flash memory's FTFE_FOPT register allows the user to customize the operation of the MCU at boot time. See [FOPT boot options](#) for details of its definition.

4.7 RAM Memory Sizes

Table 4-2. RAM memory sizes

Device	ITCM (Bytes)	ITCM address range	D0TCM/D1TCM	DTCM address range	OCRAM (bytes)	OCRAM address range
MKV58F1M0VM D20	64K	0000_0000 - 0000_FFFF	64K / 64K	2000_0000 - 2001_FFFF	64K	2F00_0000 - 2F00_FFFF
MKV58F1M0VL Q20						
MKV58F1M0VL L20						
MKV56F1M0VM D20						
MKV56F1M0VL Q20						
MKV56F1M0VL L20						
MKV58F512VM D20	64K	0000_0000 - 0000_FFFF	32K / 32K	2000_0000 - 2000_FFFF	0K	

Table continues on the next page...

Table 4-2. RAM memory sizes (continued)

Device	ITCM (Bytes)	ITCM address range	D0TCM/D1TCM	DTCM address range	OCRAM (bytes)	OCRAM address range
MKV58F512VL Q20						
MKV58F512VLL 20						
MKV56F512VM D20						
MKV56F512V \LQ20						
MKV56F512VLL 20						

4.8 Other SRAM arrays

On top of the ITCM, DTCM, and OCRM, there is also a RAM associated with the CM7 internal cache.

This device comes with 16 KB of Instruction cache RAM and 8 KB of Data cache RAM.

Other peripherals that require RAM for FIFOs/buffering are:

- eDMA: 2 sets of 512 bytes for DMA channel descriptors
- FlexCAN: 3 sets of 512 bytes for support of up to 16 mailboxes
- Ethernet: 4 KB of SRAM

4.9 SRAM accesses

The ITCM, DTCM, OCRM, I-cache RAM, and D-cache RAM are all accessible by the CM7 CPU. The ITCM RAM and DTCM RAM have backdoor access for other Masters such as the DMA, for example to bootload instructions into ITCM.

Another master that may require access to DTCM RAM is the Ethernet module.

4.10 SRAM retention in low power modes

The various SRAM arrays for KV5x will have the following characteristic in low power modes:

- All RAM contents are retained in WAIT, VLPW, STOP, and VLPS modes.

- LLS mode is not supported.
- In VLLS3 mode, I-cache and D-cache RAM are switched off so contents are lost. ITCM, DTCM, and OCRAM contents are retained.
- In VLLS2 mode, I-cache and D-cache, OCRAM, and partial DTCM RAM contents will be lost. ITCM contents are retained if SMC_STOPCTRL[RAM2PO] is set. DTCM RAM contents in the first half of the DTCM address range (0x2000_0000 - 0x2000_ffff) are retained.
- In VLLS1 and VLLS0 modes, I-cache, D-cache, OCRAM, ITCM, and DTCM are powered off. 32-byte register file contents are retained.

4.11 System Register file

This device includes a 32-byte register file that is powered in all power modes.

Also, it retains contents during low-voltage detect (LVD) events and is only reset during a power-on reset.

Chapter 5

Memory Map

5.1 Introduction

This chip contains both Flash and RAM memories and memory-mapped peripherals which are located in one contiguous memory space. The ARM M7 core supports both register access of the various peripherals and also bit-band accesses. Following are the memory sizes present.

- 1 MB Flash memory
- 256 KB RAM partitioned with 64 KB on ITCM, 64 KB on D0TCM, 64 KB on D1TCM, and 64 KB on OCRAM.

5.2 System Memory Map

The following table shows the high-level device memory map. This map provides the complete architectural address space definition for the various sections. Based on the physical sizes of the memories and peripherals, the actual address regions used may be smaller.

Table 5-1. System Memory Map

System 32-bit Byte Address Range	Destination Slave	Access
0x0000_0000–0x0000_FFFF	ITCM RAM - 64K bytes	M7 mainly, backdoor access for DMA and Enet.
0x0001_0000–0x0FFF_FFFF	Reserved	-
0x1000_0000–0x100F_FFFF	Code Flash 1M bytes (cache-able)	All Masters
0x1010_0000–0x17FF_FFFF	Reserved	-
0x1800_0000–0x1800_0FFF	EEERAM (4Kbytes)	Flash Controller access.
0x1800_1000–0x1FFF_FFFF	Reserved	
0x2000_0000–0x2001_FFFF	DTCM - D0TCM - 64K and D1TCM - 64K	M7 mainly, backdoor access for DMA and Enet.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 5-1. System Memory Map (continued)

System 32-bit Byte Address Range	Destination Slave	Access
0x2002_0000–0x2EFF_FFFF	Reserved	-
0x2F00_0000–0x2F00_FFFF	OC-RAM 64K (cache-able)	All Masters
0x2F01_0000–0x3FFF_FFFF	Reserved	-
0x4000_0000–0x4007_FFFF	AIPS0	All Masters
0x4008_0000–0x400F_EFFF	AIPS1	All Masters
0x400F_F000–0x400F_FFFF	General purpose input/output (GPIO)	All Masters
0x4010_0000–0x43FF_FFFF	Reserved	–
0x4400_0000–0x5FFF_FFFF	BME	All masters
0x6000_0000–0xAFFF_FFFF	Reserved	-
0xB000_0000–0xBFFF_FFFF	Flexbus (256Mbyte range)	All Masters
0xC000_0000–0xDFFF_FFFF	Reserved	
0xE000_0000–0xE00F_FFFF	Private Peripherals	M7 Only
0xE010_0000 - 0xFFFF_FFFF	Reserved	-

5.3 AIPS slot assignments

Slots 0-79 are 32-bit data width modules, slots 80-95 are 16-bit data width modules, and slots 96-126 are 8-bit data width modules.

Table 5-2. AIPS–0

System Base Address	Slot Number	Module
0x4000_0000	0	Peripheral Bridge 0 (AIPS–Lite 0)
0x4000_1000	1	MSCM
0x4000_2000	2	–
0x4000_3000	3	–
0x4000_4000	4	Crossbar Switch
0x4000_5000	5	–
0x4000_6000	6	–
0x4000_7000	7	–
0x4000_8000	8	DMA Controller
0x4000_9000	9	DMA Descriptors
0x4000_A000	10	–
0x4000_B000	11	–
0x4000_C000	12	FlexBus
0x4000_D000	13	System MPU
0x4000_E000	14	–

Table continues on the next page...

Table 5-2. AIPS–0 (continued)

System Base Address	Slot Number	Module
0x4000_F000	15	–
0x4001_0000	16	–
0x4001_1000	17	–
0x4001_2000	18	–
0x4001_3000	19	–
0x4001_4000	20	–
0x4001_5000	21	–
0x4001_6000	22	–
0x4001_7000	23	–
0x4001_8000	24	–
0x4001_9000	25	–
0x4001_A000	26	–
0x4001_B000	27	–
0x4001_C000	28	–
0x4001_D000	29	–
0x4001_E000	30	–
0x4001_F000	31	Flash Memory Controller (FMC)
0x4002_0000	32	Flash memory (FTFE)
0x4002_1000	33	DMA Channel Multiplexer
0x4002_2000	34	–
0x4002_3000	35	–
0x4002_4000	36	FlexCAN0
0x4002_5000	37	FlexCAN1
0x4002_6000	38	FlexTimer 3 (FTM3) – 8 Channel
0x4002_7000	39	–
0x4002_8000	40	–
0x4002_9000	41	–
0x4002_A000	42	–
0x4002_B000	43	–
0x4002_C000	44	SPI0
0x4002_D000	45	SPI1
0x4002_E000	46	–
0x4002_F000	47	–
0x4003_0000	48	–
0x4003_1000	49	Programmable Delay Block 1 (PDB1)
0x4003_2000	50	Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC)
0x4003_3000	51	PWM0
0x4003_4000	52	–
0x4003_5000	53	–

Table continues on the next page...

Table 5-2. AIPS–0 (continued)

System Base Address	Slot Number	Module
0x4003_6000	54	Programmable Delay Block 0 (PDB0)
0x4003_7000	55	Periodic Interrupt Timer (PIT)
0x4003_8000	56	FlexTimer 0 (FTM0) – 8 Channel
0x4003_9000	57	FlexTimer 1 (FTM1) – 2 Channel
0x4003_A000	58	FlexTimer 2 (FTM2) – 2 Channel
0x4003_B000	59	ADC0
0x4003_C000	60	–
0x4003_D000	61	–
0x4003_E000	62	–
0x4003_F000	63	DAC0
0x4004_0000	64	Low Power Timer (LPTMR)
0x4004_1000	65	System Register File
0x4004_2000	66	–
0x4004_3000	67	–
0x4004_4000	68	–
0x4004_5000	69	–
0x4004_6000	70	Analog Test Annex
0x4004_7000	71	System Integration Module (Low Power)
0x4004_8000	72	System Integration Module (SIM)
0x4004_9000	73	Port A Mux Control
0x4004_A000	74	Port B Mux Control
0x4004_B000	75	Port C Mux Control
0x4004_C000	76	Port D Mux Control
0x4004_D000	77	Port E Mux Control
0x4004_E000	78	–
0x4004_F000	79	–
0x4005_0000	80	–
0x4005_1000	81	–
0x4005_2000	82	Software Watchdog (WDOG0)
0x4005_3000	83	–
0x4005_4000	84	–
0x4005_5000	85	Encoder / Decoder (ENC)
0x4005_6000	86	–
0x4005_7000	87	–
0x4005_8000	88	–
0x4005_9000	89	Inter–Peripheral Crossbar Switch A (XBARA)
0x4005_A000	90	Inter–Peripheral Crossbar Switch B (XBARB)
0x4005_B000	91	AND / OR / Invert (AOI)
0x4005_C000	92	HSADC0 High Speed ADC

Table continues on the next page...

Table 5-2. AIPS–0 (continued)

System Base Address	Slot Number	Module
0x4005_D000	93	–
0x4005_E000	94	–
0x4005_F000	95	–
0x4006_0000	96	–
0x4006_1000	97	External Watchdog Monitor (EWM)
0x4006_2000	98	–
0x4006_3000	99	–
0x4006_4000	100	Multipurpose Clock Generator (MCG)
0x4006_5000	101	System Oscillator (OSC)
0x4006_6000	102	I2C0
0x4006_7000	103	I2C1
0x4006_8000	104	–
0x4006_9000	105	–
0x4006_A000	106	UART0
0x4006_B000	107	UART1
0x4006_C000	108	UART2
0x4006_D000	109	UART3
0x4006_E000	110	–
0x4006_F000	111	–
0x4007_0000	112	–
0x4007_1000	113	–
0x4007_2000	114	–
0x4007_3000	115	CMP0 / CMP1 / CMP2 / CMP3
0x4007_4000	116	–
0x4007_5000	117	–
0x4007_6000	118	–
0x4007_7000	119	–
0x4007_8000	120	–
0x4007_9000	121	–
0x4007_A000	122	–
0x4007_B000	123	–
0x4007_C000	124	Low–Leakage Wake–up Unit (LLWU)
0x4007_D000	125	Power Management Controller (PMC)
0x4007_E000	126	System Mode Controller (SMC)
0x4007_F000	127	Reset Control Module (RCM)

The following table shows the peripheral assignments for the AIPS1.

Slots 0-79 are 32-bit data width modules, slots 80-95 are 16-bit data width modules, and slots 96-126 are 8-bit data width modules.

Table 5-3. AIPS–1

System Base Address	Slot Number	Module
0x4008_0000	0	Peripheral Bridge 1 (AIPS–Lite 1)
0x4008_1000	1	–
0x4008_2000	2	–
0x4008_3000	3	–
0x4008_4000	4	--
0x4008_5000	5	–
0x4008_6000	6	–
0x4008_7000	7	–
0x4008_8000	8	–
0x4008_9000	9	–
0x4008_A000	10	–
0x4008_B000	11	–
0x4008_C000	12	–
0x4008_D000	13	–
0x4008_E000	14	–
0x4008_F000	15	–
0x4009_0000	16	–
0x4009_1000	17	–
0x4009_2000	18	–
0x4009_3000	19	–
0x4009_4000	20	–
0x4009_5000	21	–
0x4009_6000	22	–
0x4009_7000	23	–
0x4009_8000	24	–
0x4009_9000	25	–
0x4009_A000	26	–
0x4009_B000	27	–
0x4009_C000	28	–
0x4009_D000	29	–
0x4009_E000	30	–
0x4009_F000	31	–
0x400A_0000	32	True Random Number Generator (TRNG)
0x400A_1000	33	–
0x400A_2000	34	–
0x400A_3000	35	–

Table continues on the next page...

Table 5-3. AIPS–1 (continued)

System Base Address	Slot Number	Module
0x400A_4000	36	FlexCAN2
0x400A_5000	37	–
0x400A_6000	38	–
0x400A_7000	39	–
0x400A_8000	40	–
0x400A_9000	41	–
0x400A_A000	42	–
0x400A_B000	43	–
0x400A_C000	44	SPI2
0x400A_D000	45	–
0x400A_E000	46	–
0x400A_F000	47	–
0x400B_0000	48	–
0x400B_1000	49	–
0x400B_2000	50	–
0x400B_3000	51	PWM1
0x400B_4000	52	–
0x400B_5000	53	–
0x400B_6000	54	–
0x400B_7000	55	–
0x400B_8000	56	–
0x400B_9000	57	–
0x400B_A000	58	–
0x400B_B000	59	–
0x400B_C000	60	–
0x400B_D000	61	–
0x400B_E000	62	–
0x400B_F000	63	–
0x400C_0000	64	Ethernet MAC (EMAC) and 1588
0x400C_1000	65	–
0x400C_2000	66	–
0x400C_3000	67	–
0x400C_4000	68	–
0x400C_5000	69	–
0x400C_6000	70	–
0x400C_7000	71	–
0x400C_8000	72	–
0x400C_9000	73	–
0x400C_A000	74	–

Table continues on the next page...

Table 5-3. AIPS–1 (continued)

System Base Address	Slot Number	Module
0x400C_B000	75	–
0x400C_C000	76	–
0x400C_D000	77	–
0x400C_E000	78	–
0x400C_F000	79	–
0x400D_0000	80	–
0x400D_1000	81	–
0x400D_2000	82	–
0x400D_3000	83	–
0x400D_4000	84	–
0x400D_5000	85	–
0x400D_6000	86	–
0x400D_7000	87	–
0x400D_8000	88	–
0x400D_9000	89	–
0x400D_A000	90	–
0x400D_B000	91	–
0x400D_C000	92	HSADC1 High Speed ADC
0x400D_D000	93	–
0x400D_E000	94	–
0x400D_F000	95	–
0x400E_0000	96	–
0x400E_1000	97	–
0x400E_2000	98	–
0x400E_3000	99	–
0x400E_4000	100	–
0x400E_5000	101	–
0x400E_6000	102	–
0x400E_7000	103	–
0x400E_8000	104	–
0x400E_9000	105	–
0x400E_A000	106	UART4
0x400E_B000	107	UART5
0x400E_C000	108	–
0x400E_D000	109	–
0x400E_E000	110	–
0x400E_F000	111	–
0x400F_0000	112	–
0x400F_1000	113	–

Table continues on the next page...

Table 5-3. AIPS–1 (continued)

System Base Address	Slot Number	Module
0x400F_2000	114	–
0x400F_3000	115	–
0x400F_4000	116	–
0x400F_5000	117	–
0x400F_6000	118	–
0x400F_7000	119	–
0x400F_8000	120	–
0x400F_9000	121	–
0x400F_A000	122	–
0x400F_B000	123	–
0x400F_C000	124	–
0x400F_D000	125	–
0x400F_E000	126	–
0x400F_F000	127	Not an AIPS-Lite slot. The 32-bit general purpose input/output module that shares the crossbar switch slave port with the AIPS-Lite is accessed at this address.



Chapter 6

Clock Distribution

6.1 Introduction

The KV5x family is a Kinetis MCU product line based on the ARM Cortex-M7 core and utilizes the MCG (Multipurpose Clock Generator) module that provides the clocks for the CPU, memories, and peripherals. The MCG accepts input clocks from the OSC module, providing an external feed from a ceramic resonator/crystal/external clock, and internal RC oscillators. The MCG has a PLL that provides a multiplying function on the input clock source to generate clock frequencies from 90 MHz to 220 MHz. The MCG also has an FLL that provides multiplying function to the input clock source to generate frequencies from 20 MHz to 100 MHz.

The primary clocks for the system are generated from the MCGOUTCLK clock. The clock generation circuitry of the SIM module provides several clock dividers. These clock divider configurations, namely:

1. System (CPU) clock,
2. Fast peripheral clock,
3. Flexbus clock, and
4. Flash/Bus clock

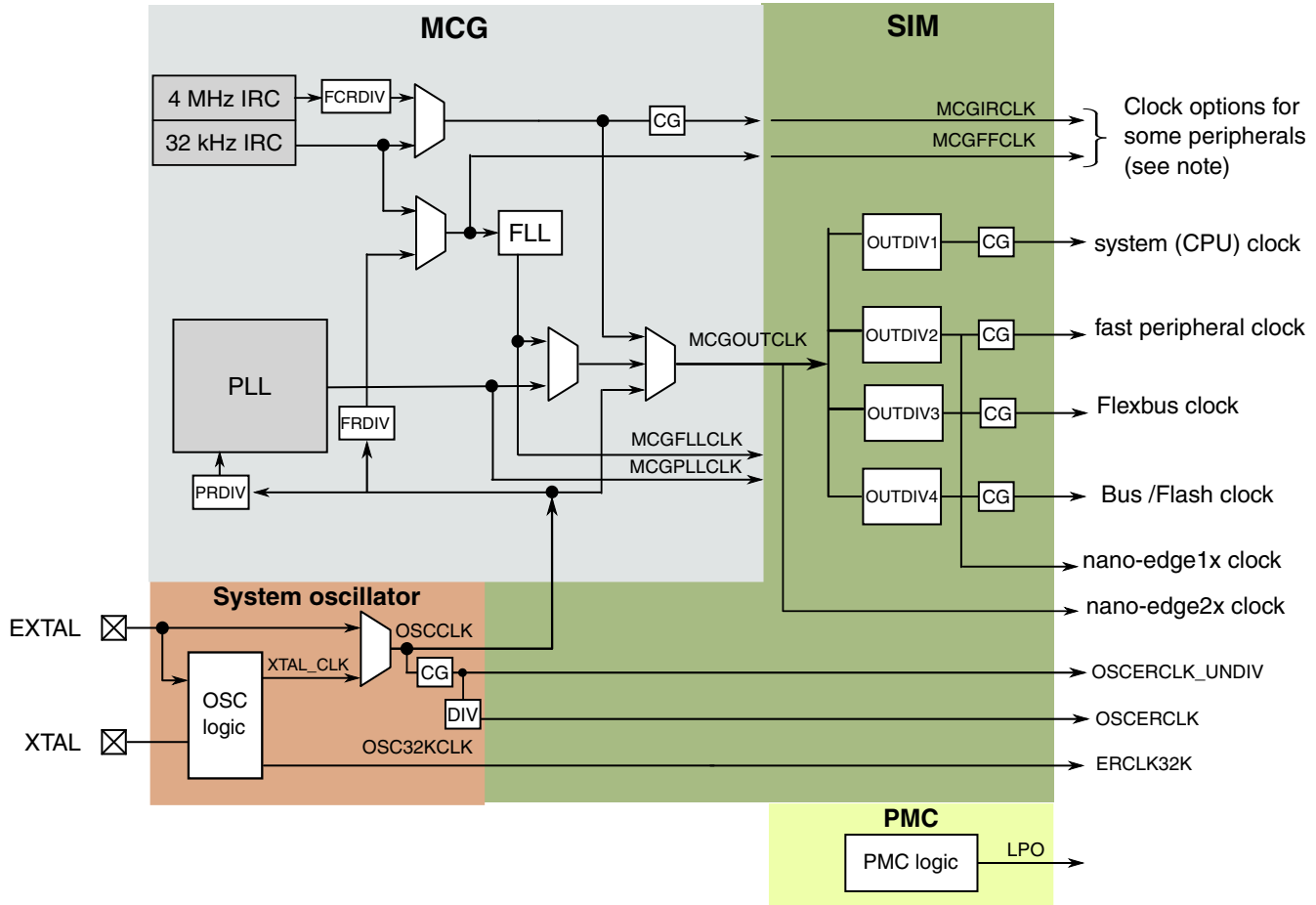
allow different portions of the device to be clocked at different frequencies. This allows for trade-offs between performance and power dissipation.

Various modules have alternate clock sources. Clock selection for these modules is controlled by the SOPT registers in the SIM module.

6.2 High-level device clocking diagram

The following [system oscillator](#), [MCG](#), and [SIM](#) module registers control the multiplexers, dividers, and clock gates shown in the below figure:

	OSC	MCG	SIM
Multiplexers	MCG_Cx	MCG_Cx	SIM_SOPT1, SIM_SOPT2
Dividers	—	MCG_Cx	SIM_CLKDIVx
Clock gates	OSC_CR	MCG_C1	SIM_SCGCx



CG — Clock gate
Note: See subsequent sections for details on where these clocks are used.

Figure 6-1. Clocking diagram

6.2.1 Clock definitions

The following table describes the clocks in the previous block diagram.

Clock name	Description
System (CPU) clock	MCGOUTCLK divided by OUTDIV1 clocks the ARM Cortex-M7 core, RAM, DMA, GPIO, FMC module, and crossbar switch bus masters.

Table continues on the next page...

Clock name	Description
Fast Peripheral clock	MCGOUTCLK divided by OUTDIV2 clocks the UARTs, SPI, eFlexPWM, FTMs, PDBs, ENC, FlexCAN, XBARA, and ADC modules.
Bus /Flash clock	MCGOUTCLK divided by OUTDIV4 clocks Flash, I2C, WDOG, EWM, PIT, LPTIMER , OSC, MCG, PMC , XBARB/AOI, CMP.
Flexbus clock	MCGOUTCLK divided by OUTDIV3 clocks the Flexbus module.
nanoedge clock	The nanoedge clock will be fed with Fast Peripheral Bus clock. In addition the nanoedge module will also be fed with the MCGPLLCLK which needs to be two times the frequency of the Fast Peripheral clock.
MCGIRCLK	MCG output of the slow or fast internal reference clock.
MCGFFCLK	MCG output of the slow internal reference clock or a divided MCG external reference clock.
MCGOUTCLK	MCG output of either IRC, MCGPLLCLK, or MCG's external reference clock that sources the core, Fast Peripheral, FlexBus and flash clocks. It is also an option for the debug trace clock.
MCGPLLCLK	MCG output of the PLL.
MCGFLLCLK	MCG output of the FLL.
OSCCLK	System oscillator output of the internal oscillator or sourced directly from EXTAL.
OSCERCLK	System oscillator output sourced from OSCCLK that may clock some on-chip modules. Divisible by 1, 2, 4, or 8.
OSCERCLK_UNDIV	System oscillator output sourced directly from OSCCLK.
LPO	PMC 1kHz output

6.3 Internal clocking requirements

The clock dividers are programmed via the SIM module's CLKDIV registers. Each divider is programmable from a divide-by-1 through divide-by-16 setting. The following requirements must be met when configuring the clocks for this device:

1. The System (CPU) clock frequency that drives the CPU platform must be in the range of 220 MHz or less in HSRUN mode. In normal RUN mode, it must be in the range of 160 MHz or less. In Very Low Power Run mode, the System (CPU) clock frequency must be less than 4 MHz.
2. The Fast Peripheral clock frequency must be an integer divide or multiple of the System (CPU) clock, that is, x2, x3, x4, or divide by 2/4/8. This allows key peripherals to be clocked at high speed, while System (CPU) clock is running slower to conserve power consumption. The Fast Peripheral clock should not exceed 110 MHz.

3. The FlexBus clock frequency must be an integer divide of the System (CPU) clock. The FlexBus also has pad interface restrictions that limits the maximum frequency. The System (CPU) clock to FlexBus clock ratio is limited to a max value of 8.
4. The Bus/Flash clock must not exceed 27.5 MHz, and be an integer divide of the System (CPU) clock and an integer divide of the Fast Peripheral clock.
5. The nanoedge module requires two clock inputs, where one clock input is 2x the other clock frequency. Thus the fast peripheral bus clock provides the nanoedge clock, and MCGPLLCLK provides the "2x Fast peripheral bus clock". Each of these clocks must be an integer divide or multiple of the System (CPU) clock. The nanoedge module is expected to be programmed to use clock inputs of 80/160 MHz, 100/200 MHz, and possible 110/220 MHz to support sub-nanosecond resolution control of the FlexPWM.

NOTE

To enable the nanoedge module for nanosecond resolution, the PLL must be enabled to provide high frequencies clock source, MCGPLLCLK. When the nanoedge module is enabled, the System (CPU) clock, the Fast Peripheral clock, and the Bus/Flash clock must be derived from the MCGPLLCLK.

The following are a few of the more common clock configurations for this device:

High Speed Run Mode	Frequency
System (CPU) clock	220 MHz max.
Fast Peripheral clock	110 MHz max.
Bus / Flash clock	27.5 MHz max
Flexbus clock	55 MHZ

High speed Run mode	Frequency
System (CPU) clock	180 MHz
Fast Peripheral clock	90 MHz
Bus / Flash clock	22.5 MHz
Flexbus clock	60 MHz

RUN mode	Frequency
System (CPU) clock	100 MHz
Fast Peripheral clock	100 MHZ
Bus / Flash clock	25 MHz
Flexbus clock	50 MHZ

RUN mode	Frequency
System (CPU) clock	50 MHz
Fast Peripheral clock	100 MHz
Bus / Flash clock	25 MHz
Flexbus clock	50 MHz

6.3.1 Clock divider values after reset

Each clock divider is programmed via the SIM module's CLKDIV n registers. The flash memory's FTFA_FOPT[LPBOOT] bit controls the reset value of the core clock, System (CPU) clock, bus clock, and flash clock dividers as shown below:

FTFA_FOPT [LPBOOT]	System (CPU) clock	Fast Peripheral clock	Bus / Flash clock	Description
0	0x7 (divide by 8)	0x7 (divide by 8)	0xF (divide by 16)	Low power boot
1	0x0 (divide by 1)	0x0 (divide by 1)	0x1 (divide by 2)	Fast clock boot

This gives the user flexibility for a lower frequency, low-power boot option. The flash erased state defaults to fast clocking mode, since where the low power boot (FTFA_FOPT[LPBOOT]) bit resides in flash is logic 1 in the flash erased state.

To enable the low power boot option program FTFA_FOPT[LPBOOT] to zero. During the reset sequence, if LPBOOT is cleared, the system is in a slow clock configuration. Upon any system reset, the clock dividers return to this configurable reset state.

6.3.2 VLPR mode clocking

The clock dividers cannot be changed while in VLPR mode. They must be programmed prior to entering VLPR mode to guarantee:

- the System (CPU) and Fast Peripheral clocks are less than or equal to 4 MHz, and
- the Bus/Flash clock is less than or equal to 500 kHz
- the nanoedge module is disabled

6.4 Clock Gating

The clock to each module can be individually gated on and off using the SIM module's SCGCx registers. These bits are cleared after any reset, which disables the clock to the corresponding module to conserve power. Prior to initializing a module, set the corresponding bit in SCGCx register to enable the clock. Before turning off the clock, make sure to disable the module.

Any bus access to a peripheral that has its clock disabled generates an error termination.

6.5 Module clocks

The following table summarizes the clocks associated with each module.

Table 6-1. Module clocks

Module	Bus interface clock	Internal clocks	I/O interface clocks
Core modules			
ARM Cortex-CM7core	System (CPU) clock	System (CPU) clock	—
NVIC	System (CPU) clock	—	—
DAP	System (CPU) clock	—	—
ITM	System (CPU) clock	—	—
JTAGC/SWD	—	—	JTAG_CLK
System modules			
DMA	System (CPU) clock	—	—
DMA Mux	Bus / Flash clock	—	—
Port control	Bus / Flash clock	LPO	—
AXBS Crossbar Switch	System (CPU) clock	—	—
PL301 crossbar switch	System (CPU) clock	—	—
Peripheral bridges	System (CPU) clock	Bus / Flash clock	—
XBARA	Fast peripheral clock	—	—
XBARB,AOI	Fast Peripheral clock	—	—
LLWU, PMC, SIM, RCM	Bus/ Flash clock	LPO	—
Mode controller	Bus / Flash clock	—	—
MCM	System (CPU) clock	—	—
MSCM	System (CPU) clock	—	—
EWM	Bus / Flash clock	LPO	—
Watchdog timer	Bus / Flash clock	LPO	—
Clocks			

Table continues on the next page...

Table 6-1. Module clocks (continued)

Module	Bus interface clock	Internal clocks	I/O interface clocks
MCG	Bus / Flash clock	MCGOUTCLK, MCGPLLCLK, MCGFLLCLK, MCGIRCLK, OSCERCLK, OSCERCLK_UNDIV	—
OSC	Bus / Flash clock	OSCERCLK, OSCERCLK_UNDIV	—
Memory and memory interfaces			
Flash Controller	System (CPU) clock	Bus/ Flash clock	—
Flash memory	Bus / Flash clock	—	—
Flexbus	System (CPU) clock		
		—	—
Security			
CRC	Fast Peripheral clock	—	—
MMCAU	System (CPU) clock		
TRNG	Flash/Bus clock		
Analog			
12-bit HSADC	System (CPU) clock	MCGIRCLK	—
16-bit SAR ADC	Fast Peripheral clock	ADC RC CLK	
CMP	Bus / Flash clock	—	—
DAC	Fast Peripheral clock	—	—
nanoedge	Fast Peripheral clock and MCGPLLCLK		
Timers			
PDB	Fast Peripheral clock	—	—
FlexTimers	Fast Peripheral clock	MCGFFCLK	FTM_CLKINx
PIT	Bus / Flash clock	—	—
LPTMR	Bus / Flash clock	LPO, OSCERCLK_UNDIV, MCGIRCLK, ERCLK32K	—
eFlexPWM	Fast Peripheral clock	MCGOUTCLK	—
ENC	Fast Peripheral clock		—
Communication interfaces			
FlexCAN	Fast Peripheral clock	OSCERCLK	—
DSPI	Fast Peripheral clock	—	DSPI_SCK
I ² C	Bus / Flash clock	—	I2C_SCL
UART	Fast Peripheral clock	—	—
Ethernet	System (CPU) clock, Bus/ Flash clock	OSCERCLK, IEEE 1588 clock	MII_RXCLK, MII_TXCLK
Human-machine interfaces			
GPIO	System (CPU) clock	—	—

6.5.1 Nano-edge clocking

The clocking options for the PWM0 module with nano-edge functionality are shown in the following figure.

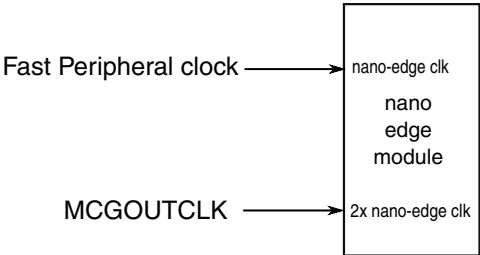


Figure 6-2. Nano-Edge module Clock inputs

6.5.2 WDOG clocking

The WDOG may be clocked from two clock sources as shown in the following figure.

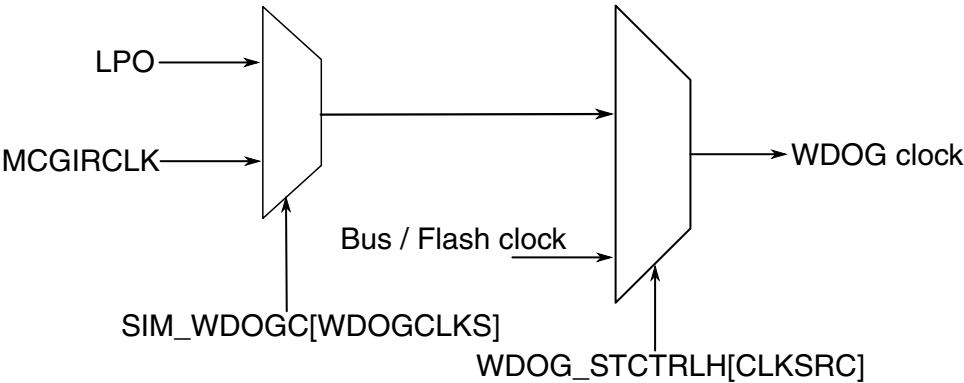


Figure 6-3. WDOG clock generation

6.5.3 Debug trace clock

The debug trace clock source can be clocked as shown in the following figure.

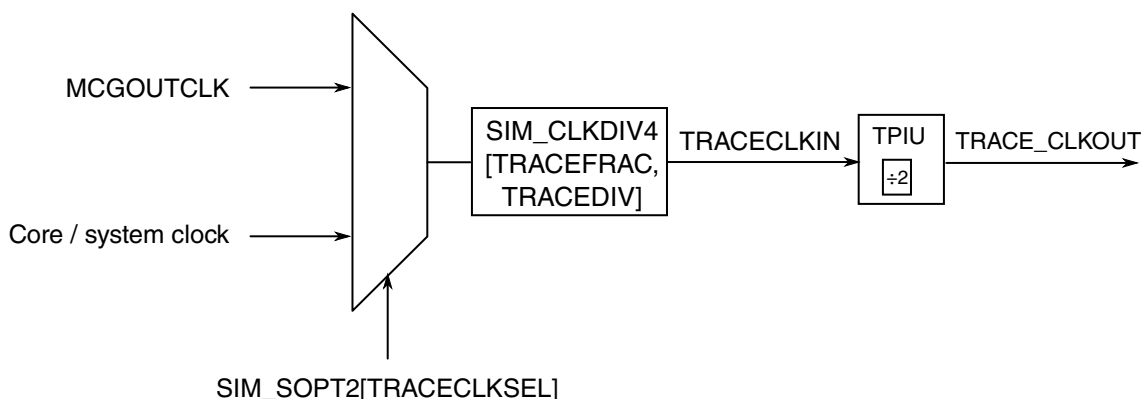


Figure 6-4. Trace clock generation

NOTE

The trace clock frequency observed at the TRACE_CLKOUT pin will be half that of the selected clock source.

6.5.4 PMC 1-kHz LPO clock

The Power Management Controller (PMC) generates a 1-kHz clock that is enabled in all modes of operation, including all low power modes, provided that SMC_STOPCTRL[LPOPO] is not set and the low power mode being entered is not VLLS0. This 1-kHz source is commonly referred to as LPO clock or 1-kHz LPO clock.

6.5.5 PORT digital filter clocking

The digital filters can be clocked as shown in the following figure.

NOTE

In stop mode, the digital input filters are bypassed unless they are configured to run from the 1 kHz LPO clock source.

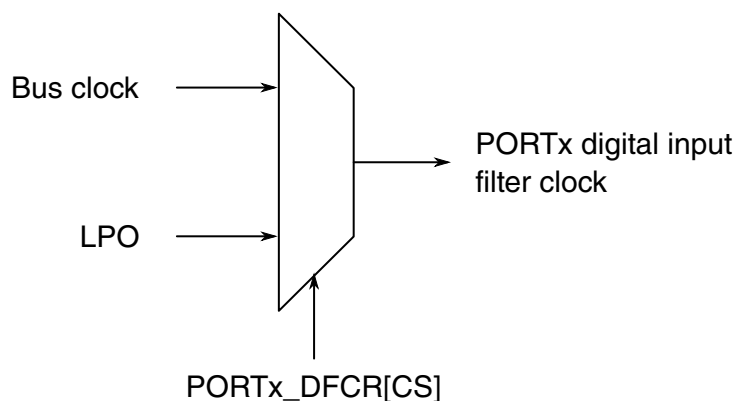


Figure 6-5. PORTx digital input filter clock generation

6.5.6 LPTMR clocking

The prescaler and glitch filters in each of the LPTMR_x modules can be clocked as shown in the following figure.

NOTE

The chosen clock must remain enabled if the LPTMR_x is to continue operating in all required low-power modes.

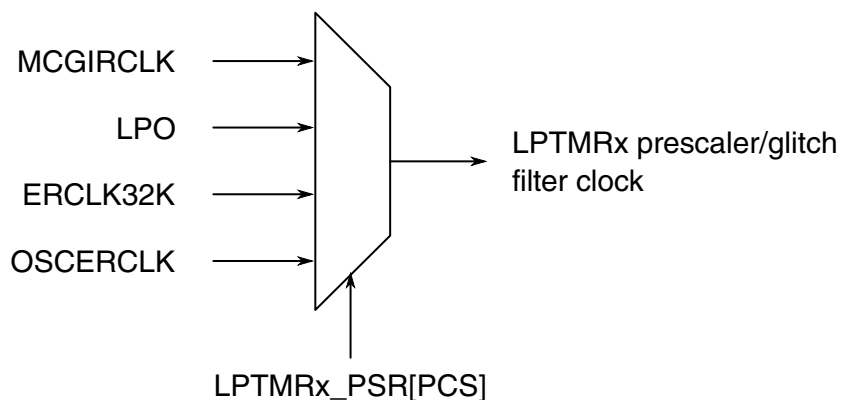


Figure 6-6. LPTMRx prescaler/glitch filter clock generation

6.5.7 FlexCAN clocking

The clock for the FlexCAN's protocol engine can be selected as shown in the following figure.

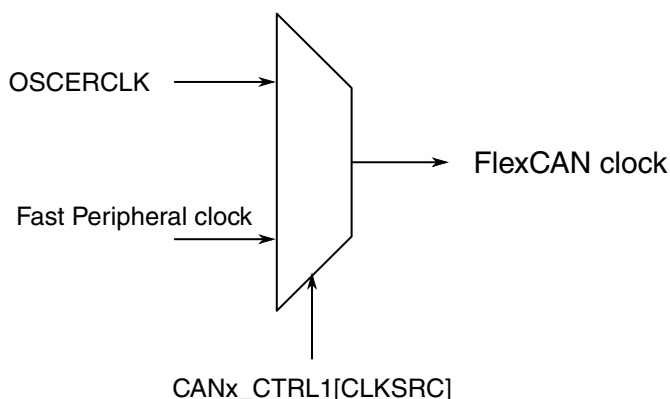


Figure 6-7. FlexCAN clock generation

6.5.8 UART clocking

UART0 to UART5 modules operate from the Fast Peripheral clock, which provides higher performance level for these modules.

6.5.9 Ethernet Clocking

- The RMII clock source can be OSCERCLK or ENET_1588_CLKIN selected via SIM_SOPT2[RMIISRC]
- The MII clocks, MII0_RXCLK and MII0_TXCLK, are supplied from pins and must be 25 MHz
- The IEEE 1588 timestamp clock can run up to 180 MHz, if generated from internal clock sources. Its period must be an integer number of nanoseconds (eg: 10ns = 100 MHz, 15ns = 66.67 MHz, 20ns = 50 MHz). Its clock source is chosen as shown in the following figure.

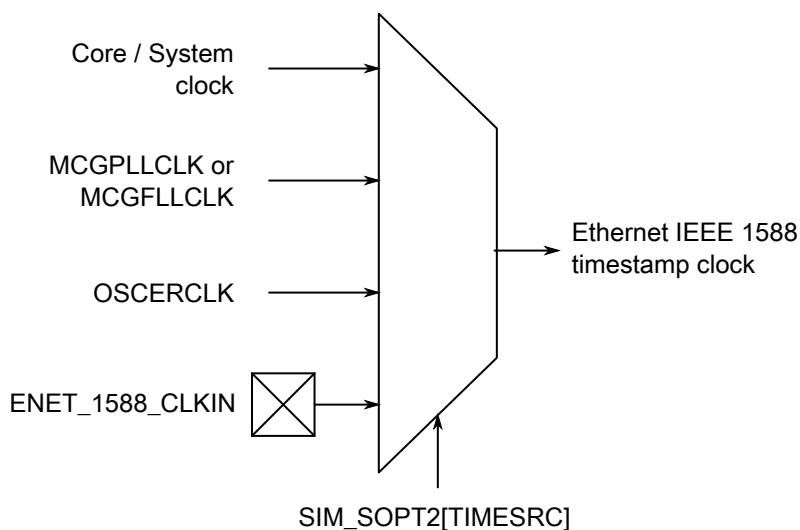


Figure 6-8. Ethernet IEEE1588 timestamp clock generation

6.5.10 Flexbus Clocking

The Flexbus requires the System (CPU) clock to be on to operate.

6.6 External clocks

The input clocks to the SoC are described in detail in the MCG chapter.

- FlexTimers
 - The FlexTimers have an external clock input, FTM_XCLK, which must be no faster than 1/4 of the Fast Peripheral clock
- ARM Trace
 - TRACE_CLK generated by simple div-by-2 within ARM core and driven out to pad
 - ARM Trace port outputs are synchronous to this clock

Chapter 7

Reset and Boot

7.1 Introduction

The following reset sources are supported in this MCU:

Table 7-1. Reset sources

Reset sources	Description
POR reset	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Power-on reset (POR)
System resets	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • External pin reset (PIN) • Low-voltage detect (LVD) • Computer operating properly (Gen2008) watchdog reset • Low leakage wakeup (LLWU) reset • Multipurpose clock generator loss of clock (LOC) reset • Multipurpose clock generator loss of Lock (LOL) reset • Software reset (SW) • Lockup reset (LOCKUP) • MDM DAP system reset
Debug reset	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • JTAG reset • nTRST reset

Each of the system reset sources has an associated bit in the system reset status (SRS) registers. See the [Reset Control Module](#) for register details.

The MCU can exit and reset in functional mode where the CPU is executing code (default) or the CPU is in a debug halted state. There are several boot options that can be configured. See [Boot information](#) for more details.

7.2 Cortex CM7 platform

The Cortex CM7 platform provides the capability to offset the base address of vectors. In this device, the default base address for the vectors is 0x1000_0000.

7.3 Reset

This section discusses basic reset mechanisms and sources. Some modules that cause resets can be configured to cause interrupts instead. Consult the individual peripheral chapters for more information.

7.3.1 Power-on reset (POR)

When power is initially applied to the MCU or when the supply voltage drops below the power-on reset re-arm voltage level (V_{POR}), the POR circuit causes a POR reset condition.

As the supply voltage rises, the LVD circuit holds the MCU in reset until the supply has risen above the LVD low threshold (V_{LVDL}). The POR and LVD bits in SRSL register are set following a POR.

7.3.2 System resets

Resetting the MCU provides a way to start processing from a known set of initial conditions. System reset begins with the on-chip regulator in full regulation and system clocking generation from an internal reference. When the processor exits reset, it performs the following:

- Reads the start SP (SP_main) from vector-table offset 0
- Reads the start PC from vector-table offset 4
- LR is set to 0xFFFF_FFFF

The on-chip peripheral modules are disabled and the non-analog I/O pins are initially configured as disabled. The pins with analog functions assigned to them default to their analog function after reset.

During and following a reset, the JTAG pins have their associated input pins configured as:

- TDI in pull-up (PU)
- TCK in pull-down (PD)
- TMS in PU

and associated output pin configured as:

- TDO with no pull-down or pull-up

Note that the nTRST (Debug Tap Reset) signal is initially configured as disabled, however once configured to its JTAG functionality its associated input pin is configured as:

- nTRST in pull-up (PU)

7.3.2.1 External pin reset (PIN)

On this device, $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ is a dedicated pin. This pin is open drain and has an internal pullup device. Asserting $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ wakes the device from any mode. During a pin reset, the SRSI[PIN] bit is set.

7.3.2.1.1 Reset pin filter

The $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin supports digital filtering in all modes of operation. For LLS and VLLSx modes, the LLWU provides an optional fixed digital filter running off the 1 kHz LPO clock. See the LLWU chapter for operation of this filter. During non-low leakage operation, there are two clock options for the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin filter – the 1kHz LPO clock and the bus clock.

This $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin filter implemented in SIM logic includes a separate filter for each clock source. In Stop and VLPS operation this logic either switches to bypass operation or has continued filtering operation depending on the filtering mode selected.

There are several modes defined – See the SOPT6 register description in module for more details. SOPT6[RSTFLTEN[2:0]] and SOPT6[RSTFLTSEL[4:0]] fields control the desired functionality. Both filters are reset on POR, LVD, and wakeup from VLLS. The reset value for each filter defaults to off (non-detect).

The LPO filter is simple with a fixed filter value count of 3. There is also a synchronizer on the input signal that results in an associated latency (2 cycles). As such, it takes 5 cycles to complete a transition from low-to-high or high-to-low. The LPO Filter initializes to off (logic 1) when the LPO filter is not enabled.

The Bus Filter initializes to off (logic 1) when the Bus Filter not enabled. When the Bus Filter is enabled, the number of counts is controlled by SOPT6[RSTFLTSEL[4:0]].

7.3.2.2 Low-voltage detect (LVD) reset

This device includes a system to protect against low voltage conditions to protect memory contents and control MCU system states during supply voltage variations. The system is comprised of a power-on reset (POR) circuit and a low-voltage detect (LVD)

circuit with a user-selectable trip voltage, either high (V_{LVDH}) or low (V_{LVDL}). The trip voltage is selected by the PMC_LVDSC1[LVDV] bits. The LVD system is always enabled in normal run, wait, and stop modes. The LVD system is disabled in VLPx, LLSx, and VLLSx modes. Refer to Power Management Controller (PMC) chapter for more details.

The LVD can be configured to generate a reset upon detection of a low voltage condition by setting PMC_LVDSC1[LVDRE]. After an LVD reset has occurred, the LVD system holds the MCU in reset until the supply voltage rises above the low voltage detection threshold.

RCM_SRS0[LVD] is set following an LVD reset or POR.

7.3.2.3 Computer operating properly (COP) watchdog reset

The computer operating properly (COP) watchdog timer (WDOG) monitors the operation of the system by expecting periodic communication from the software. This communication is generally known as servicing (or refreshing) the COP watchdog. If this periodic refreshing does not occur, the watchdog issues a system reset. The COP reset causes RCM_SRS0[WDOG] to set.

7.3.2.4 Low leakage wakeup (LLWU) reset

The LLWU allows up to 16 external pins, the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin, and up to seven internal peripherals to wake the MCU from LLS and VLLSx power modes. The LLWU module is only functional in LLS and VLLSx power modes. In both these modes, LLS mode exits via $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin and any VLLS mode exits via a wakeup or reset event, RCM_SRS0[WAKEUP] is set indicating the low leakage mode was active prior to the last system reset flow. Using the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin to trigger an exit from LLS or VLLS results in RCM_SRS0[PIN] being set as well. Refer to the mode controller chapter for more details.

After a system reset, the LLWU retains the flags to indicate the source of the last wakeup until the user clears them.

NOTE

Pin wakeup and error condition flags are cleared in the LLWU and module wakeup flags are required to be cleared in the peripheral module. Refer to the individual peripheral specifications for more information.

7.3.2.5 Multipurpose clock generator loss-of-clock (LOC) reset

The MCG includes a clock monitor. The clock monitor resets the device when the following conditions are met:

- The clock monitor is enabled (MCG_C6[CME] = 1)
- The MCG's external reference clock falls outside of the expected frequency range, depending on the MCG_C2[RANGE] bit
- MCG_C2[LOCRE0] = 1

RCM_SRS0[LOC] is set to indicate the error.

7.3.2.6 Software reset (SW)

The SYSRESETREQ bit in the NVIC application interrupt and reset control register can be set to force a software reset on the device. (See ARM's NVIC documentation for the full description of the register fields, especially the VECTKEY field requirements.) Setting SYSRESETREQ generates a software reset request. This reset forces a system reset of all major components except for the debug module. A software reset causes RCM_SRS1[SW] to set.

7.3.2.7 Lockup reset (LOCKUP)

The LOCKUP gives immediate indication of seriously errant kernel software. This is the result of the core being locked because of an unrecoverable exception following the activation of the processor's built in system state protection hardware.

The LOCKUP condition causes a system reset and also causes RCM_SRS1[LOCKUP] to set.

7.3.2.8 MDM-AP system reset request

Set the system reset request bit in the MDM-AP control register to initiate a system reset. This is the primary method for resets via the JTAG interface. The system reset is held until this bit is cleared.

Set the core hold reset bit in the MDM-AP control register to hold the core in reset as the rest of the chip comes out of system reset.

7.3.3 Debug resets

The following sections detail the debug resets available on the device.

7.3.3.1 JTAG reset

The JTAG module generate a system reset when certain IR codes are selected. This functional reset is asserted when EXTEST, HIGHZ and CLAMP instructions are active. The reset source from the JTAG module is released when any other IR code is selected. A JTAG reset causes the JTAG field in the Reset Module Controller's System Reset Status register (RCM_SRS1[JTAG]) to be set.

7.3.3.2 nTRST (Debug TAP Reset)

The nTRST pin causes a reset of the JTAG logic when asserted. Asserting the nTRST pin allows the debugger to gain control of the Test Access Port (TAP) controller state machine (after exiting LLS or VLLSx) without resetting the state of the debug modules.

The nTRST pin does not cause a system reset.

7.3.3.3 Resetting the Debug subsystem

Use the CDBGRSTREQ bit within the SWJ-DP CTRL/STAT register to reset the debug modules. However, as explained below, using the CDBGRSTREQ bit does not reset all debug-related registers.

CDBGRSTREQ resets the debug-related registers within the following modules:

- SWJ-DP
- AHB-AP
- TPIU
- MDM-AP (MDM control and status registers)
- MCM

CDBGRSTREQ does not reset the debug-related registers within the following modules:

- CM7 core (core debug registers: DHCSR, DCRSR, DCRDR, DEMCR)
- FPB
- DWT
- ITM

- NVIC
- Crossbar bus switch
- AHB-AP
- Private peripheral bus

NOTE

CDBGIRSTREQ does not affect AHB resources so that debug resources on the private peripheral bus are available during System Reset.

7.4 Boot

This section describes the boot sequence, including sources and options.

7.4.1 Boot sources

This device only supports booting from internal flash. Any secondary boot must go through an initialization sequence in flash.

7.4.2 FOPT boot options

The flash option register (FOPT) in the flash memory module allows the user to customize the operation of the MCU at boot time. The register contains read-only bits that are loaded from the NVM's option byte in the flash configuration field. The user can reprogram the option byte in flash to change the FOPT values that are used for subsequent resets. For more details on programming the option byte, refer to the flash memory chapter.

The MCU uses the FOPT register bits to configure the device at reset as shown in the following table.

Table 7-2. Flash Option Register Bit Definitions

Bit Num	Field	Value	Definition
7-6	Reserved		Reserved for future expansion.
5	FAST_INIT		Select initialization speed on POR, VLLSx, and any system reset.
		0	Slower initialization. The Flash initialization will be slower with the benefit of reduced average current during this time. The duration of the recovery will be controlled by the clock divider selection determined by the LPBOOT setting.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 7-2. Flash Option Register Bit Definitions (continued)

Bit Num	Field	Value	Definition
		1	Fast Initialization. The Flash has faster recoveries at the expense of higher current during these times.
4-3	Reserved	Reserved for future expansion.	
2	NMI_DIS	Enable/disable control for the NMI function.	
		0	NMI interrupts are always blocked. The associated pin continues to default to NMI pin controls with internal pullup enabled.
		1	NMI pin/interrupts reset default to enabled.
1	Reserved	Reserved for future expansion.	
0	LPBOOT	Control the reset value of OUTDIVx values in SIM_CLKDIV1 register. Larger divide value selections produce lower average power consumption during POR, VLLSx recoveries and reset sequencing and after reset exit.	
		0	Low-power boot: OUTDIVx values in SIM_CLKDIV1 register are auto-configured at reset exit for higher divide values that produce lower power consumption at reset exit. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Core and system clock divider (OUTDIV1) and fast peripheral clock divider (OUTDIV2) are 0x7 (divide by 8) Flash/Bus clock divider (OUTDIV4) are 0xF (divide by 16)
		1	Normal boot: OUTDIVx values in SIM_CLKDIV1 register are auto-configured at reset exit for higher frequency values that produce faster operating frequencies at reset exit. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Core and system clock divider (OUTDIV1) and fast peripheral clock divider (OUTDIV2) are 0x0 (divide by 1) Flash/Bus clock divider (OUTDIV4) are 0x1 (divide by 2)

7.4.3 Boot sequence

At power up, the on-chip regulator holds the system in a POR state until the input supply is above the POR threshold. The system continues to be held in this static state until the internally regulated supplies have reached a safe operating voltage as determined by the LVD. The Mode Controller reset logic then controls a sequence to exit reset.

1. A system reset is held on internal logic, the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin is driven out low, and the MCG is enabled in its default clocking mode.
2. Required clocks are enabled (Core Clock, System Clock, Flash Clock, and any Bus Clocks that do not have clock gate control).
3. The system reset on internal logic continues to be held, but the Flash Controller is released from reset and begins initialization operation while the Mode Control logic continues to drive the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin out low for a count of ~128 Bus Clock cycles.
4. The $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin is released, but the system reset of internal logic continues to be held until the Flash Controller finishes initialization. .

5. When Flash Initialization completes, the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin is observed. If $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ continues to be asserted (an indication of a slow rise time on the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin or external drive in low), the system continues to be held in reset. Once the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin is detected high, the system is released from reset.
6. At release of system reset, clocking is switched to a slow clock if the FOPT[LPBOOT] field in the Flash Memory module is configured for Low Power Boot
7. When the system exits reset, the processor sets up the stack, program counter (PC), and link register (LR). The cortex M7 CPU on reset access addresses 0x1000_0000 to 0x1000_01FF as the default vector table. The processor reads the start SP (SP_main) from vector-table offset 0. The core reads the start PC from vector-table offset 4. LR is set to 0xFFFF_FFFF. What happens next depends on the NMI input and the FOPT[NMI_DIS] field in the Flash Memory module:
 - If the NMI input is high or the NMI function is disabled in the NMI_DIS field, the CPU begins execution at the PC location.
 - If the NMI input is low and the NMI function is enabled in the NMI_DIS field, this results in an NMI interrupt. The processor executes an Exception Entry and reads the NMI interrupt handler address from vector-table offset 8. The CPU begins execution at the NMI interrupt handler.

Subsequent system resets follow this reset flow beginning with the step where system clocks are enabled.



Chapter 8 Power Management

8.1 Introduction

This chapter describes the various chip power modes and functionality of the individual modules in these modes.

8.2 Clocking Modes

This section describes the various clocking modes supported on this device.

8.2.1 Partial Stop

Partial Stop is a clocking option that can be taken instead of entering Stop mode and is configured in the SMC Stop Control Register (SMC_STOPCTRL). The Stop mode is only partially entered, which leaves some additional functionality alive at the expense of higher power consumption. Partial Stop can be entered from either Run mode or VLP Run mode.

When configured for PSTOP2, only the core and system clocks are gated and the bus clock remains active. The bus masters and bus slaves clocked by the system clock enter Stop mode, but the bus slaves clocked by the bus clock remain in Run (or VLP Run) mode. The clock generators in the MCG and the on-chip regulator in the PMC also remain in Run (or VLP Run) mode. Exit from PSTOP2 can be initiated by a reset, an asynchronous interrupt from a bus master or bus slave clocked by the system clock, or a synchronous interrupt from a bus slave clocked by the bus clock. If configured, a DMA request (using the asynchronous DMA wakeup) can also be used to exit Partial Stop for the duration of a DMA transfer before the device is transitioned back into PSTOP2.

When configured for PSTOP1, both the system clock and the bus clock are gated. All bus masters and bus slaves enter Stop mode, but the clock generators in the MCG and the on-chip regulator in the PMC remain in Run (or VLP Run) mode. Exit from PSTOP1 can be initiated by a reset or an asynchronous interrupt from a bus master or bus slave. If configured, an asynchronous DMA request can also be used to exit Partial Stop for the duration of a DMA transfer before the device is transitioned back into PSTOP1.

PSTOP1 is functionally similar to STOP mode, but offers faster wakeup at the expense of higher power consumption. Another benefit is that it keeps all of the MCG clocks enabled, which can be useful for some of the asynchronous peripherals that can remain functional in Stop modes.

8.2.2 DMA Wakeup

The DMA can be configured to wake up the device on a DMA request whenever it is placed in Stop mode. The wakeup is configured per DMA channel and is supported in Compute Operation, PSTOP, Stop, and VLPS low power modes.

When a DMA wakeup is detected in PSTOP, Stop or VLPS, then the device initiates a normal exit from the low power mode. This can include restoring the on-chip regulator and internal power switches, enabling the clock generators in the MCG, enabling the system and bus clocks (but not the core clock) and negating the Stop mode signal to the bus masters and bus slaves. The only difference is that the CPU remains in the low power mode with the CPU clock disabled.

During Compute Operation, a DMA wakeup initiates a normal exit from Compute Operation. This includes enabling the clocks and negating the Stop mode signal to the bus masters and bus slaves. The core clock always remains enabled during Compute Operation.

Because the DMA wakeup enables the clocks and negates the Stop mode signals to all bus masters and slaves, software needs to ensure that bus masters and slaves that are not involved with the DMA wakeup and transfer remain in a known state. That can be accomplished by disabling the modules before entry into the low power mode or by setting the Doze enable bit in selected modules.

After the DMA request that initiated the wakeup negates and the DMA completes the current transfer, the device transitions back into the original low power mode. This includes requesting all non-CPU bus masters to enter Stop mode and then requesting bus slaves to enter Stop mode. In Stop and VLPS modes, the MCG and PMC then also enter their appropriate modes.

NOTE

If the requested DMA transfer cannot cause the DMA request to negate, then the device remains in a higher power state until the low power mode is fully exited.

If the DMA request asserts during the Stop mode entry sequence (or reentry if the request asserts during a DMA wakeup), then an enabled DMA wakeup can cause an aborted entry into the low power mode, as well as cause the SMC to assert its Stop Abort flag.

An interrupt that occurs during a DMA wakeup causes an immediate exit from the low power mode (this is optional for Compute Operation) without impacting the DMA transfer.

A DMA wakeup can be generated by either a synchronous DMA request or an asynchronous DMA request. Not all peripherals can generate an asynchronous DMA request in Stop modes. In general, though, if a peripheral can generate synchronous DMA requests and also supports asynchronous interrupts in Stop modes, then it can generate an asynchronous DMA request.

8.2.3 Compute Operation

Compute Operation is an execution or compute-only mode of operation that keeps the CPU enabled with full access to the SRAM and Flash read port, but places all other bus masters and bus slaves into their stop mode. Compute Operation can be enabled in either Run mode or VLP Run mode.

NOTE

Do not enter any stop mode without first exiting Compute Operation.

Because Compute Operation reuses the stop mode logic (including the staged entry with bus masters disabled before bus slaves), any bus master or bus slave that can remain functional in stop mode also remains functional in Compute Operation, including generation of asynchronous interrupts and DMA requests. When enabling Compute Operation in Run mode, module functionality for bus masters and slaves is the equivalent of STOP mode. When enabling Compute Operation in VLP Run mode, module functionality for bus masters and slaves is the equivalent of VLPS mode. The MCG, PMC, SRAM and Flash read port are not affected by Compute Operation, although the Flash register interface is disabled.

During Compute Operation, the AIPS peripheral space is disabled and attempted accesses generate bus errors. The private peripheral space remains accessible during Compute Operation, including the MCM, NVIC, IOPORT and SysTick. Although access to the

GPIO registers via the IOPORT is supported, the GPIO port data input registers do not return valid data since clocks are disabled to the Port Control and Interrupt modules. By writing to the GPIO port data output registers, it is possible to control those GPIO ports that are configured as output pins.

Compute Operation is controlled by the CPO register in the MCM, which is only accessible to the CPU. Setting or clearing the CPOREQ bit in the MCM initiates entry or exit into Compute Operation. Only the core system interrupts (exceptions, including NMI and SysTick) and any edge sensitive interrupts can be serviced without exiting Compute Operation.

When entering Compute Operation, the CPOACK status bit indicates when entry has completed. When exiting Compute Operation in Run mode, the CPOACK status bit negates immediately. When exiting Compute Operation in VLP Run mode, the exit is delayed to allow the PMC to handle the change in power consumption. This delay means the CPOACK bit is polled to determine when the AIPS peripheral space can be accessed without generating a bus error.

The DMA wakeup is also supported during Compute Operation and causes the CPOACK status bit to clear and the AIPS peripheral space to be accessible for the duration of the DMA wakeup. At the completion of the DMA wakeup, the device transitions back into Compute Operation.

8.2.4 Peripheral Doze

Several peripherals support a peripheral Doze mode, where a register bit can be used to disable the peripheral for the duration of a low power mode. The Flash can also be placed in a low power state during Peripheral Doze via a register bit in the SIM.

Peripheral Doze is defined to include all of the modes of operation listed below.

- The CPU is in wait mode.
- The CPU is in stop mode, including the entry sequence and for the duration of a DMA wakeup.
- The CPU is in Compute Operation, including the entry sequence and for the duration of a DMA wakeup.

Peripheral Doze can therefore be used to disable selected bus masters or slaves for the duration of WAIT or VLPW mode. It can also be used to disable selected bus slaves immediately on entry into any stop mode (or Compute Operation), instead of waiting for the bus masters to acknowledge the entry as part of the stop entry sequence. Finally, it can be used to disable selected bus masters or slaves that should remain inactive during a DMA wakeup.

If the Flash is not being accessed during WAIT and PSTOP modes, then the Flash Doze mode can be used to reduce power consumption, at the expense of a slightly longer wakeup when executing code and vectors from Flash. It can also be used to reduce power consumption during Compute Operation when executing code and vectors from SRAM.

8.3 Power modes

The power management controller (PMC) provides multiple power options to allow the user to optimize power consumption for the level of functionality needed.

Depending on the stop requirements of the user application, a variety of stop modes are available that provide state retention, partial power down or full power down of certain logic and/or memory. I/O states are held in all modes of operation. The following table compares the various power modes available.

For each run mode there is a corresponding wait and stop mode. Wait modes are similar to ARM sleep modes. Stop modes (VLPS, STOP) are similar to ARM sleep deep mode. The very low power run (VLPR) operating mode can drastically reduce runtime power when the maximum bus frequency is not required to handle the application needs.

The three primary modes of operation are run, wait and stop. The WFI instruction invokes both wait and stop modes for the chip. The primary modes are augmented in a number of ways to provide lower power based on application needs.

Table 8-1. Chip power modes

Chip mode	Description	Core mode	Normal recovery method
Normal run	Default mode out of reset; on-chip voltage regulator is on.	Run	-
High Speed run	Allows maximum performance of the chip. In this state the chip is able to operate at a faster frequency compared to normal mode.	Run	-
Normal Wait - via WFI	Allows peripherals to function while the core is in sleep mode, reducing power. NVIC remains sensitive to interrupts; peripherals continue to be clocked.	Sleep	Interrupt
Normal Stop - via WFI	Places chip in static state. Lowest power mode that retains all registers while maintaining LVD protection. NVIC is disabled; AWIC is used to wake up from interrupt; peripheral clocks are stopped.	Sleep Deep	Interrupt
VLPR (Very Low Power Run)	On-chip voltage regulator is in a low power mode that supplies only enough power to run the chip at a reduced frequency. Reduced frequency Flash access mode (500 kHz); LVD off; internal oscillator provides a low power 4 MHz source for the core, the bus and the peripheral clocks.	Run	-

Table continues on the next page...

Table 8-1. Chip power modes (continued)

Chip mode	Description	Core mode	Normal recovery method
VLPW (Very Low Power Wait) -via WFI	Same as VLPR but with the core in sleep mode to further reduce power; NVIC remains sensitive to interrupts (FCLK = ON). On-chip voltage regulator is in a low power mode that supplies only enough power to run the chip at a reduced frequency.	Sleep	Interrupt
VLPS (Very Low Power Stop)-via WFI	Places chip in static state with LVD operation off. Lowest power mode with ADC and pin interrupts functional. Peripheral clocks are stopped, but LPTimer, CMP can be used. NVIC is disabled (FCLK = OFF); AWIC is used to wake up from interrupt. On-chip voltage regulator is in a low power mode that supplies only enough power to run the chip at a reduced frequency. All SRAM is operating (content retained and I/O states held).	Sleep Deep	Interrupt
VLLS3 (Very Low Leakage Stop3)	Most peripherals are disabled (with clocks stopped), but LLWU, LPTimer, CMP can be used. NVIC is disabled; LLWU is used to wake up. TCM RAM remain powered on (content retained and I/O states held).	Sleep Deep	Wakeup Reset ¹
VLLS2 (Very Low Leakage Stop2)	Most peripherals are disabled (with clocks stopped), but LLWU, LPTimer, CMP can be used. NVIC is disabled; LLWU is used to wake up. The higher half portion of the DTCM RAM is powered off and the lower half portion of the DTCM RAM is powered on. The ITCM RAM is optionally powered on depending on SMC_STOPCTRL[RAM2PO] setting.	Sleep Deep	Wakeup Reset ¹
VLLS1 (Very Low Leakage Stop1)	Most peripherals are disabled (with clocks stopped), but LLWU, LPTimer, CMP can be used. NVIC is disabled; LLWU is used to wake up. All of TCM RAM are powered off. The 32-byte system register file remain powered for customer-critical data.	Sleep Deep	Wakeup Reset ¹
VLLS0 (Very Low Leakage Stop0)	Most peripherals are disabled (with clocks stopped), but LLWU can be used. NVIC is disabled; LLWU is used to wake up	Sleep Deep	Wakeup Reset ¹

1. Follows the reset flow with the LLWU interrupt flag set for the NVIC.

8.4 Module Operation in Low Power Modes

The following table illustrates the functionality of each module while the chip is in each of the low power modes. (Debug modules are discussed separately; see [Debug in Low Power Modes](#).) Number ratings (such as 2 MHz and 1 Mbps) represent the maximum frequencies or maximum data rates per mode. Also, these terms are used:

- FF = Full functionality. In VLPR and VLPW the system frequency is limited, but if a module does not have a limitation in its functionality, it is still listed as FF.
- static = Module register states and associated memories are retained.
- powered = Memory is powered to retain contents.

- low power = Memory is powered to retain contents in a lower power state.
- OFF = Modules are powered off; module is in reset state upon wakeup.
- wakeup = Modules can serve as a wakeup source for the chip.

Table 8-2. Module operation in low power modes

Modules	Stop	VLPR	VLPW	VLPS	VLLSx
Core modules					
NVIC	static	FF	FF	static	OFF
System modules					
Mode Controller	FF	FF	FF	FF	FF
LLWU ¹	static	static	static	static	FF
Regulator	ON	low power	low power	low power	low power in VLLS2/3, OFF in VLLS0/1
LVD	ON	disabled	disabled	disabled	disabled
Brown-out Detection	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON in VLLS1/2/3, optionally disabled in VLLS0
DMA	static	FF	FF	static	OFF
Watchdog	FF	FF	FF	FF	OFF
EWM	static	FF	static	static	OFF
Clocks					
1kHz LPO	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON in VLLS1/2/3, OFF in VLLS0
System oscillator (OSC)	OSCERCLK optional	OSCERCLK max of 4MHz crystal	OSCERCLK max of 4MHz crystal	OSCERCLK max of 4MHz crystal	limited to low range/low power in VLLS1/2/3, OFF in VLLS0
MCG	static - MCGIRCLK optional; PLL optionally on but gated	4 MHz IRC	4 MHz IRC	static - MCGIRCLK optional (4 MHz IRC only)	OFF
Core clock	OFF	4 MHz max	OFF	OFF	OFF
System clock	OFF	4 MHz max	4 MHz max	OFF	OFF
Fast peripheral clock	OFF	4 MHz max	4 MHz max	OFF	OFF
Memory and memory interfaces					
Flash/Bus clock	powered	500 kHz max access - no program/erase	low power	low power	OFF
ITCM RAM	low power	low power	low power	low power	low power in VLLS3, optional in VLLS2, otherwise off
DTCM RAM	low power	low power	low power	low power	low power in VLLS3, partial in VLLS2, otherwise off

Table continues on the next page...

Table 8-2. Module operation in low power modes (continued)

Modules	Stop	VLPR	VLPW	VLPS	VLLSx
I-Cache	low power	low power	low power	low power	OFF
D-Cache	low power	low power	low power	low power	OFF
OCRAM	low power	low power	low power	low power	low power in VLLS3; otherwise OFF
Register files	powered	powered	powered	powered	powered
Flexbus	static	FF	FF	static	OFF
Communication interfaces					
UART	static, wakeup on edge	125 kbps	125 kbps	static, wakeup on edge	OFF
SPI	static	1 Mbps	1 Mbps	static	OFF
I ² C	static, address match wakeup	100 kbps	100 kbps	static, address match wakeup	OFF
FlexCAN	wakeup	256 kbps	256 kbps	wakeup	OFF
Ethernet	wakeup	static	static	static	OFF
Security					
CRC	static	FF	FF	static	OFF
SA-TRNG	static	FF	static	static	OFF
Timers					
FTM0	static	FF	FF	static	OFF
FTM1	static	FF	FF	static	OFF
FTM2	static	FF	FF	static	OFF
FTM3	static	FF	FF	static	OFF
PWM0/1	static	FF	FF	static	OFF
PIT	static	FF	FF	static	OFF
PDB0,1	static	FF	FF	static	OFF
XBARA,B,AOI	static	FF	FF	static	OFF
2.7V Vreg	static	static	static	OFF	OFF
LPTMR	FF	FF	FF	FF	FF
ENC	static	FF	FF	static	OFF
Analog					
12-bit HSADC	FF	static	static	OFF	OFF
16-bit SAR ADC	ADC internal clock	FF	FF	ADC internal clock only	OFF
CMPs 0,1,2,3 ²	HS or LS level compare	FF	FF	HS or LS level compare	LS compare in VLLS1/2/3, OFF in VLLS0
6-bit DAC	static	FF	FF	static	static, OFF in VLLS0
nano-edge	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
12-bit DAC	static	FF	FF	static	static
Human-machine interfaces					

Table continues on the next page...

Table 8-2. Module operation in low power modes (continued)

Modules	Stop	VLPR	VLPW	VLPS	VLLSx
GPIO	wakeup	FF	FF	wakeup	OFF, pins latched

1. Using the LLWU module, the external pins available for this chip do not require the associated peripheral function to be enabled. It only requires the function controlling the pin (GPIO or peripheral) to be configured as an input to allow a transition to occur to the LLWU.
2. CMP in stop or VLPS supports high speed or low speed external pin to pin or external pin to DAC compares. CMP in VLLSx only supports low speed external pin to pin or external pin to DAC compares. Windowed, sampled & filtered modes of operation are not available while in stop, VLPS, or VLLSx modes.

8.5 Power modes shutdown sequencing

When entering stop or other low-power modes, the clocks are shut off in an orderly sequence to safely place the chip in the targeted low-power state. All low-power entry sequences are initiated by the core executing an WFI instruction. The ARM core's outputs, SLEEPDEEP and SLEEPING, trigger entry to the various low-power modes:

- System level wait and VLPW modes equate to: SLEEPING & $\overline{\text{SLEEPDEEP}}$
- All other low power modes equate to: SLEEPING & SLEEPDEEP

When entering the non-wait modes, the chip performs the following sequence:

- Shuts off Core Clock and System Clock to the ARM Cortex-M7 core immediately.
- Polls stop acknowledge indications from the non-core crossbar masters (DMA , Ethernet), supporting peripherals (SPI, PIT, RNG) and the Flash Controller for indications that System (CPU) Clock and/or Bus/Flash Clock need to be left enabled to complete a previously initiated operation, effectively stalling entry to the targeted low power mode. When all acknowledges are detected, System Clock, Bus Clock and Flash Clock are turned off at the same time.
- MCG and Mode Controller shut off clock sources and/or the internal supplies driven from the on-chip regulator as defined for the targeted low power mode.

In wait modes, most of the system clocks are not affected by the low power mode entry. The Core Clock to the ARM Cortex-M7 core is shut off. Some modules support stop-in-wait functionality and have their clocks disabled under these configurations.

The debugger modules support a transition from stop, wait, VLPS, and VLPW back to a halted state when the debugger is enabled. This transition is initiated by setting the Debug Request bit in MDM-AP control register. As part of this transition, system clocking is re-established and is equivalent to normal run/VLPR mode clocking configuration.

8.6 Clock Gating

To conserve power, the clocks to most modules can be turned off using the SCGCx registers in the SIM module. These bits are cleared after any reset, which disables the clock to the corresponding module. Prior to initializing a module, set the corresponding bit in the SCGCx register to enable the clock. Before turning off the clock, make sure to disable the module. For more details, refer to the clock distribution and SIM chapters.

8.7 Flash program restrictions

The flash memory on this device must not be programmed or erased while operating in High Speed Run or VLPR power modes.

Chapter 9 Security

9.1 Introduction

This device implements security based on the mode selected from the flash module. The following sections provide an overview of flash security and details the effects of security on non-flash modules.

9.2 Flash Security

The flash module provides security information to the MCU based on the state held by the FSEC[SEC] bits. The MCU, in turn, confirms the security request and limits access to flash resources. During reset, the flash module initializes the FSEC register using data read from the security byte of the flash configuration field.

NOTE

The security features apply only to external accesses via debug. CPU accesses to the flash are not affected by the status of FSEC.

In the unsecured state all flash commands are available to the programming interfaces (JTAG), as well as user code execution of Flash Controller commands. When the flash is secured (FSEC[SEC] = 00, 01, or 11), programmer interfaces are only allowed to launch mass erase operations and have no access to memory locations.

Further information regarding the flash security options and enabling/disabling flash security is available in the [Flash Memory Module](#).

9.3 Security Interactions with other Modules

The flash security settings are used by the SoC to determine what resources are available. The following sections describe the interactions between modules and the flash security settings or the impact that the flash security has on non-flash modules.

9.3.1 Security Interactions with Debug

When flash security is active the JTAG port cannot access the memory resources of the MCU. Boundary scan chain operations work, but debugging capabilities are disabled so that the debug port cannot read flash contents.

Although most debug functions are disabled, the debugger can write to the Flash Mass Erase in Progress bit in the MDM-AP Control register to trigger a mass erase (Erase All Blocks) command. A mass erase via the debugger is allowed even when some memory locations are protected.

When mass erase is disabled, mass erase via the debugger is blocked.

Chapter 10 Debug

10.1 Introduction

This device's debug is based on the ARM coresight architecture and is configured in each device to provide the maximum flexibility as allowed by the restrictions of the pinout and other available resources.

Four debug interfaces are supported:

- IEEE 1149.1 JTAG
- IEEE 1149.7 JTAG (cJTAG)
- Serial Wire Debug (SWD)
- ARM Real-Time Trace Interface

The basic Cortex-M7 debug architecture is very flexible. The following diagram shows the topology of the core debug architecture and its components.

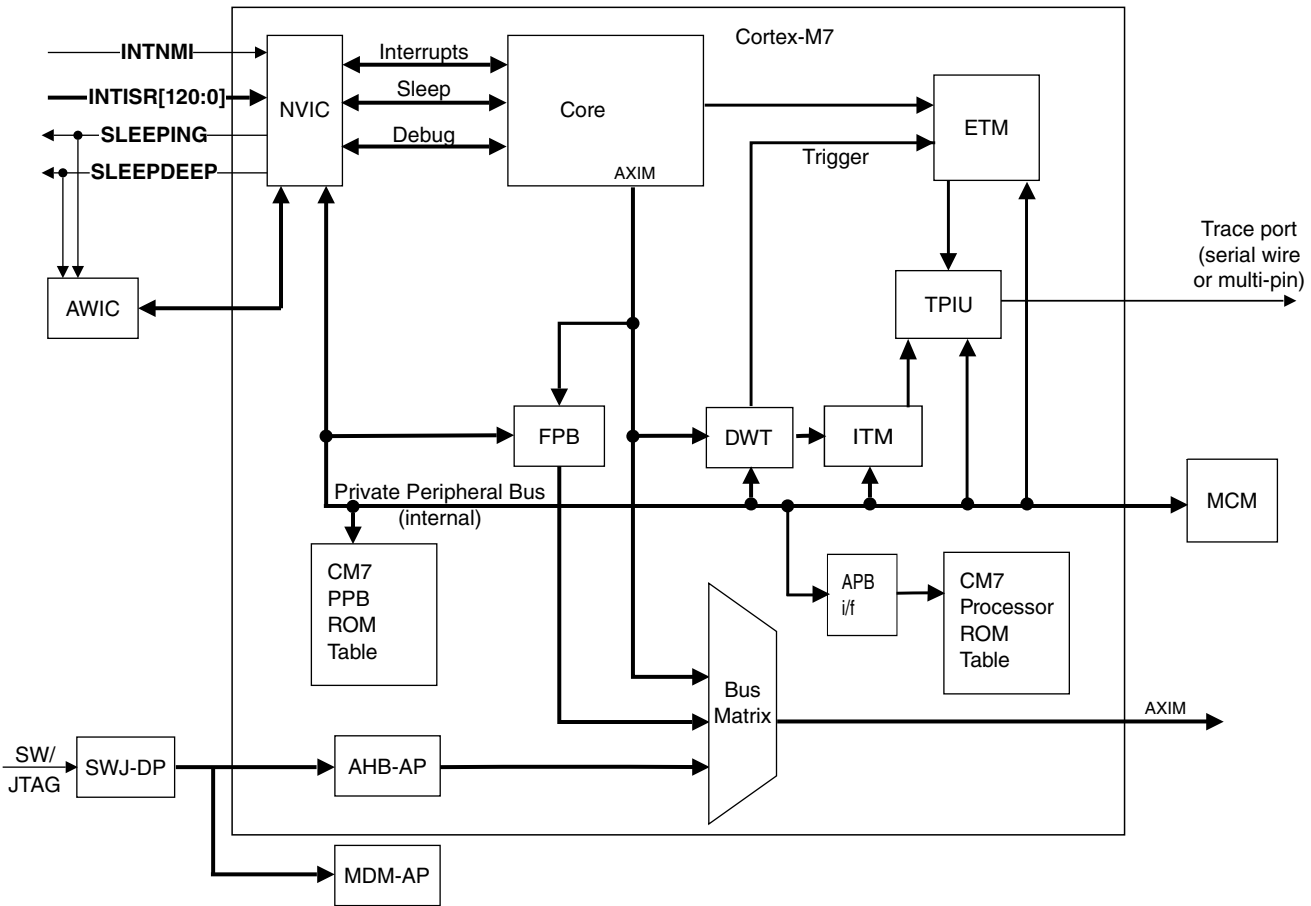


Figure 10-1. Cortex-M7 Debug Topology

The following table presents a brief description of each one of the debug components.

Table 10-1. Debug Components Description

Module	Description
SWJ-DP	Modified Debug Port with support for SWD, JTAG, cJTAG
AHB-AP	AHB Master Interface from JTAG to debug module and SOC system memory maps
CM7 PPB ROM Table	Identifies which debug IP is available (ETM)
CM7 Processor ROM Table	Identifies which debug IP is available (TPIU)
Core Debug	Singlestep, Register Access, Run, Core Status
ETM (Embedded Trace Macrocell)	ETMv4 Architecture
ITM	S/W Instrumentation Messaging + Simple Data Trace Messaging + Watchpoint Messaging
DWT (Data and Address Watchpoints)	4 data and address watchpoints (configurable for less, but 4 seems to be accepted)
FPB (Flash Patch and Breakpoints)	The FPB can remap sections of ROM, typically Flash memory, to regions of RAM, and can set breakpoints on code in ROM. This unit can be used for debug and to provide a code or data patch to an application that requires field updates to a product ROM.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 10-1. Debug Components Description (continued)

Module	Description
TPIU (Trace Port Interface Unit)	The Trace Port Interface provides the external interface for the ITM, DWT, and ETM.
MCM (Miscellaneous Control Module)	The MCM provides miscellaneous control functions and local memory descriptor.

10.1.1 References

For more information on ARM debug components, see these documents:

- ARMv7-M Architecture Reference Manual
- ARM Debug Interface v5.1
- ARM CoreSight ETM-M7 Technical Reference Manual

10.2 The Debug Port

The configuration of the cJTAG module, JTAG controller, and debug port is illustrated in the following figure:

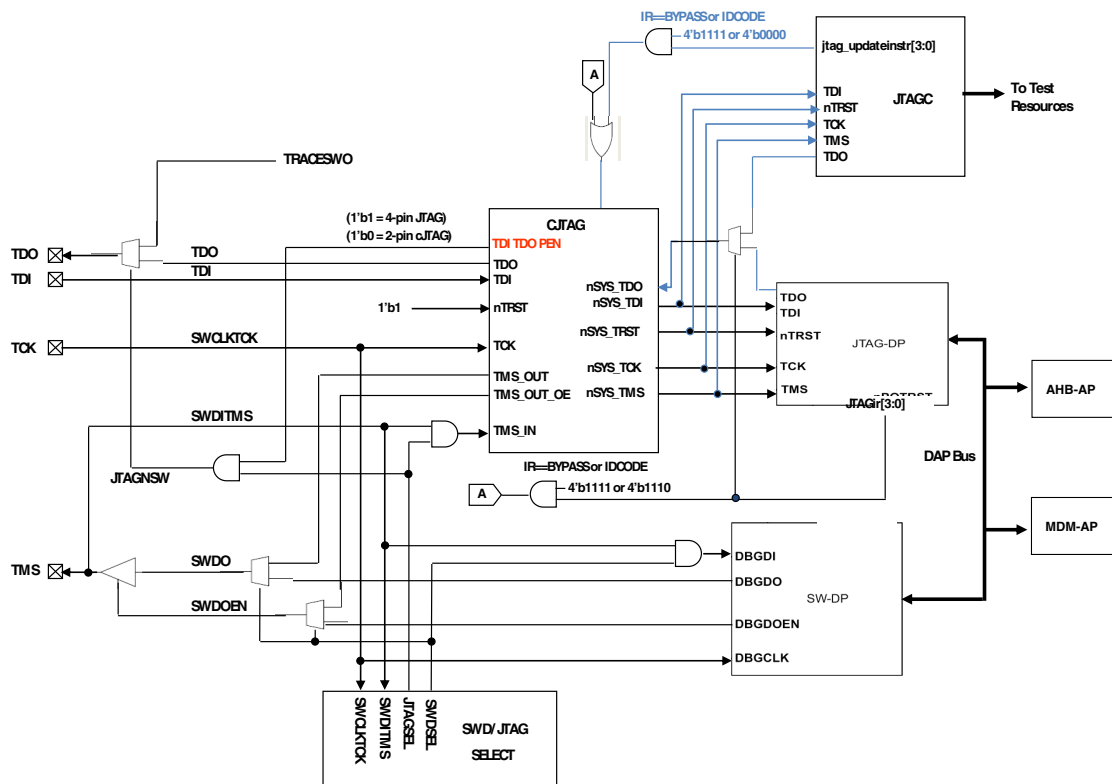


Figure 10-2. Modified Debug Port

The debug port comes out of reset in standard JTAG mode and is switched into either cJTAG or SWD mode by the following sequences. Once the mode has been changed, unused debug pins can be reassigned to any of their alternative muxed functions.

10.2.1 JTAG-to-SWD change sequence

1. Send more than 50 TCK cycles with TMS (SWDIO) = 1
2. Send the 16-bit sequence on TMS (SWDIO) = 0111_1001_1110_0111 (MSB transmitted first)
3. Send more than 50 TCK cycles with TMS (SWDIO) = 1

NOTE

See the ARM documentation for the CoreSight DAP Lite for restrictions.

10.2.2 JTAG-to-cJTAG change sequence

1. Reset the debug port

2. Set the control level to 2 via zero-bit scans
3. Execute the Store Format (STFMT) command (00011) to set the scan format register to 1149.7 scan format

10.3 Debug Port Pin Descriptions

The debug port pins default after POR to their JTAG functionality with the exception of JTAG_TRST_b and can be later reassigned to their alternate functionalities. In cJTAG and SWD modes JTAG_TDI and JTAG_TRST_b can be configured to alternate GPIO functions.

Table 10-2. Debug port pins

Pin Name	JTAG Debug Port		cJTAG Debug Port		SWD Debug Port		Internal Pull-up\Down
	Type	Description	Type	Description	Type	Description	
JTAG_TMS	I/O	JTAG Test Mode Selection	I/O	cJTAG Data	I/O	Serial Wire Data	Pull-up
JTAG_TCLK	I	JTAG Test Clock	I	cJTAG Clock	I	Serial Wire Clock	Pull-down
JTAG_TDI	I	JTAG Test Data Input	-	-	-	-	Pull-up
JTAG_TDO/ TRACE_SWO	O	JTAG Test Data Output	O	Trace output over a single pin	O	Trace output over a single pin	N/C
JTAG_TRST_b	I	JTAG Reset	I	cJTAG Reset	-	-	Pull-up

10.4 JTAG status and control registers

Through the ARM Debug Access Port (DAP), the debugger has access to the status and control elements, implemented as registers on the DAP bus as shown in the following figure. These registers provide additional control and status for low power mode recovery and typical run-control scenarios. The status register bits also provide a means for the debugger to get updated status of the core without having to initiate a bus transaction across the crossbar switch, thus remaining less intrusive during a debug session.

It is important to note that these DAP control and status registers are not memory mapped within the system memory map and are only accessible via the Debug Access Port (DAP) using JTAG or cJTAG. The MDM-AP is accessible as Debug Access Port 1 with the available registers shown in the table below.

Table 10-3. MDM-AP Register Summary

Address	Register	Description
0x0100_0000	Status	See MDM-AP Status Register
0x0100_0004	Control	See MDM-AP Control Register
0x0100_00FC	ID	Read-only identification register that always reads as 0x001C_0000

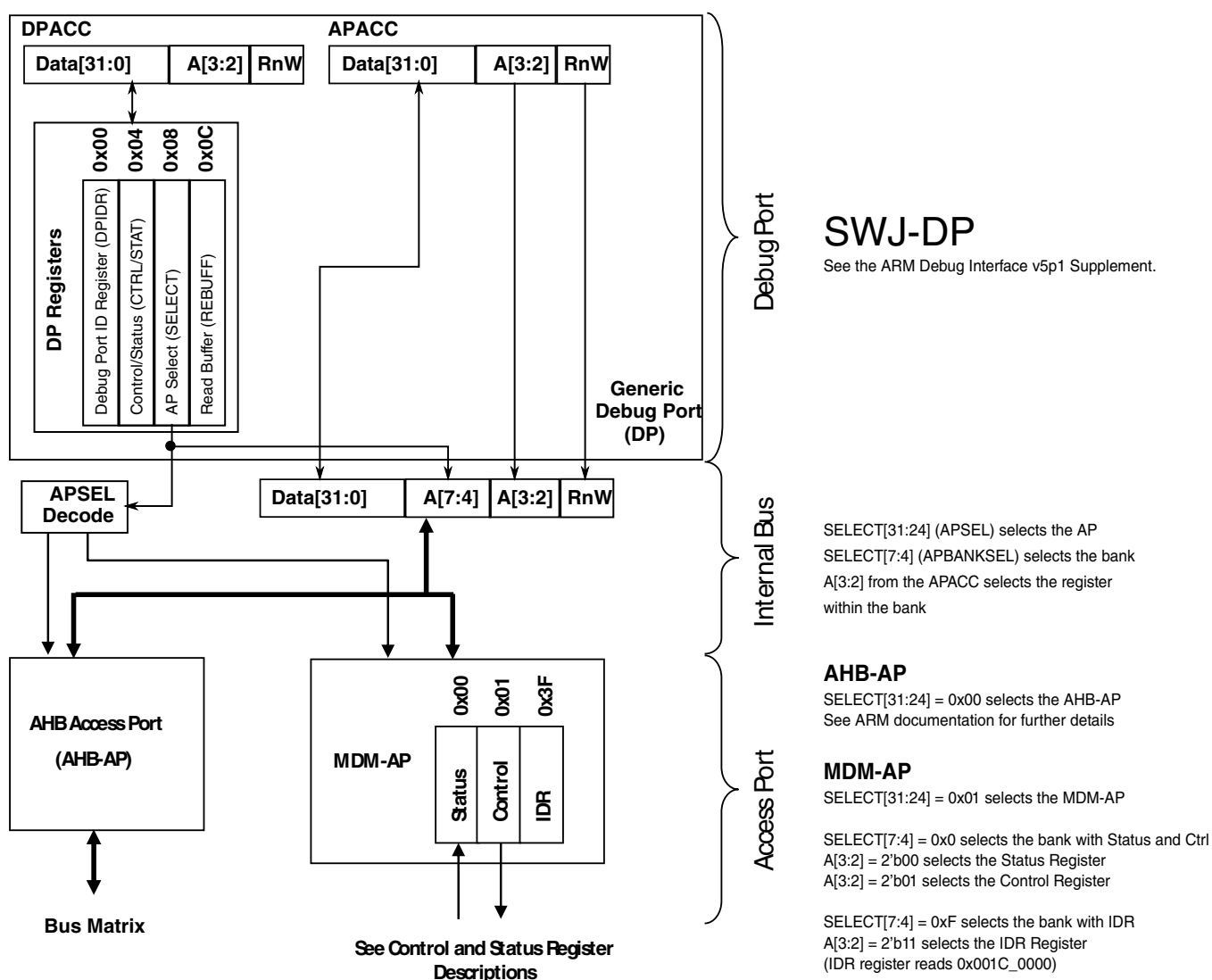


Figure 10-3. MDM AP Addressing

10.4.1 MDM-AP Control Register

Table 10-4. MDM-AP Control register assignments

Bit	Name	Secure ¹	Description
0	Flash Mass Erase in Progress	Y	Set to cause mass erase. Cleared by hardware after mass erase operation completes. When mass erase is disabled (via MEEN and SEC settings), the erase request does not occur and the Flash Mass Erase in Progress bit continues to assert until the next system reset.
1	Debug Disable	N	Set to disable debug. Once it is set, the MDM-AP register cannot be written and it can only be cleared by debug reset.
2	Debug Request	N	Set to force the Core to halt. If the Core is in a stop or wait mode, this bit can be used to wakeup the core and transition to a halted state.
3	System Reset Request	N	Set to force a system reset. The system remains held in reset until this bit is cleared.
4	Core Hold Reset	N	Configuration bit to control Core operation at the end of system reset sequencing. 0 Normal operation - release the Core from reset along with the rest of the system at the end of system reset sequencing. 1 Suspend operation - hold the Core in reset at the end of reset sequencing. Once the system enters this suspended state, clearing this control bit immediately releases the Core from reset and CPU operation begins.
5	VLLSx Debug Request (VLLDBGREQ)	N	Set to configure the system to be held in reset after the next recovery from a VLLSx mode. This bit holds the in reset when VLLSx modes are exited to allow the debugger time to re-initialize debug IP before the debug session continues. The Mode Controller captures this bit logic on entry to VLLSx modes. Upon exit from VLLSx modes, the Mode Controller holds the in reset until VLLDBGACK is asserted. The VLLDBGREQ bit clears automatically due to the POR reset generated as part of the VLLSx recovery.
6	VLLSx Debug Acknowledge (VLLDBGACK)	N	Set to release a being held in reset following a VLLSx recovery This bit is used by the debugger to release the system reset when it is being held on VLLSx mode exit. The debugger re-initializes all debug IP and then assert this control bit to allow the Mode Controller to release the from reset and allow CPU operation to begin. The VLLDBGACK bit is cleared by the debugger or can be left set because it clears automatically due to the POR reset generated as part of the next VLLSx recovery.
7	VLLSx Status Acknowledge	N	Set this bit to acknowledge the DAP VLLS Status bit has been read. This acknowledge automatically clears the status bits. This bit is used by the debugger to clear the stickyVLLSx mode entry status bits. This bit is asserted and cleared by the debugger.

1. Command available in secure mode

10.4.2 MDM-AP Status Register

Table 10-5. MDM-AP Status register assignments

Bit	Name	Description
0	Flash Mass Erase Acknowledge	The Flash Mass Erase Acknowledge bit is cleared after any system reset. The bit is also cleared at launch of a mass erase command due to write of Flash Mass Erase in Progress bit in MDM AP Control Register. The Flash Mass Erase Acknowledge is set after Flash control logic has started the mass erase operation. When mass erase is disabled (via MEEN and SEC settings), an erase request due to setting of Flash Mass Erase in Progress bit is not acknowledged.
1	Flash Ready	Indicate Flash has been initialized and debugger can be configured even if system is continuing to be held in reset via the debugger.
2	System Security	Indicates the security state. When secure, the debugger does not have access to the system bus or any memory mapped peripherals. This bit indicates when the part is locked and no system bus access is possible.
3	System Reset	Indicates the system reset state. 0 System is in reset 1 System is not in reset
4	Reserved	
5	Mass Erase Enable	Indicates if the MCU can be mass erased or not 0 Mass erase is disabled 1 Mass erase is enabled
6	Backdoor Access Key Enable	Indicates if the MCU has the backdoor access key enabled. 0 Disabled 1 Enabled
7	LP Enabled	Decode of LPLLSM control bits to indicate that VLPS, LLS, or VLLSx are the selected power mode the next time the ARM Core enters Deep Sleep. 0 Low Power Stop Mode is not enabled 1 Low Power Stop Mode is enabled Usage intended for debug operation in which Run to VLPS is attempted. Per debug definition, the system actually enters the Stop state. A debugger should interpret deep sleep indication (with SLEEPDEEP and SLEEPING asserted), in conjunction with this bit asserted as the debugger-VLPS status indication.
8	Very Low Power Mode	Indicates current power mode is VLPx. This bit is not 'sticky' and should always represent whether VLPx is enabled or not. This bit is used to throttle JTAG TCK frequency up/down.
9	Reserved	Always read 0.
10	VLLSx Modes Exit	This bit indicates an exit from VLLSx mode has occurred. The debugger loses communication while the system is in VLLSx (including access to this register). Once communication is reestablished, this bit indicates that the system had been in VLLSx. Since the debug modules lose their state during VLLSx modes, they need to be reconfigured.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 10-5. MDM-AP Status register assignments (continued)

Bit	Name	Description
		This bit is set during the VLLSx recovery sequence. The VLLSx Mode Exit bit is held until the debugger has had a chance to recognize that a VLLS mode was exited and is cleared by a write of 1 to the LLS, VLLSx Status Acknowledge bit in MDM AP Control register.
11 – 15	Reserved for future use	Always read 0.
16	Core Halted	Indicates the Core has entered debug halt mode
17	Core SLEEPDEEP	Indicates the Core has entered a low power mode
18	Core SLEEPING	SLEEPING==1 and SLEEPDEEP==0 indicates wait or VLPW mode. SLEEPING==0 and SLEEPDEEP==1 indicates stop or VLPS mode.
19 – 31	Reserved for future use	Always read 0.

10.5 Debug Resets

The debug system receives the following sources of reset:

- JTAG_TRST_b from an external signal. This signal is optional and may not be available in all packages.
- Debug reset (CDBG_RSTREQ bit within the SWJ-DP CTRL/STAT register) in the TCLK domain that allows the debugger to reset the debug logic.
- TRST asserted via the cJTAG escape command.
- System POR reset

Conversely the debug system is capable of generating system reset using the following mechanism:

- A system reset in the DAP control register which allows the debugger to hold the system in reset.
- SYSRESETREQ bit in the NVIC application interrupt and reset control register
- A system reset in the DAP control register which allows the debugger to hold the Core in reset.

10.6 AHB-AP

AHB-AP provides the debugger access to all memory and registers in the system, including processor registers through the NVIC. System access is independent of the processor status. AHB-AP does not do back-to-back transactions on the bus, so all transactions are non-sequential. AHB-AP can perform unaligned and bit-band transactions. AHB-AP transactions bypass the FPB, so the FPB cannot remap AHB-AP

transactions. SWJ/SW-DP-initiated transaction aborts drive an AHB-AP-supported sideband signal called HABORT. This signal is driven into the Bus Matrix, which resets the Bus Matrix state, so that AHB-AP can access the Private Peripheral Bus for last ditch debugging such as read/stop/reset the core. AHB-AP transactions are little endian.

For a short period at the start of a system reset event the system security status is being determined and debugger access to all AHB-AP transactions is blocked. The MDM-AP Status register is accessible and can be monitored to determine when this initial period is completed. After this initial period, if system reset is held via assertion of the RESET pin, the debugger has access via the bus matrix to the private peripheral bus to configure the debug IP even while system reset is asserted. While in system reset, access to other memory and register resources, accessed over the Crossbar Switch, is blocked.

10.7 Instrumentation Trace Macrocell (ITM)

The ITM is an application-driven trace source that supports printf style debugging to trace Operating System (OS) and application events, and emits diagnostic system information. The ITM emits trace information as packets. There are four sources that can generate packets. If multiple sources generate packets at the same time, the ITM arbitrates the order in which packets are output. The four sources in decreasing order of priority are:

1. Software trace -- Software can write directly to ITM stimulus registers. This emits packets.
2. Hardware trace -- The DWT generates these packets, and the ITM emits them.
3. Time stamping -- Timestamps are emitted relative to packets. The ITM contains a 21-bit counter to generate the timestamp. The Cortex-M7 clock or the bitclock rate of the Serial Wire Viewer (SWV) output clocks the counter.
4. Global system timestamping. Timestamps can optionally be generated using a system-wide 64-bit count value.

10.8 Core Trace Connectivity with ETM

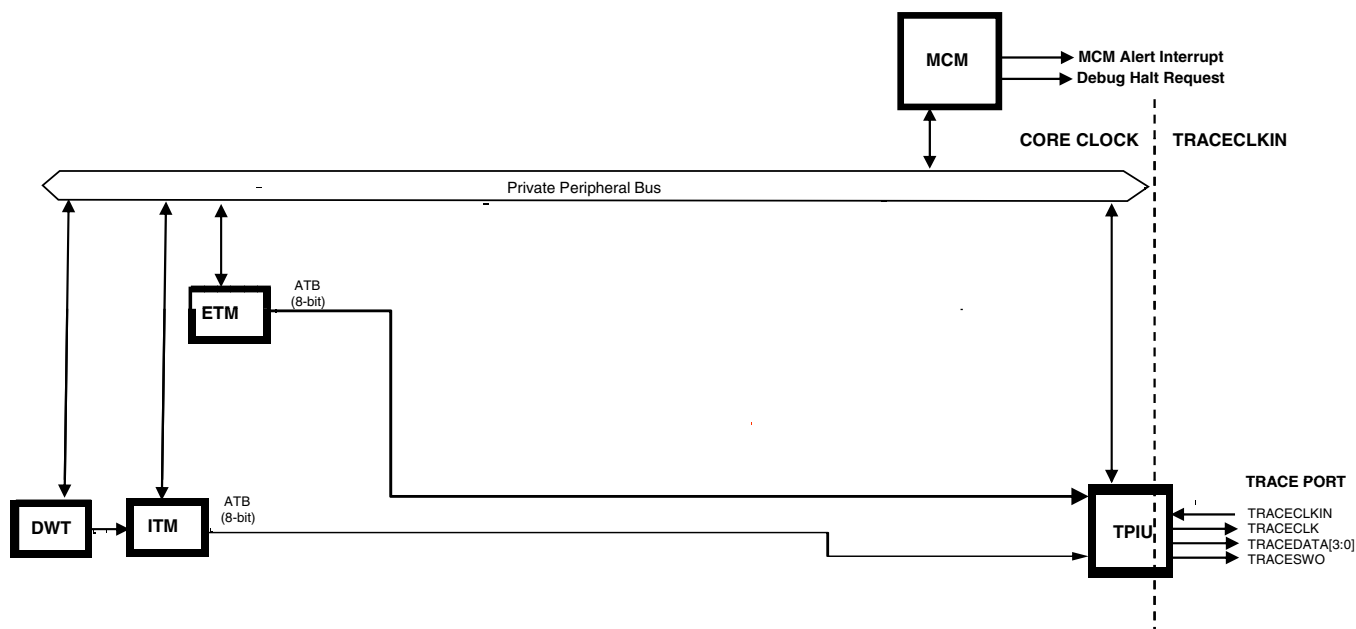


Figure 10-4. Core Trace Connectivity with ETM only

The figure above assumes the device contains an ETM.

The following combinations paths are supported:

1. ETM -> TPIU(4 pin or 2 pin parallel)
2. ITM->TPIU(1 pin SWO, 2 pin or 4 pin parallel)
3. ETM & ITM -> TPIU

10.9 Embedded Trace Macrocell v4 (ETM)

The Cortex-M7 Embedded Trace Macrocell (ETM-M7) is a debug component that enables a debugger to reconstruct program execution. The CoreSight ETM-M7 supports the instruction trace only option.

The main features of an ETM are:

- tracing of 16-bit and 32-bit Thumb instructions
- four EmbeddedICE watchpoint inputs
- a Trace Start/Stop block with EmbeddedICE inputs
- one reduced function counter
- two external inputs

- a 64-byte FIFO queue
- global timestamping

10.10 TPIU

The TPIU acts as a bridge between the on-chip trace data from the Instrumentation Trace Macrocell (ITM) and Embedded Trace Macrocell (ETM), with separate IDs, to a data stream, encapsulating IDs where required, that is then captured by a Trace Port Analyzer (TPA). The TPIU is specially designed for low-cost debug. The TPIU provides five external signals, namely, TRACE_CLKOUT, TRACE_D0, TRACE_D1, TRACE_D2, and TRACE_D3 that can be assigned to external pins. See Signal Multiplexing and Signal Descriptions for details.

10.11 DWT

The DWT is a unit that performs the following debug functionality:

- It contains four comparators that you can configure as a hardware watchpoint, a PC sampler event trigger, or a data address sampler event trigger. The first comparator, DWT_COMP0, can also compare against the clock cycle counter, CYCCNT. The second comparator, DWT_COMP1, can also be used as a data comparator.
- The DWT contains counters for:
 - Clock cycles (CYCCNT)
 - Folded instructions
 - Load store unit (LSU) operations
 - Sleep cycles
 - CPI (all instruction cycles except for the first cycle)
 - Interrupt overhead

NOTE

An event is emitted each time a counter overflows.

- The DWT can be configured to emit PC samples at defined intervals, and to emit interrupt event information.

10.12 Debug in Low Power Modes

In low power modes in which the debug modules are kept static or powered off, the debugger cannot gather any debug data for the duration of the low power mode. In the case that the debugger is held static, the debug port returns to full functionality as soon as the low power mode exits and the system returns to a state with active debug. In the case that the debugger logic is powered off, the debugger is reset on recovery and must be reconfigured once the low power mode is exited.

Power mode entry logic monitors Debug Power Up and System Power Up signals from the debug port as indications that a debugger is active. These signals can be changed in RUN, VLPR, WAIT and VLPW. If the debug signal is active and the system attempts to enter stop or VLPS, FCLK continues to run to support core register access. In these modes in which FCLK is left active the debug modules have access to core registers but not to system memory resources accessed via the crossbar.

With debug enabled, transitions from Run directly to VLPS are not allowed and result in the system entering Stop mode instead. Status bits within the MDM-AP Status register can be evaluated to determine this pseudo-VLPS state. Note with the debug enabled, transitions from Run--> VLPR --> VLPS are still possible but also result in the system entering Stop mode instead.

In VLLS mode all debug modules are powered off and reset at wakeup.

Going into a VLLSx mode causes all the debug controls and settings to be reset. To give time to the debugger to sync up with the HW, the MDM-AP Control register can be configured hold the system in reset on recovery so that the debugger can regain control and reconfigure debug logic prior to the system exiting reset and resuming operation.

10.12.1 Debug Module State in Low Power Modes

The following table shows the state of the debug modules in low power modes. These terms are used:

- FF = Full functionality. In VLPR and VLPW the system frequency is limited, but if a module does not have a limitation in its functionality, it is still listed as FF.
- static = Module register states and associated memories are retained.
- OFF = Modules are powered off; module is in reset state upon wakeup.

Table 10-6. Debug Module State in Low Power Modes

Module	STOP	VLPR	VLPW	VLPS	LLS	VLLSx
Debug Port	FF	FF	FF	OFF	static	OFF
AHB-AP	FF	FF	FF	OFF	static	OFF
ITM	FF	FF	FF	OFF	static	OFF
TPIU	FF	FF	FF	OFF	static	OFF
DWT	FF	FF	FF	OFF	static	OFF

10.13 Debug and security

When security is enabled (FSEC[SEC] != 10), the debug port capabilities are limited in order to prevent exploitation of secure data. In the secure state the debugger still has access to the MDM-AP Status Register and can determine the current security state of the device. In the case of a secure device, the debugger also has the capability of performing a mass erase operation via writes to the MDM-AP Control Register. In the case of a secure device that has mass erase disabled (FSEC[MEEN] = 10), attempts to mass erase via the debug interface are blocked.

Chapter 11

Signal Multiplexing and Signal Descriptions

11.1 Signal Multiplexing Introduction

To optimize functionality in small packages, pins have several functions available via signal multiplexing. This chapter illustrates which of this device's signals are multiplexed on which external pin.

The [Port Control](#) block controls which signal is present on the external pin. Reference that chapter to find which register controls the operation of a specific pin.

11.2 Signal Multiplexing Integration

This section summarizes how the module is integrated into the device. For a comprehensive description of the module itself, see the module’s dedicated chapter.

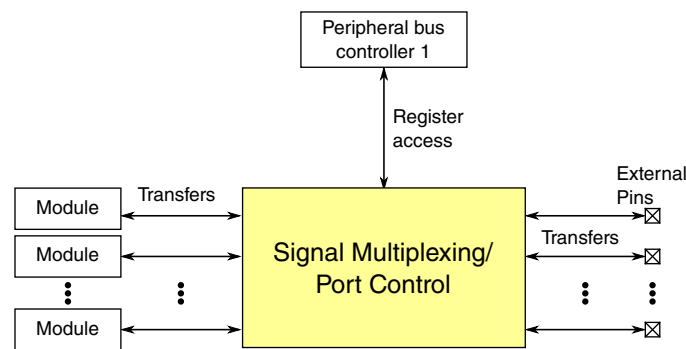


Figure 11-1. Signal multiplexing integration

Table 11-1. Reference links to related information

Topic	Related module	Reference
Full description	Port control	Port control
System memory map		System memory map

Table continues on the next page...

Table 11-1. Reference links to related information (continued)

Topic	Related module	Reference
Clocking		Clock Distribution
Register access	Peripheral bus controller	Peripheral bridge

11.2.1 Port control and interrupt module features

- 32-pin ports

NOTE

Not all pins are available on the device. See the following section for details.

- Each 32-pin port is assigned one interrupt.

Table 11-2. Ports summary

Feature	Port A	Port B	Port C	Port D	Port E
Pull select control	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Pull select at reset	PTA1/PTA2/PTA3/ PTA4/PTA5=Pull up, Others=Pull down	Pull down	Pull down	Pull down	Pull down
Pull enable control	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Pull enable at reset	PTA0/PTA1/PTA2/ PTA3/ PTA4=Enabled; Others=Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
Slew rate enable control	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Slew rate enable at reset	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
Passive filter enable control	PTA4=Yes; Others=No	No	No	No	No
Passive filter enable at reset	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
Open drain enable control	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Open drain enable at reset	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
Drive strength enable control	No	PTB0/PTB1 only	PTC3/PTC4 only	PTD4/PTD5/PTD6/ PTD7 only	Yes
Drive strength enable at reset	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled

Table continues on the next page...

Table 11-2. Ports summary (continued)

Feature	Port A	Port B	Port C	Port D	Port E
Pin mux control	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Pin mux at reset	PTA0/PTA1/PTA2/ PTA3/PTA4=ALT7; Others=ALT0	ALT0	ALT0	ALT0	ALT0
Lock bit	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Interrupt and DMA request	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Digital glitch filter	No	No	No	Yes	No

11.2.2 Clock gating

The clock to the port control module can be gated on and off using the SCGC5[PORTx] bits in the SIM module. These bits are cleared after any reset, which disables the clock to the corresponding module to conserve power. Prior to initializing the corresponding module, set SCGC5[PORTx] in the SIM module to enable the clock. Before turning off the clock, make sure to disable the module. For more details, refer to the clock distribution chapter.

11.2.3 Signal multiplexing constraints

1. A given peripheral function must be assigned to a maximum of one package pin. Do not program the same function to more than one pin.
2. To ensure the best signal timing for a given peripheral's interface, choose the pins in closest proximity to each other.

11.3 Pinout

11.3.1 KV5x Signal Multiplexing and Pin Assignments

The following table shows the signals available on each pin and the locations of these pins on the devices supported by this document. The Port Control Module is responsible for selecting which ALT functionality is available on each pin.

144 MAP BGA	144 LQFP	100 LQFP	Pin Name	Default	ALT0	ALT1	ALT2	ALT3	ALT4	ALT5	ALT6	ALT7	ALT8	ALT9
D3	1	1	PTE0	HSADC0B_CH16/ HSADC1A_CH0	HSADC0B_CH16/ HSADC1A_CH0	PTE0	SPI1_PCS1	UART1_TX	XB_OUT10	XB_IN11	I2C1_SDA		TRACE_CLKOUT	
D2	2	2	PTE1/ LLWU_P0	HSADC0B_CH17/ HSADC1A_CH1	HSADC0B_CH17/ HSADC1A_CH1	PTE1/ LLWU_P0	SPI1_SOUT	UART1_RX	XB_OUT11	XB_IN7	I2C1_SCL		TRACE_D3	
D1	3	3	PTE2/ LLWU_P1	HSADC0B_CH10/ HSADC1B_CH0	HSADC0B_CH10/ HSADC1B_CH0	PTE2/ LLWU_P1	SPI1_SCK	UART1_CTS_b					TRACE_D2	
E4	4	4	PTE3	HSADC0B_CH11/ HSADC1B_CH1	HSADC0B_CH11/ HSADC1B_CH1	PTE3	SPI1_SIN	UART1_RTS_b					TRACE_D1	
E5	5	—	VDD	VDD	VDD									
F6	6	—	VSS	VSS	VSS									
E3	7	5	PTE4/ LLWU_P2	HSADC1A_CH4/ ADC0_SE2/ ADC0_DP2	HSADC1A_CH4/ ADC0_SE2/ ADC0_DP2	PTE4/ LLWU_P2	SPI1_PCS0	UART3_TX					TRACE_D0	
E2	8	6	PTE5	HSADC1A_CH5/ ADC0_SE10/ ADC0_DM2	HSADC1A_CH5/ ADC0_SE10/ ADC0_DM2	PTE5	SPI1_PCS2	UART3_RX		FLEXPWM1_A0	FTM3_CH0			
E1	9	7	PTE6/ LLWU_P16	HSADC1B_CH7/ ADC0_SE4a	HSADC1B_CH7/ ADC0_SE4a	PTE6/ LLWU_P16	SPI1_PCS3	UART3_CTS_b		FLEXPWM1_B0	FTM3_CH1			
F4	10	—	PTE7	DISABLED		PTE7		UART3_RTS_b		FLEXPWM1_A1	FTM3_CH2			
F3	11	—	PTE8	DISABLED		PTE8		UART5_TX		FLEXPWM1_B1	FTM3_CH3			
F2	12	—	PTE9/ LLWU_P17	DISABLED		PTE9/ LLWU_P17		UART5_RX		FLEXPWM1_A2	FTM3_CH4			
F1	13	—	PTE10/ LLWU_P18	DISABLED		PTE10/ LLWU_P18		UART5_CTS_b		FLEXPWM1_B2	FTM3_CH5			
G4	14	—	PTE11	HSADC1A_CH6/ ADC0_SE3/ ADC0_DP3	HSADC1A_CH6/ ADC0_SE3/ ADC0_DP3	PTE11		UART5_RTS_b		FLEXPWM1_A3	FTM3_CH6			
G3	15	—	PTE12	HSADC1B_CH6/ ADC0_SE11/ ADC0_DM3	HSADC1B_CH6/ ADC0_SE11/ ADC0_DM3	PTE12				FLEXPWM1_B3	FTM3_CH7			

144 MAP BGA	144 LQFP	100 LQFP	Pin Name	Default	ALT0	ALT1	ALT2	ALT3	ALT4	ALT5	ALT6	ALT7	ALT8	ALT9
E6	16	8	VDD	VDD	VDD									
F7	17	9	VSS	VSS	VSS									
H1	18	10	PTE16	HSADC0A_ CH0/ ADC0_ SE1/ ADC0_DP1	HSADC0A_ CH0/ ADC0_ SE1/ ADC0_DP1	PTE16	SPI0_PCS0	UART2_TX	FTM_ CLKIN0		FTM0_ FLT3			
H2	19	11	PTE17/ LLWU_P19	HSADC0A_ CH1/ ADC0_ SE9/ ADC0_DM1	HSADC0A_ CH1/ ADC0_ SE9/ ADC0_DM1	PTE17/ LLWU_P19	SPI0_SCK	UART2_RX	FTM_ CLKIN1		LPTMR0_ ALT3			
G1	20	12	PTE18/ LLWU_P20	HSADC0B_ CH0/ ADC0_ SE5a	HSADC0B_ CH0/ ADC0_ SE5a	PTE18/ LLWU_P20	SPI0_ SOUT	UART2_ CTS_b	I2C0_SDA					
G2	21	13	PTE19	HSADC0B_ CH1/ ADC0_ SE6a	HSADC0B_ CH1/ ADC0_ SE6a	PTE19	SPI0_SIN	UART2_ RTS_b	I2C0_SCL		CMP3_ OUT			
H3	22	—	VSS	VSS	VSS									
J1	23	14	HSADC0A_ CH6	HSADC0A_ CH6/ ADC0_ SE7a	HSADC0A_ CH6/ ADC0_ SE7a									
J2	24	15	HSADC0A_ CH7/ ADC0_ SE4b	HSADC0A_ CH7/ ADC0_ SE4b	HSADC0A_ CH7/ ADC0_ SE4b									
K1	25	16	PTE20	HSADC0A_ CH8/ ADC0_ SE5b	HSADC0A_ CH8/ ADC0_ SE5b	PTE20		FTM1_CH0	UART0_TX	FTM1_QD_ PHA				
K2	26	17	PTE21	HSADC0A_ CH9/ HSADC1A_ CH7	HSADC0A_ CH9/ HSADC1A_ CH7	PTE21	XB_IN9	FTM1_CH1	UART0_RX	FTM1_QD_ PHB				
L1	27	18	HSADC0A_ CH2/ HSADC1A_ CH2	HSADC0A_ CH2/ HSADC1A_ CH2	HSADC0A_ CH2/ HSADC1A_ CH2									
L2	28	19	HSADC0A_ CH3/ HSADC1A_ CH3	HSADC0A_ CH3/ HSADC1A_ CH3	HSADC0A_ CH3/ HSADC1A_ CH3									
M1	29	20	HSADC0A_ CH10/ HSADC1B_ CH2	HSADC0A_ CH10/ HSADC1B_ CH2	HSADC0A_ CH10/ HSADC1B_ CH2									

Pinout

144 MAP BGA	144 LQFP	100 LQFP	Pin Name	Default	ALT0	ALT1	ALT2	ALT3	ALT4	ALT5	ALT6	ALT7	ALT8	ALT9
M2	30	21	HSADC0A_ CH11/ HSADC1B_ CH3	HSADC0A_ CH11/ HSADC1B_ CH3	HSADC0A_ CH11/ HSADC1B_ CH3									
H5	31	22	VDDA	VDDA	VDDA									
G5	32	23	VREFH	VREFH	VREFH									
G6	33	24	VREFL	VREFL	VREFL									
H6	34	25	VSSA	VSSA	VSSA									
K3	35	—	ADC0_ SE0/ ADC0_ DP0/ CMP2_IN5	ADC0_ SE0/ ADC0_ DP0/ CMP2_IN5	ADC0_ SE0/ ADC0_ DP0/ CMP2_IN5									
J3	36	—	ADC0_ SE8/ ADC0_ DM0/ CMP1_IN2	ADC0_ SE8/ ADC0_ DM0/ CMP1_IN2	ADC0_ SE8/ ADC0_ DM0/ CMP1_IN2									
M3	37	26	PTE29	HSADC0A_ CH4/ CMP1_IN5/ CMP0_IN5	HSADC0A_ CH4/ CMP1_IN5/ CMP0_IN5	PTE29		FTM0_CH2		FTM_ CLKIN0				
L3	38	27	PTE30	DAC0_ OUT/ CMP1_IN3/ HSADC0A_ CH5	DAC0_ OUT/ CMP1_IN3/ HSADC0A_ CH5	PTE30		FTM0_CH3		FTM_ CLKIN1				
L4	39	28	HSADC0A_ CH12/ CMP0_IN4/ CMP2_IN3	HSADC0A_ CH12/ CMP0_IN4/ CMP2_IN3	HSADC0A_ CH12/ CMP0_IN4/ CMP2_IN3									
L5	40	—	PTE13	DISABLED		PTE13								
M7	41	—	PTE22	DISABLED		PTE22		FTM2_CH0	XB_IN2	FTM2_QD_ PHA				
M6	42	—	PTE23	DISABLED		PTE23		FTM2_CH1	XB_IN3	FTM2_QD_ PHB				
—	—	29	VSS	VSS	VSS									
L6	43	30	VDD	VDD	VDD									
—	44	—	VSS	VSS	VSS									
M4	45	31	PTE24	HSADC0B_ CH4/ HSADC1B_ CH4	HSADC0B_ CH4/ HSADC1B_ CH4	PTE24	CAN1_TX	FTM0_CH0	XB_IN2	I2C0_SCL	EWM_ OUT_b	XB_OUT4	UART4_TX	
K5	46	32	PTE25/ LLWU_P21	HSADC0B_ CH5/ HSADC1B_ CH5	HSADC0B_ CH5/ HSADC1B_ CH5	PTE25/ LLWU_P21	CAN1_RX	FTM0_CH1	XB_IN3	I2C0_SDA	EWM_IN	XB_OUT5	UART4_RX	

144 MAP BGA	144 LQFP	100 LQFP	Pin Name	Default	ALT0	ALT1	ALT2	ALT3	ALT4	ALT5	ALT6	ALT7	ALT8	ALT9
K4	47	33	PTE26	DISABLED		PTE26	ENET_1588_CLKIN	FTM0_CH4					UART4_CTS_b	
J4	48	—	PTE27	DISABLED		PTE27	CAN2_TX						UART4_RTS_b	
H4	49	—	PTE28	DISABLED		PTE28	CAN2_RX							
J5	50	34	PTA0	JTAG_TCLK/ SWD_CLK		PTA0	UART0_CTS_b/ UART0_COL_b	FTM0_CH5	XB_IN4	EWM_IN		JTAG_TCLK/ SWD_CLK		
J6	51	35	PTA1	JTAG_TDI		PTA1	UART0_RX	FTM0_CH6	CMP0_OUT	FTM2_QD_PHA	FTM1_CH1	JTAG_TDI		
K6	52	36	PTA2	JTAG_TDO/ TRACE_SWO		PTA2	UART0_TX	FTM0_CH7	CMP1_OUT	FTM2_QD_PHB	FTM1_CH0	JTAG_TDO/ TRACE_SWO		
K7	53	37	PTA3	JTAG_TMS/ SWD_DIO		PTA3	UART0_RTS_b	FTM0_CH0	XB_IN9	EWM_OUT_b	FLEXPWM0_A0	JTAG_TMS/ SWD_DIO		
L7	54	38	PTA4/ LLWU_P3	NMI_b		PTA4/ LLWU_P3		FTM0_CH1	XB_IN10	FTM0_FLT3	FLEXPWM0_B0	NMI_b		
M8	55	39	PTA5	DISABLED		PTA5		FTM0_CH2	RMII0_RXER/ MII0_RXER	CMP2_OUT		JTAG_TRST_b		
E7	56	40	VDD	VDD	VDD									
G7	57	41	VSS	VSS	VSS									
J7	58	—	PTA6	DISABLED		PTA6		FTM0_CH3		CLKOUT		TRACE_CLKOUT		
J8	59	—	PTA7	HSADC1B_CH8	HSADC1B_CH8	PTA7		FTM0_CH4		RMII0_MDIO/ MII0_MDIO		TRACE_D3		
K8	60	—	PTA8	HSADC1B_CH9	HSADC1B_CH9	PTA8		FTM1_CH0		RMII0_MDC/ MII0_MDC		TRACE_D2		
L8	61	—	PTA9	DISABLED		PTA9		FTM1_CH1		MII0_RXD3		TRACE_D1		
M9	62	—	PTA10/ LLWU_P22	DISABLED		PTA10/ LLWU_P22		FTM2_CH0		MII0_RXD2	FTM2_QD_PHA	TRACE_D0		
L9	63	—	PTA11/ LLWU_P23	DISABLED		PTA11/ LLWU_P23		FTM2_CH1		MII0_RXCLK	FTM2_QD_PHB		I2C0_SDA	
K9	64	42	PTA12	CMP2_IN0	CMP2_IN0	PTA12	CAN0_TX	FTM1_CH0		RMII0_RXD1/ MII0_RXD1		FTM1_QD_PHA	I2C0_SCL	
J9	65	43	PTA13/ LLWU_P4	CMP2_IN1	CMP2_IN1	PTA13/ LLWU_P4	CAN0_RX	FTM1_CH1		RMII0_RXD0/ MII0_RXD0		FTM1_QD_PHB	I2C1_SDA	
L10	66	44	PTA14	CMP3_IN0	CMP3_IN0	PTA14	SPI0_PCS0	UART0_TX	CAN2_TX	RMII0_CRS_DV/ MII0_RXDV			I2C1_SCL	

144 MAP BGA	144 LQFP	100 LQFP	Pin Name	Default	ALT0	ALT1	ALT2	ALT3	ALT4	ALT5	ALT6	ALT7	ALT8	ALT9
L11	67	45	PTA15	CMP3_IN1	CMP3_IN1	PTA15	SPI0_SCK	UART0_RX	CAN2_RX	RMII0_TXEN/ MII0_TXEN				
K10	68	46	PTA16	CMP3_IN2	CMP3_IN2	PTA16	SPI0_SOUT	UART0_CTS_b/ UART0_COL_b		RMII0_TXD0/ MII0_TXD0				
K11	69	47	PTA17	HSADC0A_CH15	HSADC0A_CH15	PTA17	SPI0_SIN	UART0_RTS_b		RMII0_TXD1/ MII0_TXD1				
E8	70	48	VDD	VDD	VDD									
G8	71	49	VSS	VSS	VSS									
M12	72	50	PTA18	EXTAL0	EXTAL0	PTA18	XB_IN7	FTM0_FLT2	FTM_CLKIN0	XB_OUT8	FTM3_CH2			
M11	73	51	PTA19	XTAL0	XTAL0	PTA19	XB_IN8	FTM1_FLT0	FTM_CLKIN1	XB_OUT9	LPTMR0_ALT1			
L12	74	52	RESET_b	RESET_b	RESET_b									
K12	75	—	PTA24	DISABLED		PTA24	XB_IN4			MII0_TXD2			FB_A29	
J12	76	—	PTA25	DISABLED		PTA25	XB_IN5			MII0_TXCLK			FB_A28	
J11	77	—	PTA26	DISABLED		PTA26				MII0_TXD3			FB_A27	
J10	78	—	PTA27	DISABLED		PTA27				MII0_CRS			FB_A26	
H12	79	—	PTA28	DISABLED		PTA28				MII0_TXER			FB_A25	
H11	80	—	PTA29	DISABLED		PTA29				MII0_COL			FB_A24	
H10	81	53	PTB0/ LLWU_P5	HSADC0B_CH2	HSADC0B_CH2	PTB0/ LLWU_P5	I2C0_SCL	FTM1_CH0			FTM1_QD_PHA	UART0_RX	RMII0_MDIO/ MII0_MDIO	
H9	82	54	PTB1	HSADC0B_CH3	HSADC0B_CH3	PTB1	I2C0_SDA	FTM1_CH1	FTM0_FLT2	EWM_IN	FTM1_QD_PHB	UART0_TX	RMII0_MDC/ MII0_MDC	
G12	83	55	PTB2	HSADC0A_CH14/ CMP2_IN2	HSADC0A_CH14/ CMP2_IN2	PTB2	I2C0_SCL	UART0_RTS_b	FTM0_FLT1	ENET0_1588_TMR0	FTM0_FLT3			
G11	84	56	PTB3	HSADC0B_CH15/ CMP3_IN5	HSADC0B_CH15/ CMP3_IN5	PTB3	I2C0_SDA	UART0_CTS_b/ UART0_COL_b		ENET0_1588_TMR1	FTM0_FLT0			
G10	85	—	PTB4	ADC0_SE6b	ADC0_SE6b	PTB4			FLEXPWM1_X0	ENET0_1588_TMR2	FTM1_FLT0			
G9	86	—	PTB5	ADC0_SE7b	ADC0_SE7b	PTB5			FLEXPWM1_X1	ENET0_1588_TMR3	FTM2_FLT0			
F12	87	—	PTB6	HSADC1A_CH12	HSADC1A_CH12	PTB6	CAN2_TX		FLEXPWM1_X2				FB_AD23	
F11	88	—	PTB7	HSADC1A_CH13	HSADC1A_CH13	PTB7	CAN2_RX		FLEXPWM1_X3				FB_AD22	

144 MAP BGA	144 LQFP	100 LQFP	Pin Name	Default	ALT0	ALT1	ALT2	ALT3	ALT4	ALT5	ALT6	ALT7	ALT8	ALT9
F10	89	—	PTB8	DISABLED		PTB8		UART3_RTS_b					FB_AD21	
F9	90	57	PTB9	DISABLED		PTB9	SPI1_PCS1	UART3_CTS_b		ENET0_1588_TMR2			FB_AD20	
E12	91	58	PTB10	HSADC0B_CH6	HSADC0B_CH6	PTB10	SPI1_PCS0	UART3_RX		ENET0_1588_TMR3	FTM0_FLT1		FB_AD19	
E11	92	59	PTB11	HSADC0B_CH7	HSADC0B_CH7	PTB11	SPI1_SCK	UART3_TX			FTM0_FLT2		FB_AD18	
H7	93	60	VSS	VSS	VSS									
F5	94	61	VDD	VDD	VDD									
E10	95	62	PTB16	DISABLED		PTB16	SPI1_SOUT	UART0_RX	FTM_CLKIN2	CAN0_TX	EWM_IN	XB_IN5	FB_AD17	
E9	96	63	PTB17	DISABLED		PTB17	SPI1_SIN	UART0_TX	FTM_CLKIN1	CAN0_RX	EWM_OUT_b		FB_AD16	
D12	97	64	PTB18	DISABLED		PTB18	CAN0_TX	FTM2_CH0	FTM3_CH2	FLEXPWM_1_A1	FTM2_QD_PHA		FB_AD15	
D11	98	65	PTB19	DISABLED		PTB19	CAN0_RX	FTM2_CH1	FTM3_CH3	FLEXPWM_1_B1	FTM2_QD_PHB		FB_OE_b	
D10	99	66	PTB20	DISABLED		PTB20	SPI2_PCS0			FLEXPWM_0_X0	CMP0_OUT		FB_AD31	
D9	100	67	PTB21	DISABLED		PTB21	SPI2_SCK			FLEXPWM_0_X1	CMP1_OUT		FB_AD30	
C12	101	68	PTB22	DISABLED		PTB22	SPI2_SOUT			FLEXPWM_0_X2	CMP2_OUT		FB_AD29	
C11	102	69	PTB23	DISABLED		PTB23	SPI2_SIN	SPI0_PCS5		FLEXPWM_0_X3	CMP3_OUT		FB_AD28	
B12	103	70	PTC0	HSADC0B_CH8	HSADC0B_CH8	PTC0	SPI0_PCS4	PDB0_EXTRG			FTM0_FLT1	SPI0_PCS0	FB_AD14	
B11	104	71	PTC1/LLWU_P6	HSADC0B_CH9	HSADC0B_CH9	PTC1/LLWU_P6	SPI0_PCS3	UART1_RTS_b	FTM0_CH0	FLEXPWM_0_A3	XB_IN11		FB_AD13	
A12	105	72	PTC2	HSADC1B_CH10/ CMP1_IN0	HSADC1B_CH10/ CMP1_IN0	PTC2	SPI0_PCS2	UART1_CTS_b	FTM0_CH1	FLEXPWM_0_B3	XB_IN6		FB_AD12	
A11	106	73	PTC3/LLWU_P7	CMP1_IN1	CMP1_IN1	PTC3/LLWU_P7	SPI0_PCS1	UART1_RX	FTM0_CH2	CLKOUT	FTM3_FLT0			
H8	107	74	VSS	VSS	VSS									
—	108	75	VDD	VDD	VDD									
A9	109	76	PTC4/LLWU_P8	DISABLED		PTC4/LLWU_P8	SPI0_PCS0	UART1_TX	FTM0_CH3		CMP1_OUT		FB_AD11	
D8	110	77	PTC5/LLWU_P9	DISABLED		PTC5/LLWU_P9	SPI0_SCK	LPTMR0_ALT2	XB_IN2		CMP0_OUT	FTM0_CH2	FB_AD10	
C8	111	78	PTC6/LLWU_P10	CMP2_IN4/ CMP0_IN0	CMP2_IN4/ CMP0_IN0	PTC6/LLWU_P10	SPI0_SOUT	PDB0_EXTRG	XB_IN3	UART0_RX	XB_OUT6	I2C0_SCL	FB_AD9	
B8	112	79	PTC7	CMP3_IN4/ CMP0_IN1	CMP3_IN4/ CMP0_IN1	PTC7	SPI0_SIN		XB_IN4	UART0_TX	XB_OUT7	I2C0_SDA	FB_AD8	

144 MAP BGA	144 LQFP	100 LQFP	Pin Name	Default	ALT0	ALT1	ALT2	ALT3	ALT4	ALT5	ALT6	ALT7	ALT8	ALT9
A8	113	80	PTC8	HSADC1B_CH11/ CMP0_IN2	HSADC1B_CH11/ CMP0_IN2	PTC8		FTM3_CH4	FLEXPWM 1_A2				FB_AD7	
D7	114	81	PTC9	HSADC1B_CH12/ CMP0_IN3	HSADC1B_CH12/ CMP0_IN3	PTC9		FTM3_CH5	FLEXPWM 1_B2				FB_AD6	
C7	115	82	PTC10	HSADC1B_CH13	HSADC1B_CH13	PTC10	I2C1_SCL	FTM3_CH6	FLEXPWM 1_A3				FB_AD5	
B7	116	83	PTC11/ LLWU_P11	HSADC1B_CH14	HSADC1B_CH14	PTC11/ LLWU_P11	I2C1_SDA	FTM3_CH7	FLEXPWM 1_B3				FB_RW_b	
A7	117	84	PTC12	DISABLED		PTC12	CAN2_TX		FTM_CLKIN0	FLEXPWM 1_A1	FTM3_FLT0	SPI2_PCS1	FB_AD27	UART4_RTS_b
D6	118	85	PTC13	DISABLED		PTC13	CAN2_RX		FTM_CLKIN1	FLEXPWM 1_B1			FB_AD26	UART4_CTS_b
C6	119	86	PTC14	DISABLED		PTC14	I2C1_SCL	I2C0_SCL		FLEXPWM 1_A0			FB_AD25	UART4_RX
B6	120	87	PTC15	DISABLED		PTC15	I2C1_SDA	I2C0_SDA		FLEXPWM 1_B0			FB_AD24	UART4_TX
—	121	88	VSS	VSS	VSS									
—	122	89	VDD	VDD	VDD									
A6	123	90	PTC16	DISABLED		PTC16	CAN1_RX	UART3_RX	ENET0_1588_TMR0	FLEXPWM 1_A2			FB_CS5_b/ FB_TSI21/ FB_BE23_16_b	
D5	124	91	PTC17	DISABLED		PTC17	CAN1_TX	UART3_TX	ENET0_1588_TMR1	FLEXPWM 1_B2			FB_CS4_b/ FB_TSI20/ FB_BE31_24_b	
C5	125	92	PTC18	DISABLED		PTC18		UART3_RTS_b	ENET0_1588_TMR2	FLEXPWM 1_A3			FB_TBST_b/ FB_CS2_b/ FB_BE15_8_b	
B5	126	—	PTC19	DISABLED		PTC19		UART3_CTS_b	ENET0_1588_TMR3	FLEXPWM 1_B3			FB_CS3_b/ FB_BE7_0_b	FB_TA_b
A5	127	93	PTD0/ LLWU_P12	DISABLED		PTD0/ LLWU_P12	SPI0_PCS0	UART2_RTS_b	FTM3_CH0	FTM0_CH0	FLEXPWM 0_A0		FB_ALE/ FB_CS1_b/ FB_TS_b	FLEXPWM 1_A0
D4	128	94	PTD1	HSADC1A_CH11	HSADC1A_CH11	PTD1	SPI0_SCK	UART2_CTS_b	FTM3_CH1	FTM0_CH1	FLEXPWM 0_B0		FB_CS0_b	FLEXPWM 1_B0
C4	129	95	PTD2/ LLWU_P13	DISABLED		PTD2/ LLWU_P13	SPI0_SOUT	UART2_RX	FTM3_CH2	FTM0_CH2	FLEXPWM 0_A1	I2C0_SCL	FB_AD4	FLEXPWM 1_A1
B4	130	96	PTD3	DISABLED		PTD3	SPI0_SIN	UART2_TX	FTM3_CH3	FTM0_CH3	FLEXPWM 0_B1	I2C0_SDA	FB_AD3	FLEXPWM 1_B1
A4	131	97	PTD4/ LLWU_P14	DISABLED		PTD4/ LLWU_P14	SPI0_PCS1	UART0_RTS_b	FTM0_CH4	FLEXPWM 0_A2	EWM_IN	SPI1_PCS0	FB_AD2	
A3	132	98	PTD5	HSADC1A_CH8	HSADC1A_CH8	PTD5	SPI0_PCS2	UART0_CTS_b/	FTM0_CH5	FLEXPWM 0_B2	EWM_OUT_b	SPI1_SCK	FB_AD1	

144 MAP BGA	144 LQFP	100 LQFP	Pin Name	Default	ALT0	ALT1	ALT2	ALT3	ALT4	ALT5	ALT6	ALT7	ALT8	ALT9
								UART0_ COL_b						
A2	133	99	PTD6/ LLWU_P15	HSADC1A_ CH9	HSADC1A_ CH9	PTD6/ LLWU_P15	SPI0_PCS3	UART0_RX	FTM0_CH6	FTM1_CH0	FTM0_ FLT0	SPI1_ SOUT	FB_AD0	
M10	134	—	VSS	VSS	VSS									
F8	135	—	VDD	VDD	VDD									
A1	136	100	PTD7	DISABLED		PTD7		UART0_TX	FTM0_CH7	FTM1_CH1	FTM0_ FLT1	SPI1_SIN		
C9	137	—	PTD8/ LLWU_P24	DISABLED		PTD8/ LLWU_P24	I2C1_SCL	UART5_RX			FLEXPWM 0_A3		FB_A16	
B9	138	—	PTD9	DISABLED		PTD9	I2C1_SDA	UART5_TX			FLEXPWM 0_B3		FB_A17	
B3	139	—	PTD10	DISABLED		PTD10		UART5_ RTS_b			FLEXPWM 0_A2		FB_A18	
B2	140	—	PTD11/ LLWU_P25	DISABLED		PTD11/ LLWU_P25	SPI2_PCS0	UART5_ CTS_b			FLEXPWM 0_B2		FB_A19	
B1	141	—	PTD12	DISABLED		PTD12	SPI2_SCK	FTM3_ FLT0	XB_IN5	XB_OUT5	FLEXPWM 0_A1		FB_A20	
C3	142	—	PTD13	DISABLED		PTD13	SPI2_ SOUT		XB_IN7	XB_OUT7	FLEXPWM 0_B1		FB_A21	
C2	143	—	PTD14	DISABLED		PTD14	SPI2_SIN		XB_IN11	XB_OUT11	FLEXPWM 0_A0		FB_A22	
C1	144	—	PTD15	DISABLED		PTD15	SPI2_PCS1				FLEXPWM 0_B0		FB_A23	

11.3.2 KV5x Pinouts

The below figure shows the pinout diagram for the devices supported by this document. Many signals may be multiplexed onto a single pin. To determine what signals can be used on which pin, see the previous section.

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	
A	PTD7	PTD6/ LLWU_P15	PTD5	PTD4/ LLWU_P14	PTD0/ LLWU_P12	PTC16	PTC12	PTC8	PTC4/ LLWU_P8		PTC3/ LLWU_P7	PTC2	A
B	PTD12	PTD11/ LLWU_P25	PTD10	PTD3	PTC19	PTC15	PTC11/ LLWU_P11	PTC7	PTD9		PTC1/ LLWU_P6	PTC0	B
C	PTD15	PTD14	PTD13	PTD2/ LLWU_P13	PTC18	PTC14	PTC10	PTC6/ LLWU_P10	PTD8/ LLWU_P24		PTB23	PTB22	C
D	PTE2/ LLWU_P1	PTE1/ LLWU_P0	PTE0	PTD1	PTC17	PTC13	PTC9	PTC5/ LLWU_P9	PTB21	PTB20	PTB19	PTB18	D
E	PTE6/ LLWU_P16	PTE5	PTE4/ LLWU_P2	PTE3	VDD	VDD	VDD	VDD	PTB17	PTB16	PTB11	PTB10	E
F	PTE10/ LLWU_P18	PTE9/ LLWU_P17	PTE8	PTE7	VDD	VSS	VSS	VDD	PTB9	PTB8	PTB7	PTB6	F
G	PTE18/ LLWU_P20	PTE19	PTE12	PTE11	VREFH	VREFL	VSS	VSS	PTB5	PTB4	PTB3	PTB2	G
H	PTE16	PTE17/ LLWU_P19	VSS	PTE28	VDDA	VSSA	VSS	VSS	PTB1	PTB0/ LLWU_P5	PTA29	PTA28	H
J	HSADC0A_ CH6	HSADC0A_ CH7/ ADC0_SE4b	ADC0_SE8/ ADC0_DM0/ CMP1_IN2	PTE27	PTA0	PTA1	PTA6	PTA7	PTA13/ LLWU_P4	PTA27	PTA26	PTA25	J
K	PTE20	PTE21	ADC0_SE0/ ADC0_DP0/ CMP2_IN5	PTE26	PTE25/ LLWU_P21	PTA2	PTA3	PTA8	PTA12	PTA16	PTA17	PTA24	K
L	HSADC0A_ CH2/ HSADC1A_ CH2	HSADC0A_ CH3/ HSADC1A_ CH3	PTE30	HSADC0A_ CH12/ CMP0_IN4/ CMP2_IN3	PTE13	VDD	PTA4/ LLWU_P3	PTA9	PTA11/ LLWU_P23	PTA14	PTA15	RESET_b	L
M	HSADC0A_ CH10/ HSADC1B_ CH2	HSADC0A_ CH11/ HSADC1B_ CH3	PTE29	PTE24		PTE23	PTE22	PTA5	PTA10/ LLWU_P22	VSS	PTA19	PTA18	M
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	

Figure 11-2. 144 MAPBGA Pinout Diagram

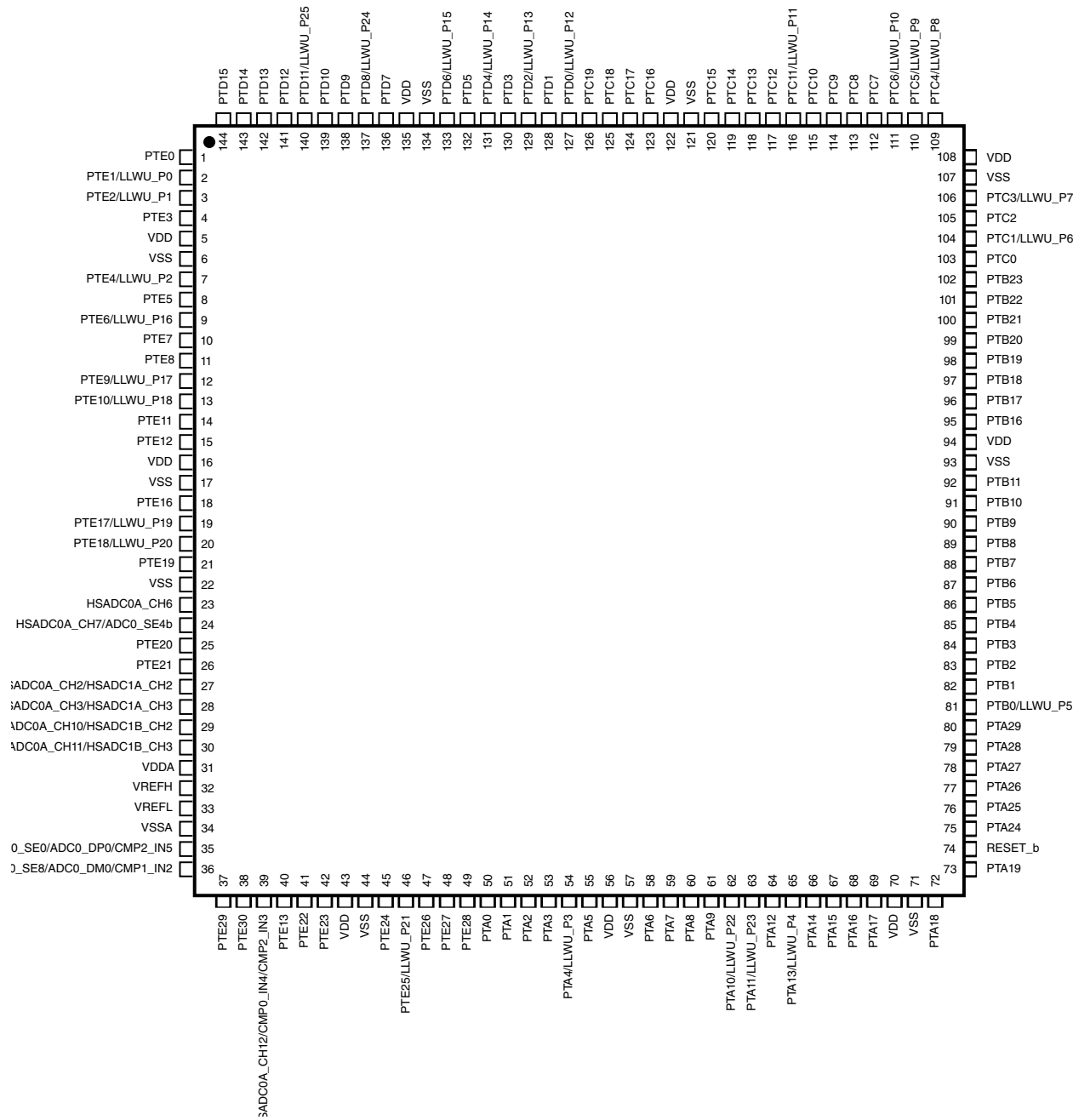


Figure 11-3. 144 LQFP Pinout Diagram

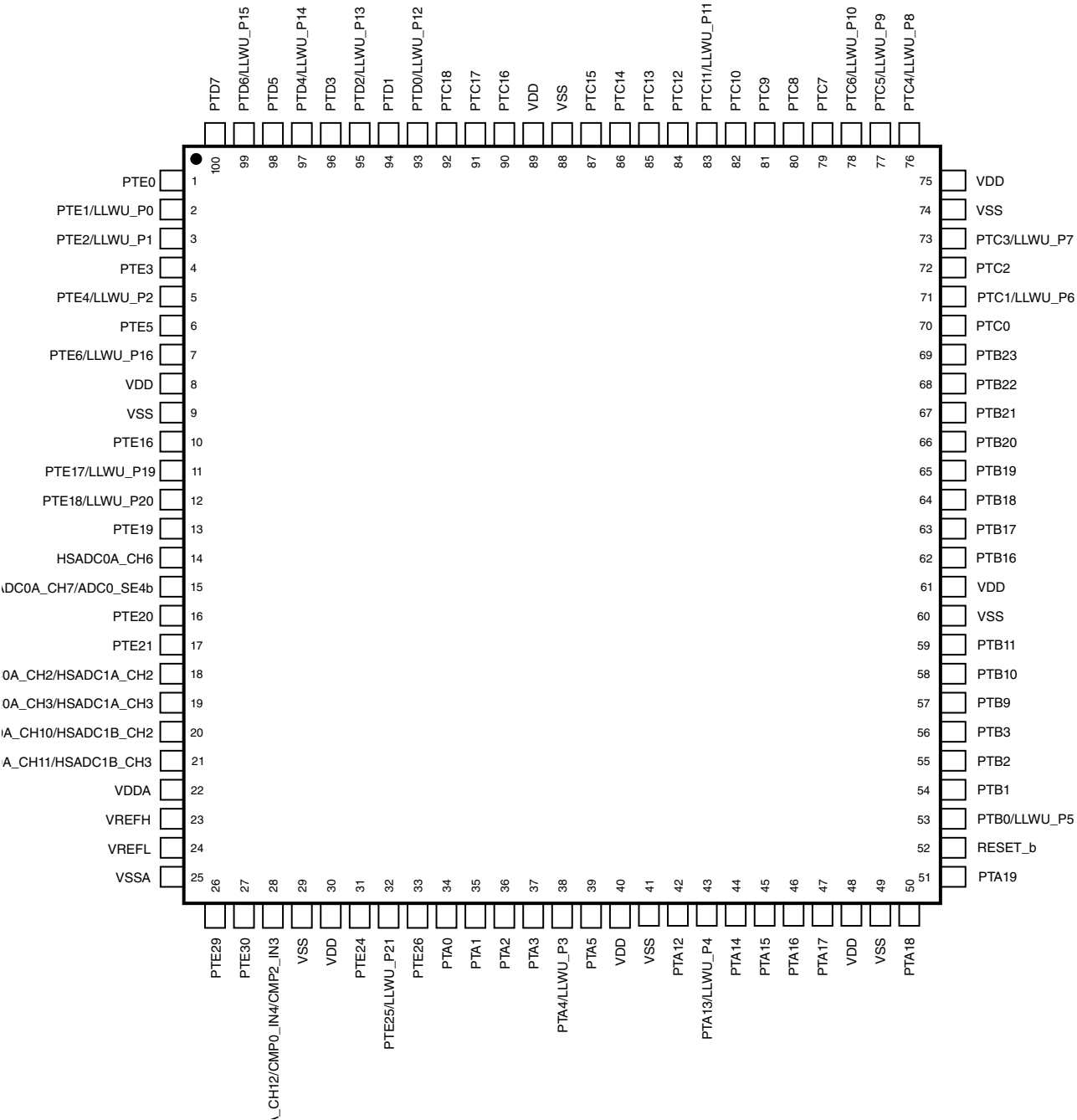


Figure 11-4. 100 LQFP Pinout Diagram

11.4 Module Signal Description Tables

The following sections correlate the chip-level signal name with the signal name used in the module's chapter. They also briefly describe the signal function and direction.

11.4.1 Core Modules

Table 11-3. JTAG Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
JTAG_TMS	JTAG_TMS/ SWD_DIO	JTAG Test Mode Selection	I/O
JTAG_TCLK	JTAG_TCLK/ SWD_CLK	JTAG Test Clock	I
JTAG_TDI	JTAG_TDI	JTAG Test Data Input	I
JTAG_TDO	JTAG_TDO/ TRACE_SWO	JTAG Test Data Output	O
JTAG_TRST	JTAG_TRST_b	JTAG Reset	I

Table 11-4. SWD Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
SWD_DIO	JTAG_TMS/ SWD_DIO	Serial Wire Data	I/O
SWD_CLK	JTAG_TCLK/ SWD_CLK	Serial Wire Clock	I

Table 11-5. TPIU Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
TRACE_CLKOUT	TRACECLK	Trace clock output from the ARM CoreSight debug block	O
TRACE_D[3:2]	TRACEDATA	Trace output data from the ARM CoreSight debug block used for 5-pin interface	O
TRACE_D[1:0]	TRACEDATA	Trace output data from the ARM CoreSight debug block used for both 5-pin and 3-pin interfaces	O
TRACE_SWO	JTAG_TDO/ TRACE_SWO	Trace output data from the ARM CoreSight debug block over a single pin	O

11.4.2 System Modules

Table 11-6. EWM Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
EWM_IN	EWM_in	EWM input for safety status of external safety circuits. The polarity of EWM_in is programmable using the EWM_CTRL[ASSIN] bit. The default polarity is active-low.	I
EWM_OUT	EWM_out	EWM reset out signal	O

11.4.3 Clock Modules

Table 11-7. OSC Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
EXTALO	EXTAL	External clock/Oscillator input	I
XTALO	XTAL	Oscillator output	O

11.4.4 Memories and Memory Interfaces

Table 11-8. FlexBus Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
CLKOUT	FB_CLK	FlexBus Clock Output	O
FB_A[29:16]	FB_A[29:16]	Address Bus When FlexBus is used in a multiplexed configuration, this bus is not used.	O
FB_AD[31:0] ¹	FB_AD31 - FB_AD0	This is the address and data bus, FB_AD. The number of byte lanes carrying the data is determined by the port size associated with the matching chip-select. The full 32-bit address is driven on the first clock of a bus cycle (address phase). After the first clock, the data is driven on the bus (data phase). During the data phase, the address is driven on the pins not used for data. For example, in 16-bit mode, the lower address is driven on FB_AD15–FB_AD0, and in 8-bit mode, the lower address is driven on FB_AD23–FB_AD0.	I/O
FB_CS[5:0] ²	FB_CS5–FB_CS0	General Purpose Chip-Selects—Indicate which external memory or peripheral is selected. A particular chip-select is asserted when the transfer address is within the external memory's or peripheral's address space, as defined in CSAR[BA] and CSMR[BAM].	O

Table continues on the next page...

**Table 11-8. FlexBus Signal Descriptions
(continued)**

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
$\overline{\text{FB_BE}}_{31_24_BLS7_0}$, $\overline{\text{FB_BE}}_{23_16_BLS15_8}$, $\overline{\text{FB_BE}}_{15_8_BLS23_16}$, $\overline{\text{FB_BE}}_{7_0_BLS31_24}$	$\overline{\text{FB_BE}}_{31_24}$ $\overline{\text{FB_BE}}_{23_16}$ $\overline{\text{FB_BE}}_{15_8}$ $\overline{\text{FB_BE}}_{7_0}$	<p>Byte Enables—Indicate that data is to be latched or driven onto a specific byte lane of the data bus. CSCR[BEM] determines if these signals are asserted on reads and writes or on writes only.</p> <p>For external SRAM or flash devices, the $\overline{\text{FB_BE}}$ outputs should be connected to individual byte strobe signals.</p>	O
$\overline{\text{FB_OE}}$	$\overline{\text{FB_OE}}$	Output Enable—Sent to the external memory or peripheral to enable a read transfer. This signal is asserted during read accesses only when a chip-select matches the current address decode.	O
$\overline{\text{FB_R_W}}$	$\overline{\text{FB_R_W}}$	Read/Write—Indicates whether the current bus operation is a read operation ($\overline{\text{FB_R_W}}$ high) or a write operation ($\overline{\text{FB_R_W}}$ low).	O
$\overline{\text{FB_TS}}/\overline{\text{FB_ALE}}$	$\overline{\text{FB_TS}}$	<p>Transfer Start—Indicates that the chip has begun a bus transaction and that the address and attributes are valid.</p> <p>An inverted $\overline{\text{FB_TS}}$ is available as an address latch enable ($\overline{\text{FB_ALE}}$), which indicates when the address is being driven on the $\overline{\text{FB_AD}}$ bus.</p> <p>$\overline{\text{FB_TS}}/\overline{\text{FB_ALE}}$ is asserted for one bus clock cycle.</p> <p>The chip can extend this signal until the first positive clock edge after $\overline{\text{FB_CS}}$ asserts. See CSCR[EXTS] and Extended Transfer Start/Address Latch Enable.</p>	O
$\overline{\text{FB_TA}}$ ⁴	$\overline{\text{FB_TA}}$	<p>Transfer Acknowledge—Indicates that the external data transfer is complete. When $\overline{\text{FB_TA}}$ is asserted during a read transfer, FlexBus latches the data and then terminates the transfer. When $\overline{\text{FB_TA}}$ is asserted during a write transfer, the transfer is terminated.</p> <p>If auto-acknowledge is disabled (CSCR[AA] = 0), the external memory or peripheral drives $\overline{\text{FB_TA}}$ to terminate the transfer. If auto-acknowledge is enabled (CSCR[AA] = 1), $\overline{\text{FB_TA}}$ is generated internally after a specified number of wait states, or the external memory or peripheral may assert external $\overline{\text{FB_TA}}$ before the wait-state countdown to terminate the transfer early. The chip deasserts $\overline{\text{FB_CS}}$ one cycle after the last $\overline{\text{FB_TA}}$ is asserted. During read transfers, the external memory or peripheral must continue to drive data until $\overline{\text{FB_TA}}$ is recognized. For write transfers, the chip continues driving data one clock cycle after $\overline{\text{FB_CS}}$ is deasserted.</p> <p>The number of wait states is determined by CSCR or the external $\overline{\text{FB_TA}}$ input. If the external $\overline{\text{FB_TA}}$ is used, the external memory or peripheral has complete control of the number of wait states.</p> <p>Note: External memory or peripherals should assert $\overline{\text{FB_TA}}$ only while the $\overline{\text{FB_CS}}$ signal to the external memory or peripheral is asserted.</p> <p>The CSPMCR register controls muxing of $\overline{\text{FB_TA}}$ with other signals. When the CSPMCR register does not allow fb_ta control, auto-acknowledge must be used (CSCR[AA] = 1'b1); otherwise the bus may hang.</p>	I

Table continues on the next page...

**Table 11-8. FlexBus Signal Descriptions
(continued)**

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
FB_TBST	FB_TBST	Transfer Burst—Indicates that a burst transfer is in progress as driven by the chip. A burst transfer can be 2 to 16 beats depending on FB_TSIZ1–FB_TSIZ0 and the port size. Note: When a burst transfer is in progress ($\overline{\text{FB_TBST}} = 0\text{b}$), the transfer size is 16 bytes ($\text{FB_TSIZ1} - \text{FB_TSIZ0} = 11\text{b}$), and the address is misaligned within the 16-byte boundary, the external memory or peripheral must be able to wrap around the address.	O

1. FB_AD[23:21] not available on 100-LQFP devices.
2. FB_CS3 not available on 100-LQFP devices.
3. FB_BE7_0_BLS31_24 not available on 100-LQFP devices.
4. FB_TA not available on 100-LQFP devices.

11.4.5 Analog

Table 11-9. ADC 0 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
ADC0_DP[3:0]	DADP3–DADP0	Differential Analog Channel Inputs	I
ADC0_DM[3:0]	DADM3–DADM0	Differential Analog Channel Inputs	I
ADC0_SEn	ADn	Single-Ended Analog Channel Inputs	I
VREFH	V _{REFSH}	Voltage Reference Select High	I
VREFL	V _{REFSL}	Voltage Reference Select Low	I
VDDA	V _{DDA}	Analog Power Supply	I
VSSA	V _{SSA}	Analog Ground	I

Table 11-10. CMP 0 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
CMP0_IN[5:0]	IN[5:0]	Analog voltage inputs	I
CMP0_OUT	CMPO	Comparator output	O

Table 11-11. CMP 1 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
CMP1_IN[5:0]	IN[5:0]	Analog voltage inputs	I
CMP1_OUT	CMPO	Comparator output	O

Table 11-12. CMP 2 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
CMP2_IN[5:0]	IN[5:0]	Analog voltage inputs	I
CMP2_OUT	CMPO	Comparator output	O

Table 11-13. DAC 0 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
DAC0_OUT	—	DAC output	O

Table 11-14. VREF Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
VREF_OUT	VREF_OUT	Internally-generated Voltage Reference output	O

11.4.6 Timer Modules

Table 11-15. FTM 0 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
FTM_CLKIN[1:0]	EXTCLK	External clock. FTM external clock can be selected to drive the FTM counter.	I
FTM0_CH[7:0]	CHn	FTM channel (n), where n can be 7-0	I/O
FTM0_FLT[3:0]	FAULTj	Fault input (j), where j can be 3-0	I

Table 11-16. FTM 1 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
FTM_CLKIN[1:0]	EXTCLK	External clock. FTM external clock can be selected to drive the FTM counter.	I
FTM1_CH[1:0]	CHn	FTM channel (n), where n can be 7-0	I/O
FTM1_FLT0	FAULTj	Fault input (j), where j can be 3-0	I
FTM1_QD_PHA	PHA	Quadrature decoder phase A input. Input pin associated with quadrature decoder phase A.	I
FTM1_QD_PHB	PHB	Quadrature decoder phase B input. Input pin associated with quadrature decoder phase B.	I

Table 11-17. FTM 2 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
FTM_CLKIN[1:0]	EXTCLK	External clock. FTM external clock can be selected to drive the FTM counter.	I
FTM2_CH[1:0]	CHn	FTM channel (n), where n can be 7-0	I/O
FTM2_FLT0	FAULTj	Fault input (j), where j can be 3-0	I
FTM2_QD_PHA	PHA	Quadrature decoder phase A input. Input pin associated with quadrature decoder phase A.	I
FTM2_QD_PHB	PHB	Quadrature decoder phase B input. Input pin associated with quadrature decoder phase B.	I

Table 11-18. FTM 3 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
FTM_CLKIN[1:0]	EXTCLK	External clock. FTM external clock can be selected to drive the FTM counter.	I
FTM3_CH[7:0]	CHn	FTM channel (n), where n can be 7-0	I/O
FTM3_FLT0	FAULTj	Fault input (j), where j can be 3-0	I

Table 11-19. PDB 0 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
PDB0_EXTRG	EXTRG	External Trigger Input Source If the PDB is enabled and external trigger input source is selected, a positive edge on the EXTRG signal resets and starts the counter.	I

Table 11-20. LPTMR 0 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
LPTMR0_ALT[:1]	LPTMR0_ALTn	Pulse Counter Input pin	I

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
ENET0_1588_TMR[3:0]	1588_TMRn	Capture/Compare block input/output event bus. When configured for capture and a rising edge is detected, the current timer value is latched and transferred into the corresponding ENET_TCCRn register for inspection by software.	I/O

Table continues on the next page...

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
		<p>When configured for compare, the corresponding signal 1588_TMRn is asserted for one cycle when the timer reaches the compare value programmed in ENET_TCCRn.</p> <p>An interrupt can be triggered if ENET_TCSRn[TIE] is set.</p> <p>A DMA request can be triggered if ENET_TCSRn[TDRE] is set.</p>	
ENET_1588_CLKIN	1588_TMR n	<p>Capture/Compare block input/output event bus.</p> <p>When configured for capture and a rising edge is detected, the current timer value is latched and transferred into the corresponding ENET_TCCRn register for inspection by software.</p> <p>When configured for compare, the corresponding signal 1588_TMRn is asserted for one cycle when the timer reaches the compare value programmed in ENET_TCCRn.</p> <p>An interrupt can be triggered if ENET_TCSRn[TIE] is set.</p> <p>A DMA request can be triggered if ENET_TCSRn[TDRE] is set.</p>	I/O

Table 11-21. ENC Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
XBARA_OUT44	PHA	Quadrature decoder input	Input
XBARA_OUT45	PHB	Quadrature decoder input	Input
XBARA_OUT46	INDEX	Refresh/reload input	Input
XBARA_OUT47	HOME	Home	Input
XBARA_OUT48	CAP/Trigger	Clear/snapshot	Input
XBARA_IN45	POSMATCH	Compare	Output

Table 11-22. PWM0 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
FLEXPWM0_A0	PWM0_A0	Channel output PWM or input capture A0	I/O
FLEXPWM0_B0	PWM0_B0	Channel output PWM or input capture B0	I/O
FLEXPWM0_X0	PWM0_X0	Auxiliary Channel output PWM or input capture X0	I/O
FLEXPWM0_A1	PWM0_A1	Channel output PWM or input capture A1	I/O
FLEXPWM0_B1	PWM0_B1	Channel output PWM or input capture B1	I/O
FLEXPWM0_X1	PWM0_X1	Auxiliary Channel output PWM or input capture X1	I/O
FLEXPWM0_A2	PWM0_A2	Channel output PWM or input capture A2	I/O
FLEXPWM0_B2	PWM0_B2	Channel output PWM or input capture B2	I/O
FLEXPWM0_X2	PWM0_X2	Auxiliary Channel output PWM or input capture X2	I/O
FLEXPWM0_A3	PWM0_A3	Channel output PWM or input capture A3	I/O
FLEXPWM0_B3	PWM0_B3	Channel output PWM or input capture B3	I/O
FLEXPWM0_X3	PWM0_X3	Auxiliary Channel output PWM or input capture X3	I/O

Table 11-23. PWM1 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
FLEXPWM1_A0	PWM1_A0	Channel output PWM or input capture A0	I/O
FLEXPWM1_B0	PWM1_B0	Channel output PWM or input capture B0	I/O
FLEXPWM1_X0	PWM1_X0	Auxiliary Channel output PWM or input capture X0	I/O
FLEXPWM1_A1	PWM1_A1	Channel output PWM or input capture A1	I/O
FLEXPWM1_B1	PWM1_B1	Channel output PWM or input capture B1	I/O
FLEXPWM1_X1	PWM1_X1	Auxiliary Channel output PWM or input capture X1	I/O
FLEXPWM1_A2	PWM1_A2	Channel output PWM or input capture A2	I/O
FLEXPWM1_B2	PWM1_B2	Channel output PWM or input capture B2	I/O
FLEXPWM1_X2	PWM1_X2	Auxiliary Channel output PWM or input capture X2	I/O
FLEXPWM1_A3	PWM1_A3	Channel output PWM or input capture A3	I/O
FLEXPWM1_B3	PWM1_B3	Channel output PWM or input capture B3	I/O
FLEXPWM1_X3	PWM1_X3	Auxiliary Channel output PWM or input capture X3	I/O

11.4.7 Communication Interfaces

Ethernet MII Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
MII0_COL	MII_COL	Asserted upon detection of a collision and remains asserted while the collision persists. This signal is not defined for full-duplex mode.	I
MII0_CRS	MII_CRS	Carrier sense. When asserted, indicates transmit or receive medium is not idle. In RMII mode, this signal is present on the RMII_CRS_DV pin.	I
MII0_MDC	MII_MDC	Output clock provides a timing reference to the PHY for data transfers on the MDIO signal.	O
MII0_MDIO	MII_MDIO	Transfers control information between the external PHY and the media-access controller. Data is synchronous to MDC. This signal is an input after reset.	I/O
MII0_RXCLK	MII_RXCLK	In MII mode, provides a timing reference for RXDV, RXD[3:0], and RXER.	I
MII0_RXDV	MII_RXDV	Asserting this input indicates the PHY has valid nibbles present on the MII. RXDV must remain asserted from the first recovered nibble of the frame through to the last nibble. Asserting RXDV must start no later than the SFD and exclude any EOF. In RMII mode, this pin also generates the CRS signal.	I
MII0_RXD[3:0]	MII_RXD[3:0]	Contains the Ethernet input data transferred from the PHY to the media-access controller when RXDV is asserted.	I
MII0_RXER	MII_RXER	When asserted with RXDV, indicates the PHY detects an error in the current frame.	I
MII0_TXCLK	MII_TXCLK	Input clock, which provides a timing reference for TXEN, TXD[3:0], and TXER.	I
MII0_TXD[3:0]	MII_TXD[3:0]	Serial output Ethernet data. Only valid during TXEN assertion.	O
MII0_TXEN	MII_TXEN	Indicates when valid nibbles are present on the MII. This signal is asserted with the	O

Table continues on the next page...

Module Signal Description Tables

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
		first nibble of a preamble and is deasserted before the first TXCLK following the final nibble of the frame.	
MII0_TXER	MII_TXER	When asserted for one or more clock cycles while TXEN is also asserted, PHY sends one or more illegal symbols.	O

Ethernet RMII Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
RMII0_MDC	RMII_MDC	Output clock provides a timing reference to the PHY for data transfers on the MDIO signal.	O
RMII0_MDIO	RMII_MDIO	Transfers control information between the external PHY and the media-access controller. Data is synchronous to MDC. This signal is an input after reset.	I/O
RMII0_CRS_DV	RMII_CRS_DV	Asserting this input indicates the PHY has valid nibbles present on the MII. RXDV must remain asserted from the first recovered nibble of the frame through to the last nibble. Asserting RXDV must start no later than the SFD and exclude any EOF. In RMII mode, this pin also generates the CRS signal.	I
RMII0_RXD[1:0]	RMII_RXD[1:0]	Contains the Ethernet input data transferred from the PHY to the media-access controller when RXDV is asserted.	I
RMII0_RXER	RMII_RXER	When asserted with RXDV, indicates the PHY detects an error in the current frame.	I
RMII0_TXD[1:0]	RMII_TXD[1:0]	Serial output Ethernet data. Only valid during TXEN assertion.	O
RMII0_TXEN	RMII_TXEN	Indicates when valid nibbles are present on the MII. This signal is asserted with the first nibble of a preamble and	O

Table continues on the next page...

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
		is deasserted before the first TXCLK following the final nibble of the frame.	
Internal OSCERCLK clock ¹	RMII_REF_CLK	In RMII mode, this signal is the reference clock for receive, transmit, and the control interface.	I

1. In RMII mode, the OSCERCLK clock is the clock source for ENET controller. See [Ethernet Clocking](#) for details.

Table 11-24. CAN 0 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
CAN0_RX	CAN Rx	CAN Receive Pin	Input
CAN0_TX	CAN Tx	CAN Transmit Pin	Output

Table 11-25. CAN 1 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
CAN1_RX	CAN Rx	CAN Receive Pin	Input
CAN1_TX	CAN Tx	CAN Transmit Pin	Output

Table 11-26. SPI 0 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
SPI0_PCS0	PCS0/ \overline{SS}	Peripheral Chip Select 0 (O)	I/O
SPI0_PCS[3:1]	PCS[1:3]	Peripheral Chip Selects 1–3	O
SPI0_PCS4	PCS4	Peripheral Chip Select 4	O
SPI0_PCS5	PCS5/ \overline{PCSS}	Peripheral Chip Select 5 /Peripheral Chip Select Strobe	O
SPI0_SIN	SIN	Serial Data In	I
SPI0_SOUT	SOUT	Serial Data Out	O
SPI0_SCK	SCK	Serial Clock (O)	I/O

Table 11-27. SPI 1 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
SPI1_PCS0	PCS0/ \overline{SS}	Peripheral Chip Select 0 (O)	I/O
SPI1_PCS[3:1]	PCS[1:3]	Peripheral Chip Selects 1–3	O
SPI1_SIN	SIN	Serial Data In	I
SPI1_SOUT	SOUT	Serial Data Out	O
SPI1_SCK	SCK	Serial Clock (O)	I/O

Table 11-28. I²C 0 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
I2C0_SCL	SCL	Bidirectional serial clock line of the I ² C system.	I/O
I2C0_SDA	SDA	Bidirectional serial data line of the I ² C system.	I/O

Table 11-29. I²C 1 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
I2C1_SCL	SCL	Bidirectional serial clock line of the I ² C system.	I/O
I2C1_SDA	SDA	Bidirectional serial data line of the I ² C system.	I/O

Table 11-30. UART 0 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
UART0_CTS	CTS	Clear to send	I
UART0_RTS	RTS	Request to send	O
UART0_TX	TXD	Transmit data	O
UART0_RX	RXD	Receive data	I

Table 11-31. UART 1 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
UART1_CTS	CTS	Clear to send	I
UART1_RTS	RTS	Request to send	O
UART1_TX	TXD	Transmit data	O
UART1_RX	RXD	Receive data	I

Table 11-32. UART 2 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
UART2_CTS	CTS	Clear to send	I
UART2_RTS	RTS	Request to send	O
UART2_TX	TXD	Transmit data	O
UART2_RX	RXD	Receive data	I

11.4.8 Human-Machine Interfaces (HMI)

Table 11-33. GPIO Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
PTA[31:0] ¹	PORTA31–PORTA0	General-purpose input/output	I/O
PTB[31:0] ¹	PORTB31–PORTB0	General-purpose input/output	I/O
PTC[31:0] ¹	PORTC31–PORTC0	General-purpose input/output	I/O
PTD[31:0] ¹	PORTD31–PORTD0	General-purpose input/output	I/O
PTE[31:0] ¹	PORTE31–PORTE0	General-purpose input/output	I/O

1. The available GPIO pins depends on the specific package. See the signal multiplexing section for which exact GPIO signals are available.



Chapter 12

Port Control and Interrupts (PORT)

12.1 Chip-specific PORT information

12.1.1 Digital filter registers

The DFER, DFCR, and DFWR registers are available only with PORTD. PortA, B, C, and E do not have these registers.

12.2 Introduction

12.3 Overview

The Port Control and Interrupt (PORT) module provides support for port control, digital filtering, and external interrupt functions.

Most functions can be configured independently for each pin in the 32-bit port and affect the pin regardless of its pin muxing state.

There is one instance of the PORT module for each port. Not all pins within each port are implemented on a specific device.

12.3.1 Features

The PORT module has the following features:

- Pin interrupt
 - Interrupt flag and enable registers for each pin
 - Support for edge sensitive (rising, falling, both) or level sensitive (low, high) configured per pin

- Support for interrupt or DMA request configured per pin
- Asynchronous wake-up in low-power modes
- Pin interrupt is functional in all digital pin muxing modes
- Peripheral trigger output (active high, low) configured per pin
- Digital input filter on selected pins
 - Digital input filter for each pin, usable by any digital peripheral muxed onto the pin
 - Individual enable or bypass control field per pin
 - Selectable clock source for digital input filter with a five bit resolution on filter size
 - Functional in all digital pin multiplexing modes
- Port control
 - Individual pull control fields with pullup, pulldown, and pull-disable support
 - Individual drive strength field supporting high and low drive strength
 - Individual slew rate field supporting fast and slow slew rates
 - Individual input passive filter field supporting enable and disable of the individual input passive filter
 - Individual open drain field supporting enable and disable of the individual open drain output
 - Individual mux control field supporting analog or pin disabled, GPIO, and up to six chip-specific digital functions
 - Pad configuration fields are functional in all digital pin muxing modes.

12.3.2 Modes of operation

12.3.2.1 Run mode

In Run mode, the PORT operates normally.

12.3.2.2 Wait mode

In Wait mode, PORT continues to operate normally and may be configured to exit the Low-Power mode if an enabled interrupt is detected. DMA requests are still generated during the Wait mode, but do not cause an exit from the Low-Power mode.

12.3.2.3 Stop mode

In Stop mode, the PORT can be configured to exit the Low-Power mode via an asynchronous wake-up signal if an enabled interrupt is detected.

In Stop mode, the digital input filters are bypassed unless they are configured to run from the LPO clock source.

12.3.2.4 Debug mode

In Debug mode, PORT operates normally.

12.4 External signal description

The table found here describes the PORT external signal.

Table 12-1. Signal properties

Name	Function	I/O	Reset	Pull
PORTx[31:0]	External interrupt	I/O	0	-

NOTE

Not all pins within each port are implemented on each device.

12.5 Detailed signal description

The table found here contains the detailed signal description for the PORT interface.

Table 12-2. PORT interface—detailed signal description

Signal	I/O	Description	
PORTx[31:0]	I/O	External interrupt.	
		State meaning	Asserted—pin is logic 1. Negated—pin is logic 0.
		Timing	Assertion—may occur at any time and can assert asynchronously to the system clock. Negation—may occur at any time and can assert asynchronously to the system clock.

12.6 Memory map and register definition

Any read or write access to the PORT memory space that is outside the valid memory map results in a bus error. All register accesses complete with zero wait states.

PORT memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4004_9000	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR0)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_9004	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR1)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_9008	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR2)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_900C	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR3)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_9010	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR4)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_9014	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR5)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_9018	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR6)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_901C	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR7)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_9020	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR8)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_9024	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR9)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_9028	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR10)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_902C	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR11)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_9030	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR12)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_9034	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR13)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_9038	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR14)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_903C	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR15)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_9040	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR16)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_9044	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR17)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_9048	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR18)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_904C	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR19)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_9050	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR20)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_9054	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR21)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_9058	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR22)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_905C	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR23)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_9060	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR24)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_9064	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR25)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_9068	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR26)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_906C	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR27)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_9070	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR28)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_9074	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR29)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_9078	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR30)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191

Table continues on the next page...

PORT memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4004_907C	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR31)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_9080	Global Pin Control Low Register (PORTA_GPCLR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	12.6.2/194
4004_9084	Global Pin Control High Register (PORTA_GPCHR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	12.6.3/194
4004_9088	Global Interrupt Control Low Register (PORTA_GICLR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	12.6.4/195
4004_908C	Global Interrupt Control High Register (PORTA_GICHR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	12.6.5/195
4004_90A0	Interrupt Status Flag Register (PORTA_ISFR)	32	w1c	0000_0000h	12.6.6/196
4004_90C0	Digital Filter Enable Register (PORTA_DFER)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	12.6.7/196
4004_90C4	Digital Filter Clock Register (PORTA_DFCR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	12.6.8/197
4004_90C8	Digital Filter Width Register (PORTA_DFWR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	12.6.9/197
4004_A000	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR0)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_A004	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR1)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_A008	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR2)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_A00C	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR3)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_A010	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR4)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_A014	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR5)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_A018	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR6)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_A01C	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR7)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_A020	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR8)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_A024	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR9)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_A028	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR10)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_A02C	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR11)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_A030	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR12)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_A034	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR13)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_A038	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR14)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_A03C	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR15)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_A040	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR16)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_A044	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR17)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_A048	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR18)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_A04C	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR19)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_A050	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR20)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_A054	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR21)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_A058	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR22)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191

Table continues on the next page...

PORT memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4004_A05C	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR23)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_A060	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR24)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_A064	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR25)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_A068	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR26)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_A06C	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR27)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_A070	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR28)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_A074	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR29)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_A078	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR30)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_A07C	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR31)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_A080	Global Pin Control Low Register (PORTB_GPCLR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	12.6.2/194
4004_A084	Global Pin Control High Register (PORTB_GPCHR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	12.6.3/194
4004_A088	Global Interrupt Control Low Register (PORTB_GICLR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	12.6.4/195
4004_A08C	Global Interrupt Control High Register (PORTB_GICHR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	12.6.5/195
4004_A0A0	Interrupt Status Flag Register (PORTB_ISFR)	32	w1c	0000_0000h	12.6.6/196
4004_A0C0	Digital Filter Enable Register (PORTB_DFER)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	12.6.7/196
4004_A0C4	Digital Filter Clock Register (PORTB_DFCL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	12.6.8/197
4004_A0C8	Digital Filter Width Register (PORTB_DFWR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	12.6.9/197
4004_B000	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR0)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_B004	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR1)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_B008	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR2)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_B00C	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR3)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_B010	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR4)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_B014	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR5)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_B018	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR6)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_B01C	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR7)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_B020	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR8)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_B024	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR9)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_B028	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR10)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_B02C	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR11)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_B030	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR12)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_B034	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR13)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_B038	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR14)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191

Table continues on the next page...

PORT memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/page
4004_B03C	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR15)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_B040	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR16)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_B044	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR17)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_B048	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR18)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_B04C	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR19)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_B050	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR20)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_B054	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR21)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_B058	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR22)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_B05C	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR23)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_B060	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR24)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_B064	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR25)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_B068	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR26)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_B06C	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR27)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_B070	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR28)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_B074	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR29)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_B078	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR30)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_B07C	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR31)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_B080	Global Pin Control Low Register (PORTC_GPCLR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	12.6.2/194
4004_B084	Global Pin Control High Register (PORTC_GPCHR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	12.6.3/194
4004_B088	Global Interrupt Control Low Register (PORTC_GICLR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	12.6.4/195
4004_B08C	Global Interrupt Control High Register (PORTC_GICHR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	12.6.5/195
4004_B0A0	Interrupt Status Flag Register (PORTC_ISFR)	32	w1c	0000_0000h	12.6.6/196
4004_B0C0	Digital Filter Enable Register (PORTC_DFER)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	12.6.7/196
4004_B0C4	Digital Filter Clock Register (PORTC_DFCL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	12.6.8/197
4004_B0C8	Digital Filter Width Register (PORTC_DFWR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	12.6.9/197
4004_C000	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR0)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_C004	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR1)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_C008	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR2)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_C00C	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR3)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_C010	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR4)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_C014	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR5)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_C018	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR6)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191

Table continues on the next page...

PORT memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4004_C01C	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR7)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_C020	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR8)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_C024	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR9)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_C028	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR10)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_C02C	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR11)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_C030	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR12)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_C034	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR13)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_C038	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR14)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_C03C	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR15)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_C040	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR16)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_C044	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR17)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_C048	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR18)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_C04C	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR19)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_C050	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR20)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_C054	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR21)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_C058	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR22)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_C05C	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR23)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_C060	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR24)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_C064	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR25)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_C068	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR26)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_C06C	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR27)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_C070	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR28)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_C074	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR29)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_C078	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR30)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_C07C	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR31)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_C080	Global Pin Control Low Register (PORTD_GPCLR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	12.6.2/194
4004_C084	Global Pin Control High Register (PORTD_GPCHR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	12.6.3/194
4004_C088	Global Interrupt Control Low Register (PORTD_GICLR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	12.6.4/195
4004_C08C	Global Interrupt Control High Register (PORTD_GICHR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	12.6.5/195
4004_C0A0	Interrupt Status Flag Register (PORTD_ISFR)	32	w1c	0000_0000h	12.6.6/196
4004_C0C0	Digital Filter Enable Register (PORTD_DFER)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	12.6.7/196
4004_C0C4	Digital Filter Clock Register (PORTD_DFCR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	12.6.8/197

Table continues on the next page...

PORT memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4004_C0C8	Digital Filter Width Register (PORTD_DFWR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	12.6.9/197
4004_D000	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR0)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_D004	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR1)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_D008	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR2)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_D00C	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR3)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_D010	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR4)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_D014	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR5)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_D018	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR6)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_D01C	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR7)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_D020	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR8)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_D024	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR9)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_D028	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR10)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_D02C	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR11)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_D030	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR12)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_D034	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR13)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_D038	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR14)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_D03C	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR15)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_D040	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR16)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_D044	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR17)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_D048	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR18)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_D04C	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR19)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_D050	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR20)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_D054	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR21)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_D058	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR22)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_D05C	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR23)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_D060	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR24)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_D064	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR25)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_D068	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR26)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_D06C	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR27)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_D070	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR28)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_D074	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR29)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_D078	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR30)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_D07C	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR31)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/191
4004_D080	Global Pin Control Low Register (PORTE_GPCLR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	12.6.2/194
4004_D084	Global Pin Control High Register (PORTE_GPCHR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	12.6.3/194

Table continues on the next page...

PORT memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4004_D088	Global Interrupt Control Low Register (PORTE_GICLR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	12.6.4/195
4004_D08C	Global Interrupt Control High Register (PORTE_GICHR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	12.6.5/195
4004_D0A0	Interrupt Status Flag Register (PORTE_ISFR)	32	w1c	0000_0000h	12.6.6/196
4004_D0C0	Digital Filter Enable Register (PORTE_DFER)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	12.6.7/196
4004_D0C4	Digital Filter Clock Register (PORTE_DFCR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	12.6.8/197
4004_D0C8	Digital Filter Width Register (PORTE_DFWR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	12.6.9/197

12.6.1 Pin Control Register n (PORTx_PCRn)

NOTE

See the Signal Multiplexing and Pin Assignment chapter for the reset value of this device.

See the GPIO Configuration section for details on the available functions for each pin.

Do not modify pin configuration registers associated with pins not available in your selected package. All unbonded pins not available in your package will default to DISABLE state for lowest power consumption.

Address: Base address + 0h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 31d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	
R	0								ISF	0				IRQC			
W									w1c								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	LK	0			MUX				0	DSE	ODE	PFE	0	SRE	PE	PS
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	*	*	*	*	0	*	0	*	0	*	*	*

* Notes:

- MUX field: Varies by port. See Signal Multiplexing and Signal Descriptions chapter for reset values per port.
- DSE field: Varies by port. See the Signal Multiplexing and Signal Descriptions chapter for reset values per port.
- PFE field: Varies by port. See Signal Multiplexing and Signal Descriptions chapter for reset values per port.
- SRE field: Varies by port. See Signal Multiplexing and Signal Descriptions chapter for reset values per port.
- PE field: Varies by port. See Signal Multiplexing and Signal Descriptions chapter for reset values per port.
- PS field: Varies by port. See Signal Multiplexing and Signal Descriptions chapter for reset values per port.

PORTx_PCRn field descriptions

Field	Description
31–25 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
24 ISF	Interrupt Status Flag The pin interrupt configuration is valid in all digital pin muxing modes.

Table continues on the next page...

PORTx_PCRn field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>0 Configured interrupt is not detected.</p> <p>1 Configured interrupt is detected. If the pin is configured to generate a DMA request, then the corresponding flag will be cleared automatically at the completion of the requested DMA transfer. Otherwise, the flag remains set until a logic 1 is written to the flag. If the pin is configured for a level sensitive interrupt and the pin remains asserted, then the flag is set again immediately after it is cleared.</p>
23–20 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
19–16 IRQC	<p>Interrupt Configuration</p> <p>The pin interrupt configuration is valid in all digital pin muxing modes. The corresponding pin is configured to generate interrupt/DMA request as follows:</p> <p>0000 Interrupt Status Flag (ISF) is disabled.</p> <p>0001 ISF flag and DMA request on rising edge.</p> <p>0010 ISF flag and DMA request on falling edge.</p> <p>0011 ISF flag and DMA request on either edge.</p> <p>0100 Reserved.</p> <p>0101 Flag sets on rising edge.</p> <p>0110 Flag sets on falling edge.</p> <p>0111 Flag sets on either edge.</p> <p>1000 ISF flag and Interrupt when logic 0.</p> <p>1001 ISF flag and Interrupt on rising-edge.</p> <p>1010 ISF flag and Interrupt on falling-edge.</p> <p>1011 ISF flag and Interrupt on either edge.</p> <p>1100 ISF flag and Interrupt when logic 1.</p> <p>1101 Enable active high trigger output, flag is disabled. [The trigger output goes to the trigger mux, which allows pins to trigger other peripherals (configurable polarity; 1 pin per port; if multiple pins are configured, then they are ORed together to create the trigger)]</p> <p>1110 Enable active low trigger output, flag is disabled.</p> <p>1111 Reserved.</p>
15 LK	<p>Lock Register</p> <p>0 Pin Control Register fields [15:0] are not locked.</p> <p>1 Pin Control Register fields [15:0] are locked and cannot be updated until the next system reset.</p>
14–12 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
11–8 MUX	<p>Pin Mux Control</p> <p>Not all pins support all pin muxing slots. Unimplemented pin muxing slots are reserved and may result in configuring the pin for a different pin muxing slot.</p> <p>The corresponding pin is configured in the following pin muxing slot as follows:</p> <p>000 Pin disabled (Alternative 0) (analog).</p> <p>001 Alternative 1 (GPIO).</p> <p>010 Alternative 2 (chip-specific).</p> <p>011 Alternative 3 (chip-specific).</p> <p>100 Alternative 4 (chip-specific).</p> <p>101 Alternative 5 (chip-specific).</p>

Table continues on the next page...

PORTx_PCRn field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	110 Alternative 6 (chip-specific). 111 Alternative 7 (chip-specific).
7 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
6 DSE	Drive Strength Enable Drive strength configuration is valid in all digital pin muxing modes. 0 Low drive strength is configured on the corresponding pin, if pin is configured as a digital output. 1 High drive strength is configured on the corresponding pin, if pin is configured as a digital output.
5 ODE	Open Drain Enable Open drain configuration is valid in all digital pin muxing modes. 0 Open drain output is disabled on the corresponding pin. 1 Open drain output is enabled on the corresponding pin, if the pin is configured as a digital output.
4 PFE	Passive Filter Enable Passive filter configuration is valid in all digital pin muxing modes. 0 Passive input filter is disabled on the corresponding pin. 1 Passive input filter is enabled on the corresponding pin, if the pin is configured as a digital input. Refer to the device data sheet for filter characteristics.
3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 SRE	Slew Rate Enable Slew rate configuration is valid in all digital pin muxing modes. 0 Fast slew rate is configured on the corresponding pin, if the pin is configured as a digital output. 1 Slow slew rate is configured on the corresponding pin, if the pin is configured as a digital output.
1 PE	Pull Enable Pull configuration is valid in all digital pin muxing modes. 0 Internal pullup or pulldown resistor is not enabled on the corresponding pin. 1 Internal pullup or pulldown resistor is enabled on the corresponding pin, if the pin is configured as a digital input.
0 PS	Pull Select Pull configuration is valid in all digital pin muxing modes. 0 Internal pulldown resistor is enabled on the corresponding pin, if the corresponding PE field is set. 1 Internal pullup resistor is enabled on the corresponding pin, if the corresponding PE field is set.

12.6.2 Global Pin Control Low Register (PORTx_GPCLR)

Only 32-bit writes are supported to this register.

Address: Base address + 80h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																0															
W	GPWE																GPWD															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PORTx_GPCLR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 GPWE	Global Pin Write Enable Selects which Pin Control Registers (15 through 0) bits [15:0] update with the value in GPWD. If a selected Pin Control Register is locked then the write to that register is ignored. 0 Corresponding Pin Control Register is not updated with the value in GPWD. 1 Corresponding Pin Control Register is updated with the value in GPWD.
GPWD	Global Pin Write Data Write value that is written to all Pin Control Registers bits [15:0] that are selected by GPWE.

12.6.3 Global Pin Control High Register (PORTx_GPCHR)

Only 32-bit writes are supported to this register.

Address: Base address + 84h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																0															
W	GPWE																GPWD															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PORTx_GPCHR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 GPWE	Global Pin Write Enable Selects which Pin Control Registers (31 through 16) bits [15:0] update with the value in GPWD. If a selected Pin Control Register is locked then the write to that register is ignored. 0 Corresponding Pin Control Register is not updated with the value in GPWD. 1 Corresponding Pin Control Register is updated with the value in GPWD.
GPWD	Global Pin Write Data Write value that is written to all Pin Control Registers bits [15:0] that are selected by GPWE.

12.6.4 Global Interrupt Control Low Register (PORTx_GICLR)

Only 32-bit writes are supported to this register.

Address: Base address + 88h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																0															
W	GIWD																GIWE															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PORTx_GICLR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 GIWD	Global Interrupt Write Data Write value that is written to all Pin Control Registers bits [31:16] that are selected by GIWE.
GIWE	Global Interrupt Write Enable Selects which Pin Control Registers (15 through 0) bits [31:16] update with the value in GIWD. 0 Corresponding Pin Control Register is not updated with the value in GPWD. 1 Corresponding Pin Control Register is updated with the value in GPWD.

12.6.5 Global Interrupt Control High Register (PORTx_GICHR)

Only 32-bit writes are supported to this register.

Address: Base address + 8Ch offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																0															
W	GIWD																GIWE															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

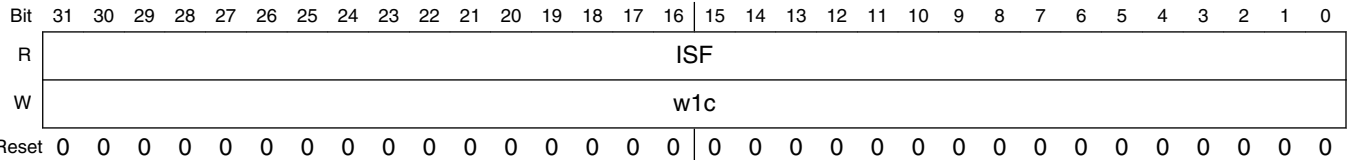
PORTx_GICHR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 GIWD	Global Interrupt Write Data Write value that is written to all Pin Control Registers bits [31:16] that are selected by GIWE.
GIWE	Global Interrupt Write Enable Selects which Pin Control Registers (31 through 16) bits [31:16] update with the value in GIWD. 0 Corresponding Pin Control Register is not updated with the value in GPWD. 1 Corresponding Pin Control Register is updated with the value in GPWD.

12.6.6 Interrupt Status Flag Register (PORTx_ISFR)

The pin interrupt configuration is valid in all digital pin muxing modes. The Interrupt Status Flag for each pin is also visible in the corresponding Pin Control Register, and each flag can be cleared in either location.

Address: Base address + A0h offset



PORTx_ISFR field descriptions

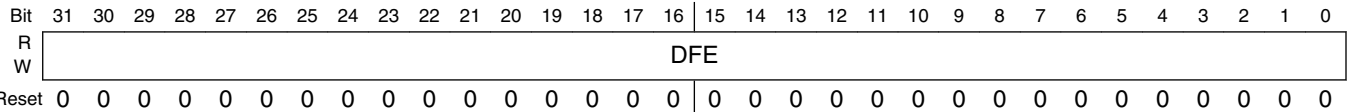
Field	Description
ISF	<p>Interrupt Status Flag</p> <p>Each bit in the field indicates the detection of the configured interrupt of the same number as the field.</p> <p>0 Configured interrupt is not detected.</p> <p>1 Configured interrupt is detected. If the pin is configured to generate a DMA request, then the corresponding flag will be cleared automatically at the completion of the requested DMA transfer. Otherwise, the flag remains set until a logic 1 is written to the flag. If the pin is configured for a level sensitive interrupt and the pin remains asserted, then the flag is set again immediately after it is cleared.</p>

12.6.7 Digital Filter Enable Register (PORTx_DFER)

The corresponding bit is read only for pins that do not support a digital filter. Refer to the Chapter of Signal Multiplexing and Signal Descriptions for the pins that support digital filter.

The digital filter configuration is valid in all digital pin muxing modes.

Address: Base address + C0h offset



PORTx_DFER field descriptions

Field	Description
DFE	Digital Filter Enable

PORTx_DFER field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	The digital filter configuration is valid in all digital pin muxing modes. The output of each digital filter is reset to zero at system reset and whenever the digital filter is disabled. Each bit in the field enables the digital filter of the same number as the field.
0	Digital filter is disabled on the corresponding pin and output of the digital filter is reset to zero.
1	Digital filter is enabled on the corresponding pin, if the pin is configured as a digital input.

12.6.8 Digital Filter Clock Register (PORTx_DFRCR)

This register is read only for ports that do not support a digital filter.

The digital filter configuration is valid in all digital pin muxing modes.

Address: Base address + C4h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0															CS
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PORTx_DFRCR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–1 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
0 CS	Clock Source The digital filter configuration is valid in all digital pin muxing modes. Configures the clock source for the digital input filters. Changing the filter clock source must be done only when all digital filters are disabled. 0 Digital filters are clocked by the bus clock. 1 Digital filters are clocked by the LPO clock.

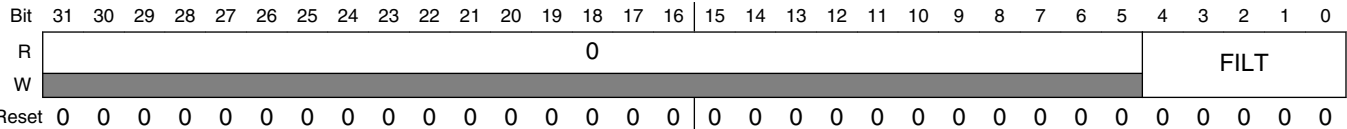
12.6.9 Digital Filter Width Register (PORTx_DFWR)

This register is read only for ports that do not support a digital filter.

The digital filter configuration is valid in all digital pin muxing modes.

functional description

Address: Base address + C8h offset



PORTx_DFWR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
FILT	Filter Length The digital filter configuration is valid in all digital pin muxing modes. Configures the maximum size of the glitches, in clock cycles, that the digital filter absorbs for the enabled digital filters. Glitches that are longer than this register setting will pass through the digital filter, and glitches that are equal to or less than this register setting are filtered. Changing the filter length must be done only after all filters are disabled.

12.7 Functional description

12.7.1 Pin control

Each port pin has a corresponding Pin Control register, PORT_PCRn, associated with it.

The upper half of the Pin Control register configures the pin's capability to either interrupt the CPU or request a DMA transfer, on a rising/falling edge or both edges as well as a logic level occurring on the port pin. It also includes a flag to indicate that an interrupt has occurred. The LK bit (bit 15 of Pin Control Register PCRn) locks the lower 16 bits of each Pin Control register and blocks any writes to that register until the next system reset.

The lower half of the Pin Control register configures the following functions for each pin within the 32-bit port.

- Pullup or pulldown enable
- Drive strength and slew rate configuration
- Open drain enable
- Passive input filter enable
- Pin Muxing mode

The functions apply across all digital pin muxing modes and individual peripherals do not override the configuration in the Pin Control register. For example, if an I²C function is enabled on a pin, that does not override the pullup or open drain configuration for that pin.

When the Pin Muxing mode is configured for analog or is disabled, all the digital functions on that pin are disabled. This includes the pullup and pulldown enables, output buffer enable, input buffer enable, and passive filter enable.

A lock field also exists that allows the configuration for each pin to be locked until the next system reset. When locked, writes to the lower half of that pin control register are ignored, although a bus error is not generated on an attempted write to a locked register.

The configuration of each Pin Control register is retained when the PORT module is disabled.

Whenever a pin is configured in any digital pin muxing mode, the input buffer for that pin is enabled allowing the pin state to be read via the corresponding GPIO Port Data Input Register (GPIO_PDIR) or allowing a pin interrupt or DMA request to be generated. If a pin is ever floating when its input buffer is enabled, then this can cause an increase in power consumption and must be avoided. A pin can be floating due to an input pin that is not connected or an output pin that has tri-stated (output buffer is disabled).

Enabling the internal pull resistor (or implementing an external pull resistor) will ensure a pin does not float when its input buffer is enabled; note that the internal pull resistor is automatically disabled whenever the output buffer is enabled allowing the Pull Enable bit to remain set. Configuring the Pin Muxing mode to disabled or analog will disable the pin's input buffer and results in the lowest power consumption.

12.7.2 Global pin control

The two global pin control registers allow a single register write to update the lower half of the pin control register on up to 16 pins, all with the same value. Registers that are locked cannot be written using the global pin control registers.

The global pin control registers are designed to enable software to quickly configure multiple pins within the one port for the same peripheral function. However, the interrupt functions cannot be configured using the global pin control registers.

The global pin control registers are write-only registers, that always read as 0.

12.7.3 Global interrupt control

The two global interrupt control registers allow a single register write to update the upper half of the pin control register on up to 16 pins, all with the same value.

The global interrupt control registers are designed to enable software to quickly configure multiple pins within the one port for the same interrupt configuration. However, the pin control functions cannot be configured using the global interrupt control registers.

The global interrupt control registers are write-only registers and always read as 0.

12.7.4 External interrupts

The external interrupt capability of the PORT module is available in all digital pin muxing modes provided the PORT module is enabled.

Each pin can be individually configured for any of the following external interrupt modes:

- Interrupt disabled, default out of reset
- Rising edge flag (for software polling)
- Falling edge flag (for software polling)
- Rising and falling edge flag (for software polling)
- Active high level peripheral trigger (status flag disabled)
- Active low level peripheral trigger (status flag disabled)
- Active high level sensitive interrupt
- Active low level sensitive interrupt
- Rising edge sensitive interrupt
- Falling edge sensitive interrupt
- Rising and falling edge sensitive interrupt
- Rising edge sensitive DMA request
- Falling edge sensitive DMA request
- Rising and falling edge sensitive DMA request

The interrupt status flag is set when the configured edge or level is detected on the pin or at the output of the digital input filter, if the digital input digital filter is enabled. When not in Stop mode, the input is first synchronized to the bus clock to detect the configured level or edge transition.

The PORT module generates a single interrupt that asserts when the interrupt status flag is set for any enabled interrupt for that port. The interrupt negates after the interrupt status flags for all enabled interrupts have been cleared by writing a logic 1 to the ISF flag in either the PORT_ISFR or PORT_PCRn registers.

The PORT module generates a single DMA request that asserts when the interrupt status flag is set for any enabled DMA request in that port. The DMA request negates after the DMA transfer is completed, because that clears the interrupt status flags for all enabled DMA requests.

During Stop mode, the interrupt status flag for any enabled interrupt is asynchronously set if the required level or edge is detected. This also generates an asynchronous wake-up signal to exit the Low-Power mode.

The PORT module generates a single peripheral trigger output that asserts if any pin configured for active high trigger is logic one, or any pin triggered for active low trigger is logic zero. The peripheral trigger output asynchronously updates from the value on the configured pins or at the output of the digital input filter, if the digital input digital filter is enabled.

12.7.5 Digital filter

The digital filter capabilities of the PORT module are available in all digital Pin Muxing modes if the PORT module is enabled.

The clock used for all digital filters within one port can be configured between the bus clock or the LPO clock. This selection must be changed only when all digital filters for that port are disabled. If the digital filters for a port are configured to use the bus clock, then the digital filters are bypassed for the duration of Stop mode. While the digital filters are bypassed, the output of each digital filter always equals the input pin, but the internal state of the digital filters remains static and does not update due to any change on the input pin.

The filter width in clock size is the same for all enabled digital filters within one port and must be changed only when all digital filters for that port are disabled.

The output of each digital filter is logic zero after system reset and whenever a digital filter is disabled. After a digital filter is enabled, the input is synchronized to the filter clock, either the bus clock or the LPO clock. If the synchronized input and the output of the digital filter remain different for a number of filter clock cycles equal to the filter width register configuration, then the output of the digital filter updates to equal the synchronized filter input.

The minimum latency through a digital filter equals two or three filter clock cycles plus the filter width configuration register.



Chapter 13

System Integration Module (SIM)

13.1 Introduction

The System Integration Module (SIM) provides system control and chip configuration registers.

13.1.1 Features

Features of the SIM include:

- System clocking configuration
 - System clock divide values
 - Architectural clock gating control
- Peripheral clock source selection
- Flash and system RAM size configuration
- FlexTimer external clock, hardware trigger, and fault source selection
- UART0 and UART1 receive/transmit source selection/configuration
- Small Regulator configuration
- HSADC0/1 and ADC0 hardware triggers, and stop mode configuration
- Miscellaneous configuration for DAC, EWM, CMP and XBAR

13.2 Memory map and register definition

The SIM module contains many fields for selecting the clock source and dividers for various module clocks. See the [Clock Distribution](#) chapter for more information, including block diagrams and clock definitions.

NOTE

The SIM registers can be written only in supervisor mode. In user mode, write accesses are blocked and will result in a bus error.

NOTE

The SIM_SOPT1 register is located at a different base address than the other SIM registers.

SIM memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4004_7000	System Options Register 1 (SIM_SOPT1)	32	R/W	See section	13.2.1/205
4004_8004	System Options Register 2 (SIM_SOPT2)	32	R/W	0000_1000h	13.2.2/206
4004_800C	System Options Register 4 (SIM_SOPT4)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	13.2.3/208
4004_8010	System Options Register 5 (SIM_SOPT5)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	13.2.4/211
4004_8018	System Options Register 7 (SIM_SOPT7)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	13.2.5/212
4004_801C	System Options Register 8 (SIM_SOPT8)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	13.2.6/215
4004_8020	System Options Register 9 (SIM_SOPT9)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	13.2.7/218
4004_8024	System Device Identification Register (SIM_SDID)	32	R	See section	13.2.8/220
4004_8028	System Clock Gating Control Register 1 (SIM_SCGC1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	13.2.9/222
4004_802C	System Clock Gating Control Register 2 (SIM_SCGC2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	13.2.10/223
4004_8030	System Clock Gating Control Register 3 (SIM_SCGC3)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	13.2.11/224
4004_8034	System Clock Gating Control Register 4 (SIM_SCGC4)	32	R/W	F000_0030h	13.2.12/225
4004_8038	System Clock Gating Control Register 5 (SIM_SCGC5)	32	R/W	0004_0182h	13.2.13/227
4004_803C	System Clock Gating Control Register 6 (SIM_SCGC6)	32	R/W	See section	13.2.14/229
4004_8040	System Clock Gating Control Register 7 (SIM_SCGC7)	32	R/W	See section	13.2.15/232
4004_8044	System Clock Divider Register 1 (SIM_CLKDIV1)	32	R/W	See section	13.2.16/233
4004_804C	Flash Configuration Register 1 (SIM_FCFG1)	32	R/W	See section	13.2.17/236
4004_8050	Flash Configuration Register 2 (SIM_FCFG2)	32	R	See section	13.2.18/237
4004_8054	Unique Identification Register High (SIM_UIDH)	32	R	See section	13.2.19/238
4004_8058	Unique Identification Register Mid-High (SIM_UIDMH)	32	R	See section	13.2.20/238

Table continues on the next page...

SIM memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/page
4004_805C	Unique Identification Register Mid Low (SIM_UIDML)	32	R	See section	13.2.21/239
4004_8060	Unique Identification Register Low (SIM_UIDL)	32	R	See section	13.2.22/239
4004_8068	System Clock Divider Register 4 (SIM_CLKDIV4)	32	R/W	See section	13.2.23/240
4004_806C	Miscellaneous Control Register 0 (SIM_MISCTRL0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	13.2.24/241
4004_8070	Miscellaneous Control Register 1 (SIM_MISCTRL1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	13.2.25/242
4004_8100	WDOG Control Register (SIM_WDOGC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	13.2.26/245
4004_8104	Power Control Register (SIM_PWRC)	32	R/W	0000_0101h	13.2.27/246
4004_8108	ADC Additional Option Register (SIM_ADCHOPT)	32	R/W	See section	13.2.28/248

13.2.1 System Options Register 1 (SIM_SOPT1)

NOTE

The SOPT1 register is only reset on POR or LVD.

Address: 4004_7000h base + 0h offset = 4004_7000h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0												OSC32KSEL		0	
W																
Reset	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	RAMSIZE				0											
W																
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*

* Notes:

- Reset value loaded during System Reset from Flash IFR.
- x = Undefined at reset.

SIM_SOPT1 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–20 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
19–18 OSC32KSEL	32K oscillator clock select Selects the 32 kHz clock source (ERCLK32K) for LPTMR. This field is reset only on POR/LVD. 00 System oscillator (OSC32KCLK)

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_SOPT1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	01 Reserved 10 Reserved 11 LPO 1 kHz
17–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
15–12 RAMSIZE	RAM size This field specifies the amount of system RAM available on the device. 0001 Reserved 0011 Reserved 0100 Reserved 0101 Reserved 0110 Reserved 0111 Reserved 1000 Reserved 1001 128 KB 1011 256 KB
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

13.2.2 System Options Register 2 (SIM_SOPT2)

SOPT2 contains the controls for selecting many of the module clock source options on this device. See the Clock Distribution chapter for more information including clocking diagrams and definitions of device clocks.

Address: 4004_7000h base + 1004h offset = 4004_8004h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0								TIMESRC				RMIISRC	0	PLLFLSEL	
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0			TRACECLKSEL	0	FBSL			CLKOUTSEL				0			
W																
Reset	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

SIM_SOPT2 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–22 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
21–20 TIMESRC	IEEE 1588 timestamp clock source select Selects the clock source for the Ethernet timestamp clock. 00 Core/system clock 01 MCGFLLCLK , or MCGPLLCLK as selected by SOPT2[PLLFLLSEL]. 10 OSCERCLK clock 11 External bypass clock (ENET_1588_CLKIN)
19 RMIISRC	RMII clock source select Selects the clock source for the Ethernet RMII interface 0 EXTAL clock 1 External bypass clock (ENET_1588_CLKIN).
18 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
17–16 PLLFLLSEL	PLL/FLL clock select Selects the high frequency clock for ethernet clocking options. 00 MCGFLLCLK clock 01 MCGPLLCLK clock 10 Reserved 11 Reserved
15–13 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
12 TRACECLKSEL	Debug trace clock select Selects the core/system clock or MCG output clock (MCGOUTCLK) as the trace clock source. 0 MCGOUTCLK 1 Core/system clock
11–10 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
9–8 FBSL	FlexBus security level If flash security is enabled, then this field affects what CPU operations can access off-chip via the FlexBus interface. This field has no effect if flash security is not enabled. 00 All off-chip accesses (instruction and data) via the FlexBus are disallowed. 01 All off-chip accesses (instruction and data) via the FlexBus are disallowed. 10 Off-chip instruction accesses are disallowed. Data accesses are allowed. 11 Off-chip instruction accesses and data accesses are allowed.
7–5 CLKOUTSEL	CLKOUT select Selects the clock to output on the CLKOUT pin. 000 FlexBus CLKOUT

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_SOPT2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
001	Reserved
010	Flash clock
011	LPO clock (1 kHz)
100	MCGIRCLK
101	OSCECLK_UNDIV
110	OSCECLK
111	Reserved
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

13.2.3 System Options Register 4 (SIM_SOPT4)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 100Ch offset = 4004_800Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0	FTM3TRG2SR	FTM3TRG1SR	FTM3TRG0SR	0	FTM2TRG2SR	0	FTM2TRG0SR	0	FTM1TRG2SR	0	FTM1TRG0SR	0	FTM0TRG2SR	FTM0TRG1SR	FTM0TRG0SR
W		C	C	C		C		C		C		C		C	C	C
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0			FTM3FLT0	0			FTM2FLT0	0			FTM1FLT0	FTM0FLT3	FTM0FLT2	FTM0FLT1	FTM0FLT0
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

SIM_SOPT4 field descriptions

Field	Description
31 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
30 FTM3TRG2SRC	FlexTimer 3 Hardware Trigger 2 Source Select Selects the source of FTM3 hardware trigger 2. 0 FTM3_FLT0 pin drives FTM3 hardware trigger 2 1 XBARA output 37 drives FTM3 hardware trigger 2
29 FTM3TRG1SRC	FlexTimer 3 Hardware Trigger 1 Source Select Selects the source of FTM3 hardware trigger 1.

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_SOPT4 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 PDB1 channel 1 output trigger drives FTM3 hardware trigger 1 1 FTM1 channel match drives FTM3 hardware trigger 1
28 FTM3TRG0SRC	FlexTimer 3 Hardware Trigger 0 Source Select Selects the source of FTM3 hardware trigger 0. NOTE: Also in parallel SIM_OPT8[FTM3_SYNCBIT] will be fed to FTM3 Hardware Trigger 0. 0 CMP0 output drives FTM3 hardware trigger 0 1 FTM1 channel match drives FTM3 hardware trigger 0
27 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
26 FTM2TRG2SRC	FlexTimer 2 Hardware Trigger 2 Source Select Selects the source of FTM2 hardware trigger 2. 0 FTM2_FLT0 pin drives FTM2 hardware trigger 2 1 XBARA output 36 drives FTM2 hardware trigger 2
25 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
24 FTM2TRG0SRC	FlexTimer 2 Hardware Trigger 0 Source Select Selects the source of FTM2 hardware trigger 0. NOTE: Also in parallel SIM_OPT8[FTM2_SYNCBIT] will be fed to FTM2 Hardware Trigger 0. 0 CMP0 output drives FTM2 hardware trigger 0 1 FTM0 channel match drives FTM2 hardware trigger 0
23 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
22 FTM1TRG2SRC	FlexTimer 1 Hardware Trigger 2 Source Select Selects the source of FTM1 hardware trigger 2. 0 FTM1_FLT0 pin drives FTM1 hardware trigger 2 1 XBARA output 35 drives FTM1 hardware trigger 2
21 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
20 FTM1TRG0SRC	FlexTimer 1 Hardware Trigger 0 Source Select Selects the source of FTM1 hardware trigger 0. NOTE: Also in parallel SIM_OPT8[FTM1_SYNCBIT] will be fed to FTM1 Hardware Trigger 0. 0 CMP0 output drives FTM1 hardware trigger 0 1 FTM0 channel match drives FTM1 hardware trigger 0
19 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
18 FTM0TRG2SRC	FlexTimer 0 Hardware Trigger 2 Source Select Selects the source of FTM0 hardware trigger 2.

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_SOPT4 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 FTM0_FLT0 pin drives FTM0 hardware trigger 2 1 XBARA output 34 drives FTM0 hardware trigger 2
17 FTM0TRG1SRC	FlexTimer 0 Hardware Trigger 1 Source Select Selects the source of FTM0 hardware trigger 1. 0 PDB0 channel 1 output trigger drives FTM0 hardware trigger 1 1 FTM1 channel match drives FTM0 hardware trigger 1
16 FTM0TRG0SRC	FlexTimer 0 Hardware Trigger 0 Source Select Selects the source of FTM0 hardware trigger 0. NOTE: Also in parallel SIM_OPT8[FTM0_SYNCBIT] will be fed to FTM0 Hardware Trigger 0. 0 CMP0 output drives FTM0 hardware trigger 0 1 FTM1 channel match drives FTM0 hardware trigger 0
15–13 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
12 FTM3FLT0	FTM3 Fault 0 Select Selects the source of FTM3 fault 0. NOTE: The pin source for fault 0 must be configured for the FTM module fault function through the appropriate pin control register in the port control module. 0 FTM3_FLT0 pin 1 CMP0 out
11–9 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
8 FTM2FLT0	FTM2 Fault 0 Select Selects the source of FTM2 fault 0. NOTE: The pin source for fault 0 must be configured for the FTM module fault function through the appropriate pin control register in the port control module. 0 FTM2_FLT0 pin 1 CMP0 out
7–5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
4 FTM1FLT0	FTM1 Fault 0 Select Selects the source of FTM1 fault 0. NOTE: The pin source for fault 0 must be configured for the FTM module fault function through the appropriate pin control register in the port control module. 0 FTM1_FLT0 pin 1 CMP0 out
3 FTM0FLT3	Selects the source of FTM0 fault 3. NOTE: The pin source for fault 3 must be configured for the FTM module fault function through the appropriate pin control register in the port control module.

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_SOPT4 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 FTM0_FLT3 pin 1 XBARA output 49
2 FTM0FLT2	FTM0 Fault 2 Select Selects the source of FTM0 fault 2. NOTE: The pin source for fault 2 must be configured for the FTM module fault function through the appropriate pin control register in the port control module. 0 FTM0_FLT2 pin 1 CMP2 out
1 FTM0FLT1	FTM0 Fault 1 Select Selects the source of FTM0 fault 1. NOTE: The pin source for fault 1 must be configured for the FTM module fault function through the appropriate pin control register in the port control module. 0 FTM0_FLT1 pin 1 CMP1 out
0 FTM0FLT0	FTM0 Fault 0 Select Selects the source of FTM0 fault 0. NOTE: The pin source for fault 0 must be configured for the FTM module fault function through the appropriate pin control register in the port control module. 0 FTM0_FLT0 pin 1 CMP0 out

13.2.4 System Options Register 5 (SIM_SOPT5)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 1010h offset = 4004_8010h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0								UART1RXSR		UART1TXSR		UART0RXSR		UART0TXSR	
W									C		C		C		C	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

SIM_SOPT5 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_SOPT5 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
7–6 UART1RXSRC	UART 1 receive data source select Selects the source for the UART 1 receive data. 00 UART1_RX pin 01 CMP0 10 CMP1 11 Reserved
5–4 UART1TXSRC	UART 1 transmit data source select Selects the source for the UART 1 transmit data. 00 UART1_TX pin 01 UART1_TX pin modulated with FTM1 channel 0 output 10 UART1_TX pin modulated with FTM2 channel 0 output 11 Reserved
3–2 UART0RXSRC	UART 0 receive data source select Selects the source for the UART 0 receive data. 00 UART0_RX pin 01 CMP0 10 CMP1 11 Reserved
UART0TXSRC	UART 0 transmit data source select Selects the source for the UART 0 transmit data. 00 UART0_TX pin 01 UART0_TX pin modulated with FTM1 channel 0 output 10 UART0_TX pin modulated with FTM2 channel 0 output 11 Reserved

13.2.5 System Options Register 7 (SIM_SOPT7)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 1018h offset = 4004_8018h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R				0							0								0								0					
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

SIM_SOPT7 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–30 HSADC1BALTTTRGEN	<p>HSADC1B alternate trigger enable</p> <p>Enable alternative conversion triggers for SYNCB input for triggering HSADC1B conversions.</p> <p>00 XBARA output 43. 01 PDB0 channel 1 trigger selected for HSADC1B 1- Alternate trigger selected for HSADC1B as defined by HSADC1BTRGSEL.</p>
29–28 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
27–24 HSADC1BTRGSEL	<p>HSADC1B trigger select</p> <p>Selects the HSADC1B trigger source when alternative triggers are functional in stop modes.</p> <p>0000 PDB external trigger pin input (PDB0_EXTRG) 0001 High speed comparator 0 output 0010 High speed comparator 1 output 0011 High speed comparator 2 output 0100 PIT trigger 0 0101 PIT trigger 1 0110 PIT trigger 2 0111 PIT trigger 3 1000 FTM0 trigger 1001 FTM1 trigger 1010 FTM2 trigger 1011 FTM3 trigger 1100 XBARA output 38 1101 Reserved 1110 Low-power timer trigger 1111 Reserved</p>
23–22 HSADC1AALTTRGEN	<p>HSADC1A alternate trigger enable</p> <p>Enable alternative conversion triggers for SYNCA input of HSADC1A.</p> <p>00 XBARA output 42. 01 PDB1 channel 1 trigger selected for HSADC1A. 1- Alternate trigger selected for HSADC1A as defined by HSADC1ATRGSSEL.</p>
21–20 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
19–16 HSADC1ATRGSSEL	<p>HSADC1A trigger select</p> <p>Selects the HSADC1A trigger source when alternative triggers are functional in stop modes.</p> <p>0000 Reserved 0001 High speed comparator 0 output 0010 High speed comparator 1 output 0011 High speed comparator 2 output 0100 PIT trigger 0 0101 PIT trigger 1 0110 PIT trigger 2</p>

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_SOPT7 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0111 PIT trigger 3 1000 FTM0 trigger 1001 FTM1 trigger 1010 FTM2 trigger 1011 FTM3 trigger 1100 XBARA output 41 1101 Reserved 1110 Low-power timer trigger 1111 Reserved
15–14 HSADC0BALTTTRGEN	HSADC0B alternate trigger enable Enable alternative conversion triggers for HSADC0B. 00 XBARA output 13. 01 PDB1 channel0 trigger selected for HSADC0B 1- Alternate trigger selected for HSADC0B as defined by HSADC0BTRGSEL.
13–12 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
11–8 HSADC0BTRGSEL	HSADC0B trigger select Selects the HSADC0B trigger source when alternative triggers are functional in stop modes. 0000 Reserved 0001 High speed comparator 0 output 0010 High speed comparator 1 output 0011 High speed comparator 2 output 0100 PIT trigger 0 0101 PIT trigger 1 0110 PIT trigger 2 0111 PIT trigger 3 1000 FTM0 trigger 1001 FTM1 trigger 1010 FTM2 trigger 1011 FTM3 trigger 1100 XBARA output 41 1101 Reserved 1110 Low-power timer trigger 1111 Reserved
7–6 HSADC0AALTTRGEN	HSADC0A alternate trigger enable Enable alternative conversion triggers for HSADC0A. 00 XBARA output 12. 01 PDB0 channel0 trigger selected for HSADC0A. 1- Alternate trigger selected for HSADC0A as defined by HSADC0ATRGSSEL.
5–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
HSADC0ATRGSSEL	HSADC0A trigger select

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_SOPT7 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Selects the HSADC0A trigger source when alternative triggers are functional in stop modes.
0000	PDB external trigger pin input (PDB0_EXTRG)
0001	High speed comparator 0 output
0010	High speed comparator 1 output
0011	High speed comparator 2 output
0100	PIT trigger 0
0101	PIT trigger 1
0110	PIT trigger 2
0111	PIT trigger 3
1000	FTM0 trigger
1001	FTM1 trigger
1010	FTM2 trigger
1011	FTM3 trigger
1100	XBARA output 38
1101	Reserved
1110	Low-power timer trigger
1111	Reserved

13.2.6 System Options Register 8 (SIM_SOPT8)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 101Ch offset = 4004_801Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	FTM3OCH7SR	FTM3OCH6SR	FTM3OCH5SR	FTM3OCH4SR	FTM3OCH3SR	FTM3OCH2SR	FTM3OCH1SR	FTM3OCH0SR	FTM0OCH7SR	FTM0OCH6SR	FTM0OCH5SR	FTM0OCH4SR	FTM0OCH3SR	FTM0OCH2SR	FTM0OCH1SR	FTM0OCH0SR
W	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
R	0							FTM3CFSEL	FTM0CFSEL	0				FTM3SYNCSBIT	FTM2SYNCSBIT	FTM1SYNCSBIT	FTM0SYNCSBIT
W								FTM3CFSEL	FTM0CFSEL					FTM3SYNCSBIT	FTM2SYNCSBIT	FTM1SYNCSBIT	FTM0SYNCSBIT
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

SIM_SOPT8 field descriptions

Field	Description
31 FTM3OCH7SRC	FTM3 channel 7 output source

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_SOPT8 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 FTM3_CH7 pin is output of FTM3 channel 7 output 1 FTM3_CH7 pin is output of FTM3 channel 7 output modulated by carrier frequency clock, as per FTM3CFSEL.
30 FTM3OCH6SRC	FTM3 channel 6 output source 0 FTM3_CH6 pin is output of FTM3 channel 6 output 1 FTM3_CH6 pin is output of FTM3 channel 6 output modulated by carrier frequency clock, as per FTM3CFSEL.
29 FTM3OCH5SRC	FTM3 channel 5 output source 0 FTM3_CH5 pin is output of FTM3 channel 5 output 1 FTM3_CH5 pin is output of FTM3 channel 5 output modulated by carrier frequency clock, as per FTM3CFSEL.
28 FTM3OCH4SRC	FTM3 channel 4 output source 0 FTM3_CH4 pin is output of FTM3 channel 4 output 1 FTM3_CH4 pin is output of FTM3 channel 4 output modulated by carrier frequency clock, as per FTM3CFSEL.
27 FTM3OCH3SRC	FTM3 channel 3 output source 0 FTM3_CH3 pin is output of FTM3 channel 3 output 1 FTM3_CH3 pin is output of FTM3 channel 3 output modulated by carrier frequency clock, as per FTM3CFSEL.
26 FTM3OCH2SRC	FTM3 channel 2 output source 0 FTM3_CH2 pin is output of FTM3 channel 2 output 1 FTM3_CH2 pin is output of FTM3 channel 2 output modulated by carrier frequency clock, as per FTM3CFSEL.
25 FTM3OCH1SRC	FTM3 channel 1 output source 0 FTM3_CH1 pin is output of FTM3 channel 1 output 1 FTM3_CH1 pin is output of FTM3 channel 1 output modulated by carrier frequency clock, as per FTM3CFSEL.
24 FTM3OCH0SRC	FTM3 channel 0 output source 0 FTM3_CH0 pin is output of FTM3 channel 0 output 1 FTM3_CH0 pin is output of FTM3 channel 0 output modulated by carrier frequency clock, as per FTM3CFSEL.
23 FTM0OCH7SRC	FTM0 channel 7 output source 0 FTM0_CH7 pin is output of FTM0 channel 7 output 1 FTM0_CH7 pin is output of FTM0 channel 7 output, modulated by carrier frequency clock, as per FTM0CFSEL.
22 FTM0OCH6SRC	FTM0 channel 6 output source 0 FTM0_CH6 pin is output of FTM0 channel 6 output 1 FTM0_CH6 pin is output of FTM0 channel 6 output, modulated by carrier frequency clock, as per FTM0CFSEL.
21 FTM0OCH5SRC	FTM0 channel 5 output source

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_SOPT8 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 FTM0_CH5 pin is output of FTM0 channel 5 output 1 FTM0_CH5 pin is output of FTM0 channel 5 output, modulated by carrier frequency clock, as per FTM0CFSEL
20 FTM0OCH4SRC	FTM0 channel 4 output source 0 FTM0_CH4 pin is output of FTM0 channel 4 output 1 FTM0_CH4 pin is output of FTM0 channel 4 output, modulated by carrier frequency clock, as per FTM0CFSEL
19 FTM0OCH3SRC	FTM0 channel 3 output source 0 FTM0_CH3 pin is output of FTM0 channel 3 output 1 FTM0_CH3 pin is output of FTM0 channel 3 output, modulated by carrier frequency clock, as per FTM0CFSEL
18 FTM0OCH2SRC	FTM0 channel 2 output source 0 FTM0_CH2 pin is output of FTM0 channel 2 output 1 FTM0_CH2 pin is output of FTM0 channel 2 output, modulated by carrier frequency clock, as per FTM0CFSEL
17 FTM0OCH1SRC	FTM0 channel 1 output source 0 FTM0_CH1 pin is output of FTM0 channel 1 output 1 FTM0_CH1 pin is output of FTM0 channel 1 output, modulated by carrier frequency clock, as per FTM0CFSEL
16 FTM0OCH0SRC	FTM0 channel 0 output source 0 FTM0_CH0 pin is output of FTM0 channel 0 output 1 FTM0_CH0 pin is output of FTM0 channel 0 output, modulated by carrier frequency clock, as per FTM0CFSEL
15–10 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
9 FTM3CFSEL	Carrier frequency selection for FTM3 output channel 0 FTM1 channel 1 output provides the carrier signal for FTM3 Timer Modulation mode. 1 LPTMR0 prescaler output provides the carrier signal for FTM3 Timer Modulation mode.
8 FTM0CFSEL	Carrier frequency selection for FTM0 output channel 0 FTM1 channel 1 output provides the carrier signal for FTM0 Timer Modulation mode. 1 LPTMR0 prescaler output provides the carrier signal for FTM0 Timer Modulation mode.
7–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3 FTM3SYNCSBIT	FTM3 Hardware Trigger 0 Software Synchronization 0 No effect. 1 Write 1 to assert the TRIG0 input to FTM3, software must clear this bit to allow other trigger sources to assert.
2 FTM2SYNCSBIT	FTM2 Hardware Trigger 0 Software Synchronization 0 No effect. 1 Write 1 to assert the TRIG0 input to FTM2, software must clear this bit to allow other trigger sources to assert.

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_SOPT8 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
1 FTM1SYNCSBIT	FTM1 Hardware Trigger 0 Software Synchronization 0 No effect. 1 Write 1 to assert the TRIG0 input to FTM1, software must clear this bit to allow other trigger sources to assert.
0 FTM0SYNCSBIT	FTM0 Hardware Trigger 0 Software Synchronization 0 No effect 1 Write 1 to assert the TRIG0 input to FTM0, software must clear this bit to allow other trigger sources to assert.

13.2.7 System Options Register 9 (SIM_SOPT9)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 1020h offset = 4004_8020h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	FTM3CLKSEL				FTM2CLKSEL		FTM1CLKSEL		FTM0CLKSEL		0					
W	FTM3CLKSEL				FTM2CLKSEL		FTM1CLKSEL		FTM0CLKSEL							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0					FTM2ICH1SRC		FTM2ICH0SRC		0	FTM1ICH1SRC		FTM1ICH0SRC		0	
W						FTM2ICH1SRC		FTM2ICH0SRC			FTM1ICH1SRC		FTM1ICH0SRC			
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

SIM_SOPT9 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–30 FTM3CLKSEL	FlexTimer 3 External Clock Pin Select Selects the external pin used to drive the clock to the FTM3 module. NOTE: The selected pin must also be configured for the FTM3 module external clock function through the appropriate pin control register in the port control module. 00 FTM3 external clock driven by FTM_CLK0 pin 01 FTM3 external clock driven by FTM_CLK1 pin 10 FTM3 external clock driven by FTM_CLK2 pin 11 Reserved
29–28 FTM2CLKSEL	FlexTimer 2 External Clock Pin Select

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_SOPT9 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>Selects the external pin used to drive the clock to the FTM1 module.</p> <p>NOTE: The selected pin must also be configured for the FTM1 module external clock function through the appropriate pin control register in the port control module.</p> <p>00 FTM2 external clock driven by FTM_CLK0 pin 01 FTM2 external clock driven by FTM_CLK1 pin 10 FTM2 external clock driven by FTM_CLK2 pin 11 Reserved</p>
27–26 FTM1CLKSEL	<p>FlexTimer 1 External Clock Pin Select</p> <p>Selects the external pin used to drive the clock to the FTM1 module.</p> <p>NOTE: The selected pin must also be configured for the FTM1 module external clock function through the appropriate pin control register in the port control module.</p> <p>00 FTM1 external clock driven by FTM_CLK0 pin 01 FTM1 external clock driven by FTM_CLK1 pin 10 FTM1 external clock driven by FTM_CLK2 pin 11 Reserved</p>
25–24 FTM0CLKSEL	<p>FlexTimer 0 External Clock Pin Select</p> <p>Selects the external pin used to drive the clock to the FTM0 module.</p> <p>NOTE: The selected pin must also be configured for the FTM0 module external clock function through the appropriate pin control register in the port control module.</p> <p>00 FTM0 external clock driven by FTM_CLK0 pin 01 FTM0 external clock driven by FTM_CLK1 pin 10 FTM0 external clock driven by FTM_CLK2 pin 11 Reserved</p>
23–11 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
10 FTM2ICH1SRC	<p>FTM2 channel 1 input capture source select</p> <p>Selects the source for FTM2 channel 0 input capture.</p> <p>NOTE: When the FTM is not in input capture mode, clear this field.</p> <p>0 FTM2_CH1 signal 1 Exclusive OR of FTM2_CH1, FTM2_CH0 and FTM1_CH1</p>
9–8 FTM2ICH0SRC	<p>FTM2 channel 0 input capture source select</p> <p>Selects the source for FTM2 channel 0 input capture.</p> <p>NOTE: When the FTM is not in input capture mode, clear this field.</p> <p>00 FTM2_CH0 signal 01 CMP0 output 10 CMP1 output 11 Reserved</p>
7 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_SOPT9 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
6 FTM1ICH1SRC	FTM1 channel 0 input capture source select Selects the source for FTM1 channel 0 input capture. NOTE: When the FTM is not in input capture mode, clear this field. 0 FTM1_CH1 signal 1 Exclusive OR of FTM1_CH1, FTM1_CH0, and XBARA output 42 (XBARA output 42 can also trigger HSADC1A sync0)
5–4 FTM1ICH0SRC	FTM1 channel 0 input capture source select Selects the source for FTM1 channel 0 input capture. NOTE: When the FTM is not in input capture mode, clear this field. 00 FTM1_CH0 signal 01 CMP0 output 10 CMP1 output 11 Reserved
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

13.2.8 System Device Identification Register (SIM_SDID)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 1024h offset = 4004_8024h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	FAMILYID				SUBFAMID				SERIESID				0				REVID				DIEID				0				PINID			
W																																
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	0	1	1	0	0*	0*	0*	0*	x*	x*	x*	x*	0	0	0	1	1	0*	0*	0*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:

- Reset value loaded during System Reset from Flash IFR.
- x = Undefined at reset.

SIM_SDID field descriptions

Field	Description
31–28 FAMILYID	Kinetis Family ID Specifies the Kinetis family of the device. 0101 This is the KV5x series
27–24 SUBFAMID	Kinetis Sub-Family ID Specifies the Kinetis sub-family of the device. 0000 to 0101 Reserved 0110 KVx6 Subfamily (eFlexPWM with FlexTimer and HSADC)

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_SDID field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0111 Reserved 1000 KVx8 Subfamily (eFlexPWM with FlexTimer, HSADC, and Ethernet) 1001 to 1111 Reserved
23–20 SERIESID	Kinetis Series ID Specifies the Kinetis series of the device. 0110 Kinetis V series
19–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
15–12 REVID	Device revision number Specifies the silicon implementation number for the device.
11–7 DIEID	Device die number Specifies the silicon implementation number for the device. 00011 KV5x
6–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
PINID	Pincount identification Specifies the pincount of the device. 0000 to 0111 Reserved 1000 100-pin 1001 Reserved 1010 144-pin 1011 to 1111 Reserved

13.2.9 System Clock Gating Control Register 1 (SIM_SCGC1)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 1028h offset = 4004_8028h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0				PWM1_SM3	PWM1_SM2	PWM1_SM1	PWM1_SM0	0							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0				UART5	UART4	0									
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

SIM_SCGC1 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–28 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
27 PWM1_SM3	PWM1 submodule 3 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the PWM submodule 3. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
26 PWM1_SM2	PWM1 submodule 2 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the PWM submodule 2. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
25 PWM1_SM1	PWM1 submodule 1 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the PWM submodule 1. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
24 PWM1_SM0	PWM1 submodule 0 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the PWM submodule 0. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
23–12 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_SCGC1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
11 UART5	UART5 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the UART5 module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
10 UART4	UART4 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the UART4 module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

13.2.10 System Clock Gating Control Register 2 (SIM_SCGC2)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 102Ch offset = 4004_802Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0			HSADC1	0											
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0															ENET
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

SIM_SCGC2 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–29 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
28 HSADC1	HSADC1 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the HSADC1A and HSADC1B module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
27–1 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_SCGC2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
0 ENET	<p>ENET Clock Gate Control</p> <p>This bit controls the clock gate to the ENET module.</p> <p>0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled</p>

13.2.11 System Clock Gating Control Register 3 (SIM_SCGC3)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 1030h offset = 4004_8030h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0				0								0			
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

SIM_SCGC3 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–13 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
12 SPI2	<p>SPI2 Clock Gate Control</p> <p>This bit controls the clock gate to the SPI2 module.</p> <p>0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled</p>
11–5 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
4 FLEXCAN2	<p>FlexCAN2 Clock Gate Control</p> <p>This bit controls the clock gate to the FlexCAN1 module.</p> <p>0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled</p>
3–1 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_SCGC3 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
0 TRNG	<p>TRNG Clock Gate Control</p> <p>This bit controls the clock gate to the TRNG module.</p> <p>0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled</p>

13.2.12 System Clock Gating Control Register 4 (SIM_SCGC4)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 1034h offset = 4004_8034h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	1				PWM0_SM3	PWM0_SM2	PWM0_SM1	PWM0_SM0	0				CMP	0		
W																
Reset	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0		UART3	UART2	UART1	UART0	0		I2C1	I2C0	1		0		EWM	0
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0

SIM_SCGC4 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–28 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 1.</p>
27 PWM0_SM3	<p>PWM0 submodule 3 Clock Gate Control</p> <p>This bit controls the clock gate to the PWM submodule 3.</p> <p>0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled</p>
26 PWM0_SM2	<p>PWM0 submodule 2 Clock Gate Control</p> <p>This bit controls the clock gate to the PWM submodule 2.</p> <p>0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled</p>
25 PWM0_SM1	<p>PWM0 submodule 1 Clock Gate Control</p> <p>This bit controls the clock gate to the PWM submodule 1.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_SCGC4 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
24 PWM0_SM0	PWM0 submodule 0 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the PWM submodule 0. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
23–20 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
19 CMP	Comparators Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the comparator module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
18–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13 UART3	UART3 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the UART3 module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
12 UART2	UART2 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the UART2 module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
11 UART1	UART1 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the UART1 module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
10 UART0	UART0 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the UART0 module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
9–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7 I2C1	I2C1 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the I ² C1 module.
6 I2C0	I2C0 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the I ² C0 module.

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_SCGC4 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
5–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 1.
3–2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
1 EWM	EWM Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the EWM module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
0 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

13.2.13 System Clock Gating Control Register 5 (SIM_SCGC5)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 1038h offset = 4004_8038h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0			HSADC0	AOI	XBARB	XBARA	0			ENC	0		1	0	
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0		PORTE	PORTD	PORTC	PORTB	PORTA	1		0	0				1	LPTMR
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0

SIM_SCGC5 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–29 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
28 HSADC0	HSADC0 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the HSADC0A and HSADC0B module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
27 AOI	AOI Clock Gate Control

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_SCGC5 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	This bit controls the clock gate to the AOI module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
26 XBARB	XBARB Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the XBARB module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
25 XBARA	XBARA Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the XBARA module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
24–22 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
21 ENC	This bit controls the clock gate to the ENC module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
20–19 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
18 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 1.
17–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13 PORTE	Port E Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the Port E module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
12 PORTD	Port D Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the Port D module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
11 PORTC	Port C Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the Port C module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
10 PORTB	Port B Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the Port B module.

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_SCGC5 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
9 PORTA	Port A Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the Port A module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
8–7 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 1.
6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
5–2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
1 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 1.
0 LPTMR	Low Power Timer Access Control This bit controls software access to the Low Power Timer module. 0 Access disabled 1 Access enabled

13.2.14 System Clock Gating Control Register 6 (SIM_SCGC6)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 103Ch offset = 4004_803Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16		
R	DAC0	0				ADC0	FTM2	FTM1	FTM0	PIT	PDB0	0				CRC	PDB1	0
W																		
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0		SPI1	SPI0	0				FTM3	FLEXCAN1	FLEXCAN0	0		DMAMUX	FTF	
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

SIM_SCGC6 field descriptions

Field	Description
31 DAC0	DAC0 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the DAC0 module.

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_SCGC6 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
30–28 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
27 ADC0	ADC0 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the ADC0 module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
26 FTM2	FTM2 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the FTM2 module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
25 FTM1	FTM1 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the FTM1 module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
24 FTM0	FTM0 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the FTM0 module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
23 PIT	PIT Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the PIT module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
22 PDB0	PDB0 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the PDB0 module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
21–19 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
18 CRC	CRC Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the CRC module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
17 PDB1	PDB1 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the PDB1 module.

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_SCGC6 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
16–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13 SPI1	SPI1 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the SPI1 module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
12 SPI0	SPI0 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the SPI0 module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
11–7 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
6 FTM3	FTM3 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the FTM3 module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
5 FLEXCAN1	FlexCAN1 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the FlexCAN1 module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
4 FLEXCAN0	FlexCAN0 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the FlexCAN0 module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
3–2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
1 DMAMUX	DMA Mux Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the DMA Mux module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
0 FTF	Flash Memory Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the flash memory. Flash reads are still supported while the flash memory is clock gated, but entry into low power modes is blocked. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled

13.2.15 System Clock Gating Control Register 7 (SIM_SCGC7)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 1040h offset = 4004_8040h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0								0					0		FLEXBUS
W														SMPU		FLEXBUS
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0

SIM_SCGC7 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–9 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
8 DMA	DMA Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the DMA module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
7–3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 SMPU	SMPU Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the SMPU module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
1 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
0 FLEXBUS	FlexBus Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the FlexBus module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled

13.2.16 System Clock Divider Register 1 (SIM_CLKDIV1)

When updating CLKDIV1, update all fields using the one write command. Attempting to write an invalid clock ratio to the CLKDIV1 register will cause the write to be ignored. The maximum divide ratio that can be programmed between core/system clock and the other divided clocks is divide by 8. When OUTDIV1 equals 0000 (divide by 1), the other dividers cannot be set higher than 0111 (divide by 8).

NOTE

The CLKDIV1 register cannot be written to when the device is in VLPR mode.

Address: 4004_7000h base + 1044h offset = 4004_8044h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																	0															
W																																
Reset	0	x*	x*	x*	0	x*	x*	x*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0	x*	x*	x*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*

* Notes:

- Reset value loaded during Syetem Reset from FTF_FOFT[LPBOOT].
- x = Undefined at reset.

SIM_CLKDIV1 field descriptions

Field	Description																																
31–28 OUTDIV1	<p>Clock 1 output divider value</p> <p>This field sets the divide value for the core/system clock from MCGOUTCLK. At the end of reset, it is loaded with either 0000 or 0111 depending on FTF_FOFT[LPBOOT].</p> <table> <tr><td>0000</td><td>Divide-by-1.</td></tr> <tr><td>0001</td><td>Divide-by-2.</td></tr> <tr><td>0010</td><td>Divide-by-3.</td></tr> <tr><td>0011</td><td>Divide-by-4.</td></tr> <tr><td>0100</td><td>Divide-by-5.</td></tr> <tr><td>0101</td><td>Divide-by-6.</td></tr> <tr><td>0110</td><td>Divide-by-7.</td></tr> <tr><td>0111</td><td>Divide-by-8.</td></tr> <tr><td>1000</td><td>Divide-by-9.</td></tr> <tr><td>1001</td><td>Divide-by-10.</td></tr> <tr><td>1010</td><td>Divide-by-11.</td></tr> <tr><td>1011</td><td>Divide-by-12.</td></tr> <tr><td>1100</td><td>Divide-by-13.</td></tr> <tr><td>1101</td><td>Divide-by-14.</td></tr> <tr><td>1110</td><td>Divide-by-15.</td></tr> <tr><td>1111</td><td>Divide-by-16.</td></tr> </table>	0000	Divide-by-1.	0001	Divide-by-2.	0010	Divide-by-3.	0011	Divide-by-4.	0100	Divide-by-5.	0101	Divide-by-6.	0110	Divide-by-7.	0111	Divide-by-8.	1000	Divide-by-9.	1001	Divide-by-10.	1010	Divide-by-11.	1011	Divide-by-12.	1100	Divide-by-13.	1101	Divide-by-14.	1110	Divide-by-15.	1111	Divide-by-16.
0000	Divide-by-1.																																
0001	Divide-by-2.																																
0010	Divide-by-3.																																
0011	Divide-by-4.																																
0100	Divide-by-5.																																
0101	Divide-by-6.																																
0110	Divide-by-7.																																
0111	Divide-by-8.																																
1000	Divide-by-9.																																
1001	Divide-by-10.																																
1010	Divide-by-11.																																
1011	Divide-by-12.																																
1100	Divide-by-13.																																
1101	Divide-by-14.																																
1110	Divide-by-15.																																
1111	Divide-by-16.																																
27–24 OUTDIV2	Clock 2 output divider value																																

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_CLKDIV1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>This field sets the divide value for the fast bus clock from MCGOUTCLK. At the end of reset, it is loaded with either 0000 or 0111 depending on FTF_FOPT[LPBOOT]. The fast bus clock frequency must be an integer divide or multiple of the core/system clock frequency.</p> <p>0000 Divide-by-1. 0001 Divide-by-2. 0010 Divide-by-3. 0011 Divide-by-4. 0100 Divide-by-5. 0101 Divide-by-6. 0110 Divide-by-7. 0111 Divide-by-8. 1000 Divide-by-9. 1001 Divide-by-10. 1010 Divide-by-11. 1011 Divide-by-12. 1100 Divide-by-13. 1101 Divide-by-14. 1110 Divide-by-15. 1111 Divide-by-16.</p>
23–20 OUTDIV3	<p>Clock 3 output divider value</p> <p>This field sets the divide value for the FlexBus clock (external pin FB_CLK) from MCGOUTCLK. At the end of reset, it is loaded with either 0001 or 1111 depending on FTF_FOPT[LPBOOT]. The FlexBus clock frequency must be an integer divide of the system clock frequency.</p> <p>0000 Divide-by-1. 0001 Divide-by-2. 0010 Divide-by-3. 0011 Divide-by-4. 0100 Divide-by-5. 0101 Divide-by-6. 0110 Divide-by-7. 0111 Divide-by-8. 1000 Divide-by-9. 1001 Divide-by-10. 1010 Divide-by-11. 1011 Divide-by-12. 1100 Divide-by-13. 1101 Divide-by-14. 1110 Divide-by-15. 1111 Divide-by-16.</p>
19–16 OUTDIV4	<p>Clock 4 output divider value</p> <p>This field sets the divide value for the bus/flash clock from MCGOUTCLK. At the end of reset, it is loaded with either 0001 or 1111 depending on FTF_FOPT[LPBOOT]. The flash clock frequency must be an integer divide of the system clock frequency.</p> <p>0000 Divide-by-1.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_CLKDIV1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0001 Divide-by-2.
	0010 Divide-by-3.
	0011 Divide-by-4.
	0100 Divide-by-5.
	0101 Divide-by-6.
	0110 Divide-by-7.
	0111 Divide-by-8.
	1000 Divide-by-9.
	1001 Divide-by-10.
	1010 Divide-by-11.
	1011 Divide-by-12.
	1100 Divide-by-13.
	1101 Divide-by-14.
	1110 Divide-by-15.
	1111 Divide-by-16.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

13.2.17 Flash Configuration Register 1 (SIM_FCFG1)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 104Ch offset = 4004_804Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	1				PFSIZE				0				1			
W																
Reset	1	1	1	1	x*	x*	x*	x*	0*	0*	0*	0*	1	1	1	1
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0				1				0				FLASHDOZE		FLASHDIS	
W																
Reset	0*	0*	0*	0*	1	1	1	1	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*

* Notes:

- Reset value loaded during System Reset from Flash IFR.
- x = Undefined at reset.

SIM_FCFG1 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–28 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 1.
27–24 PFSIZE	Program flash size This field specifies the amount of program flash memory available on the device, as set by IFR bits. These bits are used for device testing only and are read-only. 0011 to 1001 Reserved 1011 512 KB of program flash memory 1101 1024 KB of program flash memory
23–20 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_FCFG1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
19–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 1.
15–12 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
11–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 1.
7–2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
1 FLASHDOZE	Flash Doze When set, Flash memory is disabled for the duration of Wait mode. An attempt by the DMA or other bus master to access the Flash when the Flash is disabled will result in a bus error. This bit should be clear during VLP modes. The Flash will be automatically enabled again at the end of Wait mode so interrupt vectors do not need to be relocated out of Flash memory. The wakeup time from Wait mode is extended when this bit is set. 0 Flash remains enabled during Wait mode 1 Flash is disabled for the duration of Wait mode
0 FLASHDIS	Flash Disable Flash accesses are disabled (and generate a bus error) and the Flash memory is placed in a low power state. This bit should not be changed during VLP modes. Relocate the interrupt vectors out of Flash memory before disabling the Flash. 0 Flash is enabled 1 Flash is disabled

13.2.18 Flash Configuration Register 2 (SIM_FCFG2)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 1050h offset = 4004_8050h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0	MAXADDR0							1	0						
W																
Reset	0*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	1	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0															
W																
Reset	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*

* Notes:

- Reset value loaded during System Reset from Flash IFR.
- x = Undefined at reset.

SIM_FCFG2 field descriptions

Field	Description
31 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
30–24 MAXADDR0	Max address block 0 This field concatenated with 14 trailing zeros indicates the first invalid address of flash block 0 (program flash 0). For example, if MAXADDR0 = 0x20 the first invalid address of flash block 0 is 0x0008_0000. This would be the MAXADDR0 value for a device with 512 KB program flash in flash block 0.
23 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 1.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

13.2.19 Unique Identification Register High (SIM_UIDH)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 1054h offset = 4004_8054h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	UID																															
W																																
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	

* Notes:

- Reset value loaded during System Reset from Flash IFR.x = Undefined at reset.

SIM_UIDH field descriptions

Field	Description
UID	Unique Identification Unique identification for the device.

13.2.20 Unique Identification Register Mid-High (SIM_UIDMH)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 1058h offset = 4004_8058h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	UID																															
W																																
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	

* Notes:

- Reset value loaded during System Reset from Flash IFR.x = Undefined at reset.

SIM_UIDMH field descriptions

Field	Description
UID	Unique Identification Unique identification for the device.

13.2.21 Unique Identification Register Mid Low (SIM_UIDML)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 105Ch offset = 4004_805Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	UID																															
W																																
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:

- Reset value loaded during System Reset from Flash IFR.x = Undefined at reset.

SIM_UIDML field descriptions

Field	Description
UID	Unique Identification Unique identification for the device.

13.2.22 Unique Identification Register Low (SIM_UIDL)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 1060h offset = 4004_8060h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	UID																															
W																																
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:

- Reset value loaded during System Reset from Flash IFR.x = Undefined at reset.

SIM_UIDL field descriptions

Field	Description
UID	Unique Identification Unique identification for the device.

13.2.23 System Clock Divider Register 4 (SIM_CLKDIV4)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 1068h offset = 4004_8068h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0			TRACEDIVEN	0											
W																
Reset	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0												TRACEDIV		TRACEFRAC	
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

SIM_CLKDIV4 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–29 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
28 TRACEDIVEN	Debug Trace Divider Control This bit controls the Debug Trace Divider. 0 Debug trace divider disabled 1 Debug trace divider enabled
27–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3–1 TRACEDIV	Trace clock divider divisor This field sets the divide value for the fractional clock divider used as a source for trace clock. The source clock for the fractional clock divider is set by the SOPT2 TRACECLKSEL register bit. Divider output clock = Divider input clock * ((TRACEFRAC+1)/(TRACEDIV+1))
0 TRACEFRAC	Trace clock divider fraction This field sets the divide value for the fractional clock divider used as a source for trace clock. The source clock for the fractional clock divider is set by the SOPT2 TRACECLKSEL register bit. Divider output clock = Divider input clock*((TRACEFRAC+1)/(TRACEDIV+1))

13.2.24 Miscellaneous Control Register 0 (SIM_MISCTRL0)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 106Ch offset = 4004_806Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0												DACTRIGSRC	0	EWMINSRC	
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	CMPWIN3SRC	CMPWIN2SRC	CMPWIN1SRC	CMPWIN0SRC	0											
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

SIM_MISCTRL0 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–20 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
19–18 DACTRIGSRC	DAC0 Hardware Trigger Input Source 00 XBARA output 15. 01 DAC0 can be triggered by both PDB0 interval trigger 0 and PDB1 interval trigger 0. 10 PDB0 interval trigger 0 11 PDB1 interval trigger 0
17 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
16 EWMINSRC	EWM_IN Source This bit controls the ewm_in source of EWM module. 0 XBARA output 58. 1 EWM_IN pin
15–14 CMPWIN3SRC	CMP Sample/Window Input 3 Source 00 XBARA output 19. 01 CMP3 Sample/Window input is driven by both PDB0 and PDB1 pluse-out channel 3. 10 PDB0 pluse-out channel 3. 11 PDB1 pluse-out channel 3.
13–12 CMPWIN2SRC	CMP Sample/Window Input 2 Source 00 XBARA output 18. 01 CMP2 Sample/Window input is driven by both PDB0 and PDB1 pluse-out channel 2.

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_MISCTRL0 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	10 PDB0 pluse-out channel 2. 11 PDB1 pluse-out channel 2.
11–10 CMPWIN1SRC	CMP Sample/Window Input 1 Source 00 XBARA output 17. 01 CMP1 Sample/Window input is driven by both PDB0 and PDB1 pluse-out channel 1. 10 PDB0 pluse-out channel 1. 11 PDB1 pluse-out channel 1.
9–8 CMPWIN0SRC	CMP Sample/Window Input 0 Source 00 XBARA output 16. 01 CMP0 Sample/Window input is driven by both PDB0 and PDB1 pluse-out channel 0. 10 PDB0 pluse-out channel 0. 11 PDB1 pluse-out channel 0.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

13.2.25 Miscellaneous Control Register 1 (SIM_MISCTRL1)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 1070h offset = 4004_8070h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	
R	0								SYNCCMP3SAMPL EWIN	SYNCCMP2SAMPL EWIN	SYNCCMP1SAMPL EWIN	SYNCCMP0SAMPL EWIN	0		SYNCEWMIN	SYNCDACHWTRIG	
W																	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0	SYNCSBARBPITT RIG1		SYNCSBARBPITT RIG0	SYNCSBARBPITT RIG3	SYNCSBARBPITT RIG2	SYNCSBARBPITT RIG1	SYNCSBARBPITT RIG0	0							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

SIM_MISCTRL1 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_MISCTRL1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
23 SYNCCMP3SAMPLEWIN	<p>Synchronize XBARA's output for CMP3's Sample/Window Input with flash/slow clock</p> <p>This field controls the synchronizer between XBARA's output and CMP3's sample/window input.</p> <p>NOTE: Set this bit if the CMP3's sample/window input isn't from flash/slow peripherals through xbar.</p> <p>0 Disable, bypass synchronizer. 1 Enable.</p>
22 SYNCCMP2SAMPLEWIN	<p>Synchronize XBARA's output for CMP2's Sample/Window Input with flash/slow clock</p> <p>This field controls the synchronizer between XBARA's output and CMP2's sample/window input.</p> <p>NOTE: Set this bit if the CMP2's sample/window input isn't from flash/slow peripherals through xbar.</p> <p>0 Disable, bypass synchronizer. 1 Enable.</p>
21 SYNCCMP1SAMPLEWIN	<p>Synchronize XBARA's output for CMP1's Sample/Window Input with flash/slow clock</p> <p>This field controls the synchronizer between XBARA's output and CMP1's sample/window input.</p> <p>NOTE: Set this bit if the CMP1's sample/window input isn't from flash/slow peripherals through xbar.</p> <p>0 Disable, bypass synchronizer. 1 Enable.</p>
20 SYNCCMP0SAMPLEWIN	<p>Synchronize XBARA's output for CMP0's Sample/Window Input with flash/slow clock</p> <p>This field controls the synchronizer between XBARA's output and CMP0's sample/window input.</p> <p>NOTE: Set this bit if the CMP0's sample/window input isn't from flash/slow peripherals through xbar.</p> <p>0 Disable, bypass synchronizer. 1 Enable.</p>
19–18 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
17 SYNCEWMIN	<p>Synchronize XBARA's output for EWM's ewm_in with flash/slow clock</p> <p>This field controls the synchronizer between XBARA's output and EWM's ewm_in input.</p> <p>NOTE: Set this bit if the EWM's ewm_in isn't from flash/slow peripherals through xbar.</p> <p>0 Disable, bypass synchronizer. 1 Enable.</p>
16 SYNCDACHWTRIG	<p>Synchronize XBARA's output for DAC Hardware Trigger with flash/slow clock</p> <p>This field controls the synchronizer between XBARA's output and DAC hardware trigger.</p> <p>NOTE: Set this bit if the DAC hardware trigger isn't from flash/slow peripherals through xbar.</p> <p>0 Disable, bypass synchronizer. 1 Enable.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_MISCTRL1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13 SYNCXBARBPITTRIG1	Synchronize XBARB's Input PIT Trigger 1 with fast clock This field controls the synchronizer between PIT trigger 1 and XBARB's input. NOTE: Set this bit if the XBARB's input PIT trigger 1 is fed into fast peripherals through xbar. 0 Disable, bypass synchronizer. 1 Enable.
12 SYNCXBARBPITTRIG0	Synchronize XBARB's Input PIT Trigger 0 with fast clock This field controls the synchronizer between PIT trigger 0 and XBARB's input. NOTE: Set this bit if the XBARB's input PIT trigger 0 is fed into fast peripherals through xbar. 0 Disable, bypass synchronizer. 1 Enable.
11 SYNCXBARAPITTRIG3	Synchronize XBARA's Input PIT Trigger 3 with fast clock This field controls the synchronizer between PIT trigger 3 and XBARA's input. NOTE: Set this bit if the XBARA's input PIT trigger 3 is fed into fast peripherals through xbar. 0 Disable, bypass synchronizer. 1 Enable.
10 SYNCXBARAPITTRIG2	Synchronize XBARA's Input PIT Trigger 2 with fast clock This field controls the synchronizer between PIT trigger 2 and XBARA's input. NOTE: Set this bit if the XBARA's input PIT trigger 2 is fed into fast peripherals through xbar. 0 Disable, bypass synchronizer. 1 Enable.
9 SYNCXBARAPITTRIG1	Synchronize XBARA's Input PIT Trigger 1 with fast clock This field controls the synchronizer between PIT trigger 1 and XBARA's input. NOTE: Set this bit if the XBARA's input PIT trigger 1 is fed into fast peripherals through xbar. 0 Disable, bypass synchronizer. 1 Enable.
8 SYNCXBARAPITTRIG0	Synchronize XBARA's Input PIT Trigger 0 with fast clock This field controls the synchronizer between PIT trigger 0 and XBARA's input. NOTE: Set this bit if the XBARA's input PIT trigger 0 is fed into fast peripherals through xbar. 0 Disable, bypass synchronizer. 1 Enable.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

13.2.26 WDOG Control Register (SIM_WDOGC)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 1100h offset = 4004_8100h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0														WDOGCLKS	0
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

SIM_WDOGC field descriptions

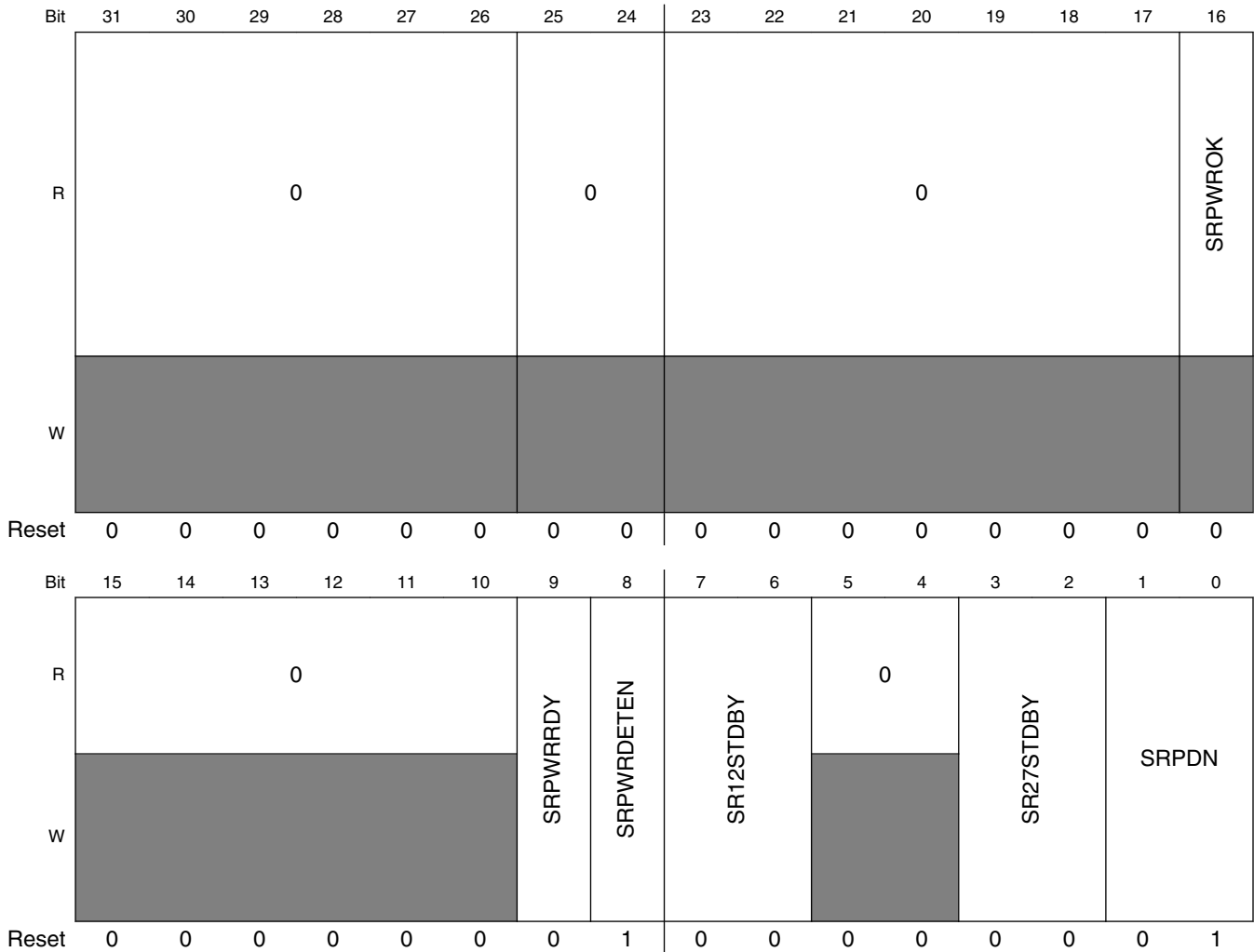
Field	Description
31–2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
1 WDOGCLKS	WDOG Clock Select This write-once bit selects the clock source of the WDOG watchdog. NOTE: This is the choice of two alternative clock sources that goto the ALTCLK of the WDOG. 0 1 kHz LPO clock is source to WDOG 1 MCGIRCLK is source to WDOG
0 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

13.2.27 Power Control Register (SIM_PWRC)

NOTE

Setting PMC_REGSC[BGBE] before nanoedge regulator is enabled, because the regulator uses 1v reference of PMC.

Address: 4004_7000h base + 1104h offset = 4004_8104h



SIM_PWRC field descriptions

Field	Description
31–26 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
25–24 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_PWRC field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
23–17 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
16 SRPWROK	Nanoedge PMC Status 0 Power supply for nanoedge isn't ready. 1 Power supply for nanoedge is OK.
15–10 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
9 SRPWRRDY	Nanoedge PMC POWER Ready This bit is soft control to indicate nanoedge PMC is ready when PMC Power detect is disabled by SRPWRDETEN. 0 Not ready 1 Assert PMC power output ready
8 SRPWRDETEN	Nanoedge PMC POWER Detect Enable Write 1 to enable Nanoedge PMC power detect to assert PMC ready signal when PMC is stable. 0 Disable 1 Enable
7–6 SR12STDBY	Nanoedge Regulator 1.2 V Supply Standby Control This field controls the standby mode of the 1.2 V supply from the nanoedge voltage regulator. Standby mode has restricted drive capacity but substantially reduces power consumption. The field value can be optionally write protected. 00 Nanoedge regulator 1.2 V supply placed in normal mode 01 Nanoedge regulator 1.2 V supply placed in standby mode. 10 Nanoedge regulator 1.2 V supply placed in normal mode and SR12STDBY is write protected until chip reset. 11 Nanoedge regulator 1.2 V supply placed in standby mode and SR12STDBY is write protected until chip reset.
5–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3–2 SR27STDBY	Nanoedge Regulator 2.7 V Supply Standby Control This field controls the standby mode of the 2.7 V supply from the nanoedge voltage regulator. Standby mode has restricted drive capacity but substantially reduces power consumption. The field value can be optionally write protected. 00 Nanoedge regulator 2.7 V placed in normal mode. 01 Nanoedge regulator 2.7 V placed in standby mode. 10 Nanoedge regulator 2.7 V supply placed in normal mode and SR27STDBY is write protected until chip reset. 11 Nanoedge regulator 2.7 V supply placed in standby mode and SR27STDBY is write protected until chip reset.
SRPDN	Nanoedge Regulator 2.7V and 1.2V Supply Powerdown Control This field controls the powerdown mode of the 2.7V and 1.2V supply from the nanoedge voltage regulator. Powerdown mode shuts down the 2.7V and 1.2V regulated supply from the nanoedge regulator and

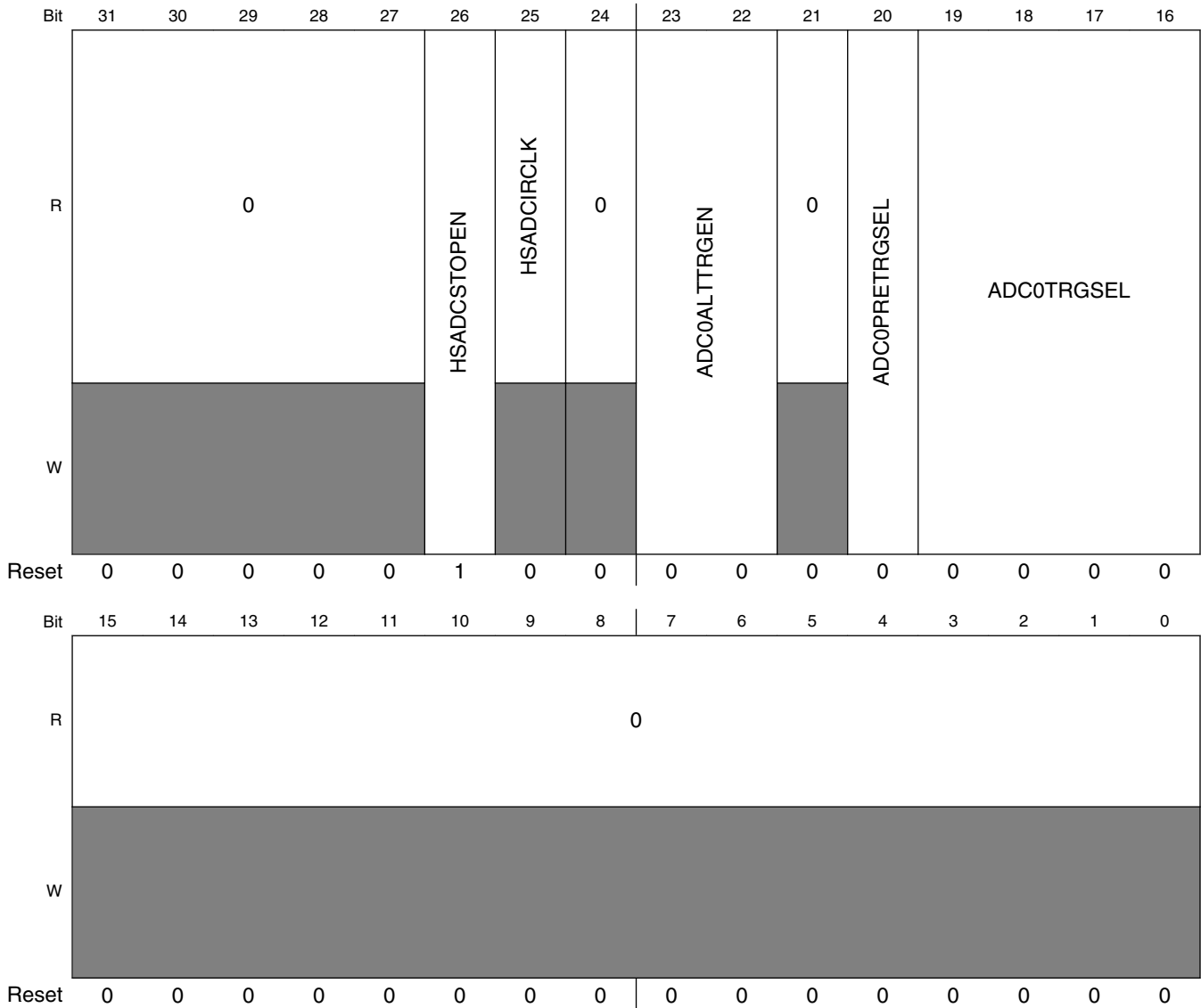
Table continues on the next page...

SIM_PWRC field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	eliminates its power consumption. Analog modules powered by this supply should themselves be powered down before entering this mode.
00	Nanoedge regulator placed in normal mode.
01	Nanoedge regulator placed in powerdown mode.
10	Nanoedge regulator placed in normal mode and SRPDN is write protected until chip reset.
11	Nanoedge regulator placed in powerdown mode and SRPDN is write protected until chip reset.

13.2.28 ADC Additional Option Register (SIM_ADCCOPT)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 1108h offset = 4004_8108h



SIM_ADCOPT field descriptions

Field	Description
31–27 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
26 HSADCSTOPEN	Enable HSADCs in STOP mode Controls whether HSADCs can run in STOP mode. If this bit is set HSADC0A, HSADC0B, HSADC1A and HSADC1B can function in STOP mode or PSTOP mode with MCGIRCLK. 0 HSADCs stopsin system STOP modes 1 HSADCs can be enabled in system STOP modes
25 HSADCIRCLK	HSADC Clock Status Indicates which clock is fed in the HSADCs. NOTE: Can't access HSADC's registers when this bit is "1". This bit is used in STOP/VLPS mode to make sure if the HSADC clock is switched to the expected clock. 0 HSADC clock is Core/System clock. 1 HSADC clock is MCGIRCLK.
24 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
23–22 ADC0ALTTRGEN	ADC0 alternate trigger enable Enable alternative conversion triggers for ADC0. 00 XBARA output 39. 01 PDB0 channel1 trigger selected for ADC0 10 PDB1 channel0 trigger selected for ADC0 11 Alternate trigger selected for ADC0 as defined by ADC0TRGSEL.
21 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
20 ADC0PRETRGSEL	ADC0 pretrigger select Selects the ADC0 pre-trigger source when alternative triggers are enabled through ADC0ALTTRGEN or XBARA output 39 is selected 0 Pre-trigger A 1 Pre-trigger B
19–16 ADC0TRGSEL	ADC0 trigger select Selects the ADC0 trigger source when alternative triggers are functional in stop modes. 0000 PDB0 external trigger pin input (PDB0_EXTRG) 0001 High speed comparator 0 output 0010 High speed comparator 1 output 0011 High speed comparator 2 output 0100 PIT trigger 0 0101 PIT trigger 1 0110 PIT trigger 2 0111 PIT trigger 3 1000 FTM0 trigger 1001 FTM1 trigger

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_ADCCOPT field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	1010 FTM2 trigger 1011 FTM3 trigger 1100 XBARA output 38 1101 Reserved 1110 Low-power timer (LPTMR) trigger 1111 Reserved
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

13.3 Functional description

For more information about the functions of SIM, see the [Introduction](#) section.

Chapter 14

Kinetis Flashloader

14.1 Chip-specific Kinetis Flashloader information

14.1.1 Kinetis Flashloader pin configuration

The Kinetis flashloader application is preprogrammed into the Kinetis flash during manufacturing and enables flash programming without the need for a debugger. For this device, Kinetis flashloader supports UART, I2C, SPI, and CAN peripheral interfaces in communicating with the master/host in provisioning user application image on the flash. The below table shows the pin configuration used by the flashloader application for the supported peripherals.

Table 14-1. Kinetis Flash Bootloader pin assignment

Peripheral interface	Assigned Pins	Module Instance	ALTMUX column
UART	PTD6, UART0_RX	0	3
	PTD7, UART0_TX		
I2C	PTB0, I2C0_SCL	0	2
	PTB1, I2C0_SDA		
SPI	PTE16, SPI0_PCS0	0	2
	PTE17, SPI0_SCK		
	PTE18, SPI0_SOUT		
	PTE19, SPI0_SIN		
FlexCAN	PTB16, CAN0_TX	0	5
	PTB17, CAN0_RX		

See [Kinetis Flashloader](#) for details.

14.2 Introduction

The Kinetis devices *that do not have an on-chip ROM* are shipped with the pre-programmed Kinetis Flashloader in the on-chip flash memory, for one-time, in-system factory programming. The Kinetis Flashloader's main task is to load a customer firmware image into the flash memory. The image on the flash has 2 programs: flashloader_loader and flashloader. After a device reset, the flashloader_loader program starts its execution first. The flashloader_loader program copies the contents of flashloader image from the flash to the on-chip RAM; the device then switches execution to the flashloader program to execute from RAM.

For this device, the Kinetis Flashloader can interface with UART, CAN, I2C, and SPI peripherals in slave mode and respond to the commands sent by a master (or host) communicating on one of those ports. The host/master can be a firmware-download application running on a PC or an embedded host communicating with the Kinetis Flashloader. Regardless of the host/master (PC or embedded host), the Kinetis Flashloader always uses a command protocol to communicate with that host/master. Commands are provided to write to memory (flash or RAM), erase flash, and get/set flashloader options and property values. The host application can query the set of available commands.

This chapter describes Kinetis Flashloader features, functionality, command structure and which peripherals are supported.

Features supported by the Kinetis Flashloader :

- Supports UART, CAN, I2C, and SPI peripheral interfaces
- Automatic detection of the active peripheral
- UART and CAN peripherals with autobaud
- Common packet-based protocol for all peripherals
- Packet error detection and retransmission
- Protection of RAM used by the flashloader while it is running
- Provides command to read properties of the device, such as flash and RAM size

Table 14-2. Commands supported by the Kinetis Flashloader

Command	Description	When flash security is enabled, then this command is
Call	Runs user application code and returns control to bootloader	Not supported
Execute	Run user application code that never returns control to the flashloader	Not supported

Table continues on the next page...

Table 14-2. Commands supported by the Kinetis Flashloader (continued)

Command	Description	When flash security is enabled, then this command is
FillMemory	Fill a range of bytes in flash with a word pattern	Not supported
FlashEraseAll	Erase the entire flash array	Not supported
FlashEraseRegion	Erase a range of sectors in flash	Not supported
FlashProgramOnce	Writes data provided in a command packet to a specified range of bytes in the program once field	Not supported
FlashReadOnce	Returns the contents of the program once field by given index and byte count	Not supported
FlashReadResource	Returns the contents of the IFR field or Flash firmware ID, by given offset, byte count and option	Not supported
WriteMemory	Write data to memory	Not supported
ReadMemory	Read data from memory	Not supported
FlashSecurityDisable	Attempt to unlock flash security using the backdoor key	Supported
GetProperty	Get the current value of a property	Supported
Reset	Reset the chip	Supported
SetProperty	Attempt to modify a writable property	Supported
FlashEraseAllUnsecure	Erase the entire flash array, including protected sectors	Supported

14.3 Functional Description

The following sub-sections describe the Kinetis Flashloader functionality.

14.3.1 Memory Maps

While executing, the Kinetis Flashloader uses RAM memory.

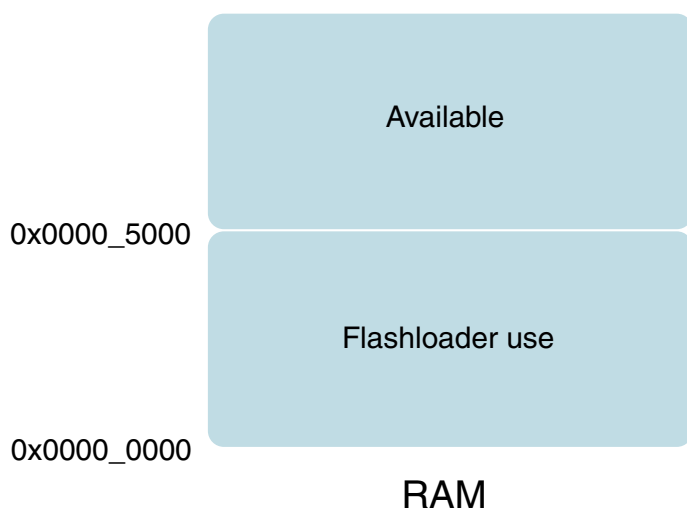


Figure 14-1. Kinetis Flashloader RAM Memory Map

NOTE

The Kinetis Flashloader requires a minimum memory space of 16KB of RAM. For Kinetis devices with less than 16 KB of on-chip RAM, the Kinetis Flashloader is not available.

14.3.2 Start-up Process

As the Kinetis Flashloader begins executing, flashloader operations begin:

1. The flashloader initializes the .data and .bss sections.
2. All supported peripherals are initialized.
3. The flashloader waits for communication to begin on a peripheral.
 - There is no timeout for the active peripheral detection process.
 - If communication is detected, then all inactive peripherals are shut down, and the command phase is entered.

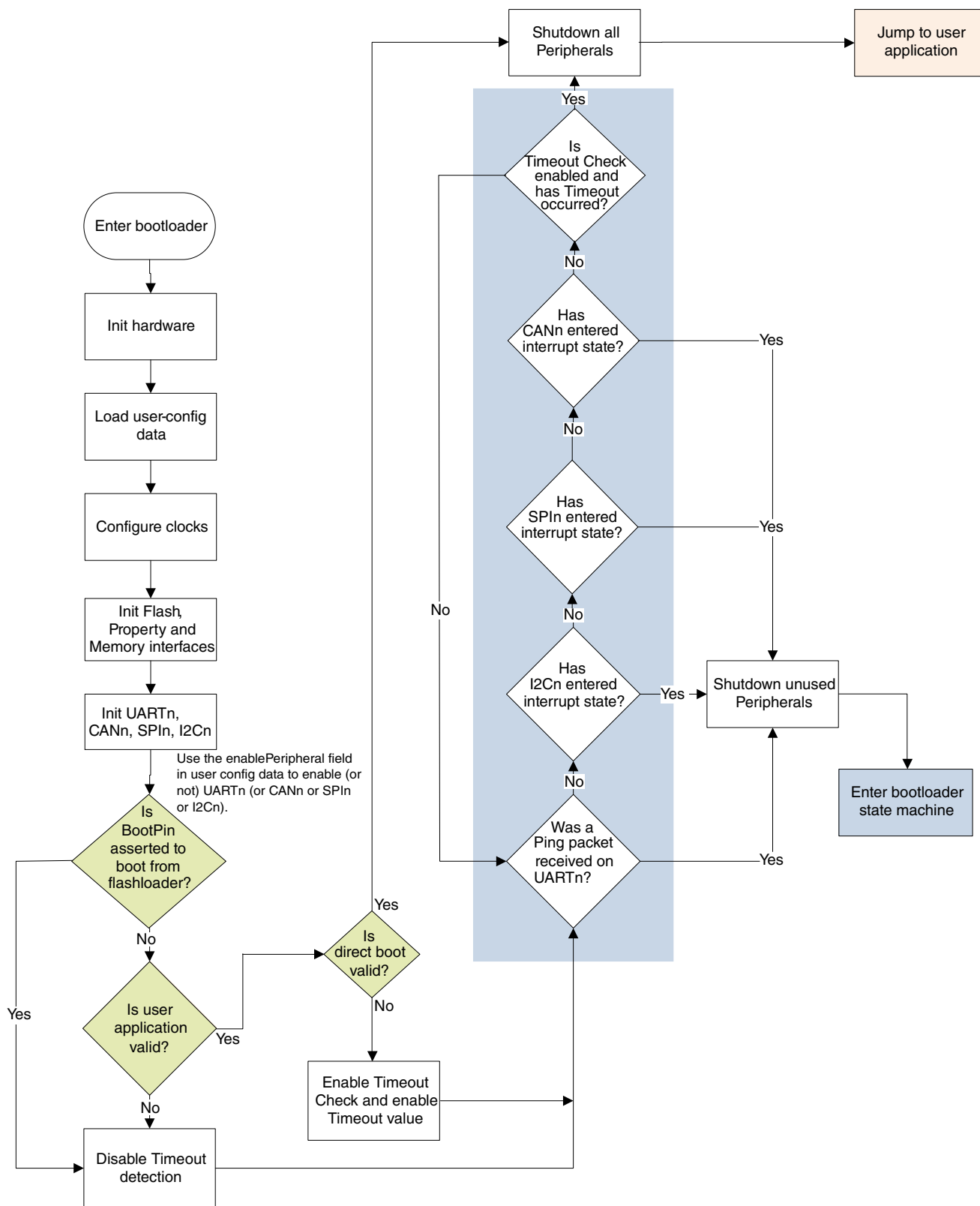


Figure 14-2. Kinetis Flashloader Start-up Flowchart

14.3.3 Clock Configuration

The Kinetis Flashloader uses the clock configuration of the chip out of reset.

14.3.4 Flashloader Protocol

This section explains the general protocol for the packet transfers between the host and the Kinetis Flashloader. The description includes the transfer of packets for different transactions, such as commands with no data phase and commands with incoming or outgoing data phase. The next section describes various packet types used in a transaction.

Each command sent from the host is replied to with a response command.

Commands may include an optional data phase:

- If the data phase is **incoming** (from host to flashloader), then the data phase is part of the **original command**.
- If the data phase is **outgoing** (from flashloader to host), then the data phase is part of the **response command**.

NOTE

In all protocols (described in the next subsections), the Ack sent in response to a Command or Data packet can arrive at any time *before, during, or after* the Command/Data packet has processed.

14.3.4.1 Command with no data phase

The protocol for a command with no data phase contains:

- Command packet (from host)
- Generic response command packet (to host)

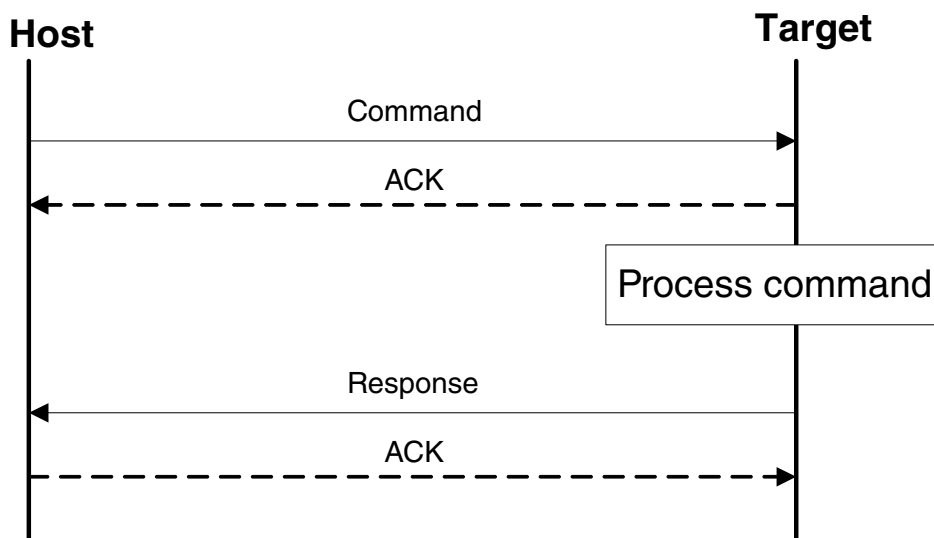


Figure 14-3. Command with No Data Phase

14.3.4.2 Command with incoming data phase

The protocol for a command with an incoming data phase contains:

- Command packet (from host)
- Generic response command packet (to host)
- Incoming data packets (from host)
- Generic response command packet (to host)

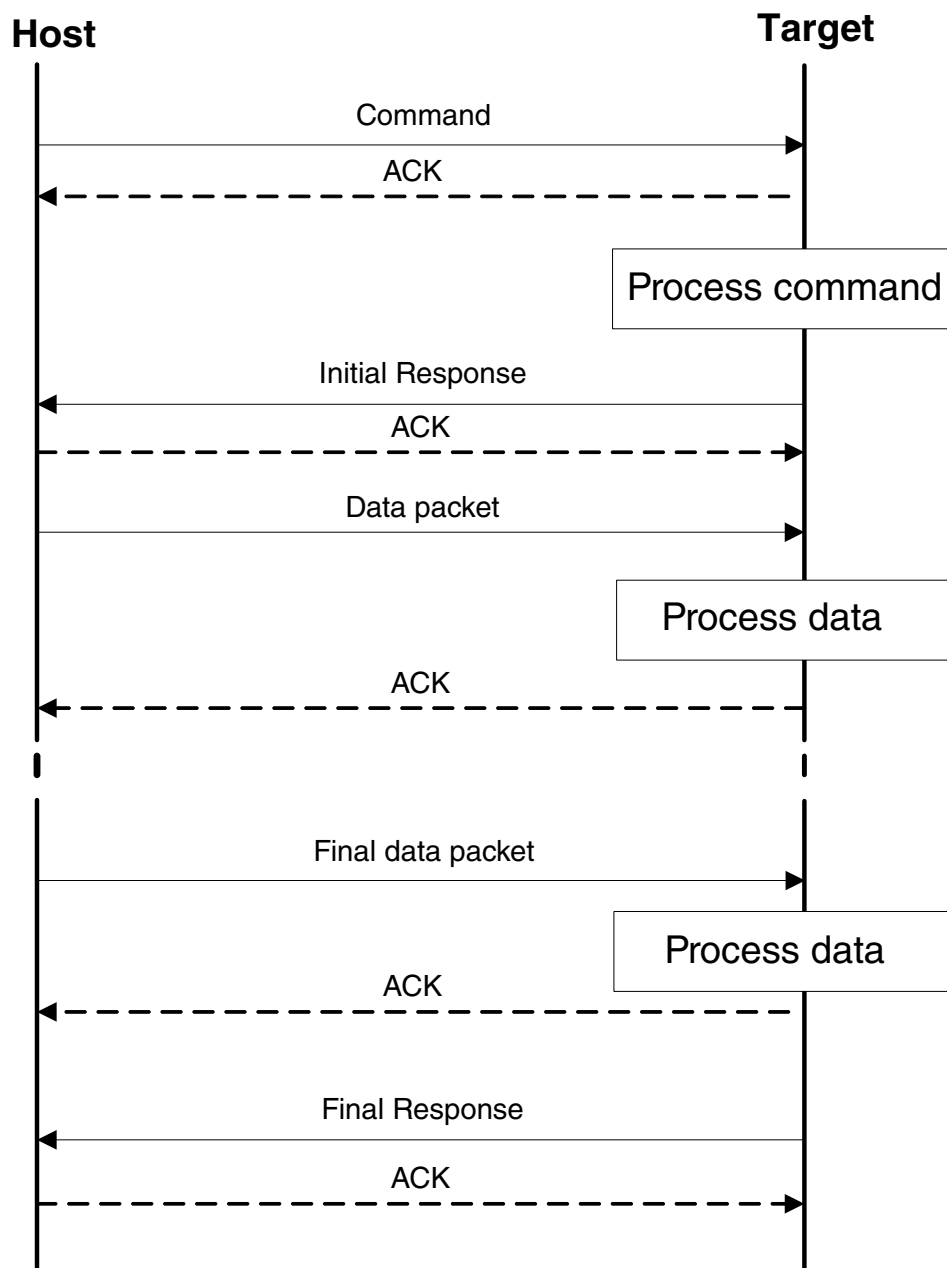


Figure 14-4. Command with incoming data phase

NOTE

- The host may not send any further packets while it (the host) is waiting for the response to a command.
- If the Generic Response packet prior to the start of the data phase does not have a status of `kStatus_Success`, then the data phase is aborted.
- Data phases may be aborted by the receiving side by sending the final Generic Response early with a status of

kStatus_AbortDataPhase. The host may abort the data phase early by sending a zero-length data packet.

- The final Generic Response packet *sent after the data phase* includes the status for the entire operation.

14.3.4.3 Command with outgoing data phase

The protocol for a command with an outgoing data phase contains:

- Command packet (from host)
- ReadMemory Response command packet (to host) (kCommandFlag_HasDataPhase set)
- Outgoing data packets (to host)
- Generic response command packet (to host)

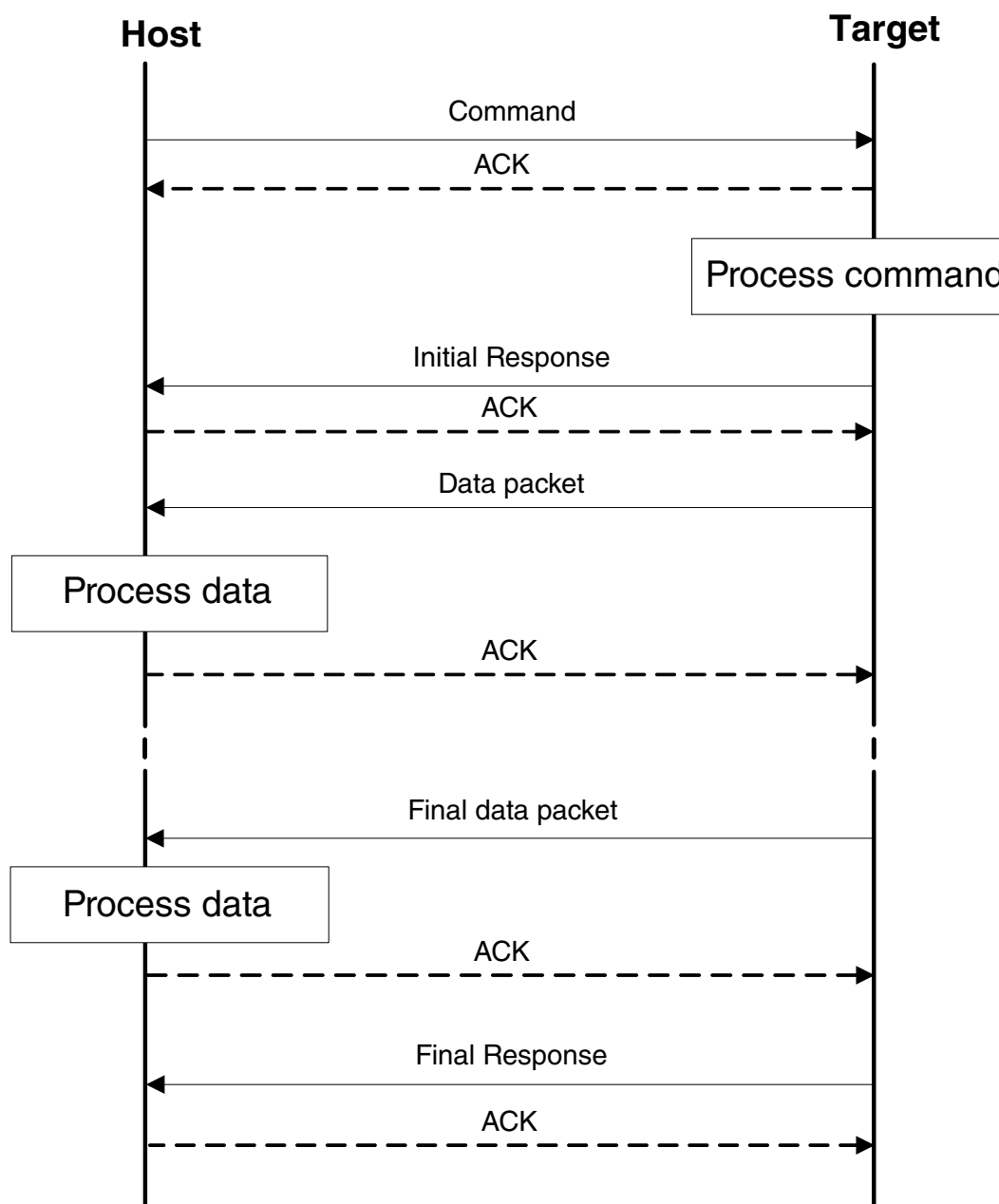


Figure 14-5. Command with outgoing data phase

NOTE

- For the outgoing data phase sequence above, the data phase is really considered part of the response command.
- The host may not send any further packets while it (the host) is waiting for the response to a command.
- If the ReadMemory Response command packet prior to the start of the data phase does not contain the `kCommandFlag_HasDataPhase` flag, then the data phase is aborted.

- Data phases may be aborted by the host sending the final Generic Response early with a status of `kStatus_AbortDataPhase`. The sending side may abort the data phase early by sending a zero-length data packet.
- The final Generic Response packet *sent after the data phase* includes the status for the entire operation.

14.3.5 Flashloader Packet Types

The Kinetis Flashloader device works in slave mode. All data communication is initiated by a host, which is either a PC or an embedded host . The Kinetis Flashloader device is the target, which receives a command or data packet. All data communication between host and target is packetized.

NOTE

The term "target" refers to the "Kinetis Flashloader device."

There are 6 types of packets used in the device:

- Ping packet
- Ping Response packet
- Framing packet
- Command packet
- Data packet
- Response packet

All fields in the packets are in little-endian byte order.

14.3.5.1 Ping packet

The Ping packet is the first packet sent from a host to the target (Kinetis Flashloader), to establish a connection on a selected peripheral. For a UART peripheral, the Ping packet is used to determine the baudrate. A Ping packet must be sent before any other communications. In response to a Ping packet, the target sends a Ping Response packet.

Table 14-3. Ping Packet Format

Byte #	Value	Name
0	0x5A	start byte
1	0xA6	ping

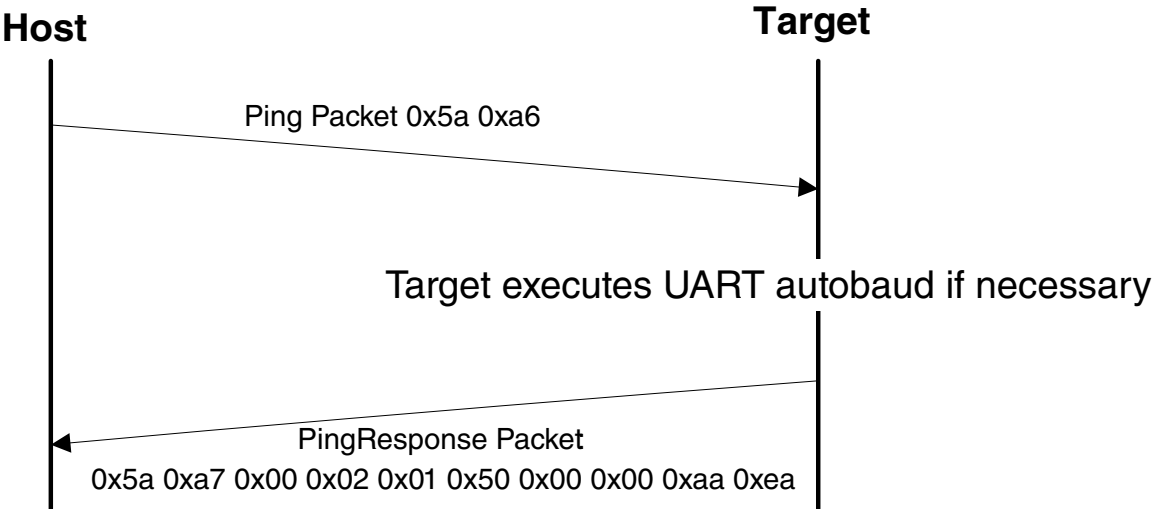


Figure 14-6. Ping Packet Protocol Sequence

14.3.5.2 Ping Response Packet

The target (Kinetis Flashloader) sends a Ping Response packet back to the host after receiving a Ping packet. If communication is over a UART peripheral, the target uses the incoming Ping packet to determine the baud rate before replying with the Ping Response packet. Once the Ping Response packet is received by the host, the connection is established, and the host starts sending commands to the target (Kinetis Flashloader).

Table 14-4. Ping Response Packet Format

Byte #	Value	Parameter
0	0x5A	start byte
1	0xA7	Ping response code
2		Protocol bugfix
3		Protocol minor
4		Protocol major
5		Protocol name = 'P' (0x50)
6		Options low
7		Options high
8		CRC16 low
9		CRC16 high

14.3.5.3 Framing Packet

The framing packet is used for flow control and error detection, and it (the framing packet) wraps command and data packets as well.

Table 14-5. Framing Packet Format

Byte #	Value	Parameter	
0	0x5A	start byte	
1		packetType	
2		length_low	Length is a 16-bit field that specifies the entire command or data packet size in bytes.
3		length_high	
4		crc16_low	This is a 16-bit field. The CRC16 value covers entire framing packet, including the start byte and command or data packets, but does not include the CRC bytes. See the CRC16 algorithm after this table.
5		crc16_high	
6 . . . n		Command or Data packet payload	

A special framing packet that contains only a start byte and a packet type is used for synchronization between the host and target.

Table 14-6. Special Framing Packet Format

Byte #	Value	Parameter
0	0x5A	start byte
1	0xA n	packetType

The Packet Type field specifies the type of the packet from one of the defined types (below):

Table 14-7. packetType Field

packetType	Name	Description
0xA1	kFramingPacketType_Ack	The previous packet was received successfully; the sending of more packets is allowed.
0xA2	kFramingPacketType_Nak	The previous packet was corrupted and must be re-sent.
0xA3	kFramingPacketType_AckAbort	Data phase is being aborted.
0xA4	kFramingPacketType_Command	The framing packet contains a command packet payload.
0xA5	kFramingPacketType_Data	The framing packet contains a data packet payload.
0xA6	kFramingPacketType_Ping	Sent to verify the other side is alive. Also used for UART autobaud.
0xA7	kFramingPacketType_PingResponse	A response to Ping; contains the framing protocol version number and options.

CRC16 algorithm:

Functional Description

```
uint16_t crc16_update(const uint8_t * src, uint32_t lengthInBytes)
{
    uint32_t crc = 0;
    uint32_t j;
    for (j=0; j < lengthInBytes; ++j)
    {
        uint32_t i;
        uint32_t byte = src[j];
        crc ^= byte << 8;
        for (i = 0; i < 8; ++i)
        {
            uint32_t temp = crc << 1;
            if (crc & 0x8000)
            {
                temp ^= 0x1021;
            }
            crc = temp;
        }
    }
    return crc;
}
```

14.3.5.4 Command packet

The command packet carries a 32-bit command header and a list of 32-bit parameters.

Table 14-8. Command Packet Format

Command Packet Format (32 bytes)										
Command Header (4 bytes)				28 bytes for Parameters (Max 7 parameters)						
Tag	Flags	Rsvd	Param Count	Param1 (32-bit)	Param2 (32-bit)	Param3 (32-bit)	Param4 (32-bit)	Param5 (32-bit)	Param6 (32-bit)	Param7 (32-bit)
byte 0	byte 1	byte 2	byte 3							

Table 14-9. Command Header Format

Byte #	Command Header Field	
0	Command or Response tag	The command header is 4 bytes long, with these fields.
1	Flags	
2	Reserved. Should be 0x00.	
3	ParameterCount	

The header is followed by 32-bit parameters up to the value of the ParameterCount field specified in the header. Because a command packet is 32 bytes long, only 7 parameters can fit into the command packet.

Command packets are also used by the target to send responses back to the host. As mentioned earlier, command packets and data packets are embedded into framing packets for all of the transfers.

Table 14-10. Commands that are supported

Command	Name
0x01	FlashEraseAll
0x02	FlashEraseRegion
0x03	ReadMemory
0x04	WriteMemory
0x05	FillMemory
0x06	FlashSecurityDisable
0x07	GetProperty
0x08	Reserved
0x09	Execute
0x10	FlashReadResource
0x11	Reserved
0x0A	Call
0x0B	Reset
0x0C	SetProperty
0x0D	FlashEraseAllUnsecure
0x0E	FlashProgramOnce
0x0F	FlashReadOnce

Table 14-11. Responses that are supported

Response	Name
0xA0	GenericResponse
0xA7	GetPropertyResponse (used for sending responses to GetProperty command only)

Table continues on the next page...

Table 14-11. Responses that are supported (continued)

Response	Name
0xA3	ReadMemoryResponse (used for sending responses to ReadMemory command only)
0xAF	FlashReadOnceResponse (used for sending responses to FlashReadOnce command only)
0xB0	FlashReadResourceResponse (used for sending responses to FlashReadResource command only)

Flags: Each command packet contains a Flag byte. Only bit 0 of the flag byte is used. If bit 0 of the flag byte is set to 1, then data packets will follow in the command sequence. The number of bytes that will be transferred in the data phase is determined by a command-specific parameter in the parameters array.

ParameterCount: The number of parameters included in the command packet.

Parameters: The parameters are word-length (32 bits). With the default maximum packet size of 32 bytes, a command packet can contain up to 7 parameters.

14.3.5.5 Data packet

The data packet carries just the data, either host sending data to target, or target sending data to host. The data transfer direction is determined by the last command sent from the host. The data packet is also wrapped within a framing packet, to ensure the correct packet data is received.

The contents of a data packet are simply the data itself. There are no other fields, so that the most data per packet can be transferred. Framing packets are responsible for ensuring that the correct packet data is received.

14.3.5.6 Response packet

The responses are carried using the same command packet format wrapped with framing packet data. Types of responses include:

- GenericResponse
- GetPropertyResponse
- ReadMemoryResponse

GenericResponse: After the Kinetis Flashloader has processed a command, the flashloader will send a generic response with status and command tag information to the host. The generic response is the last packet in the command protocol sequence. The generic response packet contains the framing packet data and the command packet data (with generic response tag = 0xA0) and a list of parameters (defined in the next section). The parameter count field in the header is always set to 2, for status code and command tag parameters.

Table 14-12. GenericResponse Parameters

Byte #	Parameter	Description
0 - 3	Status code	The Status codes are errors encountered during the execution of a command by the target (Kinetis Flashloader). If a command succeeds, then a kStatus_Success code is returned. Table 14-48 , Kinetis Flashloader Status Error Codes, lists the status codes returned to the host by the Kinetis Flashloader.
4 - 7	Command tag	The Command tag parameter identifies the response to the command sent by the host.

GetPropertyResponse: The GetPropertyResponse packet is sent by the target in response to the host query that uses the GetProperty command. The GetPropertyResponse packet contains the framing packet data and the command packet data, with the command/response tag set to a GetPropertyResponse tag value (0xA7).

The parameter count field in the header is set to greater than 1, to always include the status code and one or many property values.

Table 14-13. GetPropertyResponse Parameters

Byte #	Value	Parameter
0 - 3		Status code
4 - 7		Property value
...		...
		Can be up to maximum 6 property values, limited to the size of the 32-bit command packet and property type.

ReadMemoryResponse: The ReadMemoryResponse packet is sent by the target in response to the host sending a ReadMemory command. The ReadMemoryResponse packet contains the framing packet data and the command packet data, with the command/response tag set to a ReadMemoryResponse tag value (0xA3), the flags field set to kCommandFlag_HasDataPhase (1).

The parameter count set to 2 for the status code and the data byte count parameters shown below.

Table 14-14. ReadMemoryResponse Parameters

Byte #	Parameter	Description
0 - 3	Status code	The status of the associated Read Memory command.
4 - 7	Data byte count	The number of bytes sent in the data phase.

14.3.6 Flashloader Command API

All Kinetis Flashloader command APIs follow the command packet format that is wrapped by the framing packet, as explained in previous sections.

- For a list of commands supported by the Flashloader, see [Table 14-2](#), Commands supported.
- For a list of status codes returned by the Kinetis Flashloader, see [Table 14-48](#), Kinetis Flashloader Status Error Codes.

14.3.6.1 Call command

The Call command will execute a function that is written in memory at the address sent in the command. The address needs to be a valid memory location residing in accessible flash (internal or external) or in RAM. The command supports the passing of one 32-bit argument. Although the command supports a stack address, at this time the call will still take place using the current stack pointer. After execution of the function, a 32-bit return value will be returned in the generic response message.

Table 14-15. Parameters for Call Command

Byte #	Command
0 - 3	Call address
4 - 7	Argument word
8 - 11	Stack pointer

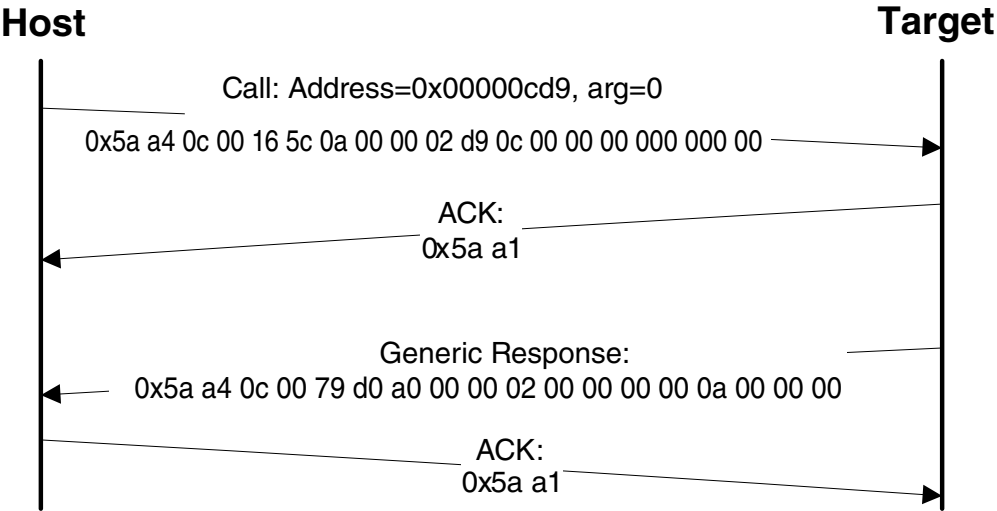


Figure 14-7. Protocol Sequence for Call Command

Response: The target (Kinetis Flashloader) will return a GenericResponse packet with a status code either set to the return value of the function called or set to kStatus_InvalidArgument (105).

14.3.6.2 GetProperty command

The GetProperty command is used to query the flashloader about various properties and settings. Each supported property has a unique 32-bit tag associated with it. The tag occupies the first parameter of the command packet. The target returns a GetPropertyResponse packet with the property values for the property identified with the tag in the GetProperty command.

Properties are the defined units of data that can be accessed with the GetProperty or SetProperty commands. Properties may be read-only or read-write. All read-write properties are 32-bit integers, so they can easily be carried in a command parameter.

For a list of properties and their associated 32-bit property tags supported by the Kinetis Flashloader, see [Table 14-44](#).

The 32-bit property tag is the only parameter required for GetProperty command.

Table 14-16. Parameters for GetProperty Command

Byte #	Command
0 - 3	Property tag

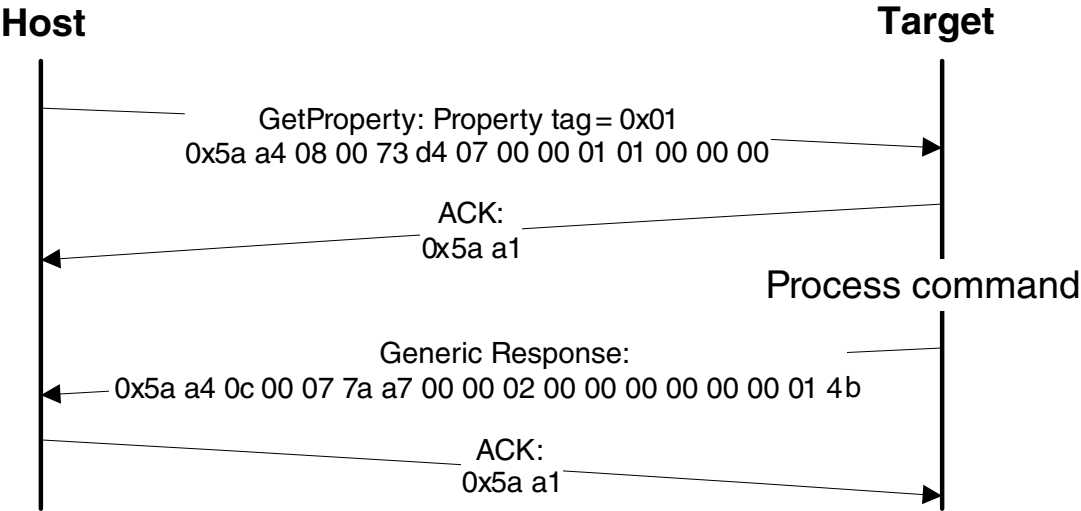


Figure 14-8. Protocol Sequence for GetProperty Command

Table 14-17. GetProperty Command Packet Format (Example)

GetProperty	Parameter	Value
Framing packet	start byte	0x5A
	packetType	0xA4, kFramingPacketType_Command
	length	0x08 0x00
	crc16	0x73 0xD4
Command packet	commandTag	0x07 – GetProperty
	flags	0x00
	reserved	0x00
	parameterCount	0x01
	propertyTag	0x00000001 - CurrentVersion

The GetProperty command has no data phase.

Response: In response to a GetProperty command, the target will send a GetPropertyResponse packet with the response tag set to 0xA7. The parameter count indicates the number of parameters sent for the property values, with the first parameter showing status code 0, followed by the property value(s). The next table shows an example of a GetPropertyResponse packet.

Table 14-18. GetProperty Response Packet Format (Example)

GetPropertyResponse	Parameter	Value
Framing packet	start byte	0x5A
	packetType	0xA4, kFramingPacketType_Command
	length	0x0c 0x00 (12 bytes)

Table continues on the next page...

Table 14-18. GetProperty Response Packet Format (Example) (continued)

GetPropertyResponse	Parameter	Value
	crc16	0x07 0x7a
Command packet	responseTag	0xA7
	flags	0x00
	reserved	0x00
	parameterCount	0x02
	status	0x00000000
	propertyValue	0x0000014b - CurrentVersion

14.3.6.3 SetProperty command

The SetProperty command is used to change or alter the values of the properties or options in the Kinetis Flashloader. However, the SetProperty command can only change the value of properties that are writable—see [Table 14-44](#), Properties used by Get/SetProperty Commands. If you try to set a value for a read-only property, then the Kinetis Flashloader will return an error.

The property tag and the new value to set are the 2 parameters required for the SetProperty command.

Table 14-19. Parameters for SetProperty Command

Byte #	Command
0 - 3	Property tag
4 - 7	Property value

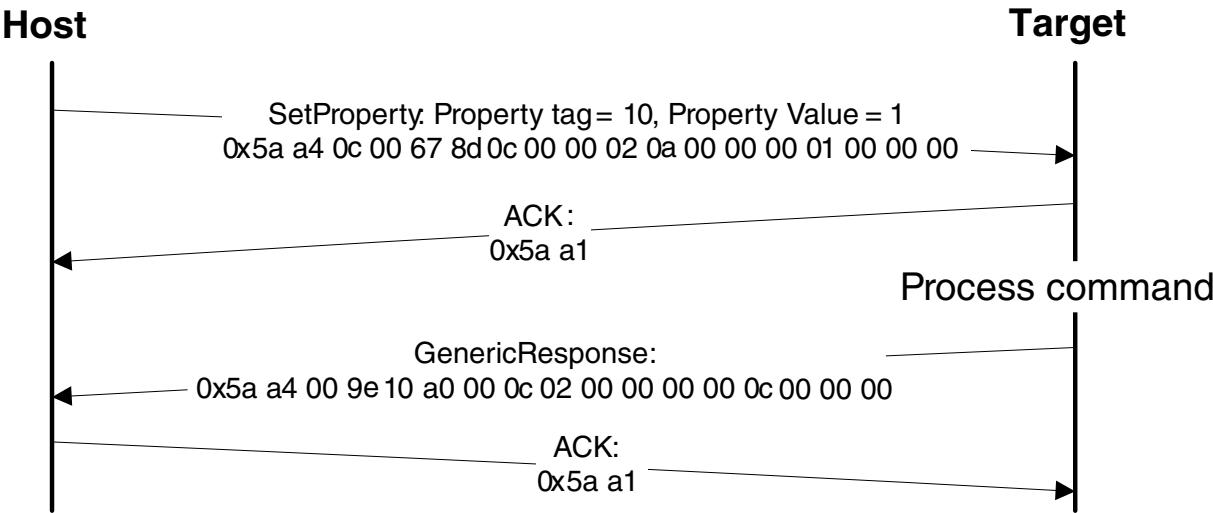


Figure 14-9. Protocol Sequence for SetProperty Command

Table 14-20. SetProperty Command Packet Format (Example)

SetProperty	Parameter	Value
Framing packet	start byte	0x5A
	packetType	0xA4, kFramingPacketType_Command
	length	0x0C 0x00
	crc16	0x67 0x8D
Command packet	commandTag	0x0C – SetProperty with property tag 10
	flags	0x00
	reserved	0x00
	parameterCount	0x02
	propertyTag	0x0000000A - VerifyWrites
	propertyValue	0x00000001

The SetProperty command has no data phase.

Response: The target (Kinetis Flashloader) will return a GenericResponse packet with one of following status codes:

Table 14-21. SetProperty Response Status Codes

Status Code
kStatus_Success
kStatus_ReadOnly
kStatus_UnknownProperty
kStatus_InvalidArgument

14.3.6.4 FlashEraseAll command

The FlashEraseAll command performs an erase of the entire flash memory. If any flash regions are protected, then the FlashEraseAll command will fail and return an error status code. Executing the FlashEraseAll command will release flash security if it (flash security) was enabled, by setting the FTFE_FSEC register. However, the FSEC field of the flash configuration field is erased, so unless it is reprogrammed, the flash security will be re-enabled after the next system reset. The Command tag for FlashEraseAll command is 0x01 set in the commandTag field of the command packet.

The FlashEraseAll command requires no parameters.

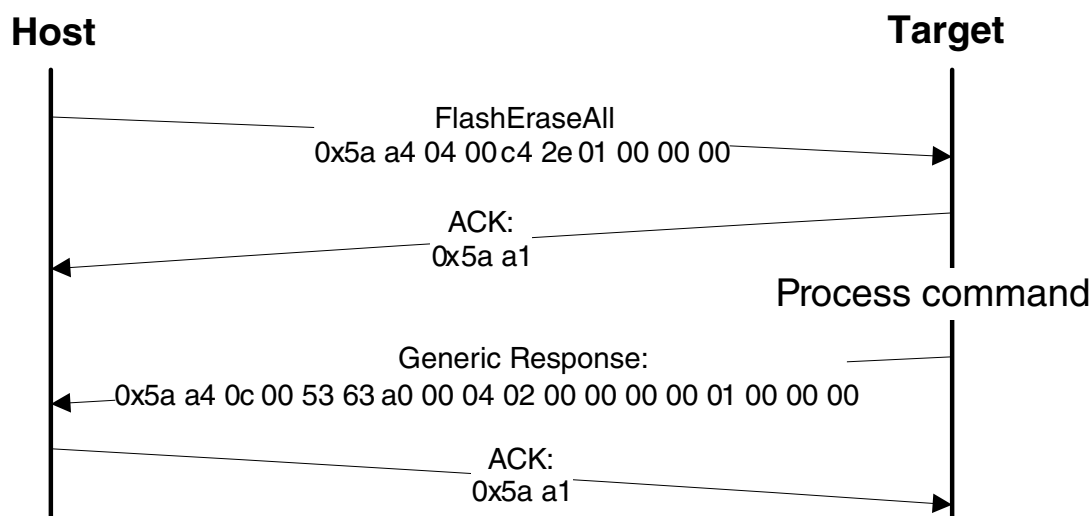


Figure 14-10. Protocol Sequence for FlashEraseAll Command

Table 14-22. FlashEraseAll Command Packet Format (Example)

FlashEraseAll	Parameter	Value
Framing packet	start byte	0x5A
	packetType	0xA4, kFramingPacketType_Command
	length	0x04 0x00
	crc16	0xC4 0x2E
Command packet	commandTag	0x01 - FlashEraseAll
	flags	0x00
	reserved	0x00
	parameterCount	0x00

The FlashEraseAll command has no data phase.

Response: The target (Kinetis Flashloader) will return a GenericResponse packet with status code either set to kStatus_Success for successful execution of the command, or set to an appropriate error status code.

14.3.6.5 FlashEraseRegion command

The FlashEraseRegion command performs an erase of one or more sectors of the flash memory or a specified range of flash within the connected SPI flash devices.

The start address and number of bytes are the 2 parameters required for the FlashEraseRegion command. The start and byte count parameters must be , or the FlashEraseRegion command will fail and return kStatus_FlashAlignmentError (0x101). If the region specified does not fit in the flash memory space, the FlashEraseRegion command will fail and return kStatus_FlashAddressError (0x102). If any part of the region specified is protected, the FlashEraseRegion command will fail and return kStatus_MemoryRangeInvalid (0x10200).

Table 14-23. Parameters for FlashEraseRegion Command

Byte #	Parameter
0 - 3	Start address
4 - 7	Byte count

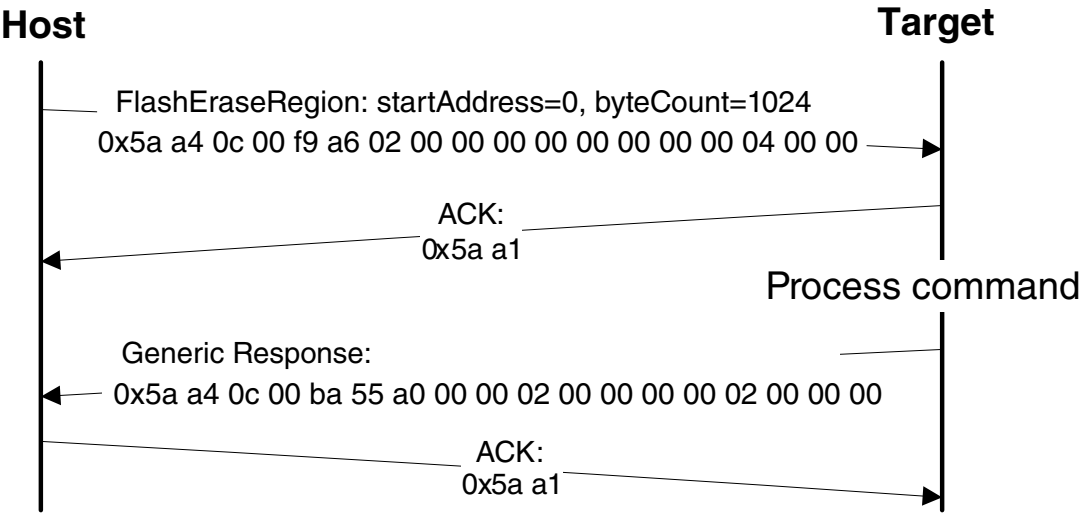


Figure 14-11. Protocol Sequence for FlashEraseRegion Command

Table 14-24. FlashEraseRegion Command Packet Format (Example)

FlashEraseRegion	Parameter	Value
Framing packet	start byte	0x5A
	packetType	0xA4, kFramingPacketType_Command
	length	0x0C 0x00
	crc16	0xF9 0x A6
Command packet	commandTag	0x02, kCommandTag_FlashEraseRegion
	flags	0x00
	reserved	0x00
	parameterCount	0x02
	startAddress	0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00 (0x0000_0000)
	byte count	0x00 0x04 0x00 0x00 (0x400)

The FlashEraseRegion command has no data phase.

Response: The target (Kinetis Flashloader) will return a GenericResponse packet with one of following error status codes.

Table 14-25. FlashEraseRegion Response Status Codes

Status Code
kStatus_Success (0x0)
kStatus_MemoryRangeInvalid (0x10200)
kStatus_FlashAlignmentError (0x101)
kStatus_FlashAddressError (0x102)
kStatus_FlashAccessError (0x103)
kStatus_FlashProtectionViolation (0x104)
kStatus_FlashCommandFailure (0x105)

14.3.6.6 FlashEraseAllUnsecure command

The FlashEraseAllUnsecure command performs a mass erase of the flash memory, including protected sectors. Flash security is immediately disabled if it (flash security) was enabled, and the FSEC byte in the flash configuration field at address 0x40C is programmed to 0xFE. However, if the mass erase enable option in the FSEC field is disabled, then the FlashEraseAllUnsecure command will fail.

The FlashEraseAllUnsecure command requires no parameters.

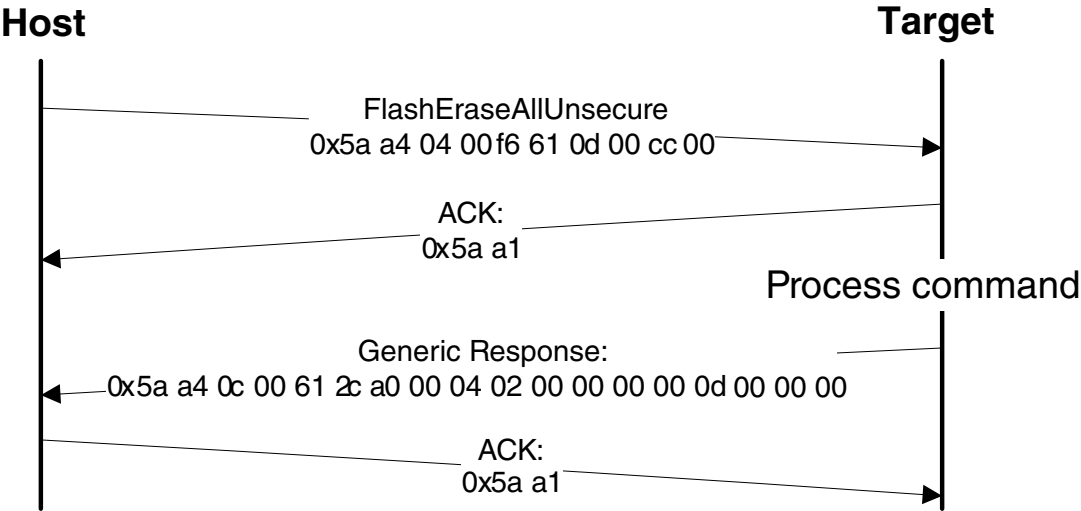


Figure 14-12. Protocol Sequence for FlashEraseAll Command

Table 14-26. FlashEraseAllUnsecure Command Packet Format (Example)

FlashEraseAllUnsecure	Parameter	Value
Framing packet	start byte	0x5A
	packetType	0xA4, kFramingPacketType_Command
	length	0x04 0x00
	crc16	0xF6 0x61
Command packet	commandTag	0x0D - FlashEraseAllUnsecure
	flags	0x00
	reserved	0x00
	parameterCount	0x00

The FlashEraseAllUnsecure command has no data phase.

Response: The target (Kinetis Flashloader) will return a GenericResponse packet with status code either set to kStatus_Success for successful execution of the command, or set to an appropriate error status code.

14.3.6.7 FillMemory command

The FillMemory command fills a range of bytes in memory with a data pattern. It follows the same rules as the WriteMemory command. The difference between FillMemory and WriteMemory is that a data pattern is included in FillMemory command parameter, and there is no data phase for the FillMemory command, while WriteMemory does have a data phase.

Table 14-27. Parameters for FillMemory Command

Byte #	Command
0 - 3	Start address of memory to fill
4 - 7	Number of bytes to write with the pattern <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The start address should be 32-bit aligned. The number of bytes must be evenly divisible by 4. (Note: for a part that uses FTFE flash, the start address should be 64-bit aligned, and the number of bytes must be evenly divisible by 8).
8 - 11	32-bit pattern

- To fill with a byte pattern (8-bit), the byte must be replicated 4 times in the 32-bit pattern.
- To fill with a short pattern (16-bit), the short value must be replicated 2 times in the 32-bit pattern.

For example, to fill a byte value with 0xFE, the word pattern would be 0xFEFEFEFE; to fill a short value 0x5AFE, the word pattern would be 0x5AFE5AFE.

Special care must be taken when writing to flash.

- First, any flash sector written to must have been previously erased with a FlashEraseAll or FlashEraseRegion command.
- Writing to flash requires the start address to be .
- If the VerifyWrites property is set to true, then writes to flash will also perform a flash verify program operation.

When writing to RAM, the start address need not be aligned, and the data will not be padded.

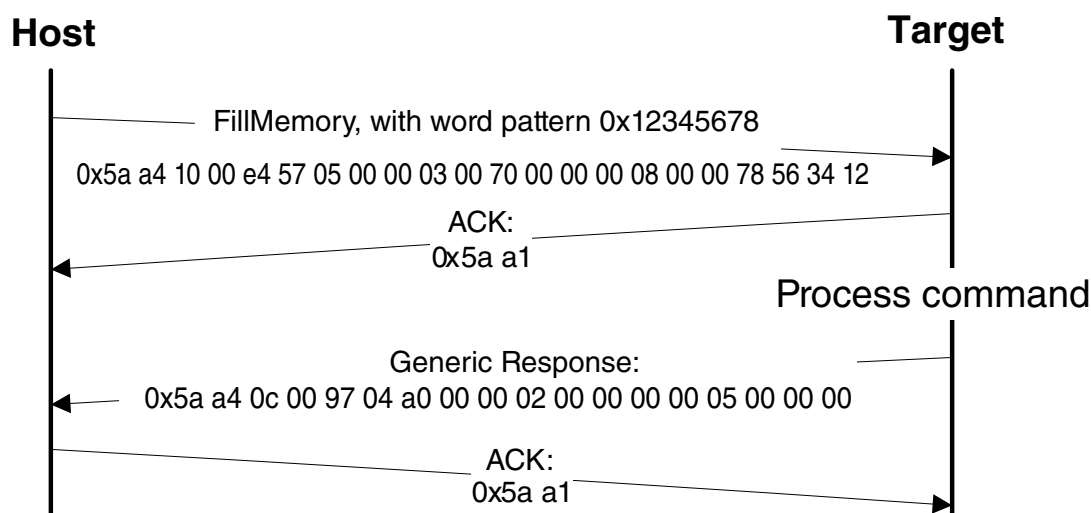

Figure 14-13. Protocol Sequence for FillMemory Command

Table 14-28. FillMemory Command Packet Format (Example)

FillMemory	Parameter	Value
Framing packet	start byte	0x5A
	packetType	0xA4, kFramingPacketType_Command
	length	0x10 0x00
	crc16	0xE4 0x57
Command packet	commandTag	0x05 – FillMemory
	flags	0x00
	Reserved	0x00
	parameterCount	0x03
	startAddress	0x00007000
	byteCount	0x00000800
	patternWord	0x12345678

The FillMemory command has no data phase.

Response: upon successful execution of the command, the target (Kinetis Flashloader) will return a GenericResponse packet with a status code set to kStatus_Success, or to an appropriate error status code.

14.3.6.8 FlashProgramOnce command

The FlashProgramOnce command writes data (that is provided in a command packet) to a specified range of bytes in the program once field. Special care must be taken when writing to the program once field.

- The program once field only supports programming once, so any attempted to reprogram a program once field will get an error response.
- Writing to the program once field requires the byte count to be 4-byte aligned or 8-byte aligned.

The FlashProgramOnce command uses 3 parameters: index, byteCount, data.

Table 14-29. Parameters for FlashProgramOnce Command

Byte #	Command
0 - 3	Index of program once field
4 - 7	Byte count (must be evenly divisible by 4)
8 - 11	Data
12 - 16	Data

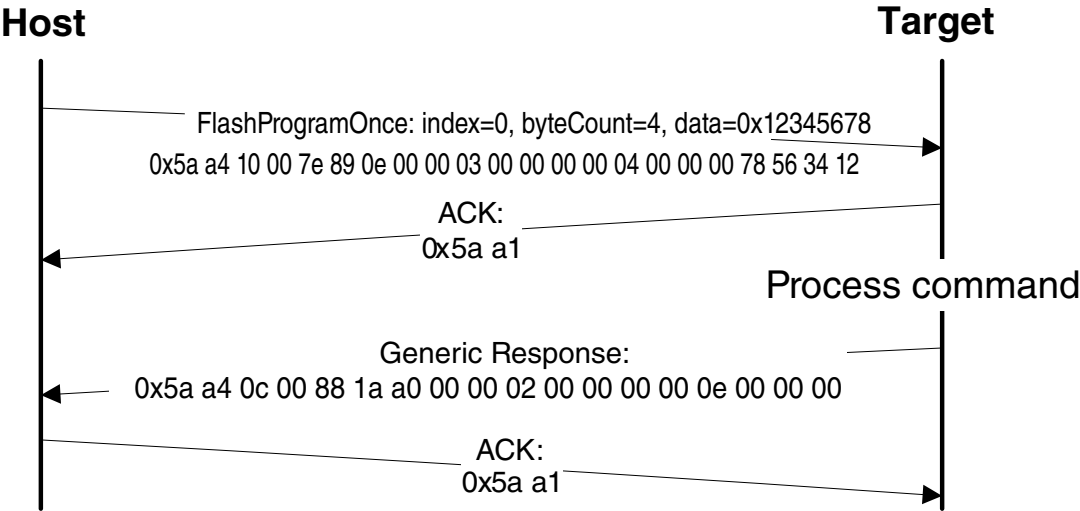


Figure 14-14. Protocol Sequence for FlashProgramOnce Command

Table 14-30. FlashProgramOnce Command Packet Format (Example)

FlashProgramOnce	Parameter	Value
Framing packet	start byte	0x5A
	packetType	0xA4, kFramingPacketType_Command
	length	0x10 0x00
	crc16	0x7E4 0x89
Command packet	commandTag	0x0E – FlashProgramOnce
	flags	0
	reserved	0
	parameterCount	3
	index	0x0000_0000
	byteCount	0x0000_0004
	data	0x1234_5678

Response: upon successful execution of the command, the target (Kinetis Flashloader) will return a GenericResponse packet with a status code set to kStatus_Success, or to an appropriate error status code.

14.3.6.9 FlashReadOnce command

The FlashReadOnce command returns the contents of the program once field by given index and byte count. The FlashReadOnce command uses 2 parameters: index and byteCount.

Table 14-31. Parameters for FlashReadOnce Command

Byte #	Parameter	Description
0 - 3	index	Index of the program once field (to read from)
4 - 7	byteCount	Number of bytes to read and return to the caller

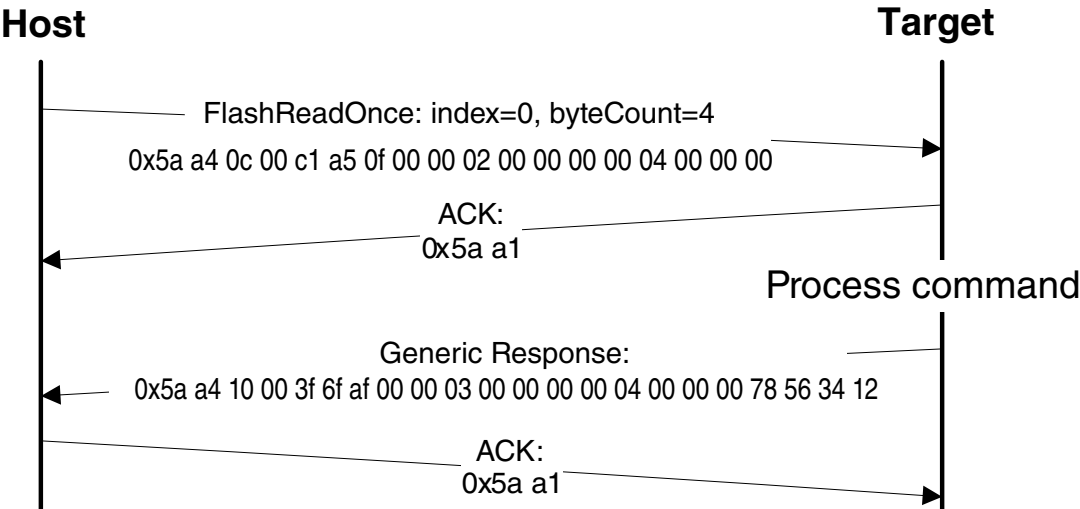


Figure 14-15. Protocol Sequence for FlashReadOnce Command

Table 14-32. FlashReadOnce Command Packet Format (Example)

FlashReadOnce	Parameter	Value
Framing packet	start byte	0x5A
	packetType	0xA4
	length	0x0C 0x00
	crc	0xC1 0xA5
Command packet	commandTag	0x0F – FlashReadOnce
	flags	0x00
	reserved	0x00
	parameterCount	0x02
	index	0x0000_0000
	byteCount	0x0000_0004

Table 14-33. FlashReadOnce Response Format (Example)

FlashReadOnce Response	Parameter	Value
Framing packet	start byte	0x5A
	packetType	0xA4

Table continues on the next page...

Table 14-33. FlashReadOnce Response Format (Example) (continued)

FlashReadOnce Response	Parameter	Value
	length	0x10 0x00
	crc	0x3F 0x6F
Command packet	commandTag	0xAF
	flags	0x00
	reserved	0x00
	parameterCount	0x03
	status	0x0000_0000
	byteCount	0x0000_0004
	data	0x1234_5678

Response: upon successful execution of the command, the target (Kinetis Flashloader) will return a FlashReadOnceResponse packet with a status code set to kStatus_Success, a byte count and corresponding data read from Program Once Field upon successful execution of the command, or will return with a status code set to an appropriate error status code and a byte count set to 0.

14.3.6.10 FlashReadResource command

The FlashReadResource command returns the contents of the IFR field or Flash firmware ID, by given offset, byte count, and option. The FlashReadResource command uses 3 parameters: start address, byteCount, option.

Table 14-34. Parameters for FlashReadResource Command

Byte #	Parameter	Command
0 - 3	start address	Start address of specific non-volatile memory to be read
4 - 7	byteCount	Byte count to be read
8 - 11	option	0: IFR 1: Flash firmware ID

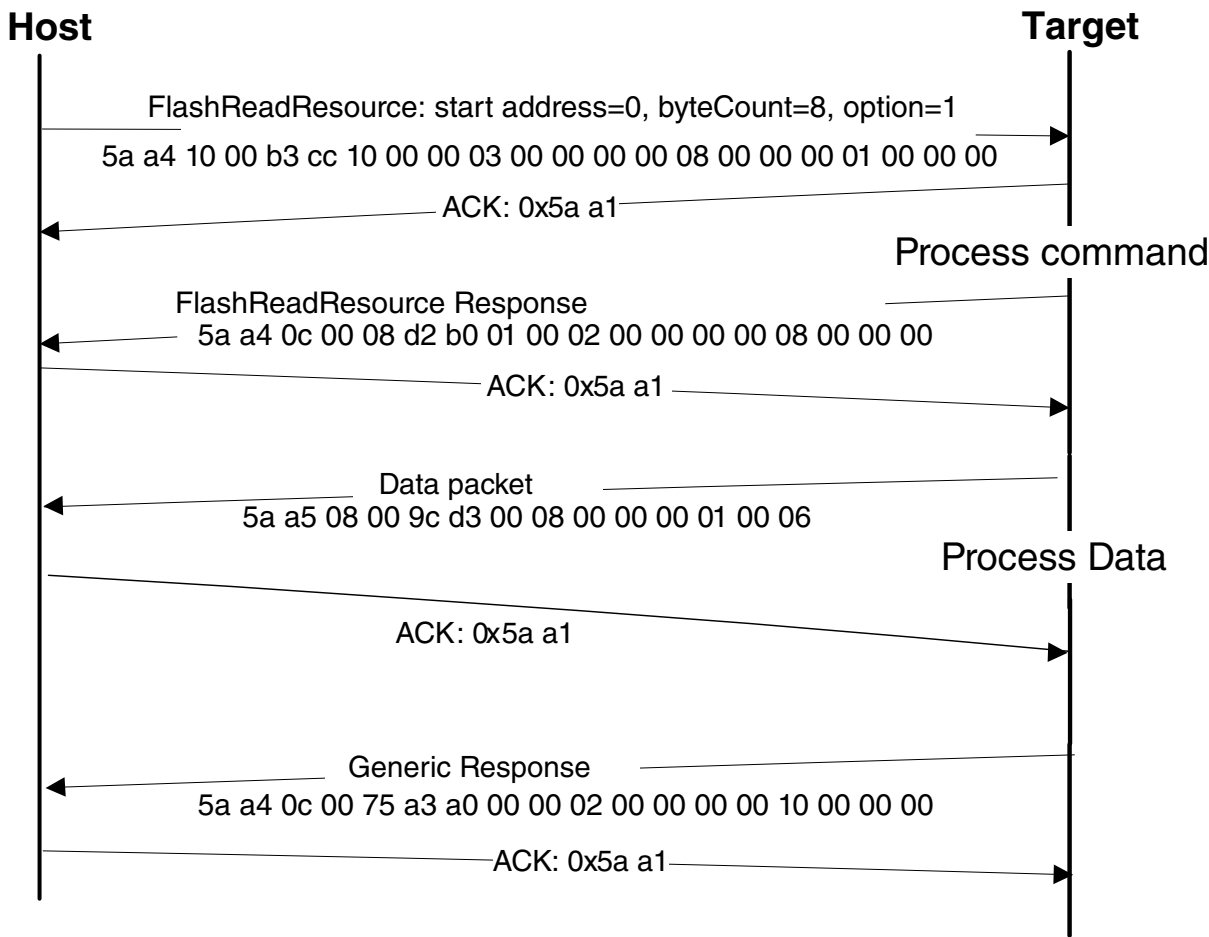


Figure 14-16. Protocol Sequence for FlashReadResource Command

Table 14-35. FlashReadResource Command Packet Format (Example)

FlashReadResource	Parameter	Value
Framing packet	start byte	0x5A
	packetType	0xA4
	length	0x10 0x00
	crc	0xB3 0xCC
Command packet	commandTag	0x10 – FlashReadResource
	flags	0x00
	reserved	0x00
	parameterCount	0x03
	startAddress	0x0000_0000
	byteCount	0x0000_0008
	option	0x0000_0001

Table 14-36. FlashReadResource Response Format (Example)

FlashReadResource Response	Parameter	Value
Framing packet	start byte	0x5A
	packetType	0xA4
	length	0x0C 0x00
	crc	0xD2 0xB0
Command packet	commandTag	0xB0
	flags	0x01
	reserved	0x00
	parameterCount	0x02
	status	0x0000_0000
	byteCount	0x0000_0008

Data phase: The FlashReadResource command has a data phase. Because the target (Kinetis Bootloader) works in slave mode, the host must pull data packets until the number of bytes of data *specified in the byteCount parameter of FlashReadResource command* are received by the host.

14.3.6.11 WriteMemory command

The WriteMemory command writes data provided in the data phase to a specified range of bytes in memory (flash or RAM). However, if flash protection is enabled, then writes to protected sectors will fail.

Special care must be taken when writing to flash.

- First, any flash sector written to must have been previously erased with a FlashEraseAll or FlashEraseRegion command.
- Writing to flash requires the start address to be .
- If the VerifyWrites property is set to true, then writes to flash will also perform a flash verify program operation.

When writing to RAM, the start address need not be aligned, and the data will not be padded.

The start address and number of bytes are the 2 parameters required for WriteMemory command.

Table 14-37. Parameters for WriteMemory Command

Byte #	Command
0 - 3	Start address
4 - 7	Byte count

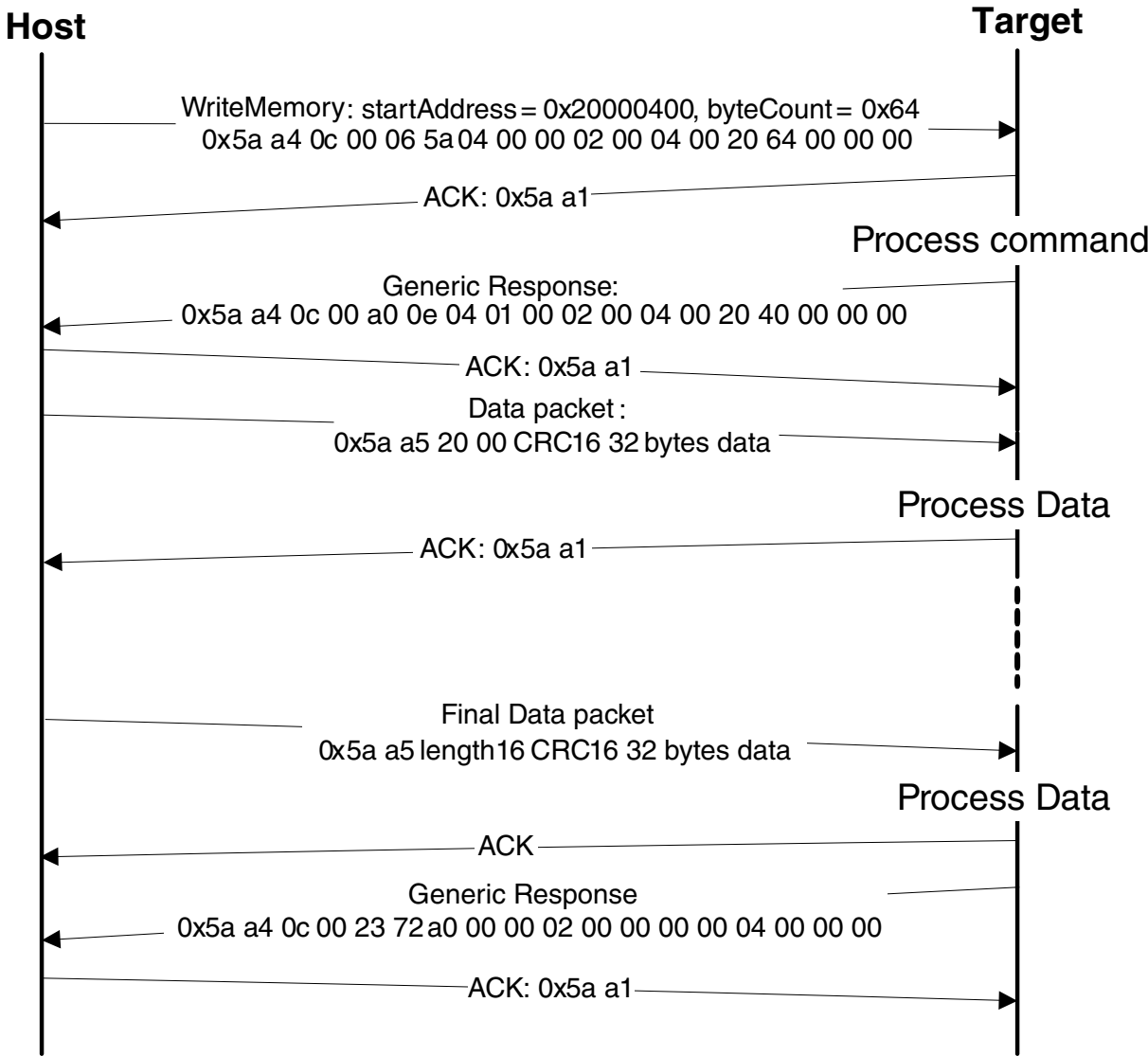


Figure 14-17. Protocol Sequence for WriteMemory Command

Table 14-38. WriteMemory Command Packet Format (Example)

WriteMemory	Parameter	Value
Framing packet	start byte	0x5A
	packetType	0xA4, kFramingPacketType_Command
	length	0x0C 0x00
	crc16	0x06 0x5A
Command packet	commandTag	0x04 - writeMemory
	flags	0x00
	reserved	0x00
	parameterCount	0x02

Table continues on the next page...

Table 14-38. WriteMemory Command Packet Format (Example) (continued)

WriteMemory	Parameter	Value
	startAddress	0x20000400
	byteCount	0x00000064

Data Phase: The WriteMemory command has a data phase; the host will send data packets until the number of bytes of data specified in the byteCount parameter of the WriteMemory command are received by the target.

Response: The target (Kinetis Flashloader) will return a GenericResponse packet with a status code set to kStatus_Success upon successful execution of the command, or to an appropriate error status code.

14.3.6.12 Read memory command

The ReadMemory command returns the contents of memory at the given address, for a specified number of bytes. This command can read any region of memory accessible by the CPU and not protected by security.

The start address and number of bytes are the 2 parameters required for ReadMemory command.

Table 14-39. Parameters for read memory command

Byte	Parameter	Description
0-3	Start address	Start address of memory to read from
4-7	Byte count	Number of bytes to read and return to caller

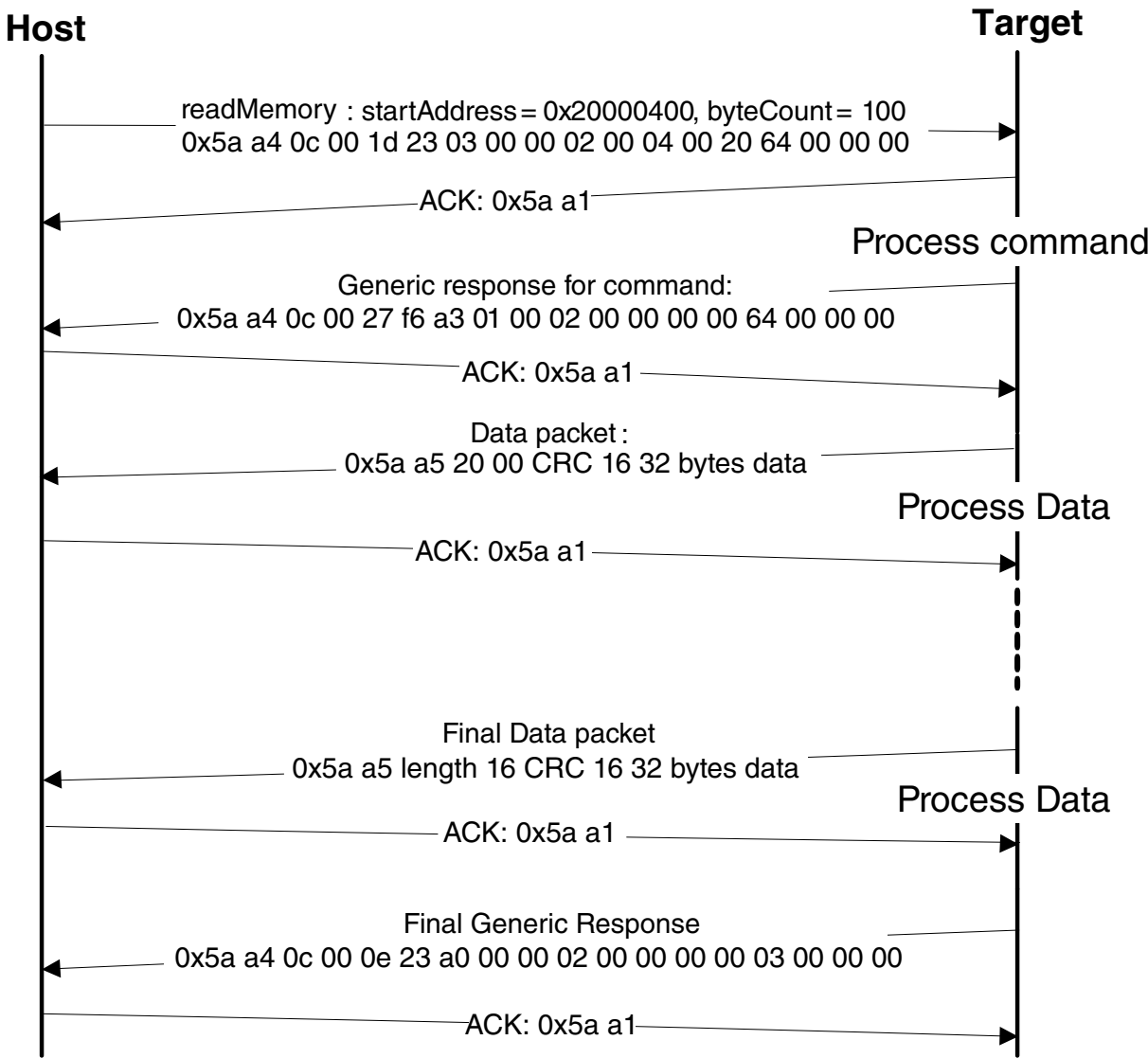


Figure 14-18. Command sequence for read memory

ReadMemory	Parameter	Value
Framing packet	Start byte	0x5A0xA4,
	packetType	kFramingPacketType_Command
	length	0x0C 0x00
	crc16	0x1D 0x23
Command packet	commandTag	0x03 - readMemory
	flags	0x00
	reserved	0x00
	parameterCount	0x02
	startAddress	0x20000400
	byteCount	0x00000064

Data Phase: The ReadMemory command has a data phase. Since the target (Kinetis Flashloader) works in slave mode, the host need pull data packets until the number of bytes of data specified in the byteCount parameter of ReadMemory command are received by host.

Response: The target (Kinetis Flashloader) will return a GenericResponse packet with a status code either set to kStatus_Success upon successful execution of the command, or set to an appropriate error status code.

14.3.6.13 FlashSecurityDisable command

The FlashSecurityDisable command performs the flash security disable operation, by comparing the 8-byte backdoor key (provided in the command) against the backdoor key stored in the flash configuration field (at address 0x400 in the flash).

The backdoor low and high words are the only parameters required for FlashSecurityDisable command.

Table 14-40. Parameters for FlashSecurityDisable Command

Byte #	Command
0 - 3	Backdoor key low word
4 - 7	Backdoor key high word

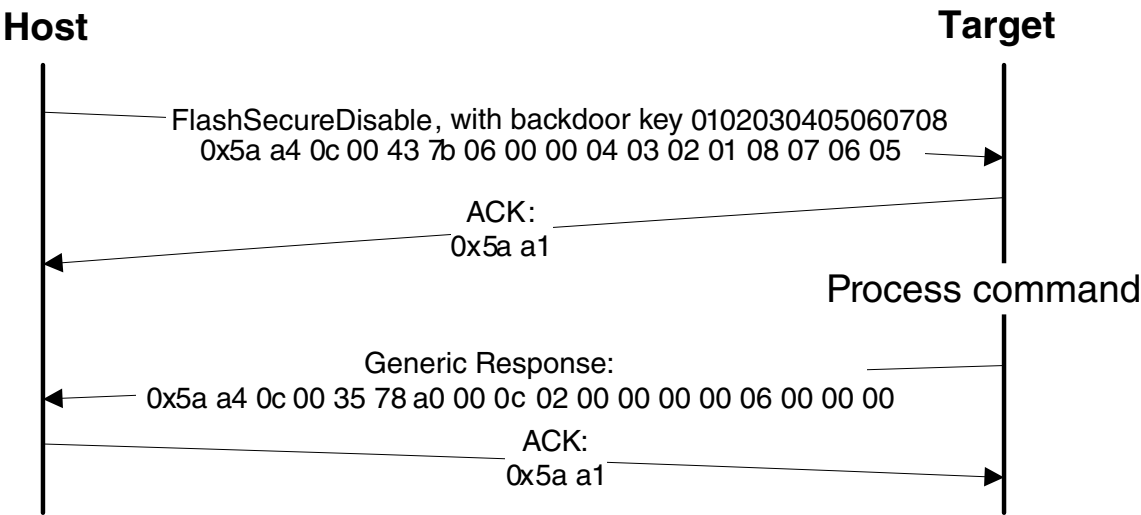


Figure 14-19. Protocol Sequence for FlashSecurityDisable Command

Table 14-41. FlashSecurityDisable Command Packet Format (Example)

FlashSecurityDisable	Parameter	Value
Framing packet	start byte	0x5A
	packetType	0xA4, kFramingPacketType_Command
	length	0x0C 0x00
	crc16	0x43 0x7B
Command packet	commandTag	0x06 - FlashSecurityDisable
	flags	0x00
	reserved	0x00
	parameterCount	0x02
	Backdoorkey_low	0x04 0x03 0x02 0x01
	Backdoorkey_high	0x08 0x07 0x06 0x05

The FlashSecurityDisable command has no data phase.

Response: The target (Kinetis Flashloader) will return a GenericResponse packet with a status code either set to kStatus_Success upon successful execution of the command, or set to an appropriate error status code.

14.3.6.14 Execute command

The execute command results in the flashloader setting the program counter to the code at the provided jump address, R0 to the provided argument, and a Stack pointer to the provided stack pointer address. Prior to the jump, the system is returned to the reset state.

The Jump address, function argument pointer, and stack pointer are the parameters required for the Execute command.

Table 14-42. Parameters for Execute Command

Byte #	Command
0 - 3	Jump address
4 - 7	Argument word
8 - 11	Stack pointer address

The Execute command has no data phase.

Response: Before executing the Execute command, the target (Kinetis Flashloader) will validate the parameters and return a GenericResponse packet with a status code either set to kStatus_Success or an appropriate error status code.

The Reset command will result in flashloader resetting the chip.

The Reset command requires no parameters.

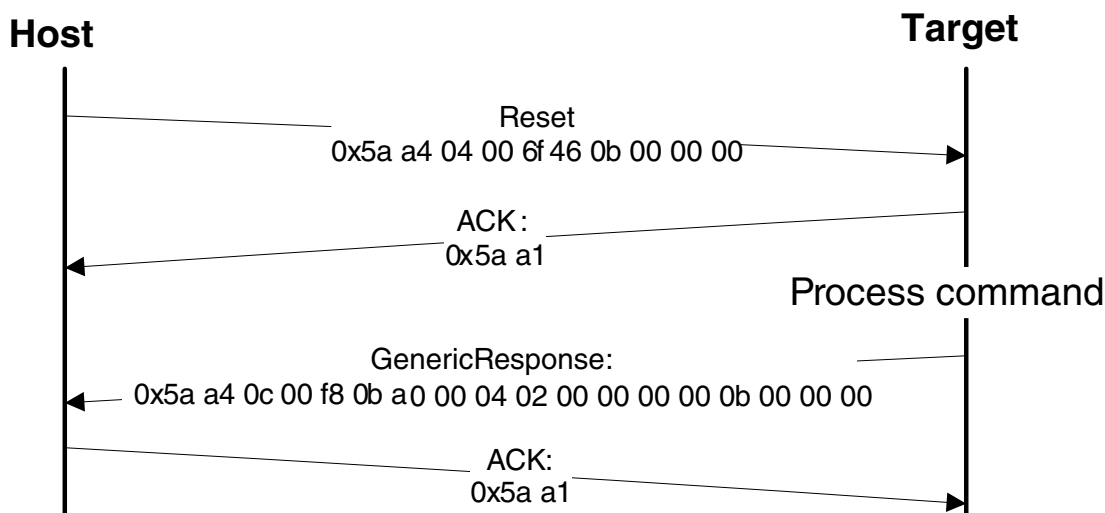


Figure 14-20. Protocol Sequence for Reset Command

Table 14-43. Reset Command Packet Format (Example)

Reset	Parameter	Value
Framing packet	start byte	0x5A
	packetType	0xA4, kFramingPacketType_Command
	length	0x04 0x00
	crc16	0x6F 0x46
Command packet	commandTag	0x0B - reset
	flags	0x00
	reserved	0x00
	parameterCount	0x00

The Reset command has no data phase.

Response: The target (Kinetis Flashloader) will return a GenericResponse packet with status code set to kStatus_Success, before resetting the chip.

14.4 Peripherals Supported

This section describes the peripherals supported by the Kinetis Flashloader.

14.4.1 I2C Peripheral

The Kinetis Flashloader supports loading data into flash via the I2C peripheral, where the I2C peripheral serves as the I2C slave. A 7-bit slave address is used during the transfer.

The Kinetis Flashloader uses 0x10 as the I2C slave address, and supports 400 kbps as the I2C baud rate.

Because the I2C peripheral serves as an I2C slave device, each transfer should be started by the host, and each outgoing packet should be fetched by the host.

- An incoming packet is sent by the host with a selected I2C slave address and the direction bit is set as write.
- An outgoing packet is read by the host with a selected I2C slave address and the direction bit is set as read.
- 0x00 will be sent as the response to host if the target is busy with processing or preparing data.

The following flow charts demonstrate the communication flow of how the host reads ping packet, ACK and response from the target.

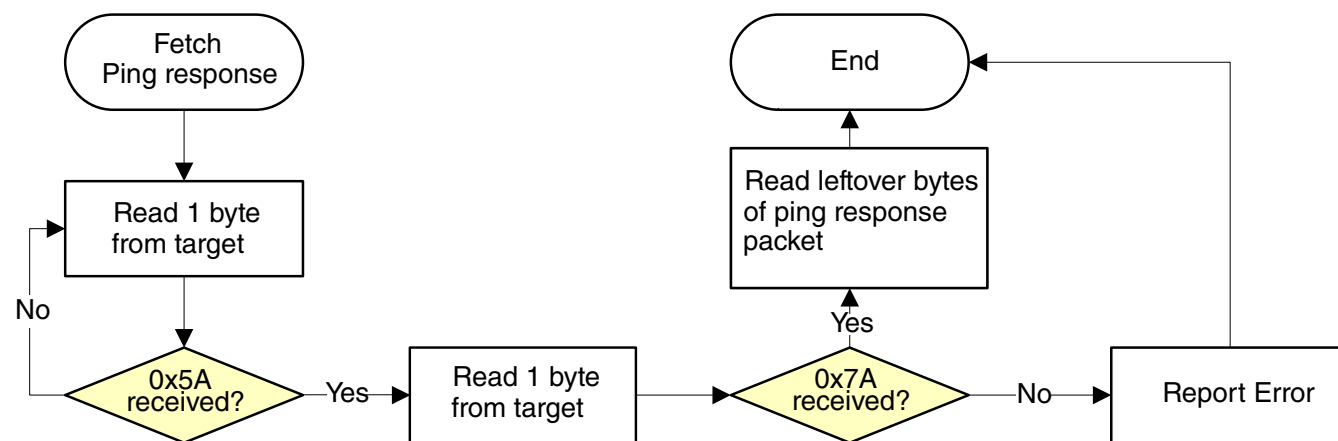


Figure 14-21. Host reads ping response from target via I2C

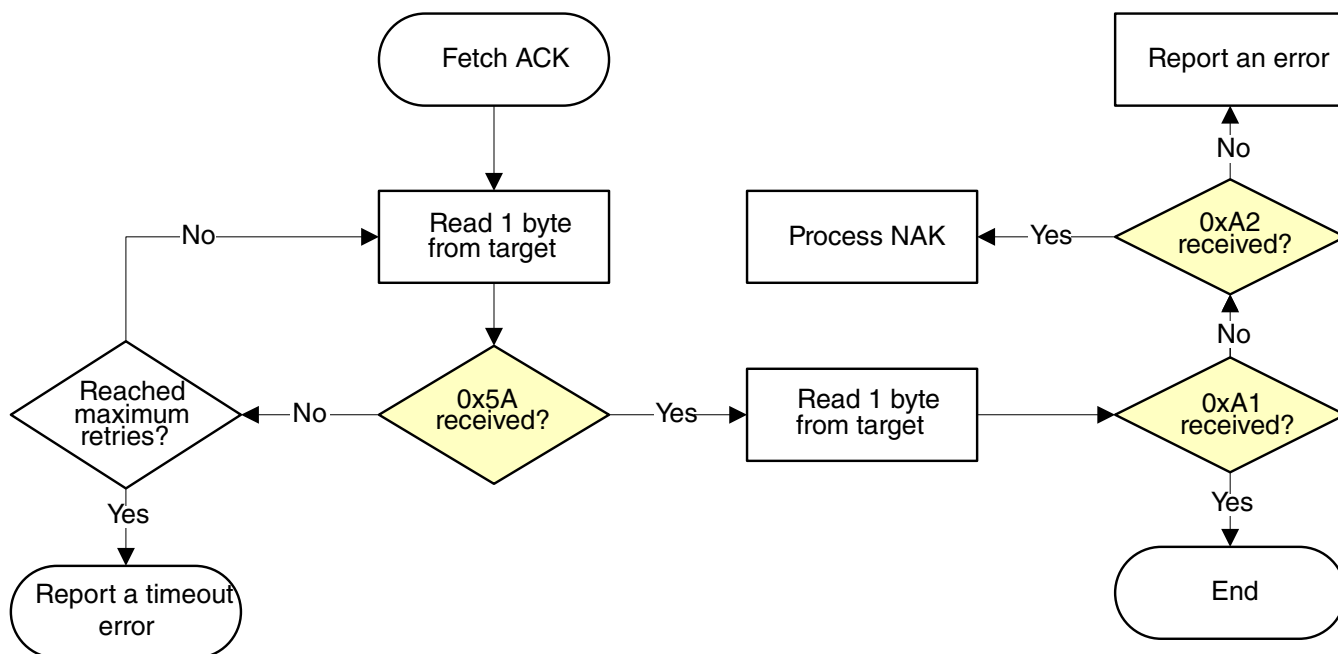


Figure 14-22. Host reads ACK packet from target via I2C

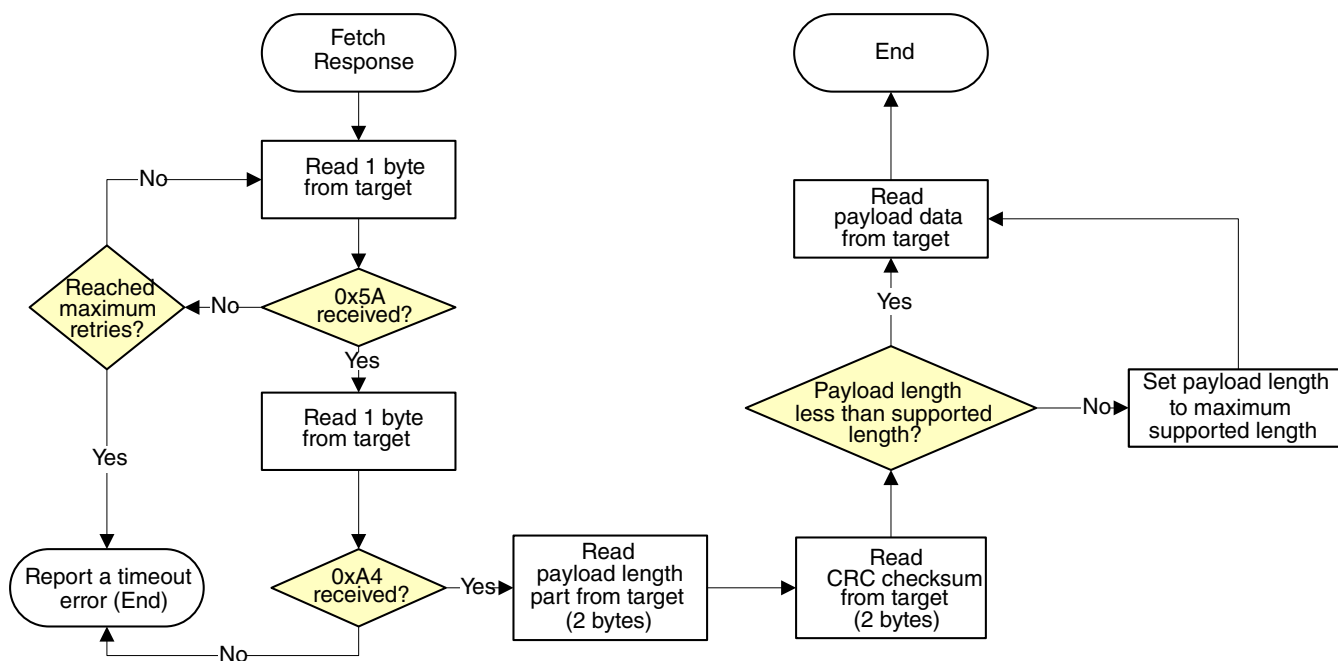


Figure 14-23. Host reads response from target via I2C

14.4.2 SPI Peripheral

The Kinetis Flashloader supports loading data into flash via the SPI peripheral, where the SPI peripheral serves as a SPI slave.

The Kinetis Flashloader supports 400 kbps as the SPI baud rate.

The SPI peripheral uses the following bus attributes:

- Clock Phase = 1 (Second Edge)
- Clock Polarity = 1 (Active Low)

Because the SPI peripheral serves as a SPI slave device, each transfer should be started by the host, and each outgoing packet should be fetched by the host.

The transfer on SPI is slightly different from I2C:

- Host will receive 1 byte after it sends out any byte.
- Received bytes should be ignored when host is sending out bytes to target
- Host starts reading bytes by sending 0x00s to target
- The byte 0x00 will be sent as response to host if target is under the following conditions:
 - Processing incoming packet
 - Preparing outgoing data
 - Received invalid data

The SPI bus configuration is:

- Phase = 1; data is sampled on rising edges
- Polarity = 1; idle is high
- MSB is transmitted first

For any transfer where the target does not have actual data to send, the target (slave) is responsible for ensuring that 0x00 bytes will be returned to the host (master). The host uses framing packets to identify real data and not "dummy" 0x00 bytes (which do not have framing packets).

The following flowcharts demonstrate how the host reads a ping response, an ACK and a command response from target via SPI.

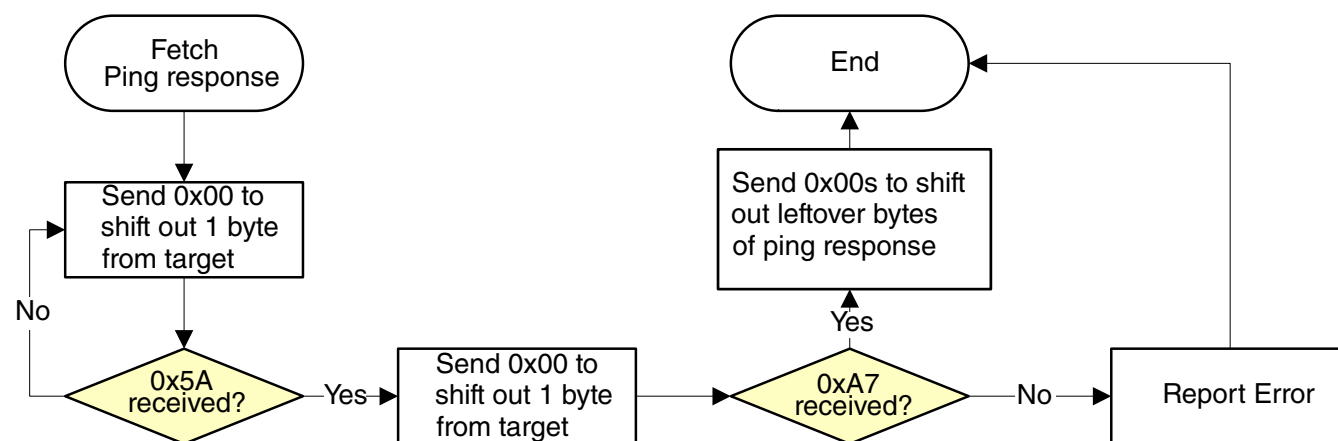


Figure 14-24. Host reads ping packet from target via SPI

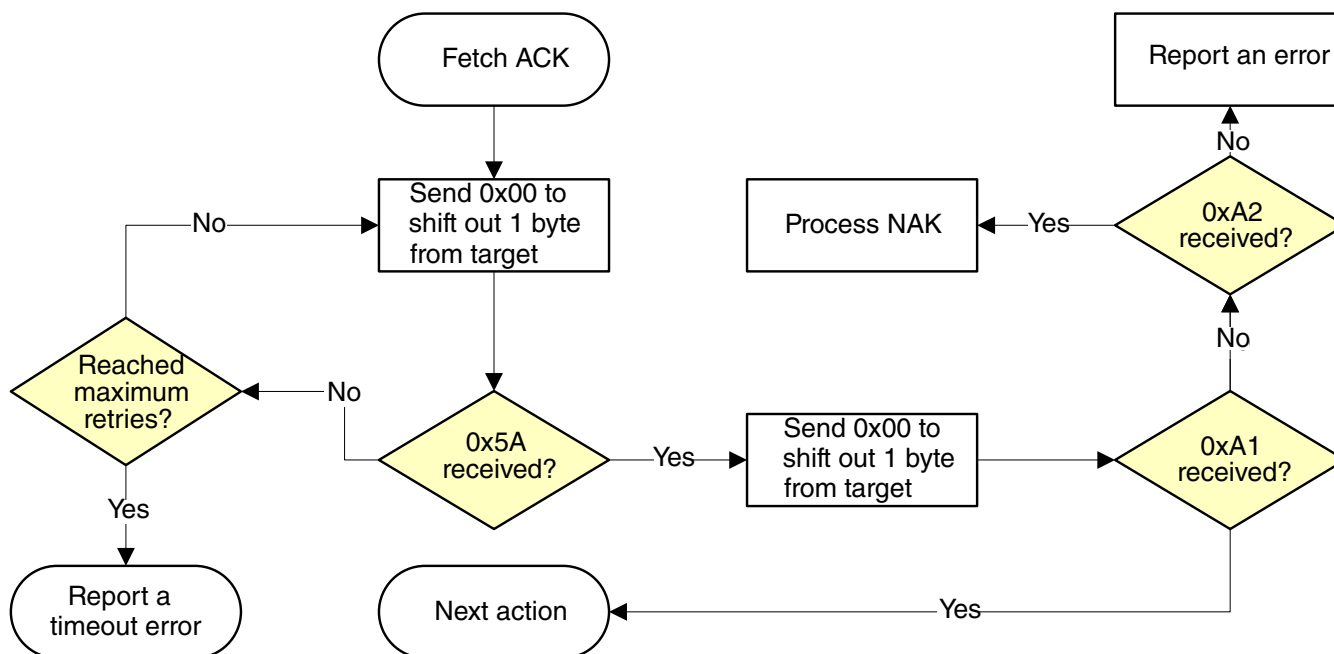


Figure 14-25. Host reads ACK from target via SPI

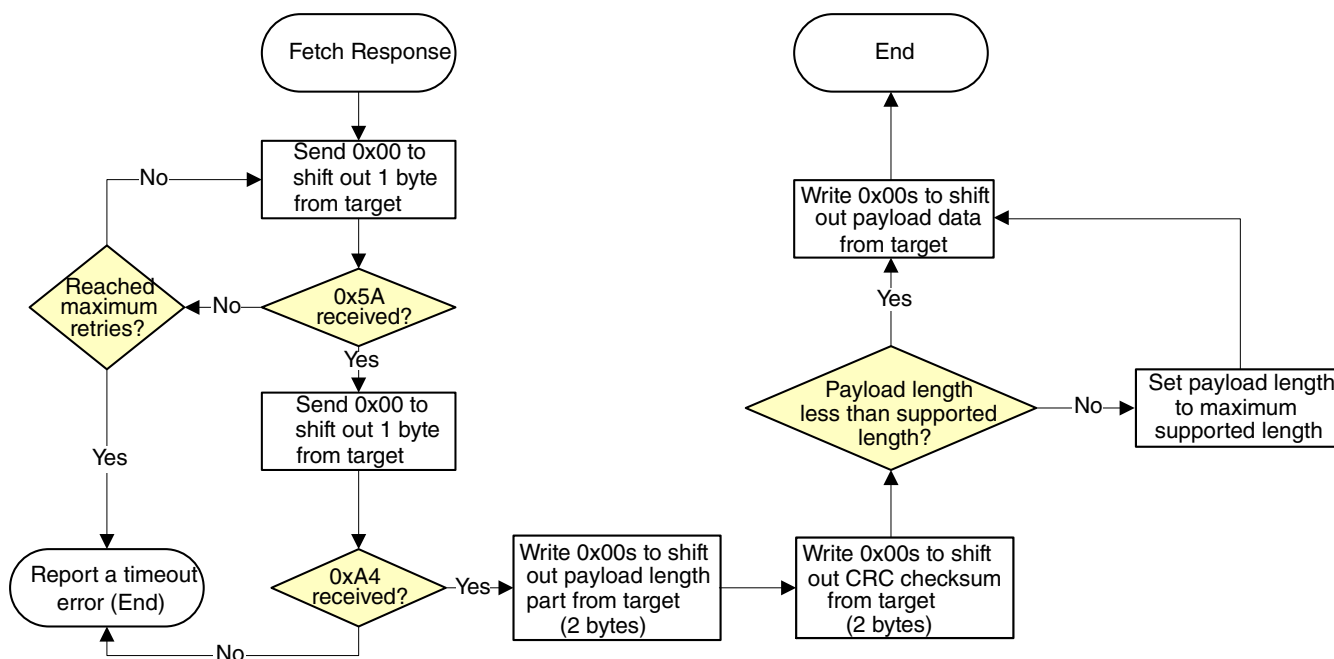


Figure 14-26. Host reads response from target via SPI

14.4.3 UART Peripheral

The Kinetis Flashloader integrates an autobaud detection algorithm for the UART peripheral, thereby providing flexible baud rate choices.

Autobaud feature: If UART n is used to connect to the flashloader, then the UART n _RX pin must be kept high and not left floating during the detection phase in order to comply with the autobaud detection algorithm. After the flashloader detects the ping packet (0x5A 0xA6) on UART n _RX, the flashloader firmware executes the autobaud sequence. If the baudrate is successfully detected, then the flashloader will send a ping packet response [(0x5A 0xA7), protocol version (4 bytes), protocol version options (2 bytes) and crc16 (2 bytes)] at the detected baudrate. The Kinetis Flashloader then enters a loop, waiting for flashloader commands via the UART peripheral.

NOTE

The data bytes of the ping packet must be sent continuously (with no more than 80 ms between bytes) in a fixed UART transmission mode (8-bit data, no parity bit and 1 stop bit). If the bytes of the ping packet are sent one-by-one with more than 80 ms delay between them, then the autobaud detection algorithm may calculate an incorrect baud rate. In this case, the autobaud detection state machine should be reset.

Supported baud rates: The baud rate is closely related to the MCU core and system clock frequencies. Typical baud rates supported are 9600, 19200, 38400, 57600, and 115200.

Packet transfer: After autobaud detection succeeds, flashloader communications can take place over the UART peripheral. The following flow charts show:

- How the host detects an ACK from the target
- How the host detects a ping response from the target
- How the host detects a command response from the target

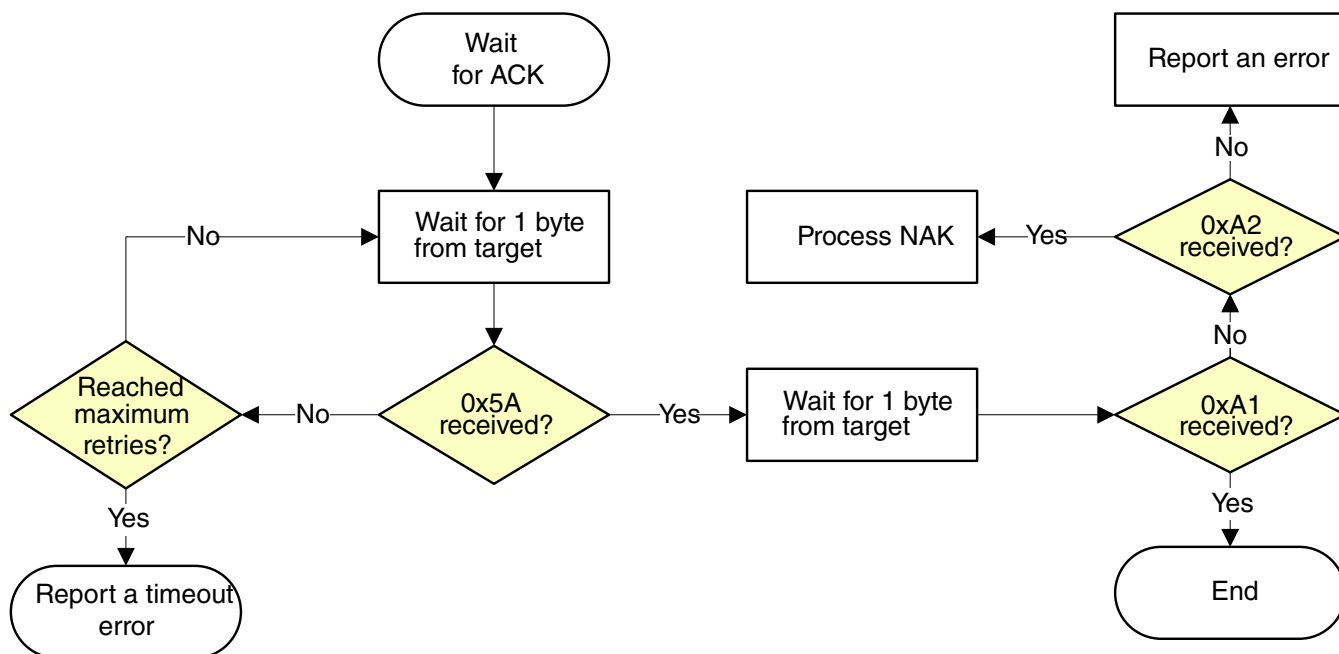


Figure 14-27. Host reads an ACK from target via UART

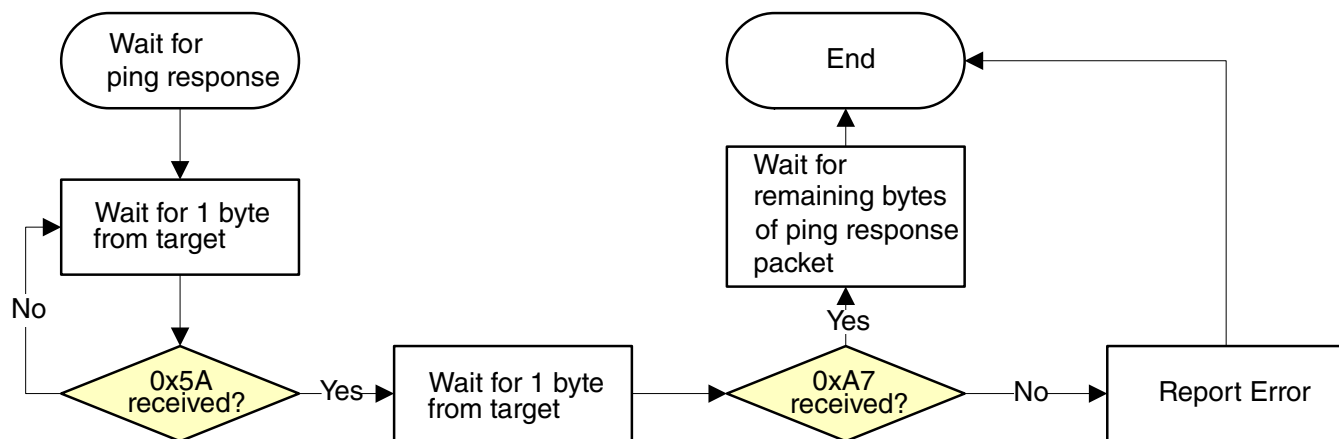


Figure 14-28. Host reads a ping response from target via UART

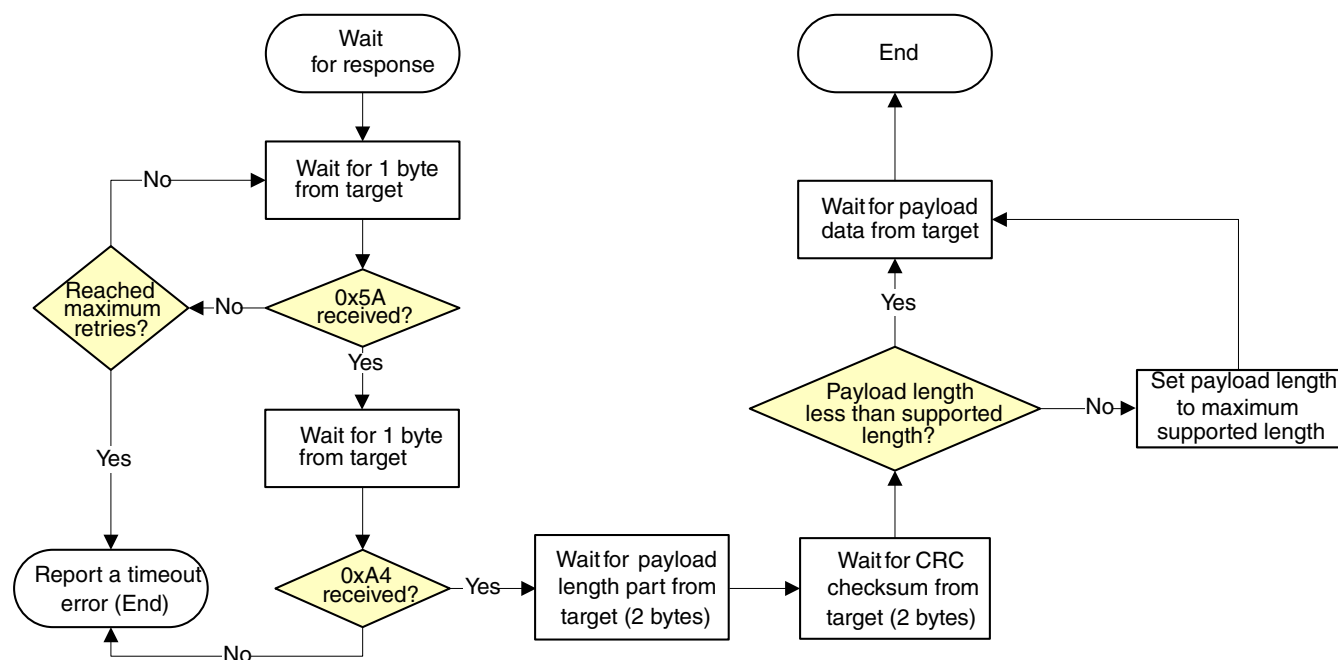


Figure 14-29. Host reads a command response from target via UART

14.4.4 CAN (or FlexCAN) Peripheral

The Kinetis Flashloader supports loading data into flash via the FlexCAN peripheral. Transfers to FlexCAN are supported at 5 predefined speeds:

- 125 kHz
- 250 kHz
- 500 kHz
- 1 MHz (the default transfer rate)

The host application must use one of the 5 supported speeds for FlexCAN. In Flashloader, it supports automatic speed detection within supported speeds. The Flashloader will enter the listen mode in the beginning with the initial speed (default speed 1 MHz). Once the host sends a ping to a specific node, it will generate traffic on the FlexCAN bus. Because the Flashloader is in a listen mode, it will be able to check if the local node speed is correct, by detecting errors.

- If there is an error, then some transfers may not be at the right speed.
- The Flashloader will change the speed setting and check again.
- If there is no error, it means that the transfer speed is correct, and it changes the settings back to normal receiving mode, to see if there is a package for this node.
- The host side should also have reasonable time tolerance during the automatic speed detection period. If there is a timeout, it means that there is no response from the specific node, or there is a real error (and it should report the error to the application).

The following flowcharts show how the host reads a ping packet, ACK and response from the target.

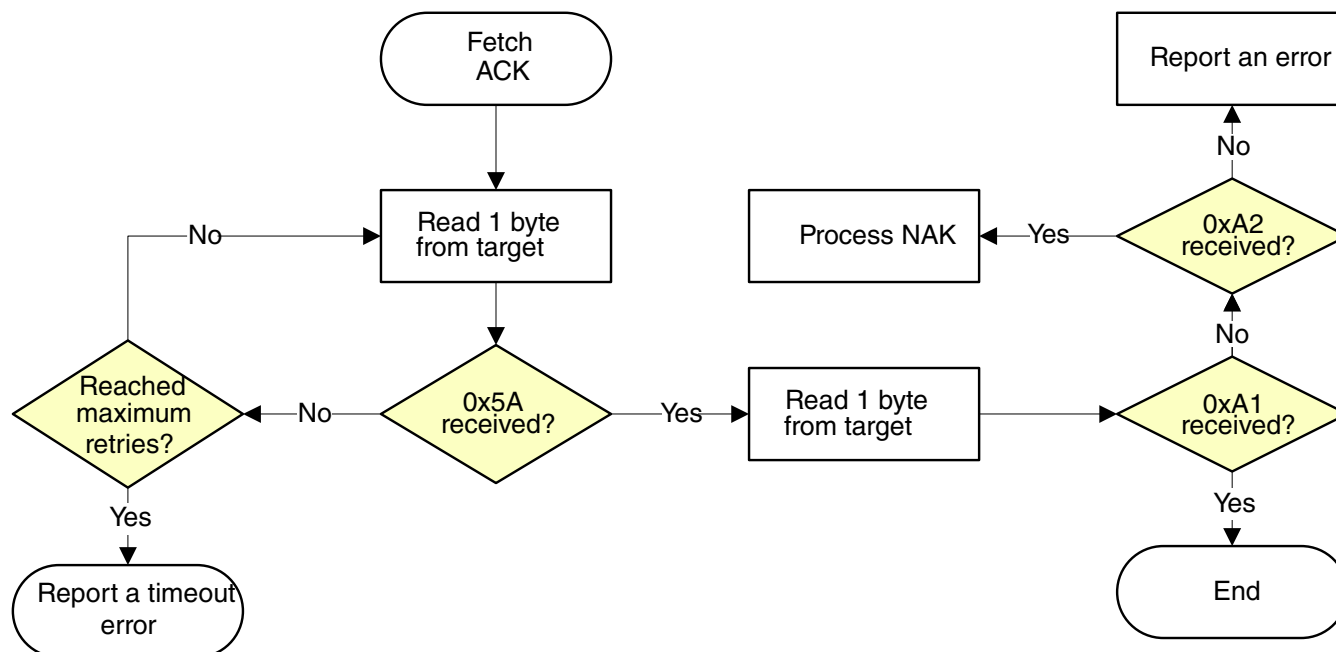


Figure 14-30. Host reads an ACK from target via FlexCAN

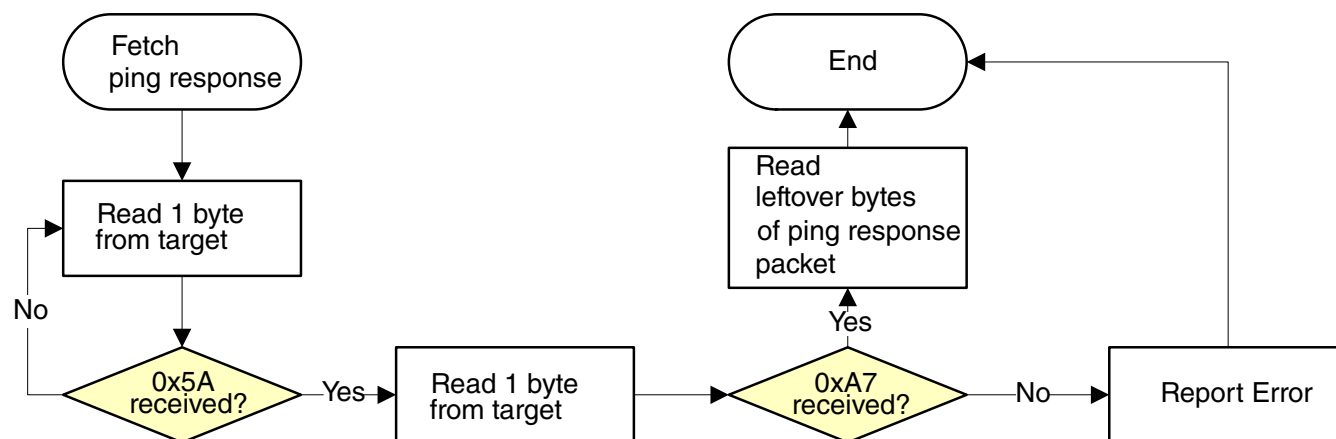


Figure 14-31. Host reads a ping response from target via FlexCAN

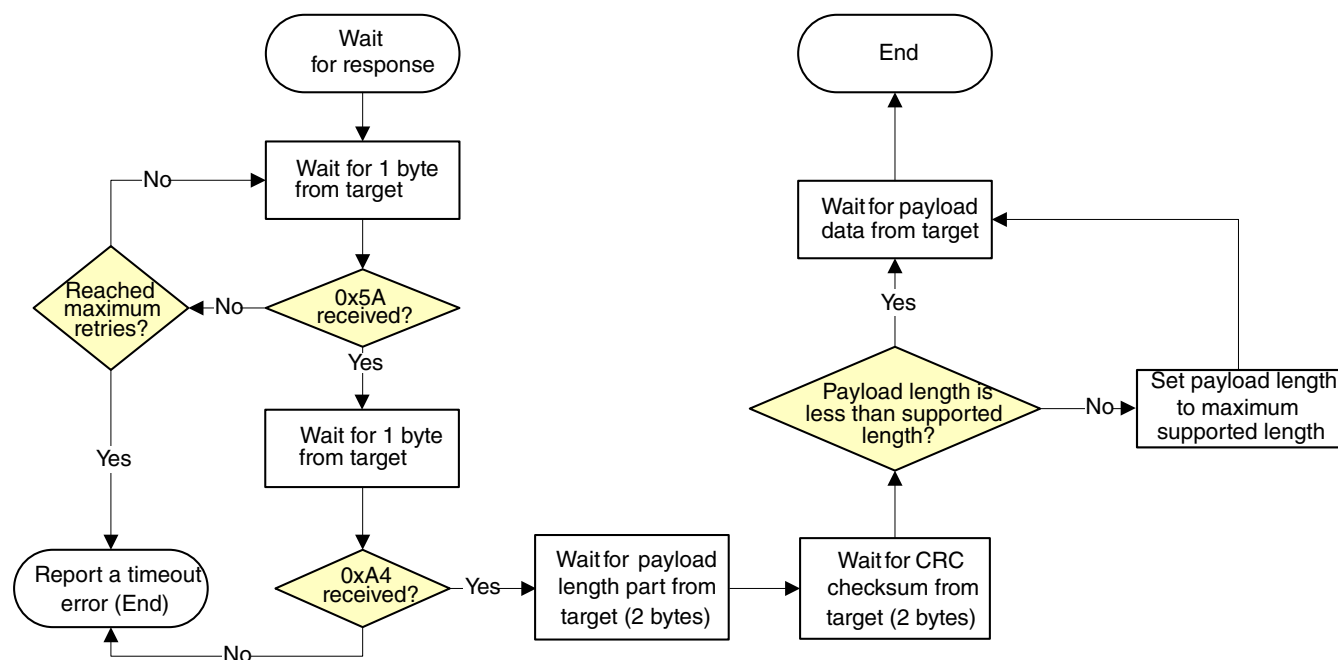


Figure 14-32. Host reads a command response from target via FlexCAN

14.5 Get/SetProperty Command Properties

This section lists the properties of the GetProperty and SetProperty commands.

Table 14-44. Properties used by Get/SetProperty Commands, sorted by Value

Property	Writable	Tag Value	Size	Description
CurrentVersion	No	01h	4	Current flashloader version.
AvailablePeripherals	No	02h	4	The set of peripherals supported on this chip.
FlashStartAddress	No	03h	4	Start address of program flash.
FlashSizeInBytes	No	04h	4	Size in bytes of program flash.
FlashSectorSize	No	05h	4	The size in bytes of one sector of program flash. This is the minimum erase size.
FlashBlockCount	No	06h	4	Number of blocks in the flash array.
AvailableCommands	No	07h	4	The set of commands supported by the flashloader.
VerifyWrites	Yes	0Ah	4	Controls whether the flashloader will verify writes to flash. VerifyWrites feature is enabled by default. 0 - No verification is done. 1 - Enable verification.
MaxPacketSize	No	0Bh	4	Maximum supported packet size for the currently active peripheral interface.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 14-44. Properties used by Get/SetProperty Commands, sorted by Value (continued)

Property	Writable	Tag Value	Size	Description
ReservedRegions	No	0Ch	16	List of memory regions reserved by the flashloader. Returned as value pairs (<start-address-of-region>, <end-address-of-region>). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If HasDataPhase flag is not set, then the Response packet parameter count indicates the number of pairs. If HasDataPhase flag is set, then the second parameter is the number of bytes in the data phase.
RAMStartAddress	No	0Eh	4	Start address of RAM
RAMSizeInBytes	No	0Fh	4	Size in bytes of RAM
SystemDeviceId	No	10h	4	Value of the Kinetis System Device Identification register.
FlashSecurityState	No	11h	4	Indicates whether Flash security is enabled 0 - Flash security is disabled 1 - Flash security is enabled
UniqueDeviceId	No	12h	16	Unique device identification, value of Kinetis Unique Identification registers (16 for K series devices, 12 for KL series devices)
FacSupport	No	13h	4	FAC (Flash Access Control) support flag 0 - FAC not supported 1 - FAC supported
FlashAccessSegmentSize	No	14h	4	The size in bytes of 1 segment of flash
FlashAccessSegmentCount	No	15h	4	FAC segment count (The count of flash access segments within the flash model.)
FlashReadMargin	Yes	16h	4	The margin level setting for flash erase and program verify commands. 0 = Normal 1 = User (default) 2 = Factory

14.5.1 Property Definitions

Get/Set property definitions are provided in this section.

14.5.1.1 CurrentVersion Property

The value of this property is a 4-byte structure containing the current version of the flashloader.

Table 14-45. Fields of CurrentVersion property:

Bits	[31:24]	[23:16]	[15:8]	[7:0]
Field	Name = 'K' (0x4B)	Major version	Minor version	Bugfix version

14.5.1.2 AvailablePeripherals Property

The value of this property is a bitfield that lists the peripherals supported by the flashloader and the hardware on which it is running.

Table 14-46. Peripheral bits:

Bit	[31:7]	[6]	[5]	[4]	[3]	[2]	[1]	[0]
Peripheral	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	CAN Slave	SPI Slave	I2C Slave	UART

If the peripheral is available, then the corresponding bit will be set in the property value. All reserved bits must be set to 0.

14.5.1.3 AvailableCommands Property

This property value is a bitfield with set bits indicating the commands enabled in the flashloader. Only commands that can be sent from the host to the target are listed in the bitfield. Response commands such as GenericResponse are excluded.

The bit number that identifies whether a command is present is the command's tag value minus 1. 1 is subtracted from the command tag because the lowest command tag value is 0x01. To get the bit mask for a given command, use this expression:

```
mask = 1 << (tag - 1)
```

Table 14-47. Command bits:

Bit	[31:17]	[16]	[15]	[14]	[13]	[12]	[11]	[10]	[9]	[8]	[7]	[6]	[5]	[4]	[3]	[2]	[1]	[0]
Command	Reserved	Reserved	FlashReadResource	FlashReadOnce	FlashProgramOnce	FlashEraseAllUnsecure	SetProperty	Reset	Call	Execute	Reserved	GetProperty	FlashSecurityDisable	FillMemory	WriteMemory	ReadMemory	FlashEraseRegion	FlashEraseAll

14.6 Kinetis Flashloader Status Error Codes

This section describes the status error codes that the Kinetis Flashloader returns to the host.

Table 14-48. Kinetis Flashloader Status Error Codes, sorted by Value

Error Code	Value	Description
kStatus_Success	0	Operation succeeded without error.
kStatus_Fail	1	Operation failed with a generic error.
kStatus_ReadOnly	2	Requested value cannot be changed because it is read-only.
kStatus_OutOfRange	3	Requested value is out of range.
kStatus_InvalidArgument	4	The requested command's argument is undefined.
kStatus_Timeout	5	A timeout occurred.
kStatus_FlashSizeError	100	Not used.
kStatus_FlashAlignmentError	101	Address or length does not meet required alignment.
kStatus_FlashAddressError	102	Address or length is outside addressable memory.
kStatus_FlashAccessError	103	TBD for FTFE-- The FTFA_FSTAT[ACCERR] bit is set.
kStatus_FlashProtectionViolation	104	TBD for FTFE-- The FTFA_FSTAT[FPVIOL] bit is set.
kStatus_FlashCommandFailure	105	TBD for FTFE-- The FTFA_FSTAT[MGSTAT0] bit is set.
kStatus_FlashUnknownProperty	106	Unknown Flash property.
kStatus_FlashEraseKeyError	107	The key provided does not match the programmed flash key.
kStatus_FlashRegionExecuteOnly	108	The area of flash is protected as execute only.
kStatus_I2C_SlaveTxUnderrun	200	I2C Slave TX Underrun error.
kStatus_I2C_SlaveRxOverrun	201	I2C Slave RX Overrun error.
kStatus_I2C_ArbitrationLost	202	I2C Arbitration Lost error.
kStatus_SPI_SlaveTxUnderrun	300	SPI Slave TX Underrun error.
kStatus_SPI_SlaveRxOverrun	301	SPI Slave RX Overrun error.
kStatus_SPI_Timeout	302	SPI transfer timed out.
kStatus_SPI_Busy	303	SPI instance is already busy performing a transfer.
kStatus_SPI_NoTransferInProgress	304	Attempt to abort a transfer when no transfer was in progress.
kStatus_UnknownCommand	10000	The requested command value is undefined.
kStatus_SecurityViolation	10001	Command is disallowed because flash security is enabled.
kStatus_AbortDataPhase	10002	Abort the data phase early.
kStatusMemoryRangeInvalid	10200	Memory range conflicts with a protected region.
kStatus_UnknownProperty	10300	The requested property value is undefined.
kStatus_ReadOnlyProperty	10301	The requested property value cannot be written.
kStatus_InvalidPropertyValue	10302	The specified property value is invalid.
kStatus_AppCrcCheckPassed	10400	CRC check is valid and passed.
kStatus_AppCrcCheckFailed	10401	CRC check is valid but failed.
kStatus_AppCrcCheckInactive	10402	CRC check is inactive.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 14-48. Kinetis Flashloader Status Error Codes, sorted by Value (continued)

Error Code	Value	Description
kStatus_AppCrcCheckInvalid	10403	CRC check is invalid, because the BCA is invalid or the CRC parameters are unset (all 0xFF bytes).
kStatus_AppCrcCheckOutOfRange	10404	CRC check is valid but addresses are out of range.

Chapter 15

Reset Control Module (RCM)

15.1 Introduction

Information found here describes the registers of the Reset Control Module (RCM). The RCM implements many of the reset functions for the chip. See the chip's reset chapter for more information.

See [AN4503: Power Management for Kinetis MCUs](#) for further details on using the RCM.

15.2 Reset memory map and register descriptions

The RCM Memory Map/Register Definition can be found here.

The Reset Control Module (RCM) registers provide reset status information and reset filter control.

NOTE

The RCM registers can be written only in supervisor mode.
Write accesses in user mode are blocked and will result in a bus error.

RCM memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4007_F000	System Reset Status Register 0 (RCM_SRS0)	8	R	82h	15.2.1/304
4007_F001	System Reset Status Register 1 (RCM_SRS1)	8	R	00h	15.2.2/305
4007_F004	Reset Pin Filter Control register (RCM_RPFC)	8	R/W	00h	15.2.3/307
4007_F005	Reset Pin Filter Width register (RCM_RPFW)	8	R/W	00h	15.2.4/308

Table continues on the next page...

RCM memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4007_F008	Sticky System Reset Status Register 0 (RCM_SSRS0)	8	R/W	82h	15.2.5/309
4007_F009	Sticky System Reset Status Register 1 (RCM_SSRS1)	8	R/W	00h	15.2.6/310

15.2.1 System Reset Status Register 0 (RCM_SRS0)

This register includes read-only status flags to indicate the source of the most recent reset. The reset state of these bits depends on what caused the MCU to reset.

NOTE

The reset value of this register depends on the reset source:

- POR (including LVD) — 0x82
- LVD (without POR) — 0x02
- VLLS mode wakeup due to $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin assertion — 0x41
- VLLS mode wakeup due to other wakeup sources — 0x01
- Other reset — a bit is set if its corresponding reset source caused the reset

Address: 4007_F000h base + 0h offset = 4007_F000h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	POR	PIN	WDOG	0	LOL	LOC	LVD	WAKEUP
Write								
Reset	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0

RCM_SRS0 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 POR	<p>Power-On Reset</p> <p>Indicates a reset has been caused by the power-on detection logic. Because the internal supply voltage was ramping up at the time, the low-voltage reset (LVD) status bit is also set to indicate that the reset occurred while the internal supply was below the LVD threshold.</p> <p>0 Reset not caused by POR 1 Reset caused by POR</p>
6 PIN	<p>External Reset Pin</p> <p>Indicates a reset has been caused by an active-low level on the external $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin.</p> <p>0 Reset not caused by external reset pin 1 Reset caused by external reset pin</p>
5 WDOG	<p>Watchdog</p>

Table continues on the next page...

RCM_SRS0 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Indicates a reset has been caused by the watchdog timer timing out. This reset source can be blocked by disabling the watchdog. 0 Reset not caused by watchdog timeout 1 Reset caused by watchdog timeout
4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3 LOL	Loss-of-Lock Reset Indicates a reset has been caused by a loss of lock in the MCG PLL. See the MCG description for information on the loss-of-clock event. 0 Reset not caused by a loss of lock in the PLL 1 Reset caused by a loss of lock in the PLL
2 LOC	Loss-of-Clock Reset Indicates a reset has been caused by a loss of external clock. The MCG clock monitor must be enabled for a loss of clock to be detected. Refer to the detailed MCG description for information on enabling the clock monitor. 0 Reset not caused by a loss of external clock. 1 Reset caused by a loss of external clock.
1 LVD	Low-Voltage Detect Reset If PMC_LVDSC1[LVDRE] is set and the supply drops below the LVD trip voltage, an LVD reset occurs. This field is also set by POR. 0 Reset not caused by LVD trip or POR 1 Reset caused by LVD trip or POR
0 WAKEUP	Low Leakage Wakeup Reset Indicates a reset has been caused by an enabled LLWU module wakeup source while the chip was in a low leakage mode. Any enabled wakeup source in a VLLSx mode causes a reset. This bit is cleared by any reset except WAKEUP. 0 Reset not caused by LLWU module wakeup source 1 Reset caused by LLWU module wakeup source

15.2.2 System Reset Status Register 1 (RCM_SRS1)

This register includes read-only status flags to indicate the source of the most recent reset. The reset state of these bits depends on what caused the MCU to reset.

NOTE

The reset value of this register depends on the reset source:

- POR (including LVD) — 0x00
- LVD (without POR) — 0x00

Reset memory map and register descriptions

- VLLS mode wakeup — 0x00
- Other reset — a bit is set if its corresponding reset source caused the reset

Address: 4007_F000h base + 1h offset = 4007_F001h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	0	SACKERR	0	MDM_AP	SW	LOCKUP	JTAG
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

RCM_SRS1 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
5 SACKERR	Stop Mode Acknowledge Error Reset Indicates that after an attempt to enter Stop mode, a reset has been caused by a failure of one or more peripherals to acknowledge within approximately one second to enter stop mode. 0 Reset not caused by peripheral failure to acknowledge attempt to enter stop mode 1 Reset caused by peripheral failure to acknowledge attempt to enter stop mode
4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3 MDM_AP	MDM-AP System Reset Request Indicates a reset has been caused by the host debugger system setting of the System Reset Request bit in the MDM-AP Control Register. 0 Reset not caused by host debugger system setting of the System Reset Request bit 1 Reset caused by host debugger system setting of the System Reset Request bit
2 SW	Software Indicates a reset has been caused by software setting of SYSRESETREQ bit in Application Interrupt and Reset Control Register in the ARM core. 0 Reset not caused by software setting of SYSRESETREQ bit 1 Reset caused by software setting of SYSRESETREQ bit
1 LOCKUP	Core Lockup Indicates a reset has been caused by the ARM core indication of a LOCKUP event. 0 Reset not caused by core LOCKUP event 1 Reset caused by core LOCKUP event
0 JTAG	JTAG Generated Reset Indicates a reset has been caused by JTAG selection of certain IR codes: EXTEST, HIGHZ, and CLAMP. 0 Reset not caused by JTAG 1 Reset caused by JTAG

15.2.3 Reset Pin Filter Control register (RCM_RPFC)

NOTE

The reset values of bits 2-0 are for Chip POR only. They are unaffected by other reset types.

NOTE

The bus clock filter is reset when disabled or when entering stop mode. The LPO filter is reset when disabled .

Address: 4007_F000h base + 4h offset = 4007_F004h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0					RSTFLTSS	RSTFLTSRW	
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

RCM_RPFC field descriptions

Field	Description
7-3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 RSTFLTSS	Reset Pin Filter Select in Stop Mode Selects how the reset pin filter is enabled in Stop and VLPS modes , and also during VLLS mode. On exit from VLLS mode, this bit should be reconfigured before clearing PMC_REGSC[ACKISO]. 0 All filtering disabled 1 LPO clock filter enabled
RSTFLTSRW	Reset Pin Filter Select in Run and Wait Modes Selects how the reset pin filter is enabled in run and wait modes. 00 All filtering disabled 01 Bus clock filter enabled for normal operation 10 LPO clock filter enabled for normal operation 11 Reserved

15.2.4 Reset Pin Filter Width register (RCM_RPFW)

NOTE

The reset values of the bits in the RSTFLTSEL field are for Chip POR only. They are unaffected by other reset types.

Address: 4007_F000h base + 5h offset = 4007_F005h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read		0						
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

RCM_RPFW field descriptions

Field	Description
7–5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
RSTFLTSEL	Reset Pin Filter Bus Clock Select Selects the reset pin bus clock filter width. 00000 Bus clock filter count is 1 00001 Bus clock filter count is 2 00010 Bus clock filter count is 3 00011 Bus clock filter count is 4 00100 Bus clock filter count is 5 00101 Bus clock filter count is 6 00110 Bus clock filter count is 7 00111 Bus clock filter count is 8 01000 Bus clock filter count is 9 01001 Bus clock filter count is 10 01010 Bus clock filter count is 11 01011 Bus clock filter count is 12 01100 Bus clock filter count is 13 01101 Bus clock filter count is 14 01110 Bus clock filter count is 15 01111 Bus clock filter count is 16 10000 Bus clock filter count is 17 10001 Bus clock filter count is 18 10010 Bus clock filter count is 19 10011 Bus clock filter count is 20 10100 Bus clock filter count is 21 10101 Bus clock filter count is 22 10110 Bus clock filter count is 23 10111 Bus clock filter count is 24 11000 Bus clock filter count is 25

Table continues on the next page...

RCM_RPFW field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
11001	Bus clock filter count is 26
11010	Bus clock filter count is 27
11011	Bus clock filter count is 28
11100	Bus clock filter count is 29
11101	Bus clock filter count is 30
11110	Bus clock filter count is 31
11111	Bus clock filter count is 32

15.2.5 Sticky System Reset Status Register 0 (RCM_SSRS0)

This register includes status flags to indicate all reset sources since the last POR, LVD or VLLS Wakeup that have not been cleared by software. Software can clear the status flags by writing a logic one to a flag.

Address: 4007_F000h base + 8h offset = 4007_F008h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	SPOR	SPIN	SWDOG	0	SLOL	SLOC	SLVD	SWAKEUP
Write	w1c	w1c	w1c		w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c
Reset	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0

RCM_SSRS0 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 SPOR	<p>Sticky Power-On Reset</p> <p>Indicates a reset has been caused by the power-on detection logic. Because the internal supply voltage was ramping up at the time, the low-voltage reset (LVD) status bit is also set to indicate that the reset occurred while the internal supply was below the LVD threshold.</p> <p>0 Reset not caused by POR 1 Reset caused by POR</p>
6 SPIN	<p>Sticky External Reset Pin</p> <p>Indicates a reset has been caused by an active-low level on the external $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin.</p> <p>0 Reset not caused by external reset pin 1 Reset caused by external reset pin</p>
5 SWDOG	<p>Sticky Watchdog</p> <p>Indicates a reset has been caused by the watchdog timer timing out. This reset source can be blocked by disabling the watchdog.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

RCM_SSRS0 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Reset not caused by watchdog timeout 1 Reset caused by watchdog timeout
4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3 SLOL	Sticky Loss-of-Lock Reset Indicates a reset has been caused by a loss of lock in the MCG PLL. See the MCG description for information on the loss-of-clock event. 0 Reset not caused by a loss of lock in the PLL 1 Reset caused by a loss of lock in the PLL
2 SLOC	Sticky Loss-of-Clock Reset Indicates a reset has been caused by a loss of external clock. The MCG clock monitor must be enabled for a loss of clock to be detected. Refer to the detailed MCG description for information on enabling the clock monitor. 0 Reset not caused by a loss of external clock. 1 Reset caused by a loss of external clock.
1 SLVD	Sticky Low-Voltage Detect Reset If PMC_LVDSC1[LVDRE] is set and the supply drops below the LVD trip voltage, an LVD reset occurs. This field is also set by POR. 0 Reset not caused by LVD trip or POR 1 Reset caused by LVD trip or POR
0 SWAKEUP	Sticky Low Leakage Wakeup Reset Indicates a reset has been caused by an enabled LLWU modulewakeup source while the chip was in a low leakage mode. Any enabled wakeup source in a VLLSx mode causes a reset. 0 Reset not caused by LLWU module wakeup source 1 Reset caused by LLWU module wakeup source

15.2.6 Sticky System Reset Status Register 1 (RCM_SSRS1)

This register includes status flags to indicate all reset sources since the last POR, LVD or VLLS Wakeup that have not been cleared by software. Software can clear the status flags by writing a logic one to a flag.

Address: 4007_F000h base + 9h offset = 4007_F009h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	0	SSACKERR	0	SMDM_AP	SSW	SLOCKUP	SJTAG
Write			w1c		w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

RCM_SSRS1 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
5 SSACKERR	Sticky Stop Mode Acknowledge Error Reset Indicates that after an attempt to enter Stop mode, a reset has been caused by a failure of one or more peripherals to acknowledge within approximately one second to enter stop mode. 0 Reset not caused by peripheral failure to acknowledge attempt to enter stop mode 1 Reset caused by peripheral failure to acknowledge attempt to enter stop mode
4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3 SMDM_AP	Sticky MDM-AP System Reset Request Indicates a reset has been caused by the host debugger system setting of the System Reset Request bit in the MDM-AP Control Register. 0 Reset not caused by host debugger system setting of the System Reset Request bit 1 Reset caused by host debugger system setting of the System Reset Request bit
2 SSW	Sticky Software Indicates a reset has been caused by software setting of SYSRESETREQ bit in Application Interrupt and Reset Control Register in the ARM core. 0 Reset not caused by software setting of SYSRESETREQ bit 1 Reset caused by software setting of SYSRESETREQ bit
1 SLOCKUP	Sticky Core Lockup Indicates a reset has been caused by the ARM core indication of a LOCKUP event. 0 Reset not caused by core LOCKUP event 1 Reset caused by core LOCKUP event
0 SJTAG	Sticky JTAG Generated Reset Indicates a reset has been caused by JTAG selection of certain IR codes: EXTEST, HIGHZ, and CLAMP. 0 Reset not caused by JTAG 1 Reset caused by JTAG



Chapter 16

System Mode Controller (SMC)

16.1 Introduction

The System Mode Controller (SMC) is responsible for sequencing the system into and out of all low-power Stop and Run modes.

Specifically, it monitors events to trigger transitions between power modes while controlling the power, clocks, and memories of the system to achieve the power consumption and functionality of that mode.

This chapter describes all the available low-power modes, the sequence followed to enter/exit each mode, and the functionality available while in each of the modes.

The SMC is able to function during even the deepest low power modes.

See [AN4503: Power Management for Kinetis MCUs](#) for further details on using the SMC.

16.2 Modes of operation

The ARM CPU has three primary modes of operation:

- Run
- Sleep
- Deep Sleep

The WFI or WFE instruction is used to invoke Sleep and Deep Sleep modes. Run, Wait, and Stop are the common terms used for the primary operating modes of Freescale microcontrollers.

The following table shows the translation between the ARM CPU modes and the Freescale MCU power modes.

ARM CPU mode	MCU mode
Sleep	Wait
Deep Sleep	Stop

Accordingly, the ARM CPU documentation refers to sleep and deep sleep, while the Freescale MCU documentation normally uses wait and stop.

In addition, Freescale MCUs also augment Stop, Wait, and Run modes in a number of ways. The power management controller (PMC) contains a run and a stop mode regulator. Run regulation is used in normal run, wait and stop modes. Stop mode regulation is used during all very low power and low leakage modes. During stop mode regulation, the bus frequencies are limited in the very low power modes.

The SMC provides the user with multiple power options. The Very Low Power Run (VLPR) mode can drastically reduce run time power when maximum bus frequency is not required to handle the application needs. From Normal Run mode, the Run Mode (RUNM) field can be modified to change the MCU into VLPR mode when limited frequency is sufficient for the application. From VLPR mode, a corresponding wait (VLPW) and stop (VLPS) mode can be entered.

Depending on the needs of the user application, a variety of stop modes are available that allow the state retention, partial power down or full power down of certain logic and/or memory. I/O states are held in all modes of operation. Several registers are used to configure the various modes of operation for the device.

The following table describes the power modes available for the device.

Table 16-1. Power modes

Mode	Description
RUN	The MCU can be run at full speed and the internal supply is fully regulated, that is, in run regulation. This mode is also referred to as Normal Run mode.
HSRUN	The MCU can be run at a faster frequency compared with RUN mode and the internal supply is fully regulated. See the Power Management chapter for details about the maximum allowable frequencies.
WAIT	The core clock is gated off. The system clock continues to operate. Bus clocks, if enabled, continue to operate. Run regulation is maintained.
STOP	The core clock is gated off. System clocks to other masters and bus clocks are gated off after all stop acknowledge signals from supporting peripherals are valid.
VLPR	The core, system, bus, and flash clock maximum frequencies are restricted in this mode. See the Power Management chapter for details about the maximum allowable frequencies.
VLPW	The core clock is gated off. The system, bus, and flash clocks continue to operate, although their maximum frequency is restricted. See the Power Management chapter for details on the maximum allowable frequencies.
VLPS	The core clock is gated off. System clocks to other masters and bus clocks are gated off after all stop acknowledge signals from supporting peripherals are valid.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 16-1. Power modes (continued)

Mode	Description
VLLS3	The core clock is gated off. System clocks to other masters and bus clocks are gated off after all stop acknowledge signals from supporting peripherals are valid. The MCU is placed in a low leakage mode by powering down the internal logic. All system RAM contents are retained and I/O states are held. Internal logic states are not retained.
VLLS2	The core clock is gated off. System clocks to other masters and bus clocks are gated off after all stop acknowledge signals from supporting peripherals are valid. The MCU is placed in a low leakage mode by powering down the internal logic and the system RAM3 partition. The system RAM2 partition can be optionally retained using STOPCTRL[RAM2PO].
VLLS1	The core clock is gated off. System clocks to other masters and bus clocks are gated off after all stop acknowledge signals from supporting peripherals are valid. The MCU is placed in a low leakage mode by powering down the internal logic and all system RAM. I/O states are held. Internal logic states are not retained.
VLLS0	The core clock is gated off. System clocks to other masters and bus clocks are gated off after all stop acknowledge signals from supporting peripherals are valid. The MCU is placed in a low leakage mode by powering down the internal logic and all system RAM. I/O states are held. Internal logic states are not retained. The 1kHz LPO clock is disabled and the power on reset (POR) circuit can be optionally enabled using STOPCTRL[PORPO].

16.3 Memory map and register descriptions

Information about the registers related to the system mode controller can be found here.

Different SMC registers reset on different reset types. Each register's description provides details. For more information about the types of reset on this chip, refer to the Reset section details.

NOTE

The SMC registers can be written only in supervisor mode. Write accesses in user mode are blocked and will result in a bus error.

NOTE

Before executing the WFI instruction, the last register written to must be read back. This ensures that all register writes associated with setting up the low power mode being entered have completed before the MCU enters the low power mode. Failure to do this may result in the low power mode not being entered correctly.

SMC memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4007_E000	Power Mode Protection register (SMC_PMPROT)	8	R/W	See section	16.3.1/316
4007_E001	Power Mode Control register (SMC_PMCTRL)	8	R/W	See section	16.3.2/317
4007_E002	Stop Control Register (SMC_STOPCTRL)	8	R/W	03h	16.3.3/319
4007_E003	Power Mode Status register (SMC_PMSTAT)	8	R	See section	16.3.4/320

16.3.1 Power Mode Protection register (SMC_PMPROT)

This register provides protection for entry into any low-power run or stop mode. The enabling of the low-power run or stop mode occurs by configuring the Power Mode Control register (PMCTRL).

The PMPROT register can be written only once after any system reset.

If the MCU is configured for a disallowed or reserved power mode, the MCU remains in its current power mode. For example, if the MCU is in normal RUN mode and AVLP is 0, an attempt to enter VLPR mode using PMCTRL[RUNM] is blocked and PMCTRL[RUNM] remains 00b, indicating the MCU is still in Normal Run mode.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip Reset not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. See the Reset section details for more information.

Address: 4007_E000h base + 0h offset = 4007_E000h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	AHSRUN	0	AVLP	0	0	0	AVLLS	0
Write								
Reset	0	0	*	0	0	0	0	0

* Notes:

- AVLP field: When booting in run mode, the reset value is 0. When booting in VLPR mode, the reset value is 1.

SMC_PMPROT field descriptions

Field	Description
7 AHSRUN	Allow High Speed Run mode Provided the appropriate control bits are set up in PMCTRL, this write-once field allows the MCU to enter High Speed Run mode (HSRUN).

Table continues on the next page...

SMC_PMPROT field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 HSRUN is not allowed 1 HSRUN is allowed
6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
5 AVLP	Allow Very-Low-Power Modes Provided the appropriate control bits are set up in PMCTRL, this write-once field allows the MCU to enter any very-low-power mode (VLPR, VLPW, and VLPS). 0 VLPR, VLPW, and VLPS are not allowed. 1 VLPR, VLPW, and VLPS are allowed.
4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
1 AVLLS	Allow Very-Low-Leakage Stop Mode Provided the appropriate control bits are set up in PMCTRL, this write once bit allows the MCU to enter any very-low-leakage stop mode (VLLSx). 0 Any VLLSx mode is not allowed 1 Any VLLSx mode is allowed
0 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

16.3.2 Power Mode Control register (SMC_PMCTRL)

The PMCTRL register controls entry into low-power Run and Stop modes, provided that the selected power mode is allowed via an appropriate setting of the protection (PMPROT) register.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip POR not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip POR not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip POR not VLLS. See the Reset section details for more information.

Address: 4007_E000h base + 1h offset = 4007_E001h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	Reserved	RUNM		0	STOPA	STOPM		
Write								
Reset	0	*	*	0	0	0	0	0

* Notes:

- RUNM field: When booting in run mode, the reset value is 00. When booting in VLPR mode, the reset value is 10.

SMC_PMCTRL field descriptions

Field	Description
7 Reserved	This field is reserved. This bit is reserved for future expansion and should always be written zero.
6–5 RUNM	Run Mode Control When written, causes entry into the selected run mode. Writes to this field are blocked if the protection level has not been enabled using the PMPROT register. NOTE: RUNM may be set to VLPR only when PMSTAT=RUN. After being written to VLPR, RUNM should not be written back to RUN until PMSTAT=VLPR. NOTE: RUNM may be set to HSRUN only when PMSTAT=RUN. After being programmed to HSRUN, RUNM should not be programmed back to RUN until PMSTAT=HSRUN. Also, stop mode entry should not be attempted while RUNM=HSRUN or PMSTAT=HSRUN. 00 Normal Run mode (RUN) 01 Reserved 10 Very-Low-Power Run mode (VLPR) 11 High Speed Run mode (HSRUN)
4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3 STOPA	Stop Aborted When set, this read-only status bit indicates an interrupt occurred during the previous stop mode entry sequence, preventing the system from entering that mode. This field is cleared by reset or by hardware at the beginning of any stop mode entry sequence and is set if the sequence was aborted. 0 The previous stop mode entry was successful. 1 The previous stop mode entry was aborted.
STOPM	Stop Mode Control When written, controls entry into the selected stop mode when Sleep-Now or Sleep-On-Exit mode is entered with SLEEPDEEP=1. Writes to this field are blocked if the protection level has not been enabled using the PMPROT register. After any system reset, this field is cleared by hardware on any successful write to the PMPROT register. NOTE: When set to VLLSx, the VLLSM field in the STOPCTRL register is used to further select the particular VLLS submode which will be entered. NOTE: When set to STOP, the PSTOPO bits in the STOPCTRL register can be used to select a Partial Stop mode if desired. 000 Normal Stop (STOP) 001 Reserved 010 Very-Low-Power Stop (VLPS) 011 Reserved 100 Very-Low-Leakage Stop (VLLSx) 101 Reserved 110 Reserved 111 Reserved

16.3.3 Stop Control Register (SMC_STOPCTRL)

The STOPCTRL register provides various control bits allowing the user to fine tune power consumption during the stop mode selected by the STOPM field.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip POR not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip POR not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip POR not VLLS. See the Reset section details for more information.

Address: 4007_E000h base + 2h offset = 4007_E002h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read								
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1

SMC_STOPCTRL field descriptions

Field	Description
7–6 PSTOPO	<p>Partial Stop Option</p> <p>These bits control whether a Partial Stop mode is entered when STOPM=STOP. When entering a Partial Stop mode from RUN (or VLPR) mode, the PMC, MCG and flash remain fully powered, allowing the device to wakeup almost instantaneously at the expense of higher power consumption. In PSTOP2, only system clocks are gated allowing peripherals running on bus clock to remain fully functional. In PSTOP1, both system and bus clocks are gated.</p> <p>00 STOP - Normal Stop mode 01 PSTOP1 - Partial Stop with both system and bus clocks disabled 10 PSTOP2 - Partial Stop with system clock disabled and bus clock enabled 11 Reserved</p>
5 PORPO	<p>POR Power Option</p> <p>This bit controls whether the POR detect circuit is enabled in VLLS0 mode.</p> <p>0 POR detect circuit is enabled in VLLS0 1 POR detect circuit is disabled in VLLS0</p>
4 RAM2PO	<p>RAM2 Power Option</p> <p>This bit controls powering of RAM partition 2 in VLLS2 mode.</p> <p>NOTE: See the device's Chip Configuration details for the size and location of RAM partition 2</p> <p>0 RAM2 not powered in VLLS2 1 RAM2 powered in VLLS2</p>
3 LPOPO	<p>LPO Power Option</p> <p>Controls whether the 1 kHz LPO clock is enabled in VLLSx modes.</p> <p>NOTE: During VLLS0 mode, the LPO clock is disabled by hardware and this bit has no effect.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

SMC_STOPCTRL field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 LPO clock is enabled in VLLSx 1 LPO clock is disabled in VLLSx
VLLSM	VLLS Mode Control This field controls which VLLS sub-mode to enter if STOPM = VLLSx. 000 VLLS0 001 VLLS1 010 VLLS2 011 VLLS3 100 Reserved 101 Reserved 110 Reserved 111 Reserved

16.3.4 Power Mode Status register (SMC_PMSTAT)

PMSTAT is a read-only, one-hot register which indicates the current power mode of the system.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip POR not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip POR not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip POR not VLLS. See the Reset section details for more information.

Address: 4007_E000h base + 3h offset = 4007_E003h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	PMSTAT							
Write								
Reset	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*

* Notes:

- PMSTAT field: When booting in run mode, the reset value is 0x01. When booting in VLPR mode, the reset value is 0x04.

SMC_PMSTAT field descriptions

Field	Description
PMSTAT	Power Mode Status NOTE: When debug is enabled, the PMSTAT will not update to STOP or VLPS NOTE: When a PSTOP mode is enabled, the PMSTAT will not update to STOP or VLPS

SMC_PMSTAT field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>NOTE: Since the RUNM bits in the PMCTRL register are reset to VLPR on any Chip Reset not VLLS, the PMSTAT will update to VLPR shortly after the reset sequence is complete.</p> <p>0000_0001 Current power mode is RUN.</p> <p>0000_0010 Current power mode is STOP.</p> <p>0000_0100 Current power mode is VLPR.</p> <p>0000_1000 Current power mode is VLPW.</p> <p>0001_0000 Current power mode is VLPS.</p> <p>0010_0000 Reserved</p> <p>0100_0000 Current power mode is VLLS.</p> <p>1000_0000 Current power mode is HSRUN</p>

16.4 Functional description

16.4.1 Power mode transitions

The following figure shows the power mode state transitions available on the chip. Any reset will initially bring the MCU back to the normal RUN state. However, in order to minimize peak power consumption, the RUNM bits in the PMCTRL register can be reset to VLPR via Flash IFR settings, causing the SMC to begin transitioning the MCU into VLPR mode during the reset recovery sequence.

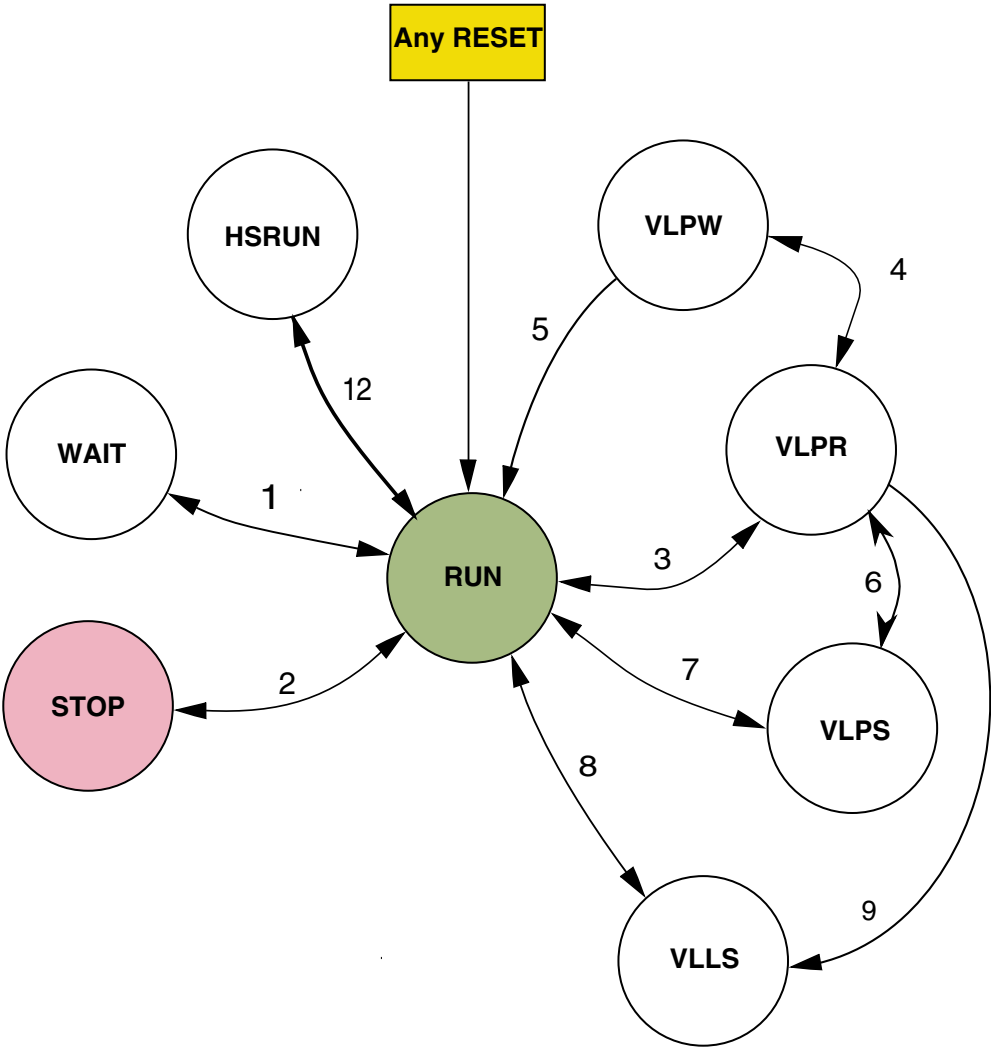


Figure 16-1. Power mode state diagram

The following table defines triggers for the various state transitions shown in the previous figure.

Table 16-2. Power mode transition triggers

Transition #	From	To	Trigger conditions
1	RUN	WAIT	Sleep-now or sleep-on-exit modes entered with SLEEPDEEP clear, controlled in System Control Register in ARM core. See note. ¹
	WAIT	RUN	Interrupt or Reset
2	RUN	STOP	PMCTRL[RUNM]=00, PMCTRL[STOPM]=000 ²

Table continues on the next page...

Table 16-2. Power mode transition triggers (continued)

Transition #	From	To	Trigger conditions
			Sleep-now or sleep-on-exit modes entered with SLEEPDEEP set, which is controlled in System Control Register in ARM core. See note. ¹
	STOP	RUN	Interrupt or Reset
3	RUN	VLPR	The core, system, bus and flash clock frequencies and MCG clocking mode are restricted in this mode. See the Power Management chapter for the maximum allowable frequencies and MCG modes supported. Set PMPROT[AVLP]=1, PMCTRL[RUNM]=10. NOTE: In order to limit peak current, PMPROT[AVLP] and PMCTRL[RUNM] bits can be set on any Reset via Flash IFR settings, causing the SMC to transition the MCU from RUN->VLPR during the reset recovery sequence.
	VLPR	RUN	Set PMCTRL[RUNM]=00 or Reset.
4	VLPR	VLPW	Sleep-now or sleep-on-exit modes entered with SLEEPDEEP clear, which is controlled in System Control Register in ARM core. See note. ¹
	VLPW	VLPR	Interrupt
5	VLPW	RUN	Reset
6	VLPR	VLPS	PMCTRL[STOPM]=000 ³ or 010, Sleep-now or sleep-on-exit modes entered with SLEEPDEEP set, which is controlled in System Control Register in ARM core. See note. ¹
	VLPS	VLPR	Interrupt NOTE: If VLPS was entered directly from RUN (transition #7), hardware forces exit back to RUN and does not allow a transition to VLPR.
7	RUN	VLPS	PMPROT[AVLP]=1, PMCTRL[STOPM]=010, Sleep-now or sleep-on-exit modes entered with SLEEPDEEP set, which is controlled in System Control Register in ARM core. See note. ¹
	VLPS	RUN	Interrupt and VLPS mode was entered directly from RUN or Reset
8	RUN	VLLSx	PMPROT[AVLLS]=1, PMCTRL[STOPM]=100, STOPCTRL[LLSM]=x (VLLSx), Sleep-now or sleep-on-exit modes entered with SLEEPDEEP set, which is controlled in System Control Register in ARM core.
	VLLSx	RUN	Wakeup from enabled LPTMR input source or RESET pin

Table continues on the next page...

Table 16-2. Power mode transition triggers (continued)

Transition #	From	To	Trigger conditions
9	VLPR	VLLSx	PMPROT[AVLLS]=1, PMCTRL[STOPM]=100, STOPCTRL[LLSM]=x (VLLSx), Sleep-now or sleep-on-exit modes entered with SLEEPDEEP set, which is controlled in System Control Register in ARM core.
12	RUN	HSRUN	Set PMPROT[AHSRUN]=1, PMCTRL[RUNM]=11.
	HSRUN	RUN	Set PMCTRL[RUNM]=00 or Reset

1. If debug is enabled, the core clock remains to support debug.
2. If PMCTRL[STOPM]=000 and STOPCTRL[PSTOPO]=01 or 10, then only a Partial Stop mode is entered instead of STOP
3. If PMCTRL[STOPM]=000 and STOPCTRL[PSTOPO]=00, then VLPS mode is entered instead of STOP. If PMCTRL[STOPM]=000 and STOPCTRL[PSTOPO]=01 or 10, then only a Partial Stop mode is entered instead of VLPS

16.4.2 Power mode entry/exit sequencing

When entering or exiting low-power modes, the system must conform to an orderly sequence to manage transitions safely.

The SMC manages the system's entry into and exit from all power modes. This diagram illustrates the connections of the SMC with other system components in the chip that are necessary to sequence the system through all power modes.

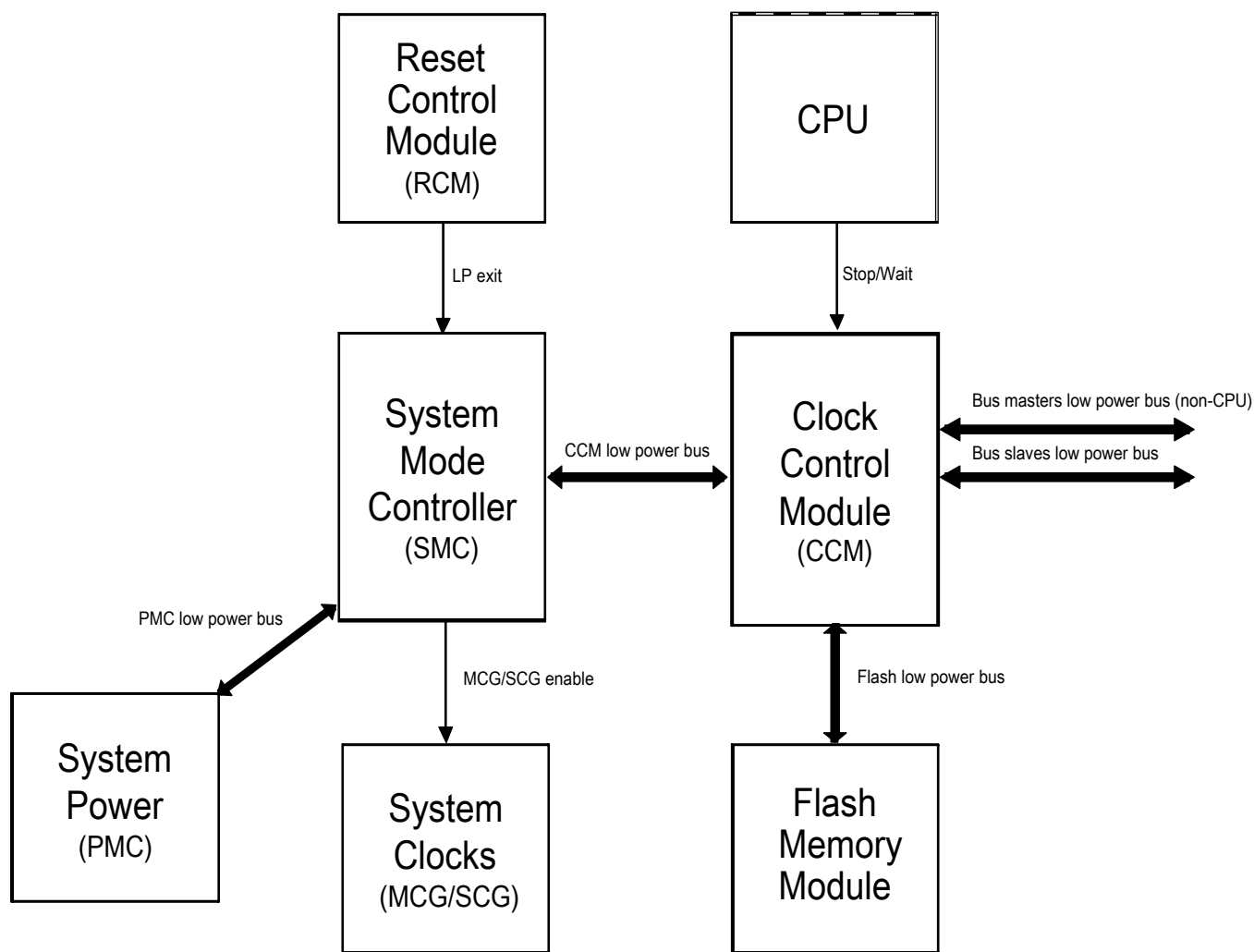


Figure 16-2. Low-power system components and connections

16.4.2.1 Stop mode entry sequence

Entry into a low-power stop mode (Stop, VLPS, VLLSx) is initiated by a CPU executing the WFI instruction. After the instruction is executed, the following sequence occurs:

1. The CPU clock is gated off immediately.
2. Requests are made to all non-CPU bus masters to enter Stop mode.
3. After all masters have acknowledged they are ready to enter Stop mode, requests are made to all bus slaves to enter Stop mode.
4. After all slaves have acknowledged they are ready to enter Stop mode, all system and bus clocks are gated off.
5. Clock generators are disabled in the MCG.
6. The on-chip regulator in the PMC and internal power switches are configured to meet the power consumption goals for the targeted low-power mode.

16.4.2.2 Stop mode exit sequence

Exit from a low-power stop mode is initiated either by a reset or an interrupt event. The following sequence then executes to restore the system to a run mode (RUN or VLPR):

1. The on-chip regulator in the PMC and internal power switches are restored.
2. Clock generators are enabled in the MCG.
3. System and bus clocks are enabled to all masters and slaves.
4. The CPU clock is enabled and the CPU begins servicing the reset or interrupt that initiated the exit from the low-power stop mode.

16.4.2.3 Aborted stop mode entry

If an interrupt occurs during a stop entry sequence, the SMC can abort the transition early and return to RUN mode without completely entering the stop mode. An aborted entry is possible only if the interrupt occurs before the PMC begins the transition to stop mode regulation. After this point, the interrupt is ignored until the PMC has completed its transition to stop mode regulation. When an aborted stop mode entry sequence occurs, SMC_PMCCTRL[STOPA] is set to 1.

16.4.2.4 Transition to wait modes

For wait modes (WAIT and VLPW), the CPU clock is gated off while all other clocking continues, as in RUN and VLPR mode operation. Some modules that support stop-in-wait functionality have their clocks disabled in these configurations.

16.4.2.5 Transition from stop modes to Debug mode

The debugger module supports a transition from STOP, WAIT, VLPS, and VLPW back to a Halted state when the debugger has been enabled. As part of this transition, system clocking is re-established and is equivalent to the normal RUN and VLPR mode clocking configuration.

16.4.3 Run modes

The run modes supported by this device can be found here.

- Run (RUN)

- Very Low-Power Run (VLPR)
- High Speed Run (HSRUN)

16.4.3.1 RUN mode

This mode is selected after any reset. In order to reduce peak power consumption, however, the SMC will begin transitioning the MCU into VLPR mode during the reset recovery sequence. When the ARM processor exits reset, it sets up the stack, program counter (PC), and link register (LR):

- The processor reads the start SP (SP_main) from vector-table offset 0x000
- The processor reads the start PC from vector-table offset 0x004
- LR is set to 0xFFFF_FFFF.

To reduce power in this mode, disable the clocks to unused modules using their corresponding clock gating control bits in the SIM's (or PCC's) registers.

16.4.3.2 Very-Low Power Run (VLPR) mode

In VLPR mode, the on-chip voltage regulator is put into a stop mode regulation state. In this state, the regulator is designed to supply enough current to the MCU over a reduced frequency. To further reduce power in this mode, disable the clocks to unused modules using their corresponding clock gating control bits in the SIM's registers.

Before entering this mode, the following conditions must be met:

- The MCG must be configured in a mode which is supported during VLPR. See the Power Management details for information about these MCG modes.
- All clock monitors in the MCG must be disabled.
- The maximum frequencies of the system, bus, flash, and core are restricted. See the Power Management details about which frequencies are supported.
- Mode protection must be set to allow VLP modes, that is, PMPROT[AVLP] is 1.
- PMCTRL[RUNM] must be set to 10b to enter VLPR.
- Flash programming/erasing is not allowed.

NOTE

Do not increase the clock frequency while in VLPR mode, because the regulator is slow in responding and cannot manage fast load transitions. In addition, do not modify the clock source in the MCG module or any clock divider registers. Module clock enables in the SIM can be set, however should only be cleared one at a time to limit load transitions.

To reenter Normal Run mode, clear PMCTRL[RUNM]. PMSTAT is a read-only status register that can be used to determine when the system has completed an exit to RUN mode. When PMSTAT=RUN, the system is in run regulation and the MCU can run at full speed in any clock mode. If a higher execution frequency is desired, poll PMSTAT until it is set to RUN when returning from VLPR mode.

Any reset will initially cause the device to exit to RUN mode, however Flash IFR settings can be used to return the part to VLPR during the MCU reset flow.

16.4.3.3 High Speed Run (HSRUN) mode

In HSRUN mode, the on-chip voltage regulator remains in a run regulation state, but with a slightly elevated voltage output. In this state, the MCU is able to operate at a faster frequency compared to normal RUN mode. For the maximum allowable frequencies, see the Power Management chapter.

While in this mode, the following restrictions must be adhered to:

- The maximum allowable change in frequency of the system, bus, flash or core clocks is restricted to 2x (double the frequency).
- Before exiting HSRUN mode, clock frequencies should be reduced back down to those acceptable in RUN mode.
- Stop mode entry is not supported from HSRUN.
- Modifications to clock gating control bits are prohibited.
- Flash programming/erasing is not allowed.

To enter HSRUN mode, set PMPORT[AHSRUN]=HSRUN and set PMCTRL[RUNM]=HSRUN. Before increasing clock frequencies, the PMSTAT register should be polled to determine when the system has completed entry into HSRUN mode. To reenter normal RUN mode, clear RUNM. Any reset will also clear RUNM and cause the system to exit to normal RUN mode after the MCU exits its reset flow.

16.4.4 Wait modes

This device contains two different wait modes which are listed here.

- Wait
- Very-Low Power Wait (VLPW)

16.4.4.1 WAIT mode

WAIT mode is entered when the ARM core enters the Sleep-Now or Sleep-On-Exit modes while SLEEPDEEP is cleared. The ARM CPU enters a low-power state in which it is not clocked, but peripherals continue to be clocked provided they are enabled. Clock gating to the peripheral is enabled via the SIM module.

When an interrupt request occurs, the CPU exits WAIT mode and resumes processing in RUN mode, beginning with the stacking operations leading to the interrupt service routine.

A system reset will cause an exit from WAIT mode, temporarily returning the device to RUN mode before transitioning into VLPR during the MCU reset flow.

16.4.4.2 Very-Low-Power Wait (VLPW) mode

VLPW is entered by the entering the Sleep-Now or Sleep-On-Exit mode while SLEEPDEEP is cleared and the MCU is in VLPR mode.

In VLPW, the on-chip voltage regulator remains in its stop regulation state. In this state, the regulator is designed to supply enough current to the MCU over a reduced frequency. To further reduce power in this mode, disable the clocks to unused modules by clearing the peripherals' corresponding clock gating control bits in the SIM (or PCC).

VLPR mode restrictions also apply to VLPW.

When an interrupt from VLPW occurs, the device returns to VLPR mode to execute the interrupt service routine.

A system reset will cause an exit from VLPW mode, temporarily returning the device to RUN mode before transitioning into VLPR during the MCU reset flow.

16.4.5 Stop modes

This device contains a variety of stop modes to meet your application needs.

The stop modes range from:

- a stopped CPU, with all I/O, logic, and memory states retained, and certain asynchronous mode peripherals operating

to:

- a powered down CPU, with only I/O and a small register file retained, very few asynchronous mode peripherals operating, while the remainder of the MCU is powered down.

The choice of stop mode depends upon the user's application, and how power usage and state retention versus functional needs and recovery time may be traded off.

NOTE

All clock monitors must be disabled before entering these low-power modes: Stop, VLPS, VLPR, VLPW and VLLSx.

The various stop modes are selected by setting the appropriate fields in PMPROT and PMCTRL. The selected stop mode is entered during the sleep-now or sleep-on-exit entry with the SLEEPDEEP bit set in the System Control Register in the ARM core.

The available stop modes are:

- Normal Stop (STOP)
- Very-Low Power Stop (VLPS)
- Very-Low-Leakage Stop (VLLSx)

16.4.5.1 STOP mode

STOP mode is entered via the sleep-now or sleep-on-exit with the SLEEPDEEP bit set in the System Control Register in the ARM core.

The MCG module can be configured to leave the reference clocks running.

A module capable of providing an asynchronous interrupt to the device takes the device out of STOP mode and returns the device to normal RUN mode. Refer to the device's Power Management chapter for peripheral, I/O, and memory operation in STOP mode. When an interrupt request occurs, the CPU exits STOP mode and resumes processing, beginning with the stacking operations leading to the interrupt service routine.

A system reset will cause an exit from STOP mode, temporarily returning the device to RUN mode before transitioning into VLPR during the MCU reset flow.

16.4.5.2 Very-Low-Power Stop (VLPS) mode

The two ways in which VLPS mode can be entered are listed here.

- Entry into stop via the sleep-now or sleep-on-exit with the SLEEPDEEP bit set in the System Control Register in the ARM core while the MCU is in VLPR mode and PMCTRL[STOPM] = 010 or 000.
- Entry into stop via the sleep-now or sleep-on-exit with the SLEEPDEEP bit set in the System Control Register in the ARM core while the MCU is in normal RUN mode and PMCTRL[STOPM] = 010. When VLPS is entered directly from RUN mode, exit to VLPR is disabled by hardware and the system will always exit back to RUN.

In VLPS, the on-chip voltage regulator remains in its stop regulation state as in VLPR.

A module capable of providing an asynchronous interrupt to the device takes the device out of VLPS and returns the device to VLPR mode.

A system reset will cause an exit from VLPS mode, temporarily returning the device to RUN mode before transitioning into VLPR during the MCU reset flow.

16.4.5.3 Very-Low-Leakage Stop (VLLSx) modes

This device contains these very low leakage modes:

- VLLS3
- VLLS2
- VLLS1
- VLLS0

VLLSx is often used in this document to refer to all of these modes.

All VLLSx modes can be entered from normal RUN or VLPR modes.

The MCU enters the configured VLLS mode if:

- In Sleep-Now or Sleep-On-Exit mode, the SLEEPDEEP bit is set in the System Control Register in the ARM core, and
- The device is configured as shown in [Table 16-2](#).

In VLLS, the on-chip voltage regulator is in its stop-regulation state while most digital logic is powered off.

Before entering VLLS mode, the user should configure the Low-Leakage Wake-up (LLWU) module to enable the desired wakeup sources. The available wake-up sources in VLLS are detailed in the chip configuration details for this device.

After wakeup from VLLS, the device returns to normal RUN mode with a pending LLWU interrupt. If VLLS was entered from VLPR mode, then the MCU will begin VLPR entry shortly after wakeup. In the LLWU interrupt service routine (ISR), the user can poll the LLWU module wake-up flags to determine the source of the wake-up.

When entering VLLS, each I/O pin is latched as configured before executing VLLS. Because all digital logic in the MCU is powered off, all port and peripheral data is lost during VLLS. This information must be restored before PMC_REGSC[ACKISO] is set.

An asserted $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin will cause an exit from any VLLS mode, temporarily returning the device to normal RUN mode before transitioning into VLPR during the MCU reset flow. When exiting VLLS via the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin, RCM_SRS[PIN] and RCM_SRS[WAKEUP] are set.

16.4.6 Debug in low power modes

When the MCU is secure, the device disables/limits debugger operation. When the MCU is unsecure, the ARM debugger can assert two power-up request signals:

- System power up, via SYSPWR in the Debug Port Control/Stat register
- Debug power up, via CDBGPWRUPREQ in the Debug Port Control/Stat register

When asserted while in RUN, WAIT, VLPR, or VLPW, the mode controller drives a corresponding acknowledge for each signal, that is, both CDBGPWRUPACK and CSYSPWRUPACK. When both requests are asserted, the mode controller handles attempts to enter STOP and VLPS by entering an emulated stop state. In this emulated stop state:

- the regulator is in run regulation,
- the MCG-generated clock source is enabled,
- all system clocks, except the core clock, are disabled,
- the debug module has access to core registers, and
- access to the on-chip peripherals is blocked.

No debug is available while the MCU is in VLLS modes.

Entering into a VLLS mode causes all of the debug controls and settings to be powered off. To give time to the debugger to sync with the MCU, the MDM AP Control Register includes a Very-Low-Leakage Debug Request (VLLDBGREQ) bit that is set to configure the Reset Controller logic to hold the system in reset after the next recovery from a VLLS mode. This bit allows the debugger time to reinitialize the debug module before the debug session continues.

The MDM AP Control Register also includes a Very Low Leakage Debug Acknowledge (VLLDBGACK) bit that is set to release the ARM core being held in reset following a VLLS recovery. The debugger reinitializes all debug IP, and then asserts the VLLDBGACK control bit to allow the RCM to release the ARM core from reset and allow CPU operation to begin.

The VLLDBGACK bit is cleared by the debugger (or can be left set as is) or clears automatically due to the reset generated as part of the next VLLS recovery.



Chapter 17

Miscellaneous Control Module (MCM)

17.1 Introduction

The Miscellaneous Control Module (MCM) provides miscellaneous control functions and contains Cortex-M7 local memory descriptors.

17.1.1 Features

The MCM includes the following features:

- Program-visible information on the platform configuration and revision
- Floating Point Exception monitor and interrupt control
- Local memory descriptors (ITCM, D0TCM, D1TCM, ICACHE, and DCACHE)

17.2 Memory map/register descriptions

The memory map and register descriptions below describe the registers using byte addresses.

MCM memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
E008_0000	Processor core type (MCM_PCT)	32	R	AC70_0000h	17.2.1/336
E008_000C	Control Register (MCM_CR)	32	R/W	See section	17.2.2/337
E008_0010	Interrupt Status and Control Register (MCM_ISCR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	17.2.3/338
E008_0034	Compute Only Operation Control Register (MCM_CPO)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	17.2.4/340
E008_0400	Local Memory General Descriptor Register (MCM_LMEM0)	32	R	See section	17.2.5/342
E008_0404	Local Memory General Descriptor Register (MCM_LMEM1)	32	R	See section	17.2.5/342

Table continues on the next page...

MCM memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
E008_0408	Local Memory General Descriptor Register (MCM_LMEM2)	32	R	See section	17.2.5/342
E008_040C	Local Memory General Descriptor Register (MCM_LMEM3)	32	R	See section	17.2.5/342
E008_0410	Local Memory General Descriptor Register (MCM_LMEM4)	32	R	See section	17.2.5/342

17.2.1 Processor core type (MCM_PCT)

The PCT is a 16-bit read-only register specifying the architecture of the processor core within the platform in the device. The state of this register is defined by a module input signal; it can only be read from the IPS programming model. Any attempted write is ignored.

Address: E008_0000h base + 0h offset = E008_0000h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	PCT																PLREV															
W																																
Reset	1	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

MCM_PCT field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 PCT	This MCM design supports the ARM Cortex M7 core.
PLREV	Platform revision

17.2.2 Control Register (MCM_CR)

CR defines the interface priority for the TCM (Tightly Coupled Memory) RAM arrays.

Address: E008_0000h base + Ch offset = E008_000Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Reserved				AHBSPRI	Reserved										
W																
Reset	0*	0*	0*	0*	0	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved															
W																
Reset	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*

* Notes:

- Implementation defined

MCM_CR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–28 Reserved	This field is reserved.
27 AHBSPRI	AHB Slave Interface Priority Setting the ARM AHBSCR (Cortex-M7 AHBS Prioritization Control Register) bits[1:0] to x3 enables AHBSPRI to control AHBS priority boost modes. Once the ARM AHBSCR[1:0] has been written to x3, AHBSPRI controls the AHBS Interface priority. 0 SW accesses take priority over AHBS accesses 1 AHBS accesses take priority over SW accesses
Reserved	This field is reserved.

17.2.3 Interrupt Status and Control Register (MCM_ISCR)

The MCM_ISCR register defines the configuration and reports status for a number of core-related interrupt exception conditions. The MCM_ISCR register includes the enable and status bits associated with the core’s floating-point exceptions. The individual event indicators are first qualified with their exception enables and then logically summed to form an interrupt request sent to the core’s NVIC. Bits 15-8 are read-only indicator flags based on the processor’s FPSCR register. Attempted writes to these bits are ignored. Once set, the flags remain asserted until software clears the corresponding FPSCR bit.

Address: E008_0000h base + 10h offset = E008_0010h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R																
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

MCM_ISCR field descriptions

Field	Description
31 FIDCE	FPU input denormal interrupt enable

Table continues on the next page...

MCM_ISCR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Disable interrupt 1 Enable interrupt
30–29 Reserved	This field is reserved.
28 FIXCE	FPU inexact interrupt enable 0 Disable interrupt 1 Enable interrupt
27 FUFCE	FPU underflow interrupt enable 0 Disable interrupt 1 Enable interrupt
26 FOFCE	FPU overflow interrupt enable 0 Disable interrupt 1 Enable interrupt
25 FDZCE	FPU divide-by-zero interrupt enable 0 Disable interrupt 1 Enable interrupt
24 FIOCE	FPU invalid operation interrupt enable 0 Disable interrupt 1 Enable interrupt
23–16 Reserved	This field is reserved.
15 FIDC	FPU input denormal interrupt status 0 No interrupt 1 Interrupt has occurred
14–13 Reserved	This field is reserved.
12 FIXC	FPU inexact interrupt status 0 No interrupt 1 Interrupt has occurred
11 FUFC	FPU underflow interrupt status 0 No interrupt 1 Interrupt has occurred
10 FOFC	FPU overflow interrupt status 0 No interrupt 1 Interrupt has occurred
9 FDZC	FPU divide-by-zero interrupt status 0 No interrupt 1 Interrupt has occurred

Table continues on the next page...

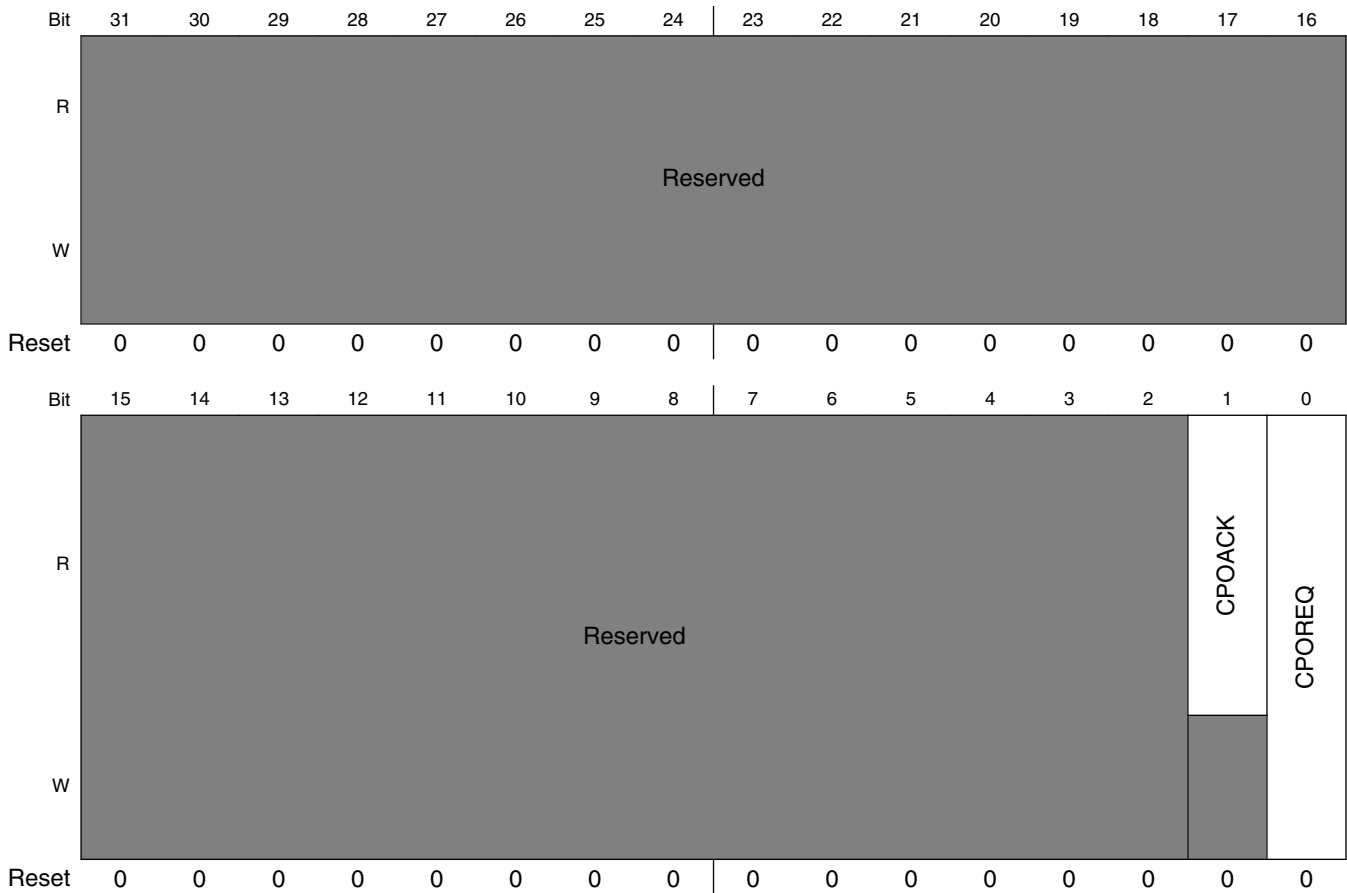
MCM_ISCR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
8 FIOC	FPU invalid operation interrupt status 0 No interrupt 1 Interrupt has occurred
Reserved	This field is reserved.

17.2.4 Compute Only Operation Control Register (MCM_CPO)

This register controls the Compute Only Operation.

Address: E008_0000h base + 34h offset = E008_0034h



MCM_CPO field descriptions

Field	Description
31–2 Reserved	This field is reserved.
1 CPOACK	Compute Only Operation acknowledge

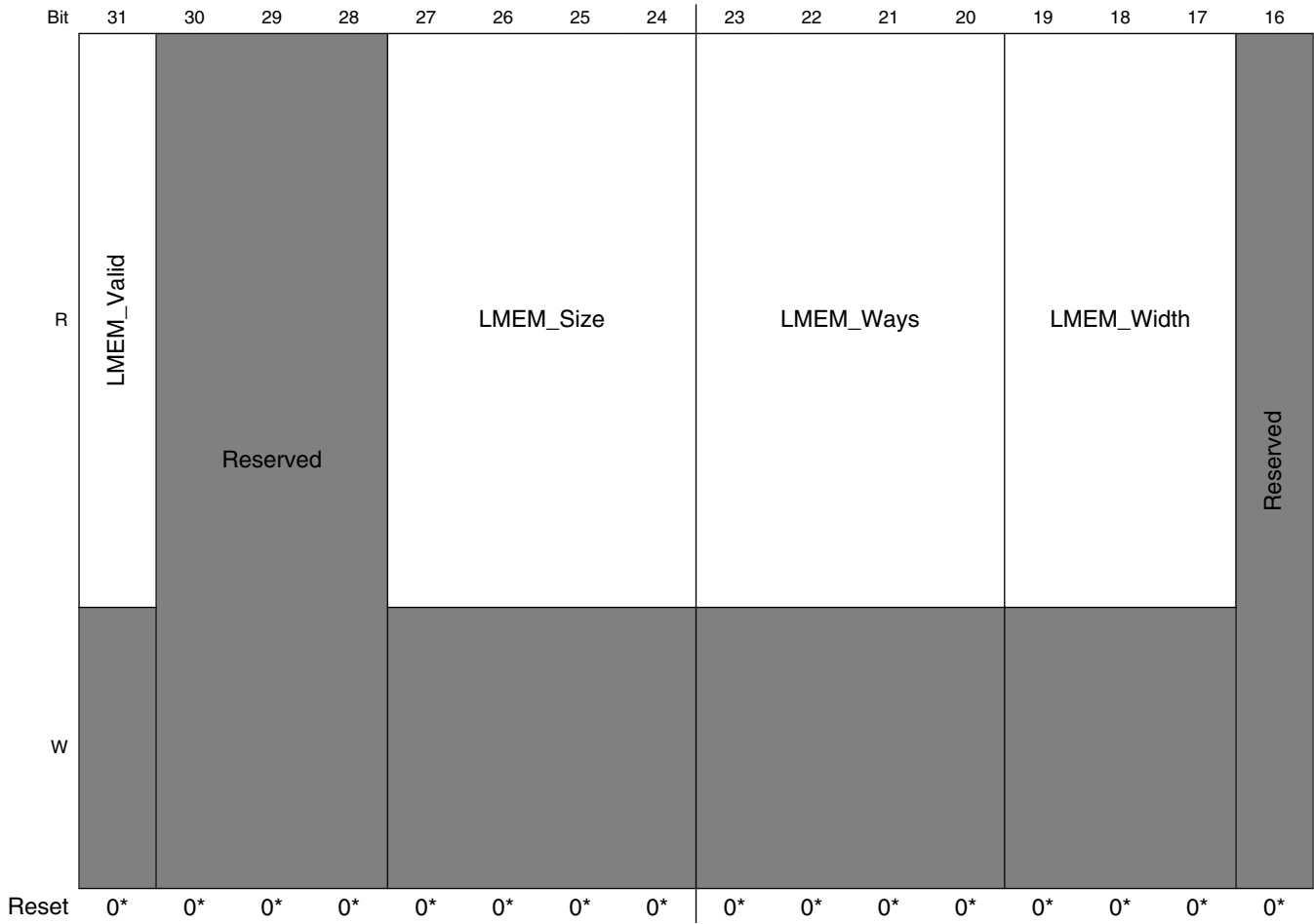
Table continues on the next page...

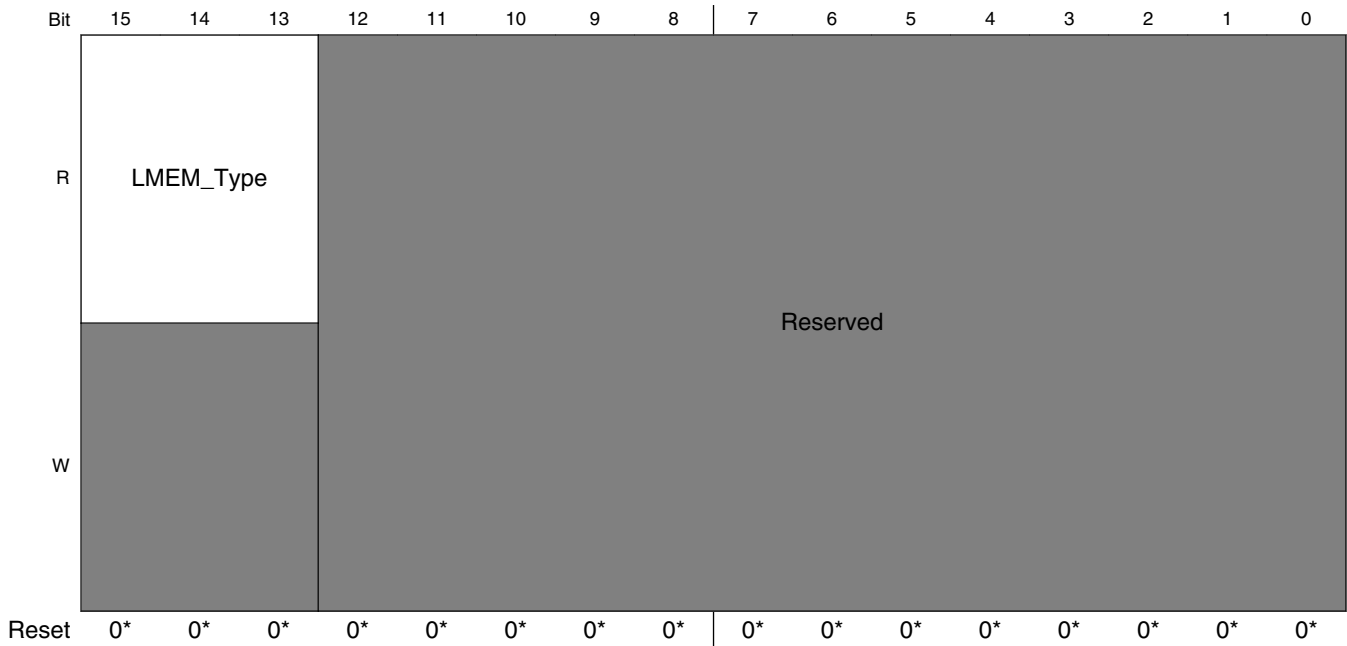
MCM_CPO field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Compute only operation entry has not completed or compute only operation exit has completed. 1 Compute only operation entry has completed or compute only operation exit has not completed.
0 CPOREQ	Compute Only Operation request This field must be cleared to exit Compute Only Operation mode. 0 Request is cleared. 1 Request Compute Only Operation.

17.2.5 Local Memory General Descriptor Register (MCM_LMEMn)

Address: E008_0000h base + 400h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 4d





- * Notes:
- The reset values are different for the individual LMEM registers. LMEM0: 0x8706_0000; LMEM1: 0x8704_2000; LMEM2: 0x8704_2000; LMEM3: 0x8526_4000; LMEM4: 0x8444_6000

MCM_LMEMn field descriptions

Field	Description
31 LMEM_Valid	Defines whether the local memory is present 0 Local memory not present 1 Local memory present
30–28 Reserved	This field is reserved.
27–24 LMEM_Size	Defines the local memory size 0100 8KB 0101 16KB 0111 64KB
23–20 LMEM_Ways	Defines the ways of set associative 0000 Reserved (not applicable) 0010 2-way set associative 0100 4-way set associative
19–17 LMEM_Width	Defines the local memory bit width 010 32-bits 011 64-bits
16 Reserved	This field is reserved.

Table continues on the next page...

MCM_LMEMn field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
15–13 LMEM_Type	Defines the type of local memory 000 ITCM (Instruction Tightly Coupled Memory) 001 DTCM (Data Tightly Coupled Memory) 010 Instruction Cache 011 Data Cache
Reserved	This field is reserved.

17.3 Functional description

This section describes the functional description of MCM module.

17.3.1 Interrupts

The MCM's interrupt is generated if any of the following is true:

- FPU input denormal interrupt is enabled (FIDCE) and an input is denormalized (FIDC)
- FPU inexact interrupt is enabled (FIXCE) and a number is inexact (FIXC)
- FPU underflow interrupt is enabled (FUFCE) and an underflow occurs (FUFC)
- FPU overflow interrupt is enabled (FOFCE) and an overflow occurs (FOFC)
- FPU divide-by-zero interrupt is enabled (FDZCE) and a divide-by-zero occurs (FDZC)
- FPU invalid operation interrupt is enabled (FDZCE) and an invalid occurs (FDZC)

17.3.1.1 Determining the interrupt source

To determine the exact interrupt source:

1. Qualify the floating point interrupt flags:
 - a. Form MCM_ISCR[31:16]&&MCM_ISCR[15:0]
 - b. Search the result for asserted flags, which indicate the exact interrupt sources

Chapter 18

Miscellaneous System Control Module (MSCM)

18.1 Overview

The Miscellaneous System Control Module (MSCM) contains CPU configuration registers and on-chip memory controller registers.

18.2 Chip Configuration and Boot

The device configuration is defined by e-fuse bits, supported memory sizes and packing options. Collectively, these configuration bits define an RCON (reset configuration) value.

Once the cores have fetched the needed reset vector(s), it is expected they read core and system configuration information from a globally-accessible slave peripheral that properly converts the information into more appropriate values. More specifically, the cores access configuration information from a common set of peripheral addresses and the chip configuration logic properly evaluates based on the requesting processor and returns the appropriate value for the given processor, including core identification.

As an example, there is a single 32-bit read-only location for the core identification. A 32-bit read from this location returns a four character ASCII string: 0x43_4D_37_02 ("Cortex-M7, version r0p2").

The programming model associated with the core configuration information is included as part of the Miscellaneous System Control Module (MSCM). It specifically includes multiple views of the processor configuration; one that is available generically to the cores and others that are available to any bus masters in the system.

18.3 MSCM Memory Map/Register Definition

18.3.1 CPU Configuration Memory Map and Registers

The CPU configuration portion of the MSCM module provides a set of memory-mapped read-only addresses defining the processor setup. This portion of the MSCM programming model can only be accessed with privileged mode 32-bit read references; any other access type or size are terminated with an error. If the processor is logically not included in the chip configuration, reads of its configuration registers return zeroes.

The CPU Configuration registers are organized based on the logical processor number (not any type of physical port number) and partitioned into three equal sections:

- Offset addresses 0x000 - 0x01F define the generic processor "x" configuration. This region is only accessible to the processor cores; reads by non-core bus masters are treated as RAZ (read as zero) accesses.
- Offset addresses 0x020-0x03F define the configuration information for processor 0 (CP0). This region is accessible to any bus master.
- Offset addresses 0x040 - 0x05F define the configuration information for processor 1 (CP1). This region is accessible to any bus master. For uniprocessor chip configurations, reads of this section are treated as RAZ (read as zero).

Reads from any other bus master return all zeroes. Attempted user mode or write accesses are terminated with an error.

MSCM memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_1000	Processor X Type Register (MSCM_CPxTYPE)	32	R	See section	18.3.2/347
4000_1004	Processor X Number Register (MSCM_CPxNUM)	32	R	See section	18.3.3/348
4000_1008	Processor X Master Register (MSCM_CPxMASTER)	32	R	See section	18.3.4/349
4000_100C	Processor X Count Register (MSCM_CPxCOUNT)	32	R	See section	18.3.5/350
4000_1014	Processor X Configuration 1 Register (MSCM_CPxCFG1)	32	R	0000_0000h	18.3.6/350
4000_101C	Processor X Configuration 3 Register (MSCM_CPxCFG3)	32	R	0000_0221h	18.3.7/351
4000_1020	Processor 0 Type Register (MSCM_CP0TYPE)	32	R	See section	18.3.8/353
4000_1024	Processor 0 Number Register (MSCM_CP0NUM)	32	R	See section	18.3.9/354
4000_1028	Processor 0 Master Register (MSCM_CP0MASTER)	32	R	See section	18.3.10/354
4000_102C	Processor 0 Count Register (MSCM_CP0COUNT)	32	R	See section	18.3.11/355
4000_1034	Processor 0 Configuration 1 Register (MSCM_CP0CFG1)	32	R	0000_0000h	18.3.12/356
4000_103C	Processor 0 Configuration 3 Register (MSCM_CP0CFG3)	32	R	0000_0221h	18.3.13/357

Table continues on the next page...

MSCM memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_1040	Processor 1 Type Register (MSCM_CP1TYPE)	32	R	See section	18.3.14/358
4000_1044	Processor 1 Number Register (MSCM_CP1NUM)	32	R	See section	18.3.15/359
4000_1048	Processor 1 Master Register (MSCM_CP1MASTER)	32	R	See section	18.3.16/360
4000_104C	Processor 1 Count Register (MSCM_CP1COUNT)	32	R	See section	18.3.17/361
4000_1054	Processor 1 Configuration 1 Register (MSCM_CP1CFG1)	32	R	0000_0000h	18.3.18/361
4000_105C	Processor 1 Configuration 3 Register (MSCM_CP1CFG3)	32	R	0000_0000h	18.3.19/362
4000_1400	On-Chip Memory Descriptor Register (MSCM_OCMDR0)	32	R/W	See section	18.3.20/364
4000_1404	On-Chip Memory Descriptor Register (MSCM_OCMDR1)	32	R/W	See section	18.3.20/364
4000_1408	On-Chip Memory Descriptor Register (MSCM_OCMDR2)	32	R/W	See section	18.3.20/364

18.3.2 Processor X Type Register (MSCM_CPxTYPE)

The register provides a CPU-specific response indicating the personality of the core making the access. The 32 bit response includes 3 ASCII characters defining the CPU type along with a byte defining the logical revision number. The logical revision number follows ARM's rYpZ nomenclature.

Address: 4000_1000h base + 0h offset = 4000_1000h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	PERSONALITY																RYPZ															
W																																
Reset	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*

* Notes:

- PERSONALITY field: See bit field description
- RYPZ field: See bit field description

MSCM_CPxTYPE field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 PERSONALITY	Processor x Personality This field defines the processor personality for CPx if CPx = Cortex-M7, then PERSONALITY = 0x43_4D_37 ("CM7").
RYPZ	Processor x Revision This field defines the processor revision for CPx: 0x00 corresponds to the r0p0 core release.

Table continues on the next page...

MSCM_CPxTYPE field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0x01 corresponds to the r0p1 core release. ...

18.3.3 Processor X Number Register (MSCM_CPxNUM)

The register provides a CPU-specific response indicating the logical processor number of the core making the access. In single processor configurations, the logical processor number is always zero; in dual core configurations, the boot (or primary) core is assigned number 0 while the secondary core is defined as number 1.

Address: 4000_1000h base + 4h offset = 4000_1004h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0															CPN
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	*

* Notes:

- CPN field: See bit field description

MSCM_CPxNUM field descriptions

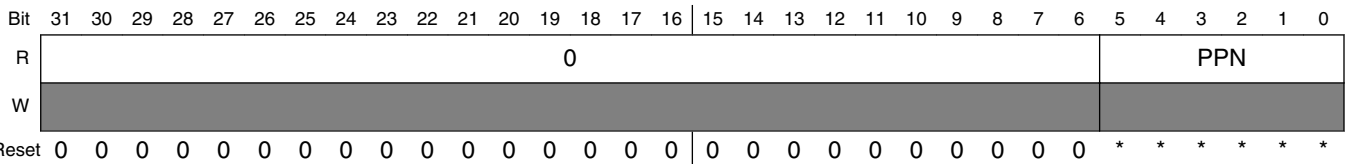
Field	Description
31–1 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
0 CPN	Processor x Number This zero-filled word defines the logical processor number for CPx If single core configuration, then CPN = 0 If dual core configuration and boot (primary) core, then CPN = 0 For secondary core, CPN = 1

18.3.4 Processor X Master Register (MSCM_CPxMASTER)

The register provides a CPU-specific response indicating the physical bus master number of the core making the access. The 32 bit response defines the physical master number for processor x.

A privileged read from the CM7 returns the appropriate processor information. Reads from any other bus master return all zeroes. Attempted user mode or write accesses are terminated with an error.

Address: 4000_1000h base + 8h offset = 4000_1008h



- * Notes:
- PPN field: See the bit field description.

MSCM_CPxMASTER field descriptions

Field	Description
31–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
PPN	Processor x Physical Port Number This field defines the physical port number for CPUx. For CPU0, PPN = 0x00 For CPU1, PPN = 0x24

18.3.5 Processor X Count Register (MSCM_CPxCOUNT)

The register provides a CPU-specific response indicating the total number of processor cores in the chip configuration.

Address: 4000_1000h base + Ch offset = 4000_100Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0														PCNT	
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	*	*

* Notes:

- PCNT field: See bit field description

MSCM_CPxCOUNT field descriptions

Field	Description
31–2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
PCNT	Processor Count This field defines the processor count for the chip configuration: If single core configuration, then PCNT = 00 If dual core configuration, then PCNT = 01

18.3.6 Processor X Configuration 1 Register (MSCM_CPxCFG1)

The register provides a CPU-specific response detailing configuration information, in this case, information on a Level 2 cache (if present).

Address: 4000_1000h base + 14h offset = 4000_1014h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	L2SZ								L2WY								0															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

MSCM_CPxCFG1 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 L2SZ	<p>Level 2 Cache Size</p> <p>This field provides an encoded value of the Level 2 Cache size. The capacity of the memory is expressed as Size [bytes] = $2^{(8+SZ)}$ where SZ is non-zero; SZ = 0 indicates the memory is not present.</p> <p>If no Level 2 Cache, then L2SZ = 0x00</p> <p>If a 4 Kbyte Level 2 Cache, then L2SZ = 0x04</p> <p>If an 8 Kbyte Level 2 Cache, then L2SZ = 0x05</p> <p>If a 16 Kbyte Level 2 Cache, then L2SZ = 0x06</p> <p>If a 32 Kbyte Level 2 Cache, then L2SZ = 0x07</p> <p>If a 64 Kbyte Level 2 Cache, then L2SZ = 0x08</p> <p>If a 128 Kbyte Level 2 Cache, then L2SZ = 0x09</p> <p>If a 256 Kbyte Level 2 Cache, then L2SZ = 0x0A</p> <p>If a 512 Kbyte Level 2 Cache, then L2SZ = 0x0B</p>
23–16 L2WY	<p>Level 2 Cache Ways</p> <p>This field provides the number of cache ways for the Level 2 Cache.</p>
Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>

18.3.7 Processor X Configuration 3 Register (MSCM_CPxCFG3)

The register provides CPU-specific response detailing configuration information, in this case, information on processor options. A privileged read from the CM7 returns the appropriate processor information. Reads from any other bus master return all zeroes. Attempted user mode or write accesses are terminated with an error.

Address: 4000_1000h base + 1Ch offset = 4000_101Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0						SBP		0	BB	CMP	TZ	MMU	JAZ	SIMD	FPU
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	1

MSCM_CPxCFG3 field descriptions

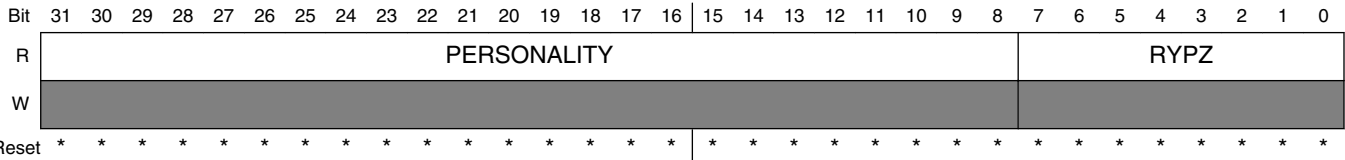
Field	Description
31–10 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
9–8 SBP	System Bus Ports This field defines the number of physical connections to the system bus fabric for this processor.
7 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
6 BB	Bit Banding This field defines if the processor supports bit banding. If bit banding is not supported, then BB = 0x0 If bit banding is supported, then BB = 0x1
5 CMP	Core Memory Protection unit This field indicates if the core memory protection hardware is included in the processor. If core memory protection is not included, then CMP = 0x0 If core memory protection is included, then CMP = 0x1
4 TZ	Trust Zone This field indicates if the Trust Zone capabilities are supported in the processor. If Trust Zone support is not included, then TZ = 0x0 If Trust Zone support is included, then TZ = 0x1
3 MMU	Memory Management Unit This field indicates if the virtual memory management capabilities are supported in the processor. If MMU support is not included, then MMU = 0x0 If MMU support is included, then MMU = 0x1
2 JAZ	Jazelle This field indicates if Jazelle hardware is supported in the processor. If Jazelle support is not included, then JAZ = 0x0 If Jazelle support is included, then JAZ = 0x1
1 SIMD	SIMD/NEON Instruction Support This field indicates if the instruction set extensions supporting SIMD and/or NEON capabilities are supported in the processor. If SIMD/NEON support is not included, then SIMD = 0x0 If SIMD/NEON support is included, then SIMD = 0x1
0 FPU	Floating Point Unit This field indicates if hardware support for floating point capabilities are supported in the processor. If FPU support is not included, then FPU = 0x0 If FPU support is included, then FPU = 0x1

18.3.8 Processor 0 Type Register (MSCM_CP0TYPE)

The register defines the personality of processor 0 (CPU0). The 32 bit response includes 3 ASCII characters defining the CPU type along with a byte defining the logical revision number. The logical revision number follows ARM's rYpZ nomenclature.

A privileged read for *any bus master* returns processor 0 (CP0) information.

Address: 4000_1000h base + 20h offset = 4000_1020h



- * Notes:
- PERSONALITY field: See bit field description
 - RYPZ field: See bit field description

MSCM_CP0TYPE field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 PERSONALITY	<p>Processor 0 Personality</p> <p>This field defines the processor personality for CP0.</p> <p>if CP0 = Cortex-M7, then PERSONALITY = 0x43_4D_37 (“CM7”).</p>
RYPZ	<p>Processor 0 Revision</p> <p>This field defines the processor revision for CP0:</p> <p>0x00 corresponds to the r0p0 core release.</p> <p>0x01 corresponds to the r0p1 core release.</p> <p>...</p>

18.3.9 Processor 0 Number Register (MSCM_CP0NUM)

The register defines the logical processor number of processor 0 (CPU0). In single processor configurations, the logical processor number is always zero; in dual core configurations, the boot (or primary) core is assigned number 0 while the secondary core is defined as number 1.

Address: 4000_1000h base + 24h offset = 4000_1024h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0															CPN
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	*

* Notes:

- CPN field: See bit field description

MSCM_CP0NUM field descriptions

Field	Description
31–1 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
0 CPN	Processor 0 Number This zero-filled word defines the logical processor number for CP0. If single core configuration, then CPN = 0 If dual core configuration and boot (primary) core, then CPN = 0 For secondary core, CPN = 1

18.3.10 Processor 0 Master Register (MSCM_CP0MASTER)

The register defines the physical bus master number of processor 0 (CPU0).

A privileged read for *any bus master* returns processor 0 (CPU0) information. Attempted user mode or write accesses are terminated with an error.

Address: 4000_1000h base + 28h offset = 4000_1028h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																PPN															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	*	*	*	*	*	*

- * Notes:
- PPN field: See the bit field description.

MSCM_CP0MASTER field descriptions

Field	Description
31–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
PPN	Processor 0 Physical Port Number This field defines the physical port number for CPU0. For CPU0, PPN = 0x00 For CPU1, PPN = 0x24

18.3.11 Processor 0 Count Register (MSCM_CP0COUNT)

The register defines the total number of processor cores in the chip configuration.

Address: 4000_1000h base + 2Ch offset = 4000_102Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0														PCNT	
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	*	*

- * Notes:
- PCNT field: See bit field description

MSCM_CP0COUNT field descriptions

Field	Description
31–2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

Table continues on the next page...

MSCM_CP0COUNT field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
PCNT	<p>Processor Count</p> <p>This field defines the processor count for the chip configuration:</p> <p>If single core configuration, then PCNT = 00</p> <p>If dual core configuration, then PCNT = 01</p>

18.3.12 Processor 0 Configuration 1 Register (MSCM_CP0CFG1)

The register details processor 0 (CPU0) configuration information, in this case, information on a Level 2 cache (if present).

Address: 4000_1000h base + 34h offset = 4000_1034h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	L2SZ								L2WY								0															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

MSCM_CP0CFG1 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 L2SZ	<p>Level 2 Cache Size</p> <p>This field provides an encoded value of the Level 2 Cache size. The capacity of the memory is expressed as Size [bytes] = $2^{(8+SZ)}$ where SZ is non-zero; SZ = 0 indicates the memory is not present.</p> <p>If no Level 2 Cache, then L2SZ = 0x00</p> <p>If a 4 Kbyte Level 2 Cache, then L2SZ = 0x04</p> <p>If an 8 Kbyte Level 2 Cache, then L2SZ = 0x05</p> <p>If a 16 Kbyte Level 2 Cache, then L2SZ = 0x06</p> <p>If a 32 Kbyte Level 2 Cache, then L2SZ = 0x07</p> <p>If a 64 Kbyte Level 2 Cache, then L2SZ = 0x08</p> <p>If a 128 Kbyte Level 2 Cache, then L2SZ = 0x09</p> <p>If a 256 Kbyte Level 2 Cache, then L2SZ = 0x0A</p> <p>If a 512 Kbyte Level 2 Cache, then L2SZ = 0x0B</p>
23–16 L2WY	<p>Level 2 Cache Ways</p> <p>This field provides the number of cache ways for the Level 2 Cache.</p>
Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>

18.3.13 Processor 0 Configuration 3 Register (MSCM_CP0CFG3)

The register details processor 0 (CPU0) configuration information, in this case, information on processor options. A privileged read for *any bus master* returns processor 0 (CPU0) information. Attempted user mode or write accesses are terminated with an error.

Address: 4000_1000h base + 3Ch offset = 4000_103Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0				SBP				0	BB	CMP	TZ	MMU	JAZ	SIMD	FPU
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	1

MSCM_CP0CFG3 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–10 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
9–8 SBP	System Bus Ports This field defines the number of physical connections to the system bus fabric for this processor.
7 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
6 BB	Bit Banding This field defines if the processor supports bit banding. If bit banding is not supported, then BB = 0x0 If bit banding is supported, then BB = 0x1
5 CMP	Core Memory Protection unit This field indicates if the core memory protection hardware is included in the processor. If core memory protection is not included, then CMP = 0x0 If core memory protection is included, then CMP = 0x1
4 TZ	Trust Zone This field indicates if the Trust Zone capabilities are supported in the processor. If Trust Zone support is not included, then TZ = 0x0 If Trust Zone support is included, then TZ = 0x1

Table continues on the next page...

MSCM_CP0CFG3 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
3 MMU	Memory Management Unit This field indicates if the virtual memory management capabilities are supported in the processor. If MMU support is not included, then MMU = 0x0 If MMU support is included, then MMU = 0x1
2 JAZ	Jazelle This field indicates if Jazelle hardware is supported in the processor. If Jazelle support is not included, then JAZ = 0x0 If Jazelle support is included, then JAZ = 0x1
1 SIMD	SIMD/NEON Instruction Support This field indicates if the instruction set extensions supporting SIMD and/or NEON capabilities are supported in the processor. If SIMD/NEON support is not included, then SIMD = 0x0 If SIMD/NEON support is included, then SIMD = 0x1
0 FPU	Floating Point Unit This field indicates if hardware support for floating point capabilities are supported in the processor. If FPU support is not included, then FPU = 0x0 If FPU support is included, then FPU = 0x1

18.3.14 Processor 1 Type Register (MSCM_CP1TYPE)

The register defines the personality of processor 1 (CPU1). The 32 bit response includes 3 ASCII characters defining the CPU type along with a byte defining the logical revision number. The logical revision number follows ARM's rYpZ nomenclature.

A privileged read from *any bus master* returns processor 1 (CP1) information. For uniprocessor chip configurations, reads of this register are treated as RAZ.

Address: 4000_1000h base + 40h offset = 4000_1040h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	PERSONALITY																RYPZ															
W																																
Reset	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	

* Notes:

- PERSONALITY field: See bit field description
- RYPZ field: See bit field description

MSCM_CP1TYPE field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 PERSONALITY	Processor 1 Personality This field defines the processor personality for CP1.
RYPZ	Processor 1 Revision This field defines the processor revision for CP1: 0x00 corresponds to the r0p0 core release. 0x01 corresponds to the r0p1 core release. ...

18.3.15 Processor 1 Number Register (MSCM_CP1NUM)

The register defines the logical processor number of processor 1 (CPU1). In single processor configurations, the logical processor number is always zero; in dual core configurations, the boot (or primary) core is assigned number 0 while the secondary core is defined as number 1.

Address: 4000_1000h base + 44h offset = 4000_1044h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0															CPN
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	*

* Notes:

- CPN field: See bit field description

MSCM_CP1NUM field descriptions

Field	Description
31–1 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
0 CPN	Processor 1 Number This zero-filled word defines the logical processor number for CP1. If single core configuration, then CPN = 0 If dual core configuration and boot (primary) core, then CPN = 0

Table continues on the next page...

MSCM_CP1NUM field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	For secondary core, CPN = 1

18.3.16 Processor 1 Master Register (MSCM_CP1MASTER)

The register defines the physical bus master number for processor 1 (CPU1).

A privileged read from *any bus master* returns processor 1 (CPU1) information. For uniprocessor chip configurations, reads of this register are treated as RAZ. Attempted user mode or write accesses are terminated with an error.

Address: 4000_1000h base + 48h offset = 4000_1048h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																PPN															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	*	*	*	*	*	*

* Notes:

- PPN field: See the bit field description.

MSCM_CP1MASTER field descriptions

Field	Description
31–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
PPN	Processor 1 Physical Port Number This field defines the physical port number for CPU1. For CPU0, PPN = 0x00 For CPU1, PPN = 0x24

18.3.17 Processor 1 Count Register (MSCM_CP1COUNT)

The register defines the total number of processor cores in the chip configuration.

Address: 4000_1000h base + 4Ch offset = 4000_104Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0														PCNT	
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	*	*

* Notes:

- PCNT field: See bit field description

MSCM_CP1COUNT field descriptions

Field	Description
31–2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
PCNT	Processor Count This field defines the processor count for the chip configuration: If single core configuration, then PCNT = 00 If dual core configuration, then PCNT = 01

18.3.18 Processor 1 Configuration 1 Register (MSCM_CP1CFG1)

The register details processor 1 (CPU1) configuration information, in this case, information on a Level 2 cache (if present).

A privileged read from *any bus master* returns processor 1 (CP1) information. For uniprocessor chip configurations, reads of this register are treated as RAZ.

Address: 4000_1000h base + 54h offset = 4000_1054h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	L2SZ								L2WY								0															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

MSCM_CP1CFG1 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 L2SZ	<p>Level 2 Cache Size</p> <p>This field provides an encoded value of the Level 2 Cache size. The capacity of the memory is expressed as Size [bytes] = $2^{(8+SZ)}$ where SZ is non-zero; SZ = 0 indicates the memory is not present.</p> <p>If no Level 2 Cache, then L2SZ = 0x00</p> <p>If a 4 Kbyte Level 2 Cache, then L2SZ = 0x04</p> <p>If an 8 Kbyte Level 2 Cache, then L2SZ = 0x05</p> <p>If a 16 Kbyte Level 2 Cache, then L2SZ = 0x06</p> <p>If a 32 Kbyte Level 2 Cache, then L2SZ = 0x07</p> <p>If a 64 Kbyte Level 2 Cache, then L2SZ = 0x08</p> <p>If a 128 Kbyte Level 2 Cache, then L2SZ = 0x09</p> <p>If a 256 Kbyte Level 2 Cache, then L2SZ = 0x0A</p> <p>If a 512 Kbyte Level 2 Cache, then L2SZ = 0x0B</p>
23–16 L2WY	<p>Level 2 Cache Ways</p> <p>This field provides the number of cache ways for the Level 2 Cache.</p>
Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>

18.3.19 Processor 1 Configuration 3 Register (MSCM_CP1CFG3)

The register details processor 1 (CPU1) configuration information, in this case, information on processor options. A privileged read from *any bus master* returns processor 1 (CP1) information. For uniprocessor chip configurations, reads of this register are treated as RAZ. Attempted user mode or write accesses are terminated with an error.

Address: 4000_1000h base + 5Ch offset = 4000_105Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0						SBP		0	BB	CMP	TZ	MMU	JAZ	SIMD	FPU
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

MSCM_CP1CFG3 field descriptions

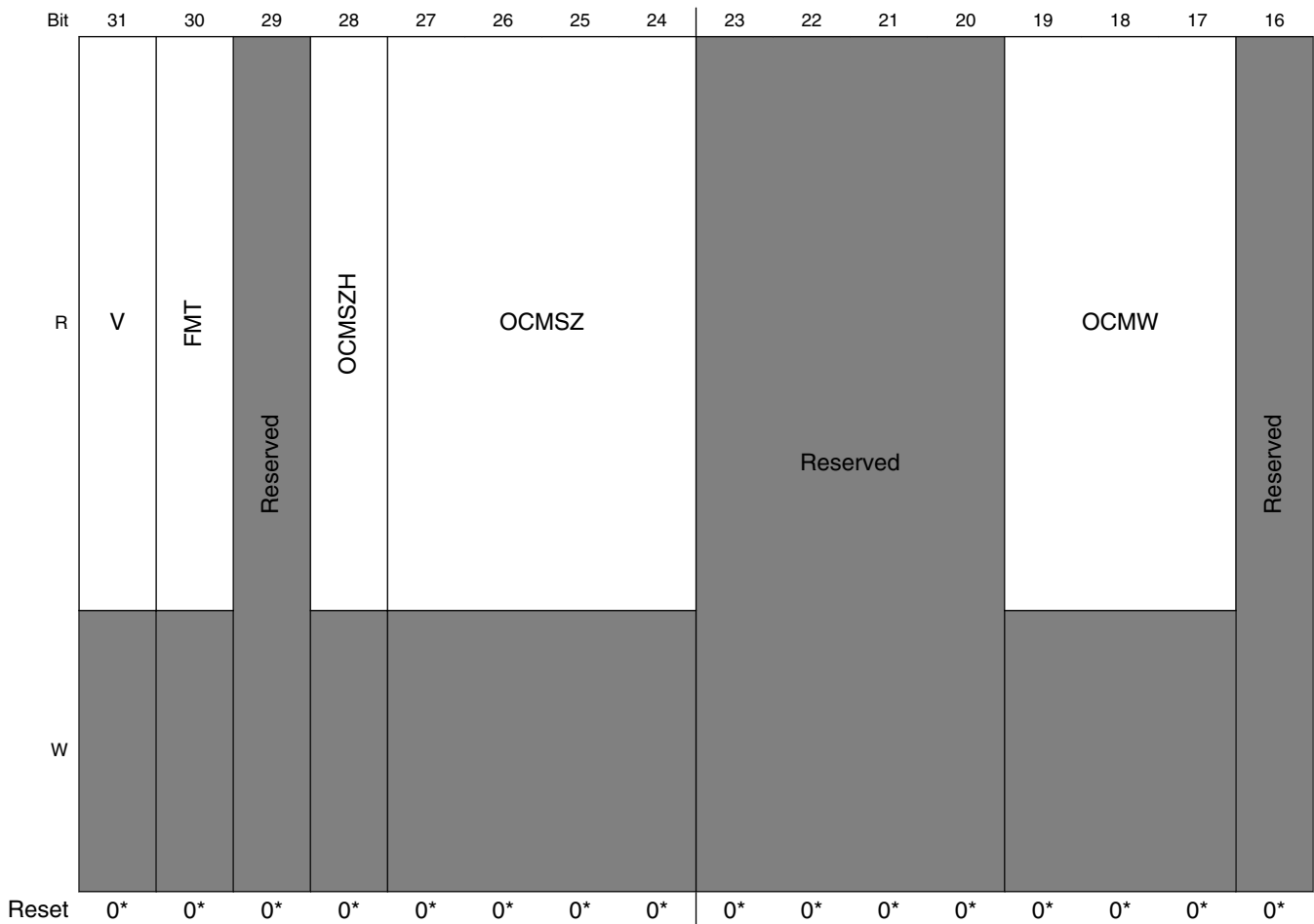
Field	Description
31–10 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
9–8 SBP	System Bus Ports This field defines the number of physical connections to the system bus fabric for this processor.
7 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
6 BB	Bit Banding This field defines if the processor supports bit banding. If bit banding is not supported, then BB = 0x0 If bit banding is supported, then BB = 0x1
5 CMP	Core Memory Protection unit This field indicates if the core memory protection hardware is included in the processor. If core memory protection is not included, then CMP = 0x0 If core memory protection is included, then CMP = 0x1
4 TZ	Trust Zone This field indicates if the Trust Zone capabilities are supported in the processor. If Trust Zone support is not included, then TZ = 0x0 If Trust Zone support is included, then TZ = 0x1
3 MMU	Memory Management Unit This field indicates if the virtual memory management capabilities are supported in the processor. If MMU support is not included, then MMU = 0x0 If MMU support is included, then MMU = 0x1
2 JAZ	Jazelle This field indicates if Jazelle hardware is supported in the processor. If Jazelle support is not included, then JAZ = 0x0 If Jazelle support is included, then JAZ = 0x1
1 SIMD	SIMD/NEON Instruction Support This field indicates if the instruction set extensions supporting SIMD and/or NEON capabilities are supported in the processor. If SIMD/NEON support is not included, then SIMD = 0x0 If SIMD/NEON support is included, then SIMD = 0x1
0 FPU	Floating Point Unit This field indicates if hardware support for floating point capabilities are supported in the processor. If FPU support is not included, then FPU = 0x0 If FPU support is included, then FPU = 0x1

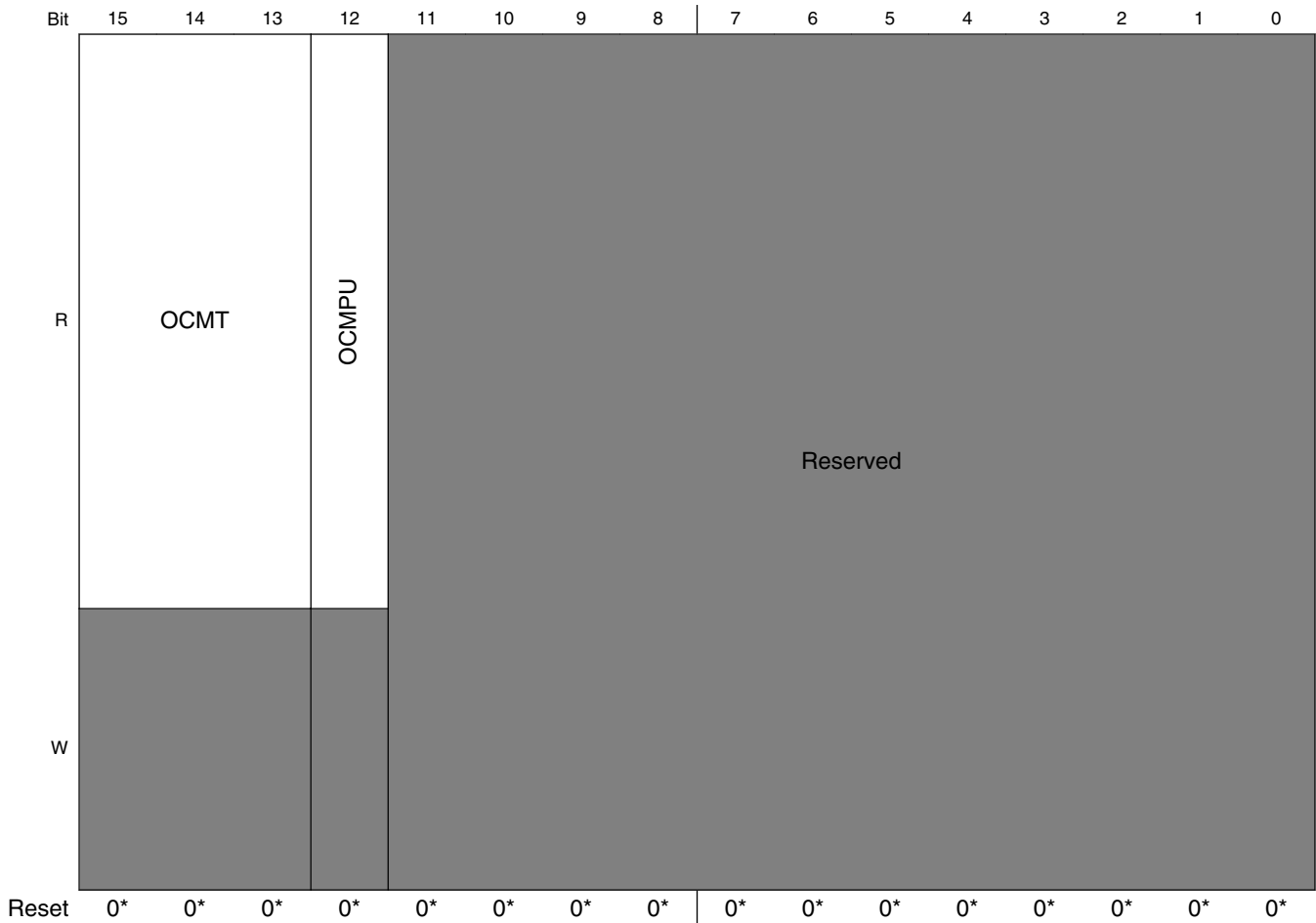
18.3.20 On-Chip Memory Descriptor Register (MSCM_OCMDRn)

This section of the programming model is an array of 32-bit generic on-chip memory descriptor registers that provide static information on the attached memories as well as configurable controls (where appropriate).

Privileged 32-bit reads from a processor core or the debugger return the appropriate processor information. Reads from any other bus master return all zeroes. Privileged writes from a processor core or the debugger to writeable registers update the appropriate fields. Privileged writes from other bus masters are ignored. Attempted user mode accesses or any access with a size other than 32 bits are terminated with an error.

Address: 4000_1000h base + 400h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 2d





- * Notes:
- The reset values are different for the individual OCMDR registers. OCMDR0: 0xCB0A_9000; OCMDR1: 0xC304_1000; OCMDR2: 0xC704_1000

MSCM_OCMDRn field descriptions

Field	Description
31 V	OCMEM Valid Bit This field defines the validity (presence) of the on-chip memory. 0 OCMEMn is not present. 1 OCMEMn is present.
30 FMT	Format 0 Local 1 Global
29 Reserved	This field is reserved.
28 OCMSZH	OCMEM Size “Hole”. For on-chip memories that are not fully populated, that is, include a memory “hole” in the upper 25% of the address range, this bit is used.

Table continues on the next page...

MSCM_OCMDRn field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 OCMEMn is a power-of-2 capacity. 1 OCMEMn is not a power-of-2, with a capacity is 0.75 * OCMSZ.
27–24 OCMSZ	OCMEM Size This field provides an encoded value of the on-chip memory size. The capacity of the memory is expressed as Size [bytes] = 2(8+SZ) where SZ is non-zero; a SZ = 0 indicates the memory is not present. 0000 no OCMEMn 0011 4KB OCMEMn 0100 8KB OCMEMn 0101 16KB OCMEMn 0110 32KB OCMEMn 0111 64KB OCMEMn 1000 128KB OCMEMn 1001 256KB OCMEMn 1010 512KB OCMEMn 1011 1024KB OCMEMn 1100 2048KB OCMEMn 1101 4096KB OCMEMn 1110 8192KB OCMEMn 1111 16384KB OCMEMn
23–20 Reserved	This field is reserved.
19–17 OCMW	OCMEM Datapath Width This field defines the width of the on-chip memory: 000-001 Reserved 010 OCMEMn 32-bits wide 011 OCMEMn 64-bits wide 100 OCMEMn 128-bits wide 101 OCMEMn 256-bits wide 110-111 Reserved
16 Reserved	This field is reserved.
15–13 OCMT	OCMEM Type. This field defines the type of the on-chip memory: 000 OCMEMn is a system RAM. 001 OCMEMn is a graphics RAM. 010 Reserved 011 OCMEMn is a ROM. 100 OCMEMn is a program flash. 101 OCMEMn is a data flash. 110 OCMEMn is an EEE. 111 Reserved
12 OCMPU	OCMEM Memory Protection Unit This field identifies a memory protected by a Memory Protection Unit.

Table continues on the next page...

MSCM_OCMDR_n field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 OCMEM _n is not protected by an MPU. 1 OCMEM _n is protected by an MPU.
Reserved	This field is reserved.



Chapter 19

Power Management Controller (PMC)

19.1 Introduction

The power management controller (PMC) contains the internal voltage regulator, power on reset (POR), low voltage detect system (LVD), and high voltage detect system (HVD).

See [AN4503: Power Management for Kinetis MCUs](#) for further details on using the PMC.

19.2 Features

A list of included PMC features can be found [here](#).

- Internal voltage regulator
- Active POR providing brown-out detect
- Low-voltage detect supporting two low-voltage trip points with four warning levels per trip point
- High-voltage detect supporting two high-voltage trip points

19.3 Low-voltage detect (LVD) system

This device includes a system to guard against low-voltage conditions. This protects memory contents and controls MCU system states during supply voltage variations.

The system is comprised of a power-on reset (POR) circuit and a LVD circuit with a user-selectable trip voltage: high (V_{LVDH}) or low (V_{LVDL}). The trip voltage is selected by LVDSC1[LVDV]. The LVD is disabled upon entering VLPx and VLLSx modes.

Two flags are available to indicate the status of the low-voltage detect system:

- The Low Voltage Detect Flag in the Low Voltage Status and Control 1 Register (LVDSC1[LVDF]) operates in a level sensitive manner. LVDSC1[LVDF] is set when the supply voltage falls below the selected trip point (VLVD). LVDSC1[LVDF] is cleared by writing 1 to LVDSC1[LVDACK], but only if the internal supply has returned above the trip point; otherwise, LVDSC1[LVDF] remains set.
- The Low Voltage Warning Flag (LVWF) in the Low Voltage Status and Control 2 Register (LVDSC2[LVWF]) operates in a level sensitive manner. LVDSC2[LVWF] is set when the supply voltage falls below the selected monitor trip point (VLVW). LVDSC2[LVWF] is cleared by writing one to LVDSC2[LVWACK], but only if the internal supply has returned above the trip point; otherwise, LVDSC2[LVWF] remains set.

19.3.1 LVD reset operation

By setting LVDSC1[LVDRE], the LVD generates a reset upon detection of a low-voltage condition. The low-voltage detection threshold is determined by LVDSC1[LVDV]. After an LVD reset occurs, the LVD system holds the MCU in reset until the supply voltage rises above this threshold. The LVD field in the SRS register of the RCM module (RCM_SRS[LVD]) is set following an LVD or power-on reset.

19.3.2 LVD interrupt operation

By configuring the LVD circuit for interrupt operation (LVDSC1[LVDIE] set and LVDSC1[LVDRE] clear), LVDSC1[LVDF] is set and an LVD interrupt request occurs upon detection of a low voltage condition. LVDSC1[LVDF] is cleared by writing 1 to LVDSC1[LVDACK].

19.3.3 Low-voltage warning (LVW) interrupt operation

The LVD system contains a Low-Voltage Warning Flag (LVWF) in the Low Voltage Detect Status and Control 2 Register to indicate that the supply voltage is approaching, but is above, the LVD voltage. The LVW also has an interrupt, which is enabled by setting LVDSC2[LVWIE]. If enabled, an LVW interrupt request occurs when LVDSC2[LVWF] is set. LVDSC2[LVWF] is cleared by writing 1 to LVDSC2[LVWACK].

LVDSC2[LVWV] selects one of the four trip voltages:

- Highest: V_{LVW4}
- Two mid-levels: V_{LVW3} and V_{LVW2}
- Lowest: V_{LVW1}

19.4 High-voltage detect (HVD) system

This device includes a system to guard against high-voltage conditions.

The system is comprised of a HVD circuit with a user-selectable trip voltage: high (V_{HVDH}) or low (V_{HVDL}). The trip voltage is selected by $HVDSC1[HVDV]$. The HVD is disabled upon entering $VLPx$ and $VLLSx$ modes.

A flag is available to indicate the status of the high-voltage detect system:

- The High Voltage Detect Flag in the High Voltage Status and Control 1 Register ($HVDSC1[HVDF]$) operates in a level sensitive manner. $HVDSC1[HVDF]$ is set when the supply voltage rises above the selected trip point ($VHVD$). $HVDSC1[HVDF]$ is cleared by writing 1 to $HVDSC1[HVDACK]$, but only if the internal supply has returned below the trip point; otherwise, $HVDSC1[LVDF]$ remains set.

19.4.1 HVD reset operation

By setting $HVDSC1[HVDRE]$, the HVD generates a reset upon detection of a high-voltage condition. The high-voltage detection threshold is determined by $HVDSC1[HVDV]$. After an HVD reset occurs, the HVD system holds the MCU in reset until the supply voltage falls below this threshold. The LVD field in the SRS register of the RCM module ($RCM_SRS[LVD]$) is set following an HVD reset.

19.4.2 HVD interrupt operation

By configuring the HVD circuit for interrupt operation ($HVDSC1[HVDIE]$ set and $HVDSC1[HVDRE]$ clear), $HVDSC1[HVDF]$ is set and an HVD interrupt request occurs upon detection of a high voltage condition. $HVDSC1[HVDF]$ is cleared by writing 1 to $HVDSC1[HVDACK]$.

19.5 I/O retention

When in VLLS modes, the I/O states are held on a wake-up event (with the exception of wake-up by reset event) until the wake-up has been acknowledged via a write to REGSC[ACKISO]. In the case of VLLS exit via a RESET pin, the I/O are released and default to their reset state. In this case, no write to REGSC[ACKISO] is needed.

19.6 Memory map and register descriptions

Details about the PMC registers can be found here.

NOTE

Different portions of PMC registers are reset only by particular reset types. Each register's description provides details. For more information about the types of reset on this chip, refer to the Reset section details.

The PMC registers can be written only in supervisor mode. Write accesses in user mode are blocked and will result in a bus error.

PMC memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4007_D000	Low Voltage Detect Status And Control 1 register (PMC_LVDSC1)	8	R/W	10h	19.6.1/372
4007_D001	Low Voltage Detect Status And Control 2 register (PMC_LVDSC2)	8	R/W	00h	19.6.2/374
4007_D002	Regulator Status And Control register (PMC_REGSC)	8	R/W	24h	19.6.3/375
4007_D00B	High Voltage Detect Status And Control 1 register (PMC_HVDSC1)	8	R/W	01h	19.6.4/376

19.6.1 Low Voltage Detect Status And Control 1 register (PMC_LVDSC1)

This register contains status and control bits to support the low voltage detect function. This register should be written during the reset initialization program to set the desired controls even if the desired settings are the same as the reset settings.

While the device is in the very low power or low leakage modes, the LVD system is disabled regardless of LVDSC1 settings. To protect systems that must have LVD always on, configure the Power Mode Protection (PMPROT) register of the SMC module (SMC_PMPROT) to disallow any very low power or low leakage modes from being enabled.

See the device's data sheet for the exact LVD trip voltages.

NOTE

The LVDV bits are reset solely on a POR Only event. The register's other bits are reset on Chip Reset Not VLLS. For more information about these reset types, refer to the Reset section details.

Address: 4007_D000h base + 0h offset = 4007_D000h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	LVDF	0	LVDIE	LVDRE	0			
Write		LVDACK						LVDV
Reset	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0

PMC_LVDSC1 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 LVDF	Low-Voltage Detect Flag This read-only status field indicates a low-voltage detect event. 0 Low-voltage event not detected 1 Low-voltage event detected
6 LVDACK	Low-Voltage Detect Acknowledge This write-only field is used to acknowledge low voltage detection errors. Write 1 to clear LVDF. Reads always return 0.
5 LVDIE	Low-Voltage Detect Interrupt Enable Enables hardware interrupt requests for LVDF. 0 Hardware interrupt disabled (use polling) 1 Request a hardware interrupt when LVDF = 1
4 LVDRE	Low-Voltage Detect Reset Enable This write-once bit enables LVDF events to generate a hardware reset. Additional writes are ignored. 0 LVDF does not generate hardware resets 1 Force an MCU reset when LVDF = 1
3–2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
LVDV	Low-Voltage Detect Voltage Select Selects the LVD trip point voltage (V_{LVD}).

Table continues on the next page...

PMC_LVDSC1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
00	Low trip point selected ($V_{LVD} = V_{LVDL}$)
01	High trip point selected ($V_{LVD} = V_{LVDH}$)
10	Reserved
11	Reserved

19.6.2 Low Voltage Detect Status And Control 2 register (PMC_LVDSC2)

This register contains status and control bits to support the low voltage warning function.

While the device is in the very low power or low leakage modes, the LVD system is disabled regardless of LVDSC2 settings.

See the device's data sheet for the exact LVD trip voltages.

NOTE

The LVW trip voltages depend on LVWV and LVDV.

NOTE

LVWV is reset solely on a POR Only event. The other fields of the register are reset on Chip Reset Not VLLS. For more information about these reset types, refer to the Reset section details.

Address: 4007_D000h base + 1h offset = 4007_D001h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	LVWF	0	LVWIE	0	0	0	0	0
Write		LVWACK						
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PMC_LVDSC2 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 LVWF	<p>Low-Voltage Warning Flag</p> <p>This read-only status field indicates a low-voltage warning event. LVWF is set when V_{Supply} transitions below the trip point, or after reset and V_{Supply} is already below V_{LVW}. LVWF may be 1 after power-on reset, therefore, to use LVW interrupt function, before enabling LVWIE, LVWF must be cleared by writing LVWACK first.</p> <p>0 Low-voltage warning event not detected 1 Low-voltage warning event detected</p>
6 LVWACK	Low-Voltage Warning Acknowledge

Table continues on the next page...

PMC_LVDSC2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	This write-only field is used to acknowledge low voltage warning errors. Write 1 to clear LVWF. Reads always return 0.
5 LVWIE	Low-Voltage Warning Interrupt Enable Enables hardware interrupt requests for LVWF. 0 Hardware interrupt disabled (use polling) 1 Request a hardware interrupt when LVWF = 1
4–2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
LVWV	Low-Voltage Warning Voltage Select Selects the LVW trip point voltage (V_{LVW}). The actual voltage for the warning depends on LVDSC1[LVDV]. 00 Low trip point selected ($V_{LVW} = V_{LVW1}$) 01 Mid 1 trip point selected ($V_{LVW} = V_{LVW2}$) 10 Mid 2 trip point selected ($V_{LVW} = V_{LVW3}$) 11 High trip point selected ($V_{LVW} = V_{LVW4}$)

19.6.3 Regulator Status And Control register (PMC_REGSC)

The PMC contains an internal voltage regulator. The voltage regulator design uses a bandgap reference that is also available through a buffer as input to certain internal peripherals, such as the CMP and ADC. The internal regulator provides a status bit (REGONS) indicating the regulator is in run regulation.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip Reset Not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. See the Reset section details for more information.

Address: 4007_D000h base + 2h offset = 4007_D002h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	0	Reserved	BGEN	ACKISO	REGONS	Reserved	BGBE
Write					w1c			
Reset	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0

PMC_REGSC field descriptions

Field	Description
7 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

Table continues on the next page...

PMC_REGSC field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
5 Reserved	This field is reserved.
4 BGEN	<p>Bandgap Enable In VLPx Operation</p> <p>BGEN controls whether the bandgap is enabled in lower power modes of operation (VLPx, and VLLSx). When on-chip peripherals require the bandgap voltage reference in low power modes of operation, set BGEN to continue to enable the bandgap operation.</p> <p>NOTE: When the bandgap voltage reference is not needed in low power modes, clear BGEN to avoid excess power consumption.</p> <p>0 Bandgap voltage reference is disabled in VLPx , and VLLSx modes. 1 Bandgap voltage reference is enabled in VLPx , and VLLSx modes.</p>
3 ACKISO	<p>Acknowledge Isolation</p> <p>Reading this field indicates whether certain peripherals and the I/O pads are in a latched state as a result of having been in a VLLS mode. Writing 1 to this field when it is set releases the I/O pads and certain peripherals to their normal run mode state.</p> <p>NOTE: After recovering from a VLLS mode, user should restore chip configuration before clearing ACKISO. In particular, pin configuration for enabled LLWU wakeup pins should be restored to avoid any LLWU flag from being falsely set when ACKISO is cleared.</p> <p>0 Peripherals and I/O pads are in normal run state. 1 Certain peripherals and I/O pads are in an isolated and latched state.</p>
2 REGONS	<p>Regulator In Run Regulation Status</p> <p>This read-only field provides the current status of the internal voltage regulator.</p> <p>0 Regulator is in stop regulation or in transition to/from it 1 Regulator is in run regulation</p>
1 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>NOTE: This reserved bit must remain cleared (set to 0).</p>
0 BGBE	<p>Bandgap Buffer Enable</p> <p>Enables the bandgap buffer.</p> <p>0 Bandgap buffer not enabled 1 Bandgap buffer enabled</p>

19.6.4 High Voltage Detect Status And Control 1 register (PMC_HVDSC1)

This register contains status and control bits to support the high voltage detect function. This register should be written during the reset initialization program to set the desired controls even if the desired settings are the same as the reset settings.

While the device is in the very low power or low leakage modes, the HVD system is disabled regardless of HVDSC1 settings. To protect systems that must have HVD always on, configure the Power Mode Protection (PMPROT) register of the SMC module (SMC_PMPROT) to disallow any very low power or low leakage modes from being enabled.

See the device's data sheet for the exact HVD trip voltages.

Address: 4007_D000h base + Bh offset = 4007_D00Bh

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	HVDF	0	HVDIE	HVDRE		0		HVDV
Write		HVDACK						
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

PMC_HVDSC1 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 HVDF	High-Voltage Detect Flag This read-only status field indicates a high-voltage detect event. 0 High-voltage event not detected 1 High-voltage event detected
6 HVDACK	High-Voltage Detect Acknowledge This write-only field is used to acknowledge high voltage detection errors. Write 1 to clear HVDF. Reads always return 0.
5 HVDIE	High-Voltage Detect Interrupt Enable Enables hardware interrupt requests for HVDF. 0 Hardware interrupt disabled (use polling) 1 Request a hardware interrupt when HVDF = 1
4 HVDRE	High-Voltage Detect Reset Enable This write-once bit enables HVDF events to generate a hardware reset. Additional writes are ignored until the next chip reset. 0 HVDF does not generate hardware resets 1 Force an MCU reset when HVDF = 1
3–1 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
0 HVDV	High-Voltage Detect Voltage Select Selects the HVD trip point voltage (V_{HVD}). 0 Low trip point selected ($V_{HVD} = V_{HVDL}$) 1 High trip point selected ($V_{HVD} = V_{HVDH}$)



Chapter 20

Low-Leakage Wakeup Unit (LLWU)

20.1 Chip-specific LLWU information

This chip uses the following internal peripheral and external pin inputs as wakeup sources to the LLWU module:

- LLWU_Px are external pin inputs. Any digital function multiplexed on the pin can be selected as the wakeup source. See the chip's signal multiplexing table for the digital signal options.
- LLWU_M0IF-M7IF are connections to the internal peripheral interrupt flags.

NOTE

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$ is also a wakeup source, in addition to LLWU pins, and can be diagnosed by reading the System Reset Status Registers within the RCM.

Table 20-1. Wakeup sources for LLWU inputs

Input	Wakeup source		Input	Wakeup source
LLWU_P0	PTE1/LLWU_P0 pin		LLWU_P20	PTE18/LLWU_P20 pin
LLWU_P1	PTE2/LLWU_P1 pin		LLWU_P21	PTE25/LLWU_P21 pin
LLWU_P2	PTE4/LLWU_P2 pin		LLWU_P22	PTA10/LLWU_P22 pin
LLWU_P3	PTA4/LLWU_P3 pin		LLWU_P23	PTA11/LLWU_P23 pin
LLWU_P4	PTA13/LLWU_P4 pin		LLWU_P24	PTD8/LLWU_P24 pin
LLWU_P5	PTB0/LLWU_P5 pin		LLWU_P25	PTD11/LLWU_P25 pin
LLWU_P6	PTC1/LLWU_P6 pin		LLWU_P26	Reserved
LLWU_P7	PTC3/LLWU_P7 pin		LLWU_P27	Reserved
LLWU_P8	PTC4/LLWU_P8 pin		LLWU_P28	Reserved
LLWU_P9	PTC5/LLWU_P9 pin		LLWU_P29	Reserved
LLWU_P10	PTC6/LLWU_P10 pin		LLWU_P30	Reserved
LLWU_P11	PTC11/LLWU_P11 pin		LLWU_P31	Reserved
LLWU_P12	PTD0/LLWU_P12 pin		LLWU_M0IF	LPTMR ¹
LLWU_P13	PTD2/LLWU_P13 pin		LLWU_M1IF	CMP0

Table continues on the next page...

Table 20-1. Wakeup sources for LLWU inputs (continued)

Input	Wakeup source		Input	Wakeup source
LLWU_P14	PTD4/LLWU_P14 pin		LLWU_M2IF	CMP1
LLWU_P15	PTD6/LLWU_P15 pin		LLWU_M3IF	CMP2/3
LLWU_P16	PTE6/LLWU_P16 pin		LLWU_M4IF	Reserved
LLWU_P17	PTE9/LLWU_P17 pin		LLWU_M5IF	Reserved
LLWU_P18	PTE10/LLWU_P18 pin		LLWU_M6IF	Reserved
LLWU_P19	PTE17/LLWU_P19 pin		LLWU_M7IF	Reserved

1. Requires the peripheral and the peripheral interrupt to be enabled. The LLWU's WUME bit enables the internal module flag as a wakeup input. After wakeup, the flags are cleared based on the peripheral clearing mechanism.

20.2 Introduction

The LLWU module allows the user to select up to 29 external pins and up to 8 internal modules as interrupt wake-up sources from low-leakage power modes.

The input sources are described in the device's chip configuration details. Each of the available wake-up sources can be individually enabled.

The $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin is an additional source for triggering an exit from low-leakage power modes, and causes the MCU to exit VLLS through a reset flow.

The LLWU module also includes optional digital pin filters for the external wakeup pins.

See [AN4503: Power Management for Kinetis MCUs](#) for further details on using the LLWU.

20.2.1 Features

The LLWU module features include:

- Support for up to 29 external input pins and up to 8 internal modules with individual enable bits for MCU interrupt from low leakage modes
- Input sources may be external pins or from internal peripherals capable of running in VLLS. See the chip configuration information for wakeup input sources for this device.
- External pin wake-up inputs, each of which is programmable as falling-edge, rising-edge, or any change
- Wake-up inputs that are activated after MCU enters a low-leakage power mode
- Optional digital filters provided to qualify an external pin detect. Note that when the LPO clock is disabled, the filters are disabled and bypassed.

20.2.2 Modes of operation

The LLWU module becomes functional on entry into a low-leakage power mode. After recovery from VLLS, the LLWU continues to detect wake-up events until the user has acknowledged the wake-up via a write to PMC_REGSC[ACKISO].

20.2.2.1 VLLS modes

All wakeup and reset events result in VLLS exit via a reset flow.

20.2.2.2 Non-low leakage modes

The LLWU is not active in all non-low leakage modes where detection and control logic are in a static state. The LLWU registers are accessible in non-low leakage modes and are available for configuring and reading status when bus transactions are possible.

When the wake-up pin filters are enabled, filter operation begins immediately. If a low leakage mode is entered within five LPO clock cycles of an active edge, the edge event will be detected by the LLWU.

20.2.2.3 Debug mode

When the chip is in Debug mode and then enters a VLLSx mode, no debug logic works in the fully-functional low-leakage mode. Upon an exit from the VLLSx mode, the LLWU becomes inactive.

20.2.3 Block diagram

The following figure is the block diagram for the LLWU module.

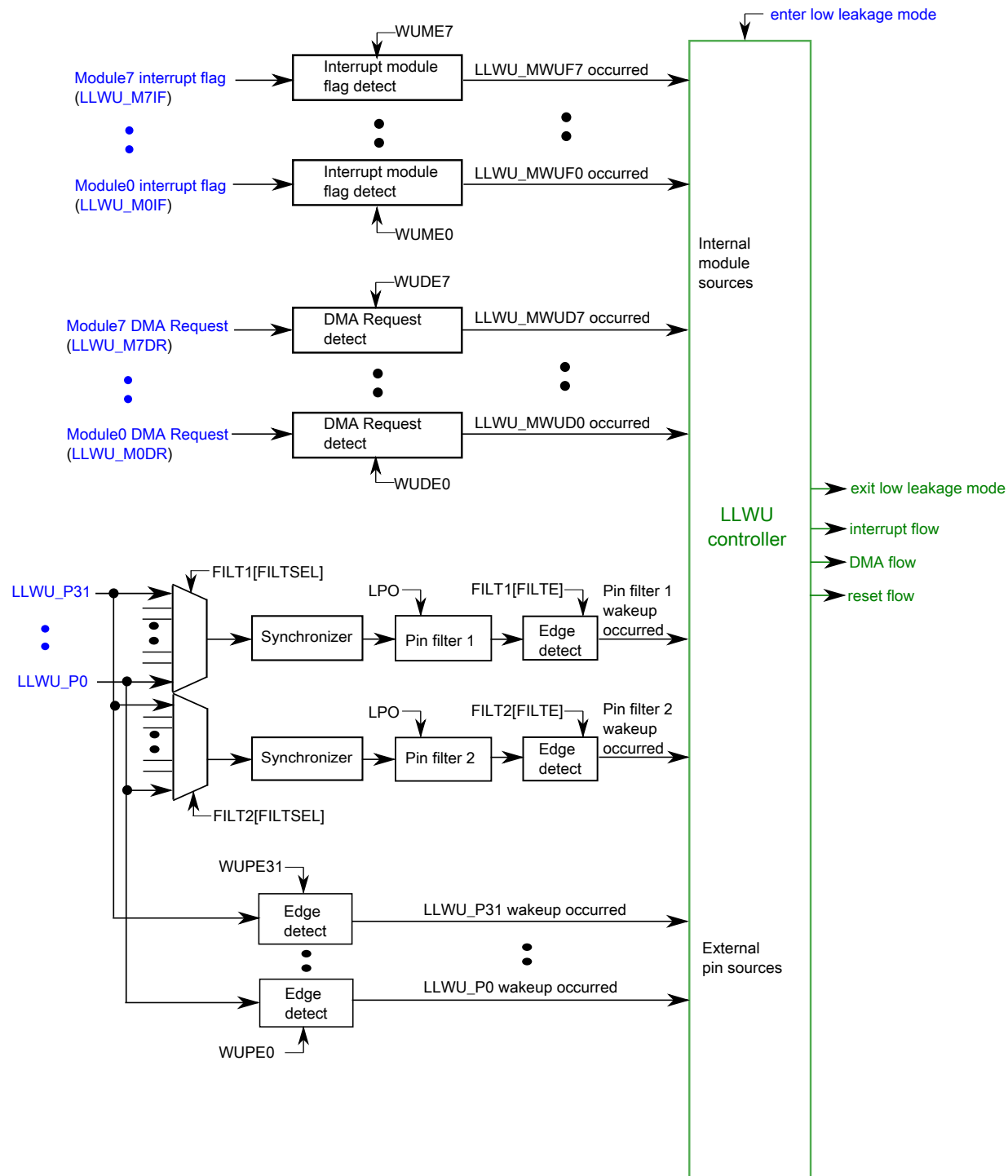


Figure 20-1. LLWU block diagram

20.3 LLWU signal descriptions

The signal properties of LLWU are shown in the table found here.

The external wakeup input pins can be enabled to detect either rising-edge, falling-edge, or on any change.

Table 20-2. LLWU signal descriptions

Signal	Description	I/O
LLWU_Pn	Wakeup inputs (n = 0- 28)	I

20.4 Memory map/register definition

The LLWU includes the following registers:

- Wake-up source enable registers
 - Enable external pin input sources
 - Enable internal peripheral interrupt sources
- Wake-up flag registers
 - Indication of wakeup source that caused exit from a low-leakage power mode includes external pin or internal module interrupt
- Wake-up pin filter enable registers

NOTE

The LLWU registers can be written only in supervisor mode. Write accesses in user mode are blocked and will result in a bus error.

All LLWU registers are reset by Chip Reset not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. Each register's displayed reset value represents this subset of reset types. LLWU registers are unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. For more information about the types of reset on this chip, refer to the [Introduction](#) details.

LLWU memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4007_C000	LLWU Pin Enable 1 register (LLWU_PE1)	8	R/W	00h	20.4.1/384
4007_C001	LLWU Pin Enable 2 register (LLWU_PE2)	8	R/W	00h	20.4.2/385
4007_C002	LLWU Pin Enable 3 register (LLWU_PE3)	8	R/W	00h	20.4.3/386
4007_C003	LLWU Pin Enable 4 register (LLWU_PE4)	8	R/W	00h	20.4.4/387

Table continues on the next page...

LLWU memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4007_C004	LLWU Pin Enable 5 register (LLWU_PE5)	8	R/W	00h	20.4.5/388
4007_C005	LLWU Pin Enable 6 register (LLWU_PE6)	8	R/W	00h	20.4.6/389
4007_C006	LLWU Pin Enable 7 register (LLWU_PE7)	8	R/W	00h	20.4.7/391
4007_C007	LLWU Pin Enable 8 register (LLWU_PE8)	8	R/W	00h	20.4.8/392
4007_C008	LLWU Module Enable register (LLWU_ME)	8	R/W	00h	20.4.9/393
4007_C009	LLWU Pin Flag 1 register (LLWU_PF1)	8	R/W	00h	20.4.10/394
4007_C00A	LLWU Pin Flag 2 register (LLWU_PF2)	8	R/W	00h	20.4.11/396
4007_C00B	LLWU Pin Flag 3 register (LLWU_PF3)	8	R/W	00h	20.4.12/398
4007_C00C	LLWU Pin Flag 4 register (LLWU_PF4)	8	R/W	00h	20.4.13/399
4007_C00D	LLWU Module Flag 5 register (LLWU_MF5)	8	R	00h	20.4.14/401
4007_C00E	LLWU Pin Filter 1 register (LLWU_FILT1)	8	R/W	00h	20.4.15/403
4007_C00F	LLWU Pin Filter 2 register (LLWU_FILT2)	8	R/W	00h	20.4.16/404

20.4.1 LLWU Pin Enable 1 register (LLWU_PE1)

LLWU_PE1 contains the field to enable and select the edge detect type for the external wakeup input pins LLWU_P3-LLWU_P0.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip Reset not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. See the [Introduction](#) details for more information.

Address: 4007_C000h base + 0h offset = 4007_C000h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read								
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LLWU_PE1 field descriptions

Field	Description
7-6 WUPE3	<p>Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P3</p> <p>Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin.</p> <p>00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input</p> <p>01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection</p> <p>10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection</p> <p>11 External input pin enabled with any change detection</p>

Table continues on the next page...

LLWU_PE1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
5–4 WUPE2	<p>Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P2</p> <p>Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin.</p> <p>00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection</p>
3–2 WUPE1	<p>Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P1</p> <p>Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin.</p> <p>00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection</p>
WUPE0	<p>Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P0</p> <p>Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin.</p> <p>00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection</p>

20.4.2 LLWU Pin Enable 2 register (LLWU_PE2)

LLWU_PE2 contains the field to enable and select the edge detect type for the external wakeup input pins LLWU_P7-LLWU_P4.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip Reset not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. See the [Introduction](#) details for more information.

Address: 4007_C000h base + 1h offset = 4007_C001h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	WUPE7		WUPE6		WUPE5		WUPE4	
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LLWU_PE2 field descriptions

Field	Description
7–6 WUPE7	Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P7

Table continues on the next page...

LLWU_PE2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin. 00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection
5–4 WUPE6	Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P6 Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin. 00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection
3–2 WUPE5	Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P5 Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin. 00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection
WUPE4	Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P4 Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin. 00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection

20.4.3 LLWU Pin Enable 3 register (LLWU_PE3)

LLWU_PE3 contains the field to enable and select the edge detect type for the external wakeup input pins LLWU_P11-LLWU_P8.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip Reset not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. See the [Introduction](#) details for more information.

Address: 4007_C000h base + 2h offset = 4007_C002h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	WUPE11		WUPE10		WUPE9		WUPE8	
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LLWU_PE3 field descriptions

Field	Description
7–6 WUPE11	<p>Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P11</p> <p>Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin.</p> <p>00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection</p>
5–4 WUPE10	<p>Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P10</p> <p>Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin.</p> <p>00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection</p>
3–2 WUPE9	<p>Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P9</p> <p>Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin.</p> <p>00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection</p>
WUPE8	<p>Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P8</p> <p>Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin.</p> <p>00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection</p>

20.4.4 LLWU Pin Enable 4 register (LLWU_PE4)

LLWU_PE4 contains the field to enable and select the edge detect type for the external wakeup input pins LLWU_P15-LLWU_P12.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip Reset not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. See the [Introduction](#) details for more information.

memory map/register definition

Address: 4007_C000h base + 3h offset = 4007_C003h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	WUPE15		WUPE14		WUPE13		WUPE12	
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LLWU_PE4 field descriptions

Field	Description
7-6 WUPE15	<p>Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P15</p> <p>Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin.</p> <p>00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection</p>
5-4 WUPE14	<p>Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P14</p> <p>Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin.</p> <p>00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection</p>
3-2 WUPE13	<p>Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P13</p> <p>Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin.</p> <p>00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection</p>
WUPE12	<p>Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P12</p> <p>Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin.</p> <p>00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection</p>

20.4.5 LLWU Pin Enable 5 register (LLWU_PE5)

LLWU_PE5 contains the field to enable and select the edge detect type for the external wakeup input pins LLWU_P19-LLWU_P16.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip Reset not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset

types that do not trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. See the [Introduction](#) details for more information.

Address: 4007_C000h base + 4h offset = 4007_C004h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	WUPE19		WUPE18		WUPE17		WUPE16	
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LLWU_PE5 field descriptions

Field	Description
7–6 WUPE19	<p>Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P19</p> <p>Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin.</p> <p>00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection</p>
5–4 WUPE18	<p>Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P18</p> <p>Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin.</p> <p>00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection</p>
3–2 WUPE17	<p>Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P17</p> <p>Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin.</p> <p>00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection</p>
WUPE16	<p>Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P16</p> <p>Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin.</p> <p>00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection</p>

20.4.6 LLWU Pin Enable 6 register (LLWU_PE6)

LLWU_PE6 contains the field to enable and select the edge detect type for the external wakeup input pins LLWU_P23-LLWU_P20.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip Reset not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. See the [Introduction](#) details for more information.

Address: 4007_C000h base + 5h offset = 4007_C005h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	WUPE23		WUPE22		WUPE21		WUPE20	
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LLWU_PE6 field descriptions

Field	Description
7–6 WUPE23	<p>Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P23</p> <p>Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin.</p> <p>00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection</p>
5–4 WUPE22	<p>Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P22</p> <p>Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin.</p> <p>00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection</p>
3–2 WUPE21	<p>Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P21</p> <p>Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin.</p> <p>00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection</p>
WUPE20	<p>Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P20</p> <p>Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin.</p> <p>00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection</p>

20.4.7 LLWU Pin Enable 7 register (LLWU_PE7)

LLWU_PE7 contains the field to enable and select the edge detect type for the external wakeup input pins LLWU_P27-LLWU_P24.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip Reset not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. See the [Introduction](#) details for more information.

Address: 4007_C000h base + 6h offset = 4007_C006h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	WUPE27		WUPE26		WUPE25		WUPE24	
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LLWU_PE7 field descriptions

Field	Description
7–6 WUPE27	<p>Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P27</p> <p>Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin.</p> <p>00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection</p>
5–4 WUPE26	<p>Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P26</p> <p>Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin.</p> <p>00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection</p>
3–2 WUPE25	<p>Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P25</p> <p>Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin.</p> <p>00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection</p>
WUPE24	<p>Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P24</p> <p>Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin.</p> <p>00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection</p>

Table continues on the next page...

LLWU_PE7 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
10	External input pin enabled with falling edge detection
11	External input pin enabled with any change detection

20.4.8 LLWU Pin Enable 8 register (LLWU_PE8)

LLWU_PE8 contains the field to enable and select the edge detect type for the external wakeup input pins LLWU_P31-LLWU_P28.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip Reset not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. See the [Introduction](#) details for more information.

Address: 4007_C000h base + 7h offset = 4007_C007h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	WUPE31		WUPE30		WUPE29		WUPE28	
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LLWU_PE8 field descriptions

Field	Description
7–6 WUPE31	<p>Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P31</p> <p>Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin.</p> <p>00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input</p> <p>01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection</p> <p>10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection</p> <p>11 External input pin enabled with any change detection</p>
5–4 WUPE30	<p>Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P30</p> <p>Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin.</p> <p>00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input</p> <p>01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection</p> <p>10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection</p> <p>11 External input pin enabled with any change detection</p>
3–2 WUPE29	<p>Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P29</p> <p>Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin.</p> <p>00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input</p> <p>01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection</p>

Table continues on the next page...

LLWU_PE8 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection
WUPE28	Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P28 Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin. 00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection

20.4.9 LLWU Module Enable register (LLWU_ME)

LLWU_ME contains the bits to enable the internal module flag as a wakeup input source for inputs MWUF7-MWUF0.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip Reset not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. See the [Introduction](#) details for more information.

Address: 4007_C000h base + 8h offset = 4007_C008h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	WUME7	WUME6	WUME5	WUME4	WUME3	WUME2	WUME1	WUME0
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LLWU_ME field descriptions

Field	Description
7 WUME7	Wakeup Module Enable For Module 7 Enables an internal module as a wakeup source input. 0 Internal module flag not used as wakeup source 1 Internal module flag used as wakeup source
6 WUME6	Wakeup Module Enable For Module 6 Enables an internal module as a wakeup source input. 0 Internal module flag not used as wakeup source 1 Internal module flag used as wakeup source
5 WUME5	Wakeup Module Enable For Module 5 Enables an internal module as a wakeup source input.

Table continues on the next page...

LLWU_ME field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Internal module flag not used as wakeup source 1 Internal module flag used as wakeup source
4 WUME4	Wakeup Module Enable For Module 4 Enables an internal module as a wakeup source input. 0 Internal module flag not used as wakeup source 1 Internal module flag used as wakeup source
3 WUME3	Wakeup Module Enable For Module 3 Enables an internal module as a wakeup source input. 0 Internal module flag not used as wakeup source 1 Internal module flag used as wakeup source
2 WUME2	Wakeup Module Enable For Module 2 Enables an internal module as a wakeup source input. 0 Internal module flag not used as wakeup source 1 Internal module flag used as wakeup source
1 WUME1	Wakeup Module Enable for Module 1 Enables an internal module as a wakeup source input. 0 Internal module flag not used as wakeup source 1 Internal module flag used as wakeup source
0 WUME0	Wakeup Module Enable For Module 0 Enables an internal module as a wakeup source input. 0 Internal module flag not used as wakeup source 1 Internal module flag used as wakeup source

20.4.10 LLWU Pin Flag 1 register (LLWU_PF1)

LLWU_PF1 contains the wakeup flags indicating which wakeup source caused the MCU to exit VLLS mode. For VLLS, this is the source causing the MCU reset flow.

The external wakeup flags are read-only and clearing a flag is accomplished by a write of a 1 to the corresponding WUFx bit. The wakeup flag (WUFx), if set, will remain set if the associated WUPEx bit is cleared.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip Reset not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. See the [Introduction](#) details for more information.

Address: 4007_C000h base + 9h offset = 4007_C009h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	WUF7	WUF6	WUF5	WUF4	WUF3	WUF2	WUF1	WUF0
Write	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LLWU_PF1 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 WUF7	<p>Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P7</p> <p>Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF7.</p> <p>0 LLWU_P7 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P7 input was a wakeup source</p>
6 WUF6	<p>Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P6</p> <p>Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF6.</p> <p>0 LLWU_P6 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P6 input was a wakeup source</p>
5 WUF5	<p>Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P5</p> <p>Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF5.</p> <p>0 LLWU_P5 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P5 input was a wakeup source</p>
4 WUF4	<p>Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P4</p> <p>Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF4.</p> <p>0 LLWU_P4 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P4 input was a wakeup source</p>
3 WUF3	<p>Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P3</p> <p>Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF3.</p> <p>0 LLWU_P3 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P3 input was a wakeup source</p>
2 WUF2	<p>Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P2</p> <p>Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF2.</p> <p>0 LLWU_P2 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P2 input was a wakeup source</p>
1 WUF1	<p>Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P1</p>

Table continues on the next page...

LLWU_PF1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF1. 0 LLWU_P1 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P1 input was a wakeup source
0 WUF0	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P0 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF0. 0 LLWU_P0 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P0 input was a wakeup source

20.4.11 LLWU Pin Flag 2 register (LLWU_PF2)

LLWU_PF2 contains the wakeup flags indicating which wakeup source caused the MCU to exit or VLLS mode. For VLLS, this is the source causing the MCU reset flow.

The external wakeup flags are read-only and clearing a flag is accomplished by a write of a 1 to the corresponding WUFx bit. The wakeup flag (WUFx), if set, will remain set if the associated WUPEx bit is cleared.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip Reset not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. See the [Introduction](#) details for more information.

Address: 4007_C000h base + Ah offset = 4007_C00Ah

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	WUF15	WUF14	WUF13	WUF12	WUF11	WUF10	WUF9	WUF8
Write	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LLWU_PF2 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 WUF15	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P15 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF15. 0 LLWU_P15 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P15 input was a wakeup source

Table continues on the next page...

LLWU_PF2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
6 WUF14	<p>Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P14</p> <p>Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF14.</p> <p>0 LLWU_P14 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P14 input was a wakeup source</p>
5 WUF13	<p>Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P13</p> <p>Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF13.</p> <p>0 LLWU_P13 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P13 input was a wakeup source</p>
4 WUF12	<p>Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P12</p> <p>Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF12.</p> <p>0 LLWU_P12 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P12 input was a wakeup source</p>
3 WUF11	<p>Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P11</p> <p>Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF11.</p> <p>0 LLWU_P11 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P11 input was a wakeup source</p>
2 WUF10	<p>Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P10</p> <p>Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF10.</p> <p>0 LLWU_P10 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P10 input was a wakeup source</p>
1 WUF9	<p>Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P9</p> <p>Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF9.</p> <p>0 LLWU_P9 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P9 input was a wakeup source</p>
0 WUF8	<p>Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P8</p> <p>Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF8.</p> <p>0 LLWU_P8 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P8 input was a wakeup source</p>

20.4.12 LLWU Pin Flag 3 register (LLWU_PF3)

LLWU_PF3 contains the wakeup flags indicating which wakeup source caused the MCU to exit VLLS mode. For VLLS, this is the source causing the MCU reset flow.

The external wakeup flags are read-only and clearing a flag is accomplished by a write of a 1 to the corresponding WUFx bit. The wakeup flag (WUFx), if set, will remain set if the associated WUPEx bit is cleared.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip Reset not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. See the [Introduction](#) details for more information.

Address: 4007_C000h base + Bh offset = 4007_C00Bh

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	WUF23	WUF22	WUF21	WUF20	WUF19	WUF18	WUF17	WUF16
Write	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LLWU_PF3 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 WUF23	<p>Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P23</p> <p>Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF23.</p> <p>0 LLWU_P23 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P23 input was a wakeup source</p>
6 WUF22	<p>Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P22</p> <p>Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF22.</p> <p>0 LLWU_P22 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P22 input was a wakeup source</p>
5 WUF21	<p>Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P21</p> <p>Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF21.</p> <p>0 LLWU_P21 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P21 input was a wakeup source</p>
4 WUF20	<p>Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P20</p>

Table continues on the next page...

LLWU_PF3 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF20. 0 LLWU_P20 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P20 input was a wakeup source
3 WUF19	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P19 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF19. 0 LLWU_P19 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P19 input was a wakeup source
2 WUF18	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P18 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF18. 0 LLWU_P18 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P18 input was a wakeup source
1 WUF17	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P17 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF17. 0 LLWU_P17 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P17 input was a wakeup source
0 WUF16	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P16 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF16. 0 LLWU_P16 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P16 input was a wakeup source

20.4.13 LLWU Pin Flag 4 register (LLWU_PF4)

LLWU_PF4 contains the wakeup flags indicating which wakeup source caused the MCU to exit or VLLS mode. For VLLS, this is the source causing the MCU reset flow.

The external wakeup flags are read-only and clearing a flag is accomplished by a write of a 1 to the corresponding WUFx bit. The wakeup flag (WUFx), if set, will remain set if the associated WUPEx bit is cleared.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip Reset not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. See the [Introduction](#) details for more information.

memory map/register definition

Address: 4007_C000h base + Ch offset = 4007_C00Ch

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	WUF31	WUF30	WUF29	WUF28	WUF27	WUF26	WUF25	WUF24
Write	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LLWU_PF4 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 WUF31	<p>Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P31</p> <p>Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF31.</p> <p>0 LLWU_P31 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P31 input was a wakeup source</p>
6 WUF30	<p>Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P30</p> <p>Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF30.</p> <p>0 LLWU_P30 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P30 input was a wakeup source</p>
5 WUF29	<p>Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P29</p> <p>Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF29.</p> <p>0 LLWU_P29 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P29 input was a wakeup source</p>
4 WUF28	<p>Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P28</p> <p>Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF28.</p> <p>0 LLWU_P28 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P28 input was a wakeup source</p>
3 WUF27	<p>Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P27</p> <p>Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF27.</p> <p>0 LLWU_P27 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P27 input was a wakeup source</p>
2 WUF26	<p>Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P26</p> <p>Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF26.</p> <p>0 LLWU_P26 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P26 input was a wakeup source</p>
1 WUF25	<p>Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P25</p>

Table continues on the next page...

LLWU_PF4 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF25. 0 LLWU_P25 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P25 input was a wakeup source
0 WUF24	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P24 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF24. 0 LLWU_P24 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P24 input was a wakeup source

20.4.14 LLWU Module Flag 5 register (LLWU_MF5)

LLWU_MF5 contains the wakeup flags indicating which internal wakeup source caused the MCU to exit VLLS mode. For VLLS, this is the source causing the MCU reset flow.

For internal peripherals that are capable of running in a low-leakage power mode, such as a real time clock module or CMP module, the flag from the associated peripheral is accessible as the MWUFx bit. The flag will need to be cleared in the peripheral instead of writing a 1 to the MWUFx bit.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip Reset not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. See the [Introduction](#) details for more information.

Address: 4007_C000h base + Dh offset = 4007_C00Dh

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	MWUF7	MWUF6	MWUF5	MWUF4	MWUF3	MWUF2	MWUF1	MWUF0
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LLWU_MF5 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 MWUF7	Wakeup flag For module 7 Indicates that an enabled internal peripheral was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag, follow the internal peripheral flag clearing mechanism.

Table continues on the next page...

LLWU_MF5 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Module 7 input was not a wakeup source 1 Module 7 input was a wakeup source
6 MWUF6	Wakeup flag For module 6 Indicates that an enabled internal peripheral was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag, follow the internal peripheral flag clearing mechanism. 0 Module 6 input was not a wakeup source 1 Module 6 input was a wakeup source
5 MWUF5	Wakeup flag For module 5 Indicates that an enabled internal peripheral was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag, follow the internal peripheral flag clearing mechanism. 0 Module 5 input was not a wakeup source 1 Module 5 input was a wakeup source
4 MWUF4	Wakeup flag For module 4 Indicates that an enabled internal peripheral was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag, follow the internal peripheral flag clearing mechanism. 0 Module 4 input was not a wakeup source 1 Module 4 input was a wakeup source
3 MWUF3	Wakeup flag For module 3 Indicates that an enabled internal peripheral was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag, follow the internal peripheral flag clearing mechanism. 0 Module 3 input was not a wakeup source 1 Module 3 input was a wakeup source
2 MWUF2	Wakeup flag For module 2 Indicates that an enabled internal peripheral was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag, follow the internal peripheral flag clearing mechanism. 0 Module 2 input was not a wakeup source 1 Module 2 input was a wakeup source
1 MWUF1	Wakeup flag For module 1 Indicates that an enabled internal peripheral was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag, follow the internal peripheral flag clearing mechanism. 0 Module 1 input was not a wakeup source 1 Module 1 input was a wakeup source
0 MWUF0	Wakeup flag For module 0 Indicates that an enabled internal peripheral was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag, follow the internal peripheral flag clearing mechanism. 0 Module 0 input was not a wakeup source 1 Module 0 input was a wakeup source

20.4.15 LLWU Pin Filter 1 register (LLWU_FILT1)

LLWU_FILT1 is a control and status register that is used to enable/disable the digital filter 1 features for an external pin.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip Reset not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. See the [Introduction](#) details for more information.

Address: 4007_C000h base + Eh offset = 4007_C00Eh

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	FILTF	FILTE			FILTSEL			
Write	w1c							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LLWU_FILT1 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 FILTF	<p>Filter Detect Flag</p> <p>Indicates that the filtered external wakeup pin, selected by FILTSEL, was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to FILTF.</p> <p>0 Pin Filter 1 was not a wakeup source 1 Pin Filter 1 was a wakeup source</p>
6–5 FILTE	<p>Digital Filter On External Pin</p> <p>Controls the digital filter options for the external pin detect.</p> <p>00 Filter disabled 01 Filter posedge detect enabled 10 Filter negedge detect enabled 11 Filter any edge detect enabled</p>
FILTSEL	<p>Filter Pin Select</p> <p>Selects 1 of the wakeup pins to be muxed into the filter.</p> <p>00000 Select LLWU_P0 for filter ... 11111 Select LLWU_P31 for filter</p>

20.4.16 LLWU Pin Filter 2 register (LLWU_FILT2)

LLWU_FILT2 is a control and status register that is used to enable/disable the digital filter 2 features for an external pin.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip Reset not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. See the [Introduction](#) details for more information.

Address: 4007_C000h base + Fh offset = 4007_C00Fh

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	FILTF	FILTE			FILTSEL			
Write	w1c							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LLWU_FILT2 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 FILTF	<p>Filter Detect Flag</p> <p>Indicates that the filtered external wakeup pin, selected by FILTSEL, was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to FILTF.</p> <p>0 Pin Filter 2 was not a wakeup source 1 Pin Filter 2 was a wakeup source</p>
6–5 FILTE	<p>Digital Filter On External Pin</p> <p>Controls the digital filter options for the external pin detect.</p> <p>00 Filter disabled 01 Filter posedge detect enabled 10 Filter negedge detect enabled 11 Filter any edge detect enabled</p>
FILTSEL	<p>Filter Pin Select</p> <p>Selects 1 of the wakeup pins to be muxed into the filter.</p> <p>00000 Select LLWU_P0 for filter ... 11111 Select LLWU_P31 for filter</p>

20.5 Functional description

This low-leakage wakeup unit (LLWU) module allows internal peripherals and external input pins as a source of wakeup from low-leakage modes.

It is operational only in VLLSx modes.

The LLWU module contains pin enables for each external pin and internal module. For each external pin, the user can disable or select the edge type for the wakeup with the following options:

- Falling-edge
- Rising-edge
- Either-edge

When an external pin is enabled as a wakeup source, the pin must be configured as an input pin.

The LLWU implements optional 3-cycle glitch filters, based on the LPO clock. A detected external pin is required to remain asserted until the enabled glitch filter times out. Additional latency of up to 2 cycles is due to synchronization, which results in a total of up to 5 cycles of delay before the detect circuit alerts the system to the wakeup or reset event when the filter function is enabled. wakeup detect filters are available for selected external pins. Glitch filtering is not provided on the internal modules.

For internal module interrupts, the WUMEx bit enables the associated module interrupt as a wakeup source.

20.5.1 VLLS modes

For any wakeup from VLLS, recovery is always via a reset flow and RCM_SRS[WAKEUP] is set indicating the low-leakage mode was active. State retention data is lost and I/O will be restored after PMC_REGSC[ACKISO] has been written.

A VLLS exit event due to $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin assertion causes an exit via a system reset. State retention data is lost and the I/O states immediately return to their reset state. The RCM_SRS[WAKEUP] and RCM_SRS[PIN] bits are set and the system executes a reset flow before CPU operation begins with a reset vector fetch.

20.5.2 Initialization

For an enabled peripheral wakeup input, the peripheral flag must be cleared by software before entering VLLSx mode to avoid an immediate exit from the mode.

Flags associated with external input pins, filtered and unfiltered, must also be cleared by software prior to entry to VLLSx mode.

After enabling an external pin filter or changing the source pin, wait at least five LPO clock cycles before entering VLLSx mode to allow the filter to initialize.

NOTE

After recovering from a VLLS mode, user must restore chip configuration before clearing PMC_REGSC[ACKISO]. In particular, pin configuration for enabled LLWU wake-up pins must be restored to avoid any LLWU flag from being falsely set when PMC_REGSC[ACKISO] is cleared.

The signal selected as a wake-up source pin must be a digital pin, as selected in the pin mux control.

Chapter 21

Crossbar Switch (AXBS)

21.1 Chip-specific AXBS information

21.1.1 Crossbar Switch Master Assignments - with System MPU

The masters connected to the crossbar switch are assigned as follows:

Master port number	Master module	Default Priority
0	Cortex-M7 AHBP	0
1	Cortex-M7 AXI (via PL301)	1
2	DMA	2
3	ENET	3
4	—	0
5	—	0
6	—	0
7	—	0

21.1.2 Crossbar Switch Slave Assignments - with System MPU

The slaves connected to the crossbar switch are assigned as follows:

Slave port number	Slave module	Protected by FSL MPU?
0	Flash	Yes
1	Cortex-M7 AHBS	Yes
2	AIPS0/BME2	No. Protection built into bridge.
3	AIPS1/BME2	No. Protection built into bridge.
4	FlexBus	Yes

Table continues on the next page...

Slave port number	Slave module	Protected by FSL MPU?
5	OCRAM0	Yes
6	Flash EEERAM	Yes
7	—	—

21.1.3 PRS register reset values

This device contains 4 AXBS bus masters.
 The AXBS_PRS n registers reset to 0000_3210h.

21.2 Introduction

The information found here provides information on the layout, configuration, and programming of the crossbar switch.

The crossbar switch connects bus masters and bus slaves using a crossbar switch structure. This structure allows all bus masters to access different bus slaves simultaneously, while providing arbitration among the bus masters when they access the same slave. A variety of bus arbitration methods and attributes may be programmed on a slave-by-slave basis.

21.2.1 Features

The crossbar switch includes these features:

- Symmetric crossbar bus switch implementation
 - Allows concurrent accesses from different masters to different slaves
 - Slave arbitration attributes configured on a slave-by-slave basis
- Up to single-clock 32-bit transfer
- Support for burst transfers of up to 16 beats of data
- Low-Power Park mode support

21.3 Memory Map / Register Definition

Each slave port of the crossbar switch contains configuration registers. Read- and write-transfers require two bus clock cycles. The registers can be read from and written to only in supervisor mode. Additionally, these registers can be read from or written to only by 32-bit accesses.

A bus error response is returned if an unimplemented location is accessed within the crossbar switch.

The CRS_n and PRS_n registers can be programmed to be read-only to prevent changes to their configuration. After being read-only protected, future writes to them will terminate with an error.

NOTE

This section shows the registers for all eight master and slave ports. If a master or slave is not used on this particular device, then unexpected results occur when writing to its registers. See the chip configuration details for the exact master/slave assignments for your device.

All references to the crossbar switch registers are based on the physical port connections.

AXBS memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_4000	Priority Registers Slave (AXBS_PRS0)	32	R/W	See section	21.3.1/410
4000_4010	Control Register (AXBS_CRS0)	32	R/W	See section	21.3.2/412
4000_4100	Priority Registers Slave (AXBS_PRS1)	32	R/W	See section	21.3.1/410
4000_4110	Control Register (AXBS_CRS1)	32	R/W	See section	21.3.2/412
4000_4200	Priority Registers Slave (AXBS_PRS2)	32	R/W	See section	21.3.1/410
4000_4210	Control Register (AXBS_CRS2)	32	R/W	See section	21.3.2/412
4000_4300	Priority Registers Slave (AXBS_PRS3)	32	R/W	See section	21.3.1/410
4000_4310	Control Register (AXBS_CRS3)	32	R/W	See section	21.3.2/412
4000_4400	Priority Registers Slave (AXBS_PRS4)	32	R/W	See section	21.3.1/410
4000_4410	Control Register (AXBS_CRS4)	32	R/W	See section	21.3.2/412
4000_4500	Priority Registers Slave (AXBS_PRS5)	32	R/W	See section	21.3.1/410
4000_4510	Control Register (AXBS_CRS5)	32	R/W	See section	21.3.2/412
4000_4600	Priority Registers Slave (AXBS_PRS6)	32	R/W	See section	21.3.1/410

Table continues on the next page...

AXBS memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_4610	Control Register (AXBS_CRS6)	32	R/W	See section	21.3.2/412
4000_4700	Priority Registers Slave (AXBS_PRS7)	32	R/W	See section	21.3.1/410
4000_4710	Control Register (AXBS_CRS7)	32	R/W	See section	21.3.2/412
4000_4800	Master General Purpose Control Register (AXBS_MGPCR0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	21.3.3/414
4000_4900	Master General Purpose Control Register (AXBS_MGPCR1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	21.3.3/414
4000_4A00	Master General Purpose Control Register (AXBS_MGPCR2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	21.3.3/414
4000_4B00	Master General Purpose Control Register (AXBS_MGPCR3)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	21.3.3/414
4000_4C00	Master General Purpose Control Register (AXBS_MGPCR4)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	21.3.3/414
4000_4D00	Master General Purpose Control Register (AXBS_MGPCR5)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	21.3.3/414
4000_4E00	Master General Purpose Control Register (AXBS_MGPCR6)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	21.3.3/414
4000_4F00	Master General Purpose Control Register (AXBS_MGPCR7)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	21.3.3/414

21.3.1 Priority Registers Slave (AXBS_PRSn)

The priority registers (PRSn) set the priority of each master port on a per slave port basis and reside in each slave port. The priority register can be accessed only with 32-bit accesses. After the CRSn[RO] bit is set, the PRSn register can only be read; attempts to write to it have no effect on PRSn and result in a bus-error response to the master initiating the write.

Two available masters must not be programmed with the same priority level. Attempts to program two or more masters with the same priority level result in a bus-error response and the PRSn is not updated.

NOTE

Valid values for the Mn priority fields depend on which masters are available on the chip. This information can be found in the chip-specific information for the crossbar.

- If the chip contains less than five masters, values 0 to 3 are valid. Writing other values will result in an error.
- If the chip contains five or more masters, valid values are 0 to n-1, where n is the number of masters attached to the Crossbar Switch. Other values will result in an error.

NOTE

See the chip-specific crossbar information for the reset value of this register.

Address: 4000_4000h base + 0h offset + (256d × i), where i=0d to 7d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0	Reserved			0	Reserved			0	Reserved			0	Reserved		
W		—				—				—				—		
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0	M3			0	M2			0	M1			0	M0		
W																
Reset	0	0*	0*	0*	0	0*	0*	0*	0	0*	0*	0*	0	0*	0*	0*

* Notes:

- See the chip-specific crossbar information for the reset value of this register.

AXBS_PRSn field descriptions

Field	Description
31 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
30–28 Reserved	This field is reserved.
27 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
26–24 Reserved	This field is reserved.
23 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
22–20 Reserved	This field is reserved.
19 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
18–16 Reserved	This field is reserved.
15 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
14–12 M3	Master 3 Priority. Sets the arbitration priority for this port on the associated slave port. 000 This master has level 1, or highest, priority when accessing the slave port. 001 This master has level 2 priority when accessing the slave port. 010 This master has level 3 priority when accessing the slave port. 011 This master has level 4 priority when accessing the slave port. 100 This master has level 5 priority when accessing the slave port. 101 This master has level 6 priority when accessing the slave port. 110 This master has level 7 priority when accessing the slave port. 111 This master has level 8, or lowest, priority when accessing the slave port.
11 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

Table continues on the next page...

AXBS_PRSn field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
10–8 M2	<p>Master 2 Priority. Sets the arbitration priority for this port on the associated slave port.</p> <p>000 This master has level 1, or highest, priority when accessing the slave port.</p> <p>001 This master has level 2 priority when accessing the slave port.</p> <p>010 This master has level 3 priority when accessing the slave port.</p> <p>011 This master has level 4 priority when accessing the slave port.</p> <p>100 This master has level 5 priority when accessing the slave port.</p> <p>101 This master has level 6 priority when accessing the slave port.</p> <p>110 This master has level 7 priority when accessing the slave port.</p> <p>111 This master has level 8, or lowest, priority when accessing the slave port.</p>
7 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
6–4 M1	<p>Master 1 Priority. Sets the arbitration priority for this port on the associated slave port.</p> <p>000 This master has level 1, or highest, priority when accessing the slave port.</p> <p>001 This master has level 2 priority when accessing the slave port.</p> <p>010 This master has level 3 priority when accessing the slave port.</p> <p>011 This master has level 4 priority when accessing the slave port.</p> <p>100 This master has level 5 priority when accessing the slave port.</p> <p>101 This master has level 6 priority when accessing the slave port.</p> <p>110 This master has level 7 priority when accessing the slave port.</p> <p>111 This master has level 8, or lowest, priority when accessing the slave port.</p>
3 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
M0	<p>Master 0 Priority. Sets the arbitration priority for this port on the associated slave port.</p> <p>000 This master has level 1, or highest, priority when accessing the slave port.</p> <p>001 This master has level 2 priority when accessing the slave port.</p> <p>010 This master has level 3 priority when accessing the slave port.</p> <p>011 This master has level 4 priority when accessing the slave port.</p> <p>100 This master has level 5 priority when accessing the slave port.</p> <p>101 This master has level 6 priority when accessing the slave port.</p> <p>110 This master has level 7 priority when accessing the slave port.</p> <p>111 This master has level 8, or lowest, priority when accessing the slave port.</p>

21.3.2 Control Register (AXBS_CRSn)

These registers control several features of each slave port and must be accessed using 32-bit accesses. After CRSn[RO] is set, the PRSn can only be read; attempts to write to it have no effect and result in an error response.

NOTE

See the chip-specific crossbar information for the reset value of this register.

Address: 4000_4000h base + 10h offset + (256d × i), where i=0d to 7d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	RO	HLP	0													
W																
Reset	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0						ARB		0		PCTL		0	PARK		
W																
Reset	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*

* Notes:

- See the chip-specific crossbar information for the reset value of this register.

AXBS_CRSn field descriptions

Field	Description
31 RO	<p>Read Only</p> <p>Forces the slave port's CSRn and PRSn registers to be read-only. After set, only a hardware reset clears it.</p> <p>0 The slave port's registers are writeable 1 The slave port's registers are read-only and cannot be written. Attempted writes have no effect on the registers and result in a bus error response.</p>
30 HLP	<p>Halt Low Priority</p> <p>Sets the initial arbitration priority for low power mode requests . Setting this bit will not affect the request for low power mode from attaining highest priority once it has control of the slave ports.</p> <p>0 The low power mode request has the highest priority for arbitration on this slave port 1 The low power mode request has the lowest initial priority for arbitration on this slave port</p>
29–10 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
9–8 ARB	<p>Arbitration Mode</p> <p>Selects the arbitration policy for the slave port.</p> <p>00 Fixed priority 01 Round-robin, or rotating, priority 10 Reserved 11 Reserved</p>
7–6 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
5–4 PCTL	<p>Parking Control</p> <p>Determines the slave port's parking control. The low-power park feature results in an overall power savings if the slave port is not saturated. However, this forces an extra latency clock when any master tries to access the slave port while not in use because it is not parked on any master.</p> <p>00 When no master makes a request, the arbiter parks the slave port on the master port defined by the PARK field 01 When no master makes a request, the arbiter parks the slave port on the last master to be in control of the slave port</p>

Table continues on the next page...

AXBS_CRSn field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	10 When no master makes a request, the slave port is not parked on a master and the arbiter drives all outputs to a constant safe state 11 Reserved
3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
PARK	Park Determines which master port the current slave port parks on when no masters are actively making requests and the PCTL bits are cleared. NOTE: Select only master ports that are present on the chip. Otherwise, undefined behavior might occur. 000 Park on master port M0 001 Park on master port M1 010 Park on master port M2 011 Park on master port M3 100 Park on master port M4 101 Park on master port M5 110 Park on master port M6 111 Park on master port M7

21.3.3 Master General Purpose Control Register (AXBS_MGPCRn)

The MGPCR controls only whether the master's undefined length burst accesses are allowed to complete uninterrupted or whether they can be broken by requests from higher priority masters. The MGPCR can be accessed only in Supervisor mode with 32-bit accesses.

NOTE

If there are fewer than eight master ports, only the registers associated with those masters are present. Register addresses associated with master ports that are not present are reserved. Please see this module's chip-specific information for which master ports are present on this module.

Address: 4000_4000h base + 800h offset + (256d × i), where i=0d to 7d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																0																
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

AXBS_MGPCR_n field descriptions

Field	Description																
31–3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.																
AULB	<p>Arbitrates On Undefined Length Bursts</p> <p>Determines whether, and when, the crossbar switch arbitrates away the slave port the master owns when the master is performing undefined length burst accesses.</p> <table> <tr> <td>000</td><td>No arbitration is allowed during an undefined length burst</td></tr> <tr> <td>001</td><td>Arbitration is allowed at any time during an undefined length burst</td></tr> <tr> <td>010</td><td>Arbitration is allowed after four beats of an undefined length burst</td></tr> <tr> <td>011</td><td>Arbitration is allowed after eight beats of an undefined length burst</td></tr> <tr> <td>100</td><td>Arbitration is allowed after 16 beats of an undefined length burst</td></tr> <tr> <td>101</td><td>Reserved</td></tr> <tr> <td>110</td><td>Reserved</td></tr> <tr> <td>111</td><td>Reserved</td></tr> </table>	000	No arbitration is allowed during an undefined length burst	001	Arbitration is allowed at any time during an undefined length burst	010	Arbitration is allowed after four beats of an undefined length burst	011	Arbitration is allowed after eight beats of an undefined length burst	100	Arbitration is allowed after 16 beats of an undefined length burst	101	Reserved	110	Reserved	111	Reserved
000	No arbitration is allowed during an undefined length burst																
001	Arbitration is allowed at any time during an undefined length burst																
010	Arbitration is allowed after four beats of an undefined length burst																
011	Arbitration is allowed after eight beats of an undefined length burst																
100	Arbitration is allowed after 16 beats of an undefined length burst																
101	Reserved																
110	Reserved																
111	Reserved																

21.4 Functional Description

21.4.1 General operation

When a master accesses the crossbar switch, the access is immediately taken. If the targeted slave port of the access is available, then the access is immediately presented on the slave port. Single-clock or zero-wait-state accesses are possible through the crossbar. If the targeted slave port of the access is busy or parked on a different master port, the requesting master simply sees wait states inserted until the targeted slave port can service the master's request. The latency in servicing the request depends on each master's priority level and the responding slave's access time.

Because the crossbar switch appears to be just another slave to the master device, the master device has no knowledge of whether it actually owns the slave port it is targeting. While the master does not have control of the slave port it is targeting, it simply waits.

A master is given control of the targeted slave port only after a previous access to a different slave port completes, regardless of its priority on the newly targeted slave port. This prevents deadlock from occurring when:

- A higher priority master has:
 - An outstanding request to one slave port that has a long response time and
 - A pending access to a different slave port, and
- A lower priority master is also making a request to the same slave port as the pending access of the higher priority master.

After the master has control of the slave port it is targeting, the master remains in control of the slave port until it relinquishes the slave port by running an IDLE cycle or by targeting a different slave port for its next access.

The master can also lose control of the slave port if another higher-priority master makes a request to the slave port. However, if the master is running a fixed- or undefined-length burst transfer it retains control of the slave port until that transfer completes. Based on MGPCR[AULB], the master either retains control of the slave port when doing undefined-length, incrementing burst transfers or loses the bus to a higher-priority master.

The crossbar terminates all master IDLE transfers, as opposed to allowing the termination to come from one of the slave buses. Additionally, when no master is requesting access to a slave port, the crossbar drives IDLE transfers onto the slave bus, even though a default master may be granted access to the slave port.

When a slave bus is being idled by the crossbar, it can park the slave port on the master port indicated by CRSn[PARK] . This is done to save the initial clock of arbitration delay that otherwise would be seen if the same master had to arbitrate to gain control of the slave port. The slave port can also be put into Low Power Park mode to save power, by using CRSn[PCTL].

21.4.2 Register coherency

The operation of the crossbar is affected as soon as a register is written. The values of the registers do not track with slave-port-related master accesses, but instead track only with slave accesses.

The MGPCR_x[AULB] bits are the exception to this rule. The update of these bits is only recognized when the master on that master port runs an IDLE cycle, even though the slave bus cycle to write them will have already terminated successfully. If the MGPCR_x[AULB] bits are written between two burst accesses, the new AULB encodings do not take effect until an IDLE cycle is initiated by the master on that master port.

21.4.3 Arbitration

The crossbar switch supports two arbitration algorithms:

- Fixed priority
- Round-robin

The arbitration scheme is independently programmable for each slave port.

21.4.3.1 Arbitration during undefined length bursts

Arbitration points during an undefined length burst are defined by the current master's MGPCR[AULB] field setting. When a defined length is imposed on the burst via the AULB bits, the undefined length burst is treated as a single or series of single back-to-back fixed-length burst accesses.

The following figure illustrates an example:

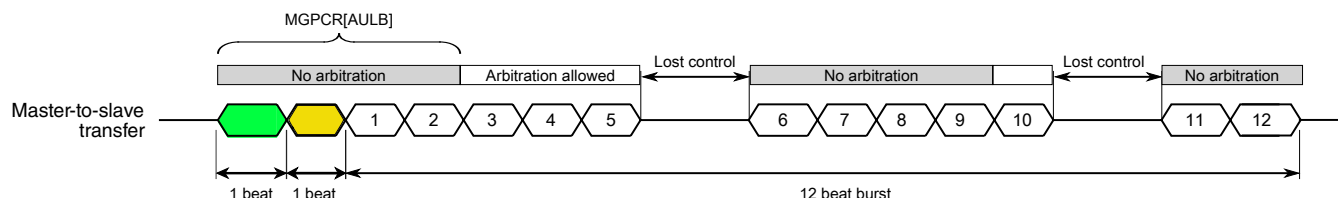


Figure 21-1. Undefined length burst example

In this example, a master runs an undefined length burst and the MGPCR[AULB] bits indicate arbitration occurs after the fourth beat of the burst. The master runs two sequential beats and then starts what will be a 12-beat undefined length burst access to a new address within the same slave port region as the previous access. The crossbar does not allow an arbitration point until the fourth overall access, or the second beat of the second burst. At that point, all remaining accesses are open for arbitration until the master loses control of the slave port.

Assume the master loses control of the slave port after the fifth beat of the second burst. After the master regains control of the slave port no arbitration point is available until after the master has run four more beats of its burst. After the fourth beat of the now continued burst, or the ninth beat of the second burst from the master's perspective, is taken, all beats of the burst are once again open for arbitration until the master loses control of the slave port.

Assume the master again loses control of the slave port on the fifth beat of the third now continued burst, or the 10th beat of the second burst from the master's perspective. After the master regains control of the slave port, it is allowed to complete its final two beats of its burst without facing arbitration.

Note

Fixed-length burst accesses are not affected by the AULB bits. All fixed-length burst accesses lock out arbitration until the last beat of the fixed-length burst.

21.4.3.2 Fixed-priority operation

When operating in fixed-priority mode, each master is assigned a unique priority level in the priority registers (PRSn). If two masters request access to the same slave port, the master with the highest priority in the selected priority register gains control over the slave port.

NOTE

In this arbitration mode, a higher-priority master can monopolize a slave port, preventing accesses from any lower-priority master to the port.

When a master makes a request to a slave port, the slave port checks whether the new requesting master's priority level is higher than that of the master that currently has control over the slave port, unless the slave port is in a parked state. The slave port performs an arbitration check at every clock edge to ensure that the proper master, if any, has control of the slave port.

The following table describes possible scenarios based on the requesting master port:

Table 21-1. How the Crossbar Switch grants control of a slave port to a master

When	Then the Crossbar Switch grants control to the requesting master
Both of the following are true: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The current master is not running a transfer. The new requesting master's priority level is higher than that of the current master. 	At the next clock edge
Both of the following are true: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The current master is running a fixed length burst transfer or a locked transfer. The requesting master's priority level is higher than that of the current master. 	At the end of the burst transfer or locked transfer
Both of the following are true: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The current master is running an undefined length burst transfer. The requesting master's priority level is higher than that of the current master. 	At the next arbitration point for the undefined length burst transfer NOTE: Arbitration points for an undefined length burst are defined in the MGPCR for each master.
The requesting master's priority level is lower than the current master.	At the conclusion of one of the following cycles: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> An IDLE cycle A non-IDLE cycle to a location other than the current slave port

21.4.3.3 Round-robin priority operation

When operating in round-robin mode, each master is assigned a relative priority based on the master port number. This relative priority is compared to the master port number (ID) of the last master to perform a transfer on the slave bus. The highest priority requesting master becomes owner of the slave bus at the next transfer boundary, accounting for locked and fixed-length burst transfers. Priority is based on how far ahead the ID of the requesting master is to the ID of the last master.

After granted access to a slave port, a master may perform as many transfers as desired to that port until another master makes a request to the same slave port. The next master in line is granted access to the slave port at the next transfer boundary, or possibly on the next clock cycle if the current master has no pending access request.

As an example of arbitration in round-robin mode, assume the crossbar is implemented with master ports 0, 1, 4, and 5. If the last master of the slave port was master 1, and master 0, 4, and 5 make simultaneous requests, they are serviced in the order: 4 then 5 then 0.

Parking may continue to be used in a round-robin mode, but does not affect the round-robin pointer unless the parked master actually performs a transfer. Handoff occurs to the next master in line after one cycle of arbitration. If the slave port is put into low-power park mode, the round-robin pointer is reset to point at master port 0, giving it the highest priority.

21.4.3.4 Priority assignment

Each master port must be assigned a unique 3-bit priority level. If an attempt is made to program multiple master ports with the same priority level within the priority registers (PRSn), the crossbar switch responds with a bus error and the registers are not updated.

21.5 Initialization/application information

No initialization is required for the crossbar switch.

Hardware reset ensures all the register bits used by the crossbar switch are properly initialized to a valid state. However, settings and priorities may be programmed to achieve maximum system performance.



Chapter 22

Peripheral Bridge (AIPS-Lite)

22.1 Chip-specific AIPS-Lite information

22.1.1 Master Privilege Register A (AIPSx_MPRA) reset value

The reset value of AIPSx_MPRA register for this device is 7770_0000h.

22.2 Introduction

The peripheral bridge converts the crossbar switch interface to an interface that can access most of the slave peripherals on this chip.

The peripheral bridge occupies 64 MB of the address space, which is divided into peripheral slots of 4 KB. (It might be possible that all the peripheral slots are not used. See the memory map chapter for details on slot assignments.) The bridge includes separate clock enable inputs for each of the slots to accommodate slower peripherals.

22.2.1 Features

Key features of the peripheral bridge are:

- Supports peripheral slots with 8-, 16-, and 32-bit datapath width
- Programming model provides memory protection functionality

22.2.2 General operation

The slave devices connected to the peripheral bridge are modules which contain a programming model of control and status registers. The system masters read and write these registers through the peripheral bridge.

The register maps of the peripherals are located on 4-KB boundaries. Each peripheral is allocated one or more 4-KB block(s) of the memory map.

22.3 Memory map/register definition

The 32-bit peripheral bridge registers can be accessed only in supervisor mode by trusted bus masters. Additionally, these registers must be read from or written to only by a 32-bit aligned access. The peripheral bridge registers are mapped into the Peripheral Access Control Register A PACRA[PACR0] address space.

AIPS memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_0000	Master Privilege Register A (AIPS0_MPRA)	32	R/W	See section	22.3.1/423
4000_0020	Peripheral Access Control Register (AIPS0_PACRA)	32	R/W	See section	22.3.2/426
4000_0024	Peripheral Access Control Register (AIPS0_PACRB)	32	R/W	See section	22.3.2/426
4000_0028	Peripheral Access Control Register (AIPS0_PACRC)	32	R/W	See section	22.3.2/426
4000_002C	Peripheral Access Control Register (AIPS0_PACRD)	32	R/W	See section	22.3.2/426
4000_0040	Peripheral Access Control Register (AIPS0_PACRE)	32	R/W	See section	22.3.3/431
4000_0044	Peripheral Access Control Register (AIPS0_PACRF)	32	R/W	See section	22.3.3/431
4000_0048	Peripheral Access Control Register (AIPS0_PACRG)	32	R/W	See section	22.3.3/431
4000_004C	Peripheral Access Control Register (AIPS0_PACRH)	32	R/W	See section	22.3.3/431
4000_0050	Peripheral Access Control Register (AIPS0_PACRI)	32	R/W	See section	22.3.3/431
4000_0054	Peripheral Access Control Register (AIPS0_PACRJ)	32	R/W	See section	22.3.3/431
4000_0058	Peripheral Access Control Register (AIPS0_PACRK)	32	R/W	See section	22.3.3/431
4000_005C	Peripheral Access Control Register (AIPS0_PACRL)	32	R/W	See section	22.3.3/431
4000_0060	Peripheral Access Control Register (AIPS0_PACRM)	32	R/W	See section	22.3.3/431
4000_0064	Peripheral Access Control Register (AIPS0_PACRN)	32	R/W	See section	22.3.3/431
4000_0068	Peripheral Access Control Register (AIPS0_PACRO)	32	R/W	See section	22.3.3/431
4000_006C	Peripheral Access Control Register (AIPS0_PACRP)	32	R/W	See section	22.3.3/431
4008_0000	Master Privilege Register A (AIPS1_MPRA)	32	R/W	See section	22.3.1/423
4008_0020	Peripheral Access Control Register (AIPS1_PACRA)	32	R/W	See section	22.3.2/426
4008_0024	Peripheral Access Control Register (AIPS1_PACRB)	32	R/W	See section	22.3.2/426
4008_0028	Peripheral Access Control Register (AIPS1_PACRC)	32	R/W	See section	22.3.2/426

Table continues on the next page...

AIPS memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/page
4008_002C	Peripheral Access Control Register (AIPS1_PACRD)	32	R/W	See section	22.3.2/426
4008_0040	Peripheral Access Control Register (AIPS1_PACRE)	32	R/W	See section	22.3.3/431
4008_0044	Peripheral Access Control Register (AIPS1_PACRF)	32	R/W	See section	22.3.3/431
4008_0048	Peripheral Access Control Register (AIPS1_PACRG)	32	R/W	See section	22.3.3/431
4008_004C	Peripheral Access Control Register (AIPS1_PACRH)	32	R/W	See section	22.3.3/431
4008_0050	Peripheral Access Control Register (AIPS1_PACRI)	32	R/W	See section	22.3.3/431
4008_0054	Peripheral Access Control Register (AIPS1_PACRJ)	32	R/W	See section	22.3.3/431
4008_0058	Peripheral Access Control Register (AIPS1_PACRK)	32	R/W	See section	22.3.3/431
4008_005C	Peripheral Access Control Register (AIPS1_PACRL)	32	R/W	See section	22.3.3/431
4008_0060	Peripheral Access Control Register (AIPS1_PACRM)	32	R/W	See section	22.3.3/431
4008_0064	Peripheral Access Control Register (AIPS1_PACRN)	32	R/W	See section	22.3.3/431
4008_0068	Peripheral Access Control Register (AIPS1_PACRO)	32	R/W	See section	22.3.3/431
4008_006C	Peripheral Access Control Register (AIPS1_PACRP)	32	R/W	See section	22.3.3/431

22.3.1 Master Privilege Register A (AIPSx_MPRA)

The MPRA specifies identical 4-bit fields defining the access-privilege level associated with a bus master to various peripherals on the chip. The register provides one field per bus master.

NOTE

At reset, the default value loaded into the MPRA fields is chip-specific. See the chip configuration details for the value of a particular device.

A register field that maps to an unimplemented master or peripheral behaves as read-only-zero.

Each master is assigned a logical ID from 0 to 15. See the master logical ID assignment table in the chip-specific AIPS information.

Address: Base address + 0h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0	MTR0	MTW0	MPL0	0	MTR1	MTW1	MPL1	0	MTR2	MTW2	MPL2	0	MTR3	MTW3	MPL3
W																
Reset	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*

memory map/register definition

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved				Reserved				Reserved				Reserved			
W																
Reset	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*

* Notes:

- The reset value is chip-dependent and can be found in the chip-specific AIPS information.

AIPSx_MPRA field descriptions

Field	Description
31 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
30 MTR0	Master 0 Trusted For Read Determines whether the master is trusted for read accesses. 0 This master is not trusted for read accesses. 1 This master is trusted for read accesses.
29 MTW0	Master 0 Trusted For Writes Determines whether the master is trusted for write accesses. 0 This master is not trusted for write accesses. 1 This master is trusted for write accesses.
28 MPL0	Master 0 Privilege Level Specifies how the privilege level of the master is determined. 0 Accesses from this master are forced to user-mode. 1 Accesses from this master are not forced to user-mode.
27 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
26 MTR1	Master 1 Trusted for Read Determines whether the master is trusted for read accesses. 0 This master is not trusted for read accesses. 1 This master is trusted for read accesses.
25 MTW1	Master 1 Trusted for Writes Determines whether the master is trusted for write accesses. 0 This master is not trusted for write accesses. 1 This master is trusted for write accesses.
24 MPL1	Master 1 Privilege Level Specifies how the privilege level of the master is determined. 0 Accesses from this master are forced to user-mode. 1 Accesses from this master are not forced to user-mode.

Table continues on the next page...

AIPSx_MPRA field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
23 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
22 MTR2	Master 2 Trusted For Read Determines whether the master is trusted for read accesses. 0 This master is not trusted for read accesses. 1 This master is trusted for read accesses.
21 MTW2	Master 2 Trusted For Writes Determines whether the master is trusted for write accesses. 0 This master is not trusted for write accesses. 1 This master is trusted for write accesses.
20 MPL2	Master 2 Privilege Level Specifies how the privilege level of the master is determined. 0 Accesses from this master are forced to user-mode. 1 Accesses from this master are not forced to user-mode.
19 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
18 MTR3	Master 3 Trusted For Read Determines whether the master is trusted for read accesses. 0 This master is not trusted for read accesses. 1 This master is trusted for read accesses.
17 MTW3	Master 3 Trusted For Writes Determines whether the master is trusted for write accesses. 0 This master is not trusted for write accesses. 1 This master is trusted for write accesses.
16 MPL3	Master 3 Privilege Level Specifies how the privilege level of the master is determined. 0 Accesses from this master are forced to user-mode. 1 Accesses from this master are not forced to user-mode.
15–12 Reserved	This field is reserved.
11–8 Reserved	This field is reserved.
7–4 Reserved	This field is reserved.
Reserved	This field is reserved.

22.3.2 Peripheral Access Control Register (AIPSx_PACRn)

Each PACR register consists of eight 4-bit PACR fields. Each PACR field defines the access levels for a particular peripheral. The mapping between a peripheral and its PACR field is shown in the table below. The peripheral assignment to each PACR is defined by the memory map slot that the peripheral is assigned to. See this chip's memory map for the assignment of a particular peripheral.

The following table shows the location of each peripheral slot's PACR field in the PACR registers.

Offset	Register	[31:28]	[27:24]	[23:20]	[19:16]	[15:12]	[11:8]	[7:4]	[3:0]
0x20	PACRA	PACR0	PACR1	PACR2	PACR3	PACR4	PACR5	PACR6	PACR7
0x24	PACRB	PACR8	PACR9	PACR10	PACR11	PACR12	PACR13	PACR14	PACR15
0x28	PACRC	PACR16	PACR17	PACR18	PACR19	PACR20	PACR21	PACR22	PACR23
0x2C	PACRD	PACR24	PACR25	PACR26	PACR27	PACR28	PACR29	PACR30	PACR31
0x30	Reserved								
0x34	Reserved								
0x38	Reserved								
0x3C	Reserved								
0x40	PACRE	PACR32	PACR33	PACR34	PACR35	PACR36	PACR37	PACR38	PACR39
0x44	PACRF	PACR40	PACR41	PACR42	PACR43	PACR44	PACR45	PACR46	PACR47
0x48	PACRG	PACR48	PACR49	PACR50	PACR51	PACR52	PACR53	PACR54	PACR55
0x4C	PACRH	PACR56	PACR57	PACR58	PACR59	PACR60	PACR61	PACR62	PACR63
0x50	PACRI	PACR64	PACR65	PACR66	PACR67	PACR68	PACR69	PACR70	PACR71
0x54	PACRJ	PACR72	PACR73	PACR74	PACR75	PACR76	PACR77	PACR78	PACR79
0x58	PACRK	PACR80	PACR81	PACR82	PACR83	PACR84	PACR85	PACR86	PACR87
0x5C	PACRL	PACR88	PACR89	PACR90	PACR91	PACR92	PACR93	PACR94	PACR95
0x60	PACRM	PACR96	PACR97	PACR98	PACR99	PACR100	PACR101	PACR102	PACR103
0x64	PACRN	PACR104	PACR105	PACR106	PACR107	PACR108	PACR109	PACR110	PACR111
0x68	PACRO	PACR112	PACR113	PACR114	PACR115	PACR116	PACR117	PACR118	PACR119
0x6C	PACRP	PACR120	PACR121	PACR122	PACR123	PACR124	PACR125	PACR126	PACR127

NOTE

The register field descriptions for PACR A-D, which control peripheral slots 0-31, are shown below. The following section, [Peripheral Access Control Register \(AIPS_PACRn\)](#), shows the register field descriptions for PACR E-P. All PACR registers are identical. They are divided into two sections because they occupy two non-contiguous address spaces.

Address: Base address + 20h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0	SP0	WP0	TP0	0	SP1	WP1	TP1	0	SP2	WP2	TP2	0	SP3	WP3	TP3
W																
Reset	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0	SP4	WP4	TP4	0	SP5	WP5	TP5	0	SP6	WP6	TP6	0	SP7	WP7	TP7
W																
Reset	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*

* Notes:

- The reset value is chip-dependent and can be found in the AIPS chip-specific information.

AIPSx_PACRn field descriptions

Field	Description
31 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
30 SP0	Supervisor Protect Determines whether the peripheral requires supervisor privilege level for accesses. When this field is set, the master privilege level must indicate the supervisor access attribute, and the MPRx[MPLn] control field for the master must be set. If not, access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates. 0 This peripheral does not require supervisor privilege level for accesses. 1 This peripheral requires supervisor privilege level for accesses.
29 WP0	Write Protect Determines whether the peripheral allows write accesss. When this bit is set and a write access is attempted, access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates. 0 This peripheral allows write accesss. 1 This peripheral is write protected.
28 TP0	Trusted Protect Determines whether the peripheral allows accesses from an untrusted master. When this field is set and an access is attempted by an untrusted master, the access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates. 0 Accesses from an untrusted master are allowed. 1 Accesses from an untrusted master are not allowed.
27 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
26 SP1	Supervisor Protect Determines whether the peripheral requires supervisor privilege level for accesses. When this field is set, the master privilege level must indicate the supervisor access attribute, and the MPRx[MPLn] control field for the master must be set. If not, access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates. 0 This peripheral does not require supervisor privilege level for accesses. 1 This peripheral requires supervisor privilege level for accesses.

Table continues on the next page...

AIPSx_PACRn field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
25 WP1	<p>Write Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral allows write accesses. When this field is set and a write access is attempted, access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 This peripheral allows write accesses. 1 This peripheral is write protected.</p>
24 TP1	<p>Trusted Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral allows accesses from an untrusted master. When this bit is set and an access is attempted by an untrusted master, the access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 Accesses from an untrusted master are allowed. 1 Accesses from an untrusted master are not allowed.</p>
23 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
22 SP2	<p>Supervisor Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral requires supervisor privilege level for accesses. When this field is set, the master privilege level must indicate the supervisor access attribute, and the MPRx[MPLn] control field for the master must be set. If not, access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 This peripheral does not require supervisor privilege level for accesses. 1 This peripheral requires supervisor privilege level for accesses.</p>
21 WP2	<p>Write Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral allows write accessess. When this bit is set and a write access is attempted, access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 This peripheral allows write accesses. 1 This peripheral is write protected.</p>
20 TP2	<p>Trusted Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral allows accesses from an untrusted master. When this field is set and an access is attempted by an untrusted master, the access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 Accesses from an untrusted master are allowed. 1 Accesses from an untrusted master are not allowed.</p>
19 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
18 SP3	<p>Supervisor Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral requires supervisor privilege level for access. When this bit is set, the master privilege level must indicate the supervisor access attribute, and the MPRx[MPLn] control bit for the master must be set. If not, access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 This peripheral does not require supervisor privilege level for accesses. 1 This peripheral requires supervisor privilege level for accesses.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

AIPSx_PACRn field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
17 WP3	<p>Write Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral allows write accesses. When this field is set and a write access is attempted, access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 This peripheral allows write accesses. 1 This peripheral is write protected.</p>
16 TP3	<p>Trusted Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral allows accesses from an untrusted master. When this bit is set and an access is attempted by an untrusted master, the access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 Accesses from an untrusted master are allowed. 1 Accesses from an untrusted master are not allowed.</p>
15 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
14 SP4	<p>Supervisor Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral requires supervisor privilege level for accesses. When this field is set, the master privilege level must indicate the supervisor access attribute, and the MPRx[MPLn] control field for the master must be set. If not, access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 This peripheral does not require supervisor privilege level for accesses. 1 This peripheral requires supervisor privilege level for accesses.</p>
13 WP4	<p>Write Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral allows write accessss. When this bit is set and a write access is attempted, access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 This peripheral allows write accesses. 1 This peripheral is write protected.</p>
12 TP4	<p>Trusted Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral allows accesses from an untrusted master. When this field is set and an access is attempted by an untrusted master, the access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 Accesses from an untrusted master are allowed. 1 Accesses from an untrusted master are not allowed.</p>
11 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
10 SP5	<p>Supervisor Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral requires supervisor privilege level for accesses. When this field is set, the master privilege level must indicate the supervisor access attribute, and the MPRx[MPLn] control field for the master must be set. If not, access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 This peripheral does not require supervisor privilege level for accesses. 1 This peripheral requires supervisor privilege level for accesses.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

AIPSx_PACRn field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
9 WP5	<p>Write Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral allows write accesses. When this field is set and a write access is attempted, access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 This peripheral allows write accesses. 1 This peripheral is write protected.</p>
8 TP5	<p>Trusted Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral allows accesses from an untrusted master. When this field is set and an access is attempted by an untrusted master, the access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 Accesses from an untrusted master are allowed. 1 Accesses from an untrusted master are not allowed.</p>
7 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
6 SP6	<p>Supervisor Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral requires supervisor privilege level for accesses. When this field is set, the master privilege level must indicate the supervisor access attribute, and the MPRx[MPLn] control field for the master must be set. If not, access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 This peripheral does not require supervisor privilege level for accesses. 1 This peripheral requires supervisor privilege level for accesses.</p>
5 WP6	<p>Write Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral allows write accesses. When this field is set and a write access is attempted, access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 This peripheral allows write accesses. 1 This peripheral is write protected.</p>
4 TP6	<p>Trusted Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral allows accesses from an untrusted master. When this field is set and an access is attempted by an untrusted master, the access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 Accesses from an untrusted master are allowed. 1 Accesses from an untrusted master are not allowed.</p>
3 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
2 SP7	<p>Supervisor Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral requires supervisor privilege level for accesses. When this field is set, the master privilege level must indicate the supervisor access attribute, and the MPRx[MPLn] control field for the master must be set. If not, access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 This peripheral does not require supervisor privilege level for accesses. 1 This peripheral requires supervisor privilege level for accesses.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

AIPSx_PACR_n field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
1 WP7	<p>Write Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral allows write accesses. When this field is set and a write access is attempted, access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 This peripheral allows write accesses. 1 This peripheral is write protected.</p>
0 TP7	<p>Trusted Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral allows accesses from an untrusted master. When this field is set and an access is attempted by an untrusted master, the access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 Accesses from an untrusted master are allowed. 1 Accesses from an untrusted master are not allowed.</p>

22.3.3 Peripheral Access Control Register (AIPSx_PACR_n)

This section describes PACR registers E-P, which control peripheral slots 32-127. See [Peripheral Access Control Register \(AIPS_PACR_n\)](#) for the description of these registers.

Address: Base address + 40h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 11d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0	SP0	WP0	TP0	0	SP1	WP1	TP1	0	SP2	WP2	TP2	0	SP3	WP3	TP3
W																
Reset	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0	SP4	WP4	TP4	0	SP5	WP5	TP5	0	SP6	WP6	TP6	0	SP7	WP7	TP7
W																
Reset	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*

* Notes:

- The reset value is chip-dependent and can be found in the AIPS chip-specific information.

AIPSx_PACR_n field descriptions

Field	Description
31 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
30 SP0	<p>Supervisor Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral requires supervisor privilege level for accesses. When this field is set, the master privilege level must indicate the supervisor access attribute, and the MPRx[MPL_n] control field for the master must be set. If not, access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

AIPSx_PACRn field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>0 This peripheral does not require supervisor privilege level for accesses.</p> <p>1 This peripheral requires supervisor privilege level for accesses.</p>
29 WP0	<p>Write Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral allows write accesses. When this field is set and a write access is attempted, access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 This peripheral allows write accesses.</p> <p>1 This peripheral is write protected.</p>
28 TP0	<p>Trusted Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral allows accesses from an untrusted master. When this bit is set and an access is attempted by an untrusted master, the access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 Accesses from an untrusted master are allowed.</p> <p>1 Accesses from an untrusted master are not allowed.</p>
27 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
26 SP1	<p>Supervisor Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral requires supervisor privilege level for access. When this field is set, the master privilege level must indicate the supervisor access attribute, and the MPRx[MPLn] control field for the master must be set. If not, access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 This peripheral does not require supervisor privilege level for accesses.</p> <p>1 This peripheral requires supervisor privilege level for accesses.</p>
25 WP1	<p>Write Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral allows write accesses. When this field is set and a write access is attempted, access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 This peripheral allows write accesses.</p> <p>1 This peripheral is write protected.</p>
24 TP1	<p>Trusted Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral allows accesses from an untrusted master. When this field is set and an access is attempted by an untrusted master, the access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 Accesses from an untrusted master are allowed.</p> <p>1 Accesses from an untrusted master are not allowed.</p>
23 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
22 SP2	<p>Supervisor Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral requires supervisor privilege level for access. When this bit is set, the master privilege level must indicate the supervisor access attribute, and the MPRx[MPLn] control bit for the master must be set. If not, access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

AIPSx_PACRn field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>0 This peripheral does not require supervisor privilege level for accesses.</p> <p>1 This peripheral requires supervisor privilege level for accesses.</p>
21 WP2	<p>Write Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral allows write accesses. When this field is set and a write access is attempted, access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 This peripheral allows write accesses.</p> <p>1 This peripheral is write protected.</p>
20 TP2	<p>Trusted Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral allows accesses from an untrusted master. When this bit is set and an access is attempted by an untrusted master, the access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 Accesses from an untrusted master are allowed.</p> <p>1 Accesses from an untrusted master are not allowed.</p>
19 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
18 SP3	<p>Supervisor Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral requires supervisor privilege level for accesses. When this field is set, the master privilege level must indicate the supervisor access attribute, and the MPRx[MPLn] control field for the master must be set. If not, access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 This peripheral does not require supervisor privilege level for accesses.</p> <p>1 This peripheral requires supervisor privilege level for accesses.</p>
17 WP3	<p>Write Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral allows write accessss. When this bit is set and a write access is attempted, access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 This peripheral allows write accesses.</p> <p>1 This peripheral is write protected.</p>
16 TP3	<p>Trusted Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral allows accesses from an untrusted master. When this field is set and an access is attempted by an untrusted master, the access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 Accesses from an untrusted master are allowed.</p> <p>1 Accesses from an untrusted master are not allowed.</p>
15 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
14 SP4	<p>Supervisor Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral requires supervisor privilege level for access. When this bit is set, the master privilege level must indicate the supervisor access attribute, and the MPRx[MPLn] control bit for the master must be set. If not, access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

AIPSx_PACRn field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>0 This peripheral does not require supervisor privilege level for accesses.</p> <p>1 This peripheral requires supervisor privilege level for accesses.</p>
13 WP4	<p>Write Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral allows write accesses. When this field is set and a write access is attempted, access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 This peripheral allows write accesses.</p> <p>1 This peripheral is write protected.</p>
12 TP4	<p>Trusted Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral allows accesses from an untrusted master. When this bit is set and an access is attempted by an untrusted master, the access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 Accesses from an untrusted master are allowed.</p> <p>1 Accesses from an untrusted master are not allowed.</p>
11 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
10 SP5	<p>Supervisor Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral requires supervisor privilege level for accesses. When this field is set, the master privilege level must indicate the supervisor access attribute, and the MPRx[MPLn] control field for the master must be set. If not, access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 This peripheral does not require supervisor privilege level for accesses.</p> <p>1 This peripheral requires supervisor privilege level for accesses.</p>
9 WP5	<p>Write Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral allows write accesses. When this field is set and a write access is attempted, access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 This peripheral allows write accesses.</p> <p>1 This peripheral is write protected.</p>
8 TP5	<p>Trusted Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral allows accesses from an untrusted master. When this field is set and an access is attempted by an untrusted master, the access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 Accesses from an untrusted master are allowed.</p> <p>1 Accesses from an untrusted master are not allowed.</p>
7 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
6 SP6	<p>Supervisor Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral requires supervisor privilege level for accesses. When this field is set, the master privilege level must indicate the supervisor access attribute, and the MPRx[MPLn] control field for the master must be set. If not, access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

AIPSx_PACRn field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>0 This peripheral does not require supervisor privilege level for accesses.</p> <p>1 This peripheral requires supervisor privilege level for accesses.</p>
5 WP6	<p>Write Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral allows write accesses. When this field is set and a write access is attempted, access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 This peripheral allows write accesses.</p> <p>1 This peripheral is write protected.</p>
4 TP6	<p>Trusted Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral allows accesses from an untrusted master. When this field is set and an access is attempted by an untrusted master, the access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 Accesses from an untrusted master are allowed.</p> <p>1 Accesses from an untrusted master are not allowed.</p>
3 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
2 SP7	<p>Supervisor Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral requires supervisor privilege level for accesses. When this field is set, the master privilege level must indicate the supervisor access attribute, and the MPRx[MPL_n] control field for the master must be set. If not, access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 This peripheral does not require supervisor privilege level for accesses.</p> <p>1 This peripheral requires supervisor privilege level for accesses.</p>
1 WP7	<p>Write Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral allows write accesses. When this field is set and a write access is attempted, access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 This peripheral allows write accesses.</p> <p>1 This peripheral is write protected.</p>
0 TP7	<p>Trusted Protect</p> <p>Determines whether the peripheral allows accesses from an untrusted master. When this field is set and an access is attempted by an untrusted master, the access terminates with an error response and no peripheral access initiates.</p> <p>0 Accesses from an untrusted master are allowed.</p> <p>1 Accesses from an untrusted master are not allowed.</p>

22.4 Functional description

The peripheral bridge functions as a bus protocol translator between the crossbar switch and the slave peripheral bus.

The peripheral bridge manages all transactions destined for the attached slave devices and generates select signals for modules on the peripheral bus by decoding accesses within the attached address space.

22.4.1 Access support

Aligned and misaligned 32-bit, 16-bit, and byte accesses are supported for 32-bit peripherals. Misaligned accesses are supported to allow memory to be placed on the slave peripheral bus. Peripheral registers must not be misaligned, although no explicit checking is performed by the peripheral bridge. All accesses are performed with a single transfer.

All accesses to the peripheral slots must be sized less than or equal to the designated peripheral slot size. If an access is attempted that is larger than the targeted port, an error response is generated.

Chapter 23

System Memory Protection Unit (MPU)

23.1 Chip-specific MPU information

23.1.1 MPU Slave Port Assignments

The memory-mapped resources protected by the MPU are:

Table 23-1. MPU Slave Port Assignments

Source	MPU Slave Port Assignment	Destination
Crossbar slave port 0	MPU slave port 0	Flash Controller
Crossbar slave port 1	MPU slave port 1	TCM backdoor
Crossbar slave port 4	MPU slave port 2	Flexbus
Crossbar slave port 5	MPU slave port 3	OCRAM
Crossbar slave port 6	MPU slave port 4	Flash EECRAM

23.1.2 MPU Logical Bus Master Assignments

The logical bus master assignments for the MPU are:

Table 23-2. MPU Logical Bus Master Assignments

MPU Logical Bus Master Number	Bus Master
0	Core (Cortex-M7 normal requests from both AXI and AHBP buses)
1	Debugger (Cortex-M7 debug requests from both AXI and AHBP buses)
2	DMA2
3	ENET

23.1.3 MPU access violation indications

Access violations detected by the MPU are signaled to the appropriate bus master as shown below:

Table 23-3. Access violation indications

Bus master	Core indication
Core	MPU violations result in either a bus error (interrupt vector #5) or a hard fault (interrupt vector #3) depending on the state of the core and its NVIC; See ARM documentation for details.
Debugger	The STICKYERROR flag is set in the Debug Port Control/Status Register.
DMA	DMA Error Interrupt vector
ENET	DMA Error Interrupt vector

23.1.4 Reset values for RGD0 registers

At reset, the MPU is enabled with a single region descriptor (RGD0) that maps the entire 4 GB address space with read, write and execute permissions given to the core, debugger and the DMA bus masters.

The following table shows the chip-specific reset values for RGD0 and RGDAAC0.

Table 23-4. Reset values for RGD0 registers

Register	Reset value
RGD0_WORD0	0000_0000h
RGD0_WORD1	FFFF_FFFFh
RGD0_WORD2	0061_F7DFh
RGD0_WORD3	0000_0001h
RGDAAC0	0061_F7DFh

23.1.5 Write access restrictions for RGD0 registers

In addition to configuring the initial state of RGD0, the MPU implements further access control on writes to the RGD0 registers. Specifically, the MPU assigns a priority scheme where the debugger is treated as the highest priority master followed by the core and then all the remaining masters.

The MPU does not allow writes from the core to affect the RGD0 start or end addresses nor the permissions associated with the debugger; it can only write the permission fields associated with the other masters.

These protections (summarized below) guarantee that the debugger always has access to the entire address space and those rights cannot be changed by the core or any other bus master.

Table 23-5. Write Access to RGD0 Registers

Bus Master	Write Access?
Core	Partial. The Core cannot write to the following registers or register fields: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RGD0_WORD0, RGD0_WORD1, RGD0_WORD3 • RGD0_WORD2[M1SM, M1UM] • RGDAAC0[M1SM, M1UM] <p>NOTE: Changes to the RGD0_WORD2 alterable fields should be done via a write to RGDAAC0.</p>
Debugger	Yes
All other masters	No

23.2 Introduction

The memory protection unit (MPU) provides hardware access control for all memory references generated in the device.

23.3 Overview

The MPU concurrently monitors all system bus transactions and evaluates their appropriateness using pre-programmed region descriptors that define memory spaces and their access rights. Memory references that have sufficient access control rights are allowed to complete, while references that are not mapped to any region descriptor or have insufficient rights are terminated with a protection error response.

23.3.1 Block diagram

A simplified block diagram of the MPU module is shown in the following figure.

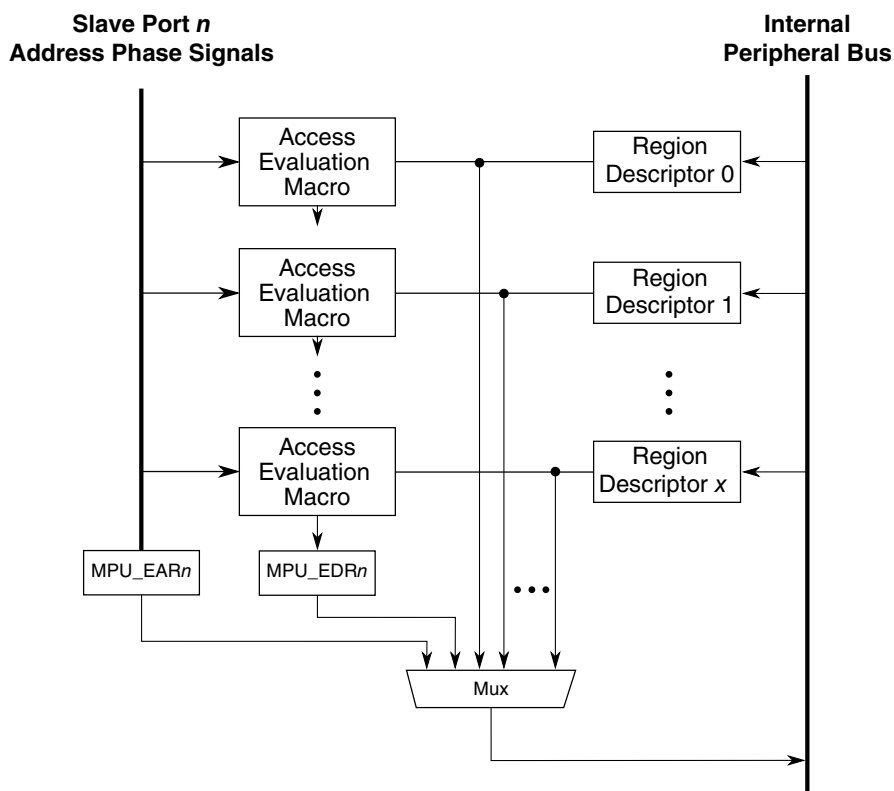


Figure 23-1. MPU block diagram

The hardware's two-dimensional connection matrix is clearly visible with the basic access evaluation macro shown as the replicated submodule block. The crossbar switch slave ports are shown on the left, the region descriptor registers in the middle, and the peripheral bus interface on the right side. The evaluation macro contains two magnitude comparators connected to the start and end address registers from each region descriptor as well as the combinational logic blocks to determine the region hit and the access protection error. For details of the access evaluation macro, see [Access evaluation macro](#).

23.3.2 Features

The MPU implements a two-dimensional hardware array of memory region descriptors and the crossbar slave ports to continuously monitor the legality of every memory reference generated by each bus master in the system.

The feature set includes:

- 12 program-visible 128-bit region descriptors, accessible by four 32-bit words each
 - Each region descriptor defines a modulo-32 byte space, aligned anywhere in memory

- Region sizes can vary from 32 bytes to 4 Gbytes
- Two access control permissions defined in a single descriptor word
 - Masters 0–3: read, write, and execute attributes for supervisor and user accesses
 - Masters 4–7: read and write attributes
- Hardware-assisted maintenance of the descriptor valid bit minimizes coherency issues
- Alternate programming model view of the access control permissions word
- Priority given to granting permission over denying access for overlapping region descriptors
- Detects access protection errors if a memory reference does not hit in any memory region, or if the reference is illegal in all hit memory regions. If an access error occurs, the reference is terminated with an error response, and the MPU inhibits the bus cycle being sent to the targeted slave device.
- Error registers, per slave port, capture the last faulting address, attributes, and other information
- Global MPU enable/disable control bit

23.4 Memory map/register definition

The programming model is partitioned into three groups:

- Control/status registers
- The data structure containing the region descriptors
- The alternate view of the region descriptor access control values

The programming model can only be referenced using 32-bit accesses. Attempted references using different access sizes, to undefined, that is, reserved, addresses, or with a non-supported access type, such as a write to a read-only register, or a read of a write-only register, generate an error termination.

The programming model can be accessed only in supervisor mode.

NOTE

See the chip configuration details for any chip-specific register information in this module.

MPU memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_D000	Control/Error Status Register (MPU_CESR)	32	R/W	0081_5101h	23.4.1/444
4000_D010	Error Address Register, slave port n (MPU_EAR0)	32	R	0000_0000h	23.4.2/445
4000_D014	Error Detail Register, slave port n (MPU_EDR0)	32	R	0000_0000h	23.4.3/446
4000_D018	Error Address Register, slave port n (MPU_EAR1)	32	R	0000_0000h	23.4.2/445
4000_D01C	Error Detail Register, slave port n (MPU_EDR1)	32	R	0000_0000h	23.4.3/446
4000_D020	Error Address Register, slave port n (MPU_EAR2)	32	R	0000_0000h	23.4.2/445
4000_D024	Error Detail Register, slave port n (MPU_EDR2)	32	R	0000_0000h	23.4.3/446
4000_D028	Error Address Register, slave port n (MPU_EAR3)	32	R	0000_0000h	23.4.2/445
4000_D02C	Error Detail Register, slave port n (MPU_EDR3)	32	R	0000_0000h	23.4.3/446
4000_D030	Error Address Register, slave port n (MPU_EAR4)	32	R	0000_0000h	23.4.2/445
4000_D034	Error Detail Register, slave port n (MPU_EDR4)	32	R	0000_0000h	23.4.3/446
4000_D400	Region Descriptor n, Word 0 (MPU_RGD0_WORD0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	23.4.4/447
4000_D404	Region Descriptor n, Word 1 (MPU_RGD0_WORD1)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.5/448
4000_D408	Region Descriptor n, Word 2 (MPU_RGD0_WORD2)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.6/448
4000_D40C	Region Descriptor n, Word 3 (MPU_RGD0_WORD3)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.7/451
4000_D410	Region Descriptor n, Word 0 (MPU_RGD1_WORD0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	23.4.4/447
4000_D414	Region Descriptor n, Word 1 (MPU_RGD1_WORD1)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.5/448
4000_D418	Region Descriptor n, Word 2 (MPU_RGD1_WORD2)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.6/448
4000_D41C	Region Descriptor n, Word 3 (MPU_RGD1_WORD3)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.7/451
4000_D420	Region Descriptor n, Word 0 (MPU_RGD2_WORD0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	23.4.4/447
4000_D424	Region Descriptor n, Word 1 (MPU_RGD2_WORD1)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.5/448
4000_D428	Region Descriptor n, Word 2 (MPU_RGD2_WORD2)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.6/448
4000_D42C	Region Descriptor n, Word 3 (MPU_RGD2_WORD3)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.7/451
4000_D430	Region Descriptor n, Word 0 (MPU_RGD3_WORD0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	23.4.4/447
4000_D434	Region Descriptor n, Word 1 (MPU_RGD3_WORD1)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.5/448
4000_D438	Region Descriptor n, Word 2 (MPU_RGD3_WORD2)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.6/448
4000_D43C	Region Descriptor n, Word 3 (MPU_RGD3_WORD3)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.7/451
4000_D440	Region Descriptor n, Word 0 (MPU_RGD4_WORD0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	23.4.4/447
4000_D444	Region Descriptor n, Word 1 (MPU_RGD4_WORD1)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.5/448
4000_D448	Region Descriptor n, Word 2 (MPU_RGD4_WORD2)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.6/448
4000_D44C	Region Descriptor n, Word 3 (MPU_RGD4_WORD3)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.7/451
4000_D450	Region Descriptor n, Word 0 (MPU_RGD5_WORD0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	23.4.4/447
4000_D454	Region Descriptor n, Word 1 (MPU_RGD5_WORD1)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.5/448
4000_D458	Region Descriptor n, Word 2 (MPU_RGD5_WORD2)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.6/448
4000_D45C	Region Descriptor n, Word 3 (MPU_RGD5_WORD3)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.7/451
4000_D460	Region Descriptor n, Word 0 (MPU_RGD6_WORD0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	23.4.4/447
4000_D464	Region Descriptor n, Word 1 (MPU_RGD6_WORD1)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.5/448
4000_D468	Region Descriptor n, Word 2 (MPU_RGD6_WORD2)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.6/448

Table continues on the next page...

MPU memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_D46C	Region Descriptor n, Word 3 (MPU_RGD6_WORD3)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.7/451
4000_D470	Region Descriptor n, Word 0 (MPU_RGD7_WORD0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	23.4.4/447
4000_D474	Region Descriptor n, Word 1 (MPU_RGD7_WORD1)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.5/448
4000_D478	Region Descriptor n, Word 2 (MPU_RGD7_WORD2)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.6/448
4000_D47C	Region Descriptor n, Word 3 (MPU_RGD7_WORD3)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.7/451
4000_D480	Region Descriptor n, Word 0 (MPU_RGD8_WORD0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	23.4.4/447
4000_D484	Region Descriptor n, Word 1 (MPU_RGD8_WORD1)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.5/448
4000_D488	Region Descriptor n, Word 2 (MPU_RGD8_WORD2)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.6/448
4000_D48C	Region Descriptor n, Word 3 (MPU_RGD8_WORD3)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.7/451
4000_D490	Region Descriptor n, Word 0 (MPU_RGD9_WORD0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	23.4.4/447
4000_D494	Region Descriptor n, Word 1 (MPU_RGD9_WORD1)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.5/448
4000_D498	Region Descriptor n, Word 2 (MPU_RGD9_WORD2)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.6/448
4000_D49C	Region Descriptor n, Word 3 (MPU_RGD9_WORD3)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.7/451
4000_D4A0	Region Descriptor n, Word 0 (MPU_RGD10_WORD0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	23.4.4/447
4000_D4A4	Region Descriptor n, Word 1 (MPU_RGD10_WORD1)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.5/448
4000_D4A8	Region Descriptor n, Word 2 (MPU_RGD10_WORD2)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.6/448
4000_D4AC	Region Descriptor n, Word 3 (MPU_RGD10_WORD3)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.7/451
4000_D4B0	Region Descriptor n, Word 0 (MPU_RGD11_WORD0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	23.4.4/447
4000_D4B4	Region Descriptor n, Word 1 (MPU_RGD11_WORD1)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.5/448
4000_D4B8	Region Descriptor n, Word 2 (MPU_RGD11_WORD2)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.6/448
4000_D4BC	Region Descriptor n, Word 3 (MPU_RGD11_WORD3)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.7/451
4000_D800	Region Descriptor Alternate Access Control n (MPU_RGDAAC0)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.8/452
4000_D804	Region Descriptor Alternate Access Control n (MPU_RGDAAC1)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.8/452
4000_D808	Region Descriptor Alternate Access Control n (MPU_RGDAAC2)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.8/452
4000_D80C	Region Descriptor Alternate Access Control n (MPU_RGDAAC3)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.8/452
4000_D810	Region Descriptor Alternate Access Control n (MPU_RGDAAC4)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.8/452
4000_D814	Region Descriptor Alternate Access Control n (MPU_RGDAAC5)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.8/452
4000_D818	Region Descriptor Alternate Access Control n (MPU_RGDAAC6)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.8/452
4000_D81C	Region Descriptor Alternate Access Control n (MPU_RGDAAC7)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.8/452
4000_D820	Region Descriptor Alternate Access Control n (MPU_RGDAAC8)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.8/452
4000_D824	Region Descriptor Alternate Access Control n (MPU_RGDAAC9)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.8/452

Table continues on the next page...

MPU memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/page
4000_D828	Region Descriptor Alternate Access Control n (MPU_RGDAAC10)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.8/452
4000_D82C	Region Descriptor Alternate Access Control n (MPU_RGDAAC11)	32	R/W	See section	23.4.8/452

23.4.1 Control/Error Status Register (MPU_CESR)

Address: 4000_D000h base + 0h offset = 4000_D000h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	
R	SPERR					0			1	0			HRL				
W	w1c																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	NSP				NRGD				0							VLD
W																
Reset	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

MPU_CESR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–27 SPERR	<p>Slave Port n Error</p> <p>Indicates a captured error in EARN and EDRn. This bit is set when the hardware detects an error and records the faulting address and attributes. It is cleared by writing one to it. If another error is captured at the exact same cycle as the write, the flag remains set. A find-first-one instruction or equivalent can detect the presence of a captured error.</p> <p>The following shows the correspondence between the bit number and slave port number:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bit 31 corresponds to slave port 0. • Bit 30 corresponds to slave port 1. • Bit 29 corresponds to slave port 2. • Bit 28 corresponds to slave port 3. • Bit 27 corresponds to slave port 4. <p>0 No error has occurred for slave port n. 1 An error has occurred for slave port n.</p>
26–24 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
23 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 1.</p>
22–20 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

MPU_CESR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
19–16 HRL	Hardware Revision Level Specifies the MPU's hardware and definition revision level. It can be read by software to determine the functional definition of the module.
15–12 NSP	Number Of Slave Ports Specifies the number of slave ports connected to the MPU.
11–8 NRGD	Number Of Region Descriptors Indicates the number of region descriptors implemented in the MPU. 0000 8 region descriptors 0001 12 region descriptors 0010 16 region descriptors
7–1 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
0 VLD	Valid Global enable/disable for the MPU. 0 MPU is disabled. All accesses from all bus masters are allowed. 1 MPU is enabled

23.4.2 Error Address Register, slave port n (MPU_EAR_n)

When the MPU detects an access error on slave port n, the 32-bit reference address is captured in this read-only register and the corresponding bit in CESR[SPERR] set. Additional information about the faulting access is captured in the corresponding EDR_n at the same time. This register and the corresponding EDR_n contain the most recent access error; there are no hardware interlocks with CESR[SPERR], as the error registers are always loaded upon the occurrence of each protection violation.

Address: 4000_D000h base + 10h offset + (8d × i), where i=0d to 4d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	EADDR																															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

MPU_EAR_n field descriptions

Field	Description
EADDR	Error Address Indicates the reference address from slave port n that generated the access error

23.4.3 Error Detail Register, slave port n (MPU_EDRn)

When the MPU detects an access error on slave port n, 32 bits of error detail are captured in this read-only register and the corresponding bit in CESR[SPERR] is set. Information on the faulting address is captured in the corresponding EARN register at the same time. This register and the corresponding EARN register contain the most recent access error; there are no hardware interlocks with CESR[SPERR] as the error registers are always loaded upon the occurrence of each protection violation.

Address: 4000_D000h base + 14h offset + (8d × i), where i=0d to 4d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	EACD															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	EPID								EMN				EATTR			ERW
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

MPU_EDRn field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 EACD	<p>Error Access Control Detail</p> <p>Indicates the region descriptor with the access error.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If EDRn contains a captured error and EACD is cleared, an access did not hit in any region descriptor. If only a single EACD bit is set, the protection error was caused by a single non-overlapping region descriptor. If two or more EACD bits are set, the protection error was caused by an overlapping set of region descriptors.
15–8 EPID	<p>Error Process Identification</p> <p>Records the process identifier of the faulting reference. The process identifier is typically driven only by processor cores; for other bus masters, this field is cleared.</p>
7–4 EMN	<p>Error Master Number</p> <p>Indicates the bus master that generated the access error.</p>
3–1 EATTR	<p>Error Attributes</p> <p>Indicates attribute information about the faulting reference.</p> <p>NOTE: All other encodings are reserved.</p> <p>000 User mode, instruction access 001 User mode, data access 010 Supervisor mode, instruction access 011 Supervisor mode, data access</p>

Table continues on the next page...

MPU_EDRn field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
0 ERW	Error Read/Write Indicates the access type of the faulting reference. 0 Read 1 Write

23.4.4 Region Descriptor n, Word 0 (MPU_RGDn_WORD0)

The first word of the region descriptor defines the 0-modulo-32 byte start address of the memory region. Writes to this register clear the region descriptor’s valid bit (RGDn_WORD3[VLD]).

Address: 4000_D000h base + 400h offset + (16d × i), where i=0d to 11d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	SRTADDR																												0			
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

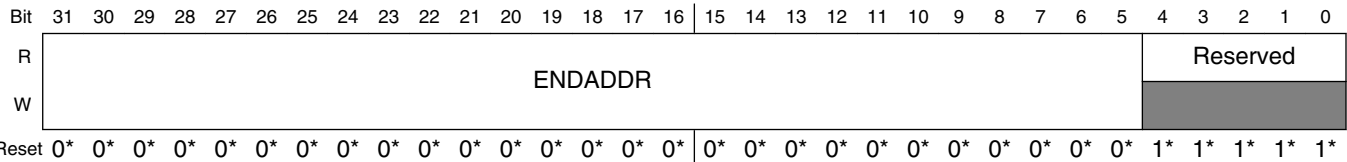
MPU_RGDn_WORD0 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–5 SRTADDR	Start Address Defines the most significant bits of the 0-modulo-32 byte start address of the memory region.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

23.4.5 Region Descriptor n, Word 1 (MPU_RGDn_WORD1)

The second word of the region descriptor defines the 31-modulo-32 byte end address of the memory region. Writes to this register clear the region descriptor's valid bit (RGDn_WORD3[VLD]).

Address: 4000_D000h base + 404h offset + (16d × i), where i=0d to 11d



* Notes:

- Reset value of RGD0_WORD1 is FFFF_FFFFh
Reset value of RGD[1:11]_WORD1 is 0000_001Fh

MPU_RGDn_WORD1 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–5 ENDADDR	End Address Defines the most significant bits of the 31-modulo-32 byte end address of the memory region. NOTE: The MPU does not verify that ENDADDR ≥ SRTADDR.
Reserved	This field is reserved.

23.4.6 Region Descriptor n, Word 2 (MPU_RGDn_WORD2)

The third word of the region descriptor defines the access control rights of the memory region. The access control privileges depend on two broad classifications of bus masters:

- Bus masters 0–3 have a 5-bit field defining separate privilege rights for user and supervisor mode accesses, as well as the optional inclusion of a process identification field within the definition.
- Bus masters 4–7 are limited to separate read and write permissions.

For the privilege rights of bus masters 0–3, there are three flags associated with this function:

- Read (r) refers to accessing the referenced memory address using an operand (data) fetch

- Write (w) refers to updating the referenced memory address using a store (data) instruction
- Execute (x) refers to reading the referenced memory address using an instruction fetch

Writes to RGDn_WORD2 clear the region descriptor's valid bit (RGDn_WORD3[VLD]). If only updating the access controls, write to RGDAACn instead because stores to these locations do not affect the descriptor's valid bit.

Address: 4000_D000h base + 408h offset + (16d × i), where i=0d to 11d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	M7RE	M7WE	M6RE	M6WE	M5RE	M5WE	M4RE	M4WE	M3PE	M3SM		M3UM			M2PE	M2SM
W																
Reset	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	M2SM				M1PE		M1SM		M1UM		M0PE		M0SM		M0UM	
W																
Reset	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*

* Notes:

- Reset value of RGD0_WORD2 is 0061_F7DFh
Reset value of RGD[1:12]_WORD2 is 0000_0000h

MPU_RGDn_WORD2 field descriptions

Field	Description
31 M7RE	Bus Master 7 Read Enable 0 Bus master 7 reads terminate with an access error and the read is not performed 1 Bus master 7 reads allowed
30 M7WE	Bus Master 7 Write Enable 0 Bus master 7 writes terminate with an access error and the write is not performed 1 Bus master 7 writes allowed
29 M6RE	Bus Master 6 Read Enable 0 Bus master 6 reads terminate with an access error and the read is not performed 1 Bus master 6 reads allowed
28 M6WE	Bus Master 6 Write Enable 0 Bus master 6 writes terminate with an access error and the write is not performed 1 Bus master 6 writes allowed

Table continues on the next page...

MPU_RGDn_WORD2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
27 M5RE	<p>Bus Master 5 Read Enable</p> <p>0 Bus master 5 reads terminate with an access error and the read is not performed</p> <p>1 Bus master 5 reads allowed</p>
26 M5WE	<p>Bus Master 5 Write Enable</p> <p>0 Bus master 5 writes terminate with an access error and the write is not performed</p> <p>1 Bus master 5 writes allowed</p>
25 M4RE	<p>Bus Master 4 Read Enable</p> <p>0 Bus master 4 reads terminate with an access error and the read is not performed</p> <p>1 Bus master 4 reads allowed</p>
24 M4WE	<p>Bus Master 4 Write Enable</p> <p>0 Bus master 4 writes terminate with an access error and the write is not performed</p> <p>1 Bus master 4 writes allowed</p>
23 M3PE	<p>Bus Master 3 Process Identifier Enable</p> <p>0 Do not include the process identifier in the evaluation</p> <p>1 Include the process identifier and mask (RGDn_WORD3) in the region hit evaluation</p>
22–21 M3SM	<p>Bus Master 3 Supervisor Mode Access Control</p> <p>Defines the access controls for bus master 3 in Supervisor mode.</p> <p>00 r/w/x; read, write and execute allowed</p> <p>01 r/x; read and execute allowed, but no write</p> <p>10 r/w; read and write allowed, but no execute</p> <p>11 Same as User mode defined in M3UM</p>
20–18 M3UM	<p>Bus Master 3 User Mode Access Control</p> <p>Defines the access controls for bus master 3 in User mode. M3UM consists of three independent bits, enabling read (r), write (w), and execute (x) permissions. In M3UM[2:0]: M3UM[2] controls read permissions, M3UM[1] controls write permissions, and M3UM[0] controls execute permissions.</p> <p>0 An attempted access of that mode may be terminated with an access error (if not allowed by another descriptor) and the access not performed.</p> <p>1 Allows the given access type to occur</p>
17 M2PE	<p>Bus Master 2 Process Identifier Enable</p> <p>See M3PE description.</p>
16–15 M2SM	<p>Bus Master 2 Supervisor Mode Access Control</p> <p>See M3SM description.</p>
14–12 M2UM	<p>Bus Master 2 User Mode Access control</p> <p>See M3UM description.</p>
11 M1PE	<p>Bus Master 1 Process Identifier enable</p> <p>See M3PE description.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

MPU_RGDn_WORD2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
10–9 M1SM	Bus Master 1 Supervisor Mode Access Control See M3SM description.
8–6 M1UM	Bus Master 1 User Mode Access Control See M3UM description.
5 M0PE	Bus Master 0 Process Identifier enable See M0PE description.
4–3 M0SM	Bus Master 0 Supervisor Mode Access Control See M3SM description.
M0UM	Bus Master 0 User Mode Access Control See M3UM description.

23.4.7 Region Descriptor n, Word 3 (MPU_RGDn_WORD3)

The fourth word of the region descriptor contains the optional process identifier and mask, plus the region descriptor's valid bit.

Address: 4000_D000h base + 40Ch offset + (16d × i), where i=0d to 11d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	PID								PIDMASK							
W																
Reset	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0															VLD
W																
Reset	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*

* Notes:

- Reset value of RGD0_WORD3 is 0000_0001h
Reset value of RGD[1:12]_WORD3 is 0000_0000h

MPU_RGDn_WORD3 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 PID	Process Identifier Specifies the process identifier that is included in the region hit determination if RGDn_WORD2[MxPE] is set. PIDMASK can mask individual bits in this field.
23–16 PIDMASK	Process Identifier Mask

Table continues on the next page...

MPU_RGDn_WORD3 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Provides a masking capability so that multiple process identifiers can be included as part of the region hit determination. If a bit in PIDMASK is set, then the corresponding PID bit is ignored in the comparison. This field and PID are included in the region hit determination if RGDn_WORD2[MxPE] is set. For more information on the handling of the PID and PIDMASK, see "Access Evaluation - Hit Determination."
15–1 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
0 VLD	Valid Signals the region descriptor is valid. Any write to RGDn_WORD0–2 clears this bit. 0 Region descriptor is invalid 1 Region descriptor is valid

23.4.8 Region Descriptor Alternate Access Control n (MPU_RGDAACn)

Because software may adjust only the access controls within a region descriptor (RGDn_WORD2) as different tasks execute, an alternate programming view of this 32-bit entity is available. Writing to this register does not affect the descriptor's valid bit.

Address: 4000_D000h base + 800h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 11d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	M7RE	M7WE	M6RE	M6WE	M5RE	M5WE	M4RE	M4WE	M3PE	M3SM		M3UM			M2PE	M2SM
W																
Reset	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	M2SM				M1PE		M1SM		M1UM		M0PE		M0SM		M0UM	
W																
Reset	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*

* Notes:

- Reset value of RGDAAC0 is 0061_F7DFh
Reset value of RGDAAC[1:12] is 0000_0000h

MPU_RGDAAC_n field descriptions

Field	Description
31 M7RE	Bus Master 7 Read Enable 0 Bus master 7 reads terminate with an access error and the read is not performed 1 Bus master 7 reads allowed
30 M7WE	Bus Master 7 Write Enable 0 Bus master 7 writes terminate with an access error and the write is not performed 1 Bus master 7 writes allowed
29 M6RE	Bus Master 6 Read Enable 0 Bus master 6 reads terminate with an access error and the read is not performed 1 Bus master 6 reads allowed
28 M6WE	Bus Master 6 Write Enable 0 Bus master 6 writes terminate with an access error and the write is not performed 1 Bus master 6 writes allowed
27 M5RE	Bus Master 5 Read Enable 0 Bus master 5 reads terminate with an access error and the read is not performed 1 Bus master 5 reads allowed
26 M5WE	Bus Master 5 Write Enable 0 Bus master 5 writes terminate with an access error and the write is not performed 1 Bus master 5 writes allowed
25 M4RE	Bus Master 4 Read Enable 0 Bus master 4 reads terminate with an access error and the read is not performed 1 Bus master 4 reads allowed
24 M4WE	Bus Master 4 Write Enable 0 Bus master 4 writes terminate with an access error and the write is not performed 1 Bus master 4 writes allowed
23 M3PE	Bus Master 3 Process Identifier Enable 0 Do not include the process identifier in the evaluation 1 Include the process identifier and mask (RGD _n .RGDAAC) in the region hit evaluation
22–21 M3SM	Bus Master 3 Supervisor Mode Access Control Defines the access controls for bus master 3 in Supervisor mode. 00 r/w/x; read, write and execute allowed 01 r/x; read and execute allowed, but no write 10 r/w; read and write allowed, but no execute 11 Same as User mode defined in M3UM
20–18 M3UM	Bus Master 3 User Mode Access Control Defines the access controls for bus master 3 in user mode. M3UM consists of three independent bits, enabling read (r), write (w), and execute (x) permissions. In M3UM[2:0]: M3UM[2] controls read permissions, M3UM[1] controls write permissions, and M3UM[0] controls execute permissions.

Table continues on the next page...

MPU_RGDAAC_n field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>0 An attempted access of that mode may be terminated with an access error (if not allowed by another descriptor) and the access not performed.</p> <p>1 Allows the given access type to occur</p>
17 M2PE	<p>Bus Master 2 Process Identifier Enable</p> <p>See M3PE description.</p>
16–15 M2SM	<p>Bus Master 2 Supervisor Mode Access Control</p> <p>See M3SM description.</p>
14–12 M2UM	<p>Bus Master 2 User Mode Access Control</p> <p>See M3UM description.</p>
11 M1PE	<p>Bus Master 1 Process Identifier Enable</p> <p>See M3PE description.</p>
10–9 M1SM	<p>Bus Master 1 Supervisor Mode Access Control</p> <p>See M3SM description.</p>
8–6 M1UM	<p>Bus Master 1 User Mode Access Control</p> <p>See M3UM description.</p>
5 M0PE	<p>Bus Master 0 Process Identifier Enable</p> <p>See M3PE description.</p>
4–3 M0SM	<p>Bus Master 0 Supervisor Mode Access Control</p> <p>See M3SM description.</p>
M0UM	<p>Bus Master 0 User Mode Access Control</p> <p>See M3UM description.</p>

23.5 Functional description

In this section, the functional operation of the MPU is detailed, including the operation of the access evaluation macro and the handling of error-terminated bus cycles.

23.5.1 Access evaluation macro

The basic operation of the MPU is performed in the access evaluation macro, a hardware structure replicated in the two-dimensional connection matrix. As shown in the following figure, the access evaluation macro inputs the crossbar bus address phase signals and the contents of a region descriptor (RGD_n) and performs two major functions:

- Region hit determination
- Detection of an access protection violation

The following figure shows a functional block diagram.

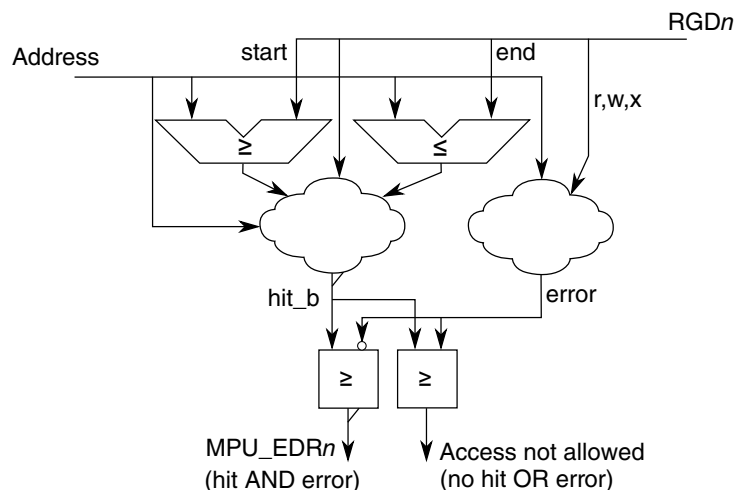


Figure 23-2. MPU access evaluation macro

23.5.1.1 Hit determination

To determine whether the current reference hits in the given region, two magnitude comparators are used with the region's start and end addresses. The boolean equation for this portion of the hit determination is:

```
region_hit = ((addr[31:5] >= RGDn_Word0[SRTADDR]) & (addr[31:5] <= RGDn_Word1[ENDADDR])) &
RGDn_Word3[VLD]
```

where *addr* is the current reference address, *RGDn_Word0[SRTADDR]* and *RGDn_Word1[ENDADDR]* are the start and end addresses, and *RGDn_Word3[VLD]* is the valid bit.

NOTE

The MPU does not verify that *ENDADDR* \geq *SRTADDR*.

In addition to the comparison of the reference address versus the region descriptor's start and end addresses, the optional process identifier is examined against the region descriptor's PID and PIDMASK fields. A process identifier hit term is formed as follows:

```
pid_hit = ~RGDn_Word2[MxPE] |
((current_pid |
RGDn_Word3[PIDMASK]) == (RGDn_Word3[PID] | RGDn_Word3[PIDMASK]))
```

where the `current_pid` is the selected process identifier from the current bus master, and `RGDn_Word3[PID]` and `RGDn_Word3[PIDMASK]` are the process identifier fields from region descriptor n . For bus masters that do not output a process identifier, the MPU forces the `pid_hit` term to assert.

23.5.1.2 Privilege violation determination

While the access evaluation macro is determining region hit, the logic is also evaluating if the current access is allowed by the permissions defined in the region descriptor. Using the master and supervisor/user mode signals, a set of effective permissions is generated from the appropriate fields in the region descriptor. The protection violation logic then evaluates the access against the effective permissions using the specification shown below.

Table 23-6. Protection violation definition

Description	MxUM			Protection violation?
	r	w	x	
Instruction fetch read	—	—	0	Yes, no execute permission
	—	—	1	No, access is allowed
Data read	0	—	—	Yes, no read permission
	1	—	—	No, access is allowed
Data write	—	0	—	Yes, no write permission
	—	1	—	No, access is allowed

23.5.2 Putting it all together and error terminations

For each slave port monitored, the MPU performs a reduction-AND of all the individual terms from each access evaluation macro. This expression then terminates the bus cycle with an error and reports a protection error for three conditions:

- If the access does not hit in any region descriptor, a protection error is reported.
- If the access hits in a single region descriptor and that region signals a protection violation, a protection error is reported.
- If the access hits in multiple (overlapping) regions and all regions signal protection violations, a protection error is reported.

As shown in the third condition, granting permission is a higher priority than denying access for overlapping regions. This approach is more flexible to system software in region descriptor assignments. For an example of the use of overlapping region descriptors, see [Application information](#).

23.5.3 Power management

Disabling the MPU by clearing CESR[VLD] minimizes power dissipation. To minimize the power dissipation of an enabled MPU, invalidate unused region descriptors by clearing the associated RGDn_Word3[VLD] bits.

23.6 Initialization information

At system startup, load the appropriate number of region descriptors, including setting RGDn_Word3[VLD]. Setting CESR[VLD] enables the module.

If the system requires that all the loaded region descriptors be enabled simultaneously, first ensure that the entire MPU is disabled (CESR[VLD]=0).

Note

A region descriptor must be set to allow access to the MPU registers if further changes are needed.

23.7 Application information

In an operational system, interfacing with the MPU is generally classified into the following activities:

- Creating a new memory region—Load the appropriate region descriptor into an available RGDn, using four sequential 32-bit writes. The hardware assists in the maintenance of the valid bit, so if this approach is followed, there are no coherency issues with the multi-cycle descriptor writes. (Clearing RGDn_Word3[VLD] deletes/removes an existing memory region.)
- Altering only access privileges—To not affect the valid bit, write to the alternate version of the access control word (RGDAACn), so there are no coherency issues involved with the update. When the write completes, the memory region's access rights switch instantaneously to the new value.

- Changing a region's start and end addresses—Write a minimum of three words to the region descriptor (RGDn_Word{0,1,3}). Word 0 and 1 redefine the start and end addresses, respectively. Word 3 re-enables the region descriptor valid bit. In most situations, all four words of the region descriptor are rewritten.
- Accessing the MPU—Allocate a region descriptor to restrict MPU access to supervisor mode from a specific master.
- Detecting an access error—The current bus cycle is terminated with an error response and EARn and EDRn capture information on the faulting reference. The error-terminated bus cycle typically initiates an error response in the originating bus master. For example, a processor core may respond with a bus error exception, while a data movement bus master may respond with an error interrupt. The processor can retrieve the captured error address and detail information simply by reading E{A,D}Rn. CESR[SPERR] signals which error registers contain captured fault data.
- Overlapping region descriptors—Applying overlapping regions often reduces the number of descriptors required for a given set of access controls. In the overlapping memory space, the protection rights of the corresponding region descriptors are logically summed together (the boolean OR operator).

The following dual-core system example contains four bus masters:

- The two processors: CP0, CP1
- Two DMA engines: DMA1, a traditional data movement engine transferring data between RAM and peripherals and DMA2, a second engine transferring data to/from the RAM only

Consider the following region descriptor assignments:

Table 23-7. Overlapping region descriptor example

Region description	RGDn		CP0	CP1	DMA1	DMA2	
CP0 code	0		rwX	r--	—	—	Flash
CP1 code	1		r--	rwX	—	—	
CP0 data & stack	2		rw-	—	—	—	RAM
CP0 → CP1 shared data	2	3	r--	r--	—	—	
CP1 → CP0 shared data	4						
CP1 data & stack	4		—	rw-	—	—	
Shared DMA data	5		rw-	rw-	rw	rw	
MPU	6		rw-	rw-	—	—	
Peripherals	7		rw-	rw-	rw	—	Peripheral space

In this example, there are eight descriptors used to span nine regions in the three main spaces of the system memory map: flash, RAM, and peripheral space. Each region indicates the specific permissions for each of the four bus masters and this definition provides an appropriate set of shared, private and executable memory spaces.

Of particular interest are the two overlapping spaces: region descriptors 2 & 3 and 3 & 4.

The space defined by RGD2 with no overlap is a private data and stack area that provides read/write access to CP0 only. The overlapping space between RGD2 and RGD3 defines a shared data space for passing data from CP0 to CP1 and the access controls are defined by the logical OR of the two region descriptors. Thus, CP0 has $(rw- \mid r--)$ = $(rw-)$ permissions, while CP1 has $(--- \mid r--)$ = $(r--)$ permission in this space. Both DMA engines are excluded from this shared processor data region. The overlapping spaces between RGD3 and RGD4 defines another shared data space, this one for passing data from CP1 to CP0. For this overlapping space, CP0 has $(r-- \mid ---)$ = $(r--)$ permission, while CP1 has $(rw- \mid r--)$ = $(rw-)$ permission. The non-overlapped space of RGD4 defines a private data and stack area for CP1 only.

The space defined by RGD5 is a shared data region, accessible by all four bus masters. Finally, the slave peripheral space mapped onto the IPS bus is partitioned into two regions:

- One containing the MPU's programming model accessible only to the two processor cores
- The remaining peripheral region accessible to both processors and the traditional DMA1 master

This example shows one possible application of the capabilities of the MPU in a typical system.



Chapter 24

Direct Memory Access Multiplexer (DMAMUX)

24.1 Chip-specific DMAMUX information

24.1.1 DMA MUX request sources

The following table shows the DMA MUX assignments for Channels 0 to 15 of the DMA Controller.

Table 24-1. DMA MUX 0 request sources - Channels 0-15

Source Number	Peripheral Assignment	Description
0	Channel disabled	—
1	Reserved Not used	—
2	UART0 Receive	Receive
3	UART0 Transmit	Transmit
4	UART1 Recieve	Receive
5	UART1 Transmit	Transmit
6	flexPWM0_WR0	Submodule 0 DMA request to update PWM buffers
7	flexPWM0_WR1	Submodule 1 DMA request to update PWM buffers
8	flexPWM0_WR2	Submodule 2 DMA request to update PWM buffers
9	flexPWM0_WR3	Submodule 3 DMA request to update PWM buffers
10	flexPWM0_CP0	Submodule 0 DMA request for input capture on any of the Capture FIFO (OR of 6 capture circuits X0,X1,A0,A1,B0,B1)
11	flexPWM0_CP1	Submodule 1 DMA request for input capture on any of the Capture FIFO (OR of 6 capture circuits X0,X1,A0,A1,B0,B1)

Table continues on the next page...

Table 24-1. DMA MUX 0 request sources - Channels 0-15 (continued)

Source Number	Peripheral Assignment	Description
12	flexPWM0_CP2	Submodule 2 DMA request for input capture on any of the Capture FIFO (OR of 6 capture circuits X0,X1,A0,A1,B0,B1)
13	flexPWM0_CP3	Submodule 3 DMA request for input capture on any of the Capture FIFO (OR of 6 capture circuits X0,X1,A0,A1,B0,B1)
14	FlexCAN0	DMA request on Receiev mailbox level
15	FlexCAN1	DMA request on Receiev mailbox level
16	SPI0 Receive	Receive
17	SPI0 transmit	Transmit
18	XBARA_OUT0	—
19	XBARA_OUT1	—
20	XBARA_OUT2	—
21	XBARA_OUT3	—
22	I2C0	—
23	—	—
24	FTM0 Ch0	Channel 0
25	FTM0 Ch1	Channel 1
26	FTM0 Ch2	Channel 2
27	FTM0 Ch3	Channel 3
28	FTM0 Ch4	Channel 4
29	FTM0 Ch5	Channel 5
30	FTM0 Ch6	Channel 6
31	FTM0 Ch7	Channel 7
32	FTM1 Ch0	Channel 0
33	FTM1 Ch1	Channel 1
34	CMP3	—
35	—	—
36	FTM3 Ch0	Channel 0
37	FTM3 Ch1	Channel 1
38	FTM3 Ch2	Channel 2
39	FTM3 Ch3	Channel 3
40	HSADC0A Scan complete	—
41	HSADC0B Scan complete	—
42	CMP0	—
43	CMP1	—
44	CMP2	—
45	DAC0	—
46	-	—

Table continues on the next page...

Table 24-1. DMA MUX 0 request sources - Channels 0-15 (continued)

Source Number	Peripheral Assignment	Description
47	PDB1	—
48	PDB0	—
49	control module Port A	—
50	control module Port B	—
51	control module Port C	—
52	control module Port D	—
53	control module Port E	—
54	FTM3 Ch4	Channel 4
55	FTM3 Ch5	Channel 5
56	FTM3 Ch6	Channel 6
57	FTM3 Ch7	Channel 7
58	—	—
59	—	—
60	DMAX MUX always enabled	—
61	DMAX MUX always enabled	—
62	DMAX MUX always enabled	—
63	DMAX MUX always enabled	—

The following table shows the DMA MUX assignments for Channels 16 to 31 of the DMA Controller.

Table 24-2. DMA MUX 0 request sources - Channels 16-31

Source Number	Peripheral Assignment	Description
0	Channel disabled	—
1	Reserved Not used	—
2	UART2 Receive	Receive
3	UART2 Transmit	Transmit
4	UART3 Recieve	Receive
5	UART3 Transmit	Transmit
6	flexPWM1_WR0	Submodule 0 DMA request to update PWM buffers
7	flexPWM1_WR1	Submodule 1 DMA request to update PWM buffers
8	flexPWM1_WR2	Submodule 2 DMA request to update PWM buffers
9	flexPWM1_WR3	Submodule 3 DMA request to update PWM buffers
10	flexPWM1_CP0	Submodule 0 DMA request for input capture on any of the Capture FIFO (OR of 6 capture circuits X0,X1,A0,A1,B0,B1)

Table continues on the next page...

Table 24-2. DMA MUX 0 request sources - Channels 16-31 (continued)

Source Number	Peripheral Assignment	Description
11	flexPWM1_CP1	Submodule 1 DMA request for input capture on any of the Capture FIFO (OR of 6 capture circuits X0,X1,A0,A1,B0,B1)
12	flexPWM1_CP2	Submodule 2 DMA request for input capture on any of the Capture FIFO (OR of 6 capture circuits X0,X1,A0,A1,B0,B1)
13	flexPWM1_CP3	Submodule 3 DMA request for input capture on any of the Capture FIFO (OR of 6 capture circuits X0,X1,A0,A1,B0,B1)
14	FlexCAN2	DMA request on Receive mailbox level
15	—	—
16	SPI1 Receive	Receive
17	SPI1 transmit	Transmit
18	—	—
19	—	—
20	—	—
21	—	—
22	I2C1	—
23	—	—
24	—	—
25	—	—
26	—	—
27	—	—
28	—	—
29	—	—
30	—	—
31	—	—
32	FTM2 Ch0	Channel 0
33	FTM2 Ch1	Channel 1
34	SPI2 Receive	Receive
35	SPI2 Transmit	Transmit
36	IEEE 1588 Timer 0	—
37	IEEE 1588 Timer 1	—
38	IEEE 1588 Timer 2	—
39	IEEE 1588 Timer 3	—
40	HSADC1A Scan complete	—
41	HSADC1B Scan complete	—
42	—	—
43	—	—

Table continues on the next page...

Table 24-2. DMA MUX 0 request sources - Channels 16-31 (continued)

Source Number	Peripheral Assignment	Description
44	—	—
45	ADC0	—
46	—	—
47	—	—
48	—	—
49	—	—
50	—	—
51	—	—
52	—	—
53	—	—
54	UART4 Recieve	Recieve
55	UART4 Transmit	Transmit
56	UART5 Recieve	Recieve
57	UART4 Transmit	Transmit
58	—	—
59	—	—
60	DMA MUX always enabled	—
61	DMA MUX always enabled	—
62	DMA MUX always enabled	—
63	DMA MUX always enabled	—

24.1.2 DMA transfers via PIT trigger

The PIT module can trigger a DMA transfer on the first four DMA channels. The assignments are detailed at [PIT/DMA Periodic Trigger Assignments](#) .

24.2 Introduction

24.2.1 Overview

The Direct Memory Access Multiplexer (DMAMUX) routes DMA sources, called slots, to any of the 32 DMA channels. This process is illustrated in the following figure.

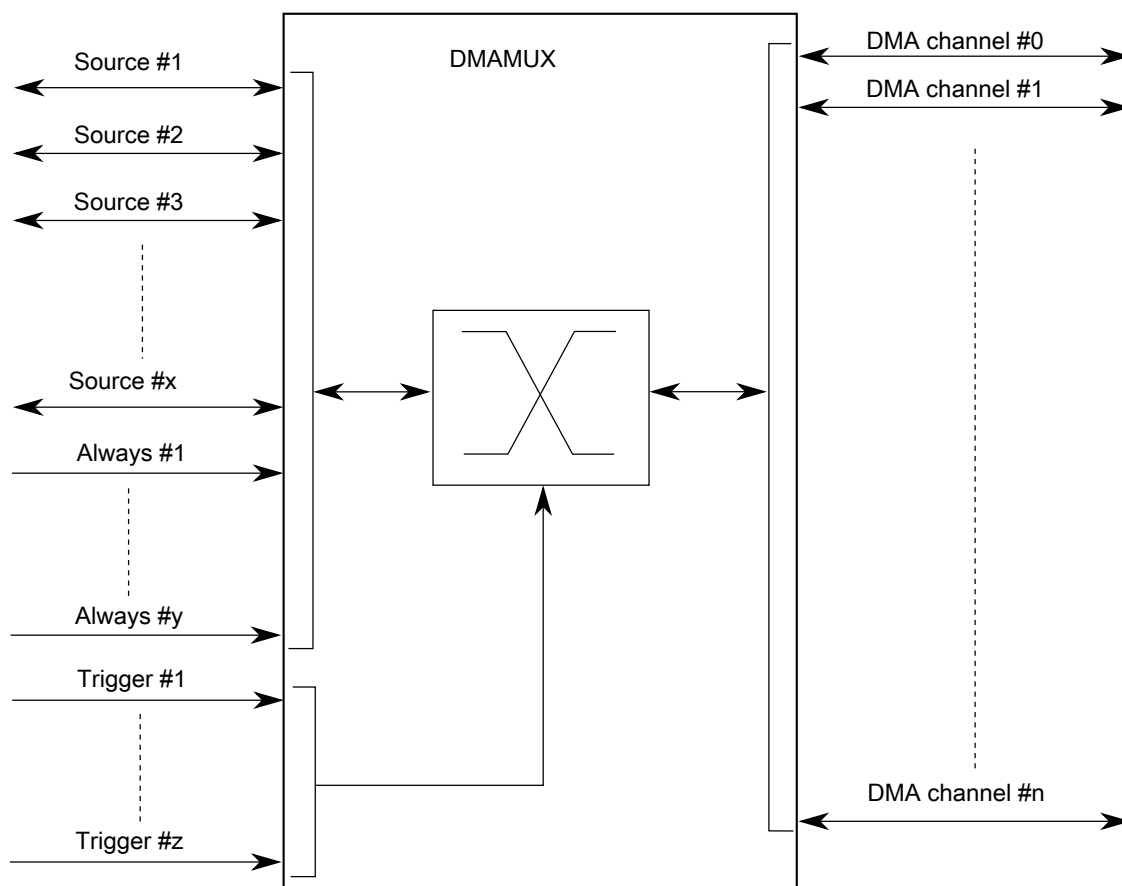


Figure 24-1. DMAMUX block diagram

24.2.2 Features

The DMAMUX module provides these features:

- Up to 59 peripheral slots and up to four always-on slots can be routed to 32 channels.
- 32 independently selectable DMA channel routers.
 - The first four channels additionally provide a trigger functionality.
- Each channel router can be assigned to one of the possible peripheral DMA slots or to one of the always-on slots.

24.2.3 Modes of operation

The following operating modes are available:

- Disabled mode

In this mode, the DMA channel is disabled. Because disabling and enabling of DMA channels is done primarily via the DMA configuration registers, this mode is used mainly as the reset state for a DMA channel in the DMA channel MUX. It may also be used to temporarily suspend a DMA channel while reconfiguration of the system takes place, for example, changing the period of a DMA trigger.

- Normal mode

In this mode, a DMA source is routed directly to the specified DMA channel. The operation of the DMAMUX in this mode is completely transparent to the system.

- Periodic Trigger mode

In this mode, a DMA source may only request a DMA transfer, such as when a transmit buffer becomes empty or a receive buffer becomes full, periodically.

Configuration of the period is done in the registers of the periodic interrupt timer (PIT). This mode is available only for channels 0–3.

24.3 External signal description

The DMAMUX has no external pins.

24.4 Memory map/register definition

This section provides a detailed description of all memory-mapped registers in the DMAMUX.

DMAMUX memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4002_1000	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG0)	8	R/W	00h	24.4.1/468
4002_1001	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG1)	8	R/W	00h	24.4.1/468
4002_1002	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG2)	8	R/W	00h	24.4.1/468
4002_1003	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG3)	8	R/W	00h	24.4.1/468
4002_1004	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG4)	8	R/W	00h	24.4.1/468
4002_1005	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG5)	8	R/W	00h	24.4.1/468
4002_1006	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG6)	8	R/W	00h	24.4.1/468
4002_1007	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG7)	8	R/W	00h	24.4.1/468
4002_1008	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG8)	8	R/W	00h	24.4.1/468

Table continues on the next page...

DMAMUX memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4002_1009	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG9)	8	R/W	00h	24.4.1/468
4002_100A	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG10)	8	R/W	00h	24.4.1/468
4002_100B	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG11)	8	R/W	00h	24.4.1/468
4002_100C	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG12)	8	R/W	00h	24.4.1/468
4002_100D	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG13)	8	R/W	00h	24.4.1/468
4002_100E	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG14)	8	R/W	00h	24.4.1/468
4002_100F	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG15)	8	R/W	00h	24.4.1/468
4002_1010	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG16)	8	R/W	00h	24.4.1/468
4002_1011	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG17)	8	R/W	00h	24.4.1/468
4002_1012	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG18)	8	R/W	00h	24.4.1/468
4002_1013	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG19)	8	R/W	00h	24.4.1/468
4002_1014	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG20)	8	R/W	00h	24.4.1/468
4002_1015	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG21)	8	R/W	00h	24.4.1/468
4002_1016	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG22)	8	R/W	00h	24.4.1/468
4002_1017	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG23)	8	R/W	00h	24.4.1/468
4002_1018	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG24)	8	R/W	00h	24.4.1/468
4002_1019	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG25)	8	R/W	00h	24.4.1/468
4002_101A	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG26)	8	R/W	00h	24.4.1/468
4002_101B	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG27)	8	R/W	00h	24.4.1/468
4002_101C	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG28)	8	R/W	00h	24.4.1/468
4002_101D	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG29)	8	R/W	00h	24.4.1/468
4002_101E	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG30)	8	R/W	00h	24.4.1/468
4002_101F	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG31)	8	R/W	00h	24.4.1/468

24.4.1 Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFGn)

Each of the DMA channels can be independently enabled/disabled and associated with one of the DMA slots (peripheral slots or always-on slots) in the system.

NOTE

Setting multiple CHCFG registers with the same source value will result in unpredictable behavior. This is true, even if a channel is disabled (ENBL==0).

Before changing the trigger or source settings, a DMA channel must be disabled via CHCFGn[ENBL].

Address: 4002_1000h base + 0h offset + (1d × i), where i=0d to 31d

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	ENBL	TRIG	SOURCE					
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DMAMUX_CHCFGn field descriptions

Field	Description
7 ENBL	<p>DMA Channel Enable</p> <p>Enables the DMA channel.</p> <p>0 DMA channel is disabled. This mode is primarily used during configuration of the DMAMux. The DMA has separate channel enables/disables, which should be used to disable or reconfigure a DMA channel.</p> <p>1 DMA channel is enabled</p>
6 TRIG	<p>DMA Channel Trigger Enable</p> <p>Enables the periodic trigger capability for the triggered DMA channel.</p> <p>0 Triggering is disabled. If triggering is disabled and ENBL is set, the DMA Channel will simply route the specified source to the DMA channel. (Normal mode)</p> <p>1 Triggering is enabled. If triggering is enabled and ENBL is set, the DMAMUX is in Periodic Trigger mode.</p>
SOURCE	<p>DMA Channel Source (Slot)</p> <p>Specifies which DMA source, if any, is routed to a particular DMA channel. See the chip-specific DMAMUX information for details about the peripherals and their slot numbers.</p>

24.5 Functional description

The primary purpose of the DMAMUX is to provide flexibility in the system's use of the available DMA channels.

As such, configuration of the DMAMUX is intended to be a static procedure done during execution of the system boot code. However, if the procedure outlined in [Enabling and configuring sources](#) is followed, the configuration of the DMAMUX may be changed during the normal operation of the system.

Functionally, the DMAMUX channels may be divided into two classes:

- Channels that implement the normal routing functionality plus periodic triggering capability
- Channels that implement only the normal routing functionality

24.5.1 DMA channels with periodic triggering capability

Besides the normal routing functionality, the first 4 channels of the DMAMUX provide a special periodic triggering capability that can be used to provide an automatic mechanism to transmit bytes, frames, or packets at fixed intervals without the need for processor intervention.

The trigger is generated by the periodic interrupt timer (PIT); as such, the configuration of the periodic triggering interval is done via configuration registers in the PIT. See the section on periodic interrupt timer for more information on this topic.

Note

Because of the dynamic nature of the system (due to DMA channel priorities, bus arbitration, interrupt service routine lengths, etc.), the number of clock cycles between a trigger and the actual DMA transfer cannot be guaranteed.

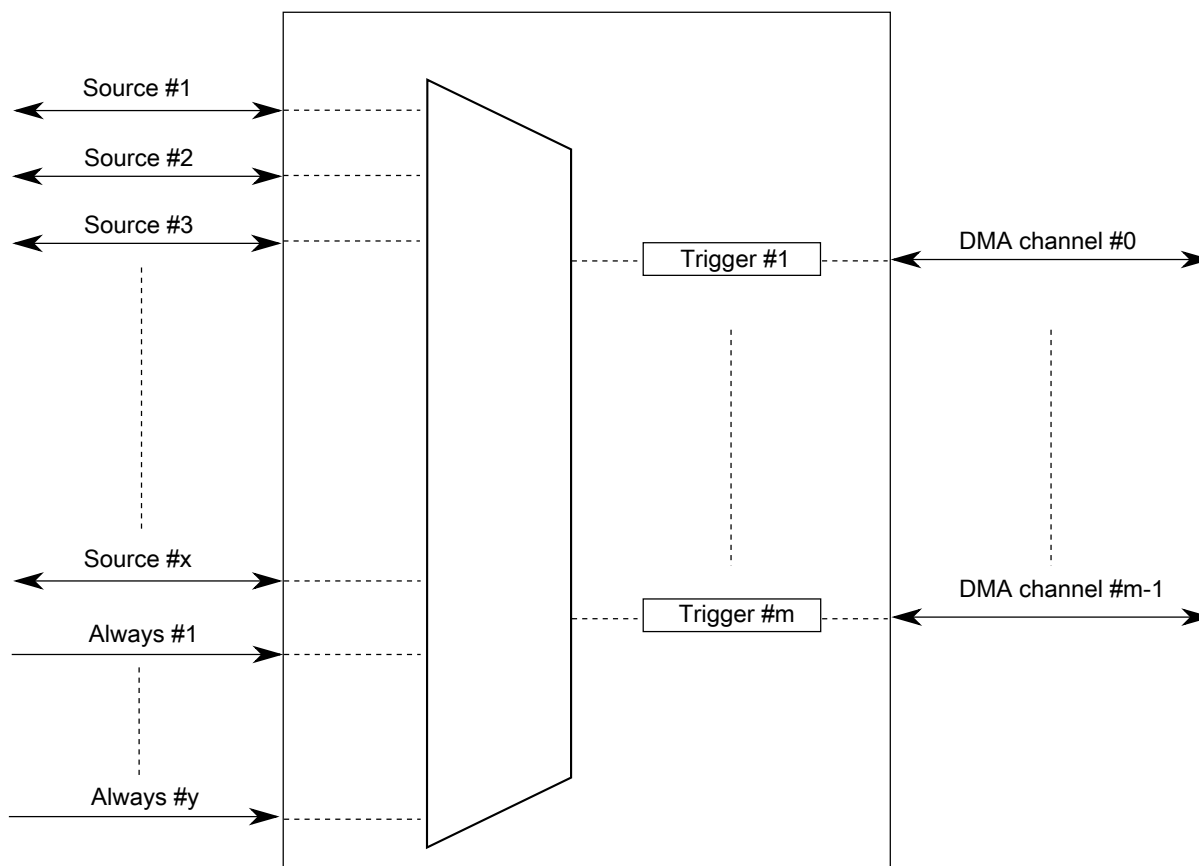


Figure 24-2. DMAMUX triggered channels

The DMA channel triggering capability allows the system to schedule regular DMA transfers, usually on the transmit side of certain peripherals, without the intervention of the processor. This trigger works by gating the request from the peripheral to the DMA until a trigger event has been seen. This is illustrated in the following figure.

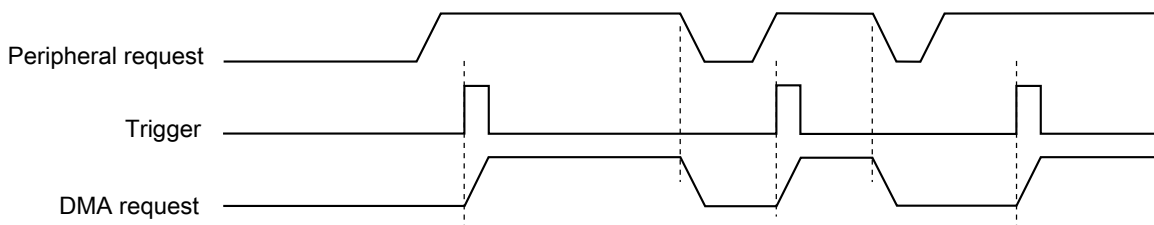


Figure 24-3. DMAMUX channel triggering: normal operation

After the DMA request has been serviced, the peripheral will negate its request, effectively resetting the gating mechanism until the peripheral reasserts its request and the next trigger event is seen. This means that if a trigger is seen, but the peripheral is not requesting a transfer, then that trigger will be ignored. This situation is illustrated in the following figure.

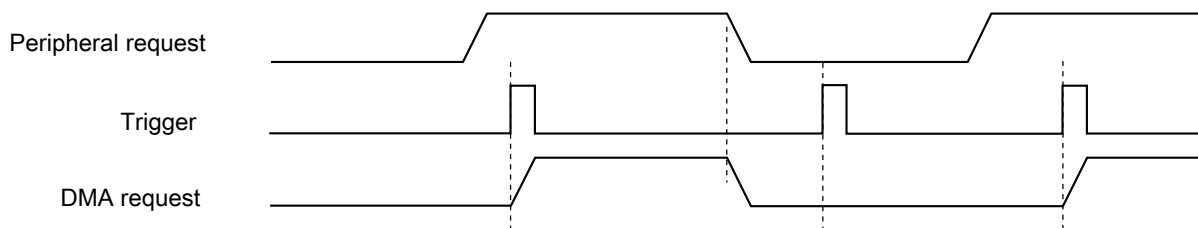


Figure 24-4. DMAMUX channel triggering: ignored trigger

This triggering capability may be used with any peripheral that supports DMA transfers, and is most useful for two types of situations:

- Periodically polling external devices on a particular bus

As an example, the transmit side of an SPI is assigned to a DMA channel with a trigger, as described above. After it has been set up, the SPI will request DMA transfers, presumably from memory, as long as its transmit buffer is empty. By using a trigger on this channel, the SPI transfers can be automatically performed every 5 μ s (as an example). On the receive side of the SPI, the SPI and DMA can be configured to transfer receive data into memory, effectively implementing a method to periodically read data from external devices and transfer the results into memory without processor intervention.

- Using the GPIO ports to drive or sample waveforms

By configuring the DMA to transfer data to one or more GPIO ports, it is possible to create complex waveforms using tabular data stored in on-chip memory. Conversely, using the DMA to periodically transfer data from one or more GPIO ports, it is possible to sample complex waveforms and store the results in tabular form in on-chip memory.

A more detailed description of the capability of each trigger, including resolution, range of values, and so on, may be found in the periodic interrupt timer section.

24.5.2 DMA channels with no triggering capability

The other channels of the DMAMUX provide the normal routing functionality as described in [Modes of operation](#).

24.5.3 Always-enabled DMA sources

In addition to the peripherals that can be used as DMA sources, there are four additional DMA sources that are always enabled. Unlike the peripheral DMA sources, where the peripheral controls the flow of data during DMA transfers, the sources that are always enabled provide no such "throttling" of the data transfers. These sources are most useful in the following cases:

- Performing DMA transfers to/from GPIO—Moving data from/to one or more GPIO pins, either unthrottled (that is, as fast as possible), or periodically (using the DMA triggering capability).
- Performing DMA transfers from memory to memory—Moving data from memory to memory, typically as fast as possible, sometimes with software activation.
- Performing DMA transfers from memory to the external bus, or vice-versa—Similar to memory to memory transfers, this is typically done as quickly as possible.
- Any DMA transfer that requires software activation—Any DMA transfer that should be explicitly started by software.

In cases where software should initiate the start of a DMA transfer, an always-enabled DMA source can be used to provide maximum flexibility. When activating a DMA channel via software, subsequent executions of the minor loop require that a new start event be sent. This can either be a new software activation, or a transfer request from the DMA channel MUX. The options for doing this are:

- Transfer all data in a single minor loop.

By configuring the DMA to transfer all of the data in a single minor loop (that is, major loop counter = 1), no reactivation of the channel is necessary. The disadvantage to this option is the reduced granularity in determining the load that the DMA transfer will impose on the system. For this option, the DMA channel must be disabled in the DMA channel MUX.

- Use explicit software reactivation.

In this option, the DMA is configured to transfer the data using both minor and major loops, but the processor is required to reactivate the channel by writing to the DMA registers *after every minor loop*. For this option, the DMA channel must be disabled in the DMA channel MUX.

- Use an always-enabled DMA source.

In this option, the DMA is configured to transfer the data using both minor and major loops, and the DMA channel MUX does the channel reactivation. For this option, the DMA channel should be enabled and pointing to an "always enabled" source. Note that the reactivation of the channel can be continuous (DMA triggering is disabled) or can use the DMA triggering capability. In this manner, it is possible to execute periodic transfers of packets of data from one source to another, without processor intervention.

24.6 Initialization/application information

This section provides instructions for initializing the DMA channel MUX.

24.6.1 Reset

The reset state of each individual bit is shown in [Memory map/register definition](#). In summary, after reset, all channels are disabled and must be explicitly enabled before use.

24.6.2 Enabling and configuring sources

To enable a source with periodic triggering:

1. Determine with which DMA channel the source will be associated. Note that only the first 4 DMA channels have periodic triggering capability.
2. Clear the CHCFG[ENBL] and CHCFG[TRIG] fields of the DMA channel.

3. Ensure that the DMA channel is properly configured in the DMA. The DMA channel may be enabled at this point.
4. Configure the corresponding timer.
5. Select the source to be routed to the DMA channel. Write to the corresponding CHCFG register, ensuring that the CHCFG[ENBL] and CHCFG[TRIG] fields are set.

NOTE

The following is an example. See the chip configuration details for the number of this device's DMA channels that have triggering capability.

To configure source #5 transmit for use with DMA channel 1, with periodic triggering capability:

1. Write 0x00 to CHCFG1.
2. Configure channel 1 in the DMA, including enabling the channel.
3. Configure a timer for the desired trigger interval.
4. Write 0xC5 to CHCFG1.

The following code example illustrates steps 1 and 4 above:

```
void DMAMUX_Init(uint8_t DMA_CH, uint8_t DMAMUX_SOURCE)
{
    DMAMUX_0.CHCFG[DMA_CH].B.SOURCE = DMAMUX_SOURCE;
    DMAMUX_0.CHCFG[DMA_CH].B.ENBL   = 1;
    DMAMUX_0.CHCFG[DMA_CH].B.TRIG   = 1;
}
```

To enable a source, without periodic triggering:

1. Determine with which DMA channel the source will be associated. Note that only the first 4 DMA channels have periodic triggering capability.
2. Clear the CHCFG[ENBL] and CHCFG[TRIG] fields of the DMA channel.
3. Ensure that the DMA channel is properly configured in the DMA. The DMA channel may be enabled at this point.
4. Select the source to be routed to the DMA channel. Write to the corresponding CHCFG register, ensuring that CHCFG[ENBL] is set while CHCFG[TRIG] is cleared.

NOTE

The following is an example. See the chip configuration details for the number of this device's DMA channels that have triggering capability.

To configure source #5 transmit for use with DMA channel 1, with no periodic triggering capability:

1. Write 0x00 to CHCFG1.

2. Configure channel 1 in the DMA, including enabling the channel.
3. Write 0x85 to CHCFG1.

The following code example illustrates steps 1 and 3 above:

To disable a source:

A particular DMA source may be disabled by not writing the corresponding source value into any of the CHCFG registers. Additionally, some module-specific configuration may be necessary. See the appropriate section for more details.

To switch the source of a DMA channel:

1. Disable the DMA channel in the DMA and reconfigure the channel for the new source.
2. Clear the CHCFG[ENBL] and CHCFG[TRIG] bits of the DMA channel.
3. Select the source to be routed to the DMA channel. Write to the corresponding CHCFG register, ensuring that the CHCFG[ENBL] and CHCFG[TRIG] fields are set.

To switch DMA channel 8 from source #5 transmit to source #7 transmit:

1. In the DMA configuration registers, disable DMA channel 8 and reconfigure it to handle the transfers to peripheral slot 7. This example assumes channel 8 doesn't have triggering capability.
2. Write 0x00 to CHCFG8.
3. Write 0x87 to CHCFG8. (In this example, setting CHCFG[TRIG] would have no effect due to the assumption that channel 8 does not support the periodic triggering functionality.)

The following code example illustrates steps 2 and 3 above:



Chapter 25

Enhanced Direct Memory Access (eDMA)

25.1 Introduction

The enhanced direct memory access (eDMA) controller is a second-generation module capable of performing complex data transfers with minimal intervention from a host processor. The hardware microarchitecture includes:

- A DMA engine that performs:
 - Source address and destination address calculations
 - Data-movement operations
- Local memory containing transfer control descriptors for each of the 32 channels

25.1.1 eDMA system block diagram

[Figure 25-1](#) illustrates the components of the eDMA system, including the eDMA module ("engine").

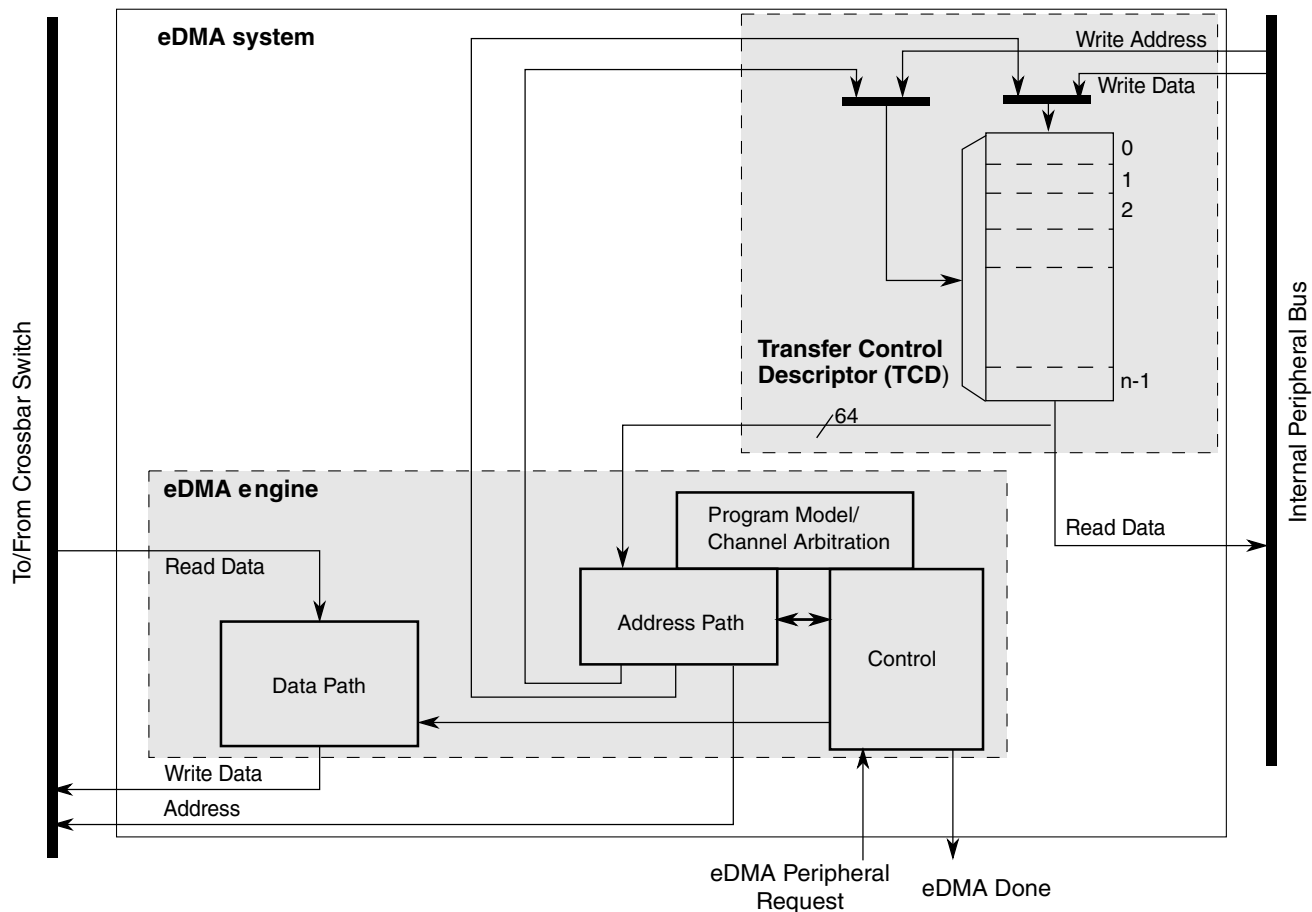


Figure 25-1. eDMA system block diagram

25.1.2 Block parts

The eDMA module is partitioned into two major modules: the eDMA engine and the transfer-control descriptor local memory.

The eDMA engine is further partitioned into four submodules:

Table 25-1. eDMA engine submodules

Submodule	Function
Address path	<p>This block implements registered versions of two channel transfer control descriptors, channel x and channel y, and manages all master bus-address calculations. All the channels provide the same functionality. This structure allows data transfers associated with one channel to be preempted after the completion of a read/write sequence if a higher priority channel activation is asserted while the first channel is active. After a channel is activated, it runs until the minor loop is completed, unless preempted by a higher priority channel. This provides a mechanism (enabled by DCHPRI_n[ECP]) where a large data move operation can be preempted to minimize the time another channel is blocked from execution.</p> <p>When any channel is selected to execute, the contents of its TCD are read from local memory and loaded into the address path channel x registers for a normal start and into channel y registers for a preemption start. After the minor loop completes execution, the address path hardware writes</p>

Table continues on the next page...

Table 25-1. eDMA engine submodules (continued)

Submodule	Function
	the new values for the TCDn_{SADDR, DADDR, CITER} back to local memory. If the major iteration count is exhausted, additional processing is performed, including the final address pointer updates, reloading the TCDn_CITER field, and a possible fetch of the next TCDn from memory as part of a scatter/gather operation.
Data path	<p>This block implements the bus master read/write datapath. It includes a data buffer and the necessary multiplex logic to support any required data alignment. The internal read data bus is the primary input, and the internal write data bus is the primary output.</p> <p>The address and data path modules directly support the 2-stage pipelined internal bus. The address path module represents the 1st stage of the bus pipeline (address phase), while the data path module implements the 2nd stage of the pipeline (data phase).</p>
Program model/channel arbitration	This block implements the first section of the eDMA programming model as well as the channel arbitration logic. The programming model registers are connected to the internal peripheral bus. The eDMA peripheral request inputs and interrupt request outputs are also connected to this block (via control logic).
Control	This block provides all the control functions for the eDMA engine. For data transfers where the source and destination sizes are equal, the eDMA engine performs a series of source read/destination write operations until the number of bytes specified in the minor loop byte count has moved. For descriptors where the sizes are not equal, multiple accesses of the smaller size data are required for each reference of the larger size. As an example, if the source size references 16-bit data and the destination is 32-bit data, two reads are performed, then one 32-bit write.

The transfer-control descriptor local memory is further partitioned into:

Table 25-2. Transfer control descriptor memory

Submodule	Description
Memory controller	This logic implements the required dual-ported controller, managing accesses from the eDMA engine as well as references from the internal peripheral bus. As noted earlier, in the event of simultaneous accesses, the eDMA engine is given priority and the peripheral transaction is stalled.
Memory array	TCD storage for each channel's transfer profile.

25.1.3 Features

The eDMA is a highly programmable data-transfer engine optimized to minimize any required intervention from the host processor. It is intended for use in applications where the data size to be transferred is statically known and not defined within the transferred data itself. The eDMA module features:

- All data movement via dual-address transfers: read from source, write to destination
 - Programmable source and destination addresses and transfer size
 - Support for enhanced addressing modes

- 32-channel implementation that performs complex data transfers with minimal intervention from a host processor
 - Internal data buffer, used as temporary storage to support 16- and 32-byte transfers
 - Connections to the crossbar switch for bus mastering the data movement
- Transfer control descriptor (TCD) organized to support two-deep, nested transfer operations
 - 32-byte TCD stored in local memory for each channel
 - An inner data transfer loop defined by a minor byte transfer count
 - An outer data transfer loop defined by a major iteration count
- Channel activation via one of three methods:
 - Explicit software initiation
 - Initiation via a channel-to-channel linking mechanism for continuous transfers
 - Peripheral-paced hardware requests, one per channel
- Fixed-priority and round-robin channel arbitration
- Channel completion reported via programmable interrupt requests
 - One interrupt per channel, which can be asserted at completion of major iteration count
 - Programmable error terminations per channel and logically summed together to form one error interrupt to the interrupt controller
- Programmable support for scatter/gather DMA processing
- Support for complex data structures

In the discussion of this module, n is used to reference the channel number.

25.2 Modes of operation

The eDMA operates in the following modes:

Table 25-3. Modes of operation

Mode	Description
Normal	<p>In Normal mode, the eDMA transfers data between a source and a destination. The source and destination can be a memory block or an I/O block capable of operation with the eDMA.</p> <p>A service request initiates a transfer of a specific number of bytes (NBYTES) as specified in the transfer control descriptor (TCD). The minor loop is the sequence of read-write operations that transfers these NBYTES per service request. Each service request executes one iteration of the major loop, which transfers NBYTES of data.</p>
Debug	<p>DMA operation is configurable in Debug mode via the control register:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If CR[EDBG] is cleared, the DMA continues to operate. • If CR[EDBG] is set, the eDMA stops transferring data. If Debug mode is entered while a channel is active, the eDMA continues operation until the channel retires.
Wait	<p>Before entering Wait mode, the DMA attempts to complete its current transfer. After the transfer completes, the device enters Wait mode.</p>

25.3 Memory map/register definition

The eDMA's programming model is partitioned into two regions:

- The first region defines a number of registers providing control functions
- The second region corresponds to the local transfer control descriptor (TCD) memory

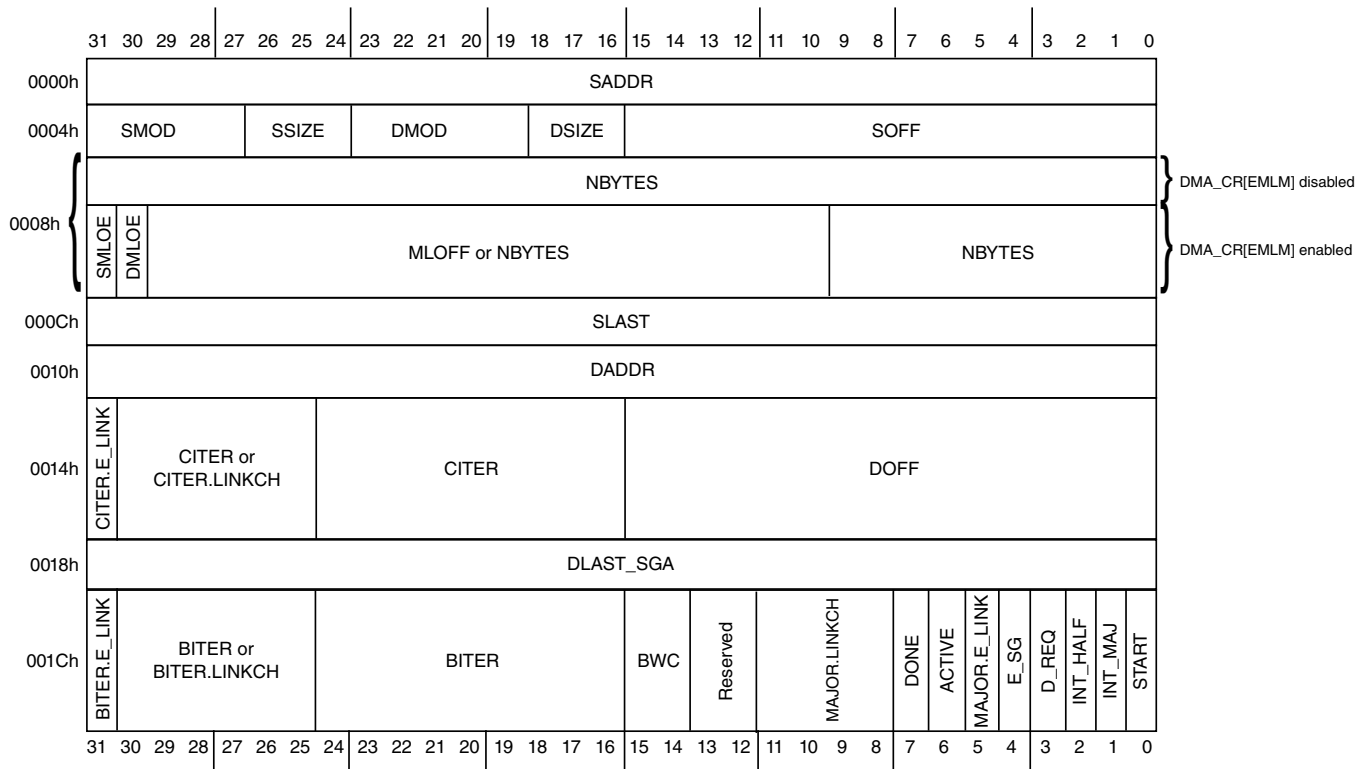
25.3.1 TCD memory

Each channel requires a 32-byte transfer control descriptor for defining the desired data movement operation. The channel descriptors are stored in the local memory in sequential order: channel 0, channel 1, ... channel 31. Each TCD_n definition is presented as 11 registers of 16 or 32 bits.

25.3.2 TCD initialization

Prior to activating a channel, you must initialize its TCD with the appropriate transfer profile.

25.3.3 TCD structure



25.3.4 Reserved memory and bit fields

- Reading reserved bits in a register returns the value of zero.
- Writes to reserved bits in a register are ignored.
- Reading or writing a reserved memory location generates a bus error.

DMA memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/page
4000_8000	Control Register (DMA_CR)	32	R/W	0000_0400h	25.3.1/505
4000_8004	Error Status Register (DMA_ES)	32	R	0000_0000h	25.3.2/508
4000_800C	Enable Request Register (DMA_ERQ)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	25.3.3/510
4000_8014	Enable Error Interrupt Register (DMA_EEI)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	25.3.4/514
4000_8018	Clear Enable Error Interrupt Register (DMA_CEEI)	8	W (always reads 0)	00h	25.3.5/517
4000_8019	Set Enable Error Interrupt Register (DMA_SEEI)	8	W (always reads 0)	00h	25.3.6/518

Table continues on the next page...

DMA memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_801A	Clear Enable Request Register (DMA_CERQ)	8	W (always reads 0)	00h	25.3.7/519
4000_801B	Set Enable Request Register (DMA_SERQ)	8	W (always reads 0)	00h	25.3.8/520
4000_801C	Clear DONE Status Bit Register (DMA_CDNE)	8	W (always reads 0)	00h	25.3.9/521
4000_801D	Set START Bit Register (DMA_SSRT)	8	W (always reads 0)	00h	25.3.10/522
4000_801E	Clear Error Register (DMA_CERR)	8	W (always reads 0)	00h	25.3.11/523
4000_801F	Clear Interrupt Request Register (DMA_CINT)	8	W (always reads 0)	00h	25.3.12/524
4000_8024	Interrupt Request Register (DMA_INT)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	25.3.13/525
4000_802C	Error Register (DMA_ERR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	25.3.14/528
4000_8034	Hardware Request Status Register (DMA_HRS)	32	R	0000_0000h	25.3.15/532
4000_8044	Enable Asynchronous Request in Stop Register (DMA_EARS)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	25.3.16/538
4000_8100	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI3)	8	R/W	See section	25.3.17/541
4000_8101	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI2)	8	R/W	See section	25.3.17/541
4000_8102	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI1)	8	R/W	See section	25.3.17/541
4000_8103	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI0)	8	R/W	See section	25.3.17/541
4000_8104	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI7)	8	R/W	See section	25.3.17/541
4000_8105	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI6)	8	R/W	See section	25.3.17/541
4000_8106	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI5)	8	R/W	See section	25.3.17/541
4000_8107	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI4)	8	R/W	See section	25.3.17/541
4000_8108	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI11)	8	R/W	See section	25.3.17/541
4000_8109	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI10)	8	R/W	See section	25.3.17/541
4000_810A	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI9)	8	R/W	See section	25.3.17/541
4000_810B	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI8)	8	R/W	See section	25.3.17/541
4000_810C	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI15)	8	R/W	See section	25.3.17/541
4000_810D	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI14)	8	R/W	See section	25.3.17/541
4000_810E	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI13)	8	R/W	See section	25.3.17/541
4000_810F	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI12)	8	R/W	See section	25.3.17/541
4000_8110	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI19)	8	R/W	See section	25.3.17/541
4000_8111	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI18)	8	R/W	See section	25.3.17/541
4000_8112	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI17)	8	R/W	See section	25.3.17/541

Table continues on the next page...

DMA memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_8113	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI16)	8	R/W	See section	25.3.17/541
4000_8114	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI23)	8	R/W	See section	25.3.17/541
4000_8115	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI22)	8	R/W	See section	25.3.17/541
4000_8116	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI21)	8	R/W	See section	25.3.17/541
4000_8117	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI20)	8	R/W	See section	25.3.17/541
4000_8118	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI27)	8	R/W	See section	25.3.17/541
4000_8119	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI26)	8	R/W	See section	25.3.17/541
4000_811A	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI25)	8	R/W	See section	25.3.17/541
4000_811B	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI24)	8	R/W	See section	25.3.17/541
4000_811C	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI31)	8	R/W	See section	25.3.17/541
4000_811D	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI30)	8	R/W	See section	25.3.17/541
4000_811E	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI29)	8	R/W	See section	25.3.17/541
4000_811F	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI28)	8	R/W	See section	25.3.17/541
4000_9000	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD0_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.18/542
4000_9004	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD0_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.19/543
4000_9006	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD0_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.20/543
4000_9008	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD0_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.21/544
4000_9008	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD0_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.22/545
4000_9008	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD0_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.23/546
4000_900C	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD0_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.24/548
4000_9010	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD0_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.25/548
4000_9014	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD0_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.26/549
4000_9016	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD0_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.27/549
4000_9016	DMA_TCD0_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.28/550
4000_9018	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD0_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.29/551
4000_901C	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD0_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.30/552
4000_901E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD0_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.31/554
4000_901E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD0_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.32/555
4000_9020	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD1_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.18/542
4000_9024	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD1_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.19/543

Table continues on the next page...

DMA memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_9026	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD1_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.20/543
4000_9028	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD1_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.21/544
4000_9028	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD1_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.22/545
4000_9028	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD1_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.23/546
4000_902C	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD1_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.24/548
4000_9030	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD1_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.25/548
4000_9034	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD1_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.26/549
4000_9036	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD1_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.27/549
4000_9036	DMA_TCD1_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.28/550
4000_9038	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD1_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.29/551
4000_903C	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD1_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.30/552
4000_903E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD1_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.31/554
4000_903E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD1_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.32/555
4000_9040	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD2_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.18/542
4000_9044	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD2_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.19/543
4000_9046	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD2_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.20/543
4000_9048	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD2_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.21/544
4000_9048	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD2_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.22/545
4000_9048	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD2_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.23/546
4000_904C	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD2_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.24/548
4000_9050	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD2_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.25/548
4000_9054	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD2_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.26/549
4000_9056	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD2_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.27/549
4000_9056	DMA_TCD2_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.28/550

Table continues on the next page...

DMA memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_9058	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD2_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.29/551
4000_905C	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD2_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.30/552
4000_905E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD2_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.31/554
4000_905E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD2_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.32/555
4000_9060	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD3_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.18/542
4000_9064	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD3_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.19/543
4000_9066	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD3_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.20/543
4000_9068	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD3_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.21/544
4000_9068	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD3_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.22/545
4000_9068	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD3_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.23/546
4000_906C	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD3_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.24/548
4000_9070	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD3_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.25/548
4000_9074	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD3_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.26/549
4000_9076	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD3_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.27/549
4000_9076	DMA_TCD3_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.28/550
4000_9078	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD3_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.29/551
4000_907C	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD3_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.30/552
4000_907E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD3_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.31/554
4000_907E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD3_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.32/555
4000_9080	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD4_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.18/542
4000_9084	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD4_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.19/543
4000_9086	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD4_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.20/543
4000_9088	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD4_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.21/544
4000_9088	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD4_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.22/545

Table continues on the next page...

DMA memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_9088	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD4_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.23/546
4000_908C	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD4_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.24/548
4000_9090	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD4_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.25/548
4000_9094	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD4_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.26/549
4000_9096	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD4_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.27/549
4000_9096	DMA_TCD4_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.28/550
4000_9098	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD4_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.29/551
4000_909C	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD4_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.30/552
4000_909E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD4_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.31/554
4000_909E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD4_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.32/555
4000_90A0	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD5_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.18/542
4000_90A4	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD5_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.19/543
4000_90A6	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD5_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.20/543
4000_90A8	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD5_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.21/544
4000_90A8	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD5_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.22/545
4000_90A8	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD5_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.23/546
4000_90AC	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD5_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.24/548
4000_90B0	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD5_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.25/548
4000_90B4	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD5_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.26/549
4000_90B6	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD5_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.27/549
4000_90B6	DMA_TCD5_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.28/550
4000_90B8	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD5_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.29/551
4000_90BC	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD5_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.30/552
4000_90BE	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD5_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.31/554

Table continues on the next page...

DMA memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_90BE	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD5_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.32/555
4000_90C0	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD6_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.18/542
4000_90C4	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD6_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.19/543
4000_90C6	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD6_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.20/543
4000_90C8	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD6_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.21/544
4000_90C8	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD6_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.22/545
4000_90C8	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD6_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.23/546
4000_90CC	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD6_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.24/548
4000_90D0	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD6_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.25/548
4000_90D4	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD6_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.26/549
4000_90D6	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD6_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.27/549
4000_90D6	DMA_TCD6_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.28/550
4000_90D8	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD6_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.29/551
4000_90DC	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD6_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.30/552
4000_90DE	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD6_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.31/554
4000_90DE	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD6_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.32/555
4000_90E0	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD7_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.18/542
4000_90E4	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD7_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.19/543
4000_90E6	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD7_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.20/543
4000_90E8	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD7_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.21/544
4000_90E8	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD7_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.22/545
4000_90E8	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD7_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.23/546
4000_90EC	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD7_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.24/548
4000_90F0	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD7_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.25/548
4000_90F4	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD7_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.26/549

Table continues on the next page...

DMA memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_90F6	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD7_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.27/549
4000_90F6	DMA_TCD7_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.28/550
4000_90F8	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD7_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.29/551
4000_90FC	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD7_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.30/552
4000_90FE	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD7_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.31/554
4000_90FE	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD7_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.32/555
4000_9100	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD8_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.18/542
4000_9104	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD8_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.19/543
4000_9106	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD8_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.20/543
4000_9108	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD8_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.21/544
4000_9108	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD8_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.22/545
4000_9108	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD8_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.23/546
4000_910C	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD8_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.24/548
4000_9110	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD8_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.25/548
4000_9114	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD8_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.26/549
4000_9116	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD8_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.27/549
4000_9116	DMA_TCD8_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.28/550
4000_9118	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD8_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.29/551
4000_911C	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD8_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.30/552
4000_911E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD8_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.31/554
4000_911E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD8_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.32/555
4000_9120	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD9_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.18/542
4000_9124	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD9_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.19/543
4000_9126	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD9_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.20/543
4000_9128	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD9_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.21/544

Table continues on the next page...

DMA memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_9128	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD9_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.22/545
4000_9128	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD9_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.23/546
4000_912C	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD9_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.24/548
4000_9130	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD9_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.25/548
4000_9134	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD9_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.26/549
4000_9136	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD9_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.27/549
4000_9136	DMA_TCD9_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.28/550
4000_9138	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD9_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.29/551
4000_913C	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD9_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.30/552
4000_913E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD9_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.31/554
4000_913E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD9_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.32/555
4000_9140	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD10_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.18/542
4000_9144	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD10_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.19/543
4000_9146	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD10_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.20/543
4000_9148	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD10_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.21/544
4000_9148	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD10_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.22/545
4000_9148	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD10_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.23/546
4000_914C	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD10_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.24/548
4000_9150	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD10_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.25/548
4000_9154	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD10_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.26/549
4000_9156	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD10_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.27/549
4000_9156	DMA_TCD10_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.28/550
4000_9158	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD10_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.29/551
4000_915C	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD10_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.30/552

Table continues on the next page...

DMA memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_915E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD10_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.31/554
4000_915E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD10_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.32/555
4000_9160	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD11_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.18/542
4000_9164	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD11_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.19/543
4000_9166	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD11_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.20/543
4000_9168	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD11_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.21/544
4000_9168	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD11_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.22/545
4000_9168	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD11_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.23/546
4000_916C	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD11_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.24/548
4000_9170	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD11_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.25/548
4000_9174	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD11_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.26/549
4000_9176	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD11_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.27/549
4000_9176	DMA_TCD11_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.28/550
4000_9178	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD11_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.29/551
4000_917C	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD11_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.30/552
4000_917E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD11_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.31/554
4000_917E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD11_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.32/555
4000_9180	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD12_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.18/542
4000_9184	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD12_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.19/543
4000_9186	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD12_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.20/543
4000_9188	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD12_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.21/544
4000_9188	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD12_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.22/545
4000_9188	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD12_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.23/546

Table continues on the next page...

DMA memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_918C	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD12_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.24/548
4000_9190	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD12_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.25/548
4000_9194	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD12_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.26/549
4000_9196	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD12_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.27/549
4000_9196	DMA_TCD12_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.28/550
4000_9198	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD12_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.29/551
4000_919C	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD12_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.30/552
4000_919E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD12_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.31/554
4000_919E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD12_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.32/555
4000_91A0	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD13_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.18/542
4000_91A4	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD13_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.19/543
4000_91A6	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD13_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.20/543
4000_91A8	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD13_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.21/544
4000_91A8	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD13_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.22/545
4000_91A8	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD13_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.23/546
4000_91AC	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD13_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.24/548
4000_91B0	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD13_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.25/548
4000_91B4	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD13_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.26/549
4000_91B6	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD13_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.27/549
4000_91B6	DMA_TCD13_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.28/550
4000_91B8	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD13_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.29/551
4000_91BC	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD13_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.30/552
4000_91BE	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD13_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.31/554
4000_91BE	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD13_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.32/555

Table continues on the next page...

DMA memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_91C0	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD14_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.18/542
4000_91C4	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD14_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.19/543
4000_91C6	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD14_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.20/543
4000_91C8	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD14_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.21/544
4000_91C8	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD14_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.22/545
4000_91C8	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD14_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.23/546
4000_91CC	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD14_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.24/548
4000_91D0	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD14_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.25/548
4000_91D4	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD14_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.26/549
4000_91D6	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD14_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.27/549
4000_91D6	DMA_TCD14_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.28/550
4000_91D8	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD14_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.29/551
4000_91DC	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD14_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.30/552
4000_91DE	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD14_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.31/554
4000_91DE	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD14_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.32/555
4000_91E0	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD15_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.18/542
4000_91E4	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD15_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.19/543
4000_91E6	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD15_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.20/543
4000_91E8	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD15_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.21/544
4000_91E8	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD15_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.22/545
4000_91E8	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD15_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.23/546
4000_91EC	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD15_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.24/548
4000_91F0	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD15_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.25/548
4000_91F4	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD15_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.26/549

Table continues on the next page...

DMA memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_91F6	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD15_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.27/549
4000_91F6	DMA_TCD15_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.28/550
4000_91F8	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD15_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.29/551
4000_91FC	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD15_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.30/552
4000_91FE	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD15_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.31/554
4000_91FE	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD15_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.32/555
4000_9200	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD16_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.18/542
4000_9204	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD16_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.19/543
4000_9206	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD16_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.20/543
4000_9208	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD16_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.21/544
4000_9208	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD16_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.22/545
4000_9208	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD16_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.23/546
4000_920C	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD16_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.24/548
4000_9210	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD16_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.25/548
4000_9214	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD16_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.26/549
4000_9216	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD16_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.27/549
4000_9216	DMA_TCD16_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.28/550
4000_9218	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD16_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.29/551
4000_921C	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD16_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.30/552
4000_921E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD16_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.31/554
4000_921E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD16_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.32/555
4000_9220	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD17_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.18/542
4000_9224	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD17_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.19/543
4000_9226	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD17_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.20/543

Table continues on the next page...

DMA memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_9228	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD17_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.21/544
4000_9228	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD17_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.22/545
4000_9228	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD17_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.23/546
4000_922C	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD17_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.24/548
4000_9230	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD17_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.25/548
4000_9234	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD17_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.26/549
4000_9236	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD17_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.27/549
4000_9236	DMA_TCD17_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.28/550
4000_9238	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD17_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.29/551
4000_923C	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD17_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.30/552
4000_923E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD17_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.31/554
4000_923E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD17_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.32/555
4000_9240	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD18_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.18/542
4000_9244	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD18_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.19/543
4000_9246	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD18_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.20/543
4000_9248	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD18_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.21/544
4000_9248	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD18_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.22/545
4000_9248	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD18_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.23/546
4000_924C	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD18_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.24/548
4000_9250	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD18_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.25/548
4000_9254	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD18_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.26/549
4000_9256	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD18_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.27/549
4000_9256	DMA_TCD18_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.28/550
4000_9258	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD18_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.29/551

Table continues on the next page...

DMA memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_925C	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD18_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.30/552
4000_925E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD18_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.31/554
4000_925E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD18_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.32/555
4000_9260	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD19_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.18/542
4000_9264	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD19_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.19/543
4000_9266	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD19_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.20/543
4000_9268	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD19_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.21/544
4000_9268	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD19_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.22/545
4000_9268	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD19_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.23/546
4000_926C	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD19_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.24/548
4000_9270	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD19_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.25/548
4000_9274	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD19_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.26/549
4000_9276	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD19_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.27/549
4000_9276	DMA_TCD19_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.28/550
4000_9278	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD19_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.29/551
4000_927C	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD19_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.30/552
4000_927E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD19_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.31/554
4000_927E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD19_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.32/555
4000_9280	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD20_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.18/542
4000_9284	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD20_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.19/543
4000_9286	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD20_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.20/543
4000_9288	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD20_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.21/544
4000_9288	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD20_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.22/545
4000_9288	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD20_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.23/546

Table continues on the next page...

DMA memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_928C	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD20_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.24/548
4000_9290	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD20_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.25/548
4000_9294	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD20_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.26/549
4000_9296	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD20_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.27/549
4000_9296	DMA_TCD20_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.28/550
4000_9298	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD20_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.29/551
4000_929C	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD20_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.30/552
4000_929E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD20_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.31/554
4000_929E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD20_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.32/555
4000_92A0	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD21_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.18/542
4000_92A4	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD21_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.19/543
4000_92A6	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD21_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.20/543
4000_92A8	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD21_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.21/544
4000_92A8	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD21_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.22/545
4000_92A8	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD21_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.23/546
4000_92AC	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD21_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.24/548
4000_92B0	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD21_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.25/548
4000_92B4	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD21_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.26/549
4000_92B6	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD21_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.27/549
4000_92B6	DMA_TCD21_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.28/550
4000_92B8	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD21_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.29/551
4000_92BC	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD21_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.30/552
4000_92BE	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD21_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.31/554
4000_92BE	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD21_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.32/555

Table continues on the next page...

DMA memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_92C0	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD22_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.18/542
4000_92C4	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD22_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.19/543
4000_92C6	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD22_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.20/543
4000_92C8	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD22_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.21/544
4000_92C8	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD22_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.22/545
4000_92C8	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD22_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.23/546
4000_92CC	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD22_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.24/548
4000_92D0	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD22_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.25/548
4000_92D4	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD22_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.26/549
4000_92D6	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD22_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.27/549
4000_92D6	DMA_TCD22_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.28/550
4000_92D8	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD22_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.29/551
4000_92DC	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD22_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.30/552
4000_92DE	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD22_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.31/554
4000_92DE	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD22_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.32/555
4000_92E0	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD23_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.18/542
4000_92E4	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD23_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.19/543
4000_92E6	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD23_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.20/543
4000_92E8	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD23_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.21/544
4000_92E8	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD23_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.22/545
4000_92E8	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD23_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.23/546
4000_92EC	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD23_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.24/548
4000_92F0	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD23_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.25/548
4000_92F4	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD23_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.26/549

Table continues on the next page...

DMA memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_92F6	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD23_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.27/549
4000_92F6	DMA_TCD23_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.28/550
4000_92F8	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD23_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.29/551
4000_92FC	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD23_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.30/552
4000_92FE	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD23_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.31/554
4000_92FE	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD23_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.32/555
4000_9300	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD24_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.18/542
4000_9304	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD24_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.19/543
4000_9306	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD24_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.20/543
4000_9308	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD24_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.21/544
4000_9308	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD24_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.22/545
4000_9308	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD24_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.23/546
4000_930C	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD24_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.24/548
4000_9310	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD24_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.25/548
4000_9314	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD24_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.26/549
4000_9316	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD24_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.27/549
4000_9316	DMA_TCD24_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.28/550
4000_9318	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD24_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.29/551
4000_931C	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD24_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.30/552
4000_931E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD24_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.31/554
4000_931E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD24_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.32/555
4000_9320	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD25_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.18/542
4000_9324	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD25_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.19/543
4000_9326	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD25_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.20/543

Table continues on the next page...

DMA memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/page
4000_9328	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD25_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.21/544
4000_9328	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD25_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.22/545
4000_9328	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD25_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.23/546
4000_932C	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD25_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.24/548
4000_9330	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD25_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.25/548
4000_9334	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD25_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.26/549
4000_9336	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD25_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.27/549
4000_9336	DMA_TCD25_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.28/550
4000_9338	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD25_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.29/551
4000_933C	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD25_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.30/552
4000_933E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD25_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.31/554
4000_933E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD25_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.32/555
4000_9340	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD26_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.18/542
4000_9344	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD26_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.19/543
4000_9346	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD26_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.20/543
4000_9348	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD26_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.21/544
4000_9348	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD26_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.22/545
4000_9348	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD26_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.23/546
4000_934C	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD26_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.24/548
4000_9350	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD26_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.25/548

Table continues on the next page...

DMA memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/page
4000_9354	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD26_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.26/549
4000_9356	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD26_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.27/549
4000_9356	DMA_TCD26_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.28/550
4000_9358	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD26_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.29/551
4000_935C	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD26_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.30/552
4000_935E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD26_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.31/554
4000_935E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD26_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.32/555
4000_9360	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD27_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.18/542
4000_9364	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD27_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.19/543
4000_9366	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD27_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.20/543
4000_9368	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD27_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.21/544
4000_9368	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD27_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.22/545
4000_9368	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD27_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.23/546
4000_936C	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD27_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.24/548
4000_9370	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD27_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.25/548
4000_9374	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD27_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.26/549
4000_9376	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD27_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.27/549
4000_9376	DMA_TCD27_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.28/550
4000_9378	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD27_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.29/551
4000_937C	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD27_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.30/552

Table continues on the next page...

DMA memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/page
4000_937E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD27_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.31/554
4000_937E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD27_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.32/555
4000_9380	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD28_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.18/542
4000_9384	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD28_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.19/543
4000_9386	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD28_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.20/543
4000_9388	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD28_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.21/544
4000_9388	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD28_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.22/545
4000_9388	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD28_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.23/546
4000_938C	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD28_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.24/548
4000_9390	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD28_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.25/548
4000_9394	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD28_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.26/549
4000_9396	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD28_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.27/549
4000_9396	DMA_TCD28_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.28/550
4000_9398	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD28_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.29/551
4000_939C	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD28_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.30/552
4000_939E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD28_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.31/554
4000_939E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD28_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.32/555
4000_93A0	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD29_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.18/542
4000_93A4	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD29_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.19/543
4000_93A6	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD29_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.20/543

Table continues on the next page...

DMA memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/page
4000_93A8	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD29_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.21/544
4000_93A8	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD29_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.22/545
4000_93A8	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD29_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.23/546
4000_93AC	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD29_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.24/548
4000_93B0	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD29_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.25/548
4000_93B4	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD29_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.26/549
4000_93B6	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD29_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.27/549
4000_93B6	DMA_TCD29_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.28/550
4000_93B8	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD29_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.29/551
4000_93BC	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD29_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.30/552
4000_93BE	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD29_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.31/554
4000_93BE	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD29_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.32/555
4000_93C0	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD30_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.18/542
4000_93C4	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD30_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.19/543
4000_93C6	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD30_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.20/543
4000_93C8	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD30_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.21/544
4000_93C8	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD30_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.22/545
4000_93C8	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD30_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.23/546
4000_93CC	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD30_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.24/548
4000_93D0	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD30_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.25/548

Table continues on the next page...

DMA memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_93D4	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD30_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.26/ 549
4000_93D6	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD30_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.27/ 549
4000_93D6	DMA_TCD30_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.28/ 550
4000_93D8	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD30_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.29/ 551
4000_93DC	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD30_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.30/ 552
4000_93DE	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD30_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.31/ 554
4000_93DE	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD30_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.32/ 555
4000_93E0	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD31_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.18/ 542
4000_93E4	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD31_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.19/ 543
4000_93E6	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD31_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.20/ 543
4000_93E8	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD31_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.21/ 544
4000_93E8	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD31_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.22/ 545
4000_93E8	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD31_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.23/ 546
4000_93EC	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD31_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.24/ 548
4000_93F0	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD31_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.25/ 548
4000_93F4	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD31_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.26/ 549
4000_93F6	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD31_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.27/ 549
4000_93F6	DMA_TCD31_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.28/ 550
4000_93F8	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD31_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	25.3.29/ 551
4000_93FC	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD31_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.30/ 552

Table continues on the next page...

DMA memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/page
4000_93FE	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD31_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.31/554
4000_93FE	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD31_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	25.3.32/555

25.3.1 Control Register (DMA_CR)

The CR defines the basic operating configuration of the DMA. The DMA arbitrates channel service requests in two groups of 16 channels each:

- Group 1 contains channels 31-16
- Group 0 contains channels 15-0

Arbitration within a group can be configured to use either a fixed-priority or a round-robin scheme. For fixed-priority arbitration, the highest priority channel requesting service is selected to execute. The channel priority registers assign the priorities; see the DCHPRIn registers. For round-robin arbitration, the channel priorities are ignored and channels within each group are cycled through (from high to low channel number) without regard to priority.

NOTE

For correct operation, writes to the CR register must be performed only when the DMA channels are inactive; that is, when TCDn_CSR[ACTIVE] bits are cleared.

The group priorities operate in a similar fashion. In group fixed priority arbitration mode, channel service requests in the highest priority group are executed first, where priority level 1 is the highest and priority level 0 is the lowest. The group priorities are assigned in the GRPnPRI fields of the DMA Control Register (CR). All group priorities must have unique values prior to any channel service requests occurring; otherwise, a configuration error will be reported. For group round robin arbitration, the group priorities are ignored and the groups are cycled through (from high to low group number) without regard to priority.

Minor loop offsets are address offset values added to the final source address (TCDn_SADDR) or destination address (TCDn_DADDR) upon minor loop completion. When minor loop offsets are enabled, the minor loop offset (MLOFF) is added to the final source address (TCDn_SADDR), to the final destination address (TCDn_DADDR),

or to both prior to the addresses being written back into the TCD. If the major loop is complete, the minor loop offset is ignored and the major loop address offsets (TCDn_SLAST and TCDn_DLAST_SGA) are used to compute the next TCDn_SADDR and TCDn_DADDR values.

When minor loop mapping is enabled (EMLM is 1), TCDn word2 is redefined. A portion of TCDn word2 is used to specify multiple fields: a source enable bit (SMLOE) to specify the minor loop offset should be applied to the source address (TCDn_SADDR) upon minor loop completion, a destination enable bit (DMLOE) to specify the minor loop offset should be applied to the destination address (TCDn_DADDR) upon minor loop completion, and the sign extended minor loop offset value (MLOFF). The same offset value (MLOFF) is used for both source and destination minor loop offsets. When either minor loop offset is enabled (SMLOE set or DMLOE set), the NBYTES field is reduced to 10 bits. When both minor loop offsets are disabled (SMLOE cleared and DMLOE cleared), the NBYTES field is a 30-bit vector.

When minor loop mapping is disabled (EMLM is 0), all 32 bits of TCDn word2 are assigned to the NBYTES field.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 0h offset = 4000_8000h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	
R	0														CX	ECX	
W																	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
R	0						GRP1PRI	0	GRP0PRI	EMLM	CLM	HALT	HOE	ERGA	ERCA	EDBG	Reserved
W																	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

DMA_CR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–18 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
17 CX	Cancel Transfer 0 Normal operation 1 Cancel the remaining data transfer. Stop the executing channel and force the minor loop to finish. The cancel takes effect after the last write of the current read/write sequence. The CX bit clears itself after the cancel has been honored. This cancel retires the channel normally as if the minor loop was completed.

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_CR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
16 ECX	<p>Error Cancel Transfer</p> <p>0 Normal operation</p> <p>1 Cancel the remaining data transfer in the same fashion as the CX bit. Stop the executing channel and force the minor loop to finish. The cancel takes effect after the last write of the current read/write sequence. The ECX bit clears itself after the cancel is honored. In addition to cancelling the transfer, ECX treats the cancel as an error condition, thus updating the Error Status register (DMAx_ES) and generating an optional error interrupt.</p>
15–11 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
10 GRP1PRI	<p>Channel Group 1 Priority</p> <p>Group 1 priority level when fixed priority group arbitration is enabled.</p>
9 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
8 GRP0PRI	<p>Channel Group 0 Priority</p> <p>Group 0 priority level when fixed priority group arbitration is enabled.</p>
7 EMLM	<p>Enable Minor Loop Mapping</p> <p>0 Disabled. TCDn.word2 is defined as a 32-bit NBYTES field.</p> <p>1 Enabled. TCDn.word2 is redefined to include individual enable fields, an offset field, and the NBYTES field. The individual enable fields allow the minor loop offset to be applied to the source address, the destination address, or both. The NBYTES field is reduced when either offset is enabled.</p>
6 CLM	<p>Continuous Link Mode</p> <p>NOTE: Do not use continuous link mode with a channel linking to itself if there is only one minor loop iteration per service request, e.g., if the channel's NBYTES value is the same as either the source or destination size. The same data transfer profile can be achieved by simply increasing the NBYTES value, which provides more efficient, faster processing.</p> <p>0 A minor loop channel link made to itself goes through channel arbitration before being activated again.</p> <p>1 A minor loop channel link made to itself does not go through channel arbitration before being activated again. Upon minor loop completion, the channel activates again if that channel has a minor loop channel link enabled and the link channel is itself. This effectively applies the minor loop offsets and restarts the next minor loop.</p>
5 HALT	<p>Halt DMA Operations</p> <p>0 Normal operation</p> <p>1 Stall the start of any new channels. Executing channels are allowed to complete. Channel execution resumes when this bit is cleared.</p>
4 HOE	<p>Halt On Error</p> <p>0 Normal operation</p> <p>1 Any error causes the HALT bit to set. Subsequently, all service requests are ignored until the HALT bit is cleared.</p>
3 ERGA	<p>Enable Round Robin Group Arbitration</p> <p>0 Fixed priority arbitration is used for selection among the groups.</p> <p>1 Round robin arbitration is used for selection among the groups.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_CR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
2 ERCA	Enable Round Robin Channel Arbitration 0 Fixed priority arbitration is used for channel selection within each group. 1 Round robin arbitration is used for channel selection within each group.
1 EDBG	Enable Debug 0 When in debug mode, the DMA continues to operate. 1 When in debug mode, the DMA stalls the start of a new channel. Executing channels are allowed to complete. Channel execution resumes when the system exits debug mode or the EDBG bit is cleared.
0 Reserved	This field is reserved. Reserved

25.3.2 Error Status Register (DMA_ES)

The ES provides information concerning the last recorded channel error. Channel errors can be caused by:

- A configuration error, that is:
 - An illegal setting in the transfer-control descriptor, or
 - An illegal priority register setting in fixed-arbitration
- An error termination to a bus master read or write cycle
- A bit in the ES shows an uncorrectable error occurred while the device has ECC protection on the TCD SRAM
- A cancel transfer with error bit that will be set when a transfer is canceled via the corresponding cancel transfer control bit

See the Error Reporting and Handling section for more details.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 4h offset = 4000_8004h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	VLD	0														ECX
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	GPE	CPE	0	ERRCHN					SAE	SOE	DAE	DOE	NCE	SGE	SBE	DBE
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DMA_ES field descriptions

Field	Description
31 VLD	Logical OR of all ERR status bits 0 No ERR bits are set. 1 At least one ERR bit is set indicating a valid error exists that has not been cleared.
30–17 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
16 ECX	Transfer Canceled 0 No canceled transfers 1 The last recorded entry was a canceled transfer by the error cancel transfer input
15 GPE	Group Priority Error 0 No group priority error 1 The last recorded error was a configuration error among the group priorities. All group priorities are not unique.
14 CPE	Channel Priority Error 0 No channel priority error 1 The last recorded error was a configuration error in the channel priorities within a group. Channel priorities within a group are not unique.
13 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
12–8 ERRCHN	Error Channel Number or Canceled Channel Number The channel number of the last recorded error, excluding GPE and CPE errors, or last recorded error canceled transfer.
7 SAE	Source Address Error 0 No source address configuration error. 1 The last recorded error was a configuration error detected in the TCDn_SADDR field. TCDn_SADDR is inconsistent with TCDn_ATTR[SSIZE].
6 SOE	Source Offset Error 0 No source offset configuration error 1 The last recorded error was a configuration error detected in the TCDn_SOFF field. TCDn_SOFF is inconsistent with TCDn_ATTR[SSIZE].
5 DAE	Destination Address Error 0 No destination address configuration error 1 The last recorded error was a configuration error detected in the TCDn_DADDR field. TCDn_DADDR is inconsistent with TCDn_ATTR[DSIZE].
4 DOE	Destination Offset Error 0 No destination offset configuration error 1 The last recorded error was a configuration error detected in the TCDn_DOFF field. TCDn_DOFF is inconsistent with TCDn_ATTR[DSIZE].
3 NCE	NBYTES/CITER Configuration Error

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_ES field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 No NBYTES/CITER configuration error 1 The last recorded error was a configuration error detected in the TCDn_NBYTES or TCDn_CITER fields. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> TCDn_NBYTES is not a multiple of TCDn_ATTR[SSIZE] and TCDn_ATTR[DSIZE], or TCDn_CITER[CITER] is equal to zero, or TCDn_CITER[ELINK] is not equal to TCDn_BITER[ELINK]
2 SGE	Scatter/Gather Configuration Error 0 No scatter/gather configuration error 1 The last recorded error was a configuration error detected in the TCDn_DLASTSGA field. This field is checked at the beginning of a scatter/gather operation after major loop completion if TCDn_CSR[ESG] is enabled. TCDn_DLASTSGA is not on a 32 byte boundary.
1 SBE	Source Bus Error 0 No source bus error 1 The last recorded error was a bus error on a source read
0 DBE	Destination Bus Error 0 No destination bus error 1 The last recorded error was a bus error on a destination write

25.3.3 Enable Request Register (DMA_ERQ)

The ERQ register provides a bit map for the 32 channels to enable the request signal for each channel. The state of any given channel enable is directly affected by writes to this register; it is also affected by writes to the SERQ and CERQ registers. These registers are provided so the request enable for a single channel can easily be modified without needing to perform a read-modify-write sequence to the ERQ.

DMA request input signals and this enable request flag must be asserted before a channel's hardware service request is accepted. The state of the DMA enable request flag does not affect a channel service request made explicitly through software or a linked channel request.

Address: 4000_8000h base + Ch offset = 4000_800Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	ERQ31	ERQ30	ERQ29	ERQ28	ERQ27	ERQ26	ERQ25	ERQ24	ERQ23	ERQ22	ERQ21	ERQ20	ERQ19	ERQ18	ERQ17	ERQ16
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																
W	ERQ15	ERQ14	ERQ13	ERQ12	ERQ11	ERQ10	ERQ9	ERQ8	ERQ7	ERQ6	ERQ5	ERQ4	ERQ3	ERQ2	ERQ1	ERQ0
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DMA_ERQ field descriptions

Field	Description
31 ERQ31	Enable DMA Request 31 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
30 ERQ30	Enable DMA Request 30 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
29 ERQ29	Enable DMA Request 29 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
28 ERQ28	Enable DMA Request 28 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
27 ERQ27	Enable DMA Request 27 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
26 ERQ26	Enable DMA Request 26 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
25 ERQ25	Enable DMA Request 25 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
24 ERQ24	Enable DMA Request 24 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
23 ERQ23	Enable DMA Request 23 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
22 ERQ22	Enable DMA Request 22 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_ERQ field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
21 ERQ21	Enable DMA Request 21 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
20 ERQ20	Enable DMA Request 20 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
19 ERQ19	Enable DMA Request 19 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
18 ERQ18	Enable DMA Request 18 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
17 ERQ17	Enable DMA Request 17 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
16 ERQ16	Enable DMA Request 16 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
15 ERQ15	Enable DMA Request 15 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
14 ERQ14	Enable DMA Request 14 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
13 ERQ13	Enable DMA Request 13 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
12 ERQ12	Enable DMA Request 12 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
11 ERQ11	Enable DMA Request 11 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
10 ERQ10	Enable DMA Request 10 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_ERQ field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
9 ERQ9	Enable DMA Request 9 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
8 ERQ8	Enable DMA Request 8 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
7 ERQ7	Enable DMA Request 7 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
6 ERQ6	Enable DMA Request 6 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
5 ERQ5	Enable DMA Request 5 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
4 ERQ4	Enable DMA Request 4 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
3 ERQ3	Enable DMA Request 3 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
2 ERQ2	Enable DMA Request 2 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
1 ERQ1	Enable DMA Request 1 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
0 ERQ0	Enable DMA Request 0 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled

25.3.4 Enable Error Interrupt Register (DMA_EEI)

The EEI register provides a bit map for the 32 channels to enable the error interrupt signal for each channel. The state of any given channel's error interrupt enable is directly affected by writes to this register; it is also affected by writes to the SEEI and CEEI. These registers are provided so that the error interrupt enable for a single channel can easily be modified without the need to perform a read-modify-write sequence to the EEI register.

The DMA error indicator and the error interrupt enable flag must be asserted before an error interrupt request for a given channel is asserted to the interrupt controller.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 14h offset = 4000_8014h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	EEI31	EEI30	EEI29	EEI28	EEI27	EEI26	EEI25	EEI24	EEI23	EEI22	EEI21	EEI20	EEI19	EEI18	EEI17	EEI16
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	EEI15	EEI14	EEI13	EEI12	EEI11	EEI10	EEI9	EEI8	EEI7	EEI6	EEI5	EEI4	EEI3	EEI2	EEI1	EEI0
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DMA_EEI field descriptions

Field	Description
31 EEI31	Enable Error Interrupt 31 0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request
30 EEI30	Enable Error Interrupt 30 0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request
29 EEI29	Enable Error Interrupt 29 0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request
28 EEI28	Enable Error Interrupt 28 0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_EEI field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
27 EEI27	Enable Error Interrupt 27 0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request
26 EEI26	Enable Error Interrupt 26 0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request
25 EEI25	Enable Error Interrupt 25 0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request
24 EEI24	Enable Error Interrupt 24 0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request
23 EEI23	Enable Error Interrupt 23 0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request
22 EEI22	Enable Error Interrupt 22 0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request
21 EEI21	Enable Error Interrupt 21 0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request
20 EEI20	Enable Error Interrupt 20 0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request
19 EEI19	Enable Error Interrupt 19 0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request
18 EEI18	Enable Error Interrupt 18 0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request
17 EEI17	Enable Error Interrupt 17 0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request
16 EEI16	Enable Error Interrupt 16 0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_EEI field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
15 EEI15	<p>Enable Error Interrupt 15</p> <p>0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request</p>
14 EEI14	<p>Enable Error Interrupt 14</p> <p>0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request</p>
13 EEI13	<p>Enable Error Interrupt 13</p> <p>0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request</p>
12 EEI12	<p>Enable Error Interrupt 12</p> <p>0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request</p>
11 EEI11	<p>Enable Error Interrupt 11</p> <p>0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request</p>
10 EEI10	<p>Enable Error Interrupt 10</p> <p>0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request</p>
9 EEI9	<p>Enable Error Interrupt 9</p> <p>0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request</p>
8 EEI8	<p>Enable Error Interrupt 8</p> <p>0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request</p>
7 EEI7	<p>Enable Error Interrupt 7</p> <p>0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request</p>
6 EEI6	<p>Enable Error Interrupt 6</p> <p>0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request</p>
5 EEI5	<p>Enable Error Interrupt 5</p> <p>0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request</p>
4 EEI4	<p>Enable Error Interrupt 4</p> <p>0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request</p>

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_EEI field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
3 EEI3	Enable Error Interrupt 3 0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request
2 EEI2	Enable Error Interrupt 2 0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request
1 EEI1	Enable Error Interrupt 1 0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request
0 EEI0	Enable Error Interrupt 0 0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request

25.3.5 Clear Enable Error Interrupt Register (DMA_CEEI)

The CEEI provides a simple memory-mapped mechanism to clear a given bit in the EEI to disable the error interrupt for a given channel. The data value on a register write causes the corresponding bit in the EEI to be cleared. Setting the CAEE bit provides a global clear function, forcing the EEI contents to be cleared, disabling all DMA request inputs. If the NOP bit is set, the command is ignored. This allows you to write multiple-byte registers as a 32-bit word. Reads of this register return all zeroes.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 18h offset = 4000_8018h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	0				0		
Write	NOP	CAEE	0			CEEI		
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DMA_CEEI field descriptions

Field	Description
7 NOP	No Op enable 0 Normal operation 1 No operation, ignore the other bits in this register
6 CAEE	Clear All Enable Error Interrupts

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_CEEI field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Clear only the EEI bit specified in the CEEI field 1 Clear all bits in EEI
5 Reserved	This field is reserved.
CEEI	Clear Enable Error Interrupt Clears the corresponding bit in EEI

25.3.6 Set Enable Error Interrupt Register (DMA_SEEI)

The SEEI provides a simple memory-mapped mechanism to set a given bit in the EEI to enable the error interrupt for a given channel. The data value on a register write causes the corresponding bit in the EEI to be set. Setting the SAEE bit provides a global set function, forcing the entire EEI contents to be set. If the NOP bit is set, the command is ignored. This allows you to write multiple-byte registers as a 32-bit word. Reads of this register return all zeroes.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 19h offset = 4000_8019h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Write	NOP	SAEE	0			SEEI		
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DMA_SEEI field descriptions

Field	Description
7 NOP	No Op enable 0 Normal operation 1 No operation, ignore the other bits in this register
6 SAEE	Sets All Enable Error Interrupts 0 Set only the EEI bit specified in the SEEI field. 1 Sets all bits in EEI
5 Reserved	This field is reserved.
SEEI	Set Enable Error Interrupt Sets the corresponding bit in EEI

25.3.7 Clear Enable Request Register (DMA_CERQ)

The CERQ provides a simple memory-mapped mechanism to clear a given bit in the ERQ to disable the DMA request for a given channel. The data value on a register write causes the corresponding bit in the ERQ to be cleared. Setting the CAER bit provides a global clear function, forcing the entire contents of the ERQ to be cleared, disabling all DMA request inputs. If NOP is set, the command is ignored. This allows you to write multiple-byte registers as a 32-bit word. Reads of this register return all zeroes.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 1Ah offset = 4000_801Ah

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	0				0		
Write	NOP	CAER	0			CERQ		
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DMA_CERQ field descriptions

Field	Description
7 NOP	No Op enable 0 Normal operation 1 No operation, ignore the other bits in this register
6 CAER	Clear All Enable Requests 0 Clear only the ERQ bit specified in the CERQ field 1 Clear all bits in ERQ
5 Reserved	This field is reserved.
CERQ	Clear Enable Request Clears the corresponding bit in ERQ.

25.3.8 Set Enable Request Register (DMA_SERQ)

The SERQ provides a simple memory-mapped mechanism to set a given bit in the ERQ to enable the DMA request for a given channel. The data value on a register write causes the corresponding bit in the ERQ to be set. Setting the SAER bit provides a global set function, forcing the entire contents of ERQ to be set. If the NOP bit is set, the command is ignored. This allows you to write multiple-byte registers as a 32-bit word. Reads of this register return all zeroes.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 1Bh offset = 4000_801Bh

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	0				0		
Write	NOP	SAER	0			SERQ		
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DMA_SERQ field descriptions

Field	Description
7 NOP	No Op enable 0 Normal operation 1 No operation, ignore the other bits in this register
6 SAER	Set All Enable Requests 0 Set only the ERQ bit specified in the SERQ field 1 Set all bits in ERQ
5 Reserved	This field is reserved.
SERQ	Set Enable Request Sets the corresponding bit in ERQ.

25.3.9 Clear DONE Status Bit Register (DMA_CDNE)

The CDNE provides a simple memory-mapped mechanism to clear the DONE bit in the TCD of the given channel. The data value on a register write causes the DONE bit in the corresponding transfer control descriptor to be cleared. Setting the CADN bit provides a global clear function, forcing all DONE bits to be cleared. If the NOP bit is set, the command is ignored. This allows you to write multiple-byte registers as a 32-bit word. Reads of this register return all zeroes.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 1Ch offset = 4000_801Ch

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	0				0		
Write	NOP	CADN	0			CDNE		
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DMA_CDNE field descriptions

Field	Description
7 NOP	No Op enable 0 Normal operation 1 No operation, ignore the other bits in this register
6 CADN	Clears All DONE Bits 0 Clears only the TCDn_CSR[DONE] bit specified in the CDNE field 1 Clears all bits in TCDn_CSR[DONE]
5 Reserved	This field is reserved.
CDNE	Clear DONE Bit Clears the corresponding bit in TCDn_CSR[DONE]

25.3.10 Set START Bit Register (DMA_SSRT)

The SSRT provides a simple memory-mapped mechanism to set the START bit in the TCD of the given channel. The data value on a register write causes the START bit in the corresponding transfer control descriptor to be set. Setting the SAST bit provides a global set function, forcing all START bits to be set. If the NOP bit is set, the command is ignored. This allows you to write multiple-byte registers as a 32-bit word. Reads of this register return all zeroes.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 1Dh offset = 4000_801Dh

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Write	NOP	SAST	0			SSRT		
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DMA_SSRT field descriptions

Field	Description
7 NOP	No Op enable 0 Normal operation 1 No operation, ignore the other bits in this register
6 SAST	Set All START Bits (activates all channels) 0 Set only the TCDn_CSR[START] bit specified in the SSRT field 1 Set all bits in TCDn_CSR[START]
5 Reserved	This field is reserved.
SSRT	Set START Bit Sets the corresponding bit in TCDn_CSR[START]

25.3.11 Clear Error Register (DMA_CERR)

The CERR provides a simple memory-mapped mechanism to clear a given bit in the ERR to disable the error condition flag for a given channel. The given value on a register write causes the corresponding bit in the ERR to be cleared. Setting the CAEI bit provides a global clear function, forcing the ERR contents to be cleared, clearing all channel error indicators. If the NOP bit is set, the command is ignored. This allows you to write multiple-byte registers as a 32-bit word. Reads of this register return all zeroes.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 1Eh offset = 4000_801Eh

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	0				0		
Write	NOP	CAEI	0			CERR		
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DMA_CERR field descriptions

Field	Description
7 NOP	No Op enable 0 Normal operation 1 No operation, ignore the other bits in this register
6 CAEI	Clear All Error Indicators 0 Clear only the ERR bit specified in the CERR field 1 Clear all bits in ERR
5 Reserved	This field is reserved.
CERR	Clear Error Indicator Clears the corresponding bit in ERR

25.3.12 Clear Interrupt Request Register (DMA_CINT)

The CINT provides a simple, memory-mapped mechanism to clear a given bit in the INT to disable the interrupt request for a given channel. The given value on a register write causes the corresponding bit in the INT to be cleared. Setting the CAIR bit provides a global clear function, forcing the entire contents of the INT to be cleared, disabling all DMA interrupt requests. If the NOP bit is set, the command is ignored. This allows you to write multiple-byte registers as a 32-bit word. Reads of this register return all zeroes.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 1Fh offset = 4000_801Fh

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	0				0		
Write	NOP	CAIR	0			CINT		
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DMA_CINT field descriptions

Field	Description
7 NOP	No Op enable 0 Normal operation 1 No operation, ignore the other bits in this register
6 CAIR	Clear All Interrupt Requests 0 Clear only the INT bit specified in the CINT field 1 Clear all bits in INT
5 Reserved	This field is reserved.
CINT	Clear Interrupt Request Clears the corresponding bit in INT

25.3.13 Interrupt Request Register (DMA_INT)

The INT register provides a bit map for the 32 channels signaling the presence of an interrupt request for each channel. Depending on the appropriate bit setting in the transfer-control descriptors, the eDMA engine generates an interrupt on data transfer completion. The outputs of this register are directly routed to the interrupt controller. During the interrupt-service routine associated with any given channel, it is the software's responsibility to clear the appropriate bit, negating the interrupt request. Typically, a write to the CINT register in the interrupt service routine is used for this purpose.

The state of any given channel's interrupt request is directly affected by writes to this register; it is also affected by writes to the CINT register. On writes to INT, a 1 in any bit position clears the corresponding channel's interrupt request. A zero in any bit position has no affect on the corresponding channel's current interrupt status. The CINT register is provided so the interrupt request for a single channel can easily be cleared without the need to perform a read-modify-write sequence to the INT register.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 24h offset = 4000_8024h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	INT31	INT30	INT29	INT28	INT27	INT26	INT25	INT24	INT23	INT22	INT21	INT20	INT19	INT18	INT17	INT16
W	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	INT15	INT14	INT13	INT12	INT11	INT10	INT9	INT8	INT7	INT6	INT5	INT4	INT3	INT2	INT1	INT0
W	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DMA_INT field descriptions

Field	Description
31 INT31	Interrupt Request 31

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_INT field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
30 INT30	Interrupt Request 30 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
29 INT29	Interrupt Request 29 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
28 INT28	Interrupt Request 28 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
27 INT27	Interrupt Request 27 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
26 INT26	Interrupt Request 26 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
25 INT25	Interrupt Request 25 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
24 INT24	Interrupt Request 24 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
23 INT23	Interrupt Request 23 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
22 INT22	Interrupt Request 22 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
21 INT21	Interrupt Request 21 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
20 INT20	Interrupt Request 20 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
19 INT19	Interrupt Request 19

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_INT field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
18 INT18	Interrupt Request 18 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
17 INT17	Interrupt Request 17 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
16 INT16	Interrupt Request 16 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
15 INT15	Interrupt Request 15 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
14 INT14	Interrupt Request 14 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
13 INT13	Interrupt Request 13 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
12 INT12	Interrupt Request 12 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
11 INT11	Interrupt Request 11 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
10 INT10	Interrupt Request 10 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
9 INT9	Interrupt Request 9 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
8 INT8	Interrupt Request 8 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
7 INT7	Interrupt Request 7

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_INT field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
6 INT6	Interrupt Request 6 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
5 INT5	Interrupt Request 5 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
4 INT4	Interrupt Request 4 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
3 INT3	Interrupt Request 3 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
2 INT2	Interrupt Request 2 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
1 INT1	Interrupt Request 1 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
0 INT0	Interrupt Request 0 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active

25.3.14 Error Register (DMA_ERR)

The ERR provides a bit map for the 32 channels, signaling the presence of an error for each channel. The eDMA engine signals the occurrence of an error condition by setting the appropriate bit in this register. The outputs of this register are enabled by the contents of the EEI, then logically summed across groups of 16 and 32 channels to form several group error interrupt requests, which are then routed to the interrupt controller. During the execution of the interrupt-service routine associated with any DMA errors, it is software's responsibility to clear the appropriate bit, negating the error-interrupt request. Typically, a write to the CERR in the interrupt-service routine is used for this purpose. The normal DMA channel completion indicators (setting the transfer control descriptor DONE flag and the possible assertion of an interrupt request) are not affected when an error is detected.

The contents of this register can also be polled because a non-zero value indicates the presence of a channel error regardless of the state of the EEL. The state of any given channel's error indicators is affected by writes to this register; it is also affected by writes to the CERR. On writes to the ERR, a one in any bit position clears the corresponding channel's error status. A zero in any bit position has no affect on the corresponding channel's current error status. The CERR is provided so the error indicator for a single channel can easily be cleared.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 2Ch offset = 4000_802Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	ERR31	ERR30	ERR29	ERR28	ERR27	ERR26	ERR25	ERR24	ERR23	ERR22	ERR21	ERR20	ERR19	ERR18	ERR17	ERR16
W	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	ERR15	ERR14	ERR13	ERR12	ERR11	ERR10	ERR9	ERR8	ERR7	ERR6	ERR5	ERR4	ERR3	ERR2	ERR1	ERR0
W	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DMA_ERR field descriptions

Field	Description
31 ERR31	Error In Channel 31 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
30 ERR30	Error In Channel 30 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
29 ERR29	Error In Channel 29 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
28 ERR28	Error In Channel 28 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_ERR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
27 ERR27	Error In Channel 27 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
26 ERR26	Error In Channel 26 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
25 ERR25	Error In Channel 25 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
24 ERR24	Error In Channel 24 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
23 ERR23	Error In Channel 23 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
22 ERR22	Error In Channel 22 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
21 ERR21	Error In Channel 21 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
20 ERR20	Error In Channel 20 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
19 ERR19	Error In Channel 19 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
18 ERR18	Error In Channel 18 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
17 ERR17	Error In Channel 17 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
16 ERR16	Error In Channel 16 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_ERR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
15 ERR15	Error In Channel 15 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
14 ERR14	Error In Channel 14 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
13 ERR13	Error In Channel 13 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
12 ERR12	Error In Channel 12 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
11 ERR11	Error In Channel 11 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
10 ERR10	Error In Channel 10 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
9 ERR9	Error In Channel 9 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
8 ERR8	Error In Channel 8 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
7 ERR7	Error In Channel 7 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
6 ERR6	Error In Channel 6 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
5 ERR5	Error In Channel 5 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
4 ERR4	Error In Channel 4 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_ERR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
3 ERR3	Error In Channel 3 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
2 ERR2	Error In Channel 2 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
1 ERR1	Error In Channel 1 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
0 ERR0	Error In Channel 0 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred

25.3.15 Hardware Request Status Register (DMA_HRS)

The HRS register provides a bit map for the DMA channels, signaling the presence of a hardware request for each channel. The hardware request status bits reflect the current state of the register and qualified (via the ERQ fields) DMA request signals as seen by the DMA's arbitration logic. This view into the hardware request signals may be used for debug purposes.

NOTE

These bits reflect the state of the request as seen by the arbitration logic. Therefore, this status is affected by the ERQ bits.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 34h offset = 4000_8034h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	HRS31	HRS30	HRS29	HRS28	HRS27	HRS26	HRS25	HRS24	HRS23	HRS22	HRS21	HRS20	HRS19	HRS18	HRS17	HRS16
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	HRS15	HRS14	HRS13	HRS12	HRS11	HRS10	HRS9	HRS8	HRS7	HRS6	HRS5	HRS4	HRS3	HRS2	HRS1	HRS0
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DMA_HRS field descriptions

Field	Description
31 HRS31	<p>Hardware Request Status Channel 31</p> <p>The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware.</p> <p>0 A hardware service request for channel 31 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 31 is present</p>
30 HRS30	<p>Hardware Request Status Channel 30</p> <p>The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware.</p> <p>0 A hardware service request for channel 30 is not present 1 A hardware service request for for channel 30 is present</p>
29 HRS29	<p>Hardware Request Status Channel 29</p> <p>The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware.</p> <p>0 A hardware service request for channel 29 is not preset 1 A hardware service request for channel 29 is present</p>
28 HRS28	<p>Hardware Request Status Channel 28</p> <p>The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware.</p> <p>0 A hardware service request for channel 28 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 28 is present</p>
27 HRS27	<p>Hardware Request Status Channel 27</p> <p>The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_HRS field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 A hardware service request for channel 27 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 27 is present
26 HRS26	Hardware Request Status Channel 26 The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware. 0 A hardware service request for channel 26 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 26 is present
25 HRS25	Hardware Request Status Channel 25 The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware. 0 A hardware service request for channel 25 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 25 is present
24 HRS24	Hardware Request Status Channel 24 The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware. 0 A hardware service request for channel 24 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 24 is present
23 HRS23	Hardware Request Status Channel 23 The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware. 0 A hardware service request for channel 23 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 23 is present
22 HRS22	Hardware Request Status Channel 22 The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware. 0 A hardware service request for channel 22 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 22 is present
21 HRS21	Hardware Request Status Channel 21 The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware. 0 A hardware service request for channel 21 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 21 is present
20 HRS20	Hardware Request Status Channel 20

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_HRS field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware.</p> <p>0 A hardware service request for channel 20 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 20 is present</p>
19 HRS19	<p>Hardware Request Status Channel 19</p> <p>The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware.</p> <p>0 A hardware service request for channel 19 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 19 is present</p>
18 HRS18	<p>Hardware Request Status Channel 18</p> <p>The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware.</p> <p>0 A hardware service request for channel 18 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 18 is present</p>
17 HRS17	<p>Hardware Request Status Channel 17</p> <p>The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware.</p> <p>0 A hardware service request for channel 17 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 17 is present</p>
16 HRS16	<p>Hardware Request Status Channel 16</p> <p>The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware.</p> <p>0 A hardware service request for channel 16 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 16 is present</p>
15 HRS15	<p>Hardware Request Status Channel 15</p> <p>The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware.</p> <p>0 A hardware service request for channel 15 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 15 is present</p>
14 HRS14	<p>Hardware Request Status Channel 14</p> <p>The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_HRS field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 A hardware service request for channel 14 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 14 is present
13 HRS13	Hardware Request Status Channel 13 The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware. 0 A hardware service request for channel 13 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 13 is present
12 HRS12	Hardware Request Status Channel 12 The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware. 0 A hardware service request for channel 12 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 12 is present
11 HRS11	Hardware Request Status Channel 11 The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware. 0 A hardware service request for channel 11 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 11 is present
10 HRS10	Hardware Request Status Channel 10 The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware. 0 A hardware service request for channel 10 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 10 is present
9 HRS9	Hardware Request Status Channel 9 The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware. 0 A hardware service request for channel 9 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 9 is present
8 HRS8	Hardware Request Status Channel 8 The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware. 0 A hardware service request for channel 8 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 8 is present
7 HRS7	Hardware Request Status Channel 7

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_HRS field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware.</p> <p>0 A hardware service request for channel 7 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 7 is present</p>
6 HRS6	<p>Hardware Request Status Channel 6</p> <p>The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware.</p> <p>0 A hardware service request for channel 6 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 6 is present</p>
5 HRS5	<p>Hardware Request Status Channel 5</p> <p>The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware.</p> <p>0 A hardware service request for channel 5 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 5 is present</p>
4 HRS4	<p>Hardware Request Status Channel 4</p> <p>The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware.</p> <p>0 A hardware service request for channel 4 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 4 is present</p>
3 HRS3	<p>Hardware Request Status Channel 3</p> <p>The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware.</p> <p>0 A hardware service request for channel 3 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 3 is present</p>
2 HRS2	<p>Hardware Request Status Channel 2</p> <p>The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware.</p> <p>0 A hardware service request for channel 2 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 2 is present</p>
1 HRS1	<p>Hardware Request Status Channel 1</p> <p>The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_HRS field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 A hardware service request for channel 1 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 1 is present
0 HRS0	Hardware Request Status Channel 0 The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware. 0 A hardware service request for channel 0 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 0 is present

25.3.16 Enable Asynchronous Request in Stop Register (DMA_EARS)

Address: 4000_8000h base + 44h offset = 4000_8044h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	EDREQ_31	EDREQ_30	EDREQ_29	EDREQ_28	EDREQ_27	EDREQ_26	EDREQ_25	EDREQ_24	EDREQ_23	EDREQ_22	EDREQ_21	EDREQ_20	EDREQ_19	EDREQ_18	EDREQ_17	EDREQ_16
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	EDREQ_15	EDREQ_14	EDREQ_13	EDREQ_12	EDREQ_11	EDREQ_10	EDREQ_9	EDREQ_8	EDREQ_7	EDREQ_6	EDREQ_5	EDREQ_4	EDREQ_3	EDREQ_2	EDREQ_1	EDREQ_0
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DMA_EARS field descriptions

Field	Description
31 EDREQ_31	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 31 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 31 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 31
30 EDREQ_30	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 30 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 30 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 30
29 EDREQ_29	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 29 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 29 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 29
28 EDREQ_28	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 28

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_EARS field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 28 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 28
27 EDREQ_27	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 27 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 27 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 27
26 EDREQ_26	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 26 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 26 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 26
25 EDREQ_25	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 25 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 25 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 25
24 EDREQ_24	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 24 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 24 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 24
23 EDREQ_23	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 23 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 23 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 23
22 EDREQ_22	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 22 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 22 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 22
21 EDREQ_21	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 21 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 21 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 21
20 EDREQ_20	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 20 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 20 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 20
19 EDREQ_19	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 19 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 19 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 19
18 EDREQ_18	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 18 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 18 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 18
17 EDREQ_17	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 17 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 17 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 17
16 EDREQ_16	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 16

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_EARS field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 16 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 16
15 EDREQ_15	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 15 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 15. 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 15.
14 EDREQ_14	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 14 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 14. 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 14.
13 EDREQ_13	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 13 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 13. 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 13.
12 EDREQ_12	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 12 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 12. 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 12.
11 EDREQ_11	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 11 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 11. 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 11.
10 EDREQ_10	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 10 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 10. 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 10.
9 EDREQ_9	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 9 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 9. 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 9.
8 EDREQ_8	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 8 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 8. 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 8.
7 EDREQ_7	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 7 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 7. 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 7.
6 EDREQ_6	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 6 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 6. 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 6.
5 EDREQ_5	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 5 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 5. 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 5.
4 EDREQ_4	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 4

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_EARS field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 4. 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 4.
3 EDREQ_3	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 3. 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 3. 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 3.
2 EDREQ_2	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 2. 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 2. 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 2.
1 EDREQ_1	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 1. 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 1 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 1.
0 EDREQ_0	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 0. 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 0. 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 0.

25.3.17 Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRIn)

When fixed-priority channel arbitration is enabled ($CR[ERCA] = 0$), the contents of these registers define the unique priorities associated with each channel within a group. The channel priorities are evaluated by numeric value; for example, 0 is the lowest priority, 1 is the next higher priority, then 2, 3, etc. Software must program the channel priorities with unique values; otherwise, a configuration error is reported. The range of the priority value is limited to the values of 0 through 15. When read, the GRPPRI bits of the DCHPRIn register reflect the current priority level of the group of channels in which the corresponding channel resides. GRPPRI bits are not affected by writes to the DCHPRIn registers. The group priority is assigned in the DMA control register.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 100h offset + (1d × i), where i=0d to 31d

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	ECP		DPA		GRPPRI			
Write	0		0		*			
Reset	0		0		*			

* Notes:

- GRPPRI field: See bit field description.
- CHPRI field: See bit field description.

DMA_DCHPRIn field descriptions

Field	Description
7 ECP	Enable Channel Preemption. 0 Channel n cannot be suspended by a higher priority channel's service request. 1 Channel n can be temporarily suspended by the service request of a higher priority channel.
6 DPA	Disable Preempt Ability. 0 Channel n can suspend a lower priority channel. 1 Channel n cannot suspend any channel, regardless of channel priority.
5–4 GRPPRI	Channel n Current Group Priority Group priority assigned to this channel group when fixed-priority arbitration is enabled. This field is read-only; writes are ignored. NOTE: Reset value for the group and channel priority fields, GRPPRI and CHPRI, is equal to the corresponding channel number for each priority register, that is, DCHPRI31[GRPPRI] = 0b01 and DCHPRI31[CHPRI] equals 0b1111.
CHPRI	Channel n Arbitration Priority Channel priority when fixed-priority arbitration is enabled NOTE: Reset value for the group and channel priority fields, GRPPRI and CHPRI, is equal to the corresponding channel number for each priority register, that is, DCHPRI31[GRPPRI] = 0b01 and DCHPRI31[CHPRI] = 0b01111.

25.3.18 TCD Source Address (DMA_TCDn_SADDR)

Address: 4000_8000h base + 1000h offset + (32d × i), where i=0d to 31d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:

- x = Undefined at reset.

DMA_TCDn_SADDR field descriptions

Field	Description
SADDR	Source Address Memory address pointing to the source data.

25.3.19 TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCDn_SOFF)

Address: 4000_8000h base + 1004h offset + (32d × i), where i=0d to 31d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	SOFF															
Write																
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:

- x = Undefined at reset.

DMA_TCDn_SOFF field descriptions

Field	Description
SOFF	Source address signed offset Sign-extended offset applied to the current source address to form the next-state value as each source read is completed.

25.3.20 TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCDn_ATTR)

Address: 4000_8000h base + 1006h offset + (32d × i), where i=0d to 31d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	SMOD				SSIZE				DMOD				DSIZE			
Write																
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:

- x = Undefined at reset.

DMA_TCDn_ATTR field descriptions

Field	Description
15–11 SMOD	Source Address Modulo 0 Source address modulo feature is disabled ≠0 This value defines a specific address range specified to be the value after SADDR + SOFF calculation is performed on the original register value. Setting this field provides the ability to implement a circular data queue easily. For data queues requiring power-of-2 size bytes, the queue should start at a 0-modulo-size address and the SMOD field should be set to the appropriate value for the queue, freezing the desired number of upper address bits. The value programmed into this field specifies the number of lower address bits allowed to change. For a circular queue application, the SOFF is typically set to the transfer size to implement post-increment addressing with the SMOD function constraining the addresses to a 0-modulo-size range.
10–8 SSIZE	Source data transfer size NOTE: Using a Reserved value causes a configuration error.

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_TCDn_ATTR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	000 8-bit 001 16-bit 010 32-bit 011 Reserved 100 16-byte burst 101 32-byte burst 110 Reserved 111 Reserved
7–3 DMOD	Destination Address Modulo See the SMOD definition
DSIZE	Destination data transfer size See the SSIZE definition

25.3.21 TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCDn_NBYTES_MLNO)

This register, or one of the next two registers (TCD_NBYTES_MLOFFNO, TCD_NBYTES_MLOFFYES), defines the number of bytes to transfer per request. Which register to use depends on whether minor loop mapping is disabled, enabled but not used for this channel, or enabled and used.

TCD word 2 is defined as follows if:

- Minor loop mapping is disabled (CR[EMLM] = 0)

If minor loop mapping is enabled, see the TCD_NBYTES_MLOFFNO and TCD_NBYTES_MLOFFYES register descriptions for the definition of TCD word 2.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 1008h offset + (32d × i), where i=0d to 31d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	NBYTES																															
W	NBYTES																															
Reset	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*

* Notes:

- x = Undefined at reset.

DMA_TCDn_NBYTES_MLNO field descriptions

Field	Description
NBYTES	Minor Byte Transfer Count Number of bytes to be transferred in each service request of the channel. As a channel activates, the appropriate TCD contents load into the eDMA engine, and the appropriate reads and writes perform until

DMA_TCDn_NBYTES_MLNO field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	the minor byte transfer count has transferred. This is an indivisible operation and cannot be halted. It can, however, be stalled by using the bandwidth control field, or via preemption. After the minor count is exhausted, the SADDR and DADDR values are written back into the TCD memory, the major iteration count is decremented and restored to the TCD memory. If the major iteration count is completed, additional processing is performed. NOTE: An NBYTES value of 0x0000_0000 is interpreted as a 4 GB transfer.

25.3.22 TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCDn_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)

One of three registers (this register, TCD_NBYTES_MLNO, or TCD_NBYTES_MLOFFYES), defines the number of bytes to transfer per request. Which register to use depends on whether minor loop mapping is disabled, enabled but not used for this channel, or enabled and used.

TCD word 2 is defined as follows if:

- Minor loop mapping is enabled (CR[EMLM] = 1) and
- SMLOE = 0 and DMLOE = 0

If minor loop mapping is enabled and SMLOE or DMLOE is set, then refer to the TCD_NBYTES_MLOFFYES register description. If minor loop mapping is disabled, then refer to the TCD_NBYTES_MLNO register description.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 1008h offset + (32d × i), where i=0d to 31d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R																
W	SMLOE	DMLOE														
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																
W																
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:

- x = Undefined at reset.

DMA_TCDn_NBYTES_MLOFFNO field descriptions

Field	Description
31 SMLOE	Source Minor Loop Offset Enable Selects whether the minor loop offset is applied to the source address upon minor loop completion. 0 The minor loop offset is not applied to the SADDR 1 The minor loop offset is applied to the SADDR
30 DMLOE	Destination Minor Loop Offset enable Selects whether the minor loop offset is applied to the destination address upon minor loop completion. 0 The minor loop offset is not applied to the DADDR 1 The minor loop offset is applied to the DADDR
NBYTES	Minor Byte Transfer Count Number of bytes to be transferred in each service request of the channel. As a channel activates, the appropriate TCD contents load into the eDMA engine, and the appropriate reads and writes perform until the minor byte transfer count has transferred. This is an indivisible operation and cannot be halted. It can, however, be stalled by using the bandwidth control field, or via preemption. After the minor count is exhausted, the SADDR and DADDR values are written back into the TCD memory, the major iteration count is decremented and restored to the TCD memory. If the major iteration count is completed, additional processing is performed.

25.3.23 TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCDn_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)

One of three registers (this register, TCD_NBYTES_MLNO, or TCD_NBYTES_MLOFFNO), defines the number of bytes to transfer per request. Which register to use depends on whether minor loop mapping is disabled, enabled but not used for this channel, or enabled and used.

TCD word 2 is defined as follows if:

- Minor loop mapping is enabled (CR[EMLM] = 1) and
- Minor loop offset is enabled (SMLOE or DMLOE = 1)

If minor loop mapping is enabled and SMLOE and DMLOE are cleared, then refer to the TCD_NBYTES_MLOFFNO register description. If minor loop mapping is disabled, then refer to the TCD_NBYTES_MLNO register description.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 1008h offset + (32d × i), where i=0d to 31d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	SMLOE	DMLOE	MLOFF													
W																
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	MLOFF								NBYTES							
W																
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:

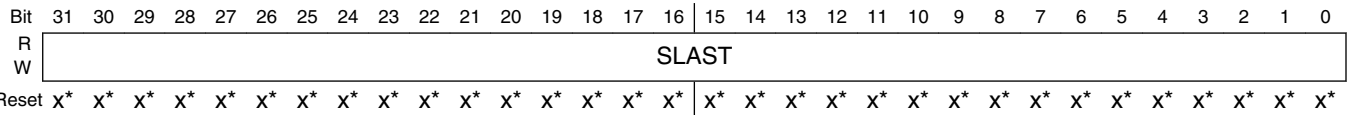
- x = Undefined at reset.

DMA_TCDn_NBYTES_MLOFFYES field descriptions

Field	Description
31 SMLOE	Source Minor Loop Offset Enable Selects whether the minor loop offset is applied to the source address upon minor loop completion. 0 The minor loop offset is not applied to the SADDR 1 The minor loop offset is applied to the SADDR
30 DMLOE	Destination Minor Loop Offset enable Selects whether the minor loop offset is applied to the destination address upon minor loop completion. 0 The minor loop offset is not applied to the DADDR 1 The minor loop offset is applied to the DADDR
29–10 MLOFF	If SMLOE or DMLOE is set, this field represents a sign-extended offset applied to the source or destination address to form the next-state value after the minor loop completes.
NBYTES	Minor Byte Transfer Count Number of bytes to be transferred in each service request of the channel. As a channel activates, the appropriate TCD contents load into the eDMA engine, and the appropriate reads and writes perform until the minor byte transfer count has transferred. This is an indivisible operation and cannot be halted. It can, however, be stalled by using the bandwidth control field, or via preemption. After the minor count is exhausted, the SADDR and DADDR values are written back into the TCD memory, the major iteration count is decremented and restored to the TCD memory. If the major iteration count is completed, additional processing is performed.

25.3.24 TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCDn_SLAST)

Address: 4000_8000h base + 100Ch offset + (32d × i), where i=0d to 31d



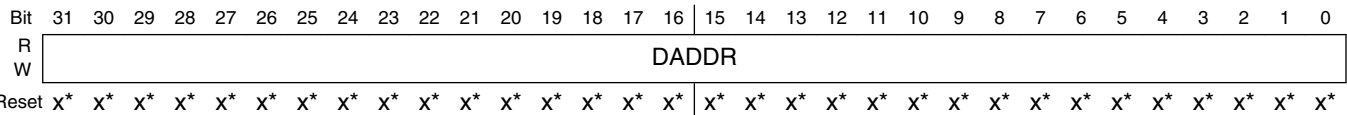
- * Notes:
- x = Undefined at reset.

DMA_TCDn_SLAST field descriptions

Field	Description
SLAST	<p>Last Source Address Adjustment</p> <p>Adjustment value added to the source address at the completion of the major iteration count. This value can be applied to restore the source address to the initial value, or adjust the address to reference the next data structure.</p> <p>This register uses two's complement notation; the overflow bit is discarded.</p>

25.3.25 TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCDn_DADDR)

Address: 4000_8000h base + 1010h offset + (32d × i), where i=0d to 31d



- * Notes:
- x = Undefined at reset.

DMA_TCDn_DADDR field descriptions

Field	Description
DADDR	<p>Destination Address</p> <p>Memory address pointing to the destination data.</p>

25.3.26 TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCDn_DOFF)

Address: 4000_8000h base + 1014h offset + (32d × i), where i=0d to 31d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	DOFF															
Write																
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:

- x = Undefined at reset.

DMA_TCDn_DOFF field descriptions

Field	Description
DOFF	Destination Address Signed Offset Sign-extended offset applied to the current destination address to form the next-state value as each destination write is completed.

25.3.27 TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCDn_CITER_ELINKYES)

If TCDn_CITER[ELINK] is set, the TCDn_CITER register is defined as follows.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 1016h offset + (32d × i), where i=0d to 31d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	
Read	ELINK		LINKCH						CITER
Write		0							
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	CITER							
Write								
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:

- x = Undefined at reset.

DMA_TCDn_CITER_ELINKYES field descriptions

Field	Description
15 ELINK	Enable channel-to-channel linking on minor-loop complete As the channel completes the minor loop, this flag enables linking to another channel, defined by the LINKCH field. The link target channel initiates a channel service request via an internal mechanism that sets the TCDn_CSR[START] bit of the specified channel.

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_TCDn_CITER_ELINKYES field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>If channel linking is disabled, the CITER value is extended to 15 bits in place of a link channel number. If the major loop is exhausted, this link mechanism is suppressed in favor of the MAJORELINK channel linking.</p> <p>NOTE: This bit must be equal to the BITER[ELINK] bit; otherwise, a configuration error is reported.</p> <p>0 The channel-to-channel linking is disabled 1 The channel-to-channel linking is enabled</p>
14 Reserved	This field is reserved.
13–9 LINKCH	<p>Minor Loop Link Channel Number</p> <p>If channel-to-channel linking is enabled (ELINK = 1), then after the minor loop is exhausted, the eDMA engine initiates a channel service request to the channel defined by this field by setting that channel's TCDn_CSR[START] bit.</p>
CITER	<p>Current Major Iteration Count</p> <p>This 9-bit (ELINK = 1) or 15-bit (ELINK = 0) count represents the current major loop count for the channel. It is decremented each time the minor loop is completed and updated in the transfer control descriptor memory. After the major iteration count is exhausted, the channel performs a number of operations, for example, final source and destination address calculations, optionally generating an interrupt to signal channel completion before reloading the CITER field from the Beginning Iteration Count (BITER) field.</p> <p>NOTE: When the CITER field is initially loaded by software, it must be set to the same value as that contained in the BITER field.</p> <p>NOTE: If the channel is configured to execute a single service request, the initial values of BITER and CITER should be 0x0001.</p>

25.3.28 TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCDn_CITER_ELINKNO)

If TCDn_CITER[ELINK] is cleared, the TCDn_CITER register is defined as follows.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 1016h offset + (32d × i), where i=0d to 31d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Read	ELINK	CITER						
Write								
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*
Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	CITER							
Write								
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:

- x = Undefined at reset.

DMA_TCDn_CITER_ELINKNO field descriptions

Field	Description
15 ELINK	<p>Enable channel-to-channel linking on minor-loop complete</p> <p>As the channel completes the minor loop, this flag enables linking to another channel, defined by the LINKCH field. The link target channel initiates a channel service request via an internal mechanism that sets the TCDn_CSR[START] bit of the specified channel.</p> <p>If channel linking is disabled, the CITER value is extended to 15 bits in place of a link channel number. If the major loop is exhausted, this link mechanism is suppressed in favor of the MAJORELINK channel linking.</p> <p>NOTE: This bit must be equal to the BITER[ELINK] bit; otherwise, a configuration error is reported.</p> <p>0 The channel-to-channel linking is disabled 1 The channel-to-channel linking is enabled</p>
CITER	<p>Current Major Iteration Count</p> <p>This 9-bit (ELINK = 1) or 15-bit (ELINK = 0) count represents the current major loop count for the channel. It is decremented each time the minor loop is completed and updated in the transfer control descriptor memory. After the major iteration count is exhausted, the channel performs a number of operations, for example, final source and destination address calculations, optionally generating an interrupt to signal channel completion before reloading the CITER field from the Beginning Iteration Count (BITER) field.</p> <p>NOTE: When the CITER field is initially loaded by software, it must be set to the same value as that contained in the BITER field.</p> <p>NOTE: If the channel is configured to execute a single service request, the initial values of BITER and CITER should be 0x0001.</p>

25.3.29 TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCDn_DLASTSGA)

Address: 4000_8000h base + 1018h offset + (32d × i), where i=0d to 31d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W	DLASTSGA																															
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:

- x = Undefined at reset.

DMA_TCDn_DLASTSGA field descriptions

Field	Description
DLASTSGA	<p>Destination last address adjustment or the memory address for the next transfer control descriptor to be loaded into this channel (scatter/gather).</p> <p>If (TCDn_CSR[ESG] = 0) then:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Adjustment value added to the destination address at the completion of the major iteration count. This value can apply to restore the destination address to the initial value or adjust the address to reference the next data structure. This field uses two's complement notation for the final destination address adjustment.

DMA_TCDn_DLASTSGA field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>Otherwise:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> This address points to the beginning of a 0-modulo-32-byte region containing the next transfer control descriptor to be loaded into this channel. This channel reload is performed as the major iteration count completes. The scatter/gather address must be 0-modulo-32-byte, otherwise a configuration error is reported.

25.3.30 TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCDn_CSR)

Address: 4000_8000h base + 101Ch offset + (32d × i), where i=0d to 31d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Read	BWC		0	MAJORLINKCH				
Write								
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*
Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	DONE	ACTIVE	MAJORELI NK	ESG	DREQ	INTHALF	INTMAJOR	START
Write								
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:

- x = Undefined at reset.

DMA_TCDn_CSR field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 BWC	<p>Bandwidth Control</p> <p>Throttles the amount of bus bandwidth consumed by the eDMA. Generally, as the eDMA processes the minor loop, it continuously generates read/write sequences until the minor count is exhausted. This field forces the eDMA to stall after the completion of each read/write access to control the bus request bandwidth seen by the crossbar switch.</p> <p>NOTE: If the source and destination sizes are equal, this field is ignored between the first and second transfers and after the last write of each minor loop. This behavior is a side effect of reducing start-up latency.</p> <p>00 No eDMA engine stalls. 01 Reserved 10 eDMA engine stalls for 4 cycles after each R/W. 11 eDMA engine stalls for 8 cycles after each R/W.</p>
13 Reserved	This field is reserved.
12–8 MAJORLINKCH	<p>Major Loop Link Channel Number</p> <p>If (MAJORELINK = 0) then:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> No channel-to-channel linking, or chaining, is performed after the major loop counter is exhausted. <p>Otherwise:</p>

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_TCDn_CSR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> After the major loop counter is exhausted, the eDMA engine initiates a channel service request at the channel defined by this field by setting that channel's TCDn_CSR[START] bit.
7 DONE	<p>Channel Done</p> <p>This flag indicates the eDMA has completed the major loop. The eDMA engine sets it as the CITER count reaches zero. The software clears it, or the hardware when the channel is activated.</p> <p>NOTE: This bit must be cleared to write the MAJORELINK or ESG bits.</p>
6 ACTIVE	<p>Channel Active</p> <p>This flag signals the channel is currently in execution. It is set when channel service begins, and is cleared by the eDMA as the minor loop completes or when any error condition is detected.</p>
5 MAJORELINK	<p>Enable channel-to-channel linking on major loop complete</p> <p>As the channel completes the major loop, this flag enables the linking to another channel, defined by MAJORLINKCH. The link target channel initiates a channel service request via an internal mechanism that sets the TCDn_CSR[START] bit of the specified channel.</p> <p>NOTE: To support the dynamic linking coherency model, this field is forced to zero when written to while the TCDn_CSR[DONE] bit is set.</p> <p>0 The channel-to-channel linking is disabled. 1 The channel-to-channel linking is enabled.</p>
4 ESG	<p>Enable Scatter/Gather Processing</p> <p>As the channel completes the major loop, this flag enables scatter/gather processing in the current channel. If enabled, the eDMA engine uses DLASTSGA as a memory pointer to a 0-modulo-32 address containing a 32-byte data structure loaded as the transfer control descriptor into the local memory.</p> <p>NOTE: To support the dynamic scatter/gather coherency model, this field is forced to zero when written to while the TCDn_CSR[DONE] bit is set.</p> <p>0 The current channel's TCD is normal format. 1 The current channel's TCD specifies a scatter gather format. The DLASTSGA field provides a memory pointer to the next TCD to be loaded into this channel after the major loop completes its execution.</p>
3 DREQ	<p>Disable Request</p> <p>If this flag is set, the eDMA hardware automatically clears the corresponding ERQ bit when the current major iteration count reaches zero.</p> <p>0 The channel's ERQ bit is not affected. 1 The channel's ERQ bit is cleared when the major loop is complete.</p>
2 INTHALF	<p>Enable an interrupt when major counter is half complete.</p> <p>If this flag is set, the channel generates an interrupt request by setting the appropriate bit in the INT register when the current major iteration count reaches the halfway point. Specifically, the comparison performed by the eDMA engine is (CITER == (BITER >> 1)). This halfway point interrupt request is provided to support double-buffered, also known as ping-pong, schemes or other types of data movement where the processor needs an early indication of the transfer's progress.</p> <p>NOTE: If BITER = 1, do not use INTHALF. Use INTMAJOR instead.</p> <p>0 The half-point interrupt is disabled. 1 The half-point interrupt is enabled.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_TCDn_CSR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
1 INTMAJOR	<p>Enable an interrupt when major iteration count completes.</p> <p>If this flag is set, the channel generates an interrupt request by setting the appropriate bit in the INT when the current major iteration count reaches zero.</p> <p>0 The end-of-major loop interrupt is disabled. 1 The end-of-major loop interrupt is enabled.</p>
0 START	<p>Channel Start</p> <p>If this flag is set, the channel is requesting service. The eDMA hardware automatically clears this flag after the channel begins execution.</p> <p>0 The channel is not explicitly started. 1 The channel is explicitly started via a software initiated service request.</p>

25.3.31 TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCDn_BITER_ELINKYES)

If the TCDn_BITER[ELINK] bit is set, the TCDn_BITER register is defined as follows.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 101Eh offset + (32d × i), where i=0d to 31d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Read	ELINK							
Write		0			LINKCH			BITER
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*
Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read								
Write								
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:

- x = Undefined at reset.

DMA_TCDn_BITER_ELINKYES field descriptions

Field	Description
15 ELINK	<p>Enables channel-to-channel linking on minor loop complete</p> <p>As the channel completes the minor loop, this flag enables the linking to another channel, defined by BITER[LINKCH]. The link target channel initiates a channel service request via an internal mechanism that sets the TCDn_CSR[START] bit of the specified channel. If channel linking disables, the BITER value extends to 15 bits in place of a link channel number. If the major loop is exhausted, this link mechanism is suppressed in favor of the MAJORELINK channel linking.</p> <p>NOTE: When the software loads the TCD, this field must be set equal to the corresponding CITER field; otherwise, a configuration error is reported. As the major iteration count is exhausted, the contents of this field are reloaded into the CITER field.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_TCDn_BITER_ELINKYES field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 The channel-to-channel linking is disabled 1 The channel-to-channel linking is enabled
14 Reserved	This field is reserved.
13–9 LINKCH	Link Channel Number If channel-to-channel linking is enabled (ELINK = 1), then after the minor loop is exhausted, the eDMA engine initiates a channel service request at the channel defined by this field by setting that channel's TCDn_CSR[START] bit. NOTE: When the software loads the TCD, this field must be set equal to the corresponding CITER field; otherwise, a configuration error is reported. As the major iteration count is exhausted, the contents of this field are reloaded into the CITER field.
BITER	Starting major iteration count As the transfer control descriptor is first loaded by software, this 9-bit (ELINK = 1) or 15-bit (ELINK = 0) field must be equal to the value in the CITER field. As the major iteration count is exhausted, the contents of this field are reloaded into the CITER field. NOTE: When the software loads the TCD, this field must be set equal to the corresponding CITER field; otherwise, a configuration error is reported. As the major iteration count is exhausted, the contents of this field are reloaded into the CITER field. If the channel is configured to execute a single service request, the initial values of BITER and CITER should be 0x0001.

25.3.32 TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCDn_BITER_ELINKNO)

If the TCDn_BITER[ELINK] bit is cleared, the TCDn_BITER register is defined as follows.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 101Eh offset + (32d × i), where i=0d to 31d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Read	ELINK	BITER						
Write								
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*
Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	BITER							
Write								
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:

- x = Undefined at reset.

DMA_TCDn_BITER_ELINKNO field descriptions

Field	Description
15 ELINK	Enables channel-to-channel linking on minor loop complete

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_TCDn_BITER_ELINKNO field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>As the channel completes the minor loop, this flag enables the linking to another channel, defined by BITER[LINKCH]. The link target channel initiates a channel service request via an internal mechanism that sets the TCDn_CSR[START] bit of the specified channel. If channel linking is disabled, the BITER value extends to 15 bits in place of a link channel number. If the major loop is exhausted, this link mechanism is suppressed in favor of the MAJORELINK channel linking.</p> <p>NOTE: When the software loads the TCD, this field must be set equal to the corresponding CITER field; otherwise, a configuration error is reported. As the major iteration count is exhausted, the contents of this field are reloaded into the CITER field.</p> <p>0 The channel-to-channel linking is disabled 1 The channel-to-channel linking is enabled</p>
BITER	<p>Starting Major Iteration Count</p> <p>As the transfer control descriptor is first loaded by software, this 9-bit (ELINK = 1) or 15-bit (ELINK = 0) field must be equal to the value in the CITER field. As the major iteration count is exhausted, the contents of this field are reloaded into the CITER field.</p> <p>NOTE: When the software loads the TCD, this field must be set equal to the corresponding CITER field; otherwise, a configuration error is reported. As the major iteration count is exhausted, the contents of this field is reloaded into the CITER field. If the channel is configured to execute a single service request, the initial values of BITER and CITER should be 0x0001.</p>

25.4 Functional description

The operation of the eDMA is described in the following subsections.

25.4.1 eDMA basic data flow

The basic flow of a data transfer can be partitioned into three segments.

As shown in the following diagram, the first segment involves the channel activation:

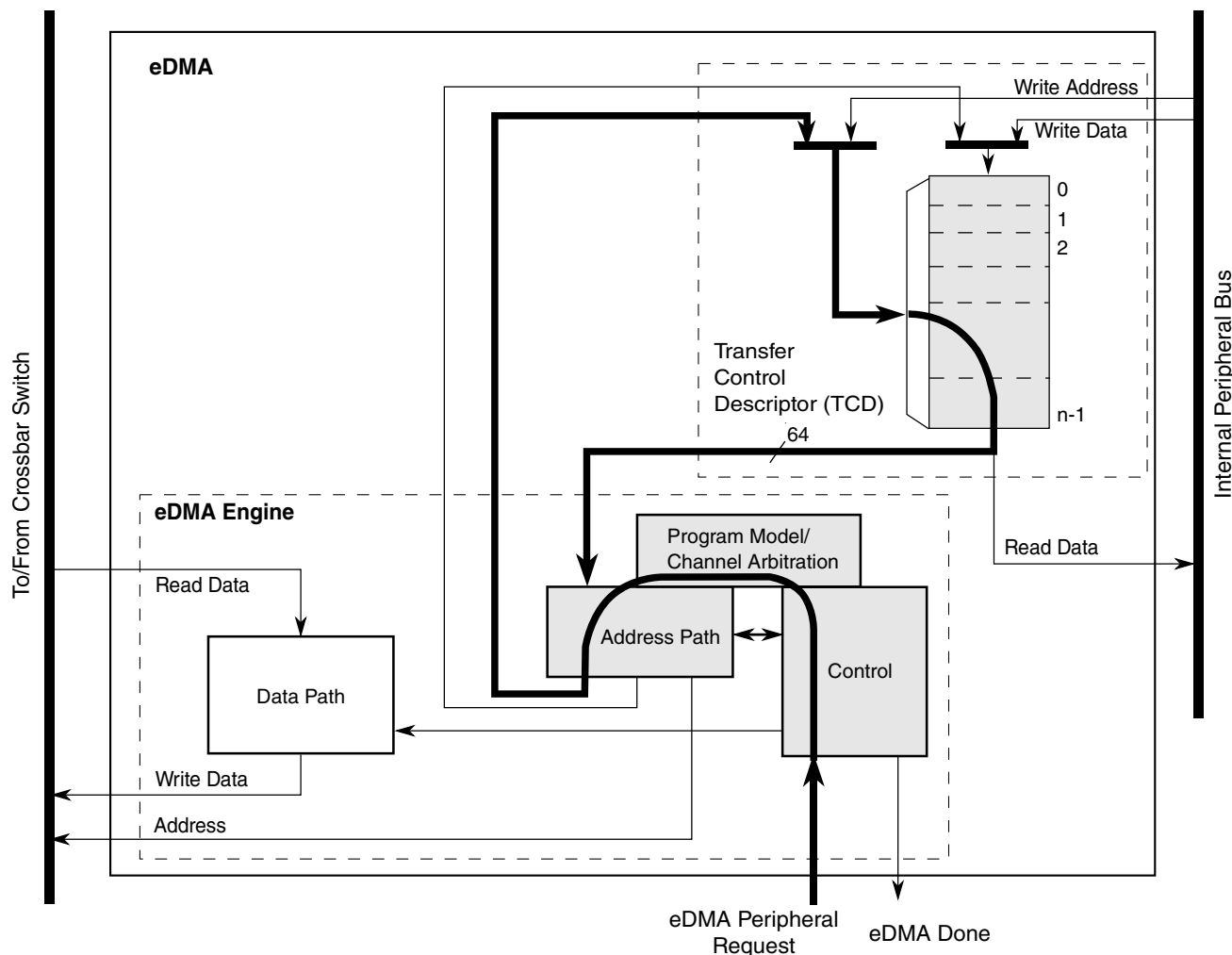


Figure 25-2. eDMA operation, part 1

This example uses the assertion of the eDMA peripheral request signal to request service for channel n . Channel activation via software and the $TCDn_CSR[START]$ bit follows the same basic flow as peripheral requests. The eDMA request input signal is registered internally and then routed through the eDMA engine: first through the control module, then into the program model and channel arbitration. In the next cycle, the channel arbitration performs, using the fixed-priority or round-robin algorithm. After arbitration is complete, the activated channel number is sent through the address path and converted into the required address to access the local memory for $TCDn$. Next, the TCD memory is accessed and the required descriptor read from the local memory and loaded into the eDMA engine address path channel x or y registers. The TCD memory is 64 bits wide to minimize the time needed to fetch the activated channel descriptor and load it into the address path channel x or y registers.

The following diagram illustrates the second part of the basic data flow:

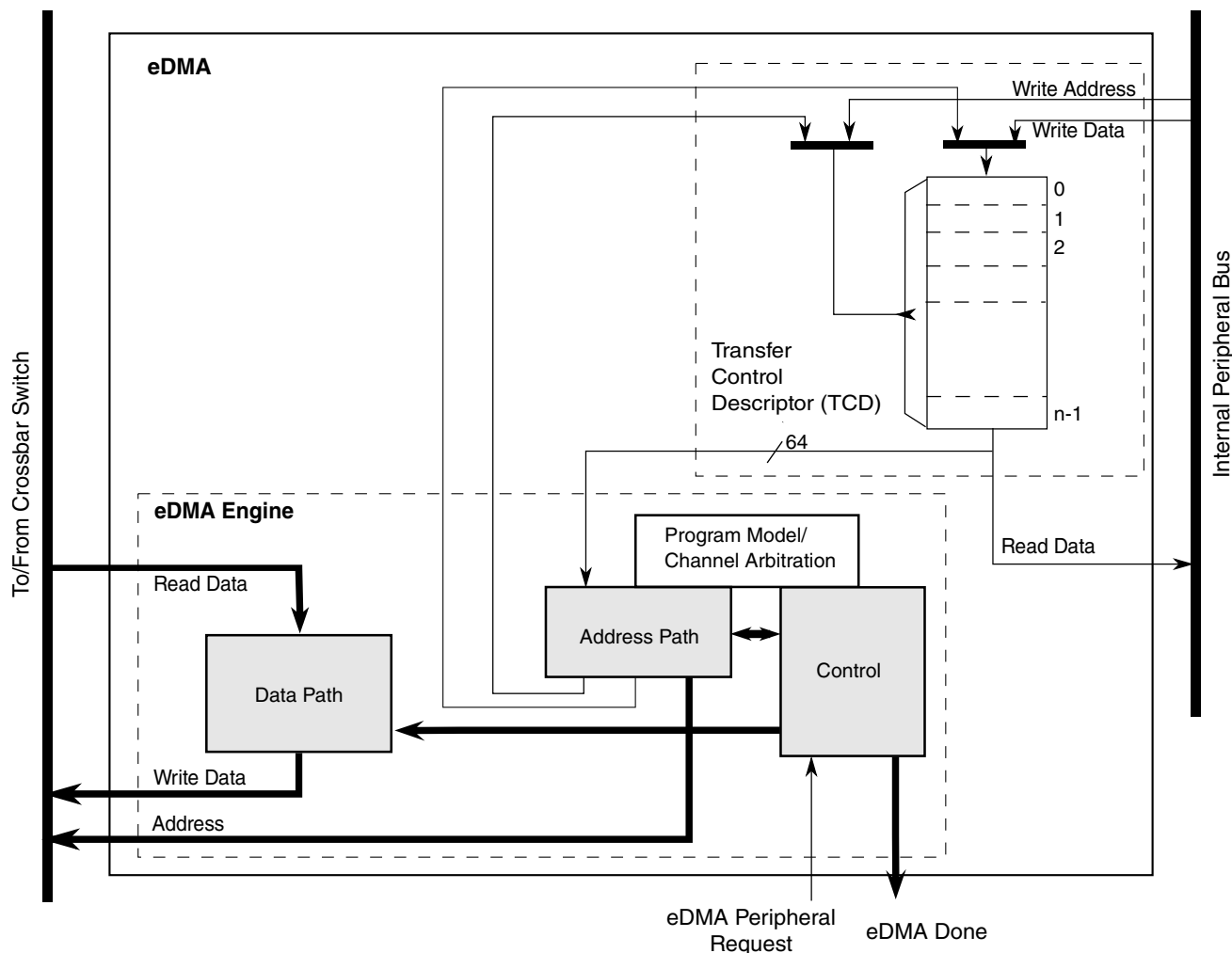


Figure 25-3. eDMA operation, part 2

The modules associated with the data transfer (address path, data path, and control) sequence through the required source reads and destination writes to perform the actual data movement. The source reads are initiated and the fetched data is temporarily stored in the data path block until it is gated onto the internal bus during the destination write. This source read/destination write processing continues until the minor byte count has transferred.

After the minor byte count has moved, the final phase of the basic data flow is performed. In this segment, the address path logic performs the required updates to certain fields in the appropriate TCD, for example, SADDR, DADDR, CITER. If the major iteration count is exhausted, additional operations are performed. These include the final address adjustments and reloading of the BITER field into the CITER. Assertion of an optional interrupt request also occurs at this time, as does a possible fetch of a new TCD from memory using the scatter/gather address pointer included in the descriptor (if scatter/gather is enabled). The updates to the TCD memory and the assertion of an interrupt request are shown in the following diagram.

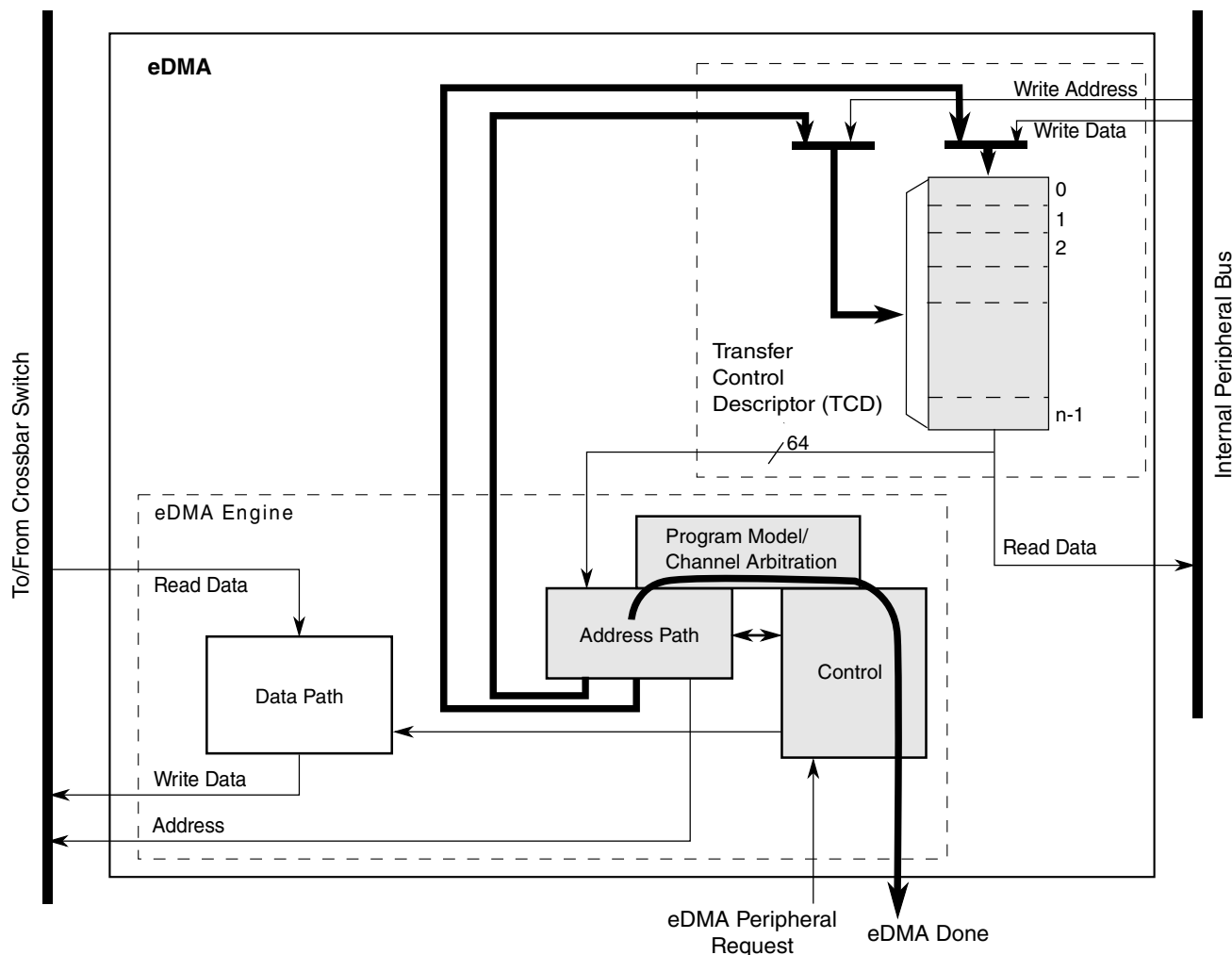


Figure 25-4. eDMA operation, part 3

25.4.2 Fault reporting and handling

Channel errors are reported in the Error Status register (DMAx_ES) and can be caused by:

- A configuration error, which is an illegal setting in the transfer-control descriptor or an illegal priority register setting in Fixed-Arbitration mode, or
- An error termination to a bus master read or write cycle

A configuration error is reported when the starting source or destination address, source or destination offsets, minor loop byte count, or the transfer size represent an inconsistent state. Each of these possible causes are detailed below:

- The addresses and offsets must be aligned on 0-modulo-transfer-size boundaries.
- The minor loop byte count must be a multiple of the source and destination transfer sizes.

- All source reads and destination writes must be configured to the natural boundary of the programmed transfer size respectively.
- In fixed arbitration mode, a configuration error is caused by any two channel priorities being equal. All channel priority levels must be unique when fixed arbitration mode is enabled.

NOTE

When two channels have the same priority, a channel priority error exists and will be reported in the Error Status register. However, the channel number will not be reported in the Error Status register. When all of the channel priorities within a group are not unique, the channel number selected by arbitration is undetermined.

To aid in Channel Priority Error (CPE) debug, set the Halt On Error bit in the DMA's Control Register. If all of the channel priorities within a group are not unique, the DMA will be halted after the CPE error is recorded. The DMA will remain halted and will not process any channel service requests. Once all of the channel priorities are set to unique numbers, the DMA may be enabled again by clearing the Halt bit.

- If a scatter/gather operation is enabled upon channel completion, a configuration error is reported if the scatter/gather address (DLAST_SGA) is not aligned on a 32-byte boundary.
- If minor loop channel linking is enabled upon channel completion, a configuration error is reported when the link is attempted if the TCDn_CITER[E_LINK] bit does not equal the TCDn_BITER[E_LINK] bit.

If enabled, all configuration error conditions, except the scatter/gather and minor-loop link errors, report as the channel activates and asserts an error interrupt request. A scatter/gather configuration error is reported when the scatter/gather operation begins at major loop completion when properly enabled. A minor loop channel link configuration error is reported when the link operation is serviced at minor loop completion.

If a system bus read or write is terminated with an error, the data transfer is stopped and the appropriate bus error flag set. In this case, the state of the channel's transfer control descriptor is updated by the eDMA engine with the current source address, destination address, and current iteration count at the point of the fault. When a system bus error occurs, the channel terminates after the next transfer. Due to pipeline effect, the next transfer is already in progress when the bus error is received by the eDMA. If a bus error

occurs on the last read prior to beginning the write sequence, the write executes using the data captured during the bus error. If a bus error occurs on the last write prior to switching to the next read sequence, the read sequence executes before the channel terminates due to the destination bus error.

A transfer may be cancelled by software with the CR[CX] bit. When a cancel transfer request is recognized, the DMA engine stops processing the channel. The current read-write sequence is allowed to finish. If the cancel occurs on the last read-write sequence of a major or minor loop, the cancel request is discarded and the channel retires normally.

The error cancel transfer is the same as a cancel transfer except the Error Status register (DMAx_ES) is updated with the cancelled channel number and ECX is set. The TCD of a cancelled channel contains the source and destination addresses of the last transfer saved in the TCD. If the channel needs to be restarted, you must re-initialize the TCD because the aforementioned fields no longer represent the original parameters. When a transfer is cancelled by the error cancel transfer mechanism, the channel number is loaded into DMA_ES[ERRCHN] and ECX and VLD are set. In addition, an error interrupt may be generated if enabled.

NOTE

The cancel transfer request allows the user to stop a large data transfer in the event the full data transfer is no longer needed. The cancel transfer bit does not abort the channel. It simply stops the transferring of data and then retires the channel through its normal shutdown sequence. The application software must handle the context of the cancel. If an interrupt is desired (or not), then the interrupt should be enabled (or disabled) before the cancel request. The application software must clean up the transfer control descriptor since the full transfer did not occur.

The occurrence of any error causes the eDMA engine to stop normal processing of the active channel immediately (it goes to its error processing states and the transaction to the system bus still has pipeline effect), and the appropriate channel bit in the eDMA error register is asserted. At the same time, the details of the error condition are loaded into the Error Status register (DMAx_ES). The major loop complete indicators, setting the transfer control descriptor DONE flag and the possible assertion of an interrupt request, are not affected when an error is detected. After the error status has been updated, the eDMA engine continues operating by servicing the next appropriate channel. A channel that experiences an error condition is not automatically disabled. If a channel is terminated by an error and then issues another service request before the error is fixed, that channel executes and terminates with the same error condition.

25.4.3 Channel preemption

Channel preemption is enabled on a per-channel basis by setting the DCHPRIn[ECP] bit. Channel preemption allows the executing channel's data transfers to temporarily suspend in favor of starting a higher priority channel. After the preempting channel has completed all its minor loop data transfers, the preempted channel is restored and resumes execution. After the restored channel completes one read/write sequence, it is again eligible for preemption. If any higher priority channel is requesting service, the restored channel is suspended and the higher priority channel is serviced. Nested preemption, that is, attempting to preempt a preempting channel, is not supported. After a preempting channel begins execution, it cannot be preempted. Preemption is available only when fixed arbitration is selected.

A channel's ability to preempt another channel can be disabled by setting DCHPRIn[DPA]. When a channel's preempt ability is disabled, that channel cannot suspend a lower priority channel's data transfer, regardless of the lower priority channel's ECP setting. This allows for a pool of low priority, large data-moving channels to be defined. These low priority channels can be configured to not preempt each other, thus preventing a low priority channel from consuming the preempt slot normally available to a true, high priority channel.

25.4.4 Performance

This section addresses the performance of the eDMA module, focusing on two separate metrics:

- In the traditional data movement context, performance is best expressed as the peak data transfer rates achieved using the eDMA. In most implementations, this transfer rate is limited by the speed of the source and destination address spaces.
- In a second context where device-paced movement of single data values to/from peripherals is dominant, a measure of the requests that can be serviced in a fixed time is a more relevant metric. In this environment, the speed of the source and destination address spaces remains important. However, the microarchitecture of the eDMA also factors significantly into the resulting metric.

25.4.4.1 Peak transfer rates

The peak transfer rates for several different source and destination transfers are shown in the following tables. These tables assume:

- Internal SRAM can be accessed with zero wait-states when viewed from the system bus data phase
- All internal peripheral bus reads require two wait-states, and internal peripheral bus writes three wait-states, when viewed from the system bus data phase
- All internal peripheral bus accesses are 32-bits in size

NOTE

All architectures will not meet the assumptions listed above.
See the SRAM configuration section for more information.

This table compares peak transfer rates based on different possible system speeds. Specific chips/devices may not support all system speeds listed.

Table 25-4. eDMA peak transfer rates (Mbytes/sec)

System Speed, Width	Internal SRAM-to-Internal SRAM	32 bit internal peripheral bus-to-Internal SRAM	Internal SRAM-to-32 bit internal peripheral bus
66.7 MHz, 32 bit	133.3	66.7	53.3
83.3 MHz, 32 bit	166.7	83.3	66.7
100.0 MHz, 32 bit	200.0	100.0	80.0
133.3 MHz, 32 bit	266.7	133.3	106.7
150.0 MHz, 32 bit	300.0	150.0	120.0

Internal-SRAM-to-internal-SRAM transfers occur at the core's datapath width. For all transfers involving the internal peripheral bus, 32-bit transfer sizes are used. In all cases, the transfer rate includes the time to read the source plus the time to write the destination.

25.4.4.2 Peak request rates

The second performance metric is a measure of the number of DMA requests that can be serviced in a given amount of time. For this metric, assume that the peripheral request causes the channel to move a single internal peripheral bus-mapped operand to/from internal SRAM. The same timing assumptions used in the previous example apply to this calculation. In particular, this metric also reflects the time required to activate the channel.

The eDMA design supports the following hardware service request sequence. Note that the exact timing from Cycle 7 is a function of the response times for the channel's read and write accesses. In the case of an internal peripheral bus read and internal SRAM write, the combined data phase time is 4 cycles. For an SRAM read and internal peripheral bus write, it is 5 cycles.

Table 25-5. Hardware service request process

Cycle		Description
With internal peripheral bus read and internal SRAM write	With SRAM read and internal peripheral bus write	
1		eDMA peripheral request is asserted.
2		The eDMA peripheral request is registered locally in the eDMA module and qualified. TCD n _CSR[START] bit initiated requests start at this point with the registering of the user write to TCD n word 7.
3		Channel arbitration begins.
4		Channel arbitration completes. The transfer control descriptor local memory read is initiated.
5–6		The first two parts of the activated channel's TCD is read from the local memory. The memory width to the eDMA engine is 64 bits, so the entire descriptor can be accessed in four cycles
7		The first system bus read cycle is initiated, as the third part of the channel's TCD is read from the local memory. Depending on the state of the crossbar switch, arbitration at the system bus may insert an additional cycle of delay here.
8–11	8–12	The last part of the TCD is read in. This cycle represents the first data phase for the read, and the address phase for the destination write.
12	13	This cycle represents the data phase of the last destination write.
13	14	The eDMA engine completes the execution of the inner minor loop and prepares to write back the required TCD n fields into the local memory. The TCD n word 7 is read and checked for channel linking or scatter/gather requests.
14	15	The appropriate fields in the first part of the TCD n are written back into the local memory.
15	16	The fields in the second part of the TCD n are written back into the local memory. This cycle coincides with the next channel arbitration cycle start.
16	17	The next channel to be activated performs the read of the first part of its TCD from the local memory. This is equivalent to Cycle 4 for the first channel's service request.

Assuming zero wait states on the system bus, DMA requests can be processed every 9 cycles. Assuming an average of the access times associated with internal peripheral bus-to-SRAM (4 cycles) and SRAM-to-internal peripheral bus (5 cycles), DMA requests can be processed every 11.5 cycles ($4 + (4+5)/2 + 3$). This is the time from Cycle 4 to Cycle $x + 5$. The resulting peak request rate, as a function of the system frequency, is shown in the following table.

Table 25-6. eDMA peak request rate (MReq/sec)

System frequency (MHz)	Request rate with zero wait states	Request rate with wait states
66.6	7.4	5.8
83.3	9.2	7.2
100.0	11.1	8.7
133.3	14.8	11.6
150.0	16.6	13.0

A general formula to compute the peak request rate with overlapping requests is:

$$\text{PEAKreq} = \text{freq} / [\text{entry} + (1 + \text{read_ws}) + (1 + \text{write_ws}) + \text{exit}]$$

where:

Table 25-7. Peak request formula operands

Operand	Description
PEAKreq	Peak request rate
freq	System frequency
entry	Channel startup (4 cycles)
read_ws	Wait states seen during the system bus read data phase
write_ws	Wait states seen during the system bus write data phase
exit	Channel shutdown (3 cycles)

25.4.4.3 eDMA performance example

Consider a system with the following characteristics:

- Internal SRAM can be accessed with one wait-state when viewed from the system bus data phase
- All internal peripheral bus reads require two wait-states, and internal peripheral bus writes three wait-states viewed from the system bus data phase
- System operates at 150 MHz

For an SRAM to internal peripheral bus transfer,

$$\text{PEAKreq} = 150 \text{ MHz} / [4 + (1 + 1) + (1 + 3) + 3] \text{ cycles} = 11.5 \text{ Mreq/sec}$$

For an internal peripheral bus to SRAM transfer,

$$\text{PEAKreq} = 150 \text{ MHz} / [4 + (1 + 2) + (1 + 1) + 3] \text{ cycles} = 12.5 \text{ Mreq/sec}$$

Assuming an even distribution of the two transfer types, the average peak request rate would be:

$$\text{PEAKreq} = (11.5 \text{ Mreq/sec} + 12.5 \text{ Mreq/sec}) / 2 = 12.0 \text{ Mreq/sec}$$

The minimum number of cycles to perform a single read/write, zero wait states on the system bus, from a cold start where no channel is executing and eDMA is idle are:

- 11 cycles for a software, that is, a TCD_n_CSR[START] bit, request
- 12 cycles for a hardware, that is, an eDMA peripheral request signal, request

Two cycles account for the arbitration pipeline and one extra cycle on the hardware request resulting from the internal registering of the eDMA peripheral request signals. For the peak request rate calculations above, the arbitration and request registering is absorbed in or overlaps the previous executing channel.

Note

When channel linking or scatter/gather is enabled, a two cycle delay is imposed on the next channel selection and startup. This allows the link channel or the scatter/gather channel to be eligible and considered in the arbitration pool for next channel selection.

25.5 Initialization/application information

The following sections discuss initialization of the eDMA and programming considerations.

25.5.1 eDMA initialization

To initialize the eDMA:

1. Write to the CR if a configuration other than the default is desired.
2. Write the channel priority levels to the DCHPRI_n registers if a configuration other than the default is desired.
3. Enable error interrupts in the EEI register if so desired.
4. Write the 32-byte TCD for each channel that may request service.

5. Enable any hardware service requests via the ERQH and ERQL registers.
6. Request channel service via either:
 - Software: setting the TCD n _CSR[START]
 - Hardware: slave device asserting its eDMA peripheral request signal

After any channel requests service, a channel is selected for execution based on the arbitration and priority levels written into the programmer's model. The eDMA engine reads the entire TCD, including the TCD control and status fields, as shown in the following table, for the selected channel into its internal address path module.

As the TCD is read, the first transfer is initiated on the internal bus, unless a configuration error is detected. Transfers from the source, as defined by TCD n _SADDR, to the destination, as defined by TCD n _DADDR, continue until the number of bytes specified by TCD n _NBYTES are transferred.

When the transfer is complete, the eDMA engine's local TCD n _SADDR, TCD n _DADDR, and TCD n _CITER are written back to the main TCD memory and any minor loop channel linking is performed, if enabled. If the major loop is exhausted, further post processing executes, such as interrupts, major loop channel linking, and scatter/gather operations, if enabled.

Table 25-8. TCD Control and Status fields

TCD n _CSR field name	Description
START	Control bit to start channel explicitly when using a software initiated DMA service (Automatically cleared by hardware)
ACTIVE	Status bit indicating the channel is currently in execution
DONE	Status bit indicating major loop completion (cleared by software when using a software initiated DMA service)
D_REQ	Control bit to disable DMA request at end of major loop completion when using a hardware initiated DMA service
BWC	Control bits for throttling bandwidth control of a channel
E_SG	Control bit to enable scatter-gather feature
INT_HALF	Control bit to enable interrupt when major loop is half complete
INT_MAJ	Control bit to enable interrupt when major loop completes

The following figure shows how each DMA request initiates one minor-loop transfer, or iteration, without CPU intervention. DMA arbitration can occur after each minor loop, and one level of minor loop DMA preemption is allowed. The number of minor loops in a major loop is specified by the beginning iteration count (BITER).



xADDR: (Starting address)	<div> <div>xSIZE: (size of one data transfer)</div> <div>•</div> <div>•</div> <div>•</div> </div>	Minor loop (NBYTES in minor loop, often the same value as xSIZE)	Offset (xOFF): number of bytes added to current address after each transfer (often the same value as xSIZE)
•	•	Minor loop	
•	•	Last minor loop	Peripheral queues typically have size and offset equal to NBYTES.
•	•		
xLAST: Number of bytes added to current address after major loop (typically used to loop back)			

Figure 25-6. Memory array terms

25.5.2 Programming errors

The eDMA performs various tests on the transfer control descriptor to verify consistency in the descriptor data. Most programming errors are reported on a per channel basis with the exception of channel priority error (ES[CPE]).

For all error types other than group or channel priority errors, the channel number causing the error is recorded in the Error Status register (DMAx_ES). If the error source is not removed before the next activation of the problem channel, the error is detected and recorded again.

Channel priority errors are identified within a group once that group has been selected as the active group. For example:

1. The eDMA is configured for fixed group and fixed channel arbitration modes.
2. Group 1 is the highest priority and all channels are unique in that group.
3. Group 0 is the next highest priority and has two channels with the same priority level.
4. If Group 1 has any service requests, those requests will be executed.
5. After all of Group 1 requests have completed, Group 0 will be the next active group.
6. If Group 0 has a service request, then an undefined channel in Group 0 will be selected and a channel priority error will occur.
7. This repeats until the all of Group 0 requests have been removed or a higher priority Group 1 request comes in.

In this sequence, for item 2, the eDMA acknowledge lines will assert only if the selected channel is requesting service via the eDMA peripheral request signal. If interrupts are enabled for all channels, the user will get an error interrupt, but the channel number for the ERR register and the error interrupt request line may be wrong because they reflect the selected channel. A group priority error is global and any request in any group will cause a group priority error.

If priority levels are not unique, when any channel requests service, a channel priority error is reported. The highest channel/group priority with an active request is selected, but the lowest numbered channel with that priority is selected by arbitration and executed by the eDMA engine. The hardware service request handshake signals, error interrupts, and error reporting is associated with the selected channel.

25.5.3 Arbitration mode considerations

This section discusses arbitration considerations for the eDMA.

25.5.3.1 Fixed group arbitration, Fixed channel arbitration

In this mode, the channel service request from the highest priority channel in the highest priority group is selected to execute. If the eDMA is programmed so that the channels within one group use "fixed" priorities, and that group is assigned the highest "fixed" priority of all groups, that group can take all the bandwidth of the eDMA controller. That is, no other groups will be serviced if there is always at least one DMA request pending on a channel in the highest priority group when the controller arbitrates the next DMA request. The advantage of this scenario is that latency can be small for channels that need to be serviced quickly. Preemption is available in this scenario only.

25.5.3.2 Fixed group arbitration, Round-robin channel arbitration

The highest priority group with a request will be serviced. Lower priority groups will be serviced if no pending requests exist in the higher priority groups.

Within each group, channels are serviced starting with the highest channel number and rotating through to the lowest channel number without regard to the channel priority levels assigned within the group.

This scenario could cause the same bandwidth consumption problem as indicated in [Fixed group arbitration, Fixed channel arbitration](#), but all the channels in the highest priority group will be serviced. Service latency will be short on the highest priority group, but could potentially be very much longer as the group priority decreases.

25.5.4 Performing DMA transfers

This section presents examples on how to perform DMA transfers with the eDMA.

25.5.4.1 Single request

To perform a simple transfer of n bytes of data with one activation, set the major loop to one ($TCDn_CITER = TCDn_BITER = 1$). The data transfer begins after the channel service request is acknowledged and the channel is selected to execute. After the transfer is complete, the $TCDn_CSR[DONE]$ bit is set and an interrupt generates if properly enabled.

For example, the following TCD entry is configured to transfer 16 bytes of data. The eDMA is programmed for one iteration of the major loop transferring 16 bytes per iteration. The source memory has a byte wide memory port located at 0x1000. The destination memory has a 32-bit port located at 0x2000. The address offsets are

programmed in increments to match the transfer size: one byte for the source and four bytes for the destination. The final source and destination addresses are adjusted to return to their beginning values.

```
TCDn_CITER = TCDn_BITER = 1
TCDn_NBYTES = 16
TCDn_SADDR = 0x1000
TCDn_SOFF = 1
TCDn_ATTR[SSIZE] = 0
TCDn_SLAST = -16
TCDn_DADDR = 0x2000
TCDn_DOFF = 4
TCDn_ATTR[DSIZE] = 2
TCDn_DLAST_SGA = -16
TCDn_CSR[INT_MAJ] = 1
TCDn_CSR[START] = 1 (Should be written last after all other fields have been initialized)
All other TCDn fields = 0
```

This generates the following event sequence:

1. User write to the TCDn_CSR[START] bit requests channel service.
2. The channel is selected by arbitration for servicing.
3. eDMA engine writes: TCDn_CSR[DONE] = 0, TCDn_CSR[START] = 0, TCDn_CSR[ACTIVE] = 1.
4. eDMA engine reads: channel TCD data from local memory to internal register file.
5. The source-to-destination transfers are executed as follows:
 - a. Read byte from location 0x1000, read byte from location 0x1001, read byte from 0x1002, read byte from 0x1003.
 - b. Write 32-bits to location 0x2000 → first iteration of the minor loop.
 - c. Read byte from location 0x1004, read byte from location 0x1005, read byte from 0x1006, read byte from 0x1007.
 - d. Write 32-bits to location 0x2004 → second iteration of the minor loop.
 - e. Read byte from location 0x1008, read byte from location 0x1009, read byte from 0x100A, read byte from 0x100B.
 - f. Write 32-bits to location 0x2008 → third iteration of the minor loop.
 - g. Read byte from location 0x100C, read byte from location 0x100D, read byte from 0x100E, read byte from 0x100F.
 - h. Write 32-bits to location 0x200C → last iteration of the minor loop → major loop complete.

6. The eDMA engine writes: $TCDn_SADDR = 0x1000$, $TCDn_DADDR = 0x2000$, $TCDn_CITER = 1$ ($TCDn_BITER$).
7. The eDMA engine writes: $TCDn_CSR[ACTIVE] = 0$, $TCDn_CSR[DONE] = 1$, $INT[n] = 1$.
8. The channel retires and the eDMA goes idle or services the next channel.

25.5.4.2 Multiple requests

The following example transfers 32 bytes via two hardware requests, but is otherwise the same as the previous example. The only fields that change are the major loop iteration count and the final address offsets. The eDMA is programmed for two iterations of the major loop transferring 16 bytes per iteration. After the channel's hardware requests are enabled in the ERQ register, the slave device initiates channel service requests.

```
TCDn_CITER = TCDn_BITER = 2
TCDn_SLAST = -32
TCDn_DLAST_SGA = -32
```

This would generate the following sequence of events:

1. First hardware, that is, eDMA peripheral, request for channel service.
2. The channel is selected by arbitration for servicing.
3. eDMA engine writes: $TCDn_CSR[DONE] = 0$, $TCDn_CSR[START] = 0$, $TCDn_CSR[ACTIVE] = 1$.
4. eDMA engine reads: channel $TCDn$ data from local memory to internal register file.
5. The source to destination transfers are executed as follows:
 - a. Read byte from location $0x1000$, read byte from location $0x1001$, read byte from $0x1002$, read byte from $0x1003$.
 - b. Write 32-bits to location $0x2000 \rightarrow$ first iteration of the minor loop.
 - c. Read byte from location $0x1004$, read byte from location $0x1005$, read byte from $0x1006$, read byte from $0x1007$.
 - d. Write 32-bits to location $0x2004 \rightarrow$ second iteration of the minor loop.
 - e. Read byte from location $0x1008$, read byte from location $0x1009$, read byte from $0x100A$, read byte from $0x100B$.
 - f. Write 32-bits to location $0x2008 \rightarrow$ third iteration of the minor loop.

- g. Read byte from location 0x100C, read byte from location 0x100D, read byte from 0x100E, read byte from 0x100F.
 - h. Write 32-bits to location 0x200C → last iteration of the minor loop.
6. eDMA engine writes: $TCDn_SADDR = 0x1010$, $TCDn_DADDR = 0x2010$, $TCDn_CITER = 1$.
7. eDMA engine writes: $TCDn_CSR[ACTIVE] = 0$.
8. The channel retires → one iteration of the major loop. The eDMA goes idle or services the next channel.
9. Second hardware, that is, eDMA peripheral, requests channel service.
10. The channel is selected by arbitration for servicing.
11. eDMA engine writes: $TCDn_CSR[DONE] = 0$, $TCDn_CSR[START] = 0$, $TCDn_CSR[ACTIVE] = 1$.
12. eDMA engine reads: channel TCD data from local memory to internal register file.
13. The source to destination transfers are executed as follows:
 - a. Read byte from location 0x1010, read byte from location 0x1011, read byte from 0x1012, read byte from 0x1013.
 - b. Write 32-bits to location 0x2010 → first iteration of the minor loop.
 - c. Read byte from location 0x1014, read byte from location 0x1015, read byte from 0x1016, read byte from 0x1017.
 - d. Write 32-bits to location 0x2014 → second iteration of the minor loop.
 - e. Read byte from location 0x1018, read byte from location 0x1019, read byte from 0x101A, read byte from 0x101B.
 - f. Write 32-bits to location 0x2018 → third iteration of the minor loop.
 - g. Read byte from location 0x101C, read byte from location 0x101D, read byte from 0x101E, read byte from 0x101F.
 - h. Write 32-bits to location 0x201C → last iteration of the minor loop → major loop complete.
14. eDMA engine writes: $TCDn_SADDR = 0x1000$, $TCDn_DADDR = 0x2000$, $TCDn_CITER = 2$ ($TCDn_BITER$).
15. eDMA engine writes: $TCDn_CSR[ACTIVE] = 0$, $TCDn_CSR[DONE] = 1$, $INT[n] = 1$.

16. The channel retires → major loop complete. The eDMA goes idle or services the next channel.

25.5.4.3 Using the modulo feature

The modulo feature of the eDMA provides the ability to implement a circular data queue in which the size of the queue is a power of 2. MOD is a 5-bit field for the source and destination in the TCD, and it specifies which lower address bits increment from their original value after the address+offset calculation. All upper address bits remain the same as in the original value. A setting of 0 for this field disables the modulo feature.

The following table shows how the transfer addresses are specified based on the setting of the MOD field. Here a circular buffer is created where the address wraps to the original value while the 28 upper address bits (0x1234567x) retain their original value. In this example the source address is set to 0x12345670, the offset is set to 4 bytes and the MOD field is set to 4, allowing for a 2^4 byte (16-byte) size queue.

Table 25-9. Modulo example

Transfer Number	Address
1	0x12345670
2	0x12345674
3	0x12345678
4	0x1234567C
5	0x12345670
6	0x12345674

25.5.5 Monitoring transfer descriptor status

This section discusses how to monitor eDMA status.

25.5.5.1 Testing for minor loop completion

There are two methods to test for minor loop completion when using software initiated service requests. The first is to read the TCD n _CITER field and test for a change. Another method may be extracted from the sequence shown below. The second method is to test the TCD n _CSR[START] bit and the TCD n _CSR[ACTIVE] bit. The minor-loop-

complete condition is indicated by both bits reading zero after the TCD n _CSR[START] was set. Polling the TCD n _CSR[ACTIVE] bit may be inconclusive, because the active status may be missed if the channel execution is short in duration.

The TCD status bits execute the following sequence for a software activated channel:

Stage	TCD n _CSR bits			State
	START	ACTIVE	DONE	
1	1	0	0	Channel service request via software
2	0	1	0	Channel is executing
3a	0	0	0	Channel has completed the minor loop and is idle
3b	0	0	1	Channel has completed the major loop and is idle

The best method to test for minor-loop completion when using hardware, that is, peripheral, initiated service requests is to read the TCD n _CITER field and test for a change. The hardware request and acknowledge handshake signals are not visible in the programmer's model.

The TCD status bits execute the following sequence for a hardware-activated channel:

Stage	TCD n _CSR bits			State
	START	ACTIVE	DONE	
1	0	0	0	Channel service request via hardware (peripheral request asserted)
2	0	1	0	Channel is executing
3a	0	0	0	Channel has completed the minor loop and is idle
3b	0	0	1	Channel has completed the major loop and is idle

For both activation types, the major-loop-complete status is explicitly indicated via the TCD n _CSR[DONE] bit.

The TCD n _CSR[START] bit is cleared automatically when the channel begins execution regardless of how the channel activates.

25.5.5.2 Reading the transfer descriptors of active channels

The eDMA reads back the true TCD n _SADDR, TCD n _DADDR, and TCD n _NBYTES values if read while a channel executes. The true values of the SADDR, DADDR, and NBYTES are the values the eDMA engine currently uses in its internal register file and not the values in the TCD local memory for that channel. The addresses, SADDR and

DADDR, and NBYTES, which decrement to zero as the transfer progresses, can give an indication of the progress of the transfer. All other values are read back from the TCD local memory.

25.5.5.3 Checking channel preemption status

Preemption is available only when fixed arbitration is selected for both group and channel arbitration modes. A preemptive situation is one in which a preempt-enabled channel runs and a higher priority request becomes active. When the eDMA engine is not operating in fixed group, fixed channel arbitration mode, the determination of the actively running relative priority outstanding requests become undefined. Channel and/or group priorities are treated as equal, that is, constantly rotating, when Round-Robin Arbitration mode is selected.

The TCD n _CSR[ACTIVE] bit for the preempted channel remains asserted throughout the preemption. The preempted channel is temporarily suspended while the preempting channel executes one major loop iteration. If two TCD n _CSR[ACTIVE] bits are set simultaneously in the global TCD map, a higher priority channel is actively preempting a lower priority channel.

25.5.6 Channel Linking

Channel linking (or chaining) is a mechanism where one channel sets the TCD n _CSR[START] bit of another channel (or itself), therefore initiating a service request for that channel. When properly enabled, the EDMA engine automatically performs this operation at the major or minor loop completion.

The minor loop channel linking occurs at the completion of the minor loop (or one iteration of the major loop). The TCD n _CITER[E_LINK] field determines whether a minor loop link is requested. When enabled, the channel link is made after each iteration of the major loop except for the last. When the major loop is exhausted, only the major loop channel link fields are used to determine if a channel link should be made. For example, the initial fields of:

```
TCD $n$ _CITER[E_LINK] = 1
TCD $n$ _CITER[LINKCH] = 0xC
TCD $n$ _CITER[CITER] value = 0x4
TCD $n$ _CSR[MAJOR_E_LINK] = 1
TCD $n$ _CSR[MAJOR_LINKCH] = 0x7
```

executes as:

1. Minor loop done → set TCD12_CSR[START] bit

2. Minor loop done → set TCD12_CSR[START] bit
3. Minor loop done → set TCD12_CSR[START] bit
4. Minor loop done, major loop done → set TCD7_CSR[START] bit

When minor loop linking is enabled ($\text{TCDn_CITER[E_LINK]} = 1$), the TCDn_CITER[CITER] field uses a nine bit vector to form the current iteration count. When minor loop linking is disabled ($\text{TCDn_CITER[E_LINK]} = 0$), the TCDn_CITER[CITER] field uses a 15-bit vector to form the current iteration count. The bits associated with the $\text{TCDn_CITER[LINKCH]}$ field are concatenated onto the CITER value to increase the range of the CITER.

Note

The $\text{TCDn_CITER[E_LINK]}$ bit and the $\text{TCDn_BITER[E_LINK]}$ bit must equal or a configuration error is reported. The CITER and BITER vector widths must be equal to calculate the major loop, half-way done interrupt point.

The following table summarizes how a DMA channel can link to another DMA channel, i.e., use another channel's TCD, at the end of a loop.

Table 25-10. Channel Linking Parameters

Desired Link Behavior	TCD Control Field Name	Description
Link at end of Minor Loop	CITER[E_LINK]	Enable channel-to-channel linking on minor loop completion (current iteration)
	CITER[LINKCH]	Link channel number when linking at end of minor loop (current iteration)
Link at end of Major Loop	CSR[MAJOR_E_LINK]	Enable channel-to-channel linking on major loop completion
	CSR[MAJOR_LINKCH]	Link channel number when linking at end of major loop

25.5.7 Dynamic programming

This section provides recommended methods to change the programming model during channel execution.

25.5.7.1 Dynamically changing the channel priority

The following two options are recommended for dynamically changing channel priority levels:

1. Switch to Round-Robin Channel Arbitration mode, change the channel priorities, then switch back to Fixed Arbitration mode,
2. Disable all the channels, change the channel priorities, then enable the appropriate channels.

25.5.7.2 Dynamic channel linking

Dynamic channel linking is the process of setting the TCD.major.e_link bit during channel execution (see the diagram in [TCD structure](#)). This bit is read from the TCD local memory at the end of channel execution, thus allowing the user to enable the feature during channel execution.

Because the user is allowed to change the configuration during execution, a coherency model is needed. Consider the scenario where the user attempts to execute a dynamic channel link by enabling the TCD.major.e_link bit at the same time the eDMA engine is retiring the channel. The TCD.major.e_link would be set in the programmer's model, but it would be unclear whether the actual link was made before the channel retired.

The following coherency model is recommended when executing a dynamic channel link request.

1. Write 1 to the TCD.major.e_link bit.
2. Read back the TCD.major.e_link bit.
3. Test the TCD.major.e_link request status:
 - If TCD.major.e_link = 1, the dynamic link attempt was successful.
 - If TCD.major.e_link = 0, the attempted dynamic link did not succeed (the channel was already retiring).

For this request, the TCD local memory controller forces the TCD.major.e_link bit to zero on any writes to a channel's TCD.word7 after that channel's TCD.done bit is set, indicating the major loop is complete.

NOTE

The user must clear the TCD.done bit before writing the TCD.major.e_link bit. The TCD.done bit is cleared automatically by the eDMA engine after a channel begins execution.

25.5.7.3 Dynamic scatter/gather

Scatter/gather is the process of automatically loading a new TCD into a channel. It allows a DMA channel to use multiple TCDs; this enables a DMA channel to scatter the DMA data to multiple destinations or gather it from multiple sources. When scatter/gather is enabled and the channel has finished its major loop, a new TCD is fetched from system memory and loaded into that channel's descriptor location in eDMA programmer's model, thus replacing the current descriptor.

Because the user is allowed to change the configuration during execution, a coherency model is needed. Consider the scenario where the user attempts to execute a dynamic scatter/gather operation by enabling the TCD.e_sg bit at the same time the eDMA engine is retiring the channel. The TCD.e_sg would be set in the programmer's model, but it would be unclear whether the actual scatter/gather request was honored before the channel retired.

Two methods for this coherency model are shown in the following subsections. Method 1 has the advantage of reading the major.linkch field and the e_sg bit with a single read. For both dynamic channel linking and scatter/gather requests, the TCD local memory controller forces the TCD.major.e_link and TCD.e_sg bits to zero on any writes to a channel's TCD.word7 if that channel's TCD.done bit is set indicating the major loop is complete.

NOTE

The user must clear the TCD.done bit before writing the TCD.major.e_link or TCD.e_sg bits. The TCD.done bit is cleared automatically by the eDMA engine after a channel begins execution.

25.5.7.3.1 Method 1 (channel not using major loop channel linking)

For a channel not using major loop channel linking, the coherency model described here may be used for a dynamic scatter/gather request.

When the TCD.major.e_link bit is zero, the TCD.major.linkch field is not used by the eDMA. In this case, the TCD.major.linkch bits may be used for other purposes. This method uses the TCD.major.linkch field as a TCD identification (ID).

1. When the descriptors are built, write a unique TCD ID in the TCD.major.linkch field for each TCD associated with a channel using dynamic scatter/gather.
2. Write 1b to the TCD.d_req bit.

Should a dynamic scatter/gather attempt fail, setting the TCD.d_req bit will prevent a future hardware activation of this channel. This stops the channel from executing with a destination address (daddr) that was calculated using a scatter/gather address (written in the next step) instead of a dlast final offset value.

3. Write the TCD.dlast_sga field with the scatter/gather address.
4. Write 1b to the TCD.e_sg bit.
5. Read back the 16 bit TCD control/status field.
6. Test the TCD.e_sg request status and TCD.major.linkch value:

If e_sg = 1b, the dynamic link attempt was successful.

If e_sg = 0b and the major.linkch (ID) did not change, the attempted dynamic link did not succeed (the channel was already retiring).

If e_sg = 0b and the major.linkch (ID) changed, the dynamic link attempt was successful (the new TCD's e_sg value cleared the e_sg bit).

25.5.7.3.2 Method 2 (channel using major loop channel linking)

For a channel using major loop channel linking, the coherency model described here may be used for a dynamic scatter/gather request. This method uses the TCD.dlast_sga field as a TCD identification (ID).

1. Write 1b to the TCD.d_req bit.

Should a dynamic scatter/gather attempt fail, setting the d_req bit will prevent a future hardware activation of this channel. This stops the channel from executing with a destination address (daddr) that was calculated using a scatter/gather address (written in the next step) instead of a dlast final offset value.

2. Write the TCD.dlast_sga field with the scatter/gather address.
3. Write 1b to the TCD.e_sg bit.
4. Read back the TCD.e_sg bit.
5. Test the TCD.e_sg request status:

If e_sg = 1b, the dynamic link attempt was successful.

If e_sg = 0b, read the 32 bit TCD dlast_sga field.

If e_sg = 0b and the dlast_sga did not change, the attempted dynamic link did not succeed (the channel was already retiring).

If $e_sg = 0b$ and the $dlast_sga$ changed, the dynamic link attempt was successful (the new TCD's e_sg value cleared the e_sg bit).



Chapter 26

External Watchdog Monitor (EWM)

26.1 Chip-specific EWM information

26.1.1 EWM clocks

This table shows the EWM clocks and the corresponding chip clocks.

Table 26-1. EWM clock connections

Module clock	Chip clock
Low Power Clock	1 kHz LPO Clock

NOTE

In CLKCTRL[CLKSEL] of this device, lpo_clk[0] is the only available low power clock source. lpo_clk[3:1] are reserved.

26.1.2 EWM low-power modes

This table shows the EWM low-power modes and the corresponding chip low-power modes.

Table 26-2. EWM low-power modes

Module mode	Chip mode
Wait	Wait, VLPW
Stop	Stop, VLPS

26.1.3 $\overline{\text{EWM_OUT}}$ pin state in low power modes

When the CPU enters a Run mode from Wait or Stop recovery, the pin resumes its previous state before entering Wait or Stop mode. When the CPU enters Run mode from Power Down, the pin returns to its reset state.

26.2 Introduction

The watchdog is generally used to monitor the flow and execution of embedded software within an MCU. The watchdog consists of a counter that if allowed to overflow, forces an internal reset (asynchronous) to all on-chip peripherals and optionally assert the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin to reset external devices/circuits. The overflow of the watchdog counter must not occur if the software code works well and services the watchdog to re-start the actual counter.

For safety, a redundant watchdog system, External Watchdog Monitor (EWM), is designed to monitor external circuits, as well as the MCU software flow. This provides a back-up mechanism to the internal watchdog that resets the MCU's CPU and peripherals.

The EWM differs from the internal watchdog in that it does not reset the MCU's CPU and peripherals. The EWM if allowed to time-out, provides an independent $\overline{\text{EWM_out}}$ pin that when asserted resets or places an external circuit into a safe mode. The CPU resets the EWM counter that is logically ANDed with an external digital input pin. This pin allows an external circuit to influence the $\overline{\text{reset_out}}$ signal.

26.2.1 Features

Features of EWM module include:

- Independent LPO clock source
- Programmable time-out period specified in terms of number of EWM LPO clock cycles.
- Windowed refresh option
 - Provides robust check that program flow is faster than expected.
 - Programmable window.
 - Refresh outside window leads to assertion of $\overline{\text{EWM_out}}$.
- Robust refresh mechanism

- Write values of 0xB4 and 0x2C to EWM Refresh Register within 15 (*EWM_service_time*) peripheral bus clock cycles.
- One output port, $\overline{\text{EWM_out}}$, when asserted is used to reset or place the external circuit into safe mode.
- One Input port, EWM_in, allows an external circuit to control the $\overline{\text{EWM_out}}$ signal.

26.2.2 Modes of Operation

This section describes the module's operating modes.

26.2.2.1 Stop Mode

When the EWM is in stop mode, the CPU services to the EWM cannot occur. On entry to stop mode, the EWM's counter freezes.

There are two possible ways to exit from Stop mode:

- On exit from stop mode through a reset, the EWM remains disabled.
- On exit from stop mode by an interrupt, the EWM is re-enabled, and the counter continues to be clocked from the same value prior to entry to stop mode.

Note the following if the EWM enters the stop mode during CPU service mechanism: At the exit from stop mode by an interrupt, refresh mechanism state machine starts from the previous state which means, if first service command is written correctly and EWM enters the stop mode immediately, the next command has to be written within the next 15 (*EWM_service_time*) peripheral bus clocks after exiting from stop mode. User must mask all interrupts prior to executing EWM service instructions.

26.2.2.2 Wait Mode

The EWM module treats the stop and wait modes as the same. EWM functionality remains the same in both of these modes.

26.2.2.3 Debug Mode

Entry to debug mode has no effect on the EWM.

- If the EWM is enabled prior to entry of debug mode, it remains enabled.
- If the EWM is disabled prior to entry of debug mode, it remains disabled.

26.2.3 Block Diagram

This figure shows the EWM block diagram.

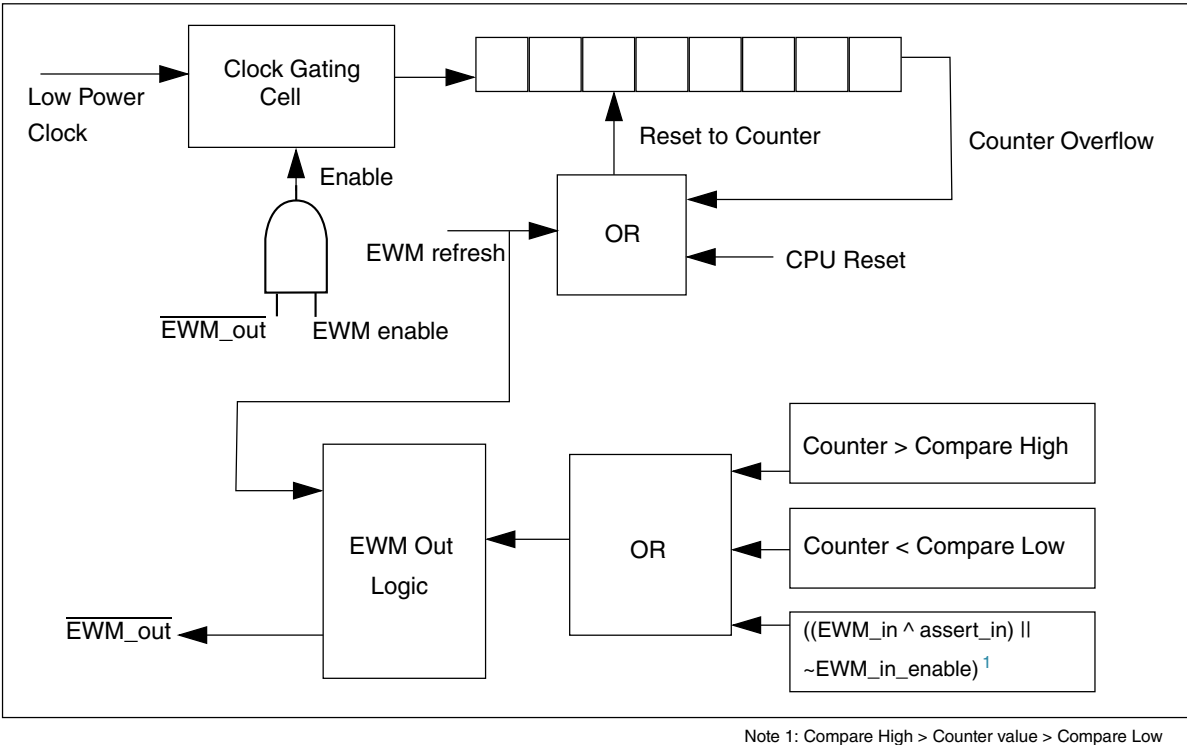


Figure 26-1. EWM Block Diagram

26.3 EWM Signal Descriptions

The EWM has two external signals and internal options for the counter clock sources, as shown in the following table.

Table 26-3. EWM Signal Descriptions

Signal	Description	I/O
EWM_in	EWM input for safety status of external safety circuits. The polarity of EWM_in is programmable using the EWM_CTRL[ASSIN] bit. The default polarity is active-low.	I
$\overline{\text{EWM_out}}$	EWM reset out signal	O
lpo_clk[3:0]	Low power clock sources for running counter	I

26.4 Memory Map/Register Definition

This section contains the module memory map and registers.

EWM memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4006_1000	Control Register (EWM_CTRL)	8	R/W	00h	26.4.1/587
4006_1001	Service Register (EWM_SERV)	8	W (always reads 0)	00h	26.4.2/588
4006_1002	Compare Low Register (EWM_CMPL)	8	R/W	00h	26.4.3/588
4006_1003	Compare High Register (EWM_CMPH)	8	R/W	FFh	26.4.4/589
4006_1004	Clock Control Register (EWM_CLKCTRL)	8	R/W	00h	26.4.5/589
4006_1005	Clock Prescaler Register (EWM_CLKPRESCALER)	8	R/W	00h	26.4.6/590

26.4.1 Control Register (EWM_CTRL)

The CTRL register is cleared by any reset.

NOTE

INEN, ASSIN and EWMEN bits can be written once after a CPU reset. Modifying these bits more than once, generates a bus transfer error.

Address: 4006_1000h base + 0h offset = 4006_1000h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0				INTEN	INEN	ASSIN	EWMEN
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

EWM_CTRL field descriptions

Field	Description
7–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3 INTEN	Interrupt Enable. This bit when set and $\overline{\text{EWM_out}}$ is asserted, an interrupt request is generated. To de-assert interrupt request, user should clear this bit by writing 0.
2 INEN	Input Enable. This bit when set, enables the EWM_in port.

Table continues on the next page...

EWM_CTRL field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
1 ASSIN	EWM_in's Assertion State Select. Default assert state of the EWM_in signal is logic zero. Setting ASSIN bit inverts the assert state to a logic one.
0 EWMEN	EWM enable. This bit when set, enables the EWM module. This resets the EWM counter to zero and deasserts the <u>EWM_out</u> signal. Clearing EWMEN bit disables the EWM, and therefore it cannot be enabled until a reset occurs, due to the write-once nature of this bit.

26.4.2 Service Register (EWM_SERV)

The SERV register provides the interface from the CPU to the EWM module. It is write-only and reads of this register return zero.

Address: 4006_1000h base + 1h offset = 4006_1001h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0							
Write	SERVICE							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

EWM_SERV field descriptions

Field	Description
SERVICE	The EWM service mechanism requires the CPU to write two values to the SERV register: a first data byte of 0xB4, followed by a second data byte of 0x2C. The EWM service is illegal if either of the following conditions is true. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The first or second data byte is not written correctly. The second data byte is not written within a fixed number of peripheral bus cycles of the first data byte. This fixed number of cycles is called <i>EWM_service_time</i>.

26.4.3 Compare Low Register (EWM_CMPL)

The CMPL register is reset to zero after a CPU reset. This provides no minimum time for the CPU to service the EWM counter.

NOTE

This register can be written only once after a CPU reset.
Writing this register more than once generates a bus transfer error.

Address: 4006_1000h base + 2h offset = 4006_1002h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	COMPAREL							
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

EWM_CMPL field descriptions

Field	Description
COMPAREL	To prevent runaway code from changing this field, software should write to this field after a CPU reset even if the (default) minimum service time is required.

26.4.4 Compare High Register (EWM_CMPH)

The CMPH register is reset to 0xFF after a CPU reset. This provides a maximum of 256 clocks time, for the CPU to service the EWM counter.

NOTE

This register can be written only once after a CPU reset. Writing this register more than once generates a bus transfer error.

NOTE

The valid values for CMPH are up to 0xFE because the EWM counter never expires when CMPH = 0xFF. The expiration happens only if EWM counter is greater than CMPH.

Address: 4006_1000h base + 3h offset = 4006_1003h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	COMPAREH							
Write								
Reset	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

EWM_CMPH field descriptions

Field	Description
COMPAREH	To prevent runaway code from changing this field, software should write to this field after a CPU reset even if the (default) maximum service time is required.

26.4.5 Clock Control Register (EWM_CLKCTRL)

This CLKCTRL register is reset to 0x00 after a CPU reset.

NOTE

This register can be written only once after a CPU reset.
Writing this register more than once generates a bus transfer error.

NOTE

User should select the required low power clock before enabling the EWM.

Address: 4006_1000h base + 4h offset = 4006_1004h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0						CLKSEL	
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

EWM_CLKCTRL field descriptions

Field	Description
7-2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CLKSEL	EWM has 4 possible low power clock sources for running EWM counter. One of the clock source can be selected by writing into this field. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 00 - lpo_clk[0] will be selected for running EWM counter. 01 - lpo_clk[1] will be selected for running EWM counter. 10 - lpo_clk[2] will be selected for running EWM counter. 11 - lpo_clk[3] will be selected for running EWM counter.

26.4.6 Clock Prescaler Register (EWM_CLKPRESCALER)

This CLKPRESCALER register is reset to 0x00 after a CPU reset.

NOTE

This register can be written only once after a CPU reset.
Writing this register more than once generates a bus transfer error.

NOTE

Write the required prescaler value before enabling the EWM.

NOTE

The implementation of this register is chip-specific. See the Chip Configuration details.

Address: 4006_1000h base + 5h offset = 4006_1005h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	CLK_DIV							
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

EWM_CLKPRESCALER field descriptions

Field	Description
CLK_DIV	Selected low power clock source for running the EWM counter can be prescaled as below. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Prescaled clock frequency = low power clock source frequency / (1 + CLK_DIV)

26.5 Functional Description

The following sections describe functional details of the EWM module.

26.5.1 The $\overline{\text{EWM_out}}$ Signal

The $\overline{\text{EWM_out}}$ is a digital output signal used to gate an external circuit (application specific) that controls critical safety functions. For example, the $\overline{\text{EWM_out}}$ could be connected to the high voltage transistors circuits that control an AC motor in a large appliance.

The $\overline{\text{EWM_out}}$ signal remains deasserted when the EWM is being regularly serviced by the CPU within the programmable service window, indicating that the application code is executed as expected.

The $\overline{\text{EWM_out}}$ signal is asserted in any of the following conditions:

- Servicing the EWM when the counter value is less than CMPL value.
- If the EWM counter value reaches the CMPH value, and no EWM service has occurred.
- Servicing the EWM when the counter value is more than CMPL and less than CMPH values and EWM_in signal is asserted.
- If functionality of EWM_in pin is enabled and EWM_in pin is asserted while servicing the EWM.
- After any reset (by the virtue of the external pull-down mechanism on the $\overline{\text{EWM_out}}$ pin)

On a normal reset, the $\overline{\text{EWM_out}}$ is asserted. To deassert the $\overline{\text{EWM_out}}$, set EWMEN bit in the CTRL register to enable the EWM.

If the $\overline{\text{EWM_out}}$ signal shares its pad with a digital I/O pin, on reset this actual pad defers to being an input signal. It takes the $\overline{\text{EWM_out}}$ output condition only after you enable the EWM by the EWMEN bit in the CTRL register.

When the $\overline{\text{EWM_out}}$ pin is asserted, it can only be deasserted by forcing a MCU reset.

Note

$\overline{\text{EWM_out}}$ pad must be in pull down state when EWM functionality is used and when EWM is under Reset.

26.5.2 The EWM_in Signal

The EWM_in is a digital input signal that allows an external circuit to control the $\overline{\text{EWM_out}}$ signal. For example, in the application, an external circuit monitors a critical safety function, and if there is fault with this circuit's behavior, it can then actively initiate the $\overline{\text{EWM_out}}$ signal that controls the gating circuit.

The EWM_in signal is ignored if the EWM is disabled, or if INEN bit of CTRL register is cleared, as after any reset.

On enabling the EWM (setting the CTRL[EWMEN] bit) and enabling EWM_in functionality (setting the CTRL[INEN] bit), the EWM_in signal must be in the deasserted state prior to the CPU servicing the EWM. This ensures that the $\overline{\text{EWM_out}}$ stays in the deasserted state; otherwise, the $\overline{\text{EWM_out}}$ pin is asserted.

Note

You must update the CMPH and CMPL registers prior to enabling the EWM. After enabling the EWM, the counter resets to zero, therefore providing a reasonable time after a power-on reset for the external monitoring circuit to stabilize and ensure that the EWM_in pin is deasserted.

26.5.3 EWM Counter

It is an 8-bit ripple counter fed from a clock source that is independent of the peripheral bus clock source. As the preferred time-out is between 1 ms and 100 ms the actual clock source should be in the kHz range.

The counter is reset to zero, after a CPU reset, or a EWM refresh cycle. The counter value is not accessible to the CPU.

26.5.4 EWM Compare Registers

The compare registers CMPL and CMPH are write-once after a CPU reset and cannot be modified until another CPU reset occurs.

The EWM compare registers are used to create a service window, which is used by the CPU to service/refresh the EWM module.

- If the CPU services the EWM when the counter value lies between CMPL value and CMPH value, the counter is reset to zero. This is a legal service operation.
- If the CPU executes a EWM service/refresh action outside the legal service window, $\overline{\text{EWM_out}}$ is asserted.

It is illegal to program CMPL and CMPH with same value. In this case, as soon as counter reaches (CMPL + 1), $\overline{\text{EWM_out}}$ is asserted.

26.5.5 EWM Refresh Mechanism

Other than the initial configuration of the EWM, the CPU can only access the EWM by the EWM Service Register. The CPU must access the EWM service register with correct write of unique data within the windowed time frame as determined by the CMPL and CMPH registers. Therefore, three possible conditions can occur:

Table 26-4. EWM Refresh Mechanisms

Condition	Mechanism
A unique EWM service occurs when $\text{CMPL} < \text{Counter} < \text{CMPH}$.	The software behaves as expected and the counter of the EWM is reset to zero, and $\overline{\text{EWM_out}}$ pin remains in the deasserted state. Note: $\overline{\text{EWM_in}}$ pin is also assumed to be in the deasserted state.
A unique EWM service occurs when $\text{Counter} < \text{CMPL}$	The software services the EWM and therefore resets the counter to zero and asserts the $\overline{\text{EWM_out}}$ pin (irrespective of the $\overline{\text{EWM_in}}$ pin). The $\overline{\text{EWM_out}}$ pin is expected to gate critical safety circuits.
Counter value reaches CMPH prior to a unique EWM service	The counter value reaches the CMPH value and no service of the EWM resets the counter to zero and assert the $\overline{\text{EWM_out}}$ pin (irrespective of the $\overline{\text{EWM_in}}$ pin). The $\overline{\text{EWM_out}}$ pin is expected to gate critical safety circuits.

Any illegal service on EWM has no effect on $\overline{\text{EWM_out}}$.

26.5.6 EWM Interrupt

When $\overline{\text{EWM_out}}$ is asserted, an interrupt request is generated to indicate the assertion of the EWM reset out signal. This interrupt is enabled when CTRL[INTEN] is set. Clearing this bit clears the interrupt request but does not affect $\overline{\text{EWM_out}}$. The $\overline{\text{EWM_out}}$ signal can be deasserted only by forcing a system reset.

26.5.7 Selecting the EWM counter clock

There are four possible low power clock sources for the EWM counter. Select one of the available clock sources by programming CLKCTRL[CLKSEL].

26.5.8 Counter clock prescaler

The EWM counter clock source can be prescaled by a clock divider, by programming CLKPRESCALER[CLK_DIV]. This divided clock is used to run the EWM counter.

NOTE

The divided clock used to run the EWM counter must be no more than half the frequency of the bus clock.

Chapter 27

Watchdog Timer (WDOG)

27.1 Chip-specific WDOG information

27.1.1 WDOG clocks

This table shows the WDOG module clocks and the corresponding chip clocks.

Table 27-1. WDOG clock connections

Module clock	Chip clock
LPO Oscillator	1 kHz LPO Clock or MCGIRCLK depending on SIM_WDOGC[WDOGCLKS]
Alt Clock	Bus Clock
Fast Test Clock	Bus Clock
System Bus Clock	Bus Clock

27.1.2 WDOG low-power modes

This table shows the WDOG low-power modes and the corresponding chip low-power modes.

Table 27-2. WDOG low-power modes

Module mode	Chip mode
Wait	Wait, VLPW
Stop	Stop, VLPS
Power Down	VLLSx

27.2 Introduction

The Watchdog Timer (WDOG) keeps a watch on the system functioning and resets it in case of its failure. Reasons for failure include run-away software code and the stoppage of the system clock that in a safety critical system can lead to serious consequences. In such cases, the watchdog brings the system into a safe state of operation. The watchdog monitors the operation of the system by expecting periodic communication from the software, generally known as servicing or refreshing the watchdog. If this periodic refreshing does not occur, the watchdog resets the system.

27.3 Features

The features of the Watchdog Timer (WDOG) include:

- Clock source input independent from CPU/bus clock. Choice between two clock sources:
 - Low-power oscillator (LPO)
 - External system clock
- Unlock sequence for allowing updates to write-once WDOG control/configuration bits.
- All WDOG control/configuration bits are writable once only within 256 bus clock cycles of being unlocked.
 - You need to always update these bits after unlocking within 256 bus clock cycles. Failure to update these bits resets the system.
- Programmable time-out period specified in terms of number of WDOG clock cycles.
- Ability to test WDOG timer and reset with a flag indicating watchdog test.
 - Quick test—Small time-out value programmed for quick test.
 - Byte test—Individual bytes of timer tested one at a time.
 - Read-only access to the WDOG timer—Allows dynamic check that WDOG timer is operational.

NOTE

Reading the watchdog timer counter while running the watchdog on the bus clock might not give the accurate counter value.

- Windowed refresh option
 - Provides robust check that program flow is faster than expected.
 - Programmable window.
 - Refresh outside window leads to reset.
- Robust refresh mechanism
 - Write values of 0xA602 and 0xB480 to WDOG Refresh Register within 20 bus clock cycles.
- Count of WDOG resets as they occur.
- Configurable interrupt on time-out to provide debug breadcrumbs. This is followed by a reset after 256 bus clock cycles.

27.4 Functional overview

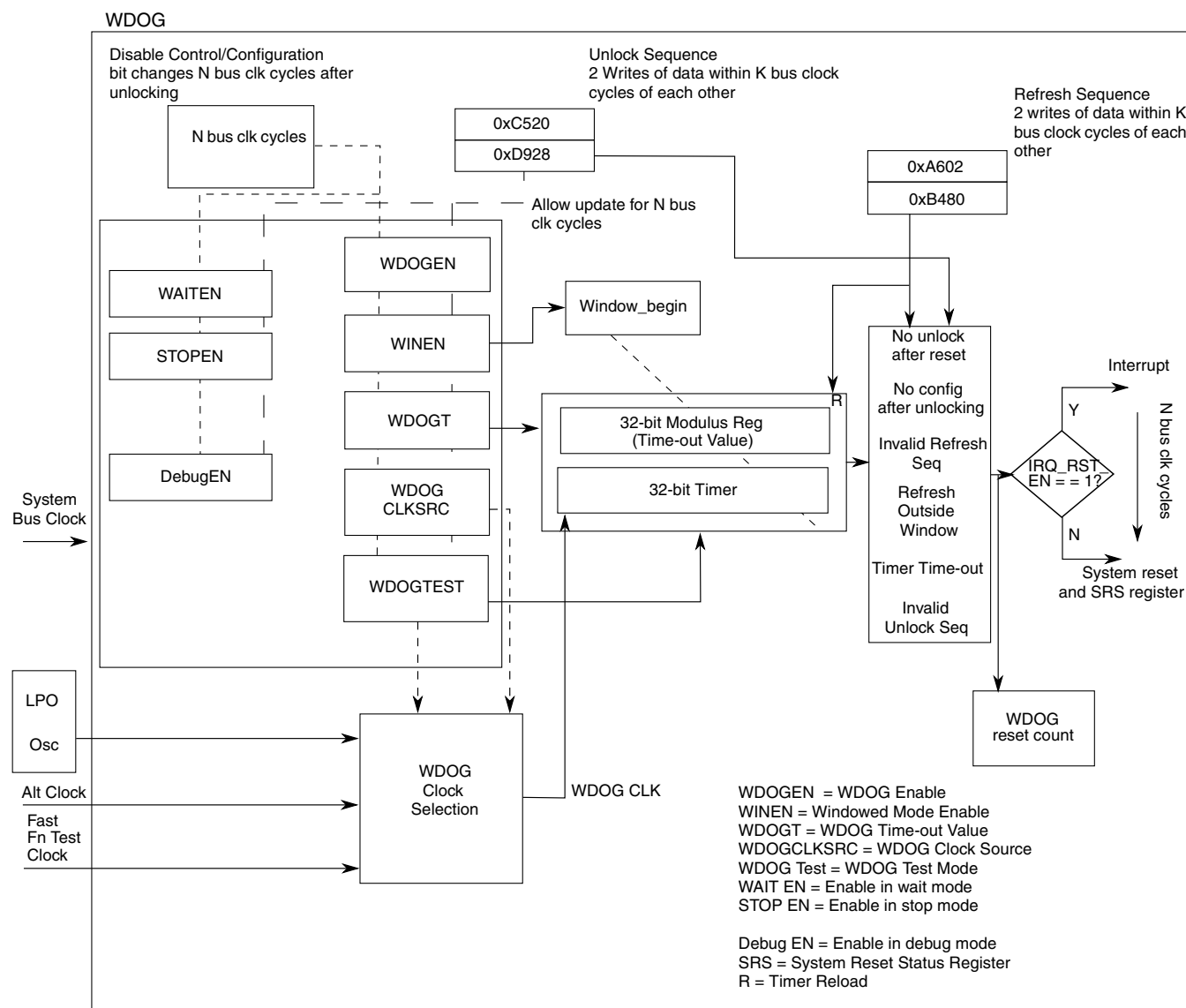


Figure 27-1. WDOG operation

The preceding figure shows the operation of the watchdog. The values for N and K are:

- N = 256
- K = 20

The watchdog is a fail safe mechanism that brings the system into a known initial state in case of its failure due to CPU clock stopping or a run-away condition in code execution. In its simplest form, the watchdog timer runs continuously off a clock source and expects to be serviced periodically, failing which it resets the system. This ensures that the software is executing correctly and has not run away in an unintended direction. Software can adjust the period of servicing or the time-out value for the watchdog timer to meet the needs of the application.

You can select a windowed mode of operation that expects the servicing to be done only in a particular window of the time-out period. An attempted servicing of the watchdog outside this window results in a reset. By operating in this mode, you can get an indication of whether the code is running faster than expected. The window length is also user programmable.

If a system fails to update/refresh the watchdog due to an unknown and persistent cause, it will be caught in an endless cycle of resets from the watchdog. To analyze the cause of such conditions, you can program the watchdog to first issue an interrupt, followed by a reset. In the interrupt service routine, the software can analyze the system stack to aid debugging.

To enhance the independence of watchdog from the system, it runs off an independent LPO oscillator clock. You can also switch over to an alternate clock source if required, through a control register bit.

27.4.1 Unlocking and updating the watchdog

As long as `ALLOW_UPDATE` in the watchdog control register is set, you can unlock and modify the write-once-only control and configuration registers:

1. Write `0xC520` followed by `0xD928` within 20 bus clock cycles to a specific unlock register (`WDOG_UNLOCK`).
2. Wait one bus clock cycle. You cannot update registers on the bus clock cycle immediately following the write of the unlock sequence.
3. An update window equal in length to the watchdog configuration time (`WCT`) opens. Within this window, you can update the configuration and control register bits.

These register bits can be modified only once after unlocking.

If none of the configuration and control registers is updated within the update window, the watchdog issues a reset, that is, interrupt-then-reset, to the system. Trying to unlock the watchdog within the `WCT` after an initial unlock has no effect. During the update operation, the watchdog timer is not paused and continues running in the background. After the update window closes, the watchdog timer restarts and the watchdog functions according to the new configuration.

The update feature is useful for applications that have an initial, non-safety critical part, where the watchdog is kept disabled or with a conveniently long time-out period. This means the application coder does not have to frequently service the watchdog. After the critical part of the application begins, the watchdog can be reconfigured as needed.

The watchdog issues a reset, that is, interrupt-then-reset if enabled, to the system for any of these invalid unlock sequences:

- Write any value other than 0xC520 or 0xD928 to the unlock register.
- ALLOW_UPDATE is set and a gap of more than 20 bus clock cycles is inserted between the writing of the unlock sequence values.

An attempted refresh operation between the two writes of the unlock sequence and in the WCT time following a successful unlock, goes undetected. Also, see [Watchdog Operation with 8-bit access](#) for guidelines related to 8-bit accesses to the unlock register.

Note

A context switch during unlocking and refreshing may lead to a watchdog reset.

27.4.2 Watchdog configuration time (WCT)

To prevent unintended modification of the watchdog's control and configuration register bits, you are allowed to update them only within a period of 256 bus clock cycles after unlocking. This period is known as the watchdog configuration time (WCT). In addition, these register bits can be modified only once after unlocking them for editing, even after reset.

You must unlock the registers within WCT after system reset, failing which the WDOG issues a reset to the system. In other words, you must write at least the first word of the unlocking sequence within the WCT after reset. After this is done, you have a further 20 bus clock cycles, the maximum allowed gap between the words of the unlock sequence, to complete the unlocking operation. Thereafter, to make sure that you do not forget to configure the watchdog, the watchdog issues a reset if none of the WDOG control and configuration registers is updated in the WCT after unlock. After the close of this window or after the first write, these register bits are locked out from any further changes.

The watchdog timer keeps running according to its default configuration through unlocking and update operations that can extend up to a maximum total of $2 \times \text{WCT} + 20$ bus clock cycles. Therefore, it must be ensured that the time-out value for the watchdog is always greater than $2 \times \text{WCT} + 20$ bus clock cycles.

Updates in the write-once registers take effect only after the WCT window closes with the following exceptions for which changes take effect immediately:

- Stop, Wait, and Debug mode enable
- IRQ_RST_EN

The operations of refreshing the watchdog goes undetected during the WCT.

27.4.3 Refreshing the watchdog

A robust refreshing mechanism has been chosen for the watchdog. A valid refresh is a write of 0xA602 followed by 0xB480 within 20 bus clock cycles to watchdog refresh register. If these two values are written more than 20 bus cycles apart or if something other than these two values is written to the register, a watchdog reset, or interrupt-then-reset if enabled, is issued to the system. A valid refresh makes the watchdog timer restart on the next bus clock. Also, an attempted unlock operation in between the two writes of the refresh sequence goes undetected. See [Watchdog Operation with 8-bit access](#) for guidelines related to 8-bit accesses to the refresh register.

27.4.4 Windowed mode of operation

In this mode of operation, a restriction is placed on the point in time within the time-out period at which the watchdog can be refreshed. The refresh is considered valid only when the watchdog timer increments beyond a certain count as specified by the watchdog window register. This is known as refreshing the watchdog within a window of the total time-out period. If a refresh is attempted before the timer reaches the window value, the watchdog generates a reset, or interrupt-then-reset if enabled. If there is no refresh at all, the watchdog times out and generates a reset or interrupt-then-reset if enabled.

27.4.5 Watchdog disabled mode of operation

When the watchdog is disabled through the WDOG_EN bit in the watchdog status and control register, the watchdog timer is reset to zero and is disabled from counting until you enable it or it is enabled again by the system reset. In this mode, the watchdog timer cannot be refreshed—there is no requirement to do so while the timer is disabled. However, the watchdog still generates a reset, or interrupt-then-reset if enabled, on a non-time-out exception. See [Generated Resets and Interrupts](#). You need to unlock the watchdog before enabling it. A system reset brings the watchdog out of the disabled mode.

27.4.6 Low-power modes of operation

The low-power modes of operation of the watchdog are described in the following table:

Table 27-3. Low-power modes of operation

Mode	Behavior
Wait	If the WDOG is enabled (WAIT_EN = 1), it can run on bus clock or low-power oscillator clock (CLK_SRC = x) to generate interrupt (IRQ_RST_EN=1) followed by a reset on time-out. After reset the WDOG reset counter increments by one.
Stop	Where the bus clock is gated, the WDOG can run only on low-power oscillator clock (CLK_SRC=0) if it is enabled in stop (STOP_EN=1). In this case, the WDOG runs to time-out twice, and then generates a reset from its backup circuitry. Therefore, if you program the watchdog to time-out after 100 ms and then enter such a stop mode, the reset will occur after 200 ms. Also, in this case, no interrupt will be generated irrespective of the value of IRQ_RST_EN bit. After WDOG reset, the WDOG reset counter will also not increment.
Power-Down	The watchdog is <ul style="list-style-type: none"> powered off in VLLSx mode

27.4.7 Debug modes of operation

You can program the watchdog to disable in debug modes through DBG_EN in the watchdog control register. This results in the watchdog timer pausing for the duration of the mode. Register read/writes are still allowed, which means that operations like refresh, unlock, and so on are allowed. Upon exit from the mode, the timer resumes its operation from the point of pausing.

The entry of the system into the debug mode does not excuse it from compulsorily configuring the watchdog in the WCT time after unlock, unless the system bus clock is gated off, in which case the internal state machine pauses too. Failing to do so still results in a reset, or interrupt-then-reset, if enabled, to the system. Also, all of the exception conditions that result in a reset to the system, as described in [Generated Resets and Interrupts](#), are still valid in this mode. So, if an exception condition occurs and the system bus clock is on, a reset occurs, or interrupt-then-reset, if enabled.

The entry into Debug mode within WCT after reset is treated differently. The WDOG timer is kept reset to zero and there is no need to unlock and configure it within WCT. You must not try to refresh or unlock the WDOG in this state or unknown behavior may result. Upon exit from this mode, the WDOG timer restarts and the WDOG has to be unlocked and configured within WCT.

27.5 Testing the watchdog

For IEC 60730 and other safety standards, the expectation is that anything that monitors a safety function must be tested, and this test is required to be fault tolerant. To test the watchdog, its main timer and its associated compare and reset logic must be tested. To

this end, two tests are implemented for the watchdog, as described in [Quick Test](#) and [Byte Test](#). A control bit is provided to put the watchdog into functional test mode. There is also an overriding test-disable control bit which allows the functional test mode to be disabled permanently. After it is set, this test-disable bit can only be cleared by a reset.

These two tests achieve the overall aim of testing the counter functioning and the compare and reset logic.

Note

Do not enable the watchdog interrupt during these tests. If required, you must ensure that the effective time-out value is greater than WCT time. See [Generated Resets and Interrupts](#) for more details.

To run a particular test:

1. Select either quick test or byte test..
2. Set a certain test mode bit to put the watchdog in the functional test mode. Setting this bit automatically switches the watchdog timer to a fast clock source. The switching of the clock source is done to achieve a faster time-out and hence a faster test.

In a successful test, the timer times out after reaching the programmed time-out value and generates a system reset.

Note

After emerging from a reset due to a watchdog test, unlock and configure the watchdog. The refresh and unlock operations and interrupt are not automatically disabled in the test mode.

27.5.1 Quick test

In this test, the time-out value of watchdog timer is programmed to a very low value to achieve quick time-out. The only difference between the quick test and the normal mode of the watchdog is that TESTWDOG is set for the quick test. This allows for a faster test of the watchdog reset mechanism.

27.5.2 Byte test

The byte test is a more thorough a test of the watchdog timer. In this test, the timer is split up into its constituent byte-wide stages that are run independently and tested for time-out against the corresponding byte of the time-out value register. The following figure explains the splitting concept:

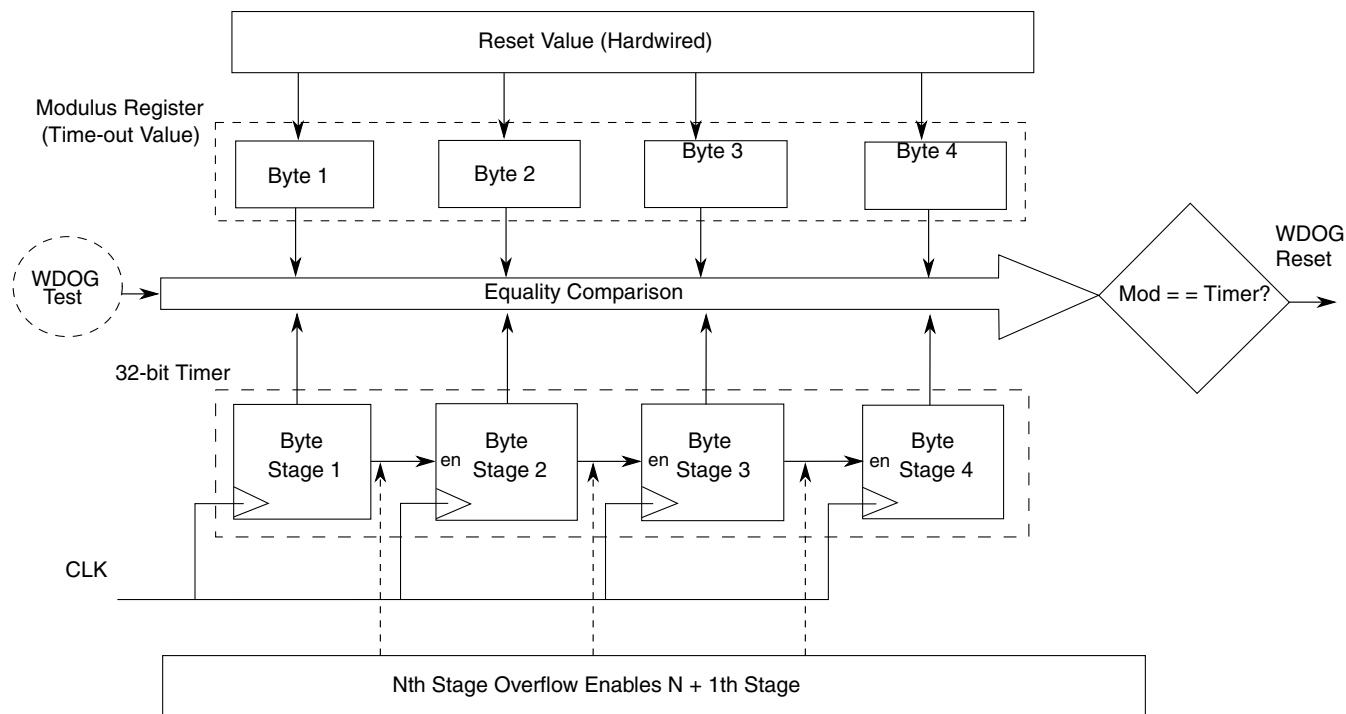


Figure 27-2. Watchdog timer byte splitting

Each stage is an 8-bit synchronous counter followed by combinational logic that generates an overflow signal. The overflow signal acts as an enable to the $N + 1$ th stage.

In the test mode, when an individual byte, N , is tested, byte $N - 1$ is loaded forcefully with $0xFF$, and both these bytes are allowed to run off the clock source. By doing so, the overflow signal from stage $N - 1$ is generated immediately, enabling counter stage N . The N th stage runs and compares with the N th byte of the time-out value register. In this way, the byte N is also tested along with the link between it and the preceding stage. No other stages, $N - 2$, $N - 3...$ and $N + 1$, $N + 2...$ are enabled for the test on byte N . These disabled stages, except the most significant stage of the counter, are loaded with a value of $0xFF$.

27.6 Backup reset generator

The backup reset generator generates the final reset which goes out to the system. It has a backup mechanism which ensures that in case the bus clock stops and prevents the main state machine from generating a reset exception/interrupt, the watchdog timer's time-out is separately routed out as a reset to the system. Two successive timer time-outs without an intervening system reset result in the backup reset generator routing out the time-out signal as a reset to the system.

27.7 Generated resets and interrupts

The watchdog generates a reset in the following events, also referred to as exceptions:

- A watchdog time-out
- Failure to unlock the watchdog within WCT time after system reset deassertion
- No update of the control and configuration registers within the WCT window after unlocking. At least one of the following registers must be written to within the WCT window to avoid reset:
 - WDOG_ST_CTRL_H, WDOG_ST_CTRL_L
 - WDOG_TO_VAL_H, WDOG_TO_VAL_L
 - WDOG_WIN_H, WDOG_WIN_L
 - WDOG_PRESCALER
- A value other than the unlock sequence or the refresh sequence is written to the unlock and/or refresh registers, respectively.
- A gap of more than 20 bus cycles exists between the writes of two values of the unlock sequence.
- A gap of more than 20 bus cycles exists between the writes of two values of the refresh sequence.

The watchdog can also generate an interrupt. If IRQ_RST_EN is set, then on the above mentioned events WDOG_ST_CTRL_L[INT_FLG] is set, generating an interrupt. A watchdog reset is also generated WCT time later to ensure the watchdog is fault tolerant. The interrupt can be cleared by writing 1 to INT_FLG.

The gap of WCT between interrupt and reset means that the WDOG time-out value must be greater than WCT. Otherwise, if the interrupt was generated due to a time-out, a second consecutive time-out will occur in that WCT gap. This will trigger the backup reset generator to generate a reset to the system, prematurely ending the interrupt service routine execution. Also, jobs such as counting the number of watchdog resets would not be done.

27.8 Memory map and register definition

This section consists of the memory map and register descriptions.

WDOG memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4005_2000	Watchdog Status and Control Register High (WDOG_STCTRLH)	16	R/W	01D3h	27.8.1/607
4005_2002	Watchdog Status and Control Register Low (WDOG_STCTRLH)	16	R/W	0001h	27.8.2/608
4005_2004	Watchdog Time-out Value Register High (WDOG_TOVALH)	16	R/W	004Ch	27.8.3/609
4005_2006	Watchdog Time-out Value Register Low (WDOG_TOVALH)	16	R/W	4B4Ch	27.8.4/609
4005_2008	Watchdog Window Register High (WDOG_WINH)	16	R/W	0000h	27.8.5/610
4005_200A	Watchdog Window Register Low (WDOG_WINL)	16	R/W	0010h	27.8.6/610
4005_200C	Watchdog Refresh register (WDOG_REFRESH)	16	R/W	B480h	27.8.7/611
4005_200E	Watchdog Unlock register (WDOG_UNLOCK)	16	R/W	D928h	27.8.8/611
4005_2010	Watchdog Timer Output Register High (WDOG_TMROUTH)	16	R/W	0000h	27.8.9/611
4005_2012	Watchdog Timer Output Register Low (WDOG_TMROUTL)	16	R/W	0000h	27.8.10/612
4005_2014	Watchdog Reset Count register (WDOG_RSTCNT)	16	R/W	0000h	27.8.11/612
4005_2016	Watchdog Prescaler register (WDOG_PRESC)	16	R/W	0400h	27.8.12/612

27.8.1 Watchdog Status and Control Register High (WDOG_STCTRLH)

Address: 4005_2000h base + 0h offset = 4005_2000h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	DISTESTWDOG	BYTESEL[1:0]		TESTSEL	TESTWDOG	0	Reserved	WAITEN	STOPEN	DBGEN	ALLOWUPDATE	WINEN	IRQRSTEN	CLKSRC	WDOGEN
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	0	1	0	0	1	1

WDOG_STCTRLH field descriptions

Field	Description
15 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
14 DISTESTWDOG	Allows the WDOG's functional test mode to be disabled permanently. After it is set, it can only be cleared by a reset. It cannot be unlocked for editing after it is set. 0 WDOG functional test mode is not disabled. 1 WDOG functional test mode is disabled permanently until reset.
13–12 BYTESEL[1:0]	This 2-bit field selects the byte to be tested when the watchdog is in the byte test mode. 00 Byte 0 selected 01 Byte 1 selected 10 Byte 2 selected 11 Byte 3 selected
11 TESTSEL	Effective only if TESTWDOG is set. Selects the test to be run on the watchdog timer. 0 Quick test. The timer runs in normal operation. You can load a small time-out value to do a quick test. 1 Byte test. Puts the timer in the byte test mode where individual bytes of the timer are enabled for operation and are compared for time-out against the corresponding byte of the programmed time-out value. Select the byte through BYTESEL[1:0] for testing.
10 TESTWDOG	Puts the watchdog in the functional test mode. In this mode, the watchdog timer and the associated compare and reset generation logic is tested for correct operation. The clock for the timer is switched from the main watchdog clock to the fast clock input for watchdog functional test. The TESTSEL bit selects the test to be run.
9 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
8 Reserved	This field is reserved.
7 WAITEN	Enables or disables WDOG in Wait mode. 0 WDOG is disabled in CPU Wait mode. 1 WDOG is enabled in CPU Wait mode.
6 STOPEN	Enables or disables WDOG in Stop mode.

Table continues on the next page...

WDOG_STCTRLH field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 WDOG is disabled in CPU Stop mode. 1 WDOG is enabled in CPU Stop mode.
5 DBGEN	Enables or disables WDOG in Debug mode. 0 WDOG is disabled in CPU Debug mode. 1 WDOG is enabled in CPU Debug mode.
4 ALLOWUPDATE	Enables updates to watchdog write-once registers, after the reset-triggered initial configuration window (WCT) closes, through unlock sequence. 0 No further updates allowed to WDOG write-once registers. 1 WDOG write-once registers can be unlocked for updating.
3 WINEN	Enables Windowing mode. 0 Windowing mode is disabled. 1 Windowing mode is enabled.
2 IRQRSTEN	Used to enable the debug breadcrumbs feature. A change in this bit is updated immediately, as opposed to updating after WCT. 0 WDOG time-out generates reset only. 1 WDOG time-out initially generates an interrupt. After WCT, it generates a reset.
1 CLKSRC	Selects clock source for the WDOG timer and other internal timing operations. 0 WDOG clock sourced from LPO . 1 WDOG clock sourced from alternate clock source.
0 WDOGEN	Enables or disables the WDOG's operation. In the disabled state, the watchdog timer is kept in the reset state, but the other exception conditions can still trigger a reset/interrupt. A change in the value of this bit must be held for more than one WDOG_CLK cycle for the WDOG to be enabled or disabled. 0 WDOG is disabled. 1 WDOG is enabled.

27.8.2 Watchdog Status and Control Register Low (WDOG_STCTRLLL)

Address: 4005_2000h base + 2h offset = 4005_2002h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Read	INTFLG	Reserved						
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	Reserved							
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

WDOG_STCTRL field descriptions

Field	Description
15 INTFLG	Interrupt flag. It is set when an exception occurs. IRQRSTEN = 1 is a precondition to set this flag. INTFLG = 1 results in an interrupt being issued followed by a reset, WCT later. The interrupt can be cleared by writing 1 to this bit. It also gets cleared on a system reset.
Reserved	This field is reserved. NOTE: Do not modify this field value.

27.8.3 Watchdog Time-out Value Register High (WDOG_TOVALH)

Address: 4005_2000h base + 4h offset = 4005_2004h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	TOVALHIGH															
Write	TOVALHIGH															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0

WDOG_TOVALH field descriptions

Field	Description
TOVALHIGH	Defines the upper 16 bits of the 32-bit time-out value for the watchdog timer. It is defined in terms of cycles of the watchdog clock.

27.8.4 Watchdog Time-out Value Register Low (WDOG_TOVALL)

The time-out value of the watchdog must be set to a minimum of four watchdog clock cycles. This is to take into account the delay in new settings taking effect in the watchdog clock domain.

Address: 4005_2000h base + 6h offset = 4005_2006h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	TOVALL															
Write	TOVALL															
Reset	0	1	0	0	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0

WDOG_TOVALL field descriptions

Field	Description
TOVALL	Defines the lower 16 bits of the 32-bit time-out value for the watchdog timer. It is defined in terms of cycles of the watchdog clock.

27.8.5 Watchdog Window Register High (WDOG_WINH)

NOTE

You must set the Window Register value lower than the Time-out Value Register.

Address: 4005_2000h base + 8h offset = 4005_2008h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	WINHIGH															
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

WDOG_WINH field descriptions

Field	Description
WINHIGH	Defines the upper 16 bits of the 32-bit window for the windowed mode of operation of the watchdog. It is defined in terms of cycles of the watchdog clock. In this mode, the watchdog can be refreshed only when the timer has reached a value greater than or equal to this window length. A refresh outside this window resets the system or if IRQRSTEN is set, it interrupts and then resets the system.

27.8.6 Watchdog Window Register Low (WDOG_WINL)

NOTE

You must set the Window Register value lower than the Time-out Value Register.

Address: 4005_2000h base + Ah offset = 4005_200Ah

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	WINLOW															
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0

WDOG_WINL field descriptions

Field	Description
WINLOW	Defines the lower 16 bits of the 32-bit window for the windowed mode of operation of the watchdog. It is defined in terms of cycles of the pre-scaled watchdog clock. In this mode, the watchdog can be refreshed only when the timer reaches a value greater than or equal to this window length value. A refresh outside of this window resets the system or if IRQRSTEN is set, it interrupts and then resets the system.

27.8.7 Watchdog Refresh register (WDOG_REFRESH)

Address: 4005_2000h base + Ch offset = 4005_200Ch

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	WDOGREFRESH															
Write																
Reset	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

WDOG_REFRESH field descriptions

Field	Description
WDOGREFRESH	Watchdog refresh register. A sequence of 0xA602 followed by 0xB480 within 20 bus clock cycles written to this register refreshes the WDOG and prevents it from resetting the system. Writing a value other than the above mentioned sequence or if the sequence is longer than 20 bus cycles, resets the system, or if IRQSTEN is set, it interrupts and then resets the system.

27.8.8 Watchdog Unlock register (WDOG_UNLOCK)

Address: 4005_2000h base + Eh offset = 4005_200Eh

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	WDOGUNLOCK															
Write																
Reset	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0

WDOG_UNLOCK field descriptions

Field	Description
WDOGUNLOCK	Writing the unlock sequence values to this register to makes the watchdog write-once registers writable again. The required unlock sequence is 0xC520 followed by 0xD928 within 20 bus clock cycles. A valid unlock sequence opens a window equal in length to the WCT within which you can update the registers. Writing a value other than the above mentioned sequence or if the sequence is longer than 20 bus cycles, resets the system or if IRQSTEN is set, it interrupts and then resets the system. The unlock sequence is effective only if ALLOWUPDATE is set.

27.8.9 Watchdog Timer Output Register High (WDOG_TMROUTH)

Address: 4005_2000h base + 10h offset = 4005_2010h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	TIMEROUTHIGH															
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

WDOG_TMROUTH field descriptions

Field	Description
TIMEROUTHIGH	Shows the value of the upper 16 bits of the watchdog timer.

27.8.10 Watchdog Timer Output Register Low (WDOG_TMROUTL)

During Stop mode, the WDOG_TIMER_OUT will be caught at the pre-stop value of the watchdog timer. After exiting Stop mode, a maximum delay of 1 WDOG_CLK cycle + 3 bus clock cycles will occur before the WDOG_TIMER_OUT starts following the watchdog timer.

Address: 4005_2000h base + 12h offset = 4005_2012h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	TIMEROUTLOW															
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

WDOG_TMROUTL field descriptions

Field	Description
TIMEROUTLOW	Shows the value of the lower 16 bits of the watchdog timer.

27.8.11 Watchdog Reset Count register (WDOG_RSTCNT)

Address: 4005_2000h base + 14h offset = 4005_2014h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	RSTCNT															
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

WDOG_RSTCNT field descriptions

Field	Description
RSTCNT	Counts the number of times the watchdog resets the system. This register is reset only on a POR. Writing 1 to the bit to be cleared enables you to clear the contents of this register.

27.8.12 Watchdog Prescaler register (WDOG_PRESC)

Address: 4005_2000h base + 16h offset = 4005_2016h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0					PRESCVAL			0							
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

WDOG_PRESC field descriptions

Field	Description
15–11 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
10–8 PRESCVAL	3-bit prescaler for the watchdog clock source. A value of zero indicates no division of the input WDOG clock. The watchdog clock is divided by (PRESCVAL + 1) to provide the prescaled WDOG_CLK.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

27.9 Watchdog operation with 8-bit access

27.9.1 General guideline

When performing 8-bit accesses to the watchdog's 16-bit registers where the intention is to access both the bytes of a register, place the two 8-bit accesses one after the other in your code.

27.9.2 Refresh and unlock operations with 8-bit access

One exception condition that generates a reset to the system is the write of any value other than those required for a legal refresh/update sequence to the respective refresh and unlock registers.

For an 8-bit access to these registers, writing a correct value requires at least two bus clock cycles, resulting in an invalid value in the registers for one cycle. Therefore, the system is reset even if the intention is to write a correct value to the refresh/unlock register. Keeping this in mind, the exception condition for 8-bit accesses is slightly modified.

Whereas the match for a correct value for a refresh/unlock sequence is as according to the original definition, the match for an incorrect value is done byte-wise on the refresh/unlock rather than for the whole 16-bit value. This means that if the high byte of the refresh/unlock register contains any value other than high bytes of the two values that make up the sequence, it is treated as an exception condition, leading to a reset or interrupt-then-reset. The same holds true for the lower byte of the refresh or unlock register. Take the refresh operation that expects a write of 0xA602 followed by 0xB480 to the refresh register, as an example.

Table 27-4. Refresh for 8-bit access

	WDOG_REFRESH[15:8]	WDOG_REFRESH[7:0]	Sequence value1 or value2 match	Mismatch exception
Current Value	0xB4	0x80	Value2 match	No
Write 1	0xB4	0x02	No match	No
Write 2	0xA6	0x02	Value1 match	No
Write 3	0xB4	0x02	No match	No
Write 4	0xB4	0x80	Value2 match. Sequence complete.	No
Write 5	0x02	0x80	No match	Yes

As shown in the preceding table, the refresh register holds its reset value initially. Thereafter, two 8-bit accesses are performed on the register to write the first value of the refresh sequence. No mismatch exception is registered on the intermediate write, Write1. The sequence is completed by performing two more 8-bit accesses, writing in the second value of the sequence for a successful refresh. It must be noted that the match of value2 takes place only when the complete 16-bit value is correctly written, write4. Hence, the requirement of writing value2 of the sequence within 20 bus clock cycles of value1 is checked by measuring the gap between write2 and write4.

It is reiterated that the condition for matching values 1 and 2 of the refresh or unlock sequence remains unchanged. The difference for 8-bit accesses is that the criterion for detecting a mismatch is less strict. Any 16-bit access still needs to adhere to the original guidelines, mentioned in the sections [Refreshing the Watchdog](#).

27.10 Restrictions on watchdog operation

This section mentions some exceptions to the watchdog operation that may not be apparent to you.

- **Restriction on unlock/refresh operations**—In the period between the closure of the WCT window after unlock and the actual reload of the watchdog timer, unlock and refresh operations need not be attempted.
- **The update and reload of the watchdog timer** happens two to three watchdog clocks after WCT window closes, following a successful configuration on unlock.
- **Clock Switching Delay**—The watchdog uses glitch-free multiplexers at two places – one to choose between the LPO oscillator input and alternate clock input, and the other to choose between the watchdog functional clock and fast clock input for

watchdog functional test. A maximum time period of ~2 clock A cycles plus ~2 clock B cycles elapses from the time a switch is requested to the occurrence of the actual clock switch, where clock A and B are the two input clocks to the clock mux.

- For the windowed mode, there is a two to three bus clock latency between the watchdog counter going past the window value and the same registering in the bus clock domain.
- For proper operation of the watchdog, the watchdog clock must be at least five times slower than the system bus clock at all times. An exception is when the watchdog clock is synchronous to the bus clock wherein the watchdog clock can be as fast as the bus clock.
- WCT must be equivalent to at least three watchdog clock cycles. If not ensured, this means that even after the close of the WCT window, you have to wait for the synchronized system reset to deassert in the watchdog clock domain, before expecting the configuration updates to take effect.
- The time-out value of the watchdog should be set to a minimum of four watchdog clock cycles. This is to take into account the delay in new settings taking effect in the watchdog clock domain.
- You must take care not only to refresh the watchdog within the watchdog timer's actual time-out period, but also provide enough allowance for the time it takes for the refresh sequence to be detected by the watchdog timer, on the watchdog clock.
- Updates cannot be made in the bus clock cycle immediately following the write of the unlock sequence, but one bus clock cycle later.
- It should be ensured that the time-out value for the watchdog is always greater than $2 \times \text{WCT time} + 20$ bus clock cycles.
- An attempted refresh operation, in between the two writes of the unlock sequence and in the WCT time following a successful unlock, will go undetected.
- Trying to unlock the watchdog within the WCT time after an initial unlock has no effect.
- The refresh and unlock operations and interrupt are not automatically disabled in the watchdog functional test mode.
- After emerging from a reset due to a watchdog functional test, you are still expected to go through the mandatory steps of unlocking and configuring the watchdog. The watchdog continues to be in its functional test mode and therefore you should pull the watchdog out of the functional test mode within WCT time of reset.

restrictions on watchdog operation

- After emerging from a reset due to a watchdog functional test, you still need to go through the mandatory steps of unlocking and configuring the watchdog.
- You must ensure that both the clock inputs to the glitchless clock multiplexers are alive during the switching of clocks. Failure to do so results in a loss of clock at their outputs.
- There is a gap of two to three watchdog clock cycles from the point that stop mode is entered to the watchdog timer actually pausing, due to synchronization. The same holds true for an exit from the stop mode, this time resulting in a two to three watchdog clock cycle delay in the timer restarting. In case the duration of the stop mode is less than one watchdog clock cycle, the watchdog timer is not guaranteed to pause.
- Consider the case when the first refresh value is written, following which the system enters stop mode with system bus clk still on. If the second refresh value is not written within 20 bus cycles of the first value, the system is reset, or interrupt-then-reset if enabled.

Chapter 28

Crossbar AND/OR/INVERT (AOI) Module

28.1 Chip-specific AOI information

28.1.1 AOI signal assignment

The AOI block has 16 input signals that are connected directly to the 16 output signals of XBARB. The AOI has 4 output signals that are connected to XBARA inputs.

Table 28-1. AOI signal assignment

AOI Input	Assigned Output	AOI Output	Assigned Input
AOI_IN0	XBARB_OUT0	—	—
AOI_IN1	XBARB_OUT1	—	—
AOI_IN2	XBARB_OUT2	AND_OR_INVERT_0	XBARA_IN46
AOI_IN3	XBARB_OUT3	—	—
AOI_IN4	XBARB_OUT4	—	—
AOI_IN5	XBARB_OUT5	AND_OR_INVERT_1	XBARA_IN47
AOI_IN6	XBARB_OUT6	—	—
AOI_IN7	XBARB_OUT7	—	—
AOI_IN8	XBARB_OUT8	—	—
AOI_IN9	XBARB_OUT9	—	—
AOI_IN10	XBARB_OUT10	AND_OR_INVERT_2	XBARA_IN48
AOI_IN11	XBARB_OUT11	—	—
AOI_IN12	XBARB_OUT12	—	—
AOI_IN13	XBARB_OUT13	AND_OR_INVERT_3	XBARA_IN49
AOI_IN14	XBARB_OUT14	—	—
AOI_IN15	XBARB_OUT15	—	—

28.2 Introduction

The AND/OR/INVERT module (known simply as the AOI module) supports the generation of a configurable number of EVENT signals. Each output EVENT_n is a configurable and/or/invert function of four associated AOI inputs: A_n, B_n, C_n, and D_n.

This module is designed to be integrated in conjunction with one or more inter-peripheral crossbar switch (XBAR) modules. A crossbar switch is typically used to select the 4*n AOI inputs from among available peripheral outputs and GPIO signals. The n EVENT_n outputs from the AOI module are typically used as additional inputs to a second crossbar switch, adding to it the ability to connect to its outputs an arbitrary 4-input boolean function of its other inputs.

The AOI controller is a slave peripheral module connecting event input indicators from a variety of device modules and generating event output signals that can be routed to an inter-peripheral crossbar switch or other peripherals. Its programming model is accessed through the standard IPS (Sky Blue) slave interface. The module is designed to be very configurable in terms of the functionality of its integrated AOI functions.

28.2.1 Overview

The AOI module supports a configurable number of event outputs, where each event output represents a user-programmed combinational boolean function based on four event inputs. The key features of this module include:

- Four dedicated inputs for each event output
- User-programmable combinational boolean function evaluation for each event output
- Memory-mapped device connected to a slave peripheral (IPS) bus
- Configurable number of event outputs

NOTE

The connections from the AOI module outputs to other functions is SoC-specific.

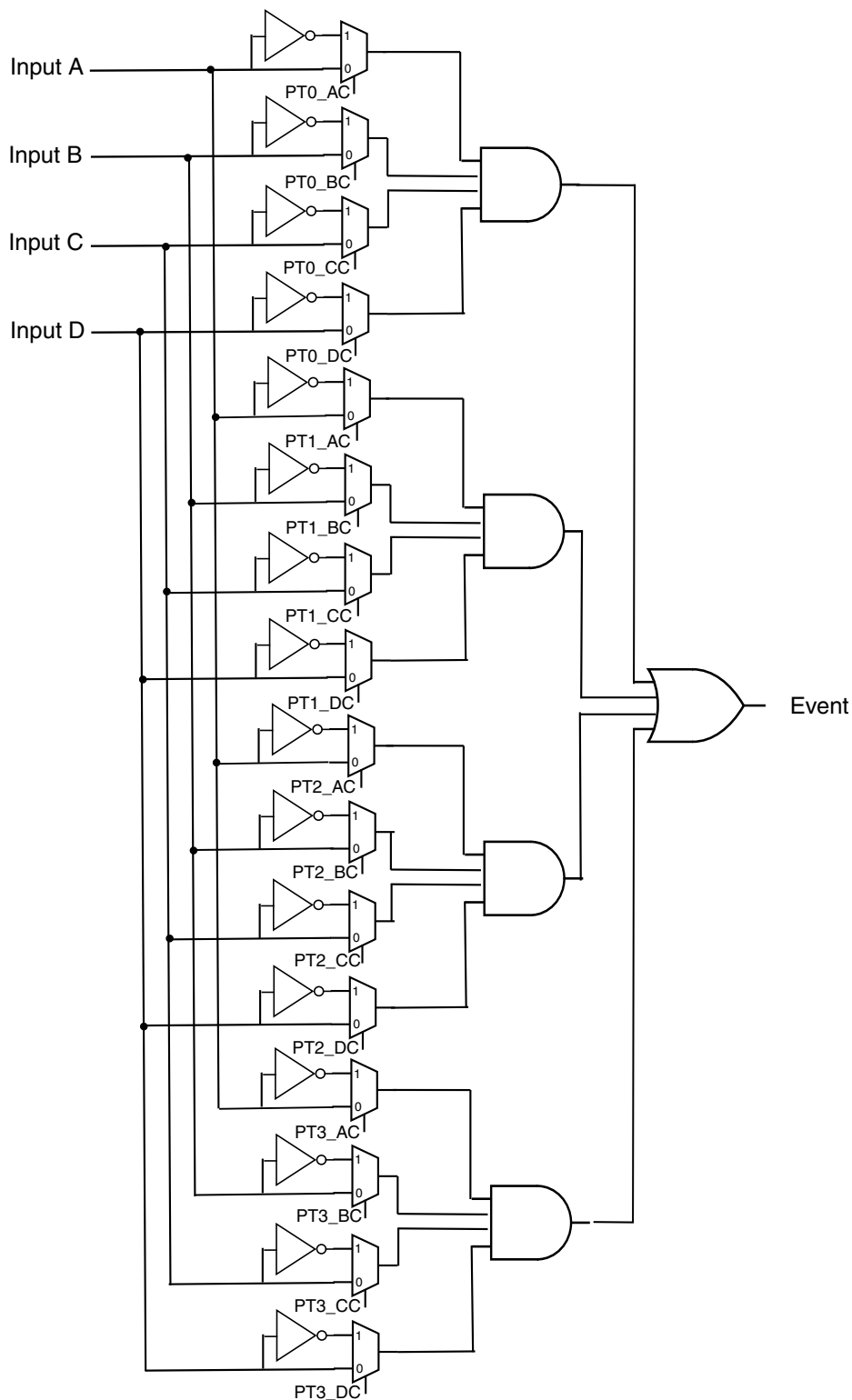


Figure 28-1. Simplified AOI Block Diagram

28.2.2 Features

The major features of the AOI module are summarized below:

- Highly programmable module for creating combinational boolean events for use as hardware triggers
 - Each channel has four event inputs and one output
 - Evaluates a combinational boolean expression as the sum of four products where each product term includes all four selected input sources available as true or complement values
 - Event output is formed as purely combinational logic and operates as a hardware trigger
- Memory-mapped device connected to the slave peripheral (IPS) bus
 - Programming model organized per channel for simplified software

28.2.3 Modes of Operation

The AOI module does not support any special modes of operation. As shown in [Figure 28-1](#), its operation is primarily controlled by the selected event inputs and outputs. Additionally, as a memory-mapped device located on the slave peripheral bus, it responds based strictly on memory address for accesses to its programming model.

The AOI module resides in the slave peripheral *bus clock domain*.

28.3 External Signal Description

The AOI module does not directly support any external interfaces. There may be package input signals (indirectly) connected to the module as event inputs, but since the *AOI does not include any input synchronization hardware*, this function must be handled before the event input signals are routed into the module.

28.4 Memory Map and Register Descriptions

The AOI module supports access to its programming model via a 16-bit peripheral bus connection. The module is designed to support 16-bit accesses only. Functionality for accesses of other widths is undefined.

The AOI module supports a specific number of event outputs. Each output EVENT_n outputs a four-term AOI function of four binary inputs: An, Bn, Cn, and Dn. A pair of 16-bit registers configures this four-term AOI function: The two registers BFCRT01_n and BFCRT23_n define the configuration for the evaluation of the Boolean function defining EVENT_n, where *n* is the event output channel number. The BFCRT01_n register defines the configuration of product terms 0 and 1, and the BFCRT23_n register defines the configuration of product terms 2 and 3.

The AOI module provides a universal Boolean function generator using a four-term sum of products expression with each product term containing true or complement values of the four selected event inputs (An, Bn, Cn, Dn). Specifically, the EVENT_n output is defined by the following "4 x 4" Boolean expression:

```
EVENTn
= (0, An, ~An, 1) & (0, Bn, ~Bn, 1) & (0, Cn, ~Cn, 1) & (0, Dn, ~Dn, 1) // product term 0
| (0, An, ~An, 1) & (0, Bn, ~Bn, 1) & (0, Cn, ~Cn, 1) & (0, Dn, ~Dn, 1) // product term 1
| (0, An, ~An, 1) & (0, Bn, ~Bn, 1) & (0, Cn, ~Cn, 1) & (0, Dn, ~Dn, 1) // product term 2
| (0, An, ~An, 1) & (0, Bn, ~Bn, 1) & (0, Cn, ~Cn, 1) & (0, Dn, ~Dn, 1) // product term 3
```

where each selected input of each product term can be configured to produce a logical 0 or 1 or pass the true or complement of the selected event input. Each product term uses 8 bits of configuration information, 2 bits for each of the four selected event inputs. The resulting logic provides a simple yet powerful Boolean function evaluation for defining an event output.

These AOI functions are combinational in nature and are intended to be sampled and used synchronously.

AOI memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4005_B000	Boolean Function Term 0 and 1 Configuration Register for EVENT _n (AOI0_BFCRT010)	16	R/W	0000h	28.4.1/622
4005_B002	Boolean Function Term 2 and 3 Configuration Register for EVENT _n (AOI0_BFCRT230)	16	R/W	0000h	28.4.2/623
4005_B004	Boolean Function Term 0 and 1 Configuration Register for EVENT _n (AOI0_BFCRT011)	16	R/W	0000h	28.4.1/622
4005_B006	Boolean Function Term 2 and 3 Configuration Register for EVENT _n (AOI0_BFCRT231)	16	R/W	0000h	28.4.2/623
4005_B008	Boolean Function Term 0 and 1 Configuration Register for EVENT _n (AOI0_BFCRT012)	16	R/W	0000h	28.4.1/622
4005_B00A	Boolean Function Term 2 and 3 Configuration Register for EVENT _n (AOI0_BFCRT232)	16	R/W	0000h	28.4.2/623
4005_B00C	Boolean Function Term 0 and 1 Configuration Register for EVENT _n (AOI0_BFCRT013)	16	R/W	0000h	28.4.1/622
4005_B00E	Boolean Function Term 2 and 3 Configuration Register for EVENT _n (AOI0_BFCRT233)	16	R/W	0000h	28.4.2/623

28.4.1 Boolean Function Term 0 and 1 Configuration Register for EVENT_n (AOIx_BFCRT01_n)

Address: 4005_B000h base + 0h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	PT0_AC		PT0_BC		PT0_CC		PT0_DC		PT1_AC		PT1_BC		PT1_CC		PT1_DC	
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

AOIx_BFCRT01_n field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 PT0_AC	<p>Product term 0, A input configuration</p> <p>This 2-bit field defines the Boolean evaluation associated with the selected input A in product term 0.</p> <p>00 Force the A input in this product term to a logical zero</p> <p>01 Pass the A input in this product term</p> <p>10 Complement the A input in this product term</p> <p>11 Force the A input in this product term to a logical one</p>
13–12 PT0_BC	<p>Product term 0, B input configuration</p> <p>This 2-bit field defines the Boolean evaluation associated with the selected input B in product term 0.</p> <p>00 Force the B input in this product term to a logical zero</p> <p>01 Pass the B input in this product term</p> <p>10 Complement the B input in this product term</p> <p>11 Force the B input in this product term to a logical one</p>
11–10 PT0_CC	<p>Product term 0, C input configuration</p> <p>This 2-bit field defines the Boolean evaluation associated with the selected input C in product term 0.</p> <p>00 Force the C input in this product term to a logical zero</p> <p>01 Pass the C input in this product term</p> <p>10 Complement the C input in this product term</p> <p>11 Force the C input in this product term to a logical one</p>
9–8 PT0_DC	<p>Product term 0, D input configuration</p> <p>This 2-bit field defines the Boolean evaluation associated with the selected input D in product term 0.</p> <p>00 Force the D input in this product term to a logical zero</p> <p>01 Pass the D input in this product term</p> <p>10 Complement the D input in this product term</p> <p>11 Force the D input in this product term to a logical one</p>
7–6 PT1_AC	<p>Product term 1, A input configuration</p> <p>This 2-bit field defines the Boolean evaluation associated with the selected input A in product term 1.</p> <p>00 Force the A input in this product term to a logical zero</p> <p>01 Pass the A input in this product term</p>

Table continues on the next page...

AOIx_BFCRT01n field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	10 Complement the A input in this product term 11 Force the A input in this product term to a logical one
5–4 PT1_BC	Product term 1, B input configuration This 2-bit field defines the Boolean evaluation associated with the selected input B in product term 1. 00 Force the B input in this product term to a logical zero 01 Pass the B input in this product term 10 Complement the B input in this product term 11 Force the B input in this product term to a logical one
3–2 PT1_CC	Product term 1, C input configuration This 2-bit field defines the Boolean evaluation associated with the selected input C in product term 1. 00 Force the C input in this product term to a logical zero 01 Pass the C input in this product term 10 Complement the C input in this product term 11 Force the C input in this product term to a logical one
PT1_DC	Product term 1, D input configuration This 2-bit field defines the Boolean evaluation associated with the selected input D in product term 1. 00 Force the D input in this product term to a logical zero 01 Pass the D input in this product term 10 Complement the D input in this product term 11 Force the D input in this product term to a logical one

28.4.2 Boolean Function Term 2 and 3 Configuration Register for EVENTn (AOIx_BFCRT23n)

Address: 4005_B000h base + 2h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read																
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

AOIx_BFCRT23n field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 PT2_AC	Product term 2, A input configuration This 2-bit field defines the Boolean evaluation associated with the selected input A in product term 2. 00 Force the A input in this product term to a logical zero 01 Pass the A input in this product term 10 Complement the A input in this product term 11 Force the A input in this product term to a logical one

Table continues on the next page...

AOIx_BFCRT23n field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
13–12 PT2_BC	<p>Product term 2, B input configuration</p> <p>This 2-bit field defines the Boolean evaluation associated with the selected input B in product term 2.</p> <p>00 Force the B input in this product term to a logical zero</p> <p>01 Pass the B input in this product term</p> <p>10 Complement the B input in this product term</p> <p>11 Force the B input in this product term to a logical one</p>
11–10 PT2_CC	<p>Product term 2, C input configuration</p> <p>This 2-bit field defines the Boolean evaluation associated with the selected input C in product term 2.</p> <p>00 Force the C input in this product term to a logical zero</p> <p>01 Pass the C input in this product term</p> <p>10 Complement the C input in this product term</p> <p>11 Force the C input in this product term to a logical one</p>
9–8 PT2_DC	<p>Product term 2, D input configuration</p> <p>This 2-bit field defines the Boolean evaluation associated with the selected input D in product term 2.</p> <p>00 Force the D input in this product term to a logical zero</p> <p>01 Pass the D input in this product term</p> <p>10 Complement the D input in this product term</p> <p>11 Force the D input in this product term to a logical one</p>
7–6 PT3_AC	<p>Product term 3, A input configuration</p> <p>This 2-bit field defines the Boolean evaluation associated with the selected input A in product term 3.</p> <p>00 Force the A input in this product term to a logical zero</p> <p>01 Pass the A input in this product term</p> <p>10 Complement the A input in this product term</p> <p>11 Force the A input in this product term to a logical one</p>
5–4 PT3_BC	<p>Product term 3, B input configuration</p> <p>This 2-bit field defines the Boolean evaluation associated with the selected input B in product term 3.</p> <p>00 Force the B input in this product term to a logical zero</p> <p>01 Pass the B input in this product term</p> <p>10 Complement the B input in this product term</p> <p>11 Force the B input in this product term to a logical one</p>
3–2 PT3_CC	<p>Product term 3, C input configuration</p> <p>This 2-bit field defines the Boolean evaluation associated with the selected input C in product term 3.</p> <p>00 Force the C input in this product term to a logical zero</p> <p>01 Pass the C input in this product term</p> <p>10 Complement the C input in this product term</p> <p>11 Force the C input in this product term to a logical one</p>
PT3_DC	<p>Product term 3, D input configuration</p> <p>This 2-bit field defines the Boolean evaluation associated with the selected input D in product term 3.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

AOIx_BFCRT23n field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
00	Force the D input in this product term to a logical zero
01	Pass the D input in this product term
10	Complement the D input in this product term
11	Force the D input in this product term to a logical one

28.5 Functional Description

The AOI is a highly programmable module for creating combinational boolean outputs for use as hardware triggers. Each AOI output channel, as shown in [Figure 28-1](#), has one logic function:

- Evaluation of a combinational boolean expression as a sum of four products where each product term includes all four selected input sources available as true or complement values

A typical application of the AOI module is to be integrated with one or more inter-peripheral crossbar switch modules as illustrated in the following figure. The 20 external inputs are shared by two crossbar switch modules. The crossbar switch on the top is used to select the inputs to four 4-input AOI functions in the AOI module. The outputs of these four AOI functions are output from the AOI module and are added to the original 20 external inputs to provide a total of 24 inputs to the bottom crossbar switch. As a result, the bottom crossbar can not only direct any of the original 20 external inputs to any of its outputs, it can also now direct any one of four 4-input AOI functions of those external inputs to any of its outputs.

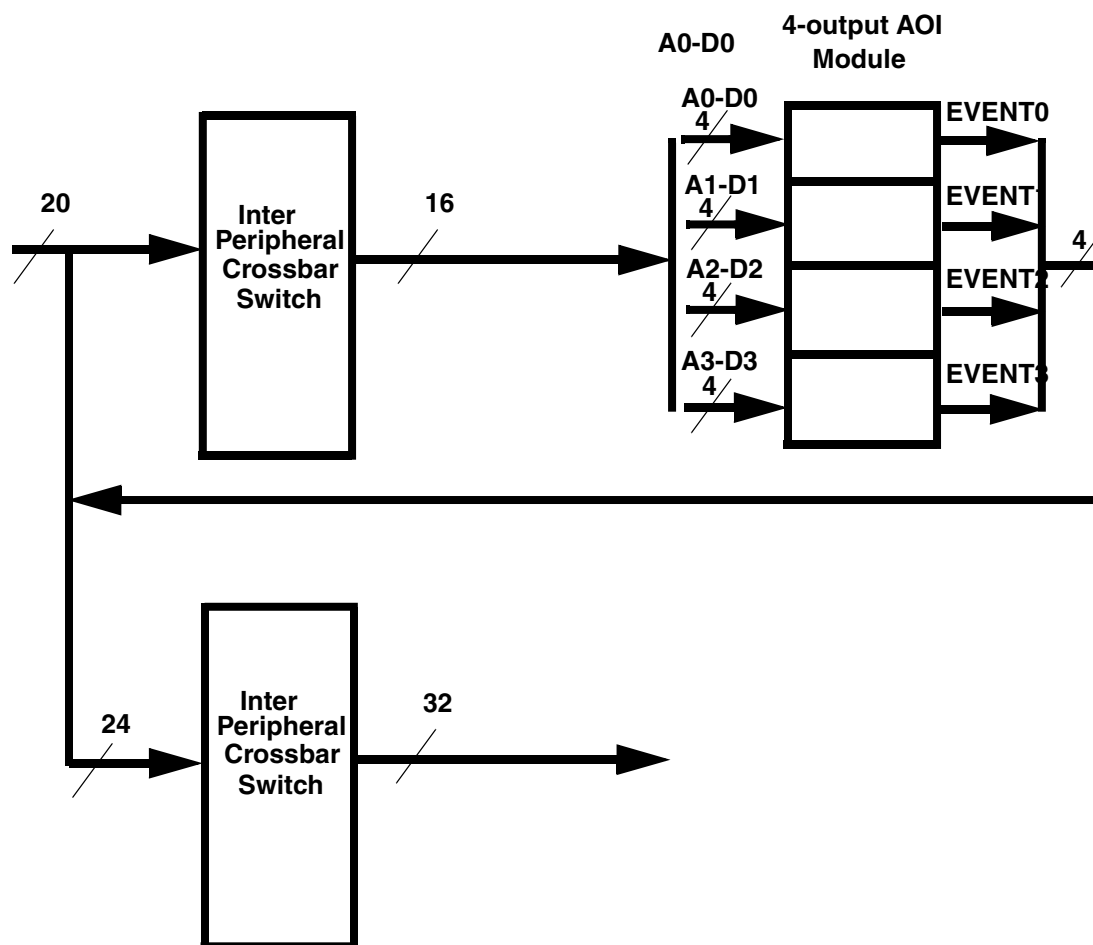


Figure 28-2. Integration Example of AOI with two Inter-Peripheral Crossbar Switches

28.5.1 Configuration Examples for the Boolean Function Evaluation

This section presents examples of the programming model configuration for simple boolean expressions.

The AOI module provides a universal boolean function generator using a four-term sum of products expression with each product term containing true or complement values of the four selected event inputs (A, B, C, D). Specifically, the event output is defined by the following “4 x 4” boolean expression:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{EVENTn} &= (0, \text{An}, \sim\text{An}, 1) \& (0, \text{Bn}, \sim\text{Bn}, 1) \& (0, \text{Cn}, \sim\text{Cn}, 1) \& (0, \text{Dn}, \sim\text{Dn}, 1) // \text{product term 0} \\ &| (0, \text{An}, \sim\text{An}, 1) \& (0, \text{Bn}, \sim\text{Bn}, 1) \& (0, \text{Cn}, \sim\text{Cn}, 1) \& (0, \text{Dn}, \sim\text{Dn}, 1) // \text{product term 1} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} & (0, A_n, \sim A_n, 1) \& (0, B_n, \sim B_n, 1) \& (0, C_n, \sim C_n, 1) \& (0, D_n, \sim D_n, 1) // \text{ product term 2} \\ & (0, A_n, \sim A_n, 1) \& (0, B_n, \sim B_n, 1) \& (0, C_n, \sim C_n, 1) \& (0, D_n, \sim D_n, 1) // \text{ product term 3} \end{aligned}$$

where each selected input term in each product term can be configured to produce a logical 0 or 1 or pass the true or complement of the selected event input. Each product term uses eight bits of configuration information, two bits for each of the four selected event inputs. The actual boolean expression implemented in each channel is:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{EVENTn} &= (PT0_AC[0] \& A \mid PT0_AC[1] \& \sim A) // \text{ product term 0} \\ &\& (PT0_BC[0] \& B \mid PT0_BC[1] \& \sim B) \\ &\& (PT0_CC[0] \& C \mid PT0_CC[1] \& \sim C) \\ &\& (PT0_DC[0] \& D \mid PT0_DC[1] \& \sim D) \\ & \mid (PT1_AC[0] \& A \mid PT1_AC[1] \& \sim A) // \text{ product term 1} \\ &\& (PT1_BC[0] \& B \mid PT1_BC[1] \& \sim B) \\ &\& (PT1_CC[0] \& C \mid PT1_CC[1] \& \sim C) \\ &\& (PT1_DC[0] \& D \mid PT1_DC[1] \& \sim D) \\ & \mid (PT2_AC[0] \& A \mid PT2_AC[1] \& \sim A) // \text{ product term 2} \\ &\& (PT2_BC[0] \& B \mid PT2_BC[1] \& \sim B) \\ &\& (PT2_CC[0] \& C \mid PT2_CC[1] \& \sim C) \\ &\& (PT2_DC[0] \& D \mid PT2_DC[1] \& \sim D) \\ & \mid (PT3_AC[0] \& A \mid PT3_AC[1] \& \sim A) // \text{ product term 3} \\ &\& (PT3_BC[0] \& B \mid PT3_BC[1] \& \sim B) \\ &\& (PT3_CC[0] \& C \mid PT3_CC[1] \& \sim C) \\ &\& (PT3_DC[0] \& D \mid PT3_DC[1] \& \sim D) \end{aligned}$$

where the bits of the combined {BFECRT01n,BFCRT23n} registers correspond to the $PT\{0-3\}_{\{A,B,C,D\}C[1:0]}$ terms in the equation.

Consider the settings of the combined 32-bit {BFECRT01n,BFCRT23n} registers for several simple boolean expressions as shown in [Table 28-2](#).

Table 28-2. IEVENT_BFECRn Values for Simple Boolean Expressions

Event Output Expression	PT0	PT1	PT2	PT3	{BFCRT01, BFCRT23}
A & B	A & B	0	0	0	01011111_00000000_00000000_00000000
A & B & C	A & B & C	0	0	0	01010111_00000000_00000000_00000000
(A & B & C) + D	A & B & C	D	0	0	01010111_11111101_00000000_00000000
A + B + C + D	A	B	C	D	01111111_11011111_11110111_11111101
(A & ~B) + (~A & B)	A & ~B	~A & B	0	0	01101111_10011111_00000000_00000000

As can be seen in these examples, the resulting logic provides a simple yet powerful boolean function evaluation for defining an event output.

28.5.2 AOI Timing Between Inputs and Outputs

Each EVENTn output of the AOI module is a combination function of its four dedicated inputs An, Bn, Cn, and Dn. Propagation through the AOI and any associated inter-peripheral crossbar switch modules is intended to be single bus clock cycle.

Chapter 29

Inter-Peripheral Crossbar Switch A (XBARA)

29.1 Chip-specific XBARA information

29.1.1 XBARA input signal assignment

Table 29-1. XBARA input assignment

XBARA Input	Assigned Output
XBARA_IN0	VSS
XBARA_IN1	VDD
XBARA_IN2	XB_IN2
XBARA_IN3	XB_IN3
XBARA_IN4	XB_IN4
XBARA_IN5	XB_IN5
XBARA_IN6	XB_IN6
XBARA_IN7	XB_IN7
XBARA_IN8	XB_IN8
XBARA_IN9	XB_IN9
XBARA_IN10	XB_IN10
XBARA_IN11	XB_IN11
XBARA_IN12	CMP0_OUT
XBARA_IN13	CMP1_OUT
XBARA_IN14	CMP2_OUT
XBARA_IN15	CMP3_OUT
XBARA_IN16	FTM0_CH_aITRIG
XBARA_IN17	FTM0_INIT
XBARA_IN18	FTM3_CH_aITRIG
XBARA_IN19	FTM3_INIT
XBARA_IN20	PWM0_OUT_TRG00
XBARA_IN21	PWM0_OUT_TRG01
XBARA_IN22	PWM0_OUT_TRG10

Table continues on the next page...

Table 29-1. XBARA input assignment (continued)

XBARA Input	Assigned Output
XBARA_IN23	PWM0_OUT_TRG11
XBARA_IN24	PWM0_OUT_TRG20
XBARA_IN25	PWM0_OUT_TRG21
XBARA_IN26	PWM0_OUT_TRG30
XBARA_IN27	PWM0_OUT_TRG31
XBARA_IN28	PDB0_CH1_OUT
XBARA_IN29	PDB0_CH0_OUT
XBARA_IN30	PDB1_CH1_OUT
XBARA_IN31	PDB1_CH0_OUT
XBARA_IN32	HSADC1A Scan complete
XBARA_IN33	HSADC0A Scan complete
XBARA_IN34	HSADC1B Scan complete
XBARA_IN35	HSADC0B Scan complete
XBARA_IN36	FTM1_allTRIG
XBARA_IN37	FTM1_INIT
XBARA_IN38	DMA ch0_done ¹
XBARA_IN39	DMA ch1_done ¹
XBARA_IN40	DMA ch6_done ¹
XBARA_IN41	DMA ch7_done ¹
XBARA_IN42	PIT ch0
XBARA_IN43	PIT ch1
XBARA_IN44	ADC0_COCO
XBARA_IN45	ENC_CMP/POS_MATCH
XBARA_IN46	AND_OR_INVERT_0
XBARA_IN47	AND_OR_INVERT_1
XBARA_IN48	AND_OR_INVERT_2
XBARA_IN49	AND_OR_INVERT_3
XBARA_IN50	PIT ch2
XBARA_IN51	PIT ch3
XBARA_IN52	PWM1_OUT_TRIG00/PWM1_OUT_TRIG01
XBARA_IN53	PWM1_OUT_TRIG10/PWM1_OUT_TRIG11
XBARA_IN54	PWM1_OUT_TRIG20/PWM1_OUT_TRIG21
XBARA_IN55	PWM1_OUT_TRIG30/PWM1_OUT_TRIG31
XBARA_IN56	FTM2_allTRIG
XBARA_IN57	FTM2_INIT

1. It works when DMA is triggered by hardware. Software trigger (DMA_TCDn_CSR, START) wouldn't generate the DMA_done for XBARA

29.1.2 XBARA signal output assignment

Table 29-2. XBARA signal output assignment

XBARA Output	Assigned Input
XBARA_OUT0	DMAMUX18
XBARA_OUT1	DMAMUX19
XBARA_OUT2	DMAMUX20
XBARA_OUT3	DMAMUX21
XBARA_OUT4	XB_OUT4
XBARA_OUT5	XB_OUT5
XBARA_OUT6	XB_OUT6
XBARA_OUT7	XB_OUT7
XBARA_OUT8	XB_OUT8
XBARA_OUT9	XB_OUT9
XBARA_OUT10	XB_OUT10
XBARA_OUT11	XB_OUT11
XBARA_OUT12	HSADC0A_SYNC
XBARA_OUT13	HSADC0B_SYNC
XBARA_OUT14	—
XBARA_OUT15	DAC0_12B_SYNC
XBARA_OUT16	CMP0 window/sample input
XBARA_OUT17	CMP1 window/sample input
XBARA_OUT18	CMP2 window/sample input
XBARA_OUT19	CMP3 window/sample input
XBARA_OUT20	PWM0_EXT_A0
XBARA_OUT21	PWM0_EXT_A1
XBARA_OUT22	PWM0_EXT_A2
XBARA_OUT23	PWM0_EXT_A3
XBARA_OUT24	PWM0_EXT0_SYNC
XBARA_OUT25	PWM0_EXT1_SYNC
XBARA_OUT26	PWM0_EXT2_SYNC
XBARA_OUT27	PWM0_EXT3_SYNC
XBARA_OUT28	PWM0_EXT_CLK
XBARA_OUT29	PWM0_FAULT0
XBARA_OUT30	PWM0_FAULT1
XBARA_OUT31	PWM0_FAULT2
XBARA_OUT32	PWM0_FAULT3
XBARA_OUT33	PWM0_FORCE
XBARA_OUT34	FTM0_TRIG2
XBARA_OUT35	FTM1_TRIG2

Table continues on the next page...

Table 29-2. XBARA signal output assignment (continued)

XBARA Output	Assigned Input
XBARA_OUT36	FTM2_TRIG2
XBARA_OUT37	FTM3_TRIG2
XBARA_OUT38	PDB0_IN_CH_1100
XBARA_OUT39	ADC0_HDWT
XBARA_OUT40	—
XBARA_OUT41	PDB1_IN_CH_1100
XBARA_OUT42	FTM1 channel 1 input capture and HSADC1A_SYNC
XBARA_OUT43	HSADC1B_SYNC
XBARA_OUT44	ENC_PHA
XBARA_OUT45	ENC_PHB
XBARA_OUT46	ENC_INDEX
XBARA_OUT47	ENC_HOME
XBARA_OUT48	ENC_CAP/Trigger
XBARA_OUT49	FTM0_FAULT3
XBARA_OUT50	FTM1_FAULT1
XBARA_OUT51	FTM2_FAULT1
XBARA_OUT52	FTM3_FAULT3
XBARA_OUT53	PWM1_EXT0_SYNC
XBARA_OUT54	PWM1_EXT1_SYNC
XBARA_OUT55	PWM1_EXT2_SYNC
XBARA_OUT56	PWM1_EXT3_SYNC
XBARA_OUT57	PWM1_FORCE
XBARA_OUT58	EWM_IN

29.2 Introduction

29.2.1 Overview

This module implements an array of M N-input combinational muxes. All muxes share the same N inputs in the same order, but each mux has its own independent select field.

The intended application of this module is to provide a flexible crossbar switch function that allows any input (typically from external GPIO or internal module outputs) to be connected to any output (typically to external GPIO or internal module inputs) under user control. This is used to allow user configuration of data paths between internal modules and between internal modules and GPIO.

A subset of the muxes can be configured to support edge detection and either interrupt or DMA request generation based on detected signal edges on the mux output. This allows signal transitions on the signals feeding the crossbar to trigger interrupts or initiate data transfers via DMA into or out of other system modules.

29.2.2 Features

The XBAR module design includes these distinctive features:

- M identical N-input muxes with individual select fields.
- Edge detection with associated interrupt or DMA request generation for a subset of mux outputs.
- Memory mapped registers with IPBus interface for select and control fields.
- Register write protection input signal.

29.2.3 Modes of Operation

The XBAR module design operates in only a single mode of operation: Functional Mode. The various counting modes are detailed in [Functional Mode](#).

29.2.4 Block Diagram

The block diagram for XBAR is shown in [Figure 29-1](#).

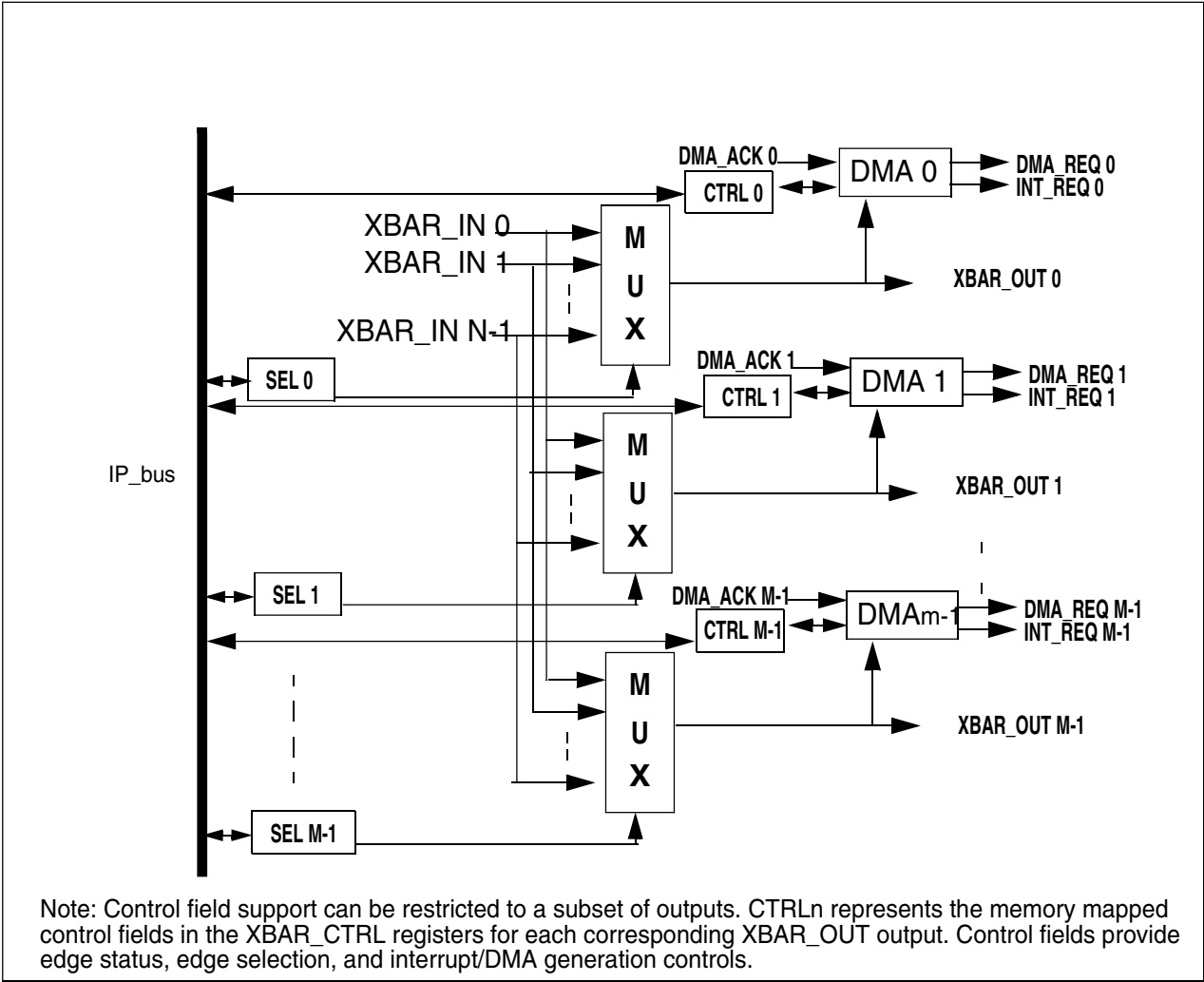


Figure 29-1. XBAR Block Diagram

29.3 Signal Descriptions

The following table summarizes the module's external signals.

Table 29-3. Control Signal Properties

Name	I/O Type	Function	Reset State	Notes
XBAR_OUT [0:NUMOUT-1]	O	Mux Outputs with configurable width	*	
XBAR_IN [0:NUMIN-1]	I	Mux Inputs with configurable width	*	
DMA_REQ	O	DMA request	0	
INT_REQ	O	Interrupt request	0	
DMA_ACK	I	DMA acknowledge	0	

At reset, each output XBAR_OUT[*] contains the reset value of the signal driving XBAR_IN[0].

29.3.1 XBAR_OUT[0:NUM_OUT-1] - MUX Outputs

This is a one-dimensional array of the mux outputs. The value on each output XBAR_OUT[n] is determined by the setting of the corresponding memory mapped register SELn such that XBAR_OUT[n] = XBAR_IN[SELn].

29.3.2 XBAR_IN[0:NUM_IN-1] - MUX Inputs

This is a one-dimensional array consisting of the inputs shared by each mux. All muxes share the same inputs in the same order.

29.3.3 DMA_REQ[n] - DMA Request Output(s)

DMA_REQ[n] is a DMA request to the DMA controller.

29.3.4 DMA_ACK[n] - DMA Acknowledge Input(s)

DMA_ACK[n] is a DMA acknowledge input from the DMA controller.

29.3.5 INT_REQ[n] - Interrupt Request Output(s)

INT_REQ[n] is an interrupt request output to the interrupt controller.

29.4 Memory Map and Register Descriptions

The XBAR module has select registers and control registers.

In the XBAR select registers, the SELn fields select which of the shared inputs (XBAR_IN[*]) is muxed to each mux output (XBAR_OUT[*]). There is one SELn field per mux and therefore one per XBAR_OUT output. Crossbar output XBAR_OUT[n]

presents the value of XBAR_IN[SELn]. Each select register contains two SELn fields. In the first select register, the LSBs contain the select field for mux 0, and the MSBs contain the select field for mux 1. The pattern repeats in subsequent select registers.

The actual signals connected to XBAR_IN and XBAR_OUT are application specific and are described in the Chip Configuration details.

The XBAR control registers configure edge detection, interrupt, and DMA features for a subset of the XBAR_OUT[*] outputs.

XBARA memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4005_9000	Crossbar A Select Register 0 (XBARA_SEL0)	16	R/W	0000h	29.4.1/637
4005_9002	Crossbar A Select Register 1 (XBARA_SEL1)	16	R/W	0000h	29.4.2/638
4005_9004	Crossbar A Select Register 2 (XBARA_SEL2)	16	R/W	0000h	29.4.3/638
4005_9006	Crossbar A Select Register 3 (XBARA_SEL3)	16	R/W	0000h	29.4.4/639
4005_9008	Crossbar A Select Register 4 (XBARA_SEL4)	16	R/W	0000h	29.4.5/639
4005_900A	Crossbar A Select Register 5 (XBARA_SEL5)	16	R/W	0000h	29.4.6/640
4005_900C	Crossbar A Select Register 6 (XBARA_SEL6)	16	R/W	0000h	29.4.7/640
4005_900E	Crossbar A Select Register 7 (XBARA_SEL7)	16	R/W	0000h	29.4.8/641
4005_9010	Crossbar A Select Register 8 (XBARA_SEL8)	16	R/W	0000h	29.4.9/641
4005_9012	Crossbar A Select Register 9 (XBARA_SEL9)	16	R/W	0000h	29.4.10/642
4005_9014	Crossbar A Select Register 10 (XBARA_SEL10)	16	R/W	0000h	29.4.11/642
4005_9016	Crossbar A Select Register 11 (XBARA_SEL11)	16	R/W	0000h	29.4.12/643
4005_9018	Crossbar A Select Register 12 (XBARA_SEL12)	16	R/W	0000h	29.4.13/643
4005_901A	Crossbar A Select Register 13 (XBARA_SEL13)	16	R/W	0000h	29.4.14/644
4005_901C	Crossbar A Select Register 14 (XBARA_SEL14)	16	R/W	0000h	29.4.15/644
4005_901E	Crossbar A Select Register 15 (XBARA_SEL15)	16	R/W	0000h	29.4.16/645
4005_9020	Crossbar A Select Register 16 (XBARA_SEL16)	16	R/W	0000h	29.4.17/645
4005_9022	Crossbar A Select Register 17 (XBARA_SEL17)	16	R/W	0000h	29.4.18/646
4005_9024	Crossbar A Select Register 18 (XBARA_SEL18)	16	R/W	0000h	29.4.19/646
4005_9026	Crossbar A Select Register 19 (XBARA_SEL19)	16	R/W	0000h	29.4.20/647

Table continues on the next page...

XBARA memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4005_9028	Crossbar A Select Register 20 (XBARA_SEL20)	16	R/W	0000h	29.4.21/ 647
4005_902A	Crossbar A Select Register 21 (XBARA_SEL21)	16	R/W	0000h	29.4.22/ 648
4005_902C	Crossbar A Select Register 22 (XBARA_SEL22)	16	R/W	0000h	29.4.23/ 648
4005_902E	Crossbar A Select Register 23 (XBARA_SEL23)	16	R/W	0000h	29.4.24/ 649
4005_9030	Crossbar A Select Register 24 (XBARA_SEL24)	16	R/W	0000h	29.4.25/ 649
4005_9032	Crossbar A Select Register 25 (XBARA_SEL25)	16	R/W	0000h	29.4.26/ 650
4005_9034	Crossbar A Select Register 26 (XBARA_SEL26)	16	R/W	0000h	29.4.27/ 650
4005_9036	Crossbar A Select Register 27 (XBARA_SEL27)	16	R/W	0000h	29.4.28/ 651
4005_9038	Crossbar A Select Register 28 (XBARA_SEL28)	16	R/W	0000h	29.4.29/ 651
4005_903A	Crossbar A Select Register 29 (XBARA_SEL29)	16	R/W	0000h	29.4.30/ 652
4005_903C	Crossbar A Control Register 0 (XBARA_CTRL0)	16	R/W	0000h	29.4.31/ 652
4005_903E	Crossbar A Control Register 1 (XBARA_CTRL1)	16	R/W	0000h	29.4.32/ 654

29.4.1 Crossbar A Select Register 0 (XBARA_SEL0)

Address: 4005_9000h base + 0h offset = 4005_9000h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0								0							
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARA_SEL0 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 SEL1	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT1 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL0	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT0 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)

29.4.2 Crossbar A Select Register 1 (XBARA_SEL1)

Address: 4005_9000h base + 2h offset = 4005_9002h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		SEL3						0		SEL2					
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARA_SEL1 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 SEL3	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT3 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL2	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT2 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)

29.4.3 Crossbar A Select Register 2 (XBARA_SEL2)

Address: 4005_9000h base + 4h offset = 4005_9004h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		SEL5						0		SEL4					
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARA_SEL2 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 SEL5	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT5 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL4	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT4 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)

29.4.4 Crossbar A Select Register 3 (XBARA_SEL3)

Address: 4005_9000h base + 6h offset = 4005_9006h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		SEL7						0		SEL6					
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARA_SEL3 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 SEL7	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT7 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL6	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT6 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)

29.4.5 Crossbar A Select Register 4 (XBARA_SEL4)

Address: 4005_9000h base + 8h offset = 4005_9008h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		SEL9						0		SEL8					
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARA_SEL4 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 SEL9	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT9 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL8	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT8 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)

29.4.6 Crossbar A Select Register 5 (XBARA_SEL5)

Address: 4005_9000h base + Ah offset = 4005_900Ah

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		SEL11						0		SEL10					
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARA_SEL5 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 SEL11	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT11 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL10	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT10 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)

29.4.7 Crossbar A Select Register 6 (XBARA_SEL6)

Address: 4005_9000h base + Ch offset = 4005_900Ch

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		SEL13						0		SEL12					
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARA_SEL6 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 SEL13	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT13 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL12	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT12 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)

29.4.8 Crossbar A Select Register 7 (XBARA_SEL7)

Address: 4005_9000h base + Eh offset = 4005_900Eh

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		SEL15						0		SEL14					
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARA_SEL7 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 SEL15	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT15 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL14	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT14 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)

29.4.9 Crossbar A Select Register 8 (XBARA_SEL8)

Address: 4005_9000h base + 10h offset = 4005_9010h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		SEL17						0		SEL16					
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARA_SEL8 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 SEL17	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT17 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL16	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT16 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)

29.4.10 Crossbar A Select Register 9 (XBARA_SEL9)

Address: 4005_9000h base + 12h offset = 4005_9012h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		SEL19						0		SEL18					
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARA_SEL9 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 SEL19	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT19 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL18	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT18 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)

29.4.11 Crossbar A Select Register 10 (XBARA_SEL10)

Address: 4005_9000h base + 14h offset = 4005_9014h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		SEL21						0		SEL20					
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARA_SEL10 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 SEL21	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT21 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL20	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT20 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)

29.4.12 Crossbar A Select Register 11 (XBARA_SEL11)

Address: 4005_9000h base + 16h offset = 4005_9016h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		SEL23						0		SEL22					
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARA_SEL11 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 SEL23	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT23 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL22	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT22 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)

29.4.13 Crossbar A Select Register 12 (XBARA_SEL12)

Address: 4005_9000h base + 18h offset = 4005_9018h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		SEL25						0		SEL24					
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARA_SEL12 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 SEL25	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT25 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL24	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT24 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)

29.4.14 Crossbar A Select Register 13 (XBARA_SEL13)

Address: 4005_9000h base + 1Ah offset = 4005_901Ah

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		SEL27						0		SEL26					
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARA_SEL13 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 SEL27	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT27 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL26	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT26 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)

29.4.15 Crossbar A Select Register 14 (XBARA_SEL14)

Address: 4005_9000h base + 1Ch offset = 4005_901Ch

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		SEL29						0		SEL28					
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARA_SEL14 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 SEL29	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT29 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL28	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT28 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)

29.4.16 Crossbar A Select Register 15 (XBARA_SEL15)

Address: 4005_9000h base + 1Eh offset = 4005_901Eh

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		SEL31						0		SEL30					
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARA_SEL15 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 SEL31	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT31 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL30	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT30 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)

29.4.17 Crossbar A Select Register 16 (XBARA_SEL16)

Address: 4005_9000h base + 20h offset = 4005_9020h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		SEL33						0		SEL32					
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARA_SEL16 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 SEL33	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT33 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL32	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT32 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)

29.4.18 Crossbar A Select Register 17 (XBARA_SEL17)

Address: 4005_9000h base + 22h offset = 4005_9022h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		SEL35						0		SEL34					
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARA_SEL17 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 SEL35	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT35 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL34	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT34 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)

29.4.19 Crossbar A Select Register 18 (XBARA_SEL18)

Address: 4005_9000h base + 24h offset = 4005_9024h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		SEL37						0		SEL36					
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARA_SEL18 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 SEL37	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT37 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL36	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT36 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)

29.4.20 Crossbar A Select Register 19 (XBARA_SEL19)

Address: 4005_9000h base + 26h offset = 4005_9026h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		SEL39						0		SEL38					
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARA_SEL19 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 SEL39	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT39 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL38	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT38 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)

29.4.21 Crossbar A Select Register 20 (XBARA_SEL20)

Address: 4005_9000h base + 28h offset = 4005_9028h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		SEL41						0		SEL40					
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARA_SEL20 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 SEL41	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT41 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL40	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT40 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)

29.4.22 Crossbar A Select Register 21 (XBARA_SEL21)

Address: 4005_9000h base + 2Ah offset = 4005_902Ah

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		SEL43						0		SEL42					
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARA_SEL21 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 SEL43	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT43 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL42	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT42 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)

29.4.23 Crossbar A Select Register 22 (XBARA_SEL22)

Address: 4005_9000h base + 2Ch offset = 4005_902Ch

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		SEL45						0		SEL44					
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARA_SEL22 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 SEL45	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT45 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL44	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT44 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)

29.4.24 Crossbar A Select Register 23 (XBARA_SEL23)

Address: 4005_9000h base + 2Eh offset = 4005_902Eh

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		SEL47						0		SEL46					
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARA_SEL23 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 SEL47	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT47 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL46	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT46 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)

29.4.25 Crossbar A Select Register 24 (XBARA_SEL24)

Address: 4005_9000h base + 30h offset = 4005_9030h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		SEL49						0		SEL48					
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARA_SEL24 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 SEL49	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT49 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL48	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT48 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)

29.4.26 Crossbar A Select Register 25 (XBARA_SEL25)

Address: 4005_9000h base + 32h offset = 4005_9032h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		SEL51						0		SEL50					
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARA_SEL25 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 SEL51	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT51 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL50	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT50 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)

29.4.27 Crossbar A Select Register 26 (XBARA_SEL26)

Address: 4005_9000h base + 34h offset = 4005_9034h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		SEL53						0		SEL52					
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARA_SEL26 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 SEL53	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT53 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL52	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT52 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)

29.4.28 Crossbar A Select Register 27 (XBARA_SEL27)

Address: 4005_9000h base + 36h offset = 4005_9036h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		SEL55						0		SEL54					
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARA_SEL27 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 SEL55	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT55 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL54	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT54 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)

29.4.29 Crossbar A Select Register 28 (XBARA_SEL28)

Address: 4005_9000h base + 38h offset = 4005_9038h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		SEL57						0		SEL56					
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARA_SEL28 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 SEL57	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT57 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL56	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT56 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)

29.4.30 Crossbar A Select Register 29 (XBARA_SEL29)

Address: 4005_9000h base + 3Ah offset = 4005_903Ah

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		0						0		SEL58					
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARA_SEL29 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL58	Input (XBARA_INn) to be muxed to XBARA_OUT58 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)

29.4.31 Crossbar A Control Register 0 (XBARA_CTRL0)

Use this register to configure edge detection, interrupt, and DMA features for the XBAR_OUT0 and XBAR_OUT1 outputs.

The XBAR_CTRL registers are organized similarly to the XBAR_SEL registers, with control fields for two XBAR_OUT outputs in each register. In control register 0, the LSBs contain the control fields for XBAR_OUT0, and the MSBs contain the control fields for XBAR_OUT1.

Address: 4005_9000h base + 3Ch offset = 4005_903Ch

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Read	0			STS1	EDGE1		IEN1	DEN1
Write				w1c				
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0			STS0	EDGE0		IEN0	DEN0
Write				w1c				
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARA_CTRL0 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–13 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
12 STS1	Edge detection status for XBAR_OUT1 This bit reflects the results of edge detection for XBAR_OUT1. This field is set to 1 when an edge consistent with the current setting of EDGE1 is detected on XBAR_OUT1. This field is cleared by writing 1 to it or by a DMA_ACK1 reception when DEN1 is set. Writing 0 to the field has no effect. When interrupt or DMA functionality is enabled for XBAR_OUT1, this field is 1 when the interrupt or DMA request is asserted and 0 when the interrupt or DMA request has been cleared. 0 Active edge not yet detected on XBAR_OUT1 1 Active edge detected on XBAR_OUT1
11–10 EDGE1	Active edge for edge detection on XBAR_OUT1 This field selects which edges on XBAR_OUT1 cause STS1 to assert. 00 STS1 never asserts 01 STS1 asserts on rising edges of XBAR_OUT1 10 STS1 asserts on falling edges of XBAR_OUT1 11 STS1 asserts on rising and falling edges of XBAR_OUT1
9 IEN1	Interrupt Enable for XBAR_OUT1 This bit enables the interrupt function on the corresponding XBAR_OUT1 output. When the interrupt is enabled, the output INT_REQ1 reflects the value STS1. When the interrupt is disabled, INT_REQ1 remains low. The interrupt request is cleared by writing a 1 to STS1. Restriction: IEN1 and DEN1 should not both be set to 1. 0 Interrupt disabled 1 Interrupt enabled
8 DEN1	DMA Enable for XBAR_OUT1 This bit enables the DMA function on the corresponding XBAR_OUT1 output. When enabled, DMA_REQ1 presents the value STS1. When disabled, the DMA_REQ1 output remains low. Restriction: IEN1 and DEN1 should not both be set to 1. 0 DMA disabled 1 DMA enabled
7–5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
4 STS0	Edge detection status for XBAR_OUT0 This bit reflects the results of edge detection for XBAR_OUT0. This field is set to 1 when an edge consistent with the current setting of EDGE0 is detected on XBAR_OUT0. This field is cleared by writing 1 to it or by a DMA_ACK0 reception when DEN0 is set. Writing 0 to the field has no effect. When interrupt or DMA functionality is enabled for XBAR_OUT0, this field is 1 when the interrupt or DMA request is asserted and 0 when the interrupt or DMA request has been cleared.

Table continues on the next page...

XBARA_CTRL0 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Active edge not yet detected on XBAR_OUT0 1 Active edge detected on XBAR_OUT0
3–2 EDGE0	Active edge for edge detection on XBAR_OUT0 This field selects which edges on XBAR_OUT0 cause STS0 to assert. 00 STS0 never asserts 01 STS0 asserts on rising edges of XBAR_OUT0 10 STS0 asserts on falling edges of XBAR_OUT0 11 STS0 asserts on rising and falling edges of XBAR_OUT0
1 IEN0	Interrupt Enable for XBAR_OUT0 This bit enables the interrupt function on the corresponding XBAR_OUT0 output. When the interrupt is enabled, the output INT_REQ0 reflects the value STS0. When the interrupt is disabled, INT_REQ0 remains low. The interrupt request is cleared by writing a 1 to STS0. Restriction: IEN0 and DEN0 should not both be set to 1. 0 Interrupt disabled 1 Interrupt enabled
0 DEN0	DMA Enable for XBAR_OUT0 This bit enables the DMA function on the corresponding XBAR_OUT0 output. When enabled, DMA_REQ0 presents the value STS0. When disabled, the DMA_REQ0 output remains low. Restriction: IEN0 and DEN0 should not both be set to 1. 0 DMA disabled 1 DMA enabled

29.4.32 Crossbar A Control Register 1 (XBARA_CTRL1)

Use this register to configure edge detection, interrupt, and DMA features for the XBAR_OUT2 and XBAR_OUT3 outputs.

The XBAR_CTRL registers are organized similarly to the XBAR_SEL registers, with control fields for two XBAR_OUT outputs in each register. In control register 1, the LSBs contain the control fields for XBAR_OUT2, and the MSBs contain the control fields for XBAR_OUT3.

Address: 4005_9000h base + 3Eh offset = 4005_903Eh

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Read	0			STS3	EDGE3		IEN3	DEN3
Write				w1c				
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0			STS2	EDGE2		IEN2	DEN2
Write				w1c				
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARA_CTRL1 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–13 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
12 STS3	Edge detection status for XBAR_OUT3 This bit reflects the results of edge detection for XBAR_OUT3. This field is set to 1 when an edge consistent with the current setting of EDGE3 is detected on XBAR_OUT3. This field is cleared by writing 1 to it or by a DMA_ACK3 reception when DEN3 is set. Writing 0 to the field has no effect. When interrupt or DMA functionality is enabled for XBAR_OUT3, this field is 1 when the interrupt or DMA request is asserted and 0 when the interrupt or DMA request has been cleared. 0 Active edge not yet detected on XBAR_OUT3 1 Active edge detected on XBAR_OUT3
11–10 EDGE3	Active edge for edge detection on XBAR_OUT3 This field selects which edges on XBAR_OUT3 cause STS3 to assert. 00 STS3 never asserts 01 STS3 asserts on rising edges of XBAR_OUT3 10 STS3 asserts on falling edges of XBAR_OUT3 11 STS3 asserts on rising and falling edges of XBAR_OUT3
9 IEN3	Interrupt Enable for XBAR_OUT3 This bit enables the interrupt function on the corresponding XBAR_OUT3 output. When the interrupt is enabled, the output INT_REQ3 reflects the value STS3. When the interrupt is disabled, INT_REQ3 remains low. The interrupt request is cleared by writing a 1 to STS3. Restriction: IEN3 and DEN3 should not both be set to 1. 0 Interrupt disabled 1 Interrupt enabled
8 DEN3	DMA Enable for XBAR_OUT3 This bit enables the DMA function on the corresponding XBAR_OUT3 output. When enabled, DMA_REQ3 presents the value STS3. When disabled, the DMA_REQ3 output remains low. Restriction: IEN3 and DEN3 should not both be set to 1. 0 DMA disabled 1 DMA enabled
7–5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
4 STS2	Edge detection status for XBAR_OUT2 This bit reflects the results of edge detection for XBAR_OUT2.

Table continues on the next page...

XBARA_CTRL1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>This field is set to 1 when an edge consistent with the current setting of EDGE2 is detected on XBAR_OUT2. This field is cleared by writing 1 to it or by a DMA_ACK2 reception when DEN2 is set. Writing 0 to the field has no effect.</p> <p>When interrupt or DMA functionality is enabled for XBAR_OUT2, this field is 1 when the interrupt or DMA request is asserted and 0 when the interrupt or DMA request has been cleared.</p> <p>0 Active edge not yet detected on XBAR_OUT2 1 Active edge detected on XBAR_OUT2</p>
3–2 EDGE2	<p>Active edge for edge detection on XBAR_OUT2</p> <p>This field selects which edges on XBAR_OUT2 cause STS2 to assert.</p> <p>00 STS2 never asserts 01 STS2 asserts on rising edges of XBAR_OUT2 10 STS2 asserts on falling edges of XBAR_OUT2 11 STS2 asserts on rising and falling edges of XBAR_OUT2</p>
1 IEN2	<p>Interrupt Enable for XBAR_OUT2</p> <p>This bit enables the interrupt function on the corresponding XBAR_OUT2 output. When the interrupt is enabled, the output INT_REQ2 reflects the value STS2. When the interrupt is disabled, INT_REQ2 remains low. The interrupt request is cleared by writing a 1 to STS2.</p> <p>Restriction: IEN2 and DEN2 should not both be set to 1.</p> <p>0 Interrupt disabled 1 Interrupt enabled</p>
0 DEN2	<p>DMA Enable for XBAR_OUT2</p> <p>This bit enables the DMA function on the corresponding XBAR_OUT2 output. When enabled, DMA_REQ2 presents the value STS2. When disabled, the DMA_REQ2 output remains low.</p> <p>Restriction: IEN2 and DEN2 should not both be set to 1.</p> <p>0 DMA disabled 1 DMA enabled</p>

29.5 Functional Description

29.5.1 General

The XBAR module has only one mode of operation, functional mode.

29.5.2 Functional Mode

The value of each mux output is $\text{XBAR_OUT}[n] = \text{XBAR_IN}[\text{SELn}]$. The SELn select values are configured in the XBAR_SEL registers. All muxes share the same inputs in the same order.

A subset of XBAR_OUT[*] outputs has dedicated control fields in a Crossbar Control (XBAR_CTRL) register. Control fields provide the ability to perform edge detection on the corresponding XBAR_OUT output. Edge detection in turn can optionally be used to trigger an interrupt or DMA request. The intention is that, by detecting specified edges on signals propagating through the Crossbar, interrupts or DMA requests can be triggered to perform data transfers to or from other system components.

Control fields include an edge status field (STS), an detected edge type field (EDGE), and interrupt and DMA enable fields (DEN and IEN). STSn is set to 1 when an edge consistent with EDGEN occurs on XBAR_OUT[n]. STSn is cleared by writing 1 to it. Writing 0 as no effect. See [Interrupts and DMA Requests](#) for details on the use of STSn for DMA and interrupt request generation.

29.6 Resets

The XBAR module can be reset by only a hard reset, which forces all registers to their reset state.

29.7 Clocks

All sequential functionality is controlled by the Bus Clock.

29.8 Interrupts and DMA Requests

For each XBAR_OUT[*] output with XBAR_CTRL register support, DMA or interrupt functionality can be enabled by setting the corresponding XBAR_CTRL register bit DENn or IENn to 1. DENn and IENn should not be set to 1 at the same time for the same output XBAR_OUT[n].

Setting DEN_n to 1 enables DMA functionality for XBAR_OUT[n]. When DMA functionality is enabled, the output DMA_REQ[n] reflects the value of STS_n. Thus the DMA request asserts when the edge specified by EDGE_n is detected on XBAR_OUT[n]. Also, a rising edge on DMA_ACK[n] sets STS_n to zero and thus clears the DMA request. When DEN is 0, DMA_REQ[n] is held low and DMA_ACK[n] is ignored.

Setting IEN_n to 1 enables interrupt functionality for XBAR_OUT[n]. When interrupt functionality is enabled, the output INT_REQ[n] reflects the value of STS_n. Thus the interrupt request asserts when the edge specified by EDGE_n is detected on XBAR_OUT[n]. The interrupt request is cleared by writing a 1 to STS_n. When IEN_n is 0, INT_REQ[n] is held low.

DEN_n and IEN_n should not be set to 1 at the same time for the same output XBAR_OUT[n].

Chapter 30

Inter-Peripheral Crossbar Switch B (XBARB)

30.1 Chip-specific XBARB information

30.1.1 XBARB signal input assignment

Table 30-1. XBARB signal input assignment

XBARB Input	Assigned Output
XBARB_IN0	CMP0_OUT
XBARB_IN1	CMP1_OUT
XBARB_IN2	CMP2_OUT
XBARB_IN3	CMP3_OUT
XBARB_IN4	FTM0_CH_allTRIG
XBARB_IN5	FTM0_INIT
XBARB_IN6	FTM3_CH_allTRIG
XBARB_IN7	FTM3_INIT
XBARB_IN8	PWM0_OUT_TRIG00/PWM0_OUT_TRIG01
XBARB_IN9	PWM0_OUT_TRIG10/PWM0_OUT_TRIG11
XBARB_IN10	PWM0_OUT_TRIG20/PWM0_OUT_TRIG21
XBARB_IN11	PWM0_OUT_TRIG30/PWM0_OUT_TRIG31
XBARB_IN12	PDB0_CH0_OUT
XBARB_IN13	HSADC0A_Scan_complete
XBARB_IN14	XB_IN2
XBARB_IN15	XB_IN3
XBARB_IN16	FTM1_allTRIG
XBARB_IN17	FTM1_INIT
XBARB_IN18	DMA ch0_done
XBARB_IN19	DMA ch1_done
XBARB_IN20	XB_IN10
XBARB_IN21	XB_IN11
XBARB_IN22	DMA ch6_done

Table continues on the next page...

**Table 30-1. XBARB signal input assignment
(continued)**

XBARB Input	Assigned Output
XBARB_IN23	DMA ch7_done
XBARB_IN24	PIT ch0
XBARB_IN25	PIT ch1
XBARB_IN26	PDB1_CH0_OUT
XBARB_IN27	HSADC0B_Scan_complete
XBARB_IN28	PWM1_OUT_TRIG00/PWM1_OUT_TRIG01
XBARB_IN29	PWM1_OUT_TRIG10/PWM1_OUT_TRIG11
XBARB_IN30	PWM1_OUT_TRIG20/PWM1_OUT_TRIG21
XBARB_IN31	PWM1_OUT_TRIG30/PWM1_OUT_TRIG31
XBARB_IN32	FTM2_allTRIG
XBARB_IN33	FTM2_INIT
XBARB_IN34	PDB0_CH1_OUT
XBARB_IN35	PDB1_CH1_OUT
XBARB_IN36	HSADC1A_Scan_complete
XBARB_IN37	HSADC1B_Scan_complete
XBARB_IN38	ADC0_COCO

30.1.2 XBARB signal output assignment

Table 30-2. XBARB signal output assignment

XBARB Output	Assigned Input
XBARB_OUT0	AOI_IN0
XBARB_OUT1	AOI_IN1
XBARB_OUT2	AOI_IN2
XBARB_OUT3	AOI_IN3
XBARB_OUT4	AOI_IN4
XBARB_OUT5	AOI_IN5
XBARB_OUT6	AOI_IN6
XBARB_OUT7	AOI_IN7
XBARB_OUT8	AOI_IN8
XBARB_OUT9	AOI_IN9
XBARB_OUT10	AOI_IN10
XBARB_OUT11	AOI_IN11
XBARB_OUT12	AOI_IN12
XBARB_OUT13	AOI_IN13
XBARB_OUT14	AOI_IN14
XBARB_OUT15	AOI_IN15

30.2 Introduction

For a description of the general features and functionality of this module, refer to the [XBARA description](#).

30.3 Memory Map and Register Descriptions

This section provides information about the XBARB instance of the inter-peripheral crossbar switch. Refer to the [XBARA register details](#) for information about that instance of the module.

This XBAR module has only select registers.

In the XBAR select registers, the SELn fields select which of the shared inputs (XBAR_IN[*]) is muxed to each mux output (XBAR_OUT[*]). There is one SELn field per mux and therefore one per XBAR_OUT output. Crossbar output XBAR_OUT[n] presents the value of XBAR_IN[SELn]. Each select register contains two SELn fields. In the first select register, the LSBs contain the select field for mux 0, and the MSBs contain the select field for mux 1. The pattern repeats in subsequent select registers.

The actual signals connected to XBAR_IN and XBAR_OUT are application specific and are described in the Chip Configuration details.

XBARB memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4005_A000	Crossbar B Select Register 0 (XBARB_SEL0)	16	R/W	0000h	30.3.1/662
4005_A002	Crossbar B Select Register 1 (XBARB_SEL1)	16	R/W	0000h	30.3.2/662
4005_A004	Crossbar B Select Register 2 (XBARB_SEL2)	16	R/W	0000h	30.3.3/663
4005_A006	Crossbar B Select Register 3 (XBARB_SEL3)	16	R/W	0000h	30.3.4/663
4005_A008	Crossbar B Select Register 4 (XBARB_SEL4)	16	R/W	0000h	30.3.5/664
4005_A00A	Crossbar B Select Register 5 (XBARB_SEL5)	16	R/W	0000h	30.3.6/664
4005_A00C	Crossbar B Select Register 6 (XBARB_SEL6)	16	R/W	0000h	30.3.7/665
4005_A00E	Crossbar B Select Register 7 (XBARB_SEL7)	16	R/W	0000h	30.3.8/665

30.3.1 Crossbar B Select Register 0 (XBARB_SEL0)

Address: 4005_A000h base + 0h offset = 4005_A000h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		SEL1						0		SEL0					
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARB_SEL0 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 SEL1	Input (XBARB_INn) to be muxed to XBARB_OUT1 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL0	Input (XBARB_INn) to be muxed to XBARB_OUT0 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)

30.3.2 Crossbar B Select Register 1 (XBARB_SEL1)

Address: 4005_A000h base + 2h offset = 4005_A002h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		SEL3						0		SEL2					
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARB_SEL1 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 SEL3	Input (XBARB_INn) to be muxed to XBARB_OUT3 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL2	Input (XBARB_INn) to be muxed to XBARB_OUT2 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)

30.3.3 Crossbar B Select Register 2 (XBARB_SEL2)

Address: 4005_A000h base + 4h offset = 4005_A004h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		SEL5						0		SEL4					
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARB_SEL2 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 SEL5	Input (XBARB_INn) to be muxed to XBARB_OUT5 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL4	Input (XBARB_INn) to be muxed to XBARB_OUT4 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)

30.3.4 Crossbar B Select Register 3 (XBARB_SEL3)

Address: 4005_A000h base + 6h offset = 4005_A006h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		SEL7						0		SEL6					
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARB_SEL3 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 SEL7	Input (XBARB_INn) to be muxed to XBARB_OUT7 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL6	Input (XBARB_INn) to be muxed to XBARB_OUT6 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)

30.3.5 Crossbar B Select Register 4 (XBARB_SEL4)

Address: 4005_A000h base + 8h offset = 4005_A008h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		SEL9						0		SEL8					
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARB_SEL4 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 SEL9	Input (XBARB_INn) to be muxed to XBARB_OUT9 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL8	Input (XBARB_INn) to be muxed to XBARB_OUT8 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)

30.3.6 Crossbar B Select Register 5 (XBARB_SEL5)

Address: 4005_A000h base + Ah offset = 4005_A00Ah

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		SEL11						0		SEL10					
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARB_SEL5 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 SEL11	Input (XBARB_INn) to be muxed to XBARB_OUT11 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL10	Input (XBARB_INn) to be muxed to XBARB_OUT10 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)

30.3.7 Crossbar B Select Register 6 (XBARB_SEL6)

Address: 4005_A000h base + Ch offset = 4005_A00Ch

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		SEL13						0		SEL12					
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARB_SEL6 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 SEL13	Input (XBARB_INn) to be muxed to XBARB_OUT13 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL12	Input (XBARB_INn) to be muxed to XBARB_OUT12 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)

30.3.8 Crossbar B Select Register 7 (XBARB_SEL7)

Address: 4005_A000h base + Eh offset = 4005_A00Eh

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		SEL15						0		SEL14					
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

XBARB_SEL7 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 SEL15	Input (XBARB_INn) to be muxed to XBARB_OUT15 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEL14	Input (XBARB_INn) to be muxed to XBARB_OUT14 (refer to Functional Description section for input/output assignment)



Chapter 31

Multipurpose Clock Generator (MCG)

31.1 Chip-specific MCG information

31.1.1 MCG oscillator clock input options

The MCG has multiple oscillator input clock sources. Within the context of the MCG these are all referred to as the external reference clock and selection is determined by MCG_C7[OSCSSEL] bitfield. The following table shows the chip-specific clock assignments for this bitfield.

Table 31-1. MCG Oscillator Reference Options

MCG_C7[OSCSSEL]	MCG defined selection	Chip clock
00	OSCCLK0 - System Oscillator	OSCCLK - System oscillator output. Derived from external crystal circuit or directly from EXTAL.
01	Reserved	—
10	Reserved	—
11	Reserved	—

See [Clock Distribution](#) for more details on these clocks.

31.2 Introduction

The multipurpose clock generator (MCG) module provides several clock source choices for the MCU.

The module contains a frequency-locked loop (FLL) and a phase-locked loop (PLL). The FLL is controllable by either an internal or an external reference clock. The PLL is controllable by the external reference clock. The module can select either an FLL or PLL

output clock, or a reference clock (internal or external) as a source for the MCU system clock. The MCG operates in conjunction with a crystal oscillator, which allows an external crystal, ceramic resonator, or another external clock source to produce the external reference clock.

31.2.1 Features

Key features of the MCG module are:

- Frequency-locked loop (FLL):
 - Digitally-controlled oscillator (DCO)
 - DCO frequency range is programmable for up to four different frequency ranges.
 - Option to program and maximize DCO output frequency for a low frequency external reference clock source.
 - Option to prevent FLL from resetting its current locked frequency when switching clock modes if FLL reference frequency is not changed.
 - Internal or external reference clock can be used as the FLL source.
 - Can be used as a clock source for other on-chip peripherals.
- Phase-locked loop (PLL):
 - Voltage-controlled oscillator (VCO)
 - External reference clock is used as the PLL source.
 - Modulo VCO frequency divider
 - Phase/Frequency detector
 - Integrated loop filter
 - Can be used as a clock source for other on-chip peripherals.
- Internal reference clock generator:
 - Slow clock with nine trim bits for accuracy
 - Fast clock with four trim bits
 - Can be used as source clock for the FLL. In FEI mode, only the slow Internal Reference Clock (IRC) can be used as the FLL source.

- Either the slow or the fast clock can be selected as the clock source for the MCU.
- Can be used as a clock source for other on-chip peripherals.
- Control signals for the MCG external reference low power oscillator clock generators are provided:
 - HGO, RANGE, EREFS
- External clock from the Crystal Oscillator :
 - Can be used as a source for the FLL and/or the PLL.
 - Can be selected as the clock source for the MCU.
- External clock monitor with reset and interrupt request capability to check for external clock failure when running in FBE, PEE, BLPE, or FEE modes
- Lock detector with interrupt request capability for use with the PLL
- Internal Reference Clocks Auto Trim Machine (ATM) capability using an external clock as a reference
- Reference dividers for both the FLL and the PLL are provided
- Reference dividers for the Fast Internal Reference Clock are provided
-
- MCG FLL Clock (MCGFLLCLK) is provided as a clock source for other on-chip peripherals
- MCG Fixed Frequency Clock (MCGFFCLK) is provided as a clock source for other on-chip peripherals
- MCG Internal Reference Clock (MCGIRCLK) is provided as a clock source for other on-chip peripherals

This figure presents the block diagram of the MCG module.

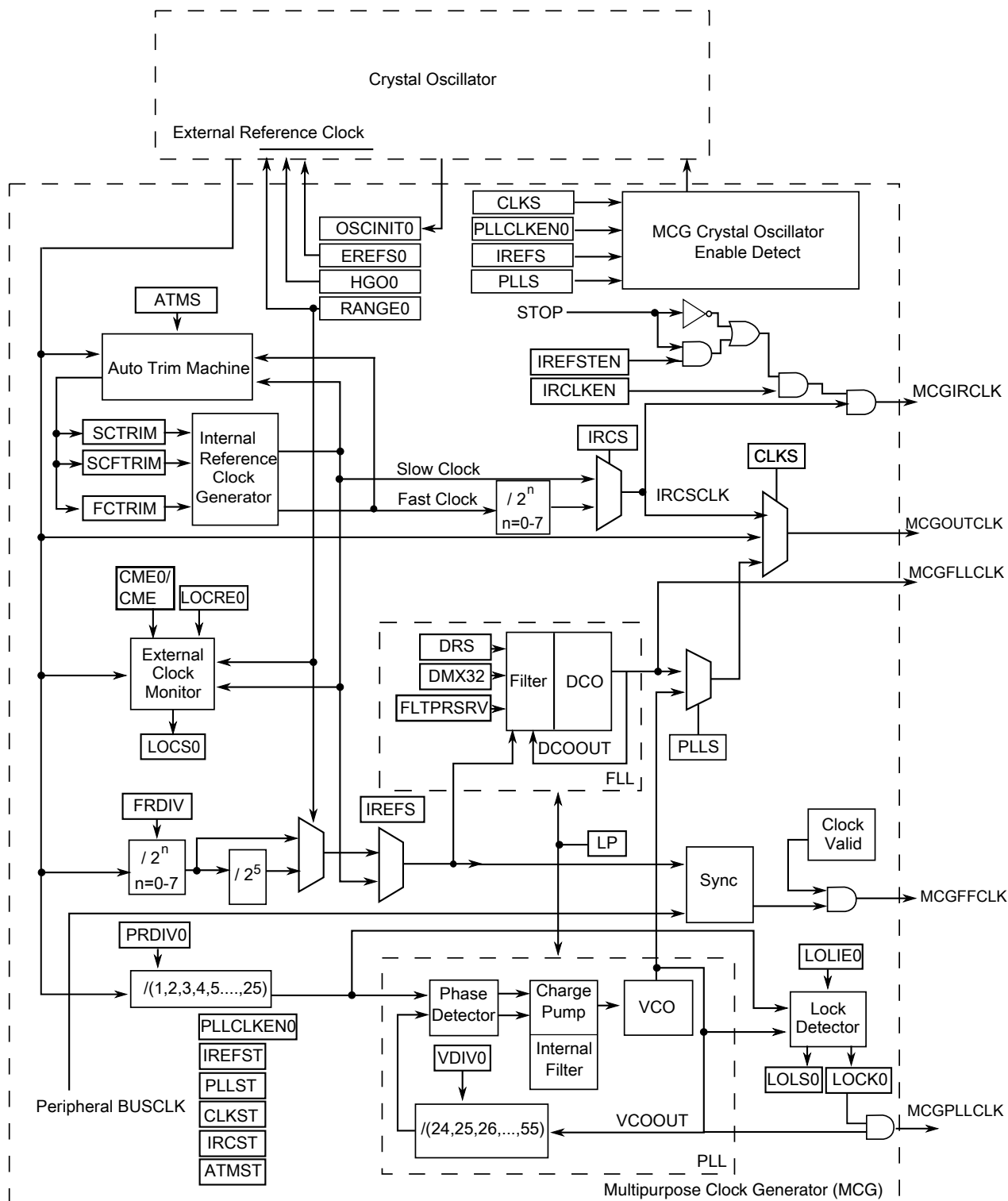


Figure 31-1. Multipurpose Clock Generator (MCG) block diagram

31.2.2 Modes of Operation

The MCG has the following modes of operation: FEI, FEE, FBI, FBE, PBE, PEE, BLPI, BLPE, and Stop. For details, see [MCG modes of operation](#).

31.3 External Signal Description

There are no MCG signals that connect off chip.

31.4 Memory Map/Register Definition

This section includes the memory map and register definition.

The MCG registers can only be written when in supervisor mode. Write accesses when in user mode will result in a bus error. Read accesses may be performed in both supervisor and user mode.

MCG memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/page
4006_4000	MCG Control 1 Register (MCG_C1)	8	R/W	04h	31.4.1/672
4006_4001	MCG Control 2 Register (MCG_C2)	8	R/W	80h	31.4.2/673
4006_4002	MCG Control 3 Register (MCG_C3)	8	R/W	Undefined	31.4.3/674
4006_4003	MCG Control 4 Register (MCG_C4)	8	R/W	Undefined	31.4.4/675
4006_4004	MCG Control 5 Register (MCG_C5)	8	R/W	00h	31.4.5/676
4006_4005	MCG Control 6 Register (MCG_C6)	8	R/W	00h	31.4.6/677
4006_4006	MCG Status Register (MCG_S)	8	R	10h	31.4.7/679
4006_4008	MCG Status and Control Register (MCG_SC)	8	R/W	02h	31.4.8/680
4006_400A	MCG Auto Trim Compare Value High Register (MCG_ATCVH)	8	R/W	00h	31.4.9/682
4006_400B	MCG Auto Trim Compare Value Low Register (MCG_ATCVL)	8	R/W	00h	31.4.10/682
4006_400D	MCG Control 8 Register (MCG_C8)	8	R/W	80h	31.4.11/682

31.4.1 MCG Control 1 Register (MCG_C1)

Address: 4006_4000h base + 0h offset = 4006_4000h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read								
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0

MCG_C1 field descriptions

Field	Description
7–6 CLKS	<p>Clock Source Select</p> <p>Selects the clock source for MCGOUTCLK .</p> <p>00 Encoding 0 — Output of FLL or PLL is selected (depends on PLLS control bit).</p> <p>01 Encoding 1 — Internal reference clock is selected.</p> <p>10 Encoding 2 — External reference clock is selected.</p> <p>11 Encoding 3 — Reserved.</p>
5–3 FRDIV	<p>FLL External Reference Divider</p> <p>Selects the amount to divide down the external reference clock for the FLL. The resulting frequency must be in the range 31.25 kHz to 39.0625 kHz (This is required when FLL/DCO is the clock source for MCGOUTCLK . In FBE mode, it is not required to meet this range, but it is recommended in the cases when trying to enter a FLL mode from FBE).</p> <p>000 If RANGE = 0 , Divide Factor is 1; for all other RANGE values, Divide Factor is 32.</p> <p>001 If RANGE = 0 , Divide Factor is 2; for all other RANGE values, Divide Factor is 64.</p> <p>010 If RANGE = 0 , Divide Factor is 4; for all other RANGE values, Divide Factor is 128.</p> <p>011 If RANGE = 0 , Divide Factor is 8; for all other RANGE values, Divide Factor is 256.</p> <p>100 If RANGE = 0 , Divide Factor is 16; for all other RANGE values, Divide Factor is 512.</p> <p>101 If RANGE = 0 , Divide Factor is 32; for all other RANGE values, Divide Factor is 1024.</p> <p>110 If RANGE = 0 , Divide Factor is 64; for all other RANGE values, Divide Factor is 1280 .</p> <p>111 If RANGE = 0 , Divide Factor is 128; for all other RANGE values, Divide Factor is 1536 .</p>
2 IREFS	<p>Internal Reference Select</p> <p>Selects the reference clock source for the FLL.</p> <p>0 External reference clock is selected.</p> <p>1 The slow internal reference clock is selected.</p>
1 IRCLKEN	<p>Internal Reference Clock Enable</p> <p>Enables the internal reference clock for use as MCGIRCLK.</p> <p>0 MCGIRCLK inactive.</p> <p>1 MCGIRCLK active.</p>
0 IREFSTEN	<p>Internal Reference Stop Enable</p> <p>Controls whether or not the internal reference clock remains enabled when the MCG enters Stop mode.</p> <p>0 Internal reference clock is disabled in Stop mode.</p> <p>1 Internal reference clock is enabled in Stop mode if IRCLKEN is set or if MCG is in FEI, FBI, or BLPI modes before entering Stop mode.</p>

31.4.2 MCG Control 2 Register (MCG_C2)

Address: 4006_4000h base + 1h offset = 4006_4001h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	LOCRES0	FCFTRIM	RANGE		HGO	EREFS	LP	IRCS
Write								
Reset	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

MCG_C2 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 LOCRES0	<p>Loss of Clock Reset Enable</p> <p>Determines whether an interrupt or a reset request is made following a loss of OSC0 external reference clock. The LOCRES0 only has an affect when CME0 is set.</p> <p>0 Interrupt request is generated on a loss of OSC0 external reference clock. 1 Generate a reset request on a loss of OSC0 external reference clock.</p>
6 FCFTRIM	<p>Fast Internal Reference Clock Fine Trim</p> <p>FCFTRIM controls the smallest adjustment of the fast internal reference clock frequency. Setting FCFTRIM increases the period and clearing FCFTRIM decreases the period by the smallest amount possible. If an FCFTRIM value stored in nonvolatile memory is to be used, it is your responsibility to copy that value from the nonvolatile memory location to this bit.</p>
5–4 RANGE	<p>Frequency Range Select</p> <p>Selects the frequency range for the crystal oscillator or external clock source. See the Oscillator (OSC) chapter for more details and the device data sheet for the frequency ranges used.</p> <p>00 Encoding 0 — Low frequency range selected for the crystal oscillator . 01 Encoding 1 — High frequency range selected for the crystal oscillator . 1X Encoding 2 — Very high frequency range selected for the crystal oscillator .</p>
3 HGO	<p>High Gain Oscillator Select</p> <p>Controls the crystal oscillator mode of operation. See the Oscillator (OSC) chapter for more details.</p> <p>0 Configure crystal oscillator for low-power operation. 1 Configure crystal oscillator for high-gain operation.</p>
2 EREFS	<p>External Reference Select</p> <p>Selects the source for the external reference clock. See the Oscillator (OSC) chapter for more details.</p> <p>0 External reference clock requested. 1 Oscillator requested.</p>
1 LP	<p>Low Power Select</p> <p>Controls whether the FLL or PLL is disabled in BLPI and BLPE modes. In FBE or PBE modes, setting this bit to 1 will transition the MCG into BLPE mode; in FBI mode, setting this bit to 1 will transition the MCG into BLPI mode. In any other MCG mode, LP bit has no affect.</p> <p>0 FLL or PLL is not disabled in bypass modes. 1 FLL or PLL is disabled in bypass modes (lower power)</p>

Table continues on the next page...

MCG_C2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
0 IRCS	Internal Reference Clock Select Selects between the fast or slow internal reference clock source. 0 Slow internal reference clock selected. 1 Fast internal reference clock selected.

31.4.3 MCG Control 3 Register (MCG_C3)

Address: 4006_4000h base + 2h offset = 4006_4002h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	SCTRM							
Write	SCTRM							
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:

- x = Undefined at reset.

MCG_C3 field descriptions

Field	Description
SCTRM	Slow Internal Reference Clock Trim Setting SCTRM ¹ controls the slow internal reference clock frequency by controlling the slow internal reference clock period. The SCTRM bits are binary weighted, that is, bit 1 adjusts twice as much as bit 0. Increasing the binary value increases the period, and decreasing the value decreases the period. An additional fine trim bit is available in C4 register as the SCFTRIM bit. Upon reset, this value is loaded with a factory trim value. If an SCTRM value stored in nonvolatile memory is to be used, it is your responsibility to copy that value from the nonvolatile memory location to this register.

1. A value for SCTRM is loaded during reset from a factory programmed location.

31.4.4 MCG Control 4 Register (MCG_C4)

NOTE

Reset values for DRST and DMX32 bits are 0.

Address: 4006_4000h base + 3h offset = 4006_4003h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	DMX32	DRST_DRS			FCTRIM			SCFTRIM
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:

- x = Undefined at reset.
- x = Undefined at reset.

MCG_C4 field descriptions

Field	Description																																									
7 DMX32	<p>DCO Maximum Frequency with 32.768 kHz Reference</p> <p>The DMX32 bit controls whether the DCO frequency range is narrowed to its maximum frequency with a 32.768 kHz reference.</p> <p>The following table identifies settings for the DCO frequency range.</p> <p>NOTE: The system clocks derived from this source should not exceed their specified maximums.</p> <table><tr><th>DRST_DRS</th><th>DMX32</th><th>Reference Range</th><th>FLL Factor</th><th>DCO Range</th></tr><tr><td rowspan="2">00</td><td>0</td><td>31.25–39.0625 kHz</td><td>640</td><td>20–25 MHz</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>32.768 kHz</td><td>732</td><td>24 MHz</td></tr><tr><td rowspan="2">01</td><td>0</td><td>31.25–39.0625 kHz</td><td>1280</td><td>40–50 MHz</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>32.768 kHz</td><td>1464</td><td>48 MHz</td></tr><tr><td rowspan="2">10</td><td>0</td><td>31.25–39.0625 kHz</td><td>1920</td><td>60–75 MHz</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>32.768 kHz</td><td>2197</td><td>72 MHz</td></tr><tr><td rowspan="2">11</td><td>0</td><td>31.25–39.0625 kHz</td><td>2560</td><td>80–100 MHz</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>32.768 kHz</td><td>2929</td><td>96 MHz</td></tr></table> <p>0 DCO has a default range of 25%.</p> <p>1 DCO is fine-tuned for maximum frequency with 32.768 kHz reference.</p>	DRST_DRS	DMX32	Reference Range	FLL Factor	DCO Range	00	0	31.25–39.0625 kHz	640	20–25 MHz	1	32.768 kHz	732	24 MHz	01	0	31.25–39.0625 kHz	1280	40–50 MHz	1	32.768 kHz	1464	48 MHz	10	0	31.25–39.0625 kHz	1920	60–75 MHz	1	32.768 kHz	2197	72 MHz	11	0	31.25–39.0625 kHz	2560	80–100 MHz	1	32.768 kHz	2929	96 MHz
DRST_DRS	DMX32	Reference Range	FLL Factor	DCO Range																																						
00	0	31.25–39.0625 kHz	640	20–25 MHz																																						
	1	32.768 kHz	732	24 MHz																																						
01	0	31.25–39.0625 kHz	1280	40–50 MHz																																						
	1	32.768 kHz	1464	48 MHz																																						
10	0	31.25–39.0625 kHz	1920	60–75 MHz																																						
	1	32.768 kHz	2197	72 MHz																																						
11	0	31.25–39.0625 kHz	2560	80–100 MHz																																						
	1	32.768 kHz	2929	96 MHz																																						
6–5 DRST_DRS	<p>DCO Range Select</p> <p>The DRS bits select the frequency range for the FLL output, DCOOUT. When the LP bit is set, writes to the DRS bits are ignored. The DRST read field indicates the current frequency range for DCOOUT. The DRST field does not update immediately after a write to the DRS field due to internal synchronization between clock domains. See the DCO Frequency Range table for more details.</p> <p>00 Encoding 0 — Low range (reset default).</p>																																									

Table continues on the next page...

MCG_C4 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	01 Encoding 1 — Mid range. 10 Encoding 2 — Mid-high range. 11 Encoding 3 — High range.
4–1 FCTRIM	Fast Internal Reference Clock Trim Setting FCTRIM ¹ controls the fast internal reference clock frequency by controlling the fast internal reference clock period. The FCTRIM bits are binary weighted, that is, bit 1 adjusts twice as much as bit 0. Increasing the binary value increases the period, and decreasing the value decreases the period. If an FCTRIM[3:0] value stored in nonvolatile memory is to be used, it is your responsibility to copy that value from the nonvolatile memory location to this register.
0 SCFTRIM	Slow Internal Reference Clock Fine Trim SCFTRIM ² controls the smallest adjustment of the slow internal reference clock frequency. Setting SCFTRIM increases the period and clearing SCFTRIM decreases the period by the smallest amount possible. If an SCFTRIM value stored in nonvolatile memory is to be used, it is your responsibility to copy that value from the nonvolatile memory location to this bit.

1. A value for FCTRIM is loaded during reset from a factory programmed location.
2. A value for SCFTRIM is loaded during reset from a factory programmed location .

31.4.5 MCG Control 5 Register (MCG_C5)

Address: 4006_4000h base + 4h offset = 4006_4004h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	PLLCLKEN	PLLSTEN	0			PRDIV	
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

MCG_C5 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
6 PLLCLKEN	PLL Clock Enable Enables PLL independent of PLLS and enables the PLL clock for use as MCGPLLCLK. (PRDIV needs to be programmed to the correct divider to generate a PLL reference clock in a valid reference range prior to setting the PLLCLKEN bit). Setting PLLCLKEN will enable the external oscillator if not already enabled. Whenever the PLL is being enabled by means of the PLLCLKEN bit, and the external oscillator is being used as the reference clock, the OSCINIT 0 bit should be checked to make sure it is set. 0 MCGPLLCLK is inactive. 1 MCGPLLCLK is active.
5 PLLSTEN	PLL Stop Enable

Table continues on the next page...

MCG_C5 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description																		
	<p>Enables the PLL Clock during Normal Stop (In Low Power Stop mode, the PLL clock gets disabled even if PLLSTEN=1). All other power modes, PLLSTEN bit has no affect and does not enable the PLL Clock to run if it is written to 1.</p> <p>0 MCGPLLCLK and MCGPLLCLK2X are disabled in any of the Stop modes. 1 MCGPLLCLK and MCGPLLCLK2X are enabled if system is in Normal Stop mode.</p>																		
4–3 Reserved	<p>Reserved</p> <p>This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>																		
PRDIV	<p>PLL External Reference Divider</p> <p>Selects the amount to divide down the external reference clock for the PLL0. The resulting frequency must be in the range of 8 MHz to 16 MHz. After the PLL0 is enabled (by setting either PLLCLKEN0 or PLLS), the PRDIV0 value must not be changed when LOCK0 is zero.</p> <p>Table 31-2. PLL External Reference Divide Factor</p> <table> <tr> <th>PRDIV</th><th>Divide Factor</th></tr> <tr> <td>000</td><td>1</td></tr> <tr> <td>001</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr> <td>010</td><td>3</td></tr> <tr> <td>011</td><td>4</td></tr> <tr> <td>100</td><td>5</td></tr> <tr> <td>101</td><td>6</td></tr> <tr> <td>110</td><td>7</td></tr> <tr> <td>111</td><td>8</td></tr> </table>	PRDIV	Divide Factor	000	1	001	2	010	3	011	4	100	5	101	6	110	7	111	8
PRDIV	Divide Factor																		
000	1																		
001	2																		
010	3																		
011	4																		
100	5																		
101	6																		
110	7																		
111	8																		

31.4.6 MCG Control 6 Register (MCG_C6)

Address: 4006_4000h base + 5h offset = 4006_4005h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	LOLIE0	PLLS	CME0					
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

MCG_C6 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 LOLIE0	<p>Loss of Lock Interrupt Enable</p> <p>Determines if an interrupt request is made following a loss of lock indication. This bit only has an effect when LOLS 0 is set.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

MCG_C6 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description																																																																																																			
	0 No interrupt request is generated on loss of lock. 1 Generate an interrupt request on loss of lock.																																																																																																			
6 PLLS	PLL Select Controls whether the PLL or FLL output is selected as the MCG source when CLKS[1:0]=00. If the PLLS bit is cleared and PLLCLKEN 0 is not set, the PLL is disabled in all modes. If the PLLS is set, the FLL is disabled in all modes. 0 FLL is selected. 1 PLL is selected (PRDIV 0 need to be programmed to the correct divider to generate a PLL reference clock in the range of 8–16 MHz prior to setting the PLLS bit).																																																																																																			
5 CME0	Clock Monitor Enable Enables the loss of clock monitoring circuit for the OSC0 external reference mux select. The LOCRE0 bit will determine if a interrupt or a reset request is generated following a loss of OSC0 indication. The CME0 bit must only be set to a logic 1 when the MCG is in an operational mode that uses the external clock (FEE, FBE, PEE, PBE, or BLPE) . Whenever the CME0 bit is set to a logic 1, the value of the RANGE0 bits in the C2 register should not be changed. CME0 bit should be set to a logic 0 before the MCG enters any Stop mode. Otherwise, a reset request may occur while in Stop mode. CME0 should also be set to a logic 0 before entering VLPR or VLPW power modes if the MCG is in BLPE mode. 0 External clock monitor is disabled for OSC0. 1 External clock monitor is enabled for OSC0.																																																																																																			
VDIV	VCO Divider Selects the amount to divide the VCO output of the PLL. The VDIV bits establish the multiplication factor (M) applied to the reference clock frequency. After the PLL is enabled (by setting either PLLCLKEN or PLLS), the VDIV value must not be changed when LOCK is zero. Table 31-3. PLL VCO Divide Factor <table><tr><th>VDIV</th><th>Multiply Factor</th><th></th><th>VDIV</th><th>Multiply Factor</th><th></th><th>VDIV</th><th>Multiply Factor</th><th></th><th>VDIV</th><th>Multiply Factor</th></tr><tr><td>00000</td><td>16</td><td></td><td>01000</td><td>24</td><td></td><td>10000</td><td>32</td><td></td><td>11000</td><td>40</td></tr><tr><td>00001</td><td>17</td><td></td><td>01001</td><td>25</td><td></td><td>10001</td><td>33</td><td></td><td>11001</td><td>41</td></tr><tr><td>00010</td><td>18</td><td></td><td>01010</td><td>26</td><td></td><td>10010</td><td>34</td><td></td><td>11010</td><td>42</td></tr><tr><td>00011</td><td>19</td><td></td><td>01011</td><td>27</td><td></td><td>10011</td><td>35</td><td></td><td>11011</td><td>43</td></tr><tr><td>00100</td><td>20</td><td></td><td>01100</td><td>28</td><td></td><td>10100</td><td>36</td><td></td><td>11100</td><td>44</td></tr><tr><td>00101</td><td>21</td><td></td><td>01101</td><td>29</td><td></td><td>10101</td><td>37</td><td></td><td>11101</td><td>45</td></tr><tr><td>00110</td><td>22</td><td></td><td>01110</td><td>30</td><td></td><td>10110</td><td>38</td><td></td><td>11110</td><td>46</td></tr><tr><td>00111</td><td>23</td><td></td><td>01111</td><td>31</td><td></td><td>10111</td><td>39</td><td></td><td>11111</td><td>47</td></tr></table>	VDIV	Multiply Factor		VDIV	Multiply Factor		VDIV	Multiply Factor		VDIV	Multiply Factor	00000	16		01000	24		10000	32		11000	40	00001	17		01001	25		10001	33		11001	41	00010	18		01010	26		10010	34		11010	42	00011	19		01011	27		10011	35		11011	43	00100	20		01100	28		10100	36		11100	44	00101	21		01101	29		10101	37		11101	45	00110	22		01110	30		10110	38		11110	46	00111	23		01111	31		10111	39		11111	47
VDIV	Multiply Factor		VDIV	Multiply Factor		VDIV	Multiply Factor		VDIV	Multiply Factor																																																																																										
00000	16		01000	24		10000	32		11000	40																																																																																										
00001	17		01001	25		10001	33		11001	41																																																																																										
00010	18		01010	26		10010	34		11010	42																																																																																										
00011	19		01011	27		10011	35		11011	43																																																																																										
00100	20		01100	28		10100	36		11100	44																																																																																										
00101	21		01101	29		10101	37		11101	45																																																																																										
00110	22		01110	30		10110	38		11110	46																																																																																										
00111	23		01111	31		10111	39		11111	47																																																																																										

31.4.7 MCG Status Register (MCG_S)

Address: 4006_4000h base + 6h offset = 4006_4006h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	LOLS0	LOCK0	PLLST	IREFST	CLKST		OSCINIT0	IRCST
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0

MCG_S field descriptions

Field	Description
7 LOLS0	<p>Loss of Lock Status</p> <p>This bit is a sticky bit indicating the lock status for the PLL. LOLS is set if after acquiring lock, the PLL output frequency has fallen outside the lock exit frequency tolerance, D_{unl}. LOLIE determines whether an interrupt request is made when LOLS is set. LOLRE determines whether a reset request is made when LOLS is set. This bit is cleared by reset or by writing a logic 1 to it when set. Writing a logic 0 to this bit has no effect.</p> <p>0 PLL has not lost lock since LOLS 0 was last cleared. 1 PLL has lost lock since LOLS 0 was last cleared.</p>
6 LOCK0	<p>Lock Status</p> <p>This bit indicates whether the PLL has acquired lock. Lock detection is disabled when not operating in either PBE or PEE mode unless PLLCLKEN=1 and the MCG is not configured in BLPI or BLPE mode. While the PLL clock is locking to the desired frequency, MCGPLLCLK and MCGPLLCLK2X will be gated off until the LOCK bit gets asserted. If the lock status bit is set, changing the value of the PRDIV[2:0] bits in the C5 register or the VDIV[4:0] bits in the C6 register causes the lock status bit to clear and stay cleared until the PLL has reacquired lock. Loss of PLL reference clock will also cause the LOCK bit to clear until PLL has reacquired lock. Entry into VLPs, or regular Stop with PLLSTEN=0 also causes the lock status bit to clear and stay cleared until the Stop mode is exited and the PLL has reacquired lock. Any time the PLL is enabled and the LOCK bit is cleared, the MCGPLLCLK and MCGPLLCLK2X will be gated off until the LOCK bit is asserted again.</p> <p>0 PLL is currently unlocked. 1 PLL is currently locked.</p>
5 PLLST	<p>PLL Select Status</p> <p>This bit indicates the clock source selected by PLLS. The PLLST bit does not update immediately after a write to the PLLS bit due to internal synchronization between clock domains.</p> <p>0 Source of PLLS clock is FLL clock. 1 Source of PLLS clock is PLL output clock.</p>
4 IREFST	<p>Internal Reference Status</p> <p>This bit indicates the current source for the FLL reference clock. The IREFST bit does not update immediately after a write to the IREFS bit due to internal synchronization between clock domains.</p> <p>0 Source of FLL reference clock is the external reference clock. 1 Source of FLL reference clock is the internal reference clock.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

MCG_S field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
3–2 CLKST	<p>Clock Mode Status</p> <p>These bits indicate the current clock mode. The CLKST bits do not update immediately after a write to the CLKS bits due to internal synchronization between clock domains.</p> <p>00 Encoding 0 — Output of the FLL is selected (reset default). 01 Encoding 1 — Internal reference clock is selected. 10 Encoding 2 — External reference clock is selected. 11 Encoding 3 — Output of the PLL is selected.</p>
1 OSCINIT0	<p>OSC Initialization</p> <p>This bit, which resets to 0, is set to 1 after the initialization cycles of the crystal oscillator clock have completed. After being set, the bit is cleared to 0 if the OSC is subsequently disabled. See the OSC module's detailed description for more information.</p>
0 IRCST	<p>Internal Reference Clock Status</p> <p>The IRCST bit indicates the current source for the internal reference clock select clock (IRCSCLK). The IRCST bit does not update immediately after a write to the IRCS bit due to internal synchronization between clock domains. The IRCST bit will only be updated if the internal reference clock is enabled, either by the MCG being in a mode that uses the IRC or by setting the C1[IRCLKEN] bit .</p> <p>0 Source of internal reference clock is the slow clock (32 kHz IRC). 1 Source of internal reference clock is the fast clock (4 MHz IRC).</p>

31.4.8 MCG Status and Control Register (MCG_SC)

Address: 4006_4000h base + 8h offset = 4006_4008h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	ATME	ATMS	ATMF	FLTPRSRV	FCRDIV			LOCS0
Write			w1c					w1c
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0

MCG_SC field descriptions

Field	Description
7 ATME	<p>Automatic Trim Machine Enable</p> <p>Enables the Auto Trim Machine to start automatically trimming the selected Internal Reference Clock.</p> <p>NOTE: ATME deasserts after the Auto Trim Machine has completed trimming all trim bits of the IRCS clock selected by the ATMS bit.</p> <p>Writing to C1, C3, C4, and SC registers or entering Stop mode aborts the auto trim operation and clears this bit.</p> <p>0 Auto Trim Machine disabled. 1 Auto Trim Machine enabled.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

MCG_SC field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
6 ATMS	<p>Automatic Trim Machine Select</p> <p>Selects the IRCS clock for Auto Trim Test.</p> <p>0 32 kHz Internal Reference Clock selected. 1 4 MHz Internal Reference Clock selected.</p>
5 ATMF	<p>Automatic Trim Machine Fail Flag</p> <p>Fail flag for the Automatic Trim Machine (ATM). This bit asserts when the Automatic Trim Machine is enabled, ATME=1, and a write to the C1, C3, C4, and SC registers is detected or the MCG enters into any Stop mode. A write to ATMF clears the flag.</p> <p>0 Automatic Trim Machine completed normally. 1 Automatic Trim Machine failed.</p>
4 FLTPRSRV	<p>FLL Filter Preserve Enable</p> <p>This bit will prevent the FLL filter values from resetting allowing the FLL output frequency to remain the same during clock mode changes where the FLL/DCO output is still valid. (Note: This requires that the FLL reference frequency to remain the same as what it was prior to the new clock mode switch. Otherwise FLL filter and frequency values will change.)</p> <p>0 FLL filter and FLL frequency will reset on changes to current clock mode. 1 FLL filter and FLL frequency retain their previous values during new clock mode change.</p>
3–1 FCRDIV	<p>Fast Clock Internal Reference Divider</p> <p>Selects the amount to divide down the fast internal reference clock. The resulting frequency will be in the range 31.25 kHz to 4 MHz (Note: Changing the divider when the Fast IRC is enabled is not supported).</p> <p>000 Divide Factor is 1 001 Divide Factor is 2. 010 Divide Factor is 4. 011 Divide Factor is 8. 100 Divide Factor is 16 101 Divide Factor is 32 110 Divide Factor is 64 111 Divide Factor is 128.</p>
0 LOCS0	<p>OSC0 Loss of Clock Status</p> <p>The LOCS0 indicates when a loss of OSC0 reference clock has occurred. The LOCS0 bit only has an effect when CME0 is set. This bit is cleared by writing a logic 1 to it when set.</p> <p>0 Loss of OSC0 has not occurred. 1 Loss of OSC0 has occurred.</p>

31.4.9 MCG Auto Trim Compare Value High Register (MCG_ATCVH)

Address: 4006_4000h base + Ah offset = 4006_400Ah

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	ATCVH							
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

MCG_ATCVH field descriptions

Field	Description
ATCVH	ATM Compare Value High Values are used by Auto Trim Machine to compare and adjust Internal Reference trim values during ATM SAR conversion.

31.4.10 MCG Auto Trim Compare Value Low Register (MCG_ATCVL)

Address: 4006_4000h base + Bh offset = 4006_400Bh

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	ATCVL							
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

MCG_ATCVL field descriptions

Field	Description
ATCVL	ATM Compare Value Low Values are used by Auto Trim Machine to compare and adjust Internal Reference trim values during ATM SAR conversion.

31.4.11 MCG Control 8 Register (MCG_C8)

Address: 4006_4000h base + Dh offset = 4006_400Dh

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	LOLRE	0	0				0
Write								
Reset	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

MCG_C8 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
6 LOLRE	PLL Loss of Lock Reset Enable Determines if an interrupt or a reset request is made following a PLL loss of lock. 0 Interrupt request is generated on a PLL loss of lock indication. The PLL loss of lock interrupt enable bit must also be set to generate the interrupt request. 1 Generate a reset request on a PLL loss of lock indication.
5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
4–1 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
0 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

31.5 Functional description

31.5.1 MCG mode state diagram

The nine states of the MCG are shown in the following figure and are described in [Table 31-4](#). The arrows indicate the permitted MCG mode transitions.

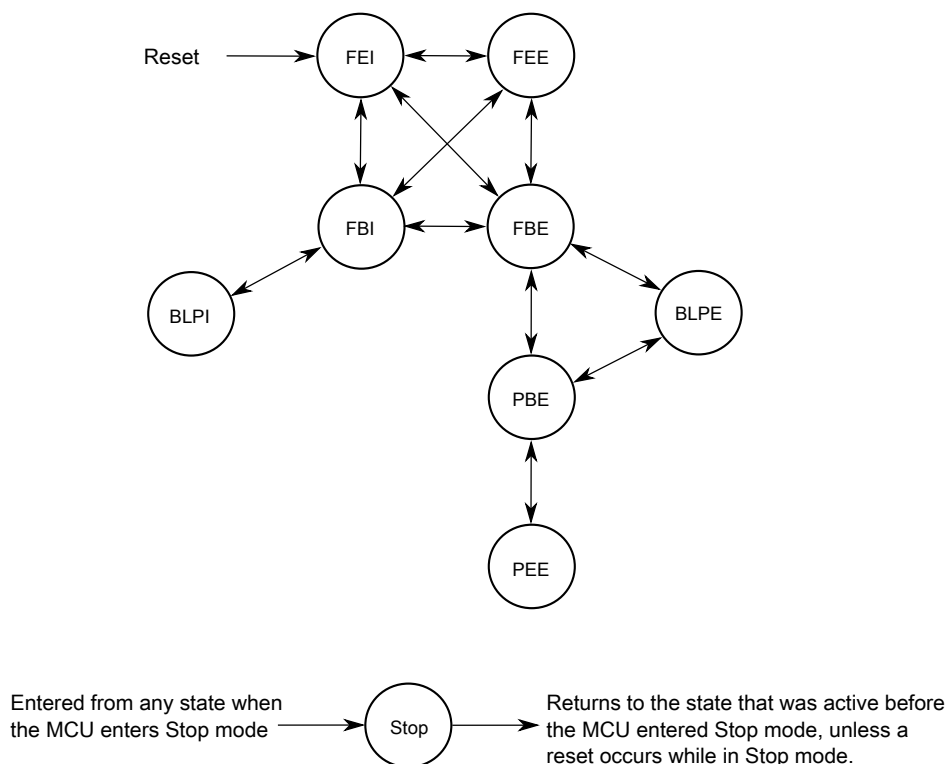


Figure 31-2. MCG mode state diagram

NOTE

- During exits from VLPS when the MCG is in PEE mode, the MCG will reset to PBE clock mode and the C1[CLKS] and S[CLKST] will automatically be set to 2'b10.
- If entering Normal Stop mode when the MCG is in PEE mode with PLLSTEN=0, the MCG will reset to PBE clock mode and C1[CLKS] and S[CLKST] will automatically be set to 2'b10.

31.5.1.1 MCG modes of operation

The MCG operates in one of the following modes.

Note

The MCG restricts transitions between modes. For the permitted transitions, see [Figure 31-2](#).

Table 31-4. MCG modes of operation

Mode	Description
FLL Engaged Internal (FEI)	<p>FLL engaged internal (FEI) is the default mode of operation and is entered when all the following conditions occur:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 00 is written to C1[CLKS]. • 1 is written to C1[IREFS]. • 0 is written to C6[PLLS]. <p>In FEI mode, MCGOUTCLK is derived from the FLL clock (DCOCLK) that is controlled by the 32 kHz Internal Reference Clock (IRC). The FLL loop will lock the DCO frequency to the FLL factor, as selected by C4[DRST_DRS] and C4[DMX32] bits, times the internal reference frequency. See the C4[DMX32] bit description for more details. In FEI mode, the PLL is disabled in a low-power state unless C5[PLLCLKEN] is set .</p>
FLL Engaged External (FEE)	<p>FLL engaged external (FEE) mode is entered when all the following conditions occur:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 00 is written to C1[CLKS]. • 0 is written to C1[IREFS]. • C1[FRDIV] must be written to divide external reference clock to be within the range of 31.25 kHz to 39.0625 kHz • 0 is written to C6[PLLS]. <p>In FEE mode, MCGOUTCLK is derived from the FLL clock (DCOCLK) that is controlled by the external reference clock. The FLL loop will lock the DCO frequency to the FLL factor, as selected by C4[DRST_DRS] and C4[DMX32] bits, times the external reference frequency, as specified by C1[FRDIV] and C2[RANGE]. See the C4[DMX32] bit description for more details. In FEE mode, the PLL is disabled in a low-power state unless C5[PLLCLKEN] is set .</p>
FLL Bypassed Internal (FBI)	<p>FLL bypassed internal (FBI) mode is entered when all the following conditions occur:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 01 is written to C1[CLKS]. • 1 is written to C1[IREFS]. • 0 is written to C6[PLLS] • 0 is written to C2[LP]. <p>In FBI mode, the MCGOUTCLK is derived either from the slow (32 kHz IRC) or fast (4 MHz IRC) internal reference clock, as selected by the C2[IRCS] bit. The FLL is operational but its output is not used. This mode is useful to allow the FLL to acquire its target frequency while the MCGOUTCLK is driven from the C2[IRCS] selected internal reference clock. The FLL clock (DCOCLK) is controlled by the slow internal reference clock, and the DCO clock frequency locks to a multiplication factor, as selected by C4[DRST_DRS] and C4[DMX32] bits, times the internal reference frequency. See the C4[DMX32] bit description for more details. In FBI mode, the PLL is disabled in a low-power state unless C5[PLLCLKEN] is set .</p>
FLL Bypassed External (FBE)	<p>FLL bypassed external (FBE) mode is entered when all the following conditions occur:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 10 is written to C1[CLKS]. • 0 is written to C1[IREFS]. • C1[FRDIV] must be written to divide external reference clock to be within the range of 31.25 kHz to 39.0625 kHz. • 0 is written to C6[PLLS]. • 0 is written to C2[LP].

Table continues on the next page...

Table 31-4. MCG modes of operation (continued)

Mode	Description
	<p>In FBE mode, the MCGOUTCLK is derived from the external reference clock. The FLL is operational but its output is not used. This mode is useful to allow the FLL to acquire its target frequency while the MCGOUTCLK is driven from the external reference clock. The FLL clock (DCOCLK) is controlled by the external reference clock, and the DCO clock frequency locks to a multiplication factor, as selected by C4[DRST_DRS] and C4[DMX32] bits, times the divided external reference frequency. See the C4[DMX32] bit description for more details. In FBE mode, the PLL is disabled in a low-power state unless C5[PLLCLKEN] is set .</p>
PLL Engaged External (PEE)	<p>PLL Engaged External (PEE) mode is entered when all the following conditions occur:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 00 is written to C1[CLKS]. • 0 is written to C1[IREFS]. • 1 is written to C6[PLLS]. <p>In PEE mode, the MCGOUTCLK is derived from the output of PLL which is controlled by a external reference clock. The PLL clock frequency locks to a multiplication factor, as specified by its corresponding VDIV, times the selected PLL reference frequency, as specified by its corresponding PRDIV. The PLL's programmable reference divider must be configured to produce a valid PLL reference clock. The FLL is disabled in a low-power state.</p>
PLL Bypassed External (PBE)	<p>PLL Bypassed External (PBE) mode is entered when all the following conditions occur:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 10 is written to C1[CLKS]. • 0 is written to C1[IREFS]. • 1 is written to C6[PLLS]. • 0 is written to C2[LP]. <p>In PBE mode, MCGOUTCLK is derived from the external reference clock; the PLL is operational, but its output clock is not used. This mode is useful to allow the PLL to acquire its target frequency while MCGOUTCLK is driven from the external reference clock. The PLL clock frequency locks to a multiplication factor, as specified by its [VDIV], times the PLL reference frequency, as specified by its [PRDIV]. In preparation for transition to PEE, the PLL's programmable reference divider must be configured to produce a valid PLL reference clock. The FLL is disabled in a low-power state.</p>
Bypassed Low Power Internal (BLPI) ¹	<p>Bypassed Low Power Internal (BLPI) mode is entered when all the following conditions occur:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 01 is written to C1[CLKS]. • 1 is written to C1[IREFS]. • 0 is written to C6[PLLS]. • 1 is written to C2[LP]. <p>In BLPI mode, MCGOUTCLK is derived from the internal reference clock. The FLL is disabled and PLL is disabled even if C5[PLLCLKEN] is set to 1.</p>
Bypassed Low Power External (BLPE) ¹	<p>Bypassed Low Power External (BLPE) mode is entered when all the following conditions occur:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 10 is written to C1[CLKS]. • 0 is written to C1[IREFS]. • 1 is written to C2[LP]. <p>In BLPE mode, MCGOUTCLK is derived from the external reference clock. The FLL is disabled and PLL is disabled even if the C5[PLLCLKEN] is set to 1.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

Table 31-4. MCG modes of operation (continued)

Mode	Description
Stop	<p>Entered whenever the MCU enters a Stop state. The power modes are chip specific. For power mode assignments, see the chapter that describes how modules are configured and MCG behavior during Stop recovery. Entering Stop mode, the FLL is disabled, and all MCG clock signals are static except in the following case:</p> <p>MCGPLLCLK is active in Normal Stop mode when PLLSTEN=1</p> <p>MCGIRCLK is active in Normal Stop mode when all the following conditions become true:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> C1[IRCLKEN] = 1 C1[IREFSTEN] = 1 <p>NOTE:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> In VLPS Stop Mode, the MCGIRCLK can be programmed to stay enabled and continue running if C1[IRCLKEN] = 1, C1[IREFSTEN]=1, and Fast IRC clock is selected (C2[IRCS] = 1) <p>NOTE:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When entering Low Power Stop mode (VLPS) from PEE mode, on exit the MCG clock mode is forced to PBE clock mode. C1[CLKS] and S[CLKST] will be configured to 2'b10 if entering from PEE mode or to 2'b01 if entering from PEI mode, C5[PLLSTEN0] will be force to 1'b0 and S[LOCK] bit will be cleared without setting S[LOLS]. When entering Normal Stop mode from PEE mode and if C5[PLLSTEN]=0, on exit the MCG clock mode is forced to PBE mode, the C1[CLKS] and S[CLKST] will be configured to 2'b10 and S[LOCK] bit will clear without setting S[LOLS]. If C5[PLLSTEN]=1, the S[LOCK] bit will not get cleared and on exit the MCG will continue to run in PEE mode.

- Caution:** If entering VLPR mode, MCG has to be configured and enter BLPE mode or BLPI mode with the Fast IRC clock selected (C2[IRCS]=1). After it enters VLPR mode, writes to any of the MCG control registers that can cause an MCG clock mode switch to a non low power clock mode must be avoided.

NOTE

For the chip-specific modes of operation, see the power management chapter of this MCU.

31.5.1.2 MCG mode switching

C1[IREFS] can be changed at any time, but the actual switch to the newly selected reference clocks is shown by S[IREFST]. When switching between engaged internal and engaged external modes, the FLL will begin locking again after the switch is completed.

C1[CLKS] can also be changed at any time, but the actual switch to the newly selected clock is shown by S[CLKST]. If the newly selected clock is not available, the previous clock will remain selected.

The C4[DRST_DRS] write bits can be changed at any time except when C2[LP] bit is 1. If C4[DRST_DRS] write bits are changed while in FLL engaged internal (FEI) or FLL engaged external (FEE) mode, the MCGOUTCLK switches to the new selected DCO

range within three clocks of the selected DCO clock. After switching to the new DCO (indicated by the updated C4[DRST_DRS] read bits), the FLL remains unlocked for several reference cycles. The FLL lock time is provided in the device data sheet as $t_{fll_acquire}$.

31.5.2 Low-power bit usage

C2[LP] is provided to allow the FLL or PLL to be disabled and thus conserve power when these systems are not being used. C4[DRST_DRS] can not be written while C2[LP] is 1. However, in some applications, it may be desirable to enable the FLL or PLL and allow it to lock for maximum accuracy before switching to an engaged mode. Do this by writing 0 to C2[LP].

31.5.3 MCG Internal Reference Clocks

This module supports two internal reference clocks with nominal frequencies of 32 kHz (slow IRC) and 4 MHz (fast IRC). The fast IRC frequency can be divided down by programming of the FCRDIV to produce a frequency range of 32 kHz to 4 MHz.

31.5.3.1 MCG Internal Reference Clock

The MCG Internal Reference Clock (MCGIRCLK) provides a clock source for other on-chip peripherals and is enabled when C1[IRCLKEN]=1. When enabled, MCGIRCLK is driven by either the fast internal reference clock (4 MHz IRC which can be divided down by the FRDIV factors) or the slow internal reference clock (32 kHz IRC). The IRCS clock frequency can be re-targeted by trimming the period of its IRCS selected internal reference clock. This can be done by writing a new trim value to the C3[SCTRIM]:C4[SCFTRIM] bits when the slow IRC clock is selected or by writing a new trim value to C4[FCTRIM]:C2[FCFTRIM] when the fast IRC clock is selected. The internal reference clock period is proportional to the trim value written. C3[SCTRIM]:C4[SCFTRIM] (if C2[IRCS]=0) and C4[FCTRIM]:C2[FCFTRIM] (if C2[IRCS]=1) bits affect the MCGOUTCLK frequency if the MCG is in FBI or BLPI modes. C3[SCTRIM]:C4[SCFTRIM] (if C2[IRCS]=0) bits also affect the MCGOUTCLK frequency if the MCG is in FEI mode.

Additionally, this clock can be enabled in Stop mode by setting C1[IRCLKEN] and C1[IREFSTEN], otherwise this clock is disabled in Stop mode.

31.5.4 External Reference Clock

The MCG module can support an external reference clock in all modes. See the device datasheet for external reference frequency range. When C1[IREFS] is set, the external reference clock will not be used by the FLL or PLL. In these modes, the frequency can be equal to the maximum frequency the chip-level timing specifications will support.

If any of the CME bits are asserted the slow internal reference clock is enabled along with the enabled external clock monitor. For the case when C6[CME0]=1, a loss of clock is detected if the OSC0 external reference falls below a minimum frequency (f_{loc_high} or f_{loc_low} depending on C2[RANGE0]).

NOTE

All clock monitors must be disabled before entering these low-power modes: Stop, VLPS, VLPR, VLPW, and VLLSx.

On detecting a loss-of-clock event, the MCU generates a system reset if the respective LOCRE bit is set. Otherwise the MCG sets the respective LOCS bit and the MCG generates a LOCS interrupt request. In the case where a OSC loss of clock is detected, the PLL LOCK status bit is cleared.

31.5.5 MCG Fixed Frequency Clock

The MCG Fixed Frequency Clock (MCGFFCLK) provides a fixed frequency clock source for other on-chip peripherals; see the block diagram. This clock is driven by either the slow clock from the internal reference clock generator or the external reference clock from the Crystal Oscillator, divided by the FLL reference clock divider. The source of MCGFFCLK is selected by C1[IREFS].

This clock is synchronized to the peripheral bus clock and is valid only when its frequency is not more than 1/8 of the MCGOUTCLK frequency. When it is not valid, it is disabled and held high. The MCGFFCLK is not available when the MCG is in BLPI mode. This clock is also disabled in Stop mode. The FLL reference clock must be set within the valid frequency range for the MCGFFCLK.

31.5.6 MCG PLL clock

The MCG PLL Clock (MCGPLLCLK) is available depending on the device's configuration of the MCG module. For more details, see the clock distribution chapter of this MCU. The MCGPLLCLK is prevented from coming out of the MCG until it is enabled and S[LOCK0] is set.

31.5.7 MCG Auto TRIM (ATM)

The MCG Auto Trim (ATM) is a MCG feature that when enabled, it configures the MCG hardware to automatically trim the MCG Internal Reference Clocks using an external clock as a reference. The selection between which MCG IRC clock gets tested and enabled is controlled by the ATC[ATMS] control bit (ATC[ATMS]=0 selects the 32 kHz IRC and ATC[ATMS]=1 selects the 4 MHz IRC). If 4 MHz IRC is selected for the ATM, a divide by 128 is enabled to divide down the 4 MHz IRC to a range of 31.250 kHz.

When MCG ATM is enabled by writing ATC[ATME] bit to 1, The ATM machine will start auto trimming the selected IRC clock. During the autotrim process, ATC[ATME] will remain asserted and will deassert after ATM is completed or an abort occurs. The MCG ATM is aborted if a write to any of the following control registers is detected : C1, C3, C4, or ATC or if Stop mode is entered. If an abort occurs, ATC[ATMF] fail flag is asserted.

The ATM machine uses the bus clock as the external reference clock to perform the IRC auto-trim. Therefore, it is required that the MCG is configured in a clock mode where the reference clock used to generate the system clock is the external reference clock such as FBE clock mode. The MCG must not be configured in a clock mode where selected IRC ATM clock is used to generate the system clock. The bus clock is also required to be running with in the range of 8–16 MHz.

To perform the ATM on the selected IRC, the ATM machine uses the successive approximation technique to adjust the IRC trim bits to generate the desired IRC trimmed frequency. The ATM SARs each of the ATM IRC trim bits starting with the MSB. For each trim bit test, the ATM uses a pulse that is generated by the ATM selected IRC clock to enable a counter that counts number of ATM external clocks. At end of each trim bit, the ATM external counter value is compared to the ATCV[15:0] register value. Based on the comparison result, the ATM trim bit under test will get cleared or stay asserted. This is done until all trim bits have been tested by ATM SAR machine.

Before the ATM can be enabled, the ATM expected count needs to be derived and stored into the ATCV register. The ATCV expected count is derived based on the required target Internal Reference Clock (IRC) frequency, and the frequency of the external reference clock using the following formula:

$$\text{ATCV Expected Count Value} = 21 * (\text{Fe} / \text{Fr})$$

- Fr = Target Internal Reference Clock (IRC) Trimmed Frequency
- Fe = External Clock Frequency

If the auto trim is being performed on the 4 MHz IRC, the calculated expected count value must be multiplied by 128 before storing it in the ATCV register. Therefore, the ATCV Expected Count Value for trimming the 4 MHz IRC is calculated using the following formula.

$$\text{Expected Count Value} = (\text{Fe} / \text{Fr}) * 21 * (128)$$

31.6 Initialization / Application information

This section describes how to initialize and configure the MCG module in an application.

The following sections include examples on how to initialize the MCG and properly switch between the various available modes.

31.6.1 MCG module initialization sequence

The MCG comes out of reset configured for FEI mode.

The internal reference will stabilize in t_{irefst} microseconds before the FLL can acquire lock. As soon as the internal reference is stable, the FLL will acquire lock in $t_{\text{fll_acquire}}$ milliseconds.

31.6.1.1 Initializing the MCG

Because the MCG comes out of reset in FEI mode, the only MCG modes that can be directly switched to upon reset are FEE, FBE, and FBI modes (see [Figure 31-2](#)). Reaching any of the other modes requires first configuring the MCG for one of these three intermediate modes. Care must be taken to check relevant status bits in the MCG status register reflecting all configuration changes within each mode.

To change from FEI mode to FEE or FBE modes, follow this procedure:

1. Enable the external clock source by setting the appropriate bits in C2 register.
2. Write to C1 register to select the clock mode.
 - If entering FEE mode, set C1[FRDIV] appropriately, clear C1[IREFS] bit to switch to the external reference, and leave C1[CLKS] at 2'b00 so that the output of the FLL is selected as the system clock source.

- If entering FBE, clear C1[IREFS] to switch to the external reference and change C1[CLKS] to 2'b10 so that the external reference clock is selected as the system clock source. The C1[FRDIV] bits should also be set appropriately here according to the external reference frequency to keep the FLL reference clock in the range of 31.25 kHz to 39.0625 kHz. Although the FLL is bypassed, it is still on in FBE mode.
 - The internal reference can optionally be kept running by setting C1[IRCLKEN]. This is useful if the application will switch back and forth between internal and external modes. For minimum power consumption, leave the internal reference disabled while in an external clock mode.
3. Once the proper configuration bits have been set, wait for the affected bits in the MCG status register to be changed appropriately, reflecting that the MCG has moved into the proper mode.
 - If the MCG is in FEE, FBE, PEE, PBE, or BLPE mode, and C2[EREFS] was also set in step 1, wait here for S[OSCINIT0] bit to become set indicating that the external clock source has finished its initialization cycles and stabilized.
 - If in FEE mode, check to make sure S[IREFST] is cleared before moving on.
 - If in FBE mode, check to make sure S[IREFST] is cleared and S[CLKST] bits have changed to 2'b10 indicating the external reference clock has been appropriately selected. Although the FLL is bypassed, it is still on in FBE mode.
 4. Write to the C4 register to determine the DCO output (MCGFLLCLK) frequency range.
 - By default, with C4[DMX32] cleared to 0, the FLL multiplier for the DCO output is 640. For greater flexibility, if a mid-low-range FLL multiplier of 1280 is desired instead, set C4[DRST_DRS] bits to 2'b01 for a DCO output frequency of 40 MHz. If a mid high-range FLL multiplier of 1920 is desired instead, set the C4[DRST_DRS] bits to 2'b10 for a DCO output frequency of 60 MHz. If a high-range FLL multiplier of 2560 is desired instead, set the C4[DRST_DRS] bits to 2'b11 for a DCO output frequency of 80 MHz.
 - When using a 32.768 kHz external reference, if the maximum low-range DCO frequency that can be achieved with a 32.768 kHz reference is desired, set C4[DRST_DRS] bits to 2'b00 and set C4[DMX32] bit to 1. The resulting DCO output (MCGOUTCLK) frequency with the new multiplier of 732 will be 24 MHz.

- When using a 32.768 kHz external reference, if the maximum mid-range DCO frequency that can be achieved with a 32.768 kHz reference is desired, set C4[DRST_DRS] bits to 2'b01 and set C4[DMX32] bit to 1. The resulting DCO output (MCGOUTCLK) frequency with the new multiplier of 1464 will be 48 MHz.
 - When using a 32.768 kHz external reference, if the maximum mid high-range DCO frequency that can be achieved with a 32.768 kHz reference is desired, set C4[DRST_DRS] bits to 2'b10 and set C4[DMX32] bit to 1. The resulting DCO output (MCGOUTCLK) frequency with the new multiplier of 2197 will be 72 MHz.
 - When using a 32.768 kHz external reference, if the maximum high-range DCO frequency that can be achieved with a 32.768 kHz reference is desired, set C4[DRST_DRS] bits to 2'b11 and set C4[DMX32] bit to 1. The resulting DCO output (MCGOUTCLK) frequency with the new multiplier of 2929 will be 96 MHz.
5. Wait for the FLL lock time to guarantee FLL is running at new C4[DRST_DRS] and C4[DMX32] programmed frequency.

To change from FEI clock mode to FBI clock mode, follow this procedure:

1. Change C1[CLKS] bits in C1 register to 2'b01 so that the internal reference clock is selected as the system clock source.
2. Wait for S[CLKST] bits in the MCG status register to change to 2'b01, indicating that the internal reference clock has been appropriately selected.
3. Write to the C2 register to determine the IRCS output (IRCSCLK) frequency range.
 - By default, with C2[IRCS] cleared to 0, the IRCS selected output clock is the slow internal reference clock (32 kHz IRC). If the faster IRC is desired, set C2[IRCS] to 1 for a IRCS clock derived from the 4 MHz IRC source.

31.6.2 Using a 32.768 kHz reference

In FEE and FBE modes, if using a 32.768 kHz external reference, at the default FLL multiplication factor of 640, the DCO output (MCGFLLCLK) frequency is 20.97 MHz at low-range.

If C4[DRST_DRS] bits are set to 2'b01, the multiplication factor is doubled to 1280, and the resulting DCO output frequency is 41.94 MHz at mid-low-range. If C4[DRST_DRS] bits are set to 2'b10, the multiplication factor is set to 1920, and the resulting DCO output frequency is 62.91 MHz at mid high-range. If C4[DRST_DRS] bits are set to 2'b11, the multiplication factor is set to 2560, and the resulting DCO output frequency is 83.89 MHz at high-range.

In FBI and FEI modes, setting C4[DMX32] bit is not recommended. If the internal reference is trimmed to a frequency above 32.768 kHz, the greater FLL multiplication factor could potentially push the microcontroller system clock out of specification and damage the part.

31.6.3 MCG mode switching

When switching between operational modes of the MCG, certain configuration bits must be changed in order to properly move from one mode to another.

Each time any of these bits are changed (C6[PLLS], C1[IREFS], C1[CLKS], C2[IRCS], or C2[EREFS], the corresponding bits in the MCG status register (PLLST, IREFST, CLKST, IRCST, or OSCINIT) must be checked before moving on in the application software.

Additionally, care must be taken to ensure that the reference clock divider (C1[FRDIV] and C5[PRDIV0]) is set properly for the mode being switched to. For instance, in PEE mode, if using a 16 MHz crystal, C5[PRDIV0] must be set to 3'b000 (divide-by-1) or 3'b001 (divide-by-2) to divide the external reference down to the required frequency between 8 and 16 MHz.

In FBE, FEE, FBI, and FEI modes, at any time, the application can switch the FLL multiplication factor between 640, 1280, 1920, and 2560 with C4[DRST_DRS] bits. Writes to C4[DRST_DRS] bits will be ignored if C2[LP]=1.

The table below shows MCGOUTCLK frequency calculations using C1[FRDIV], C5[PRDIV0], and C6[VDIV0] settings for each clock mode.

Table 31-5. MCGOUTCLK Frequency Calculation Options

Clock Mode	$f_{\text{MCGOUTCLK}}^1$	Note
FEI (FLL engaged internal)	$f_{\text{int}} \times F$	Typical $f_{\text{MCGOUTCLK}} = 21$ MHz immediately after reset.
FEE (FLL engaged external)	$(f_{\text{ext}} / \text{FLL_R}) \times F$	$f_{\text{ext}} / \text{FLL_R}$ must be in the range of 31.25 kHz to 39.0625 kHz
FBE (FLL bypassed external)	OSCCLK	OSCCLK / FLL_R must be in the range of 31.25 kHz to 39.0625 kHz

Table continues on the next page...

Table 31-5. MCGOUTCLK Frequency Calculation Options (continued)

Clock Mode	$f_{\text{MCGOUTCLK}}^1$	Note
FBI (FLL bypassed internal)	MCGIRCLK	Selectable between slow and fast IRC
PEE (PLL engaged external)	$(\text{OSCCLK} / \text{PLL_R}) \times \text{M}$	OSCCLK / PLL_R must be in the range of 8 – 16 MHz
PBE (PLL bypassed external)	OSCCLK	OSCCLK / PLL_R must be in the range of 8 – 16 MHz
BLPI (Bypassed low power internal)	MCGIRCLK	Selectable between slow and fast IRC
BLPE (Bypassed low power external)	OSCCLK	

1. FLL_R is the reference divider selected by the C1[FRDIV] bits, F is the FLL factor selected by C4[DRST_DRS] and C4[DMX32] bits, PLL_R is the reference divider selected by C5[PRDIV0] bits, and M is the multiplier selected by C6[VDIV0] bits.

This section will include several mode switching examples, using an 16 MHz external crystal. If using an external clock source less than 8 MHz, the MCG must not be configured for any of the PLL modes (PEE and PBE).

31.6.3.1 Example 1: Moving from FEI to PEE Mode with OSC0 as the source for the external crystal clock: External Crystal = 16 MHz, MCGOUTCLK frequency = 120 MHz

In this example, the MCG will move through the proper operational modes from FEI to PEE to achieve 120 MHz MCGOUTCLK frequency from 16 MHz external crystal reference. First, the code sequence will be described. Then there is a flowchart that illustrates the sequence.

1. First, FEI must transition to FBE mode:

a. C2 = 0x2C

- C2[RANGE] set to 2'b10 because the frequency of 16 MHz is within the high frequency range.
- C2[HGO] set to 1 to configure the crystal oscillator for high gain operation.
- C2[EREFS] set to 1, because a crystal is being used.

b. C1 = 0xA0

- C1[CLKS] set to 2'b10 to select external reference clock as system clock source

- C1[FRDIV] set to 3'b100, or divide-by-512 because $8 \text{ MHz} / 512 = 31.25 \text{ kHz}$ which is in the 31.25 kHz to 39.0625 kHz range required by the FLL
 - C1[IREFS] cleared to 0, selecting the external reference clock and enabling the external oscillator.
- c. Loop until S[OSCINIT0] is 1, indicating the crystal selected by C2[EREFS0] has been initialized.
 - d. Loop until S[IREFST] is 0, indicating the external reference is the current source for the reference clock.
 - e. Loop until S[CLKST] is 2'b10, indicating that the external reference clock is selected to feed MCGOUTCLK.
2. Then configure C5[PRDIV0] to generate correct PLL reference frequency.
 - a. C5 = 0x01
 - C5[PRDIV] set to 3'b001, or divide-by-2 resulting in a pll reference frequency of $16\text{MHz}/2 = 8 \text{ MHz}$.
 3. Then, FBE must transition either directly to PBE mode or first through BLPE mode and then to PBE mode:
 - a. BLPE: If a transition through BLPE mode is desired, first set C2[LP] to 1.
 - b. BLPE/PBE: C6 = 0x4E
 - C6[PLLS] set to 1, selects the PLL. At this time, with a C1[PRDIV] value of 2'b001, the PLL reference divider is 2 (see PLL External Reference Divide Factor table), resulting in a reference frequency of $16 \text{ MHz} / 2 = 8 \text{ MHz}$. In BLPE mode, changing the C6[PLLS] bit only prepares the MCG for PLL usage in PBE mode.
 - C6[VDIV] set to 5'b01110, or multiply-by-30 because $8 \text{ MHz reference} * 30 = 240 \text{ MHz}$. This is the MCGPLL0CLK2X frequency, which is the frequency of the VCO. This is divided by 2 to achieve the MCGPLL0CLK frequency of 120 MHz which is later used as the MCGOUTCLK frequency. In BLPE mode, the configuration of the VDIV bits does not matter because the PLL is disabled. Changing them only sets up the multiply value for PLL usage in PBE mode.
 - c. BLPE: If transitioning through BLPE mode, clear C2[LP] to 0 here to switch to PBE mode.

- d. PBE: Loop until S[PLLST] is set, indicating that the current source for the PLLS clock is the PLL.
 - e. PBE: Then loop until S[LOCK0] is set, indicating that the PLL has acquired lock.
4. Lastly, PBE mode transitions into PEE mode:
- a. C1 = 0x20
 - C1[CLKS] set to 2'b00 to select the output of the PLL as the system clock source.
 - b. Loop until S[CLKST] are 2'b11, indicating that the PLL output is selected to feed MCGOUTCLK in the current clock mode.
 - Now, with PRDIV of divide-by-2, and C6[VDIV] of multiply-by-30,
$$\text{MCGOUTCLK} = [(16 \text{ MHz} / 2) * 30] / 2 = 120 \text{ MHz}.$$

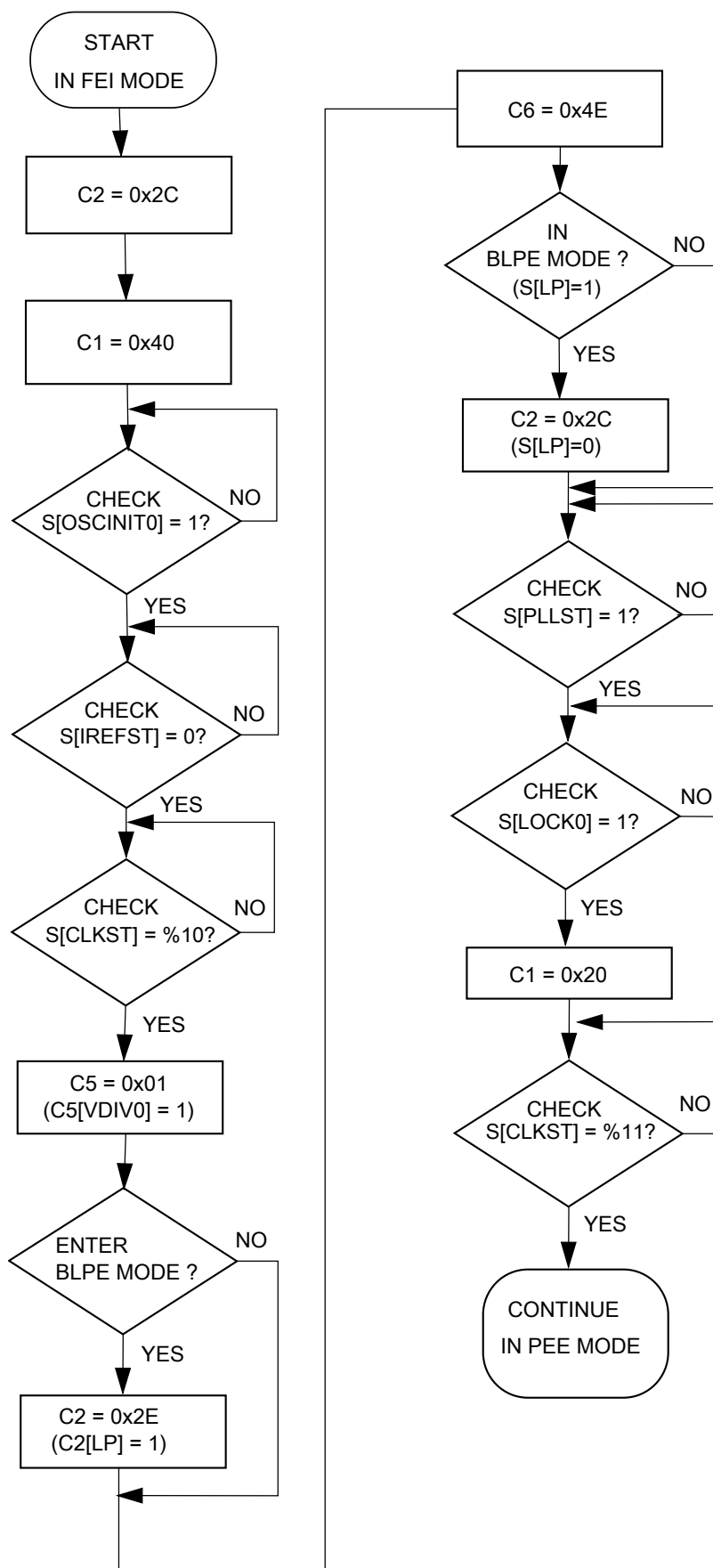


Figure 31-3. Flowchart of FEI to PEE mode transition using an 16 MHz crystal
KV5x Sub-Family Reference Manual , Rev. 2.1, 10/2015

31.6.3.2 Example 2: Moving from PEE to BLPI mode: MCGOUTCLK frequency =32 kHz

In this example, the MCG will move through the proper operational modes from PEE mode with a 16 MHz crystal configured for a 120 MHz MCGOUTCLK frequency (see previous example) to BLPI mode with a 32 kHz MCGOUTCLK frequency. First, the code sequence will be described. Then there is a flowchart that illustrates the sequence.

1. First, PEE must transition to PBE mode:
 - a. C1 = 0x40
 - C1[CLKS] set to 2'b10 to switch the system clock source to the external reference clock.
 - b. Loop until S[CLKST] are 2'b10, indicating that the external reference clock is selected to feed MCGOUTCLK.
2. Then, PBE must transition either directly to FBE mode or first through BLPE mode and then to FBE mode:
 - a. BLPE: If a transition through BLPE mode is desired, first set C2[LP] to 1.
 - b. BLPE/FBE: C6 = 0x00
 - C6[PLLS] clear to 0 to select the FLL. At this time, with C1[FRDIV] value of 3'b100, the FLL divider is set to 512, resulting in a reference frequency of $16 \text{ MHz} / 512 = 31.25 \text{ kHz}$. If C1[FRDIV] was not previously set to 3'b100 (necessary to achieve required 31.25–39.06 kHz FLL reference frequency with an 16 MHz external source frequency), it must be changed prior to clearing C6[PLLS] bit. In BLPE mode, changing this bit only prepares the MCG for FLL usage in FBE mode. With C6[PLLS] = 0, the C6[VDIV] value does not matter.
 - c. BLPE: If transitioning through BLPE mode, clear C2[LP] to 0 here to switch to FBE mode.
 - d. FBE: Loop until S[PLLST] is cleared, indicating that the current source for the PLLS clock is the FLL.
3. Next, FBE mode transitions into FBI mode:
 - a. C1 = 0x64
 - C1[CLKS] set to 2'b01 to switch the system clock to the internal reference clock.

- C1[IREFS] set to 1 to select the internal reference clock as the reference clock source.
 - C1[FRDIV] remain unchanged because the reference divider does not affect the internal reference.
- b. Loop until S[IREFST] is 1, indicating the internal reference clock has been selected as the reference clock source.
 - c. Loop until S[CLKST] are 2'b01, indicating that the internal reference clock is selected to feed MCGOUTCLK.
4. Lastly, FBI transitions into BLPI mode.
 - a. C2 = 0x22
 - C2[LP] is 1
 - C2[RANGE], C2[HGO], C2[EREFS], C1[IRCLKEN], and C1[IREFSTEN] bits are ignored when the C1[IREFS] bit is set. They can remain set, or be cleared at this point.

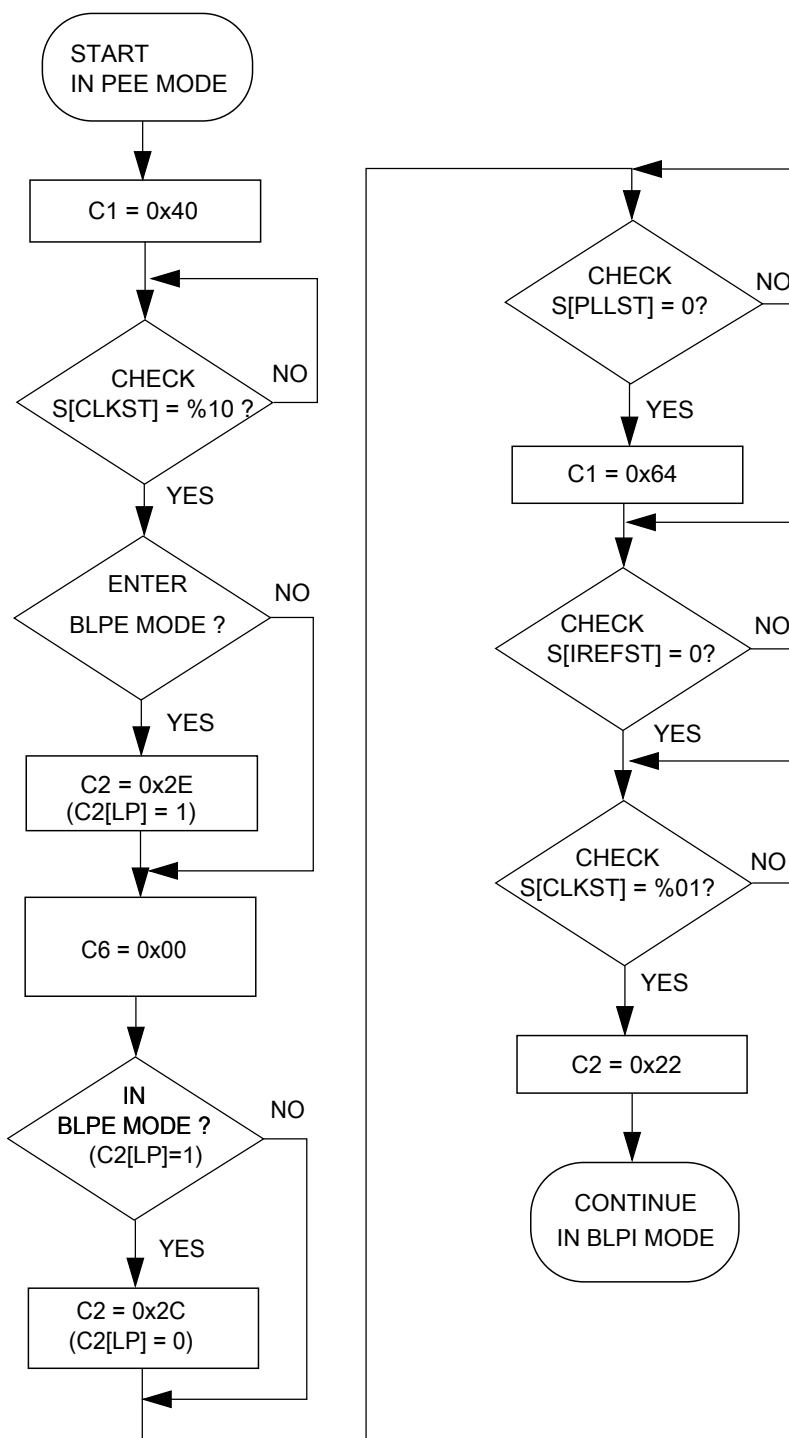


Figure 31-4. Flowchart of PEE to BLPI mode transition using an 16 MHz crystal



Chapter 32

Oscillator (OSC)

32.1 Chip-specific OSC information

32.1.1 OSC modes of operation with MCG

The MCG's C2 register bits configure the oscillator frequency range. See the OSC and MCG chapters for more details.

32.2 Introduction

The OSC module is a crystal oscillator. The module, in conjunction with an external crystal or resonator, generates a reference clock for the MCU.

32.3 Features and Modes

Key features of the module are listed here.

- Supports 32 kHz crystals (Low Range mode)
- Supports 3–8 MHz, 8–32 MHz crystals and resonators (High Range mode)
- Automatic Gain Control (AGC) to optimize power consumption in high frequency ranges 3–8 MHz, 8–32 MHz using low-power mode
- High gain option in frequency ranges: 32 kHz, 3–8 MHz, and 8–32 MHz
- Voltage and frequency filtering to guarantee clock frequency and stability
- Optionally external input bypass clock from EXTAL signal directly

Block Diagram

- One clock for MCU clock system
- Two clocks for on-chip peripherals that can work in Stop modes

[Functional Description](#) describes the module's operation in more detail.

32.4 Block Diagram

The OSC module uses a crystal or resonator to generate three filtered oscillator clock signals. Three clocks are output from OSC module: OSCCLK for MCU system, OSCERCLK for on-chip peripherals, and . The OSCCLK can only work in run mode. OSCERCLK and can work in low power modes. For the clock source assignments, refer to the clock distribution information of this MCU.

Refer to the chip configuration details for the external reference clock source in this MCU.

The figure found here shows the block diagram of the OSC module.

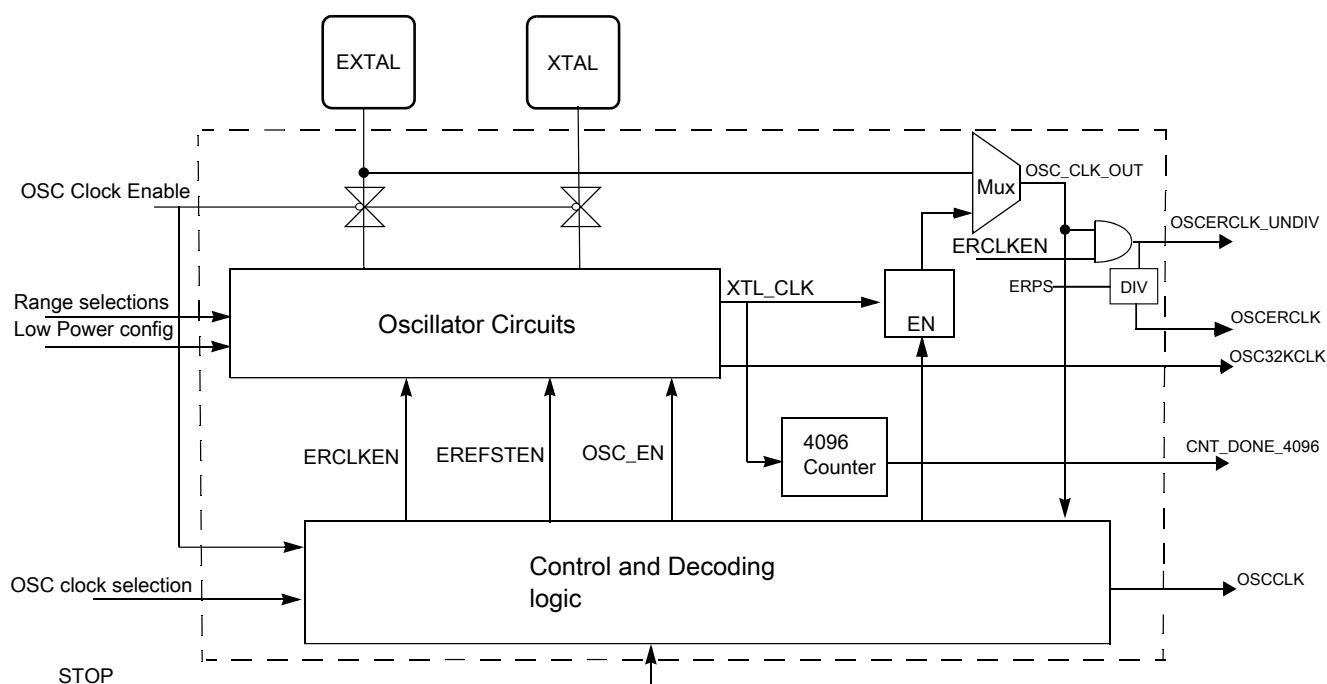


Figure 32-1. OSC Module Block Diagram

32.5 OSC Signal Descriptions

The table found here shows the user-accessible signals available for the OSC module. Refer to signal multiplexing information for this MCU for more details.

Table 32-1. OSC Signal Descriptions

Signal	Description	I/O
EXTAL	External clock/Oscillator input	I
XTAL	Oscillator output	O

32.6 External Crystal / Resonator Connections

The connections for a crystal/resonator frequency reference are shown in the figures found here.

When using low-frequency, low-power mode, the only external component is the crystal or ceramic resonator itself. In the other oscillator modes, load capacitors (C_x , C_y) and feedback resistor (R_F) are required. The following table shows all possible connections.

Table 32-2. External Caystal/Resonator Connections

Oscillator Mode	Connections
Low-frequency (32 kHz), low-power	Connection 1 ¹
Low-frequency (32 kHz), high-gain	Connection 2/Connection 3 ²
High-frequency (3~32 MHz), low-power	Connection 3 ¹
High-frequency (3~32 MHz), high-gain	Connection 3

1. With the low-power mode, the oscillator has the internal feedback resistor R_F . Therefore, the feedback resistor must not be externally with the Connection 3.
2. When the load capacitors (C_x , C_y) are greater than 30 pF, use Connection 3.

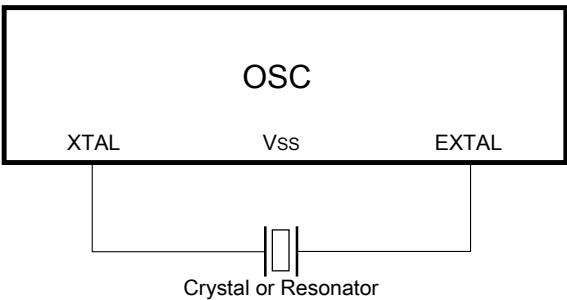


Figure 32-2. Crystal/Ceramic Resonator Connections - Connection 1

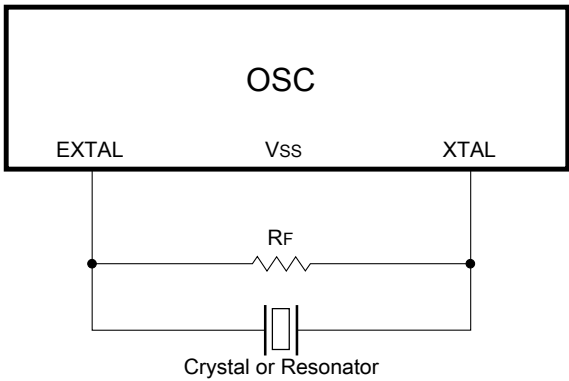


Figure 32-3. Crystal/Ceramic Resonator Connections - Connection 2

NOTE

Connection 1 and Connection 2 should use internal capacitors as the load of the oscillator by configuring the CR[SCxP] bits.

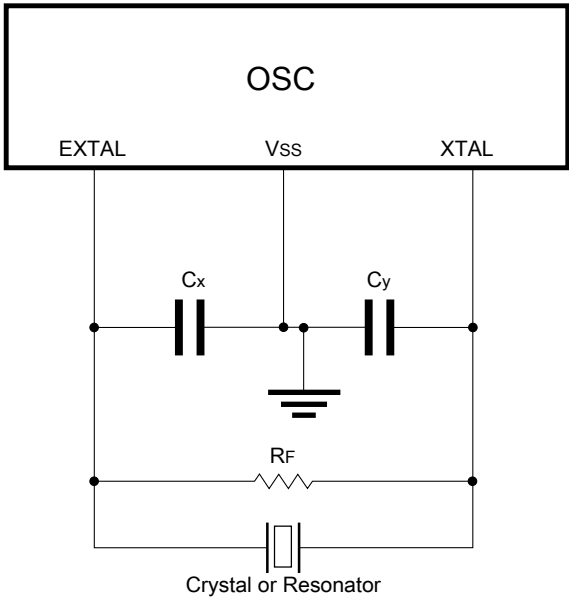


Figure 32-4. Crystal/Ceramic Resonator Connections - Connection 3

32.7 External Clock Connections

In external clock mode, the pins can be connected as shown in the figure found here.

NOTE

XTAL can be used as a GPIO when the GPIO alternate function is configured for it.

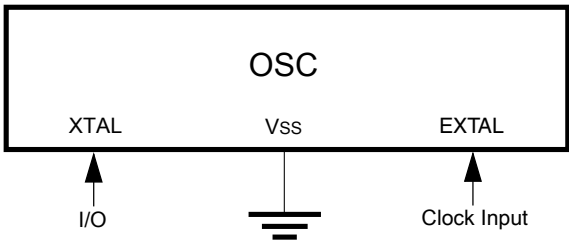


Figure 32-5. External Clock Connections

32.8 Memory Map/Register Definitions

Some oscillator module register bits are typically incorporated into other peripherals such as MCG or SIM.

32.8.1 OSC Memory Map/Register Definition

OSC memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4006_5000	OSC Control Register (OSC0_CR)	8	R/W	00h	32.8.1.1/707
4006_5002	OSC_DIV (OSC0_OSC_DIV)	8	R/W	00h	32.8.1.2/709

32.8.1.1 OSC Control Register (OSCx_CR)

NOTE

After OSC is enabled and starts generating the clocks, the configurations such as low power and frequency range, must not be changed.

Address: 4006_5000h base + 0h offset = 4006_5000h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	ERCLKEN	0	EREFSTEN	0	SC2P	SC4P	SC8P	SC16P
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

OSCx_CR field descriptions

Field	Description
7 ERCLKEN	<p>External Reference Enable</p> <p>Enables external reference clock (OSCERCLK) .</p> <p>0 External reference clock is inactive. 1 External reference clock is enabled.</p>
6 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
5 EREFSTEN	<p>External Reference Stop Enable</p> <p>Controls whether or not the external reference clock (OSCERCLK) remains enabled when MCU enters Stop mode.</p> <p>0 External reference clock is disabled in Stop mode. 1 External reference clock stays enabled in Stop mode if ERCLKEN is set before entering Stop mode.</p>
4 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
3 SC2P	<p>Oscillator 2 pF Capacitor Load Configure</p> <p>Configures the oscillator load.</p> <p>0 Disable the selection. 1 Add 2 pF capacitor to the oscillator load.</p>
2 SC4P	<p>Oscillator 4 pF Capacitor Load Configure</p> <p>Configures the oscillator load.</p> <p>0 Disable the selection. 1 Add 4 pF capacitor to the oscillator load.</p>
1 SC8P	<p>Oscillator 8 pF Capacitor Load Configure</p> <p>Configures the oscillator load.</p> <p>0 Disable the selection. 1 Add 8 pF capacitor to the oscillator load.</p>
0 SC16P	<p>Oscillator 16 pF Capacitor Load Configure</p> <p>Configures the oscillator load.</p> <p>0 Disable the selection. 1 Add 16 pF capacitor to the oscillator load.</p>

32.8.1.2 OSC_DIV (OSCx_OSC_DIV)

OSC Clock divider register.

Address: 4006_5000h base + 2h offset = 4006_5002h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	ERPS		0	0	0	0	0	0
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

OSCx_OSC_DIV field descriptions

Field	Description
7–6 ERPS	ERCLK prescaler. These two bits are used to divide the ERCLK output. The un-divided ERCLK output is not affected by these two bits. 00 The divisor ratio is 1. 01 The divisor ratio is 2. 10 The divisor ratio is 4. 11 The divisor ratio is 8.
5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
1 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
0 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

32.9 Functional Description

Functional details of the module can be found here.

32.9.1 OSC module states

The states of the OSC module are shown in the following figure. The states and their transitions between each other are described in this section.

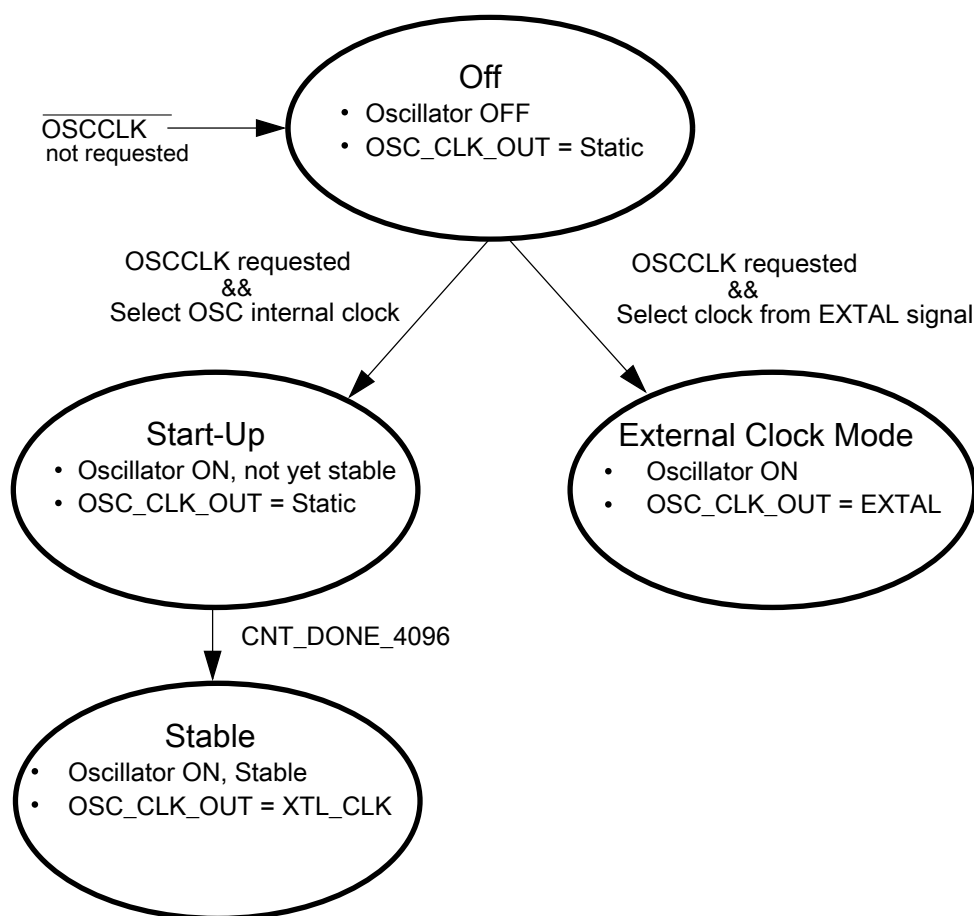


Figure 32-6. OSC Module state diagram

NOTE

XTL_CLK is the clock generated internally from OSC circuits.

32.9.1.1 Off

The OSC enters the Off state when the system does not require OSC clocks. Upon entering this state, XTL_CLK is static unless OSC is configured to select the clock from the EXTAL pad by clearing the external reference clock selection bit. For details regarding the external reference clock source in this MCU, refer to the chip configuration details. The EXTAL and XTAL pins are also decoupled from all other oscillator circuitry in this state. The OSC module circuitry is configured to draw minimal current.

32.9.1.2 Oscillator startup

The OSC enters startup state when it is configured to generate clocks (internally the OSC_EN transitions high) using the internal oscillator circuits by setting the external reference clock selection bit. In this state, the OSC module is enabled and oscillations are starting up, but have not yet stabilized. When the oscillation amplitude becomes large enough to pass through the input buffer, XTL_CLK begins clocking the counter. When the counter reaches 4096 cycles of XTL_CLK, the oscillator is considered stable and XTL_CLK is passed to the output clock OSC_CLK_OUT.

32.9.1.3 Oscillator Stable

The OSC enters stable state when it is configured to generate clocks (internally the OSC_EN transitions high) using the internal oscillator circuits by setting the external reference clock selection bit and the counter reaches 4096 cycles of XTL_CLK (when CNT_DONE_4096 is high). In this state, the OSC module is producing a stable output clock on OSC_CLK_OUT. Its frequency is determined by the external components being used.

32.9.1.4 External Clock mode

The OSC enters external clock state when it is enabled and external reference clock selection bit is cleared. For details regarding external reference clock source in this MCU, see the chip configuration details. In this state, the OSC module is set to buffer (with hysteresis) a clock from EXTAL onto the OSC_CLK_OUT. Its frequency is determined by the external clock being supplied.

32.9.2 OSC module modes

The OSC is a pierce-type oscillator that supports external crystals or resonators operating over the frequency ranges shown in [Table 32-3](#). These modes assume the following conditions: OSC is enabled to generate clocks (OSC_EN=1), configured to generate clocks internally (MCG_C2[EREFS] = 1), and some or one of the other peripherals (MCG, Timer, and so on) is configured to use the oscillator output clock (OSC_CLK_OUT).

Table 32-3. Oscillator modes

Mode	Frequency Range
Low-frequency, high-gain	f_{osc_lo} (32.768 kHz) up to f_{osc_lo} (39.0625 kHz)

Table continues on the next page...

Table 32-3. Oscillator modes (continued)

Mode	Frequency Range
High-frequency mode1, high-gain	$f_{osc_hi_1}$ (3 MHz) up to $f_{osc_hi_1}$ (8 MHz)
High-frequency mode1, low-power	
High-frequency mode2, high-gain	$f_{osc_hi_2}$ (8 MHz) up to $f_{osc_hi_2}$ (32 MHz)
High-frequency mode2, low-power	

NOTE

For information about low power modes of operation used in this chip and their alignment with some OSC modes, see the chip's Power Management details.

32.9.2.1 Low-Frequency, High-Gain Mode

In Low-frequency, high-gain mode, the oscillator uses a simple inverter-style amplifier. The gain is set to achieve rail-to-rail oscillation amplitudes.

The oscillator input buffer in this mode is single-ended. It provides low pass frequency filtering as well as hysteresis for voltage filtering and converts the output to logic levels. In this mode, the internal capacitors could be used.

32.9.2.2 Low-Frequency, Low-Power Mode

In low-frequency, low-power mode, the oscillator uses a gain control loop to minimize power consumption. As the oscillation amplitude increases, the amplifier current is reduced. This continues until a desired amplitude is achieved at steady-state. This mode provides low pass frequency filtering as well as hysteresis for voltage filtering and converts the output to logic levels. In this mode, the internal capacitors could be used, the internal feedback resistor is connected, and no external resistor should be used.

In this mode, the amplifier inputs, gain-control input, and input buffer input are all capacitively coupled for leakage tolerance (not sensitive to the DC level of EXTAL).

Also in this mode, all external components except for the resonator itself are integrated, which includes the load capacitors and feedback resistor that biases EXTAL.

32.9.2.3 High-Frequency, High-Gain Mode

In high-frequency, high-gain mode, the oscillator uses a simple inverter-style amplifier. The gain is set to achieve rail-to-rail oscillation amplitudes. This mode provides low pass frequency filtering as well as hysteresis for voltage filtering and converts the output to logic levels.

32.9.2.4 High-Frequency, Low-Power Mode

In high-frequency, low-power mode, the oscillator uses a gain control loop to minimize power consumption. As the oscillation amplitude increases, the amplifier current is reduced. This continues until a desired amplitude is achieved at steady-state. In this mode, no external resistor should be used.

The oscillator input buffer in this mode is differential. It provides low pass frequency filtering as well as hysteresis for voltage filtering and converts the output to logic levels.

32.9.3 Counter

The oscillator output clock (OSC_CLK_OUT) is gated off until the counter has detected 4096 cycles of its input clock (XTL_CLK). After 4096 cycles are completed, the counter passes XTL_CLK onto OSC_CLK_OUT. This counting timeout is used to guarantee output clock stability.

32.9.4 Reference clock pin requirements

The OSC module requires use of both the EXTAL and XTAL pins to generate an output clock in Oscillator mode, but requires only the EXTAL pin in External clock mode. The EXTAL and XTAL pins are available for I/O. For the implementation of these pins on this device, refer to the Signal Multiplexing chapter.

32.10 Reset

There is no reset state associated with the OSC module. The counter logic is reset when the OSC is not configured to generate clocks.

There are no sources of reset requests for the OSC module.

32.11 Low power modes operation

When the MCU enters Stop modes, the OSC is functional depending on CR[ERCLKEN] and CR[EREFSETN] bit settings. If both these bits are set, the OSC is in operation.

After waking up from Very Low Leakage Stop (VLLSx) modes, all OSC register bits are reset and initialization is required through software.

32.12 Interrupts

The OSC module does not generate any interrupts.

Chapter 33

Flash Memory Controller (FMC)

33.1 Chip-specific FMC information

33.1.1 Number of masters

The Flash Memory Controller supports up to eight crossbar switch masters. However, this device has a different number of crossbar switch masters. See [Chip-specific AXBS information](#) for details on the master port assignments.

33.1.2 PFB1CR register

The FMC connects to one bank (called bank 0) of 256-bit flash. PFB0CR register controls this bank. The PFB1CR register is not available on this device.

33.2 Introduction

The Flash Memory Controller (FMC) is a memory acceleration unit that provides an interface between the device and the nonvolatile memory.

33.2.1 Overview

The Flash Memory Controller manages the interface between the device and the flash memory. The FMC receives status information detailing the configuration of the memory and uses this information to ensure a proper interface. The following table shows the supported read/write operations.

Modes of operation

Flash memory type	Read	Write
Program flash memory	8-bit, 16-bit, 32-bit, and 64-bit reads	— ¹

1. A write operation to program flash memory results in a bus error.

In addition, for bank 0, the FMC provides a mechanism for accelerating the interface between the device and the flash memory. A 256-bit speculation buffer can prefetch the next 256-bit flash memory location.

33.2.2 Features

The FMC's features include:

- Interface between the device and the flash memory:
 - 8-bit, 16-bit, 32-bit, and 64-bit read operations to program flash memory.
 - For bank 0: Read accesses to consecutive 64-bit spaces in memory return the 2nd, 3rd, and 4th read data with no wait states. The memory returns 256 bits via the 64-bit bus access.
 - Crossbar master access protection for setting no access, read-only access, write-only access, or read/write access for each crossbar master.
- For bank 0: Acceleration of data transfer from program flash memory to the device:
 - 256-bit prefetch speculation buffer with controls for instruction/data access per master
 - Invalidation control for the speculation buffer

33.3 Modes of operation

The FMC only operates when a bus master accesses the flash memory.

For any device power mode where the flash memory cannot be accessed, the FMC is disabled.

33.4 External signal description

The FMC has no external signals.

33.5 Memory map and register descriptions

The programming model consists of the FMC control registers.

NOTE

Program the registers only while the flash controller is idle (for example, execute from RAM). Changing configuration settings while a flash access is in progress can lead to non-deterministic behavior. Whenever flash memory is modified, the Flash speculation buffer should be cleared (see PFB0CR[S_INV], Invalidate Prefetch Speculation Buffer bit).

Table 33-1. FMC register access

Registers	Read access		Write access	
	Mode	Length	Mode	Length
Control registers: PFAPR, PFB0CR	Supervisor (privileged) mode or user mode	32 bits	Supervisor (privileged) mode only	32 bits

NOTE

Accesses to unimplemented registers within the FMC's 4 KB address space return a bus error.

FMC memory map

Address offset (hex)	Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
0	4001_F000	Flash Access Protection Register (FMC_PFAPR)	32	R/W	00F8_003Fh	33.5.1/718
4	4001_F004	Flash Bank 0 Control Register (FMC_PFB0CR)	32	R/W	3006_0006h	33.5.2/720
8	4001_F008	FMC_Reserved	32	R/W	3006_0000h	33.5.3/721

33.5.1 Flash Access Protection Register (FMC_PFAPR)

Address: 4001_F000h base + 0h offset = 4001_F000h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Reserved								Reserved				M3PFD	M2PFD	M1PFD	M0PFD
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved								M3AP[1:0]		M2AP[1:0]		M1AP[1:0]		M0AP[1:0]	
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1

FMC_PFAPR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 Reserved	This field is reserved.
23–20 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only bitfield is reserved. Do not write to this bitfield or indeterminate results will occur.
19 M3PFD	Master 3 Prefetch Disable These bits control whether prefetching is enabled, based on the logical number of the requesting crossbar switch master. This field is further qualified by the PFBnCR[BxDPE,BxIPE] bits. 0 Prefetching for this master is enabled. 1 Prefetching for this master is disabled.
18 M2PFD	Master 2 Prefetch Disable These bits control whether prefetching is enabled, based on the logical number of the requesting crossbar switch master. This field is further qualified by the PFBnCR[BxDPE,BxIPE] bits. 0 Prefetching for this master is enabled. 1 Prefetching for this master is disabled.
17 M1PFD	Master 1 Prefetch Disable These bits control whether prefetching is enabled, based on the logical number of the requesting crossbar switch master. This field is further qualified by the PFBnCR[BxDPE,BxIPE] bits. 0 Prefetching for this master is enabled. 1 Prefetching for this master is disabled.
16 M0PFD	Master 0 Prefetch Disable These bits control whether prefetching is enabled, based on the logical number of the requesting crossbar switch master. This field is further qualified by the PFBnCR[BxDPE,BxIPE] bits.

Table continues on the next page...

FMC_PFAPR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Prefetching for this master is enabled. 1 Prefetching for this master is disabled.
15–10 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only bitfield is reserved and is reset to zero. Do not write to this bitfield or indeterminate results will occur.
9–8 Reserved	This field is reserved.
7–6 M3AP[1:0]	Master 3 Access Protection This field controls whether read and write access to the flash is allowed, based on the logical master number of the requesting crossbar switch master. 00 No access may be performed by this master 01 Only read accesses may be performed by this master 10 Only write accesses may be performed by this master 11 Both read and write accesses may be performed by this master
5–4 M2AP[1:0]	Master 2 Access Protection This field controls whether read and write access to the flash is allowed, based on the logical master number of the requesting crossbar switch master. 00 No access may be performed by this master 01 Only read accesses may be performed by this master 10 Only write accesses may be performed by this master 11 Both read and write accesses may be performed by this master
3–2 M1AP[1:0]	Master 1 Access Protection This field controls whether read and write access to the flash is allowed, based on the logical master number of the requesting crossbar switch master. 00 No access may be performed by this master 01 Only read accesses may be performed by this master 10 Only write accesses may be performed by this master 11 Both read and write accesses may be performed by this master
M0AP[1:0]	Master 0 Access Protection This field controls whether read and write access to the flash is allowed, based on the logical master number of the requesting crossbar switch master. 00 No access may be performed by this master 01 Only read accesses may be performed by this master 10 Only write accesses may be performed by this master 11 Both read and write accesses may be performed by this master

33.5.2 Flash Bank 0 Control Register (FMC_PFB0CR)

Address: 4001_F000h base + 4h offset = 4001_F004h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	B0RWSC[3:0]				0				0				0	B0MW[1:0]		0
W													S_INV			
Reset	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0								0		0		0	B0DPE	B0IPE	0
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0

FMC_PFB0CR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–28 B0RWSC[3:0]	<p>Bank 0 Read Wait State Control</p> <p>This read-only field defines the number of wait states required to access the bank 0 flash memory. The relationship between the read access time of the flash array (expressed in system clock cycles) and RWSC is defined as:</p> <p>Access time of flash array [system clocks] = RWSC + 1</p> <p>The FMC automatically calculates this value based on the ratio of the system clock speed to the flash clock speed. For example, when this ratio is 4:1, the field's value is 3h.</p>
27–24 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
23–20 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
19 S_INV	<p>Invalidate Prefetch Speculation Buffer</p> <p>S_INV bit determines if the FMC's prefetch speculation buffer is to be invalidated (cleared). When S_INV bit is written, the prefetch speculation buffer is immediately cleared. Whenever flash memory is modified, the prefetch speculation buffer should be cleared. S_INV bit always reads as zero.</p> <p>0 Speculation buffer is not affected. 1 Invalidate (clear) the speculation buffer.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

FMC_PFB0CR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
18–17 BOMW[1:0]	Bank 0 Memory Width This read-only field defines the width of the bank 0 memory. 00 32 bits 01 64 bits 10 128 bits 11 256 bits
16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
15–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7–5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 B0DPE	Bank 0 Data Prefetch Enable This bit controls whether prefetches (or speculative accesses) are initiated in response to data references. 0 Do not prefetch in response to data references. 1 Enable prefetches in response to data references.
1 B0IPE	Bank 0 Instruction Prefetch Enable This bit controls whether prefetches (or speculative accesses) are initiated in response to instruction fetches. 0 Do not prefetch in response to instruction fetches. 1 Enable prefetches in response to instruction fetches.
0 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

33.5.3 FMC_Reserved

This register is reserved.

Address: 4001_F000h base + 8h offset = 4001_F008h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
R																	0																
W																																	
Reset	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

FMC_Reserved field descriptions

Field	Description
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

33.6 Functional description

The FMC is a flash acceleration unit with flexible buffers for user configuration. Besides managing the interface between the device and the flash memory, the FMC can be used to restrict access from crossbar switch masters. Whenever a hit occurs for the prefetch speculation buffer, the requested data is transferred within a single system clock.

33.6.1 Default configuration

Upon system reset, the FMC is configured to enable speculation on transfers from the flash memory:

- The Cortex-M7, Debugger, and DMA have read access to the flash.
- Prefetch support for data and instructions is enabled for these masters.

33.6.2 Configuration options

Though the default configuration provides a high degree of flash acceleration, advanced users may desire to customize the FMC buffer configurations to maximize throughput for their use cases. When reconfiguring the FMC for custom use cases, do not program the FMC's control registers while the flash memory is being accessed. Instead, change the control registers with a routine executing from RAM in supervisor mode.

The FMC's buffering controls allow the tuning of resources to suit particular applications' needs. The FMC Flash Bank 0 Control Register controls enable prefetching per access type (instruction fetch or data reference).

As an application example: if both instruction fetches and data references are accessing flash memory, then speculation can be enabled or disabled for either type of access.

33.6.3 Speculative reads

The FMC has a single buffer that reads ahead to the next word in the flash memory if there is an idle cycle. Speculative prefetching is programmable for each bank for instruction and/or data accesses using the B0DPE and B0IPE fields of PFB0CR. Because many code accesses are sequential, using the speculative prefetch buffer improves performance in most cases.

When speculative reads are enabled, the FMC immediately requests the next sequential address after a read completes. By requesting the next word immediately, speculative reads can help to reduce or even eliminate wait states when accessing sequential code and/or data.

For example, consider the following scenario:

- Assume a system with a 4:1 core-to-flash clock ratio and with speculative reads enabled.
- The core requests 8 sequential double-words in back-to-back requests, meaning there are no core cycle delays except for stalls waiting for flash memory data to be returned.
- None of the data is already stored in the speculation buffer.

In this scenario, the sequence of events for accessing the 8 double-words is:

1. The 1st double-word read requires 4 - 7 core clocks. See [Wait states](#) for more information.
2. Due to the 256-bit data bus of the flash memory, the 2nd double-word read takes only 1 core clock, because the data is already available inside the FMC. For the same reason, the 3rd and 4th double-word reads each take only 1 core clock.
3. Accessing the 5th double-word requires 1 core clock cycle. The flash memory read itself takes 4 clocks, but the access starts immediately after the 1st read. As a result, 3 clocks for this access overlap with the 2nd, 3rd, and 4th double-word reads from the core.
4. Reading the 6th, 7th, and 8th double-words takes only 1 clock each because the data is already available inside the FMC.

33.7 Initialization and application information

- The FMC does not require user initialization.
- Flash acceleration features are enabled by default for masters enabled at reset.
- The FMC has no visibility into flash memory erase and program cycles, because the Flash Memory module manages them directly.



Chapter 34

Flash Memory Module (FTFE)

34.1 Introduction

The FTFE module includes the following accessible memory regions:

- Program flash memory for vector space and code store
- Programming acceleration RAM to speed flash programming

Flash memory is ideal for single-supply applications, permitting in-the-field erase and reprogramming operations without the need for any external high voltage power sources.

The FTFE module includes a memory controller that executes commands to modify flash memory contents. An erased bit reads '1' and a programmed bit reads '0'. The programming operation is unidirectional; it can only move bits from the '1' state (erased) to the '0' state (programmed). Only the erase operation restores bits from '0' to '1'; bits cannot be programmed from a '0' to a '1'.

CAUTION

A flash memory location must be in the erased state before being programmed. Cumulative programming of bits (back-to-back program operations without an intervening erase) within a flash memory location is not allowed. Re-programming of existing 0s to 0 is not allowed as this overstresses the device.

The standard shipping condition for flash memory is erased with security disabled. Data loss over time may occur due to degradation of the erased ('1') states and/or programmed ('0') states. Therefore, it is recommended that each flash block or sector be re-erased immediately prior to factory programming to ensure that the full data retention capability is achieved.

34.1.1 Features

The FTFE module includes the following features.

NOTE

See the device's Chip Configuration details for the exact amount of flash memory available on your device.

34.1.1.1 Program Flash Memory Features

- Sector size of 8 Kbytes
- Program flash protection scheme prevents accidental program or erase of stored data
- Automated, built-in, program and erase algorithms with verify
- Section programming for faster bulk programming times

34.1.1.2 Programming Acceleration RAM features

- RAM to support section programming

34.1.1.3 Other FTFE module features

- Internal high-voltage supply generator for flash memory program and erase operations
- Optional interrupt generation upon flash command completion
- Supports MCU security mechanisms which prevent unauthorized access to the flash memory contents

34.1.2 Block diagram

The block diagram of the FTFE module is shown in the following figure.

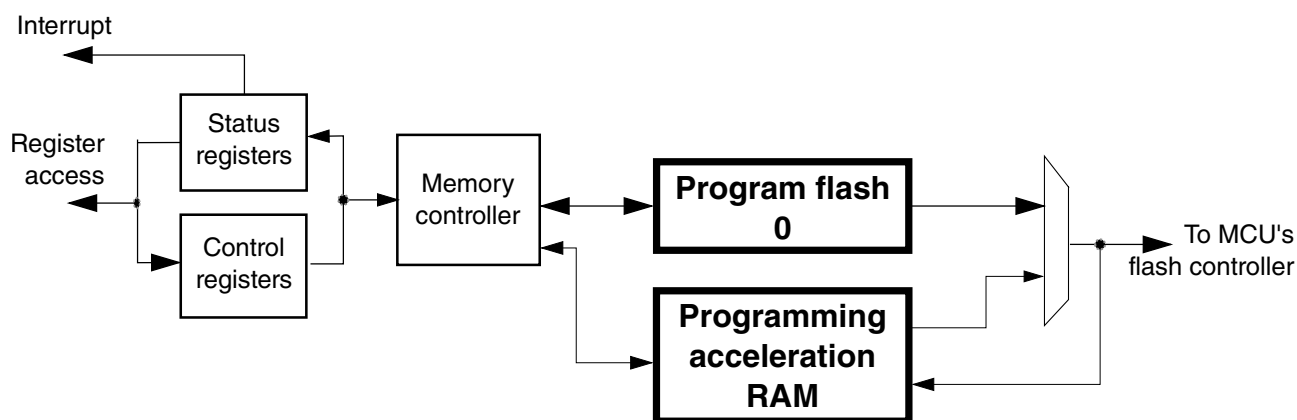


Figure 34-1. FTFE block diagram

34.1.3 Glossary

Command write sequence — A series of MCU writes to the Flash FCCOB register group that initiates and controls the execution of Flash algorithms that are built into the FTFE module.

Endurance — The number of times that a flash memory location can be erased and reprogrammed.

FCCOB (Flash Common Command Object) — A group of flash registers that are used to pass command, address, data, and any associated parameters to the memory controller in the FTFE module.

Flash block — A macro within the FTFE module which provides the nonvolatile memory storage.

FTFE Module — All flash blocks plus a flash management unit providing high-level control and an interface to MCU buses.

IFR — Nonvolatile information register found in each flash block, separate from the main memory array.

NVM — Nonvolatile memory. A memory technology that maintains stored data during power-off. The flash array is an NVM using NOR-type flash memory technology.

NVM Normal Mode — An NVM mode that provides basic user access to FTFE resources. The CPU or other bus masters initiate flash program and erase operations (or other flash commands) using writes to the FCCOB register group in the FTFE module.

NVM Special Mode — An NVM mode enabling external, off-chip access to the memory resources in the FTFE module. A reduced flash command set is available when the MCU is secured. See the Chip Configuration details for information on when this mode is used.

Quad-Phrase — 256 bits of data with an aligned quad-phrase having byte-address[4:0] = 00000.

Phrase — 64 bits of data with an aligned phrase having byte-address[2:0] = 000.

Longword — 32 bits of data with an aligned longword having byte-address[1:0] = 00.

Word — 16 bits of data with an aligned word having byte-address[0] = 0.

Program flash — The program flash memory provides nonvolatile storage for vectors and code store.

Program flash sector — The smallest portion of the program flash memory (consecutive addresses) that can be erased.

Retention — The length of time that data can be kept in the NVM without experiencing errors upon readout. Since erased (1) states are subject to degradation just like programmed (0) states, the data retention limit may be reached from the last erase operation (not from the programming time).

Section program buffer — Lower quarter of the programming acceleration RAM allocated for storing large amounts of data for programming via the Program Section command.

Secure — An MCU state conveyed to the FTFE module as described in the Chip Configuration details for this device. In the secure state, reading and changing NVM contents is restricted.

34.2 External signal description

The FTFE module contains no signals that connect off-chip.

34.3 Memory map and registers

This section describes the memory map and registers for the FTFE module. Data read from unimplemented memory space in the FTFE module is undefined. Writes to unimplemented or reserved memory space (registers) in the FTFE module are ignored.

34.3.1 Flash configuration field description

The program flash memory contains a 16-byte flash configuration field that stores default protection settings (loaded on reset) and security information that allows the MCU to restrict access to the FTFE module.

Flash Configuration Field Offset Address	Size (Bytes)	Field Description
0x0_0400 - 0x0_0407	8	Backdoor Comparison Key. Refer to Verify Backdoor Access Key command and Unsecuring the MCU Using Backdoor Key Access .
0x0_0408 - 0x0_040B	4	Program flash protection bytes. Refer to the description of the Program Flash Protection Registers (FPROT0-3).
0x0_040F	1	Reserved
0x0_040E	1	Reserved
0x0_040D	1	Flash nonvolatile option byte. Refer to the description of the Flash Option Register (FOPT).
0x0_040C	1	Flash security byte. Refer to the description of the Flash Security Register (FSEC).

34.3.2 Program flash 0 IFR map

The program flash 0 IFR is a 1 Kbyte nonvolatile information memory that can be read freely, but the user has no erase and limited program capabilities (see the Read Once, Program Once, and Read Resource commands in [Read Once Command](#), [Program Once command](#) and [Read Resource Command](#)). The contents of the program flash 0 IFR are summarized in the following table and further described in the subsequent paragraphs.

The program flash 0 IFR is located within the program flash 0 memory block.

Address Range	Size (Bytes)	Field Description
0x000 – 0x3BF	960	Reserved
0x3C0 – 0x3FF	64	Program Once Field

34.3.2.1 Program Once field

The Program Once field in the program flash 0 IFR provides 64 bytes of user data storage separate from the program flash 0 main array. The user can program the Program Once field one time only as there is no program flash IFR erase mechanism available to the user. The Program Once field can be read any number of times. This section of the program flash 0 IFR is accessed in 8 byte records using the Read Once and Program Once commands (see [Read Once Command](#) and [Program Once command](#)).

34.3.3 Register descriptions

The FTFE module contains a set of memory-mapped control and status registers.

NOTE

While a command is running (FSTAT[CCIF]=0), register writes are not accepted to any register except FCNFG and FSTAT. The no-write rule is relaxed during the start-up reset sequence, prior to the initial rise of CCIF. During this initialization period the user may write any register. All register writes are also disabled (except for registers FCNFG and FSTAT) whenever an erase suspend request is active (FCNFG[ERSSUSP]=1).

FTFE memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4002_0000	Flash Status Register (FTFE_FSTAT)	8	R/W	00h	34.3.3.1/ 731
4002_0001	Flash Configuration Register (FTFE_FCNFG)	8	R/W	00h	34.3.3.2/ 733
4002_0002	Flash Security Register (FTFE_FSEC)	8	R	Undefined	34.3.3.3/ 734
4002_0003	Flash Option Register (FTFE_FOPT)	8	R	Undefined	34.3.3.4/ 736
4002_0004	Flash Common Command Object Registers (FTFE_FCCOB3)	8	R/W	00h	34.3.3.5/ 736

Table continues on the next page...

FTFE memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/page
4002_0005	Flash Common Command Object Registers (FTFE_FCCOB2)	8	R/W	00h	34.3.3.5/736
4002_0006	Flash Common Command Object Registers (FTFE_FCCOB1)	8	R/W	00h	34.3.3.5/736
4002_0007	Flash Common Command Object Registers (FTFE_FCCOB0)	8	R/W	00h	34.3.3.5/736
4002_0008	Flash Common Command Object Registers (FTFE_FCCOB7)	8	R/W	00h	34.3.3.5/736
4002_0009	Flash Common Command Object Registers (FTFE_FCCOB6)	8	R/W	00h	34.3.3.5/736
4002_000A	Flash Common Command Object Registers (FTFE_FCCOB5)	8	R/W	00h	34.3.3.5/736
4002_000B	Flash Common Command Object Registers (FTFE_FCCOB4)	8	R/W	00h	34.3.3.5/736
4002_000C	Flash Common Command Object Registers (FTFE_FCCOB3)	8	R/W	00h	34.3.3.5/736
4002_000D	Flash Common Command Object Registers (FTFE_FCCOB2)	8	R/W	00h	34.3.3.5/736
4002_000E	Flash Common Command Object Registers (FTFE_FCCOB1)	8	R/W	00h	34.3.3.5/736
4002_000F	Flash Common Command Object Registers (FTFE_FCCOB0)	8	R/W	00h	34.3.3.5/736
4002_0010	Program Flash Protection Registers (FTFE_FPROT3)	8	R/W	Undefined	34.3.3.6/738
4002_0011	Program Flash Protection Registers (FTFE_FPROT2)	8	R/W	Undefined	34.3.3.6/738
4002_0012	Program Flash Protection Registers (FTFE_FPROT1)	8	R/W	Undefined	34.3.3.6/738
4002_0013	Program Flash Protection Registers (FTFE_FPROT0)	8	R/W	Undefined	34.3.3.6/738

34.3.3.1 Flash Status Register (FTFE_FSTAT)

The FSTAT register reports the operational status of the FTFE module.

The CCIF, RDCOLERR, ACCERR, and FPVIOL bits are readable and writable. The MGSTAT0 bit is read only. The unassigned bits read 0 and are not writable.

NOTE

When set, the Access Error (ACCERR) and Flash Protection Violation (FPVIOL) bits in this register prevent the launch of any more commands until the flag is cleared (by writing a one to it).

memory map and registers

Address: 4002_0000h base + 0h offset = 4002_0000h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	CCIF	RDCOLERR	ACCERR	FPVIOL	0			MGSTAT0
Write	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c				
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FTFE_FSTAT field descriptions

Field	Description
7 CCIF	<p>Command Complete Interrupt Flag</p> <p>The CCIF flag indicates that a FTFE command has completed. The CCIF flag is cleared by writing a 1 to CCIF to launch a command, and CCIF stays low until command completion or command violation.</p> <p>The CCIF bit is reset to 0 but is set to 1 by the memory controller at the end of the reset initialization sequence. Depending on how quickly the read occurs after reset release, the user may or may not see the 0 hardware reset value.</p> <p>0 FTFE command in progress 1 FTFE command has completed</p>
6 RDCOLERR	<p>FTFE Read Collision Error Flag</p> <p>The RDCOLERR error bit indicates that the MCU attempted a read from an FTFE resource that was being manipulated by an FTFE command (CCIF=0). Any simultaneous access is detected as a collision error by the block arbitration logic. The read data in this case cannot be guaranteed. The RDCOLERR bit is cleared by writing a 1 to it. Writing a 0 to RDCOLERR has no effect.</p> <p>0 No collision error detected 1 Collision error detected</p>
5 ACCERR	<p>Flash Access Error Flag</p> <p>The ACCERR error bit indicates an illegal access has occurred to an FTFE resource caused by a violation of the command write sequence or issuing an illegal FTFE command. While ACCERR is set, the CCIF flag cannot be cleared to launch a command. The ACCERR bit is cleared by writing a 1 to ACCERR while CCIF is set. Writing a 0 to the ACCERR bit has no effect.</p> <p>0 No access error detected 1 Access error detected</p>
4 FPVIOL	<p>Flash Protection Violation Flag</p> <p>The FPVIOL error bit indicates an attempt was made to program or erase an address in a protected area of program flash memory during a command write sequence. While FPVIOL is set, the CCIF flag cannot be cleared to launch a command. The FPVIOL bit is cleared by writing a 1 to FPVIOL while CCIF is set. Writing a 0 to the FPVIOL bit has no effect.</p> <p>0 No protection violation detected 1 Protection violation detected</p>
3–1 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
0 MGSTAT0	<p>Memory Controller Command Completion Status Flag</p> <p>The MGSTAT0 status flag is set if an error is detected during execution of an FTFE command or during the flash reset sequence. As a status flag, this bit cannot (and need not) be cleared by the user like the other error flags in this register.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

FTFE_FSTAT field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	The value of the MGSTAT0 bit for "command-N" is valid only at the end of the "command-N" execution when CCIF=1 and before the next command has been launched. At some point during the execution of "command-N+1," the previous result is discarded and any previous error is cleared.

34.3.3.2 Flash Configuration Register (FTFE_FCNFG)

This register provides information on the current functional state of the FTFE module.

The erase control bits (ERSAREQ and ERSSUSP) have write restrictions. PFLSH, RAMRDY, and EEERDY are read-only status bits. The reset values for the PFLSH, RAMRDY, and EEERDY bits are determined during the reset sequence.

Address: 4002_0000h base + 1h offset = 4002_0001h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	CCIE	RDCOLLIE	ERSAREQ	ERSSUSP	0	PFLSH	RAMRDY	EEERDY
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FTFE_FCNFG field descriptions

Field	Description
7 CCIE	Command Complete Interrupt Enable The CCIE bit controls interrupt generation when an FTFE command completes. 0 Command complete interrupt disabled 1 Command complete interrupt enabled. An interrupt request is generated whenever the FSTAT[CCIF] flag is set.
6 RDCOLLIE	Read Collision Error Interrupt Enable The RDCOLLIE bit controls interrupt generation when an FTFE read collision error occurs. 0 Read collision error interrupt disabled 1 Read collision error interrupt enabled. An interrupt request is generated whenever an FTFE read collision error is detected (see the description of FSTAT[RDCOLERR]).
5 ERSAREQ	Erase All Request This bit issues a request to the memory controller to execute the Erase All Blocks command and release security. ERSAREQ is not directly writable but is under indirect user control. Refer to the device's Chip Configuration details on how to request this command. The ERSAREQ bit sets when an erase all request is triggered external to the FTFE and CCIF is set (no command is currently being executed). ERSAREQ is cleared by the FTFE when the operation completes. 0 No request or request complete 1 Request to: 1. run the Erase All Blocks command, 2. verify the erased state,

Table continues on the next page...

FTFE_FCNFG field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	3. program the security byte in the Flash Configuration Field to the unsecure state, and 4. release MCU security by setting the FSEC[SEC] field to the unsecure state
4 ERSSUSP	Erase Suspend The ERSSUSP bit allows the user to suspend (interrupt) the Erase Flash Sector command while it is executing. 0 No suspend requested 1 Suspend the current Erase Flash Sector command execution
3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 PFLSH	FTFE configuration 0 Reserved 1 FTFE configuration supports one program flash block
1 RAMRDY	RAM Ready This flag indicates the current status of the programming acceleration RAM. This bit should always be set. 0 Programming acceleration RAM is not available 1 Programming acceleration RAM is available
0 EEERDY	This bit is reserved and always has the value 0. 0 See RAMRDY for availability of programming acceleration RAM 1 Reserved

34.3.3.3 Flash Security Register (FTFE_FSEC)

This read-only register holds all bits associated with the security of the MCU and FTFE module.

During the reset sequence, the register is loaded with the contents of the flash security byte in the Flash Configuration Field located in program flash memory. The Flash basis for the values is signified by X in the reset value.

Address: 4002_0000h base + 2h offset = 4002_0002h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	KEYEN		MEEN		FSLACC		SEC	
Write								
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:

- x = Undefined at reset.

FTFE_FSEC field descriptions

Field	Description
7–6 KEYEN	<p>Backdoor Key Security Enable</p> <p>These bits enable and disable backdoor key access to the FTFE module.</p> <p>00 Backdoor key access disabled 01 Backdoor key access disabled (preferred KEYEN state to disable backdoor key access) 10 Backdoor key access enabled 11 Backdoor key access disabled</p>
5–4 MEEN	<p>Mass Erase Enable Bits</p> <p>Enables and disables mass erase capability of the FTFE module. The state of the MEEN bits is only relevant when the SEC bits are set to secure. When the SEC field is set to unsecure, the MEEN setting does not matter.</p> <p>00 Mass erase is enabled 01 Mass erase is enabled 10 Mass erase is disabled 11 Mass erase is enabled</p>
3–2 FSLACC	<p>Freescall Failure Analysis Access Code</p> <p>These bits enable or disable access to the flash memory contents during returned part failure analysis at Freescale. When SEC is secure and FSLACC is denied, access to the program flash contents is denied and any failure analysis performed by Freescale factory test must begin with a full erase to unsecure the part.</p> <p>When access is granted (SEC is unsecure, or SEC is secure and FSLACC is granted), Freescale factory testing has visibility of the current flash contents. The state of the FSLACC bits is only relevant when the SEC bits are set to secure. When the SEC field is set to unsecure, the FSLACC setting does not matter.</p> <p>00 Freescale factory access granted 01 Freescale factory access denied 10 Freescale factory access denied 11 Freescale factory access granted</p>
SEC	<p>Flash Security</p> <p>These bits define the security state of the MCU. In the secure state, the MCU limits access to FTFE module resources. The limitations are defined per device and are detailed in the Chip Configuration details. If the FTFE module is unsecured using backdoor key access, the SEC bits are forced to 10b.</p> <p>00 MCU security status is secure 01 MCU security status is secure 10 MCU security status is unsecure (The standard shipping condition of the FTFE is unsecure.) 11 MCU security status is secure</p>

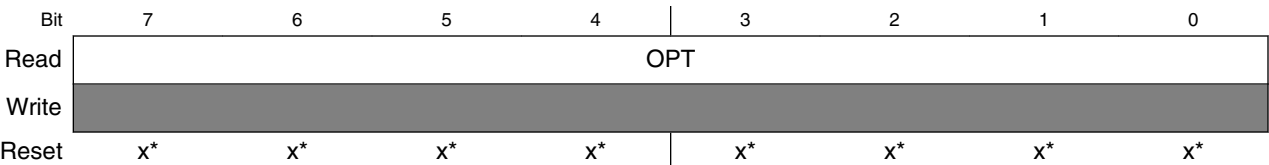
34.3.3.4 Flash Option Register (FTFE_FOPT)

The flash option register allows the MCU to customize its operations by examining the state of these read-only bits, which are loaded from NVM at reset. The function of the bits is defined in the device's Chip Configuration details.

All bits in the register are read-only.

During the reset sequence, the register is loaded from the flash nonvolatile option byte in the Flash Configuration Field located in program flash memory. The flash basis for the values is signified by X in the reset value.

Address: 4002_0000h base + 3h offset = 4002_0003h



- * Notes:
- x = Undefined at reset.

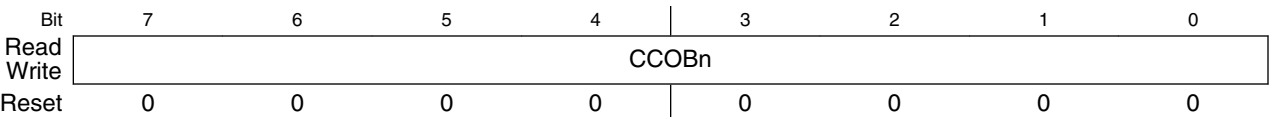
FTFE_FOPT field descriptions

Field	Description
OPT	Nonvolatile Option These bits are loaded from flash to this register at reset. Refer to the device's Chip Configuration details for the definition and use of these bits.

34.3.3.5 Flash Common Command Object Registers (FTFE_FCCOBN)

The FCCOB register group provides 12 bytes for command codes and parameters. The individual bytes within the set append a 0-B hex identifier to the FCCOB register name: FCCOB0, FCCOB1, ..., FCCOBB.

Address: 4002_0000h base + 4h offset + (1d × i), where i=0d to 11d



FTFE_FCCOBn field descriptions

Field	Description																										
CCOBn	<p>The FCCOB register provides a command code and relevant parameters to the memory controller. The individual registers that compose the FCCOB data set can be written in any order, but you must provide all needed values, which vary from command to command. First, set up all required FCCOB fields and then initiate the command's execution by writing a 1 to the FSTAT[CCIF] bit. This clears the CCIF bit, which locks all FCCOB parameter fields and they cannot be changed by the user until the command completes (CCIF returns to 1). No command buffering or queueing is provided; the next command can be loaded only after the current command completes.</p> <p>Some commands return information to the FCCOB registers. Any values returned to FCCOB are available for reading after the FSTAT[CCIF] flag returns to 1 by the memory controller.</p> <p>The following table shows a generic FTFE command format. The first FCCOB register, FCCOB0, always contains the command code. This 8-bit value defines the command to be executed. The command code is followed by the parameters required for this specific FTFE command, typically an address and/or data values.</p> <p>NOTE: The command parameter table is written in terms of FCCOB Number (which is equivalent to the byte number). This number is a reference to the FCCOB register name and is not the register address.</p> <table> <tr> <th>FCCOB Number¹</th><th>Typical Command Parameter Contents [7:0]</th></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>FCMD (a code that defines the FTFE command)</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Flash address [23:16]</td></tr> <tr> <td>2</td><td>Flash address [15:8]</td></tr> <tr> <td>3</td><td>Flash address [7:0]</td></tr> <tr> <td>4</td><td>Data Byte 0</td></tr> <tr> <td>5</td><td>Data Byte 1</td></tr> <tr> <td>6</td><td>Data Byte 2</td></tr> <tr> <td>7</td><td>Data Byte 3</td></tr> <tr> <td>8</td><td>Data Byte 4</td></tr> <tr> <td>9</td><td>Data Byte 5</td></tr> <tr> <td>A</td><td>Data Byte 6</td></tr> <tr> <td>B</td><td>Data Byte 7</td></tr> </table> <p>FCCOB Endianness and Multi-Byte Access:</p> <p>The FCCOB register group uses a big endian addressing convention. For all command parameter fields larger than 1 byte, the most significant data resides in the lowest FCCOB register number. The FCCOB register group may be read and written as individual bytes, aligned words (2 bytes) or aligned longwords (4 bytes).</p>	FCCOB Number ¹	Typical Command Parameter Contents [7:0]	0	FCMD (a code that defines the FTFE command)	1	Flash address [23:16]	2	Flash address [15:8]	3	Flash address [7:0]	4	Data Byte 0	5	Data Byte 1	6	Data Byte 2	7	Data Byte 3	8	Data Byte 4	9	Data Byte 5	A	Data Byte 6	B	Data Byte 7
FCCOB Number ¹	Typical Command Parameter Contents [7:0]																										
0	FCMD (a code that defines the FTFE command)																										
1	Flash address [23:16]																										
2	Flash address [15:8]																										
3	Flash address [7:0]																										
4	Data Byte 0																										
5	Data Byte 1																										
6	Data Byte 2																										
7	Data Byte 3																										
8	Data Byte 4																										
9	Data Byte 5																										
A	Data Byte 6																										
B	Data Byte 7																										

1. Refers to FCCOB register name, not register address

34.3.3.6 Program Flash Protection Registers (FTFE_FPROT_n)

The FPROT registers define which program flash regions are protected from program and erase operations. Protected flash regions cannot have their content changed; that is, these regions cannot be programmed and cannot be erased by any FTFE command.

Unprotected regions can be changed by program and erase operations.

The four FPROT registers allow up to 32 protectable regions of equal memory size.

Program flash protection register	Program flash protection bits
FPROT0	PROT[31:24]
FPROT1	PROT[23:16]
FPROT2	PROT[15:8]
FPROT3	PROT[7:0]

During the reset sequence, the FPROT registers are loaded with the contents of the program flash protection bytes in the Flash Configuration Field as indicated in the following table.

Program flash protection register	Flash Configuration Field offset address
FPROT0	0x000B
FPROT1	0x000A
FPROT2	0x0009
FPROT3	0x0008

To change the program flash protection that is loaded during the reset sequence, unprotect the sector of program flash memory that contains the Flash Configuration Field. Then, reprogram the program flash protection byte.

Address: 4002_0000h base + 10h offset + (1d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	PROT							
Write								
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:

- x = Undefined at reset.

FTFE_FPROT_n field descriptions

Field	Description
PROT	Program Flash Region Protect

FTFE_FPROT n field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>Each program flash region can be protected from program and erase operations by setting the associated PROT bit to the protected state.</p> <p>In NVM Normal mode: The protection can only be increased, meaning that currently unprotected memory can be protected, but currently protected memory cannot be unprotected. Since unprotected regions are marked with a 1 and protected regions use a 0, only writes changing 1s to 0s are accepted. This 1-to-0 transition check is performed on a bit-by-bit basis. Those FPROT bits with 1-to-0 transitions are accepted while all bits with 0-to-1 transitions are ignored.</p> <p>In NVM Special mode: All bits of FPROT are writable without restriction. Unprotected areas can be protected and protected areas can be unprotected.</p> <p>Restriction: The user must never write to any FPROT register while a command is running (CCIF=0).</p> <p>Trying to alter data in any protected area in the program flash memory results in a protection violation error and sets the FSTAT[FPVIOL] bit. A full block erase of a program flash block is not possible if it contains any protected region.</p> <p>0 Program flash region is protected.</p> <p>1 Program flash region is not protected</p>

34.4 Functional Description

The following sections describe functional details of the FTFE module.

34.4.1 Flash Protection

Individual regions within the flash memory can be protected from program and erase operations. Protection is controlled by the following registers:

- FPROT —
 - For 2ⁿ program flash sizes, four registers protect up to 32 regions of the program flash memory as shown in the following figures

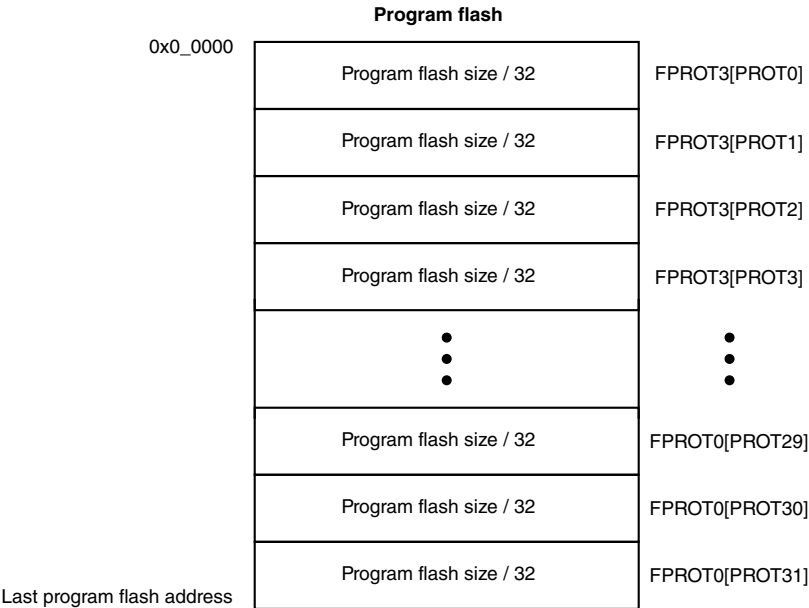


Figure 34-2. Program flash protection (2MB of program flash)

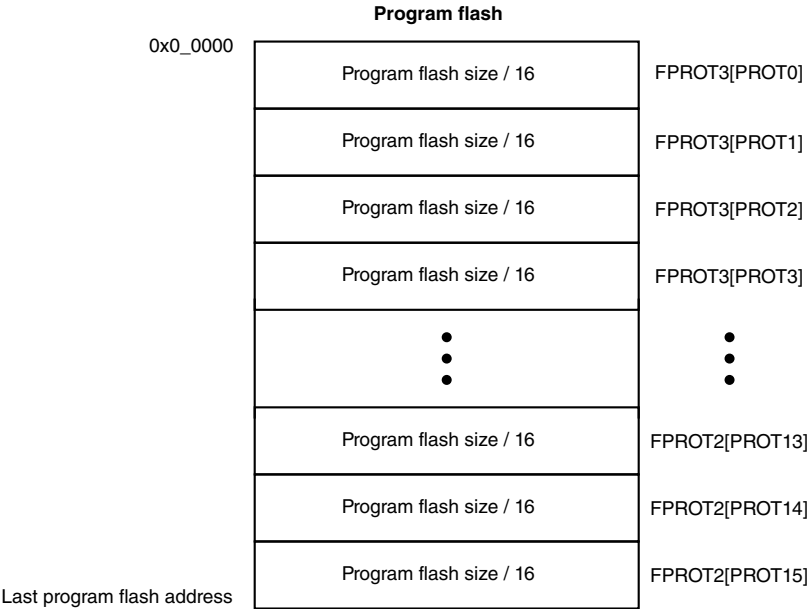


Figure 34-3. Program flash protection (512KB or 1MB of program flash)

- For the non-2ⁿ program flash sizes, three registers protect 24 regions of the program flash memory as shown in the following figure

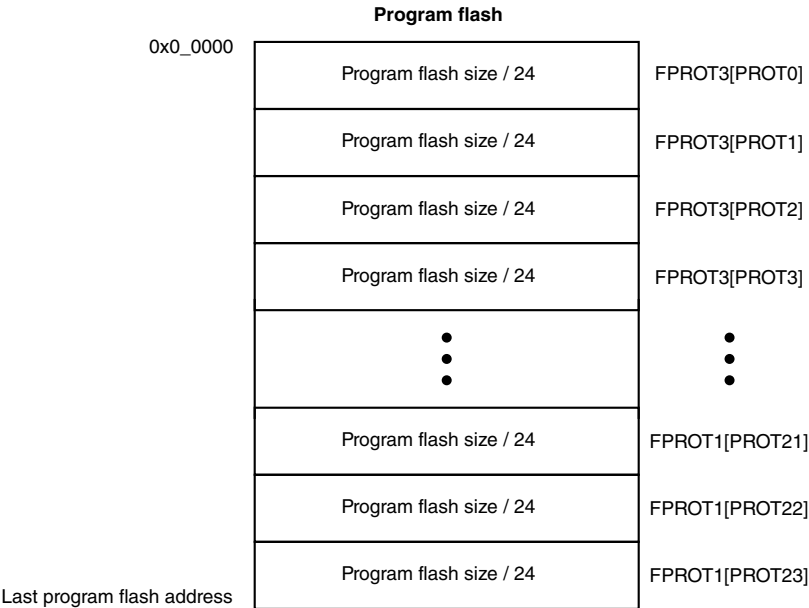


Figure 34-4. Program flash protection (768KB or 1.5MB of program flash)

34.4.2 Interrupts

The FTFE module can generate interrupt requests to the MCU upon the occurrence of various FTFE events. These interrupt events and their associated status and control bits are shown in the following table.

Table 34-1. FTFE Interrupt Sources

FTFE Event	Readable Status Bit	Interrupt Enable Bit
FTFE Command Complete	FSTAT[CCIF]	FCNFG[CCIE]
FTFE Read Collision Error	FSTAT[RDCOLERR]	FCNFG[RDCOLLIE]

Note

Vector addresses and their relative interrupt priority are determined at the MCU level.

34.4.3 Flash Operation in Low-Power Modes

34.4.3.1 Wait Mode

When the MCU enters wait mode, the FTFE module is not affected. The FTFE module can recover the MCU from wait via the command complete interrupt (see [Interrupts](#)).

34.4.3.2 Stop Mode

When the MCU requests stop mode, if an FTFE command is active (CCIF = 0) the command execution completes before the MCU is allowed to enter stop mode.

CAUTION

The MCU should never enter stop mode while any FTFE command is running (CCIF = 0).

NOTE

While the MCU is in very-low-power modes (VLPR, VLPW, VLPS), the FTFE module does not accept flash commands.

34.4.4 Functional modes of operation

The FTFE module has two operating modes: NVM Normal and NVM Special. The operating mode affects the command set availability (see [Table 34-2](#)). Refer to the Chip Configuration details of this device for how to activate each mode.

34.4.5 Flash memory reads and ignored writes

The FTFE module requires only the flash address to execute a flash memory read. MCU read access is available to all flash memory.

The MCU must not read from the flash memory while commands are running (as evidenced by CCIF=0) on that block. Read data cannot be guaranteed from a flash block while any command is processing within that block. The block arbitration logic detects any simultaneous access and reports this as a read collision error (see the FSTAT[RDCOLERR] bit).

34.4.6 Flash Program and Erase

All flash functions except read require the user to setup and launch an FTFE command through a series of peripheral bus writes. The user cannot initiate any further FTFE commands until notified that the current command has completed. The FTFE command structure and operation are detailed in [FTFE Command Operations](#).

34.4.7 FTFE Command Operations

FTFE command operations are typically used to modify flash memory contents. The next sections describe:

- The command write sequence used to set FTFE command parameters and launch execution
- A description of all FTFE commands available

34.4.7.1 Command Write Sequence

FTFE commands are specified using a command write sequence illustrated in [Figure 34-5](#). The FTFE module performs various checks on the command (FCCOB) content and continues with command execution if all requirements are fulfilled.

Before launching a command, the ACCERR and FPVIOL bits in the FSTAT register must be zero and the CCIF flag must read 1 to verify that any previous command has completed. If CCIF is zero, the previous command execution is still active, a new command write sequence cannot be started, and all writes to the FCCOB registers are ignored.

Attempts to launch an FTFE command in VLP mode will be ignored.

34.4.7.1.1 Load the FCCOB Registers

The user must load the FCCOB registers with all parameters required by the desired FTFE command. The individual registers that make up the FCCOB data set can be written in any order.

34.4.7.1.2 Launch the Command by Clearing CCIF

Once all relevant command parameters have been loaded, the user launches the command by clearing the FSTAT[CCIF] bit by writing a '1' to it. The CCIF flag remains zero until the FTFE command completes.

The FSTAT register contains a blocking mechanism, which prevents a new command from launching (can't clear CCIF) if the previous command resulted in an access error (FSTAT[ACCERR]=1) or a protection violation (FSTAT[FPVIOL]=1). In error scenarios, two writes to FSTAT are required to initiate the next command: the first write clears the error flags, the second write clears CCIF.

34.4.7.1.3 Command Execution and Error Reporting

The command processing has several steps:

1. The FTFE reads the command code and performs a series of parameter checks and protection checks, if applicable, which are unique to each command.

If the parameter check fails, the FSTAT[ACCERR] (access error) flag is set. ACCERR reports invalid instruction codes and out-of bounds addresses. Usually, access errors suggest that the command was not set-up with valid parameters in the FCCOB register group.

Program and erase commands also check the address to determine if the operation is requested to execute on protected areas. If the protection check fails, the FSTAT[FPVIOL] (protection error) flag is set.

Command processing never proceeds to execution when the parameter or protection step fails. Instead, command processing is terminated after setting the FSTAT[CCIF] bit.

2. If the parameter and protection checks pass, the command proceeds to execution. Run-time errors, such as failure to erase verify, may occur during the execution phase. Run-time errors are reported in the FSTAT[MGSTAT0] bit. A command may have access errors, protection errors, and run-time errors, but the run-time errors are not seen until all access and protection errors have been corrected.
3. Command execution results, if applicable, are reported back to the user via the FCCOB and FSTAT registers.
4. The FTFE sets the FSTAT[CCIF] bit signifying that the command has completed.

The flow for a generic command write sequence is illustrated in the following figure.

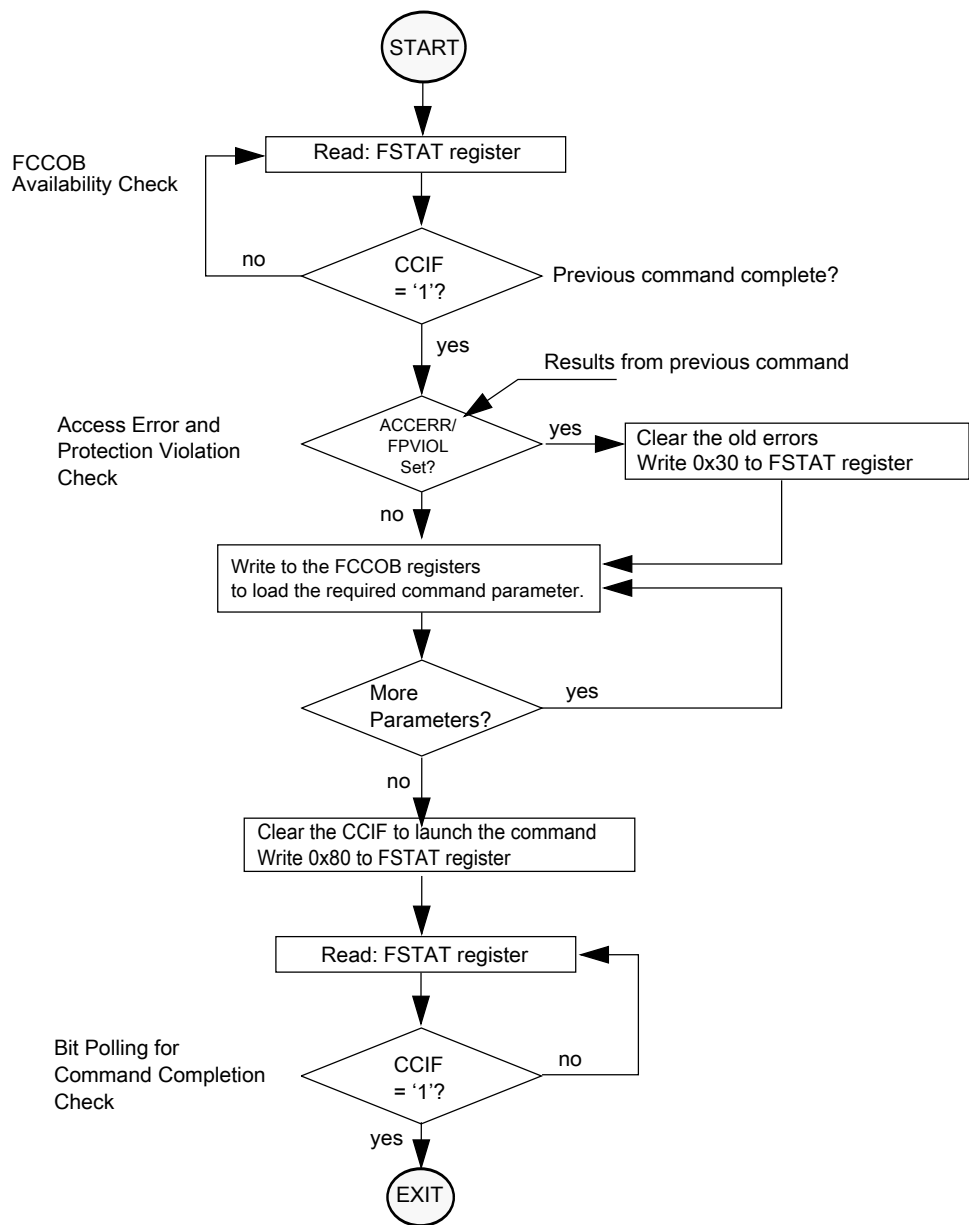


Figure 34-5. Generic Flash Command Write Sequence Flowchart

34.4.7.2 Flash commands

The following table summarizes the function of all flash commands. If any column is marked with an 'X', the flash command is relevant to that particular memory resource.

FCMD	Command	Program flash 0	Function
0x01	Read 1s Section	x	Verify that a given number of program flash locations from a starting address are erased.

Table continues on the next page...

Functional Description

FCMD	Command	Program flash 0	Function
0x02	Program Check	x	Tests previously-programmed phrases at margin read levels.
0x03	Read Resource	IFR,ID	Read 8 bytes from program flash IFR or version ID.
0x07	Program Phrase	x	Program 8 bytes in a program flash block.
0x09	Erase Flash Sector	x	Erase all bytes in a program flash sector.
0x0B	Program Section	x	Program data from the Section Program Buffer to a program flash block.
0x40	Read 1s All Blocks	x	Verify that all program flash blocks are erased then release MCU security.
0x41	Read Once	IFR	Read 8 bytes of a dedicated 64 byte field in the program flash 0 IFR.
0x43	Program Once	IFR	One-time program of 8 bytes of a dedicated 64-byte field in the program flash 0 IFR.
0x44	Erase All Blocks	x	Erase all program flash blocks. Then, verify-erase and release MCU security. NOTE: An erase is only possible when all memory locations are unprotected.
0x45	Verify Backdoor Access Key	x	Release MCU security after comparing a set of user-supplied security keys to those stored in the program flash.
0x49	Erase All Blocks Unsecure	x	Erase all program flash blocks. Then, verify-erase, program the security byte to the unsecure state, and release MCU security.

34.4.7.3 Flash commands by mode

The following table shows the flash commands that can be executed in each flash operating mode.

Table 34-2. Flash commands by mode

FCMD	Command	NVM Normal			NVM Special		
		Unsecure	Secure	MEEN=10	Unsecure	Secure	MEEN=10
0x01	Read 1s Section	x	x	x	x	—	—
0x02	Program Check	x	x	x	x	—	—
0x03	Read Resource	x	x	x	x	—	—
0x07	Program Phrase	x	x	x	x	—	—
0x09	Erase Flash Sector	x	x	x	x	—	—
0x0B	Program Section	x	x	x	x	—	—
0x40	Read 1s All Blocks	x	x	x	x	x	—
0x41	Read Once	x	x	x	x	—	—
0x43	Program Once	x	x	x	x	—	—
0x44	Erase All Blocks	x	x	x	x	x	—
0x45	Verify Backdoor Access Key	x	x	x	x	—	—
0x49	Erase All Blocks Unsecure	x	x	—	x	x	—

34.4.8 Margin Read Commands

The Read-1s commands (Read 1s All Blocks/Read 1s Section) and the Program Check command have a margin choice parameter that allows the user to apply non-standard read reference levels to the program flash array reads performed by these commands. Using the preset 'user' and 'factory' margin levels, these commands perform their associated read operations at tighter tolerances than a 'normal' read. These non-standard read levels are applied only during the command execution. All simple (uncommanded) flash array reads to the MCU always use the standard, un-margined, read reference level.

Only the 'normal' read level should be employed during normal flash usage. The non-standard, 'user' and 'factory' margin levels should be employed only in special cases. They can be used during special diagnostic routines to gain confidence that the device is not suffering from the end-of-life data loss customary of flash memory devices.

Erased ('1') and programmed ('0') bit states can degrade due to elapsed time and data cycling (number of times a bit is erased and re-programmed). The lifetime of the erased states is relative to the last erase operation. The lifetime of the programmed states is measured from the last program time.

The 'user' and 'factory' levels become, in effect, a minimum safety margin; i.e. if the reads pass at the tighter tolerances of the 'user' and 'factory' margins, then the 'normal' reads have at least this much safety margin before they experience data loss.

The 'user' margin is a small delta to the normal read reference level. 'User' margin levels can be employed to check that flash memory contents have adequate margin for normal level read operations. If unexpected read results are encountered when checking flash memory contents at the 'user' margin levels, loss of information might soon occur during 'normal' readout.

The 'factory' margin is a bigger deviation from the norm, a more stringent read criteria that should only be attempted immediately (or very soon) after completion of an erase or program command, early in the cycling life. 'Factory' margin levels can be used to check that flash memory contents have adequate margin for long-term data retention at the normal level setting. If unexpected results are encountered when checking flash memory contents at 'factory' margin levels, the flash memory contents should be erased and reprogrammed.

CAUTION

Factory margin levels must only be used during verify of the initial factory programming.

34.4.9 Flash command descriptions

This section describes all flash commands that can be launched by a command write sequence. The FTFE sets the FSTAT[ACCERR] bit and aborts the command execution if any of the following illegal conditions occur:

- There is an unrecognized command code in the FCCOB FCMD field.
- There is an error in a FCCOB field for the specific commands. Refer to the error handling table provided for each command.

Ensure that the ACCERR and FPVIOL bits in the FSTAT register are cleared prior to starting the command write sequence. As described in [Launch the Command by Clearing CCIF](#), a new command cannot be launched while these error flags are set.

Do not attempt to read a flash block while the FTFE is running a command (CCIF = 0) on that same block. The FTFE may return invalid data to the MCU with the collision error flag (FSTAT[RDCOLERR]) set.

CAUTION

Flash data must be in the erased state before being programmed. Cumulative programming of bits (adding more zeros) is not allowed.

34.4.9.1 Read 1s Section command

The Read 1s Section command checks if a section of program flash memory is erased to the specified read margin level. The Read 1s Section command defines the starting address and the number of quad-phrases to be verified.

Table 34-3. Read 1s Section Command FCCOB Requirements

FCCOB Number	FCCOB Contents [7:0]
0	0x01 (RD1SEC)
1	Flash address [23:16] of the first quad-phrase to be verified
2	Flash address [15:8] of the first quad-phrase to be verified
3	Flash address [7:0] ¹ of the first quad-phrase to be verified
4	Number of quad-phrases to be verified [15:8]
5	Number of quad-phrases to be verified [7:0]
6	Read-1 Margin Choice

1. Must be 256-bit aligned (Flash address [4:0] = 00000).

Upon clearing CCIF to launch the Read 1s Section command, the FTFE sets the read margin for 1s according to [Table 34-4](#) and then reads all locations within the specified section of flash memory.

If the FTFE fails to read all 1s (i.e. the flash section is not erased), the FSTAT(MGSTAT0) bit is set. The CCIF flag sets after the Read 1s Section operation completes.

Table 34-4. Margin Level Choices for Read 1s Section

Read Margin Choice	Margin Level Description
0x00	Use the 'normal' read level for 1s
0x01	Apply the 'User' margin to the normal read-1 level
0x02	Apply the 'Factory' margin to the normal read-1 level

Table 34-5. Read 1s Section Command Error Handling

Error Condition	Error Bit
Command not available in current mode/security	FSTAT[ACCERR]
An invalid margin code is supplied	FSTAT[ACCERR]
An invalid flash address is supplied	FSTAT[ACCERR]
Flash address is not 256-bit aligned	FSTAT[ACCERR]
The requested section crosses a flash block boundary	FSTAT[ACCERR]
The requested number of quad-phrases is zero	FSTAT[ACCERR]
Read-1s fails	FSTAT[MGSTAT0]

34.4.9.2 Program Check command

The Program Check command tests a previously programmed program flash longword to see if it reads correctly at the specified margin level.

Table 34-6. Program Check Command FCCOB Requirements

FCCOB Number	FCCOB Contents [7:0]
0	0x02 (PGMCHK)
1	Flash address [23:16]
2	Flash address [15:8]
3	Flash address [7:0] ¹
4	Margin Choice
8	Byte 0 expected data
9	Byte 1 expected data
A	Byte 2 expected data
B	Byte 3 expected data

1. Must be longword aligned (Flash address [1:0] = 00).

Upon clearing CCIF to launch the Program Check command, the FTFE sets the read margin for 1s based on the provided margin choice according to [Table 34-7](#). The Program Check operation then reads the specified longword, and compares the actual read data to the expected data provided by the FCCOB. If the comparison at margin-1 fails, the MGSTAT0 bit is set.

The FTFE will then set the read margin for 0s based on the provided margin choice. The Program Check operation will then read the specified longword and compare the actual read data to the expected data provided by the FCCOB. If the comparison at margin-0 fails, the MGSTAT0 bit will be set. The CCIF flag will set after the Program Check operation has completed.

The starting address must be longword aligned (the lowest two bits of the byte address must be 00):

- Byte 0 data is expected at the supplied 32-bit aligned address,
- Byte 1 data is expected at byte address specified + 0b01,
- Byte 2 data is expected at byte address specified + 0b10, and
- Byte 3 data is expected at byte address specified + 0b11.

NOTE

See the description of margin reads, [Margin Read Commands](#)

Table 34-7. Margin Level Choices for Program Check

Read Margin Choice	Margin Level Description
0x01	Read at 'User' margin-1 and 'User' margin-0
0x02	Read at 'Factory' margin-1 and 'Factory' margin-0

Table 34-8. Program Check Command Error Handling

Error Condition	Error Bit
Command not available in current mode/security	FSTAT[ACCERR]
An invalid flash address is supplied	FSTAT[ACCERR]
Flash address is not longword aligned	FSTAT[ACCERR]
An invalid margin choice is supplied	FSTAT[ACCERR]
Either of the margin reads does not match the expected data	FSTAT[MGSTAT0]

34.4.9.3 Read Resource Command

The Read Resource command is provided for the user to read data from special-purpose memory resources located within the Flash module. The special-purpose memory resources available include program flash IFR space, and the Version ID field. The Version ID field contains an 8 byte code that indicates a specific FTFE implementation.

Table 34-9. Read Resource Command FCCOB Requirements

FCCOB Number	FCCOB contents [7:0]
0	0x03 (RDRSRC)
1	Flash address [23:16]
2	Flash address [15:8]
3	Flash address [7:0] ¹
4	Resource select code (see Table 34-10)
Returned values	
4	Read Data [64:56]
5	Read Data [55:48]
6	Read Data [47:40]
7	Read Data [39:32]
8	Read Data [31:24]
9	Read Data [23:16]
A	Read Data [15:8]
B	Read Data [7:0]

1. Must be 64-bit aligned (Flash address [2:0] = 000).

Table 34-10. Read Resource Select Codes

Resource Select Code	Description	Resource Size	Local Address Range
0x00	Program Flash 0 IFR	1024 Bytes	0x00_0000 - 0x00_03FF
0x01	Version ID	8 Bytes	0x00_0008 - 0x00_000F

After clearing CCIF to launch the Read Resource command, eight consecutive bytes are read from the selected resource at the provided relative address and stored in the FCCOB register. The CCIF flag will set after the Read Resource operation has completed. The Read Resource command exits with an access error if an invalid resource code is provided or if the address for the applicable area is out-of-range.

Table 34-11. Read Resource Command Error Handling

Error Condition	Error Bit
Command not available in current mode/security	FSTAT[ACCERR]
An invalid resource code is entered	FSTAT[ACCERR]
Flash address is out-of-range for the targeted resource.	FSTAT[ACCERR]
Flash address is not 64-bit aligned	FSTAT[ACCERR]

34.4.9.4 Program Phrase command

The Program Phrase command programs eight previously-erased bytes in the program flash memory using an embedded algorithm.

CAUTION

A Flash memory location must be in the erased state before being programmed. Cumulative programming of bits (back-to-back program operations without an intervening erase) within a Flash memory location is not allowed. Re-programming of existing 0s to 0 is not allowed as this overstresses the device.

Table 34-12. Program Phrase Command FCCOB Requirements

FCCOB Number	FCCOB Contents [7:0]
0	0x07 (PGM8)
1	Flash address [23:16]
2	Flash address [15:8]
3	Flash address [7:0] ¹
4	Byte 0 program value
5	Byte 1 program value

Table continues on the next page...

Table 34-12. Program Phrase Command FCCOB Requirements (continued)

FCCOB Number	FCCOB Contents [7:0]
6	Byte 2 program value
7	Byte 3 program value
8	Byte 4 program value
9	Byte 5 program value
A	Byte 6 program value
B	Byte 7 program value

1. Must be 64-bit aligned (Flash address [2:0] = 000)

Upon clearing CCIF to launch the Program Phrase command, the FTFE programs the data bytes into the flash using the supplied address. The protection status is always checked. The targeted flash locations must be currently unprotected (see the description of the FPROT registers) to permit execution of the Program Phrase operation.

The programming operation is unidirectional. It can only move NVM bits from the erased state ('1') to the programmed state ('0'). Erased bits that fail to program to the '0' state are flagged as errors in MGSTAT0. The CCIF flag is set after the Program Phrase operation completes.

The starting address must be 64-bit aligned (flash address [2:0] = 000):

- Byte 0 data is written to the starting address ('start'),
- Byte 1 data is programmed to byte address start+0b01,
- Byte 2 data is programmed to byte address start+0b10, and
- Byte 3 data is programmed to byte address start+0b11, etc.

Table 34-13. Program Phrase Command Error Handling

Error Condition	Error Bit
Command not available in current mode/security	FSTAT[ACCERR]
An invalid flash address is supplied	FSTAT[ACCERR]
Flash address is not 64-bit aligned	FSTAT[ACCERR]
Flash address points to a protected area	FSTAT[FPVIOL]
Any errors have been encountered during the verify operation.	FSTAT[MGSTAT0]

34.4.9.5 Erase Flash Sector command

The Erase Flash Sector operation erases all addresses in a flash sector.

Table 34-14. Erase Flash Sector Command FCCOB Requirements

FCCOB Number	FCCOB Contents [7:0]
0	0x09 (ERSSCR)
1	Flash address [23:16] in the flash sector to be erased
2	Flash address [15:8] in the flash sector to be erased
3	Flash address [7:0] ¹ in the flash sector to be erased

1. Must be 256-bit aligned (Flash address [4:0] = 00000).

After clearing CCIF to launch the Erase Flash Sector command, the FTFE erases the selected program flash sector and then verifies that it is erased. The Erase Flash Sector command aborts if the selected sector is protected (see the description of the FPROT registers). If the erase-verify fails the FSTAT[MGSTAT0] bit is set. The CCIF flag is set after the Erase Flash Sector operation completes. The Erase Flash Sector command is suspendable (see the FCNFG[ERSSUSP] bit and [Figure 34-6](#)).

Table 34-15. Erase Flash Sector Command Error Handling

Error Condition	Error Bit
Command not available in current mode/security	FSTAT[ACCERR]
An invalid Flash address is supplied	FSTAT[ACCERR]
Flash address is not 256-bit aligned	FSTAT[ACCERR]
The selected program flash sector is protected	FSTAT[FPVIOL]
Any errors have been encountered during the verify operation ¹	FSTAT[MGSTAT0]

1. User margin read may be run using the Read 1s Section command to verify all bits are erased.

34.4.9.5.1 Suspending an Erase Flash Sector Operation

To suspend an Erase Flash Sector operation set the FCNFG[ERSSUSP] bit when CCIF, ACCERR, and FPVIOL are clear and the CCOB command field holds the code for the Erase Flash Sector command. During the Erase Flash Sector operation (see [Erase Flash Sector command](#)), the flash samples the state of the ERSSUSP bit at convenient points. If the FTFE detects that the ERSSUSP bit is set, the Erase Flash Sector operation is suspended and the FTFE sets CCIF. While ERSSUSP is set, all writes to flash registers are ignored except for writes to the FSTAT and FCNFG registers.

If an Erase Flash Sector operation effectively completes before the FTFE detects that a suspend request has been made, the FTFE clears the ERSSUSP bit prior to setting CCIF. When an Erase Flash Sector operation has been successfully suspended, the FTFE sets CCIF and leaves the ERSSUSP bit set. While CCIF is set, the ERSSUSP bit can only be cleared to prevent the withdrawal of a suspend request before the FTFE has acknowledged it.

34.4.9.5.2 Resuming a Suspended Erase Flash Sector Operation

If the ERSSUSP bit is still set when CCIF is cleared to launch the next command, the previous Erase Flash Sector operation resumes. The FTFE acknowledges the request to resume a suspended operation by clearing the ERSSUSP bit. A new suspend request can then be made by setting ERSSUSP. A single Erase Flash Sector operation can be suspended and resumed multiple times.

There is a minimum elapsed time limit of 4.3 msec between the request to resume the Erase Flash Sector operation (CCIF is cleared) and the request to suspend the operation again (ERSSUSP is set). This minimum time period is required to ensure that the Erase Flash Sector operation will eventually complete. If the minimum period is continually violated, i.e. the suspend requests come repeatedly and too quickly, no forward progress is made by the Erase Flash Sector algorithm. The resume/suspend sequence runs indefinitely without completing the erase.

34.4.9.5.3 Aborting a Suspended Erase Flash Sector Operation

The user may choose to abort a suspended Erase Flash Sector operation by clearing the ERSSUSP bit prior to clearing CCIF for the next command launch. When a suspended operation is aborted, the FTFE starts the new command using the new FCCOB contents.

Note

Aborting the erase leaves the bitcells in an indeterminate, partially-erased state. Data in this sector is not reliable until a new erase command fully completes.

The following figure shows how to suspend and resume the Erase Flash Sector operation.

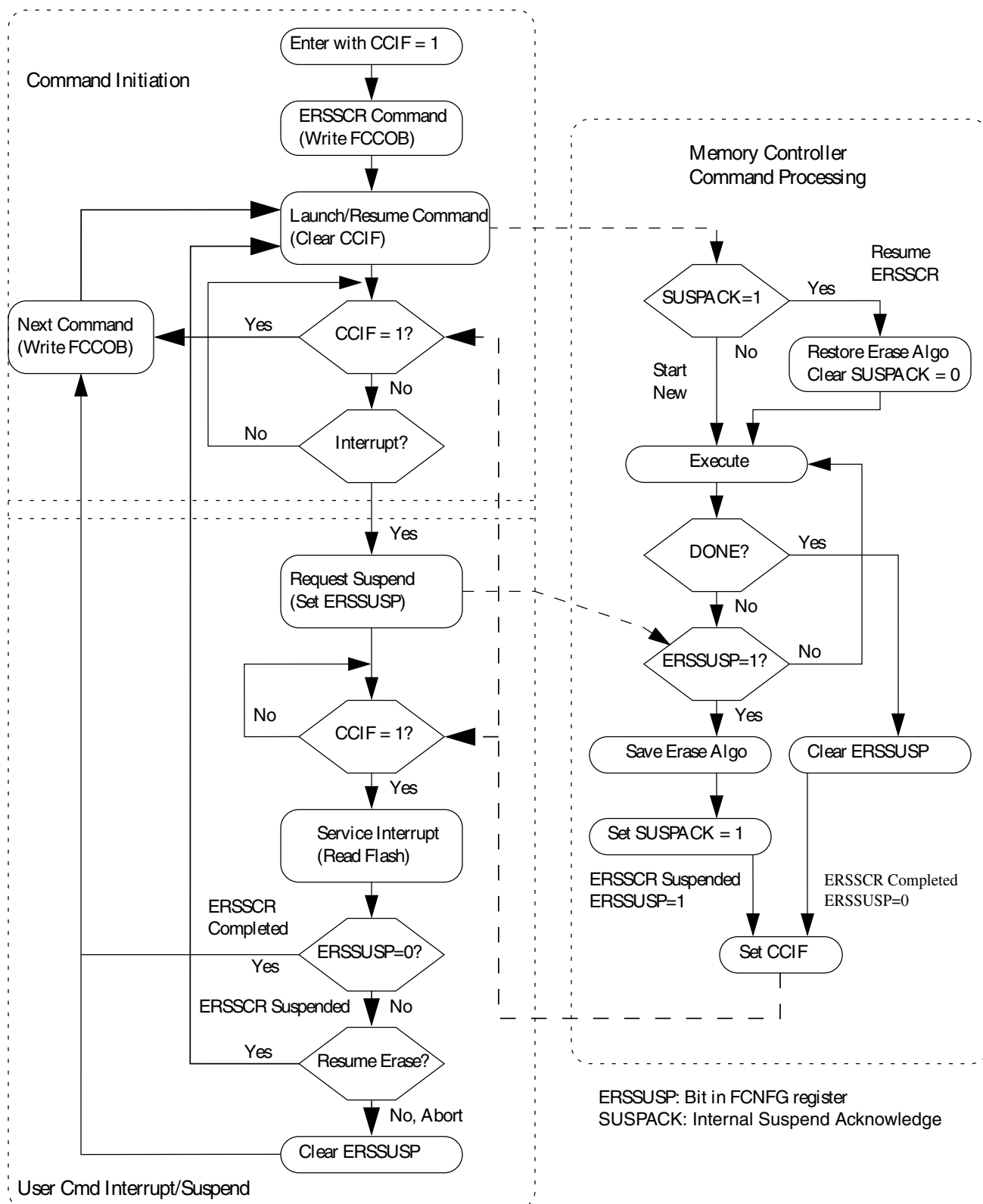


Figure 34-6. Suspend and Resume of Erase Flash Sector Operation

34.4.9.6 Program Section command

The Program Section operation programs the data found in the section program buffer to previously erased locations in the flash memory using an embedded algorithm. Data is preloaded into the section program buffer (see [Flash sector programming](#)).

The section program buffer is limited to the lower quarter of the programming acceleration RAM (byte addresses 0x0000-0x03FF). Data written to the remainder of the programming acceleration RAM is ignored and may be overwritten during Program Section command execution.

CAUTION

A flash memory location must be in the erased state before being programmed. Cumulative programming of bits (back-to-back program operations without an intervening erase) within a flash memory location is not allowed. Re-programming of existing 0s to 0 is not allowed as this overstresses the device.

Table 34-16. Program Section Command FCCOB Requirements

FCCOB Number	FCCOB Contents [7:0]
0	0x0B (PGMSEC)
1	Flash address [23:16]
2	Flash address [15:8]
3	Flash address [7:0] ¹
4	Number of quad-phrases to program [15:8]
5	Number of quad-phrases to program [7:0]

1. Must be 256-bit aligned (Flash address [4:0] = 00000).

After clearing CCIF to launch the Program Section command, the FTFE will block access to the programming acceleration RAM and program the data residing in the Section Program Buffer into the flash memory starting at the flash address provided.

The starting address must be unprotected (see the description of the FPROT registers) to permit execution of the Program Section operation. Programming, which is not allowed to cross a flash sector boundary, continues until all requested quad-phrases have been programmed.

After the Program Section operation has completed, the CCIF flag will set. The contents of the Section Program Buffer is not changed by the Program Section operation.

Table 34-17. Program Section Command Error Handling

Error Condition	Error Bit
Command not available in current mode/security	FSTAT[ACCERR]
An invalid flash address is supplied	FSTAT[ACCERR]
Flash address is not 256-bit aligned	FSTAT[ACCERR]
The requested section crosses a program flash sector boundary	FSTAT[ACCERR]
The requested number of quad-words is zero	FSTAT[ACCERR]
The space required to store data for the requested number of quad-words is more than one quarter the size of the programming acceleration RAM	FSTAT[ACCERR]
The flash address falls in a protected area	FSTAT[FPVIOL]
Any errors have been encountered during the verify operation	FSTAT[MGSTAT0]

34.4.9.6.1 Flash sector programming

The process of programming an entire flash sector using the Program Section command is as follows:

1. Launch the Erase Flash Sector command to erase the flash sector to be programmed.
2. Beginning with the starting address of the programming acceleration RAM, sequentially write enough data to the RAM to fill an entire flash sector. This area of the RAM serves as the section program buffer. The section program buffer can be written to while the operation launched in step 1 is executing, i.e. while CCIF = 0.
3. Execute the Program Section command to program the contents of the section program buffer into the selected flash sector.
4. To program additional flash sectors, repeat steps 1 through 3.

34.4.9.7 Read 1s All Blocks Command

The Read 1s All Blocks command checks if the program flash blocks have been erased to the specified read margin level, if applicable, and releases security if the readout passes, i.e. all data reads as '1'.

Table 34-18. Read 1s All Blocks Command FCCOB Requirements

FCCOB Number	FCCOB Contents [7:0]
0	0x40 (RD1ALL)
1	Read-1 Margin Choice

After clearing CCIF to launch the Read 1s All Blocks command, the FTFE :

- sets the read margin for 1s according to [Table 34-19](#),
- checks the contents of the program flash are in the erased state.

If the FTFE confirms that these memory resources are erased, security is released by setting the FSEC[SEC] field to the unsecure state. The security byte in the flash configuration field (see [Flash configuration field description](#)) remains unaffected by the Read 1s All Blocks command. If the read fails, i.e. all flash memory resources are not in the fully erased state, the FSTAT[MGSTAT0] bit is set.

The EEERDY and RAMRDY bits are clear during the Read 1s All Blocks operation and are restored at the end of the Read 1s All Blocks operation.

The CCIF flag sets after the Read 1s All Blocks operation has completed.

Table 34-19. Margin Level Choices for Read 1s All Blocks

Read Margin Choice	Margin Level Description
0x00	Use the 'normal' read level for 1s
0x01	Apply the 'User' margin to the normal read-1 level
0x02	Apply the 'Factory' margin to the normal read-1 level

Table 34-20. Read 1s All Blocks Command Error Handling

Error Condition	Error Bit
An invalid margin choice is specified	FSTAT[ACCERR]
Read-1s fails	FSTAT[MGSTAT0]

34.4.9.8 Read Once Command

The Read Once command provides read access to a reserved 64-byte field located in the program flash 0 IFR (see [Program flash 0 IFR map](#) and [Program Once field](#)). Access to the Program Once field is via 8 records, each 8 bytes long. The Program Once field is programmed using the Program Once command described in [Program Once command](#).

Table 34-21. Read Once Command FCCOB Requirements

FCCOB Number	FCCOB Contents [7:0]
0	0x41 (RDONCE)
1	Program Once record index (0x00 - 0x07)
	Returned Values
4	Program Once byte 0 value
5	Program Once byte 1 value
6	Program Once byte 2 value

Table continues on the next page...

Table 34-21. Read Once Command FCCOB Requirements (continued)

FCCOB Number	FCCOB Contents [7:0]
7	Program Once byte 3 value
8	Program Once byte 4 value
9	Program Once byte 5 value
A	Program Once byte 6 value
B	Program Once byte 7 value

After clearing CCIF to launch the Read Once command, an 8-byte Program Once record is read from the program flash IFR and stored in the FCCOB register. The CCIF flag is set after the Read Once operation completes. Valid record index values for the Read Once command range from 0x00 to 0x07. During execution of the Read Once command, any attempt to read addresses within the program flash block containing this 64-byte field returns invalid data. The Read Once command can be executed any number of times.

Table 34-22. Read Once Command Error Handling

Error Condition	Error Bit
Command not available in current mode/security	FSTAT[ACCERR]
An invalid record index is supplied	FSTAT[ACCERR]

34.4.9.9 Program Once command

The Program Once command enables programming to a reserved 64-byte field in the program flash 0 IFR (see [Program flash 0 IFR map](#) and [Program Once field](#)). Access to the Program Once field is via 8 records, each 8 bytes long. The Program Once field can be read using the Read Once command (see [Read Once Command](#)) or using the Read Resource command (see [Read Resource Command](#)). Each Program Once record can be programmed only once since the program flash 0 IFR cannot be erased.

Table 34-23. Program Once Command FCCOB Requirements

FCCOB Number	FCCOB Contents [7:0]
0	0x43 (PGMONCE)
1	Program Once record index (0x00 - 0x07)
2	Not Used
3	Not Used
4	Program Once Byte 0 value
5	Program Once Byte 1 value
6	Program Once Byte 2 value

Table continues on the next page...

Table 34-23. Program Once Command FCCOB Requirements (continued)

FCCOB Number	FCCOB Contents [7:0]
7	Program Once Byte 3 value
8	Program Once Byte 4 value
9	Program Once Byte 5 value
A	Program Once Byte 6 value
B	Program Once Byte 7 value

After clearing CCIF to launch the Program Once command, the FTFE first verifies that the selected record is erased. If erased, then the selected record is programmed using the values provided. The Program Once command also verifies that the programmed values read back correctly. The CCIF flag is set after the Program Once operation has completed.

The reserved program flash 0 IFR location accessed by the Program Once command cannot be erased and any attempt to program one of these records when the existing value is not Fs (erased) is not allowed. Valid record index values for the Program Once command range from 0x00 to 0x07. During execution of the Program Once command, any attempt to read addresses within program flash 0 returns invalid data.

Table 34-24. Program Once Command Error Handling

Error Condition	Error Bit
Command not available in current mode/security	FSTAT[ACCERR]
An invalid record index is supplied	FSTAT[ACCERR]
The requested record has already been programmed to a non-erased value ¹	FSTAT[ACCERR]
Any errors have been encountered during the verify operation.	FSTAT[MGSTAT0]

1. If a Program Once record is initially programmed to 0xFFFF_FFFF_FFFF_FFFF, the Program Once command is allowed to execute again on that same record.

34.4.9.10 Erase All Blocks Command

The Erase All Blocks operation erases all flash memory, verifies all memory contents, and releases MCU security.

Table 34-25. Erase All Blocks Command FCCOB Requirements

FCCOB Number	FCCOB Contents [7:0]
0	0x44 (ERSALL)

After clearing CCIF to launch the Erase All Blocks command, the FTFE erases all program flash memory, then verifies that all are erased.

If the FTFE verifies that all flash memories were properly erased, security is released by setting the FSEC[SEC] field to the unsecure state and the FCNFG[RAMRDY] bit is set. The Erase All Blocks command aborts if any flash region is protected. The security byte and all other contents of the flash configuration field (see [Flash configuration field description](#)) are erased by the Erase All Blocks command. If the erase-verify fails, the FSTAT[MGSTAT0] bit is set. The CCIF flag is set after the Erase All Blocks operation completes.

Table 34-26. Erase All Blocks Command Error Handling

Error Condition	Error Bit
Command not available in current mode/security	FSTAT[ACCERR]
Any region of the program flash memory is protected	FSTAT[FPVIOL]
Any errors have been encountered during the verify operation ¹	FSTAT[MGSTAT0]

1. User margin read may be run using the Read 1s All Blocks command to verify all bits are erased.

34.4.9.10.1 Triggering an erase all external to the flash module

The functionality of the Erase All Blocks/Erase All Blocks Unsecure command is also available in an uncommanded fashion outside of the flash memory. Refer to the device's Chip Configuration details for information on this functionality.

Before invoking the external erase all function, the FCCOB0 register must not contain 0x44. When invoked, the erase-all function erases all program flash memory regardless of the state of the FSTAT[ACCERR and FPVIOL] flags or the protection settings. If the post-erase verify passes, the routine releases security by setting the FSEC[SEC] field register to the unsecure state and the FCNFG[RAMRDY] bit sets. The security byte in the Flash Configuration Field is also programmed to the unsecure state. The status of the erase-all request is reflected in the FCNFG[ERSAREQ] bit. The FCNFG[ERSAREQ] bit is cleared once the operation completes and the normal FSTAT error reporting, except FPVIOL, is available as described in [Erase All Blocks Command/Erase All Blocks Unsecure Command](#).

34.4.9.11 Verify Backdoor Access Key command

The Verify Backdoor Access Key command only executes if the mode and security conditions are satisfied (see [Flash commands by mode](#)). Execution of the Verify Backdoor Access Key command is further qualified by the FSEC[KEYEN] bits. The Verify Backdoor Access Key command releases security if user-supplied keys in the FCCOB match those stored in the Backdoor Comparison Key bytes of the Flash Configuration Field. The column labeled Flash Configuration Field offset address shows the location of the matching byte in the Flash Configuration Field.

Table 34-27. Verify Backdoor Access Key Command FCCOB Requirements

FCCOB Number	FCCOB Contents [7:0]	Flash Configuration Field Offset Address
0	0x45 (VFYKEY)	
1-3	Not Used	
4	Key Byte 0	0x0_0003
5	Key Byte 1	0x0_0002
6	Key Byte 2	0x0_0001
7	Key Byte 3	0x0_0000
8	Key Byte 4	0x0_0007
9	Key Byte 5	0x0_0006
A	Key Byte 6	0x0_0005
B	Key Byte 7	0x0_0004

After clearing CCIF to launch the Verify Backdoor Access Key command, the FTFE checks the FSEC[KEYEN] bits to verify that this command is enabled. If not enabled, the FTFE sets the FSTAT[ACCERR] bit and terminates. If the command is enabled, the FTFE compares the key provided in FCCOB to the backdoor comparison key in the Flash Configuration Field. If the backdoor keys match, the FSEC[SEC] field is changed to the unsecure state and security is released. If the backdoor keys do not match, security is not released and all future attempts to execute the Verify Backdoor Access Key command are immediately aborted and the FSTAT[ACCERR] bit is (again) set to 1 until a reset of the FTFE module occurs. If the entire 8-byte key is all zeros or all ones, the Verify Backdoor Access Key command fails with an access error. The CCIF flag is set after the Verify Backdoor Access Key operation completes.

Table 34-28. Verify Backdoor Access Key Command Error Handling

Error Condition	Error Bit
Command not available in current mode/security	FSTAT[ACCERR]
The supplied key is all-0s or all-Fs	FSTAT[ACCERR]
An incorrect backdoor key is supplied	FSTAT[ACCERR]
Backdoor key access has not been enabled (see the description of the FSEC register)	FSTAT[ACCERR]
This command is launched and the backdoor key has mismatched since the last power down reset	FSTAT[ACCERR]

34.4.9.12 Erase All Blocks Unsecure Command

The Erase All Blocks Unsecure operation erases all flash memory, verifies all memory contents, programs the security byte in the Flash Configuration Field to the unsecure state, and releases MCU security.

Table 34-29. Erase All Blocks Unsecure Command FCCOB Requirements

FCCOB Number	FCCOB Contents [7:0]
0	0x49 (ERSALLU)

After clearing CCIF to launch the Erase All Blocks Unsecure command, the FTFE erases all program flash memory, then verifies that all are erased.

If the FTFE verifies that all flash memories were properly erased, security is released by setting the FSEC[SEC] field to the unsecure state, the security byte (see [Flash configuration field description](#)) is programmed to the unsecure state by the Erase All Blocks Unsecure command, and the FCNFG[RAMRDY] bit is set. If the erase or program verify fails, the FSTAT[MGSTAT0] bit is set. The CCIF flag is set after the Erase All Blocks Unsecure operation completes.

Table 34-30. Erase All Blocks Unsecure Command Error Handling

Error Condition	Error Bit
Command not available in current mode/security	FSTAT[ACCERR]
Any errors have been encountered during erase or program verify operations	FSTAT[MGSTAT0]

34.4.10 Security

The FTFE module provides security information to the MCU based on contents of the FSEC security register. The MCU then limits access to FTFE resources as defined in the device's Chip Configuration details. During reset, the FTFE module initializes the FSEC register using data read from the security byte of the Flash Configuration Field (see [Flash configuration field description](#)).

The following fields are available in the FSEC register. Details of the settings are described in the FSEC register description.

Table 34-31. FSEC fields

FSEC field	Description
KEYEN	Backdoor Key Access
MEEN	Mass Erase Capability
FSLACC	Freescale Factory Access
SEC	MCU security

34.4.10.1 FTFE Access by Mode and Security

The following table summarizes how access to the FTFE module is affected by security and operating mode.

Table 34-32. FTFE Access Summary

Operating Mode	MCU Security State	
	Unsecure	Secure
NVM Normal	Full command set	
NVM Special	Full command set	Only the Erase All Blocks, Erase All Blocks Unsecure and Read 1s All Blocks commands.

34.4.10.2 Changing the Security State

The security state out of reset can be permanently changed by programming the security byte of the flash configuration field. This assumes that you are starting from a mode where the necessary program flash erase and program commands are available and that the region of the program flash containing the flash configuration field is unprotected. If the flash security byte is successfully programmed, its new value takes effect after the next MCU reset.

34.4.10.2.1 Unsecuring the MCU Using Backdoor Key Access

The MCU can be unsecured by using the backdoor key access feature which requires knowledge of the contents of the 8-byte backdoor key value stored in the Flash Configuration Field (see [Flash configuration field description](#)). If the FSEC[KEYEN] bits are in the enabled state, the Verify Backdoor Access Key command (see [Verify Backdoor Access Key command](#)) can be run which allows the user to present prospective keys for comparison to the stored keys. If the keys match, the FSEC[SEC] bits are changed to unsecure the MCU. The entire 8-byte key cannot be all 0s or all 1s, i.e. 0x0000_0000_0000_0000 and 0xFFFF_FFFF_FFFF_FFFF are not accepted by the Verify Backdoor Access Key command as valid comparison values. While the Verify Backdoor Access Key command is active, program flash memory is not available for read access and returns invalid data.

The user code stored in the program flash memory must have a method of receiving the backdoor keys from an external stimulus. This external stimulus would typically be through one of the on-chip serial ports.

If the KEYEN bits are in the enabled state, the MCU can be unsecured by the backdoor key access sequence described below:

1. Follow the command sequence for the Verify Backdoor Access Key command as explained in [Verify Backdoor Access Key command](#)
2. If the Verify Backdoor Access Key command is successful, the MCU is unsecured and the FSEC[SEC] bits are forced to the unsecure state

An illegal key provided to the Verify Backdoor Access Key command prohibits future use of the Verify Backdoor Access Key command. A reset of the MCU is the only method to re-enable the Verify Backdoor Access Key command when a comparison fails.

After the backdoor keys have been correctly matched, the MCU is unsecured by changing the FSEC[SEC] bits. A successful execution of the Verify Backdoor Access Key command changes the security in the FSEC register only. It does not alter the security byte or the keys stored in the Flash Configuration Field ([Flash configuration field description](#)). After the next reset of the MCU, the security state of the FTFE module reverts back to the Flash security byte in the Flash Configuration Field. The Verify Backdoor Access Key command sequence has no effect on the program and erase protections defined in the program flash protection registers.

If the backdoor keys successfully match, the unsecured MCU has full control of the contents of the Flash Configuration Field. The MCU may erase the sector containing the Flash Configuration Field and reprogram the flash security byte to the unsecure state and change the backdoor keys to any desired value.

34.4.11 Reset Sequence

On each system reset the FTFE module executes a sequence which establishes initial values for the flash block configuration parameters, FPROT, FOPT, and FSEC registers and the FCNFG[RAMRDY, EEERDY] bits.

CCIF is cleared throughout the reset sequence. The FTFE module holds off all CPU access for a portion of the reset sequence. Flash reads are possible when the hold is removed. Completion of the reset sequence is marked by setting CCIF which enables flash user commands.

If a reset occurs while any FTFE command is in progress, that command is immediately aborted. The state of the word being programmed or the sector/block being erased is not guaranteed. Commands and operations do not automatically resume after exiting reset.

Chapter 35

External Bus Interface (FlexBus)

35.1 Chip-specific Flexbus information

35.1.1 FlexBus clocking

The system provides a dedicated clock source to the FlexBus module's external CLKOUT. Its clock frequency is derived from a divider of the MCGOUTCLK. See [Clock Distribution](#) for more details.

35.1.2 FlexBus signal multiplexing

The multiplexing of the FlexBus address and data signals is controlled by the port control module. However, the multiplexing of some of the FlexBus control signals are controlled by the port control and FlexBus modules. The port control module registers control whether the FlexBus or another module signals are available on the external pin, while the FlexBus's CSPMCR register configures which FlexBus signals are available from the modules. The control signals are grouped as illustrated:

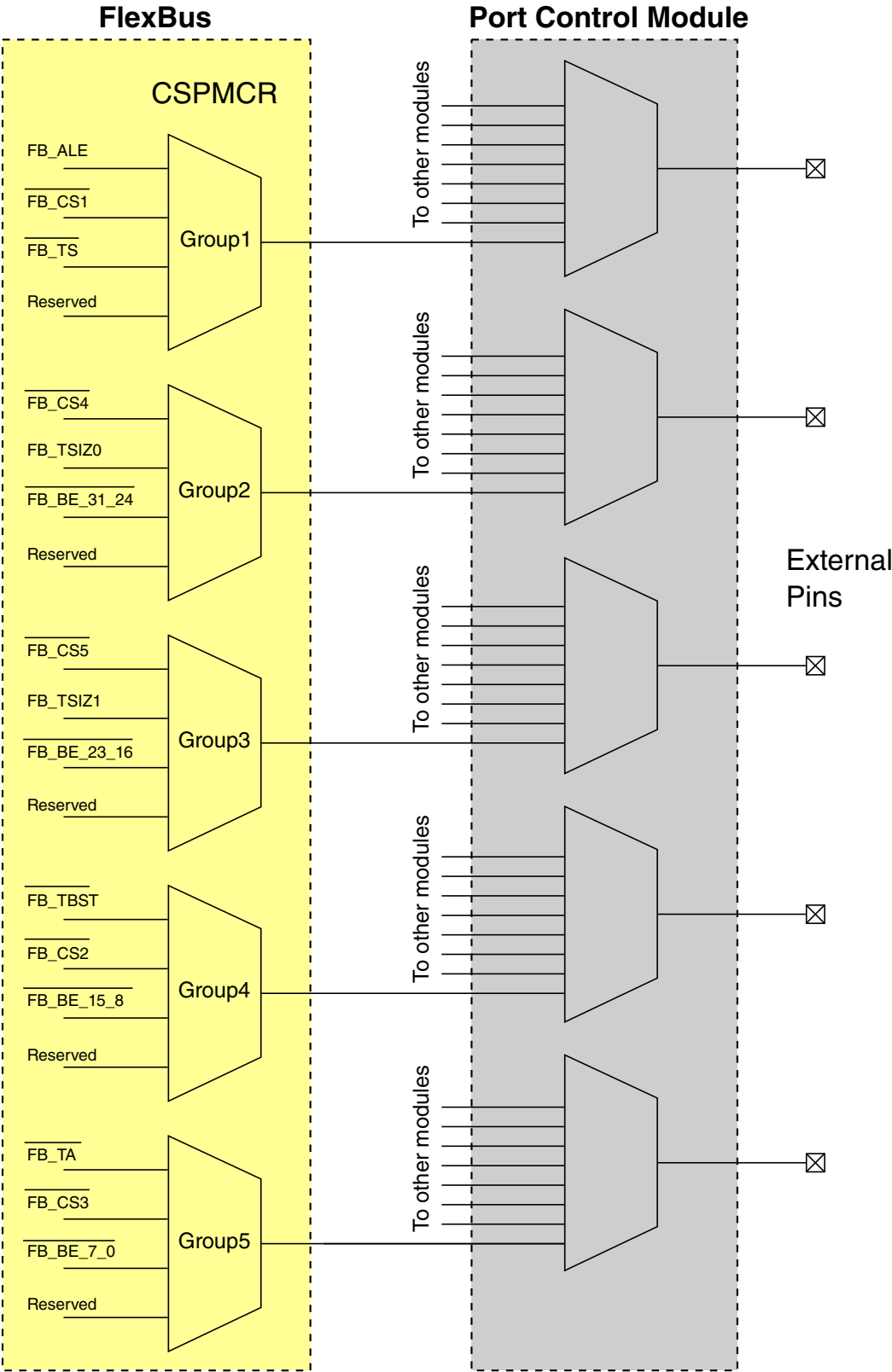


Figure 35-1. FlexBus control signal multiplexing

Therefore, use the CSPMCR and port control registers to configure which control signal is available on the external pin. All control signals, except for $\overline{\text{FB_TA}}$, are assigned to the ALT8 function in the port control module. Since, unlike the other control signals, $\overline{\text{FB_TA}}$ is an input signal, it is assigned to the ALT9 function.

35.1.3 FlexBus CSCR0 reset value

On this device the CSCR0 resets to 0x003F_FC00. Configure this register as needed before performing any FlexBus access.

35.1.4 FlexBus Security

When security is enabled on the device, FlexBus accesses may be restricted by configuring SIM_SOPT2[FBSL]. See [System Integration Module \(SIM\)](#) for details.

35.1.5 FlexBus line transfers

Line transfers are not possible from the ARM Cortex-M7 core. Ignore any references to line transfers in the FlexBus chapter.

35.2 Introduction

This chapter describes external bus data transfer operations and error conditions. It describes transfers initiated by the core processor (or any other bus master) and includes detailed timing diagrams showing the interaction of signals in supported bus operations.

35.2.1 Definition

The FlexBus multifunction external bus interface controller is a hardware module that:

- Provides memory expansion and provides connection to external peripherals with a parallel bus
- Can be directly connected to the following asynchronous or synchronous slave-only devices with little or no additional circuitry:

- External ROMs
- Flash memories
- Programmable logic devices
- Other simple target (slave) devices

35.2.2 Features

FlexBus offers the following features:

- Six independent, user-programmable chip-select signals ($\overline{\text{FB_CS5}}$ – $\overline{\text{FB_CS0}}$)
- 8-bit, 16-bit, and 32-bit transfers
- Programmable burst and burst-inhibited transfers selectable for each chip-select and transfer direction
- Programmable address-setup time with respect to the assertion of a chip-select
- Programmable address-hold time with respect to the deassertion of a chip-select and transfer direction
- Extended address latch enable option to assist with glueless connections to synchronous and asynchronous memory devices

35.3 Signal descriptions

This table describes the external signals involved in data-transfer operations.

NOTE

Not all of the following signals may be available on a particular device. See the Chip Configuration details for information on which signals are available.

Table 35-1. FlexBus signal descriptions

Signal	I/O	Function
FB_AD31 - FB_AD0	I/O	<p>This is the address and data bus, FB_AD.</p> <p>The number of byte lanes carrying the data is determined by the port size associated with the matching chip-select.</p> <p>The full 32-bit address is driven on the first clock of a bus cycle (address phase). After the first clock, the data is driven on the bus (data phase). During the data phase, the address is driven on the pins not used for data. For example, in 16-bit mode, the lower address is driven on FB_AD15–FB_AD0, and in 8-bit mode, the lower address is driven on FB_AD23–FB_AD0.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

Table 35-1. FlexBus signal descriptions (continued)

Signal	I/O	Function
FB_CS5–FB_CS0	O	General Purpose Chip-Selects—Indicate which external memory or peripheral is selected. A particular chip-select is asserted when the transfer address is within the external memory's or peripheral's address space, as defined in CSAR[BA] and CSMR[BAM].
FB_BE_31_24 FB_BE_23_16 FB_BE_15_8 FB_BE_7_0	O	Byte Enables—Indicate that data is to be latched or driven onto a specific byte lane of the data bus. CSCR[BEM] determines if these signals are asserted on reads and writes or on writes only. For external SRAM or flash devices, the $\overline{\text{FB_BE}}$ outputs should be connected to individual byte strobe signals.
FB_OE	O	Output Enable—Sent to the external memory or peripheral to enable a read transfer. This signal is asserted during read accesses only when a chip-select matches the current address decode.
FB_R/W	O	Read/Write—Indicates whether the current bus operation is a read operation ($\text{FB_R}/\overline{\text{W}}$ high) or a write operation ($\text{FB_R}/\overline{\text{W}}$ low).
FB_TS	O	Transfer Start—Indicates that the chip has begun a bus transaction and that the address and attributes are valid. An inverted $\overline{\text{FB_TS}}$ is available as an address latch enable (FB_ALE), which indicates when the address is being driven on the FB_AD bus. $\overline{\text{FB_TS}}/\text{FB_ALE}$ is asserted for one bus clock cycle. The chip can extend this signal until the first positive clock edge after $\overline{\text{FB_CS}}$ asserts. See CSCR[EXTS] and Extended Transfer Start/Address Latch Enable .
FB_ALE	O	Address Latch Enable—Indicates when the address is being driven on the FB_A bus (inverse of $\overline{\text{FB_TS}}$).
$\overline{\text{FB_TBST}}$	O	Transfer Burst—Indicates that a burst transfer is in progress as driven by the chip. A burst transfer can be 2 to 16 beats depending on FB_TSIZ1 – FB_TSIZ0 and the port size. Note: When a burst transfer is in progress ($\overline{\text{FB_TBST}} = 0\text{b}$), the transfer size is 16 bytes (FB_TSIZ1 – $\text{FB_TSIZ0} = 11\text{b}$), and the address is misaligned within the 16-byte boundary, the external memory or peripheral must be able to wrap around the address.
FB_TA	I	Transfer Acknowledge—Indicates that the external data transfer is complete. When $\overline{\text{FB_TA}}$ is asserted during a read transfer, FlexBus latches the data and then terminates the transfer. When $\overline{\text{FB_TA}}$ is asserted during a write transfer, the transfer is terminated. If auto-acknowledge is disabled ($\text{CSCR}[\text{AA}] = 0$), the external memory or peripheral drives $\overline{\text{FB_TA}}$ to terminate the transfer. If auto-acknowledge is enabled ($\text{CSCR}[\text{AA}] = 1$), $\overline{\text{FB_TA}}$ is generated internally after a specified number of wait states, or the external memory or peripheral may assert external $\overline{\text{FB_TA}}$ before the wait-state countdown to terminate the transfer early. The chip deasserts $\overline{\text{FB_CS}}$ one cycle after the last $\overline{\text{FB_TA}}$ is asserted. During read transfers, the external memory or peripheral must continue to drive data until $\overline{\text{FB_TA}}$ is recognized. For write transfers, the chip continues driving data one clock cycle after $\overline{\text{FB_CS}}$ is deasserted. The number of wait states is determined by CSCR or the external $\overline{\text{FB_TA}}$ input. If the external $\overline{\text{FB_TA}}$ is used, the external memory or peripheral has complete control of the number of wait states. Note: External memory or peripherals should assert $\overline{\text{FB_TA}}$ only while the FB_CS signal to the external memory or peripheral is asserted.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 35-1. FlexBus signal descriptions (continued)

Signal	I/O	Function
		The CSPMCR register controls muxing of FB_TA with other signals. When the CSPMCR register does not allow fb_ta control, auto-acknowledge must be used (CSCR[AA] = 1'b1); otherwise the bus may hang.
FB_CLK	O	FlexBus Clock Output

35.4 Memory Map/Register Definition

The following tables describe the registers and bit meanings for configuring chip-select operation.

The actual number of chip selects available depends upon the device and its pin configuration. If the device does not support certain chip select signals or the pin is not configured for a chip-select function, then that corresponding set of chip-select registers has no effect on an external pin.

Note

You must set CSMR0[V] before the chip select registers take effect.

A bus error occurs when writing to reserved register locations.

FB memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/page
4000_C000	Chip Select Address Register (FB_CSAR0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	35.4.1/773
4000_C004	Chip Select Mask Register (FB_CSMR0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	35.4.2/774
4000_C008	Chip Select Control Register (FB_CSCR0)	32	R/W	Undefined	35.4.3/775
4000_C00C	Chip Select Address Register (FB_CSAR1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	35.4.1/773
4000_C010	Chip Select Mask Register (FB_CSMR1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	35.4.2/774
4000_C014	Chip Select Control Register (FB_CSCR1)	32	R/W	Undefined	35.4.3/775
4000_C018	Chip Select Address Register (FB_CSAR2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	35.4.1/773
4000_C01C	Chip Select Mask Register (FB_CSMR2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	35.4.2/774
4000_C020	Chip Select Control Register (FB_CSCR2)	32	R/W	Undefined	35.4.3/775
4000_C024	Chip Select Address Register (FB_CSAR3)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	35.4.1/773
4000_C028	Chip Select Mask Register (FB_CSMR3)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	35.4.2/774
4000_C02C	Chip Select Control Register (FB_CSCR3)	32	R/W	Undefined	35.4.3/775
4000_C030	Chip Select Address Register (FB_CSAR4)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	35.4.1/773

Table continues on the next page...

FB memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_C034	Chip Select Mask Register (FB_CSMR4)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	35.4.2/774
4000_C038	Chip Select Control Register (FB_CSCR4)	32	R/W	Undefined	35.4.3/775
4000_C03C	Chip Select Address Register (FB_CSAR5)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	35.4.1/773
4000_C040	Chip Select Mask Register (FB_CSMR5)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	35.4.2/774
4000_C044	Chip Select Control Register (FB_CSCR5)	32	R/W	Undefined	35.4.3/775
4000_C060	Chip Select port Multiplexing Control Register (FB_CSPMCR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	35.4.4/778

35.4.1 Chip Select Address Register (FB_CSARn)

Specifies the associated chip-select's base address.

Address: 4000_C000h base + 0h offset + (12d × i), where i=0d to 5d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	BA																0															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

FB_CSARn field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 BA	<p>Base Address</p> <p>Defines the base address for memory dedicated to the associated chip-select. BA is compared to bits 31–16 on the internal address bus to determine if the associated chip-select's memory is being accessed.</p> <p>NOTE: Because the FlexBus module is one of the slaves connected to the crossbar switch, it is only accessible within a certain memory range. See the chip memory map for the applicable FlexBus "expansion" address range for which the chip-selects can be active. Set the CSARn and CSMRn registers appropriately before accessing this region.</p>
Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>

35.4.2 Chip Select Mask Register (FB_CSMRn)

Specifies the address mask and allowable access types for the associated chip-select.

Address: 4000_C000h base + 4h offset + (12d × i), where i=0d to 5d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	BAM															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0								0							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FB_CSMRn field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 BAM	Base Address Mask Defines the associated chip-select's block size by masking address bits. 0 The corresponding address bit in CSAR is used in the chip-select decode. 1 The corresponding address bit in CSAR is a don't care in the chip-select decode.
15–9 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
8 WP	Write Protect Controls write accesses to the address range in the corresponding CSAR. 0 Write accesses are allowed. 1 Write accesses are not allowed. Attempting to write to the range of addresses for which the WP bit is set results in a bus error termination of the internal cycle and no external cycle.
7–1 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
0 V	Valid Specifies whether the corresponding CSAR, CSMR, and CSCR contents are valid. Programmed chip-selects do not assert until the V bit is 1b (except for FB_CS0, which acts as the global chip-select). NOTE: At reset, $\overline{\text{FB_CS0}}$ will fire for any access to the FlexBus memory region. CSMR0[V] must be set as part of the chip select initialization sequence to allow other chip selects to function as programmed. 0 Chip-select is invalid. 1 Chip-select is valid.

35.4.3 Chip Select Control Register (FB_CSCRn)

Controls the auto-acknowledge, address setup and hold times, port size, burst capability, and number of wait states for the associated chip select.

NOTE

To support the global chip-select ($\overline{\text{FB_CS0}}$), the CSCR0 reset values differ from the other CSCRs. The reset value of CSCR0 is as follows:

- Bits 31–24 are 0b
- Bit 23–3 are chip-dependent
- Bits 3–0 are 0b

See the chip configuration details for your particular chip for information on the exact CSCR0 reset value.

Address: 4000_C000h base + 8h offset + (12d × i), where i=0d to 5d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	SWS						0	SWSEN	EXTS	ASET	RDAH	WRAH				
W																
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	WS						BLS	AA	PS	BEM	BSTR	BSTW	0			
W																
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:

- x = Undefined at reset.

FB_CSCRn field descriptions

Field	Description
31–26 SWS	Secondary Wait States Used only when the SWSEN bit is 1b. Specifies the number of wait states inserted before an internal transfer acknowledge is generated for a burst transfer (except for the first termination, which is controlled by WS).
25–24 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
23 SWSEN	Secondary Wait State Enable

Table continues on the next page...

FB_CSCRn field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>0 Disabled. A number of wait states (specified by WS) are inserted before an internal transfer acknowledge is generated for all transfers.</p> <p>1 Enabled. A number of wait states (specified by SWS) are inserted before an internal transfer acknowledge is generated for burst transfer secondary terminations.</p>
22 EXTS	<p>Extended Transfer Start/Extended Address Latch Enable</p> <p>Controls how long $\overline{\text{FB_TS}}$ / FB_ALE is asserted.</p> <p>0 Disabled. $\overline{\text{FB_TS}}$ / FB_ALE asserts for one bus clock cycle.</p> <p>1 Enabled. $\overline{\text{FB_TS}}$ / FB_ALE remains asserted until the first positive clock edge after $\overline{\text{FB_CSn}}$ asserts.</p>
21–20 ASET	<p>Address Setup</p> <p>Controls when the chip-select is asserted with respect to assertion of a valid address and attributes.</p> <p>00 Assert $\overline{\text{FB_CSn}}$ on the first rising clock edge after the address is asserted (default for all but $\overline{\text{FB_CS0}}$).</p> <p>01 Assert $\overline{\text{FB_CSn}}$ on the second rising clock edge after the address is asserted.</p> <p>10 Assert $\overline{\text{FB_CSn}}$ on the third rising clock edge after the address is asserted.</p> <p>11 Assert $\overline{\text{FB_CSn}}$ on the fourth rising clock edge after the address is asserted (default for $\overline{\text{FB_CS0}}$).</p>
19–18 RDAH	<p>Read Address Hold or Deselect</p> <p>Controls the address and attribute hold time after the termination during a read cycle that hits in the associated chip-select's address space.</p> <p>NOTE:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The hold time applies only at the end of a transfer. Therefore, during a burst transfer or a transfer to a port size smaller than the transfer size, the hold time is only added after the last bus cycle. The number of cycles the address and attributes are held after $\overline{\text{FB_CSn}}$ deassertion depends on the value of the AA bit. <p>00 When AA is 1b, 1 cycle. When AA is 0b, 0 cycles.</p> <p>01 When AA is 1b, 2 cycles. When AA is 0b, 1 cycle.</p> <p>10 When AA is 1b, 3 cycles. When AA is 0b, 2 cycles.</p> <p>11 When AA is 1b, 4 cycles. When AA is 0b, 3 cycles.</p>
17–16 WRAH	<p>Write Address Hold or Deselect</p> <p>Controls the address, data, and attribute hold time after the termination of a write cycle that hits in the associated chip-select's address space.</p> <p>NOTE: The hold time applies only at the end of a transfer. Therefore, during a burst transfer or a transfer to a port size smaller than the transfer size, the hold time is only added after the last bus cycle.</p> <p>00 1 cycle (default for all but $\overline{\text{FB_CS0}}$)</p> <p>01 2 cycles</p> <p>10 3 cycles</p> <p>11 4 cycles (default for $\overline{\text{FB_CS0}}$)</p>
15–10 WS	<p>Wait States</p> <p>Specifies the number of wait states inserted after FlexBus asserts the associated chip-select and before an internal transfer acknowledge is generated (WS = 00h inserts 0 wait states, ..., WS = 3Fh inserts 63 wait states).</p>
9 BLS	<p>Byte-Lane Shift</p>

Table continues on the next page...

FB_CSCRn field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>Specifies if data on FB_AD appears left-aligned or right-aligned during the data phase of a FlexBus access.</p> <p>0 Not shifted. Data is left-aligned on FB_AD.</p> <p>1 Shifted. Data is right-aligned on FB_AD.</p>
8 AA	<p>Auto-Acknowledge Enable</p> <p>Asserts the internal transfer acknowledge for accesses specified by the chip-select address.</p> <p>NOTE: If AA is 1b for a corresponding FB_CS_n and the external system asserts an external FB_TA before the wait-state countdown asserts the internal FB_TA, the cycle is terminated. Burst cycles increment the address bus between each internal termination.</p> <p>NOTE: This field must be 1b if CSPMCR disables FB_TA.</p> <p>0 Disabled. No internal transfer acknowledge is asserted and the cycle is terminated externally.</p> <p>1 Enabled. Internal transfer acknowledge is asserted as specified by WS.</p>
7–6 PS	<p>Port Size</p> <p>Specifies the data port width of the associated chip-select, and determines where data is driven during write cycles and where data is sampled during read cycles.</p> <p>00 32-bit port size. Valid data is sampled and driven on FB_D[31:0].</p> <p>01 8-bit port size. Valid data is sampled and driven on FB_D[31:24] when BLS is 0b, or FB_D[7:0] when BLS is 1b.</p> <p>1X 16-bit port size. Valid data is sampled and driven on FB_D[31:16] when BLS is 0b, or FB_D[15:0] when BLS is 1b.</p>
5 BEM	<p>Byte-Enable Mode</p> <p>Specifies whether the corresponding FB_BE is asserted for read accesses. Certain memories have byte enables that must be asserted during reads and writes. Write 1b to the BEM bit in the relevant CSCR to provide the appropriate mode of byte enable support for these SRAMs.</p> <p>0 FB_BE is asserted for data write only.</p> <p>1 FB_BE is asserted for data read and write accesses.</p>
4 BSTR	<p>Burst-Read Enable</p> <p>Specifies whether burst reads are enabled for memory associated with each chip select.</p> <p>0 Disabled. Data exceeding the specified port size is broken into individual, port-sized, non-burst reads. For example, a 32-bit read from an 8-bit port is broken into four 8-bit reads.</p> <p>1 Enabled. Enables data burst reads larger than the specified port size, including 32-bit reads from 8- and 16-bit ports, 16-bit reads from 8-bit ports, and line reads from 8-, 16-, and 32-bit ports.</p>
3 BSTW	<p>Burst-Write Enable</p> <p>Specifies whether burst writes are enabled for memory associated with each chip select.</p> <p>0 Disabled. Data exceeding the specified port size is broken into individual, port-sized, non-burst writes. For example, a 32-bit write to an 8-bit port takes four byte writes.</p> <p>1 Enabled. Enables burst write of data larger than the specified port size, including 32-bit writes to 8- and 16-bit ports, 16-bit writes to 8-bit ports, and line writes to 8-, 16-, and 32-bit ports.</p>
Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>

35.4.4 Chip Select port Multiplexing Control Register (FB_CSPMCR)

Controls the multiplexing of the FlexBus signals.

NOTE

- A bus error occurs when you do any of the following:
- Write to a reserved address
 - Write to a reserved field in this register, or
 - Access this register using a size other than 32 bits.

Address: 4000_C000h base + 60h offset = 4000_C060h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FB_CSPMCR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–28 GROUP1	<p>FlexBus Signal Group 1 Multiplex control</p> <p>Controls the multiplexing of the FB_ALE, FB_CS1, and FB_TS signals.</p> <p>0000 FB_ALE 0001 FB_CS1 0010 FB_TS Any other value Reserved</p>
27–24 GROUP2	<p>FlexBus Signal Group 2 Multiplex control</p> <p>Controls the multiplexing of the FB_CS4, FB_TSI0, and FB_BE_31_24 signals.</p> <p>0000 FB_CS4 0001 FB_TSI0 0010 FB_BE_31_24 Any other value Reserved</p>
23–20 GROUP3	<p>FlexBus Signal Group 3 Multiplex control</p> <p>Controls the multiplexing of the FB_CS5, FB_TSI1, and FB_BE_23_16 signals.</p> <p>0000 FB_CS5 0001 FB_TSI1 0010 FB_BE_23_16 Any other value Reserved</p>
19–16 GROUP4	<p>FlexBus Signal Group 4 Multiplex control</p> <p>Controls the multiplexing of the FB_TBST, FB_CS2, and FB_BE_15_8 signals.</p> <p>0000 FB_TBST 0001 FB_CS2</p>

Table continues on the next page...

FB_CSPMCR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0010 $\overline{\text{FB_BE_15_8}}$ Any other value Reserved
15–12 GROUP5	FlexBus Signal Group 5 Multiplex control Controls the multiplexing of the $\overline{\text{FB_TA}}$, $\overline{\text{FB_CS3}}$, and $\overline{\text{FB_BE_7_0}}$ signals. NOTE: When GROUP5 is not 0000b, you must write 1b to the CSCR[AA] bit. Otherwise, the bus hangs during a transfer. 0000 $\overline{\text{FB_TA}}$ 0001 $\overline{\text{FB_CS3}}$. You must also write 1b to CSCR[AA]. 0010 $\overline{\text{FB_BE_7_0}}$. You must also write 1b to CSCR[AA]. Any other value Reserved
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

35.5 Functional description

35.5.1 Use cases

In general, FlexBus supports the following use cases, but note that your device may not support all of these use cases, because of limitations imposed by your specific package's pinouts:

- Multiplexed 32-bit address and 32-bit data
- Multiplexed 32-bit address and 16-bit data (non-multiplexed 16-bit address and 16-bit data)
- Multiplexed 32-bit address and 8-bit data (non-multiplexed 24-bit address and 8-bit data)
- Non-multiplexed 32-bit address and 32-bit data busses

NOTE

All use cases require signals to actually be available on the pins of your specific device package. Refer to your specific device's signal multiplexing table to verify the availability of specific signals for your device package.

35.5.2 Address comparison

When a bus cycle is routed to FlexBus, FlexBus compares the transfer address to the base address (see CSAR[BA]) and base address mask (see CSMR[BAM]). This table describes how FlexBus decides to assert a chip-select and complete the bus cycle based on the address comparison.

When the transfer address	Then FlexBus
Matches one address register configuration	Asserts the appropriate chip-select, generating a FlexBus bus cycle as defined in the appropriate CSCR. If CSMR[WP] is set and a write access is performed, FlexBus terminates the internal bus cycle with a bus error, does not assert a chip-select, and does not perform an external bus cycle.
Does not match an address register configuration	Terminates the transfer with a bus error response, does not assert a chip-select, and does not perform a FlexBus cycle.
Matches more than one address register configuration	Terminates the transfer with a bus error response, does not assert a chip-select, and does not perform a FlexBus cycle.

35.5.3 Address driven on address bus

FlexBus always drives a 32-bit address on the FB_AD bus regardless of the external memory's or peripheral's address size.

35.5.4 Connecting address/data lines

The external device must connect its address and data lines as follows:

- Address lines
 - FB_AD from FB_AD0 upward
- Data lines
 - If CSCR[BLS] = 0, FB_AD from FB_AD31 downward
 - If CSCR[BLS] = 1, FB_AD from FB_AD0 upward

35.5.5 Bit ordering

No bit ordering is required when connecting address and data lines to the FB_AD bus. For example, a full 16-bit address/16-bit data device connects its addr15–addr0 to FB_AD16–FB_AD1 and data15–data0 to FB_AD31–FB_AD16. See [Data-byte alignment and physical connections](#) for a graphical connection.

35.5.6 Data transfer signals

Data transfers between FlexBus and the external memory or peripheral involve these signals:

- Address/data bus (FB_AD31–FB_AD0)
- Control signals ($\overline{\text{FB_TS}}/\overline{\text{FB_ALE}}$, $\overline{\text{FB_TA}}$, $\overline{\text{FB_CS}}_n$, $\overline{\text{FB_OE}}$, $\text{FB_R}/\overline{\text{W}}$, $\overline{\text{FB_BE}}_n$)
- Attribute signals ($\overline{\text{FB_TBST}}$)

35.5.7 Signal transitions

These signals change on the rising edge of the FlexBus clock (FB_CLK):

- Address
- Write data
- $\overline{\text{FB_TS}}/\overline{\text{FB_ALE}}$
- $\overline{\text{FB_CS}}_n$
- All attribute signals

FlexBus latches the read data on the rising edge of the clock.

35.5.8 Data-byte alignment and physical connections

The device aligns data transfers in FlexBus byte lanes with the number of lanes depending on the data port width.

The following figure shows the byte lanes that external memory or peripheral connects to and the sequential transfers of a 32-bit transfer for the supported port sizes when byte lane shift is disabled. For example, an 8-bit memory connects to the single lane FB_AD31–FB_AD24 ($\overline{\text{FB_BE}}_{31_24}$). A 32-bit transfer through this 8-bit port takes four transfers, starting with the LSB to the MSB. A 32-bit transfer through a 32-bit port requires one transfer on each four-byte lane.

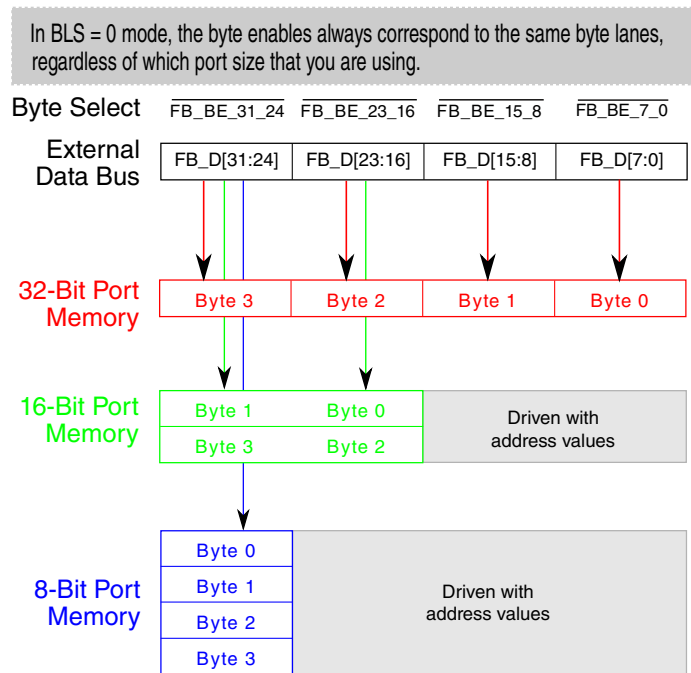


Figure 35-2. Connections for external memory port sizes (CSCRn[BLS] = 0)

The following figure shows the byte lanes that external memory or peripheral connects to and the sequential transfers of a 32-bit transfer for the supported port sizes when byte lane shift is enabled.

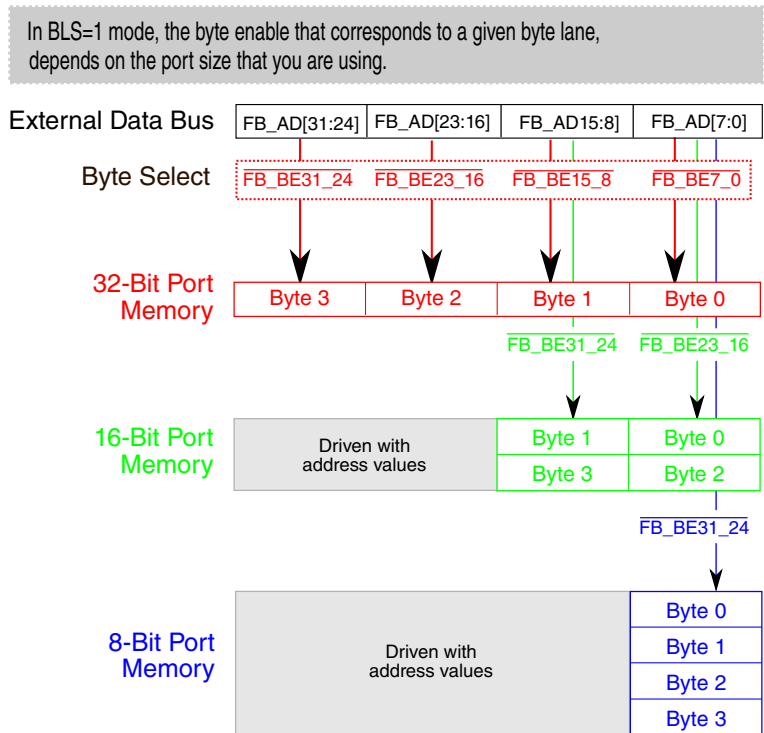


Figure 35-3. Connections for external memory port sizes (CSCRn[BLS] = 1)

35.5.9 Address/data bus multiplexing

FlexBus supports a single 32-bit wide multiplexed address and data bus (FB_AD31–FB_AD0). FlexBus always drives the full 32-bit address on the first clock of a bus cycle. During the data phase, the FB_AD31–FB_AD0 lines used for data are determined by the programmed port size and BLS setting for the corresponding chip-select. FlexBus continues to drive the address on any FB_AD31–FB_AD0 lines not used for data.

35.5.9.1 FlexBus multiplexed operating modes for CSCRn[BLS]=0

This table shows the supported combinations of address and data bus widths when CSCRn[BLS] is 0b.

Port size and phase		FB_AD			
		31–24	23–16	15–8	7–0
32-bit	Address phase	Address			
	Data phase	Data			
16-bit	Address phase	Address			
	Data phase	Data		Address	
8-bit	Address phase	Address			
	Data phase	Data	Address		

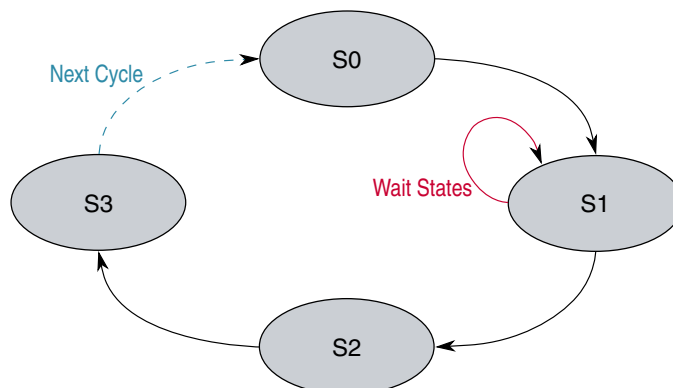
35.5.9.2 FlexBus multiplexed operating modes for CSCRn[BLS]=1

This table shows the supported combinations of address and data bus widths when CSCRn[BLS] is 1b.

Port size and phase		FB_AD			
		31–24	23–16	15–8	7–0
32-bit	Address phase	Address			
	Data phase	Data			
16-bit	Address phase	Address			
	Data phase	Address		Data	
8-bit	Address phase	Address			
	Data phase	Address			Data

35.5.10 Data transfer states

Basic data transfers occur in four clocks or states. (See [Figure 35-5](#) and [Figure 35-7](#) for examples of basic data transfers.) The FlexBus state machine controls the data-transfer operation. This figure shows the state-transition diagram for basic read and write cycles.



The states are described in this table.

State	Cycle	Description
S0	All	The read or write cycle is initiated. On the rising clock edge, FlexBus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Places a valid address on FB_ADn Asserts $\overline{\text{FB_TS}}/\text{FB_ALE}$ Drives FB_R/$\overline{\text{W}}$ high for a read and low for a write
S1	All	FlexBus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Negates $\overline{\text{FB_TS}}/\text{FB_ALE}$ on the rising edge of FB_CLK Asserts FB_CS_n Drives the data on FB_AD31–FB_ADX for writes Tristates FB_AD31–FB_ADX for reads Continues to drive the address on FB_AD pins that are unused for data <p>If the external memory or peripheral asserts $\overline{\text{FB_TA}}$, then the process moves to S2. If $\overline{\text{FB_TA}}$ is not asserted internally or externally, then S1 repeats.</p>
	Read	The external memory or peripheral drives the data before the next rising edge of FB_CLK (the rising edge that begins S2) with $\overline{\text{FB_TA}}$ asserted.
S2	All	For internal termination, FlexBus negates $\overline{\text{FB_CS}}_n$ and the transfer is complete. For external termination, the external memory or peripheral negates $\overline{\text{FB_TA}}$, and FlexBus negates $\overline{\text{FB_CS}}_n$ after the rising edge of FB_CLK at the end of S2.
	Read	FlexBus latches the data on the rising clock edge entering S2. The external memory or peripheral can stop driving the data after this edge or continue to drive the data until the end of S3 or through any additional address hold cycles.
S3	All	FlexBus invalidates the address, data, and FB_R/ $\overline{\text{W}}$ on the rising edge of FB_CLK at the beginning of S3, terminating the transfer.

35.5.11 FlexBus Timing Examples

Note

The timing diagrams throughout this section use signal names that may not be included on your particular device. Ignore these extraneous signals.

Note

Throughout this section:

- FB_D[X] indicates a 32-, 16-, or 8-bit wide data bus
- FB_A[Y] indicates an address bus that can be 32, 24, or 16 bits wide.

35.5.11.1 Basic Read Bus Cycle

During a read cycle, the MCU receives data from memory or a peripheral device. The following figure shows a read cycle flowchart.

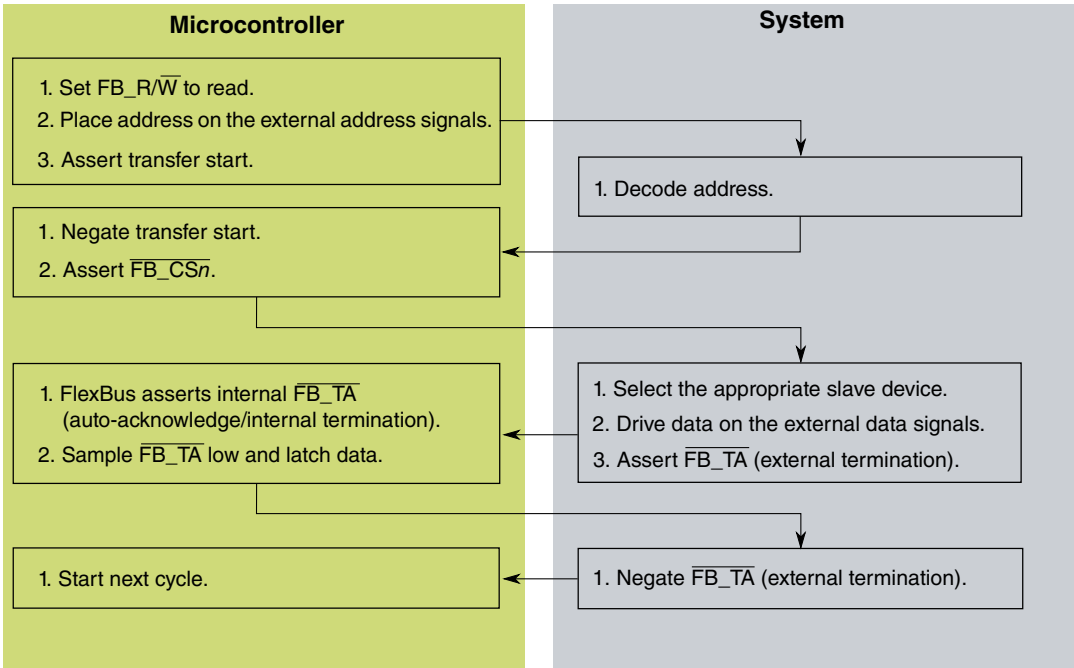


Figure 35-4. Read Cycle Flowchart

The read cycle timing diagram is shown in the following figure.

Note

$\overline{\text{FB_TA}}$ does not have to be driven by the external device for internally-terminated bus cycles.

Note

The processor drives the data lines during the first clock cycle of the transfer with the full 32-bit address. This may be ignored by standard connected devices using non-multiplexed address and data buses. However, some applications may find this feature beneficial.

The address and data busses are muxed between the FlexBus and another module. At the end of the read bus cycles the address signals are indeterminate.

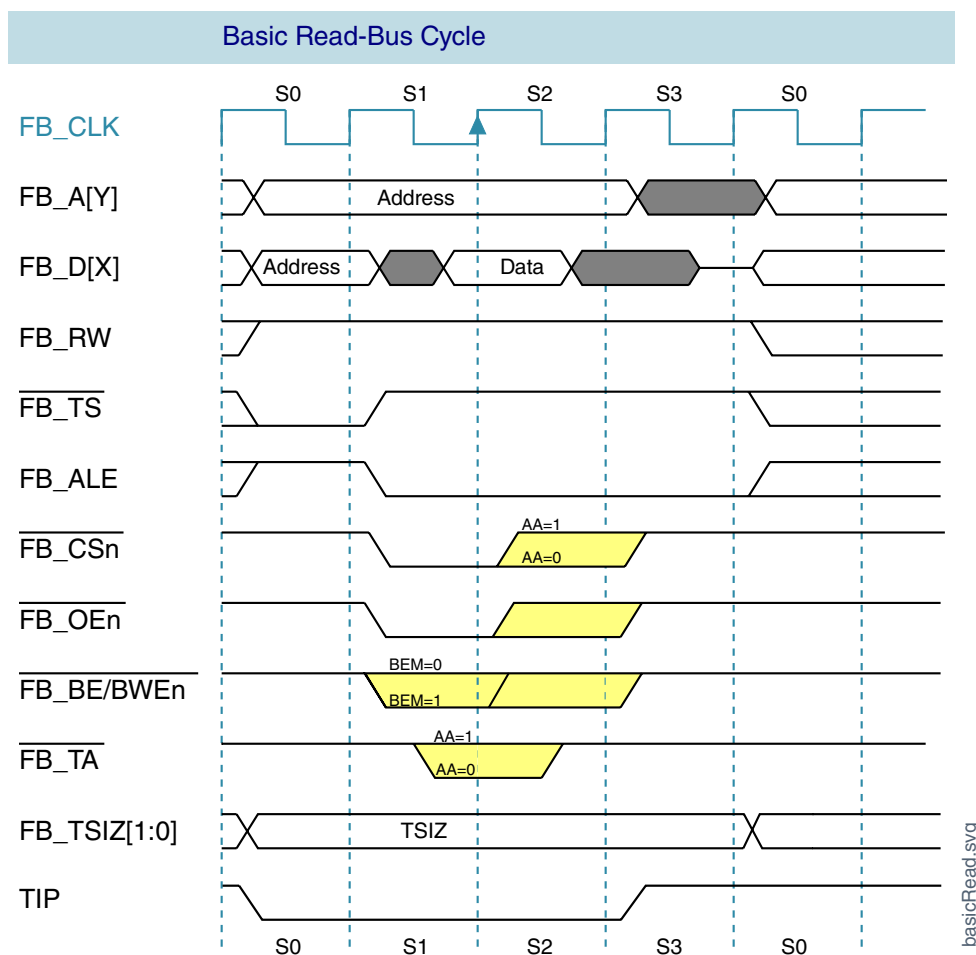


Figure 35-5. Basic Read-Bus Cycle

35.5.11.2 Basic Write Bus Cycle

During a write cycle, the device sends data to memory or to a peripheral device. The following figure shows the write cycle flowchart.

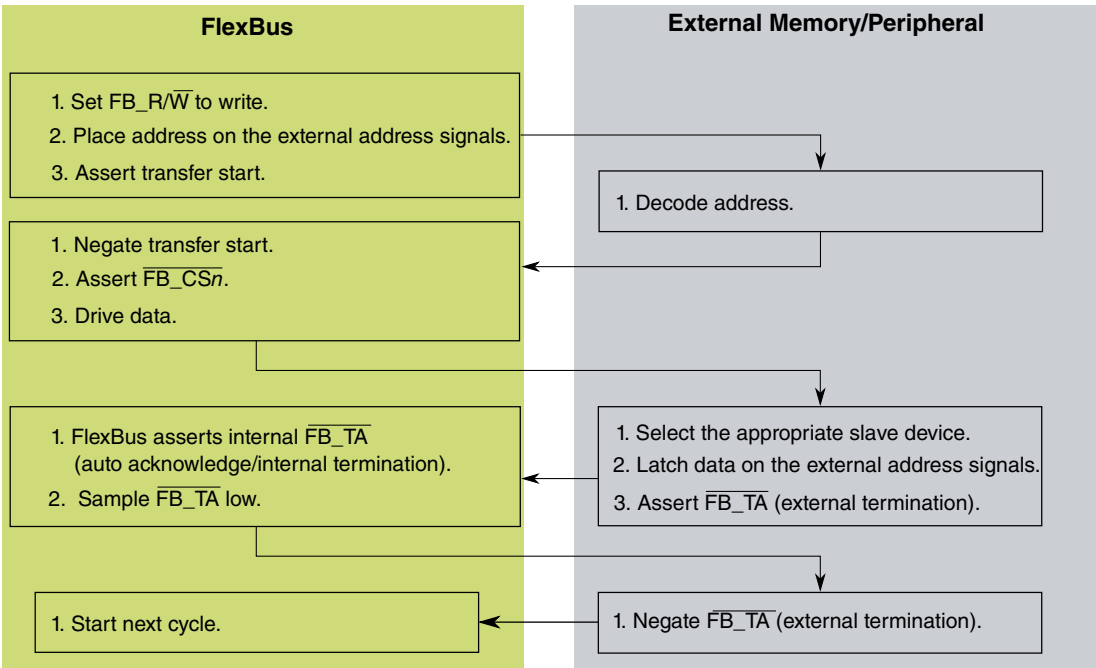


Figure 35-6. Write-Cycle Flowchart

The following figure shows the write cycle timing diagram.

Note

The address and data busses are muxed between the FlexBus and another module. At the end of the write bus cycles, the address signals are indeterminate.

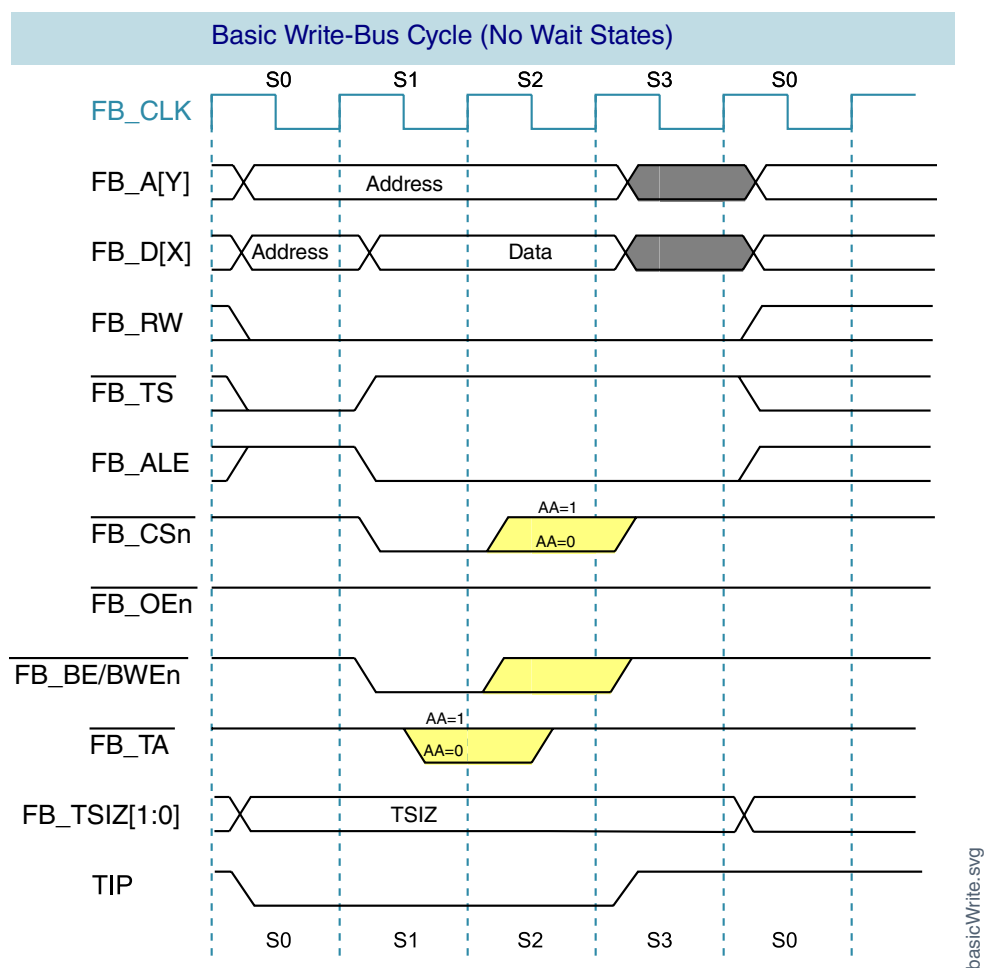


Figure 35-7. Basic Write-Bus Cycle

35.5.11.3 Bus Cycle Sizing

This section shows timing diagrams for various port size scenarios.

35.5.11.3.1 Bus Cycle Sizing—Byte Transfer, 8-bit Device, No Wait States

The following figure illustrates the basic byte read transfer to an 8-bit device with no wait states:

- The address is driven on the full FB_AD[31:0] bus in the first clock.

- The device tristates FB_AD[31:24] on the second clock and continues to drive address on FB_AD[23:0] throughout the bus cycle.
- The external device returns the read data on FB_AD[31:24] and may tristate the data line or continue driving the data one clock after FB_TA is sampled asserted.

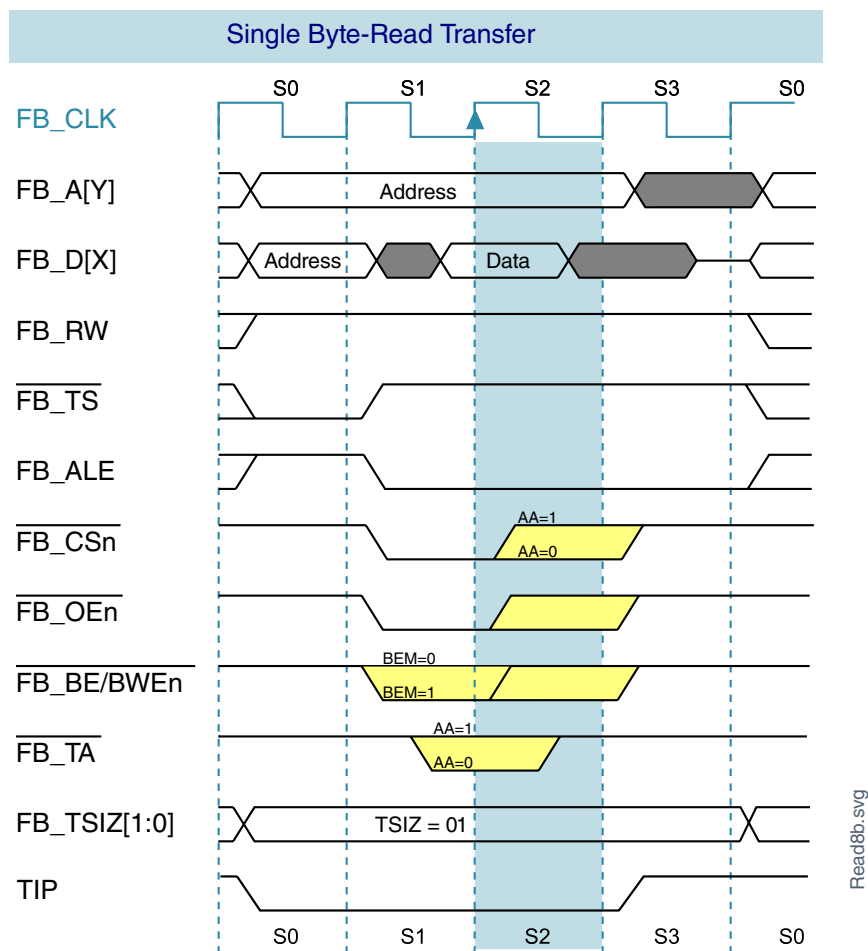


Figure 35-8. Single Byte-Read Transfer

The following figure shows the similar configuration for a write transfer. The data is driven from the second clock on FB_AD[31:24].

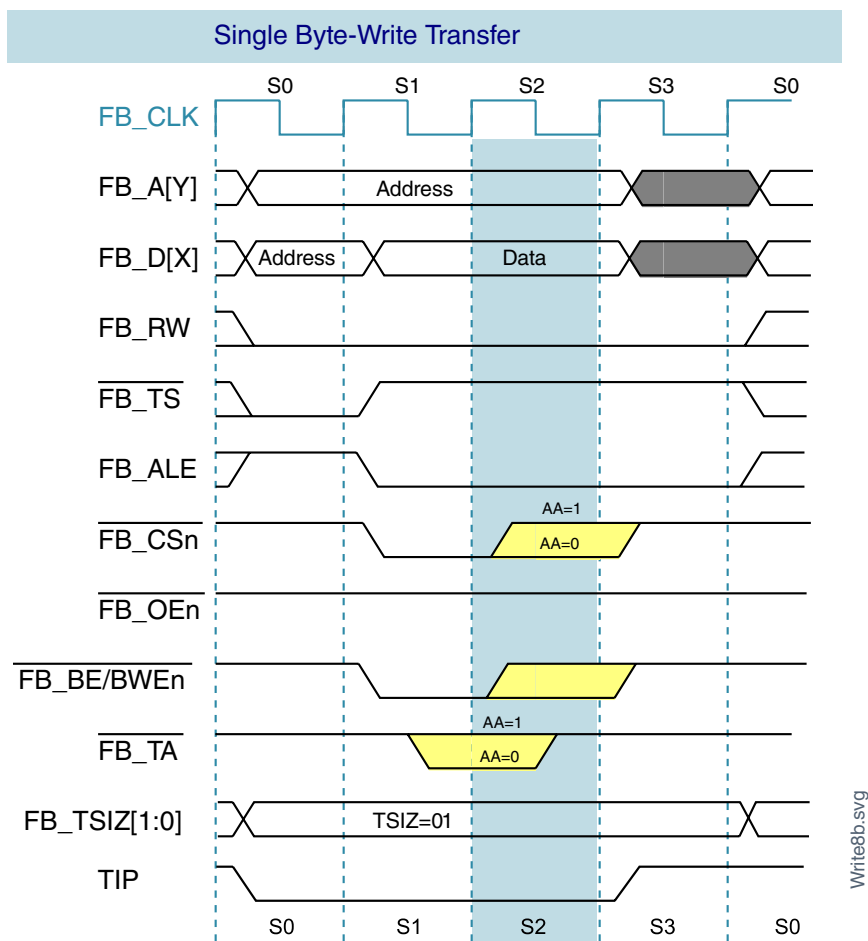


Figure 35-9. Single Byte-Write Transfer

35.5.11.3.2 Bus Cycle Sizing—Word Transfer, 16-bit Device, No Wait States

The following figure illustrates the basic word read transfer to a 16-bit device with no wait states.

- The address is driven on the full FB_AD[31:8] bus in the first clock.
- The device tristates FB_AD[31:16] on the second clock and continues to drive address on FB_AD[15:0] throughout the bus cycle.
- The external device returns the read data on FB_AD[31:16] and may tristate the data line or continue driving the data one clock after FB_TA is sampled asserted.

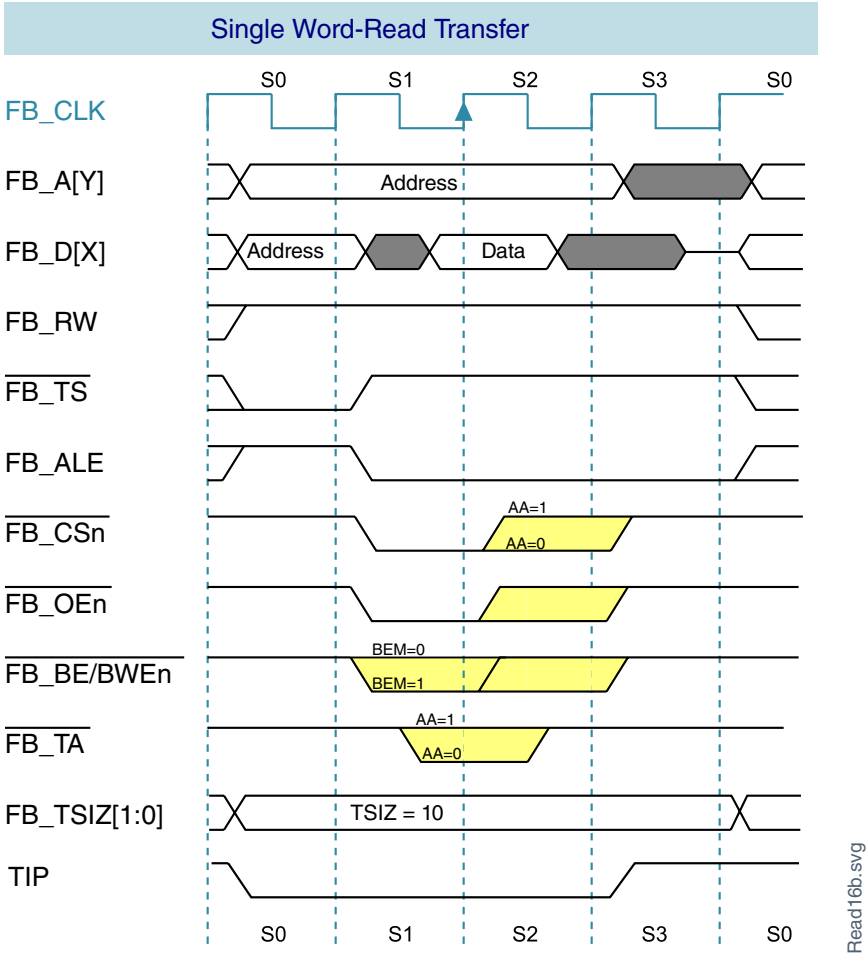


Figure 35-10. Single Word-Read Transfer

The following figure shows the similar configuration for a write transfer. The data is driven from the second clock on FB_AD[31:16].

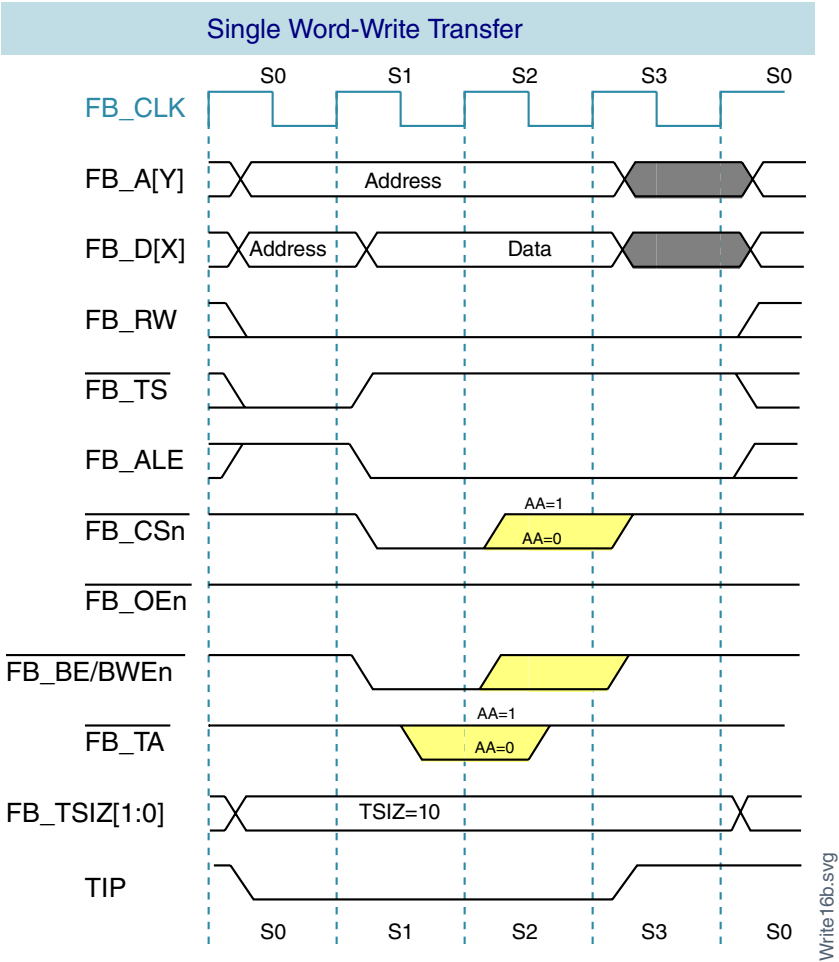


Figure 35-11. Single Word-Write Transfer

35.5.11.3.3 Bus Cycle Sizing—Longword Transfer, 32-bit Device, No Wait States

The following figure depicts a longword read from a 32-bit device.



Figure 35-12. Longword-Read Transfer

The following figure illustrates the longword write to a 32-bit device.

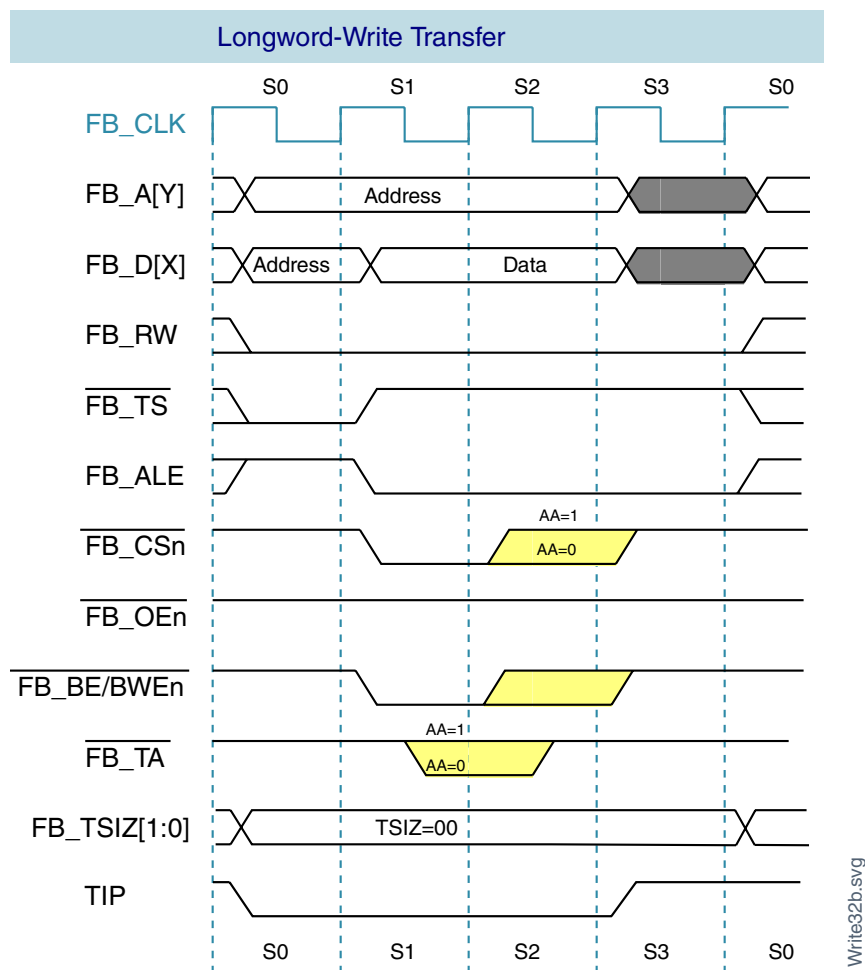


Figure 35-13. Longword-Write Transfer

35.5.11.4 Timing Variations

The FlexBus module has several features that can change the timing characteristics of a basic read- or write-bus cycle to provide additional address setup, address hold, and time for a device to provide or latch data.

35.5.11.4.1 Wait States

Wait states can be inserted before each beat of a transfer by programming the $CSCR_n$ registers. Wait states can give the peripheral or memory more time to return read data or sample write data.

The following figures show the basic read and write bus cycles (also shown in [Figure 35-5](#) and [Figure 35-10](#)) with the default of no wait states respectively.

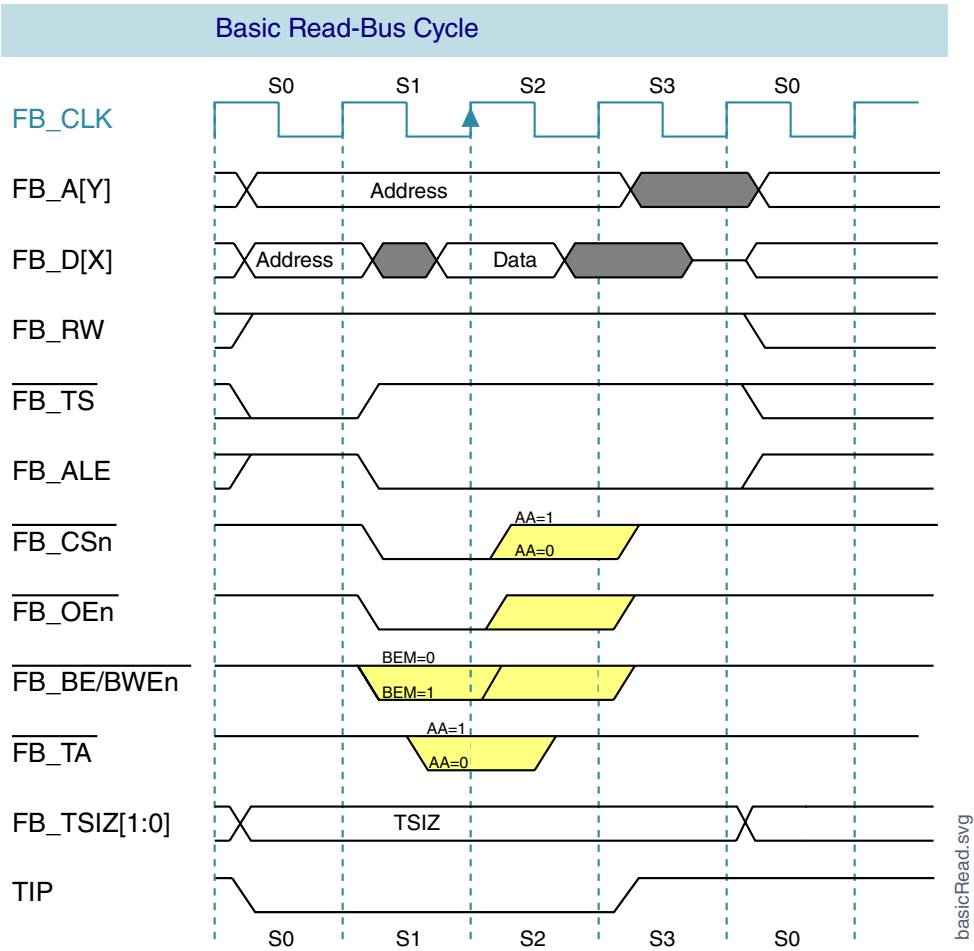


Figure 35-14. Basic Read-Bus Cycle (No Wait States)

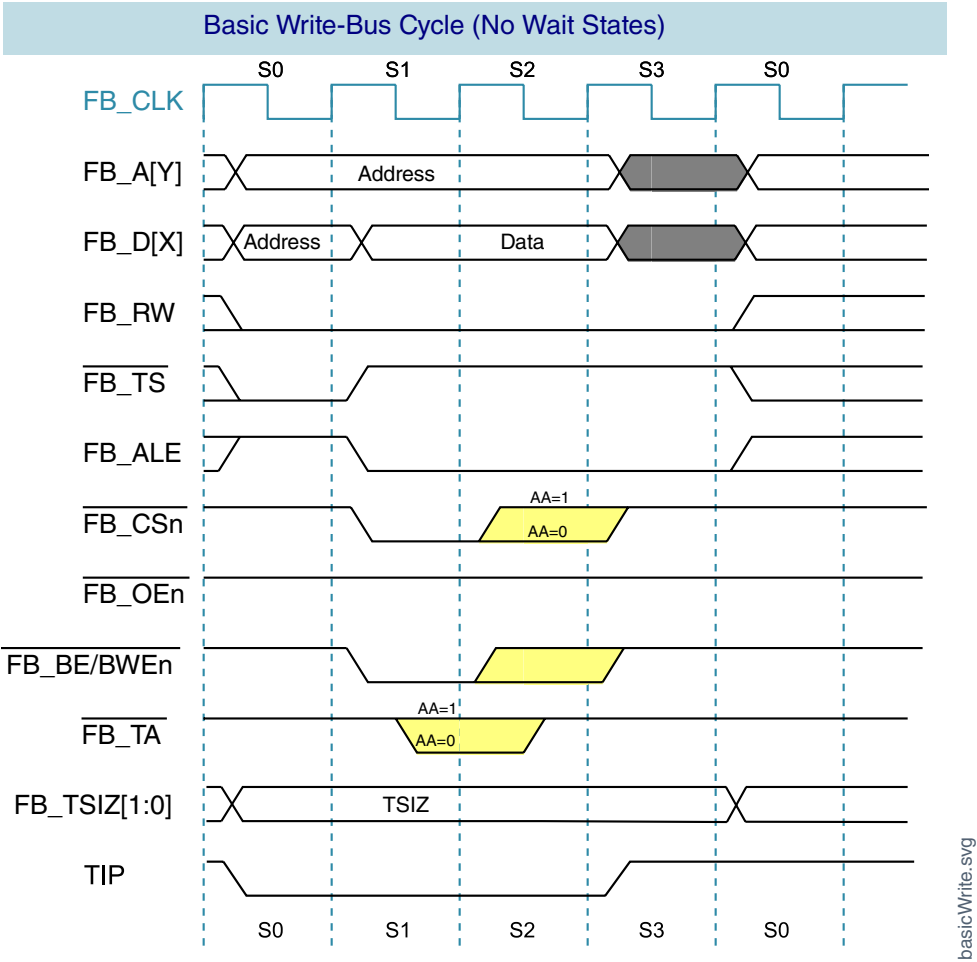


Figure 35-15. Basic Write-Bus Cycle (No Wait States)

If wait states are used, the S1 state repeats continuously until the chip-select auto-acknowledge unit asserts internal transfer acknowledge or the external $\overline{\text{FB_TA}}$ is recognized as asserted. The following figures show a read and write cycle with one wait state respectively.

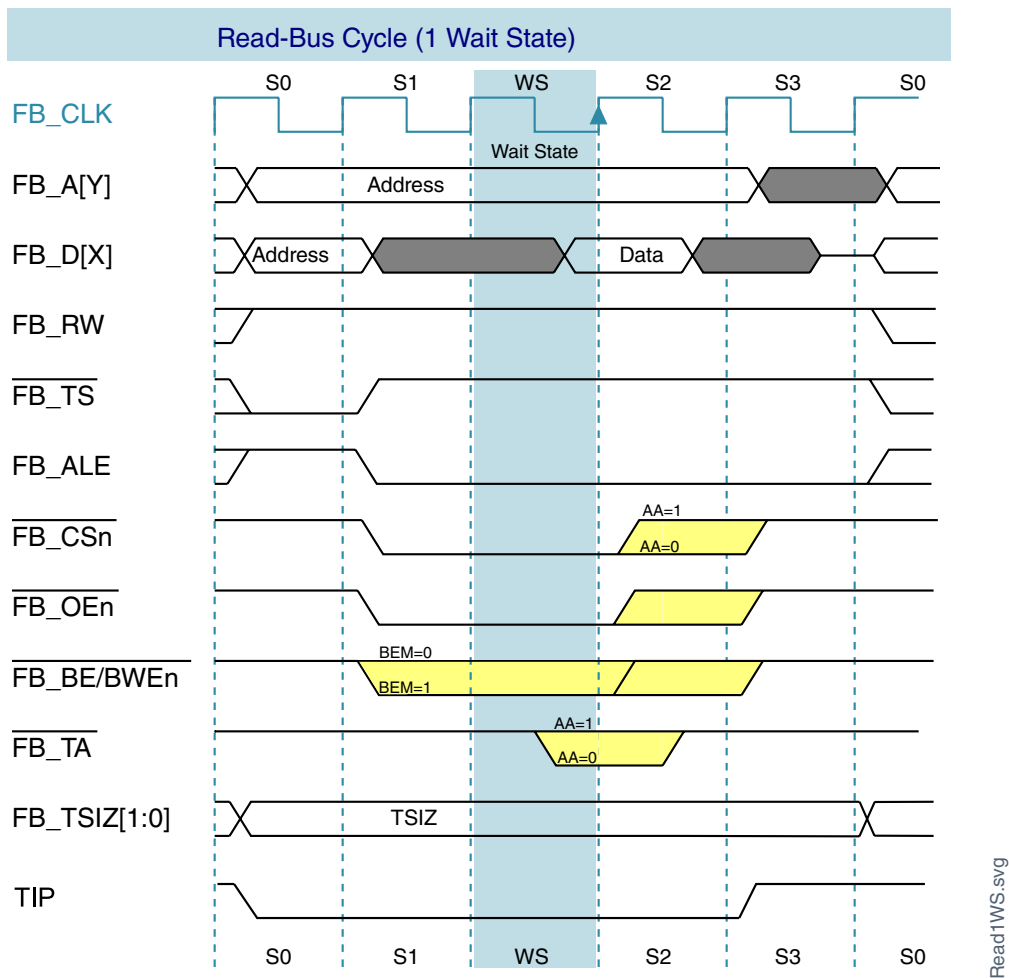


Figure 35-16. Read-Bus Cycle (One Wait State)

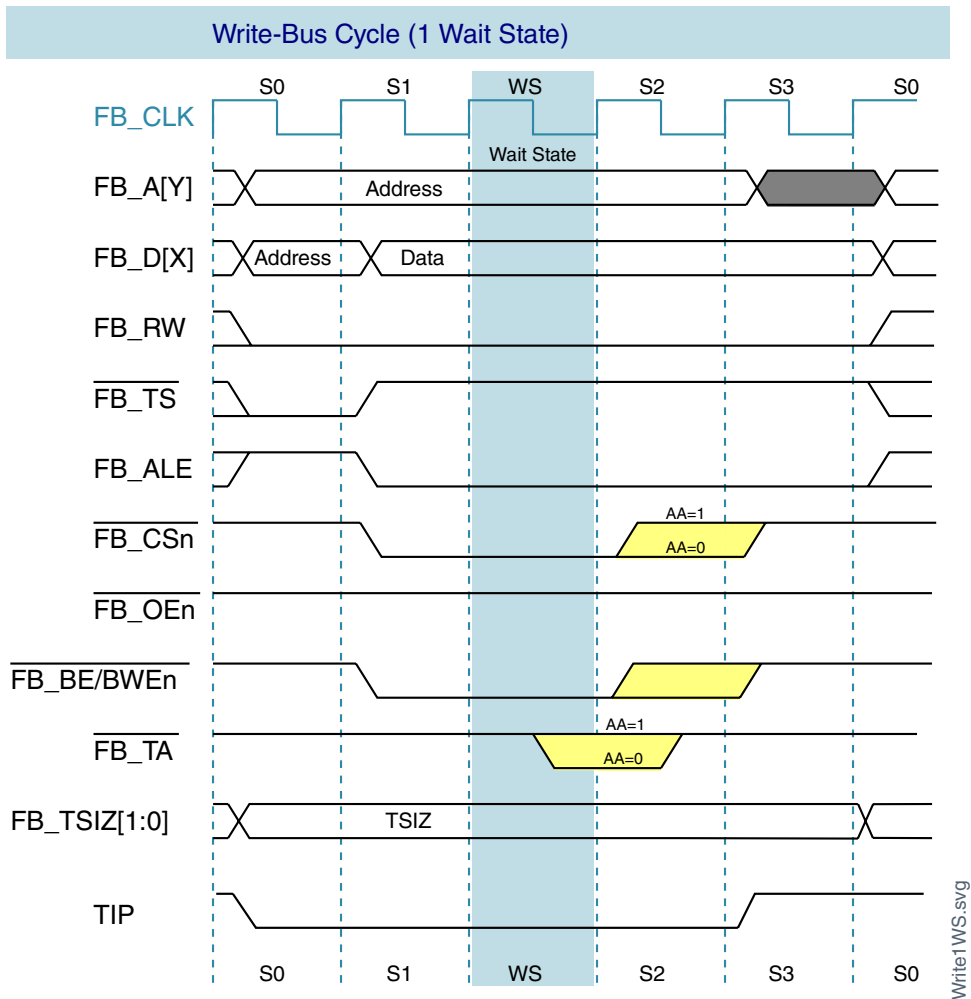


Figure 35-17. Write-Bus Cycle (One Wait State)

35.5.11.4.2 Address Setup and Hold

The timing of the assertion and negation of the chip selects, byte selects, and output enable can be programmed on a chip-select basis. Each chip-select can be programmed to assert one to four clocks after transfer start/address-latch enable ($\overline{\text{FB_TS}}$ / $\overline{\text{FB_ALE}}$) is asserted. The following figures show read- and write-bus cycles with two clocks of address setup respectively.

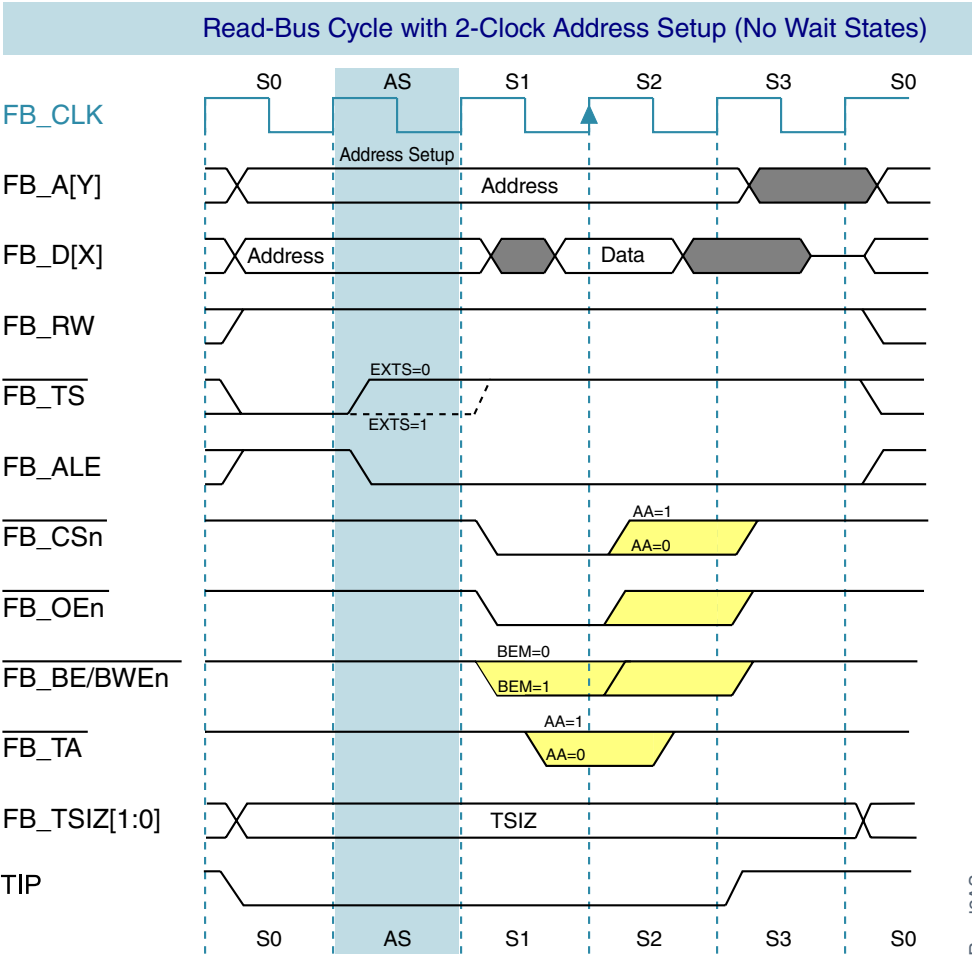


Figure 35-18. Read-Bus Cycle with Two-Clock Address Setup (No Wait States)

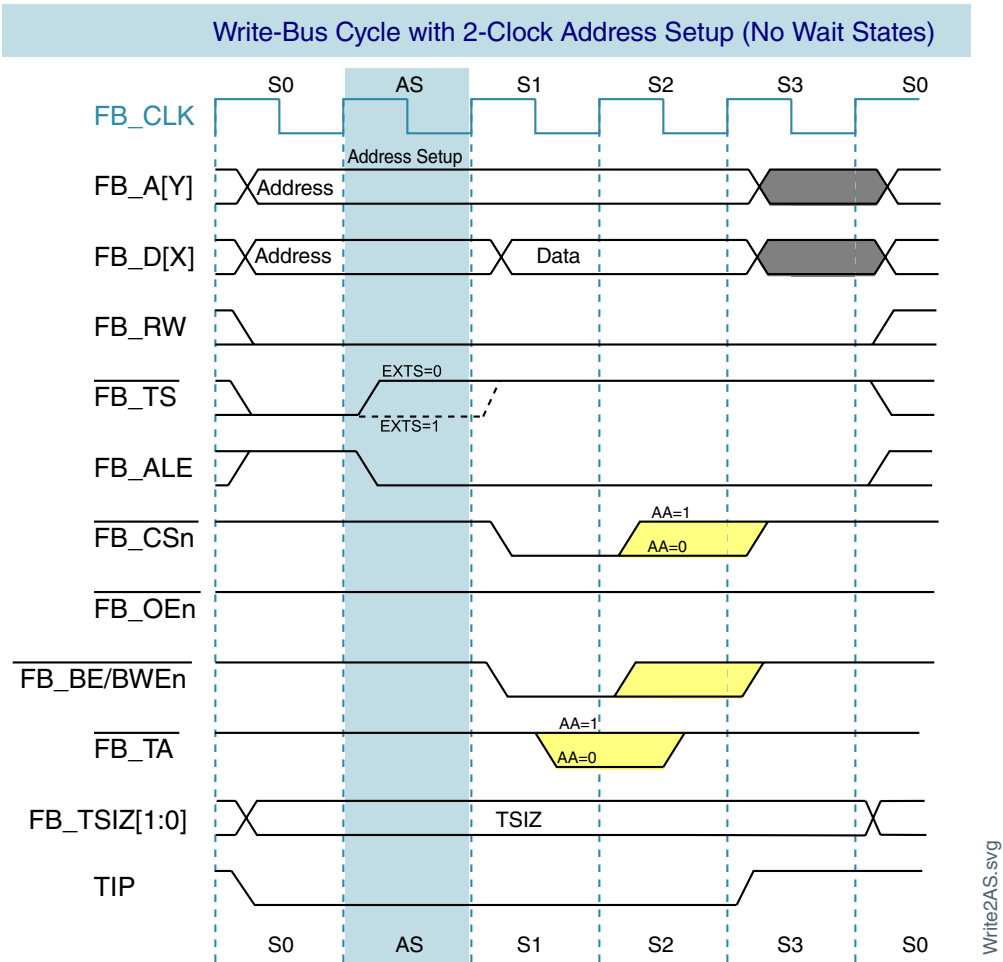


Figure 35-19. Write-Bus Cycle with Two Clock Address Setup (No Wait States)

In addition to address setup, a programmable address hold option for each chip select exists. Address and attributes can be held one to four clocks after chip-select, byte-selects, and output-enable negate. The following figures show read and write bus cycles with two clocks of address hold respectively.

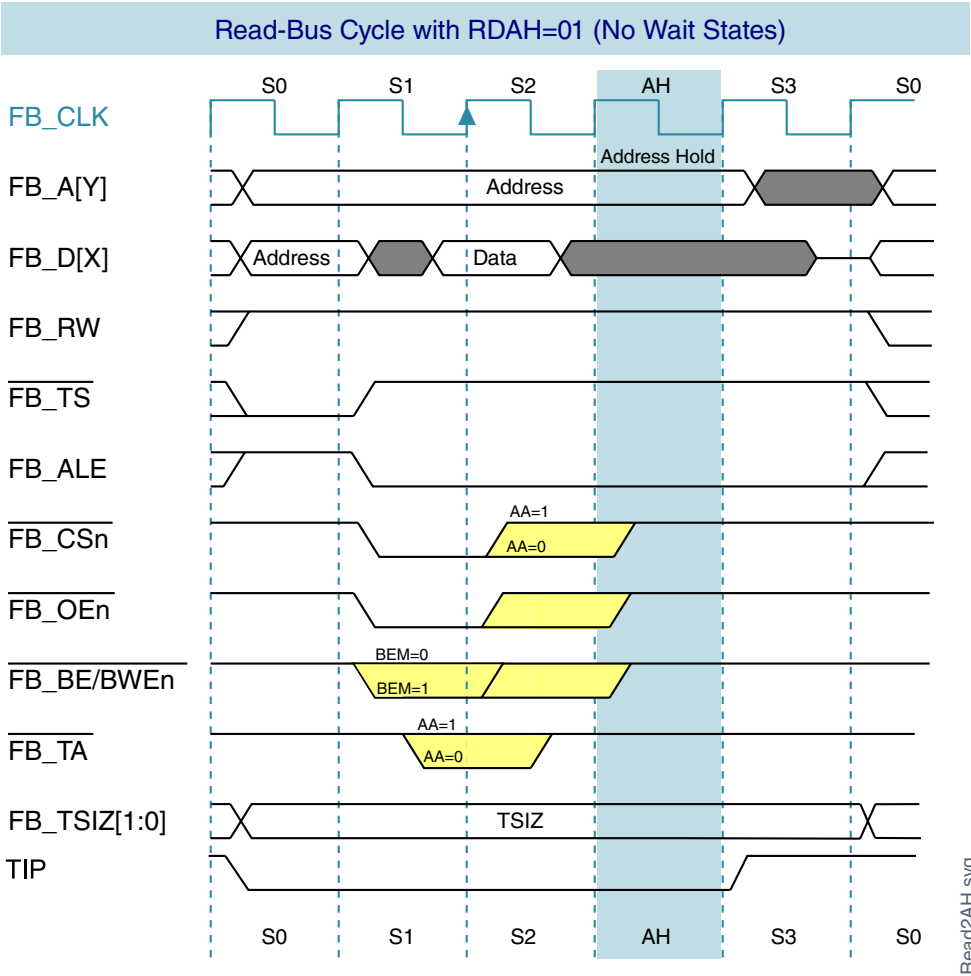


Figure 35-20. Read Cycle with Two-Clock Address Hold (No Wait States)

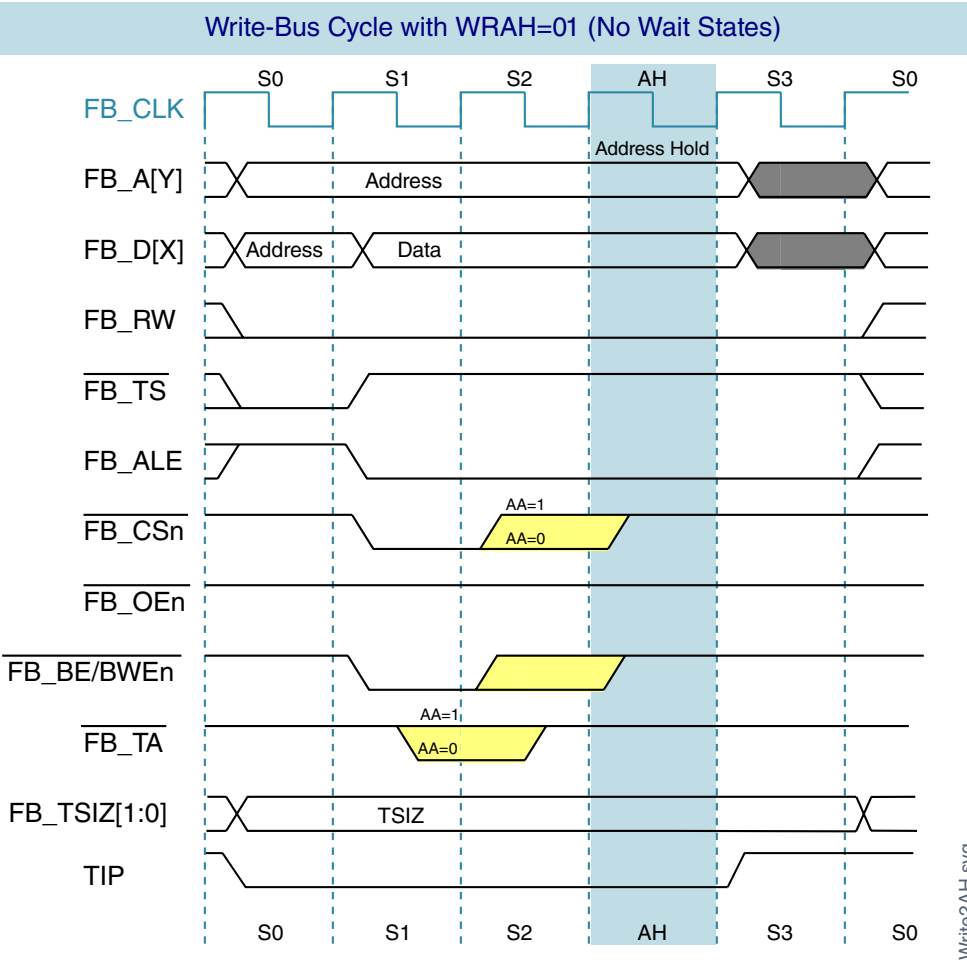


Figure 35-21. Write Cycle with Two-Clock Address Hold (No Wait States)

The following figure shows a bus cycle using address setup, wait states, and address hold.

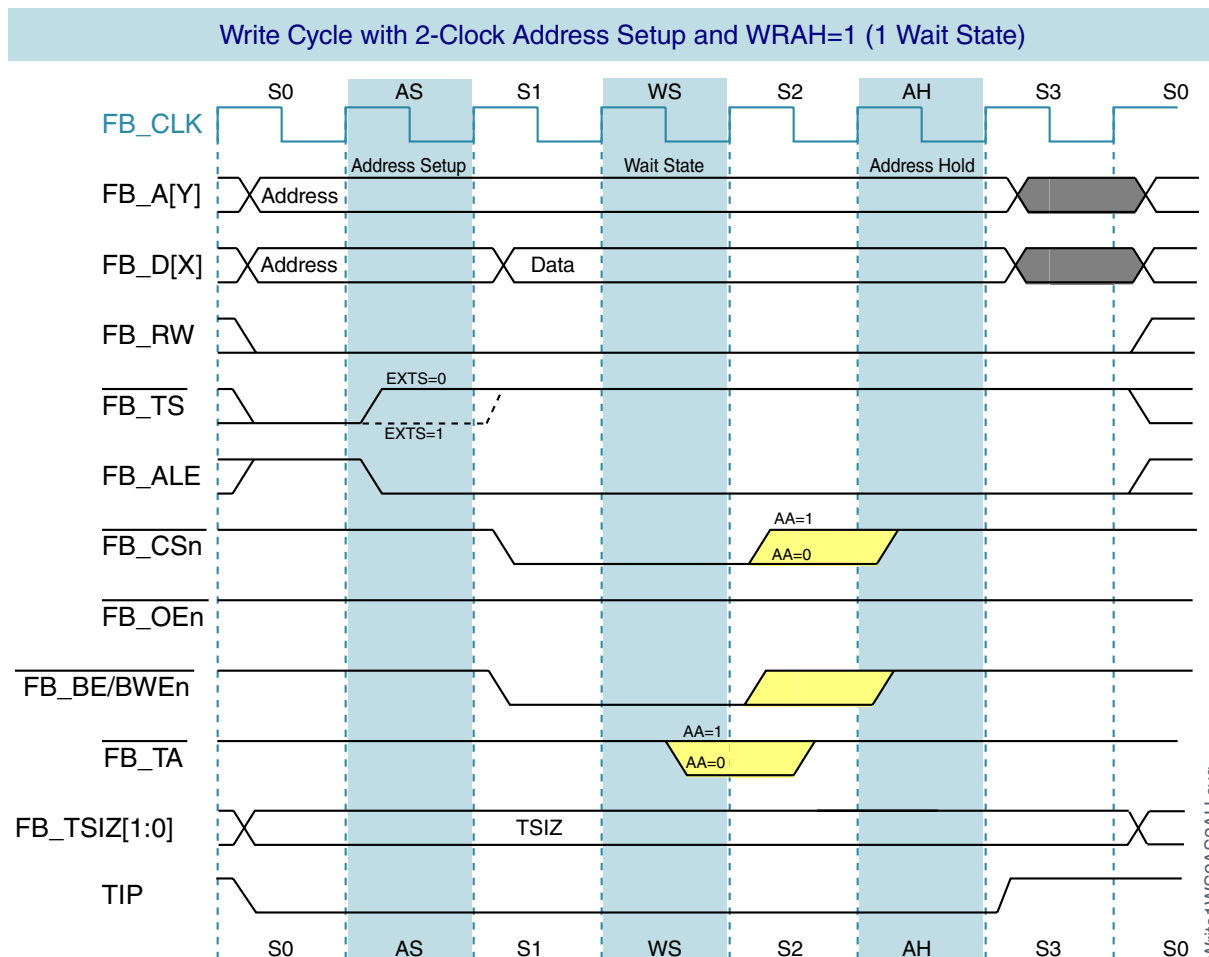


Figure 35-22. Write Cycle with Two-Clock Address Setup and Two-Clock Hold (One Wait State)

35.5.12 Burst cycles

The chip can be programmed to initiate burst cycles if its transfer size exceeds the port size of the selected destination.

35.5.12.1 Enabling and inhibiting burst

The CSCRn registers enable bursting for reads, writes, or both.

Memory spaces can be declared burst-inhibited for reads and writes by writing 0b to the appropriate CSCRn[BSTR] and CSCRn[BSTW] fields.

35.5.12.2 Transfer size and port size translation

With bursting disabled, any transfer larger than the port size breaks into multiple individual transfers (e.g. <Addr><Data><Addr+1><Data><Addr+2><Data>). With bursting enabled, any transfer larger than the port size results in a burst cycle of multiple beats (e.g. <Addr><Data><Data><Data>). The following table shows the result of such transfer translations.

Port size PS[1:0]	Transfer size	Burst-inhibited: Number of transfers
		Burst enabled: Number of beats
01b (8 bit)	16 bits	2
	32 bits	4
1Xb (16 bit)	32 bits	2
00b (32 bit)	line	4

The FlexBus can support X-1-1-1 burst cycles to maximize system performance, where X is the primary number of wait states (max 63). Delaying termination of the cycle can add wait states. If internal termination is used, different wait state counters can be used for the first access and the following beats.

35.5.12.3 32-bit-Read burst from 8-Bit port 2-1-1-1 (no wait states)

The following figure shows a 32-bit read to an 8-bit external chip programmed for burst enable. The transfer results in a 4-beat burst and the data is driven on FB_AD[31:24].

Note

- In **non-multiplexed address/data mode**: the address on FB_A increments only during internally-terminated burst cycles. The first address is driven throughout the entire burst for externally-terminated cycles.
- In **multiplexed address/data mode**: the address is driven on FB_AD only during the first cycle for all terminated cycles. In other words, the lower address lines only increment during internally-terminated burst cycles (assuming that the lower address lines are being driven with the address during the data phase).

32-bit Read Burst from 8-bit port 2-1-1-1, with no Wait states

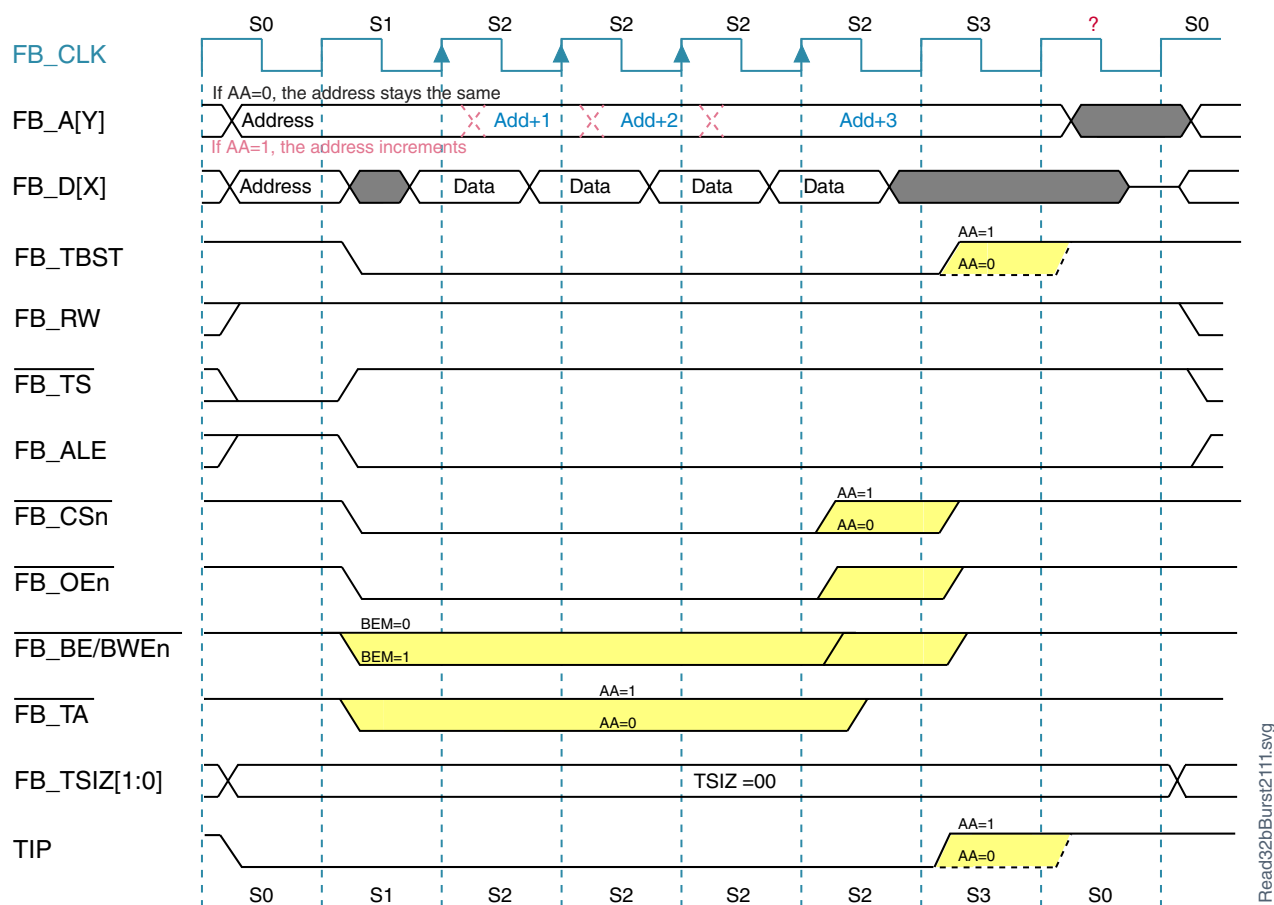


Figure 35-23. 32-bit-Read burst from 8-Bit port 2-1-1-1 (no wait states)

35.5.12.4 32-bit-Write burst to 8-Bit port 3-1-1-1 (no wait states)

The following figure shows a 32-bit write to an 8-bit external chip with burst enabled. The transfer results in a 4-beat burst and the data is driven on FB_AD[31:24].

Note

The first beat of any write burst cycle has at least one wait state. If the bus cycle is programmed for zero wait states (CSCRN[WS] = 0b), one wait state is added. Otherwise, the programmed number of wait states are used.

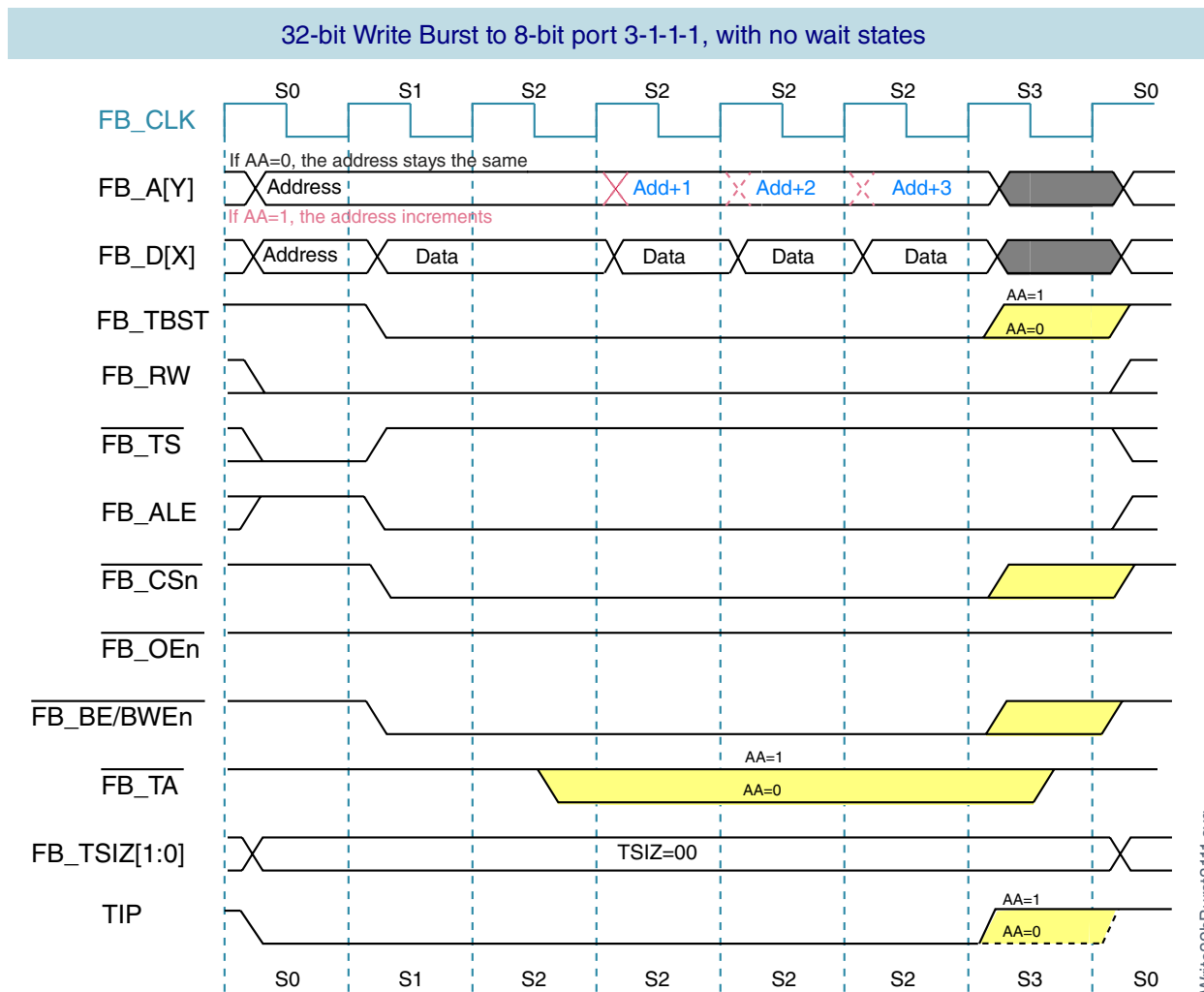


Figure 35-24. 32-bit-Write burst to 8-Bit port 3-1-1-1 (no wait states)

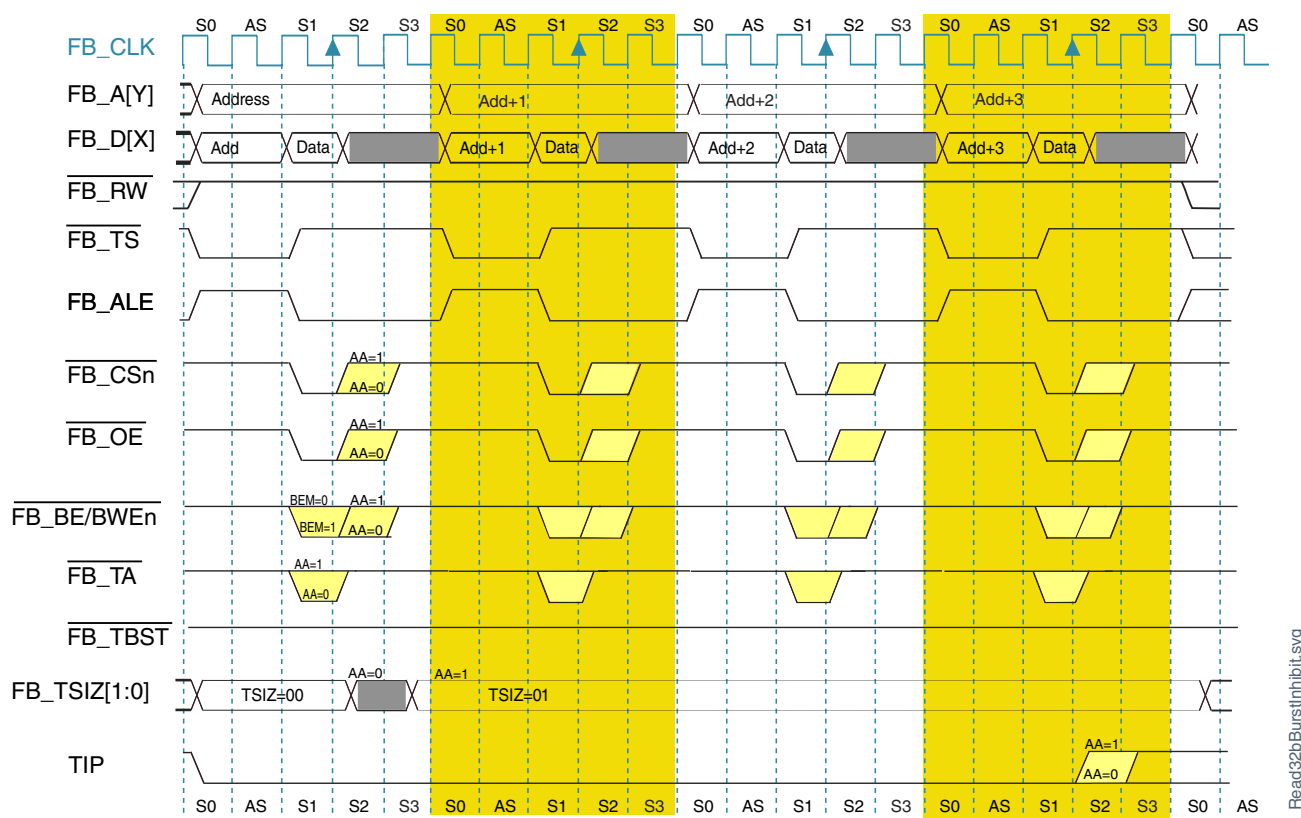
35.5.12.5 32-bit-read burst-inhibited from 8-bit port (no wait states)

The following figure shows a 32-bit read from an 8-bit device with burst inhibited. The transfer results in four individual transfers. The transfer size is driven at 32-bit (00b) during the first transfer and at byte (01b) during the next three transfers.

Note

There is an extra clock of address setup (AS) for each burst-inhibited transfer between states S0 and S1.

32-bit-read burst-inhibited to 8-bit port (no wait states)



35.5.12.6 32-bit-write burst-inhibited to 8-bit port (no wait states)

The following figure shows a 32-bit write to an 8-bit device with burst inhibited. The transfer results in four individual transfers.

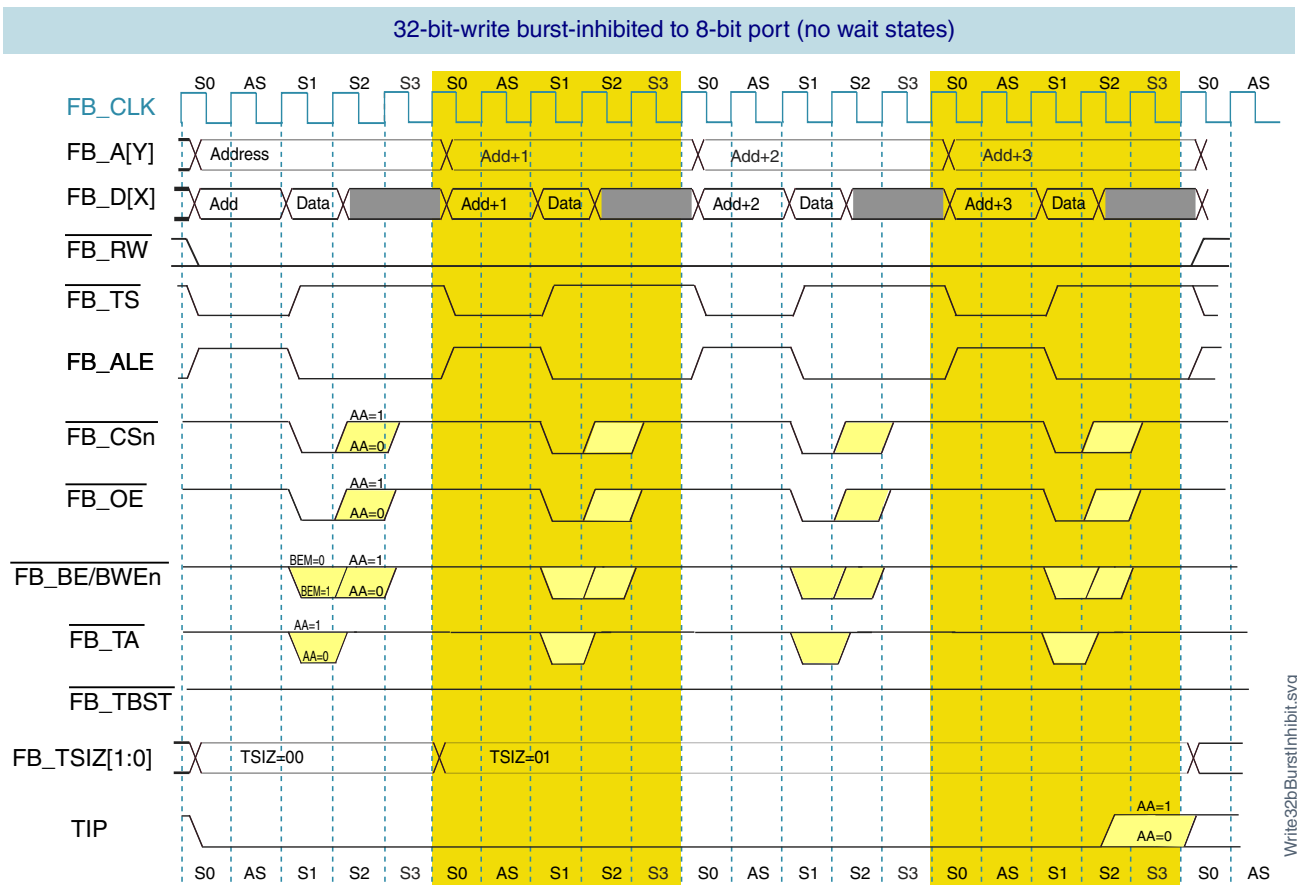


Figure 35-25. 32-bit-write burst-inhibited to 8-bit port (no wait states)

35.5.12.7 32-bit-read burst from 8-bit port 3-2-2-2 (one wait state)

The following figure illustrates another read burst transfer, but in this case a wait state is added between individual beats.

Note

CSCRn[WS] determines the number of wait states in the first beat. However, for subsequent beats, the CSCRn[WS] (or CSCRn[SWS] if CSCRn[SWSEN] = 1b) determines the number of wait states.

32-bit Read Burst from 8-bit port 3-2-2-2, with 1 wait state

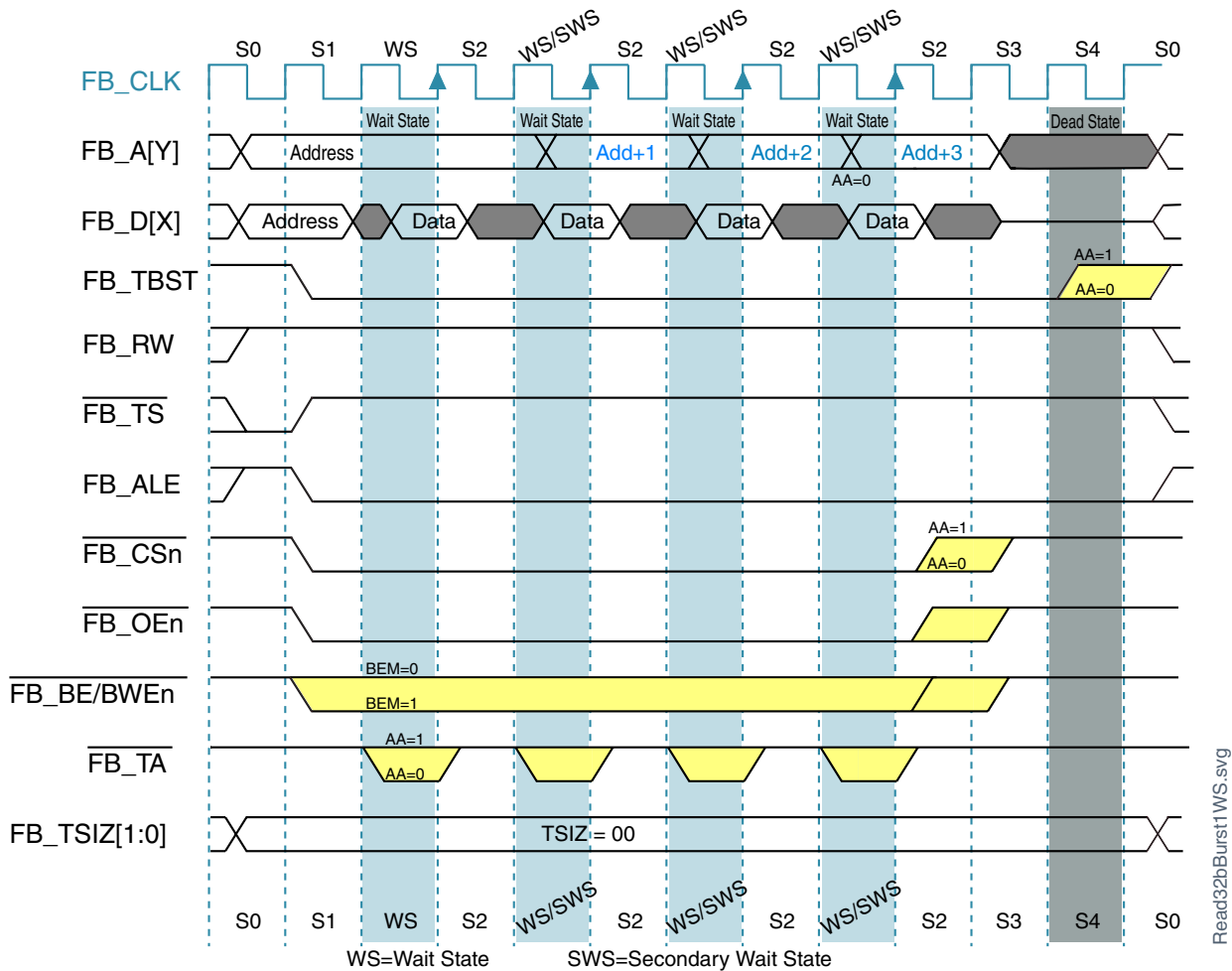


Figure 35-26. 32-bit-read burst from 8-bit port 3-2-2-2 (one wait state)

35.5.12.8 32-bit-write burst to 8-bit port 3-2-2-2 (one wait state)

The following figure illustrates a write burst transfer with one wait state.

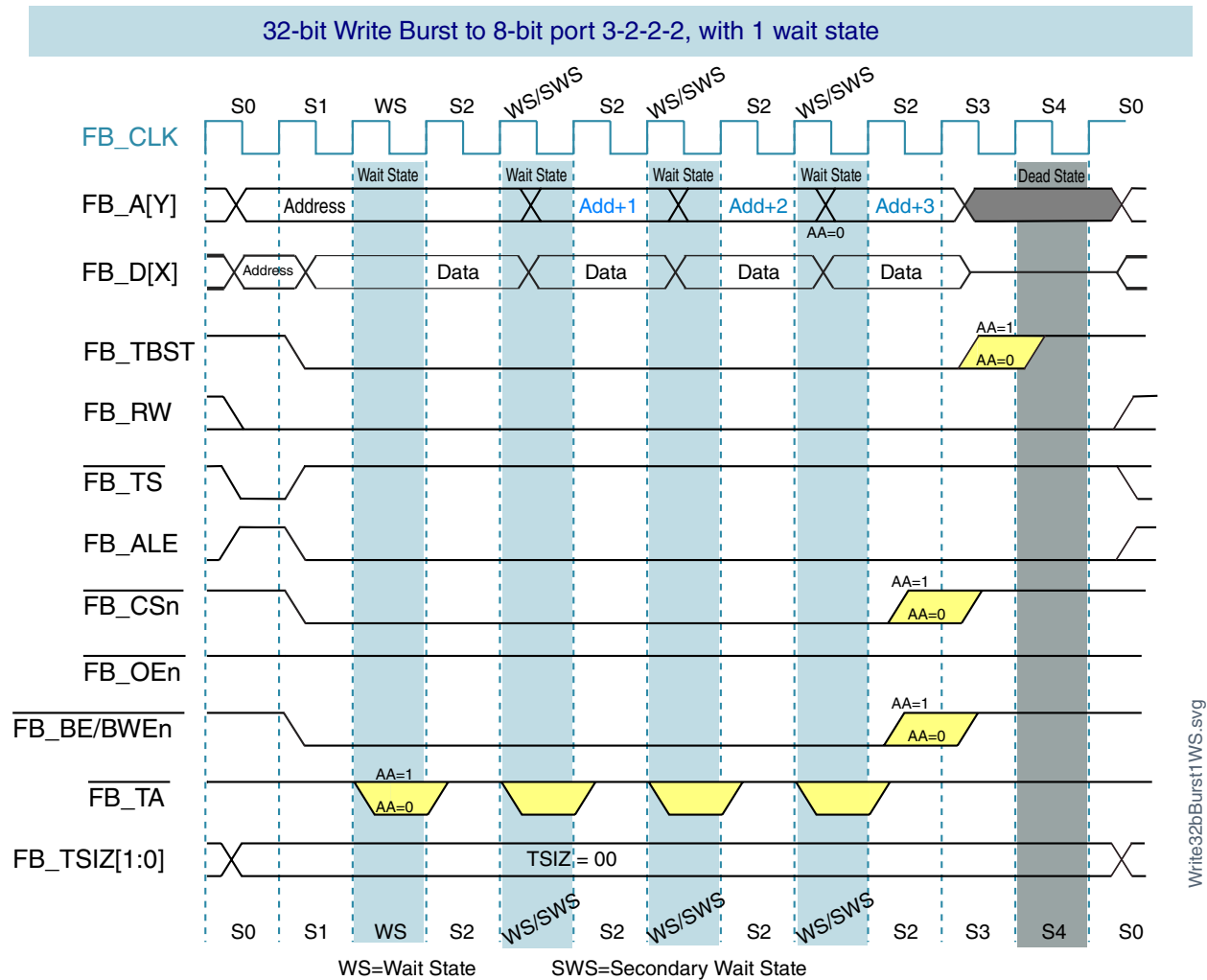


Figure 35-27. 32-bit-write burst to 8-bit port 3-2-2-2 (one wait state)

35.5.12.9 32-bit-read burst from 8-bit port 3-1-1-1 (address setup and hold)

If address setup and hold are used, only the first and last beat of the burst cycle are affected. The following figure shows a read cycle with one clock of address setup and address hold.

Note

In non-multiplexed address/data mode, the address on FB_A increments only during internally-terminated burst cycles (CSCRn[AA] = 1b). The attached device must be able to

account for this, or a wait state must be added. The first address is driven throughout the entire burst for externally-terminated cycles.

In multiplexed address/data mode, the address is driven on FB_AD only during the first cycle for internally- and externally-terminated cycles.

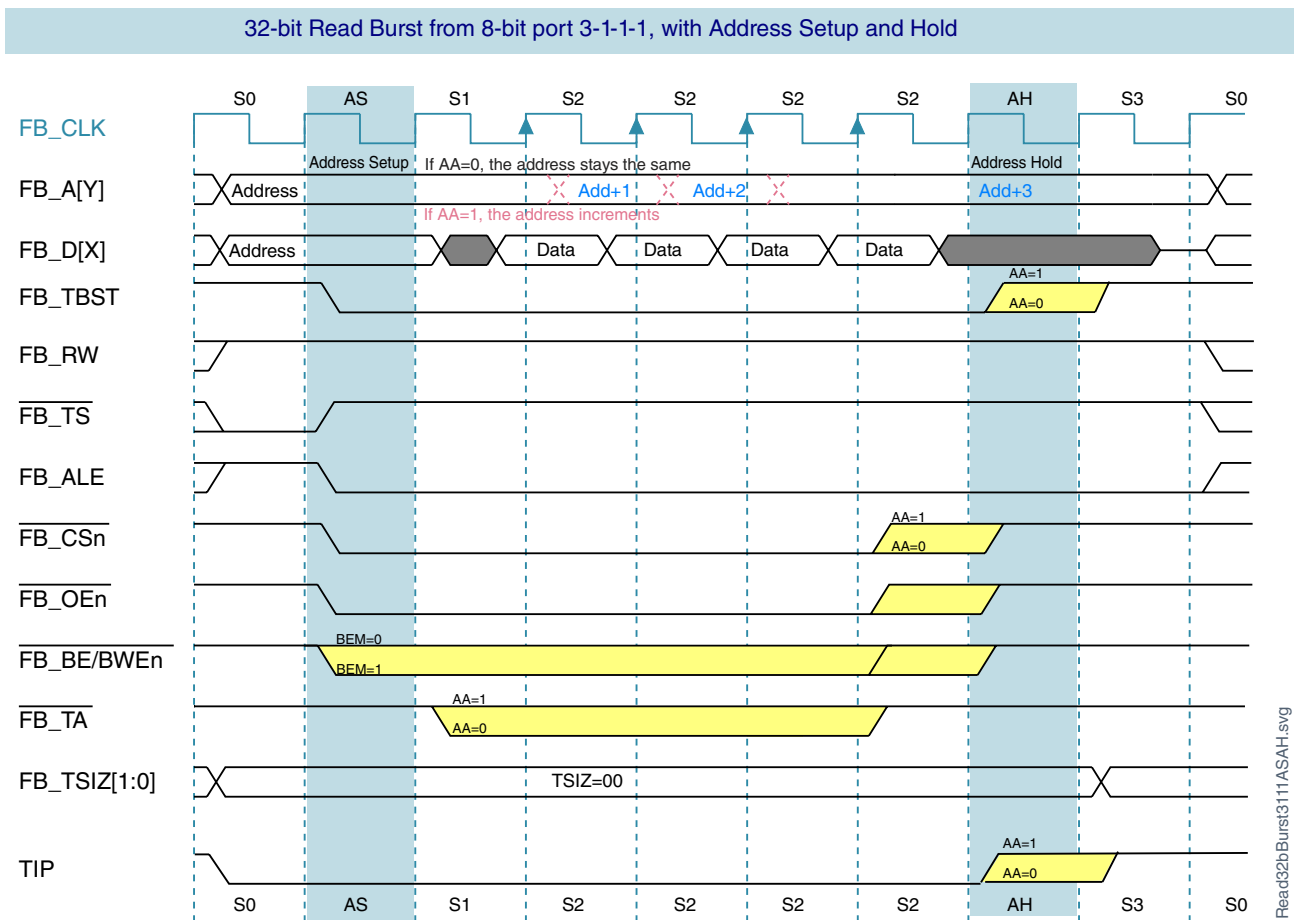


Figure 35-28. 32-bit-read burst from 8-bit port 3-1-1-1 (address setup and hold)

35.5.12.10 32-bit-write burst to 8-bit port 3-1-1-1 (address setup and hold)

The following figure shows a write cycle with one clock of address setup and address hold.

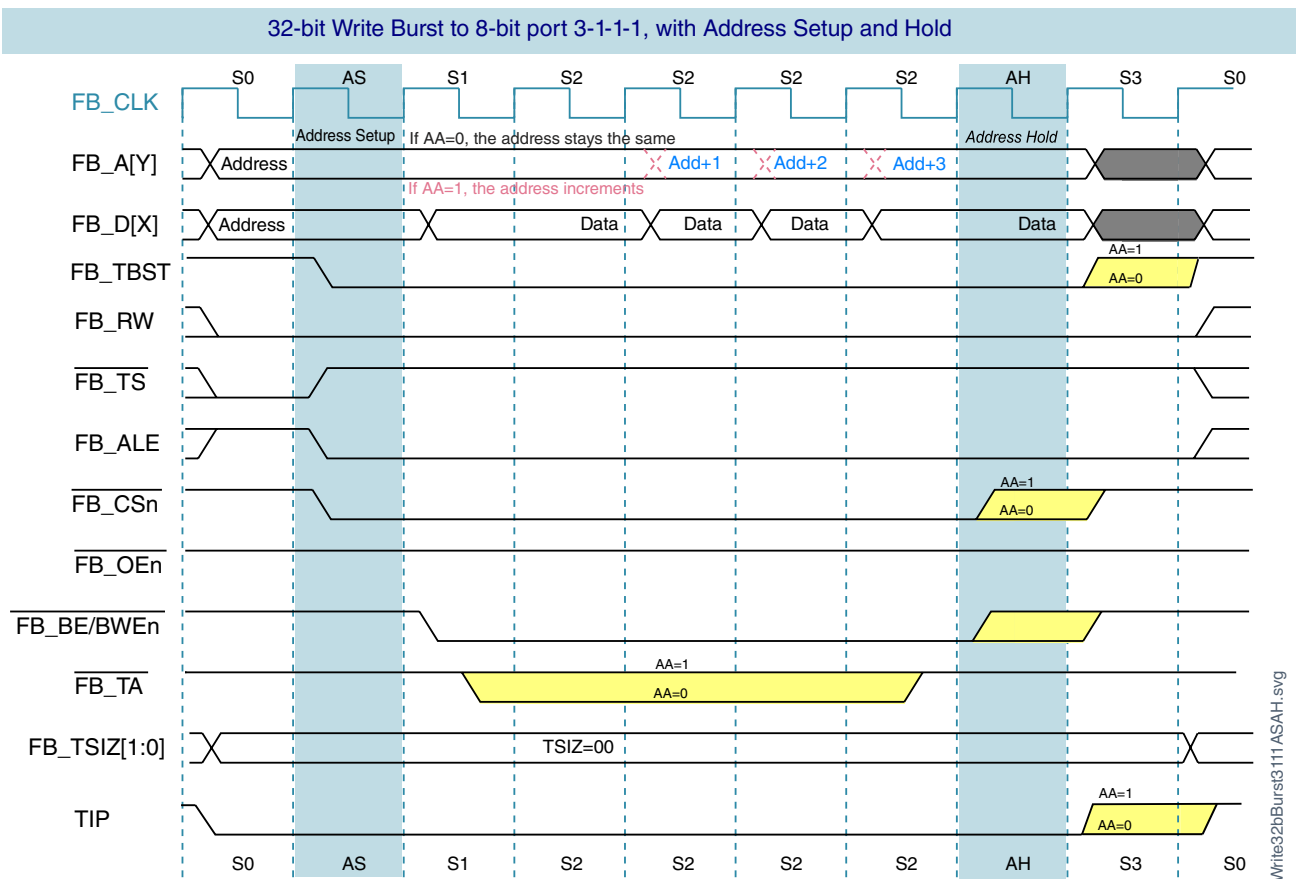


Figure 35-29. 32-bit-write burst to 8-bit port 3-1-1-1 (address setup and hold)

35.5.13 Extended Transfer Start/Address Latch Enable

The $\overline{\text{FB_TS}}/\text{FB_ALE}$ signal indicates that a bus transaction has begun and the address and attributes are valid. By default, the $\overline{\text{FB_TS}}/\text{FB_ALE}$ signal asserts for a single bus clock cycle. When $\text{CSCR}_n[\text{EXTS}]$ is set, the $\overline{\text{FB_TS}}/\text{FB_ALE}$ signal asserts and remain asserted until the first positive clock edge after FB_CS_n asserts. See the following figure.

NOTE

When EXTS is set, $\text{CSCR}_n[\text{WS}]$ must be programmed to have at least one primary wait state.

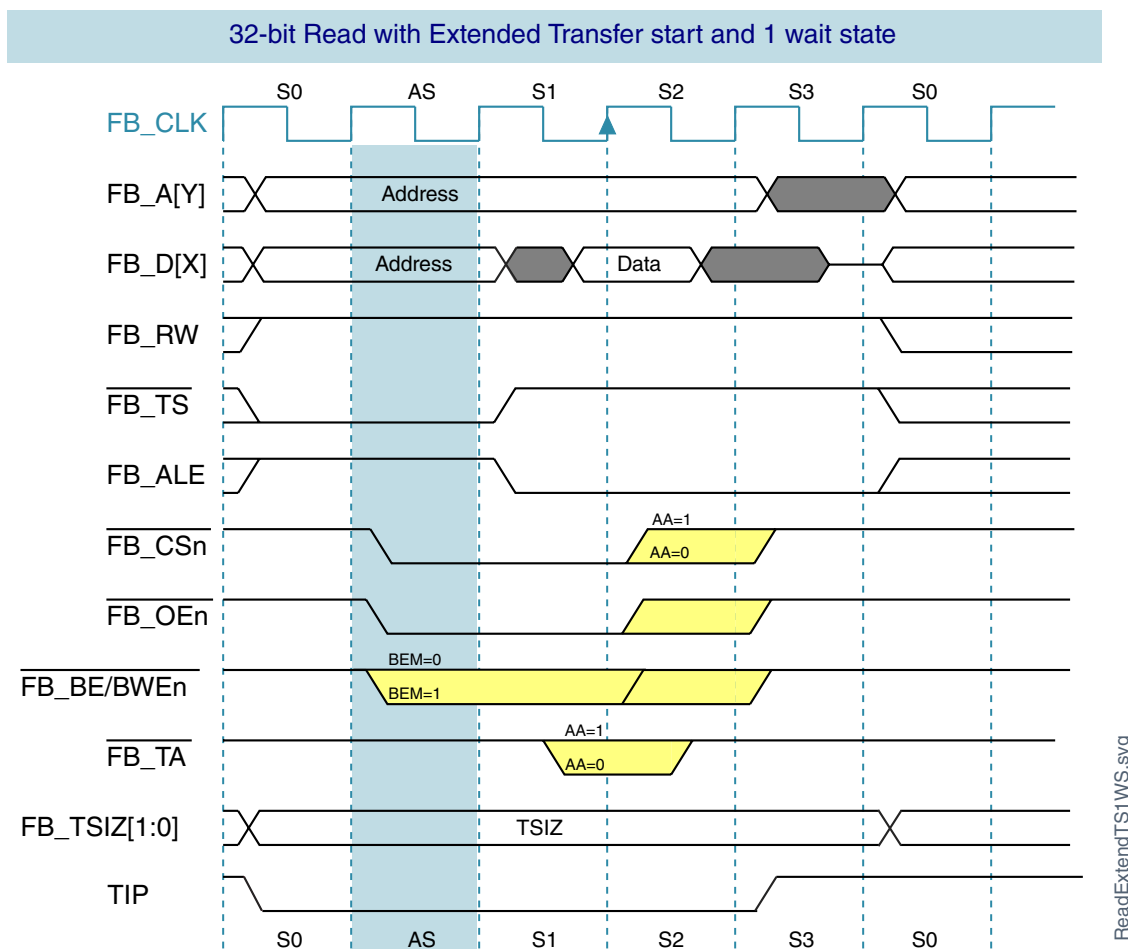


Figure 35-30. Read-Bus Cycle with CSCRn[EXTS] = 1 (One Wait State)

35.5.14 Bus errors

These types of accesses cause a transfer to terminate with a bus error:

- A write to a write-protected address range
- An access whose address is not in a range covered by a chip-select
- An access whose address is in a range covered by more than one chip-selects
- A write to a reserved address in the memory map
- A write to a reserved field in the CSPMCR
- Any FlexBus accesses when FlexBus is secure

If the auto-acknowledge feature is disabled (CSCR[AA] is 0) for an address that generates an error, then the transfer can be terminated by asserting $\overline{\text{FB_TA}}$. If the processor must manage a bus error differently, then asserting an interrupt to the core along with $\overline{\text{FB_TA}}$ when the bus error occurs can invoke an interrupt handler.

The device can hang if FlexBus is configured for external termination and the CSPMCR is not configured for `FB_TA`.

35.6 Initialization/Application Information

35.6.1 Initializing a chip-select

Before using any other chip select to take it out of global chip select mode, you must initialize CS0.

To initialize a chip-select:

1. Write to the associated CSAR.
2. Write to the associated CSCR.
3. Write to the associated CSMR, including writing 1b to the Valid field (`CSMRn[V]`).

35.6.2 Reconfiguring a chip-select

To reconfigure a previously-used chip-select:

1. Invalidate the chip-select by writing 0b to the associated CSMR's Valid field (`CSMRn[V]`).
2. Write to the associated CSAR.
3. Write to the associated CSCR.
4. Write to the associated CSMR, including writing 1b to the Valid field (`CSMRn[V]`).

Chapter 36

Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC)

36.1 Introduction

The cyclic redundancy check (CRC) module generates 16/32-bit CRC code for error detection.

The CRC module provides a programmable polynomial and other parameters required to implement a 16-bit or 32-bit CRC standard.

The 16/32-bit code is calculated for 32 bits of data at a time.

36.1.1 Features

Features of the CRC module include:

- Hardware CRC generator circuit using a 16-bit or 32-bit programmable shift register
- Programmable initial seed value and polynomial
- Option to transpose input data or output data (the CRC result) bitwise or byte-wise.
This option is required for certain CRC standards. A byte-wise transpose operation is not possible when accessing the CRC data register via 8-bit accesses. In this case, the user's software must perform the byte-wise transpose function.
- Option for inversion of final CRC result
- 32-bit CPU register programming interface

36.1.2 Block diagram

The following is a block diagram of the CRC.

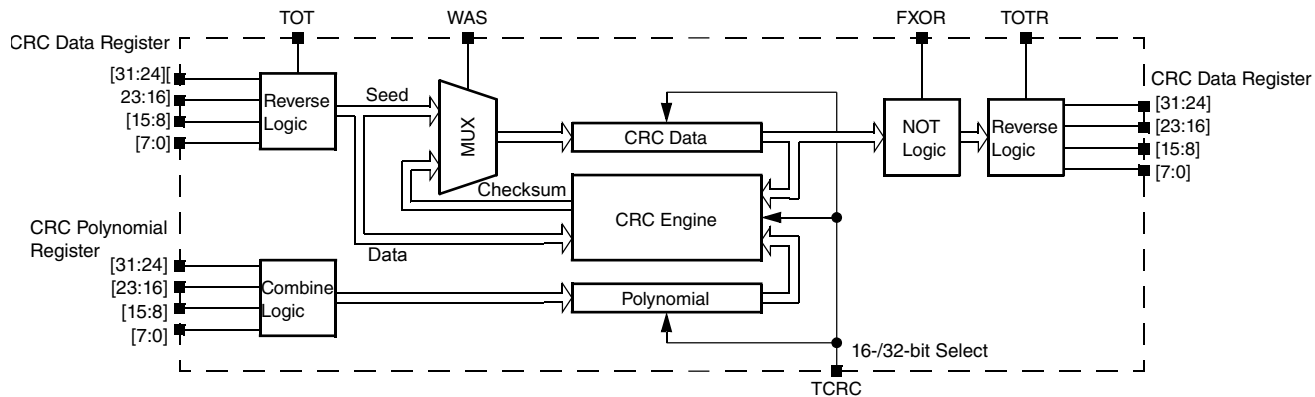


Figure 36-1. Programmable cyclic redundancy check (CRC) block diagram

36.1.3 Modes of operation

Various MCU modes affect the CRC module's functionality.

36.1.3.1 Run mode

This is the basic mode of operation.

36.1.3.2 Low-power modes (Wait or Stop)

Any CRC calculation in progress stops when the MCU enters a low-power mode that disables the module clock. It resumes after the clock is enabled or via the system reset for exiting the low-power mode. Clock gating for this module is dependent on the MCU.

36.2 Memory map and register descriptions

CRC memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4003_2000	CRC Data register (CRC_DATA)	32	R/W	FFFF_FFFFh	36.2.1/817
4003_2004	CRC Polynomial register (CRC_GPOLY)	32	R/W	0000_1021h	36.2.2/818
4003_2008	CRC Control register (CRC_CTRL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	36.2.3/818

36.2.1 CRC Data register (CRC_DATA)

The CRC Data register contains the value of the seed, data, and checksum. When CTRL[WAS] is set, any write to the data register is regarded as the seed value. When CTRL[WAS] is cleared, any write to the data register is regarded as data for general CRC computation.

In 16-bit CRC mode, the HU and HL fields are not used for programming the seed value, and reads of these fields return an indeterminate value. In 32-bit CRC mode, all fields are used for programming the seed value.

When programming data values, the values can be written 8 bits, 16 bits, or 32 bits at a time, provided all bytes are contiguous; with MSB of data value written first.

After all data values are written, the CRC result can be read from this data register. In 16-bit CRC mode, the CRC result is available in the LU and LL fields. In 32-bit CRC mode, all fields contain the result. Reads of this register at any time return the intermediate CRC value, provided the CRC module is configured.

Address: 4003_2000h base + 0h offset = 4003_2000h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	HU								HL								LU								LL							
W																																
Reset	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	

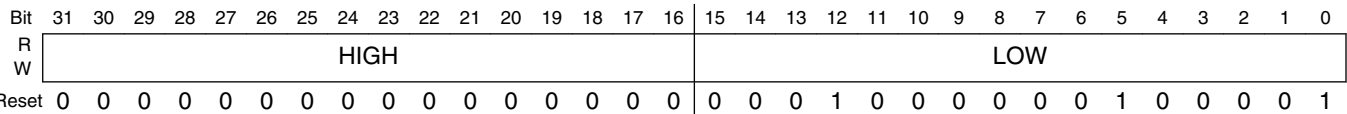
CRC_DATA field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 HU	CRC High Upper Byte In 16-bit CRC mode (CTRL[TCRC] is 0), this field is not used for programming a seed value. In 32-bit CRC mode (CTRL[TCRC] is 1), values written to this field are part of the seed value when CTRL[WAS] is 1. When CTRL[WAS] is 0, data written to this field is used for CRC checksum generation in both 16-bit and 32-bit CRC modes.
23–16 HL	CRC High Lower Byte In 16-bit CRC mode (CTRL[TCRC] is 0), this field is not used for programming a seed value. In 32-bit CRC mode (CTRL[TCRC] is 1), values written to this field are part of the seed value when CTRL[WAS] is 1. When CTRL[WAS] is 0, data written to this field is used for CRC checksum generation in both 16-bit and 32-bit CRC modes.
15–8 LU	CRC Low Upper Byte When CTRL[WAS] is 1, values written to this field are part of the seed value. When CTRL[WAS] is 0, data written to this field is used for CRC checksum generation.
LL	CRC Low Lower Byte When CTRL[WAS] is 1, values written to this field are part of the seed value. When CTRL[WAS] is 0, data written to this field is used for CRC checksum generation.

36.2.2 CRC Polynomial register (CRC_GPOLY)

This register contains the value of the polynomial for the CRC calculation. The HIGH field contains the upper 16 bits of the CRC polynomial, which are used only in 32-bit CRC mode. Writes to the HIGH field are ignored in 16-bit CRC mode. The LOW field contains the lower 16 bits of the CRC polynomial, which are used in both 16- and 32-bit CRC modes.

Address: 4003_2000h base + 4h offset = 4003_2004h



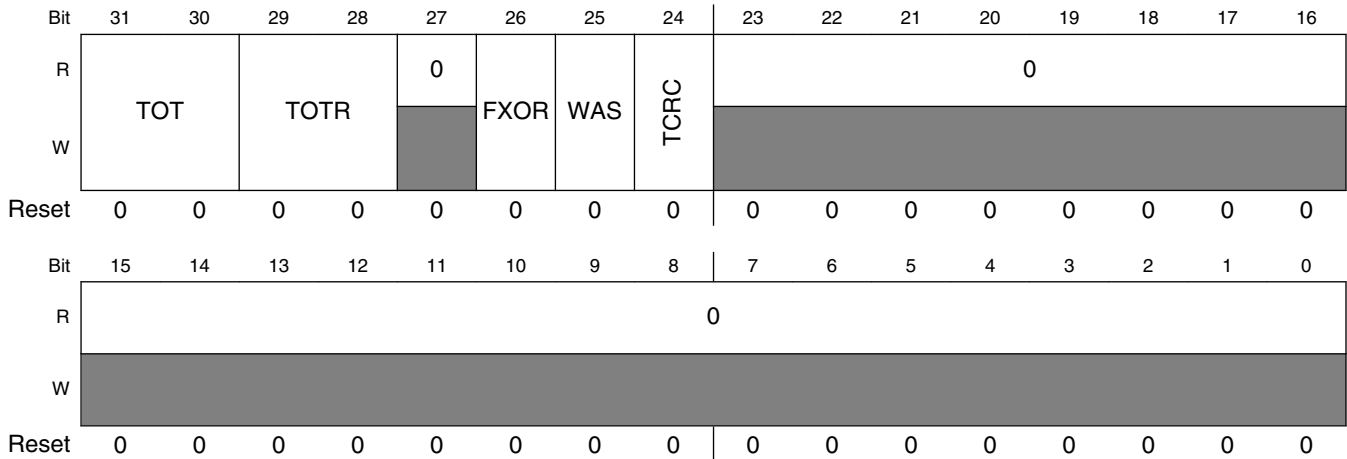
CRC_GPOLY field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 HIGH	High Polynomial Half-word Writable and readable in 32-bit CRC mode (CTRL[TCRC] is 1). This field is not writable in 16-bit CRC mode (CTRL[TCRC] is 0).
LOW	Low Polynomial Half-word Writable and readable in both 32-bit and 16-bit CRC modes.

36.2.3 CRC Control register (CRC_CTRL)

This register controls the configuration and working of the CRC module. Appropriate bits must be set before starting a new CRC calculation. A new CRC calculation is initialized by asserting CTRL[WAS] and then writing the seed into the CRC data register.

Address: 4003_2000h base + 8h offset = 4003_2008h



CRC_CTRL field descriptions

Field	Description
31–30 TOT	<p>Type Of Transpose For Writes</p> <p>Defines the transpose configuration of the data written to the CRC data register. See the description of the transpose feature for the available transpose options.</p> <p>00 No transposition. 01 Bits in bytes are transposed; bytes are not transposed. 10 Both bits in bytes and bytes are transposed. 11 Only bytes are transposed; no bits in a byte are transposed.</p>
29–28 TOTR	<p>Type Of Transpose For Read</p> <p>Identifies the transpose configuration of the value read from the CRC Data register. See the description of the transpose feature for the available transpose options.</p> <p>00 No transposition. 01 Bits in bytes are transposed; bytes are not transposed. 10 Both bits in bytes and bytes are transposed. 11 Only bytes are transposed; no bits in a byte are transposed.</p>
27 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
26 FXOR	<p>Complement Read Of CRC Data Register</p> <p>Some CRC protocols require the final checksum to be XORed with 0xFFFFFFFF or 0xFFFF. Asserting this bit enables on the fly complementing of read data.</p> <p>0 No XOR on reading. 1 Invert or complement the read value of the CRC Data register.</p>
25 WAS	<p>Write CRC Data Register As Seed</p> <p>When asserted, a value written to the CRC data register is considered a seed value. When deasserted, a value written to the CRC data register is taken as data for CRC computation.</p> <p>0 Writes to the CRC data register are data values. 1 Writes to the CRC data register are seed values.</p>
24 TCRC	<p>Width of CRC protocol.</p> <p>0 16-bit CRC protocol. 1 32-bit CRC protocol.</p>
Reserved	<p>This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>

36.3 Functional description

36.3.1 CRC initialization/reinitialization

To enable the CRC calculation, the user must program CRC_CTRL[WAS], CRC_GPOLY, necessary parameters for transposition and CRC result inversion in the applicable registers. Asserting CRC_CTRL[WAS] enables the programming of the seed value into the CRC_DATA register.

After a completed CRC calculation, the module can be reinitialized for a new CRC computation by reasserting CRC_CTRL[WAS] and programming a new, or previously used, seed value. All other parameters must be set before programming the seed value and subsequent data values.

36.3.2 CRC calculations

In 16-bit and 32-bit CRC modes, data values can be programmed 8 bits, 16 bits, or 32 bits at a time, provided all bytes are contiguous. Noncontiguous bytes can lead to an incorrect CRC computation.

36.3.2.1 16-bit CRC

To compute a 16-bit CRC:

1. Clear CRC_CTRL[TCRC] to enable 16-bit CRC mode.
2. Program the transpose and complement options in the CTRL register as required for the CRC calculation. See [Transpose feature](#) and [CRC result complement](#) for details.
3. Write a 16-bit polynomial to the CRC_GPOLY[LOW] field. The CRC_GPOLY[HIGH] field is not usable in 16-bit CRC mode.
4. Set CRC_CTRL[WAS] to program the seed value.
5. Write a 16-bit seed to CRC_DATA[LU:LL]. CRC_DATA[HU:HL] are not used.
6. Clear CRC_CTRL[WAS] to start writing data values.
7. Write data values into CRC_DATA[HU:HL:LU:LL]. A CRC is computed on every data value write, and the intermediate CRC result is stored back into CRC_DATA[LU:LL].
8. When all values have been written, read the final CRC result from CRC_DATA[LU:LL].

Transpose and complement operations are performed on the fly while reading or writing values. See [Transpose feature](#) and [CRC result complement](#) for details.

36.3.2.2 32-bit CRC

To compute a 32-bit CRC:

1. Set CRC_CTRL[TCRC] to enable 32-bit CRC mode.
2. Program the transpose and complement options in the CTRL register as required for the CRC calculation. See [Transpose feature](#) and [CRC result complement](#) for details.
3. Write a 32-bit polynomial to CRC_GPOLY[HIGH:LOW].
4. Set CRC_CTRL[WAS] to program the seed value.
5. Write a 32-bit seed to CRC_DATA[HU:HL:LU:LL].
6. Clear CRC_CTRL[WAS] to start writing data values.
7. Write data values into CRC_DATA[HU:HL:LU:LL]. A CRC is computed on every data value write, and the intermediate CRC result is stored back into CRC_DATA[HU:HL:LU:LL].
8. When all values have been written, read the final CRC result from CRC_DATA[HU:HL:LU:LL]. The CRC is calculated byte-wise, and two clocks are required to complete one CRC calculation.

Transpose and complement operations are performed on the fly while reading or writing values. See [Transpose feature](#) and [CRC result complement](#) for details.

36.3.3 Transpose feature

By default, the transpose feature is not enabled. However, some CRC standards require the input data and/or the final checksum to be transposed. The user software has the option to configure each transpose operation separately, as desired by the CRC standard. The data is transposed on the fly while being read or written.

Some protocols use little endian format for the data stream to calculate a CRC. In this case, the transpose feature usefully flips the bits. This transpose option is one of the types supported by the CRC module.

36.3.3.1 Types of transpose

The CRC module provides several types of transpose functions to flip the bits and/or bytes, for both writing input data and reading the CRC result, separately using the CTRL[TOT] or CTRL[TOTR] fields, according to the CRC calculation being used.

The following types of transpose functions are available for writing to and reading from the CRC data register:

1. CTRL[TOT] or CTRL[TOTR] is 00.

No transposition occurs.

2. CTRL[TOT] or CTRL[TOTR] is 01

Bits in a byte are transposed, while bytes are not transposed.

reg[31:0] becomes {reg[24:31], reg[16:23], reg[8:15], reg[0:7]}

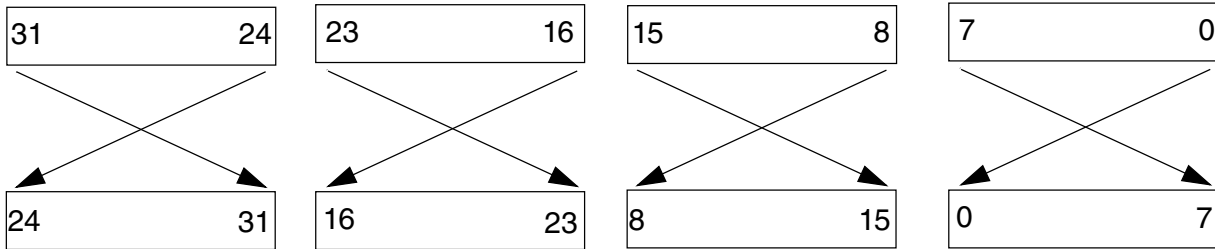


Figure 36-2. Transpose type 01

3. CTRL[TOT] or CTRL[TOTR] is 10.

Both bits in bytes and bytes are transposed.

reg[31:0] becomes = {reg[0:7], reg[8:15], reg[16:23], reg[24:31]}

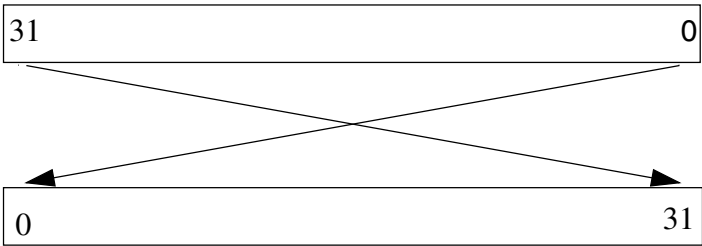


Figure 36-3. Transpose type 10

4. CTRL[TOT] or CTRL[TOTR] is 11.

Bytes are transposed, but bits are not transposed.

reg[31:0] becomes {reg[7:0], reg[15:8], reg[23:16], reg[31:24]}

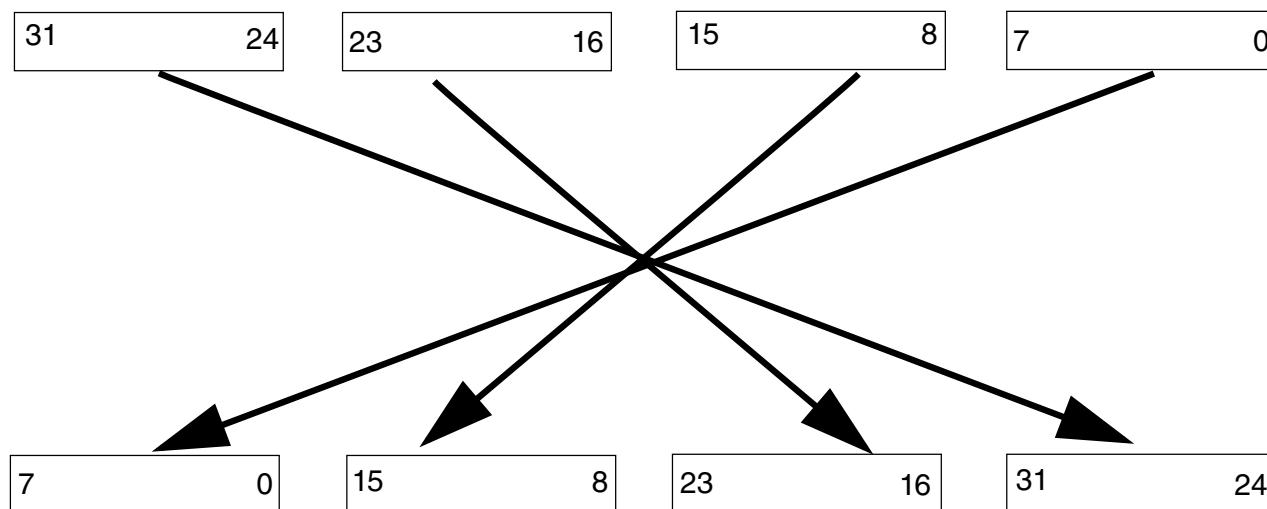


Figure 36-4. Transpose type 11

NOTE

For 8-bit and 16-bit write accesses to the CRC data register, the data is transposed with zeros on the unused byte or bytes (taking 32 bits as a whole), but the CRC is calculated on the valid byte(s) only. When reading the CRC data register for a 16-bit CRC result and using transpose options 10 and 11, the resulting value after transposition resides in the CRC[**HU**:**HL**] fields. The user software must account for this situation when reading the 16-bit CRC result, so reading 32 bits is preferred.

36.3.4 CRC result complement

When CTRL[**FXOR**] is set, the checksum is complemented. The CRC result complement function outputs the complement of the checksum value stored in the CRC data register every time the CRC data register is read. When CTRL[**FXOR**] is cleared, reading the CRC data register accesses the raw checksum value.



Chapter 37

Memory-Mapped Cryptographic Acceleration Unit (MMCAU)

37.1 Introduction

The memory-mapped Cryptographic Acceleration Unit (CAU) is a coprocessor that is connected to the processor's Private Peripheral Bus (PPB). It supports the hardware implementation of a set of specialized operations to improve the throughput of software-based security encryption/decryption operations and message digest functions.

The CAU supports acceleration of the DES, 3DES, AES, MD5, SHA-1, and SHA-256 algorithms. Freescale provides an optimized C-function library that provides the appropriate software building blocks to implement higher-level security functions.

37.2 CAU Block Diagram

A simplified block diagram is given below that illustrates the CAU and a table to show its parts.

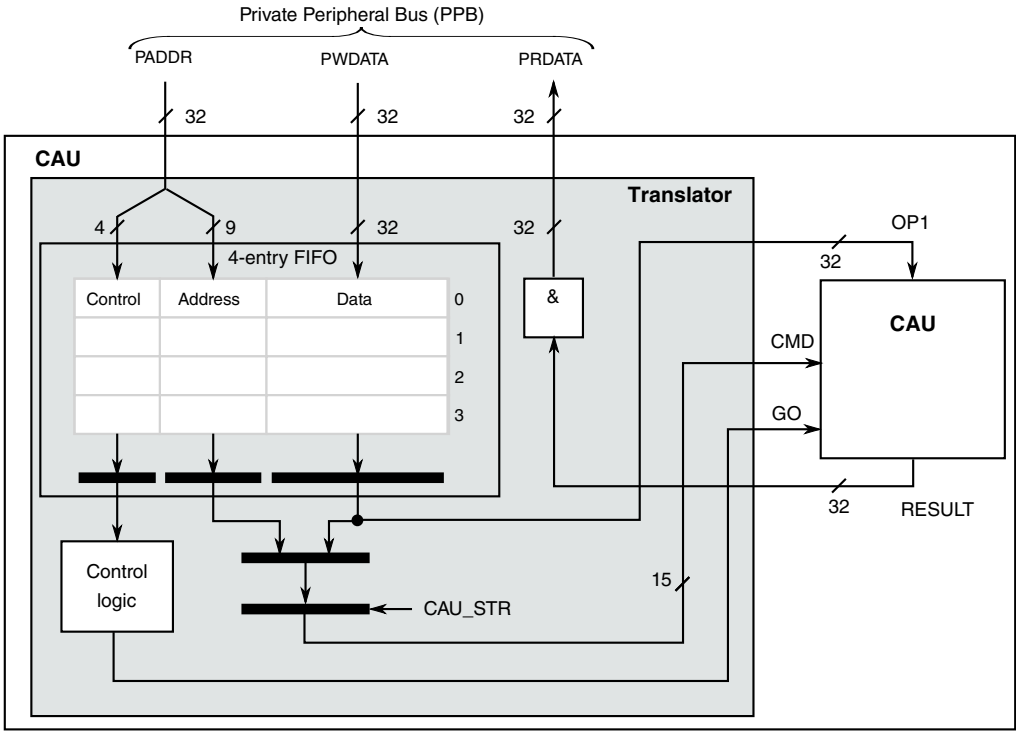


Figure 37-1. CAU block diagram

Table 37-1. CAU parts table

Item	Description
Translator submodule	Provides the bridge between the PPB interface and the CAU module. Passes memory-mapped commands and data on the PPB to/from the CAU
4-entry FIFO	Contains commands and input operands and the associated control captured from the PPB and sent to the CAU
CAU	3-terminal block with a command and optional input operand and a result bus. More details in following figure.

The following figure shows the CAU block in more detail.

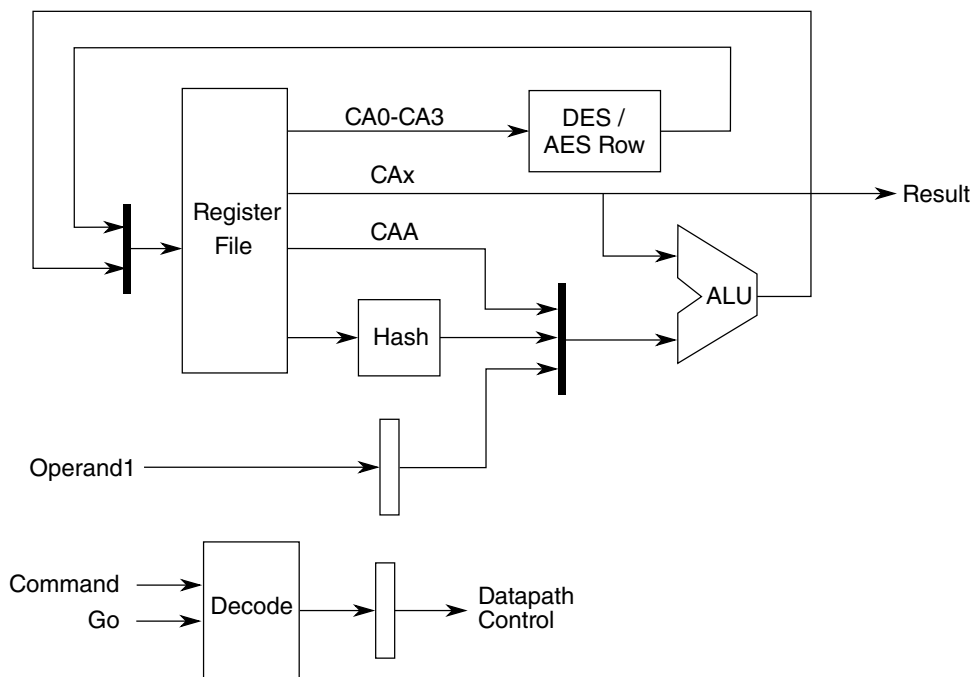


Figure 37-2. Top-level CAU block diagram

37.3 Overview

As the name suggests, the CAU provides a mechanism for memory-mapped register reads and writes to be transformed into specific commands and operands sent to the CAU coprocessor.

The CAU translator module performs the following functions:

- All the required functions affecting the transmission of commands to the CAU module.
- If needed, stalling the PPB transactions based on the state of the 4-entry command/ data FIFO.
- Some basic integrity checks on PPB operations.

The set of implemented algorithms provides excellent support for network security standards, such as SSL and IPsec. Additionally, using the CAU efficiently permits the implementation of any higher level functions or modes of operation, such as HMAC, CBC, and so on based on the supported algorithms.

The cryptographic algorithms are implemented partially in software with only functions critical to increasing performance implemented in hardware. The CAU allows for efficient, fine-grained partitioning of functions between hardware and software:

- Implement the innermost security kernel functions using the coprocessor instructions.
- Implement higher level functions in software by using the standard processor instructions.

This partitioning of functions is key to minimizing size of the CAU while maintaining a high level of throughput. Using software for some functions also simplifies the CAU design. The CAU implements a set of coprocessor commands that operate on a register file of 32-bit registers.

37.4 Features

The CAU includes the following distinctive features:

- Supports DES, 3DES, AES, MD5, SHA-1, and SHA-256 algorithms
- Simple, flexible programming model
- Ability to send up to three commands in one data write operation

37.5 Memory map/Register definition

The CAU contains multiple registers used by each of the supported algorithms. The following table shows registers that are applicable to each supported algorithm and indicates the corresponding letter designations for each algorithm.

For more information on these letter designations, see the supported algorithm specifications.

Code	Register	DES	AES	MD5	SHA-1	SHA-256
0	CAU Status Register (CASR)	—	—	—	—	—
1	CAU Accumulator (CAA)	—	—	a	T	T
2	General-Purpose Register 0 (CA0)	C	W0	—	A	A
3	General-Purpose Register 1 (CA1)	D	W1	b	B	B

Table continues on the next page...

Code	Register	DES	AES	MD5	SHA-1	SHA-256
4	General-Purpose Register 2 (CA2)	L	W2	c	C	C
5	General-Purpose Register 3 (CA3)	R	W3	d	D	D
6	General-Purpose Register 4 (CA4)	—	—	—	E	E
7	General-Purpose Register 5 (CA5)	—	—	—	W	F
8	General-Purpose Register 6 (CA6)	—	—	—	—	G
9	General-Purpose Register 7 (CA7)	—	—	—	—	H
10	General-Purpose Register 8 (CA8)	—	—	—	—	W/T ₁

The CAU supports only 32-bit operations and register accesses. All registers support read, write, and ALU operations. However, only bits 1–0 of the CASR are writeable. Bits 31–2 of the CASR must be written as 0 for compatibility with future versions of the CAU.

The codes listed in this section are used in the memory-mapped commands. For more details on this, see [CAU programming model](#).

NOTE

In the following table, the "address" or "offset" refers to the command code value for the CAU registers.

CAU memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/page
E008_1000	Status Register (CAU_CASR)	32	R/W	2000_0000h	37.5.1/830
E008_1001	Accumulator (CAU_CAA)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.5.2/831

Table continues on the next page...

CAU memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/page
E008_1002	General Purpose Register (CAU_CA0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.5.3/831
E008_1003	General Purpose Register (CAU_CA1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.5.3/831
E008_1004	General Purpose Register (CAU_CA2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.5.3/831
E008_1005	General Purpose Register (CAU_CA3)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.5.3/831
E008_1006	General Purpose Register (CAU_CA4)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.5.3/831
E008_1007	General Purpose Register (CAU_CA5)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.5.3/831
E008_1008	General Purpose Register (CAU_CA6)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.5.3/831
E008_1009	General Purpose Register (CAU_CA7)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.5.3/831
E008_100A	General Purpose Register (CAU_CA8)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.5.3/831

37.5.1 Status Register (CAU_CASR)

CASR contains the status and configuration for the CAU.

Address: E008_1000h base + 0h offset = E008_1000h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	VER				0											
W																
Reset	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0														DPE	IC
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

CAU_CASR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–28 VER	CAU Version Indicates CAU version. 0x1 Initial CAU version. 0x2 Second version, added support for SHA-256 algorithm (This is the value on this device).
27–2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
1 DPE	DES Parity Error Indicates whether the DES parity error is detected. 0 No error detected. 1 DES key parity error detected.

Table continues on the next page...

CAU_CASR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
0 IC	Illegal Command Indicates an illegal instruction has been executed. 0 No illegal commands issued. 1 Illegal command issued.

37.5.2 Accumulator (CAU_CAA)

Commands use the CAU accumulator for storage of results and as an operand for the cryptographic algorithms.

Address: E008_1000h base + 1h offset = E008_1001h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																
	ACC																															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

CAU_CAA field descriptions

Field	Description
ACC	Accumulator Stores results of various CAU commands.

37.5.3 General Purpose Register (CAU_CAn)

The General Purpose Register is used in the CAU commands for storage of results and as operands for various cryptographic algorithms.

Address: E008_1000h base + 2h offset + (1d × i), where i=0d to 8d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																
	CAn																															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

CAU_CAn field descriptions

Field	Description
CAn	General Purpose Registers Used by the CAU commands. Some cryptographic operations work with specific registers.

37.6 Functional description

This section discusses the programming model and operation of the CAU.

37.6.1 CAU programming model

The 4-entry FIFO is indirectly mapped into a 4-KB address space associated with the CAU located on this device. This address space is effectively split into two equal regions:

- one used to directly write commands for CAU load operations
- the other used to send commands and input operands for CAU loads

Data writes on the PPB are loaded into this FIFO and automatically converted into CAU load operands by the CAU translator. Data reads on the PPB are converted into CAU store register operations where the result is returned to the processor as the read data value.

The CAU requires a 15-bit command, and optionally, a 32-bit input operand, for each CAU load, PPB write. The 15-bit command includes the 9-bit opcode and other bits statically formed by the CAU translator logic controlling the CAU.

The following figure shows the 4-KB address space and the mapping of the CAU commands in this space.

NOTE

- Although the indirect store/load portion of the address space in the figure below shows only the indirect load/store commands, direct load commands can also be used in this space. However, it is more efficient to use the direct load portion of the address space.
- Accesses to the reserved space in the direct load space are terminated with an error, while accesses to the reserved space in the indirect load/store space are detected as an illegal CAU command. See [CAU integrity checks](#) for details.

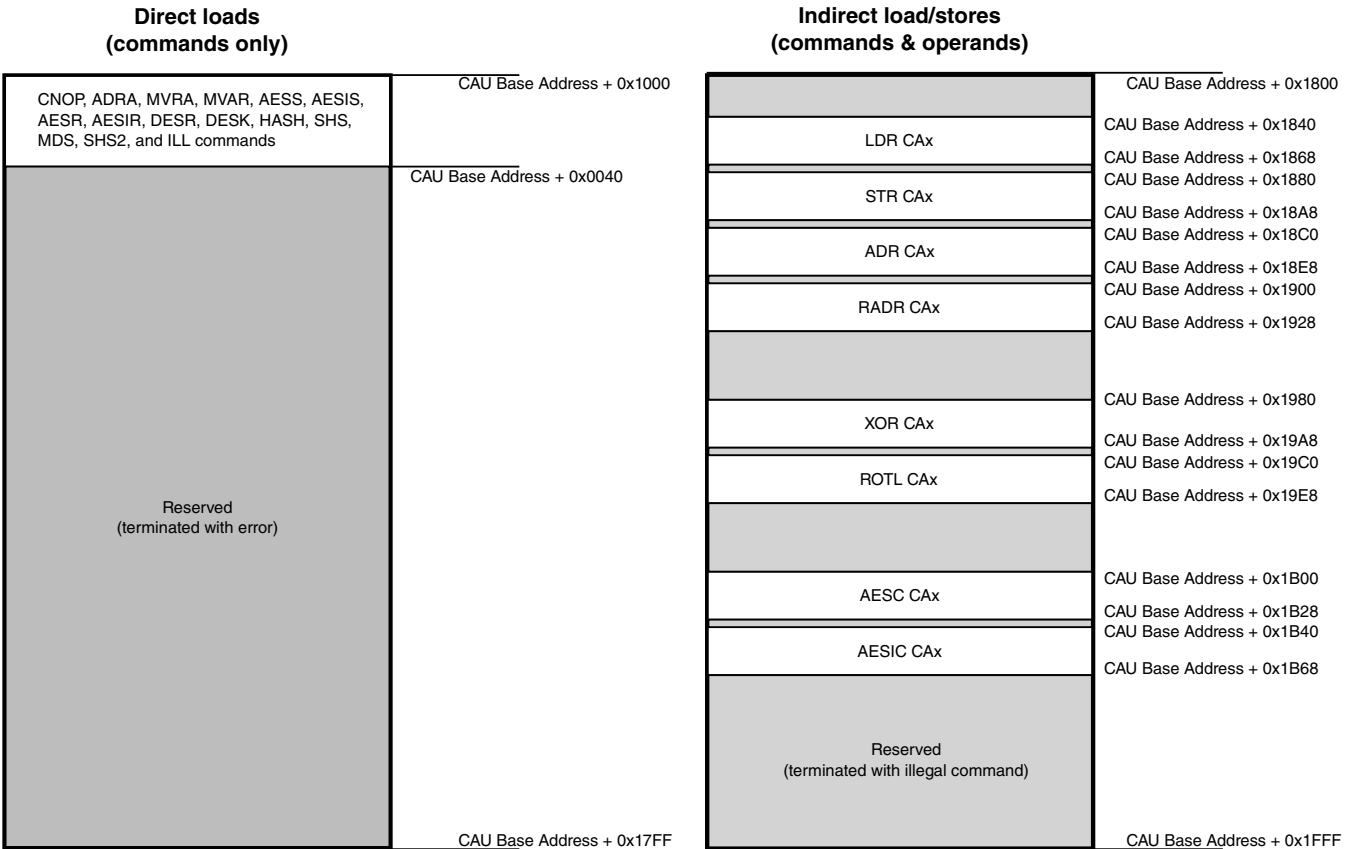


Figure 37-3. CAU memory map

37.6.1.1 Direct loads

The CAU supports writing multiple commands in each 32-bit direct write operation. Each 9-bit opcode also includes a valid bit. Therefore, one, two, or three commands can be transmitted in a single 32-bit PPB write. The following figure illustrates the accepted formats for the 32-bit CAU write data value:

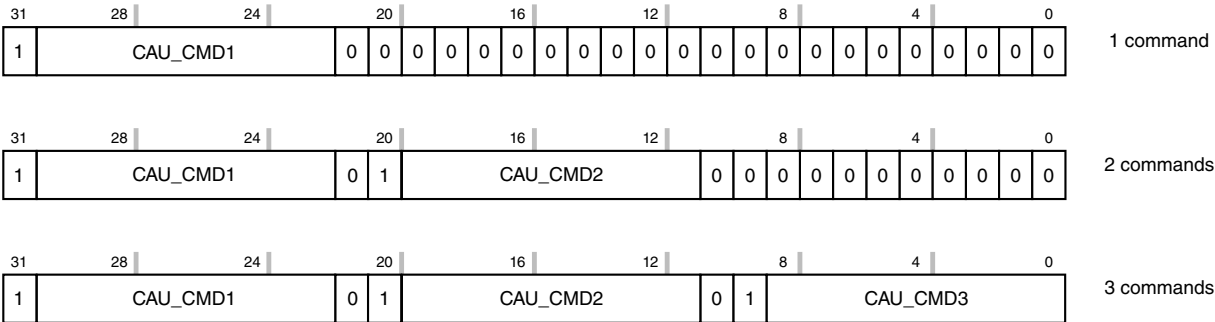


Figure 37-4. Direct loads

37.6.1.2 Indirect loads

For CAU load operations requiring a 32-bit input operand, the address contains the 9-bit opcode to be passed to the CAU while the data is the 32-bit operand. Specifically, the CAU address and data for these indirect writes is shown in the figure below.

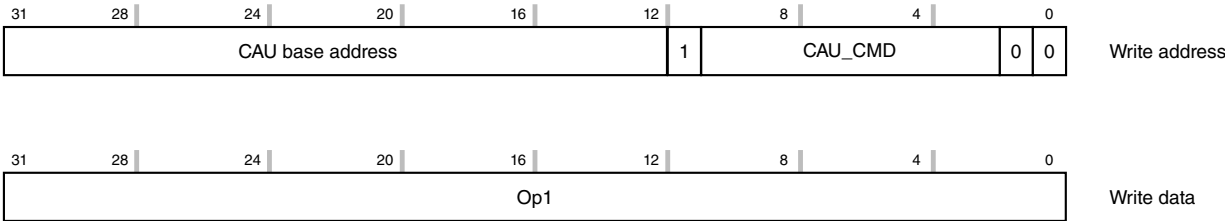


Figure 37-5. Indirect loads

37.6.1.3 Indirect stores

For CAU store operations, a PPB read is performed with the appropriate CAU store register opcode embedded in the address. This appears as another indirect command. The detail of Indirect stores is shown in the figure below.

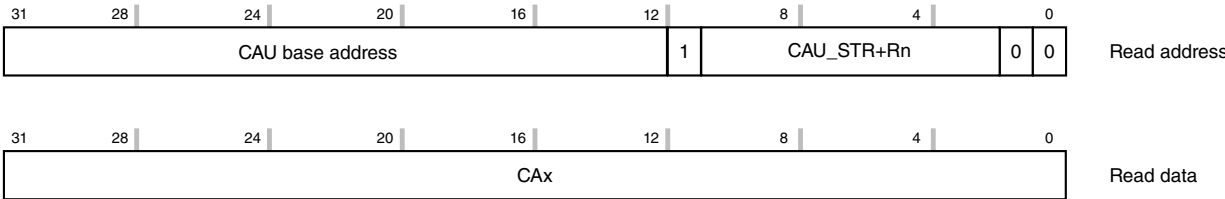


Figure 37-6. Indirect store

37.6.2 CAU integrity checks

If an illegal operation or access is attempted, the PPB bus cycle is terminated with an error response and the operation is aborted and not sent to the CAU.

The CAU performs a series of address and data integrity checks as described in the following sections. The results of these checks are logically summed together and, if appropriate, a PPB error termination is generated.

37.6.2.1 Address integrity checks

The CAU address checking includes the following. See [Figure 37-3](#) for the CAU memory map details.

- Any CAU reference using a non-0-modulo-4 byte address ($\text{addr}[1:0] \neq 00$) generates an error termination.
- For CAU writes:
 - Only the first 64 bytes of the 2-KB direct write address space can be referenced. Attempting to access regions beyond the first 64 bytes terminates with an error.
 - The second 2-KB space defines the indirect address-as-command region and any reference in this space is allowed by the CAU.

NOTE

The CAU contains error logic to detect any illegal command sent to it. Accordingly, there are address values in this upper 2-KB region of the address space that are passed to the CAU, and then detected as illegal commands. If the CAU detects an illegal command, it sets the CASR[IC] flag and performs no operation.

- For CAU reads:
 - Any attempted read from the first 2-KB region of the address space (an attempted direct read) is illegal and produces an error termination.
 - Within the second 2-KB region of the address space, i.e., $\text{addr}[11] = 1$, only a 64-byte space is treated as a legal CAU store operation. The allowable addresses are defined as:

$$\text{addr}[11:0] = 1000_10xx_xx_00$$

where the 4-bit xxxx value specifies the CAU register number. The CAU supports a subset of the allowable register numbers, 0x0 - 0xA. Attempting a store of a reserved register produces an undefined result.

37.6.2.2 Data integrity checks

Direct writes can send 1, 2, or 3 commands to the CAU in a single 32-bit transfer. As shown in [Figure 37-4](#), the commands include a valid bit located at bits 31, 20, and 9 of the write data where:

- Bit 31 is the valid bit for the first command
- Bit 20 is the valid bit for the second command
- Bit 9 is the valid bit for the third command

The direct write data check validates the combination of these three valid bits. The following table presents the three legal states associated with these bits:

functional description

Value of bits 31, 20, and 9	Number of commands included
100	1
110	2
111	3

All other combinations of bits 31, 20, and 9 are illegal and generate an error termination.

37.6.3 CAU commands

The CAU supports the commands shown in the following table. All other encodings are reserved. The CASR[IC] bit is set if an undefined command is issued. A specific illegal command (ILL) is defined to allow software self-checking. Reserved commands must not be issued so as to ensure compatibility with future implementations.

The CMD field specifies the 9-bit CAU opcode for the operation command.

See [Assembler equate values](#) for a set of assembly constants used in the command descriptions here. If supported by the assembler, macros can also be created for each instruction. The value CAx should be interpreted as any CAU register (CASR, CAA, and CAn).

Table 37-2. CAU commands

Type	Command name	Description	CMD									Operation
			8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
Direct load	CNOP	No Operation	0x000									—
Indirect load	LDR	Load Reg	0x01			CAx						Op1 → CAx
Indirect store	STR	Store Reg	0x02			CAx						CAx → Result
Indirect load	ADR	Add	0x03			CAx						CAx + Op1 → CAx
Indirect load	RADR	Reverse and Add	0x04			CAx						CAx + ByteRev(Op1) → CAx
Direct load	ADRA	Add Reg to Acc	0x05			CAx						CAx + CAA → CAA
Indirect load	XOR	Exclusive Or	0x06			CAx						CAx ^ Op1 → CAx
Indirect load	ROTL	Rotate Left	0x07			CAx						(CAx <<< (Op1 % 32)) | (CAx >>> (32 - (Op1 % 32))) → CAx
Direct load	MVRA	Move Reg to Acc	0x08			CAx						CAx → CAA
Direct load	MVAR	Move Acc to Reg	0x09			CAx						CAA → CAx
Direct load	AESS	AES Sub Bytes	0x0A			CAx						SubBytes(CAx) → CAx
Direct load	AESIS	AES Inv Sub Bytes	0x0B			CAx						InvSubBytes(CAx) → CAx
Indirect load	AESC	AES Column Op	0x0C			CAx						MixColumns(CAx)^Op1 → CAx
Indirect load	AESIC	AES Inv Column Op	0x0D			CAx						InvMixColumns(CAx^Op1) → CAx

Table continues on the next page...

Table 37-2. CAU commands (continued)

Type	Command name	Description	CMD									Operation
			8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
Direct load	AESR	AES Shift Rows	0x0E0									ShiftRows(CA0-CA3) → CA0-CA3
Direct load	AESIR	AES Inv Shift Rows	0x0F0									InvShiftRows(CA0-CA3)→CA0-CA3
Direct load	DESR	DES Round	0x10				IP	FP	KS[1:0]		DES Round(CA0-CA3) →CA0-CA3	
Direct load	DESK	DES Key Setup	0x11				0	0	CP	DC	DES Key Op(CA0-CA1)→CA0-CA1 Key Parity Error & CP →CASR[1]	
Direct load	HASH	Hash Function	0x12				0	HF[2:0]			Hash Func(CA1-CA3)+CAA→CAA	
Direct load	SHS	Secure Hash Shift	0x130									CAA <<< 5→ CAA, CAA→CA0, CA0→CA1, CA1 <<< 30 → CA2, CA2→CA3, CA3→CA4
Direct load	MDS	Message Digest Shift	0x140									CA3→CAA, CAA→CA1, CA1→CA2, CA2→CA3,
Direct load	SHS2	Secure Hash Shift 2	0x150									CAA→CA0, CA0→CA1, CA1 → CA2, CA2→CA3, CA3 + CA8 →CA4, CA4 → CA5, CA5 → CA6, CA6 → CA7
Direct load	ILL	Illegal Command	0x1F0									0x1→CASR[IC]

37.6.3.1 Coprocessor No Operation (CNOP)

The CNOP command is the coprocessor no-op. It is issued by the CAU and consumes a location in the CAU FIFO, but has no effect on any CAU register.

37.6.3.2 Load Register (LDR)

The LDR command loads CAx with the source data specified by the write data.

37.6.3.3 Store Register (STR)

The STR command returns the value of CAX specified in the read address to the destination specified as read data.

37.6.3.4 Add to Register (ADR)

The ADR command adds the source operand specified by the write data to CAX and stores the result in CAX.

37.6.3.5 Reverse and Add to Register (RADR)

The RADR command performs a byte reverse on the source operand specified by the write data, adds that value to CAX, and stores the result in CAX. The table below shows an example.

Table 37-3. RADR command example

Operand	CAX before	CAX after
0x0102_0304	0xA0B0_C0D0	0xA4B3_C2D1

37.6.3.6 Add Register to Accumulator (ADRA)

The ADRA command adds CAX to CAA and stores the result in CAA.

37.6.3.7 Exclusive Or (XOR)

The XOR command performs an exclusive-or of the source operand specified by the write data with CAX and stores the result in CAX.

37.6.3.8 Rotate Left (ROTL)

ROTL rotates the CAX bits to the left with the result stored back to CAX. The number of bits to rotate is the value specified by the write data modulo 32.

37.6.3.9 Move Register to Accumulator (MVRA)

The MVRA command moves the value from the source register CAX to the destination register CAA.

37.6.3.10 Move Accumulator to Register (MVAR)

The MVAR command moves the value from source register CAA to the destination register CAX.

37.6.3.11 AES Substitution (AESS)

The AESS command performs the AES byte substitution operation on CAX and stores the result back to CAX.

37.6.3.12 AES Inverse Substitution (AESIS)

The AESIS command performs the AES inverse byte substitution operation on CAX and stores the result back to CAX.

37.6.3.13 AES Column Operation (AESC)

The AESC command performs the AES column operation on the contents of CAX. It then performs an exclusive-or of that result with the source operand specified by the write data and stores the result in CAX.

37.6.3.14 AES Inverse Column Operation (AESIC)

The AESIC command performs an exclusive-or operation of the source operand specified by the write data on the contents of CAX followed by the AES inverse mix column operation on that result and stores the result back in CAX.

37.6.3.15 AES Shift Rows (AESR)

The AESR command performs the AES shift rows operation on registers CA0, CA1, CA2, and CA3. The table below shows an example.

Table 37-4. AESR command example

Register	Before	After
CA0	0x0102_0304	0x0106_0B00
CA1	0x0506_0708	0x050A_0F04
CA2	0x090A_0B0C	0x090E_0308
CA3	0x0D0E_0F00	0x0D02_070C

Where:

- row 1 = CA0[31:24], CA1[31:24], CA2[31:24], CA3[31:24]
- row 2 = CA0[23:16], CA1[23:16], CA2[23:16], CA3[23:16]
- row 3 = CA0[15:8], CA1[15:8], CA2[15:8], CA3[15:8]
- row 4 = CA0[7:0], CA1[7:0], CA2[7:0], CA3[7:0]

37.6.3.16 AES Inverse Shift Rows (AESIR)

The AESIR command performs the AES inverse shift rows operation on registers CA0, CA1, CA2, and CA3. The table below shows an example.

Table 37-5. AESIR command example

Register	Before	After
CA0	0x0106_0B00	0x0102_0304
CA1	0x050A_0F04	0x0506_0708
CA2	0x090E_0308	0x090A_0B0C
CA3	0x0D02_070C	0x0D0E_0F00

Where:

- row 1 = CA0[31:24], CA1[31:24], CA2[31:24], CA3[31:24]
- row 2 = CA0[23:16], CA1[23:16], CA2[23:16], CA3[23:16]
- row 3 = CA0[15:8], CA1[15:8], CA2[15:8], CA3[15:8]
- row 4 = CA0[7:0], CA1[7:0], CA2[7:0], CA3[7:0]

37.6.3.17 DES Round (DESR)

The DESR command performs a round of the DES algorithm and a key schedule update with the following source and destination designations: CA0=C, CA1=D, CA2=L, CA3=R. If the IP bit is set, DES initial permutation performs on CA2 and CA3 before the round operation. If the FP bit is set, DES final permutation, that is, inverse initial permutation, performs on CA2 and CA3 after the round operation. The round operation

uses the source values from registers CA0 and CA1 for the key addition operation. The KSx field specifies the shift for the key schedule operation to update the values in CA0 and CA1. The following table defines the specific shift function performed based on the KSx field.

Table 37-6. Key shift function codes

KSx code	KSx define	Shift function
0	KSL1	Left 1
1	KSL2	Left 2
2	KSR1	Right 1
3	KSR2	Right 2

37.6.3.18 DES Key setup (DESK)

The DESK command performs the initial key transformation, permuted choice 1, defined by the DES algorithm on CA0 and CA1 with CA0 containing bits 1–32 of the key and CA1 containing bits 33–64 of the key¹. If the DC bit is set, no shift operation performs and the values C₀ and D₀ store back to CA0 and CA1, respectively. The DC bit must be set for decrypt operations. If the DC bit is not set, a left shift by one also occurs and the values C₁ and D₁ store back to CA0 and CA1, respectively. The DC bit should be cleared for encrypt operations. If the CP bit is set and a key parity error is detected, CASR[DPE] bit is set; otherwise, it is cleared.

37.6.3.19 Hash Function (HASH)

The HASH command performs a hashing operation on a set of registers and adds that result to the value in CAA and stores the result in CAA. The specific hash function performed is based on the HFx field as defined in the table below.

This table uses the following terms:

- ROTRⁿ(CAx): rotate CAx register right *n* times
- SHRⁿ(CAx): shift CAx register right *n* times

Table 37-7. Hash Function codes

HFx code	HFx define	Hash Function	Hash logic
0	HFF	MD5 F()	(CA1 & CA2) | ($\overline{CA1}$ & CA3)
1	HFG	MD5 G()	(CA1 & CA3) | (CA2 & $\overline{CA3}$)

Table continues on the next page...

1. The DES algorithm numbers the most significant bit of a block as bit 1 and the least significant as bit 64.

Table 37-7. Hash Function codes (continued)

HFx code	HFx define	Hash Function	Hash logic
2	HFH	MD5 H(), SHA Parity()	$CA1 \wedge CA2 \wedge CA3$
3	HFI	MD5 I()	$CA2 \wedge (CA1 \mid \overline{CA3})$
4	HFC	SHA Ch()	$(CA1 \& CA2) \wedge (\overline{CA1} \& CA3)$
5	HFM	SHA Maj()	$(CA1 \& CA2) \wedge (CA1 \& CA3) \wedge (CA2 \& CA3)$
6	HF2C	SHA-256 Ch()	$(CA4 \& CA5) \wedge (\overline{CA1} \& CA6)$
7	HF2M	SHA-256 Maj()	$(CA0 \& CA1) \wedge (CA0 \& CA2) \wedge (CA1 \& CA2)$
8	HF2S	SHA-256 Sigma 0	$ROTR^2(CA0) \wedge ROTR^{13}(CA0) \wedge ROTR^{22}(CA0)$
9	HF2T	SHA-256 Sigma 1	$ROTR^6(CA4) \wedge ROTR^{11}(CA4) \wedge ROTR^{25}(CA4)$
A	HF2U	SHA-256 Sigma 0	$ROTR^7(CA8) \wedge ROTR^{18}(CA8) \wedge SHR^3(CA8)$
B	HF2V	SHA-256 Sigma 1	$ROTR^{17}(CA8) \wedge ROTR^{19}(CA8) \wedge SHR^{10}(CA8)$

37.6.3.20 Secure Hash Shift (SHS)

The SHS command does a set of parallel register-to-register move and shift operations for implementing SHA-1. The following source and destination assignments are made:

Register	Value prior to command	Value after command executes
CA4	CA4	CA3
CA3	CA3	CA2
CA2	CA2	$CA1 \lll 30$
CA1	CA1	CA0
CA0	CA0	CAA
CAA	CAA	$CAA \lll 5$

37.6.3.21 Message Digest Shift (MDS)

The MDS command does a set of parallel register-to-register move operations for implementing MD5. The following source and destination assignments are made:

Register	Value prior to command	Value after command executes
CA3	CA3	CA2
CA2	CA2	CA1
CA1	CA1	CAA
CAA	CAA	CA3

37.6.3.22 Secure Hash Shift 2 (SHS2)

The SHS2 command does an addition and a set of register to register moves in parallel for implementing SHA-256. The following source and destination assignments are made:

Register	Value prior to command	Value after command executes
CA7	CA7	CA6
CA6	CA6	CA5
CA5	CA5	CA4
CA4	CA4	CA3+CA8
CA3	CA3	CA2
CA2	CA2	CA1
CA1	CA1	CA0
CA0	CA0	CAA

37.6.3.23 Illegal command (ILL)

The ILL command is a specific illegal command that sets CASR[IC]. All other illegal commands are reserved for use in future implementations.

37.7 Application/initialization information

This section discusses how to initialize and use the CAU.

37.7.1 Code example

A code fragment is shown below as an example of how the CAU is used. This example shows the round function of the AES algorithm. Core registers are defined as follows:

- R1 points to the key schedule
- R3 contains 3 direct CAU commands
- R8 contains 2 direct CAU commands
- R9 contains an indirect CAU command
- FP points to the CAU indirect command address space
- IP points to the CAU direct command space

```

movw    fp, #:lower16:MMCAU_PPB_INDIRECT    @ fp -> MMCAU_PPB_INDIRECT
movt    fp, #:upper16:MMCAU_PPB_INDIRECT
movw    ip, #:lower16:MMCAU_PPB_DIRECT      @ ip -> MMCAU_PPB_DIRECT
movt    ip, #:upper16:MMCAU_PPB_DIRECT

```

Application/initialization information

```
# r3 = mmcau_3_cmds(AESS+CA0,AESS+CA1,AESS+CA2)
    movw    r3, #:lower16:(0x80100200+(AESS+CA0)<<22+(AESS+CA1)<<11+AESS+CA2)
    movt    r3, #:upper16:(0x80100200+(AESS+CA0)<<22+(AESS+CA1)<<11+AESS+CA2)

# r8 = mmcau_2_cmds(AESS+CA3,AESR)
    movw    r8, #:lower16:(0x80100000+(AESS+CA3)<<22+(AESR)<<11)
    movt    r8, #:upper16:(0x80100000+(AESS+CA3)<<22+(AESR)<<11)

    add     r9, fp, $((AESC+CA0)<<2)                @ r9 = mmcau_cmd(AESC+CA0)

    str     r3, [ip]                                @ sub bytes w0, w1, w2
    str     r8, [ip]                                @ sub bytes w3, shift rows
    ldmia   r1!, {r4-r7}                            @ get next 4 keys; r1++
    stmia   r9, {r4-r7}                             @ mix columns, add keys
```

37.7.2 Assembler equate values

The following equates ease programming of the CAU.

```
; CAU Registers (CAx)
    .set CASR,0x0
    .set CAA,0x1
    .set CA0,0x2
    .set CA1,0x3
    .set CA2,0x4
    .set CA3,0x5
    .set CA4,0x6
    .set CA5,0x7
    .set CA6,0x8
    .set CA7,0x9
    .set CA8,0xA

; CAU Commands
    .set CNOP,0x000
    .set LDR,0x010
    .set STR,0x020
    .set ADR,0x030
    .set RADR,0x040
    .set ADRA,0x050
    .set XOR,0x060
    .set ROTL,0x070
    .set MVRA,0x080
    .set MVAR,0x090
    .set AESS,0x0A0
    .set AESIS,0x0B0
    .set AESC,0x0C0
    .set AESIC,0x0D0
    .set AESR,0x0E0
    .set AESIR,0x0F0
    .set DESR,0x100
    .set DESK,0x110
    .set HASH,0x120
    .set SHS,0x130
    .set MDS,0x140
    .set SHS2,0x150
    .set ILL,0x1F0

; DESR Fields
    .set IP,0x08          ; initial permutation
    .set FP,0x04          ; final permutation
    .set KSL1,0x00        ; key schedule left 1 bit
    .set KSL2,0x01        ; key schedule left 2 bits
    .set KSR1,0x02        ; key schedule right 1 bit
    .set KSR2,0x03        ; key schedule right 2 bits

; DESK Field
    .set DC,0x01          ; decrypt key schedule
```



```

.set CP,0x02          ; check parity
; HASH Functions Codes
.set HFF,0x0          ; MD5 F() CA1&CA2 | ~CA1&CA3
.set HFG,0x1          ; MD5 G() CA1&CA3 | CA2&~CA3
.set HFH,0x2          ; MD5 H(), SHA Parity() CA1^CA2^CA3
.set HFI,0x3          ; MD5 I() CA2^(CA1|~CA3)
.set HFC,0x4          ; SHA Ch() CA1&CA2 ^ ~CA1&CA3
.set HFM,0x5          ; SHA Maj() CA1&CA2 ^ CA1&CA3 ^ CA2&CA3
.set HF2C,0x6         ; SHA-256 Ch() CA4&CA5 ^ ~CA4&CA6
.set HF2M,0x7         ; SHA-256 Maj() CA0&CA1 ^ CA0&CA2 ^ CA1&CA2
.set HF2S,0x8         ; SHA-256 Sigma 0 ROTR2(CA0)^ROTR13(CA0)^ROTR22(CA0)
.set HF2T,0x9         ; SHA-256 Sigma 1 ROTR6(CA4)^ROTR11(CA4)^ROTR25(CA4)
.set HF2U,0xA         ; SHA-256 sigma 0 ROTR7(CA8)^ROTR18(CA8)^SHR3(CA8)
.set HF2V,0xB         ; SHA-256 sigma 1 ROTR17(CA8)^ROTR19(CA8)^SHR10(CA8)

```



Chapter 38

True Random Number Generator

38.1 Standalone True Random Number Generator (SA-TRNG).

The Standalone True Random Number Generator (SA-TRNG) is hardware accelerator module that generates a 512-bit entropy as needed by an entropy consuming module or by other post processing functions. A typical entropy consumer is a pseudo random-number generator (PRNG) which can be implemented to achieve both true randomness and cryptographic strength random numbers using the TRNG output as its entropy seed. The PRNG is not part of this module.

The entropy generated by an TRNG is intended for direct use by functions that generate secret keys, per-message secrets, random challenges, and other similar quantities used in cryptographic algorithms. In each of these cases, it is important that a random number be difficult to guess or predict. It is important that a random number is at least as difficult to predict as it is difficult to break the cryptographic algorithm with which it is being used. This stringent requirement is particularly difficult to fulfill if the entropy source from a TRNG contains bias and/or correlation. To increase the trustworthiness/quality of the generated random data, PRNGs are often used to post process the output of a TRNG.

This document describes only the TRNG design functionality and usage.

Note that before entropy can be obtained from the TRNG, it must be initialized and instantiated in a particular mode by setting the appropriate TRNG registers.

The TRNG contains the following sub modules: IP Slave bus (SkyBlue bus) interface, the TRNG Core and the free running oscillator (OSC).

38.1.1 Standalone True Random Number Generator Block Diagram

The following figure is a top-level diagram of the True Random Number Generator.

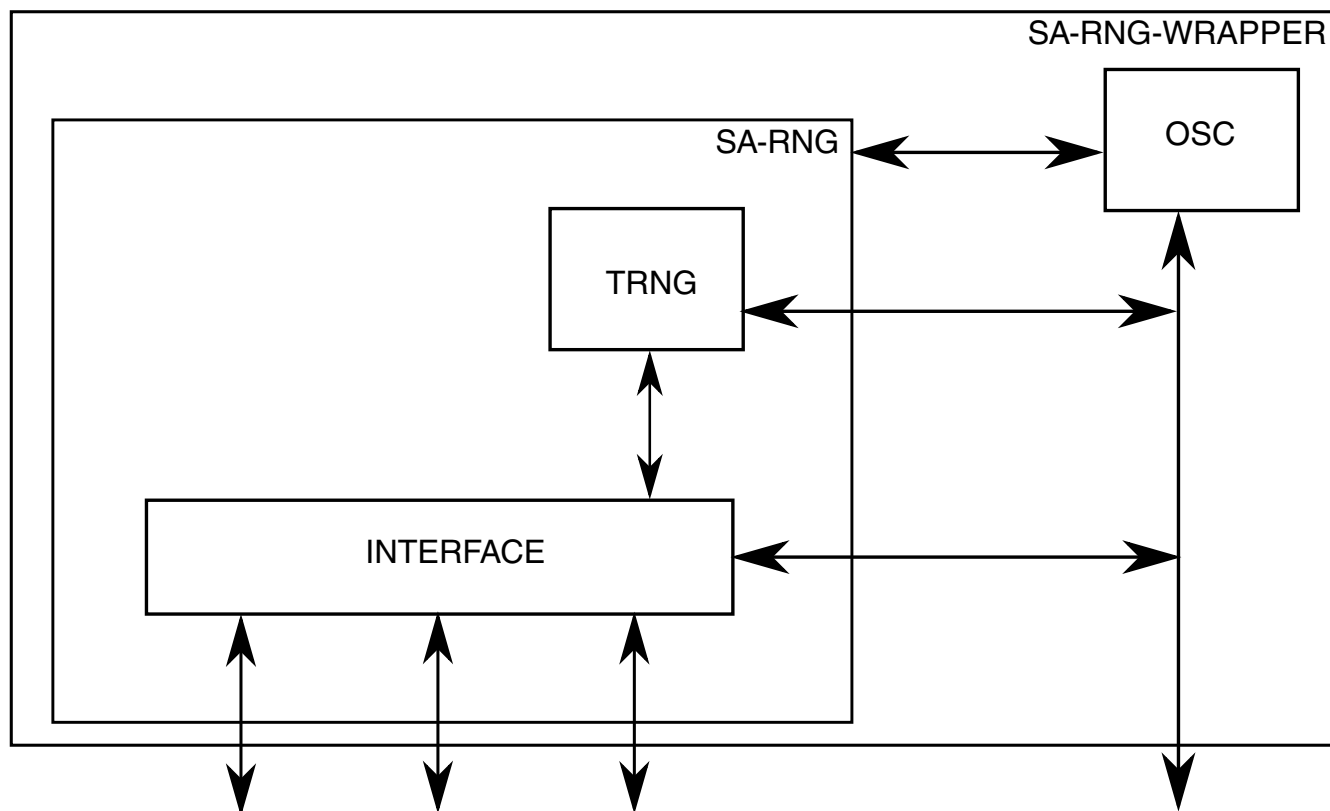


Figure 38-1. SA TRNG Block Diagram

38.1.2 TRNG Functional Description.

The TRNG consists of several functional sub-modules. Its overall functionality can be easily described from the top level in terms of generating entropy for seed generation. The functionality of each sub-module is briefly described in the following subsections.

TRNG is based on collecting bits from a random noise source. This random noise source is a ring oscillator that is sensitive to random noise (temperature variations, voltage variations, cross-talk and other random noise) within the device in which the TRNG is used. This noise causes various small changes in the period of the oscillator. Therefore, if the count of the ring oscillator clock cycles is sampled after a known period of time, this count will vary each time the sample is taken. By using the variance in this count over a large number of samples, random bits can be derived.

The TRNG comprises two entropy sources, each of which provides a single bit of output. Concatenated together, these 2 output bits are expected to provide 1 bit of entropy every 100 clock cycles. In addition to generating entropy, the TRNG also performs several statistical tests on its output.

38.1.3 SA-TRNG hardware functional description.

SA-TRNG functionality consists of several major subcomponents. This table describes these subcomponents.

Table 38-1. SA-TRNG subcomponents.

Description	Cross-reference(s)
Interfaces	
Register interface <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Used for access to configuration, control, status and debugging registers 	Register interface (IP Slave bus)
True Random Number Generator (TRNG)	Standalone True Random Number Generator (SA-TRNG).

38.1.3.1 Software Use Cases for the Stand Alone TRNG.

There are four things that a user (programmer/integrator) will want to do with a TRNG.

- Initialization.

Set up the parameters to proper values, and start generation of the first block of entropy. This is done once.

- Read entropy from the TRNG, and start generation of the next block of entropy.

This is done many times and is the normal flow of operation.

- Run a self-test on the TRNG, to assure proper continued operation.

This involves taking TRNG off-line, setting some self-test parameters, running TRNG, and then reading the statistical test registers, to see that they are within proper operation values. This may not be needed, as TRNG has built-in self-test.

- Off-line determination and checking of TRNG parameter values.

This is done in development in order to determine the proper initialization and self-test parameters. The TRNG is taken off-line. Test parameter values are written and entropy generation is started. If the statistical tests indicate poor operation (i.e., failing statistical tests), the entropy_delay value should be increased and entropy generation should be re-started. Every case is a variation of setting TRNG parameter values, starting or re-starting entropy generation and reading out the entropy. This process requires pausing or stopping and re-starting the TRNG.

The TRNG is designed to operate as a slave module on the standard IP Slave Bus. By understanding the TRNG register descriptions in "TRNG Register Descriptions" section below, the TRNG module can be controlled via the IP slave bus. In order to write to most TRNG registers, the MCTL register must be initialized in programming mode as described in the "TRNG Register Descriptions" section. At Power On Reset (POR), the TRNG resets to programming mode. And the it will not generate entropy until it is out of programming mode (in run mode) and access to Entropy Registers have been enabled.

Here is an example program flow of using the TRNG.

- After POR the TRNG will be reset into programming mode with the OK to stop bit set (MCTL[TSTOP_OK]=1). The TRNG must be put into Run Mode for Entropy Generation to begin (MCTL[PRGM]=0). Additionally, in order to have access to the Entropy registers and other critical TRNG registers, the TRNG access bit must be set (MCTL[TRNG_ACC]=1). Using the default self test limits that exist after bootup, the entropy valid bit can be polled until asserted (MCTL[ENT_VAL]=1). Alternatively, if using the interrupt, and the interrupts are enabled via the INT_MASK register and the ipi_rng_int_b is asserted when MCTL[ENT_VAL]=1.
- After the polling completes, the 512-bit entropy generated by the TRNG can be read. The values can be read in any order from entropy register 0 to register 15 (ENT0 to ENT 15). After reading ENT 15, the old entropy value is reset and a new entropy value is generated.

NOTE

Reading ENT 15 always resets the entropy, so should always be read last.

- You can poll again for the new entropy value or you can use the Interrupt Status Register to handle reading the entropy values when the entropy valid interrupt is triggered.
- The interrupt can be masked or cleared as needed. See the Interrupt Status Register description.
- To change the self-test limits, the seed counters, how fast the entropy is generated, and how entropy is sampled, see the register description section. In particular, see the the TRNG Frequency Count Minimum Limit Register (FRQMIN), the seed control register (SCML), the statistical run length registers, and other parameter registers.
- Once in Run Mode, the entropy is re-generated automatically after ENT 15 is read. To stop the TRNG or access to TRNG registers at any point while in running mode, you can always set MCTL[TRNG_ACC]=0. Setting the TRNG back to programming mode (MCTL[PRGM]=1) also achieves the purpose of stopping entropy generation.

38.1.3.2 Register interface (IP Slave bus)

The TRNG's register interface (32-bit IP bus) is used to read and write registers within TRNG for the following purposes:

Table 38-2. Summary of register interface uses

Purpose	For more information, see
During chip initialization time	
To configure TRNG including initialization of the <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Registers TRNG Register Interface 	
During hardware and software debugging	
Read status registers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> RNG TRNG Status Register For all registers, see the TRNG Register Descriptions" appendix.

NOTE

Accesses to registers must use full-word (32-bit) reads or writes.

38.1.3.3 TRNG0 Register Descriptions

All accesses of undefined addresses always return zero and assert IPS transfer error. Writes to undefined and read-only addresses are ignored. Undefined addresses are those undocumented, protected or reserved addresses within and outside the range of the addresses defined in the memory map below. Although many of the TRNG0 registers hold more than 32 bits, the register addresses shown in the Memory Map below represent how these registers are accessed over the register bus as 32-bit words.

The format and fields in each TRNG0 register are defined below. Some of the register format figures apply to several different registers. In such cases a different register name will be associated with each of the register offset addresses that appear at the top of the register format figure. Although these registers share the same format, they are independent registers. In addition, many registers can be accessed at multiple addresses. In these cases there will be a single register name and the list of addresses at which that register is accessible will be indicated as aliases. Unless noted in the individual register descriptions, registers are reset only at Power-On Reset (POR).

38.1.3.3.1 TRNG0 Memory Map

Offset	Register	Width (In bits)	Access	Reset value
0h	TRNG0 Miscellaneous Control (TRNG0_MCTL)	32	RW	00012001h
4h	TRNG0 Statistical Check Miscellaneous (TRNG0_SCMISC)	32	RW	0001001Fh ¹
8h	TRNG0 Poker Range (TRNG0_PKRRNG)	32	RW	000009A3h
Ch	TRNG0 Poker Maximum Limit (TRNG0_PKRMAX)	32	RW	00006920h
Ch	TRNG0 Poker Square Calculation Result (TRNG0_PKRSQ)	32	RO	00000000h
10h	TRNG0 Seed Control (TRNG0_SDCTL)	32	RW	0C8009C4h
14h	TRNG0 Sparse Bit Limit (TRNG0_SBLIM)	32	RW	0000003Fh
14h	TRNG0 Total Samples (TRNG0_TOTSAM)	32	RO	00000000h
18h	TRNG0 Frequency Count Minimum Limit (TRNG0_FRQMIN)	32	RW	00000640h
1Ch	TRNG0 Frequency Count Maximum Limit (TRNG0_FRQMAX)	32	RW	00006400h
1Ch	TRNG0 Frequency Count (TRNG0_FRQCNT)	32	RO	00000000h
20h	TRNG0 Statistical Check Monobit Count (TRNG0_SCMC)	32	RO	00000000h
20h	TRNG0 Statistical Check Monobit Limit (TRNG0_SCML)	32	RW	010C0568h
24h	TRNG0 Statistical Check Run Length 1 Limit (TRNG0_SCR1L)	32	RW	00B20195h
24h	TRNG0 Statistical Check Run Length 1 Count (TRNG0_SCR1C)	32	RO	00000000h
28h	TRNG0 Statistical Check Run Length 2 Limit (TRNG0_SCR2L)	32	RW	007A00DCh
28h	TRNG0 Statistical Check Run Length 2 Count (TRNG0_SCR2C)	32	RO	00000000h
2Ch	TRNG0 Statistical Check Run Length 3 Count (TRNG0_SCR3C)	32	RO	00000000h
2Ch	TRNG0 Statistical Check Run Length 3 Limit (TRNG0_SCR3L)	32	RW	0058007Dh
30h	TRNG0 Statistical Check Run Length 4 Count (TRNG0_SCR4C)	32	RO	00000000h
30h	TRNG0 Statistical Check Run Length 4 Limit (TRNG0_SCR4L)	32	RW	0040004Bh
34h	TRNG0 Statistical Check Run Length 5 Limit (TRNG0_SCR5L)	32	RW	002E002Fh
34h	TRNG0 Statistical Check Run Length 5 Count (TRNG0_SCR5C)	32	RO	00000000h
38h	TRNG0 Statistical Check Run Length 6+ Limit (TRNG0_SCR6PL)	32	RW	002E002Fh
38h	TRNG0 Statistical Check Run Length 6+ Count (TRNG0_SCR6PC)	32	RO	00000000h
3Ch	TRNG0 Status (TRNG0_STATUS)	32	RO	00000000h
40h - 7Ch	TRNG0 Entropy Read (TRNG0_ENT0 - TRNG0_ENT15)	32	RO	00000000h
80h	TRNG0 Statistical Check Poker Count 1 and 0 (TRNG0_PKRCNT10)	32	RO	00000000h
84h	TRNG0 Statistical Check Poker Count 3 and 2 (TRNG0_PKRCNT32)	32	RO	00000000h
88h	TRNG0 Statistical Check Poker Count 5 and 4 (TRNG0_PKRCNT54)	32	RO	00000000h
8Ch	TRNG0 Statistical Check Poker Count 7 and 6 (TRNG0_PKRCNT76)	32	RO	00000000h
90h	TRNG0 Statistical Check Poker Count 9 and 8 (TRNG0_PKRCNT98)	32	RO	00000000h
94h	TRNG0 Statistical Check Poker Count B and A (TRNG0_PKRCNT BA)	32	RO	00000000h
98h	TRNG0 Statistical Check Poker Count D and C (TRNG0_PKRCNT DC)	32	RO	00000000h
9Ch	TRNG0 Statistical Check Poker Count F and E (TRNG0_PKRCNT FE)	32	RO	00000000h
B0h	TRNG0 Security Configuration (TRNG0_SEC_CFG)	32	RW	00000000h

Table continues on the next page...

Offset	Register	Width (In bits)	Access	Reset value
B4h	TRNG0 Interrupt Control (TRNG0_INT_CTRL)	32	RW	FFFFFFFFh
B8h	TRNG0 Mask (TRNG0_INT_MASK)	32	RW	00000000h
BCh	TRNG0 Interrupt Status (TRNG0_INT_STATUS)	32	RW	00000000h
F0h	TRNG0 Version ID (MS) (TRNG0_VID1)	32	RO	00300100h
F4h	TRNG0 Version ID (LS) (TRNG0_VID2)	32	RO	00000000h

- Reset occurs at POR, and when TRNG0_MCTL[RST_DEF] is written to 1.

38.1.3.3.2 TRNG0 Miscellaneous Control (TRNG0_MCTL)

38.1.3.3.2.1 Address

Register	Offset
TRNG0_MCTL	0h

38.1.3.3.2.2 Function

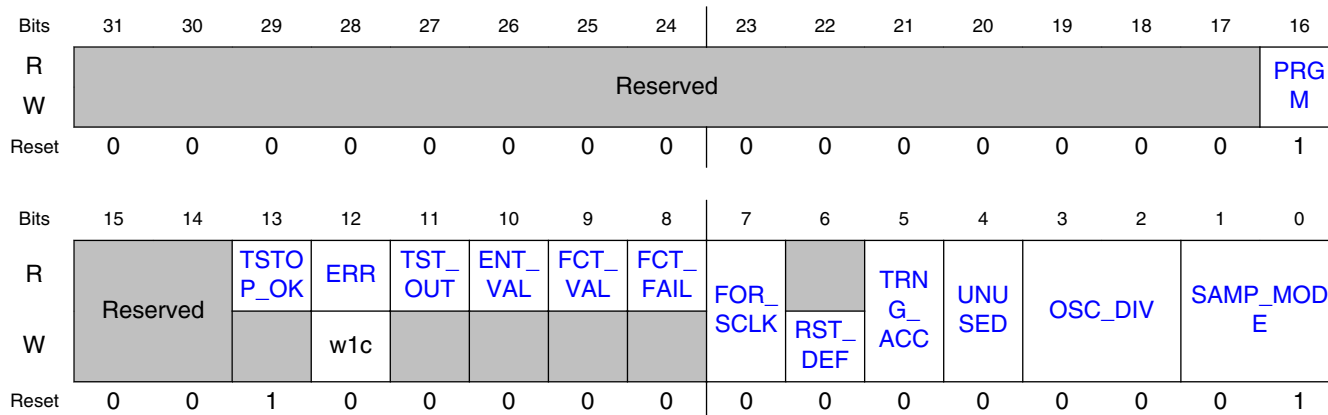
This register is intended to be used for programming, configuring and testing the RNG. It is the main register to read/write, in order to enable Entropy generation, to stop entropy generation and to block access to entropy registers. This is done via the special TRNG_ACC and PRGM bits below.

The TRNG0 Miscellaneous Control Register is a read/write register used to control the RNG's True Random Number Generator (TRNG) access, operation and test.

NOTE

Note that in many cases two RNG registers share the same address, and a particular register at the shared address is selected based upon the value in the PRGM field of the TRNG0_MCTL register.

38.1.3.3.2.3 Diagram



38.1.3.3.2.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-17 —	Reserved.
16 PRGM	Programming Mode Select. When this bit is 1, the TRNG is in Program Mode, otherwise it is in Run Mode. No Entropy value will be generated while the TRNG is in Program Mode. Note that different RNG registers are accessible at the same address depending on whether PRGM is set to 1 or 0. This is noted in the RNG register descriptions.
15-14 —	Reserved.
13 TSTOP_OK	TRNG_OK_TO_STOP. Software should check that this bit is a 1 before transitioning TRNG0 to low power mode (TRNG0 clock stopped). TRNG0 turns on the TRNG free-running ring oscillator whenever new entropy is being generated and turns off the ring oscillator when entropy generation is complete. If the TRNG0 clock is stopped while the TRNG ring oscillator is running, the oscillator will continue running even though the TRNG0 clock is stopped. TSTOP_OK is asserted when the TRNG ring oscillator is not running. and therefore it is ok to stop the TRNG0 clock.
12 ERR	Read: Error status. 1 = error detected. 0 = no error. Write: Write 1 to clear errors. Writing 0 has no effect.
11 TST_OUT	Read only: Test point inside ring oscillator.
10 ENT_VAL	Read only: Entropy Valid. Will assert only if TRNG ACC bit is set, and then after an entropy value is generated. Will be cleared at most one (1) bus clock cycle after reading the TRNG0_ENT15 register. (TRNG0_ENT0 through TRNG0_ENT14 should be read before reading TRNG0_ENT15).
9 FCT_VAL	Read only: Frequency Count Valid. Indicates that a valid frequency count may be read from TRNG0_FRQCNT.
8 FCT_FAIL	Read only: Frequency Count Fail. The frequency counter has detected a failure. This may be due to improper programming of the TRNG0_FRQMAX and/or TRNG0_FRQMIN registers, or a hardware failure in the ring oscillator. This error may be cleared by writing a 1 to the ERR bit.

Table continues on the next page...

Field	Function
7 FOR_SCLK	Force System Clock. If set, the system clock is used to operate the TRNG, instead of the ring oscillator. This is for test use only, and indeterminate results may occur. This bit is writable only if PRGM bit is 1, or PRGM bit is being written to 1 simultaneously to writing this bit. This bit is cleared by writing the RST_DEF bit to 1.
6 RST_DEF	Reset Defaults. Writing a 1 to this bit clears various TRNG registers, and bits within registers, to their default state. This bit is writable only if PRGM bit is 1, or PRGM bit is being written to 1 simultaneously to writing this bit. Reading this bit always produces a 0.
5 TRNG_ACC	TRNG Access Mode. If this bit is set to 1, the TRNG will generate an Entropy value that can be read via the TRNG0_ENT0-TRNG0_ENT15 registers. The Entropy value may be read once the ENT VAL bit is asserted. Also see TRNG0_ENTa register descriptions (For a = 0 to 15).
4 UNUSED	This bit is unused but write-able. Must be left as zero.
3-2 OSC_DIV	Oscillator Divide. Determines the amount of dividing done to the ring oscillator before it is used by the TRNG. This field is writable only if PRGM bit is 1, or PRGM bit is being written to 1 simultaneously to writing this field. This field is cleared to the default POR value by writing the RST_DEF bit to 1. 00 - use ring oscillator with no divide 01 - use ring oscillator divided-by-2 10 - use ring oscillator divided-by-4 11 - use ring oscillator divided-by-8
1-0 SAMP_MODE	Sample Mode. Determines the method of sampling the ring oscillator while generating the Entropy value: This field is writable only if PRGM bit is 1, or PRGM bit is being written to 1 simultaneously with writing this field. This field is cleared to the POR default value by writing the RST_DEF bit to 1. 00 - use Von Neumann data into both Entropy shifter and Statistical Checker 01 - use raw data into both Entropy shifter and Statistical Checker 10 - use Von Neumann data into Entropy shifter. Use raw data into Statistical Checker 11 - undefined/reserved.

38.1.3.3.3 TRNG0 Statistical Check Miscellaneous (TRNG0_SCMISC)

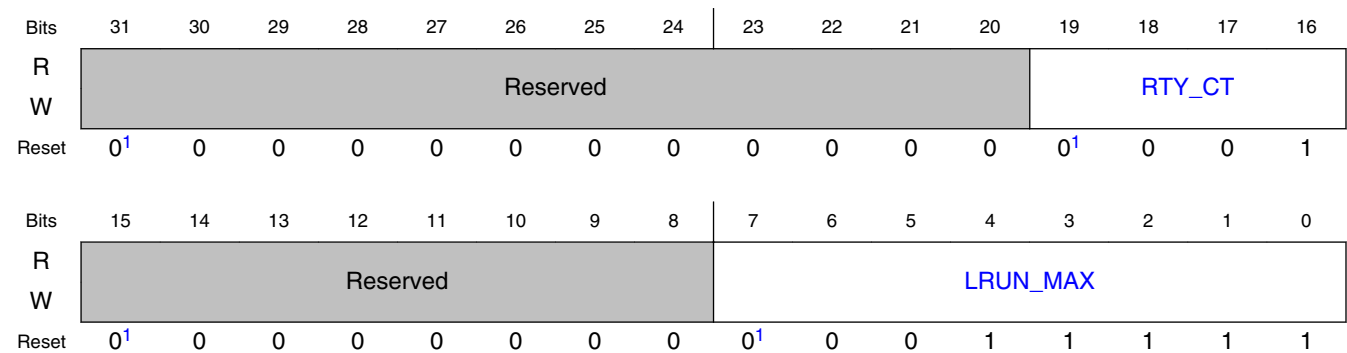
38.1.3.3.3.1 Address

Register	Offset
TRNG0_SCMISC	4h

38.1.3.3.3.2 Function

The TRNG0 Statistical Check Miscellaneous Register contains the Long Run Maximum Limit value and the Retry Count value. This register is accessible only when the TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] bit is 1, otherwise this register will read zeroes, and cannot be written.

38.1.3.3.3 Diagram



- Reset occurs at POR, and when TRNG0_MCTL[RST_DEF] is written to 1.

38.1.3.3.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-20 —	Reserved.
19-16 RTY_CT	RETRY COUNT. If a statistical check fails during the TRNG Entropy Generation, the RTY_CT value indicates the number of times a retry should occur before generating an error. This field is writable only if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] bit is 1. This field will read zeroes if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0. This field is cleared to the default POR value by writing the TRNG0_MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1.
15-8 —	Reserved.
7-0 LRUN_MAX	LONG RUN MAX LIMIT. This value is the largest allowable number of consecutive samples of all 1, or all 0, that is allowed during the Entropy generation. This field is writable only if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] bit is 1. This field will read zeroes if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0. This field is cleared to the POR reset value by writing the TRNG0_MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1.

38.1.3.3.4 TRNG0 Poker Range (TRNG0_PKRRNG)

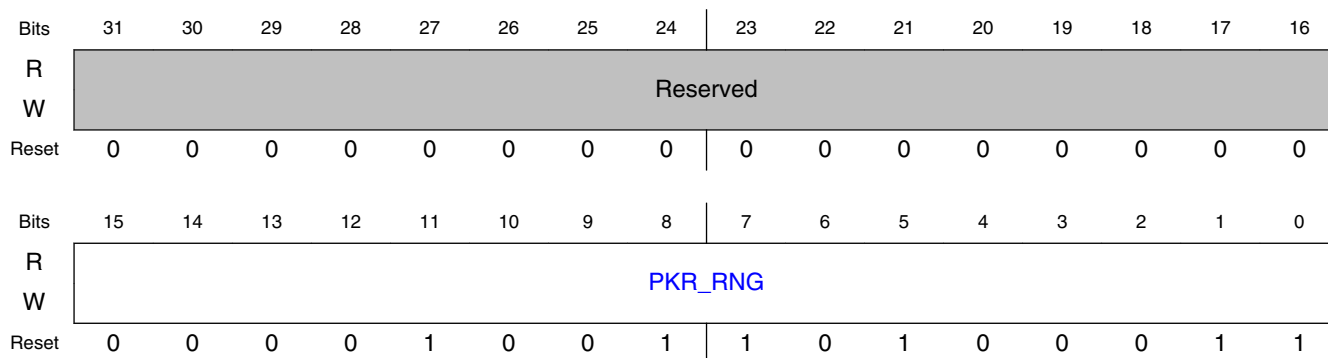
38.1.3.3.4.1 Address

Register	Offset
TRNG0_PKRRNG	8h

38.1.3.3.4.2 Function

The TRNG0 Poker Range Register defines the difference between the TRNG Poker Maximum Limit and the minimum limit. These limits are used during the TRNG Statistical Check Poker Test.

38.1.3.3.4.3 Diagram



38.1.3.3.4.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-16 —	Reserved. Always 0.
15-0 PKR_RNG	Poker Range. During the TRNG Statistical Checks, a "Poker Test" is run which requires a maximum and minimum limit. The maximum is programmed in the PKRMAX[PKR_MAX] register, and the minimum is derived by subtracting the PKR_RNG value from the programmed maximum value. This field is writable only if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] bit is 1. This field will read zeroes if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0. This field is cleared to the default POR value by writing the TRNG0_MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1. Note that the minimum allowable Poker result is PKR_MAX - PKR_RNG + 1.

38.1.3.3.5 TRNG0 Poker Maximum Limit (TRNG0_PKRMAX)

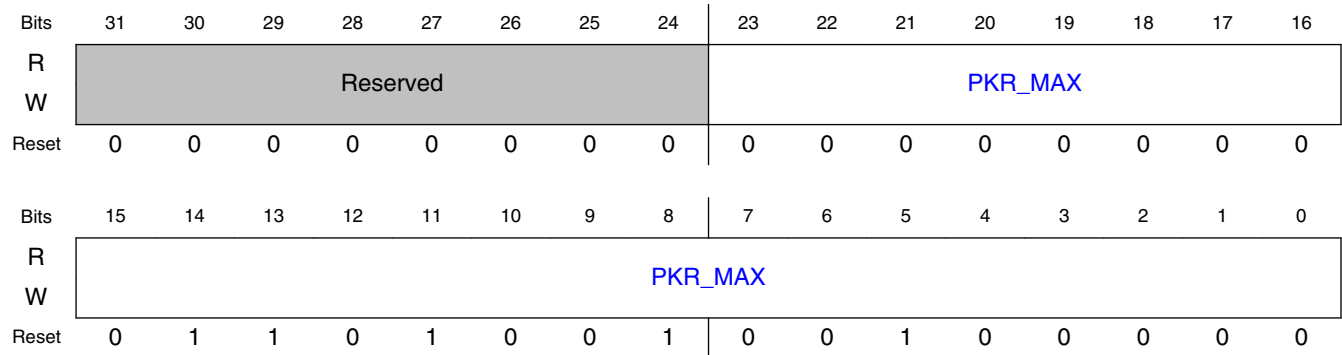
38.1.3.3.5.1 Address

Register	Offset	Description
TRNG0_PKRMAX	Ch	Accessible at this address when TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 1]

38.1.3.3.5.2 Function

The TRNG0 Poker Maximum Limit Register defines Maximum Limit allowable during the TRNG Statistical Check Poker Test. Note that this offset (0x0C) is used as TRNG0_PKRMAX only if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this offset is used as the TRNG0_PKRSQ readback register.

38.1.3.3.5.3 Diagram



38.1.3.3.5.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-24 —	
23-0 PKR_MAX	<p>Poker Maximum Limit.</p> <p>During the TRNG Statistical Checks, a "Poker Test" is run which requires a maximum and minimum limit. The maximum allowable result is programmed in the TRNG0_PKRMAX[PKR_MAX] register. This field is writable only if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] bit is 1. This register is cleared to the default POR value by writing the TRNG0_MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1. Note that the TRNG0_PKRMAX and TRNG0_PKRRNG registers combined are used to define the minimum allowable Poker result, which is PKR_MAX - PKR_RNG + 1. Note that if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] bit is 0, this register address is used to read the Poker Test Square Calculation result in register TRNG0_PKRSQ, as defined in the following section.</p>

38.1.3.3.6 TRNG0 Poker Square Calculation Result (TRNG0_PKRSQ)

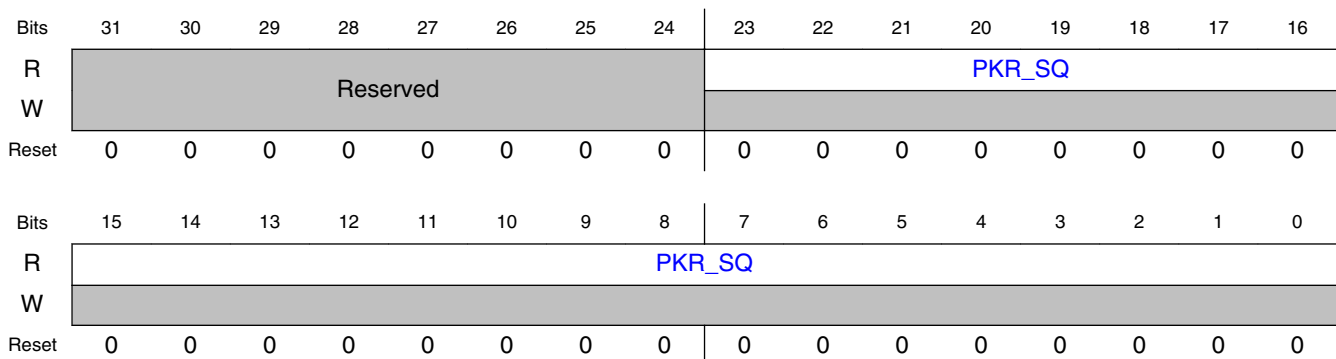
38.1.3.3.6.1 Address

Register	Offset	Description
TRNG0_PKRSQ	Ch	Accessible at this address when TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0]

38.1.3.3.6.2 Function

The TRNG0 Poker Square Calculation Result Register is a read-only register used to read the result of the TRNG Statistical Check Poker Test's Square Calculation. This test starts with the TRNG0_PKRMAX value and decreases towards a final result, which is read here. For the Poker Test to pass, this final result must be less than the programmed TRNG0_PKRRNG value. Note that this offset (0x0C) is used as TRNG0_PKRMAX if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this offset is used as TRNG0_PKRSQ readback register, as described here.

38.1.3.3.6.3 Diagram



38.1.3.3.6.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-24 —	
23-0 PKR_SQ	<p>Poker Square Calculation Result.</p> <p>During the TRNG Statistical Checks, a "Poker Test" is run which starts with the value TRNG0_PKRMAX[PKR_MAX]. This value decreases according to a "sum of squares" algorithm, and must remain greater than zero, but less than the TRNG0_PKRRNG[PKR_RNG] limit. The resulting value may be read through this register, if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] bit is 0. Note that if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] bit is 1, this register address is used to access the Poker Test Maximum Limit in register TRNG0_PKRMAX, as defined in the previous section.</p>

38.1.3.3.7 TRNG0 Seed Control (TRNG0_SDCTL)

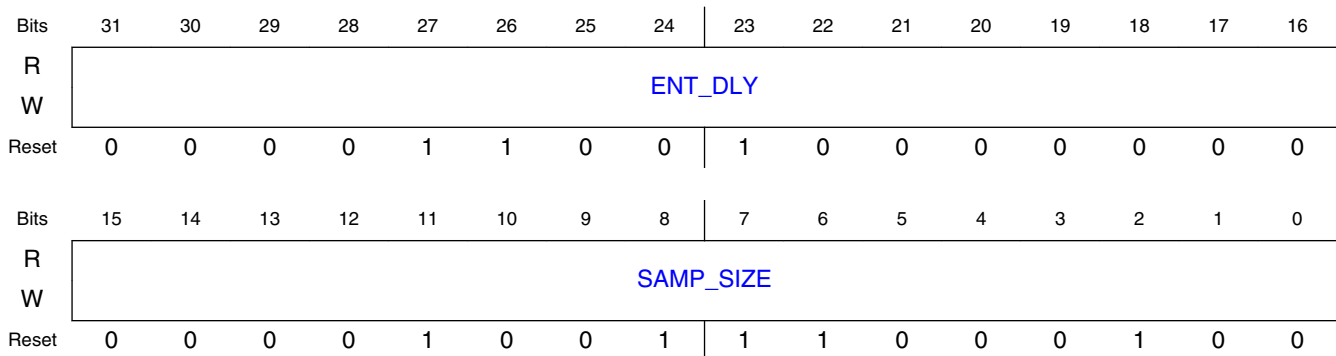
38.1.3.3.7.1 Address

Register	Offset
TRNG0_SDCTL	10h

38.1.3.3.7.2 Function

The TRNG0 Seed Control Register contains two fields. One field defines the length (in system clocks) of each Entropy sample (ENT_DLY), and the other field indicates the number of samples that will taken during each TRNG Entropy generation (SAMP_SIZE).

38.1.3.3.7.3 Diagram



38.1.3.3.7.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-16 ENT_DLY	Entropy Delay. Defines the length (in system clocks) of each Entropy sample taken. This field is writable only if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] bit is 1. This field will read zeroes if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0. This field is cleared to its reset value at POR.
15-0 SAMP_SIZE	Sample Size. Defines the total number of Entropy samples that will be taken during Entropy generation. This field is writable only if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] bit is 1. This field will read zeroes if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0. This field is cleared to the default POR value by writing the TRNG0_MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1.

38.1.3.3.8 TRNG0 Sparse Bit Limit (TRNG0_SBLIM)

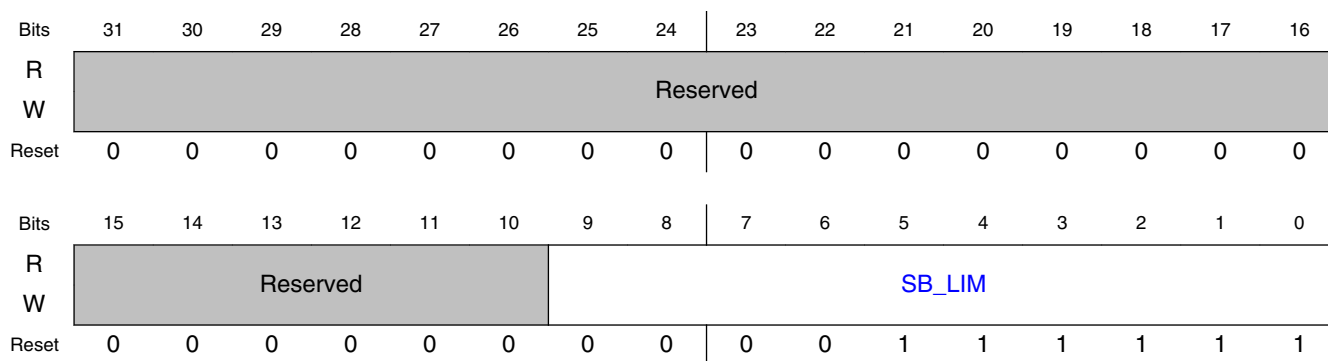
38.1.3.3.8.1 Address

Register	Offset	Description
TRNG0_SBLIM	14h	Accessible at this address when TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 1]

38.1.3.3.8.2 Function

The TRNG0 Sparse Bit Limit Register is used when Von Neumann sampling is selected during Entropy Generation. It defines the maximum number of consecutive Von Neumann samples which may be discarded before an error is generated. Note that this address (0x14) is used as TRNG0_SBLIM only if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this address is used as TRNG0_TOTSAM readback register.

38.1.3.3.8.3 Diagram



38.1.3.3.8.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-10 —	Reserved. Always 0.
9-0 SB_LIM	Sparse Bit Limit. During Von Neumann sampling (if enabled by TRNG0_MCTL[SAMP_MODE], samples are discarded if two consecutive raw samples are both 0 or both 1. If this discarding occurs for a long period of time, it indicates that there is insufficient Entropy. The Sparse Bit Limit defines the maximum number of consecutive samples that may be discarded before an error is generated. This field is writable only if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] bit is 1. This register is cleared to the default POR value by writing the TRNG0_MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1. Note that if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] bit is 0, this register address is used to read the Total Samples count in register TRNG0_TOTSAM, as defined in the following section.

38.1.3.3.9 TRNG0 Total Samples (TRNG0_TOTSAM)

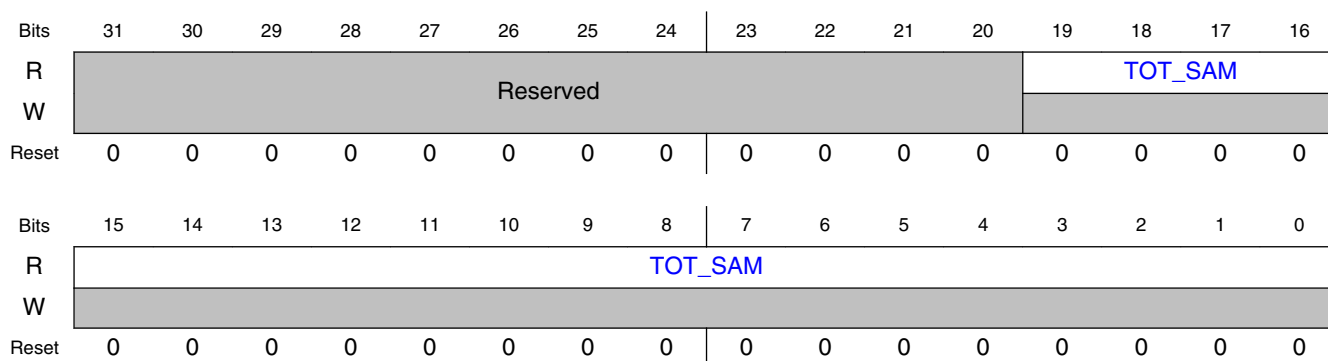
38.1.3.3.9.1 Address

Register	Offset	Description
TRNG0_TOTSAM	14h	Accessible at this address when TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0]

38.1.3.3.9.2 Function

The TRNG0 Total Samples Register is a read-only register used to read the total number of samples taken during Entropy generation. It is used to give an indication of how often a sample is actually used during Von Neumann sampling. Note that this offset (0x14) is used as TRNG0_SBLIM if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this offset is used as TRNG0_TOTSAM readback register, as described here.

38.1.3.3.9.3 Diagram



38.1.3.3.9.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-20 —	Reserved. Always 0.
19-0 TOT_SAM	Total Samples. During Entropy generation, the total number of raw samples is counted. This count is useful in determining how often a sample is used during Von Neumann sampling. The count may be read through this register, if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] bit is 0. Note that if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] bit is 1, this register address is used to access the Sparse Bit Limit in register TRNG0_SBLIM, as defined in the previous section.

38.1.3.3.10 TRNG0 Frequency Count Minimum Limit (TRNG0_FRQMIN)

38.1.3.3.10.1 Address

Register	Offset
TRNG0_FRQMIN	18h

38.1.3.3.10.2 Function

The TRNG0 Frequency Count Minimum Limit Register defines the minimum allowable count taken by the Entropy sample counter during each Entropy sample. During any sample period, if the count is less than this programmed minimum, a Frequency Count Fail is flagged in TRNG0_MCTL[FCT_FAIL] and an error is generated.

38.1.3.3.10.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Reserved										FRQ_MIN					
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	FRQ_MIN															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0

38.1.3.3.10.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-22 —	Reserved. Always 0.
21-0 FRQ_MIN	Frequency Count Minimum Limit. Defines the minimum allowable count taken during each entropy sample. This field is writable only if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] bit is 1. This field will read zeroes if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0. This field is cleared to its reset value at POR.

38.1.3.3.11 TRNG0 Frequency Count (TRNG0_FRQCNT)

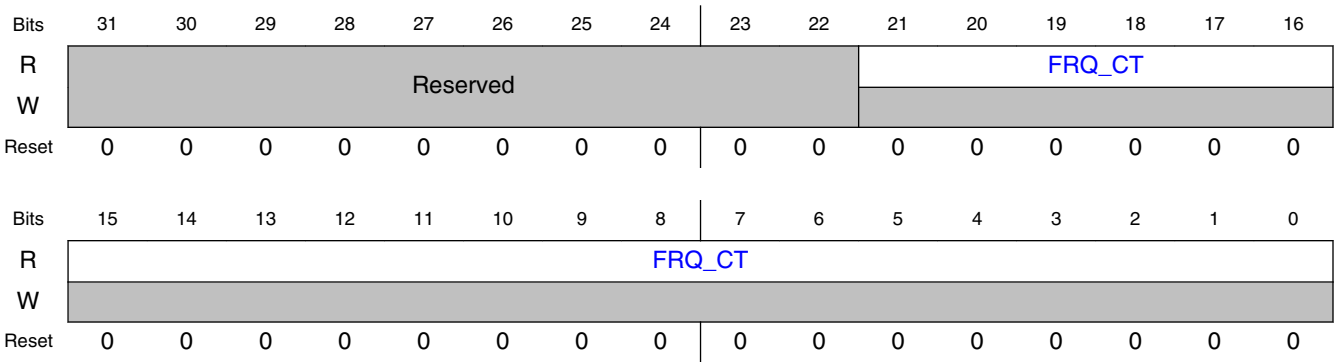
38.1.3.3.11.1 Address

Register	Offset	Description
TRNG0_FRQCNT	1Ch	Accessible at this address when TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0]

38.1.3.3.11.2 Function

The TRNG0 Frequency Count Register is a read-only register used to read the frequency counter within the TRNG entropy generator. It will read all zeroes unless TRNG0_MCTL[TRNG_ACC] = 1. Note that this offset (0x1C) is used as TRNG0_FRQMAX if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this offset is used as TRNG0_FRQCNT readback register, as described here.

38.1.3.3.11.3 Diagram



38.1.3.3.11.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-22 —	Reserved. Always 0.
21-0 FRQ_CT	Frequency Count. If TRNG0_MCTL[TRNG_ACC] = 1, reads a sample frequency count taken during entropy generation. Requires TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0. Note that if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] bit is 1, this register address is used to access the Poker Test Maximum Limit in register TRNG0_PKRMAX, as defined in the previous section.

38.1.3.3.12 TRNG0 Frequency Count Maximum Limit (TRNG0_FRQMAX)

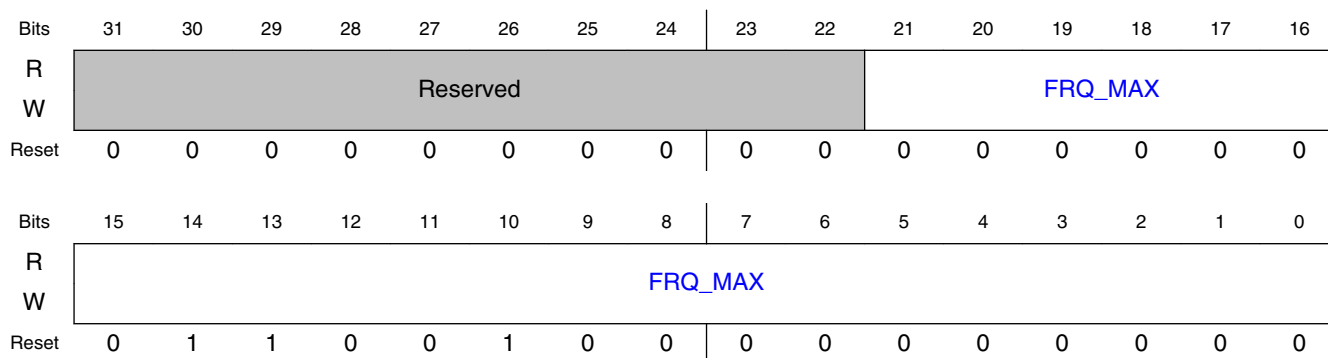
38.1.3.3.12.1 Address

Register	Offset	Description
TRNG0_FRQMAX	1Ch	Accessible at this address when TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 1]

38.1.3.3.12.2 Function

The TRNG0 Frequency Count Maximum Limit Register defines the maximum allowable count taken by the Entropy sample counter during each Entropy sample. During any sample period, if the count is greater than this programmed maximum, a Frequency Count Fail is flagged in TRNG0_MCTL[FCT_FAIL] and an error is generated. Note that this address (001C) is used as TRNG0_FRQMAX only if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this address is used as TRNG0_FRQCNT readback register.

38.1.3.3.12.3 Diagram



38.1.3.3.12.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-22 —	Reserved. Always 0.
21-0 FRQ_MAX	Frequency Counter Maximum Limit. Defines the maximum allowable count taken during each entropy sample. This field is writable only if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] bit is 1. This field is cleared to its reset value at POR. Note that if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] bit is 0, this register address is used to read the Frequency Count result in register TRNG0_FRQCNT, as defined in the following section.

38.1.3.3.13 TRNG0 Statistical Check Monobit Count (TRNG0_SCMC)

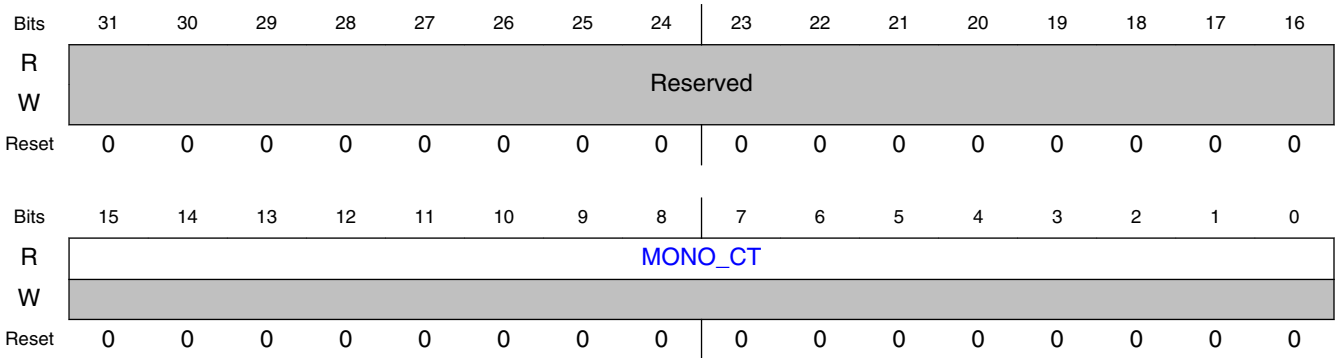
38.1.3.3.13.1 Address

Register	Offset	Description
TRNG0_SCMC	20h	Accessible at this address when TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0]

38.1.3.3.13.2 Function

The TRNG0 Statistical Check Monobit Count Register is a read-only register used to read the final monobit count after entropy generation. This counter starts with the value in TRNG0_SCML[MONO_MAX], and is decremented each time a one is sampled. Note that this offset (0x20) is used as TRNG0_SCML if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this offset is used as TRNG0_SCMC readback register, as described here.

38.1.3.3.13.3 Diagram



38.1.3.3.13.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-16 —	Reserved. Always 0.
15-0 MONO_CT	Monobit Count. Reads the final Monobit count after entropy generation. Requires TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0. Note that if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] bit is 1, this register address is used to access the Statistical Check Monobit Limit in register TRNG0_SCML, as defined in the previous section.

38.1.3.3.14 TRNG0 Statistical Check Monobit Limit (TRNG0_SCML)

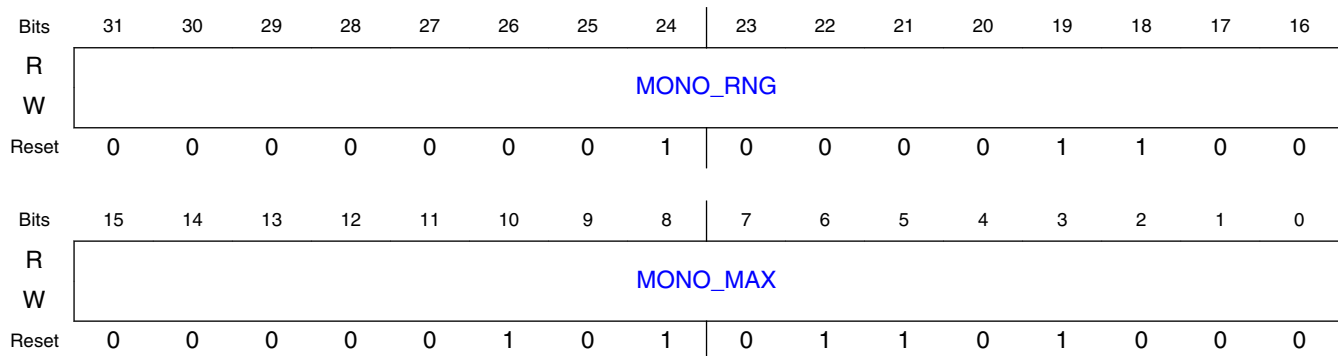
38.1.3.3.14.1 Address

Register	Offset	Description
TRNG0_SCML	20h	Accessible at this address when TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 1]

38.1.3.3.14.2 Function

The TRNG0 Statistical Check Monobit Limit Register defines the allowable maximum and minimum number of ones/zero detected during entropy generation. To pass the test, the number of ones/zeroes generated must be less than the programmed maximum value, and the number of ones/zeroes generated must be greater than (maximum - range). If this test fails, the Retry Counter in TRNG0_SCMISC will be decremented, and a retry will occur if the Retry Count has not reached zero. If the Retry Count has reached zero, an error will be generated. Note that this offset (0x20) is used as TRNG0_SCML only if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this offset is used as TRNG0_SCMC readback register.

38.1.3.3.14.3 Diagram



38.1.3.3.14.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-16 MONO_RNG	Monobit Range. The number of ones/zeroes detected during entropy generation must be greater than MONO_MAX - MONO_RNG, else a retry or error will occur. This register is cleared to the default POR value by writing the TRNG0_MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1.

Table continues on the next page...

Standalone True Random Number Generator (SA-TRNG).

Field	Function
15-0 MONO_MAX	Monobit Maximum Limit. Defines the maximum allowable count taken during entropy generation. The number of ones/zeros detected during entropy generation must be less than MONO_MAX, else a retry or error will occur. This register is cleared to the default POR value by writing the TRNG0_MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1.

38.1.3.3.15 TRNG0 Statistical Check Run Length 1 Count (TRNG0_SCR1C)

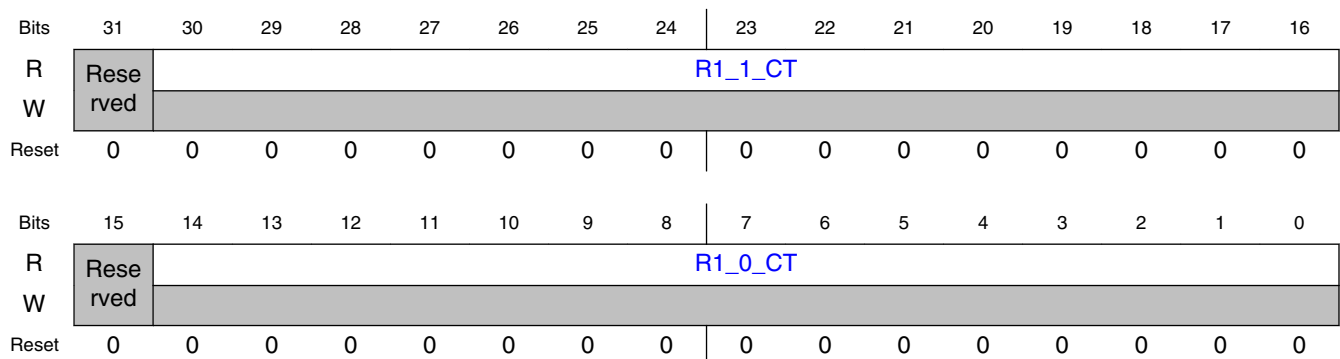
38.1.3.3.15.1 Address

Register	Offset	Description
TRNG0_SCR1C	24h	Accessible at this address when TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0]

38.1.3.3.15.2 Function

The TRNG0 Statistical Check Run Length 1 Counters Register is a read-only register used to read the final Run Length 1 counts after entropy generation. These counters start with the value in TRNG0_SCRxC1L[RUN1_MAX]. The R1_1_CT decrements each time a single one is sampled (preceded by a zero and followed by a zero). The R1_0_CT decrements each time a single zero is sampled (preceded by a one and followed by a one). Note that this offset (0x24) is used as TRNG0_SCRxC1L if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this offset is used as TRNG0_SCRxC1C readback register, as described here.

38.1.3.3.15.3 Diagram



38.1.3.3.15.4 Fields

Field	Function
31 —	Reserved. Always 0.
30-16 R1_1_CT	Runs of One, Length 1 Count. Reads the final Runs of Ones, length 1 count after entropy generation. Requires TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0.
15 —	Reserved. Always 0.
14-0 R1_0_CT	Runs of Zero, Length 1 Count. Reads the final Runs of Zeroes, length 1 count after entropy generation. Requires TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0.

38.1.3.3.16 TRNG0 Statistical Check Run Length 1 Limit (TRNG0_SCR1L)

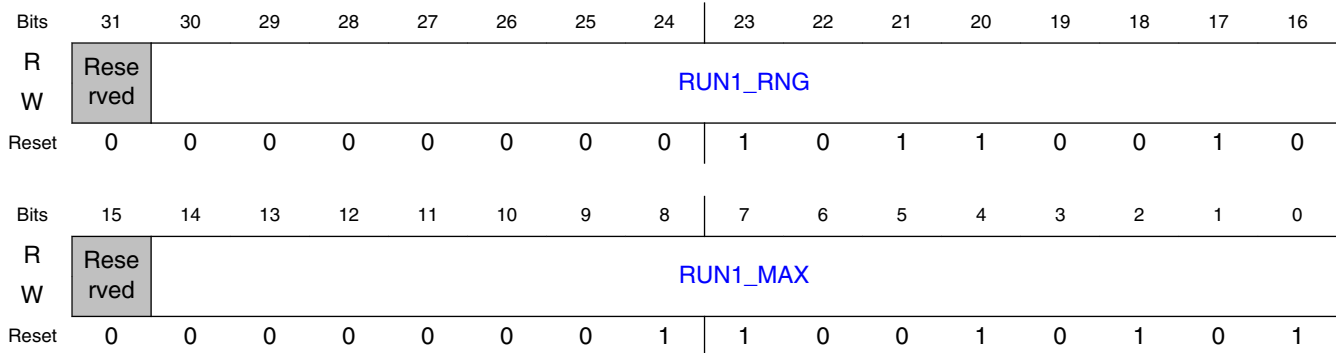
38.1.3.3.16.1 Address

Register	Offset	Description
TRNG0_SCR1L	24h	Accessible at this address when TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 1]

38.1.3.3.16.2 Function

The TRNG0 Statistical Check Run Length 1 Limit Register defines the allowable maximum and minimum number of runs of length 1 detected during entropy generation. To pass the test, the number of runs of length 1 (for samples of both 0 and 1) must be less than the programmed maximum value, and the number of runs of length 1 must be greater than (maximum - range). If this test fails, the Retry Counter in TRNG0_SCMISC will be decremented, and a retry will occur if the Retry Count has not reached zero. If the Retry Count has reached zero, an error will be generated. Note that this address (0x24) is used as TRNG0_SCRxC1L only if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this address is used as TRNG0_SCRxC1C readback register.

38.1.3.3.16.3 Diagram



38.1.3.3.16.4 Fields

Field	Function
31 —	Reserved. Always 0.
30-16 RUN1_RNG	Run Length 1 Range. The number of runs of length 1 (for both 0 and 1) detected during entropy generation must be greater than RUN1_MAX - RUN1_RNG, else a retry or error will occur. This register is cleared to the default POR value by writing the TRNG0_MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1.
15 —	Reserved. Always 0.
14-0 RUN1_MAX	Run Length 1 Maximum Limit. Defines the maximum allowable runs of length 1 (for both 0 and 1) detected during entropy generation. The number of runs of length 1 detected during entropy generation must be less than RUN1_MAX, else a retry or error will occur. This register is cleared to the default POR value by writing the TRNG0_MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1.

38.1.3.3.17 TRNG0 Statistical Check Run Length 2 Count (TRNG0_SCR2C)

38.1.3.3.17.1 Address

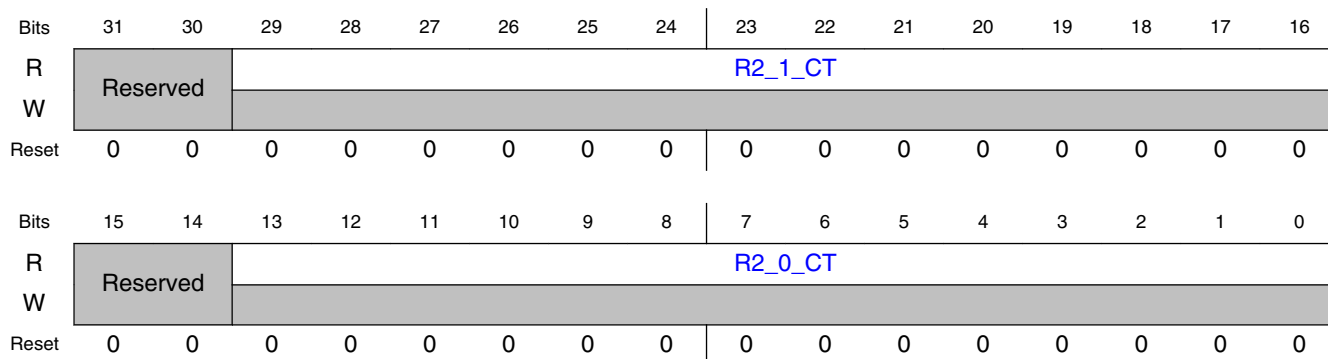
Register	Offset	Description
TRNG0_SCR2C	28h	Accessible at this address when TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0]

38.1.3.3.17.2 Function

The TRNG0 Statistical Check Run Length 2 Counters Register is a read-only register used to read the final Run Length 2 counts after entropy generation. These counters start with the value in TRNG0_SCRxC2L[RUN2_MAX]. The R2_1_CT decrements each time two consecutive ones are sampled (preceded by a zero and followed by a zero). The

R2_0_CT decrements each time two consecutive zeroes are sampled (preceded by a one and followed by a one). Note that this offset (0x28) is used as TRNG0_SCRxC2L if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this offset is used as TRNG0_SCRxC2C readback register, as described here.

38.1.3.3.17.3 Diagram



38.1.3.3.17.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-30 —	Reserved. Always 0.
29-16 R2_1_CT	Runs of One, Length 2 Count. Reads the final Runs of Ones, length 2 count after entropy generation. Requires TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0.
15-14 —	Reserved. Always 0.
13-0 R2_0_CT	Runs of Zero, Length 2 Count. Reads the final Runs of Zeroes, length 2 count after entropy generation. Requires TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0.

38.1.3.3.18 TRNG0 Statistical Check Run Length 2 Limit (TRNG0_SCR2L)

38.1.3.3.18.1 Address

Register	Offset	Description
TRNG0_SCR2L	28h	Accessible at this address when TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 1]

38.1.3.3.18.2 Function

The TRNG0 Statistical Check Run Length 2 Limit Register defines the allowable maximum and minimum number of runs of length 2 detected during entropy generation. To pass the test, the number of runs of length 2 (for samples of both 0 and 1) must be less than the programmed maximum value, and the number of runs of length 2 must be greater than (maximum - range). If this test fails, the Retry Counter in TRNG0_SCMISC will be decremented, and a retry will occur if the Retry Count has not reached zero. If the Retry Count has reached zero, an error will be generated. Note that this address (0x28) is used as TRNG0_SCRxC2L only if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this address is used as TRNG0_SCRxC2C readback register.

38.1.3.3.18.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Reserved		RUN2_RNG													
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	1	0

Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved		RUN2_MAX													
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	0

38.1.3.3.18.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-30 —	Reserved. Always 0.
29-16 RUN2_RNG	Run Length 2 Range. The number of runs of length 2 (for both 0 and 1) detected during entropy generation must be greater than RUN2_MAX - RUN2_RNG, else a retry or error will occur. This register is cleared to the default POR value by writing the TRNG0_MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1.
15-14 —	Reserved. Always 0.
13-0 RUN2_MAX	Run Length 2 Maximum Limit. Defines the maximum allowable runs of length 2 (for both 0 and 1) detected during entropy generation. The number of runs of length 2 detected during entropy generation must be less than RUN2_MAX, else a retry or error will occur. This register is cleared to the default POR value by writing the TRNG0_MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1.

38.1.3.3.19 TRNG0 Statistical Check Run Length 3 Count (TRNG0_SCR3C)

38.1.3.3.19.1 Address

Register	Offset	Description
TRNG0_SCR3C	2Ch	Accessible at this address when TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0]

38.1.3.3.19.2 Function

The TRNG0 Statistical Check Run Length 3 Counters Register is a read-only register used to read the final Run Length 3 counts after entropy generation. These counters start with the value in TRNG0_SCRxC3L[RUN3_MAX]. The R3_1_CT decrements each time three consecutive ones are sampled (preceded by a zero and followed by a zero). The R3_0_CT decrements each time three consecutive zeroes are sampled (preceded by a one and followed by a one). Note that this offset (0x2C) is used as TRNG0_SCRxC3L if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this offset is used as TRNG0_SCRxC3C readback register, as described here.

38.1.3.3.19.3 Diagram

Bits	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Reserved								R3_1_CT							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bits	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved								R3_0_CT							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

38.1.3.3.19.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-29 —	Reserved. Always 0.
28-16 R3_1_CT	Runs of Ones, Length 3 Count. Reads the final Runs of Ones, length 3 count after entropy generation. Requires TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0.
15-13	Reserved. Always 0.

Table continues on the next page...

Standalone True Random Number Generator (SA-TRNG).

Field	Function
—	
12-0 R3_0_CT	Runs of Zeroes, Length 3 Count. Reads the final Runs of Zeroes, length 3 count after entropy generation. Requires TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0.

38.1.3.3.20 TRNG0 Statistical Check Run Length 3 Limit (TRNG0_SCR3L)

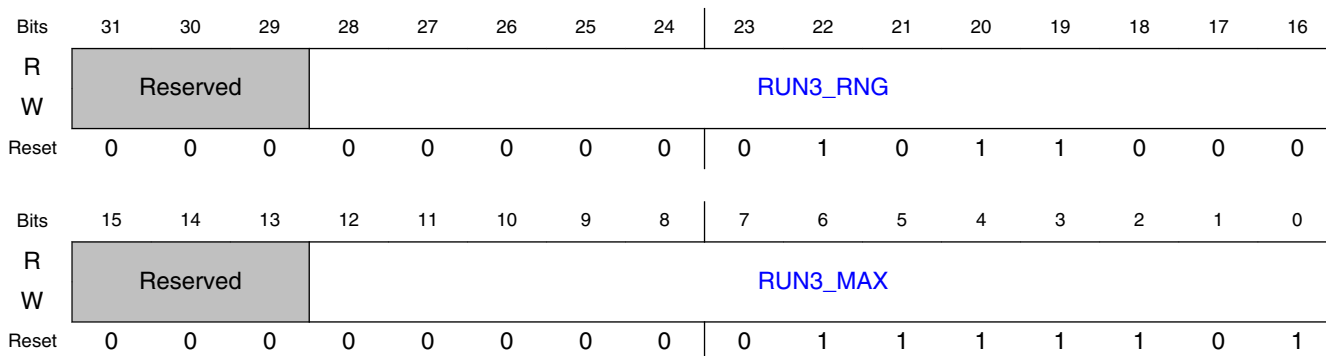
38.1.3.3.20.1 Address

Register	Offset	Description
TRNG0_SCR3L	2Ch	Accessible at this address when TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 1]

38.1.3.3.20.2 Function

The TRNG0 Statistical Check Run Length 3 Limit Register defines the allowable maximum and minimum number of runs of length 3 detected during entropy generation. To pass the test, the number of runs of length 3 (for samples of both 0 and 1) must be less than the programmed maximum value, and the number of runs of length 3 must be greater than (maximum - range). If this test fails, the Retry Counter in TRNG0_SCMISC will be decremented, and a retry will occur if the Retry Count has not reached zero. If the Retry Count has reached zero, an error will be generated. Note that this address (0x2C) is used as TRNG0_SCRxC3L only if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this address is used as TRNG0_SCRxC3C readback register.

38.1.3.3.20.3 Diagram



38.1.3.3.20.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-29 —	Reserved. Always 0.
28-16 RUN3_RNG	Run Length 3 Range. The number of runs of length 3 (for both 0 and 1) detected during entropy generation must be greater than RUN3_MAX - RUN3_RNG, else a retry or error will occur. This register is cleared to the default POR value by writing the TRNG0_MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1.
15-13 —	Reserved. Always 0.
12-0 RUN3_MAX	Run Length 3 Maximum Limit. Defines the maximum allowable runs of length 3 (for both 0 and 1) detected during entropy generation. The number of runs of length 3 detected during entropy generation must be less than RUN3_MAX, else a retry or error will occur. This register is cleared to the default POR value by writing the TRNG0_MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1.

38.1.3.3.21 TRNG0 Statistical Check Run Length 4 Count (TRNG0_SCR4C)

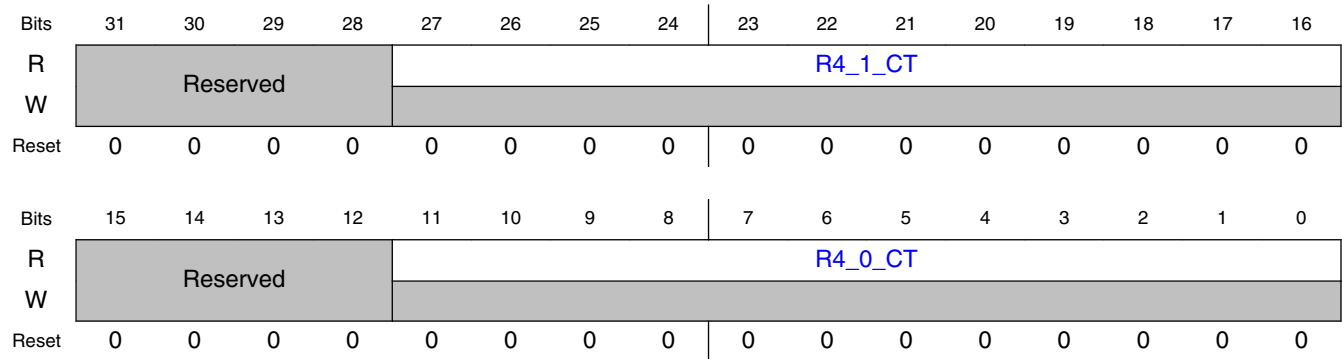
38.1.3.3.21.1 Address

Register	Offset	Description
TRNG0_SCR4C	30h	Accessible at this address when TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0]

38.1.3.3.21.2 Function

The TRNG0 Statistical Check Run Length 4 Counters Register is a read-only register used to read the final Run Length 4 counts after entropy generation. These counters start with the value in TRNG0_SCRxC4L[RUN4_MAX]. The R4_1_CT decrements each time four consecutive ones are sampled (preceded by a zero and followed by a zero). The R4_0_CT decrements each time four consecutive zeroes are sampled (preceded by a one and followed by a one). Note that this offset (0x30) is used as TRNG0_SCRxC4L if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this offset is used as TRNG0_SCRxC4C readback register, as described here.

38.1.3.3.21.3 Diagram



38.1.3.3.21.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-28 —	Reserved. Always 0.
27-16 R4_1_CT	Runs of One, Length 4 Count. Reads the final Runs of Ones, length 4 count after entropy generation. Requires TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0.
15-12 —	Reserved. Always 0.
11-0 R4_0_CT	Runs of Zero, Length 4 Count. Reads the final Runs of Ones, length 4 count after entropy generation. Requires TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0.

38.1.3.3.22 TRNG0 Statistical Check Run Length 4 Limit (TRNG0_SCR4L)

38.1.3.3.22.1 Address

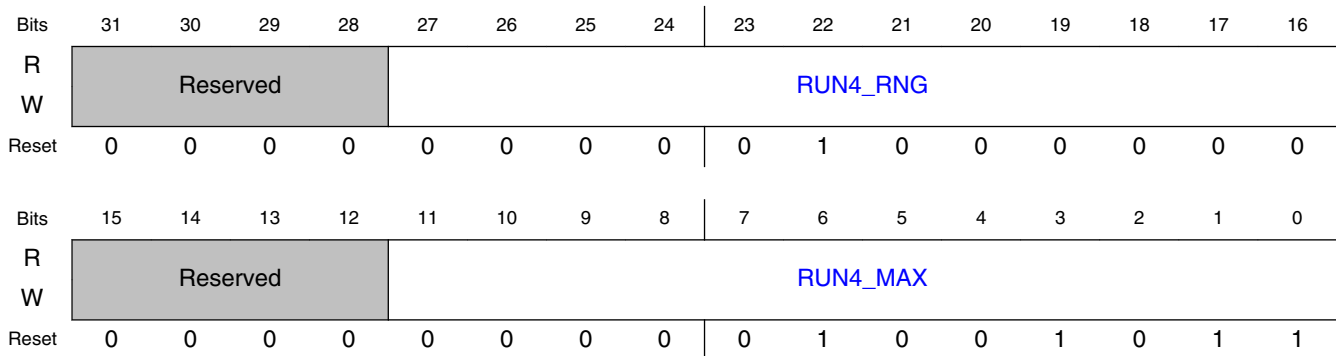
Register	Offset	Description
TRNG0_SCR4L	30h	Accessible at this address when TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 1]

38.1.3.3.22.2 Function

The TRNG0 Statistical Check Run Length 4 Limit Register defines the allowable maximum and minimum number of runs of length 4 detected during entropy generation. To pass the test, the number of runs of length 4 (for samples of both 0 and 1) must be less than the programmed maximum value, and the number of runs of length 4 must be greater than (maximum - range). If this test fails, the Retry Counter in TRNG0_SCMISC

will be decremented, and a retry will occur if the Retry Count has not reached zero. If the Retry Count has reached zero, an error will be generated. Note that this address (0x30) is used as TRNG0_SCRxC4L only if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this address is used as TRNG0_SCRxC4C readback register.

38.1.3.3.22.3 Diagram



38.1.3.3.22.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-28 —	Reserved. Always 0.
27-16 RUN4_RNG	Run Length 4 Range. The number of runs of length 4 (for both 0 and 1) detected during entropy generation must be greater than RUN4_MAX - RUN4_RNG, else a retry or error will occur. This register is cleared to the default POR value by writing the TRNG0_MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1.
15-12 —	Reserved. Always 0.
11-0 RUN4_MAX	Run Length 4 Maximum Limit. Defines the maximum allowable runs of length 4 (for both 0 and 1) detected during entropy generation. The number of runs of length 4 detected during entropy generation must be less than RUN4_MAX, else a retry or error will occur. This register is cleared to the default POR value by writing the TRNG0_MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1.

38.1.3.3.23 TRNG0 Statistical Check Run Length 5 Count (TRNG0_SCR5C)

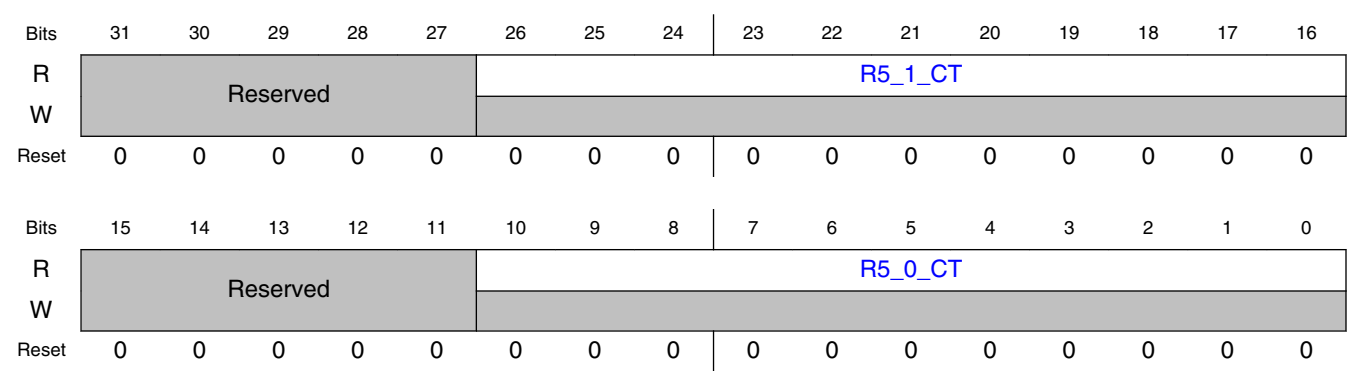
38.1.3.3.23.1 Address

Register	Offset	Description
TRNG0_SCR5C	34h	Accessible at this address when TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0]

38.1.3.3.23.2 Function

The TRNG0 Statistical Check Run Length 5 Counters Register is a read-only register used to read the final Run Length 5 counts after entropy generation. These counters start with the value in TRNG0_SCRxC5L[RUN5_MAX]. The R5_1_CT decrements each time five consecutive ones are sampled (preceded by a zero and followed by a zero). The R5_0_CT decrements each time five consecutive zeroes are sampled (preceded by a one and followed by a one). Note that this offset (0x34) is used as TRNG0_SCRxC5L if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this offset is used as TRNG0_SCRxC5C readback register, as described here.

38.1.3.3.23.3 Diagram



38.1.3.3.23.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-27 —	Reserved. Always 0.
26-16 R5_1_CT	Runs of One, Length 5 Count. Reads the final Runs of Ones, length 5 count after entropy generation. Requires TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0.
15-11 —	Reserved. Always 0.
10-0 R5_0_CT	Runs of Zero, Length 5 Count. Reads the final Runs of Ones, length 5 count after entropy generation. Requires TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0.

38.1.3.3.24 TRNG0 Statistical Check Run Length 5 Limit (TRNG0_SCR5L)

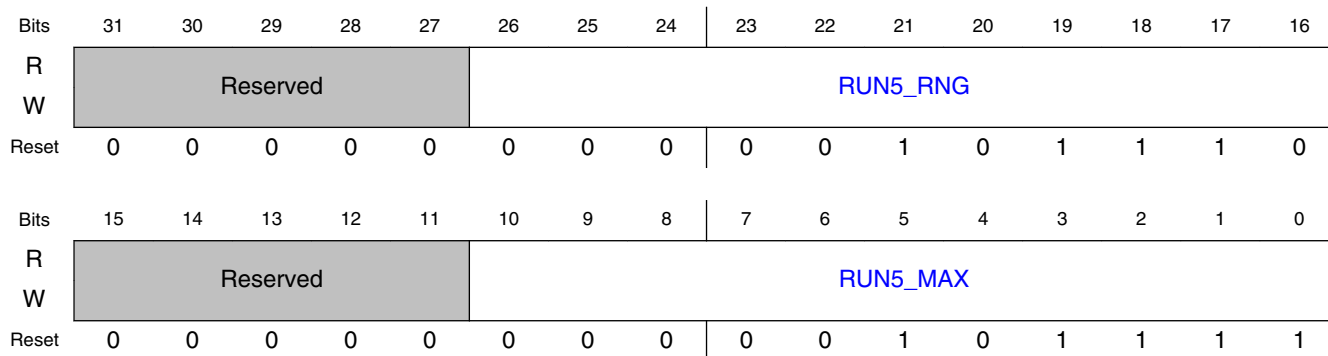
38.1.3.3.24.1 Address

Register	Offset	Description
TRNG0_SCR5L	34h	Accessible at this address when TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 1]

38.1.3.3.24.2 Function

The TRNG0 Statistical Check Run Length 5 Limit Register defines the allowable maximum and minimum number of runs of length 5 detected during entropy generation. To pass the test, the number of runs of length 5 (for samples of both 0 and 1) must be less than the programmed maximum value, and the number of runs of length 5 must be greater than (maximum - range). If this test fails, the Retry Counter in TRNG0_SCMISC will be decremented, and a retry will occur if the Retry Count has not reached zero. If the Retry Count has reached zero, an error will be generated. Note that this address (0x34) is used as TRNG0_SCRxC5L only if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this address is used as TRNG0_SCRxC5C readback register.

38.1.3.3.24.3 Diagram



38.1.3.3.24.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-27 —	Reserved. Always 0.
26-16 RUN5_RNG	Run Length 5 Range. The number of runs of length 5 (for both 0 and 1) detected during entropy generation must be greater than RUN5_MAX - RUN5_RNG, else a retry or error will occur. This register is cleared to the default POR value by writing the TRNG0_MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1.
15-11	Reserved. Always 0.

Table continues on the next page...

Standalone True Random Number Generator (SA-TRNG).

Field	Function
—	
10-0 RUN5_MAX	Run Length 5 Maximum Limit. Defines the maximum allowable runs of length 5 (for both 0 and 1) detected during entropy generation. The number of runs of length 5 detected during entropy generation must be less than RUN5_MAX, else a retry or error will occur. This register is cleared to the default POR value by writing the TRNG0_MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1.

38.1.3.3.25 TRNG0 Statistical Check Run Length 6+ Count (TRNG0_SCR6PC)

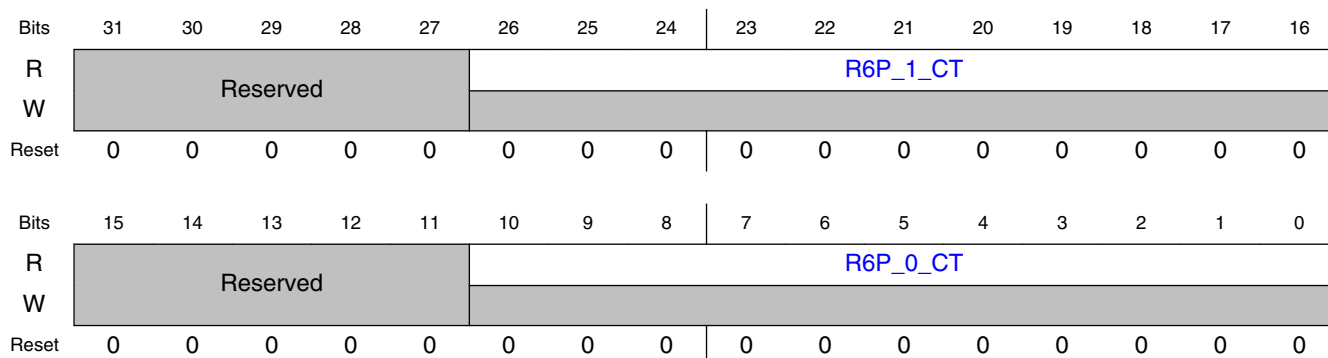
38.1.3.3.25.1 Address

Register	Offset	Description
TRNG0_SCR6PC	38h	Accessible at this address when TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0]

38.1.3.3.25.2 Function

The TRNG0 Statistical Check Run Length 6+ Counters Register is a read-only register used to read the final Run Length 6+ counts after entropy generation. These counters start with the value in TRNG0_SCRxC6PL[RUN6P_MAX]. The R6P_1_CT decrements each time six or more consecutive ones are sampled (preceded by a zero and followed by a zero). The R6P_0_CT decrements each time six or more consecutive zeroes are sampled (preceded by a one and followed by a one). Note that this offset (0x38) is used as TRNG0_SCRxC6PL if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this offset is used as TRNG0_SCRxC6PC readback register, as described here.

38.1.3.3.25.3 Diagram



38.1.3.3.25.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-27 —	Reserved. Always 0.
26-16 R6P_1_CT	Runs of One, Length 6+ Count. Reads the final Runs of Ones, length 6+ count after entropy generation. Requires TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0.
15-11 —	Reserved. Always 0.
10-0 R6P_0_CT	Runs of Zero, Length 6+ Count. Reads the final Runs of Ones, length 6+ count after entropy generation. Requires TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0.

38.1.3.3.26 TRNG0 Statistical Check Run Length 6+ Limit (TRNG0_SC R6PL)

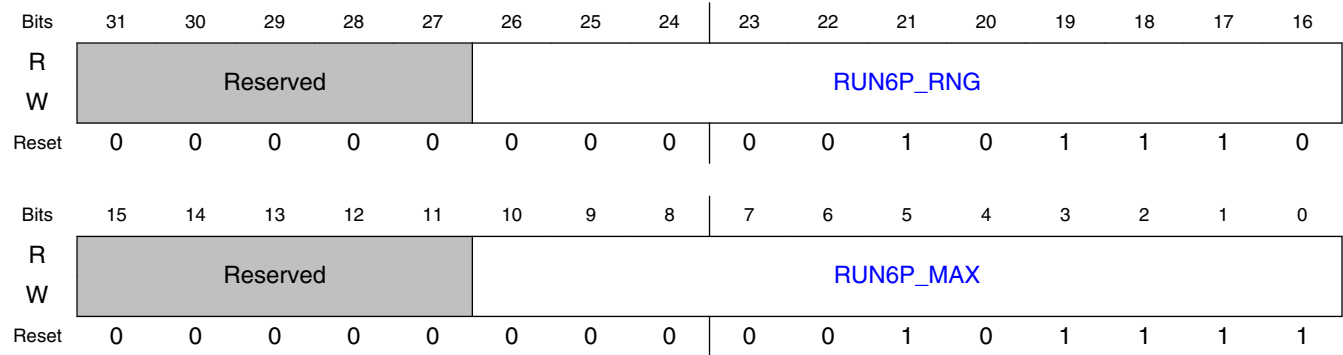
38.1.3.3.26.1 Address

Register	Offset	Description
TRNG0_SCR6PL	38h	Accessible at this address when TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 1]

38.1.3.3.26.2 Function

The TRNG0 Statistical Check Run Length 6+ Limit Register defines the allowable maximum and minimum number of runs of length 6 or more detected during entropy generation. To pass the test, the number of runs of length 6 or more (for samples of both 0 and 1) must be less than the programmed maximum value, and the number of runs of length 6 or more must be greater than (maximum - range). If this test fails, the Retry Counter in TRNG0_SCMISC will be decremented, and a retry will occur if the Retry Count has not reached zero. If the Retry Count has reached zero, an error will be generated. Note that this offset (0x38) is used as TRNG0_SCRxC6PL only if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 1. If TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 0, this offset is used as TRNG0_SCRxC6PC readback register.

38.1.3.3.26.3 Diagram



38.1.3.3.26.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-27 —	Reserved. Always 0.
26-16 RUN6P_RNG	Run Length 6+ Range. The number of runs of length 6 or more (for both 0 and 1) detected during entropy generation must be greater than RUN6P_MAX - RUN6P_RNG, else a retry or error will occur. This register is cleared to the default POR value by writing the TRNG0_MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1.
15-11 —	Reserved. Always 0.
10-0 RUN6P_MAX	Run Length 6+ Maximum Limit. Defines the maximum allowable runs of length 6 or more (for both 0 and 1) detected during entropy generation. The number of runs of length 6 or more detected during entropy generation must be less than RUN6P_MAX, else a retry or error will occur. This register is cleared to the default POR value by writing the TRNG0_MCTL[RST_DEF] bit to 1.

38.1.3.3.27 TRNG0 Status (TRNG0_STATUS)

38.1.3.3.27.1 Address

Register	Offset
TRNG0_STATUS	3Ch

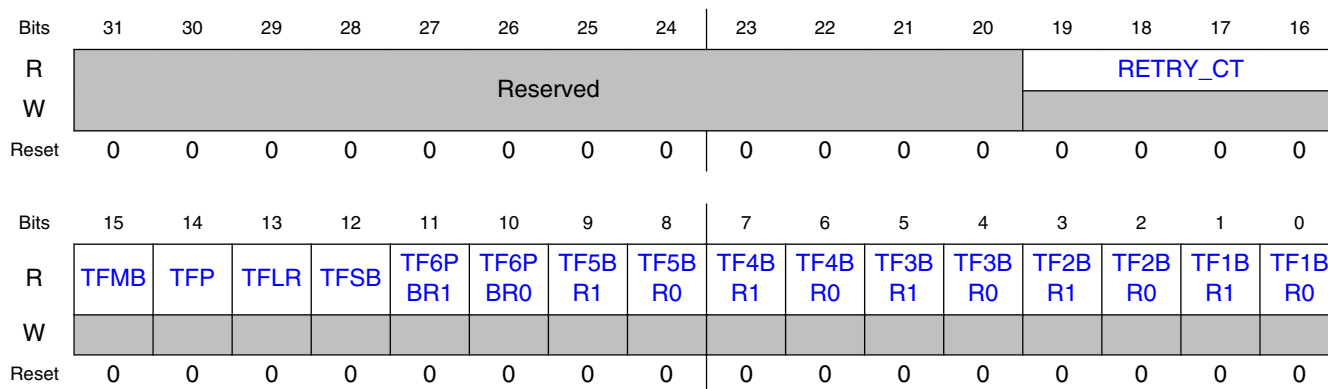
38.1.3.3.27.2 Function

Various statistical tests are run as a normal part of the TRNG's entropy generation process. The least-significant 16 bits of the TRNG0_STATUS register reflect the result of each of these tests. The status of these bits will be valid when the TRNG has finished its entropy generation process. Software can determine when this occurs by polling the ENT_VAL bit in the TRNG0 Miscellaneous Control Register.

Note that there is a very small probability that a statistical test will fail even though the TRNG is operating properly. If this happens the TRNG will automatically retry the entire entropy generation process, including running all the statistical tests. The value in RETRY_CT is decremented each time an entropy generation retry occurs. If a statistical check fails when the retry count is nonzero, a retry is initiated. But if a statistical check fails when the retry count is zero, an error is generated by the RNG. By default RETRY_CT is initialized to 1, but software can increase the retry count by writing to the RTY_CT field in the TRNG0_SCMISC register.

All 0s will be returned if this register address is read while the RNG is in Program Mode (see PRGM field in TRNG0_MCTL register. If this register is read while the RNG is in Run Mode the value returned will be formatted as follows.

38.1.3.3.27.3 Diagram



38.1.3.3.27.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-20 —	Reserved. Always 0.
19-16 RETRY_CT	RETRY COUNT. This represents the current number of entropy generation retries left before a statistical test failure will cause the RNG to generate an error condition.
15	Test Fail, Mono Bit. If TFMB=1, the Mono Bit Test has failed.

Table continues on the next page...

Standalone True Random Number Generator (SA-TRNG).

Field	Function
TFMB	
14 TFP	Test Fail, Poker. If TFP=1, the Poker Test has failed.
13 TFLR	Test Fail, Long Run. If TFLR=1, the Long Run Test has failed.
12 TFSB	Test Fail, Sparse Bit. If TFSB=1, the Sparse Bit Test has failed.
11 TF6PBR1	Test Fail, 6 Plus Bit Run, Sampling 1s. If TF6PBR1=1, the 6 Plus Bit Run, Sampling 1s Test has failed.
10 TF6PBR0	Test Fail, 6 Plus Bit Run, Sampling 0s. If TF6PBR0=1, the 6 Plus Bit Run, Sampling 0s Test has failed.
9 TF5BR1	Test Fail, 5-Bit Run, Sampling 1s. If TF5BR1=1, the 5-Bit Run, Sampling 1s Test has failed.
8 TF5BR0	Test Fail, 5-Bit Run, Sampling 0s. If TF5BR0=1, the 5-Bit Run, Sampling 0s Test has failed.
7 TF4BR1	Test Fail, 4-Bit Run, Sampling 1s. If TF4BR1=1, the 4-Bit Run, Sampling 1s Test has failed.
6 TF4BR0	Test Fail, 4-Bit Run, Sampling 0s. If TF4BR0=1, the 4-Bit Run, Sampling 0s Test has failed.
5 TF3BR1	Test Fail, 3-Bit Run, Sampling 1s. If TF3BR1=1, the 3-Bit Run, Sampling 1s Test has failed.
4 TF3BR0	Test Fail, 3-Bit Run, Sampling 0s. If TF3BR0=1, the 3-Bit Run, Sampling 0s Test has failed.
3 TF2BR1	Test Fail, 2-Bit Run, Sampling 1s. If TF2BR1=1, the 2-Bit Run, Sampling 1s Test has failed.
2 TF2BR0	Test Fail, 2-Bit Run, Sampling 0s. If TF2BR0=1, the 2-Bit Run, Sampling 0s Test has failed.
1 TF1BR1	Test Fail, 1-Bit Run, Sampling 1s. If TF1BR1=1, the 1-Bit Run, Sampling 1s Test has failed.
0 TF1BR0	Test Fail, 1-Bit Run, Sampling 0s. If TF1BR0=1, the 1-Bit Run, Sampling 0s Test has failed.

38.1.3.3.28 TRNG0 Entropy Read (TRNG0_ENTa)

38.1.3.3.28.1 Address

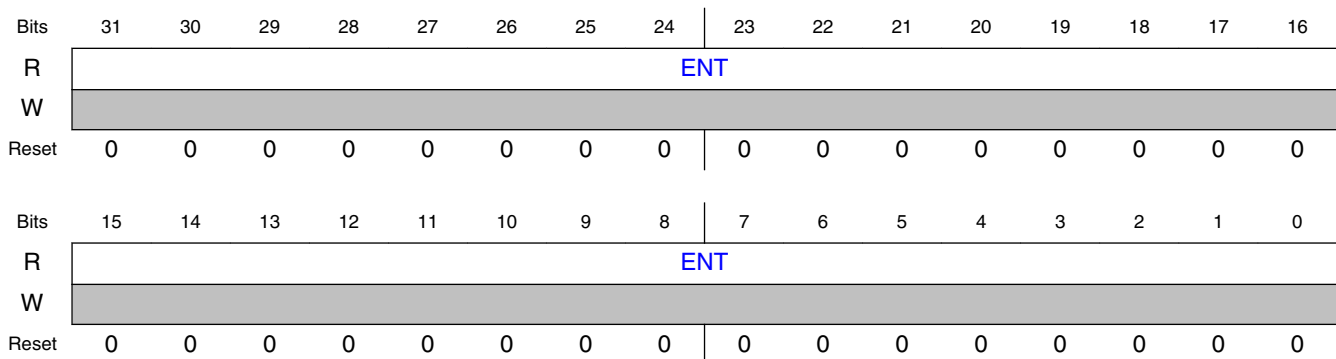
For a = 0 to 15:

Register	Offset	Description
TRNG0_ENTa	40h + (a × 4h)	Word a

38.1.3.3.28.2 Function

The RNG TRNG can be programmed to generate an entropy value that is readable via the SkyBlue bus. To do this, set the TRNG0_MCTL[TRNG_ACC] bit to 1. Once the entropy value has been generated, the TRNG0_MCTL[ENT_VAL] bit will be set to 1. At this point, TRNG0_ENT0 through TRNG0_ENT15 may be read to retrieve the 512-bit entropy value. Note that once TRNG0_ENT15 is read, the entropy value will be cleared and a new value will begin generation, so it is important that TRNG0_ENT15 be read last. These registers are readable only when TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0 (Run Mode), TRNG0_MCTL[TRNG_ACC] = 1 (TRNG access mode) and TRNG0_MCTL[ENT_VAL] = 1. After at most one (1) bus clock cycle of reading a valid TRNG0_ENT15 register value, reading any TRNG0_ENT0 through TRNG0_ENT15 register would return zeroes.

38.1.3.3.28.3 Diagram



38.1.3.3.28.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-0 ENT	Entropy Value. Will be non-zero only if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0 (Run Mode) and TRNG0_MCTL[ENT_VAL] = 1 (Entropy Valid). The most significant bits of the entropy are read from the lowest offset, and the least significant bits are read from the highest offset. Note that reading the highest offset also clears the entire entropy value, and starts a new entropy generation.

38.1.3.3.29 TRNG0 Statistical Check Poker Count 1 and 0 (TRNG0_PKRCNT10)

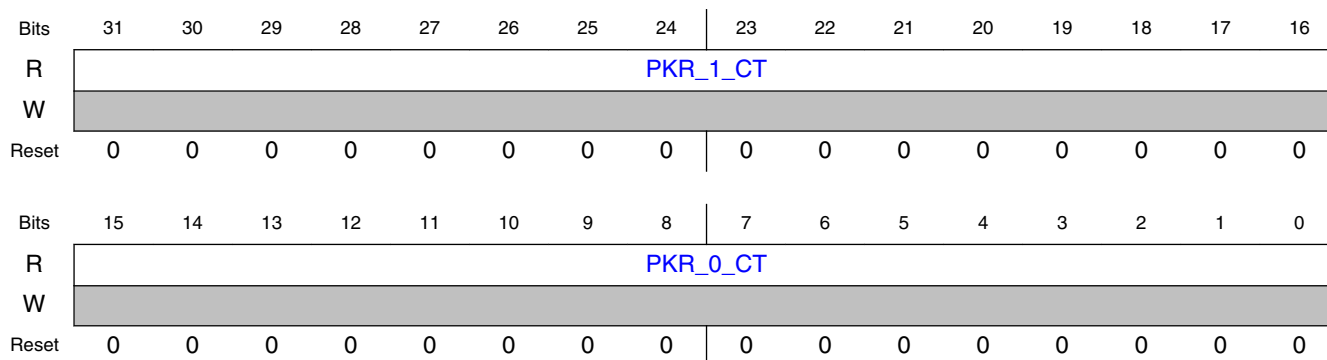
38.1.3.3.29.1 Address

Register	Offset
TRNG0_PKRCNT10	80h

38.1.3.3.29.2 Function

The TRNG0 Statistical Check Poker Count 1 and 0 Register is a read-only register used to read the final Poker test counts of 1h and 0h patterns. The Poker 0h Count increments each time a nibble of sample data is found to be 0h. The Poker 1h Count increments each time a nibble of sample data is found to be 1h. Note that this register is readable only if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 0, otherwise zeroes will be read.

38.1.3.3.29.3 Diagram



38.1.3.3.29.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-16 PKR_1_CT	Poker 1h Count. Total number of nibbles of sample data which were found to be 1h. Requires TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0.
15-0 PKR_0_CT	Poker 0h Count. Total number of nibbles of sample data which were found to be 0h. Requires TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0.

38.1.3.3.30 TRNG0 Statistical Check Poker Count 3 and 2 (TRNG0_PKRCNT32)

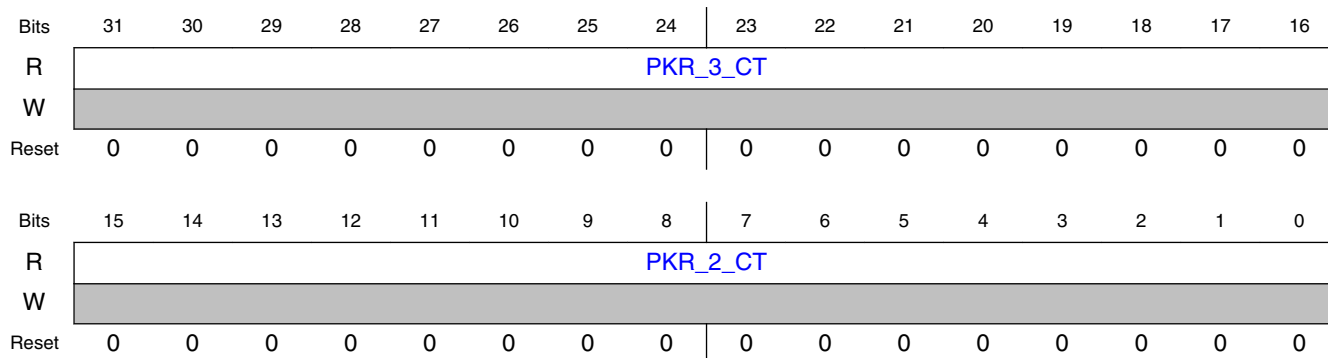
38.1.3.3.30.1 Address

Register	Offset
TRNG0_PKRCNT32	84h

38.1.3.3.30.2 Function

The TRNG0 Statistical Check Poker Count 3 and 2 Register is a read-only register used to read the final Poker test counts of 3h and 2h patterns. The Poker 2h Count increments each time a nibble of sample data is found to be 2h. The Poker 3h Count increments each time a nibble of sample data is found to be 3h. Note that this register is readable only if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 0, otherwise zeroes will be read.

38.1.3.3.30.3 Diagram



38.1.3.3.30.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-16 PKR_3_CT	Poker 3h Count. Total number of nibbles of sample data which were found to be 3h. Requires TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0.
15-0 PKR_2_CT	Poker 2h Count. Total number of nibbles of sample data which were found to be 2h. Requires TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0.

38.1.3.3.31 TRNG0 Statistical Check Poker Count 5 and 4 (TRNG0_PKRCNT54)

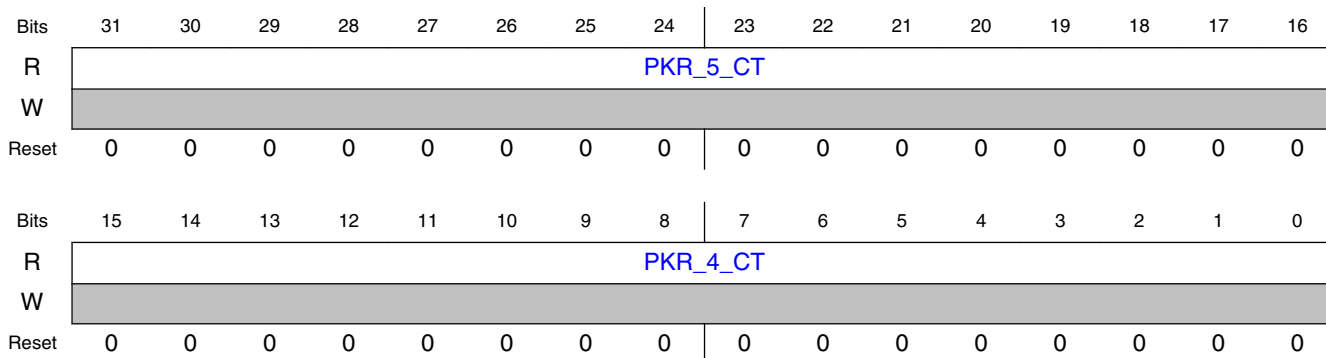
38.1.3.3.31.1 Address

Register	Offset
TRNG0_PKRCNT54	88h

38.1.3.3.31.2 Function

The TRNG0 Statistical Check Poker Count 5 and 4 Register is a read-only register used to read the final Poker test counts of 5h and 4h patterns. The Poker 4h Count increments each time a nibble of sample data is found to be 4h. The Poker 5h Count increments each time a nibble of sample data is found to be 5h. Note that this register is readable only if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 0, otherwise zeroes will be read.

38.1.3.3.31.3 Diagram



38.1.3.3.31.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-16 PKR_5_CT	Poker 5h Count. Total number of nibbles of sample data which were found to be 5h. Requires TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0.
15-0 PKR_4_CT	Poker 4h Count. Total number of nibbles of sample data which were found to be 4h. Requires TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0.

38.1.3.3.32 TRNG0 Statistical Check Poker Count 7 and 6 (TRNG0_PKRCNT76)

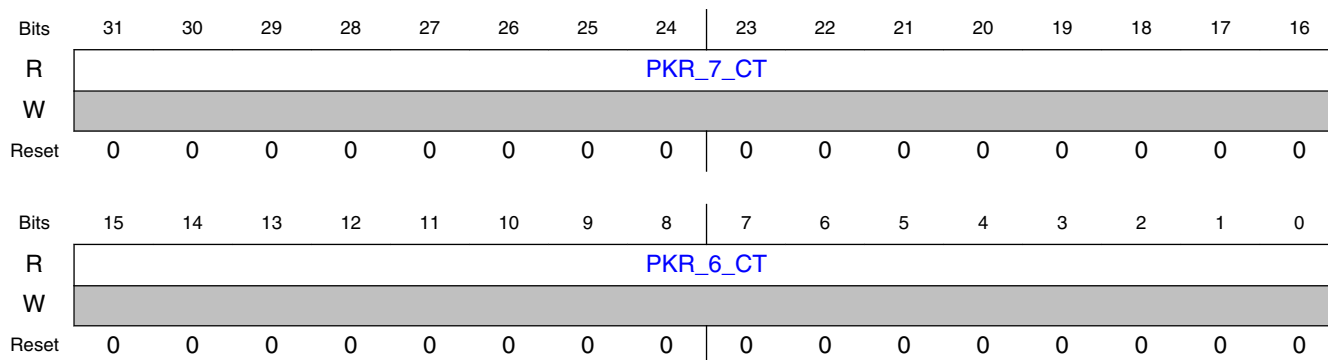
38.1.3.3.32.1 Address

Register	Offset
TRNG0_PKRCNT76	8Ch

38.1.3.3.32.2 Function

The TRNG0 Statistical Check Poker Count 7 and 6 Register is a read-only register used to read the final Poker test counts of 7h and 6h patterns. The Poker 6h Count increments each time a nibble of sample data is found to be 6h. The Poker 7h Count increments each time a nibble of sample data is found to be 7h. Note that this register is readable only if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 0, otherwise zeroes will be read.

38.1.3.3.32.3 Diagram



38.1.3.3.32.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-16 PKR_7_CT	Poker 7h Count. Total number of nibbles of sample data which were found to be 7h. Requires TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0.
15-0 PKR_6_CT	Poker 6h Count. Total number of nibbles of sample data which were found to be 6h. Requires TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0.

38.1.3.3.33 TRNG0 Statistical Check Poker Count 9 and 8 (TRNG0_PKRCNT98)

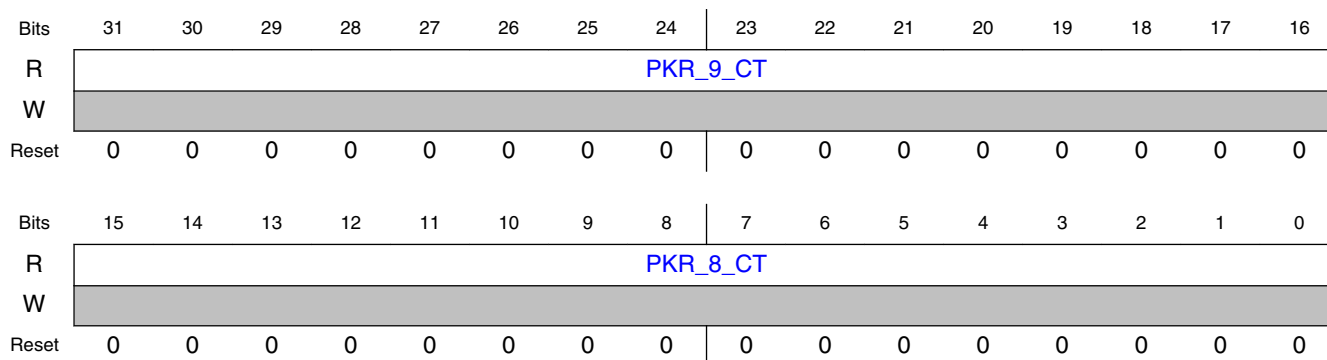
38.1.3.3.33.1 Address

Register	Offset
TRNG0_PKRCNT98	90h

38.1.3.3.33.2 Function

The TRNG0 Statistical Check Poker Count 9 and 8 Register is a read-only register used to read the final Poker test counts of 9h and 8h patterns. The Poker 8h Count increments each time a nibble of sample data is found to be 8h. The Poker 9h Count increments each time a nibble of sample data is found to be 9h. Note that this register is readable only if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 0, otherwise zeroes will be read.

38.1.3.3.33.3 Diagram



38.1.3.3.33.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-16 PKR_9_CT	Poker 9h Count. Total number of nibbles of sample data which were found to be 9h. Requires TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0.
15-0 PKR_8_CT	Poker 8h Count. Total number of nibbles of sample data which were found to be 8h. Requires TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0.

38.1.3.3.34 TRNG0 Statistical Check Poker Count B and A (TRNG0_PKRCNTBA)

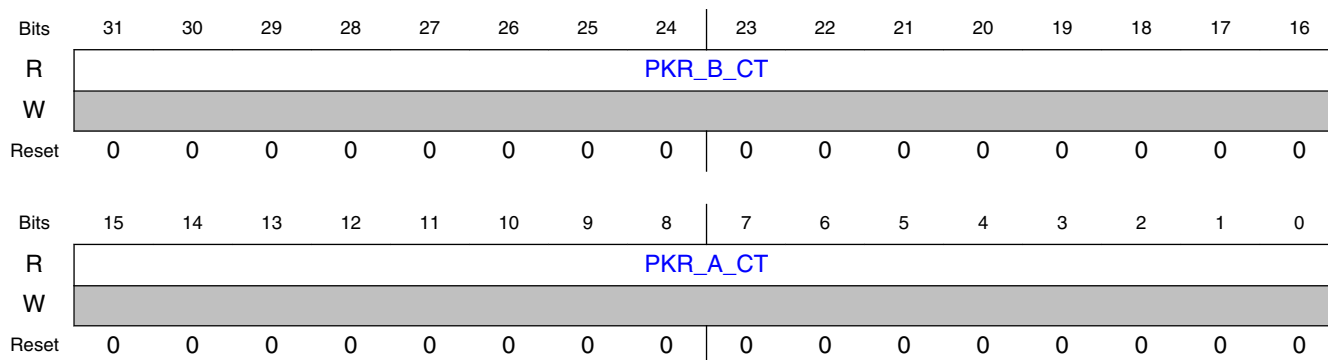
38.1.3.3.34.1 Address

Register	Offset
TRNG0_PKRCNTBA	94h

38.1.3.3.34.2 Function

The TRNG0 Statistical Check Poker Count B and A Register is a read-only register used to read the final Poker test counts of Bh and Ah patterns. The Poker Ah Count increments each time a nibble of sample data is found to be Ah. The Poker Bh Count increments each time a nibble of sample data is found to be Bh. Note that this register is readable only if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 0, otherwise zeroes will be read.

38.1.3.3.34.3 Diagram



38.1.3.3.34.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-16 PKR_B_CT	Poker Bh Count. Total number of nibbles of sample data which were found to be Bh. Requires TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0.
15-0 PKR_A_CT	Poker Ah Count. Total number of nibbles of sample data which were found to be Ah. Requires TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0.

38.1.3.3.35 TRNG0 Statistical Check Poker Count D and C (TRNG0_PKRCNTDC)

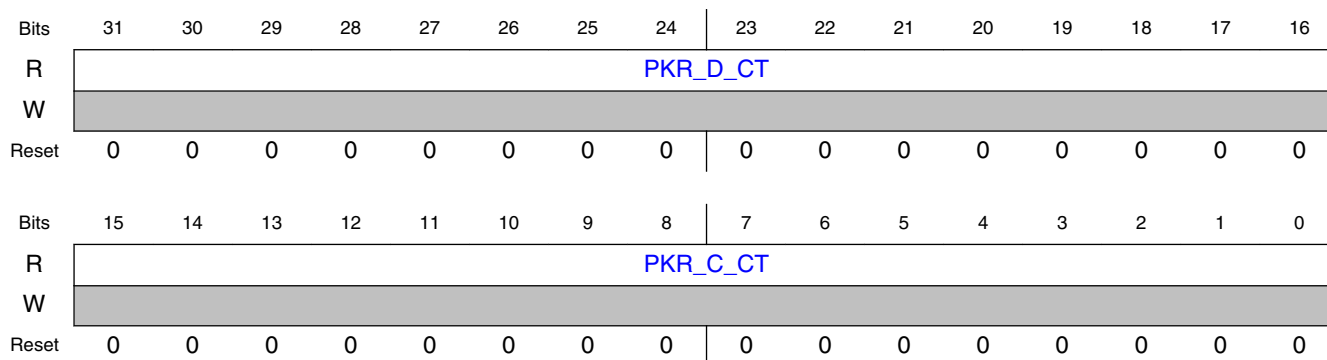
38.1.3.3.35.1 Address

Register	Offset
TRNG0_PKRCNTDC	98h

38.1.3.3.35.2 Function

The TRNG0 Statistical Check Poker Count D and C Register is a read-only register used to read the final Poker test counts of Dh and Ch patterns. The Poker Ch Count increments each time a nibble of sample data is found to be Ch. The Poker Dh Count increments each time a nibble of sample data is found to be Dh. Note that this register is readable only if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 0, otherwise zeroes will be read.

38.1.3.3.35.3 Diagram



38.1.3.3.35.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-16 PKR_D_CT	Poker Dh Count. Total number of nibbles of sample data which were found to be Dh. Requires TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0.
15-0 PKR_C_CT	Poker Ch Count. Total number of nibbles of sample data which were found to be Ch. Requires TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0.

38.1.3.3.36 TRNG0 Statistical Check Poker Count F and E (TRNG0_PKRCNTFE)

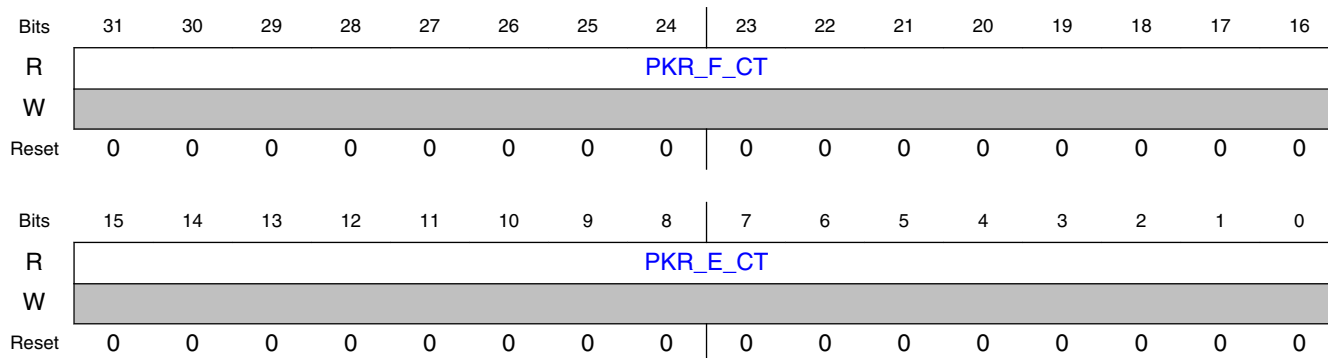
38.1.3.3.36.1 Address

Register	Offset
TRNG0_PKRCNTFE	9Ch

38.1.3.3.36.2 Function

The TRNG0 Statistical Check Poker Count F and E Register is a read-only register used to read the final Poker test counts of Fh and Eh patterns. The Poker Eh Count increments each time a nibble of sample data is found to be Eh. The Poker Fh Count increments each time a nibble of sample data is found to be Fh. Note that this register is readable only if TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] is 0, otherwise zeroes will be read.

38.1.3.3.36.3 Diagram



38.1.3.3.36.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-16 PKR_F_CT	Poker Fh Count. Total number of nibbles of sample data which were found to be Fh. Requires TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0.
15-0 PKR_E_CT	Poker Eh Count. Total number of nibbles of sample data which were found to be Eh. Requires TRNG0_MCTL[PRGM] = 0.

38.1.3.3.37 TRNG0 Security Configuration (TRNG0_SEC_CFG)

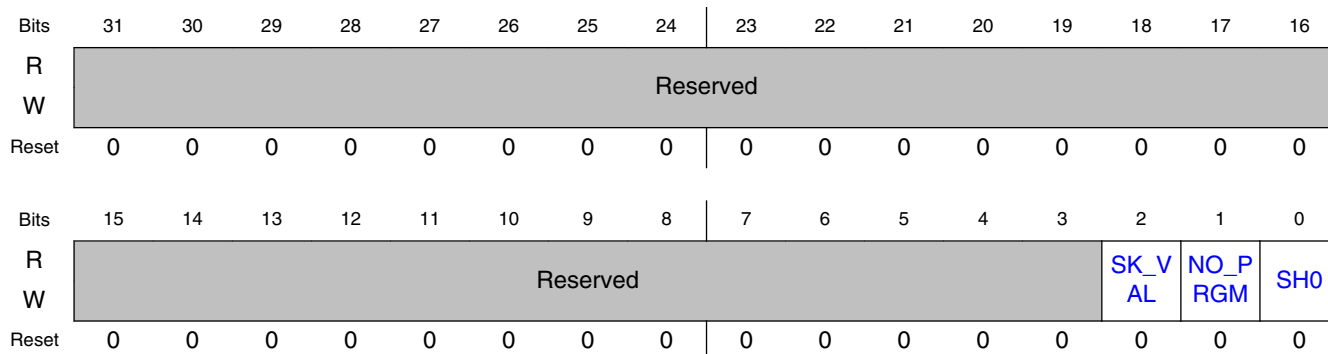
38.1.3.3.37.1 Address

Register	Offset
TRNG0_SEC_CFG	B0h

38.1.3.3.37.2 Function

The TRNG0 Security Configuration Register is a read/write register used to control the test mode, programmability and state modes of the TRNG0. Many bits are place holders for this version. More configurability will be added here. Clears on asynchronous reset. For TRNG0 releases before 2014/July/01, offsets 0xA0 to 0xAC used to be 0xB0 to 0xBC respectively. So, update newer tests that use these registers, if hard coded.

38.1.3.3.37.3 Diagram



38.1.3.3.37.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-3 —	Reserved.
2 SK_VAL	Reserved. DRNG-specific, not applicable to this version. 0 - See DRNG version. 1 - See DRNG version.
1 NO_PRGM	If set, the TRNG registers cannot be programmed. That is, regardless of the TRNG access mode in the TRNG0 Miscellaneous Control Register. 0 - Programmability of registers controlled only by the TRNG0 Miscellaneous Control Register's access mode bit. 1 - Overrides TRNG0 Miscellaneous Control Register access mode and prevents TRNG register programming.
0 SH0	Reserved. DRNG specific, not applicable to this version. 0 - See DRNG version. 1 - See DRNG version.

38.1.3.3.38 TRNG0 Interrupt Control (TRNG0_INT_CTRL)

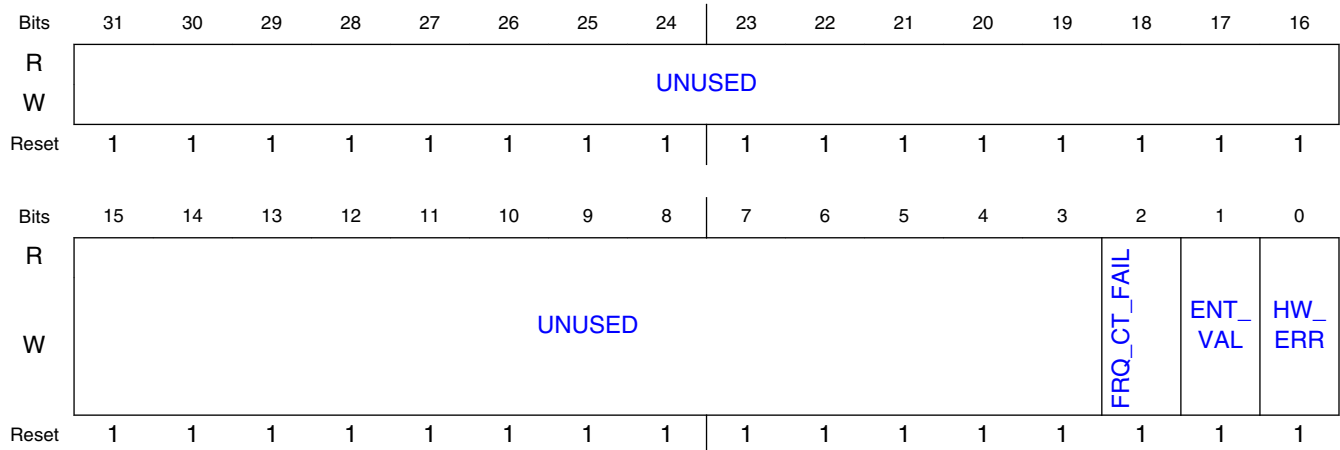
38.1.3.3.38.1 Address

Register	Offset
TRNG0_INT_CTRL	B4h

38.1.3.3.38.2 Function

The TRNG0 Interrupt Control Register is a read/write register used to control the status for the (currently) three important interrupts that are generated by the TRNG. See TRNG0_INT_STATUS register description above. Each interrupt can be cleared by de-asserting the corresponding bit in the TRNG0_INT_CTRL register. Only a new interrupt will reassert the corresponding bit in the status register. Even if the interrupt is cleared or masked, interrupt status information can be read from the TRNG0_MCTL register.

38.1.3.3.38.3 Diagram



38.1.3.3.38.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-3 UNUSED	Reserved but writeable.
2 FRQ_CT_FAIL	Same behavior as bit 0 above. 0 - Same behavior as bit 0 above.

Table continues on the next page...

Standalone True Random Number Generator (SA-TRNG).

Field	Function
	1 - Same behavior as bit 0 above.
1 ENT_VAL	Same behavior as bit 0 above. 0 - Same behavior as bit 0 above. 1 - Same behavior as bit 0 above.
0 HW_ERR	Bit position that can be cleared if corresponding bit of TRNG0_INT_STATUS has been asserted. 0 - Corresponding bit of TRNG0_INT_STATUS cleared. 1 - Corresponding bit of TRNG0_INT_STATUS active.

38.1.3.3.39 TRNG0 Mask (TRNG0_INT_MASK)

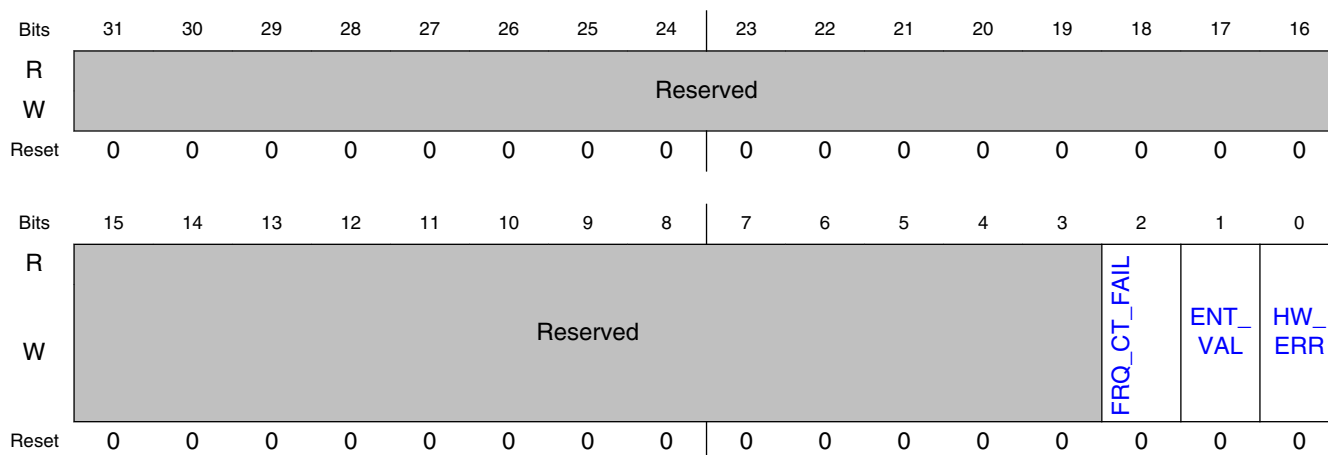
38.1.3.3.39.1 Address

Register	Offset
TRNG0_INT_MASK	B8h

38.1.3.3.39.2 Function

The TRNG0 Interrupt Mask Register is a read/write register used to disable/mask the status reporting of the (currently) three important interrupts that are generated by the TRNG. See TRNG0_INT_STATUS register description above. Each interrupt can be masked/disabled by de-asserting the corresponding bit in the TRNG0_INT_MASK register. Only setting this bit high will re-enable the interrupt in the status register. Even if the interrupt is cleared or masked, interrupt status information can be read from the TRNG0_MCTL register.

38.1.3.3.39.3 Diagram



38.1.3.3.39.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-3 —	Reserved.
2 FRQ_CT_FAIL	Same behavior as bit 0 above. 0 - Same behavior as bit 0 above. 1 - Same behavior as bit 0 above.
1 ENT_VAL	Same behavior as bit 0 above. 0 - Same behavior as bit 0 above. 1 - Same behavior as bit 0 above.
0 HW_ERR	Bit position that can be cleared if corresponding bit of TRNG0_INT_STATUS has been asserted. 0 - Corresponding interrupt of TRNG0_INT_STATUS is masked. 1 - Corresponding bit of TRNG0_INT_STATUS is active.

38.1.3.3.40 TRNG0 Interrupt Status (TRNG0_INT_STATUS)

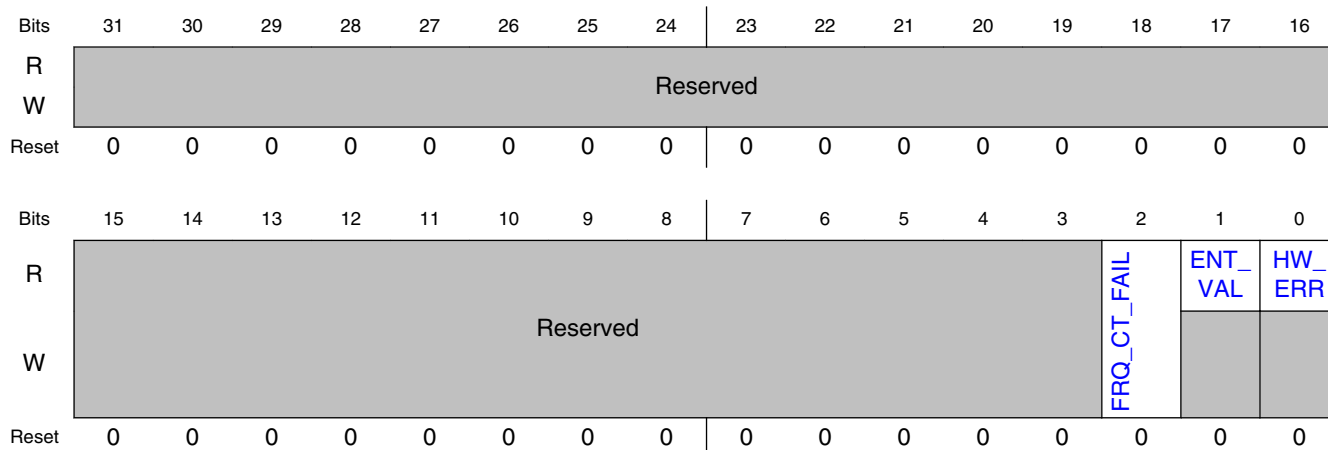
38.1.3.3.40.1 Address

Register	Offset
TRNG0_INT_STATUS	BCh

38.1.3.3.40.2 Function

The TRNG0 Interrupt Status Register is a read register used to control and provide status for the (currently) three important interrupts that are generated by the TRNG. The `ipi_rng_int_b` interrupt signals that TRNG0 has either generated a Frequency Count Fail, Entropy Valid or Error Interrupt. The cause of the interrupt can be decoded by checking the least significant bits of the TRNG0_INT_STATUS register. Each interrupt can be temporarily cleared by de-asserting the corresponding bit in the TRNG0_INT_CTRL register. To mask the interrupts, clear the corresponding bits in the TRNG0_INT_MASK register. The description of each of the 3 interrupts is defined in the Block Guide under the TRNG0_MCTL register description. Even if the interrupt is cleared or masked, interrupt status information can be read from the TRNG0_MCTL register.

38.1.3.3.40.3 Diagram



38.1.3.3.40.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-3 —	Reserved.
2 FRQ_CT_FAIL	Read only: Frequency Count Fail. The frequency counter has detected a failure. This may be due to improper programming of the TRNG0_FRQMAX and/or TRNG0_FRQMIN registers, or a hardware failure in the ring oscillator. 0 - No hardware nor self test frequency errors. 1 - The frequency counter has detected a failure.
1 ENT_VAL	Read only: Entropy Valid. Will assert only if TRNG ACC bit is set, and then after an entropy value is generated. Will be cleared when TRNG0_ENT15 is read. (TRNG0_ENT0 through TRNG0_ENT14 should be read before reading TRNG0_ENT15). 0 - Busy generation entropy. Any value read is invalid. 1 - TRNG can be stopped and entropy is valid if read.
0 HW_ERR	Read: Error status. 1 = error detected. 0 = no error. Any HW error in the TRNG will trigger this interrupt. 0 - no error 1 - error detected.

38.1.3.3.41 TRNG0 Version ID (MS) (TRNG0_VID1)

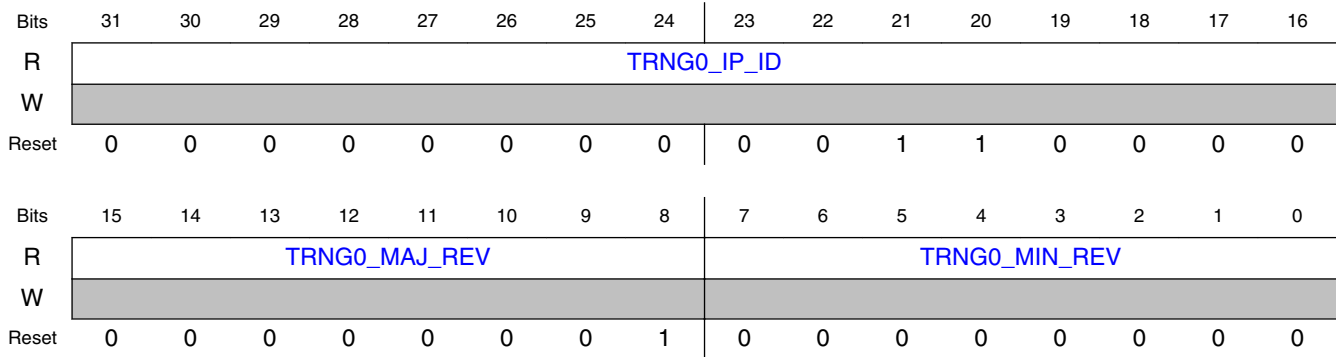
38.1.3.3.41.1 Address

Register	Offset
TRNG0_VID1	F0h

38.1.3.3.41.2 Function

The TRNG0 Version ID Register is a read only register used to identify the version of the TRNG in use. This register as well as TRNG0_VID2 should both be read to verify the expected version.

38.1.3.3.41.3 Diagram



38.1.3.3.41.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-16 TRNG0_IP_ID	Shows the Freescale IP ID. 0000000000110000 - ID for TRNG.
15-8 TRNG0_MAJ_REV	Shows the Freescale IP's Major revision of the TRNG. 00000001 - Major revision number for TRNG.
7-0 TRNG0_MIN_REV	Shows the Freescale IP's Minor revision of the TRNG. 00000000 - Minor revision number for TRNG.

38.1.3.3.42 TRNG0 Version ID (LS) (TRNG0_VID2)

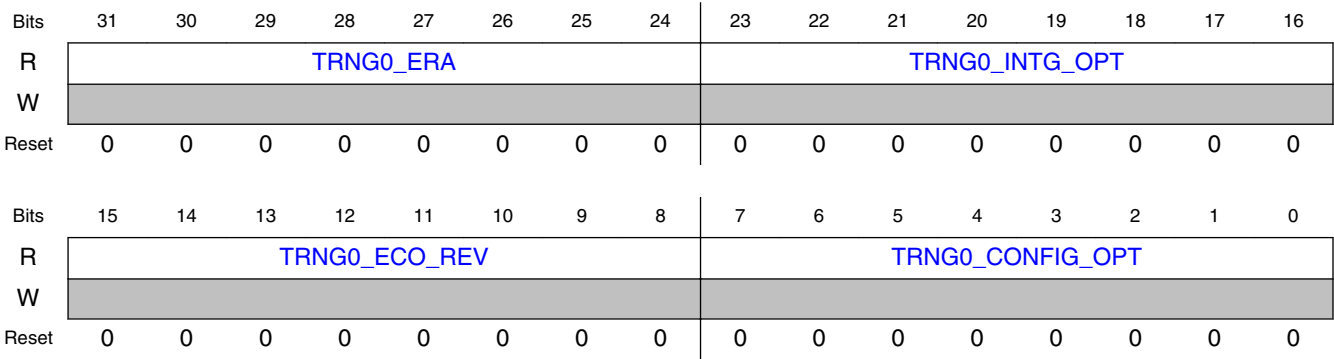
38.1.3.3.42.1 Address

Register	Offset
TRNG0_VID2	F4h

38.1.3.3.42.2 Function

The TRNG0 Version ID Register LSB is a read only register used to identify the architecture of the TRNG in use. This register as well as TRNG0_VID1 should both be read to verify the expected version.

38.1.3.3.42.3 Diagram



38.1.3.3.42.4 Fields

Field	Function
31-24 TRNG0_ERA	Shows the Freescale compile options for the TRNG. 00000000 - COMPILE_OPT for TRNG.
23-16 TRNG0_INTG_OPT	Shows the Freescale integration options for the TRNG. 00000000 - INTG_OPT for TRNG.
15-8 TRNG0_ECO_REV	Shows the Freescale IP's ECO revision of the TRNG. 00000000 - TRNG_ECO_REV for TRNG.
7-0 TRNG0_CONFIG_OPT	Shows the Freescale IP's Configuration options for the TRNG. 00000000 - TRNG_CONFIG_OPT for TRNG.

38.1.4 Another TRNG usage example.

The TRNG can be used by a post processing pseudo-random number generator function. For example, TRNG can be used to seed a hardware or software based implementation of a DRBG defined by SP800-90.

Chapter 39

16-bit SAR Analog-to-Digital Converter (ADC)

39.1 Chip-specific ADC information

39.1.1 ADC instantiation information

This device contains one ADC.

39.1.1.1 Number of ADC channels

The number of ADC channels present on the device is determined by the pinout of the specific device package. For details regarding the number of ADC channel available on a particular package, refer to the signal multiplexing chapter of this MCU.

39.1.2 DMA Support on ADC

Applications may require continuous sampling of the ADC (4K samples/sec) that may have considerable load on the CPU. Though using PDB to trigger ADC may reduce some CPU load, the ADC supports DMA request functionality for higher performance when the ADC is sampled at a very high rate or cases where PDB is bypassed. The ADC can trigger the DMA (via DMA req) on conversion completion.

39.1.3 ADC0 Connections/Channel Assignment

NOTE

As indicated by the following sections, each ADCx_DPx input and certain ADCx_DMx inputs may operate as single-ended ADC channels in single-ended mode.

39.1.3.1 ADC0 Channel Assignment for 144-Pin Package

ADC Channel (SC1n[ADCH])	Channel	Input signal (SC1n[DIFF]= 1)	Input signal (SC1n[DIFF]= 0)
00000	DAD0	ADC0_DP0 and ADC0_DM0	ADC0_DP0
00001	DAD1	ADC0_DP1 and ADC0_DM1	ADC0_DP1
00010	DAD2	ADC0_DP2 and ADC0_DM2	ADC0_DP2
00011	DAD3	ADC0_DP3 and ADC0_DM3	ADC0_DP3
00100 ¹	AD4a	Reserved	ADC0_SE4a
00101 ¹	AD5a	Reserved	ADC0_SE5a
00110 ¹	AD6a	Reserved	ADC0_SE6a
00111 ¹	AD7a	Reserved	ADC0_SE7a
00100 ¹	AD4b	Reserved	ADC0_SE4b
00101 ¹	AD5b	Reserved	ADC0_SE5b
00110 ¹	AD6b	Reserved	ADC0_SE6b
00111 ¹	AD7b	Reserved	ADC0_SE7b
01000	AD8	Reserved	ADC0_SE8
01001	AD9	Reserved	ADC0_SE9
01010	AD10	Reserved	ADC0_SE10
01011	AD11	Reserved	ADC0_SE11
01100	AD12	Reserved	Reserved
01101	AD13	Reserved	Reserved
01110	AD14	Reserved	Reserved
01111	AD15	Reserved	Reserved
10000	AD16	Reserved	Reserved
10001	AD17	Reserved	Reserved
10010	AD18	Reserved	Reserved
10011	AD19	Reserved	Reserved
10100	AD20	Reserved	Reserved
10101	AD21	Reserved	Reserved
10110	AD22	Reserved	Reserved
10111	AD23	Reserved	12-bit DAC0 Output
11000	AD24	Reserved	Reserved
11001	AD25	Reserved	Reserved

Table continues on the next page...

ADC Channel (SC1n[ADCH])	Channel	Input signal (SC1n[DIFF]= 1)	Input signal (SC1n[DIFF]= 0)
11010	AD26	Temperature Sensor (Diff)	Temperature Sensor (S.E)
11011	AD27	Bandgap (Diff)	Bandgap (S.E) ²
11100	AD28	Reserved	Reserved
11101	AD29	-VREFH (Diff)	VREFH (S.E)
11110	AD30	Reserved	VREFL
11111	AD31	Module Disabled	Module Disabled

1. ADCx_CFG2[MUXSEL] bit selects between ADCx_SEn channels a and b. Refer to MUXSEL description in ADC chapter for details.
2. This is the PMC bandgap 1V reference voltage. Prior to reading from this ADC channel, ensure that you enable the bandgap buffer by setting the PMC_REGSC[BGBE] bit. Refer to the device data sheet for the bandgap voltage (V_{BG}) specification.

39.1.3.2 ADC0 Channel Assignment for 100-Pin Package

ADC Channel (SC1n[ADCH])	Channel	Input signal (SC1n[DIFF]= 1)	Input signal (SC1n[DIFF]= 0)
00000	DAD0	Reserved	Reserved
00001	DAD1	ADC0_DP1 and ADC0_DM1	ADC0_DP1
00010	DAD2	ADC0_DP2 and ADC0_DM2	ADC0_DP2
00011	DAD3	Reserved	Reserved
00100 ¹	AD4a	Reserved	ADC0_SE4a
00101 ¹	AD5a	Reserved	ADC0_SE5a
00110 ¹	AD6a	Reserved	ADC0_SE6a
00111 ¹	AD7a	Reserved	ADC0_SE7a
00100 ¹	AD4b	Reserved	ADC0_SE4b
00101 ¹	AD5b	Reserved	ADC0_SE5b
00110 ¹	AD6b	Reserved	Reserved
00111 ¹	AD7b	Reserved	Reserved
01000	AD8	Reserved	Reserved
01001	AD9	Reserved	ADC0_SE9
01010	AD10	Reserved	ADC0_SE10
01011	AD11	Reserved	Reserved
01100	AD12	Reserved	Reserved
01101	AD13	Reserved	Reserved
01110	AD14	Reserved	Reserved
01111	AD15	Reserved	Reserved
10000	AD16	Reserved	Reserved
10001	AD17	Reserved	Reserved
10010	AD18	Reserved	Reserved

Table continues on the next page...

ADC Channel (SC1n[ADCH])	Channel	Input signal (SC1n[DIFF]= 1)	Input signal (SC1n[DIFF]= 0)
10011	AD19	Reserved	Reserved
10100	AD20	Reserved	Reserved
10101	AD21	Reserved	Reserved
10110	AD22	Reserved	Reserved
10111	AD23	Reserved	12-bit DAC0 Output
11000	AD24	Reserved	Reserved
11001	AD25	Reserved	Reserved
11010	AD26	Temperature Sensor (Diff)	Temperature Sensor (S.E)
11011	AD27	Bandgap (Diff)	Bandgap (S.E) ²
11100	AD28	Reserved	Reserved
11101	AD29	-VREFH (Diff)	VREFH (S.E)
11110	AD30	Reserved	VREFL
11111	AD31	Module Disabled	Module Disabled

1. ADCx_CFG2[MUXSEL] bit selects between ADCx_SEn channels a and b. Refer to MUXSEL description in ADC chapter for details.
2. This is the PMC bandgap 1V reference voltage. Prior to reading from this ADC channel, ensure that you enable the bandgap buffer by setting the PMC_REGSC[BGBE] bit. Refer to the device data sheet for the bandgap voltage (V_{BG}) specification.

39.1.4 ADC Channels MUX Selection

The following figure shows the assignment of ADCx_SEn channels a and b through a MUX selection to ADC. To select between alternate set of channels, refer to ADCx_CFG2[MUXSEL] bit settings for more details.

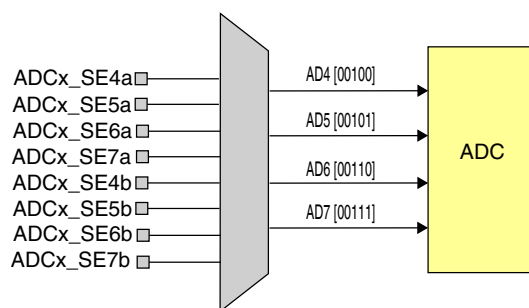


Figure 39-1. ADCx_SEn channels a and b selection

39.1.5 ADC Reference Options

The ADC supports the following references:

- VREFH/VREFL - connected as the primary reference option

ADCx_SC2[REFSEL] bit selects the voltage reference sources for ADC. Refer to REFSEL description in ADC chapter for more details.

39.1.6 ADC triggers

The ADC supports both software and hardware triggers. The primary hardware mechanism for triggering the ADC is the PDB. The PDB itself can be triggered by other peripherals. For example: LPTMR Output signal is connected to the PDB. The PDB input trigger can receive the LPTMR Output trigger forcing ADC conversions in run mode (where PDB is enabled). On the other hand, the ADC can conduct conversions in low power modes, not triggered by PDB. This allows the ADC to do conversions in low power mode and store the output in the result register. The ADC generates interrupt when the data is ready in the result register that wakes the system from low power mode. The PDB can also be bypassed by using the ADCxTRGSEL bits in the SIM_SOPT7 register.

For operation of triggers in different modes, refer to Power Management chapter.

39.1.7 Alternate clock

NOTE

This ALTCLK option is only usable when OSCERCLK is in the MHz range. A system with OSCERCLK in the kHz range has the optional clock source below minimum ADC clock operating frequency.

Table 39-1. ADC Conversion Clock Options

ADCx_CFG[ADICLK]	ADC defined selection	Chip clock	Note
00	Bus Clock	Fast Peripheral Clock	
01	ALTCLK2	N/A	
10	ALTCLK	OSCERCLK	1
11	Asynchronous clock (ADACK)	N/A - sourced from within ADC block	1

1. For ADC operation in Compute only, PSTOP1, Stop, and VLPS, ADACK and the alternate clock sources are allowed clock sources.

39.1.8 ADC low-power modes

This table shows the ADC low-power modes and the corresponding chip low-power modes.

Table 39-2. ADC low-power modes

Module mode	Chip mode
Wait	Wait, VLPW
Normal Stop	Stop, VLPS
Low Power Stop	LLS, VLLS3, VLLS2, VLLS1, VLLS0

39.2 Introduction

The 16-bit analog-to-digital converter (ADC) is a successive approximation ADC designed for operation within an integrated microcontroller system-on-chip.

NOTE

For the chip specific modes of operation, see the power management information of the device.

39.2.1 Features

Following are the features of the ADC module.

- Linear successive approximation algorithm with up to 16-bit resolution
- Up to four pairs of differential and 24 single-ended external analog inputs
- Output modes:
 - differential 16-bit, 13-bit, 11-bit, and 9-bit modes
 - single-ended 16-bit, 12-bit, 10-bit, and 8-bit modes
- Output format in 2's complement 16-bit sign extended for differential modes
- Output in right-justified unsigned format for single-ended
- Single or continuous conversion, that is, automatic return to idle after single conversion
- Configurable sample time and conversion speed/power
- Conversion complete/hardware average complete flag and interrupt
- Input clock selectable from up to four sources
- Operation in low-power modes for lower noise
- Asynchronous clock source for lower noise operation with option to output the clock

- Selectable hardware conversion trigger with hardware channel select
- Automatic compare with interrupt for less-than, greater-than or equal-to, within range, or out-of-range, programmable value
- Temperature sensor
- Hardware average function
- Selectable voltage reference: external or alternate
- Self-Calibration mode

39.2.2 Block diagram

The following figure is the ADC module block diagram.

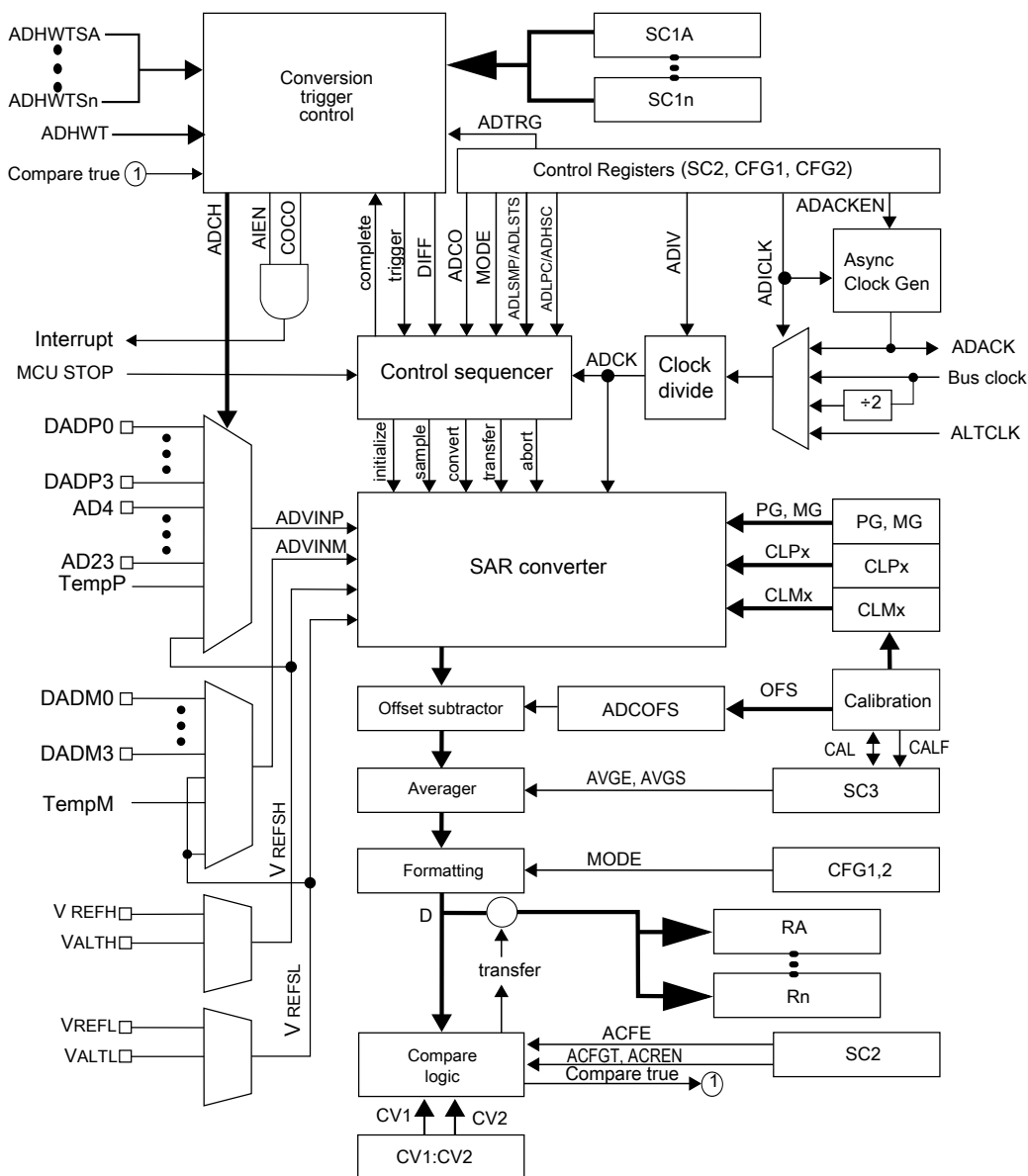


Figure 39-2. ADC block diagram

39.3 ADC signal descriptions

The ADC module supports up to 4 pairs of differential inputs and up to 24 single-ended inputs.

Each differential pair requires two inputs, DADPx and DADMx. The ADC also requires four supply/reference/ground connections.

NOTE

For the number of channels supported on this device as well as information regarding other chip-specific inputs into the ADC block, see the chip-specific ADC configuration information.

Table 39-3. ADC signal descriptions

Signal	Description	I/O
DADP3–DADP0	Differential Analog Channel Inputs	I
DADM3–DADM0	Differential Analog Channel Inputs	I
AD n	Single-Ended Analog Channel Inputs	I
V _{REFSH}	Voltage Reference Select High	I
V _{REFSL}	Voltage Reference Select Low	I
V _{DDA}	Analog Power Supply	I
V _{SSA}	Analog Ground	I

39.3.1 Analog Power (V_{DDA})

The ADC analog portion uses V_{DDA} as its power connection. In some packages, V_{DDA} is connected internally to V_{DD}. If externally available, connect the V_{DDA} pin to the same voltage potential as V_{DD}. External filtering may be necessary to ensure clean V_{DDA} for good results.

39.3.2 Analog Ground (V_{SSA})

The ADC analog portion uses V_{SSA} as its ground connection. In some packages, V_{SSA} is connected internally to V_{SS}. If externally available, connect the V_{SSA} pin to the same voltage potential as V_{SS}.

39.3.3 Voltage Reference Select

V_{REFSH} and V_{REFSL} are the high and low reference voltages for the ADC module.

The ADC can be configured to accept one of two voltage reference pairs for V_{REFSH} and V_{REFSL}. Each pair contains a positive reference that must be between the minimum Ref Voltage High and V_{DDA}, and a ground reference that must be at the same potential as V_{SSA}. The two pairs are external (V_{REFH} and V_{REFL}) and alternate (V_{ALTH} and V_{ALTL}). These voltage references are selected using SC2[REFSEL]. The alternate V_{ALTH} and

V_{ALTL} voltage reference pair may select additional external pins or internal sources depending on MCU configuration. See the chip configuration information on the Voltage References specific to this MCU.

In some packages, V_{REFH} is connected in the package to V_{DDA} and V_{REFL} to V_{SSA} . If externally available, the positive reference(s) may be connected to the same potential as V_{DDA} or may be driven by an external source to a level between the minimum Ref Voltage High and the V_{DDA} potential. V_{REFH} must never exceed V_{DDA} . Connect the ground references to the same voltage potential as V_{SSA} .

39.3.4 Analog Channel Inputs (ADx)

The ADC module supports up to 24 single-ended analog inputs. A single-ended input is selected for conversion through the $SC1[ADCH]$ channel select bits when $SC1n[DIFF]$ is low.

39.3.5 Differential Analog Channel Inputs (DADx)

The ADC module supports up to four differential analog channel inputs. Each differential analog input is a pair of external pins, $DADPx$ and $DADMx$, referenced to each other to provide the most accurate analog to digital readings. A differential input is selected for conversion through $SC1[ADCH]$ when $SC1n[DIFF]$ is high. All $DADPx$ inputs may be used as single-ended inputs if $SC1n[DIFF]$ is low. In certain MCU configurations, some $DADMx$ inputs may also be used as single-ended inputs if $SC1n[DIFF]$ is low. For ADC connections specific to this device, see the chip-specific ADC information.

39.4 Memory map and register definitions

This section describes the ADC registers.

ADC memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/page
4003_B000	ADC Status and Control Registers 1 (ADC0_SC1A)	32	R/W	0000_001Fh	39.4.1/911
4003_B004	ADC Status and Control Registers 1 (ADC0_SC1B)	32	R/W	0000_001Fh	39.4.1/911
4003_B008	ADC Configuration Register 1 (ADC0_CFG1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	39.4.2/915
4003_B00C	ADC Configuration Register 2 (ADC0_CFG2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	39.4.3/916
4003_B010	ADC Data Result Register (ADC0_RA)	32	R	0000_0000h	39.4.4/917

Table continues on the next page...

ADC memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4003_B014	ADC Data Result Register (ADC0_RB)	32	R	0000_0000h	39.4.4/917
4003_B018	Compare Value Registers (ADC0_CV1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	39.4.5/919
4003_B01C	Compare Value Registers (ADC0_CV2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	39.4.5/919
4003_B020	Status and Control Register 2 (ADC0_SC2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	39.4.6/920
4003_B024	Status and Control Register 3 (ADC0_SC3)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	39.4.7/922
4003_B028	ADC Offset Correction Register (ADC0_OFS)	32	R/W	0000_0004h	39.4.8/923
4003_B02C	ADC Plus-Side Gain Register (ADC0_PG)	32	R/W	0000_8200h	39.4.9/924
4003_B030	ADC Minus-Side Gain Register (ADC0_MG)	32	R/W	0000_8200h	39.4.10/924
4003_B034	ADC Plus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADC0_CLPD)	32	R/W	0000_000Ah	39.4.11/925
4003_B038	ADC Plus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADC0_CLPS)	32	R/W	0000_0020h	39.4.12/926
4003_B03C	ADC Plus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADC0_CLP4)	32	R/W	0000_0200h	39.4.13/926
4003_B040	ADC Plus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADC0_CLP3)	32	R/W	0000_0100h	39.4.14/927
4003_B044	ADC Plus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADC0_CLP2)	32	R/W	0000_0080h	39.4.15/927
4003_B048	ADC Plus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADC0_CLP1)	32	R/W	0000_0040h	39.4.16/928
4003_B04C	ADC Plus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADC0_CLP0)	32	R/W	0000_0020h	39.4.17/928
4003_B054	ADC Minus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADC0_CLMD)	32	R/W	0000_000Ah	39.4.18/929
4003_B058	ADC Minus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADC0_CLMS)	32	R/W	0000_0020h	39.4.19/929
4003_B05C	ADC Minus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADC0_CLM4)	32	R/W	0000_0200h	39.4.20/930
4003_B060	ADC Minus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADC0_CLM3)	32	R/W	0000_0100h	39.4.21/930
4003_B064	ADC Minus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADC0_CLM2)	32	R/W	0000_0080h	39.4.22/931
4003_B068	ADC Minus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADC0_CLM1)	32	R/W	0000_0040h	39.4.23/931
4003_B06C	ADC Minus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADC0_CLM0)	32	R/W	0000_0020h	39.4.24/932

39.4.1 ADC Status and Control Registers 1 (ADCx_SC1n)

SC1A is used for both software and hardware trigger modes of operation.

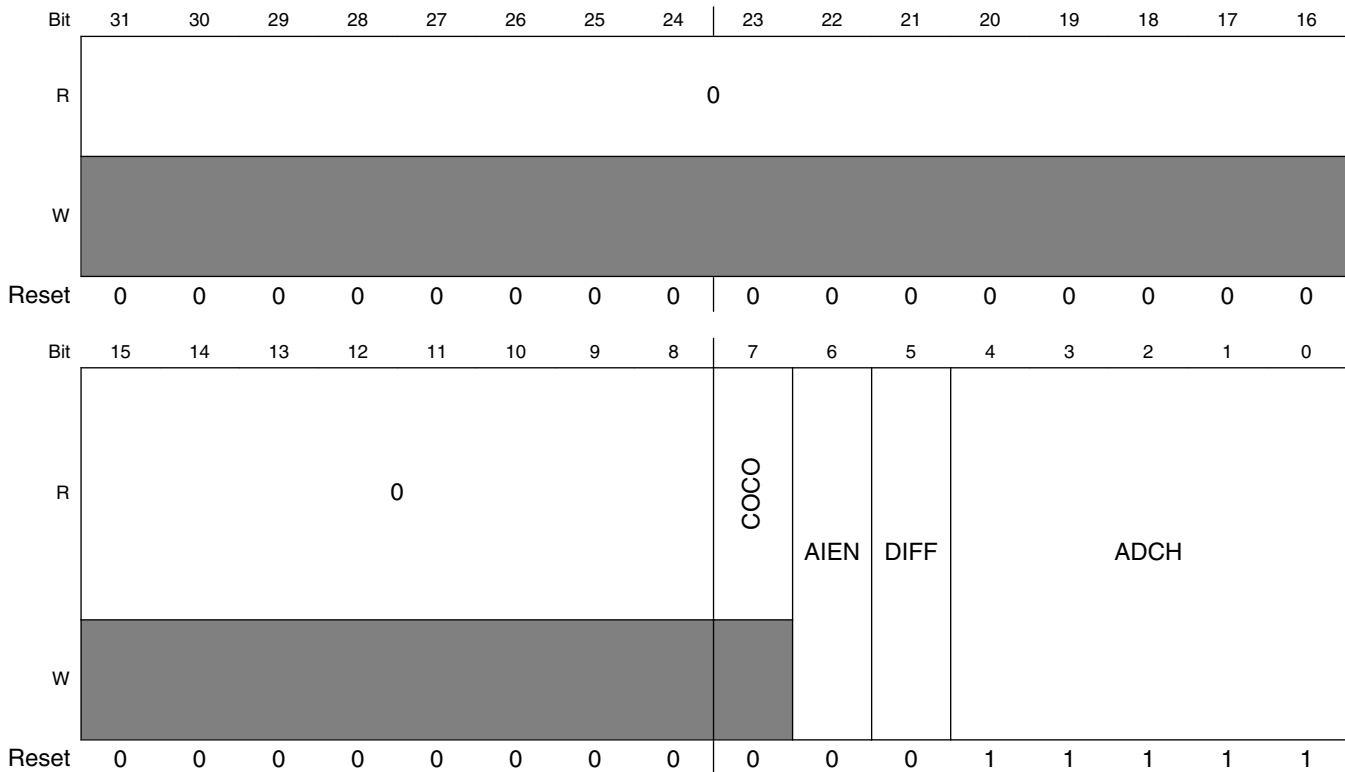
To allow sequential conversions of the ADC to be triggered by internal peripherals, the ADC can have more than one status and control register: one for each conversion. The SC1B–SC1n registers indicate potentially multiple SC1 registers for use only in hardware trigger mode. See the chip configuration information about the number of SC1n registers specific to this device. The SC1n registers have identical fields, and are used in a "ping-pong" approach to control ADC operation.

At any one point in time, only one of the SC1n registers is actively controlling ADC conversions. Updating SC1A while SC1n is actively controlling a conversion is allowed, and vice-versa for any of the SC1n registers specific to this MCU.

Writing SC1A while SC1A is actively controlling a conversion aborts the current conversion. In Software Trigger mode, when SC2[ADTRG]=0, writes to SC1A subsequently initiate a new conversion, if SC1[ADCH] contains a value other than all 1s (module disabled).

Writing any of the SC1n registers while that specific SC1n register is actively controlling a conversion aborts the current conversion. None of the SC1B–SC1n registers are used for software trigger operation and therefore writes to the SC1B–SC1n registers do not initiate a new conversion.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 0h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 1d



ADCx_SC1n field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7 COCO	Conversion Complete Flag This is a read-only field that is set each time a conversion is completed when the compare function is disabled, or SC2[ACFE]=0 and the hardware average function is disabled, or SC3[AVGE]=0. When the compare function is enabled, or SC2[ACFE]=1, COCO is set upon completion of a conversion only if the compare result is true. When the hardware average function is enabled, or SC3[AVGE]=1, COCO is set upon completion of the selected number of conversions (determined by AVGS). COCO in SC1A is also set at the completion of a calibration sequence. COCO is cleared when the respective SC1n register is written or when the respective Rn register is read. 0 Conversion is not completed. 1 Conversion is completed.
6 AIEN	Interrupt Enable Enables conversion complete interrupts. When COCO becomes set while the respective AIEN is high, an interrupt is asserted. 0 Conversion complete interrupt is disabled. 1 Conversion complete interrupt is enabled.
5 DIFF	Differential Mode Enable Configures the ADC to operate in differential mode. When enabled, this mode automatically selects from the differential channels, and changes the conversion algorithm and the number of cycles to complete a conversion. 0 Single-ended conversions and input channels are selected. 1 Differential conversions and input channels are selected.
ADCH	Input channel select Selects one of the input channels. The input channel decode depends on the value of DIFF. DAD0-DAD3 are associated with the input pin pairs DADPx and DADmX. NOTE: Some of the input channel options in the bitfield-setting descriptions might not be available for your device. For the actual ADC channel assignments for your device, see the Chip Configuration details. The successive approximation converter subsystem is turned off when the channel select bits are all set, that is, ADCH = 11111. This feature allows explicit disabling of the ADC and isolation of the input channel from all sources. Terminating continuous conversions this way prevents an additional single conversion from being performed. It is not necessary to set ADCH to all 1s to place the ADC in a low-power state when continuous conversions are not enabled because the module automatically enters a low-power state when a conversion completes. 00000 When DIFF=0, DADP0 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, DAD0 is selected as input. 00001 When DIFF=0, DADP1 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, DAD1 is selected as input. 00010 When DIFF=0, DADP2 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, DAD2 is selected as input. 00011 When DIFF=0, DADP3 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, DAD3 is selected as input. 00100 When DIFF=0, AD4 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved. 00101 When DIFF=0, AD5 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved. 00110 When DIFF=0, AD6 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved. 00111 When DIFF=0, AD7 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved.

Table continues on the next page...

ADCx_SC1n field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
01000	When DIFF=0, AD8 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved.
01001	When DIFF=0, AD9 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved.
01010	When DIFF=0, AD10 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved.
01011	When DIFF=0, AD11 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved.
01100	When DIFF=0, AD12 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved.
01101	When DIFF=0, AD13 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved.
01110	When DIFF=0, AD14 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved.
01111	When DIFF=0, AD15 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved.
10000	When DIFF=0, AD16 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved.
10001	When DIFF=0, AD17 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved.
10010	When DIFF=0, AD18 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved.
10011	When DIFF=0, AD19 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved.
10100	When DIFF=0, AD20 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved.
10101	When DIFF=0, AD21 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved.
10110	When DIFF=0, AD22 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved.
10111	When DIFF=0, AD23 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved.
11000	Reserved.
11001	Reserved.
11010	When DIFF=0, Temp Sensor (single-ended) is selected as input; when DIFF=1, Temp Sensor (differential) is selected as input.
11011	When DIFF=0, Bandgap (single-ended) is selected as input; when DIFF=1, Bandgap (differential) is selected as input.
11100	Reserved.
11101	When DIFF=0, V_{REFSH} is selected as input; when DIFF=1, $-V_{REFSH}$ (differential) is selected as input. Voltage reference selected is determined by SC2[REFSEL].
11110	When DIFF=0, V_{REFSL} is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved. Voltage reference selected is determined by SC2[REFSEL].
11111	Module is disabled.

39.4.2 ADC Configuration Register 1 (ADCx_CFG1)

The configuration Register 1 (CFG1) selects the mode of operation, clock source, clock divide, and configuration for low power or long sample time.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 8h offset = 4003_B008h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0								ADLPC	ADIV		ADLSMP	MODE		ADICLK	
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ADCx_CFG1 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7 ADLPC	Low-Power Configuration Controls the power configuration of the successive approximation converter. This optimizes power consumption when higher sample rates are not required. 0 Normal power configuration. 1 Low-power configuration. The power is reduced at the expense of maximum clock speed.
6–5 ADIV	Clock Divide Select Selects the divide ratio used by the ADC to generate the internal clock ADCK. 00 The divide ratio is 1 and the clock rate is input clock. 01 The divide ratio is 2 and the clock rate is (input clock)/2. 10 The divide ratio is 4 and the clock rate is (input clock)/4. 11 The divide ratio is 8 and the clock rate is (input clock)/8.
4 ADLSMP	Sample Time Configuration Selects between different sample times based on the conversion mode selected. This field adjusts the sample period to allow higher impedance inputs to be accurately sampled or to maximize conversion speed for lower impedance inputs. Longer sample times can also be used to lower overall power consumption if continuous conversions are enabled and high conversion rates are not required. When ADLSMP=1, the long sample time select bits, (ADLSTS[1:0]), can select the extent of the long sample time.

Table continues on the next page...

ADCx_CFG1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Short sample time. 1 Long sample time.
3–2 MODE	Conversion mode selection Selects the ADC resolution mode. 00 When DIFF=0:It is single-ended 8-bit conversion; when DIFF=1, it is differential 9-bit conversion with 2's complement output. 01 When DIFF=0:It is single-ended 12-bit conversion ; when DIFF=1, it is differential 13-bit conversion with 2's complement output. 10 When DIFF=0:It is single-ended 10-bit conversion. ; when DIFF=1, it is differential 11-bit conversion with 2's complement output 11 When DIFF=0:It is single-ended 16-bit conversion..; when DIFF=1, it is differential 16-bit conversion with 2's complement output
ADICLK	Input Clock Select Selects the input clock source to generate the internal clock, ADCK. Note that when the ADACK clock source is selected, it is not required to be active prior to conversion start. When it is selected and it is not active prior to a conversion start, when CFG2[ADACKEN]=0, the asynchronous clock is activated at the start of a conversion and deactivated when conversions are terminated. In this case, there is an associated clock startup delay each time the clock source is re-activated. 00 Bus clock 01 Alternate clock 2 (ALTCLK2) 10 Alternate clock (ALTCLK) 11 Asynchronous clock (ADACK)

39.4.3 ADC Configuration Register 2 (ADCx_CFG2)

Configuration Register 2 (CFG2) selects the special high-speed configuration for very high speed conversions and selects the long sample time duration during long sample mode.

Address: 4003_B000h base + Ch offset = 4003_B00Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0								0			MUXSEL	ADACKEN	ADHSC	ADLSTS	
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ADCx_CFG2 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7–5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
4 MUXSEL	ADC Mux Select Changes the ADC mux setting to select between alternate sets of ADC channels. 0 ADxxa channels are selected. 1 ADxxb channels are selected.
3 ADACKEN	Asynchronous Clock Output Enable Enables the asynchronous clock source and the clock source output regardless of the conversion and status of CFG1[ADICLK]. Based on MCU configuration, the asynchronous clock may be used by other modules. See chip configuration information. Setting this field allows the clock to be used even while the ADC is idle or operating from a different clock source. Also, latency of initiating a single or first-continuous conversion with the asynchronous clock selected is reduced because the ADACK clock is already operational. 0 Asynchronous clock output disabled; Asynchronous clock is enabled only if selected by ADICLK and a conversion is active. 1 Asynchronous clock and clock output is enabled regardless of the state of the ADC.
2 ADHSC	High-Speed Configuration Configures the ADC for very high-speed operation. The conversion sequence is altered with 2 ADCK cycles added to the conversion time to allow higher speed conversion clocks. 0 Normal conversion sequence selected. 1 High-speed conversion sequence selected with 2 additional ADCK cycles to total conversion time.
ADLSTS	Long Sample Time Select Selects between the extended sample times when long sample time is selected, that is, when CFG1[ADLSMP]=1. This allows higher impedance inputs to be accurately sampled or to maximize conversion speed for lower impedance inputs. Longer sample times can also be used to lower overall power consumption when continuous conversions are enabled if high conversion rates are not required. 00 Default longest sample time; 20 extra ADCK cycles; 24 ADCK cycles total. 01 12 extra ADCK cycles; 16 ADCK cycles total sample time. 10 6 extra ADCK cycles; 10 ADCK cycles total sample time. 11 2 extra ADCK cycles; 6 ADCK cycles total sample time.

39.4.4 ADC Data Result Register (ADCx_Rn)

The data result registers (Rn) contain the result of an ADC conversion of the channel selected by the corresponding status and channel control register (SC1A:SC1n). For every status and channel control register, there is a corresponding data result register.

Unused bits in R_n are cleared in unsigned right-aligned modes and carry the sign bit (MSB) in sign-extended 2's complement modes. For example, when configured for 10-bit single-ended mode, D[15:10] are cleared. When configured for 11-bit differential mode, D[15:10] carry the sign bit, that is, bit 10 extended through bit 15.

The following table describes the behavior of the data result registers in the different modes of operation.

Table 39-4. Data result register description

Conversion mode	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0	Format
16-bit differential	S	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	Signed 2's complement
16-bit single-ended	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	Unsigned right justified
13-bit differential	S	S	S	S	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	Sign-extended 2's complement
12-bit single-ended	0	0	0	0	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	Unsigned right-justified
11-bit differential	S	S	S	S	S	S	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	Sign-extended 2's complement
10-bit single-ended	0	0	0	0	0	0	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	Unsigned right-justified
9-bit differential	S	S	S	S	S	S	S	S	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	Sign-extended 2's complement
8-bit single-ended	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	Unsigned right-justified

NOTE

S: Sign bit or sign bit extension;

D: Data, which is 2's complement data if indicated

Address: 4003_B000h base + 10h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 1d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																D															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ADCx_Rn field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
D	Data result

39.4.5 Compare Value Registers (ADCx_CVn)

The Compare Value Registers (CV1 and CV2) contain a compare value used to compare the conversion result when the compare function is enabled, that is, SC2[ACFE]=1. This register is formatted in the same way as the Rn registers in different modes of operation for both bit position definition and value format using unsigned or sign-extended 2's complement. Therefore, the compare function uses only the CVn fields that are related to the ADC mode of operation.

The compare value 2 register (CV2) is used only when the compare range function is enabled, that is, SC2[ACREN]=1.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 18h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 1d

[illegible]

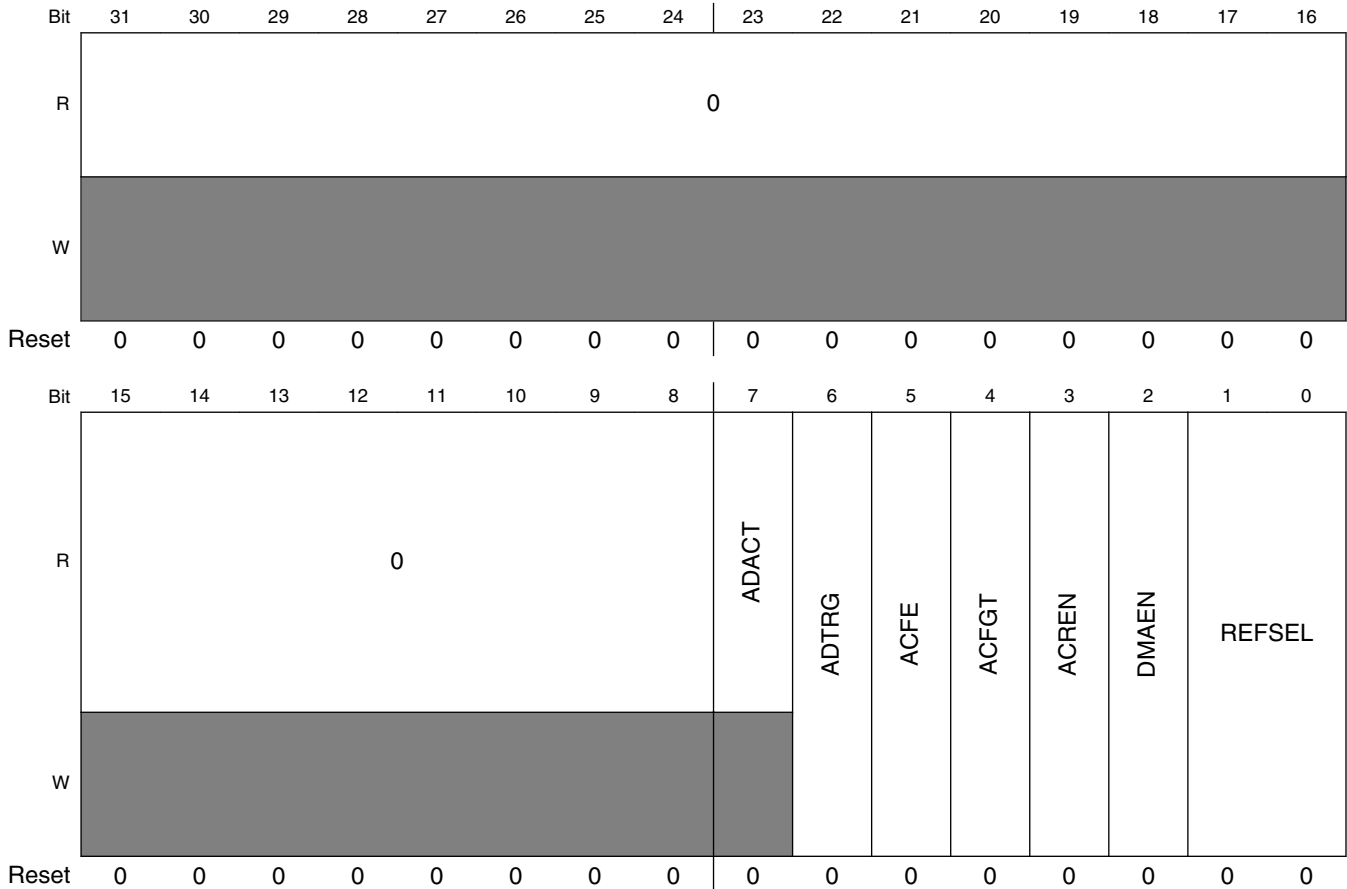
ADCx_CVn field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CV	Compare Value.

39.4.6 Status and Control Register 2 (ADCx_SC2)

The status and control register 2 (SC2) contains the conversion active, hardware/software trigger select, compare function, and voltage reference select of the ADC module.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 20h offset = 4003_B020h



ADCx_SC2 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7 ADACT	Conversion Active Indicates that a conversion or hardware averaging is in progress. ADACT is set when a conversion is initiated and cleared when a conversion is completed or aborted. 0 Conversion not in progress. 1 Conversion in progress.
6 ADTRG	Conversion Trigger Select Selects the type of trigger used for initiating a conversion. Two types of trigger are selectable:

Table continues on the next page...

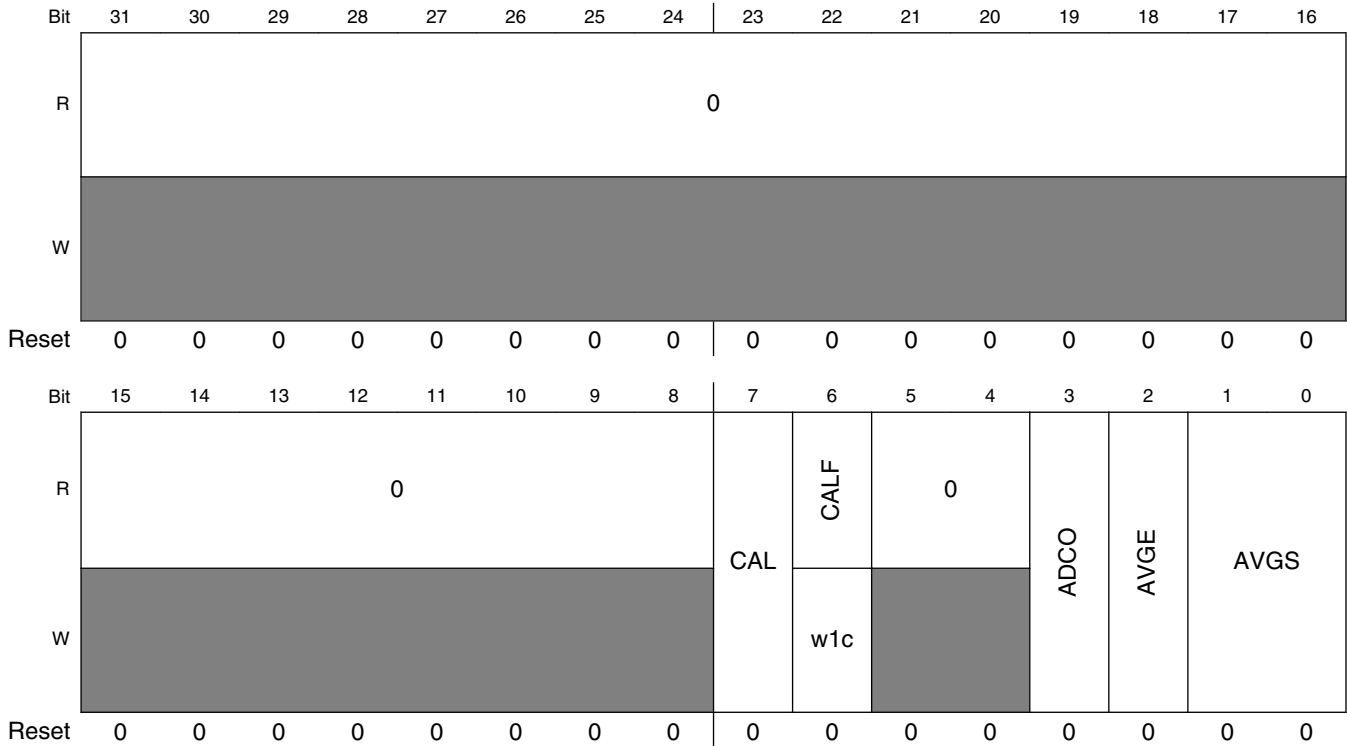
ADCx_SC2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Software trigger: When software trigger is selected, a conversion is initiated following a write to SC1A. Hardware trigger: When hardware trigger is selected, a conversion is initiated following the assertion of the ADHWT input after a pulse of the ADHWTSn input. <p>0 Software trigger selected. 1 Hardware trigger selected.</p>
5 ACFE	<p>Compare Function Enable</p> <p>Enables the compare function.</p> <p>0 Compare function disabled. 1 Compare function enabled.</p>
4 ACFGT	<p>Compare Function Greater Than Enable</p> <p>Configures the compare function to check the conversion result relative to the CV1 and CV2 based upon the value of ACREN. ACFE must be set for ACFGT to have any effect.</p> <p>0 Configures less than threshold, outside range not inclusive and inside range not inclusive; functionality based on the values placed in CV1 and CV2. 1 Configures greater than or equal to threshold, outside and inside ranges inclusive; functionality based on the values placed in CV1 and CV2.</p>
3 ACREN	<p>Compare Function Range Enable</p> <p>Configures the compare function to check if the conversion result of the input being monitored is either between or outside the range formed by CV1 and CV2 determined by the value of ACFGT. ACFE must be set for ACFGT to have any effect.</p> <p>0 Range function disabled. Only CV1 is compared. 1 Range function enabled. Both CV1 and CV2 are compared.</p>
2 DMAEN	<p>DMA Enable</p> <p>0 DMA is disabled. 1 DMA is enabled and will assert the ADC DMA request during an ADC conversion complete event noted when any of the SC1n[COCO] flags is asserted.</p>
REFSEL	<p>Voltage Reference Selection</p> <p>Selects the voltage reference source used for conversions.</p> <p>00 Default voltage reference pin pair, that is, external pins V_{REFH} and V_{REFL} 01 Alternate reference pair, that is, V_{ALTH} and V_{ALTTL}. This pair may be additional external pins or internal sources depending on the MCU configuration. See the chip configuration information for details specific to this MCU 10 Reserved 11 Reserved</p>

39.4.7 Status and Control Register 3 (ADCx_SC3)

The Status and Control Register 3 (SC3) controls the calibration, continuous convert, and hardware averaging functions of the ADC module.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 24h offset = 4003_B024h



ADCx_SC3 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7 CAL	Calibration Begins the calibration sequence when set. This field stays set while the calibration is in progress and is cleared when the calibration sequence is completed. CALF must be checked to determine the result of the calibration sequence. Once started, the calibration routine cannot be interrupted by writes to the ADC registers or the results will be invalid and CALF will set. Setting CAL will abort any current conversion.
6 CALF	Calibration Failed Flag Displays the result of the calibration sequence. The calibration sequence will fail if SC2[ADTRG] = 1, any ADC register is written, or any stop mode is entered before the calibration sequence completes. Writing 1 to CALF clears it. 0 Calibration completed normally. 1 Calibration failed. ADC accuracy specifications are not guaranteed.

Table continues on the next page...

ADCx_SC3 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
5–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3 ADCO	Continuous Conversion Enable Enables continuous conversions. 0 One conversion or one set of conversions if the hardware average function is enabled, that is, AVGE=1, after initiating a conversion. 1 Continuous conversions or sets of conversions if the hardware average function is enabled, that is, AVGE=1, after initiating a conversion.
2 AVGE	Hardware Average Enable Enables the hardware average function of the ADC. 0 Hardware average function disabled. 1 Hardware average function enabled.
AVGS	Hardware Average Select Determines how many ADC conversions will be averaged to create the ADC average result. 00 4 samples averaged. 01 8 samples averaged. 10 16 samples averaged. 11 32 samples averaged.

39.4.8 ADC Offset Correction Register (ADCx_OFS)

The ADC Offset Correction Register (OFS) contains the user-selected or calibration-generated offset error correction value. This register is a 2's complement, left-justified, 16-bit value. The value in OFS is subtracted from the conversion and the result is transferred into the result registers, Rn. If the result is greater than the maximum or less than the minimum result value, it is forced to the appropriate limit for the current mode of operation.

For more information regarding the calibration procedure, please refer to the [Calibration function](#) section.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 28h offset = 4003_B028h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																OFS															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0

ADCx_OFS field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
OFS	Offset Error Correction Value

39.4.9 ADC Plus-Side Gain Register (ADCx_PG)

The Plus-Side Gain Register (PG) contains the gain error correction for the plus-side input in differential mode or the overall conversion in single-ended mode. PG, a 16-bit real number in binary format, is the gain adjustment factor, with the radix point fixed between PG[15] and PG[14]. This register must be written by the user with the value described in the calibration procedure. Otherwise, the gain error specifications may not be met.

For more information regarding the calibration procedure, please refer to the [Calibration function](#) section.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 2Ch offset = 4003_B02Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																PG															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ADCx_PG field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
PG	Plus-Side Gain

39.4.10 ADC Minus-Side Gain Register (ADCx_MG)

The Minus-Side Gain Register (MG) contains the gain error correction for the minus-side input in differential mode. This register is ignored in single-ended mode. MG, a 16-bit real number in binary format, is the gain adjustment factor, with the radix point fixed between MG[15] and MG[14]. This register must be written by the user with the value described in the calibration procedure. Otherwise, the gain error specifications may not be met.

For more information regarding the calibration procedure, please refer to the [Calibration function](#) section.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 30h offset = 4003_B030h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																MG															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ADCx_MG field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
MG	Minus-Side Gain

39.4.11 ADC Plus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLPD)

The Plus-Side General Calibration Value Registers (CLPx) contain calibration information that is generated by the calibration function. These registers contain seven calibration values of varying widths: CLP0[5:0], CLP1[6:0], CLP2[7:0], CLP3[8:0], CLP4[9:0], CLPS[5:0], and CLPD[5:0]. CLPx are automatically set when the self-calibration sequence is done, that is, CAL is cleared. If these registers are written by the user after calibration, the linearity error specifications may not be met.

For more information regarding the calibration procedure, please refer to the [Calibration function](#) section.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 34h offset = 4003_B034h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0

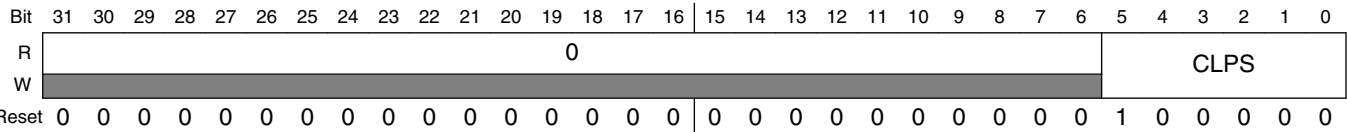
ADCx_CLPD field descriptions

Field	Description
31–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CLPD	Calibration Value Calibration Value

39.4.12 ADC Plus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLPS)

For more information, see CLPD register description.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 38h offset = 4003_B038h



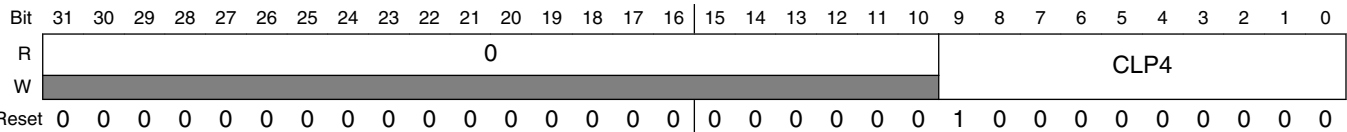
ADCx_CLPS field descriptions

Field	Description
31–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CLPS	Calibration Value Calibration Value

39.4.13 ADC Plus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLP4)

For more information, see CLPD register description.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 3Ch offset = 4003_B03Ch



ADCx_CLP4 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–10 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CLP4	Calibration Value Calibration Value

39.4.14 ADC Plus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLP3)

For more information, see CLPD register description.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 40h offset = 4003_B040h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																CLP3															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ADCx_CLP3 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–9 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CLP3	Calibration Value Calibration Value

39.4.15 ADC Plus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLP2)

For more information, see CLPD register description.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 44h offset = 4003_B044h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																CLP2															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

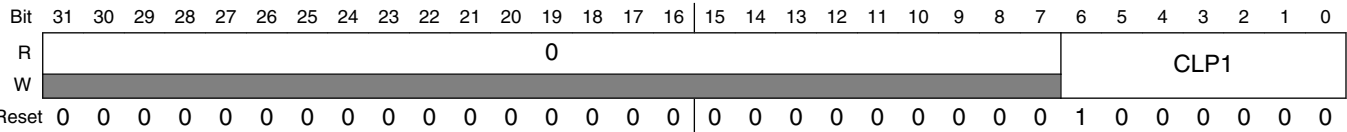
ADCx_CLP2 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CLP2	Calibration Value Calibration Value

39.4.16 ADC Plus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLP1)

For more information, see CLPD register description.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 48h offset = 4003_B048h



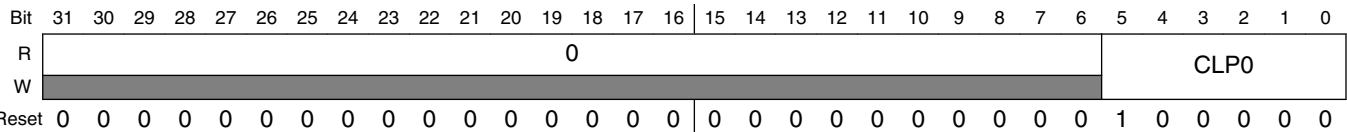
ADCx_CLP1 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–7 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CLP1	Calibration Value Calibration Value

39.4.17 ADC Plus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLP0)

For more information, see CLPD register description.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 4Ch offset = 4003_B04Ch



ADCx_CLP0 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CLP0	Calibration Value Calibration Value

39.4.18 ADC Minus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLMD)

The Minus-Side General Calibration Value (CLMx) registers contain calibration information that is generated by the calibration function. These registers contain seven calibration values of varying widths: CLM0[5:0], CLM1[6:0], CLM2[7:0], CLM3[8:0], CLM4[9:0], CLMS[5:0], and CLMD[5:0]. CLMx are automatically set when the self-calibration sequence is done, that is, CAL is cleared. If these registers are written by the user after calibration, the linearity error specifications may not be met.

For more information regarding the calibration procedure, please refer to the [Calibration function](#) section.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 54h offset = 4003_B054h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																CLMD															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0

ADCx_CLMD field descriptions

Field	Description
31–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CLMD	Calibration Value Calibration Value

39.4.19 ADC Minus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLMS)

For more information, see CLMD register description.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 58h offset = 4003_B058h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																CLMS															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	

ADCx_CLMS field descriptions

Field	Description
31–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CLMS	Calibration Value Calibration Value

39.4.20 ADC Minus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLM4)

For more information, see CLMD register description.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 5Ch offset = 4003_B05Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																CLM4															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

ADCx_CLM4 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–10 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CLM4	Calibration Value Calibration Value

39.4.21 ADC Minus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLM3)

For more information, see CLMD register description.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 60h offset = 4003_B060h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																CLM3															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

ADCx_CLM3 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–9 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

Table continues on the next page...

ADCx_CLM3 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
CLM3	Calibration Value
	Calibration Value

39.4.22 ADC Minus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLM2)

For more information, see CLMD register description.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 64h offset = 4003_B064h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																CLM2															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	

ADCx_CLM2 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CLM2	Calibration Value
	Calibration Value

39.4.23 ADC Minus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLM1)

For more information, see CLMD register description.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 68h offset = 4003_B068h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																CLM1															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	

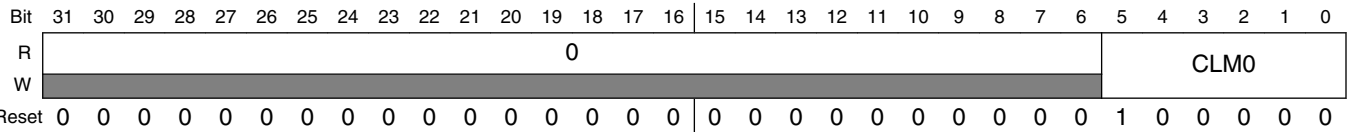
ADCx_CLM1 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–7 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CLM1	Calibration Value
	Calibration Value

39.4.24 ADC Minus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLM0)

For more information, see CLMD register description.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 6Ch offset = 4003_B06Ch



ADCx_CLM0 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CLM0	Calibration Value Calibration Value

39.5 Functional description

The ADC module is disabled during reset, in Low-Power Stop mode, or when SC1n[ADCH] are all high; see the power management information for details. The module is idle when a conversion has completed and another conversion has not been initiated. When it is idle and the asynchronous clock output enable is disabled, or CFG2[ADACKEN]= 0, the module is in its lowest power state. The ADC can perform an analog-to-digital conversion on any of the software selectable channels. All modes perform conversion by a successive approximation algorithm.

To meet accuracy specifications, the ADC module must be calibrated using the on-chip calibration function.

See [Calibration function](#) for details on how to perform calibration.

When the conversion is completed, the result is placed in the Rn data registers. The respective SC1n[COCO] is then set and an interrupt is generated if the respective conversion complete interrupt has been enabled, or, when SC1n[AIEN]=1.

The ADC module has the capability of automatically comparing the result of a conversion with the contents of the CV1 and CV2 registers. The compare function is enabled by setting SC2[ACFE] and operates in any of the conversion modes and configurations.

The ADC module has the capability of automatically averaging the result of multiple conversions. The hardware average function is enabled by setting SC3[AVGE] and operates in any of the conversion modes and configurations.

NOTE

For the chip specific modes of operation, see the power management information of this MCU.

39.5.1 Clock select and divide control

One of four clock sources can be selected as the clock source for the ADC module.

This clock source is then divided by a configurable value to generate the input clock ADCK, to the module. The clock is selected from one of the following sources by means of CFG1[ADICLK].

- Bus clock. This is the default selection following reset.
- ALTCLK2: As defined for this MCU. See the chip configuration information. Conversions are possible using ALTCLK2 as the input clock source while the MCU is in Normal Stop mode.
- ALTCLK: As defined for this MCU. See the chip configuration information. Conversions are possible using ALTCLK as the input clock source while the MCU is in Normal Stop mode.
- Asynchronous clock (ADACK): This clock is generated from a clock source within the ADC module. When the ADACK clock source is selected, it is not required to be active prior to conversion start. When it is selected and it is not active prior to a conversion start CFG2[ADACKEN]=0, ADACK is activated at the start of a conversion and deactivated when conversions are terminated. In this case, there is an associated clock startup delay each time the clock source is re-activated. To avoid the conversion time variability and latency associated with the ADACK clock startup, set CFG2[ADACKEN]=1 and wait the worst-case startup time of 5 μ s prior to initiating any conversions using the ADACK clock source. Conversions are possible using ADACK as the input clock source while the MCU is in Normal Stop mode. See [Power Control](#) for more information.

Whichever clock is selected, its frequency must fall within the specified frequency range for ADCK. If the available clocks are too slow, the ADC may not perform according to specifications. If the available clocks are too fast, the clock must be divided to the appropriate frequency. This divider is specified by CFG1[ADIV] and can be divide-by 1, 2, 4, or 8.

39.5.2 Voltage reference selection

The ADC can be configured to accept one of the two voltage reference pairs as the reference voltage (V_{REFSH} and V_{REFSL}) used for conversions.

Each pair contains a positive reference that must be between the minimum Ref Voltage High and V_{DDA} , and a ground reference that must be at the same potential as V_{SSA} . The two pairs are external (V_{REFH} and V_{REFL}) and alternate (V_{ALTH} and V_{ALTL}). These voltage references are selected using $SC2[REFSEL]$. The alternate (V_{ALTH} and V_{ALTL}) voltage reference pair may select additional external pins or internal sources depending on MCU configuration. See the chip configuration information on the voltage references specific to this MCU.

39.5.3 Hardware trigger and channel selects

The ADC module has a selectable asynchronous hardware conversion trigger, ADHWT, that is enabled when $SC2[ADTRG]$ is set and a hardware trigger select event, ADHWTSn, has occurred.

This source is not available on all MCUs. See the chip-specific ADC information for information on the ADHWT source and the ADHWTSn configurations specific to this MCU.

When an ADHWT source is available and hardware trigger is enabled, that is $SC2[ADTRG]=1$, a conversion is initiated on the rising-edge of ADHWT after a hardware trigger select event, that is, ADHWTSn, has occurred. If a conversion is in progress when a rising-edge of a trigger occurs, the rising-edge is ignored. In continuous convert configuration, only the initial rising-edge to launch continuous conversions is observed, and until conversion is aborted, the ADC continues to do conversions on the same SCn register that initiated the conversion. The hardware trigger function operates in conjunction with any of the conversion modes and configurations.

The hardware trigger select event, ADHWTSn, must be set prior to the receipt of the ADHWT signal. If these conditions are not met, the converter may ignore the trigger or use the incorrect configuration. If a hardware trigger select event is asserted during a conversion, it must stay asserted until the end of current conversion and remain set until the receipt of the ADHWT signal to trigger a new conversion. The channel and status fields selected for the conversion depend on the active trigger select signal:

- ADHWTSn active selects SC1A.
- ADHWTSn active selects SC1n.

Note

Asserting more than one hardware trigger select signal (ADHWTSn) at the same time results in unknown results. To avoid this, select only one hardware trigger select signal (ADHWTSn) prior to the next intended conversion.

When the conversion is completed, the result is placed in the Rn registers associated with the ADHWTSn received. For example:

- ADHWTSa active selects RA register
- ADHWTSn active selects Rn register

The conversion complete flag associated with the ADHWTSn received, that is, SC1n[COCO], is then set and an interrupt is generated if the respective conversion complete interrupt has been enabled, that is, SC1[AIEN]=1.

39.5.4 Conversion control

Conversions can be performed as determined by CFG1[MODE] and SC1n[DIFF] as shown in the description of CFG1[MODE].

Conversions can be initiated by a software or hardware trigger.

In addition, the ADC module can be configured for:

- Low-power operation
- Long sample time
- Continuous conversion
- Hardware average
- Automatic compare of the conversion result to a software determined compare value

39.5.4.1 Initiating conversions

A conversion is initiated:

- Following a write to SC1A, with SC1n[ADCH] not all 1's, if software triggered operation is selected, that is, when SC2[ADTRG]=0.
- Following a hardware trigger, or ADHWT event, if hardware triggered operation is selected, that is, SC2[ADTRG]=1, and a hardware trigger select event, ADHWTSn, has occurred. The channel and status fields selected depend on the active trigger select signal:
 - ADHWTSa active selects SC1A.

- ADHWTSn active selects SC1n.
- if neither is active, the off condition is selected

Note

Selecting more than one ADHWTSn prior to a conversion completion will result in unknown results. To avoid this, select only one ADHWTSn prior to a conversion completion.

- Following the transfer of the result to the data registers when continuous conversion is enabled, that is, when $SC3[ADCO] = 1$.

If continuous conversions are enabled, a new conversion is automatically initiated after the completion of the current conversion. In software triggered operation, that is, when $SC2[ADTRG] = 0$, continuous conversions begin after SC1A is written and continue until aborted. In hardware triggered operation, that is, when $SC2[ADTRG] = 1$ and one ADHWTSn event has occurred, continuous conversions begin after a hardware trigger event and continue until aborted.

If hardware averaging is enabled, a new conversion is automatically initiated after the completion of the current conversion until the correct number of conversions are completed. In software triggered operation, conversions begin after SC1A is written. In hardware triggered operation, conversions begin after a hardware trigger. If continuous conversions are also enabled, a new set of conversions to be averaged are initiated following the last of the selected number of conversions.

39.5.4.2 Completing conversions

A conversion is completed when the result of the conversion is transferred into the data result registers, Rn. If the compare functions are disabled, this is indicated by setting of $SC1n[COCO]$. If hardware averaging is enabled, the respective $SC1n[COCO]$ sets only if the last of the selected number of conversions is completed. If the compare function is enabled, the respective $SC1n[COCO]$ sets and conversion result data is transferred only if the compare condition is true. If both hardware averaging and compare functions are enabled, then the respective $SC1n[COCO]$ sets only if the last of the selected number of conversions is completed and the compare condition is true. An interrupt is generated if the respective $SC1n[AIEN]$ is high at the time that the respective $SC1n[COCO]$ is set.

39.5.4.3 Aborting conversions

Any conversion in progress is aborted when:

- Writing to SC1A while it is actively controlling a conversion, aborts the current conversion. In Software Trigger mode, when SC2[ADTRG]=0, a write to SC1A initiates a new conversion if SC1A[ADCH] is equal to a value other than all 1s. Writing to any of the SC1B–SC1n registers while that specific SC1B–SC1n register is actively controlling a conversion aborts the current conversion. The SC1(B-n) registers are not used for software trigger operation and therefore writes to the SC1(B-n) registers do not initiate a new conversion.
- A write to any ADC register besides the SC1A-SC1n registers occurs. This indicates that a change in mode of operation has occurred and the current conversion is therefore invalid.
- The MCU is reset or enters Low-Power Stop modes.
- The MCU enters Normal Stop mode with ADACK or Alternate Clock Sources not enabled.

When a conversion is aborted, the contents of the data registers, Rn, are not altered. The data registers continue to be the values transferred after the completion of the last successful conversion. If the conversion was aborted by a reset or Low-Power Stop modes, RA and Rn return to their reset states.

39.5.4.4 Power control

The ADC module remains in its idle state until a conversion is initiated. If ADACK is selected as the conversion clock source, but the asynchronous clock output is disabled, that is CFG2[ADACKEN]=0, the ADACK clock generator also remains in its idle state (disabled) until a conversion is initiated. If the asynchronous clock output is enabled, that is, CFG2[ADACKEN]=1, it remains active regardless of the state of the ADC or the MCU power mode.

Power consumption when the ADC is active can be reduced by setting CFG1[ADLPC]. This results in a lower maximum value for f_{ADCK} .

39.5.4.5 Sample time and total conversion time

For short sample, that is, when CFG1[ADLSMP]=0, there is a 2-cycle adder for first conversion over the base sample time of four ADCK cycles. For high-speed conversions, that is, when CFG2[ADHSC]=1, there is an additional 2-cycle adder on any conversion. The table below summarizes sample times for the possible ADC configurations.

ADC configuration			Sample time (ADCK cycles)	
CFG1[ADLSMP]	CFG2[ADLSTS]	CFG2[ADHSC]	First or Single	Subsequent
0	X	0	6	4
1	00	0	24	
1	01	0	16	
1	10	0	10	
1	11	0	6	
0	X	1	8	6
1	00	1	26	
1	01	1	18	
1	10	1	12	
1	11	1	8	

The total conversion time depends upon:

- The sample time as determined by CFG1[ADLSMP] and CFG2[ADLSTS]
- The MCU bus frequency
- The conversion mode, as determined by CFG1[MODE] and SC1n[DIFF]
- The high-speed configuration, that is, CFG2[ADHSC]
- The frequency of the conversion clock, that is, f_{ADCK} .

CFG2[ADHSC] is used to configure a higher clock input frequency. This will allow faster overall conversion times. To meet internal ADC timing requirements, CFG2[ADHSC] adds additional ADCK cycles. Conversions with CFG2[ADHSC]=1 take two more ADCK cycles. CFG2[ADHSC] must be used when the ADCLK exceeds the limit for CFG2[ADHSC]=0.

After the module becomes active, sampling of the input begins.

1. CFG1[ADLSMP] and CFG2[ADLSTS] select between sample times based on the conversion mode that is selected.
2. When sampling is completed, the converter is isolated from the input channel and a successive approximation algorithm is applied to determine the digital value of the analog signal.
3. The result of the conversion is transferred to Rn upon completion of the conversion algorithm.

If the bus frequency is less than f_{ADCK} , precise sample time for continuous conversions cannot be guaranteed when short sample is enabled, that is, when $CFG1[ADLSMP]=0$.

The maximum total conversion time is determined by the clock source chosen and the divide ratio selected. The clock source is selectable by $CFG1[ADICLK]$, and the divide ratio is specified by $CFG1[ADIV]$.

The maximum total conversion time for all configurations is summarized in the equation below. See the following tables for the variables referenced in the equation.

$$\text{ConversionTime} = \text{SFCAdder} + \text{AverageNum} \times (\text{BCT} + \text{LSTAdder} + \text{HSCAdder})$$

Equation 1. Conversion time equation

Table 39-5. Single or first continuous time adder (SFCAdder)

CFG1[ADLSMP]	CFG2[ADACKEN]	CFG1[ADICLK]	Single or first continuous time adder (SFCAdder)
1	x	0x, 10	3 ADCK cycles + 5 bus clock cycles
1	1	11	3 ADCK cycles + 5 bus clock cycles ¹
1	0	11	5 μ s + 3 ADCK cycles + 5 bus clock cycles
0	x	0x, 10	5 ADCK cycles + 5 bus clock cycles
0	1	11	5 ADCK cycles + 5 bus clock cycles ¹
0	0	11	5 μ s + 5 ADCK cycles + 5 bus clock cycles

1. To achieve this time, $CFG2[ADACKEN]$ must be 1 for at least 5 μ s prior to the conversion is initiated.

Table 39-6. Average number factor (AverageNum)

SC3[AVGE]	SC3[AVGS]	Average number factor (AverageNum)
0	xx	1
1	00	4
1	01	8
1	10	16
1	11	32

Table 39-7. Base conversion time (BCT)

Mode	Base conversion time (BCT)
8b single-ended	17 ADCK cycles
9b differential	27 ADCK cycles
10b single-ended	20 ADCK cycles
11b differential	30 ADCK cycles
12b single-ended	20 ADCK cycles
13b differential	30 ADCK cycles

Table continues on the next page...

Table 39-7. Base conversion time (BCT) (continued)

Mode	Base conversion time (BCT)
16b single-ended	25 ADCK cycles
16b differential	34 ADCK cycles

Table 39-8. Long sample time adder (LSTAdder)

CFG1[ADLSMP]	CFG2[ADLSTS]	Long sample time adder (LSTAdder)
0	xx	0 ADCK cycles
1	00	20 ADCK cycles
1	01	12 ADCK cycles
1	10	6 ADCK cycles
1	11	2 ADCK cycles

Table 39-9. High-speed conversion time adder (HSCAdder)

CFG2[ADHSC]	High-speed conversion time adder (HSCAdder)
0	0 ADCK cycles
1	2 ADCK cycles

Note

The ADCK frequency must be between f_{ADCK} minimum and f_{ADCK} maximum to meet ADC specifications.

39.5.4.6 Conversion time examples

The following examples use the [Equation 1 on page 939](#), and the information provided in [Table 39-5](#) through [Table 39-9](#).

39.5.4.6.1 Typical conversion time configuration

A typical configuration for ADC conversion is:

- 10-bit mode, with the bus clock selected as the input clock source
- The input clock divide-by-1 ratio selected
- Bus frequency of 8 MHz
- Long sample time disabled
- High-speed conversion disabled

The conversion time for a single conversion is calculated by using the [Equation 1 on page 939](#), and the information provided in [Table 39-5](#) through [Table 39-9](#). The table below lists the variables of [Equation 1 on page 939](#).

Table 39-10. Typical conversion time

Variable	Time
SFCAdder	5 ADCK cycles + 5 bus clock cycles
AverageNum	1
BCT	20 ADCK cycles
LSTAdder	0
HSCAdder	0

The resulting conversion time is generated using the parameters listed in the preceding table. Therefore, for a bus clock and an ADCK frequency equal to 8 MHz, the resulting conversion time is 3.75 μ s.

39.5.4.6.2 Long conversion time configuration

A configuration for long ADC conversion is:

- 16-bit differential mode with the bus clock selected as the input clock source
- The input clock divide-by-8 ratio selected
- Bus frequency of 8 MHz
- Long sample time enabled
- Configured for longest adder
- High-speed conversion disabled
- Average enabled for 32 conversions

The conversion time for this conversion is calculated by using the [Equation 1 on page 939](#), and the information provided in [Table 39-5](#) through [Table 39-9](#). The following table lists the variables of the [Equation 1 on page 939](#).

Table 39-11. Typical conversion time

Variable	Time
SFCAdder	3 ADCK cycles + 5 bus clock cycles
AverageNum	32
BCT	34 ADCK cycles
LSTAdder	20 ADCK cycles
HSCAdder	0

The resulting conversion time is generated using the parameters listed in the preceding table. Therefore, for bus clock equal to 8 MHz and ADCK equal to 1 MHz, the resulting conversion time is 57.625 μ s, that is, AverageNum. This results in a total conversion time of 1.844 ms.

39.5.4.6.3 Short conversion time configuration

A configuration for short ADC conversion is:

- 8-bit Single-Ended mode with the bus clock selected as the input clock source
- The input clock divide-by-1 ratio selected
- Bus frequency of 20 MHz
- Long sample time disabled
- High-speed conversion enabled

The conversion time for this conversion is calculated by using the [Equation 1 on page 939](#), and the information provided in [Table 39-5](#) through [Table 39-9](#). The table below lists the variables of [Equation 1 on page 939](#).

Table 39-12. Typical conversion time

Variable	Time
SFCAdder	5 ADCK cycles + 5 bus clock cycles
AverageNum	1
BCT	17 ADCK cycles
LSTAdder	0 ADCK cycles
HSCAdder	2

The resulting conversion time is generated using the parameters listed in the preceding table. Therefore, for bus clock and ADCK frequency equal to 20 MHz, the resulting conversion time is 1.45 μ s.

39.5.4.7 Hardware average function

The hardware average function can be enabled by setting SC3[AVGE]=1 to perform a hardware average of multiple conversions. The number of conversions is determined by the AVGS[1:0] bits, which can select 4, 8, 16, or 32 conversions to be averaged. While the hardware average function is in progress, SC2[ADACT] will be set.

After the selected input is sampled and converted, the result is placed in an accumulator from which an average is calculated once the selected number of conversions have been completed. When hardware averaging is selected, the completion of a single conversion will not set SC1n[COCO].

If the compare function is either disabled or evaluates true, after the selected number of conversions are completed, the average conversion result is transferred into the data result registers, R_n , and $SC1n[COCO]$ is set. An ADC interrupt is generated upon the setting of $SC1n[COCO]$ if the respective ADC interrupt is enabled, that is, $SC1n[AIEN]=1$.

Note

The hardware average function can perform conversions on a channel while the MCU is in Wait or Normal Stop modes. The ADC interrupt wakes the MCU when the hardware average is completed if $SC1n[AIEN]$ is set.

39.5.5 Automatic compare function

The compare function can be configured to check whether the result is less than or greater-than-or-equal-to a single compare value, or, if the result falls within or outside a range determined by two compare values.

The compare mode is determined by $SC2[ACFGT]$, $SC2[ACREN]$, and the values in the compare value registers, CV1 and CV2. After the input is sampled and converted, the compare values in CV1 and CV2 are used as described in the following table. There are six Compare modes as shown in the following table.

Table 39-13. Compare modes

SC2[ACFGT]	SC2[ACREN]	ADCCV1 relative to ADCCV2	Function	Compare mode description
0	0	—	Less than threshold	Compare true if the result is less than the CV1 registers.
1	0	—	Greater than or equal to threshold	Compare true if the result is greater than or equal to CV1 registers.
0	1	Less than or equal	Outside range, not inclusive	Compare true if the result is less than CV1 Or the result is greater than CV2.
0	1	Greater than	Inside range, not inclusive	Compare true if the result is less than CV1 And the result is greater than CV2.
1	1	Less than or equal	Inside range, inclusive	Compare true if the result is greater than or equal to CV1 And the result is less than or equal to CV2.
1	1	Greater than	Outside range, inclusive	Compare true if the result is greater than or equal to CV1 Or the result is less than or equal to CV2.

With SC2[ACREN] =1, and if the value of CV1 is less than or equal to the value of CV2, then setting SC2[ACFGT] will select a trigger-if-inside-compare-range inclusive-of-endpoints function. Clearing SC2[ACFGT] will select a trigger-if-outside-compare-range, not-inclusive-of-endpoints function.

If CV1 is greater than CV2, setting SC2[ACFGT] will select a trigger-if-outside-compare-range, inclusive-of-endpoints function. Clearing SC2[ACFGT] will select a trigger-if-inside-compare-range, not-inclusive-of-endpoints function.

If the condition selected evaluates true, SC1n[COCO] is set.

Upon completion of a conversion while the compare function is enabled, if the compare condition is not true, SC1n[COCO] is not set and the conversion result data will not be transferred to the result register, Rn. If the hardware averaging function is enabled, the compare function compares the averaged result to the compare values. The same compare function definitions apply. An ADC interrupt is generated when SC1n[COCO] is set and the respective ADC interrupt is enabled, that is, SC1n[AIEN]=1.

Note

The compare function can monitor the voltage on a channel while the MCU is in Wait or Normal Stop modes. The ADC interrupt wakes the MCU when the compare condition is met.

39.5.6 Calibration function

The ADC contains a self-calibration function that is required to achieve the specified accuracy.

Calibration must be run, or valid calibration values written, after any reset and before a conversion is initiated. The calibration function sets the offset calibration value, the minus-side calibration values, and the plus-side calibration values. The offset calibration value is automatically stored in the ADC offset correction register (OFS), and the plus-side and minus-side calibration values are automatically stored in the ADC plus-side and minus-side calibration registers, CLPx and CLMx. The user must configure the ADC correctly prior to calibration, and must generate the plus-side and minus-side gain calibration results and store them in the ADC plus-side gain register (PG) after the calibration function completes.

Prior to calibration, the user must configure the ADC's clock source and frequency, low power configuration, voltage reference selection, sample time, and high speed configuration according to the application's clock source availability and needs. If the

application uses the ADC in a wide variety of configurations, the configuration for which the highest accuracy is required should be selected, or multiple calibrations can be done for the different configurations. For best calibration results:

- Set hardware averaging to maximum, that is, SC3[AVGE]=1 and SC3[AVGS]=11 for an average of 32
- Set ADC clock frequency f_{ADCK} less than or equal to 4 MHz
- $V_{\text{REFH}}=V_{\text{DDA}}$
- Calibrate at nominal voltage and temperature

The input channel, conversion mode continuous function, compare function, resolution mode, and differential/single-ended mode are all ignored during the calibration function.

To initiate calibration, the user sets SC3[CAL] and the calibration will automatically begin if the SC2[ADTRG] is 0. If SC2[ADTRG] is 1, SC3[CAL] will not get set and SC3[CALF] will be set. While calibration is active, no ADC register can be written and no stop mode may be entered, or the calibration routine will be aborted causing SC3[CAL] to clear and SC3[CALF] to set. At the end of a calibration sequence, SC1n[COCO] will be set. SC1n[AIEN] can be used to allow an interrupt to occur at the end of a calibration sequence. At the end of the calibration routine, if SC3[CALF] is not set, the automatic calibration routine is completed successfully.

To complete calibration, the user must generate the gain calibration values using the following procedure:

1. Initialize or clear a 16-bit variable in RAM.
2. Add the plus-side calibration results CLP0, CLP1, CLP2, CLP3, CLP4, and CLPS to the variable.
3. Divide the variable by two.
4. Set the MSB of the variable.
5. The previous two steps can be achieved by setting the carry bit, rotating to the right through the carry bit on the high byte and again on the low byte.
6. Store the value in the plus-side gain calibration register PG.
7. Repeat the procedure for the minus-side gain calibration value.

When calibration is complete, the user may reconfigure and use the ADC as desired. A second calibration may also be performed, if desired, by clearing and again setting SC3[CAL].

Overall, the calibration routine may take as many as 14k ADCK cycles and 100 bus cycles, depending on the results and the clock source chosen. For an 8 MHz clock source, this length amounts to about 1.7 ms. To reduce this latency, the calibration values, which are offset, plus-side and minus-side gain, and plus-side and minus-side calibration values, may be stored in flash memory after an initial calibration and recovered prior to the first ADC conversion. This method can reduce the calibration latency to 20 register store operations on all subsequent power, reset, or Low-Power Stop mode recoveries.

Further information on the calibration procedure can be found in the Calibration section of [AN3949: ADC16 Calibration Procedure and Programmable Delay Block Synchronization](#).

39.5.7 User-defined offset function

OFS contains the user-selected or calibration-generated offset error correction value.

This register is a 2's complement, left-justified. The value in OFS is subtracted from the conversion and the result is transferred into the result registers, Rn. If the result is greater than the maximum or less than the minimum result value, it is forced to the appropriate limit for the current mode of operation.

The formatting of the OFS is different from the data result register, Rn, to preserve the resolution of the calibration value regardless of the conversion mode selected. Lower order bits are ignored in lower resolution modes. For example, in 8-bit single-ended mode, OFS[14:7] are subtracted from D[7:0]; OFS[15] indicates the sign (negative numbers are effectively added to the result) and OFS[6:0] are ignored. The same bits are used in 9-bit differential mode because OFS[15] indicates the sign bit, which maps to D[8]. For 16-bit differential mode, OFS[15:0] are directly subtracted from the conversion result data D[15:0]. In 16-bit single-ended mode, there is no field in the OFS corresponding to the least significant result D[0], so odd values, such as -1 or +1, cannot be subtracted from the result.

OFS is automatically set according to calibration requirements once the self-calibration sequence is done, that is, SC3[CAL] is cleared. The user may write to OFS to override the calibration result if desired. If the OFS is written by the user to a value that is different from the calibration value, the ADC error specifications may not be met. Storing the value generated by the calibration function in memory before overwriting with a user-specified value is recommended.

Note

There is an effective limit to the values of offset that can be set by the user. If the magnitude of the offset is too high, the results of the conversions will cap off at the limits.

The offset calibration function may be employed by the user to remove application offsets or DC bias values. OFS may be written with a number in 2's complement format and this offset will be subtracted from the result, or hardware averaged value. To add an offset, store the negative offset in 2's complement format and the effect will be an addition. An offset correction that results in an out-of-range value will be forced to the minimum or maximum value. The minimum value for single-ended conversions is 0x0000; for a differential conversion it is 0x8000.

To preserve accuracy, the calibrated offset value initially stored in OFS must be added to the user-defined offset. For applications that may change the offset repeatedly during operation, store the initial offset calibration value in flash so it can be recovered and added to any user offset adjustment value and the sum stored in OFS.

39.5.8 Temperature sensor

The ADC module includes a temperature sensor whose output is connected to one of the ADC analog channel inputs.

The following equation provides an approximate transfer function of the temperature sensor.

$$\text{Temp} = 25 - \left((V_{\text{TEMP}} - V_{\text{TEMP25}}) \div m \right)$$

Equation 2. Approximate transfer function of the temperature sensor

where:

- V_{TEMP} is the voltage of the temperature sensor channel at the ambient temperature.
- V_{TEMP25} is the voltage of the temperature sensor channel at 25 °C.
- m is referred as temperature sensor slope in the device data sheet. It is the hot or cold voltage versus temperature slope in V/°C.

For temperature calculations, use the V_{TEMP25} and temperature sensor slope values from the ADC Electricals table.

In application code, the user reads the temperature sensor channel, calculates V_{TEMP} , and compares to V_{TEMP25} . If V_{TEMP} is greater than V_{TEMP25} the cold slope value is applied in the preceding equation. If V_{TEMP} is less than V_{TEMP25} , the hot slope value is applied in the preceding equation. ADC Electricals table may only specify one temperature sensor slope value. In that case, the user could use the same slope for the calculation across the operational temperature range.

For more information on using the temperature sensor, see the application note titled *Temperature Sensor for the HCS08 Microcontroller Family* (document AN3031).

39.5.9 MCU wait mode operation

Wait mode is a lower-power consumption Standby mode from which recovery is fast because the clock sources remain active.

If a conversion is in progress when the MCU enters Wait mode, it continues until completion. Conversions can be initiated while the MCU is in Wait mode by means of the hardware trigger or if continuous conversions are enabled.

The bus clock, ADACK, and Alternate Clock sources are available as conversion clock sources while in Wait mode. The use of ALTCLK as the conversion clock source in Wait is dependent on the definition of ALTCLK for this MCU. See the Chip Configuration information on ALTCLK specific to this MCU.

If the compare and hardware averaging functions are disabled, a conversion complete event sets $SC1n[COCO]$ and generates an ADC interrupt to wake the MCU from Wait mode if the respective ADC interrupt is enabled, that is, when $SC1n[AIEN]=1$. If the hardware averaging function is enabled, $SC1n[COCO]$ will set, and generate an interrupt if enabled, when the selected number of conversions are completed. If the compare function is enabled, $SC1n[COCO]$ will set, and generate an interrupt if enabled, only if the compare conditions are met. If a single conversion is selected and the compare trigger is not met, the ADC will return to its idle state and cannot wake the MCU from Wait mode unless a new conversion is initiated by the hardware trigger.

39.5.10 MCU Normal Stop mode operation

Stop mode is a low-power consumption Standby mode during which most or all clock sources on the MCU are disabled.

39.5.10.1 Normal Stop mode with Bus Clock selected

If the Bus Clock is selected as the conversion clock, executing a stop instruction aborts the current conversion and places the ADC in its Idle state. The contents of the ADC registers, including Rn, are unaffected by Normal Stop mode. After exiting from Normal Stop mode, a software or hardware trigger is required to resume conversions.

39.5.10.2 Normal Stop mode with ADACK or Alternate clock sources enabled

If ADACK or an Alternate clock source is selected as the conversion clock, the ADC continues operation during Normal Stop mode. See the chip-specific ADC information for configuration information for this device.

If a conversion is in progress when the MCU enters Normal Stop mode, it continues until completion. Conversions can be initiated while the MCU is in Normal Stop mode by means of the hardware trigger or if continuous conversions are enabled.

If the compare and hardware averaging functions are disabled, a conversion complete event sets SC1n[COCO] and generates an ADC interrupt to wake the MCU from Normal Stop mode if the respective ADC interrupt is enabled, that is, when SC1n[AIEN]=1. The result register, Rn, will contain the data from the first completed conversion that occurred during Normal Stop mode. If the hardware averaging function is enabled, SC1n[COCO] will set, and generate an interrupt if enabled, when the selected number of conversions are completed. If the compare function is enabled, SC1n[COCO] will set, and generate an interrupt if enabled, only if the compare conditions are met. If a single conversion is selected and the compare is not true, the ADC will return to its idle state and cannot wake the MCU from Normal Stop mode unless a new conversion is initiated by another hardware trigger.

39.6 Initialization information

This section gives an example that provides some basic direction on how to initialize and configure the ADC module.

The user can configure the module for 16-bit, 12-bit, 10-bit, or 8-bit single-ended resolution or 16-bit, 13-bit, 11-bit, or 9-bit differential resolution, single or continuous conversion, and a polled or interrupt approach, among many other options. For information used in this example, refer to [Table 39-8](#), [Table 39-9](#), and [Table 39-10](#).

Note

Hexadecimal values are designated by a preceding 0x, binary values designated by a preceding %, and decimal values have no preceding character.

39.6.1 ADC module initialization example

39.6.1.1 Initialization sequence

Before the ADC module can be used to complete conversions, an initialization procedure must be performed. A typical sequence is:

1. Calibrate the ADC by following the calibration instructions in [Calibration function](#).
2. Update CFG to select the input clock source and the divide ratio used to generate ADCK. This register is also used for selecting sample time and low-power configuration.
3. Update SC2 to select the conversion trigger, hardware or software, and compare function options, if enabled.
4. Update SC3 to select whether conversions will be continuous or completed only once (ADCO) and whether to perform hardware averaging.
5. Update SC1:SC1n registers to select whether conversions will be single-ended or differential and to enable or disable conversion complete interrupts. Also, select the input channel which can be used to perform conversions.

39.6.1.2 Pseudo-code example

In this example, the ADC module is set up with interrupts enabled to perform a single 10-bit conversion at low-power with a long sample time on input channel 1, where ADCK is derived from the bus clock divided by 1.

CFG1 = 0x98 (%10011000)

Bit 7	ADLPC	1	Configures for low power, lowers maximum clock speed.
Bit 6:5	ADIV	00	Sets the ADCK to the input clock ÷ 1.
Bit 4	ADLSMP	1	Configures for long sample time.
Bit 3:2	MODE	10	Selects the single-ended 10-bit conversion, differential 11-bit conversion.
Bit 1:0	ADICLK	00	Selects the bus clock.

SC2 = 0x00 (%00000000)

Bit 7	ADACT	0	Flag indicates if a conversion is in progress.
Bit 6	ADTRG	0	Software trigger selected.
Bit 5	ACFE	0	Compare function disabled.
Bit 4	ACFGT	0	Not used in this example.
Bit 3	ACREN	0	Compare range disabled.
Bit 2	DMAEN	0	DMA request disabled.
Bit 1:0	REFSEL	00	Selects default voltage reference pin pair (External pins V_{REFH} and V_{REFL}).

SC1A = 0x41 (%01000001)

Bit 7	COCO	0	Read-only flag which is set when a conversion completes.
Bit 6	AIEN	1	Conversion complete interrupt enabled.
Bit 5	DIFF	0	Single-ended conversion selected.
Bit 4:0	ADCH	00001	Input channel 1 selected as ADC input channel.

RA = 0xxx

Holds results of conversion.

CV = 0xxx

Holds compare value when compare function enabled.

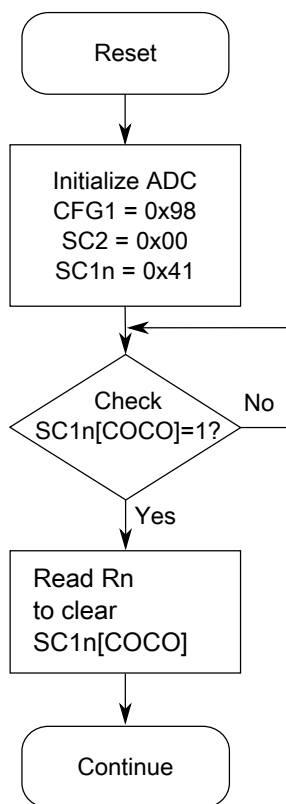


Figure 39-3. Initialization flowchart example

39.7 Application information

The ADC has been designed to be integrated into a microcontroller for use in embedded control applications requiring an ADC.

For guidance on selecting optimum external component values and converter parameters see [AN4373: Cookbook for SAR ADC Measurements](#).

39.7.1 External pins and routing

39.7.1.1 Analog supply pins

Depending on the device, the analog power and ground supplies, V_{DDA} and V_{SSA} , of the ADC module are available as:

- V_{DDA} and V_{SSA} available as separate pins—When available on a separate pin, both V_{DDA} and V_{SSA} must be connected to the same voltage potential as their corresponding MCU digital supply, V_{DD} and V_{SS} , and must be routed carefully for maximum noise immunity and bypass capacitors placed as near as possible to the package.
- V_{SSA} is shared on the same pin as the MCU digital V_{SS} .
- V_{SSA} and V_{DDA} are shared with the MCU digital supply pins—In these cases, there are separate pads for the analog supplies bonded to the same pin as the corresponding digital supply so that some degree of isolation between the supplies is maintained.

If separate power supplies are used for analog and digital power, the ground connection between these supplies must be at the V_{SSA} pin. This must be the only ground connection between these supplies, if possible. V_{SSA} makes a good single point ground location.

39.7.1.2 Analog voltage reference pins

In addition to the analog supplies, the ADC module has connections for two reference voltage inputs used by the converter:

- V_{REFSH} is the high reference voltage for the converter.
- V_{REFSL} is the low reference voltage for the converter.

The ADC can be configured to accept one of two voltage reference pairs for V_{REFSH} and V_{REFSL} . Each pair contains a positive reference and a ground reference. The two pairs are external, V_{REFH} and V_{REFL} and alternate, V_{ALTH} and V_{ALTTL} . These voltage references are

selected using SC2[REFSEL]. The alternate voltage reference pair, V_{ALTH} and V_{ALTL} , may select additional external pins or internal sources based on MCU configuration. See the chip configuration information on the voltage references specific to this MCU.

In some packages, the external or alternate pairs are connected in the package to V_{DDA} and V_{SSA} , respectively. One of these positive references may be shared on the same pin as V_{DDA} on some devices. One of these ground references may be shared on the same pin as V_{SSA} on some devices.

If externally available, the positive reference may be connected to the same potential as V_{DDA} or may be driven by an external source to a level between the minimum Ref Voltage High and the V_{DDA} potential. The positive reference must never exceed V_{DDA} . If externally available, the ground reference must be connected to the same voltage potential as V_{SSA} . The voltage reference pairs must be routed carefully for maximum noise immunity and bypass capacitors placed as near as possible to the package.

AC current in the form of current spikes required to supply charge to the capacitor array at each successive approximation step is drawn through the V_{REFH} and V_{REFL} loop. The best external component to meet this current demand is a 0.1 μF capacitor with good high-frequency characteristics. This capacitor is connected between V_{REFH} and V_{REFL} and must be placed as near as possible to the package pins. Resistance in the path is not recommended because the current causes a voltage drop that could result in conversion errors. Inductance in this path must be minimum, that is, parasitic only.

39.7.1.3 Analog input pins

The external analog inputs are typically shared with digital I/O pins on MCU devices.

Empirical data shows that capacitors on the analog inputs improve performance in the presence of noise or when the source impedance is high. Use of 0.01 μF capacitors with good high-frequency characteristics is sufficient. These capacitors are not necessary in all cases, but when used, they must be placed as near as possible to the package pins and be referenced to V_{SSA} .

For proper conversion, the input voltage must fall between V_{REFH} and V_{REFL} . If the input is equal to or exceeds V_{REFH} , the converter circuit converts the signal to 0xFFF, which is full scale 12-bit representation, 0x3FF, which is full scale 10-bit representation, or 0xFF, which is full scale 8-bit representation. If the input is equal to or less than V_{REFL} , the converter circuit converts it to 0x000. Input voltages between V_{REFH} and V_{REFL} are straight-line linear conversions. There is a brief current associated with V_{REFL} when the sampling capacitor is charging.

For minimal loss of accuracy due to current injection, pins adjacent to the analog input pins must not be transitioning during conversions.

39.7.2 Sources of error

39.7.2.1 Sampling error

For proper conversions, the input must be sampled long enough to achieve the proper accuracy.

$$RAS + RADIN = SC / (FMAX * NUMTAU * CADIN)$$

Figure 39-4. Sampling equation

Where:

RAS = External analog source resistance

SC = Number of ADCK cycles used during sample window

CADIN = Internal ADC input capacitance

NUMTAU = $-\ln(\text{LSBERR} / 2^N)$

LSBERR = value of acceptable sampling error in LSBs

N = 8 in 8-bit mode, 10 in 10-bit mode, 12 in 12-bit mode or 16 in 16-bit mode

Higher source resistances or higher-accuracy sampling is possible by setting CFG1[ADLSMP] and changing CFG2[ADLSTS] to increase the sample window, or decreasing ADCK frequency to increase sample time.

39.7.2.2 Pin leakage error

Leakage on the I/O pins can cause conversion error if the external analog source resistance, R_{AS} , is high. If this error cannot be tolerated by the application, keep R_{AS} lower than $V_{REFH} / (4 \times I_{LEAK} \times 2^N)$ for less than 1/4 LSB leakage error, where N = 8 in 8-bit mode, 10 in 10-bit mode, 12 in 12-bit mode, or 16 in 16-bit mode.

39.7.2.3 Noise-induced errors

System noise that occurs during the sample or conversion process can affect the accuracy of the conversion. The ADC accuracy numbers are guaranteed as specified only if the following conditions are met:

- There is a 0.1 μF low-ESR capacitor from V_{REFH} to V_{REFL} .
- There is a 0.1 μF low-ESR capacitor from V_{DDA} to V_{SSA} .
- If inductive isolation is used from the primary supply, an additional 1 μF capacitor is placed from V_{DDA} to V_{SSA} .
- V_{SSA} , and V_{REFL} , if connected, is connected to V_{SS} at a quiet point in the ground plane.
- Operate the MCU in Wait or Normal Stop mode before initiating (hardware-triggered conversions) or immediately after initiating (hardware- or software-triggered conversions) the ADC conversion.
 - For software triggered conversions, immediately follow the write to SC1 with a Wait instruction or Stop instruction.
 - For Normal Stop mode operation, select ADACK or an Alternate clock as the clock source. Operation in Normal Stop reduces V_{DD} noise but increases effective conversion time due to stop recovery.
- There is no I/O switching, input or output, on the MCU during the conversion.

There are some situations where external system activity causes radiated or conducted noise emissions or excessive V_{DD} noise is coupled into the ADC. In these situations, or when the MCU cannot be placed in Wait or Normal Stop mode, or I/O activity cannot be halted, the following actions may reduce the effect of noise on the accuracy:

- Place a 0.01 μF capacitor (C_{AS}) on the selected input channel to V_{REFL} or V_{SSA} . This improves noise issues, but affects the sample rate based on the external analog source resistance.
- Average the result by converting the analog input many times in succession and dividing the sum of the results. Four samples are required to eliminate the effect of a 1 LSB, one-time error.
- Reduce the effect of synchronous noise by operating off the asynchronous clock, that is, ADACK, and averaging. Noise that is synchronous to ADCK cannot be averaged out.

39.7.2.4 Code width and quantization error

The ADC quantizes the ideal straight-line transfer function into 65536 steps in the 16-bit mode.. Each step ideally has the same height, that is, 1 code, and width. The width is defined as the delta between the transition points to one code and the next. The ideal code width for an N-bit converter, where N can be 16, 12, 10, or 8, defined as 1 LSB, is:

$$1\text{LSB} = (V_{\text{REFH}}) / 2^N$$

Equation 3. Ideal code width for an N-bit converter

There is an inherent quantization error due to the digitization of the result. For 8-bit, 10-bit, or 12-bit conversions, the code transitions when the voltage is at the midpoint between the points where the straight line transfer function is exactly represented by the actual transfer function. Therefore, the quantization error will be $\pm 1/2$ LSB in 8-bit, 10-bit, or 12-bit modes. As a consequence, however, the code width of the first (0x000) conversion is only 1/2 LSB and the code width of the last (0xFF or 0x3FF) is 1.5 LSB.

For 16-bit conversions, the code transitions only after the full code width is present, so the quantization error is -1 LSB to 0 LSB and the code width of each step is 1 LSB.

39.7.2.5 Linearity errors

The ADC may also exhibit non-linearity of several forms. Every effort has been made to reduce these errors, but the system designers must be aware of these errors because they affect overall accuracy:

- Zero-scale error (E_{ZS}), sometimes called offset: This error is defined as the difference between the actual code width of the first conversion and the ideal code width. This is 1/2 LSB in 8-bit, 10-bit, or 12-bit modes and 1 LSB in 16-bit mode. If the first conversion is 0x001, the difference between the actual 0x001 code width and its ideal (1 LSB) is used.
- Full-scale error (E_{FS}): This error is defined as the difference between the actual code width of the last conversion and the ideal code width. This is 1.5 LSB in 8-bit, 10-bit, or 12-bit modes and 1 LSB in 16-bit mode. If the last conversion is 0x3FE, the difference between the actual 0x3FE code width and its ideal (1 LSB) is used.
- Differential non-linearity (DNL): This error is defined as the worst-case difference between the actual code width and the ideal code width for all conversions.

- **Integral non-linearity (INL):** This error is defined as the highest-value or absolute value that the running sum of DNL achieves. More simply, this is the worst-case difference of the actual transition voltage to a given code and its corresponding ideal transition voltage, for all codes.
- **Total unadjusted error (TUE):** This error is defined as the difference between the actual transfer function and the ideal straight-line transfer function and includes all forms of error.

39.7.2.6 Code jitter, non-monotonicity, and missing codes

Analog-to-digital converters are susceptible to three special forms of error:

- **Code jitter:** Code jitter occurs when a given input voltage converts to one of the two values when sampled repeatedly. Ideally, when the input voltage is infinitesimally smaller than the transition voltage, the converter yields the lower code, and vice-versa. However, even small amounts of system noise can cause the converter to be indeterminate, between two codes, for a range of input voltages around the transition voltage.

This error may be reduced by repeatedly sampling the input and averaging the result. Additionally, the techniques discussed in [Noise-induced errors](#) reduces this error.

- **Non-monotonicity:** Non-monotonicity occurs when, except for code jitter, the converter converts to a lower code for a higher input voltage.
- **Missing codes:** Missing codes are those values never converted for any input value.

In 8-bit or 10-bit mode, the ADC is guaranteed to be monotonic and have no missing codes.



Chapter 40

12-bit 5MSPS Analog-to-Digital Converter (HSADC)

40.1 Chip-specific 12-bit SAR HSADC information

40.1.1 HSADC instantiation

This device has two instances of the HSADC: HSADC0 and HSADC1. Each of the HSADC modules has two ADC hard blocks that are independent of each other, that is, HSADC0 controls HSADC0A and HSADC0B, HSADC1 controls HSADC1A and HSADC1B.

For internal connection between HSADCs and other peripherals (for triggering HSADC acquisitions and/or triggering other peripherals after an HSADC scan is complete) via XBARA/XBARB/AOI, see the XBARA/XBARB/AOI signal assignment sections.

The SIM module contains configurable registers to control the HSADC blocks. The trigger source for SYNC0 and SYNC1 for both HSADCs is selected in the SIM_SOPT7 register. The HSADCs conversion clocks are controlled with SIM_ADCCOPT register.

The external channel pin labeling for the HSADC is: HSADC0A_CHx, HSADC0B_CHx, HSADC1A_CHx, HSADC1B_CHx, where x is an integer between 0 and 18. See the Pinouts section for details of HSADC0 and HSADC1 channel muxing.

40.1.2 HSADC interconnect assignments

Table 40-1. HSADCx Interconnect Assignments

ADCx	Signal	Description	I/O	Connected to (external pad/pin, internal peripheral)	Pin No. of 144
HSADC0A					

Table continues on the next page...

**Table 40-1. HSADCx Interconnect Assignments
(continued)**

ADCx	Signal	Description	I/O	Connected to (external pad/pin, internal peripheral)	Pin No. of 144
—	ch0	analog input channel	input	PTE16	18
—	ch1	analog input channel	input	PTE17	19
—	ch2	analog input channel	input	HSADC1A_CH2	27
—	ch3	analog input channel	input	HSADC1A_CH3	28
—	ch4	analog input channel	input	PTE29	37
—	ch5	analog input channel	input	PTE30	38
—	ch6	analog input channel	input	HSADC0A_CH6 mux	—
—	ch7	analog input channel	input	HSADC0A_CH7 mux	—
—	HSADC0A_CH6 mux	—	—	—	—
—	ch6	analog input channel	input	ADC0_SE7a	23
—	ch8	analog input channel	input	PTE20	25
—	ch10	analog input channel	input	HSADC1B_CH2	29
—	ch12	analog input channel	input	CMP0_IN4/ CMP2_IN3	39
—	ch14	analog input channel	input	PTB2	83
—	ch16	analog input channel	input	VREFH	internal
—	ch18	analog input channel	input	DAC0_OUT	internal
—	HSADC0A_CH7 mux	—	—	—	—
—	ch7	analog input channel	input	ADC0_SE4b	24
—	ch9	analog input channel	input	PTE21	26
—	ch11	analog input channel	input	HSADC1B_CH3	30
—	ch13	analog input channel	input	—	—

Table continues on the next page...

**Table 40-1. HSADCx Interconnect Assignments
(continued)**

ADCx	Signal	Description	I/O	Connected to (external pad/pin, internal peripheral)	Pin No. of 144
—	ch15	analog input channel	input	PTA17	69
—	ch17	analog input channel	input	—	—
—	SYNCA	trigger input, start acquisition	input	PDB0 ch0, XBARA_OUT12 (see SIM_SOPT7 for trigger selection)	—
—	EOSA	End of Scan A	output	XBARA_IN33, XBARB_IN13, DMAMUX0 ch40, PDB0 DAC ext trigger input	—
HSADC0B					
—	ch0	analog input channel	input	PTE18	20
—	ch1	analog input channel	input	PTE19	21
—	ch2	analog input channel	input	PTB0	81
—	ch3	analog input channel	input	PTB1	82
—	ch4	analog input channel	input	PTE24	45
—	ch5	analog input channel	input	PTE25	46
—	ch6	analog input channel	input	ADCB_CH6 mux	—
—	ch7	analog input channel	input	ADCB_CH7 mux	—
—	HSADC0B_CH6 mux	—	—	—	—
—	ch6	analog input channel	input	PTB10	91
—	ch8	analog input channel	input	PTC0	103
—	ch10	analog input channel	input	PTE2	3
—	ch12	analog input channel	input	VREFH	internal
—	ch14	analog input channel	input	—	—

Table continues on the next page...

**Table 40-1. HSADCx Interconnect Assignments
(continued)**

ADCx	Signal	Description	I/O	Connected to (external pad/pin, internal peripheral)	Pin No. of 144
—	ch16	analog input channel	input	PTE0	1
—	ch18	analog input channel	input	DAC0_OUT	internal
—	HSADC0B_CH7 mux	—	—	—	—
—	ch7	analog input channel	input	PTB11	92
—	ch9	analog input channel	input	PTC1	104
—	ch11	analog input channel	input	PTE3	4
—	ch13	analog input channel	input	PMC 1.0 VREF	internal
—	ch15	analog input channel	input	PTB3	84
—	ch17	analog input channel	input	PTE1	2
—	SYNCB	trigger input, start acquisition	input	PDB1 ch0, XBARA_OUT13 (see SIM_SOPT7 for trigger selection)	—
—	EOSB	End of Scan B	output	XBARA_IN35,XBA RB_IN27, DMAMUX0 ch 41, PDB1 DAC ext trigger input	—
HSADC1A					
—	ch0	analog input channel	input	PTE0	1
—	ch1	analog input channel	input	PTE1	2
—	ch2	analog input channel	input	HSADC0A_CH2	27
—	ch3	analog input channel	input	HSADC0A_CH3	28
—	ch4	analog input channel	input	PTE4	7
—	ch5	analog input channel	input	PTE5	8
—	ch6	analog input channel	input	HSADC1A_CH6 mux	—

Table continues on the next page...

**Table 40-1. HSADCx Interconnect Assignments
(continued)**

ADCx	Signal	Description	I/O	Connected to (external pad/pin, internal peripheral)	Pin No. of 144
—	ch7	analog input channel	input	HSADC1A_CH7 mux	—
—	HSADC1A_CH6 mux	—	—	—	—
—	ch6	analog input channel	input	PTE11	14
—	ch8	analog input channel	input	PTD5	132
—	ch10	analog input channel	input	—	—
—	ch12	analog input channel	input	PTB6	87
—	ch14	analog input channel	input	—	—
—	ch16	analog input channel	input	VREFH	internal
—	ch18	analog input channel	input	DAC0_OUT	internal
—	HSADC1A_CH7 mux	—	—	—	—
—	ch7	analog input channel	input	PTE21	26
—	ch9	analog input channel	input	PTD6	133
—	ch11	analog input channel	input	PTD1	128
—	ch13	analog input channel	input	PTB7	88
—	ch15	analog input channel	input	—	—
—	ch17	analog input channel	input	—	—
—	SYNCA	trigger input, start acquisition	input	PDB1 ch1, XBARA_OUT42 (see SIM_SOPT7 for trigger selection)	—
—	EOSA	End of Scan A	output	XBARA_IN32, XBARB_IN36, DMAMUX1 ch40,	—
HSADC1B					
—	ch0	analog input channel	input	PTE2	3

Table continues on the next page...

**Table 40-1. HSADCx Interconnect Assignments
(continued)**

ADCx	Signal	Description	I/O	Connected to (external pad/pin, internal peripheral)	Pin No. of 144
—	ch1	analog input channel	input	PTE3	4
—	ch2	analog input channel	input	HSADC0A_CH10	29
—	ch3	analog input channel	input	HSADC0A_CH11	30
—	ch4	analog input channel	input	PTE24	45
—	ch5	analog input channel	input	PTE25	46
—	ch6	analog input channel	input	HSADC1B_CH6 mux	—
—	ch7	analog input channel	input	HSADC1B_CH7 mux	—
—	HSADC1B_CH6 mux	—	—	—	—
—	ch6	analog input channel	input	PTE12	15
—	ch8	analog input channel	input	PTA7	59
—	ch10	analog input channel	input	PTC2	105
—	ch12	analog input channel	input	PTC9	114
—	ch14	analog input channel	input	PTC11	116
—	ch16	analog input channel	input	VREFH	internal
—	ch18	analog input channel	input	DAC0_OUT	internal
—	HSADC1B_CH7 mux	—	—	—	—
—	ch7	analog input channel	input	PTE6	9
—	ch9	analog input channel	input	PTA8	60
—	ch11	analog input channel	input	PTC8	113
—	ch13	analog input channel	input	PTC10	115
—	ch15	analog input channel	input	—	—

Table continues on the next page...

**Table 40-1. HSADCx Interconnect Assignments
(continued)**

ADCx	Signal	Description	I/O	Connected to (external pad/pin, internal peripheral)	Pin No. of 144
—	ch17	analog input channel	input	—	—
—	SYNCB	trigger input, start acquisition	input	PDB0 ch1, XBARA_OUT43 (see SIM_SOPT7 for trigger selection)	—
—	EOSB	End of Scan B	output	XBARA_IN34,XBARA_IN37, DMAMUX1 ch 41,	—

40.1.3 HSADC clock sources

In this device, IP clock is sourced from the System (CPU) clock and adc_8_clk is sourced from MCGIRCLK.

40.2 Introduction

40.2.1 Overview

The 12-bit SAR High Speed Analog-to-Digital Converter control block (HSADC) is a digital block that handles two 12-bit SAR ADCs (HSADCxA and HSADCxB). It generates the controls to have the two ADCs operating in sequence or simultaneously. It also captures the ADCs results and stores them to be read by the CPU.

40.2.2 Features

The HSADC system consists of two separated analog-to-digital converters, each with nineteen analog input multiplexers and its own sample and hold circuit. A common digital control module configures and controls the functioning of the two converters.

The HSADC with a 12-bit resolution provides a sample rate of 2x5MSPS. Each ADC has 15 analog inputs, for external signal connections and four analog inputs for internal voltage reference connections. The converter requires a minimum input clock of 140 kHz

and maximum 80 MHz. The targeted conversion time is 200ns at 75 MHz. Each HSADC block can scan up to 16 channels sequentially, and each selected channel can be from any of the two ADCs. It can scan and store up to eight measurements for each of the two ADC converters operating either synchronously or asynchronously in parallel or 16 measurements in serial operation. Other features include single ended or differential input, synchronization inputs, synchronized or continuous scan of inputs, interrupts for end of scan, out of range or zero crossing, signed and unsigned results, and ability to add sample correction factors.

HSADC features include:

- 12/10/8/6 bits selectable resolution (RES).
- Designed for maximum ADC clock frequency of 80 MHz and minimum of about 140 kHz.
- Sampling rate up to 5.71/6.66/8/10 million samples per second, for 12/10/8/6 bits resolution, respectively, with 80 MHz input clock.
- Single-ended or differential inputs.
- Analog input multiplexer supporting up to 15 external and 4 internal single-ended analog inputs per ADC.
- Each ADC conversion requires at least 1.5 ADC clock cycle for sampling time plus 12.5 ADC clock cycles to finish the conversion (for RES=12 bits).
- Built-in algorithm to obtain each ADC's calibration factors (single-ended and differential modes).
- Can scan upto 16 channels sequentially, from a selection of 2x19 possible inputs making use of the internal 19 channel analog mux (15 channels for external pins, 4 channels for internal Vrefs) of each ADC. Up to 16 conversions are supported.
- Can be synchronized with other peripherals that are connected to an internal Inter-Peripheral Crossbar module, such as the PWM, through the SYNCA/B input signals and the EOSA/B output signals.
- Each ADC converter has eight result registers. Each result register can be configured to store any channel from either a single ended input conversion or differential input conversion. All eight results can come from just one converter.
- Sequential scan mode: two ADCs closely coupled, can sequentially acquire 16 ADC measurements on one triggered event.
- Parallel synchronous scan mode: two ADC converters scanning in parallel and simultaneously provide 16 measurements in 8 conversion times.
- Parallel independent scan mode: each ADC can independently acquire 8 ADC measurements triggered by s/w or hardware event.
- Pause control for each conversion request on the scan list. A new trigger SYNCx input event is necessary to continue the scan.
- Optional interrupts to indicate the end of scan, an out-of-range limit detection, a zero-crossing event, or the end of the calibration cycle.

- Optional DMA function to transfer conversion results at the end of a scan or when a sample is ready to be read.
- Optional sample correction by subtracting a pre-programmed offset value.
- Signed or unsigned result.

40.2.3 Modes of Operation

40.2.4 Block Diagram

The following figure illustrates the dual SAR HSADC system. It is composed by:

- Analog blocks: 19x1 multiplexers, voltage reference circuits, and SAR ADCs
- Digital wrapper: ADC controllers, output result storage registers, and bus interface.

The 19x1 multiplexer selects one analog input to be sampled and converted by the SAR ADC converter. Selection of the input channel is accomplished with the CLISTn registers. Input mode selection is programmed using the CTRL1[CHNCFG_L] and CTRL2[CHNCFG_H].

The SAR ADCs that perform the analog to digital conversion of the selected analog input convert one 12-bit result in 12.5 ADC input clock cycles. The total conversion time consists of 1.5 ADC clocks to sample the channel, and 12.5 ADC clocks for a 12-bit result.

The digital wrapper allows the user to configure a list of necessary conversions synchronized to trigger signals SYNCA and SYNCB.

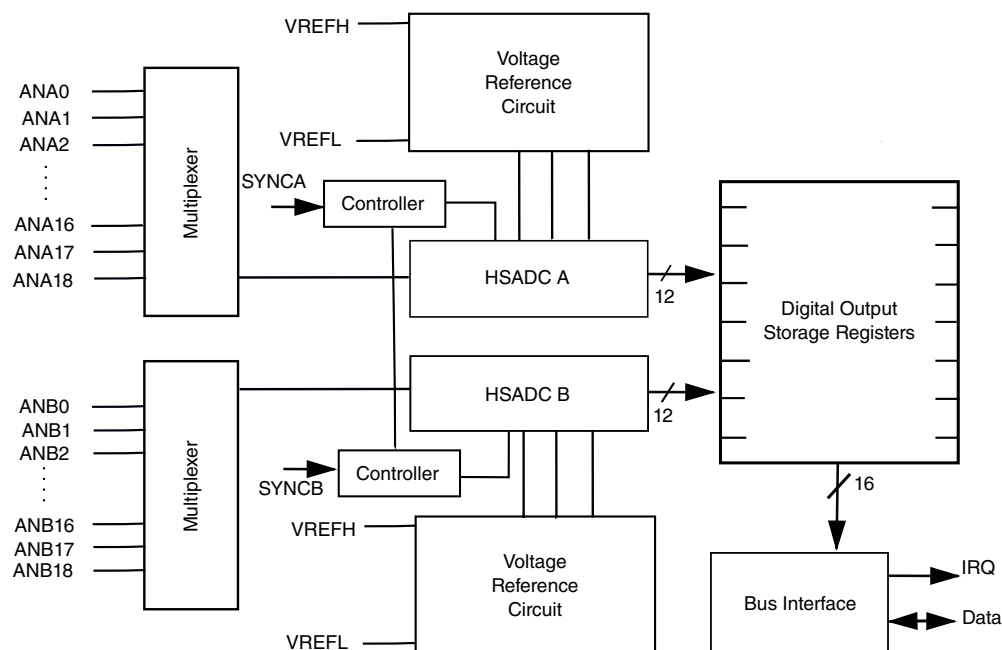


Figure 40-1. HSADC Block Diagram

40.3 Memory Map and Registers

HSADC memory map

Address offset (hex)	Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
0	4005_C000	HSADC Control Register 1 (HSADC0_CTRL1)	16	R/W	5005h	40.3.1/977
2	4005_C002	HSADC Control Register 2 (HSADC0_CTRL2)	16	R/W	5044h	40.3.2/980
4	4005_C004	HSADC Zero Crossing Control 1 Register (HSADC0_ZXCTRL1)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.3/983
6	4005_C006	HSADC Zero Crossing Control 2 Register (HSADC0_ZXCTRL2)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.4/984
8	4005_C008	HSADC Channel List Register 1 (HSADC0_CLIST1)	16	R/W	3210h	40.3.5/986
A	4005_C00A	HSADC Channel List Register 2 (HSADC0_CLIST2)	16	R/W	7654h	40.3.6/988
C	4005_C00C	HSADC Channel List Register 3 (HSADC0_CLIST3)	16	R/W	BA98h	40.3.7/990
E	4005_C00E	HSADC Channel List Register 4 (HSADC0_CLIST4)	16	R/W	FEDCh	40.3.8/992
10	4005_C010	HSADC Sample Disable Register (HSADC0_SDIS)	16	R/W	F0F0h	40.3.9/994
12	4005_C012	HSADC Status Register (HSADC0_STAT)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.10/994

Table continues on the next page...

HSADC memory map (continued)

Address offset (hex)	Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
14	4005_C014	HSADC Ready Register (HSADC0_RDY)	16	R	0000h	40.3.11/ 997
16	4005_C016	HSADC Low Limit Status Register (HSADC0_LOLIMSTAT)	16	w1c	0000h	40.3.12/ 998
18	4005_C018	HSADC High Limit Status Register (HSADC0_HILIMSTAT)	16	w1c	0000h	40.3.13/ 998
1A	4005_C01A	HSADC Zero Crossing Status Register (HSADC0_ZXSTAT)	16	w1c	0000h	40.3.14/ 999
1C	4005_C01C	HSADC Result Registers with sign extension (HSADC0_RSLT0)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.15/ 999
1E	4005_C01E	HSADC Result Registers with sign extension (HSADC0_RSLT1)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.15/ 999
20	4005_C020	HSADC Result Registers with sign extension (HSADC0_RSLT2)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.15/ 999
22	4005_C022	HSADC Result Registers with sign extension (HSADC0_RSLT3)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.15/ 999
24	4005_C024	HSADC Result Registers with sign extension (HSADC0_RSLT4)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.15/ 999
26	4005_C026	HSADC Result Registers with sign extension (HSADC0_RSLT5)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.15/ 999
28	4005_C028	HSADC Result Registers with sign extension (HSADC0_RSLT6)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.15/ 999
2A	4005_C02A	HSADC Result Registers with sign extension (HSADC0_RSLT7)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.15/ 999
2C	4005_C02C	HSADC Result Registers with sign extension (HSADC0_RSLT8)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.15/ 999
2E	4005_C02E	HSADC Result Registers with sign extension (HSADC0_RSLT9)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.15/ 999
30	4005_C030	HSADC Result Registers with sign extension (HSADC0_RSLT10)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.15/ 999
32	4005_C032	HSADC Result Registers with sign extension (HSADC0_RSLT11)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.15/ 999
34	4005_C034	HSADC Result Registers with sign extension (HSADC0_RSLT12)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.15/ 999
36	4005_C036	HSADC Result Registers with sign extension (HSADC0_RSLT13)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.15/ 999
38	4005_C038	HSADC Result Registers with sign extension (HSADC0_RSLT14)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.15/ 999
3A	4005_C03A	HSADC Result Registers with sign extension (HSADC0_RSLT15)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.15/ 999
3C	4005_C03C	HSADC Low Limit Registers (HSADC0_LOLIM0)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.16/ 1001
3E	4005_C03E	HSADC Low Limit Registers (HSADC0_LOLIM1)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.16/ 1001

Table continues on the next page...

HSADC memory map (continued)

Address offset (hex)	Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
40	4005_C040	HSADC Low Limit Registers (HSADC0_LOLIM2)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.16/1001
42	4005_C042	HSADC Low Limit Registers (HSADC0_LOLIM3)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.16/1001
44	4005_C044	HSADC Low Limit Registers (HSADC0_LOLIM4)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.16/1001
46	4005_C046	HSADC Low Limit Registers (HSADC0_LOLIM5)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.16/1001
48	4005_C048	HSADC Low Limit Registers (HSADC0_LOLIM6)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.16/1001
4A	4005_C04A	HSADC Low Limit Registers (HSADC0_LOLIM7)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.16/1001
4C	4005_C04C	HSADC Low Limit Registers (HSADC0_LOLIM8)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.16/1001
4E	4005_C04E	HSADC Low Limit Registers (HSADC0_LOLIM9)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.16/1001
50	4005_C050	HSADC Low Limit Registers (HSADC0_LOLIM10)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.16/1001
52	4005_C052	HSADC Low Limit Registers (HSADC0_LOLIM11)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.16/1001
54	4005_C054	HSADC Low Limit Registers (HSADC0_LOLIM12)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.16/1001
56	4005_C056	HSADC Low Limit Registers (HSADC0_LOLIM13)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.16/1001
58	4005_C058	HSADC Low Limit Registers (HSADC0_LOLIM14)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.16/1001
5A	4005_C05A	HSADC Low Limit Registers (HSADC0_LOLIM15)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.16/1001
5C	4005_C05C	HSADC High Limit Registers (HSADC0_HILIM0)	16	R/W	7FF8h	40.3.17/1001
5E	4005_C05E	HSADC High Limit Registers (HSADC0_HILIM1)	16	R/W	7FF8h	40.3.17/1001
60	4005_C060	HSADC High Limit Registers (HSADC0_HILIM2)	16	R/W	7FF8h	40.3.17/1001
62	4005_C062	HSADC High Limit Registers (HSADC0_HILIM3)	16	R/W	7FF8h	40.3.17/1001
64	4005_C064	HSADC High Limit Registers (HSADC0_HILIM4)	16	R/W	7FF8h	40.3.17/1001
66	4005_C066	HSADC High Limit Registers (HSADC0_HILIM5)	16	R/W	7FF8h	40.3.17/1001
68	4005_C068	HSADC High Limit Registers (HSADC0_HILIM6)	16	R/W	7FF8h	40.3.17/1001
6A	4005_C06A	HSADC High Limit Registers (HSADC0_HILIM7)	16	R/W	7FF8h	40.3.17/1001

Table continues on the next page...

HSADC memory map (continued)

Address offset (hex)	Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
6C	4005_C06C	HSADC High Limit Registers (HSADC0_HILIM8)	16	R/W	7FF8h	40.3.17/ 1001
6E	4005_C06E	HSADC High Limit Registers (HSADC0_HILIM9)	16	R/W	7FF8h	40.3.17/ 1001
70	4005_C070	HSADC High Limit Registers (HSADC0_HILIM10)	16	R/W	7FF8h	40.3.17/ 1001
72	4005_C072	HSADC High Limit Registers (HSADC0_HILIM11)	16	R/W	7FF8h	40.3.17/ 1001
74	4005_C074	HSADC High Limit Registers (HSADC0_HILIM12)	16	R/W	7FF8h	40.3.17/ 1001
76	4005_C076	HSADC High Limit Registers (HSADC0_HILIM13)	16	R/W	7FF8h	40.3.17/ 1001
78	4005_C078	HSADC High Limit Registers (HSADC0_HILIM14)	16	R/W	7FF8h	40.3.17/ 1001
7A	4005_C07A	HSADC High Limit Registers (HSADC0_HILIM15)	16	R/W	7FF8h	40.3.17/ 1001
7C	4005_C07C	HSADC Offset Register (HSADC0_OFFST0)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.18/ 1002
7E	4005_C07E	HSADC Offset Register (HSADC0_OFFST1)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.18/ 1002
80	4005_C080	HSADC Offset Register (HSADC0_OFFST2)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.18/ 1002
82	4005_C082	HSADC Offset Register (HSADC0_OFFST3)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.18/ 1002
84	4005_C084	HSADC Offset Register (HSADC0_OFFST4)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.18/ 1002
86	4005_C086	HSADC Offset Register (HSADC0_OFFST5)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.18/ 1002
88	4005_C088	HSADC Offset Register (HSADC0_OFFST6)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.18/ 1002
8A	4005_C08A	HSADC Offset Register (HSADC0_OFFST7)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.18/ 1002
8C	4005_C08C	HSADC Offset Register (HSADC0_OFFST8)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.18/ 1002
8E	4005_C08E	HSADC Offset Register (HSADC0_OFFST9)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.18/ 1002
90	4005_C090	HSADC Offset Register (HSADC0_OFFST10)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.18/ 1002
92	4005_C092	HSADC Offset Register (HSADC0_OFFST11)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.18/ 1002
94	4005_C094	HSADC Offset Register (HSADC0_OFFST12)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.18/ 1002
96	4005_C096	HSADC Offset Register (HSADC0_OFFST13)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.18/ 1002

Table continues on the next page...

HSADC memory map (continued)

Address offset (hex)	Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
98	4005_C098	HSADC Offset Register (HSADC0_OFFST14)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.18/1002
9A	4005_C09A	HSADC Offset Register (HSADC0_OFFST15)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.18/1002
9C	4005_C09C	HSADC Power Control Register (HSADC0_PWR)	16	R/W	1D27h	40.3.19/1002
A4	4005_C0A4	HSADC Scan Control Register (HSADC0_SCTRL)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.20/1005
A6	4005_C0A6	HSADC Power Control Register 2 (HSADC0_PWR2)	16	R/W	0400h	40.3.21/1006
A8	4005_C0A8	HSADC Control Register 3 (HSADC0_CTRL3)	16	R/W	0300h	40.3.22/1007
AA	4005_C0AA	HSADC Scan Interrupt Enable Register (HSADC0_SCINTEN)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.23/1008
AC	4005_C0AC	HSADC Sampling Time Configuration Register (HSADC0_SAMPTIM)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.24/1008
AE	4005_C0AE	HSADCs Calibration Configuration (HSADC0_CALIB)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.25/1009
B0	4005_C0B0	Calibration Values for ADCA Register (HSADC0_CALVAL_A)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.26/1011
B2	4005_C0B2	Calibration Values for ADCB Register (HSADC0_CALVAL_B)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.27/1011
BA	4005_C0BA	MUX6_7 Selection Controls Register (HSADC0_MUX67_SEL)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.28/1012
0	400D_C000	HSADC Control Register 1 (HSADC1_CTRL1)	16	R/W	5005h	40.3.1/977
2	400D_C002	HSADC Control Register 2 (HSADC1_CTRL2)	16	R/W	5044h	40.3.2/980
4	400D_C004	HSADC Zero Crossing Control 1 Register (HSADC1_ZXCTRL1)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.3/983
6	400D_C006	HSADC Zero Crossing Control 2 Register (HSADC1_ZXCTRL2)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.4/984
8	400D_C008	HSADC Channel List Register 1 (HSADC1_CLIST1)	16	R/W	3210h	40.3.5/986
A	400D_C00A	HSADC Channel List Register 2 (HSADC1_CLIST2)	16	R/W	7654h	40.3.6/988
C	400D_C00C	HSADC Channel List Register 3 (HSADC1_CLIST3)	16	R/W	BA98h	40.3.7/990
E	400D_C00E	HSADC Channel List Register 4 (HSADC1_CLIST4)	16	R/W	FEDCh	40.3.8/992
10	400D_C010	HSADC Sample Disable Register (HSADC1_SDIS)	16	R/W	F0F0h	40.3.9/994
12	400D_C012	HSADC Status Register (HSADC1_STAT)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.10/994
14	400D_C014	HSADC Ready Register (HSADC1_RDY)	16	R	0000h	40.3.11/997

Table continues on the next page...

HSADC memory map (continued)

Address offset (hex)	Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
16	400D_C016	HSADC Low Limit Status Register (HSADC1_LOLIMSTAT)	16	w1c	0000h	40.3.12/ 998
18	400D_C018	HSADC High Limit Status Register (HSADC1_HILIMSTAT)	16	w1c	0000h	40.3.13/ 998
1A	400D_C01A	HSADC Zero Crossing Status Register (HSADC1_ZXSTAT)	16	w1c	0000h	40.3.14/ 999
1C	400D_C01C	HSADC Result Registers with sign extension (HSADC1_RSLT0)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.15/ 999
1E	400D_C01E	HSADC Result Registers with sign extension (HSADC1_RSLT1)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.15/ 999
20	400D_C020	HSADC Result Registers with sign extension (HSADC1_RSLT2)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.15/ 999
22	400D_C022	HSADC Result Registers with sign extension (HSADC1_RSLT3)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.15/ 999
24	400D_C024	HSADC Result Registers with sign extension (HSADC1_RSLT4)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.15/ 999
26	400D_C026	HSADC Result Registers with sign extension (HSADC1_RSLT5)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.15/ 999
28	400D_C028	HSADC Result Registers with sign extension (HSADC1_RSLT6)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.15/ 999
2A	400D_C02A	HSADC Result Registers with sign extension (HSADC1_RSLT7)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.15/ 999
2C	400D_C02C	HSADC Result Registers with sign extension (HSADC1_RSLT8)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.15/ 999
2E	400D_C02E	HSADC Result Registers with sign extension (HSADC1_RSLT9)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.15/ 999
30	400D_C030	HSADC Result Registers with sign extension (HSADC1_RSLT10)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.15/ 999
32	400D_C032	HSADC Result Registers with sign extension (HSADC1_RSLT11)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.15/ 999
34	400D_C034	HSADC Result Registers with sign extension (HSADC1_RSLT12)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.15/ 999
36	400D_C036	HSADC Result Registers with sign extension (HSADC1_RSLT13)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.15/ 999
38	400D_C038	HSADC Result Registers with sign extension (HSADC1_RSLT14)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.15/ 999
3A	400D_C03A	HSADC Result Registers with sign extension (HSADC1_RSLT15)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.15/ 999
3C	400D_C03C	HSADC Low Limit Registers (HSADC1_LOLIM0)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.16/ 1001
3E	400D_C03E	HSADC Low Limit Registers (HSADC1_LOLIM1)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.16/ 1001
40	400D_C040	HSADC Low Limit Registers (HSADC1_LOLIM2)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.16/ 1001

Table continues on the next page...

HSADC memory map (continued)

Address offset (hex)	Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
42	400D_C042	HSADC Low Limit Registers (HSADC1_LOLIM3)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.16/1001
44	400D_C044	HSADC Low Limit Registers (HSADC1_LOLIM4)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.16/1001
46	400D_C046	HSADC Low Limit Registers (HSADC1_LOLIM5)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.16/1001
48	400D_C048	HSADC Low Limit Registers (HSADC1_LOLIM6)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.16/1001
4A	400D_C04A	HSADC Low Limit Registers (HSADC1_LOLIM7)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.16/1001
4C	400D_C04C	HSADC Low Limit Registers (HSADC1_LOLIM8)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.16/1001
4E	400D_C04E	HSADC Low Limit Registers (HSADC1_LOLIM9)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.16/1001
50	400D_C050	HSADC Low Limit Registers (HSADC1_LOLIM10)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.16/1001
52	400D_C052	HSADC Low Limit Registers (HSADC1_LOLIM11)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.16/1001
54	400D_C054	HSADC Low Limit Registers (HSADC1_LOLIM12)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.16/1001
56	400D_C056	HSADC Low Limit Registers (HSADC1_LOLIM13)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.16/1001
58	400D_C058	HSADC Low Limit Registers (HSADC1_LOLIM14)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.16/1001
5A	400D_C05A	HSADC Low Limit Registers (HSADC1_LOLIM15)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.16/1001
5C	400D_C05C	HSADC High Limit Registers (HSADC1_HILIM0)	16	R/W	7FF8h	40.3.17/1001
5E	400D_C05E	HSADC High Limit Registers (HSADC1_HILIM1)	16	R/W	7FF8h	40.3.17/1001
60	400D_C060	HSADC High Limit Registers (HSADC1_HILIM2)	16	R/W	7FF8h	40.3.17/1001
62	400D_C062	HSADC High Limit Registers (HSADC1_HILIM3)	16	R/W	7FF8h	40.3.17/1001
64	400D_C064	HSADC High Limit Registers (HSADC1_HILIM4)	16	R/W	7FF8h	40.3.17/1001
66	400D_C066	HSADC High Limit Registers (HSADC1_HILIM5)	16	R/W	7FF8h	40.3.17/1001
68	400D_C068	HSADC High Limit Registers (HSADC1_HILIM6)	16	R/W	7FF8h	40.3.17/1001
6A	400D_C06A	HSADC High Limit Registers (HSADC1_HILIM7)	16	R/W	7FF8h	40.3.17/1001
6C	400D_C06C	HSADC High Limit Registers (HSADC1_HILIM8)	16	R/W	7FF8h	40.3.17/1001

Table continues on the next page...

HSADC memory map (continued)

Address offset (hex)	Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
6E	400D_C06E	HSADC High Limit Registers (HSADC1_HILIM9)	16	R/W	7FF8h	40.3.17/ 1001
70	400D_C070	HSADC High Limit Registers (HSADC1_HILIM10)	16	R/W	7FF8h	40.3.17/ 1001
72	400D_C072	HSADC High Limit Registers (HSADC1_HILIM11)	16	R/W	7FF8h	40.3.17/ 1001
74	400D_C074	HSADC High Limit Registers (HSADC1_HILIM12)	16	R/W	7FF8h	40.3.17/ 1001
76	400D_C076	HSADC High Limit Registers (HSADC1_HILIM13)	16	R/W	7FF8h	40.3.17/ 1001
78	400D_C078	HSADC High Limit Registers (HSADC1_HILIM14)	16	R/W	7FF8h	40.3.17/ 1001
7A	400D_C07A	HSADC High Limit Registers (HSADC1_HILIM15)	16	R/W	7FF8h	40.3.17/ 1001
7C	400D_C07C	HSADC Offset Register (HSADC1_OFFST0)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.18/ 1002
7E	400D_C07E	HSADC Offset Register (HSADC1_OFFST1)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.18/ 1002
80	400D_C080	HSADC Offset Register (HSADC1_OFFST2)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.18/ 1002
82	400D_C082	HSADC Offset Register (HSADC1_OFFST3)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.18/ 1002
84	400D_C084	HSADC Offset Register (HSADC1_OFFST4)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.18/ 1002
86	400D_C086	HSADC Offset Register (HSADC1_OFFST5)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.18/ 1002
88	400D_C088	HSADC Offset Register (HSADC1_OFFST6)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.18/ 1002
8A	400D_C08A	HSADC Offset Register (HSADC1_OFFST7)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.18/ 1002
8C	400D_C08C	HSADC Offset Register (HSADC1_OFFST8)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.18/ 1002
8E	400D_C08E	HSADC Offset Register (HSADC1_OFFST9)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.18/ 1002
90	400D_C090	HSADC Offset Register (HSADC1_OFFST10)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.18/ 1002
92	400D_C092	HSADC Offset Register (HSADC1_OFFST11)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.18/ 1002
94	400D_C094	HSADC Offset Register (HSADC1_OFFST12)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.18/ 1002
96	400D_C096	HSADC Offset Register (HSADC1_OFFST13)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.18/ 1002
98	400D_C098	HSADC Offset Register (HSADC1_OFFST14)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.18/ 1002

Table continues on the next page...

HSADC memory map (continued)

Address offset (hex)	Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
9A	400D_C09A	HSADC Offset Register (HSADC1_OFFST15)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.18/1002
9C	400D_C09C	HSADC Power Control Register (HSADC1_PWR)	16	R/W	1D27h	40.3.19/1002
A4	400D_C0A4	HSADC Scan Control Register (HSADC1_SCTRL)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.20/1005
A6	400D_C0A6	HSADC Power Control Register 2 (HSADC1_PWR2)	16	R/W	0400h	40.3.21/1006
A8	400D_C0A8	HSADC Control Register 3 (HSADC1_CTRL3)	16	R/W	0300h	40.3.22/1007
AA	400D_C0AA	HSADC Scan Interrupt Enable Register (HSADC1_SCINTEN)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.23/1008
AC	400D_C0AC	HSADC Sampling Time Configuration Register (HSADC1_SAMPTIM)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.24/1008
AE	400D_C0AE	HSADCs Calibration Configuration (HSADC1_CALIB)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.25/1009
B0	400D_C0B0	Calibration Values for ADCA Register (HSADC1_CALVAL_A)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.26/1011
B2	400D_C0B2	Calibration Values for ADCB Register (HSADC1_CALVAL_B)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.27/1011
BA	400D_C0BA	MUX6_7 Selection Controls Register (HSADC1_MUX67_SEL)	16	R/W	0000h	40.3.28/1012

40.3.1 HSADC Control Register 1 (HSADCx_CTRL1)

The HSADCx_CTRL1 register provides the mode of scanning for the A and B converters, the input mode, and various interrupt enables. The STOPA, STARTA, SYNCA, and EOSIEA fields in CTRL1 control all types of scans except parallel scans in the B converter when CTRL2[SIMULT]=0. Non-simultaneous parallel scan modes allow independent parallel scanning in the A and B converter. CTRL2[STOPB], CTRL2[STARTB], CTRL2[SYNCB], and CTRL2[EOSIEB] are used to control B converter scans in non-simultaneous parallel scan modes.

Address: Base address + 0h offset

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Read	DMAENA	STOPA	0	SYNCA	EOSIEA	ZCIE	LLMTIE	HLMTIE
Write			STARTA					
Reset	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0
Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	CHNCFG_L				0	SMODE		
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1

HSADCx_CTRL1 field descriptions

Field	Description
15 DMAENA	<p>DMA enable</p> <p>When this bit is asserted, the DMA source selected by CTRL3[DMASRC] causes the conversion results to be transferred by the DMA controller.</p> <p>0 DMA is not enabled. 1 DMA is enabled.</p>
14 STOPA	<p>Stop</p> <p>When this bit is asserted, the current scan is stopped and no further scans can start. Any further SYNCA input pulses (see CTRL1[SYNCA]) or writes to CTRL1[STARTA] are ignored until this bit has been cleared. After the ADC is in stop mode, the result registers can be modified by the processor. Any changes to the result registers in stop mode are treated as if the analog core supplied the data. Therefore, limit checking, zero crossing, and associated interrupts can occur when authorized. This is not the same as the chip's STOP mode.</p> <p>0 Normal operation 1 Stop mode</p>
13 STARTA	<p>STARTA Conversion</p> <p>A scan is started by writing 1 to this bit. This is a write only bit. Writing 1 to it again while the scan remains in process, is ignored.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

HSADCx_CTRL1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>The ADC must be in a stable power configuration prior to writing the start bit. Refer to the functional description of power modes for further details.</p> <p>0 No action 1 Start command is issued</p>
12 SYNCA	<p>SYNCA Enable</p> <p>A conversion may be initiated by asserting a positive edge on the SYNCA input. Any subsequent SYNCA input pulses while the scan remains in process are ignored unless the scan is awaiting further SYNC inputs due to the SCTRL[SCn] bits. CTRL1[SYNCA] is cleared in ONCE mode, CTRL1[SMODE=000 or 001], when the first SYNC input is detected. This prevents unintentionally starting a new scan after the first scan has completed.</p> <p>The ADC must be in a stable power mode prior to SYNCA input assertion. Refer to the functional description of power modes for further details.</p> <p>In "once" scan modes, only a first SYNCA input pulse is honored. CTRL1[SYNCA] is cleared in this mode when the first SYNC input is detected. This prevents unintentionally starting a new scan after the first scan has completed. CTRL1[SYNCA] can be set again at any time including while the scan remains in process</p> <p>0 Scan is initiated by a write to CTRL1[STARTA] only 1 Use a SYNCA input pulse or CTRL1[STARTA] to initiate a scan</p>
11 EOSIEA	<p>End Of Scan Interrupt Enable</p> <p>This bit enables an EOSIA interrupt to be generated upon completion of the scan. For looping scan modes, the interrupt will trigger after the completion of each iteration of the loop.</p> <p>0 Interrupt disabled 1 Interrupt enabled</p>
10 ZCIE	<p>Zero Crossing Interrupt Enable</p> <p>This bit enables the zero crossing interrupt if the current result value has a sign change from the previous result as configured by the ZXCTRL1 and ZXCTRL2 registers.</p> <p>0 Interrupt disabled 1 Interrupt enabled</p>
9 LLMTIE	<p>Low Limit Interrupt Enable</p> <p>This bit enables the Low Limit exceeded interrupt when the current result value is less than the low limit register value. The raw result value is compared to LOLIM[LLMT] before the offset register value is subtracted.</p> <p>0 Interrupt disabled 1 Interrupt enabled</p>
8 HLMTIE	<p>High Limit Interrupt Enable</p> <p>This bit enables the High Limit exceeded interrupt if the current result value is greater than the high limit register value. The raw result value is compared to HILIM[HLMT] before the offset register value is subtracted.</p> <p>0 Interrupt disabled 1 Interrupt enabled</p>
7-4 CHNCFG_L	CHCNF (Channel Configure Low) bits

Table continues on the next page...

HSADCx_CTRL1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>The bits configure the analog inputs for either single ended or differential conversions. Differential measurements return the max value $((2^{12})-1)$ when the + input is V_{REFH} and the - input is V_{REFLO}, return 0 when the + input is at V_{REFLO} and the - input is at V_{REFH}, and scale linearly between based on the voltage difference between the two signals. Single ended measurements return the max value when the input is at V_{REFH}, return 0 when the input is at V_{REFLO}, and scale linearly between based on the amount by which the input exceeds V_{REFLO}.</p> <p>xxx1 Inputs = ANA0-ANA1 — Configured as differential pair (ANA0 is + and ANA1 is --)</p> <p>xxx0 Inputs = ANA0-ANA1 — Both configured as single ended inputs</p> <p>xx1x Inputs = ANA2-ANA3 — Configured as differential pair (ANA2 is + and ANA3 is --)</p> <p>xx0x Inputs = ANA2-ANA3 — Both configured as single ended inputs</p> <p>x1xx Inputs = ANB0-ANB1 — Configured as differential pair (ANB0 is + and ANB1 is --)</p> <p>x0xx Inputs = ANB0-ANB1 — Both configured as single ended inputs</p> <p>1xxx Inputs = ANB2-ANB3 — Configured as differential pair (ANB2 is + and ANB3 is --)</p> <p>0xxx Inputs = ANB2-ANB3 — Both configured as single ended inputs</p>
3 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
SMODE	<p>HSADC Scan Mode Control</p> <p>This field controls the HSADC module's scan mode. All scan modes use 16 sample slots defined by the CLIST1-4 registers. A scan is the process of stepping through a subset of these sample slots, converting the input indicated by a slot, and storing the result. Unused slots may be disabled using the SDIS register. Input pairs ANA0-1, ANA2-3, ANA4-5, ANA6-7, ANB0-1, ANB2-3, ANB4-5, and ANB6-7 may be configured as differential pairs using the CHNCFG fields. When a slot refers to either member of a differential pair, a differential measurement on that pair is made; otherwise, a single ended measurement is taken on that input. The CTRL*[CHNCFG] fields' descriptions detail differential and single ended measurement. The SMODE field determines whether the slots are used to perform one long sequential scan or two shorter parallel scans, each performed by one of the two converters. SMODE controls how these scans are initiated and terminated. It also controls whether the scans are performed once or repetitively. For details, refer to Sequential versus parallel sampling and Scan Sequencing.</p> <p>Parallel scans may be simultaneous (CTRL2[SIMULT] is 1) or non-simultaneous. Simultaneous parallel scans perform the A and B converter scan in lock step using one set of shared controls. Non-simultaneous parallel scans operate the A and B converters independently, with each converter using its own set of controls. Refer to the CTRL2[SIMULT] bit's description for details. Setting any sequential mode overrides the setting of CTRL2[SIMULT].</p> <p>000 Once (single) sequential — Upon start or an enabled sync signal, samples are taken one at a time starting with CLIST1[SAMPLE0], until the first disabled sample is encountered. If no disabled sample is encountered, conversion concludes after CLIST4[SAMPLE15]. If the scan is initiated by a SYNC signal, only one scan is completed because the CTRL*[SYNC*] bit is cleared automatically by the initial SYNC detection. CTRL*[SYNC*] can be set again at any time during the scan.</p> <p>001 Once parallel — Upon start or an armed and enabled sync signal: In parallel, converter A converts SAMPLEs 0-7, and converter B converts SAMPLEs 8-15. When CTRL2[SIMULT] is 1 (default), scanning stops when either converter encounters a disabled sample or both converters complete all 8 samples. When CTRL2[SIMULT] is 0, a converter stops scanning when it encounters a disabled sample or completes all 8 samples. If the scan is initiated by a SYNC signal, only one scan is completed because the CTRL*[SYNC*] bit is cleared automatically by the initial SYNC detection. CTRL*[SYNC*] can be set again at any time during the scan. If CTRL2[SIMULT] is 0, the B converter must be rearmed by writing CTRL2[SYNCB].</p> <p>010 Loop sequential — Upon an initial start or enabled sync pulse, up to 16 samples in the order SAMPLEs 0-15 are taken one at a time until a disabled sample is encountered. The process repeats perpetually until CTRL1[STOPA] is set. While a loop mode is running, any additional start commands or sync pulses are ignored unless the scan is paused using the SCTRL[SC*] bits. If</p>

Table continues on the next page...

HSADCx_CTRL1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	PWR[ASB] or PWR[APD] is the selected power mode control, (PWR[PUDELAY] x 32) is applied only on the first conversion.
011	Loop parallel — Upon an initial start or enabled sync pulse, converter A converts SAMPLEs 0-7, and converter B converts SAMPLEs 8-15. Each time a converter completes its current scan, it immediately restarts its scan sequence. This process continues until the CTRL*[STOP*] bit is asserted. While a loop is running, any additional start commands or sync pulses are ignored unless the scan is paused using the SCTRL[SC*] bits. When CTRL2[SIMULT] is 1 (default), scanning restarts when either converter encounters a disabled sample. When CTRL2[SIMULT] is 0, a converter restarts scanning when it encounters a disabled sample. If PWR[ASB] or PWR[APD] is the selected power mode control, (PWR[PUDELAY] x 32) is applied only on the first conversion.
100	Triggered sequential — Upon start or an enabled sync signal, samples are taken one at a time starting with CLIST1[SAMPLE0], until the first disabled sample is encountered. If no disabled sample is encountered, conversion concludes after CLIST4[SAMPLE15]. If external sync is enabled, new scans start for each SYNC pulse that does not overlap with a current scan in progress.
101	Triggered parallel (default) — Upon start or an enabled sync signal: In parallel, converter A converts SAMPLEs 0-7, and converter B converts SAMPLEs 8-15. When CTRL2[SIMULT] is 1 (default), scanning stops when either converter encounters a disabled sample. When CTRL2[SIMULT] is 0, a converter stops scanning when it encounters a disabled sample. If external sync is enabled, new scans start for each SYNC pulse that does not overlap with a current scan in progress.
11x	Reserved —

40.3.2 HSADC Control Register 2 (HSADCx_CTRL2)

Address: Base address + 2h offset

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Read	DMAENB	STOPB	0	SYNCB	EOSIEB	CHNCFG_H		
Write			STARTB					
Reset	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0
Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	CHNCFG_H	SIMULT	DIVA					
Write								
Reset	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	0

HSADCx_CTRL2 field descriptions

Field	Description
15 DMAENB	<p>DMA enable</p> <p>During parallel scan modes when SIMULT=0, this bit enables DMA for converter B.</p> <p>When this bit is asserted, the DMA source selected by CTRL3[DMASRC] causes the conversion results to be transferred by the DMA controller.</p> <p>0 DMA is not enabled. 1 DMA is enabled.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

HSADCx_CTRL2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
14 STOPB	<p>Stop</p> <p>During parallel scan modes when SIMULT = 0, this bit enables stop control of a B converter parallel scan.</p> <p>When this bit is asserted, the current scan is stopped and no further scans can start. Any further SYNCB input pulses (see CTRL2[SYNCB]) or writes to CTRL2[STARTB] are ignored until this bit has been cleared. After the ADC is in stop mode, the result registers can be modified by the processor. Any changes to the result registers in stop mode are treated as if the analog core supplied the data. Therefore, limit checking, zero crossing, and associated interrupts can occur when authorized. This is not the same as the chip's STOP mode.</p> <p>0 Normal operation 1 Stop mode</p>
13 STARTB	<p>STARTB Conversion</p> <p>During parallel scan modes when SIMULT = 0, this bit enables start control of a B converter parallel scan.</p> <p>A scan is started by writing 1 to this bit. This is a write only bit. Writing 1 to it again while the scan remains in process, is ignored.</p> <p>The ADC must be in a stable power configuration prior to writing the start bit. Refer to the functional description of power modes for further details.</p> <p>0 No action 1 Start command is issued</p>
12 SYNCB	<p>SYNCB Enable</p> <p>During parallel scan modes when CTRL2[SIMULT]=0, setting this bit to 1 permits a B converter parallel scan to be initiated by asserting the SYNCB input for at least one ADC clock cycle. CTRL2[SYNCB] is cleared in ONCE mode, CTRL1[SMODE=000 or 001], when the first SYNC input is detected. This prevents unintentionally starting a new scan after the first scan has completed.</p> <p>The ADC must be in a stable power mode prior to SYNCB input assertion. Refer to the functional description of power modes for further details.</p> <p>In "once" scan modes, only a first SYNCB input pulse is honored. CTRL2[SYNCB] is cleared in this mode when the first SYNCB input is detected. This prevents unintentionally starting a new scan after the first scan has completed. CTRL2[SYNCB] can be set again at any time including while the scan remains in process.</p> <p>0 B converter parallel scan is initiated by a write to CTRL2[STARTB] only 1 Use a SYNCB input pulse or CTRL2[STARTB] to initiate a B converter parallel scan</p>
11 EOSIEB	<p>End Of Scan Interrupt Enable</p> <p>During parallel scan modes when SIMULT = 0, this bit enables interrupt control for a B converter parallel scan.</p> <p>This bit enables an EOSIB interrupt to be generated upon completion of the scan. For looping scan modes, the interrupt will trigger after the completion of each iteration of the loop.</p> <p>0 Interrupt disabled 1 Interrupt enabled</p>
10–7 CHNCFG_H	<p>CHNCFG_H (Channel Configure High) bits</p> <p>The bits configure the analog inputs for either single ended or differential conversions. Differential measurements return the max value ((2**12)-1) when the + input is V_{REFH} and the - input is V_{REFLO}, return 0 when the + input is at V_{REFLO} and the - input is at V_{REFH}, and scale linearly between based on</p>

Table continues on the next page...

HSADCx_CTRL2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description																				
	<p>the voltage difference between the two signals. Single ended measurements return the max value when the input is at V_{REFH} , return 0 when the input is at V_{REFLO} , and scale linearly between based on the amount by which the input exceeds V_{REFLO}.</p> <p>Note: See section Input Multiplex Function for details when using ANA6/7 or ANB6/7.</p> <p>xxx1 Inputs = ANA4-ANA5 — Configured as differential pair (ANA4 is + and ANA5 is --)</p> <p>xxx0 Inputs = ANA4-ANA5 — Both configured as single ended inputs</p> <p>xx1x Inputs = ANA6-ANA7 — Configured as differential pair (ANA6 is + and ANA7 is --)</p> <p>xx0x Inputs = ANA6-ANA7 — Both configured as single ended inputs</p> <p>x1xx Inputs = ANB4-ANB5 — Configured as differential pair (ANB4 is + and ANB5 is --)</p> <p>x0xx Inputs = ANB4-ANB5 — Both configured as single ended inputs</p> <p>1xxx Inputs = ANB6-ANB7 — Configured as differential pair (ANB6 is + and ANB7 is --)</p> <p>0xxx Inputs = ANB6-ANB7 — Both configured as single ended inputs</p>																				
6 SIMULT	<p>Simultaneous mode</p> <p>This bit only affects parallel scan modes. By default (CTRL2[SIMULT]=1) parallel scans operate in simultaneous mode. The scans in the A and B converter operate simultaneously and always result in pairs of simultaneous conversions in the A and B converter. CTRL1[STOPA], CTRL1[SYNCA], and CTRL1[STARTA] control bits and the SYNCA input are used to start and stop scans in both converters simultaneously. A scan ends in both converters when either converter encounters a disabled sample slot. When the parallel scan completes, the STAT[EOSIA] triggers if CTRL1[EOSIEA] is set. The STAT[CIPA] status bit indicates that a parallel scan is in process.</p> <p>When CTRL2[SIMULT]=0, parallel scans in the A and B converters operate independently. The B converter has its own independent set of the above controls (with a B suffix) which control its operation and report its status. Each converter's scan continues until its sample list is exhausted (8 samples) or a disabled sample IN ITS LIST is encountered. For looping parallel scan mode, each converter starts its next iteration as soon as the previous iteration in that converter is complete and continues until the CTRL*[STOP*] bit for that converter is asserted.</p> <p>0 Parallel scans done independently</p> <p>1 Parallel scans done simultaneously (default)</p>																				
DIVA	<p>Clock Divisor Select</p> <p>The divider circuit generates the ADC clock by dividing the system clock:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• When DIVA is 0, the divisor is 2.• For all other DIVA values, the divisor is (DIVA + 1). <p>A DIVA value must be chosen so the ADC clock does not exceed the maximum frequency (80 MHz).</p> <p>This clock divisor is used by ADCA during all scans and is used by ADCB during sequential scan modes and during parallel simultaneous scan modes.</p> <p>The following table shows the ADC clock frequency based on the value of DIVA for some frequencies of the clock source.</p> <table><tr><th>DIVA</th><th>Divisor</th><th>HSADC clock input 160 MHz</th><th>HSADC clock input 220 MHz</th></tr><tr><td>00_0000</td><td>2</td><td>80.0M</td><td>-</td></tr><tr><td>00_0001</td><td>2</td><td>80.0M</td><td>-</td></tr><tr><td>00_0010</td><td>3</td><td>53.33M</td><td>73.33M</td></tr><tr><td>00_0011</td><td>4</td><td>40.0M</td><td>55.0M</td></tr></table>	DIVA	Divisor	HSADC clock input 160 MHz	HSADC clock input 220 MHz	00_0000	2	80.0M	-	00_0001	2	80.0M	-	00_0010	3	53.33M	73.33M	00_0011	4	40.0M	55.0M
DIVA	Divisor	HSADC clock input 160 MHz	HSADC clock input 220 MHz																		
00_0000	2	80.0M	-																		
00_0001	2	80.0M	-																		
00_0010	3	53.33M	73.33M																		
00_0011	4	40.0M	55.0M																		

Table continues on the next page...

HSADCx_CTRL2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description			
	DIVA	Divisor	HSADC clock input 160 MHz	HSADC clock input 220 MHz
	00_0100	5	32.00M	44.0M
	00_0101	6	26.67M	36.67M
	-	-	-	-
	11_1111	64	2.5M	3.44M

40.3.3 HSADC Zero Crossing Control 1 Register (HSADCx_ZXCTRL1)

The HSADC Zero crossing 1 register controls the zero cross feature for each of the eight ADC conversions made on HSADC channels acquired by SAMPLE0 to SAMPLE7 in the CLIST1 and CLIST2 registers. Each of the ZCE_n fields corresponds to the SAMPLE_n channel selected. For example, ZCE7 field will enable/disable zero cross detect on the HSADC channel selected by SAMPLE7 field in CLIST2 register.

Address: Base address + 4h offset

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read																
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

HSADCx_ZXCTRL1 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 ZCE7	Zero crossing enable 7 00 Zero Crossing disabled 01 Zero Crossing enabled for positive to negative sign change 10 Zero Crossing enabled for negative to positive sign change 11 Zero Crossing enabled for any sign change
13–12 ZCE6	Zero crossing enable 6 00 Zero Crossing disabled 01 Zero Crossing enabled for positive to negative sign change 10 Zero Crossing enabled for negative to positive sign change 11 Zero Crossing enabled for any sign change
11–10 ZCE5	Zero crossing enable 5 00 Zero Crossing disabled 01 Zero Crossing enabled for positive to negative sign change 10 Zero Crossing enabled for negative to positive sign change 11 Zero Crossing enabled for any sign change

Table continues on the next page...

HSADCx_ZXCTRL1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
9–8 ZCE4	Zero crossing enable 4 00 Zero Crossing disabled 01 Zero Crossing enabled for positive to negative sign change 10 Zero Crossing enabled for negative to positive sign change 11 Zero Crossing enabled for any sign change
7–6 ZCE3	Zero crossing enable 3 00 Zero Crossing disabled 01 Zero Crossing enabled for positive to negative sign change 10 Zero Crossing enabled for negative to positive sign change 11 Zero Crossing enabled for any sign change
5–4 ZCE2	Zero crossing enable 2 00 Zero Crossing disabled 01 Zero Crossing enabled for positive to negative sign change 10 Zero Crossing enabled for negative to positive sign change 11 Zero Crossing enabled for any sign change
3–2 ZCE1	Zero crossing enable 1 00 Zero Crossing disabled 01 Zero Crossing enabled for positive to negative sign change 10 Zero Crossing enabled for negative to positive sign change 11 Zero Crossing enabled for any sign change
ZCE0	Zero crossing enable 0 00 Zero Crossing disabled 01 Zero Crossing enabled for positive to negative sign change 10 Zero Crossing enabled for negative to positive sign change 11 Zero Crossing enabled for any sign change

40.3.4 HSADC Zero Crossing Control 2 Register (HSADCx_ZXCTRL2)

The HSADC Zero Crossing Control 2 register controls the zero cross feature for each of the eight ADC conversions made on HSADC channels acquired by SAMPLE8 to SAMPLE15 in the CLIST3 and CLIST4 registers. Each of the ZCEn fields corresponds to the SAMPLEn channel selected. For example, ZCE15 field will enable/disable zero cross detect on the HSADC channel selected by SAMPLE15 field in CLIST4 register.

Address: Base address + 6h offset

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	ZCE15		ZCE14		ZCE13		ZCE12		ZCE11		ZCE10		ZCE9		ZCE8	
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

HSADCx_ZXCTRL2 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 ZCE15	Zero crossing enable 15 00 Zero Crossing disabled 01 Zero Crossing enabled for positive to negative sign change 10 Zero Crossing enabled for negative to positive sign change 11 Zero Crossing enabled for any sign change
13–12 ZCE14	Zero crossing enable 14 00 Zero Crossing disabled 01 Zero Crossing enabled for positive to negative sign change 10 Zero Crossing enabled for negative to positive sign change 11 Zero Crossing enabled for any sign change
11–10 ZCE13	Zero crossing enable 13 00 Zero Crossing disabled 01 Zero Crossing enabled for positive to negative sign change 10 Zero Crossing enabled for negative to positive sign change 11 Zero Crossing enabled for any sign change
9–8 ZCE12	Zero crossing enable 12 00 Zero Crossing disabled 01 Zero Crossing enabled for positive to negative sign change 10 Zero Crossing enabled for negative to positive sign change 11 Zero Crossing enabled for any sign change
7–6 ZCE11	Zero crossing enable 11 00 Zero Crossing disabled 01 Zero Crossing enabled for positive to negative sign change 10 Zero Crossing enabled for negative to positive sign change 11 Zero Crossing enabled for any sign change
5–4 ZCE10	Zero crossing enable 10 00 Zero Crossing disabled 01 Zero Crossing enabled for positive to negative sign change 10 Zero Crossing enabled for negative to positive sign change 11 Zero Crossing enabled for any sign change
3–2 ZCE9	Zero crossing enable 9 00 Zero Crossing disabled 01 Zero Crossing enabled for positive to negative sign change 10 Zero Crossing enabled for negative to positive sign change 11 Zero Crossing enabled for any sign change
ZCE8	Zero crossing enable 8 00 Zero Crossing disabled 01 Zero Crossing enabled for positive to negative sign change 10 Zero Crossing enabled for negative to positive sign change 11 Zero Crossing enabled for any sign change

40.3.5 HSADC Channel List Register 1 (HSADCx_CLIST1)

This register configures the analog inputs to be sampled. For ANx6 and ANx7, see [Input Multiplex Function](#) for more details.

Address: Base address + 8h offset

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	SAMPLE3				SAMPLE2				SAMPLE1				SAMPLE0			
Write																
Reset	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0

HSADCx_CLIST1 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–12 SAMPLE3	<p>Sample Field 3</p> <p>This sample and all subsequent samples can be disabled by setting SDIS[DS3].</p> <p>0000 Single Ended: ANA0, Differential: ANA0+, ANA1-</p> <p>0001 Single Ended: ANA1, Differential: ANA0+, ANA1-</p> <p>0010 Single Ended: ANA2, Differential: ANA2+, ANA3-</p> <p>0011 Single Ended: ANA3, Differential: ANA2+, ANA3-</p> <p>0100 Single Ended: ANA4, Differential: ANA4+, ANA5-</p> <p>0101 Single Ended: ANA5, Differential: ANA4+, ANA5-</p> <p>0110 Single Ended: ANA6, Differential: ANA6+, ANA7-</p> <p>0111 Single Ended: ANA7, Differential: ANA6+, ANA7-</p> <p>1000 Single Ended: ANB0, Differential: ANB0+, ANB1-</p> <p>1001 Single Ended: ANB1, Differential: ANB0+, ANB1-</p> <p>1010 Single Ended: ANB2, Differential: ANB2+, ANB3-</p> <p>1011 Single Ended: ANB3, Differential: ANB2+, ANB3-</p> <p>1100 Single Ended: ANB4, Differential: ANB4+, ANB5-</p> <p>1101 Single Ended: ANB5, Differential: ANB4+, ANB5-</p> <p>1110 Single Ended: ANB6, Differential: ANB6+, ANB7-</p> <p>1111 Single Ended: ANB7, Differential: ANB6+, ANB7-</p>
11–8 SAMPLE2	<p>Sample Field 2</p> <p>This sample and all subsequent samples can be disabled by setting SDIS[2].</p> <p>0000 Single Ended: ANA0, Differential: ANA0+, ANA1-</p> <p>0001 Single Ended: ANA1, Differential: ANA0+, ANA1-</p> <p>0010 Single Ended: ANA2, Differential: ANA2+, ANA3-</p> <p>0011 Single Ended: ANA3, Differential: ANA2+, ANA3-</p> <p>0100 Single Ended: ANA4, Differential: ANA4+, ANA5-</p> <p>0101 Single Ended: ANA5, Differential: ANA4+, ANA5-</p> <p>0110 Single Ended: ANA6, Differential: ANA6+, ANA7-</p> <p>0111 Single Ended: ANA7, Differential: ANA6+, ANA7-</p> <p>1000 Single Ended: ANB0, Differential: ANB0+, ANB1-</p> <p>1001 Single Ended: ANB1, Differential: ANB0+, ANB1-</p>

Table continues on the next page...

HSADCx_CLIST1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	1010 Single Ended: ANB2, Differential: ANB2+, ANB3- 1011 Single Ended: ANB3, Differential: ANB2+, ANB3- 1100 Single Ended: ANB4, Differential: ANB4+, ANB5- 1101 Single Ended: ANB5, Differential: ANB4+, ANB5- 1110 Single Ended: ANB6, Differential: ANB6+, ANB7- 1111 Single Ended: ANB7, Differential: ANB6+, ANB7-
7-4 SAMPLE1	Sample Field 1 This sample and all subsequent samples can be disabled by setting SDIS[1]. 0000 Single Ended: ANA0, Differential: ANA0+, ANA1- 0001 Single Ended: ANA1, Differential: ANA0+, ANA1- 0010 Single Ended: ANA2, Differential: ANA2+, ANA3- 0011 Single Ended: ANA3, Differential: ANA2+, ANA3- 0100 Single Ended: ANA4, Differential: ANA4+, ANA5- 0101 Single Ended: ANA5, Differential: ANA4+, ANA5- 0110 Single Ended: ANA6, Differential: ANA6+, ANA7- 0111 Single Ended: ANA7, Differential: ANA6+, ANA7- 1000 Single Ended: ANB0, Differential: ANB0+, ANB1- 1001 Single Ended: ANB1, Differential: ANB0+, ANB1- 1010 Single Ended: ANB2, Differential: ANB2+, ANB3- 1011 Single Ended: ANB3, Differential: ANB2+, ANB3- 1100 Single Ended: ANB4, Differential: ANB4+, ANB5- 1101 Single Ended: ANB5, Differential: ANB4+, ANB5- 1110 Single Ended: ANB6, Differential: ANB6+, ANB7- 1111 Single Ended: ANB7, Differential: ANB6+, ANB7-
SAMPLE0	Sample Field 0 This sample and all subsequent samples can be disabled by setting SDIS[0]. 0000 Single Ended: ANA0, Differential: ANA0+, ANA1- — 0001 Single Ended: ANA1, Differential: ANA0+, ANA1- — 0010 Single Ended: ANA2, Differential: ANA2+, ANA3- — 0011 Single Ended: ANA3, Differential: ANA2+, ANA3- — 0100 Single Ended: ANA4, Differential: ANA4+, ANA5- — 0101 Single Ended: ANA5, Differential: ANA4+, ANA5- — 0110 Single Ended: ANA6, Differential: ANA6+, ANA7- — 0111 Single Ended: ANA7, Differential: ANA6+, ANA7- — 1000 Single Ended: ANB0, Differential: ANB0+, ANB1- — 1001 Single Ended: ANB1, Differential: ANB0+, ANB1- — 1010 Single Ended: ANB2, Differential: ANB2+, ANB3- — 1011 Single Ended: ANB3, Differential: ANB2+, ANB3- — 1100 Single Ended: ANB4, Differential: ANB4+, ANB5- — 1101 Single Ended: ANB5, Differential: ANB4+, ANB5- — 1110 Single Ended: ANB6, Differential: ANB6+, ANB7- — 1111 Single Ended: ANB7, Differential: ANB6+, ANB7- —

40.3.6 HSADC Channel List Register 2 (HSADCx_CLIST2)

This register configures the analog inputs to be sampled. For ANx6 and ANx7, see [Input Multiplex Function](#) for more details.

Address: Base address + Ah offset

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	SAMPLE7				SAMPLE6				SAMPLE5				SAMPLE4			
Write																
Reset	0	1	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	0

HSADCx_CLIST2 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–12 SAMPLE7	<p>Sample Field 7</p> <p>This sample and all subsequent samples can be disabled by setting SDIS[7].</p> <p>0000 Single Ended: ANA0, Differential: ANA0+, ANA1-</p> <p>0001 Single Ended: ANA1, Differential: ANA0+, ANA1-</p> <p>0010 Single Ended: ANA2, Differential: ANA2+, ANA3-</p> <p>0011 Single Ended: ANA3, Differential: ANA2+, ANA3-</p> <p>0100 Single Ended: ANA4, Differential: ANA4+, ANA5-</p> <p>0101 Single Ended: ANA5, Differential: ANA4+, ANA5-</p> <p>0110 Single Ended: ANA6, Differential: ANA6+, ANA7-</p> <p>0111 Single Ended: ANA7, Differential: ANA6+, ANA7-</p> <p>1000 Single Ended: ANB0, Differential: ANB0+, ANB1-</p> <p>1001 Single Ended: ANB1, Differential: ANB0+, ANB1-</p> <p>1010 Single Ended: ANB2, Differential: ANB2+, ANB3-</p> <p>1011 Single Ended: ANB3, Differential: ANB2+, ANB3-</p> <p>1100 Single Ended: ANB4, Differential: ANB4+, ANB5-</p> <p>1101 Single Ended: ANB5, Differential: ANB4+, ANB5-</p> <p>1110 Single Ended: ANB6, Differential: ANB6+, ANB7-</p> <p>1111 Single Ended: ANB7, Differential: ANB6+, ANB7-</p>
11–8 SAMPLE6	<p>Sample Field 6</p> <p>This sample and all subsequent samples can be disabled by setting SDIS[6].</p> <p>0000 Single Ended: ANA0, Differential: ANA0+, ANA1-</p> <p>0001 Single Ended: ANA1, Differential: ANA0+, ANA1-</p> <p>0010 Single Ended: ANA2, Differential: ANA2+, ANA3-</p> <p>0011 Single Ended: ANA3, Differential: ANA2+, ANA3-</p> <p>0100 Single Ended: ANA4, Differential: ANA4+, ANA5-</p> <p>0101 Single Ended: ANA5, Differential: ANA4+, ANA5-</p> <p>0110 Single Ended: ANA6, Differential: ANA6+, ANA7-</p> <p>0111 Single Ended: ANA7, Differential: ANA6+, ANA7-</p> <p>1000 Single Ended: ANB0, Differential: ANB0+, ANB1-</p> <p>1001 Single Ended: ANB1, Differential: ANB0+, ANB1-</p>

Table continues on the next page...

HSADCx_CLIST2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	1010 Single Ended: ANB2, Differential: ANB2+, ANB3- 1011 Single Ended: ANB3, Differential: ANB2+, ANB3- 1100 Single Ended: ANB4, Differential: ANB4+, ANB5- 1101 Single Ended: ANB5, Differential: ANB4+, ANB5- 1110 Single Ended: ANB6, Differential: ANB6+, ANB7- 1111 Single Ended: ANB7, Differential: ANB6+, ANB7-
7-4 SAMPLE5	Sample Field 5 This sample and all subsequent samples can be disabled by setting SDIS[5]. 0000 Single Ended: ANA0, Differential: ANA0+, ANA1- 0001 Single Ended: ANA1, Differential: ANA0+, ANA1- 0010 Single Ended: ANA2, Differential: ANA2+, ANA3- 0011 Single Ended: ANA3, Differential: ANA2+, ANA3- 0100 Single Ended: ANA4, Differential: ANA4+, ANA5- 0101 Single Ended: ANA5, Differential: ANA4+, ANA5- 0110 Single Ended: ANA6, Differential: ANA6+, ANA7- 0111 Single Ended: ANA7, Differential: ANA6+, ANA7- 1000 Single Ended: ANB0, Differential: ANB0+, ANB1- 1001 Single Ended: ANB1, Differential: ANB0+, ANB1- 1010 Single Ended: ANB2, Differential: ANB2+, ANB3- 1011 Single Ended: ANB3, Differential: ANB2+, ANB3- 1100 Single Ended: ANB4, Differential: ANB4+, ANB5- 1101 Single Ended: ANB5, Differential: ANB4+, ANB5- 1110 Single Ended: ANB6, Differential: ANB6+, ANB7- 1111 Single Ended: ANB7, Differential: ANB6+, ANB7-
SAMPLE4	Sample Field 4 This sample and all subsequent samples can be disabled by setting SDIS[4]. 0000 Single Ended: ANA0, Differential: ANA0+, ANA1- — 0001 Single Ended: ANA1, Differential: ANA0+, ANA1- — 0010 Single Ended: ANA2, Differential: ANA2+, ANA3- — 0011 Single Ended: ANA3, Differential: ANA2+, ANA3- — 0100 Single Ended: ANA4, Differential: ANA4+, ANA5- — 0101 Single Ended: ANA5, Differential: ANA4+, ANA5- — 0110 Single Ended: ANA6, Differential: ANA6+, ANA7- — 0111 Single Ended: ANA7, Differential: ANA6+, ANA7- — 1000 Single Ended: ANB0, Differential: ANB0+, ANB1- — 1001 Single Ended: ANB1, Differential: ANB0+, ANB1- — 1010 Single Ended: ANB2, Differential: ANB2+, ANB3- — 1011 Single Ended: ANB3, Differential: ANB2+, ANB3- — 1100 Single Ended: ANB4, Differential: ANB4+, ANB5- — 1101 Single Ended: ANB5, Differential: ANB4+, ANB5- — 1110 Single Ended: ANB6, Differential: ANB6+, ANB7- — 1111 Single Ended: ANB7, Differential: ANB6+, ANB7- —

40.3.7 HSADC Channel List Register 3 (HSADCx_CLIST3)

This register configures the analog inputs to be sampled. For ANx6 and ANx7, see [Input Multiplex Function](#) for more details.

Address: Base address + Ch offset

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	SAMPLE11				SAMPLE10				SAMPLE9				SAMPLE8			
Write																
Reset	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	0

HSADCx_CLIST3 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–12 SAMPLE11	<p>Sample Field 11</p> <p>This sample and all subsequent samples can be disabled by setting SDIS[11].</p> <p>0000 Single Ended: ANA0, Differential: ANA0+, ANA1-</p> <p>0001 Single Ended: ANA1, Differential: ANA0+, ANA1-</p> <p>0010 Single Ended: ANA2, Differential: ANA2+, ANA3-</p> <p>0011 Single Ended: ANA3, Differential: ANA2+, ANA3-</p> <p>0100 Single Ended: ANA4, Differential: ANA4+, ANA5-</p> <p>0101 Single Ended: ANA5, Differential: ANA4+, ANA5-</p> <p>0110 Single Ended: ANA6, Differential: ANA6+, ANA7-</p> <p>0111 Single Ended: ANA7, Differential: ANA6+, ANA7-</p> <p>1000 Single Ended: ANB0, Differential: ANB0+, ANB1-</p> <p>1001 Single Ended: ANB1, Differential: ANB0+, ANB1-</p> <p>1010 Single Ended: ANB2, Differential: ANB2+, ANB3-</p> <p>1011 Single Ended: ANB3, Differential: ANB2+, ANB3-</p> <p>1100 Single Ended: ANB4, Differential: ANB4+, ANB5-</p> <p>1101 Single Ended: ANB5, Differential: ANB4+, ANB5-</p> <p>1110 Single Ended: ANB6, Differential: ANB6+, ANB7-</p> <p>1111 Single Ended: ANB7, Differential: ANB6+, ANB7-</p>
11–8 SAMPLE10	<p>Sample Field 10</p> <p>This sample and all subsequent samples can be disabled by setting SDIS[10].</p> <p>0000 Single Ended: ANA0, Differential: ANA0+, ANA1-</p> <p>0001 Single Ended: ANA1, Differential: ANA0+, ANA1-</p> <p>0010 Single Ended: ANA2, Differential: ANA2+, ANA3-</p> <p>0011 Single Ended: ANA3, Differential: ANA2+, ANA3-</p> <p>0100 Single Ended: ANA4, Differential: ANA4+, ANA5-</p> <p>0101 Single Ended: ANA5, Differential: ANA4+, ANA5-</p> <p>0110 Single Ended: ANA6, Differential: ANA6+, ANA7-</p> <p>0111 Single Ended: ANA7, Differential: ANA6+, ANA7-</p> <p>1000 Single Ended: ANB0, Differential: ANB0+, ANB1-</p> <p>1001 Single Ended: ANB1, Differential: ANB0+, ANB1-</p>

Table continues on the next page...

HSADCx_CLIST3 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	1010 Single Ended: ANB2, Differential: ANB2+, ANB3- 1011 Single Ended: ANB3, Differential: ANB2+, ANB3- 1100 Single Ended: ANB4, Differential: ANB4+, ANB5- 1101 Single Ended: ANB5, Differential: ANB4+, ANB5- 1110 Single Ended: ANB6, Differential: ANB6+, ANB7- 1111 Single Ended: ANB7, Differential: ANB6+, ANB7-
7-4 SAMPLE9	Sample Field 9 This sample and all subsequent samples can be disabled by setting SDIS[9]. 0000 Single Ended: ANA0, Differential: ANA0+, ANA1- 0001 Single Ended: ANA1, Differential: ANA0+, ANA1- 0010 Single Ended: ANA2, Differential: ANA2+, ANA3- 0011 Single Ended: ANA3, Differential: ANA2+, ANA3- 0100 Single Ended: ANA4, Differential: ANA4+, ANA5- 0101 Single Ended: ANA5, Differential: ANA4+, ANA5- 0110 Single Ended: ANA6, Differential: ANA6+, ANA7- 0111 Single Ended: ANA7, Differential: ANA6+, ANA7- 1000 Single Ended: ANB0, Differential: ANB0+, ANB1- 1001 Single Ended: ANB1, Differential: ANB0+, ANB1- 1010 Single Ended: ANB2, Differential: ANB2+, ANB3- 1011 Single Ended: ANB3, Differential: ANB2+, ANB3- 1100 Single Ended: ANB4, Differential: ANB4+, ANB5- 1101 Single Ended: ANB5, Differential: ANB4+, ANB5- 1110 Single Ended: ANB6, Differential: ANB6+, ANB7- 1111 Single Ended: ANB7, Differential: ANB6+, ANB7-
SAMPLE8	Sample Field 8 This sample and all subsequent samples can be disabled by setting SDIS[8]. 0000 Single Ended: ANA0, Differential: ANA0+, ANA1- 0001 Single Ended: ANA1, Differential: ANA0+, ANA1- 0010 Single Ended: ANA2, Differential: ANA2+, ANA3- 0011 Single Ended: ANA3, Differential: ANA2+, ANA3- 0100 Single Ended: ANA4, Differential: ANA4+, ANA5- 0101 Single Ended: ANA5, Differential: ANA4+, ANA5- 0110 Single Ended: ANA6, Differential: ANA6+, ANA7- 0111 Single Ended: ANA7, Differential: ANA6+, ANA7- 1000 Single Ended: ANB0, Differential: ANB0+, ANB1- 1001 Single Ended: ANB1, Differential: ANB0+, ANB1- 1010 Single Ended: ANB2, Differential: ANB2+, ANB3- 1011 Single Ended: ANB3, Differential: ANB2+, ANB3- 1100 Single Ended: ANB4, Differential: ANB4+, ANB5- 1101 Single Ended: ANB5, Differential: ANB4+, ANB5- 1110 Single Ended: ANB6, Differential: ANB6+, ANB7- 1111 Single Ended: ANB7, Differential: ANB6+, ANB7-

40.3.8 HSADC Channel List Register 4 (HSADCx_CLIST4)

This register configures the analog inputs to be sampled. For ANx6 and ANx7, see [Input Multiplex Function](#) for more details.

Address: Base address + Eh offset

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	SAMPLE15				SAMPLE14				SAMPLE13				SAMPLE12			
Write																
Reset	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	0

HSADCx_CLIST4 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–12 SAMPLE15	<p>Sample Field 15</p> <p>This sample and all subsequent samples can be disabled by setting SDIS[15].</p> <p>0000 Single Ended: ANA0, Differential: ANA0+, ANA1- 0001 Single Ended: ANA1, Differential: ANA0+, ANA1- 0010 Single Ended: ANA2, Differential: ANA2+, ANA3- 0011 Single Ended: ANA3, Differential: ANA2+, ANA3- 0100 Single Ended: ANA4, Differential: ANA4+, ANA5- 0101 Single Ended: ANA5, Differential: ANA4+, ANA5- 0110 Single Ended: ANA6, Differential: ANA6+, ANA7- 0111 Single Ended: ANA7, Differential: ANA6+, ANA7- 1000 Single Ended: ANB0, Differential: ANB0+, ANB1- 1001 Single Ended: ANB1, Differential: ANB0+, ANB1- 1010 Single Ended: ANB2, Differential: ANB2+, ANB3- 1011 Single Ended: ANB3, Differential: ANB2+, ANB3- 1100 Single Ended: ANB4, Differential: ANB4+, ANB5- 1101 Single Ended: ANB5, Differential: ANB4+, ANB5- 1110 Single Ended: ANB6, Differential: ANB6+, ANB7-. See Input Multiplex Function section for more details. 1111 Single Ended: ANB7, Differential: ANB6+, ANB7-</p>
11–8 SAMPLE14	<p>Sample Field 14</p> <p>This sample and all subsequent samples can be disabled by setting SDIS[14].</p> <p>0000 Single Ended: ANA0, Differential: ANA0+, ANA1- 0001 Single Ended: ANA1, Differential: ANA0+, ANA1- 0010 Single Ended: ANA2, Differential: ANA2+, ANA3- 0011 Single Ended: ANA3, Differential: ANA2+, ANA3- 0100 Single Ended: ANA4, Differential: ANA4+, ANA5- 0101 Single Ended: ANA5, Differential: ANA4+, ANA5- 0110 Single Ended: ANA6, Differential: ANA6+, ANA7- 0111 Single Ended: ANA7, Differential: ANA6+, ANA7- 1000 Single Ended: ANB0, Differential: ANB0+, ANB1-</p>

Table continues on the next page...

HSADCx_CLIST4 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	1001 Single Ended: ANB1, Differential: ANB0+, ANB1- 1010 Single Ended: ANB2, Differential: ANB2+, ANB3- 1011 Single Ended: ANB3, Differential: ANB2+, ANB3- 1100 Single Ended: ANB4, Differential: ANB4+, ANB5- 1101 Single Ended: ANB5, Differential: ANB4+, ANB5- 1110 Single Ended: ANB6, Differential: ANB6+, ANB7- 1111 Single Ended: ANB7, Differential: ANB6+, ANB7-
7-4 SAMPLE13	Sample Field 13 This sample and all subsequent samples can be disabled by setting SDIS[13]. 0000 Single Ended: ANA0, Differential: ANA0+, ANA1- 0001 Single Ended: ANA1, Differential: ANA0+, ANA1- 0010 Single Ended: ANA2, Differential: ANA2+, ANA3- 0011 Single Ended: ANA3, Differential: ANA2+, ANA3- 0100 Single Ended: ANA4, Differential: ANA4+, ANA5- 0101 Single Ended: ANA5, Differential: ANA4+, ANA5- 0110 Single Ended: ANA6, Differential: ANA6+, ANA7- 0111 Single Ended: ANA7, Differential: ANA6+, ANA7- 1000 Single Ended: ANB0, Differential: ANB0+, ANB1- 1001 Single Ended: ANB1, Differential: ANB0+, ANB1- 1010 Single Ended: ANB2, Differential: ANB2+, ANB3- 1011 Single Ended: ANB3, Differential: ANB2+, ANB3- 1100 Single Ended: ANB4, Differential: ANB4+, ANB5- 1101 Single Ended: ANB5, Differential: ANB4+, ANB5- 1110 Single Ended: ANB6, Differential: ANB6+, ANB7- 1111 Single Ended: ANB7, Differential: ANB6+, ANB7-
SAMPLE12	Sample Field 12 This sample and all subsequent samples can be disabled by setting SDIS[12]. 0000 Single Ended: ANA0, Differential: ANA0+, ANA1- 0001 Single Ended: ANA1, Differential: ANA0+, ANA1- 0010 Single Ended: ANA2, Differential: ANA2+, ANA3- 0011 Single Ended: ANA3, Differential: ANA2+, ANA3- 0100 Single Ended: ANA4, Differential: ANA4+, ANA5- 0101 Single Ended: ANA5, Differential: ANA4+, ANA5- 0110 Single Ended: ANA6, Differential: ANA6+, ANA7- 0111 Single Ended: ANA7, Differential: ANA6+, ANA7- 1000 Single Ended: ANB0, Differential: ANB0+, ANB1- 1001 Single Ended: ANB1, Differential: ANB0+, ANB1- 1010 Single Ended: ANB2, Differential: ANB2+, ANB3- 1011 Single Ended: ANB3, Differential: ANB2+, ANB3- 1100 Single Ended: ANB4, Differential: ANB4+, ANB5- 1101 Single Ended: ANB5, Differential: ANB4+, ANB5- 1110 Single Ended: ANB6, Differential: ANB6+, ANB7- 1111 Single Ended: ANB7, Differential: ANB6+, ANB7-

40.3.9 HSADC Sample Disable Register (HSADCx_SDIS)

Each field of SDIS corresponds to a SAMPLEx field in one or multiple CLISTn registers. For example, bit 0 of SDIS will enable/disable CLIST1[SAMPLE0], and bit 15 of SDIS will enable/disable CLIST4[SAMPLE15].

If an SDIS bit is clear, then the corresponding SAMPLEx field will be enabled in an HSADC scan. If the SDIS bit is set, then the corresponding SAMPLEx field will be disabled and the HSADC scan will be halted and subsequent ADC conversions will also not occur. The HSADC will sequentially scan in order SAMPLE0, SAMPLE1, SAMPLE2,... and so on. If SDIS=0xFFFE, then an HSADC scan will acquire SAMPLE0 while SAMPLE1, SAMPLE2, and all other acquisitions will not occur. The 4-bit wide SAMPLEx fields are found in the CLISTn registers which select a particular HSADC channel and whether it will be a differential or single ended conversion.

Address: Base address + 10h offset

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	DS															
Write																
Reset	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0

HSADCx_SDIS field descriptions

Field	Description
DS	<p>Disable Sample Bits</p> <p>SAMPLEx resides in one of the CLISTn registers, SAMPLE0-3 in CLIST1 register, SAMPLE4-7 in CLIST2 register, and so on.</p> <p>0 SAMPLEx channel is enabled for HSADC scan.</p> <p>1 SAMPLEx channel is disabled for HSADC scan and corresponding channels after SAMPLEx will also not occur in an HSADC scan.</p>

40.3.10 HSADC Status Register (HSADCx_STAT)

This register provides the current status of the HSADC module. STAT[HLMTI] and STAT[LLMTI] are cleared by writing 1s to all asserted bits in the limit status register, LIMSTAT. Likewise, the STAT[ZCI] bit, is cleared by writing 1s to all asserted bits in the zero crossing status register, ZXSTAT. The STAT[EOSIx] bits are cleared by writing a one to them.

Except for CIPA, CIPB, DUMMYA, DUMMYB, CALONA, and CALONB, this register's fields are sticky. Once set to a one state, they require some specific action to clear them. They are not cleared automatically on the next scan sequence.

Address: Base address + 12h offset

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Read	CIPA	CIPB	0	EOSIB	EOSIA	ZCI	LLMTI	HLMTI
Write				w1c	w1c			
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		EOCALIB	EOCALIA	DUMMYB	DUMMYA	CALONB	CALONA
Write			w1c	w1c				
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

HSADCx_STAT field descriptions

Field	Description
15 CIPA	<p>Conversion in Progress</p> <p>This bit indicates whether a scan is in progress. It also indicates if the HSADC is running a dummy conversion or it is running a calibration procedure. This refers to any scan / activity except a B converter scan in non-simultaneous parallel scan modes.</p> <p>0 Idle state 1 A scan cycle is in progress. The HSADC will ignore all sync pulses or start commands</p>
14 CIPB	<p>Conversion in Progress</p> <p>This bit indicates whether a scan is in progress. It also indicates if the HSADC is running a dummy conversion or it is running a calibration procedure. This refers only to a B converter scan / activity in non-simultaneous parallel scan modes.</p> <p>0 Idle state 1 A scan cycle is in progress. The HSADC will ignore all sync pulses or start commands</p>
13 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
12 EOSIB	<p>End of Scan Interrupt</p> <p>This bit indicates whether a scan of analog inputs have been completed since the last read of the status register or since a reset. This bit is cleared by writing a one to it. This bit cannot be set by software.</p> <p>In looping scan modes, this interrupt is triggered at the completion of each iteration of the loop.</p> <p>This interrupt is triggered only by the completion of a B converter scan in non-simultaneous parallel scan modes.</p> <p>0 A scan cycle has not been completed, no end of scan IRQ pending 1 A scan cycle has been completed, end of scan IRQ pending</p>
11 EOSIA	<p>End of Scan Interrupt</p> <p>This bit indicates whether a scan of analog inputs have been completed since the last read of the status register or since a reset. This bit is cleared by writing a one to it. This bit cannot be set by software. STAT[EOSIA] is the preferred bit to poll for scan completion if interrupts are not enabled.</p> <p>In looping scan modes, this interrupt is triggered at the completion of each iteration of the loop.</p> <p>This interrupt is triggered upon the completion of any scan except for the completion of a B converter scan in non-simultaneous parallel scan modes.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

HSADCx_STAT field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>0 A scan cycle has not been completed, no end of scan IRQ pending</p> <p>1 A scan cycle has been completed, end of scan IRQ pending</p>
10 ZCI	<p>Zero Crossing Interrupt</p> <p>If the respective offset register is configured by having a value greater than 0000h, zero crossing checking is enabled. If the offset register is programmed with 7FF8h, the result will always be less than or equal to zero. On the other hand, if 0000h is programmed into the offset register, the result will always be greater than or equal to zero, and no zero crossing can occur because the sign of the result will not change. This interrupt asserts at the completion of an individual conversion which may or may not be the end of a scan.</p> <p>This bit is cleared by writing a "1" to all active ZXSTAT[ZCS] bits.</p> <p>0 No zero crossing interrupt request</p> <p>1 Zero crossing encountered, IRQ pending if CTRL1[ZCIE] is set</p>
9 LLMTI	<p>Low Limit Interrupt</p> <p>If the respective low limit register is enabled by having a value other than 0000h, low limit checking is enabled. This interrupt asserts at the completion of an individual conversion which may or may not be the end of a scan.</p> <p>This bit is cleared by writing a "1" to all active LOLIMSTAT[LLS] bits.</p> <p>0 No low limit interrupt request</p> <p>1 Low limit exceeded, IRQ pending if CTRL1[LLMTIE] is set</p>
8 HLMTI	<p>High Limit Interrupt</p> <p>If the respective high limit register is enabled by having a value other than 7FF8h, high limit checking is enabled. This interrupt asserts at the completion of an individual conversion which may or may not be the end of a scan.</p> <p>This bit is cleared by writing a "1" to all active HILIMSTAT[HLS] bits.</p> <p>0 No high limit interrupt request</p> <p>1 High limit exceeded, IRQ pending if CTRL1[HLMTIE] is set</p>
7–6 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
5 EOCALIB	<p>End of Calibration on ADCB Interrupt</p> <p>It is asserted when requested calibrations (single, differential) are ended. If just one type is requested then this flag is asserted at the end of that calibration. It is cleared by writing 1 in the field.</p> <p>0 Calibration is not finished.</p> <p>1 Calibration is finished on ADCB. The IRQ occurs if CALIB[EOCALIEB] is asserted.</p>
4 EOCALIA	<p>End of Calibration on ADCA Interrupt</p> <p>It is asserted when requested calibrations (single, differential) are ended. If just one type is requested then this flag is asserted at the end of that calibration. It is cleared by writing 1 in the field.</p> <p>0 Calibration is not finished.</p> <p>1 Calibration is finished on ADCA. The IRQ occurs if CALIB[EOCALIEA] is asserted.</p>
3 DUMMYB	<p>Dummy conversion running on HSADCB</p> <p>0 Dummy conversion is not running</p> <p>1 Dummy conversion is running on ADCB</p>

Table continues on the next page...

HSADCx_STAT field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
2 DUMMYA	Dummy conversion running on HSADCA 0 Dummy conversion is not running 1 Dummy conversion is running on ADCA
1 CALONB	HSADCB Calibration execution status 0 Calibration is not running 1 ADCB is running calibration conversions
0 CALONA	HSADCA Calibration execution status 0 Calibration is not running 1 ADCA is running calibration conversions

40.3.11 HSADC Ready Register (HSADCx_RDY)

This register provides the current status of the HSADC conversions. RDY[RDYx] bits are cleared by reading their corresponding result registers (RSLTx).

Address: Base address + 14h offset

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	RDY															
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

HSADCx_RDY field descriptions

Field	Description
RDY	Ready Sample These bits indicate samples fifteen through zero are ready to be read. These bits are cleared after a read from the respective results register. The RDY[RDYn] bits are set as the individual channel conversions are completed. Polling the RDY[RDYn] bits can determine if a particular sample is ready to be read. 0 Sample not ready or has been read 1 Sample ready to be read

40.3.12 HSADC Low Limit Status Register (HSADCx_LOLIMSTAT)

The low limit status register latches in the result of the comparison between the result of the sample and the respective low limit register, LOLIM0-15. For example, if the result for the channel programmed in CLIST1[SAMPLE0] is lower than the value programmed into the LOLIM0 register, then LOLIMSTAT[LLS0] is set to one. An interrupt is generated if the CTRL1[LLMTIE] bit is set. These bits are sticky. They are not cleared automatically by subsequent conversions. Each bit is cleared only by writing a value of one to that specific bit.

Address: Base address + 16h offset

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	LLS															
Write	w1c															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

HSADCx_LOLIMSTAT field descriptions

Field	Description
LLS	Low Limit Status Bits

40.3.13 HSADC High Limit Status Register (HSADCx_HILIMSTAT)

The high limit status register latches in the result of the comparison between the result of the sample and the respective high limit register, HILIM0-15. For example, if the result for the channel programmed in CLIST1[SAMPLE0] is greater than the value programmed into the HILIM0 register, then the HILIMSTAT[HLS0] bit is set to one. An interrupt is generated if the CTRL1[HLMTIE] bit is set. These bits are sticky. They are not cleared automatically by subsequent conversions. Each bit is cleared only by writing a value of one to that specific bit.

Address: Base address + 18h offset

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	HLS															
Write	w1c															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

HSADCx_HILIMSTAT field descriptions

Field	Description
HLS	High Limit Status Bits

40.3.14 HSADC Zero Crossing Status Register (HSADCx_ZXSTAT)

The ZXSTAT register provides a status flag for each of the 16 SAMPLEx HSADC conversions that has zero crossing detection enabled.

Address: Base address + 1Ah offset

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	ZCS															
Write	w1c															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

HSADCx_ZXSTAT field descriptions

Field	Description
ZCS	<p>Zero Crossing Status</p> <p>The zero crossing condition is determined by examining the ADC value after it has been adjusted by the offset for the result register. Each bit of the register is cleared by writing a one to that register bit.</p> <p>0 Either:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A sign change did not occur in a comparison between the current channelx result and the previous channelx result, or Zero crossing control is disabled for channelx in the zero crossing control register, ZXCTRL <p>1 In a comparison between the current channelx result and the previous channelx result, a sign change condition occurred as defined in the zero crossing control register (ZXCTRL)</p>

40.3.15 HSADC Result Registers with sign extension (HSADCx_RSLTn)

The result registers contain the converted results from a scan. The CLIST1[SAMPLE0] result is loaded into RSLT0, CLIST1[SAMPLE1] result in RSLT1, and so on. In a parallel scan mode, the first channel pair designated by CLIST1[SAMPLE0] and CLIST3[SAMPLE8] are stored in RSLT0 and RSLT8, respectively. The measured ADC raw conversion made by SAMPLEn is not stored directly into its corresponding RSLTn register. The values stored in the corresponding OFFSTn register is subtracted from the SAMPLn raw conversion then stored into the RSLTn register.

$RSLTn = SAMPLEn \text{ conversion} - OFFSTn \text{ value. (if BYPA/BYPB} = 1)$

If BYPA/BYPB = 0 then RSLTn register = SAMPLEn conversion + cal factor - OFFSTn.
See ADC Calibration section for further details.

Note

When writing to this register, only the RSLT portion of the value written is used. This value is modified and the result of the subtraction is stored. The SEXT bit is only set as a result of this subtraction and is not directly determined by the value written.

Note

When using conversions of 10, 8, or 6 bits resolution, only the MSB bits (10, or 8, or 6 bits) of the RSLT portion should be considered. The remaining bits have no meaning.

Address: Base address + 1Ch offset + (2d × i), where i=0d to 15d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	SEXT	RSLT												0		
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

HSADCx_RSLTn field descriptions

Field	Description
15 SEXT	Sign Extend This is the sign-extend bit of the result. RSLT*[SEXT] set to one implies a negative result; RSLT*[SEXT] set to zero implies a positive result. If unsigned results are required, then the respective offset register must be set to a value of zero.
14–3 RSLT	Digital Result of the Conversion RSLT can be interpreted as either a signed integer or a signed fractional number. As a signed fractional number, the RSLT can be used directly. As a signed integer, it is an option to right shift with sign extend (ASR) three places and interpret the number, or accept the number as presented, knowing there are missing codes. The lower three bits are always going to be zero. Negative results, RSLT*[SEXT] = 1, are always presented in two's complement format. If it is a requirement of your application that the result registers always be positive, the offset registers must always be set to zero. The interpretation of the numbers programmed into the limit and offset registers, LOLIM, HILIM, and OFFST should match your interpretation of the result register.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

40.3.16 HSADC Low Limit Registers (HSADCx_LOLIMn)

Each HSADC sample is compared against the values in the limit registers. The comparison is based upon the raw conversion value with no offset correction applied. The limit register used corresponds to the result register the value will be written to. The low limit register is used for the comparison of Result < Low Limit. The low limit checking can be disabled by programming the respective low limit register with 0000h. At reset, limit checking is disabled.

Address: Base address + 3Ch offset + (2d × i), where i=0d to 15d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	LLMT														0
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

HSADCx_LOLIMn field descriptions

Field	Description
15 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
14–3 LLMT	Low Limit Bits
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

40.3.17 HSADC High Limit Registers (HSADCx_HILIMn)

Each HSADC sample is compared against the values in the limit registers. The comparison is based upon the raw conversion value with no offset correction applied. The limit register used corresponds to the result register the value will be written to. The high limit register is used for the comparison of Result > High Limit. The limit checking can be disabled by programming the respective high limit register with 7FF8h. At reset, limit checking is disabled.

Address: Base address + 5Ch offset + (2d × i), where i=0d to 15d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	HLMT														0
Write																
Reset	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0

HSADCx_HILIMn field descriptions

Field	Description
15 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
14–3 HLMT	High Limit Bits
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

40.3.18 HSADC Offset Register (HSADCx_OFFSTn)

The value of the OFFSTn register is used to correct the ADC result before it is stored in the RSLTn register.

The offset value is subtracted from the raw ADC result. To obtain unsigned results, program the respective offset register with a value of \$0000, thus giving a result range of \$0000 to \$7FF8.

Address: Base address + 7Ch offset + (2d × i), where i=0d to 15d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0														0	
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

HSADCx_OFFSTn field descriptions

Field	Description
15 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
14–3 OFFSET	HSADC Offset Bits
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

40.3.19 HSADC Power Control Register (HSADCx_PWR)

This register controls the power management features of the HSADC module. There are individual manual power down controls for the two ADC converters and their internal voltage reference generators. There are also five distinct power modes. The following terms are used to describe power modes and their related controls.

Power down state	Each converter and voltage reference generator can individually be put into a power down state. When powered down, the unit consumes no power. Results of scans referencing a powered down converter are undefined. At
------------------	--

	least one converter must be powered up to use the HSADC module.
Manual power down controls	Each converter and voltage reference generator have a manual power control bit capable of putting that component into the power down state. Converters have other mechanisms that can automatically put them into the power down state.
Idle state	The HSADC module is idle when neither of the two converters has a scan in process.
Active state	The HSADC module is active when at least one of the two converters has a scan in process.
Startup delay	Auto-powerdown and auto-standby power modes cause a startup delay when the HSADC module goes between the power down and active states to allow time to power up the internal ADC LDO.
Dummy conversion or calibration delay	Auto-powerdown and auto-standby power modes cause a dummy conversion execution delay or a calibration execution delay after the HSADC module is powered up.

Address: Base address + 9Ch offset

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Read	ASB	0		1	PSTSB	PSTSA	PUDELAY	
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	1	1	1	0	1
Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	PUDELAY				APD	1	PDB	PDA
Write								
Reset	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	1

HSADCx_PWR field descriptions

Field	Description
15 ASB	<p>Auto Standby</p> <p>This bit selects auto-standby mode. PWR[ASB] is ignored if PWR[APD] is 1. When the HSADC is idle, auto-standby mode selects the auto-standby clock as the HSADC clock source and puts the converters into standby mode. At the start of any scan, the conversion clock is selected as the ADC clock and then a delay of (PWR[PUDELAY] x32) ADC clock cycles and one ADC dummy conversion or the calibration cycle are imposed for ADC levels to stabilize. After this delay, the HSADC initiates the scan. When the HSADC returns to the idle state, the standby clock is again selected and the converters revert to the standby state.</p> <p>NOTE: PWR[ASB] can be set at the same time or prior to clearing PWR[PDB/A]. Otherwise the high speed conversion clock is used in the power-up delay counting before going to standby idle state.</p> <p>0 Auto standby mode disabled 1 Auto standby mode enabled</p>
14–13 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
12 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 1.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

HSADCx_PWR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
11 PSTSB	<p>ADC Converter B Power Status</p> <p>This bit is asserted immediately following a write of "1" to PWR[PDB]. It is de-asserted (PWR[PUDELAY] x 32) ADC clock cycles after a write of "0" to PWR[PDB] if PWR[APD] is "0". This bit can be read as a status bit to determine when the ADC is ready for operation. During auto-powerdown mode, this bit indicates the current powered state of converter B.</p> <p>0 ADC Converter B is currently powered up 1 ADC Converter B is currently powered down</p>
10 PSTSA	<p>ADC Converter A Power Status</p> <p>This bit is asserted immediately following a write of "1" to PWR[PDA]. It is de-asserted (PWR[PUDELAY] x 32) ADC clock cycles after a write of "0" to PWR[PDA] if PWR[APD] is "0". This bit can be read as a status bit to determine when the ADC is ready for operation. During auto-powerdown mode, this bit indicates the current powered state of converter A.</p> <p>0 ADC Converter A is currently powered up 1 ADC Converter A is currently powered down</p>
9–4 PUDELAY	<p>Power Up Delay</p> <p>This 6-bit field multiplied by 32 determines the number of ADC clocks provided to power up an ADC converter (after setting PWR[PDA] and PWR[PDB] to 0) before allowing a scan to start. It also determines the number of ADC clocks of delay provided in auto-powerdown (APD) and auto-standby (ASB) modes between when the ADC goes from the idle to active state and when the scan is allowed to start. The default value is 18 that means a power-up time of about 18x32 ADC clocks. Accuracy of the initial conversions in a scan will be degraded if PWR[PUDELAY] is set to a too small value.</p> <p>NOTE: PWR[PUDELAY] defaults to a value that is typically sufficient for any power mode. The latency of a scan can be reduced by reducing PWR[PUDELAY] to the lowest value for which accuracy is not degraded. Refer to the data sheet for further details.</p>
3 APD	<p>Auto Powerdown</p> <p>Auto-powerdown mode powers down converters when not in use for a scan. PWR[APD] takes precedence over PWR[ASB]. When a scan is started in PWR[APD] mode, a delay of (PWR[PUDELAY] x 32) ADC clock cycles is imposed during which the needed converter(s) are powered up. The HSADC then initiates a scan equivalent to that done when PWR[APD] is not active. When the scan is completed, the converter(s) are powered down again.</p> <p>NOTE: If PWR[ASB] or PWR[APD] are asserted while a scan is in progress, that scan is unaffected and the HSADC waits to enter its low power state until after all conversions are complete and both ADCs are idle (for sequential or parallel simultaneous scan modes).</p> <p>PWR[ASB] and PWR[APD] are not useful in looping modes. The continuous nature of scanning means that the low power state can never be entered.</p> <p>0 Auto Powerdown Mode is not active 1 Auto Powerdown Mode is active</p>
2 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 1.</p>
1 PDB	<p>Manual Power Down for Converter B</p> <p>This bit forces ADC converter B to power down.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

HSADCx_PWR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>Asserting this bit powers down converter B immediately, except when it is in power-up phase. The results of a scan using converter B will be invalid while PWR[PDB] is asserted. When PWR[PDB] is cleared, converter B is either continuously powered up (PWR[APD] = 0) or automatically powered up when needed (PWR[APD]=1).</p> <p>When clearing this bit in any power mode except auto-powerdown (PWR[APD]=1) or auto-standby (PWR[ASB]=1), wait (PWR[PUDELAY] x 32) ADC clock cycles before initiating a scan to stabilize power levels within the converter. PWR[PSTSB] can be polled to determine when the (PWR[PUDELAY] x 32) time has elapsed. Failure to follow this procedure can result in loss of accuracy of the calibration procedure and of the initial samples.</p> <p>NOTE: During power-up delay phase if the stop request (STOPB) is set, the power-down request is only recognized at the end of this phase, after the ADC reset is applied (two ADC clock cycles).</p> <p>0 Power Up ADC converter B 1 Power Down ADC converter B</p>
0 PDA	<p>Manual Power Down for Converter A</p> <p>This bit forces ADC converter A to power down.</p> <p>Asserting this bit powers down converter A immediately, except when it is in power-up phase. The results of a scan using converter A will be invalid while PWR[PDA] is asserted. When PWR[PDA] is cleared, converter A is either continuously powered up (PWR[APD] = 0) or automatically powered up when needed (PWR[APD]=1).</p> <p>When clearing this bit in any power mode except auto-powerdown (PWR[APD]=1) or auto-standby (PWR[ASB]=1), wait (PWR[PUDELAY] x 32) ADC clock cycles before initiating a scan to stabilize power levels within the converter. PWR[PSTSA] can be polled to determine when the (PWR[PUDELAY] x 32) time has elapsed. Failure to follow this procedure can result in loss of accuracy of the calibration procedure and of the initial samples.</p> <p>NOTE: During power-up delay phase if the stop request (STOPA) is set, the power-down request is only recognized at the end of this phase, after the ADC reset is applied (two ADC clock cycles).</p> <p>0 Power Up ADC converter A 1 Power Down ADC converter A</p>

40.3.20 HSADC Scan Control Register (HSADCx_SCTRL)

This register is an extension to the CLIST1-4 registers, providing the ability to pause and await a new sync while processing samples programmed in the CLIST*[SAMPLE0–SAMPLE15] fields.

These 16 control bits are used to determine whether a sample in a scan occurs immediately or if the sample waits for an enabled sync input to occur. The sync input must occur after the conversion of the current sample completes. During sequential mode scans, the SCTRL[SC] bits are used in order from SC0 to SC15. During simultaneous parallel scan modes, the bits are used in order from SC0 to SC3 and SC8-SC11. In non-

simultaneous parallel scans, ADCA uses the bits in order from SC0 to SC3 followed by SC8 to SC11. ADCB will use bits SC4 to SC7 followed by SC12 to SC15 in non-simultaneous parallel scans.

When setting SCTRL[SC0], there is no need to set CTRL1[STARTA] or CTRL2[STARTB]. Just clear CTRL1[STOPA] or CTRL2[STOPB] and the first enabled sync input will start the scan.

Setting SC0 delays sample 0 until a sync pulse occurs. Setting SC1 delays sample 1 until a sync pulse occurs after completing sample 0.

Address: Base address + A4h offset

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	SC															
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

HSADCx_SCTRL field descriptions

Field	Description
SC	Scan Control Bits
0	Perform sample immediately after the completion of the current sample.
1	Delay sample until a new sync input occurs.

40.3.21 HSADC Power Control Register 2 (HSADCx_PWR2)

The PWR2 register is only used in parallel non-simultaneous mode. It provides an independent clock speed for ADCB, therefore ADCB and ADCA can have different conversion rates.

Address: Base address + A6h offset

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		DIVB						0							
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

HSADCx_PWR2 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 DIVB	Clock Divisor Select The divider circuit operates in the same manner as CTRL2[DIVA] but is used to generate the clock used by ADCB during parallel non-simultaneous scan modes.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

40.3.22 HSADC Control Register 3 (HSADCx_CTRL3)

The CTRL3 register selects the HSADC bit resolution for both ADCA and ADCB. Both ADCA and ADCB bit resolutions will be the same, and cannot be different.

Address: Base address + A8h offset

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Read	0						ADCRES	
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1
Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	DMASRC	0					
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

HSADCx_CTRL3 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–10 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
9–8 ADCRES	ADCA/B Conversion Resolution Selects the ADCA and B conversion result resolution. 00 6-bit mode 01 8-bit mode 10 10-bit mode 11 12-bit mode
7 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
6 DMASRC	DMA Trigger Source During sequential and simultaneous parallel scan modes CTRL3[DMASRC] selects between EOSIA and RDY bits as the DMA source. During non-simultaneous parallel scan mode CTRL3[DMASRC] selects between EOSIA/EOSIB for converters A and B, and the RDY bits as the DMA source. 0 DMA trigger source is end of scan interrupt 1 DMA trigger source is RDY bits
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

40.3.23 HSADC Scan Interrupt Enable Register (HSADCx_SCINTEN)

This register is used with the ready register (RDY) to select the samples that will generate a scan interrupt. If SCINTEN is set, an interrupt occurs when the corresponding RDY bit is set, after the conversion is completed for the SAMPLEn.

Address: Base address + AAh offset

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	SCINTEN															
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

HSADCx_SCINTEN field descriptions

Field	Description
SCINTEN	Scan Interrupt Enable 0 Scan interrupt is not enabled for this sample. 1 Scan interrupt is enabled for this sample.

40.3.24 HSADC Sampling Time Configuration Register (HSADCx_SAMPTIM)

This register is used to configure the required sampling time for ADCA and ADCB.

Address: Base address + ACh offset

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	SAMPT_B								SAMPT_A							
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

HSADCx_SAMPTIM field descriptions

Field	Description
15–8 SAMPT_B	Sampling Time for ADCB. This field is used to configure the sampling time for ADCB. The sampling time is related to the ADCB clock period (TclkB). The resultant sampling time is (1.5 + SAMPT_B) x TclkB. In sequential or parallel simultaneous mode the effective value is SAMPT_A.
SAMPT_A	Sampling Time for ADCA. This field is used to configure the sampling time for ADCA. The sampling time is related to the ADCA clock period (TclkA). The resultant sampling time is (1.5 + SAMPT_A) x TclkA.

40.3.25 HSADCs Calibration Configuration (HSADCx_CALIB)

This register controls the request of calibration for ADCA and ADCB. The values obtained from this ADC internal calibration process are used in the ADCs calibration sub-block.

Address: Base address + AEh offset

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Read	0						EOCALIEB	EOCALIEA
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0				0			
Write	CAL_REQB	BYPB	REQDIFB	REQSINGB	CAL_REQA	BYPA	REQDIFA	REQSINGA
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

HSADCx_CALIB field descriptions

Field	Description
15–10 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
9 EOCALIEB	Interrupt Enable for End of Calibration on ADCB This bit enables an EOCALIB interrupt to be generated when the requested calibrations for ADCB are finished. 0 Interrupt is not enabled. 1 Interrupt is enabled.
8 EOCALIEA	Interrupt Enable for End of Calibration on ADCA This bit enables an EOCALIA interrupt to be generated when the requested calibrations for ADCA are finished. 0 Interrupt is not enabled. 1 Interrupt is enabled.
7 CAL_REQB	Calibration Request for ADCB This calibration request is recognized at the end of a scan. It is recommended to disable the scan start trigger when this calibration starts, otherwise a delay can occur to start the next scan. This request is automatically cleared when the calibration is started. The calibrations to be done are indicated by bit fields CALIB[REQSINGB] and CALIB[REQDIFFB]. However in simultaneous mode of operation (sequential mode or parallel and simultaneous operation) the ADCB uses the configuration for ADCA. 0 Calibration is not requested. 1 Calibration is requested for ADCB.
6 BYPB	ADCB calibration bypass This bit field is used to bypass the calibration sum operation on ADCB.

Table continues on the next page...

HSADCx_CALIB field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>0 ADCB block uses the calibration values to obtain the final conversion result (differential or single-ended mode)</p> <p>1 Calibration operation is bypassed on ADCB.</p>
5 REQDIFB	<p>ADCB Calibration request for differential mode</p> <p>This bit is used to request to ADCB to run automatically the conversions to obtain the calibration value for differential analog input mode. This calibration factor is used by the ADCB for each differential conversion.</p> <p>0 Calibration value calculation is not requested to be run on ADCB.</p> <p>1 Calibration value calculation for differential input mode is requested to be run onr ADCB</p>
4 REQSINGB	<p>ADCB Calibration request for single ended mode</p> <p>This bit is used to request to ADCB to run automatically the conversions to obtain the calibration value for single-ended analog input mode. This calibration factor is used by the ADCB for each single-ended input conversion.</p> <p>0 Calibration value calculation is not requested to be run on ADCB.</p> <p>1 Calibration value calculation for single-ended input mode is requested to be run on ADCB.</p>
3 CAL_REQA	<p>Calibration Request for ADCA</p> <p>This calibration request is recognized at the end of a scan. It is recommended to disable the scan start trigger when this calibration starts, otherwise a delay can occur to start the next scan. This request is automatically cleared when the calibration is started. The calibrations to be done are indicated by bit fields CALIB[REQSINGA] and CALIB[REQDIFFA].</p> <p>0 None.</p> <p>1 Calibration request for ADCA.</p>
2 BYPA	<p>ADCA calibration bypass</p> <p>This bit field is used to bypass the calibration sum operation on ADCA.</p> <p>0 ADCA block uses the calibration values to obtain the final conversion result (differential or single-ended mode)</p> <p>1 Calibration operation is bypassed on ADCA.</p>
1 REQDIFA	<p>ADCA Calibration request for differential mode</p> <p>This bit is used to request to ADCA to run automatically the conversions to obtain the calibration value for differential analog input mode. This calibration factor is used by the ADCA for each differential conversion.</p> <p>0 Calibration value calculation is not requested to ADCA.</p> <p>1 Calibration value calculation for differential input mode is requested to be run on ADCA.</p>
0 REQSINGA	<p>ADCA Calibration request for single ended mode</p> <p>This bit is used to request to ADCA to run automatically the conversions to obtain the calibration value for single ended analog input mode. This calibration value is used by the ADCA for each single-ended input conversion.</p> <p>0 Calibration value calculation is not requested to be run on ADCA.</p> <p>1 Calibration value calculation for single-ended input mode is requested to be run on ADCA.</p>

40.3.26 Calibration Values for ADCA Register (HSADCx_CALVAL_A)

This register is used to store the calibration values for ADCA. When the ADCA calibration is requested (single or differential), the ADCA calibration result is written into this register.

Address: Base address + B0h offset

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	CALVDIF							0	CALVSING						
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

HSADCx_CALVAL_A field descriptions

Field	Description
15 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
14–8 CALVDIF	Differential mode calibration value for ADCA This field is used to store the calibration value to be used in the differential conversions. When the ADC calibration process ends, the calibration result is written into this field if differential mode is selected.
7 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CALVSING	Single-ended mode calibration value for ADCA This field is used to store the calibration value to be used in the single-ended conversions. When the ADC calibration process ends, the calibration value is written in this field for single-ended input mode.

40.3.27 Calibration Values for ADCB Register (HSADCx_CALVAL_B)

This register is used to store the calibration values for ADCB. When the ADCB calibration is requested (single or differential), the ADCB calibration result is written into this register.

Address: Base address + B2h offset

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	CALVDIF							0	CALVSING						
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

HSADCx_CALVAL_B field descriptions

Field	Description
15 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
14–8 CALVDIF	Differential mode calibration value This field is used to store the calibration value to be used in the differential conversions. When the ADC calibration process ends, the calibration value is written into this field if differential mode is selected.
7 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CALVSING	Single-ended mode calibration value This field is used to store the calibration value to be used in the single-ended conversions. When the ADC calibration process ends, the calibration value is written into this field for single-ended input mode.

40.3.28 MUX6_7 Selection Controls Register (HSADCx_MUX67_SEL)

This register controls the MUXes for analog inputs CH6 and CH7 and expands the number of input ADC channels for ADCA and ADCB. They are used together with SAMPLEx, CHNCFG_L and CHNCFG_H. See [Input Multiplex Function](#) for more details.

Address: Base address + BA_H offset

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0				
Read	0	CH7_SELB				0	CH6_SELB				0	CH7_SELA				0	CH6_SELA			
Write																				
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0				

HSADCx_MUX67_SEL field descriptions

Field	Description
15 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
14–12 CH7_SELB	ADCB Channel 7 additional MUX Selector This bit field is used to expand the number of input channels to the ADCB when using SAMPLEx = 15 (4'b1111). The signals connected to the inputs of the additional MUX are defined in the device.
11 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
10–8 CH6_SELB	ADCB Channel 6 additional MUX Selector This bit field is used to expand the number of input channels to the ADCB when using SAMPLEx = 14 (4'b1110). The signals connected to the inputs of the additional MUX are defined in the device.
7 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

Table continues on the next page...

HSADCx_MUX67_SEL field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
6–4 CH7_SELA	ADCA Channel 7 additional MUX Selector This bit field is used to expand the number of input channels to the ADCA when using SAMPLEx = 7 (4'b0111). The signals connected to the inputs of the additional MUX are defined in the device.
3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CH6_SELA	ADCA Channel 6 additional MUX Selector This bit field is used to expand the number of input channels to the ADCA when using SAMPLEx = 6 (4'b0110). The signals connected to the inputs of the additional MUX are defined in the device.

40.4 Functional Description

This HSADC system is composed of two SAR ADC blocks, ADCA and ADCB, that are controlled by this digital controller called HSADC wrapper. Each SAR ADC has an input signal multiplex that can handle up to 19 analog inputs each (ANA0~ANA18, ANB0~ANB7). The channel selection is done in a way that is equivalent to be done in two steps as follows:

- An 8x1 MUX controlled by the register SAMPLEn[2:0], with SAMPLEn[3] being used to select between the two ADCs. The inputs can be called ANA0~ANA7 and ANB0~ANB7 for simplicity, considered that SAMPLEn[2:0] can vary from 0 to 7.
- The input signal for input ANA6 of the above MUX comes with another additional MUX controlled by register CH6_SELA[2:0]. The same is valid for ANA7 controlled by CH7_SELA[2:0], for ANB6 controlled by CH6_SELB[2:0], and for ANB7 controlled by CH7_SELB[2:0].

NOTE

If ANA6/ANB6 and ANA7/ANB7 MUXes are configured first and remains fixed for an interval of time, we can consider that the HSADC wrapper controller is just selecting eight input channels for each ADC when running the programmed list of conversions because it is processing only the SAMPLEn values.

NOTE

For simplicity, when the analog input channels are referred just as ANA0~ANA7 or ANB0~ANB7, it is considered the selection for ANA6~7 and ANB6~7 are already done in register MUX67_SEL.

The two ADCs operate independently and can run sequentially or in parallel by request of the HSADC control. The two converters store their results in an accessible buffer, awaiting further processing from the CPU.

Starting a single conversion actually begins a sequence of conversions, or a scan. The scan process is initiated either by a SYNC signal or by writing a 1 to a START bit. The HSADC operates in either sequential scan mode or parallel scan mode. In sequential scan mode, scan sequence is determined by defining sixteen sample slots that are processed in order, SAMPLE[0:15]. In parallel scan mode, converter A processes SAMPLE[0:7] in order, and converter B processes SAMPLE[8:15] in order. SAMPLE slots can be disabled using the HSADC_SDIS control register to terminate a scan early.

In sequential scan mode, a scan takes up to sixteen single-ended or differential samples, one at a time. Please see the following figure.

NOTE

Please consider in this diagram that ANA6, ANA7, ANB6, and ANB7 are outputs already considering the additional multiplexers controlled by configuration register MUX67_SEL fields. Refer to Input Multiplex section for details.

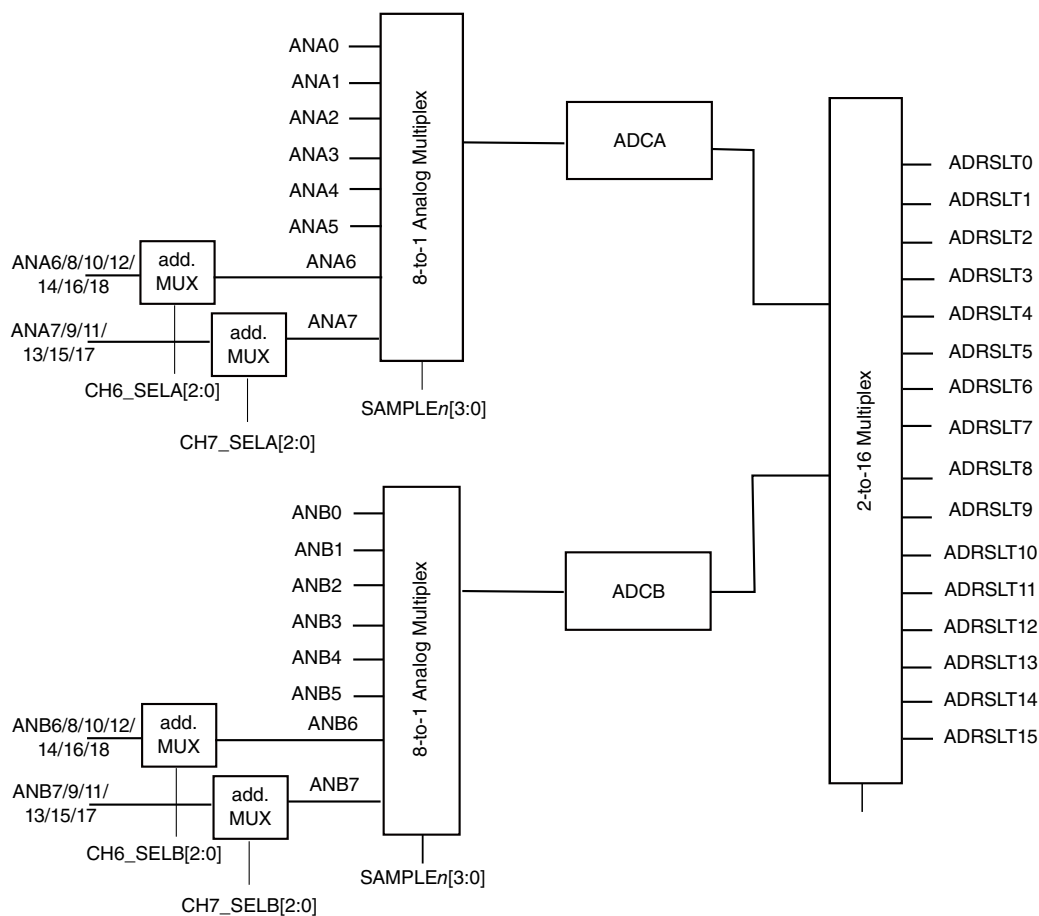


Figure 40-2. HSADC Input Channel Mux (Sequential Mode)

In parallel scan mode, eight of the sixteen samples are allocated to converter A and eight are allocated to converter B. The two converters operate in parallel, and each can take at most eight samples. Converter A can sample only analog inputs ANA[0:18], and converter B can sample only analog inputs ANB[0:18].

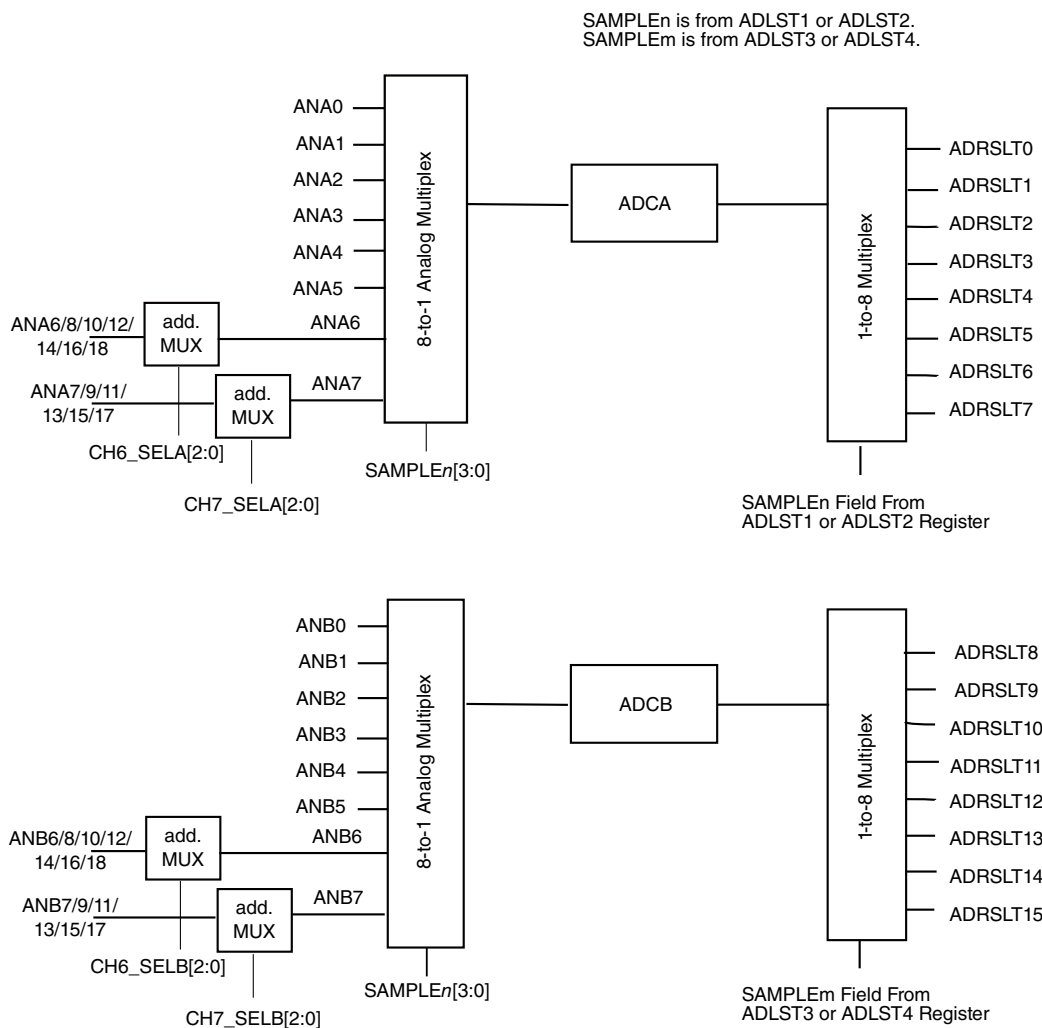


Figure 40-3. HSADC Parallel Scan Mode

Parallel scan mode can be simultaneous or non-simultaneous. In simultaneous scan mode, the parallel scans in the two converters occur simultaneously and result in simultaneous pairs of conversions, one by converter A and one by converter B. The two converters share the same start, stop, sync, end-of-scan interrupt enable controls, and interrupts. Scanning in both converters terminates when either converter encounters a disabled sample.

In non-simultaneous scan mode, the parallel scans in the two converters occur independently. Each converter has its own start, stop, sync, end-of-scan interrupt enable controls, and interrupts. Scanning in either converter terminates only when that converter encounters a disabled sample.

The HSADC system can be configured to perform a single scan and halt (once mode), perform a scan whenever triggered (triggered mode), or perform the scan sequence repeatedly until manually stopped (loop mode). The once mode differs from the triggered

mode only in that SYNC input signals must be re-armed after each use and subsequent SYNC inputs are ignored until the SYNC input is re-armed. This arming can occur any time after the SYNC pulse, including while the scan is still in process.

Optional interrupts can be generated at the end of a scan sequence. Interrupts are available simply to indicate that a scan has ended, that a sample is out of range, or several different zero crossing conditions. Range is determined by the high and low limit registers, LOLIMn and HILIMn.

40.4.1 HSADC Sample Conversion Operating Modes

This HSADC system has two ADCs. Each ADC consists of a sequential, algorithmic architecture using a SAR ADC as shown in the following figure. The SAR sections resolve the required number of bits, one on each ADC conversion clock cycle. The maximum clock speed is 80 MHz, so a complete 12-bit conversion can be accommodated in 150 ns, not including sample or post-processing time.

Each HSADC has analog input selection, interface/controls, SAR ADC block, and the calibration and offset function. The calibration block is a special feature of the HSADC. It is a digital block that under user request runs the necessary ADC conversions automatically to obtain the offset error of the ADC. This error value is used for error correction in the A/D conversions. For details of each feature see this block specification.

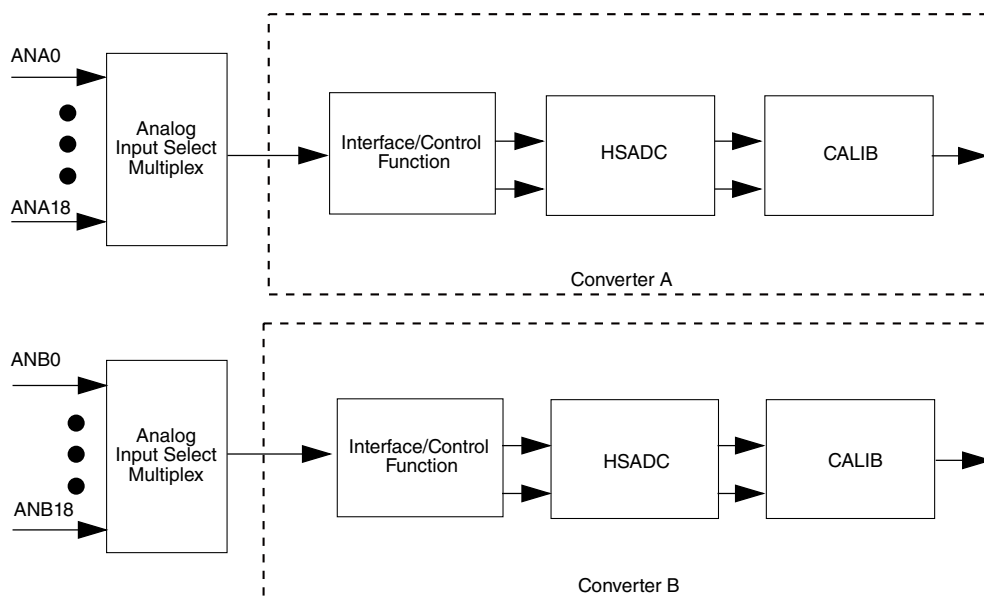


Figure 40-4. Top-Level Diagram of Dual HSADC System

40.4.1.1 Input Multiplex Function

The channel selection is controlled by settings in the registers below:

- CLIST1, CLIST2, CLIST3, CLIST4 (fields SAMPLE0~15)
- CTRL1[CHNCFG_L]
- CTRL2[CHNCFG_H]
- MUX67_SEL (fields CH6_SELA, CH7_SELA, CH6_SELB, and CH7_SELB)

There are two sets of analog inputs basically identified as ANAx (19 inputs for ADC A) and ANBx (19 inputs for ADC B). Each group of inputs is divided as follows:

- HSADCA:
 - ANA0~5
 - ANA6/8/10/12/14/16/18 (one of them is selected by CH6_SELA[2:0] and can be called ANA6 for simplicity)
 - ANA7/9/11/13/15/17 (one of them is selected by CH7_SELA[2:0] and can be called ANA7 for simplicity)
- HSADCB:
 - ANB0~5
 - ANB6/8/10/12/14/16/18 (one of them is selected by CH6_SELB[2:0] and can be called ANB6 for simplicity)
 - ANB7/9/11/13/15/17 (one of them is selected by CH7_SELB[2:0] and can be called ANB7 for simplicity)

Considering single-ended or differential conversion, the selection can be described as follows:

- Single-ended mode: one of the primary inputs listed above is selected to be sampled
- Differential mode: one of the following pairs is selected (x = A or B)
 - ANx0 - ANx1, or ANx2 - ANx3, or ANx4 - ANx5, or ANx6 and ANx7, ANx8 and ANx9, ANx10 and ANx11, ANx12 and ANx13, ANx14 and ANx15, ANx16 and ANx17, ANx18 and VREFL.

The following tables show how an analog input signal is selected to be sampled and converted on ADC A and ADC B. See the chip-specific information on pinouts and signal multiplexing to know which analog inputs are implemented.

Table 40-2. Analog Input Multiplex Control for HSADCA

SAMPLE n	CH6_SEL A	CH7_SEL A	Single-Ended Conversion			Differential Conversion		
			CHNCFG_ L	CHNCFG_ H	Selected Analog Input	CHNCFG_ L	CHNCFG_ H	Selected Analog Input
0	-	-	xxx0	-	ANA0	xxx1	-	ANA0 - ANA1
1	-	-	xxx0	-	ANA1	xxx1	-	ANA0 - ANA1
2	-	-	xx0x	-	ANA2	xx1x	-	ANA2 - ANA3

Table continues on the next page...

Table 40-2. Analog Input Multiplex Control for HSADCA (continued)

SAMPLE n	CH6_SEL A	CH7_SEL A	Single-Ended Conversion			Differential Conversion		
			CHNCFG_ L	CHNCFG_ H	Selected Analog Input	CHNCFG_ L	CHNCFG_ H	Selected Analog Input
3	-	-	xx0x	-	ANA3	xx1x	-	ANA2 - ANA3
4	-	-	-	xxx0	ANA4	-	xxx1	ANA4 - ANA5
5	-	-	-	xxx0	ANA5	-	xxx1	ANA4 - ANA5
6	0	-	-	xx0x	ANA6	-	xx1x	ANA6 - ANA7
	1	-	-	xx0x	ANA8	-	xx1x	ANA8 - ANA9
	2	-	-	xx0x	ANA10	-	xx1x	ANA10 - ANA11
	3	-	-	xx0x	ANA12	-	xx1x	ANA12 - ANA13
	4	-	-	xx0x	ANA14	-	xx1x	ANA14 - ANA15
	5	-	-	xx0x	ANA16	-	xx1x	ANA16 - ANA17
	6	-	-	xx0x	ANA18	-	xx1x	ANA18 - VREFL
	7	-	-	xx0x	Reserved	-	xx1x	Reserved
7	-	0	-	xx0x	ANA7	-	xx1x	ANA6 - ANA7
	-	1	-	xx0x	ANA9	-	xx1x	ANA8 - ANA9
	-	2	-	xx0x	ANA11	-	xx1x	ANA10 - ANA11
	-	3	-	xx0x	ANA13	-	xx1x	ANA12 - ANA13
	-	4	-	xx0x	ANA15	-	xx1x	ANA14 - ANA15
	-	5	-	xx0x	ANA17	-	xx1x	ANA16 - ANA17
	-	6	-	xx0x	Reserved	-	xx1x	Reserved
	-	7	-	xx0x	Reserved	-	xx1x	Reserved

Table 40-3. Analog Input Multiplex Control for HSADCB

SAMPLE n	CH6_SEL B	CH7_SEL B	Single-Ended Conversion			Differential Conversion		
			CHNCFG_ L	CHNCFG_ H	Selected Analog Input	CHNCFG_ L	CHNCFG_ H	Selected Analog Input
8	-	-	x0xx	-	ANB0	x1xx	-	ANB0 - ANB1
9	-	-	x0xx	-	ANB1	x1xx	-	ANB0 - ANB1
10	-	-	0xxx	-	ANB2	1xxx	-	ANB2 - ANB3
11	-	-	0xxx	-	ANB3	1xxx	-	ANB2 - ANB3
12	-	-	-	x0xx	ANB4	-	x1xx	ANB4 - ANB5
13	-	-	-	x0xx	ANB5	-	x1xx	ANB4 - ANB5
14	0	-	-	0xxx	ANB6	-	1xxx	ANB6 - ANB7
	1	-	-	0xxx	ANB8	-	1xxx	ANB8 - ANB9
	2	-	-	0xxx	ANB10	-	1xxx	ANB10 - ANB11
	3	-	-	0xxx	ANB12	-	1xxx	ANB12 - ANB13
	4	-	-	0xxx	ANB14	-	1xxx	ANB14 - ANB15
	5	-	-	0xxx	ANB16	-	1xxx	ANB16 - ANB17
	6	-	-	0xxx	ANB18	-	1xxx	ANB18 - VREFL

Table continues on the next page...

Table 40-3. Analog Input Multiplex Control for HSADCB (continued)

SAMPLE n	CH6_SEL B	CH7_SEL B	Single-Ended Conversion			Differential Conversion		
			CHNCFG_ L	CHNCFG_ H	Selected Analog Input	CHNCFG_ L	CHNCFG_ H	Selected Analog Input
	7	-	-	0xxx	Reserved	-	1xxx	Reserved
15	-	0	-	0xxx	ANB7	-	1xxx	ANB6 - ANB7
	-	1	-	0xxx	ANB9	-	1xxx	ANB8 - ANB9
	-	2	-	0xxx	ANB11	-	1xxx	ANB10 - ANB11
	-	3	-	0xxx	ANB13	-	1xxx	ANB12 - ANB13
	-	4	-	0xxx	ANB15	-	1xxx	ANB14 - ANB15
	-	5	-	0xxx	ANB17	-	1xxx	ANB16 - ANB17
	-	6	-	0xxx	Reserved	-	1xxx	Reserved
	-	7	-	0xxx	Reserved	-	1xxx	Reserved

40.4.1.2 HSADC Input Mode of Operation

The HSADC has two input operating modes: single-ended mode and differential mode. For a given sample, the mode of operation is determined by the CTRL1[CHNCFG_L] or CTRL2[CHNCFG_H] fields (see Analog input multiplex tables ADC A and ADC B):

- Single-ended mode (CHNCFG_L/H bit=0). The input multiplex of the ADC selects one of the 19 analog inputs and directs it to the plus terminal of the A/D core. The minus terminal of the A/D core is connected to the V_{REFL} reference. The ADC measures the voltage of the selected analog input and compares it against the $(V_{REFH} - V_{REFL})$ reference voltage range.
- Differential mode (CHNCFG_L/H bit=1). The ADC measures the voltage difference between two analog inputs and compares that value against the $(V_{REFH} - V_{REFL})$ voltage range. The input is selected as an input pair: ANA0/1, ANA2/3, ANA4/5, and so on. The plus terminal of the A/D core is connected to the even analog input, and the minus terminal is connected to the odd analog input.

In Differential mode, each of the following pairs of analog inputs represents a differential pair:

- ANA[0:1], ANA[2:3], ANA[4:5], ANA[6:7]
- ANB[0:1], ANB[2:3], ANB[4:5], ANB[6:7]

NOTE

Differential pair ANA[6:7] is selected from the following combinations only: (ANA6 - ANA7), or (ANA8 - ANA9), ..., or (ANA16 - ANA17), or (ANA18 - VREFL). Similar pairs are valid for ANB[6:7].

A mix and match combination of single-ended and differential configurations may exist. For example:

- ANA[0:1] differential; ANA[2:3] single-ended
- ANA[4:5] differential; ANA[6/8/10/12/14/16:7/9/11/13/15/17] single-ended
- ANB[0:1] differential; ANB[2:3] single-ended
- ANB[4:5] differential; ANB[6/8/10/12/14/16:7/9/11/13/15/17] single-ended

40.4.1.2.1 Single-Ended Samples

The ADC module performs a ratio metric conversion. For single-ended measurements, the digital result is proportional to the ratio of the analog input to the reference voltage:

$$\text{SingleEndedValue} = \text{round}(((V_{\text{IN}} - V_{\text{REFL}}) / (V_{\text{REFH}} - V_{\text{REFL}})) \times 4096) \times 8$$

V_{IN} is the applied voltage at the input pin.

V_{REFH} and V_{REFL} are the voltages at the external reference pins on the device (typically $V_{\text{REFH}}=V_{\text{DDA}}$ and $V_{\text{REFL}}=V_{\text{SSA}}$).

Note: The 12-bit result is rounded to the nearest LSB.

Note: The ADC is a 12-bit function with 4096 possible states. However, the 12 bits have been left shifted by 3 bits on the 16-bit data bus. As a result, the magnitude of this function, as read from the data bus, is now 32760.

40.4.1.2.2 Differential Samples

For differential measurements, the digital result is proportional to the ratio of the difference in the inputs to the difference in the reference voltages (V_{REFH} and V_{REFL}).

When differential measurements are converted, the following formula is useful:

$$\text{DifferentialValue} = \text{round}\left(\left(\frac{V_{\text{IN1}} - V_{\text{IN2}}}{V_{\text{REFH}} - V_{\text{REFL}}} \times 2048\right) + 2048\right) \times 8$$

$V_{\text{IN1}} - V_{\text{IN2}}$ = Applied voltage at the input pins

V_{REFH} and V_{REFL} = Voltage at the external reference pins on the device (typically $V_{\text{REFH}}=V_{\text{DDA}}$ and $V_{\text{REFL}}=V_{\text{SSA}}$)

Note: The 12-bit result is rounded to the nearest LSB.

Note: The ADC is a 12-bit function with 4096 possible states. However, the 12 bits have been left shifted three bits on the 16-bit data bus, so the magnitude of this function, as read from the data bus, is now 32760.

40.4.2 HSADC Calibration

Each ADC in the HSADC is equipped with a self-calibration digital sub-block that starts the calculation of the offset error only under external request. The ADC internal logic executes all necessary conversion cycles to obtain the offset error. It executes a dummy conversion plus eight AD conversions of an internal reference to obtain a medium value of the offset error.

The HSADC wrapper control requests to the ADCs to execute the calibration just after the power-up delay. It is necessary to configure the bit fields in the CALIB register to indicate the desired types of calibrations (single-ended and/or differential). The resultant offset value from the calibration is stored in a mapped register (CALVAL_A and CALVAL_B) to be used later by the ADCs. So the procedure to obtain the calibration from power-up can be described as follows:

- Before powering-up the HSADC, configure the REQSINGA/B and REQDIFFA/B fields to request the desired calibrations to be executed.
- The ADC is powered-up and then the single-ended/differential modes of calibration cycles are executed automatically by the ADC. It takes about 81 ADC clock cycles to calculate the calibration factor for each input mode.
- The resultant factor (offset) values from each calibration is stored in the register CALVAL_A for ADC A, and CALVAL_B for ADC B.
- When the calibration is completed, the status bits STAT[EOCALIA] and STAT[EOCALIB] are set to indicate the end of calibration process. An interrupt request is generated if CALIB[EOCALIEA] or CALIB[EOCALIEB] are set.
- When a conversion is requested to some ADC, the respective calibration factor (single-ended or differential) is read from the CALVAL_A/CALVAL_B register and pre-loaded into the internal register of that ADC to be used during the conversion.
- Once the calibration is completed, clear the STAT[EOCALIx] (where x is either A or B) by writing a '1' to it. If this is not done, no subsequent calibrations can be performed.

It is also possible to request the calibration after the power-up by setting the bit fields CALIB[CAL_REQA/B]. In this case the request is served just after the end of a scan. The request bit is automatically cleared when the calibration is started. Also in this request the desired calibrations are configured using the bit fields REQSINGA/B and REQDIFFA/B.

40.4.3 HSADC Data Processing

The ADC block provides a 12-bit representation for some analog signal levels, and this data includes the error compensation factor. The raw result of an ADC conversion for a given SAMPLEn slot (n=0 to 15) must include the calibration factor (BYPx=0) when conversion precision is required. This result is checked for limit violations (HILIMn and LOLIMn). This value is also sent to an adder for offset correction, as the following figure shows. The adder subtracts the OFFSTn register value from each sample, and the resultant value is stored in the result register (RSLTn). This RSLTn value is checked for zero-crossing, as shown. Appropriate interrupts are asserted, if enabled.

The result value sign is determined from the ADC unsigned result minus the respective offset register value (OFFSTn). If the offset register is programmed with a value of zero, the result register value is unsigned and equals the A/D converter unsigned result. The range of the result (RSLTn) is 0000H–7FF8H, assuming that the offset register (OFFSTn) is cleared to all zero. This is equal to the raw value of the ADC.

The processor can write the result registers used for the results of a scan when the STOP bit for that scan is asserted. This write operation is treated as if it comes from the ADC block, so the limit checking, zero crossing, and the offset registers function as if in normal mode. For example, if the STOP bit is set to one and the processor writes to RSLT5, the data written to the RSLT5 is multiplexed to the ADC digital logic inputs, processed, and stored into RSLT5 as if the ADC had provided the data. This test data must be justified, as illustrated by the RSLT register definition and does not include the sign bit.

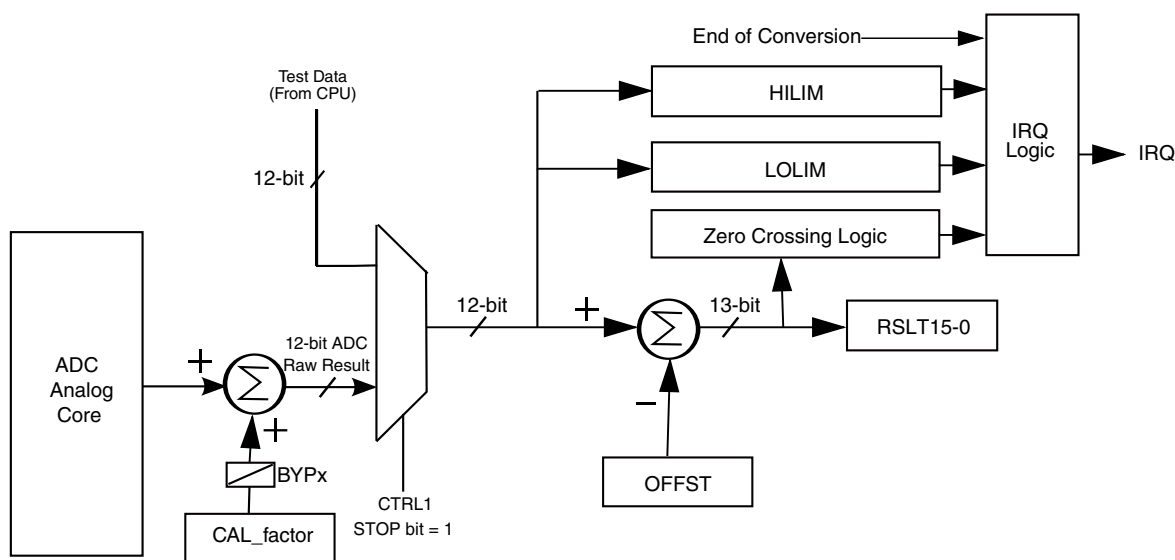


Figure 40-5. Result Register Data Manipulation

40.4.4 Sequential versus parallel sampling

Scans are either sequential or parallel. All scan modes use the sixteen sample slots in the CLIST1–4 registers (SAMPLE [0:15]). The slots are used to define which input or differential pair to measure at each step in a scan sequence. The SDIS register defines which sample slots are enabled. Input pairs ANA0/1, ANA2/3, ANA4/5, ANA6/7, ANB0/1, ANB2/3, ANB4/5, and ANB6/7 can be set to be measured differentially using the CHNCFG_L/H fields.

NOTE

ANA6/7 and ANB6/7 are referred as the output selection of inputs: ANA6/8/10/12/14/16/18 and ANA7/9/11/13/15/17 for ANA6/7; ANB6/8/10/12/14/16/18 and ANB7/9/11/13/15/17 for ANB6/7, as described in the Input Multiplex section.

40.4.4.1 Sequential scan mode

Sequential scans have the following characteristics:

- Up to sixteen sample slots are sampled one at a time in order, SAMPLE [0:15]
- Each sample refers to any of the sixteen analog inputs ANA0–ANB7¹, so the same input can be referenced by more than one sample slot
- All samples have the full functionality of offset subtraction and high/low limit compare
- Scanning is initiated when CTRL1 [STARTA] bit is written with a 1 or when CTRL1[SYNCA] is set and the SYNCA input goes high
- A scan ends when the first disabled sample slot is encountered per the SDIS register
- Completion of the scan triggers the STAT[EOSIA] interrupt if the CTRL1[EOSIEA] interrupt enable is set. If CTRL1[DMAENA] is set and CTRL3[DMASRC]=0 a DMA request is made and a transfer of the result data can be initiated by the DMA.
- CTRL1[STARTA] and SYNCA input are ignored while a scan is in process. Scanning stops and cannot be initiated when CTRL1 [STOPA] is set.

40.4.4.2 Parallel scan mode

The parallel scans differ in that converter A performs up to eight samples (SAMPLE[0:7]) in parallel with converter B (SAMPLE[8:15]). This mode has the following characteristics:

- SAMPLEs[0:7] can reference only the ANA[0:7] inputs

1. ANA6, ANA7, ANB6, ANB7 expand the input channel mux by additional selection of 13 channels for each of the ADCs. See Input Multiplex data for details.

- SAMPLEs[8:15] can reference only the ANB[0:7] inputs
- Within the constraints above, any sample can reference any pin, and more than one sample slot can reference the same sample and the same input
- All samples have the full functionality of offset subtraction and high/low limit compare

Simultaneous mode

- By default (when CTRL2[SIMULT]=1), the scans in both converters are initiated when CTRL1[STARTA] is written with a 1 or when CTRL1[SYNCA] has a value of 1 and the SYNCA input goes high
- The scan in both converters terminates when either converter encounters a disabled sample slot
- Completion of a scan triggers the STAT[EOSIA] interrupt if the CTRL1[EOSIEA] interrupt enable is set. If CTRL1[DMAENA] is set and CTRL3[DMASRC]=0 then a DMA initiates a transfer of the result data.
- Samples are always taken simultaneously in both the A and B converters. Setting CTRL1 [STOPA] stops and prevents the initiation of scanning in both converters.

Non-simultaneous mode

- Setting CTRL2[SIMULT]=0 (non-simultaneous mode) causes parallel scanning to operate independently in the A and B converter
- Each converter has its own set of START, STOP, SYNC, DMAEN, and EOSIE control bits, SYNC input, EOSI interrupt, and CIP status indicators (suffix A for converter A and suffix B for converter B)
- Though still operating in parallel, the scans in the A and B converter start and stop independently according to their own controls and can be simultaneous, phase shifted, or asynchronous depending on when scans are initiated on the respective converters
- The number of conversions for A and B can be different (still up to a maximum of 8) and each converter's scan completes when a disabled sample is encountered in that converter's sample list only
- CTRL1[STOPA] stops the A converter only and CTRL2[STOPB] stops the B converter only
- Looping scan modes iterate independently
- Each converter independently restarts its scan after completing its list or encountering a disabled sample slot.

40.4.5 Scan Sequencing

The sequential and parallel scan modes fall into three types based on how they repeat:

- Once scan. A once scan executes a sequential or parallel scan only once each time it is started. It differs from a triggered scan in that sync inputs must be re-armed after each use (CTRL*[SYNC*]).
- Triggered scan. Identical to the corresponding once scan modes except that re-arming of CTRL*[SYNC*] bits is not necessary.
- Looping scan. Automatically restarts a scan, either parallel or sequential, as soon as the previous scan completes. In parallel looping scan modes, the A converter scan restarts as soon as the A converter scan completes and the B converter scan restarts as soon as the B converter scan completes. All subsequent start and sync pulses are ignored after the scan begins unless the scan is paused by the SCTRL[SC] bits. Scanning can only be terminated by setting the STOP bit.

All scan modes ignore sync pulses while a scan is in process unless the scan is paused by the SCTRL[SC] bits. The once scan modes continue to ignore sync pulses even after the scan completes until the CTRL*[SYNC*] bit is set again. However, a re-arm can occur any time including during the scan. The SYNCA input is re-armed by setting CTRL1[SYNCA], and the SYNCB input is re-armed by setting CTRL2[SYNCB]. A re-arm can be performed any time after a scan starts.

40.4.6 Power Management

The five supported power modes are discussed in order from highest to lowest power usage at the expense of increased conversion latency and/or startup delay. Changes to the device configuration that affect the power modes should be made while PWR[PDA] and PWR[PDB] are both asserted. See the Clocks section for details on the various clocks referenced here.

40.4.6.1 Low Power Modes

In the following table, the low-power modes are discussed in order from highest to lowest power usage.

Mode	Description
Normal power	At least one ADC converter is powered up (PWR[PDA] or PWR[PDB] is 0), and PWR[APD] and PWR[ASB] are both 0. The HSADC uses the conversion clock as the ADC clock source in either active or idle. The conversion clock should be configured to or near 80 MHz to minimize conversion latency. No startup delay (PWR[PUDELAY] x 32) nor dummy conversion is imposed.
Auto-standby	At least one ADC converter is powered up (PWR[PDA] or PWR[PDB] is 0), PWR[APD] is 0, and PWR[ASB] is 1. A second clock signal is applied to the HSADC module and is divided by 20 to generate a ~140 kHz auto-standby clock. The HSADC uses the conversion clock when active and the 140 kHz auto-standby clock when idle. The auto-standby state automatically engages when the HSADC is idle. The conversion ADC clock should be configured to or near 80 MHz to

Table continues on the next page...

Mode	Description
	minimize conversion latency when active. At the start of all scans, there is a startup delay of (PWR[PUDELAY] x32) ADC clocks to engage the conversion clock and revert from standby to normal mode. Auto-standby is a compromise between normal and auto-powerdown modes. This mode offers moderate power savings at the cost of a moderate latency when leaving the idle state to start a new scan.
Auto-Powerdown	At least one ADC converter is powered up (PWR[PDA] or PWR[PDB] is 0) and PWR[APD] is 1. The conversion clock should be configured to or near 80 MHz to minimize conversion latency when active. The HSADC uses the conversion clock when active. For maximum power savings, it gates off the conversion clock and powers down the converters when idle. At the start of all scans, there is a startup delay of (PWR[PUDELAY] x32) ADC clocks to stabilize normal mode from a completely powered off condition. This mode saves more power than auto-standby but requires more startup latency when leaving the idle state to start a scan (higher PWR[PUDELAY] value).
Standby	At least one ADC converter is powered up (PWR[PDA] or PWR[PDB] is 0), the PWR[ASB] bit is 0, and the HSADC clock for conversions has a very low frequency (~ 4MHz) because the chip is in standby mode. The ADC clock operates continuously at about 140 kHz without loss of conversion accuracy. Though no startup delay (PWR[PUDELAY] x32) is imposed, the latency of a scan is affected by the low frequency of the ADC clock. To use auto-powerdown mode and standby mode together, set PWR[APD]. This hybrid mode converts at an ADC clock rate of 140 kHz when active, and it gates off the HSADC clock and powers down the converters when idle. At the start of all scans, there is a startup delay of (PWR[PUDELAY] x32) ADC clock cycles to engage the conversion clock and revert power-up the converters. This is the slowest and lowest power operational configuration of the HSADC.
Powerdown	Both HSADC converter voltage references are powered down (PWR[PDA] and PWR[PDB]).

40.4.6.2 Startup in Different Power Modes

The HSADC voltage reference and converters are powered down (PWR[PDn]=1) on reset. Individual converters and voltage references can be manually powered down when not in use (PWR[PDA]=1 or PWR[PDB]=1). When the HSADC reference is powered down, the output reference voltages are set to low (VSSA) and the HSADC data output is driven low.

A delay of (PWR[PUDELAY] x32) ADC clock cycles is imposed when PWR[PDA] or PWR[PDB] are cleared to power up a regulator and also to transition from an idle state in which neither converter has a scan in process to an active state in which at least one converter has a scan in process. It is recommended to use two PWR[PUDELAY] values: a large value for full power up and a moderate value for transitioning from auto-standby to full power up.

To start up in normal mode or standby power mode, perform the following steps:

1. Set PWR[PUDELAY] to the large power up value.
2. Clear PWR[ASB] and PWR[APD].
3. Clear the PWR[PDA] and/or PWR[PDB] to power up the required converters.
4. Poll the status bits until all required converters are powered up.
5. Start scan operations. This will provide a full power-up delay before scans begin.

Normal mode does not use (PWR[PUDELAY] x32) at start of scan, so no further delay is imposed.

To start up in auto-standby, use the normal mode startup procedure first. Before starting scan operations, set PWR[PUDELAY] to the moderate standby recovery value, and set PWR[ASB]. Auto-standby mode automatically reduces current levels until active and then imposes the (PWR[PUDELAY] x32) to allow current levels to rise from standby to full power levels.

To start up in auto powerdown mode, perform the following steps:

1. Set PWR[PUDELAY] to the large power-up value.
2. Clear PWR[ASB] and set PWR[APD].
3. Clear the PWR[PDA] and/or PWR[PDB] for the required converters.

Converters remain powered off until scanning goes active. Before a scan starts, there is a large (PWR [PUDELAY] x32) to go from the powered down to the fully powered state.

To avoid ambiguity and ensure that the proper delays are applied when powering up or starting scans, both regulators should be powered off (PWR[PDA]=PWR[PDB]=1) when the clock or power controls are configured.

Attempts to start a scan during the (PWR[PUDELAY] x32) are ignored until the appropriate PWR[PSTS_n] bits are cleared.

Any attempt to use a converter when it is powered down or with the voltage references disabled will result in invalid results. It is possible to read HSADC result registers after converter power down for results calculated before power-down. A new scan sequence must be started with a SYNC pulse or a write to the START bit before new valid results are available.

In auto-powerdown mode, when the HSADC goes from idle to active, a converter is powered up only if it is required for the scan as determined by the CLIST1-4 and SDIS registers.

40.4.6.3 Stop Mode of Operation

Any conversion sequence can be stopped by setting the relevant STOP bit. Any further sync pulses or writes to the start bit are ignored until the STOP bit is cleared. In stop mode, the results registers can be modified by writes from the processor. Any write to the result register when the HSADC is in Stop mode is treated as if the analog core has supplied the data, so limit checking and zero crossing interrupts can occur if enabled. When clearing the STOP bit and asserting START bit again, the conversion sequence restarts from the first command (SAMPLE0). See [HSADC Data Processing](#) for details.

40.5 Clocks

The HSADC has two external clock inputs to drive two clock domains within the HSADC wrapper module.

Table 40-4. Clock Summary

Clock input	Characteristics
IP Clock	Maximum rate is 220 MHz.
adc_8_clk	4 MHz for auto-standby power saving mode.

The IP clock is enabled and its rate is determined on the SoC configuration. The ADC conversion clock is derived from this clock therefore some care should be taken before enabling the ADCs.

The conversion clock (IP clock) is the primary source for the ADC clock and is always selected as the ADC clock when conversions are in process. After configuring the rate of the IP clock source, it is necessary to configure CTRL2[DIVA] and PWR2[DIVB] so that conversion clock frequency falls between 140 kHz and 80 MHz. Operating the ADC at out-of-spec conversion clock frequencies or reconfiguring the parameters that affect clock rates or power modes while the regulators are powered up (PWR[PDA]=0 or PWR[PDB]=0) can negatively affect conversion accuracy.

The ADC clock is active 100 percent of the time in looping modes or in normal power mode. It is also active during all ADC powerup sequences for a period of time determined by the PWR[PUDELAY] field multiplied by 32. If a conversion is initiated in power savings mode, then the ADC clock continues until the conversion sequence completes. And finally, the ADC clock must be also active in low power standby mode at least with the minimum specified frequency (140 kHz).

The following diagram shows the structure of the clocking system.

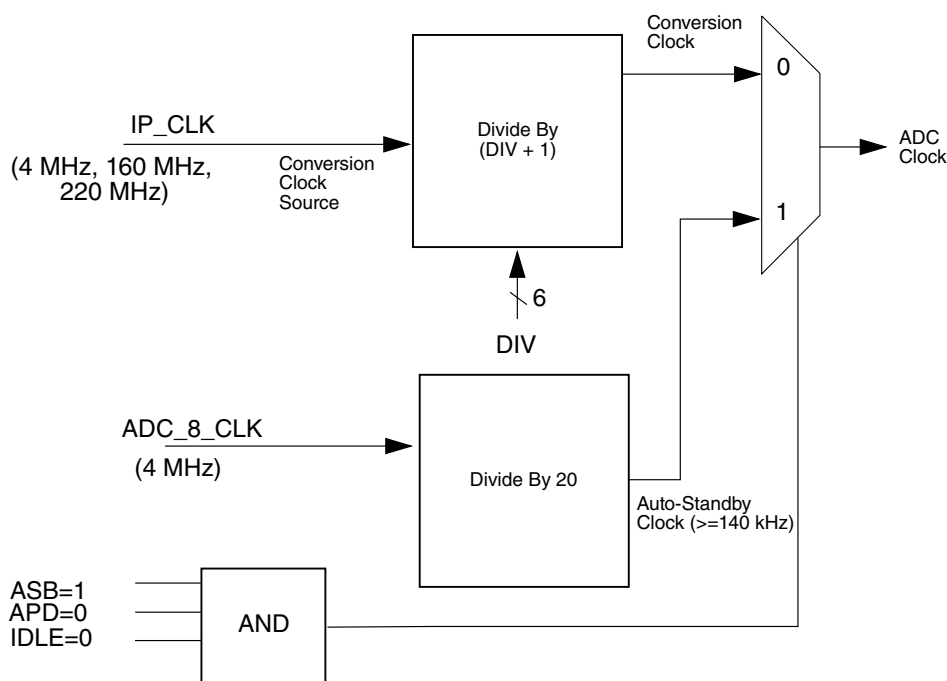


Figure 40-6. ADC Clock Generation

ADC_8_CLK clocks a divider to generate the auto-standby clock, which is selected as the ADC clock only during auto-standby power mode (for any scan mode) and only when both converters are idle (for sequential or parallel simultaneous scan modes). Auto-standby power mode requires the ADC_8_CLK to be 4 MHz clock. This mode provides substantial power savings yet requires less latency when switching back to the conversion clock at the start of a scan than auto-powerdown mode. The latter mode uses only the conversion clock as the ADC clock source but fully powers down the converters when idle.

The standby mode is also possible if a low frequency IP_CLK is used. It is required to ensure a minimum of 140 kHz ADC conversion clock rate while a conversion is in process. This configuration, referred to as HSADC module standby power mode, provides accurate ADC conversions at a very low power level.

The ADC clock is the output clock for the converter. During the conversion list scan operation, the converter receives the conversion clock that is the divided version of the conversion clock source (IP_CLK). During auto-standby mode, the converter also requires to receive a clock signal with frequency higher than 140kHz. The ADC_CLK is also provided to an external output for debug and failure analysis.

40.6 Interrupts

The following table summarizes the HSADC interrupts.

Table 40-5. Interrupt Summary

Interrupt	Source	Description
HSADC_ERR_INT_B	STAT[[ZCI], STAT[LLMTI], STAT[HLMTI], STAT[EOCALIA], STAT[EOCALIB]	Zero Crossing, low Limit, high limit and end of calibration on ADCs interrupt
HSADC_CC0_INT_B	STAT[EOSI0] RDY[RDY[15:0]]	Conversion Complete and Scan Interrupt for any scan type (except converter B scan in non-simultaneous parallel scan mode (see EOSI0))
HSADC_CC1_INT_B	STAT[EOSI1] RDY[RDY[7:4]] RDY[RDY[15:12]]	Conversion Complete and Scan Interrupt for converter B scan in non-simultaneous parallel scan mode (see EOSI1)

HSADC interrupts fall into three categories:

1. Threshold or calibration end interrupts

- These are caused by four different events. All of these interrupts are optional and enabled through control register CTRL1 or through calibration register CALIB.
- Zero crossing — occurs if the current result value has a sign change from the previous result as configured by the ZXCTRL register.
- Low limit exceeded error — occurs when the current result value is less than the low limit register value. The raw result value is compared to LOLIM[LLMT] before the offset register value is subtracted.
- High limit exceeded error — is asserted if the current result value is greater than the high limit register value. The raw result value is compared to HILIM[HLMT] before the offset register value is subtracted.
- End of calibration — asserts when a requested calibration on ADC A or ADC B is completed.

2. Conversion complete interrupts

- They are generated upon completion of any scan and convert sequence when CTRL1[EOSIEA]=1
- Additional bits may need to be set in the Interrupt Control Module to enable the CPU to receive the interrupt signal.

3. Scan interrupts

- They are generated when a sample is converted. This allows processing of intermediate conversion data during a scan.
- The interrupt occurs when any sample has its SCTRL[SC] and SCHLTEN[SchLTEN] bits enabled (set), and the RDY[RDY] bit for that sample is asserted. Use these registers to determine which sample triggered the interrupt.

40.7 Timing Specifications

The following figure shows a timing diagram for the HSADC module. The HSADC is assumed to be in Once or Triggered mode, so the converter is considered in idle state prior to the SYNC pulse (or START bit write). The ADC clock is switching at the conversion rate as programmed in the configuration registers. The sequence of events in the HSADC system is as follows:

1. When the SYNC pulse occurs, the ADC clock is synchronized to this pulse as shown in the figure by forcing a low state on to the ADC clock. Then the CIP (conversion in progress) status bit is asserted in the following ADC clock. The MUX controls to select the analog input are also changed during this first ADC clock cycle.
2. The sampling time starts in the following ADC clock cycle and ends 1.5 ADC clock cycle later if the sampling time configured at the register HSADC_SAMPTIM is 0. If the value of this register is 1, then the sampling time is 2.5 ADC clock cycles long. Then the conversion phase starts.
3. The conversion phase lasts 12.5 ADC clock cycles for 12 bits resolution. This time includes the calibration correction operation. The conversion result is then available to be sampled after some hardware delay. So it can be processed on the HSADC and stored in the registers HSADC_RSLTn.
4. When a conversion phase ends a new sampling phase can be started if a new input signal is selected as shown in the diagram.
5. If the EOSIx bit is set and enabled by EOSIEx then the IRQ is asserted to indicate the end of a scan. The CPU can then read the conversion results in the mapped registers HSADC_RSLTn.

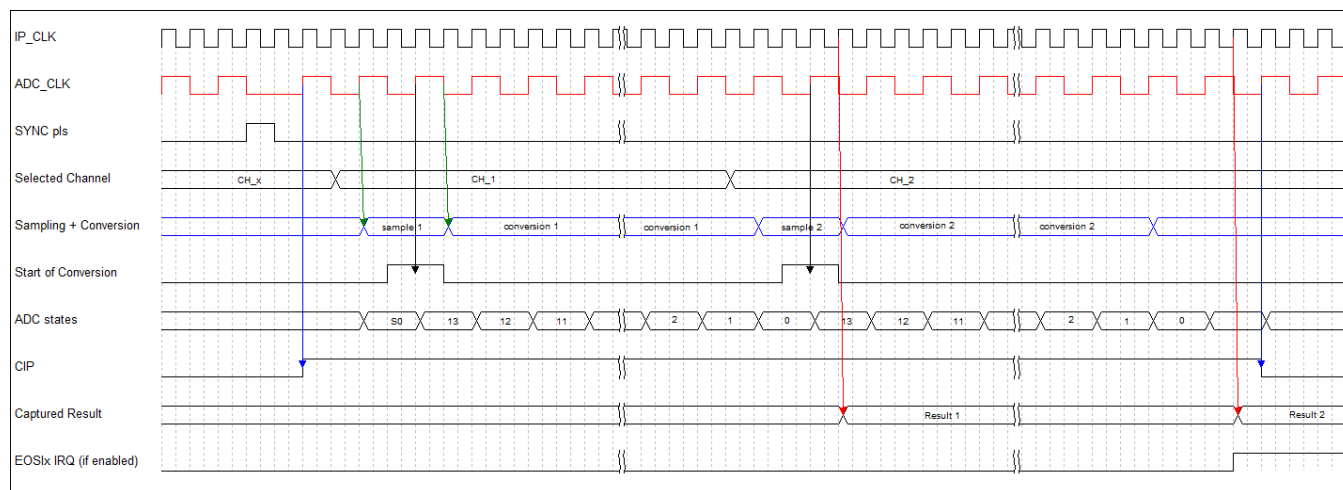


Figure 40-7. HSADC Timing

Chapter 41

Comparator (CMP)

41.1 Chip-specific CMP information

41.1.1 CMP instantiation information

This chip has four high speed CMP modules each with a 6-bit DAC to provide a reference voltage.

NOTE

The CMP0_out and CMP1_out are inter-connected to the RX pin of UART0 and UART1 on chip. See SIM_SCI0RXSRC[1:0] and SIM_SCI1RXSRC[1:0] for the details.

41.1.2 CMP Signal Assignments

NOTE

For more details see SIM_MISCTRL and SIM_SOPT7 registers

Table 41-1. CMP Signal assignments

Instance	Signal	Description	I/O	Connected to	Ext Pin Mux / SIM	Pin No. Of 100
CMP0	IN0	input channel	input	CMP0_IN0 pin	PTC6	pin78 of 100
	IN1	input channel	input	CMP0_IN1 pin	PTC7	pin79 of 100
	IN2	input channel	input	CMP0_IN2 pin	PTC8	pin80 of 100
	IN3	input channel	input	CMP0_IN3 pin	PTC9	pin81 of 100
	IN4	input channel	input	CMP0_IN4 pin	—	pin28 of 100
	IN5	input channel	input	CMP0_IN5 pin	PTE29	pin26 of 100

Table continues on the next page...

Table 41-1. CMP Signal assignments (continued)

Instance	Signal	Description	I/O	Connected to	Ext Pin Mux / SIM	Pin No. Of 100
	IN6	input channel	input	bandgap	—	—
	IN7	input channel	input	6bDAC	—	—
	WindowIN	—	input	PDB0 pulse out, PDB1 pulse out XBARA_OUT16	—	—
	CMP0_OUT	—	output	LPTMR0, PDB0 ch 0001, PDB1_ch 0001, DMA_MUX source 42,XBARA_IN12,X BARB1_IN0	SIM: FTM0TRG0SRC, FTM1TRG0SRC, FTM3TRIG0SRC, FTM1CH0SRC, FTM0FLT0, FTM1FLT0, FTM3FLT0, UART0RXSRC, UART1RXSRC	PTB20 , PTC5, PTA1 via digital signal mux
CMP1	IN0	input channel	input	CMP1_IN0 pin	PTC2	pin72 of 100
	IN1	input channel	input	CMP1_IN1 pin	PTC3	pin73 of 100
	IN2	input channel	input	CMP1_IN2 pin	ADC0_SE8	pin 36 of 144
	IN3	input channel	input	CMP1_IN3 pin	PTE30, DAC0_OUT	pin27 of 100
	IN4	input channel	input	na	—	—
	IN5	input channel	input	CMP1_IN5 pin	PTE29	pin26 of 100
	IN6	input channel	input	bandgap	—	—
	IN7	input channel	input	6bDAC	—	—
	WindowIN	—	input	PDB0 pulse out, PDB1 pulse out XBARA_OUT17	—	—
	CMP1_OUT	—	output	PDB0 ch 0010, PDB1 ch 0010, XBARA_IN13, XBARB_IN1 , DMA_MUX source 43	SIM: FTM1CH0SRC, FTM0FLT1, UART0RXSRC, UART1RXSRC	PTB21,PTA2, PTC4 via digalta signal mux
CMP2	IN0	input channel	input	CMP2_IN0 pin	PTA12	pin 42 of 100
	IN1	input channel	input	CMP2_IN1 pin	PTA13	pin43 of 100
	IN2	input channel	input	CMP2_IN2 pin	PTB2	pin55 of 100
	IN3	input channel	input	CMP2_IN3 pin	—	pin28 of 100
	IN4	input channel	input	CMP2_IN4 pin	PTC6	pin78 of 100
	IN5	input channel	input	CMP2_IN5 pin	ADC0_SE0	pin35 of 100
	IN6	input channel	input	bandgap	—	—
	IN7	input channel	input	6bDAC	—	—
	WindowIN	—	input	PDB0 pulse out, PDB1 pulse out XBARA_OUT18	—	—

Table continues on the next page...

Table 41-1. CMP Signal assignments (continued)

Instance	Signal	Description	I/O	Connected to	Ext Pin Mux / SIM	Pin No. Of 100
	CMP2_OUT	—	output	PDB0 ch 0011, PDB1 ch 0011, XBARA_IN14, XBARB_IN2 , DMA_MUX source 44	SIM: FTM0FLT2	—
CMP3	IN0	input channel	input	CMP3_IN0 pin	PTA14	pin44 of 100
	IN1	input channel	input	CMP3_IN1 pin	PTA15	pin45 of 100
	IN2	input channel	input	CMP3_IN2pin	PTA16	pin46 of 100
	IN3	input channel	input	DAC0_OUT	DAC0_OUT	—
	IN4	input channel	input	CMP3_IN4 pin	PTC7	pin79 of 100
	IN5	input channel	input	CMP3_IN5 pin	PTB3	pin56 of 100
	IN6	input channel	input	bandgap	—	—
	IN7	input channel	input	6bDAC	—	—
	WindowIN	—	input	PDB0 pulse out, PDB1 pulse out XBARA_OUT19	—	—
	CMP3_OUT	—	output	XBARA_IN15, XBARB_IN3 , DMA_MUX source 34	—	—

41.1.3 CMP external references

Each CMP has its own 6-bit DAC sub-block which feeds the IN7 of the comparator. Additionally the output of DAC0 is provided to IN6 of each comparator, providing a 12-bit DC reference.

41.1.4 External window/sample input

Individual PDB pulse-out signals control each CMP Sample/Window timing.

41.2 Introduction

The comparator (CMP) module provides a circuit for comparing two analog input voltages. The comparator circuit is designed to operate across the full range of the supply voltage, known as rail-to-rail operation.

The Analog MUX (ANMUX) provides a circuit for selecting an analog input signal from eight channels. One signal is provided by the 6-bit digital-to-analog converter (DAC). The mux circuit is designed to operate across the full range of the supply voltage.

The 6-bit DAC is 64-tap resistor ladder network which provides a selectable voltage reference for applications where voltage reference is needed. The 64-tap resistor ladder network divides the supply reference V_{in} into 64 voltage levels. A 6-bit digital signal input selects the output voltage level, which varies from V_{in} to $V_{in}/64$. V_{in} can be selected from two voltage sources, V_{in1} and V_{in2} . The 6-bit DAC from a comparator is available as an on-chip internal signal only and is not available externally to a pin.

41.2.1 CMP features

The CMP has the following features:

- Operational over the entire supply range
- Inputs may range from rail to rail
- Programmable hysteresis control
- Selectable interrupt on rising-edge, falling-edge, or both rising or falling edges of the comparator output
- Selectable inversion on comparator output
- Capability to produce a wide range of outputs such as:
 - Sampled
 - Windowed, which is ideal for certain PWM zero-crossing-detection applications
 - Digitally filtered:
 - Filter can be bypassed
 - Can be clocked via external SAMPLE signal or scaled bus clock
- External hysteresis can be used at the same time that the output filter is used for internal functions
- Two software selectable performance levels:
 - Shorter propagation delay at the expense of higher power
 - Low power, with longer propagation delay
- DMA transfer support
 - A comparison event can be selected to trigger a DMA transfer

- Functional in all modes of operation except VLLS0
- The window and filter functions are not available in the following modes:
 - Stop
 - VLPS
 - VLLSx

41.2.2 6-bit DAC key features

The 6-bit DAC has the following features:

- 6-bit resolution
- Selectable supply reference source
- Power Down mode to conserve power when not in use
- Option to route the output to internal comparator input

41.2.3 ANMUX key features

The ANMUX has the following features:

- Two 8-to-1 channel mux
- Operational over the entire supply range

41.2.4 CMP, DAC and ANMUX diagram

The following figure shows the block diagram for the High-Speed Comparator, DAC, and ANMUX modules.

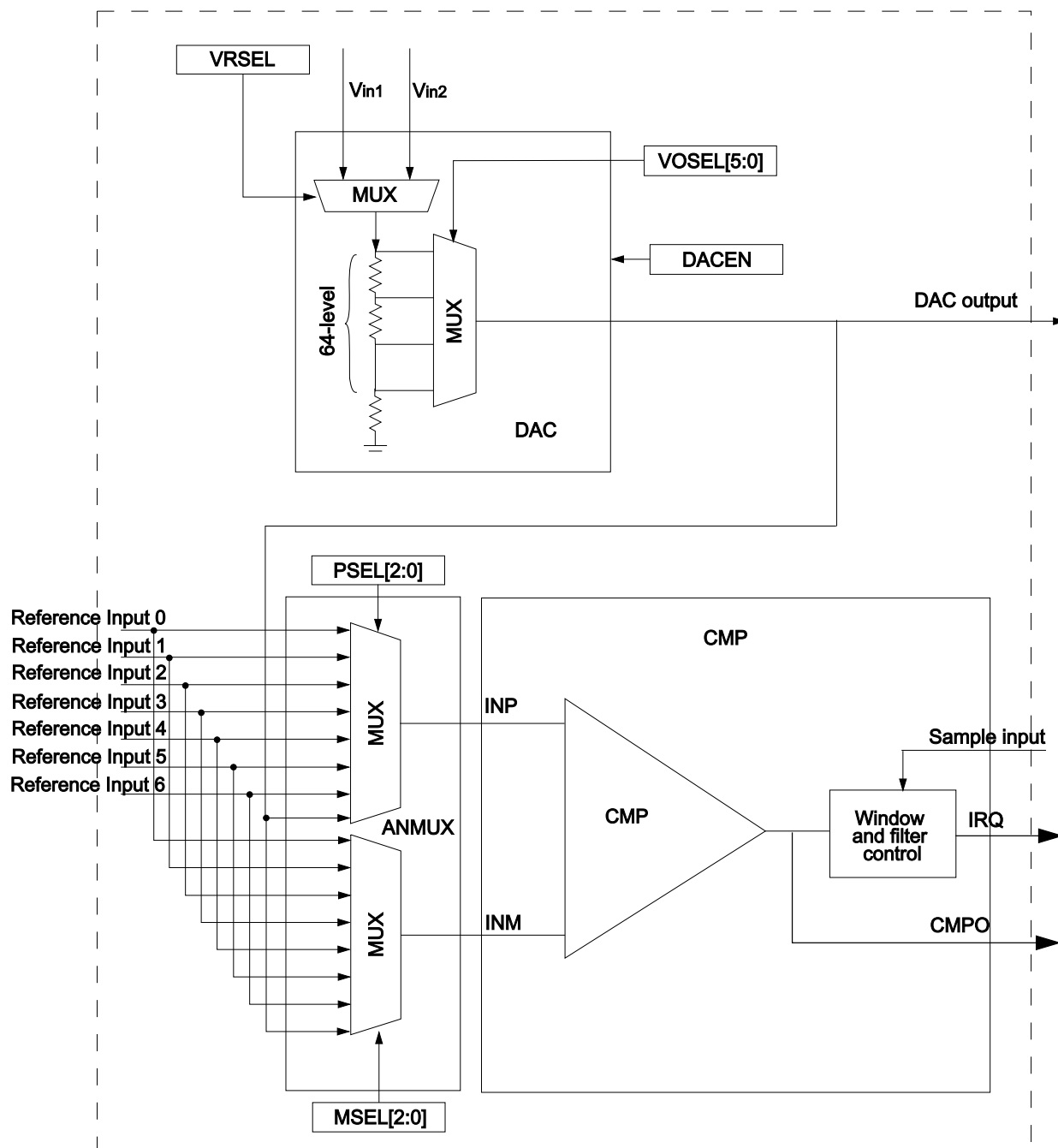


Figure 41-1. CMP, DAC and ANMUX block diagram

41.2.5 CMP block diagram

The following figure shows the block diagram for the CMP module.

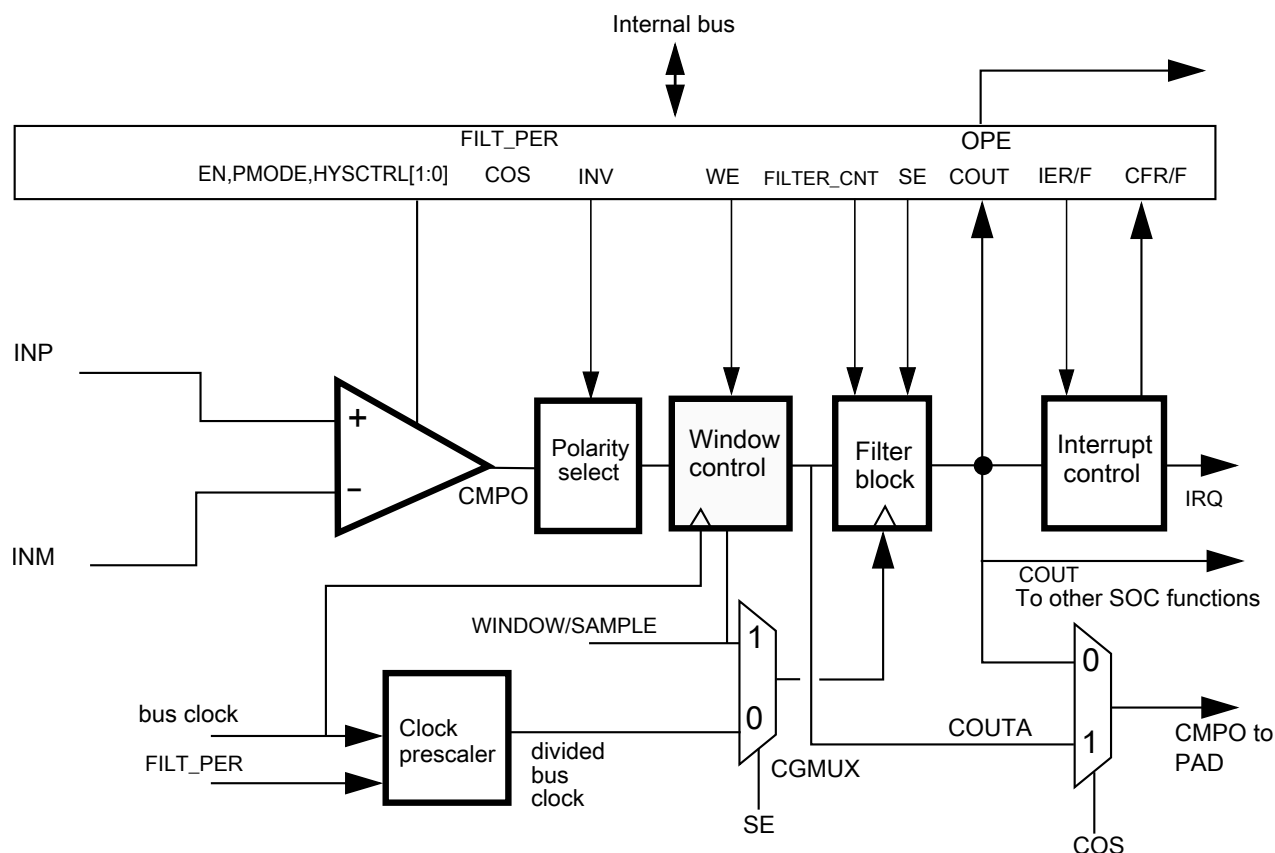


Figure 41-2. Comparator module block diagram

In the CMP block diagram:

- The Window Control block is bypassed when $CR1[WE] = 0$
- If $CR1[WE] = 1$, the comparator output will be sampled on every bus clock when $WINDOW=1$ to generate $COUTA$. Sampling does NOT occur when $WINDOW = 0$.
- The Filter block is bypassed when not in use.
- The Filter block acts as a simple sampler if the filter is bypassed and $CR0[FILTER_CNT]$ is set to $0x01$.
- The Filter block filters based on multiple samples when the filter is bypassed and $CR0[FILTER_CNT]$ is set greater than $0x01$.
 - If $CR1[SE] = 1$, the external $SAMPLE$ input is used as sampling clock
 - If $CR1[SE] = 0$, the divided bus clock is used as sampling clock

- If enabled, the Filter block will incur up to one bus clock additional latency penalty on COUT due to the fact that COUT, which is crossing clock domain boundaries, must be resynchronized to the bus clock.
- CR1[WE] and CR1[SE] are mutually exclusive.

41.3 Memory map/register definitions

CMP memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4007_3000	CMP Control Register 0 (CMP0_CR0)	8	R/W	00h	41.3.1/1041
4007_3001	CMP Control Register 1 (CMP0_CR1)	8	R/W	00h	41.3.2/1041
4007_3002	CMP Filter Period Register (CMP0_FPR)	8	R/W	00h	41.3.3/1043
4007_3003	CMP Status and Control Register (CMP0_SCR)	8	R/W	00h	41.3.4/1043
4007_3004	DAC Control Register (CMP0_DACCR)	8	R/W	00h	41.3.5/1044
4007_3005	MUX Control Register (CMP0_MUXCR)	8	R/W	00h	41.3.6/1045
4007_3008	CMP Control Register 0 (CMP1_CR0)	8	R/W	00h	41.3.1/1041
4007_3009	CMP Control Register 1 (CMP1_CR1)	8	R/W	00h	41.3.2/1041
4007_300A	CMP Filter Period Register (CMP1_FPR)	8	R/W	00h	41.3.3/1043
4007_300B	CMP Status and Control Register (CMP1_SCR)	8	R/W	00h	41.3.4/1043
4007_300C	DAC Control Register (CMP1_DACCR)	8	R/W	00h	41.3.5/1044
4007_300D	MUX Control Register (CMP1_MUXCR)	8	R/W	00h	41.3.6/1045
4007_3010	CMP Control Register 0 (CMP2_CR0)	8	R/W	00h	41.3.1/1041
4007_3011	CMP Control Register 1 (CMP2_CR1)	8	R/W	00h	41.3.2/1041
4007_3012	CMP Filter Period Register (CMP2_FPR)	8	R/W	00h	41.3.3/1043
4007_3013	CMP Status and Control Register (CMP2_SCR)	8	R/W	00h	41.3.4/1043
4007_3014	DAC Control Register (CMP2_DACCR)	8	R/W	00h	41.3.5/1044
4007_3015	MUX Control Register (CMP2_MUXCR)	8	R/W	00h	41.3.6/1045
4007_3018	CMP Control Register 0 (CMP3_CR0)	8	R/W	00h	41.3.1/1041
4007_3019	CMP Control Register 1 (CMP3_CR1)	8	R/W	00h	41.3.2/1041
4007_301A	CMP Filter Period Register (CMP3_FPR)	8	R/W	00h	41.3.3/1043
4007_301B	CMP Status and Control Register (CMP3_SCR)	8	R/W	00h	41.3.4/1043
4007_301C	DAC Control Register (CMP3_DACCR)	8	R/W	00h	41.3.5/1044
4007_301D	MUX Control Register (CMP3_MUXCR)	8	R/W	00h	41.3.6/1045

41.3.1 CMP Control Register 0 (CMPx_CR0)

Address: Base address + 0h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	FILTER_CNT				0	0	HYSTCTR
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

CMPx_CR0 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
6–4 FILTER_CNT	Filter Sample Count Represents the number of consecutive samples that must agree prior to the comparator output filter accepting a new output state. For information regarding filter programming and latency, see the Functional description . 000 Filter is disabled. If SE = 1, then COUT is a logic 0. This is not a legal state, and is not recommended. If SE = 0, COUT = COUTA. 001 One sample must agree. The comparator output is simply sampled. 010 2 consecutive samples must agree. 011 3 consecutive samples must agree. 100 4 consecutive samples must agree. 101 5 consecutive samples must agree. 110 6 consecutive samples must agree. 111 7 consecutive samples must agree.
3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
HYSTCTR	Comparator hard block hysteresis control Defines the programmable hysteresis level. The hysteresis values associated with each level are device-specific. See the Data Sheet of the device for the exact values. 00 Level 0 01 Level 1 10 Level 2 11 Level 3

41.3.2 CMP Control Register 1 (CMPx_CR1)

Address: Base address + 1h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	SE	WE	TRIGM	PMODE	INV	COS	OPE	EN
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

CMPx_CR1 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 SE	<p>Sample Enable</p> <p>At any given time, either SE or WE can be set. It is mandatory request to not set SE and WE both at a given time.</p> <p>0 Sampling mode is not selected. 1 Sampling mode is selected.</p>
6 WE	<p>Windowing Enable</p> <p>At any given time, either SE or WE can be set. It is mandatory request to not set SE and WE both at a given time.</p> <p>0 Windowing mode is not selected. 1 Windowing mode is selected.</p>
5 TRIGM	<p>Trigger Mode Enable</p> <p>CMP and DAC are configured to CMP Trigger mode when CMP_CR1[TRIGM] is set to 1. In addition, the CMP should be enabled. If the DAC is to be used as a reference to the CMP, it should also be enabled.</p> <p>CMP Trigger mode depends on an external timer resource to periodically enable the CMP and 6-bit DAC in order to generate a triggered compare.</p> <p>Upon setting TRIGM, the CMP and DAC are placed in a standby state until an external timer resource trigger is received.</p> <p>See the chip configuration for details about the external timer resource.</p> <p>0 Trigger mode is disabled. 1 Trigger mode is enabled.</p>
4 PMODE	<p>Power Mode Select</p> <p>See the electrical specifications table in the device Data Sheet for details.</p> <p>0 Low-Speed (LS) Comparison mode selected. In this mode, CMP has slower output propagation delay and lower current consumption. 1 High-Speed (HS) Comparison mode selected. In this mode, CMP has faster output propagation delay and higher current consumption.</p>
3 INV	<p>Comparator INVERT</p> <p>Allows selection of the polarity of the analog comparator function. It is also driven to the COUT output, on both the device pin and as SCR[COUT], when OPE=0.</p> <p>0 Does not invert the comparator output. 1 Inverts the comparator output.</p>
2 COS	<p>Comparator Output Select</p> <p>0 Set the filtered comparator output (CMPO) to equal COUT. 1 Set the unfiltered comparator output (CMPO) to equal COUTA.</p>
1 OPE	<p>Comparator Output Pin Enable</p> <p>0 CMPO is not available on the associated CMPO output pin. If the comparator does not own the pin, this field has no effect. 1 CMPO is available on the associated CMPO output pin.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

CMPx_CR1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	The comparator output (CMPO) is driven out on the associated CMPO output pin if the comparator owns the pin. If the comparator does not own the field, this bit has no effect.
0 EN	<p>Comparator Module Enable</p> <p>Enables the Analog Comparator module. When the module is not enabled, it remains in the off state, and consumes no power. When the user selects the same input from analog mux to the positive and negative port, the comparator is disabled automatically.</p> <p>0 Analog Comparator is disabled. 1 Analog Comparator is enabled.</p>

41.3.3 CMP Filter Period Register (CMPx_FPR)

Address: Base address + 2h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read								
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

CMPx_FPR field descriptions

Field	Description
FILT_PER	<p>Filter Sample Period</p> <p>Specifies the sampling period, in bus clock cycles, of the comparator output filter, when CR1[SE]=0. Setting FILT_PER to 0x0 disables the filter. Filter programming and latency details appear in the Functional description.</p> <p>This field has no effect when CR1[SE]=1. In that case, the external SAMPLE signal is used to determine the sampling period.</p>

41.3.4 CMP Status and Control Register (CMPx_SCR)

Address: Base address + 3h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		0			CFR	CFF	COUT
Write		DMAEN		IER	IEF	w1c	w1c	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

CMPx_SCR field descriptions

Field	Description
7 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

CMPx_SCR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
6 DMAEN	<p>DMA Enable Control</p> <p>Enables the DMA transfer triggered from the CMP module. When this field is set, a DMA request is asserted when CFR or CFF is set.</p> <p>0 DMA is disabled. 1 DMA is enabled.</p>
5 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
4 IER	<p>Comparator Interrupt Enable Rising</p> <p>Enables the CFR interrupt from the CMP. When this field is set, an interrupt will be asserted when CFR is set.</p> <p>0 Interrupt is disabled. 1 Interrupt is enabled.</p>
3 IEF	<p>Comparator Interrupt Enable Falling</p> <p>Enables the CFF interrupt from the CMP. When this field is set, an interrupt will be asserted when CFF is set.</p> <p>0 Interrupt is disabled. 1 Interrupt is enabled.</p>
2 CFR	<p>Analog Comparator Flag Rising</p> <p>Detects a rising-edge on COUT, when set, during normal operation. CFR is cleared by writing 1 to it. During Stop modes, CFR is edge sensitive .</p> <p>0 Rising-edge on COUT has not been detected. 1 Rising-edge on COUT has occurred.</p>
1 CFF	<p>Analog Comparator Flag Falling</p> <p>Detects a falling-edge on COUT, when set, during normal operation. CFF is cleared by writing 1 to it. During Stop modes, CFF is edge sensitive .</p> <p>0 Falling-edge on COUT has not been detected. 1 Falling-edge on COUT has occurred.</p>
0 COUT	<p>Analog Comparator Output</p> <p>Returns the current value of the Analog Comparator output, when read. The field is reset to 0 and will read as CR1[INV] when the Analog Comparator module is disabled, that is, when CR1[EN] = 0. Writes to this field are ignored.</p>

41.3.5 DAC Control Register (CMPx_DACCR)

Address: Base address + 4h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	DACEN	VRSEL						
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

CMPx_DACCR field descriptions

Field	Description
7 DACEN	DAC Enable Enables the DAC. When the DAC is disabled, it is powered down to conserve power. 0 DAC is disabled. 1 DAC is enabled.
6 VRSEL	Supply Voltage Reference Source Select 0 V_{in1} is selected as resistor ladder network supply reference. 1 V_{in2} is selected as resistor ladder network supply reference.
VOSEL	DAC Output Voltage Select Selects an output voltage from one of 64 distinct levels. $DACO = (V_{in} / 64) * (VOSEL[5:0] + 1)$, so the DACO range is from $V_{in} / 64$ to V_{in} .

41.3.6 MUX Control Register (CMPx_MUXCR)

Address: Base address + 5h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	Reserved	0						
Write				PSEL			MSEL	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

CMPx_MUXCR field descriptions

Field	Description
7 Reserved	Bit can be programmed to zero only . This field is reserved.
6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
5–3 PSEL	Plus Input Mux Control Determines which input is selected for the plus input of the comparator. For INx inputs, see CMP, DAC, and ANMUX block diagrams. NOTE: When an inappropriate operation selects the same input for both muxes, the comparator automatically shuts down to prevent itself from becoming a noise generator. 000 IN0 001 IN1 010 IN2 011 IN3 100 IN4 101 IN5 110 IN6 111 IN7

Table continues on the next page...

CMPx_MUXCR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description																
MSEL	<p>Minus Input Mux Control</p> <p>Determines which input is selected for the minus input of the comparator. For INx inputs, see CMP, DAC, and ANMUX block diagrams.</p> <p>NOTE: When an inappropriate operation selects the same input for both muxes, the comparator automatically shuts down to prevent itself from becoming a noise generator.</p> <table> <tr><td>000</td><td>IN0</td></tr> <tr><td>001</td><td>IN1</td></tr> <tr><td>010</td><td>IN2</td></tr> <tr><td>011</td><td>IN3</td></tr> <tr><td>100</td><td>IN4</td></tr> <tr><td>101</td><td>IN5</td></tr> <tr><td>110</td><td>IN6</td></tr> <tr><td>111</td><td>IN7</td></tr> </table>	000	IN0	001	IN1	010	IN2	011	IN3	100	IN4	101	IN5	110	IN6	111	IN7
000	IN0																
001	IN1																
010	IN2																
011	IN3																
100	IN4																
101	IN5																
110	IN6																
111	IN7																

41.4 Functional description

The CMP module can be used to compare two analog input voltages applied to INP and INM.

CMPO is high when the non-inverting input is greater than the inverting input, and is low when the non-inverting input is less than the inverting input. This signal can be selectively inverted by setting CR1[INV] = 1.

SCR[IER] and SCR[IEF] are used to select the condition which will cause the CMP module to assert an interrupt to the processor. SCR[CFF] is set on a falling-edge and SCR[CFR] is set on rising-edge of the comparator output. The optionally filtered CMPO can be read directly through SCR[COOUT].

41.4.1 CMP functional modes

There are the following main sub-blocks to the CMP module:

- The comparator itself
- The window function
- The filter function

The filter, CR0[FILTER_CNT], can be clocked from an internal or external clock source. The filter is programmable with respect to the number of samples that must agree before a change in the output is registered. In the simplest case, only one sample must agree. In this case, the filter acts as a simple sampler.

The external sample input is enabled using CR1[SE]. When set, the output of the comparator is sampled only on rising edges of the sample input.

The "windowing mode" is enabled by setting CR1[WE]. When set, the comparator output is sampled only when WINDOW=1. This feature can be used to ignore the comparator output during time periods in which the input voltages are not valid. This is especially useful when implementing zero-crossing-detection for certain PWM applications.

The comparator filter and sampling features can be combined as shown in the following table. Individual modes are discussed below.

Table 41-2. Comparator sample/filter controls

Mode #	CR1[EN]	CR1[WE]	CR1[SE]	CR0[FILTER_CNT]	FPR[FILT_PER]	Operation
1	0	X	X	X	X	Disabled See the Disabled mode (# 1) .
2A	1	0	0	0x00	X	Continuous Mode See the Continuous mode (#s 2A & 2B) .
2B	1	0	0	X	0x00	
3A	1	0	1	0x01	X	Sampled, Non-Filtered mode See the Sampled, Non-Filtered mode (#s 3A & 3B) .
3B	1	0	0	0x01	> 0x00	
4A	1	0	1	> 0x01	X	Sampled, Filtered mode See the Sampled, Filtered mode (#s 4A & 4B) .
4B	1	0	0	> 0x01	> 0x00	
5A	1	1	0	0x00	X	Windowed mode Comparator output is sampled on every rising bus clock edge when SAMPLE=1 to generate COUTA. See the Windowed mode (#s 5A & 5B) .
5B	1	1	0	X	0x00	
6	1	1	0	0x01	0x01–0xFF	Windowed/Resampled mode Comparator output is sampled on every rising bus clock edge when SAMPLE=1 to generate COUTA, which is then resampled on an interval determined by FILT_PER to generate COUT. See the Windowed/Resampled mode (# 6) .
7	1	1	0	> 0x01	0x01–0xFF	Windowed/Filtered mode

Table continues on the next page...

Table 41-2. Comparator sample/filter controls (continued)

Mode #	CR1[EN]	CR1[WE]	CR1[SE]	CR0[FILTER_CNT]	FPR[FILT_PER]	Operation
						Comparator output is sampled on every rising bus clock edge when SAMPLE=1 to generate COUTA, which is then resampled and filtered to generate COUT. See the Windowed/Filtered mode (#7) .
All other combinations of CR1[EN], CR1[WE], CR1[SE], CR0[FILTER_CNT], and FPR[FILT_PER] are illegal.						

For cases where a comparator is used to drive a fault input, for example, for a motor-control module such as FTM, it must be configured to operate in Continuous mode so that an external fault can immediately pass through the comparator to the target fault circuitry.

Note

Filtering and sampling settings must be changed only after setting CR1[SE]=0 and CR0[FILTER_CNT]=0x00. This resets the filter to a known state.

41.4.1.1 Disabled mode (# 1)

In Disabled mode, the analog comparator is non-functional and consumes no power. CMPO is 0 in this mode.

41.4.1.2 Continuous mode (#s 2A & 2B)

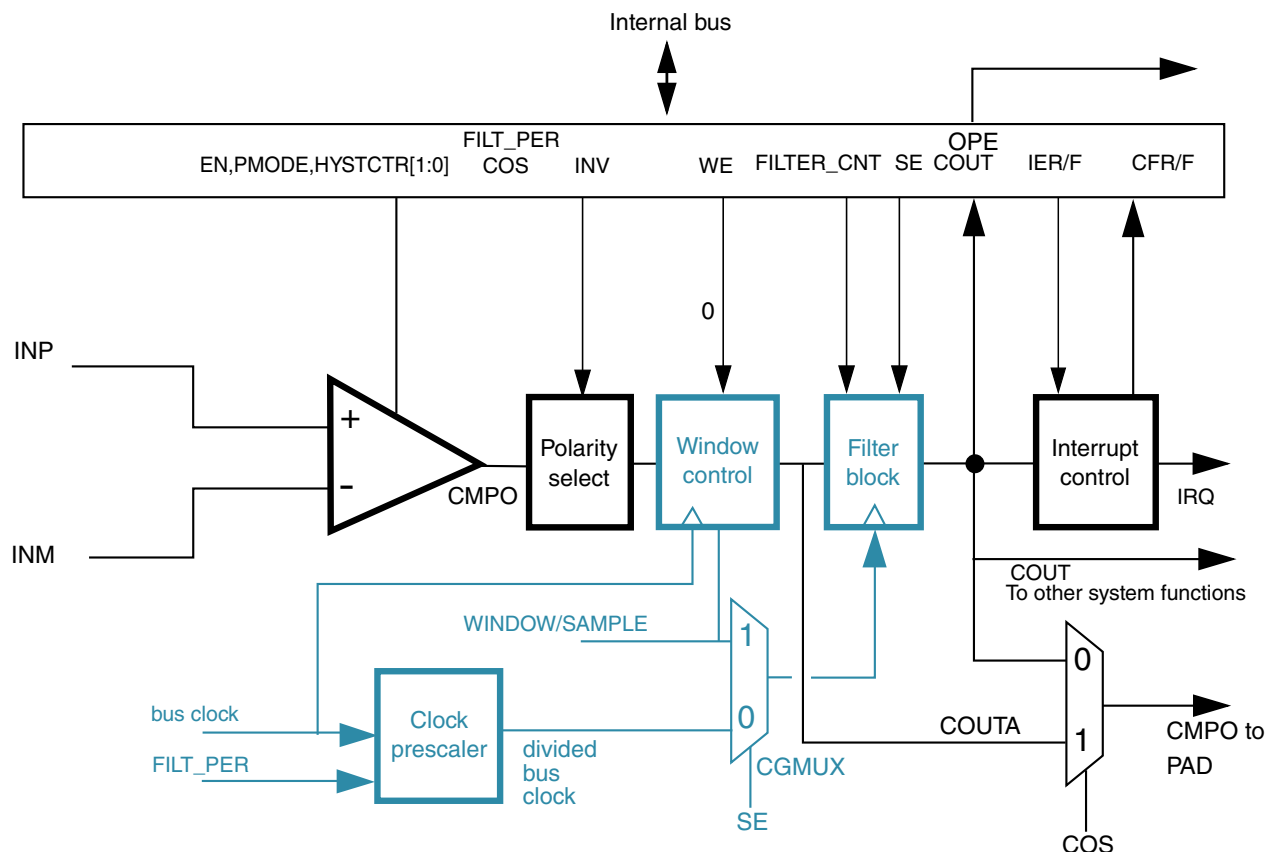


Figure 41-3. Comparator operation in Continuous mode

The analog comparator block is powered and active. CMPO may be optionally inverted, but is not subject to external sampling or filtering. Both window control and filter blocks are completely bypassed. SCR[COUT] is updated continuously. The path from comparator input pins to output pin is operating in combinational unlocked mode. COUT and COUTA are identical.

For control configurations which result in disabling the filter block, see the [Filter Block Bypass Logic](#) diagram.

41.4.1.3 Sampled, Non-Filtered mode (#s 3A & 3B)

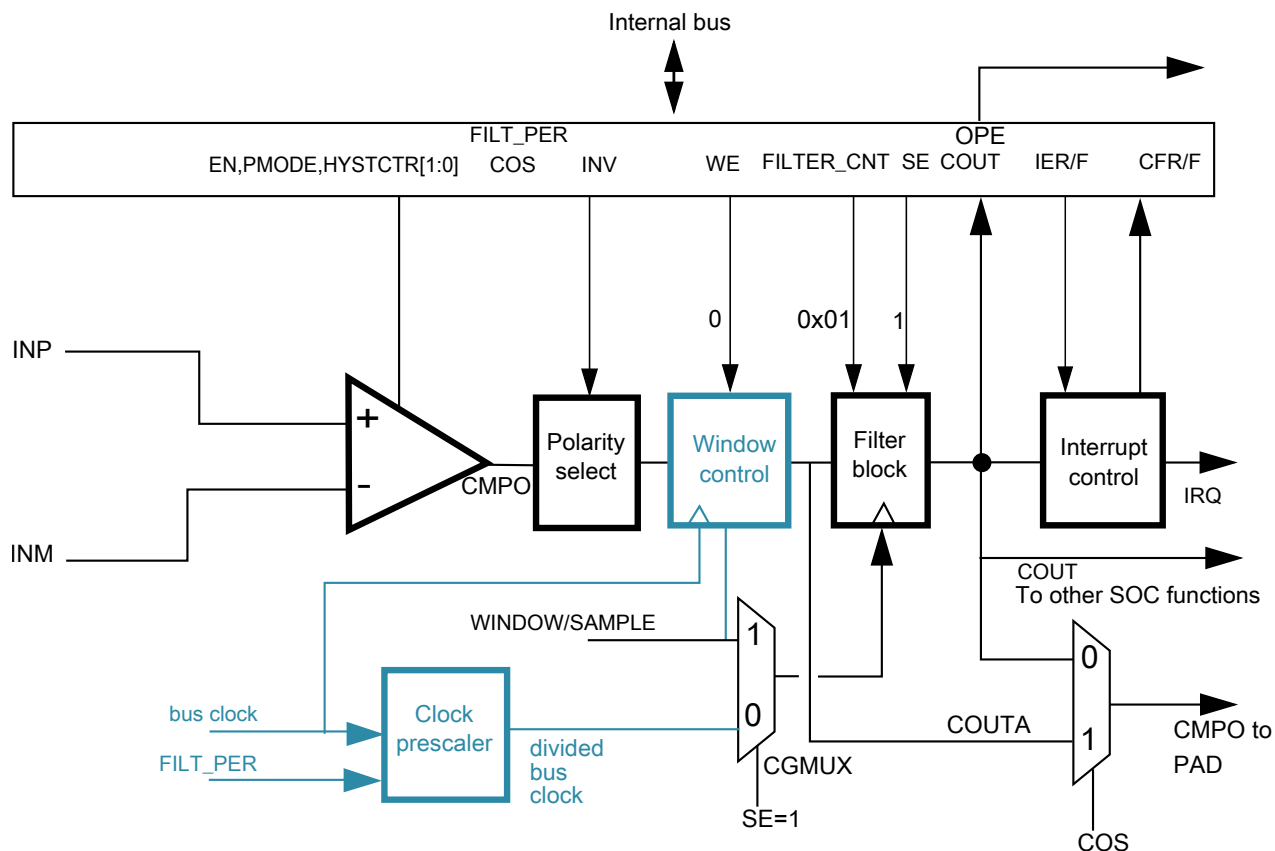


Figure 41-4. Sampled, Non-Filtered (# 3A): sampling point externally driven

In Sampled, Non-Filtered mode, the analog comparator block is powered and active. The path from analog inputs to COUTA is combinational unclocked. Windowing control is completely bypassed. COUTA is sampled whenever a rising-edge is detected on the filter block clock input.

The only difference in operation between Sampled, Non-Filtered (# 3A) and Sampled, Non-Filtered (# 3B) is in how the clock to the filter block is derived. In #3A, the clock to filter block is externally derived while in #3B, the clock to filter block is internally derived.

The comparator filter has no other function than sample/hold of the comparator output in this mode (# 3B).

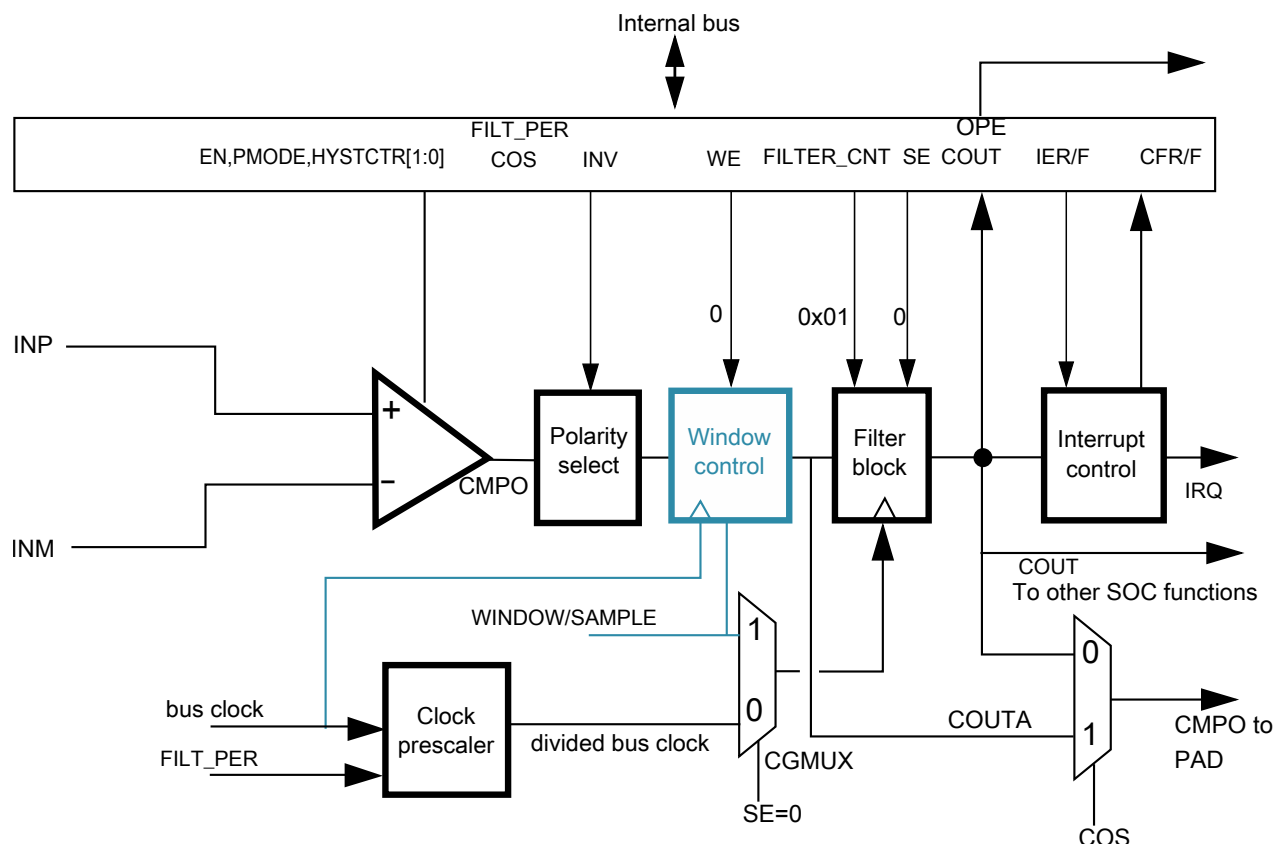
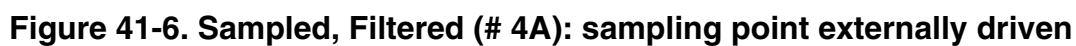


Figure 41-5. Sampled, Non-Filtered (# 3B): sampling interval internally derived

41.4.1.4 Sampled, Filtered mode (#s 4A & 4B)

In Sampled, Filtered mode, the analog comparator block is powered and active. The path from analog inputs to COUTA is combinational unlocked. Windowing control is completely bypassed. COUTA is sampled whenever a rising edge is detected on the filter block clock input.

The only difference in operation between Sampled, Non-Filtered (# 3A) and Sampled, Filtered (# 4A) is that, now, $CR0[FILTER_CNT] > 1$, which activates filter operation.



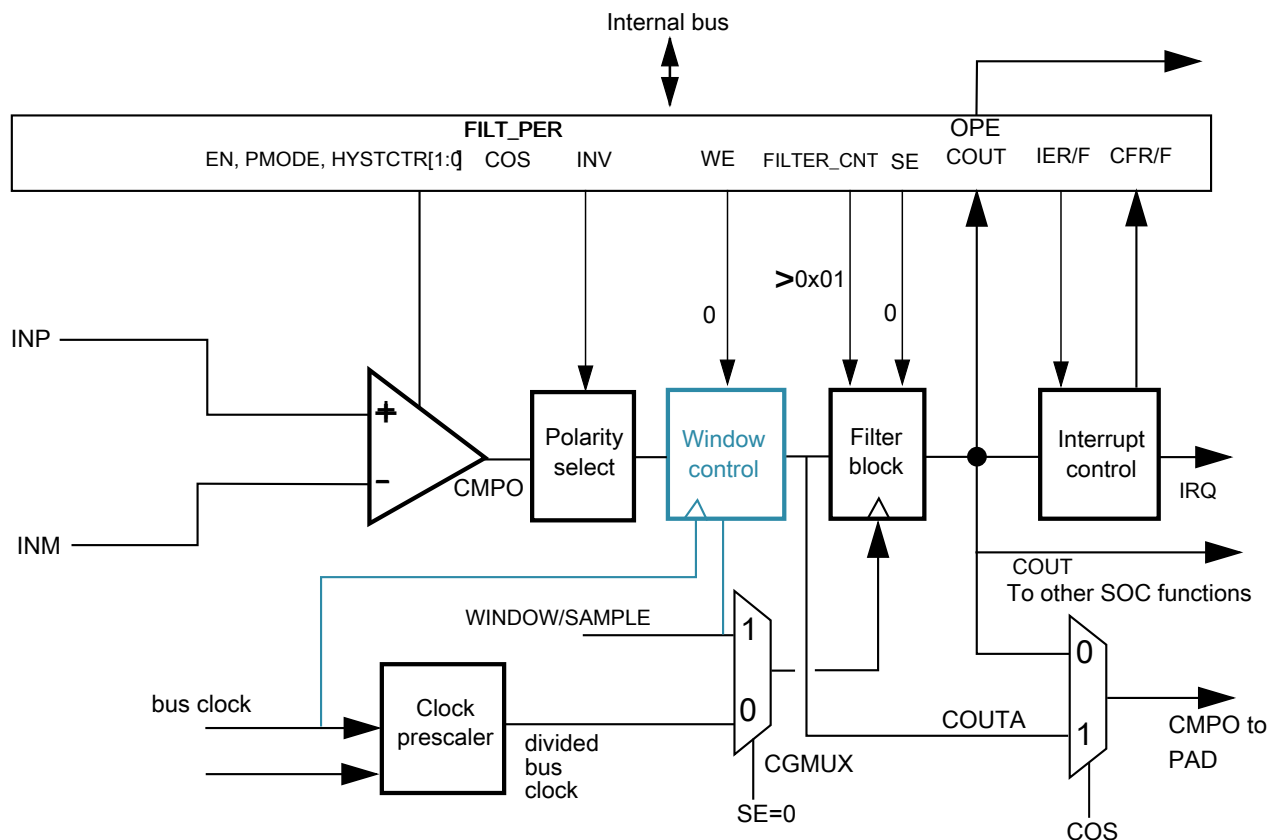


Figure 41-7. Sampled, Filtered (# 4B): sampling point internally derived

The only difference in operation between Sampled, Non-Filtered (# 3B) and Sampled, Filtered (# 4B) is that now, $CR0[FILTER_CNT] > 1$, which activates filter operation.

41.4.1.5 Windowed mode (#s 5A & 5B)

The following figure illustrates comparator operation in the Windowed mode, ignoring latency of the analog comparator, polarity select, and window control block. It also assumes that the polarity select is set to non-inverting state.

NOTE

The analog comparator output is passed to COUTA only when the WINDOW signal is high.

In actual operation, COUTA may lag the analog inputs by up to one bus clock cycle plus the combinational path delay through the comparator and polarity select logic.

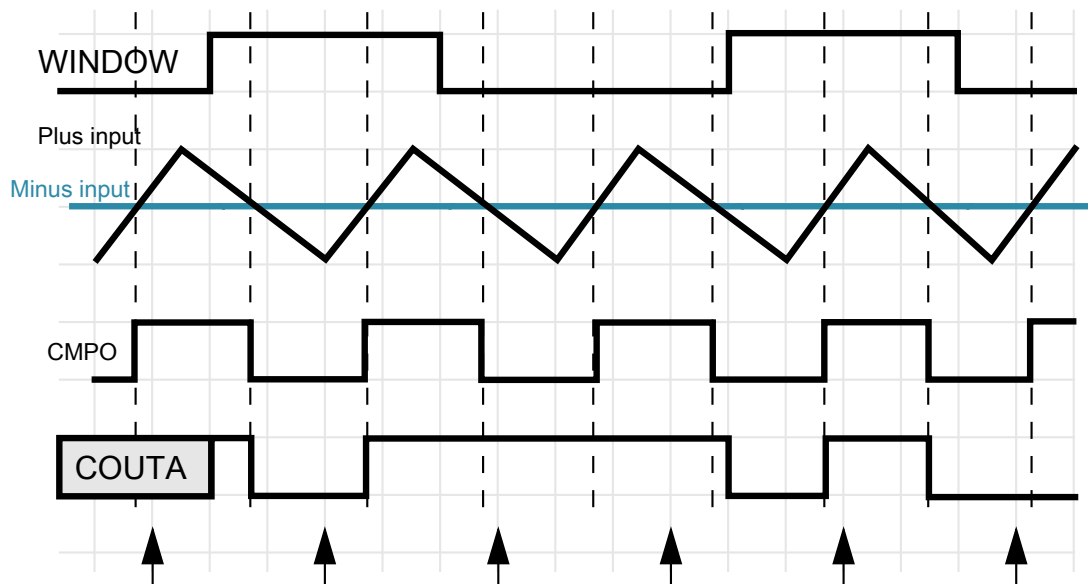


Figure 41-8. Windowed mode operation

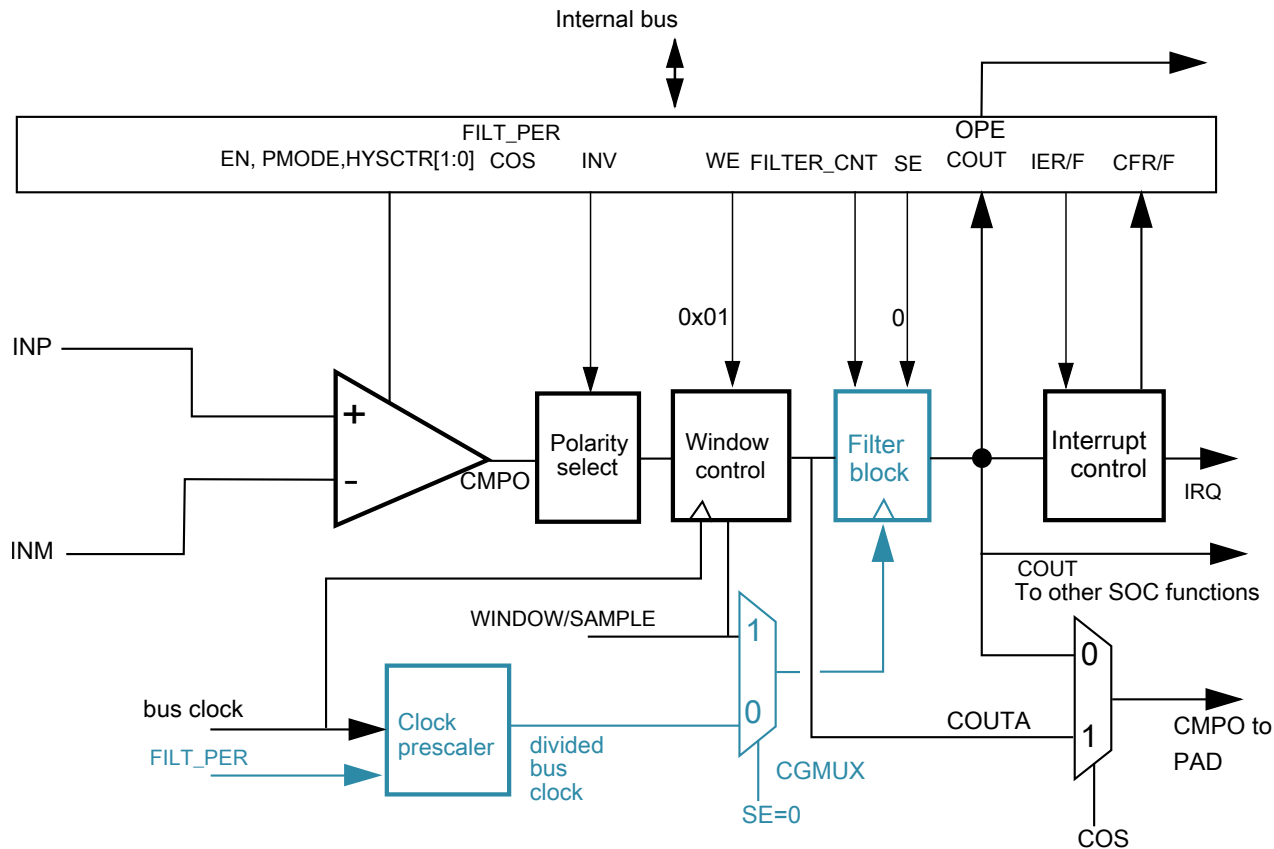


Figure 41-9. Windowed mode

For control configurations which result in disabling the filter block, see [Filter Block Bypass Logic](#) diagram.

When any windowed mode is active, COUTA is clocked by the bus clock whenever WINDOW = 1. The last latched value is held when WINDOW = 0.

41.4.1.6 Windowed/Resampled mode (# 6)

The following figure uses the same input stimulus shown in Figure 41-8, and adds resampling of COUTA to generate COUT. Samples are taken at the time points indicated by the arrows in the figure. Again, prop delays and latency are ignored for the sake of clarity.

This example was generated solely to demonstrate operation of the comparator in windowed/resampled mode, and does not reflect any specific application. Depending upon the sampling rate and window placement, COUT may not see zero-crossing events detected by the analog comparator. Sampling period and/or window placement must be carefully considered for a given application.

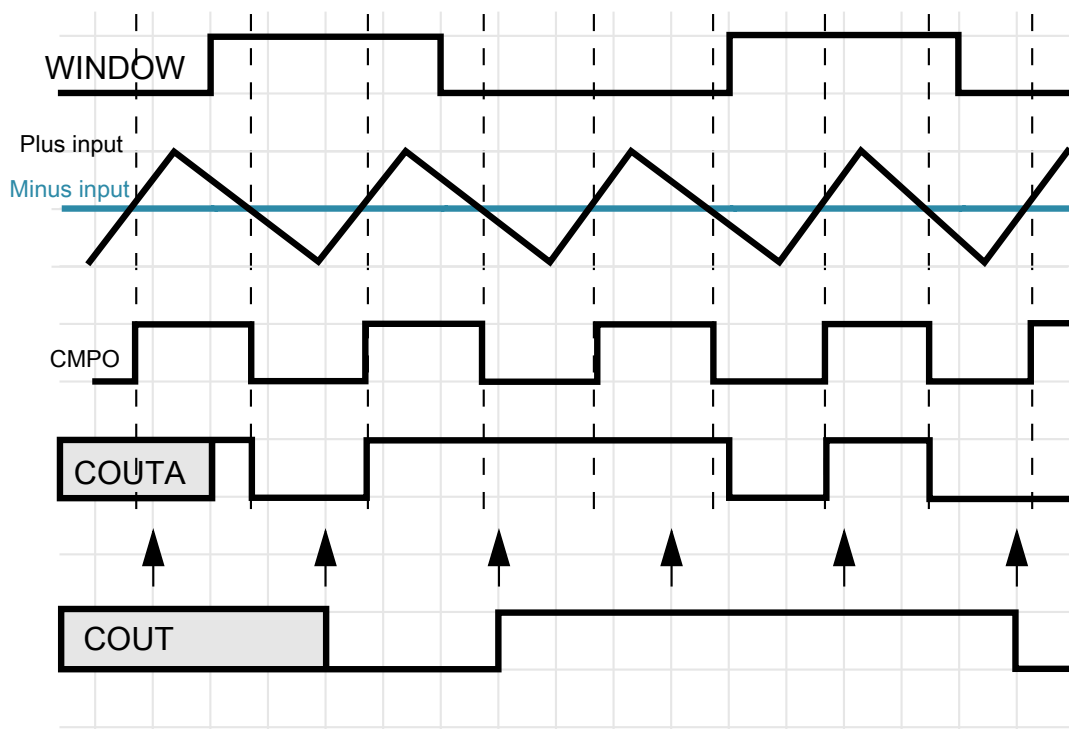


Figure 41-10. Windowed/resampled mode operation

This mode of operation results in an unfiltered string of comparator samples where the interval between the samples is determined by FPR[FILT_PER] and the bus clock rate. Configuration for this mode is virtually identical to that for the Windowed/Filtered Mode shown in the next section. The only difference is that the value of CR0[FILTER_CNT] must be 1.

41.4.1.7 Windowed/Filtered mode (#7)

This is the most complex mode of operation for the comparator block, as it uses both windowing and filtering features. It also has the highest latency of any of the modes. This can be approximated: up to 1 bus clock synchronization in the window function + $((CR0[FILTER_CNT] * FPR[FILT_PER]) + 1) * \text{bus clock}$ for the filter function.

When any windowed mode is active, COUTA is clocked by the bus clock whenever WINDOW = 1. The last latched value is held when WINDOW = 0.

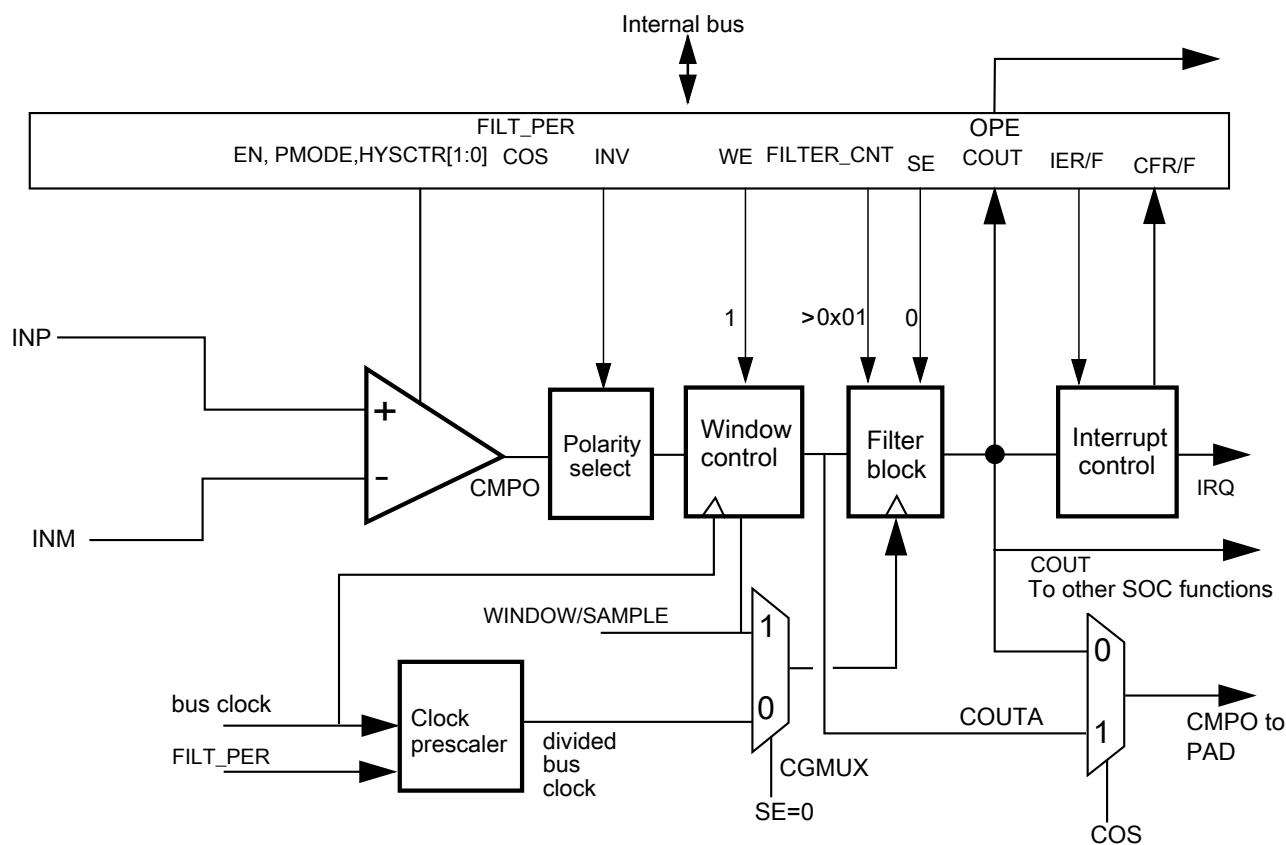


Figure 41-11. Windowed/Filtered mode

41.4.2 Power modes

41.4.2.1 Wait mode operation

During Wait and VLPW modes, the CMP, if enabled, continues to operate normally and a CMP interrupt can wake the MCU.

41.4.2.2 Stop mode operation

Depending on clock restrictions related to the MCU core or core peripherals, the MCU is brought out of stop when a compare event occurs and the corresponding interrupt is enabled. Similarly, if CR1[OPE] is enabled, the comparator output operates as in the normal operating mode and comparator output is placed onto the external pin. In Stop modes, the comparator can be operational in both:

- High-Speed (HS) Comparison mode when CR1[PMODE] = 1
- Low-Speed (LS) Comparison mode when CR1[PMODE] = 0

It is recommended to use the LS mode to minimize power consumption.

If stop is exited with a reset, all comparator registers are put into their reset state.

41.4.2.3 Background Debug Mode Operation

When the microcontroller is in active background debug mode, the CMP continues to operate normally.

41.4.3 Startup and operation

A typical startup sequence is listed here.

- The time required to stabilize COUT will be the power-on delay of the comparators plus the largest propagation delay from a selected analog source through the analog comparator, windowing function and filter. See the Data Sheets for power-on delays of the comparators. The windowing function has a maximum of one bus clock period delay. The filter delay is specified in the [Low-pass filter](#).
- During operation, the propagation delay of the selected data paths must always be considered. It may take many bus clock cycles for COUT and SCR[CFR]/SCR[CFF] to reflect an input change or a configuration change to one of the components involved in the data path.
- When programmed for filtering modes, COUT will initially be equal to 0, until sufficient clock cycles have elapsed to fill all stages of the filter. This occurs even if COUTA is at a logic 1.

41.4.4 Low-pass filter

The low-pass filter operates on the unfiltered and unsynchronized and optionally inverted comparator output COUTA and generates the filtered and synchronized output COUT.

Both COUTA and COUT can be configured as module outputs and are used for different purposes within the system.

Synchronization and edge detection are always used to determine status register bit values. They also apply to COUT for all sampling and windowed modes. Filtering can be performed using an internal timebase defined by FPR[FILT_PER], or using an external SAMPLE input to determine sample time.

The need for digital filtering and the amount of filtering is dependent on user requirements. Filtering can become more useful in the absence of an external hysteresis circuit. Without external hysteresis, high-frequency oscillations can be generated at COUTA when the selected INM and INP input voltages differ by less than the offset voltage of the differential comparator.

41.4.4.1 Enabling filter modes

Filter modes can be enabled by:

- Setting CR0[FILTER_CNT] > 0x01 and
- Setting FPR[FILT_PER] to a nonzero value or setting CR1[SE]=1

If using the divided bus clock to drive the filter, it will take samples of COUTA every FPR[FILT_PER] bus clock cycles.

The filter output will be at logic 0 when first initialized, and will subsequently change when all the consecutive CR0[FILTER_CNT] samples agree that the output value has changed. In other words, SCR[COUT] will be 0 for some initial period, even when COUTA is at logic 1.

Setting both CR1[SE] and FPR[FILT_PER] to 0 disables the filter and eliminates switching current associated with the filtering process.

Note

Always switch to this setting prior to making any changes in filter parameters. This resets the filter to a known state. Switching CR0[FILTER_CNT] on the fly without this intermediate step can result in unexpected behavior.

If CR1[SE]=1, the filter takes samples of COUTA on each positive transition of the sample input. The output state of the filter changes when all the consecutive CR0[FILTER_CNT] samples agree that the output value has changed.

41.4.4.2 Latency issues

The value of FPR[FILT_PER] or SAMPLE period must be set such that the sampling period is just longer than the period of the expected noise. This way a noise spike will corrupt only one sample. The value of CR0[FILTER_CNT] must be chosen to reduce the probability of noisy samples causing an incorrect transition to be recognized. The probability of an incorrect transition is defined as the probability of an incorrect sample raised to the power of CR0[FILTER_CNT].

The values of FPR[FILT_PER] or SAMPLE period and CR0[FILTER_CNT] must also be traded off against the desire for minimal latency in recognizing actual comparator output transitions. The probability of detecting an actual output change within the nominal latency is the probability of a correct sample raised to the power of CR0[FILTER_CNT].

The following table summarizes maximum latency values for the various modes of operation *in the absence of noise*. Filtering latency is restarted each time an actual output transition is masked by noise.

Table 41-3. Comparator sample/filter maximum latencies

Mode #	CR1[EN]	CR1[WE]	CR1[SE]	CR0[FILTER_CNT]	FPR[FILT_PER]	Operation	Maximum latency ¹
1	0	X	X	X	X	Disabled	N/A
2A	1	0	0	0x00	X	Continuous Mode	T_{PD}
2B	1	0	0	X	0x00		
3A	1	0	1	0x01	X	Sampled, Non-Filtered mode	$T_{PD} + T_{SAMPLE} + T_{per}$
3B	1	0	0	0x01	> 0x00		$T_{PD} + (FPR[FILT_PER] * T_{per}) + T_{per}$
4A	1	0	1	> 0x01	X	Sampled, Filtered mode	$T_{PD} + (CR0[FILTER_CNT] * T_{SAMPLE}) + T_{per}$
4B	1	0	0	> 0x01	> 0x00		$T_{PD} + (CR0[FILTER_CNT] * FPR[FILT_PER] * T_{per}) + T_{per}$
5A	1	1	0	0x00	X	Windowed mode	$T_{PD} + T_{per}$
5B	1	1	0	X	0x00		$T_{PD} + T_{per}$
6	1	1	0	0x01	0x01 - 0xFF	Windowed / Resampled mode	$T_{PD} + (FPR[FILT_PER] * T_{per}) + 2T_{per}$
7	1	1	0	> 0x01	0x01 - 0xFF	Windowed / Filtered mode	$T_{PD} + (CR0[FILTER_CNT] * FPR[FILT_PER] * T_{per}) + 2T_{per}$

1. T_{PD} represents the intrinsic delay of the analog component plus the polarity select logic. T_{SAMPLE} is the clock period of the external sample clock. T_{per} is the period of the bus clock.

41.5 CMP interrupts

The CMP module is capable of generating an interrupt on either the rising- or falling-edge of the comparator output, or both.

The following table gives the conditions in which the interrupt request is asserted and deasserted.

When	Then
SCR[IER] and SCR[CFR] are set	The interrupt request is asserted
SCR[IEF] and SCR[CFF] are set	The interrupt request is asserted
SCR[IER] and SCR[CFR] are cleared for a rising-edge interrupt	The interrupt request is deasserted
SCR[IEF] and SCR[CFF] are cleared for a falling-edge interrupt	The interrupt request is deasserted

41.6 DMA support

Normally, the CMP generates a CPU interrupt if there is a change on the COUT. When DMA support is enabled by setting SCR[DMAEN] and the interrupt is enabled by setting SCR[IER], SCR[IEF], or both, the corresponding change on COUT forces a DMA transfer request rather than a CPU interrupt instead. When the DMA has completed the transfer, it sends a transfer completing indicator that deasserts the DMA transfer request and clears the flag to allow a subsequent change on comparator output to occur and force another DMA request.

The comparator can remain functional in STOP modes.

When DMA support is enabled by setting SCR[DMAEN] and the interrupt is enabled by setting SCR[IER], SCR[IEF], or both, the corresponding change on COUT forces a DMA transfer request to wake up the system from STOP modes. After the data transfer has finished, system will go back to STOP modes. Refer to DMA chapters in the device reference manual for the asynchronous DMA function for details.

41.7 CMP Asynchronous DMA support

The comparator can remain functional in STOP modes.

When DMA support is enabled by setting SCR[DMAEN] and the interrupt is enabled by setting SCR[IER], SCR[IEF], or both, the corresponding change on COUT forces a DMA transfer request to wake up the system from STOP modes. After the data transfer has finished, system will go back to STOP modes. Refer to DMA chapters in the device reference manual for the asynchronous DMA function for details.

41.8 Digital-to-analog converter

The figure found here shows the block diagram of the DAC module.

It contains a 64-tap resistor ladder network and a 64-to-1 multiplexer, which selects an output voltage from one of 64 distinct levels that outputs from DACO. It is controlled through the DAC Control Register (DACCR). Its supply reference source can be selected from two sources V_{in1} and V_{in2} . The module can be powered down or disabled when not in use. When in Disabled mode, DACO is connected to the analog ground.

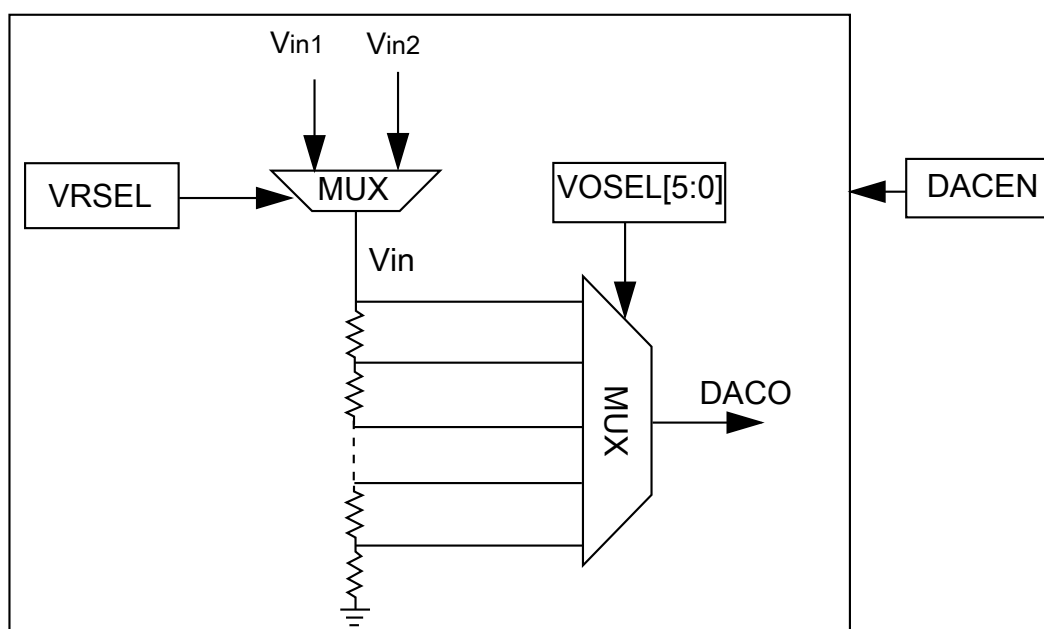


Figure 41-12. 6-bit DAC block diagram

41.9 DAC functional description

This section provides DAC functional description information.

41.9.1 Voltage reference source select

- V_{in1} connects to the primary voltage source as supply reference of 64 tap resistor ladder
- V_{in2} connects to an alternate voltage source

41.10 DAC resets

This module has a single reset input, corresponding to the chip-wide peripheral reset.

41.11 DAC clocks

This module has a single clock input, the bus clock.

41.12 DAC interrupts

This module has no interrupts.

41.13 CMP Trigger Mode

CMP and DAC are configured to CMP Trigger mode when `CMP_CR1[TRIGM]` is set to 1.

In addition, the CMP must be enabled. If the DAC is to be used as a reference to the CMP, it must also be enabled.

CMP Trigger mode depends on an external timer resource to periodically enable the CMP and 6-bit DAC in order to generate a triggered compare.

Upon setting `TRIGM`, the CMP and DAC are placed in a standby state until an external timer resource trigger is received.

Chapter 42

12-bit Digital-to-Analog Converter (DAC)

42.1 Chip-specific DAC information

42.1.1 12-bit DAC Instantiation Information

This device contains one 12-bit digital-to-analog converter (DAC) with programmable reference generator output. The DAC includes a 16 deep 12bit FIFO for DMA support.

DAC0_OUT signal is connected to CMP3_IN3 and CMP1_IN3/PTE30.

DAC0_buffer_limit output signal feeds DMAUX source 45.

DAC_12B_SYNC input signals is connected to XBARA_OUT15, PDB0_DAC_trig, and PDB1_DAC_trig outputs.

42.1.2 12-bit DAC Output

The output of the DAC can be placed on an external pin or selected as an input to the analog comparator or ADC.

42.1.3 12-bit DAC Reference

For this device VREFH and VDDA are selectable as the DAC reference. VREFH is connected to the DACREF_1 input and VDDA is connected to the DACREF_2 input. Use DACx_C0[DACRFS] control bit to select between these two options.

NOTE

It must be noted that if the DAC and ADC use the same reference simultaneously, some degradation of ADC accuracy is to be expected due to DAC switching.

42.2 Introduction

The 12-bit digital-to-analog converter (DAC) is a low-power, general-purpose DAC. The output of the DAC can be placed on an external pin or set as one of the inputs to the analog comparator, op-amps, or ADC.

42.3 Features

The features of the DAC module include:

- On-chip programmable reference generator output. The voltage output range is from $1/4096 V_{in}$ to V_{in} , and the step is $1/4096 V_{in}$, where V_{in} is the input voltage.
- V_{in} can be selected from two reference sources
- Static operation in Normal Stop mode
- 16-word data buffer supported with configurable watermark and multiple operation modes
- DMA support

42.4 Block diagram

The block diagram of the DAC module is as follows:

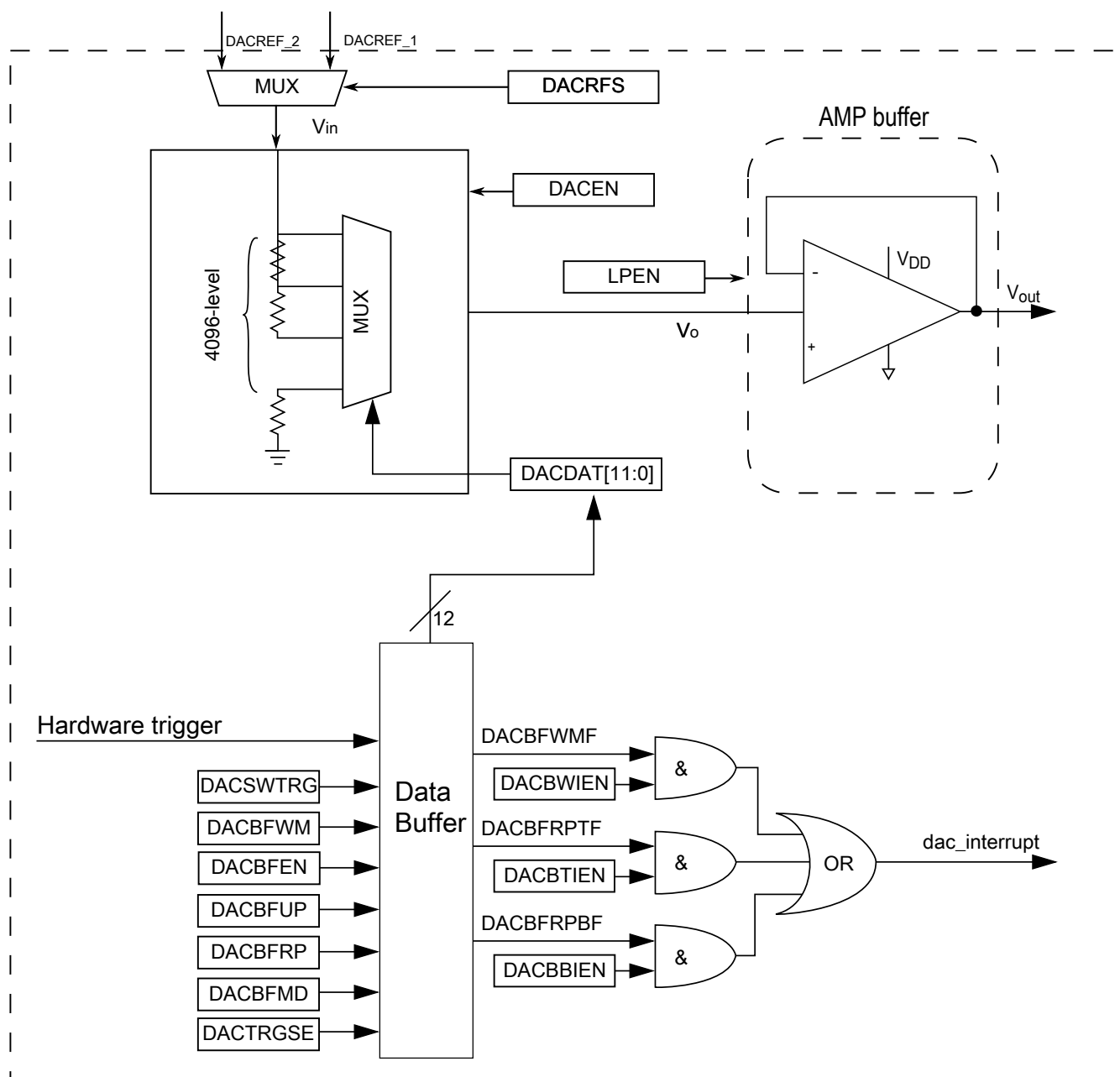


Figure 42-1. DAC block diagram

42.5 Memory map/register definition

The DAC has registers to control analog comparator and programmable voltage divider to perform the digital-to-analog functions.

DAC memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4003_F000	DAC Data Low Register (DAC0_DAT0L)	8	R/W	00h	42.5.1/1067
4003_F001	DAC Data High Register (DAC0_DAT0H)	8	R/W	00h	42.5.2/1067
4003_F002	DAC Data Low Register (DAC0_DAT1L)	8	R/W	00h	42.5.1/1067
4003_F003	DAC Data High Register (DAC0_DAT1H)	8	R/W	00h	42.5.2/1067
4003_F004	DAC Data Low Register (DAC0_DAT2L)	8	R/W	00h	42.5.1/1067
4003_F005	DAC Data High Register (DAC0_DAT2H)	8	R/W	00h	42.5.2/1067
4003_F006	DAC Data Low Register (DAC0_DAT3L)	8	R/W	00h	42.5.1/1067
4003_F007	DAC Data High Register (DAC0_DAT3H)	8	R/W	00h	42.5.2/1067
4003_F008	DAC Data Low Register (DAC0_DAT4L)	8	R/W	00h	42.5.1/1067
4003_F009	DAC Data High Register (DAC0_DAT4H)	8	R/W	00h	42.5.2/1067
4003_F00A	DAC Data Low Register (DAC0_DAT5L)	8	R/W	00h	42.5.1/1067
4003_F00B	DAC Data High Register (DAC0_DAT5H)	8	R/W	00h	42.5.2/1067
4003_F00C	DAC Data Low Register (DAC0_DAT6L)	8	R/W	00h	42.5.1/1067
4003_F00D	DAC Data High Register (DAC0_DAT6H)	8	R/W	00h	42.5.2/1067
4003_F00E	DAC Data Low Register (DAC0_DAT7L)	8	R/W	00h	42.5.1/1067
4003_F00F	DAC Data High Register (DAC0_DAT7H)	8	R/W	00h	42.5.2/1067
4003_F010	DAC Data Low Register (DAC0_DAT8L)	8	R/W	00h	42.5.1/1067
4003_F011	DAC Data High Register (DAC0_DAT8H)	8	R/W	00h	42.5.2/1067
4003_F012	DAC Data Low Register (DAC0_DAT9L)	8	R/W	00h	42.5.1/1067
4003_F013	DAC Data High Register (DAC0_DAT9H)	8	R/W	00h	42.5.2/1067
4003_F014	DAC Data Low Register (DAC0_DAT10L)	8	R/W	00h	42.5.1/1067
4003_F015	DAC Data High Register (DAC0_DAT10H)	8	R/W	00h	42.5.2/1067
4003_F016	DAC Data Low Register (DAC0_DAT11L)	8	R/W	00h	42.5.1/1067
4003_F017	DAC Data High Register (DAC0_DAT11H)	8	R/W	00h	42.5.2/1067
4003_F018	DAC Data Low Register (DAC0_DAT12L)	8	R/W	00h	42.5.1/1067
4003_F019	DAC Data High Register (DAC0_DAT12H)	8	R/W	00h	42.5.2/1067
4003_F01A	DAC Data Low Register (DAC0_DAT13L)	8	R/W	00h	42.5.1/1067
4003_F01B	DAC Data High Register (DAC0_DAT13H)	8	R/W	00h	42.5.2/1067
4003_F01C	DAC Data Low Register (DAC0_DAT14L)	8	R/W	00h	42.5.1/1067
4003_F01D	DAC Data High Register (DAC0_DAT14H)	8	R/W	00h	42.5.2/1067
4003_F01E	DAC Data Low Register (DAC0_DAT15L)	8	R/W	00h	42.5.1/1067
4003_F01F	DAC Data High Register (DAC0_DAT15H)	8	R/W	00h	42.5.2/1067
4003_F020	DAC Status Register (DAC0_SR)	8	R/W	02h	42.5.3/1068
4003_F021	DAC Control Register (DAC0_C0)	8	R/W	00h	42.5.4/1069
4003_F022	DAC Control Register 1 (DAC0_C1)	8	R/W	00h	42.5.5/1070
4003_F023	DAC Control Register 2 (DAC0_C2)	8	R/W	0Fh	42.5.6/1071

42.5.1 DAC Data Low Register (DACx_DATnL)

Address: 4003_F000h base + 0h offset + (2d × i), where i=0d to 15d

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	DATA0							
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DACx_DATnL field descriptions

Field	Description
DATA0	<p>DATA0</p> <p>When the DAC buffer is not enabled, DATA[11:0] controls the output voltage based on the following formula: $V_{out} = V_{in} * (1 + DACDAT0[11:0])/4096$</p> <p>When the DAC buffer is enabled, DATA is mapped to the 16-word buffer.</p>

42.5.2 DAC Data High Register (DACx_DATnH)

Address: 4003_F000h base + 1h offset + (2d × i), where i=0d to 15d

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0				DATA1			
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DACx_DATnH field descriptions

Field	Description
7–4 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
DATA1	<p>DATA1</p> <p>When the DAC Buffer is not enabled, DATA[11:0] controls the output voltage based on the following formula. $V_{out} = V_{in} * (1 + DACDAT0[11:0])/4096$</p> <p>When the DAC buffer is enabled, DATA[11:0] is mapped to the 16-word buffer.</p>

42.5.3 DAC Status Register (DACx_SR)

If DMA is enabled, the flags can be cleared automatically by DMA when the DMA request is done. Writing 0 to a field clears it whereas writing 1 has no effect. After reset, DACBFRPTF is set and can be cleared by software, if needed. The flags are set only when the data buffer status is changed.

Address: 4003_F000h base + 20h offset = 4003_F020h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0					DACBFWM	DACBFRPT	DACBFRPB
Write						F	F	F
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0

DACx_SR field descriptions

Field	Description
7–3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 DACBFWMF	DAC Buffer Watermark Flag This bit is set if the remaining FIFO data is less than the watermark setting. It is cleared automatically by writing data into FIFO by DMA or CPU. Write to this bit is ignored in FIFO mode. 0 The DAC buffer read pointer has not reached the watermark level. 1 The DAC buffer read pointer has reached the watermark level.
1 DACBFRPTF	DAC Buffer Read Pointer Top Position Flag In FIFO mode, it is FIFO nearly empty flag. It is set when only one data remains in FIFO. Any DAC trigger does not increase the Read Pointer if this bit is set to avoid any possible glitch or abrupt change at DAC output. It is cleared automatically if FIFO is not empty. 0 The DAC buffer read pointer is not zero. 1 The DAC buffer read pointer is zero.
0 DACBFRPBF	DAC Buffer Read Pointer Bottom Position Flag In FIFO mode, it is FIFO FULL status bit. It means FIFO read pointer equals Write Pointer because of Write Pointer increase. If this bit is set, any write to FIFO from either DMA or CPU is ignored by DAC. It is cleared if there is any DAC trigger making the DAC read pointer increase. Write to this bit is ignored in FIFO mode. 0 The DAC buffer read pointer is not equal to C2[DACBFUP]. 1 The DAC buffer read pointer is equal to C2[DACBFUP].

42.5.4 DAC Control Register (DACx_C0)

Address: 4003_F000h base + 21h offset = 4003_F021h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	DACEN	DACRFS	DACTRGSEL	0	LPEN	DACBWIEN	DACBTIEN	DACBBIEN
Write			L	DACSWTRG				
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DACx_C0 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 DACEN	DAC Enable Starts the Programmable Reference Generator operation. 0 The DAC system is disabled. 1 The DAC system is enabled.
6 DACRFS	DAC Reference Select 0 The DAC selects DACREF_1 as the reference voltage. 1 The DAC selects DACREF_2 as the reference voltage.
5 DACTRGSEL	DAC Trigger Select 0 The DAC hardware trigger is selected. 1 The DAC software trigger is selected.
4 DACSWTRG	DAC Software Trigger Active high. This is a write-only field, which always reads 0. If DAC software trigger is selected and buffer is enabled, writing 1 to this field will advance the buffer read pointer once. 0 The DAC soft trigger is not valid. 1 The DAC soft trigger is valid.
3 LPEN	DAC Low Power Control NOTE: See the 12-bit DAC electrical characteristics of the device data sheet for details on the impact of the modes below. 0 High-Power mode 1 Low-Power mode
2 DACBWIEN	DAC Buffer Watermark Interrupt Enable 0 The DAC buffer watermark interrupt is disabled. 1 The DAC buffer watermark interrupt is enabled.
1 DACBTIEN	DAC Buffer Read Pointer Top Flag Interrupt Enable 0 The DAC buffer read pointer top flag interrupt is disabled. 1 The DAC buffer read pointer top flag interrupt is enabled.
0 DACBBIEN	DAC Buffer Read Pointer Bottom Flag Interrupt Enable

Table continues on the next page...

DACx_C0 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
0	The DAC buffer read pointer bottom flag interrupt is disabled.
1	The DAC buffer read pointer bottom flag interrupt is enabled.

42.5.5 DAC Control Register 1 (DACx_C1)

Address: 4003_F000h base + 22h offset = 4003_F022h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	DMAEN	0		DACBFWM		DACBFMD		DACBFEN
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DACx_C1 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 DMAEN	DMA Enable Select 0 DMA is disabled. 1 DMA is enabled. When DMA is enabled, the DMA request will be generated by original interrupts. The interrupts will not be presented on this module at the same time.
6–5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
4–3 DACBFWM	DAC Buffer Watermark Select In normal mode it controls when SR[DACBFWMF] is set. When the DAC buffer read pointer reaches the word defined by this field, which is 1–4 words away from the upper limit (DACBUP), SR[DACBFWMF] will be set. This allows user configuration of the watermark interrupt. In FIFO mode, it is FIFO watermark select field. 00 In normal mode, 1 word . In FIFO mode, 2 or less than 2 data remaining in FIFO will set watermark status bit. 01 In normal mode, 2 words . In FIFO mode, Max/4 or less than Max/4 data remaining in FIFO will set watermark status bit. 10 In normal mode, 3 words . In FIFO mode, Max/2 or less than Max/2 data remaining in FIFO will set watermark status bit. 11 In normal mode, 4 words . In FIFO mode, Max-2 or less than Max-2 data remaining in FIFO will set watermark status bit.
2–1 DACBFMD	DAC Buffer Work Mode Select 00 Normal mode 01 Swing mode 10 One-Time Scan mode 11 FIFO mode
0 DACBFEN	DAC Buffer Enable 0 Buffer read pointer is disabled. The converted data is always the first word of the buffer. 1 Buffer read pointer is enabled. The converted data is the word that the read pointer points to. It means converted data can be from any word of the buffer.

42.5.6 DAC Control Register 2 (DACx_C2)

Address: 4003_F000h base + 23h offset = 4003_F023h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	DACBFRP				DACBFUP			
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1

DACx_C2 field descriptions

Field	Description
7–4 DACBFRP	DAC Buffer Read Pointer In normal mode it keeps the current value of the buffer read pointer. FIFO mode, it is the FIFO read pointer. It is writable in FIFO mode. User can configure it to same address to reset FIFO as empty.
DACBFUP	DAC Buffer Upper Limit In normal mode it selects the upper limit of the DAC buffer. The buffer read pointer cannot exceed it. In FIFO mode it is the FIFO write pointer. User cannot set Buffer Up limit in FIFO mode. In Normal mode its reset value is MAX. When IP is configured to FIFO mode, this register becomes Write_Pointer, and its value is initially set to equal READ_POINTER automatically, and the FIFO status is empty. It is writable and user can configure it to the same address to reset FIFO as empty.

42.6 Functional description

The 12-bit DAC module can select one of the two reference inputs—DACREF_1 and DACREF_2 as the DAC reference voltage, V_{in} by C0 [DACRFS]. See the chip-specific DAC information to determine the source options for DACREF_1 and DACREF_2.

When the DAC is enabled, it converts the data in DACDAT0[11:0] or the data from the DAC data buffer to a stepped analog output voltage. The output voltage range is from V_{in} to $V_{in}/4096$, and the step is $V_{in}/4096$.

42.6.1 DAC data buffer operation

When the DAC is enabled and the buffer is not enabled, the DAC module always converts the data in DAT0 to the analog output voltage.

When both the DAC and the buffer are enabled, the DAC converts the data in the data buffer to analog output voltage. The data buffer read pointer advances to the next word whenever a hardware or software trigger event occurs.

The data buffer can be configured to operate in Normal mode, Swing mode, One-Time Scan mode or FIFO mode. When the buffer operation is switched from one mode to another, the read pointer does not change. The read pointer can be set to any value between 0 and C2[DACBFUP] by writing C2[DACBFRP].

42.6.1.1 DAC data buffer interrupts

There are several interrupts and associated flags that can be configured for the DAC buffer. SR[DACBFRPBF] is set when the DAC buffer read pointer reaches the DAC buffer upper limit, that is, C2[DACBFRP] = C2[DACBFUP]. SR[DACBFRPTF] is set when the DAC read pointer is equal to the start position, 0. Finally, SR[DACBFWMF] is set when the DAC buffer read pointer has reached the position defined by C1[DACBFWM]. C1[DACBFWM] can be used to generate an interrupt when the DAC buffer read pointer is between 1 to 4 words from C2[DACBFUP].

42.6.1.2 Modes of DAC data buffer operation

The following table describes the different modes of data buffer operation for the DAC module.

Table 42-1. Modes of DAC data buffer operation

Modes	Description
Buffer Normal mode	This is the default mode. The buffer works as a circular buffer. The read pointer increases by one, every time the trigger occurs. When the read pointer reaches the upper limit, it goes to 0 directly in the next trigger event.
Buffer Swing mode	This mode is similar to the normal mode. However, when the read pointer reaches the upper limit, it does not go to 0. It will descend by 1 in the next trigger events until 0 is reached.
Buffer One-time Scan mode	The read pointer increases by 1 every time the trigger occurs. When it reaches the upper limit, it stops there. If read pointer is reset to the address other than the upper limit, it will increase to the upper address and stop there again. NOTE: If the software set the read pointer to the upper limit, the read pointer will not advance in this mode.
FIFO Mode	In FIFO mode, the buffer is organized as a FIFO. For a valid write to any DACDATx, the data is put into the FIFO, and the write pointer is automatically incremented. The module is connected internally to a 32bit interface. For any 16bit or 8bit FIFO access, address bit[1] needs to be 0; otherwise, the write is ignored. For any 32bit FIFO access, the Write_Pointer needs to be an EVEN number; otherwise, the write is ignored.

Table 42-1. Modes of DAC data buffer operation

Modes	Description
	<p>NOTE: A successful 32bit FIFO write will increase the write pointer by 2. Any write will cause the FIFO over-flow will be ignored, the cases includes: 1.FIFO is full, the write will be ignored. 2.FIFO is nearly full (FIFO_SIZE-1), 32bit write will be ignored.</p> <p>NOTE: For 8bit write, address bit[0] determine which byte lane will be written to the FIFO according to little endian alignment. Only both byte lanes are written will the write pointer increase. User need to make sure 8bit access happened in pair and both upper & lower bytes are written. There is no requirement on which byte write first. In FIFO mode, there is no change to read access of DACDATx (from normal mode), read to DACDATx will return the DATA addressed by the access address to the data buffer, and both write pointer and read pointer in FIFO mode will NOT be changed by read access. FIFO write can be happened when DAC is not enabled for 1st data conversion enable. But FIFO mode need to work at buffer Enabled at DACC1[DACBFEN].</p> <p>In FIFO mode, the DATA BUF will be organized as FIFO.</p>

42.6.2 DMA operation

When DMA is enabled, DMA requests are generated instead of interrupt requests. The DMA Done signal clears the DMA request.

The status register flags are still set and are cleared automatically when the DMA completes.

42.6.3 Resets

During reset, the DAC is configured in the default mode and is disabled.

42.6.4 Low-Power mode operation

The following table shows the wait mode and the stop mode operation of the DAC module.

Table 42-2. Modes of operation

Modes of operation	Description
Wait mode	The DAC will operate normally, if enabled.
Stop mode	<p>If enabled, the DAC module continues to operate in Normal Stop mode and the output voltage will hold the value before stop.</p> <p>In low-power stop modes, the DAC is fully shut down.</p>

NOTE

The assignment of module modes to core modes is chip-specific. For module-to-core mode assignments, see the chapter that describes how modules are configured.

Chapter 43

FlexTimer Module (FTM)

43.1 Chip-specific FTM information

43.1.1 Instantiation Information

This device contains four FlexTimer modules.

The following table shows how these modules are configured. This adheres to Kinetis K series FTM instantiations.

Table 43-1. FTM Instantiations

FTM instance	Number of channels	Features/usage
FTM0	8	3-phase motor control
FTM1	2 ¹	Quadrature decoder or general purpose
FTM2	2 ¹	Quadrature decoder or general purpose
FTM3	8	3-phase motor control

1. These registers are not available in FTM1: FTM1_C2SC, FTM1_C3SC, FTM1_C4SC, FTM1_C5SC, FTM1_C6SC, FTM1_C7SC, FTM1_C2V, FTM1_C3V, FTM1_C4V, FTM1_C5V, FTM1_C6V, and FTM1_C7V

43.1.2 External Clock Options

By default each FTM is clocked by the internal fast peripheral clock (the FTM refers to it as system clock). Each module contains a register setting that allows the module to be clocked from an external clock instead. There are three external FTM_CLKINx pins that can be selected by any FTM module via the SIM_SOPT4 register as an external clock source. The pinmux options may provide optional external inputs.

- FTM_CLKIN0 can provide an external input clock to all or either of FTM0, FTM1, FTM2, and FTM3

- FTM_CLKIN1 can provide an external input clock to all or either of FTM0, FTM1, FTM2, and FTM3
- FTM_CLKIN2 can provide an external input clock to all or either of FTM0, FTM1, FTM2, and FTM3

43.1.3 Fixed frequency clock

The fixed frequency clock for each FTM is MCGFFCLK.

43.1.4 FTM Interrupts

The FlexTimer has multiple sources of interrupt. However, these sources are OR'd together to generate a single interrupt request per FTM module to the interrupt controller. When an FTM interrupt occurs, read the FTM status registers (FMS, SC, and STATUS) to determine the exact interrupt source.

43.1.5 FTM Fault Detection Inputs KV5x

The following fault detection input options for the FTM modules are selected via the SIM_SOPT4 register. The external pin option is selected by default.

- FTM0 FAULT0 = FTM0_FLT0 pin or CMP0 output via SIM Option register control
- FTM0 FAULT1 = FTM0_FLT1 pin or CMP1 output via SIM Option register control
- FTM0 FAULT2 = FTM0_FLT2 pin or CMP2 output via SIM Option register control
- FTM0_FAULT3 = XBARA_OUT49 or FTM0_FLT3 pin selected by bit in SIM_SOPT4 register
- FTM1 FAULT0 = FTM1_FLT0 pin or CMP0 output via SIM option register control
- FTM1 FAULT1 = XBAR_OUT50
- FTM2 FAULT0 = FTM2_FLT0 pin or CMP0 output via SIM option register control
- FTM2 FAULT1 = XBAR_OUT51
- FTM3 FAULT0 = FTM3_FLT0 pin or CMP0 output via SIM Option register control
- FTM3 FAULT1 = reserved
- FTM3 FAULT2 = reserved
- FTM3 FAULT3 = XBARA_OUT52

43.1.6 FTM Hardware Triggers KV5x

The FTM input synchronization hardware triggers are connected in the chip as follows:

- FTM0 hardware trigger 0 = FTM0_SYNCBIT of SIM_OPTx register, CMP0 Output or FTM1 Match output.
- FTM0 hardware trigger 1 = PDB0 channel 0 trigger Output or FTM1 Match output
- FTM0 hardware trigger 2 = XBARA_OUT34
- FTM1 hardware trigger 0 = FTM1_SYNCBIT of SIM_OPTx register, CMP0 Output or FTM0 Match output
- FTM1 hardware trigger 1 = CMP1 Output
- FTM1 hardware trigger 2 = XBARA_OUT35
-
- FTM2 hardware trigger 0 = FTM2_SYNCBIT of SIM_OPTx register, CMP0 Output or FTM0 Match output
- FTM2 hardware trigger 1 = CMP2 Output
- FTM2 hardware trigger 2 = XBARA_OUT36
- FTM3 hardware trigger 0 = FTM3_SYNCBIT of SIM_OPTx register, CMP0 Output or FTM1 Match output
- FTM3 hardware trigger 1 = PDB1 channel 0 Trigger Output or FTM1 Match output
- FTM3 hardware trigger 2 = XBARA_OUT37

43.1.7 Input capture options for FTM module instances

The following input capture source options are selected via SIM_SOPTx. The external pin option is selected by default.

- FTM1 channel 0 input capture = FTM1_CH0 pin or CMP0 output or CMP1 output via FTM1ICH0SRC bit in SIM_SOPT9 register
- FTM1 channel 1 input capture = FTM1_CH1 pin or exclusive OR of FTM1_CH0, FTM1_CH1, and XBARA_OUT42 via FTM1ICH1SRC bit in SIM_SOPT9 register
- FTM2 channel 0 input capture = FTM2_CH0 pin or CMP0 output or CMP1 output via FTM2ICH0SRC bit in SIM_SOPT9 register
- FTM2 channel 1 input capture = FTM2_CH1 pin or exclusive OR of FTM2_CH0, FTM2_CH1, and FTM1_CH1 via FTM2ICH1SRC bit in SIM_SOPT9 register

43.1.8 FTM Hall sensor support

For 3 phase motor control sensor-ed applications the use of Hall sensors, generally 3 sensors placed 120 degrees apart around the rotor, are deployed to detect position and speed. Each of the 3 sensors provides a pulse that applied to an input capture pin, can then be analyzed and both speed and position can be deduced. This device has two 2-channel FTMs. (FTM1 and FTM2) and thus provides 4 input capture pins. To simplify the calculations required by the CPU on each hall sensor's input, if all 3 inputs are "exclusively OR'd " into one timer channel and the free running counter is refreshed on every edge then this can simplify the speed calculation.

Via the SIM module and SIM_SOPT4 register the FTM2CH1SRC bit provides the choice of normal FTM2_CH1 input or the XOR of FTM2_CH0, FTM2_CH1 and FTM1_CH1 pins that will be applied to FTM2_CH1.

Note: If the user utilizes FTM1_CH1 to be an input to FTM2_CH1, FTM1_CH0 can still be utilized for other functions.

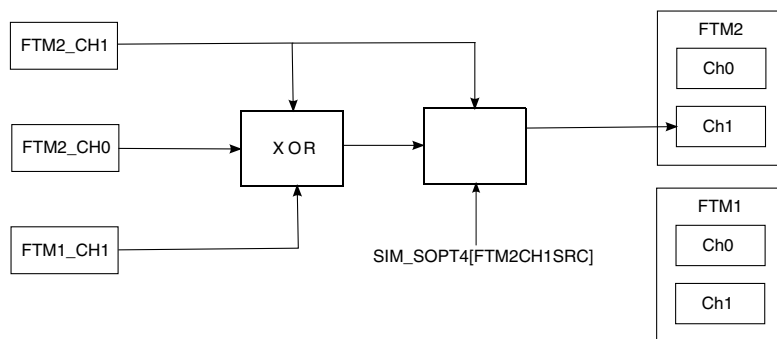


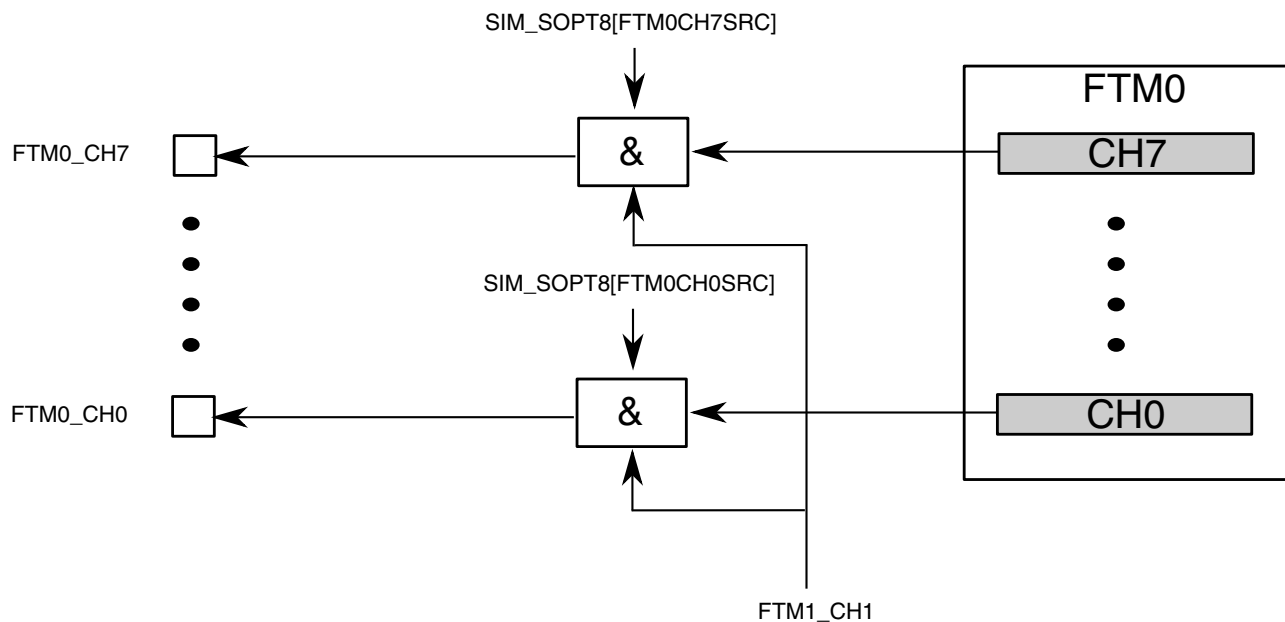
Figure 43-1. FTM Hall Sensor Configuration

43.1.9 FTM modulation implementation

FTM0 and FTM3 support a modulation function where the output channels when configured as PWM or Output Compare mode modulate another timer output when the channel signal is asserted. Any of the 8 channels of FTM0 and any of the 8 channels of FTM3 can be configured to support this modulation function.

The SIM_SOPT8 register has eight control bits (FTM0CHySRC) that allow the user to select normal PWM/Output Compare mode on the corresponding FTM timer channel or modulate with FTM1_CH1. The diagram below shows the implementation for FTM0. FTM3 has similar implementation controlled by SIM_SOPT8[FTM3CHySRC] on each of its 8 channels with modulation possible via FTM2_CH1. See SIM Block Guide for further information.

When FTM1_CH1 is used to modulate an FTM0 channel, then the user must configure FTM1_CH1 to provide a signal that has a higher frequency than the modulated FTM0 channel output. Also it limits the use of the FTM1_CH0 function, as the FTM1_CH1 will be programmed to provide a 50% duty PWM signal and limit the start and modulus values for the free running counter. FTM2 has a similar restriction when FTM2_CH1 is used for modulating an FTM3 channel.



NOTE

FTM1 channel 1 output and LPTMR0 prescaler output provide the carrier signal for FTM3 Timer Modulation mode.

43.1.10 FTM output triggers for other modules

The FTM output triggers can be selected as input triggers for the PDB and ADC modules. PDB, XBARA, and XBARB need be configured before FTM output triggers can be used as ADC input triggers. See the [PDB](#), [XBARA](#), and [XBARB](#) chapters for more information.

FTM0 has 8 channels of trigger capability which are ORed together to force an output trigger. This EXTTRG0 signal is connected to PDB0 channel 1000 input, PDB1 channel 1000 input, XBARA_IN16 and XBARB_IN4.

FTM0 INIT (restart of counter/timer overflow function) provides an output to XBARA_IN17, XBARB_IN5

Individual FTM0 channels trigger signal outputs are also assigned to the DMAMUX

FTM0_CH0 event output to DMAMUX source 24

FTM0_CH1 event output to DMAMUX source 25

FTM0_CH2 event output to DMAMUX source 26

FTM0_CH3 event output to DMAMUX source 27

FTM0_CH4 event output to DMAMUX source 28

FTM0_CH5 event output to DMAMUX source 29

FTM0_CH6 event output to DMAMUX source 30

FTM0_CH7 event output to DMAMUX source 31

FTM1 has 2 channels of trigger capability which are ORed together to force an output trigger. This EXTRRG1 signal is connected to PDB0 channel 1001 input, PDB1 channel 1001 input, XBARA_IN36 and XBARB_IN16.

FTM1 INIT (restart of counter/timer overflow function) provides an output to XBARA_IN37, XBARB_IN17

FTM1_CH0 event output to DMAMUX source 32, UART0TXSRC and UART1TXSRC of SIM_OPTx register.

FTM1_CH1 event output to DMAMUX source 33

FTM2 has 2 channels of trigger capability which are ORed together to force an output trigger. This EXTRRG1 signal is connected to PDB0 channel 1010 input, PDB1 channel 1010 input, XBARA_IN56 and XBARB_IN32.

FTM2 INIT (restart of counter/timer overflow function) provides an output to XBARA_IN57, XBARB_IN33

FTM2_CH0 event output to DMAMUX1 source 32

FTM2_CH1 event output to DMAMUX1 source 33

FTM3 has 8 channels of trigger capability which are ORed together to force an output trigger. This EXTTRG3 signal is connected to PDB0 channel 1011 input, PDB1 channel 1011 input, XBARA_IN18 and XBARB_IN6.

FTM0 INIT (restart of counter/timer overflow function) provides an output to XBARA_IN19, XBARB_IN7

FTM3_CH0 event output to DMAMUX source 36

FTM3_CH1 event output to DMAMUX source 37

FTM3_CH2 event output to DMAMUX source 38

FTM3_CH3 event output to DMAMUX source 39

FTM3_CH4 event output to DMAMUX source 54

FTM3_CH5 event output to DMAMUX source 55

FTM3_CH6 event output to DMAMUX source 56

FTM3_CH7 event output to DMAMUX source 57

43.1.11 FTM Global Time Base

This chip provides the optional FTM global time base feature (see).

FTM0 provides the only source for the FTM global time base. The other FTM modules can share the time base as shown in the following figure:

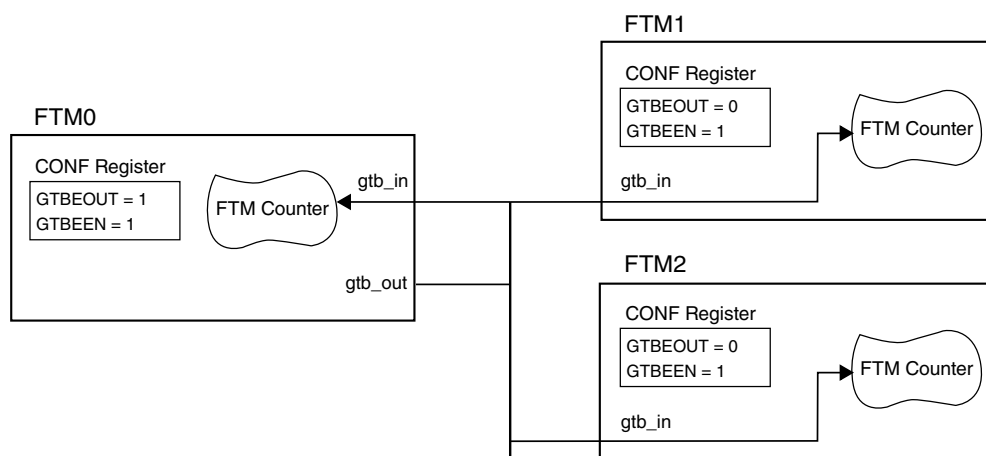


Figure 43-2. FTM Global Time Base Configuration

43.1.12 FTM BDM and debug halt mode

In the FTM chapter, references to the chip being in "BDM" are the same as the chip being in "debug halt mode".

43.2 Introduction

The FlexTimer module (FTM) is a two-to-eight channel timer that supports input capture, output compare, and the generation of PWM signals to control electric motor and power management applications. The FTM time reference is a 16-bit counter that can be used as an unsigned or signed counter.

NOTE

The number of channels supported can vary for each instance of the FTM module on a chip. See the chip-specific FTM information to see how many channels are supported for each module instance. For example, if a module instance supports only six channels, references to channel numbers 6 and 7 do not apply for that instance.

43.2.1 FlexTimer philosophy

The FlexTimer is built upon a simple timer, the HCS08 Timer PWM Module – TPM, used for many years on Freescale's 8-bit microcontrollers. The FlexTimer extends the functionality to meet the demands of motor control, digital lighting solutions, and power conversion, while providing low cost and backwards compatibility with the TPM module.

Several key enhancements are made:

- Signed up counter
- Deadtime insertion hardware
- Fault control inputs
- Enhanced triggering functionality
- Initialization and polarity control

All of the features common with the TPM have fully backwards compatible register assignments. The FlexTimer can also use code on the same core platform without change to perform the same functions.

Motor control and power conversion features have been added through a dedicated set of registers and defaults turn off all new features. The new features, such as hardware deadtime insertion, polarity, fault control, and output forcing and masking, greatly reduce loading on the execution software and are usually each controlled by a group of registers.

FlexTimer input triggers can be from comparators, ADC, or other submodules to initiate timer functions automatically. These triggers can be linked in a variety of ways during integration of the sub modules so please note the options available for used FlexTimer configuration.

More than one FlexTimers may be synchronized to provide a larger timer with their counters incrementing in unison, assuming the initialization, the input clocks, the initial and final counting values are the same in each FlexTimer.

All main user access registers are buffered to ease the load on the executing software. A number of trigger options exist to determine which registers are updated with this user defined data.

43.2.2 Features

The FTM features include:

- FTM source clock is selectable.
 - The source clock can be the system clock, the fixed frequency clock, or an external clock
 - Fixed frequency clock is an additional clock input to allow the selection of an on chip clock source other than the system clock
 - Selecting external clock connects FTM clock to a chip level input pin therefore allowing to synchronize the FTM counter with an off chip clock source
- Prescaler divide-by 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, or 128
- 16-bit counter
 - It can be a free-running counter or a counter with initial and final value
 - The counting can be up or up-down
- Each channel can be configured for input capture, output compare, or edge-aligned PWM mode
- In Input Capture mode:
 - The capture can occur on rising edges, falling edges or both edges
 - An input filter can be selected for some channels
- In Output Compare mode the output signal can be set, cleared, or toggled on match
- All channels can be configured for center-aligned PWM mode

- Each pair of channels can be combined to generate a PWM signal with independent control of both edges of PWM signal
- The FTM channels can operate as pairs with equal outputs, pairs with complementary outputs, or independent channels with independent outputs
- The deadtime insertion is available for each complementary pair
- Generation of match triggers
- Initialization trigger
- Software control of PWM outputs
- Up to 4 fault inputs for global fault control
- The polarity of each channel is configurable
- The generation of an interrupt per channel
- The generation of an interrupt when the counter overflows
- The generation of an interrupt when the fault condition is detected
- Synchronized loading of write buffered FTM registers
- Write protection for critical registers
- Backwards compatible with TPM
- Testing of input captures for a stuck at zero and one conditions
- Dual edge capture for pulse and period width measurement
- Quadrature decoder with input filters, relative position counting, and interrupt on position count or capture of position count on external event

43.2.3 Modes of operation

When the chip is in an active BDM mode, the FTM temporarily suspends all counting until the chip returns to normal user operating mode. During Stop mode, all FTM input clocks are stopped, so the FTM is effectively disabled until clocks resume. During Wait mode, the FTM continues to operate normally. If the FTM does not need to produce a real time reference or provide the interrupt sources needed to wake the chip from Wait mode, the power can then be saved by disabling FTM functions before entering Wait mode.

43.2.4 Block diagram

The FTM uses one input/output (I/O) pin per channel, CHn (FTM channel (n)) where n is the channel number (0–7).

The following figure shows the FTM structure. The central component of the FTM is the 16-bit counter with programmable initial and final values and its counting can be up or up-down.

NOTE

The number of channels supported can vary for each instance of the FTM module on a chip. See the chip-specific FTM information to see how many channels are supported for each module instance. For example, if a module instance supports only six channels, references to channel numbers 6 and 7 do not apply for that instance.

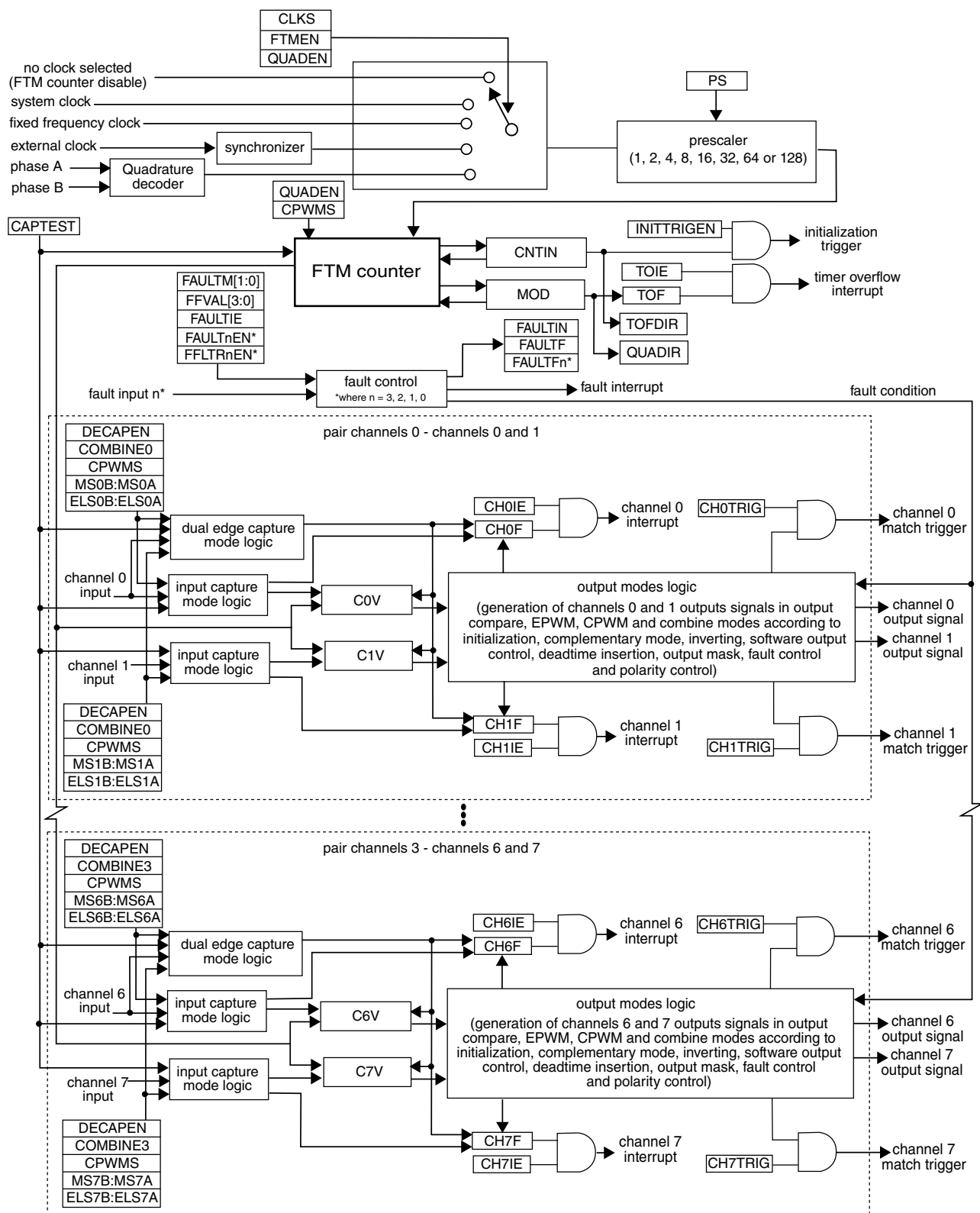


Figure 43-3. FTM block diagram

43.3 FTM signal descriptions

Table 43-2 shows the user-accessible signals for the FTM.

Table 43-2. FTM signal descriptions

Signal	Description	I/O	Function
EXTCLK	External clock. FTM external clock can be selected to drive the FTM counter.	I	The external clock input signal is used as the FTM counter clock if selected by CLKS[1:0] bits in the SC register. This clock signal must not exceed 1/4 of system clock frequency. The FTM counter prescaler selection and settings are also used when an external clock is selected.
CHn	FTM channel (n), where n can be 7-0	I/O	Each FTM channel can be configured to operate either as input or output. The direction associated with each channel, input or output, is selected according to the mode assigned for that channel.
FAULTj	Fault input (j), where j can be 3-0	I	The fault input signals are used to control the CHn channel output state. If a fault is detected, the FAULTj signal is asserted and the channel output is put in a safe state. The behavior of the fault logic is defined by the FAULTM[1:0] control bits in the MODE register and FAULTEN bit in the COMBINEm register. Note that each FAULTj input may affect all channels selectively since FAULTM[1:0] and FAULTEN control bits are defined for each pair of channels. Because there are several FAULTj inputs, maximum of 4 for the FTM module, each one of these inputs is activated by the FAULTJEN bit in the FLTCTRL register.
PHA	Quadrature decoder phase A input. Input pin associated with quadrature decoder phase A.	I	The quadrature decoder phase A input is used as the Quadrature Decoder mode is selected. The phase A input signal is one of the signals that control the FTM counter increment or decrement in the Quadrature Decoder mode .
PHB	Quadrature decoder phase B input. Input pin associated with quadrature decoder phase B.	I	The quadrature decoder phase B input is used as the Quadrature Decoder mode is selected. The phase B input signal is one of the signals that control the FTM counter increment or decrement in the Quadrature Decoder mode .

43.4 Memory map and register definition

43.4.1 Memory map

This section presents a high-level summary of the FTM registers and how they are mapped.

The registers and bits of an unavailable function in the FTM remain in the memory map and in the reset value, but they have no active function.

Note

Do not write in the region from the CNTIN register through the PWMLOAD register when FTMEN = 0.

NOTE

The number of channels supported can vary for each instance of the FTM module on a chip. See the chip-specific FTM information to see how many channels are supported for each module instance. For example, if a module instance supports only six channels, references to channel numbers 6 and 7 do not apply for that instance.

43.4.2 Register descriptions

Accesses to reserved addresses result in transfer errors. Registers for absent channels are considered reserved.

FTM memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4002_6000	Status And Control (FTM3_SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.3/1094
4002_6004	Counter (FTM3_CNT)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.4/1095
4002_6008	Modulo (FTM3_MOD)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.5/1096
4002_600C	Channel (n) Status And Control (FTM3_C0SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.6/1097
4002_6010	Channel (n) Value (FTM3_C0V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.7/1100
4002_6014	Channel (n) Status And Control (FTM3_C1SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.6/1097
4002_6018	Channel (n) Value (FTM3_C1V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.7/1100
4002_601C	Channel (n) Status And Control (FTM3_C2SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.6/1097
4002_6020	Channel (n) Value (FTM3_C2V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.7/1100
4002_6024	Channel (n) Status And Control (FTM3_C3SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.6/1097
4002_6028	Channel (n) Value (FTM3_C3V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.7/1100
4002_602C	Channel (n) Status And Control (FTM3_C4SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.6/1097
4002_6030	Channel (n) Value (FTM3_C4V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.7/1100
4002_6034	Channel (n) Status And Control (FTM3_C5SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.6/1097
4002_6038	Channel (n) Value (FTM3_C5V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.7/1100
4002_603C	Channel (n) Status And Control (FTM3_C6SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.6/1097
4002_6040	Channel (n) Value (FTM3_C6V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.7/1100
4002_6044	Channel (n) Status And Control (FTM3_C7SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.6/1097
4002_6048	Channel (n) Value (FTM3_C7V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.7/1100
4002_604C	Counter Initial Value (FTM3_CNTIN)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.8/1100

Table continues on the next page...

FTM memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4002_6050	Capture And Compare Status (FTM3_STATUS)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.9/1101
4002_6054	Features Mode Selection (FTM3_MODE)	32	R/W	0000_0004h	43.4.10/1103
4002_6058	Synchronization (FTM3_SYNC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.11/1105
4002_605C	Initial State For Channels Output (FTM3_OUTINIT)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.12/1107
4002_6060	Output Mask (FTM3_OUTMASK)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.13/1108
4002_6064	Function For Linked Channels (FTM3_COMBINE)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.14/1110
4002_6068	Deadtime Insertion Control (FTM3_DEADTIME)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.15/1115
4002_606C	FTM External Trigger (FTM3_EXTTRIG)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.16/1116
4002_6070	Channels Polarity (FTM3_POL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.17/1118
4002_6074	Fault Mode Status (FTM3_FMS)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.18/1120
4002_6078	Input Capture Filter Control (FTM3_FILTER)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.19/1122
4002_607C	Fault Control (FTM3_FLTCTRL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.20/1123
4002_6080	Quadrature Decoder Control And Status (FTM3_QDCTRL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.21/1126
4002_6084	Configuration (FTM3_CONF)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.22/1128
4002_6088	FTM Fault Input Polarity (FTM3_FLTPOL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.23/1129
4002_608C	Synchronization Configuration (FTM3_SYNCONF)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.24/1130
4002_6090	FTM Inverting Control (FTM3_INVCTRL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.25/1132
4002_6094	FTM Software Output Control (FTM3_SWOCTRL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.26/1133
4002_6098	FTM PWM Load (FTM3_PWMLOAD)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.27/1136
4003_8000	Status And Control (FTM0_SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.3/1094
4003_8004	Counter (FTM0_CNT)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.4/1095
4003_8008	Modulo (FTM0_MOD)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.5/1096
4003_800C	Channel (n) Status And Control (FTM0_C0SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.6/1097
4003_8010	Channel (n) Value (FTM0_C0V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.7/1100
4003_8014	Channel (n) Status And Control (FTM0_C1SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.6/1097

Table continues on the next page...

FTM memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4003_8018	Channel (n) Value (FTM0_C1V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.7/1100
4003_801C	Channel (n) Status And Control (FTM0_C2SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.6/1097
4003_8020	Channel (n) Value (FTM0_C2V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.7/1100
4003_8024	Channel (n) Status And Control (FTM0_C3SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.6/1097
4003_8028	Channel (n) Value (FTM0_C3V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.7/1100
4003_802C	Channel (n) Status And Control (FTM0_C4SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.6/1097
4003_8030	Channel (n) Value (FTM0_C4V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.7/1100
4003_8034	Channel (n) Status And Control (FTM0_C5SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.6/1097
4003_8038	Channel (n) Value (FTM0_C5V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.7/1100
4003_803C	Channel (n) Status And Control (FTM0_C6SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.6/1097
4003_8040	Channel (n) Value (FTM0_C6V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.7/1100
4003_8044	Channel (n) Status And Control (FTM0_C7SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.6/1097
4003_8048	Channel (n) Value (FTM0_C7V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.7/1100
4003_804C	Counter Initial Value (FTM0_CNTIN)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.8/1100
4003_8050	Capture And Compare Status (FTM0_STATUS)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.9/1101
4003_8054	Features Mode Selection (FTM0_MODE)	32	R/W	0000_0004h	43.4.10/1103
4003_8058	Synchronization (FTM0_SYNC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.11/1105
4003_805C	Initial State For Channels Output (FTM0_OUTINIT)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.12/1107
4003_8060	Output Mask (FTM0_OUTMASK)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.13/1108
4003_8064	Function For Linked Channels (FTM0_COMBINE)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.14/1110
4003_8068	Deadtime Insertion Control (FTM0_DEADTIME)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.15/1115
4003_806C	FTM External Trigger (FTM0_EXTTRIG)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.16/1116
4003_8070	Channels Polarity (FTM0_POL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.17/1118
4003_8074	Fault Mode Status (FTM0_FMS)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.18/1120
4003_8078	Input Capture Filter Control (FTM0_FILTER)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.19/1122
4003_807C	Fault Control (FTM0_FLTCTRL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.20/1123
4003_8080	Quadrature Decoder Control And Status (FTM0_QDCTRL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.21/1126
4003_8084	Configuration (FTM0_CONF)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.22/1128

Table continues on the next page...

FTM memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4003_8088	FTM Fault Input Polarity (FTM0_FLTPOL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.23/1129
4003_808C	Synchronization Configuration (FTM0_SYNCONF)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.24/1130
4003_8090	FTM Inverting Control (FTM0_INVCTRL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.25/1132
4003_8094	FTM Software Output Control (FTM0_SWOCTRL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.26/1133
4003_8098	FTM PWM Load (FTM0_PWMLOAD)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.27/1136
4003_9000	Status And Control (FTM1_SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.3/1094
4003_9004	Counter (FTM1_CNT)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.4/1095
4003_9008	Modulo (FTM1_MOD)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.5/1096
4003_900C	Channel (n) Status And Control (FTM1_C0SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.6/1097
4003_9010	Channel (n) Value (FTM1_C0V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.7/1100
4003_9014	Channel (n) Status And Control (FTM1_C1SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.6/1097
4003_9018	Channel (n) Value (FTM1_C1V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.7/1100
4003_901C	Channel (n) Status And Control (FTM1_C2SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.6/1097
4003_9020	Channel (n) Value (FTM1_C2V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.7/1100
4003_9024	Channel (n) Status And Control (FTM1_C3SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.6/1097
4003_9028	Channel (n) Value (FTM1_C3V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.7/1100
4003_902C	Channel (n) Status And Control (FTM1_C4SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.6/1097
4003_9030	Channel (n) Value (FTM1_C4V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.7/1100
4003_9034	Channel (n) Status And Control (FTM1_C5SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.6/1097
4003_9038	Channel (n) Value (FTM1_C5V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.7/1100
4003_903C	Channel (n) Status And Control (FTM1_C6SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.6/1097
4003_9040	Channel (n) Value (FTM1_C6V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.7/1100
4003_9044	Channel (n) Status And Control (FTM1_C7SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.6/1097
4003_9048	Channel (n) Value (FTM1_C7V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.7/1100
4003_904C	Counter Initial Value (FTM1_CNTIN)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.8/1100
4003_9050	Capture And Compare Status (FTM1_STATUS)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.9/1101
4003_9054	Features Mode Selection (FTM1_MODE)	32	R/W	0000_0004h	43.4.10/1103
4003_9058	Synchronization (FTM1_SYNC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.11/1105
4003_905C	Initial State For Channels Output (FTM1_OUTINIT)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.12/1107
4003_9060	Output Mask (FTM1_OUTMASK)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.13/1108
4003_9064	Function For Linked Channels (FTM1_COMBINE)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.14/1110

Table continues on the next page...

FTM memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4003_9068	Deadtime Insertion Control (FTM1_DEADTIME)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.15/ 1115
4003_906C	FTM External Trigger (FTM1_EXTTRIG)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.16/ 1116
4003_9070	Channels Polarity (FTM1_POL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.17/ 1118
4003_9074	Fault Mode Status (FTM1_FMS)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.18/ 1120
4003_9078	Input Capture Filter Control (FTM1_FILTER)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.19/ 1122
4003_907C	Fault Control (FTM1_FLTCTRL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.20/ 1123
4003_9080	Quadrature Decoder Control And Status (FTM1_QDCTRL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.21/ 1126
4003_9084	Configuration (FTM1_CONF)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.22/ 1128
4003_9088	FTM Fault Input Polarity (FTM1_FLTPOL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.23/ 1129
4003_908C	Synchronization Configuration (FTM1_SYNCONF)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.24/ 1130
4003_9090	FTM Inverting Control (FTM1_INVCTRL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.25/ 1132
4003_9094	FTM Software Output Control (FTM1_SWOCTRL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.26/ 1133
4003_9098	FTM PWM Load (FTM1_PWMLOAD)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.27/ 1136
4003_A000	Status And Control (FTM2_SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.3/1094
4003_A004	Counter (FTM2_CNT)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.4/1095
4003_A008	Modulo (FTM2_MOD)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.5/1096
4003_A00C	Channel (n) Status And Control (FTM2_C0SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.6/1097
4003_A010	Channel (n) Value (FTM2_C0V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.7/1100
4003_A014	Channel (n) Status And Control (FTM2_C1SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.6/1097
4003_A018	Channel (n) Value (FTM2_C1V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.7/1100
4003_A01C	Channel (n) Status And Control (FTM2_C2SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.6/1097
4003_A020	Channel (n) Value (FTM2_C2V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.7/1100
4003_A024	Channel (n) Status And Control (FTM2_C3SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.6/1097
4003_A028	Channel (n) Value (FTM2_C3V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.7/1100
4003_A02C	Channel (n) Status And Control (FTM2_C4SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.6/1097
4003_A030	Channel (n) Value (FTM2_C4V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.7/1100
4003_A034	Channel (n) Status And Control (FTM2_C5SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.6/1097
4003_A038	Channel (n) Value (FTM2_C5V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.7/1100
4003_A03C	Channel (n) Status And Control (FTM2_C6SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.6/1097

Table continues on the next page...

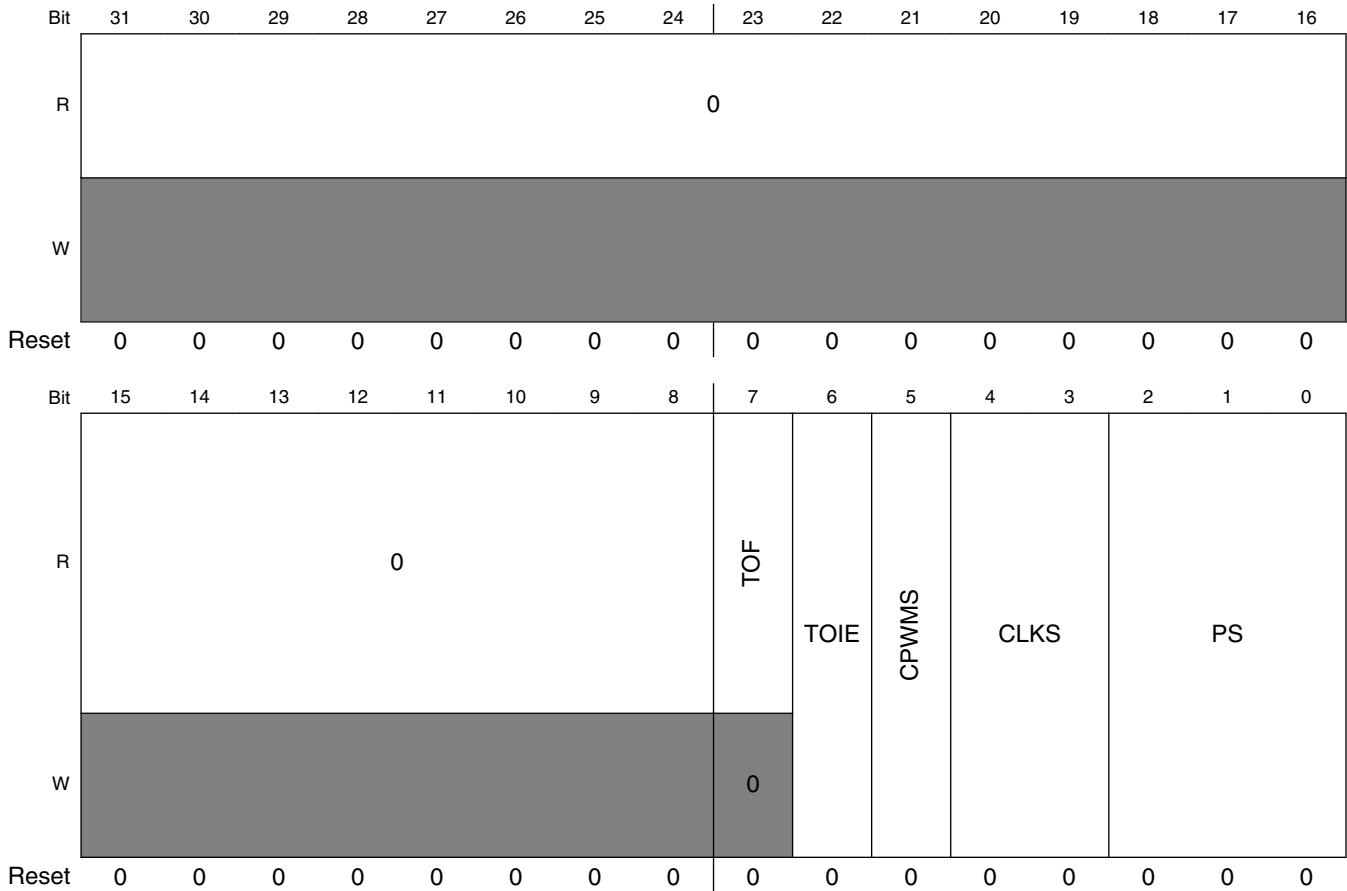
FTM memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4003_A040	Channel (n) Value (FTM2_C6V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.7/1100
4003_A044	Channel (n) Status And Control (FTM2_C7SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.6/1097
4003_A048	Channel (n) Value (FTM2_C7V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.7/1100
4003_A04C	Counter Initial Value (FTM2_CNTIN)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.8/1100
4003_A050	Capture And Compare Status (FTM2_STATUS)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.9/1101
4003_A054	Features Mode Selection (FTM2_MODE)	32	R/W	0000_0004h	43.4.10/1103
4003_A058	Synchronization (FTM2_SYNC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.11/1105
4003_A05C	Initial State For Channels Output (FTM2_OUTINIT)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.12/1107
4003_A060	Output Mask (FTM2_OUTMASK)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.13/1108
4003_A064	Function For Linked Channels (FTM2_COMBINE)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.14/1110
4003_A068	Deadtime Insertion Control (FTM2_DEADTIME)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.15/1115
4003_A06C	FTM External Trigger (FTM2_EXTTRIG)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.16/1116
4003_A070	Channels Polarity (FTM2_POL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.17/1118
4003_A074	Fault Mode Status (FTM2_FMS)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.18/1120
4003_A078	Input Capture Filter Control (FTM2_FILTER)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.19/1122
4003_A07C	Fault Control (FTM2_FLTCTRL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.20/1123
4003_A080	Quadrature Decoder Control And Status (FTM2_QDCTRL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.21/1126
4003_A084	Configuration (FTM2_CONF)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.22/1128
4003_A088	FTM Fault Input Polarity (FTM2_FLTPOL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.23/1129
4003_A08C	Synchronization Configuration (FTM2_SYNCONF)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.24/1130
4003_A090	FTM Inverting Control (FTM2_INVCTRL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.25/1132
4003_A094	FTM Software Output Control (FTM2_SWOCTRL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.26/1133
4003_A098	FTM PWM Load (FTM2_PWMLOAD)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.27/1136

43.4.3 Status And Control (FTMx_SC)

SC contains the overflow status flag and control bits used to configure the interrupt enable, FTM configuration, clock source, and prescaler factor. These controls relate to all channels within this module.

Address: Base address + 0h offset



FTMx_SC field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7 TOF	<p>Timer Overflow Flag</p> <p>Set by hardware when the FTM counter passes the value in the MOD register. The TOF bit is cleared by reading the SC register while TOF is set and then writing a 0 to TOF bit. Writing a 1 to TOF has no effect.</p> <p>If another FTM overflow occurs between the read and write operations, the write operation has no effect; therefore, TOF remains set indicating an overflow has occurred. In this case, a TOF interrupt request is not lost due to the clearing sequence for a previous TOF.</p> <p>0 FTM counter has not overflowed. 1 FTM counter has overflowed.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

FTMx_SC field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
6 TOIE	<p>Timer Overflow Interrupt Enable</p> <p>Enables FTM overflow interrupts.</p> <p>0 Disable TOF interrupts. Use software polling. 1 Enable TOF interrupts. An interrupt is generated when TOF equals one.</p>
5 CPWMS	<p>Center-Aligned PWM Select</p> <p>Selects CPWM mode. This mode configures the FTM to operate in Up-Down Counting mode. This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1.</p> <p>0 FTM counter operates in Up Counting mode. 1 FTM counter operates in Up-Down Counting mode.</p>
4–3 CLKS	<p>Clock Source Selection</p> <p>Selects FTM counter clock sources. This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1.</p> <p>00 No clock selected. This in effect disables the FTM counter. 01 System clock 10 Fixed frequency clock 11 External clock</p>
PS	<p>Prescale Factor Selection</p> <p>Selects one of 8 division factors for the clock source selected by CLKS. The new prescaler factor affects the clock source on the next system clock cycle after the new value is updated into the register bits. This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1.</p> <p>000 Divide by 1 001 Divide by 2 010 Divide by 4 011 Divide by 8 100 Divide by 16 101 Divide by 32 110 Divide by 64 111 Divide by 128</p>

43.4.4 Counter (FTMx_CNT)

The CNT register contains the FTM counter value.

Reset clears the CNT register. Writing any value to COUNT updates the counter with its initial value, CNTIN.

When BDM is active, the FTM counter is frozen. This is the value that you may read.

memory map and register definition

Address: Base address + 4h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																COUNT															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FTMx_CNT field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
COUNT	Counter Value

43.4.5 Modulo (FTMx_MOD)

The Modulo register contains the modulo value for the FTM counter. After the FTM counter reaches the modulo value, the overflow flag (TOF) becomes set at the next clock, and the next value of FTM counter depends on the selected counting method; see [Counter](#).

Writing to the MOD register latches the value into a buffer. The MOD register is updated with the value of its write buffer according to [Registers updated from write buffers](#).

If FTMEN = 0, this write coherency mechanism may be manually reset by writing to the SC register whether BDM is active or not.

Initialize the FTM counter, by writing to CNT, before writing to the MOD register to avoid confusion about when the first counter overflow will occur.

Address: Base address + 8h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved																MOD															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FTMx_MOD field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved.
MOD	Modulo Value

43.4.6 Channel (n) Status And Control (FTMx_CnSC)

CnSC contains the channel-interrupt-status flag and control bits used to configure the interrupt enable, channel configuration, and pin function.

Table 43-3. Mode, edge, and level selection

DECAPEN	COMBINE	CPWMS	MSnB:MSnA	ELSnB:ELSnA	Mode	Configuration
X	X	X	XX	00	Pin not used for FTM—revert the channel pin to general purpose I/O or other peripheral control	
0	0	0	00	01	Input Capture	Capture on Rising Edge Only
				10		Capture on Falling Edge Only
				11		Capture on Rising or Falling Edge
			01	01	Output Compare	Toggle Output on match
				10		Clear Output on match
				11		Set Output on match
			1X	10	Edge-Aligned PWM	High-true pulses (clear Output on match)
				X1		Low-true pulses (set Output on match)
		1	XX	10	Center-Aligned PWM	High-true pulses (clear Output on match-up)
				X1		Low-true pulses (set Output on match-up)
	1	0	XX	10	Combine PWM	High-true pulses (set on channel (n) match, and clear on channel (n+1) match)
				X1		Low-true pulses (clear on channel (n) match, and set on channel (n +1) match)

Table continues on the next page...

Table 43-3. Mode, edge, and level selection (continued)

DECAPEN	COMBINE	CPWMS	MSnB:MSnA	ELSnB:ELSnA	Mode	Configuration
1	0	0	X0	See the following table (Table 43-4).	Dual Edge Capture	One-Shot Capture mode
			X1			Continuous Capture mode

Table 43-4. Dual Edge Capture mode — edge polarity selection

ELSnB	ELSnA	Channel Port Enable	Detected Edges
0	0	Disabled	No edge
0	1	Enabled	Rising edge
1	0	Enabled	Falling edge
1	1	Enabled	Rising and falling edges

Address: Base address + Ch offset + (8d × i), where i=0d to 7d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0								CHF							
										CHIE	MSB	MSA	ELSB	ELSA	ICRST	DMA
W									0							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FTMx_CnSC field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7 CHF	Channel Flag Set by hardware when an event occurs on the channel. CHF is cleared by reading the CSC register while CHnF is set and then writing a 0 to the CHF bit. Writing a 1 to CHF has no effect. If another event occurs between the read and write operations, the write operation has no effect; therefore, CHF remains set indicating an event has occurred. In this case a CHF interrupt request is not lost due to the clearing sequence for a previous CHF. 0 No channel event has occurred. 1 A channel event has occurred.
6 CHIE	Channel Interrupt Enable Enables channel interrupts. 0 Disable channel interrupts. Use software polling. 1 Enable channel interrupts.
5 MSB	Channel Mode Select Used for further selections in the channel logic. Its functionality is dependent on the channel mode. See Table 43-3 . This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1.
4 MSA	Channel Mode Select Used for further selections in the channel logic. Its functionality is dependent on the channel mode. See Table 43-3 . This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1.
3 ELSB	Edge or Level Select The functionality of ELSB and ELSA depends on the channel mode. See Table 43-3 . This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1.
2 ELSA	Edge or Level Select The functionality of ELSB and ELSA depends on the channel mode. See Table 43-3 . This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1.
1 ICRST	FTM counter reset by the selected input capture event. FTM counter reset is driven by the selected event of the channel (n) in the Input Capture mode. This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1. 0 FTM counter is not reset when the selected channel (n) input event is detected. 1 FTM counter is reset when the selected channel (n) input event is detected.
0 DMA	DMA Enable Enables DMA transfers for the channel. 0 Disable DMA transfers. 1 Enable DMA transfers.

43.4.7 Channel (n) Value (FTMx_CnV)

These registers contain the captured FTM counter value for the input modes or the match value for the output modes.

In Input Capture, Capture Test, and Dual Edge Capture modes, any write to a CnV register is ignored.

In output modes, writing to a CnV register latches the value into a buffer. A CnV register is updated with the value of its write buffer according to [Registers updated from write buffers](#).

If FTMEN = 0, this write coherency mechanism may be manually reset by writing to the CnSC register whether BDM mode is active or not.

Address: Base address + 10h offset + (8d × i), where i=0d to 7d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																VAL															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FTMx_CnV field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
VAL	Channel Value Captured FTM counter value of the input modes or the match value for the output modes

43.4.8 Counter Initial Value (FTMx_CNTIN)

The Counter Initial Value register contains the initial value for the FTM counter.

Writing to the CNTIN register latches the value into a buffer. The CNTIN register is updated with the value of its write buffer according to [Registers updated from write buffers](#).

When the FTM clock is initially selected, by writing a non-zero value to the CLKS bits, the FTM counter starts with the value 0x0000. To avoid this behavior, before the first write to select the FTM clock, write the new value to the the CNTIN register and then initialize the FTM counter by writing any value to the CNT register.

Address: Base address + 4Ch offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved																INIT															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FTMx_CNTIN field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved.
INIT	Initial Value Of The FTM Counter

43.4.9 Capture And Compare Status (FTMx_STATUS)

The STATUS register contains a copy of the status flag CHnF bit in CnSC for each FTM channel for software convenience.

Each CHnF bit in STATUS is a mirror of CHnF bit in CnSC. All CHnF bits can be checked using only one read of STATUS. All CHnF bits can be cleared by reading STATUS followed by writing 0x00 to STATUS.

Hardware sets the individual channel flags when an event occurs on the channel. CHnF is cleared by reading STATUS while CHnF is set and then writing a 0 to the CHnF bit. Writing a 1 to CHnF has no effect.

If another event occurs between the read and write operations, the write operation has no effect; therefore, CHnF remains set indicating an event has occurred. In this case, a CHnF interrupt request is not lost due to the clearing sequence for a previous CHnF.

Address: Base address + 50h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0								CH7F	CH6F	CH5F	CH4F	CH3F	CH2F	CH1F	CH0F
W									0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FTMx_STATUS field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7 CH7F	Channel 7 Flag See the register description. 0 No channel event has occurred. 1 A channel event has occurred.
6 CH6F	Channel 6 Flag See the register description. 0 No channel event has occurred. 1 A channel event has occurred.
5 CH5F	Channel 5 Flag See the register description. 0 No channel event has occurred. 1 A channel event has occurred.
4 CH4F	Channel 4 Flag See the register description. 0 No channel event has occurred. 1 A channel event has occurred.
3 CH3F	Channel 3 Flag See the register description. 0 No channel event has occurred. 1 A channel event has occurred.
2 CH2F	Channel 2 Flag See the register description.

Table continues on the next page...

FTMx_STATUS field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 No channel event has occurred. 1 A channel event has occurred.
1 CH1F	Channel 1 Flag See the register description. 0 No channel event has occurred. 1 A channel event has occurred.
0 CH0F	Channel 0 Flag See the register description. 0 No channel event has occurred. 1 A channel event has occurred.

43.4.10 Features Mode Selection (FTMx_MODE)

This register contains the global enable bit for FTM-specific features and the control bits used to configure:

- Fault control mode and interrupt
- Capture Test mode
- PWM synchronization
- Write protection
- Channel output initialization

These controls relate to all channels within this module.

Address: Base address + 54h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0								FAULTIE	FAULTM		CAPTEST	PWMSYNC	WPDIS	INIT	FTMEN
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0

FTMx_MODE field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7 FAULTIE	Fault Interrupt Enable Enables the generation of an interrupt when a fault is detected by FTM and the FTM fault control is enabled. 0 Fault control interrupt is disabled. 1 Fault control interrupt is enabled.
6–5 FAULTM	Fault Control Mode Defines the FTM fault control mode. This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1. 00 Fault control is disabled for all channels. 01 Fault control is enabled for even channels only (channels 0, 2, 4, and 6), and the selected mode is the manual fault clearing. 10 Fault control is enabled for all channels, and the selected mode is the manual fault clearing. 11 Fault control is enabled for all channels, and the selected mode is the automatic fault clearing.
4 CAPTEST	Capture Test Mode Enable Enables the capture test mode. This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1. 0 Capture test mode is disabled. 1 Capture test mode is enabled.
3 PWMSYNC	PWM Synchronization Mode Selects which triggers can be used by MOD, CnV, OUTMASK, and FTM counter synchronization. See PWM synchronization . The PWMSYNC bit configures the synchronization when SYNCMODE is 0. 0 No restrictions. Software and hardware triggers can be used by MOD, CnV, OUTMASK, and FTM counter synchronization. 1 Software trigger can only be used by MOD and CnV synchronization, and hardware triggers can only be used by OUTMASK and FTM counter synchronization.
2 WPDIS	Write Protection Disable When write protection is enabled (WPDIS = 0), write protected bits cannot be written. When write protection is disabled (WPDIS = 1), write protected bits can be written. The WPDIS bit is the negation of the WPEN bit. WPDIS is cleared when 1 is written to WPEN. WPDIS is set when WPEN bit is read as a 1 and then 1 is written to WPDIS. Writing 0 to WPDIS has no effect. 0 Write protection is enabled. 1 Write protection is disabled.
1 INIT	Initialize The Channels Output When a 1 is written to INIT bit the channels output is initialized according to the state of their corresponding bit in the OUTINIT register. Writing a 0 to INIT bit has no effect. The INIT bit is always read as 0.
0 FTMEN	FTM Enable This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1.

Table continues on the next page...

FTMx_MODE field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
0	TPM compatibility. Free running counter and synchronization compatible with TPM.
1	Free running counter and synchronization are different from TPM behavior.

43.4.11 Synchronization (FTMx_SYNC)

This register configures the PWM synchronization.

A synchronization event can perform the synchronized update of MOD, CV, and OUTMASK registers with the value of their write buffer and the FTM counter initialization.

NOTE

The software trigger, SWSYNC bit, and hardware triggers TRIG0, TRIG1, and TRIG2 bits have a potential conflict if used together when SYNCMODE = 0. Use only hardware or software triggers but not both at the same time, otherwise unpredictable behavior is likely to happen.

The selection of the loading point, CNTMAX and CNTMIN bits, is intended to provide the update of MOD, CNTIN, and CnV registers across all enabled channels simultaneously. The use of the loading point selection together with SYNCMODE = 0 and hardware trigger selection, TRIG0, TRIG1, or TRIG2 bits, is likely to result in unpredictable behavior.

The synchronization event selection also depends on the PWMSYNC (MODE register) and SYNCMODE (SYNCONF register) bits. See [PWM synchronization](#).

Address: Base address + 58h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0								SWSYNC	TRIG2	TRIG1	TRIG0	SYNCHOM	REINIT	CNTMAX	CNTMIN
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FTMx_SYNC field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7 SWSYNC	PWM Synchronization Software Trigger Selects the software trigger as the PWM synchronization trigger. The software trigger happens when a 1 is written to SWSYNC bit. 0 Software trigger is not selected. 1 Software trigger is selected.
6 TRIG2	PWM Synchronization Hardware Trigger 2 Enables hardware trigger 2 to the PWM synchronization. Hardware trigger 2 happens when a rising edge is detected at the trigger 2 input signal. 0 Trigger is disabled. 1 Trigger is enabled.
5 TRIG1	PWM Synchronization Hardware Trigger 1 Enables hardware trigger 1 to the PWM synchronization. Hardware trigger 1 happens when a rising edge is detected at the trigger 1 input signal. 0 Trigger is disabled. 1 Trigger is enabled.
4 TRIG0	PWM Synchronization Hardware Trigger 0 Enables hardware trigger 0 to the PWM synchronization. Hardware trigger 0 occurs when a rising edge is detected at the trigger 0 input signal. 0 Trigger is disabled. 1 Trigger is enabled.
3 SYNCHOM	Output Mask Synchronization Selects when the OUTMASK register is updated with the value of its buffer. 0 OUTMASK register is updated with the value of its buffer in all rising edges of the system clock. 1 OUTMASK register is updated with the value of its buffer only by the PWM synchronization.
2 REINIT	FTM Counter Reinitialization By Synchronization (FTM counter synchronization) Determines if the FTM counter is reinitialized when the selected trigger for the synchronization is detected. The REINIT bit configures the synchronization when SYNCMODE is zero. 0 FTM counter continues to count normally. 1 FTM counter is updated with its initial value when the selected trigger is detected.

Table continues on the next page...

FTMx_SYNC field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
1 CNTMAX	<p>Maximum Loading Point Enable</p> <p>Selects the maximum loading point to PWM synchronization. See Boundary cycle and loading points. If CNTMAX is 1, the selected loading point is when the FTM counter reaches its maximum value (MOD register).</p> <p>0 The maximum loading point is disabled. 1 The maximum loading point is enabled.</p>
0 CNTMIN	<p>Minimum Loading Point Enable</p> <p>Selects the minimum loading point to PWM synchronization. See Boundary cycle and loading points. If CNTMIN is one, the selected loading point is when the FTM counter reaches its minimum value (CNTIN register).</p> <p>0 The minimum loading point is disabled. 1 The minimum loading point is enabled.</p>

43.4.12 Initial State For Channels Output (FTMx_OUTINIT)

Address: Base address + 5Ch offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0								CH7OI	CH6OI	CH5OI	CH4OI	CH3OI	CH2OI	CH1OI	CH0OI
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FTMx_OUTINIT field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
7 CH7OI	<p>Channel 7 Output Initialization Value</p> <p>Selects the value that is forced into the channel output when the initialization occurs.</p> <p>0 The initialization value is 0. 1 The initialization value is 1.</p>
6 CH6OI	Channel 6 Output Initialization Value

Table continues on the next page...

FTMx_OUTINIT field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Selects the value that is forced into the channel output when the initialization occurs. 0 The initialization value is 0. 1 The initialization value is 1.
5 CH5OI	Channel 5 Output Initialization Value Selects the value that is forced into the channel output when the initialization occurs. 0 The initialization value is 0. 1 The initialization value is 1.
4 CH4OI	Channel 4 Output Initialization Value Selects the value that is forced into the channel output when the initialization occurs. 0 The initialization value is 0. 1 The initialization value is 1.
3 CH3OI	Channel 3 Output Initialization Value Selects the value that is forced into the channel output when the initialization occurs. 0 The initialization value is 0. 1 The initialization value is 1.
2 CH2OI	Channel 2 Output Initialization Value Selects the value that is forced into the channel output when the initialization occurs. 0 The initialization value is 0. 1 The initialization value is 1.
1 CH1OI	Channel 1 Output Initialization Value Selects the value that is forced into the channel output when the initialization occurs. 0 The initialization value is 0. 1 The initialization value is 1.
0 CH0OI	Channel 0 Output Initialization Value Selects the value that is forced into the channel output when the initialization occurs. 0 The initialization value is 0. 1 The initialization value is 1.

43.4.13 Output Mask (FTMx_OUTMASK)

This register provides a mask for each FTM channel. The mask of a channel determines if its output responds, that is, it is masked or not, when a match occurs. This feature is used for BLDC control where the PWM signal is presented to an electric motor at specific times to provide electronic commutation.

Any write to the OUTMASK register, stores the value in its write buffer. The register is updated with the value of its write buffer according to [PWM synchronization](#).

Address: Base address + 60h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0								CH7OM	CH6OM	CH5OM	CH4OM	CH3OM	CH2OM	CH1OM	CH0OM
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FTMx_OUTMASK field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7 CH7OM	Channel 7 Output Mask Defines if the channel output is masked or unmasked. 0 Channel output is not masked. It continues to operate normally. 1 Channel output is masked. It is forced to its inactive state.
6 CH6OM	Channel 6 Output Mask Defines if the channel output is masked or unmasked. 0 Channel output is not masked. It continues to operate normally. 1 Channel output is masked. It is forced to its inactive state.
5 CH5OM	Channel 5 Output Mask Defines if the channel output is masked or unmasked. 0 Channel output is not masked. It continues to operate normally. 1 Channel output is masked. It is forced to its inactive state.
4 CH4OM	Channel 4 Output Mask Defines if the channel output is masked or unmasked. 0 Channel output is not masked. It continues to operate normally. 1 Channel output is masked. It is forced to its inactive state.
3 CH3OM	Channel 3 Output Mask Defines if the channel output is masked or unmasked.

Table continues on the next page...

FTMx_OUTMASK field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Channel output is not masked. It continues to operate normally. 1 Channel output is masked. It is forced to its inactive state.
2 CH2OM	Channel 2 Output Mask Defines if the channel output is masked or unmasked. 0 Channel output is not masked. It continues to operate normally. 1 Channel output is masked. It is forced to its inactive state.
1 CH1OM	Channel 1 Output Mask Defines if the channel output is masked or unmasked. 0 Channel output is not masked. It continues to operate normally. 1 Channel output is masked. It is forced to its inactive state.
0 CH0OM	Channel 0 Output Mask Defines if the channel output is masked or unmasked. 0 Channel output is not masked. It continues to operate normally. 1 Channel output is masked. It is forced to its inactive state.

43.4.14 Function For Linked Channels (FTMx_COMBINE)

This register contains the control bits used to configure the fault control, synchronization, deadtime insertion, Dual Edge Capture mode, Complementary, and Combine mode for each pair of channels (n) and (n+1), where n equals 0, 2, 4, and 6.

Address: Base address + 64h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0	FAULTEN3	SYNCEN3	DTEN3	DECAP3	DECAPEN3	COMP3	COMBINE3	0	FAULTEN2	SYNCEN2	DTEN2	DECAP2	DECAPEN2	COMP2	COMBINE2
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0	FAULTEN1	SYNCEN1	DTEN1	DECAP1	DECAPEN1	COMP1	COMBINE1	0	FAULTEN0	SYNCEN0	DTEN0	DECAP0	DECAPEN0	COMP0	COMBINE0
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FTMx_COMBINE field descriptions

Field	Description
31 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
30 FAULTEN3	Fault Control Enable For n = 6 Enables the fault control in channels (n) and (n+1). This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1. 0 The fault control in this pair of channels is disabled. 1 The fault control in this pair of channels is enabled.
29 SYNCEN3	Synchronization Enable For n = 6 Enables PWM synchronization of registers C(n)V and C(n+1)V. 0 The PWM synchronization in this pair of channels is disabled. 1 The PWM synchronization in this pair of channels is enabled.
28 DTEN3	Deadtime Enable For n = 6 Enables the deadtime insertion in the channels (n) and (n+1). This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1. 0 The deadtime insertion in this pair of channels is disabled. 1 The deadtime insertion in this pair of channels is enabled.
27 DECAP3	Dual Edge Capture Mode Captures For n = 6 Enables the capture of the FTM counter value according to the channel (n) input event and the configuration of the dual edge capture bits. This field applies only when DECAPEN = 1. DECAP bit is cleared automatically by hardware if dual edge capture – one-shot mode is selected and when the capture of channel (n+1) event is made. 0 The dual edge captures are inactive. 1 The dual edge captures are active.
26 DECAPEN3	Dual Edge Capture Mode Enable For n = 6 Enables the Dual Edge Capture mode in the channels (n) and (n+1). This bit reconfigures the function of MSnA, ELSnB:ELSnA and ELS(n+1)B:ELS(n+1)A bits in Dual Edge Capture mode according to Table 43-3 . This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1. 0 The Dual Edge Capture mode in this pair of channels is disabled. 1 The Dual Edge Capture mode in this pair of channels is enabled.
25 COMP3	Complement Of Channel (n) for n = 6 Enables Complementary mode for the combined channels. In Complementary mode the channel (n+1) output is the inverse of the channel (n) output. This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1. 0 The channel (n+1) output is the same as the channel (n) output. 1 The channel (n+1) output is the complement of the channel (n) output.

Table continues on the next page...

FTMx_COMBINE field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
24 COMBINE3	<p>Combine Channels For $n = 6$</p> <p>Enables the combine feature for channels (n) and (n+1).</p> <p>This field is write protected. It can be written only when $MODE[WPDIS] = 1$.</p> <p>0 Channels (n) and (n+1) are independent. 1 Channels (n) and (n+1) are combined.</p>
23 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
22 FAULTEN2	<p>Fault Control Enable For $n = 4$</p> <p>Enables the fault control in channels (n) and (n+1).</p> <p>This field is write protected. It can be written only when $MODE[WPDIS] = 1$.</p> <p>0 The fault control in this pair of channels is disabled. 1 The fault control in this pair of channels is enabled.</p>
21 SYNCEN2	<p>Synchronization Enable For $n = 4$</p> <p>Enables PWM synchronization of registers $C(n)V$ and $C(n+1)V$.</p> <p>0 The PWM synchronization in this pair of channels is disabled. 1 The PWM synchronization in this pair of channels is enabled.</p>
20 DTEN2	<p>Deadtime Enable For $n = 4$</p> <p>Enables the deadtime insertion in the channels (n) and (n+1).</p> <p>This field is write protected. It can be written only when $MODE[WPDIS] = 1$.</p> <p>0 The deadtime insertion in this pair of channels is disabled. 1 The deadtime insertion in this pair of channels is enabled.</p>
19 DECAP2	<p>Dual Edge Capture Mode Captures For $n = 4$</p> <p>Enables the capture of the FTM counter value according to the channel (n) input event and the configuration of the dual edge capture bits.</p> <p>This field applies only when $DECAPEN = 1$.</p> <p>DECAP bit is cleared automatically by hardware if dual edge capture – one-shot mode is selected and when the capture of channel (n+1) event is made.</p> <p>0 The dual edge captures are inactive. 1 The dual edge captures are active.</p>
18 DECAPEN2	<p>Dual Edge Capture Mode Enable For $n = 4$</p> <p>Enables the Dual Edge Capture mode in the channels (n) and (n+1). This bit reconfigures the function of $MSnA$, $ELSnB:ELSnA$ and $ELSn+1B:ELSn+1A$ bits in Dual Edge Capture mode according to Table 43-3.</p> <p>This field is write protected. It can be written only when $MODE[WPDIS] = 1$.</p> <p>0 The Dual Edge Capture mode in this pair of channels is disabled. 1 The Dual Edge Capture mode in this pair of channels is enabled.</p>
17 COMP2	<p>Complement Of Channel (n) For $n = 4$</p>

Table continues on the next page...

FTMx_COMBINE field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>Enables Complementary mode for the combined channels. In Complementary mode the channel (n+1) output is the inverse of the channel (n) output.</p> <p>This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1.</p> <p>0 The channel (n+1) output is the same as the channel (n) output. 1 The channel (n+1) output is the complement of the channel (n) output.</p>
16 COMBINE2	<p>Combine Channels For n = 4</p> <p>Enables the combine feature for channels (n) and (n+1).</p> <p>This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1.</p> <p>0 Channels (n) and (n+1) are independent. 1 Channels (n) and (n+1) are combined.</p>
15 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
14 FAULTEN1	<p>Fault Control Enable For n = 2</p> <p>Enables the fault control in channels (n) and (n+1).</p> <p>This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1.</p> <p>0 The fault control in this pair of channels is disabled. 1 The fault control in this pair of channels is enabled.</p>
13 SYNCEN1	<p>Synchronization Enable For n = 2</p> <p>Enables PWM synchronization of registers C(n)V and C(n+1)V.</p> <p>0 The PWM synchronization in this pair of channels is disabled. 1 The PWM synchronization in this pair of channels is enabled.</p>
12 DTEN1	<p>Deadtime Enable For n = 2</p> <p>Enables the deadtime insertion in the channels (n) and (n+1).</p> <p>This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1.</p> <p>0 The deadtime insertion in this pair of channels is disabled. 1 The deadtime insertion in this pair of channels is enabled.</p>
11 DECAP1	<p>Dual Edge Capture Mode Captures For n = 2</p> <p>Enables the capture of the FTM counter value according to the channel (n) input event and the configuration of the dual edge capture bits.</p> <p>This field applies only when DECAPEN = 1.</p> <p>DECAP bit is cleared automatically by hardware if Dual Edge Capture – One-Shot mode is selected and when the capture of channel (n+1) event is made.</p> <p>0 The dual edge captures are inactive. 1 The dual edge captures are active.</p>
10 DECAPEN1	<p>Dual Edge Capture Mode Enable For n = 2</p> <p>Enables the Dual Edge Capture mode in the channels (n) and (n+1). This bit reconfigures the function of MSnA, ELSnB:ELSnA and ELS(n+1)B:ELS(n+1)A bits in Dual Edge Capture mode according to Table 43-3.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

FTMx_COMBINE field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1.</p> <p>0 The Dual Edge Capture mode in this pair of channels is disabled. 1 The Dual Edge Capture mode in this pair of channels is enabled.</p>
9 COMP1	<p>Complement Of Channel (n) For n = 2</p> <p>Enables Complementary mode for the combined channels. In Complementary mode the channel (n+1) output is the inverse of the channel (n) output.</p> <p>This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1.</p> <p>0 The channel (n+1) output is the same as the channel (n) output. 1 The channel (n+1) output is the complement of the channel (n) output.</p>
8 COMBINE1	<p>Combine Channels For n = 2</p> <p>Enables the combine feature for channels (n) and (n+1).</p> <p>This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1.</p> <p>0 Channels (n) and (n+1) are independent. 1 Channels (n) and (n+1) are combined.</p>
7 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
6 FAULTEN0	<p>Fault Control Enable For n = 0</p> <p>Enables the fault control in channels (n) and (n+1).</p> <p>This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1.</p> <p>0 The fault control in this pair of channels is disabled. 1 The fault control in this pair of channels is enabled.</p>
5 SYNCEN0	<p>Synchronization Enable For n = 0</p> <p>Enables PWM synchronization of registers C(n)V and C(n+1)V.</p> <p>0 The PWM synchronization in this pair of channels is disabled. 1 The PWM synchronization in this pair of channels is enabled.</p>
4 DTEN0	<p>Deadtime Enable For n = 0</p> <p>Enables the deadtime insertion in the channels (n) and (n+1).</p> <p>This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1.</p> <p>0 The deadtime insertion in this pair of channels is disabled. 1 The deadtime insertion in this pair of channels is enabled.</p>
3 DECAP0	<p>Dual Edge Capture Mode Captures For n = 0</p> <p>Enables the capture of the FTM counter value according to the channel (n) input event and the configuration of the dual edge capture bits.</p> <p>This field applies only when DECAPEN = 1.</p> <p>DECAP bit is cleared automatically by hardware if dual edge capture – one-shot mode is selected and when the capture of channel (n+1) event is made.</p> <p>0 The dual edge captures are inactive. 1 The dual edge captures are active.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

FTMx_COMBINE field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
2 DECAPEN0	<p>Dual Edge Capture Mode Enable For n = 0</p> <p>Enables the Dual Edge Capture mode in the channels (n) and (n+1). This bit reconfigures the function of MSnA, ELSnB:ELSnA and ELS(n+1)B:ELS(n+1)A bits in Dual Edge Capture mode according to Table 43-3.</p> <p>This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1.</p> <p>0 The Dual Edge Capture mode in this pair of channels is disabled. 1 The Dual Edge Capture mode in this pair of channels is enabled.</p>
1 COMP0	<p>Complement Of Channel (n) For n = 0</p> <p>Enables Complementary mode for the combined channels. In Complementary mode the channel (n+1) output is the inverse of the channel (n) output.</p> <p>This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1.</p> <p>0 The channel (n+1) output is the same as the channel (n) output. 1 The channel (n+1) output is the complement of the channel (n) output.</p>
0 COMBINE0	<p>Combine Channels For n = 0</p> <p>Enables the combine feature for channels (n) and (n+1).</p> <p>This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1.</p> <p>0 Channels (n) and (n+1) are independent. 1 Channels (n) and (n+1) are combined.</p>

43.4.15 Deadtime Insertion Control (FTMx_DEADTIME)

This register selects the deadtime prescaler factor and deadtime value. All FTM channels use this clock prescaler and this deadtime value for the deadtime insertion.

Address: Base address + 68h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																DTPS		DTVAL													
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

FTMx_DEADTIME field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
7–6 DTPS	<p>Deadtime Prescaler Value</p> <p>Selects the division factor of the system clock. This prescaled clock is used by the deadtime counter.</p> <p>This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1.</p> <p>0x Divide the system clock by 1.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

FTMx_DEADTIME field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	10 Divide the system clock by 4. 11 Divide the system clock by 16.
DTVAL	Deadtime Value Selects the deadtime insertion value for the deadtime counter. The deadtime counter is clocked by a scaled version of the system clock. See the description of DTPS. Deadtime insert value = (DTPS × DTVAL). DTVAL selects the number of deadtime counts inserted as follows: When DTVAL is 0, no counts are inserted. When DTVAL is 1, 1 count is inserted. When DTVAL is 2, 2 counts are inserted. This pattern continues up to a possible 63 counts. This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1.

43.4.16 FTM External Trigger (FTMx_EXTTRIG)

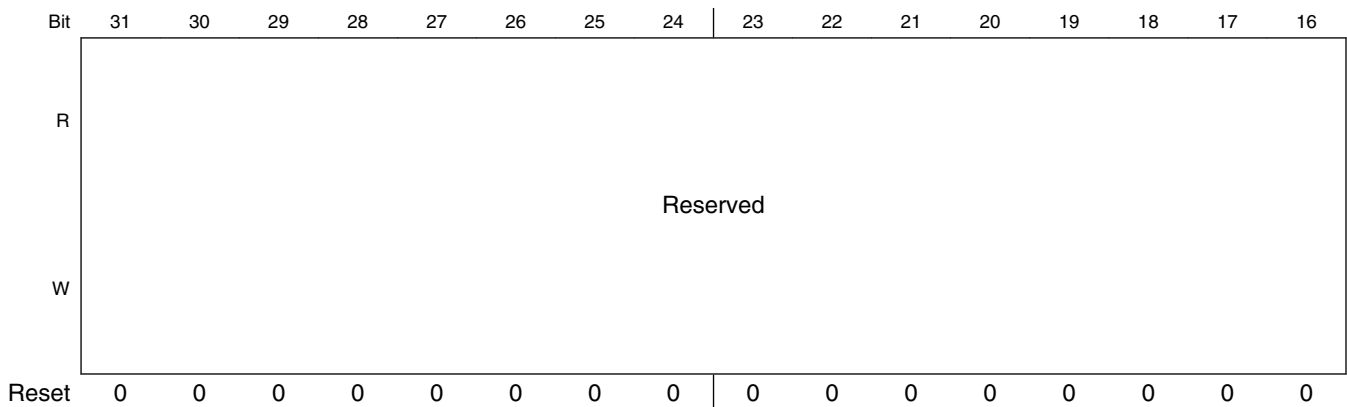
This register:

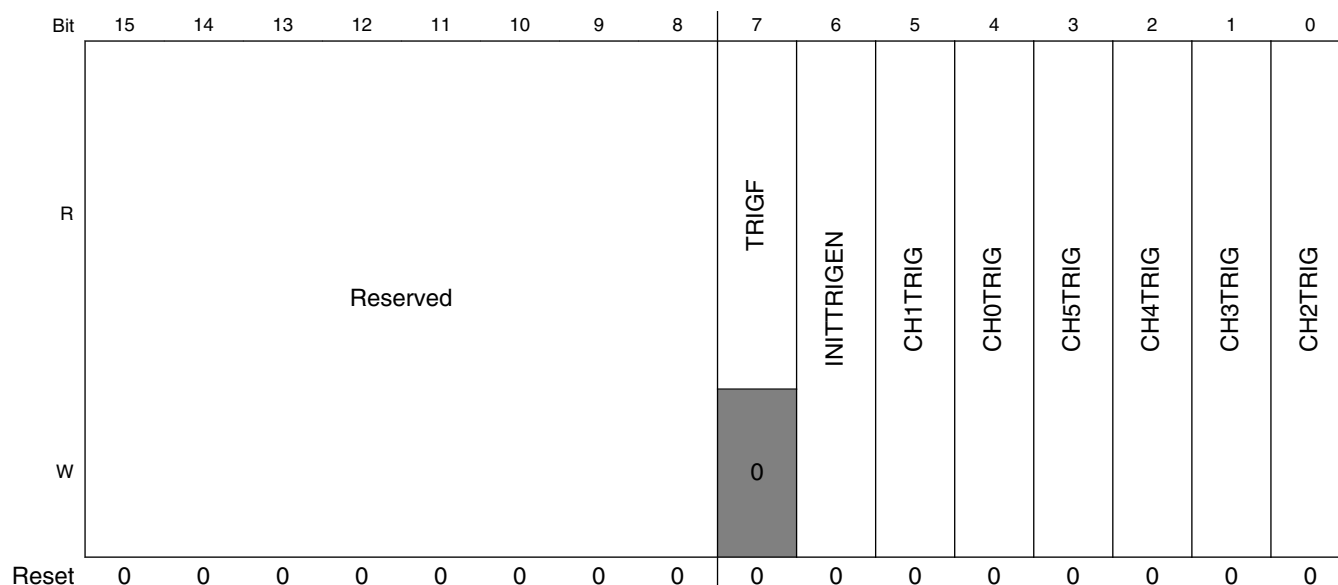
- Indicates when a channel trigger was generated
- Enables the generation of a trigger when the FTM counter is equal to its initial value
- Selects which channels are used in the generation of the channel triggers

Several channels can be selected to generate multiple triggers in one PWM period. See [Channel trigger output](#) and [Initialization trigger](#).

Channels 6 and 7 are not used to generate channel triggers.

Address: Base address + 6Ch offset





FTMx_EXTTRIG field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved.
7 TRIGF	<p>Channel Trigger Flag</p> <p>Set by hardware when a channel trigger is generated. Clear TRIGF by reading EXTTRIG while TRIGF is set and then writing a 0 to TRIGF. Writing a 1 to TRIGF has no effect.</p> <p>If another channel trigger is generated before the clearing sequence is completed, the sequence is reset so TRIGF remains set after the clear sequence is completed for the earlier TRIGF.</p> <p>0 No channel trigger was generated. 1 A channel trigger was generated.</p>
6 INITTRIGEN	<p>Initialization Trigger Enable</p> <p>Enables the generation of the trigger when the FTM counter is equal to the CNTIN register.</p> <p>0 The generation of initialization trigger is disabled. 1 The generation of initialization trigger is enabled.</p>
5 CH1TRIG	<p>Channel 1 Trigger Enable</p> <p>Enables the generation of the channel trigger when the FTM counter is equal to the CnV register.</p> <p>0 The generation of the channel trigger is disabled. 1 The generation of the channel trigger is enabled.</p>
4 CH0TRIG	<p>Channel 0 Trigger Enable</p> <p>Enables the generation of the channel trigger when the FTM counter is equal to the CnV register.</p> <p>0 The generation of the channel trigger is disabled. 1 The generation of the channel trigger is enabled.</p>
3 CH5TRIG	<p>Channel 5 Trigger Enable</p>

Table continues on the next page...

FTMx_EXTTRIG field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Enables the generation of the channel trigger when the FTM counter is equal to the CnV register. 0 The generation of the channel trigger is disabled. 1 The generation of the channel trigger is enabled.
2 CH4TRIG	Channel 4 Trigger Enable Enables the generation of the channel trigger when the FTM counter is equal to the CnV register. 0 The generation of the channel trigger is disabled. 1 The generation of the channel trigger is enabled.
1 CH3TRIG	Channel 3 Trigger Enable Enables the generation of the channel trigger when the FTM counter is equal to the CnV register. 0 The generation of the channel trigger is disabled. 1 The generation of the channel trigger is enabled.
0 CH2TRIG	Channel 2 Trigger Enable Enables the generation of the channel trigger when the FTM counter is equal to the CnV register. 0 The generation of the channel trigger is disabled. 1 The generation of the channel trigger is enabled.

43.4.17 Channels Polarity (FTMx_POL)

This register defines the output polarity of the FTM channels.

NOTE

The safe value that is driven in a channel output when the fault control is enabled and a fault condition is detected is the inactive state of the channel. That is, the safe value of a channel is the value of its POL bit.

Address: Base address + 70h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Reserved															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved								POL7	POL6	POL5	POL4	POL3	POL2	POL1	POL0
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FTMx_POL field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved.
7 POL7	Channel 7 Polarity Defines the polarity of the channel output. This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1. 0 The channel polarity is active high. 1 The channel polarity is active low.
6 POL6	Channel 6 Polarity Defines the polarity of the channel output. This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1. 0 The channel polarity is active high. 1 The channel polarity is active low.
5 POL5	Channel 5 Polarity Defines the polarity of the channel output. This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1. 0 The channel polarity is active high. 1 The channel polarity is active low.
4 POL4	Channel 4 Polarity Defines the polarity of the channel output. This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1. 0 The channel polarity is active high. 1 The channel polarity is active low.
3 POL3	Channel 3 Polarity Defines the polarity of the channel output. This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1. 0 The channel polarity is active high. 1 The channel polarity is active low.
2 POL2	Channel 2 Polarity Defines the polarity of the channel output. This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1. 0 The channel polarity is active high. 1 The channel polarity is active low.
1 POL1	Channel 1 Polarity Defines the polarity of the channel output. This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1.

Table continues on the next page...

FTMx_POL field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 The channel polarity is active high. 1 The channel polarity is active low.
0 POL0	Channel 0 Polarity Defines the polarity of the channel output. This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1. 0 The channel polarity is active high. 1 The channel polarity is active low.

43.4.18 Fault Mode Status (FTMx_FMS)

This register contains the fault detection flags, write protection enable bit, and the logic OR of the enabled fault inputs.

Address: Base address + 74h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0								FAULTF	WPEN	FAULTIN	0	FAULTF3	FAULTF2	FAULTF1	FAULTF0
W									0				0	0	0	0
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FTMx_FMS field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7 FAULTF	<p>Fault Detection Flag</p> <p>Represents the logic OR of the individual FAULTFj bits where j = 3, 2, 1, 0. Clear FAULTF by reading the FMS register while FAULTF is set and then writing a 0 to FAULTF while there is no existing fault condition at the enabled fault inputs. Writing a 1 to FAULTF has no effect.</p> <p>If another fault condition is detected in an enabled fault input before the clearing sequence is completed, the sequence is reset so FAULTF remains set after the clearing sequence is completed for the earlier fault condition. FAULTF is also cleared when FAULTFj bits are cleared individually.</p> <p>0 No fault condition was detected. 1 A fault condition was detected.</p>
6 WPEN	<p>Write Protection Enable</p> <p>The WPEN bit is the negation of the WPDIS bit. WPEN is set when 1 is written to it. WPEN is cleared when WPEN bit is read as a 1 and then 1 is written to WPDIS. Writing 0 to WPEN has no effect.</p> <p>0 Write protection is disabled. Write protected bits can be written. 1 Write protection is enabled. Write protected bits cannot be written.</p>
5 FAULTIN	<p>Fault Inputs</p> <p>Represents the logic OR of the enabled fault inputs after their filter (if their filter is enabled) when fault control is enabled.</p> <p>0 The logic OR of the enabled fault inputs is 0. 1 The logic OR of the enabled fault inputs is 1.</p>
4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3 FAULTF3	<p>Fault Detection Flag 3</p> <p>Set by hardware when fault control is enabled, the corresponding fault input is enabled and a fault condition is detected at the fault input.</p> <p>Clear FAULTF3 by reading the FMS register while FAULTF3 is set and then writing a 0 to FAULTF3 while there is no existing fault condition at the corresponding fault input. Writing a 1 to FAULTF3 has no effect. FAULTF3 bit is also cleared when FAULTF bit is cleared.</p> <p>If another fault condition is detected at the corresponding fault input before the clearing sequence is completed, the sequence is reset so FAULTF3 remains set after the clearing sequence is completed for the earlier fault condition.</p> <p>0 No fault condition was detected at the fault input. 1 A fault condition was detected at the fault input.</p>
2 FAULTF2	<p>Fault Detection Flag 2</p> <p>Set by hardware when fault control is enabled, the corresponding fault input is enabled and a fault condition is detected at the fault input.</p> <p>Clear FAULTF2 by reading the FMS register while FAULTF2 is set and then writing a 0 to FAULTF2 while there is no existing fault condition at the corresponding fault input. Writing a 1 to FAULTF2 has no effect. FAULTF2 bit is also cleared when FAULTF bit is cleared.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

FTMx_FMS field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>If another fault condition is detected at the corresponding fault input before the clearing sequence is completed, the sequence is reset so FAULTF2 remains set after the clearing sequence is completed for the earlier fault condition.</p> <p>0 No fault condition was detected at the fault input. 1 A fault condition was detected at the fault input.</p>
1 FAULTF1	<p>Fault Detection Flag 1</p> <p>Set by hardware when fault control is enabled, the corresponding fault input is enabled and a fault condition is detected at the fault input.</p> <p>Clear FAULTF1 by reading the FMS register while FAULTF1 is set and then writing a 0 to FAULTF1 while there is no existing fault condition at the corresponding fault input. Writing a 1 to FAULTF1 has no effect. FAULTF1 bit is also cleared when FAULTF bit is cleared.</p> <p>If another fault condition is detected at the corresponding fault input before the clearing sequence is completed, the sequence is reset so FAULTF1 remains set after the clearing sequence is completed for the earlier fault condition.</p> <p>0 No fault condition was detected at the fault input. 1 A fault condition was detected at the fault input.</p>
0 FAULTF0	<p>Fault Detection Flag 0</p> <p>Set by hardware when fault control is enabled, the corresponding fault input is enabled and a fault condition is detected at the fault input.</p> <p>Clear FAULTF0 by reading the FMS register while FAULTF0 is set and then writing a 0 to FAULTF0 while there is no existing fault condition at the corresponding fault input. Writing a 1 to FAULTF0 has no effect. FAULTF0 bit is also cleared when FAULTF bit is cleared.</p> <p>If another fault condition is detected at the corresponding fault input before the clearing sequence is completed, the sequence is reset so FAULTF0 remains set after the clearing sequence is completed for the earlier fault condition.</p> <p>0 No fault condition was detected at the fault input. 1 A fault condition was detected at the fault input.</p>

43.4.19 Input Capture Filter Control (FTMx_FILTER)

This register selects the filter value for the inputs of channels.

Channels 4, 5, 6 and 7 do not have an input filter.

NOTE

Writing to the FILTER register has immediate effect and must be done only when the channels 0, 1, 2, and 3 are not in input modes. Failure to do this could result in a missing valid signal.

Address: Base address + 78h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved																CH3FVAL				CH2FVAL				CH1FVAL				CH0FVAL			
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

FTMx_FILTER field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved.
15–12 CH3FVAL	Channel 3 Input Filter Selects the filter value for the channel input. The filter is disabled when the value is zero.
11–8 CH2FVAL	Channel 2 Input Filter Selects the filter value for the channel input. The filter is disabled when the value is zero.
7–4 CH1FVAL	Channel 1 Input Filter Selects the filter value for the channel input. The filter is disabled when the value is zero.
CH0FVAL	Channel 0 Input Filter Selects the filter value for the channel input. The filter is disabled when the value is zero.

43.4.20 Fault Control (FTMx_FLTCTRL)

This register selects the filter value for the fault inputs, enables the fault inputs and the fault inputs filter.

Address: Base address + 7Ch offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R																
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FTMx_FLTCTRL field descriptions

Field	Description
31–12 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
11–8 FFVAL	Fault Input Filter Selects the filter value for the fault inputs. The fault filter is disabled when the value is zero. NOTE: Writing to this field has immediate effect and must be done only when the fault control or all fault inputs are disabled. Failure to do this could result in a missing fault detection.
7 FFLTR3EN	Fault Input 3 Filter Enable Enables the filter for the fault input. This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1. 0 Fault input filter is disabled. 1 Fault input filter is enabled.
6 FFLTR2EN	Fault Input 2 Filter Enable Enables the filter for the fault input. This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1. 0 Fault input filter is disabled. 1 Fault input filter is enabled.
5 FFLTR1EN	Fault Input 1 Filter Enable Enables the filter for the fault input. This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1. 0 Fault input filter is disabled. 1 Fault input filter is enabled.
4 FFLTR0EN	Fault Input 0 Filter Enable Enables the filter for the fault input. This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1. 0 Fault input filter is disabled. 1 Fault input filter is enabled.
3 FAULT3EN	Fault Input 3 Enable Enables the fault input. This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1. 0 Fault input is disabled. 1 Fault input is enabled.
2 FAULT2EN	Fault Input 2 Enable Enables the fault input. This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1. 0 Fault input is disabled. 1 Fault input is enabled.

Table continues on the next page...

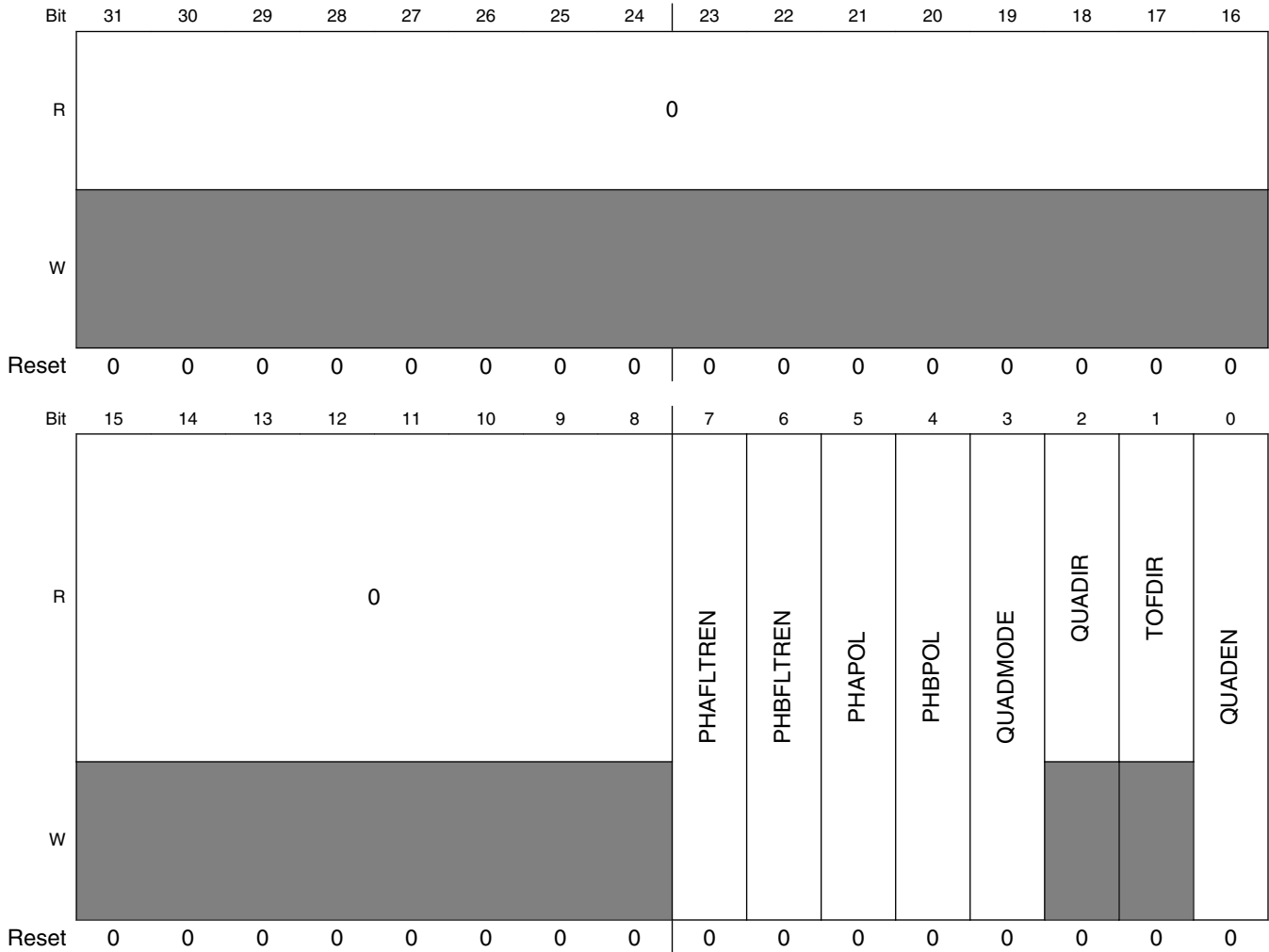
FTMx_FLTCTRL field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
1 FAULT1EN	<p>Fault Input 1 Enable</p> <p>Enables the fault input.</p> <p>This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1.</p> <p>0 Fault input is disabled. 1 Fault input is enabled.</p>
0 FAULT0EN	<p>Fault Input 0 Enable</p> <p>Enables the fault input.</p> <p>This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1.</p> <p>0 Fault input is disabled. 1 Fault input is enabled.</p>

43.4.21 Quadrature Decoder Control And Status (FTMx_QDCTRL)

This register has the control and status bits for the Quadrature Decoder mode.

Address: Base address + 80h offset



FTMx_QDCTRL field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7 PHAFLTREN	Phase A Input Filter Enable Enables the filter for the quadrature decoder phase A input. The filter value for the phase A input is defined by the CH0FVAL field of FILTER. The phase A filter is also disabled when CH0FVAL is zero. 0 Phase A input filter is disabled. 1 Phase A input filter is enabled.

Table continues on the next page...

FTMx_QDCTRL field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
6 PHBFLTREN	<p>Phase B Input Filter Enable</p> <p>Enables the filter for the quadrature decoder phase B input. The filter value for the phase B input is defined by the CH1FVAL field of FILTER. The phase B filter is also disabled when CH1FVAL is zero.</p> <p>0 Phase B input filter is disabled. 1 Phase B input filter is enabled.</p>
5 PHAPOL	<p>Phase A Input Polarity</p> <p>Selects the polarity for the quadrature decoder phase A input.</p> <p>0 Normal polarity. Phase A input signal is not inverted before identifying the rising and falling edges of this signal. 1 Inverted polarity. Phase A input signal is inverted before identifying the rising and falling edges of this signal.</p>
4 PHBPOL	<p>Phase B Input Polarity</p> <p>Selects the polarity for the quadrature decoder phase B input.</p> <p>0 Normal polarity. Phase B input signal is not inverted before identifying the rising and falling edges of this signal. 1 Inverted polarity. Phase B input signal is inverted before identifying the rising and falling edges of this signal.</p>
3 QUADMODE	<p>Quadrature Decoder Mode</p> <p>Selects the encoding mode used in the Quadrature Decoder mode.</p> <p>0 Phase A and phase B encoding mode. 1 Count and direction encoding mode.</p>
2 QUADIR	<p>FTM Counter Direction In Quadrature Decoder Mode</p> <p>Indicates the counting direction.</p> <p>0 Counting direction is decreasing (FTM counter decrement). 1 Counting direction is increasing (FTM counter increment).</p>
1 TOFDIR	<p>Timer Overflow Direction In Quadrature Decoder Mode</p> <p>Indicates if the TOF bit was set on the top or the bottom of counting.</p> <p>0 TOF bit was set on the bottom of counting. There was an FTM counter decrement and FTM counter changes from its minimum value (CNTIN register) to its maximum value (MOD register). 1 TOF bit was set on the top of counting. There was an FTM counter increment and FTM counter changes from its maximum value (MOD register) to its minimum value (CNTIN register).</p>
0 QUADEN	<p>Quadrature Decoder Mode Enable</p> <p>Enables the Quadrature Decoder mode. In this mode, the phase A and B input signals control the FTM counter direction. The Quadrature Decoder mode has precedence over the other modes. See Table 43-3.</p> <p>This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1.</p> <p>0 Quadrature Decoder mode is disabled. 1 Quadrature Decoder mode is enabled.</p>

43.4.22 Configuration (FTMx_CONF)

This register selects the number of times that the FTM counter overflow should occur before the TOF bit to be set, the FTM behavior in BDM modes, the use of an external global time base, and the global time base signal generation.

Address: Base address + 84h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0					GTBEOUT	GTBEEN	0	BDMMODE		0	NUMTOF				
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FTMx_CONF field descriptions

Field	Description
31–11 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
10 GTBEOUT	Global Time Base Output Enables the global time base signal generation to other FTMs. 0 A global time base signal generation is disabled. 1 A global time base signal generation is enabled.
9 GTBEEN	Global Time Base Enable Configures the FTM to use an external global time base signal that is generated by another FTM. 0 Use of an external global time base is disabled. 1 Use of an external global time base is enabled.
8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7–6 BDMMODE	BDM Mode Selects the FTM behavior in BDM mode. See BDM mode .
5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
NUMTOF	TOF Frequency

Table continues on the next page...

FTMx_CONF field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>Selects the ratio between the number of counter overflows to the number of times the TOF bit is set.</p> <p>NUMTOF = 0: The TOF bit is set for each counter overflow.</p> <p>NUMTOF = 1: The TOF bit is set for the first counter overflow but not for the next overflow.</p> <p>NUMTOF = 2: The TOF bit is set for the first counter overflow but not for the next 2 overflows.</p> <p>NUMTOF = 3: The TOF bit is set for the first counter overflow but not for the next 3 overflows.</p> <p>This pattern continues up to a maximum of 31.</p>

43.4.23 FTM Fault Input Polarity (FTMx_FLTPOL)

This register defines the fault inputs polarity.

Address: Base address + 88h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0												FLT3POL	FLT2POL	FLT1POL	FLT0POL
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FTMx_FLTPOL field descriptions

Field	Description
31–4 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
3 FLT3POL	<p>Fault Input 3 Polarity</p> <p>Defines the polarity of the fault input.</p> <p>This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1.</p> <p>0 The fault input polarity is active high. A 1 at the fault input indicates a fault.</p> <p>1 The fault input polarity is active low. A 0 at the fault input indicates a fault.</p>
2 FLT2POL	<p>Fault Input 2 Polarity</p> <p>Defines the polarity of the fault input.</p> <p>This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

FTMx_FLTPOL field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 The fault input polarity is active high. A 1 at the fault input indicates a fault. 1 The fault input polarity is active low. A 0 at the fault input indicates a fault.
1 FLT1POL	Fault Input 1 Polarity Defines the polarity of the fault input. This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1. 0 The fault input polarity is active high. A 1 at the fault input indicates a fault. 1 The fault input polarity is active low. A 0 at the fault input indicates a fault.
0 FLT0POL	Fault Input 0 Polarity Defines the polarity of the fault input. This field is write protected. It can be written only when MODE[WPDIS] = 1. 0 The fault input polarity is active high. A 1 at the fault input indicates a fault. 1 The fault input polarity is active low. A 0 at the fault input indicates a fault.

43.4.24 Synchronization Configuration (FTMx_SYNCONF)

This register selects the PWM synchronization configuration, SWOCTRL, INVCTRL and CNTIN registers synchronization, if FTM clears the TRIGj bit, where j = 0, 1, 2, when the hardware trigger j is detected.

Address: Base address + 8Ch offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0											HWSOC	HWINVC	HWOM	HWWRBUF	HWRSTCNT
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0			SWSOC	SWINVC	SWOM	SWWRBUF	SWRSTCNT	SYNCSOC	0	SWOC	INVC	0	CNTINC	0	HWTRIGMODE
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FTMx_SYNCONF field descriptions

Field	Description
31–21 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

Table continues on the next page...

FTMx_SYNCONF field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
20 HWSOC	Software output control synchronization is activated by a hardware trigger. 0 A hardware trigger does not activate the SWOCTRL register synchronization. 1 A hardware trigger activates the SWOCTRL register synchronization.
19 HWINVC	Inverting control synchronization is activated by a hardware trigger. 0 A hardware trigger does not activate the INVCTRL register synchronization. 1 A hardware trigger activates the INVCTRL register synchronization.
18 HWOM	Output mask synchronization is activated by a hardware trigger. 0 A hardware trigger does not activate the OUTMASK register synchronization. 1 A hardware trigger activates the OUTMASK register synchronization.
17 HWWRBUF	MOD, CNTIN, and CV registers synchronization is activated by a hardware trigger. 0 A hardware trigger does not activate MOD, CNTIN, and CV registers synchronization. 1 A hardware trigger activates MOD, CNTIN, and CV registers synchronization.
16 HWRSTCNT	FTM counter synchronization is activated by a hardware trigger. 0 A hardware trigger does not activate the FTM counter synchronization. 1 A hardware trigger activates the FTM counter synchronization.
15–13 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
12 SWSOC	Software output control synchronization is activated by the software trigger. 0 The software trigger does not activate the SWOCTRL register synchronization. 1 The software trigger activates the SWOCTRL register synchronization.
11 SWINVC	Inverting control synchronization is activated by the software trigger. 0 The software trigger does not activate the INVCTRL register synchronization. 1 The software trigger activates the INVCTRL register synchronization.
10 SWOM	Output mask synchronization is activated by the software trigger. 0 The software trigger does not activate the OUTMASK register synchronization. 1 The software trigger activates the OUTMASK register synchronization.
9 SWWRBUF	MOD, CNTIN, and CV registers synchronization is activated by the software trigger. 0 The software trigger does not activate MOD, CNTIN, and CV registers synchronization. 1 The software trigger activates MOD, CNTIN, and CV registers synchronization.
8 SWRSTCNT	FTM counter synchronization is activated by the software trigger. 0 The software trigger does not activate the FTM counter synchronization. 1 The software trigger activates the FTM counter synchronization.
7 SYNCMODE	Synchronization Mode Selects the PWM Synchronization mode. 0 Legacy PWM synchronization is selected. 1 Enhanced PWM synchronization is selected.

Table continues on the next page...

FTMx_SYNCONF field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
5 SWOC	SWOCTRL Register Synchronization 0 SWOCTRL register is updated with its buffer value at all rising edges of system clock. 1 SWOCTRL register is updated with its buffer value by the PWM synchronization.
4 INVC	INVCTRL Register Synchronization 0 INVCTRL register is updated with its buffer value at all rising edges of system clock. 1 INVCTRL register is updated with its buffer value by the PWM synchronization.
3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 CNTINC	CNTIN Register Synchronization 0 CNTIN register is updated with its buffer value at all rising edges of system clock. 1 CNTIN register is updated with its buffer value by the PWM synchronization.
1 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
0 HWTRIGMODE	Hardware Trigger Mode 0 FTM clears the TRIGj bit when the hardware trigger j is detected, where j = 0, 1,2. 1 FTM does not clear the TRIGj bit when the hardware trigger j is detected, where j = 0, 1,2.

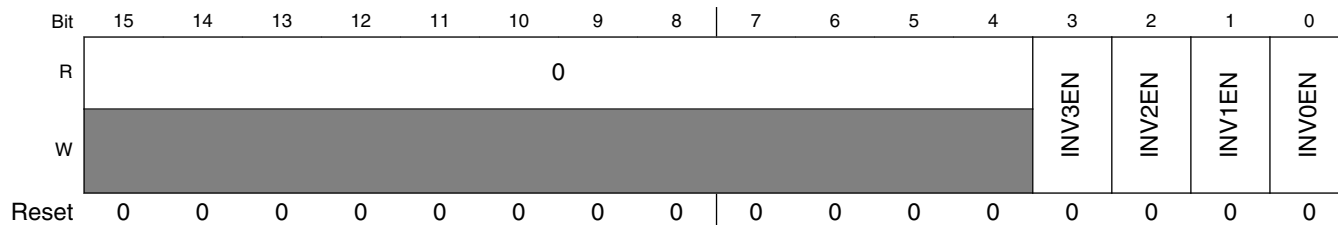
43.4.25 FTM Inverting Control (FTMx_INVCTRL)

This register controls when the channel (n) output becomes the channel (n+1) output, and channel (n+1) output becomes the channel (n) output. Each INVmEN bit enables the inverting operation for the corresponding pair channels m.

This register has a write buffer. The INVmEN bit is updated by the INVCTRL register synchronization.

Address: Base address + 90h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0



FTMx_INVCTRL field descriptions

Field	Description
31–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3 INV3EN	Pair Channels 3 Inverting Enable 0 Inverting is disabled. 1 Inverting is enabled.
2 INV2EN	Pair Channels 2 Inverting Enable 0 Inverting is disabled. 1 Inverting is enabled.
1 INV1EN	Pair Channels 1 Inverting Enable 0 Inverting is disabled. 1 Inverting is enabled.
0 INV0EN	Pair Channels 0 Inverting Enable 0 Inverting is disabled. 1 Inverting is enabled.

43.4.26 FTM Software Output Control (FTMx_SWOCTRL)

This register enables software control of channel (n) output and defines the value forced to the channel (n) output:

- The CHnOC bits enable the control of the corresponding channel (n) output by software.
- The CHnOCV bits select the value that is forced at the corresponding channel (n) output.

This register has a write buffer. The fields are updated by the SWOCTRL register synchronization.

memory map and register definition

Address: Base address + 94h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	CH7OCV	CH6OCV	CH5OCV	CH4OCV	CH3OCV	CH2OCV	CH1OCV	CH0OCV	CH7OC	CH6OC	CH5OC	CH4OC	CH3OC	CH2OC	CH1OC	CH0OC
W	CH7OCV	CH6OCV	CH5OCV	CH4OCV	CH3OCV	CH2OCV	CH1OCV	CH0OCV	CH7OC	CH6OC	CH5OC	CH4OC	CH3OC	CH2OC	CH1OC	CH0OC
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FTMx_SWOCTRL field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
15 CH7OCV	Channel 7 Software Output Control Value 0 The software output control forces 0 to the channel output. 1 The software output control forces 1 to the channel output.
14 CH6OCV	Channel 6 Software Output Control Value 0 The software output control forces 0 to the channel output. 1 The software output control forces 1 to the channel output.
13 CH5OCV	Channel 5 Software Output Control Value 0 The software output control forces 0 to the channel output. 1 The software output control forces 1 to the channel output.
12 CH4OCV	Channel 4 Software Output Control Value 0 The software output control forces 0 to the channel output. 1 The software output control forces 1 to the channel output.
11 CH3OCV	Channel 3 Software Output Control Value 0 The software output control forces 0 to the channel output. 1 The software output control forces 1 to the channel output.
10 CH2OCV	Channel 2 Software Output Control Value 0 The software output control forces 0 to the channel output. 1 The software output control forces 1 to the channel output.
9 CH1OCV	Channel 1 Software Output Control Value 0 The software output control forces 0 to the channel output. 1 The software output control forces 1 to the channel output.
8 CH0OCV	Channel 0 Software Output Control Value

Table continues on the next page...

FTMx_SWOCTRL field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 The software output control forces 0 to the channel output. 1 The software output control forces 1 to the channel output.
7 CH7OC	Channel 7 Software Output Control Enable 0 The channel output is not affected by software output control. 1 The channel output is affected by software output control.
6 CH6OC	Channel 6 Software Output Control Enable 0 The channel output is not affected by software output control. 1 The channel output is affected by software output control.
5 CH5OC	Channel 5 Software Output Control Enable 0 The channel output is not affected by software output control. 1 The channel output is affected by software output control.
4 CH4OC	Channel 4 Software Output Control Enable 0 The channel output is not affected by software output control. 1 The channel output is affected by software output control.
3 CH3OC	Channel 3 Software Output Control Enable 0 The channel output is not affected by software output control. 1 The channel output is affected by software output control.
2 CH2OC	Channel 2 Software Output Control Enable 0 The channel output is not affected by software output control. 1 The channel output is affected by software output control.
1 CH1OC	Channel 1 Software Output Control Enable 0 The channel output is not affected by software output control. 1 The channel output is affected by software output control.
0 CH0OC	Channel 0 Software Output Control Enable 0 The channel output is not affected by software output control. 1 The channel output is affected by software output control.

43.4.27 FTM PWM Load (FTMx_PWMLOAD)

Enables the loading of the MOD, CNTIN, C(n)V, and C(n+1)V registers with the values of their write buffers when the FTM counter changes from the MOD register value to its next value or when a channel (j) match occurs. A match occurs for the channel (j) when FTM counter = C(j)V.

Address: Base address + 98h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0							0	CH7SEL	CH6SEL	CH5SEL	CH4SEL	CH3SEL	CH2SEL	CH1SEL	CH0SEL
W								LDOK								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FTMx_PWMLOAD field descriptions

Field	Description
31–10 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
9 LDOK	Load Enable Enables the loading of the MOD, CNTIN, and CV registers with the values of their write buffers. 0 Loading updated values is disabled. 1 Loading updated values is enabled.
8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7 CH7SEL	Channel 7 Select 0 Do not include the channel in the matching process. 1 Include the channel in the matching process.
6 CH6SEL	Channel 6 Select 0 Do not include the channel in the matching process. 1 Include the channel in the matching process.
5 CH5SEL	Channel 5 Select 0 Do not include the channel in the matching process. 1 Include the channel in the matching process.

Table continues on the next page...

FTMx_PWMLOAD field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
4 CH4SEL	Channel 4 Select 0 Do not include the channel in the matching process. 1 Include the channel in the matching process.
3 CH3SEL	Channel 3 Select 0 Do not include the channel in the matching process. 1 Include the channel in the matching process.
2 CH2SEL	Channel 2 Select 0 Do not include the channel in the matching process. 1 Include the channel in the matching process.
1 CH1SEL	Channel 1 Select 0 Do not include the channel in the matching process. 1 Include the channel in the matching process.
0 CH0SEL	Channel 0 Select 0 Do not include the channel in the matching process. 1 Include the channel in the matching process.

43.5 Functional description

The notation used in this document to represent the counters and the generation of the signals is shown in the following figure.

functional description

FTM counting is up.
Channel (n) is in high-true EPWM mode.
PS[2:0] = 001
CNTIN = 0x0000
MOD = 0x0004
CnV = 0x0002

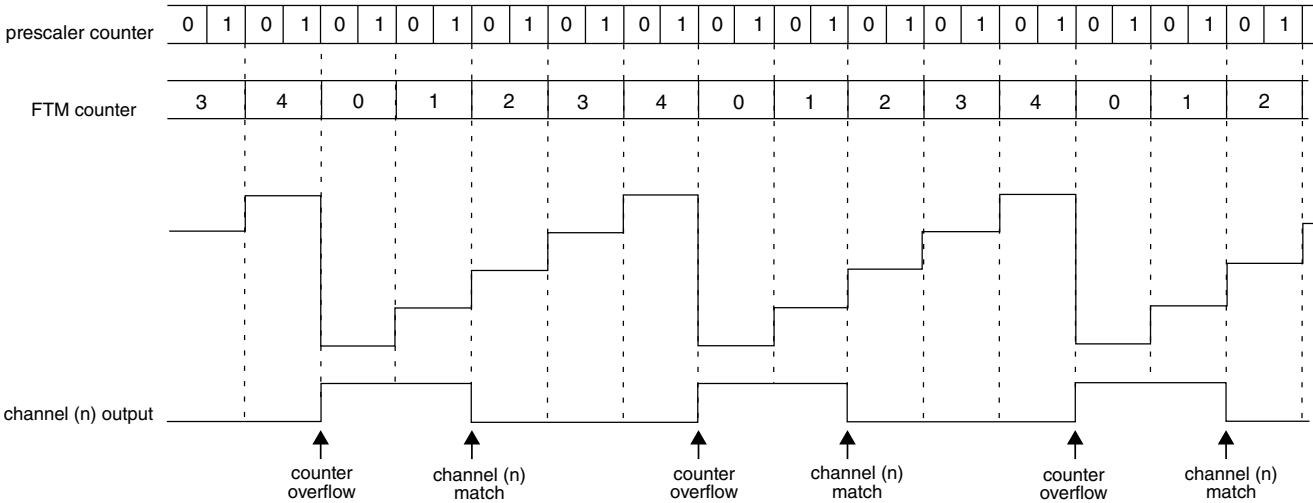


Figure 43-4. Notation used

43.5.1 Clock source

The FTM has only one clock domain: the system clock.

43.5.1.1 Counter clock source

The CLKS[1:0] bits in the SC register selects clock sources for the FTM counter or disables the FTM counter. After any chip reset, CLKS[1:0] = 0:0 so no clock source is selected.

The CLKS[1:0] bits may be read or written at any time. Disabling the FTM counter by writing 0:0 to the CLKS[1:0] bits does not affect the FTM counter value or other registers.

The fixed frequency clock is an alternative clock source for the FTM counter that allows the selection of a clock other than the system clock or an external clock. This clock input is defined by chip integration; see the chip-specific FTM information for further details. Due to FTM hardware implementation limitations, the frequency of the fixed frequency clock must not exceed 1/2 of the system clock frequency.

The external clock passes through a synchronizer clocked by the system clock to assure that counter transitions are properly aligned to system clock transitions. Therefore, to meet Nyquist criteria considering also jitter, the frequency of the external clock source must not exceed 1/4 of the system clock frequency.

43.5.2 Prescaler

The selected counter clock source passes through a prescaler that is a 7-bit counter. The value of the prescaler is selected by the PS[2:0] bits. The following figure shows an example of the prescaler counter and FTM counter.

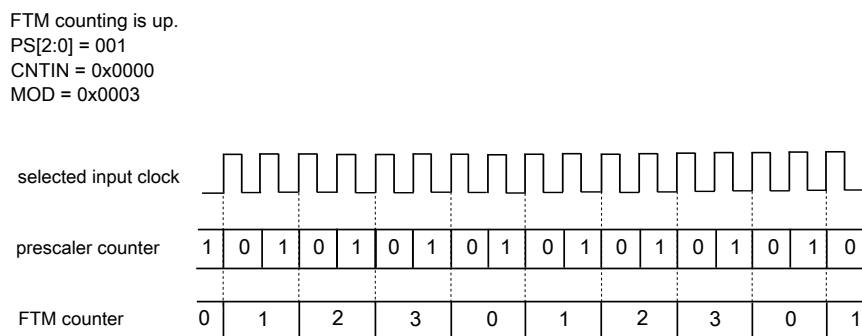


Figure 43-5. Example of the prescaler counter

43.5.3 Counter

The FTM has a 16-bit counter that is used by the channels either for input or output modes. The FTM counter clock is the selected clock divided by the prescaler.

The FTM counter has these modes of operation:

- [Up counting](#)
- [Up-down counting](#)
- [Quadrature Decoder mode](#)

43.5.3.1 Up counting

Up counting is selected when:

- QUADEN = 0, and
- CPWMS = 0

functional description

CNTIN defines the starting value of the count and MOD defines the final value of the count, see the following figure. The value of CNTIN is loaded into the FTM counter, and the counter increments until the value of MOD is reached, at which point the counter is reloaded with the value of CNTIN.

The FTM period when using up counting is $(MOD - CNTIN + 0x0001) \times \text{period of the FTM counter clock}$.

The TOF bit is set when the FTM counter changes from MOD to CNTIN.

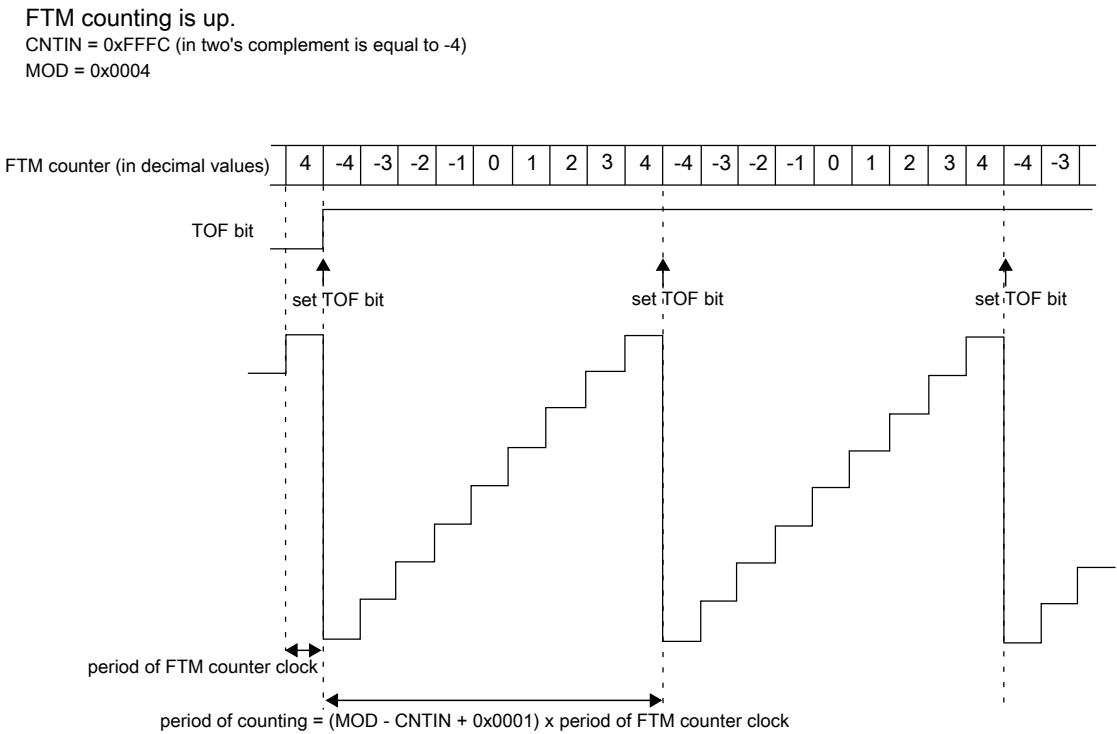


Figure 43-6. Example of FTM up and signed counting

Table 43-5. FTM counting based on CNTIN value

When	Then
CNTIN = 0x0000	The FTM counting is equivalent to TPM up counting, that is, up and unsigned counting. See the following figure.
CNTIN[15] = 1	The initial value of the FTM counter is a negative number in two's complement, so the FTM counting is up and signed.
CNTIN[15] = 0 and CNTIN \neq 0x0000	The initial value of the FTM counter is a positive number, so the FTM counting is up and unsigned.

FTM counting is up

CNTIN = 0x0000

MOD = 0x0004

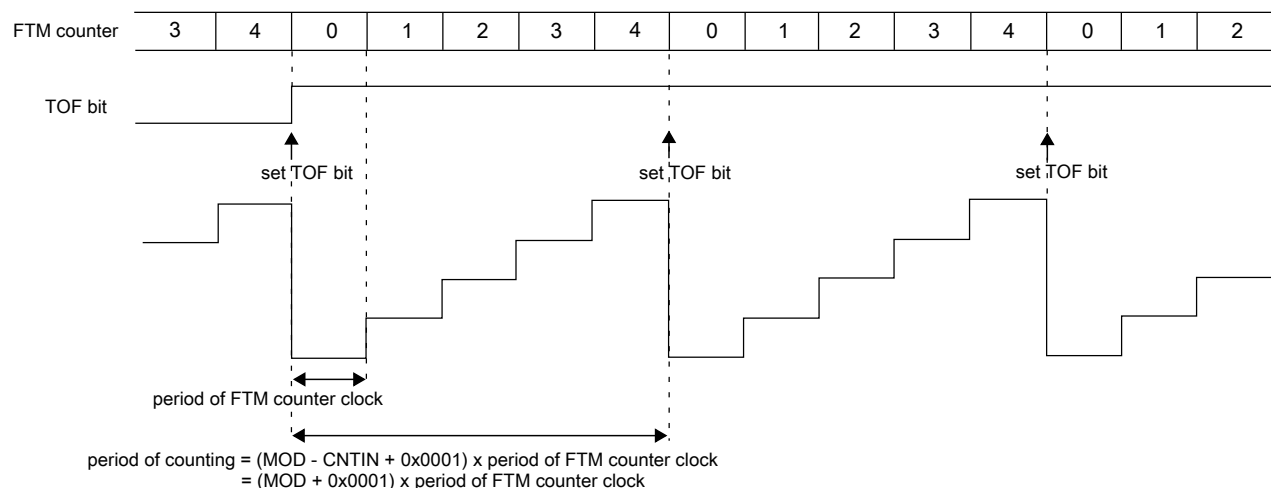


Figure 43-7. Example of FTM up counting with CNTIN = 0x0000

Note

- FTM operation is only valid when the value of the CNTIN register is less than the value of the MOD register, either in the unsigned counting or signed counting. It is the responsibility of the software to ensure that the values in the CNTIN and MOD registers meet this requirement. Any values of CNTIN and MOD that do not satisfy this criteria can result in unpredictable behavior.
- MOD = CNTIN is a redundant condition. In this case, the FTM counter is always equal to MOD and the TOF bit is set in each rising edge of the FTM counter clock.
- When MOD = 0x0000, CNTIN = 0x0000, for example after reset, and FTMMEN = 1, the FTM counter remains stopped at 0x0000 until a non-zero value is written into the MOD or CNTIN registers.
- Setting CNTIN to be greater than the value of MOD is not recommended as this unusual setting may make the FTM operation difficult to comprehend. However, there is no restriction on this configuration, and an example is shown in the following figure.

functional description

FTM counting is up
 MOD = 0x0005
 CNTIN = 0x0015

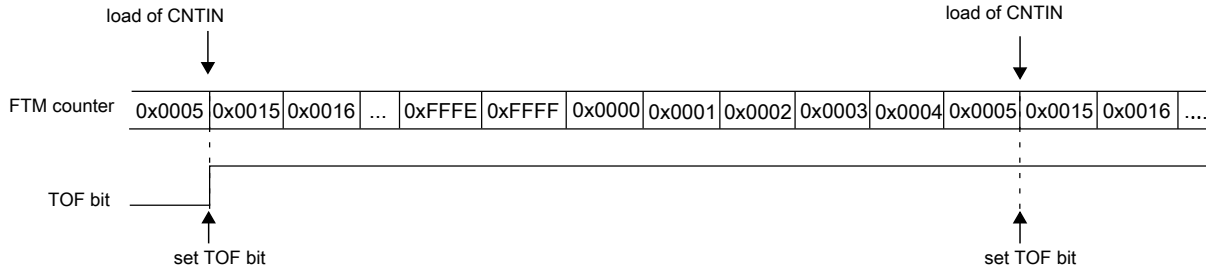


Figure 43-8. Example of up counting when the value of CNTIN is greater than the value of MOD

43.5.3.2 Up-down counting

Up-down counting is selected when:

- QUADEN = 0, and
- CPWMS = 1

CNTIN defines the starting value of the count and MOD defines the final value of the count. The value of CNTIN is loaded into the FTM counter, and the counter increments until the value of MOD is reached, at which point the counter is decremented until it returns to the value of CNTIN and the up-down counting restarts.

The FTM period when using up-down counting is $2 \times (\text{MOD} - \text{CNTIN}) \times \text{period of the FTM counter clock}$.

The TOF bit is set when the FTM counter changes from MOD to (MOD – 1).

If (CNTIN = 0x0000), the FTM counting is equivalent to TPM up-down counting, that is, up-down and unsigned counting. See the following figure.

FTM counting is up-down
 CNTIN = 0x0000
 MOD = 0x0004

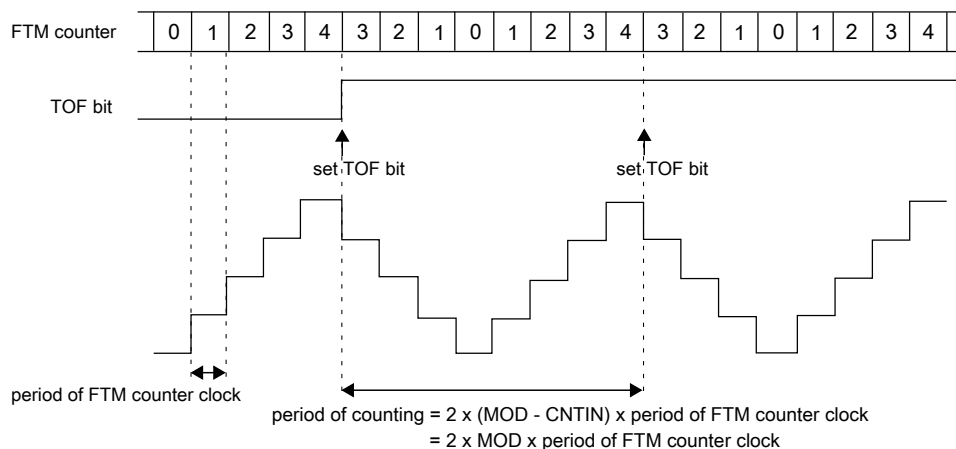


Figure 43-9. Example of up-down counting when CNTIN = 0x0000

Note

When CNTIN is different from zero in the up-down counting, a valid CPWM signal is generated:

- if $\text{CnV} > \text{CNTIN}$, or
- if $\text{CnV} = 0$ or if $\text{CnV}[15] = 1$. In this case, 0% CPWM is generated.

43.5.3.3 Free running counter

If (FTMEN = 0) and (MOD = 0x0000 or MOD = 0xFFFF), the FTM counter is a free running counter. In this case, the FTM counter runs free from 0x0000 through 0xFFFF and the TOF bit is set when the FTM counter changes from 0xFFFF to 0x0000. See the following figure.

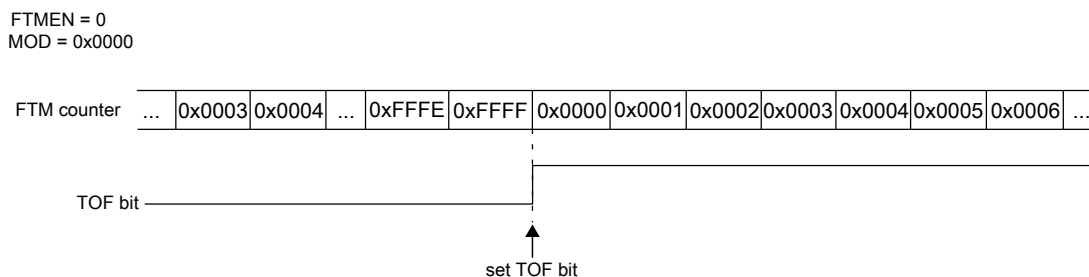


Figure 43-10. Example when the FTM counter is free running

The FTM counter is also a free running counter when:

functional description

- FTMEN = 1
- QUADEN = 0
- CPWMS = 0
- CNTIN = 0x0000, and
- MOD = 0xFFFF

43.5.3.4 Counter reset

Any one of the following cases resets the FTM counter to the value in the CNTIN register and the channels output to its initial value, except for channels in Output Compare mode.

- Any write to CNT.
- [FTM counter synchronization](#).
- A channel in Input Capture mode with ICRST = 1 ([FTM Counter Reset in Input Capture Mode](#)).

43.5.3.5 When the TOF bit is set

The NUMTOF[4:0] bits define the number of times that the FTM counter overflow should occur before the TOF bit to be set. If NUMTOF[4:0] = 0x00, then the TOF bit is set at each FTM counter overflow.

Initialize the FTM counter, by writing to CNT, after writing to the NUMTOF[4:0] bits to avoid confusion about when the first counter overflow will occur.

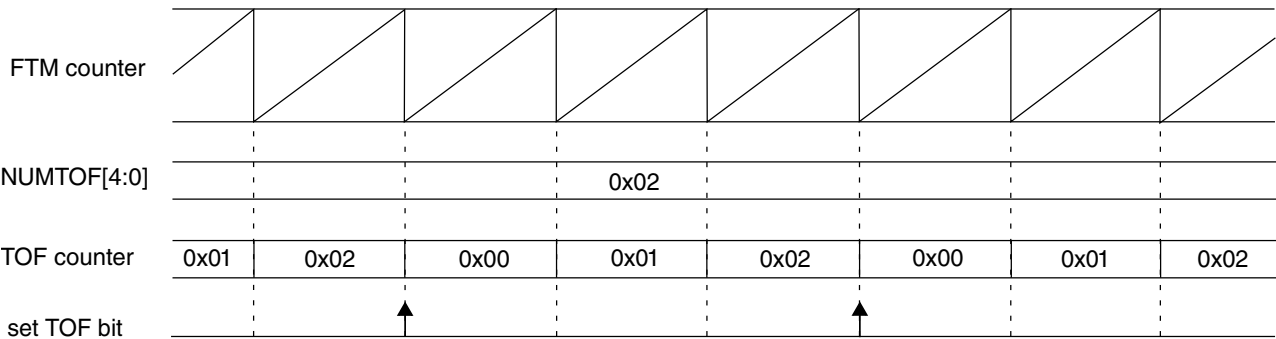


Figure 43-11. Periodic TOF when NUMTOF = 0x02

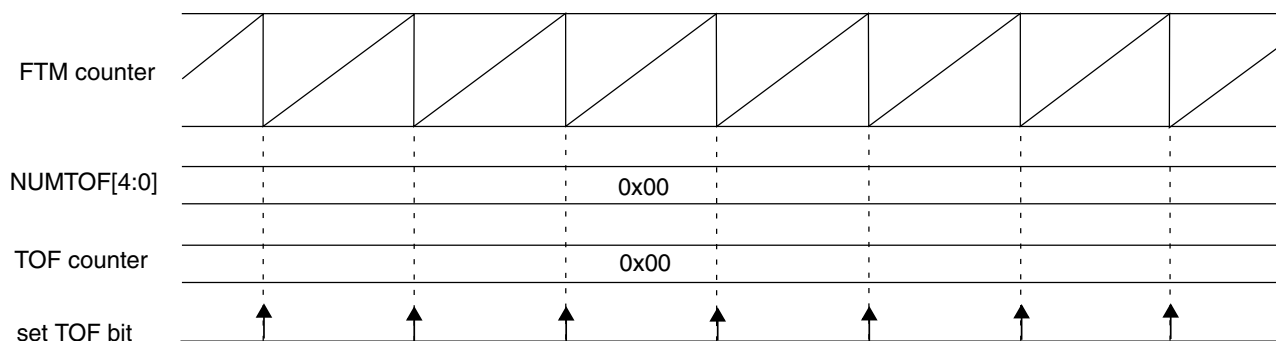


Figure 43-12. Periodic TOF when NUMTOF = 0x00

43.5.4 Input Capture mode

The Input Capture mode is selected when:

- DECAPEN = 0
- COMBINE = 0
- CPWMS = 0
- MSnB:MSnA = 0:0, and
- ELSnB:ELSnA \neq 0:0

When a selected edge occurs on the channel input, the current value of the FTM counter is captured into the CnV register, at the same time the CHnF bit is set and the channel interrupt is generated if enabled by CHnIE = 1. See the following figure.

When a channel is configured for input capture, the FTMxCHn pin is an edge-sensitive input. ELSnB:ELSnA control bits determine which edge, falling or rising, triggers input-capture event. Note that the maximum frequency for the channel input signal to be detected correctly is system clock divided by 4, which is required to meet Nyquist criteria for signal sampling.

Writes to the CnV register is ignored in Input Capture mode.

While in BDM, the input capture function works as configured. When a selected edge event occurs, the FTM counter value, which is frozen because of BDM, is captured into the CnV register and the CHnF bit is set.

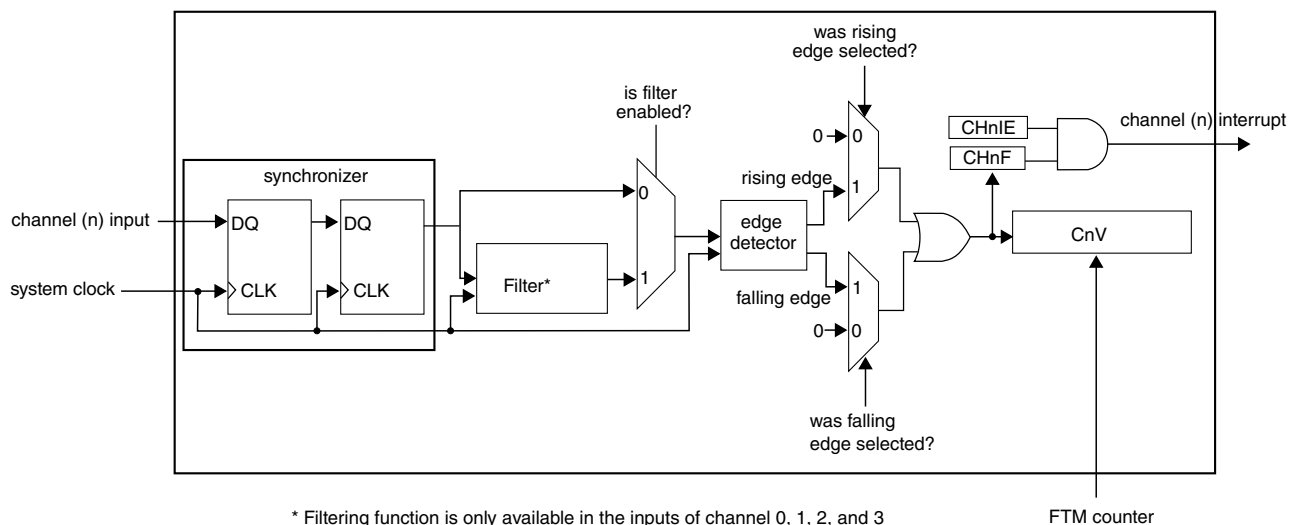


Figure 43-13. Input Capture mode

If the channel input does not have a filter enabled, then the input signal is always delayed 3 rising edges of the system clock, that is, two rising edges to the synchronizer plus one more rising edge to the edge detector. In other words, the CHnF bit is set on the third rising edge of the system clock after a valid edge occurs on the channel input.

43.5.4.1 Filter for Input Capture mode

The filter function is only available on channels 0, 1, 2, and 3.

First, the input signal is synchronized by the system clock. Following synchronization, the input signal enters the filter block. See the following figure.

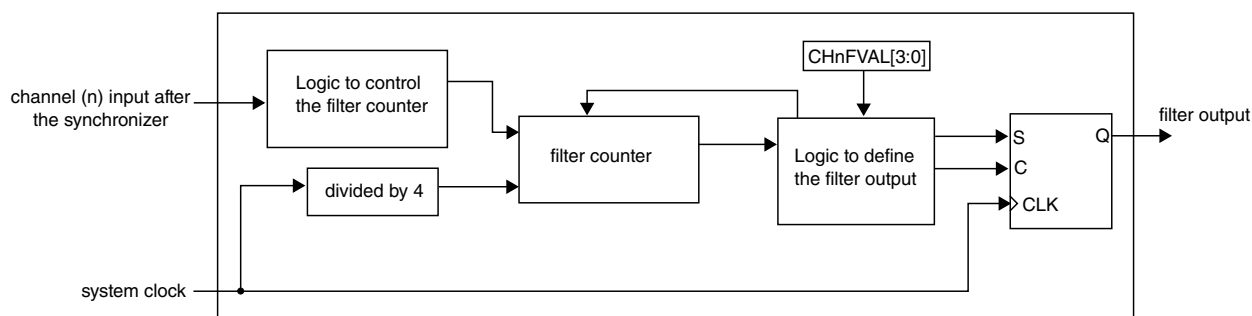


Figure 43-14. Channel input filter

When there is a state change in the input signal, the counter is reset and starts counting up. As long as the new state is stable on the input, the counter continues to increment. When the counter is equal to CHnFVAL[3:0], the state change of the input signal is validated. It is then transmitted as a pulse edge to the edge detector.

If the opposite edge appears on the input signal before it can be validated, the counter is reset. At the next input transition, the counter starts counting again. Any pulse that is shorter than the minimum value selected by CHnFVAL[3:0] ($\times 4$ system clocks) is regarded as a glitch and is not passed on to the edge detector. A timing diagram of the input filter is shown in the following figure.

The filter function is disabled when CHnFVAL[3:0] bits are zero. In this case, the input signal is delayed 3 rising edges of the system clock. If (CHnFVAL[3:0] \neq 0000), then the input signal is delayed by the minimum pulse width (CHnFVAL[3:0] $\times 4$ system clocks) plus a further 4 rising edges of the system clock: two rising edges to the synchronizer, one rising edge to the filter output, plus one more to the edge detector. In other words, CHnF is set $(4 + 4 \times \text{CHnFVAL}[3:0])$ system clock periods after a valid edge occurs on the channel input.

The clock for the counter in the channel input filter is the system clock divided by 4.

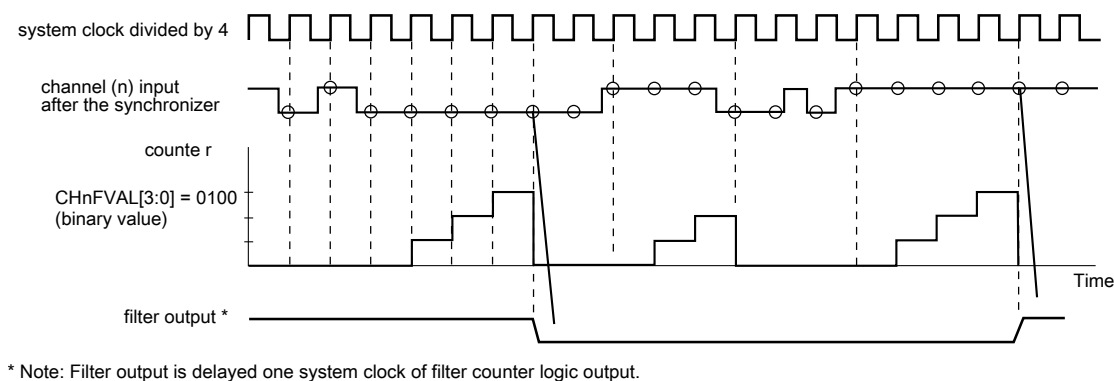


Figure 43-15. Channel input filter example

The figure below shows an example of input capture with filter enabled and the delay added by each part of the input capture logic. Note that the input signal is delayed only by the synchronizer and edge detector logic if the filter is disabled.

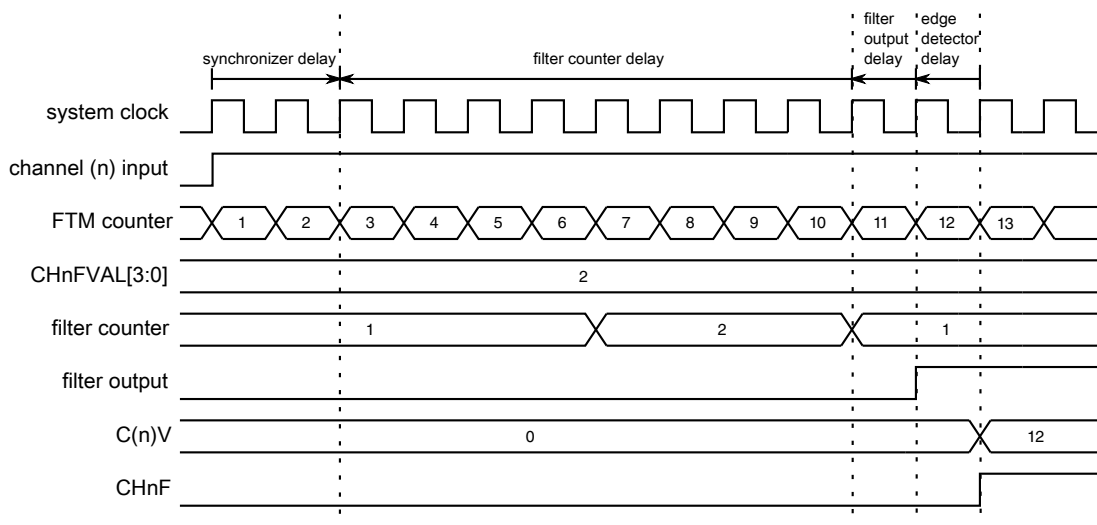


Figure 43-16. Input capture example

43.5.4.2 FTM Counter Reset in Input Capture Mode

If the channel (n) is in input capture mode and $FTMx_CnSC$ [$ICRST = 1$], then when the selected input capture event occurs in the channel (n) input signal, the current value of the FTM counter is captured into the CnV register, the CHnF bit is set, the channel (n) interrupt is generated (if CHnIE = 1) and the FTM counter is reset to the CNTIN register value.

This allows the FTM to measure a period/pulse being applied to FTM_CHn (counts of the FTM clock input) without having to implement a subtraction calculation in software subsequent to the event occurring.

The figure below shows the FTM counter reset when the selected input capture event is detected in a channel in input capture mode with $ICRST = 1$.

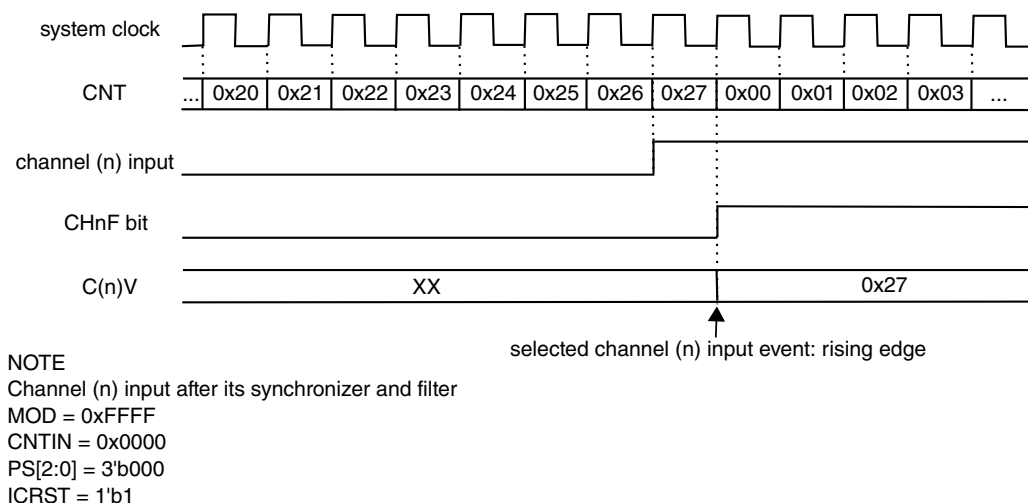


Figure 43-17. Example of the Input Capture mode with ICRST = 1

NOTE

- It is expected that the ICRST bit be set only when the channel is in input capture mode.
- In this case, if the FTM counter is reset, then the prescaler counter ([Prescaler](#)) and the TOF counter ([When the TOF bit is set](#)) also are reset.

43.5.5 Output Compare mode

The Output Compare mode is selected when:

- DECAPEN = 0
- COMBINE = 0
- CPWMS = 0, and
- MSnB:MSnA = 0:1

In Output Compare mode, the FTM can generate timed pulses with programmable position, polarity, duration, and frequency. When the counter matches the value in the CnV register of an output compare channel, the channel (n) output can be set, cleared, or toggled.

When a channel is initially configured to Toggle mode, the previous value of the channel output is held until the first output compare event occurs.

The CHnF bit is set and the channel (n) interrupt is generated if CHnIE = 1 at the channel (n) match (FTM counter = CnV).

functional description

MOD = 0x0005
CnV = 0x0003

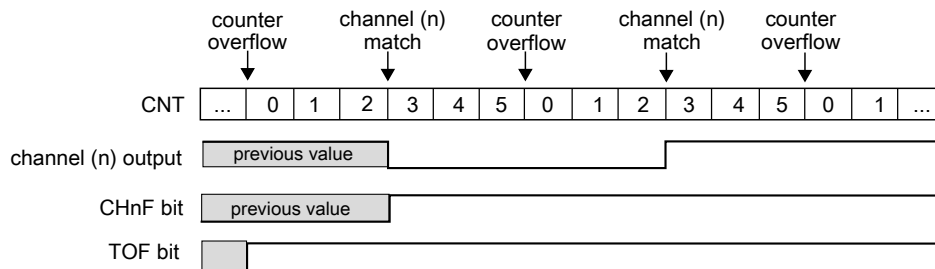


Figure 43-18. Example of the Output Compare mode when the match toggles the channel output

MOD = 0x0005
CnV = 0x0003

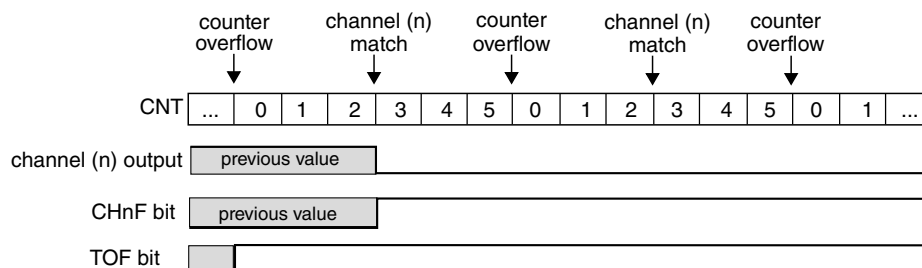


Figure 43-19. Example of the Output Compare mode when the match clears the channel output

MOD = 0x0005
CnV = 0x0003

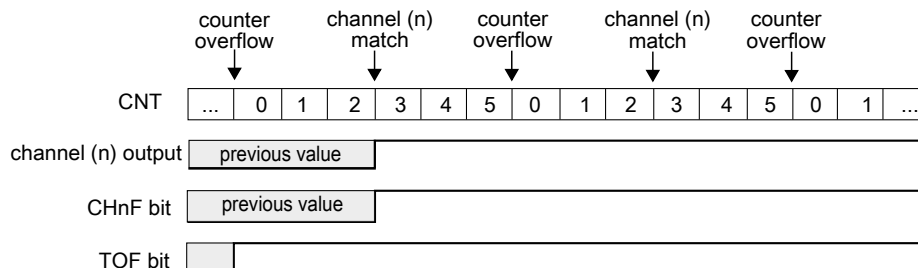


Figure 43-20. Example of the Output Compare mode when the match sets the channel output

If (ELSnB:ELSnA = 0:0) when the counter reaches the value in the CnV register, the CHnF bit is set and the channel (n) interrupt is generated if CHnIE = 1, however the channel (n) output is not modified and controlled by FTM.

43.5.6 Edge-Aligned PWM (EPWM) mode

The Edge-Aligned mode is selected when:

- QUADEN = 0

- $DECAPEN = 0$
- $COMBINE = 0$
- $CPWMS = 0$, and
- $MSnB = 1$

The EPWM period is determined by $(MOD - CNTIN + 0x0001)$ and the pulse width (duty cycle) is determined by $(CnV - CNTIN)$.

The $CHnF$ bit is set and the channel (n) interrupt is generated if $CHnIE = 1$ at the channel (n) match (FTM counter = CnV), that is, at the end of the pulse width.

This type of PWM signal is called edge-aligned because the leading edges of all PWM signals are aligned with the beginning of the period, which is the same for all channels within an FTM.

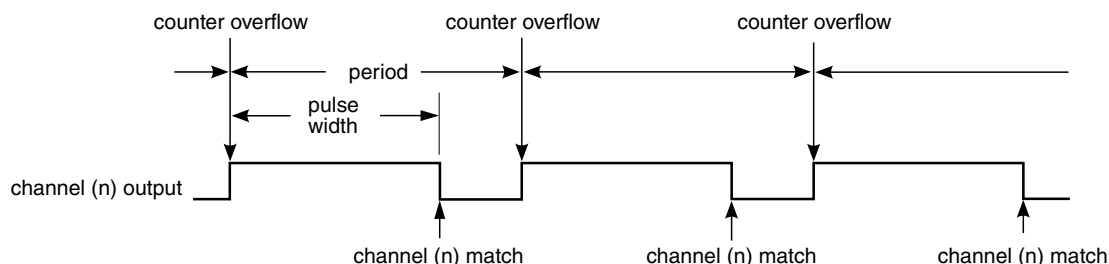


Figure 43-21. EPWM period and pulse width with $ELSnB:ELSnA = 1:0$

If ($ELSnB:ELSnA = 0:0$) when the counter reaches the value in the CnV register, the $CHnF$ bit is set and the channel (n) interrupt is generated if $CHnIE = 1$, however the channel (n) output is not controlled by FTM.

If ($ELSnB:ELSnA = 1:0$), then the channel (n) output is forced high at the counter overflow when the $CNTIN$ register value is loaded into the FTM counter, and it is forced low at the channel (n) match (FTM counter = CnV). See the following figure.

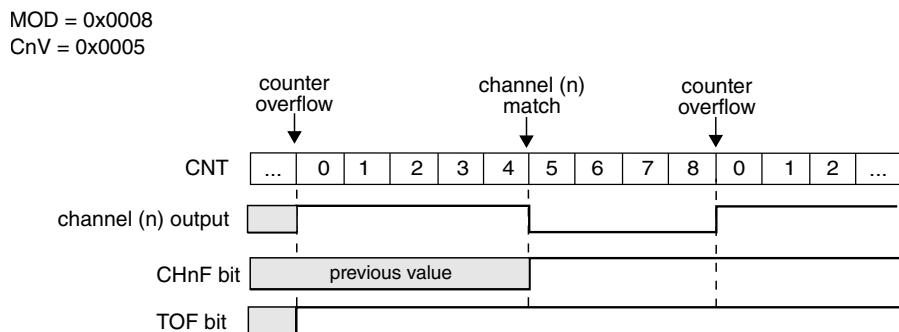


Figure 43-22. EPWM signal with $ELSnB:ELSnA = 1:0$

If ($ELSnB:ELSnA = X:1$), then the channel (n) output is forced low at the counter overflow when the $CNTIN$ register value is loaded into the FTM counter, and it is forced high at the channel (n) match (FTM counter = CnV). See the following figure.

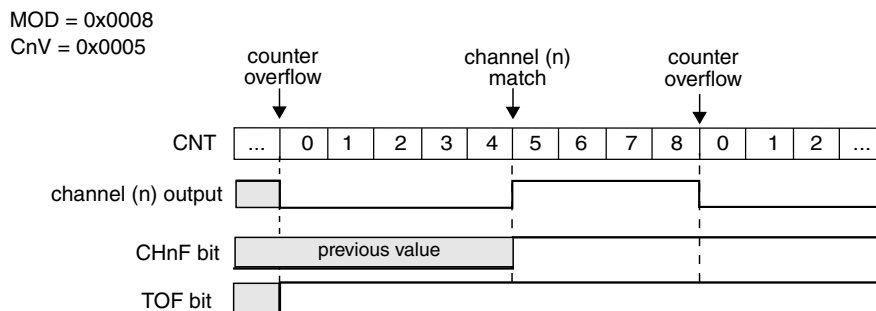


Figure 43-23. EPWM signal with ELSnB:ELSnA = X:1

If (CnV = 0x0000), then the channel (n) output is a 0% duty cycle EPWM signal and CHnF bit is not set even when there is the channel (n) match.

If (CnV > MOD), then the channel (n) output is a 100% duty cycle EPWM signal and CHnF bit is not set. Therefore, MOD must be less than 0xFFFF in order to get a 100% duty cycle EPWM signal.

Note

When CNTIN is different from zero the following EPWM signals can be generated:

- 0% EPWM signal if CnV = CNTIN,
- EPWM signal between 0% and 100% if CNTIN < CnV <= MOD,
- 100% EPWM signal when CNTIN > CnV or CnV > MOD.

43.5.7 Center-Aligned PWM (CPWM) mode

The Center-Aligned mode is selected when:

- QUADEN = 0
- DECAPEN = 0
- COMBINE = 0, and
- CPWMS = 1

The CPWM pulse width (duty cycle) is determined by $2 \times (CnV - CNTIN)$ and the period is determined by $2 \times (MOD - CNTIN)$. See the following figure. MOD must be kept in the range of 0x0001 to 0x7FFF because values outside this range can produce ambiguous results.

In the CPWM mode, the FTM counter counts up until it reaches MOD and then counts down until it reaches CNTIN.

The CHnF bit is set and channel (n) interrupt is generated (if CHnIE = 1) at the channel (n) match (FTM counter = CnV) when the FTM counting is down (at the begin of the pulse width) and when the FTM counting is up (at the end of the pulse width).

This type of PWM signal is called center-aligned because the pulse width centers for all channels are aligned with the value of CNTIN.

The other channel modes are not compatible with the up-down counter (CPWMS = 1). Therefore, all FTM channels must be used in CPWM mode when (CPWMS = 1).

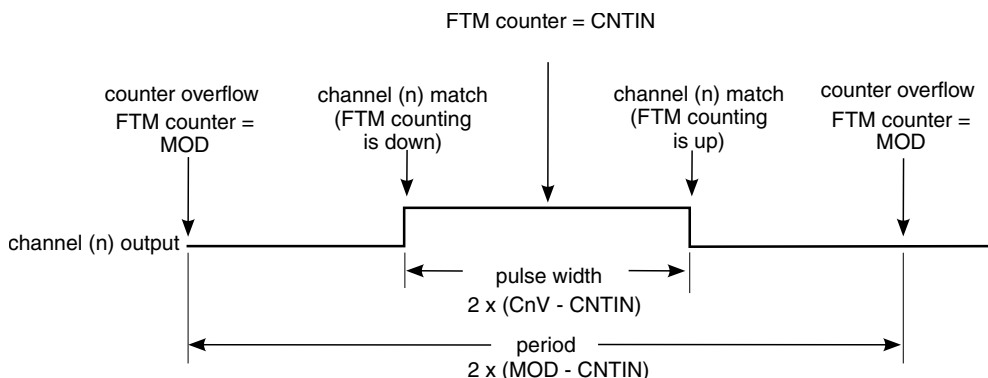


Figure 43-24. CPWM period and pulse width with ELSnB:ELSnA = 1:0

If (ELSnB:ELSnA = 0:0) when the FTM counter reaches the value in the CnV register, the CHnF bit is set and the channel (n) interrupt is generated (if CHnIE = 1), however the channel (n) output is not controlled by FTM.

If (ELSnB:ELSnA = 1:0), then the channel (n) output is forced high at the channel (n) match (FTM counter = CnV) when counting down, and it is forced low at the channel (n) match when counting up. See the following figure.

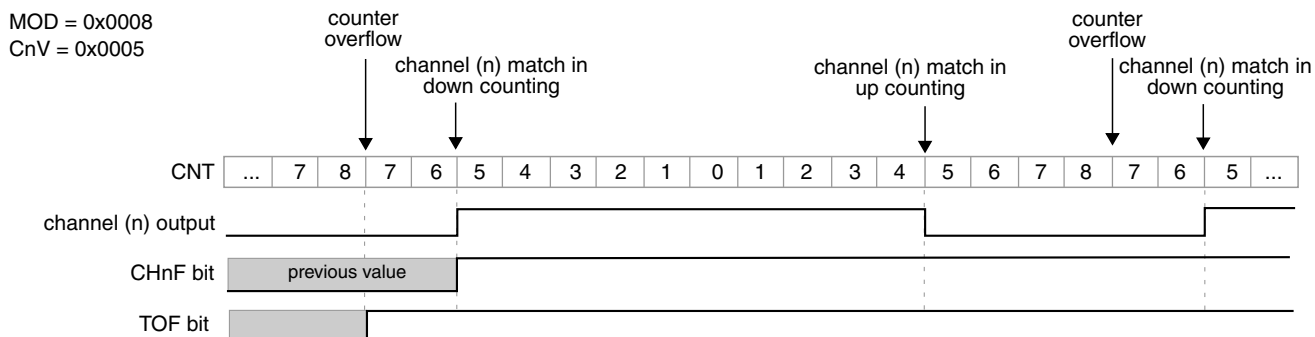


Figure 43-25. CPWM signal with ELSnB:ELSnA = 1:0

If (ELSnB:ELSnA = X:1), then the channel (n) output is forced low at the channel (n) match (FTM counter = CnV) when counting down, and it is forced high at the channel (n) match when counting up. See the following figure.

functional description

MOD = 0x0008
CnV = 0x0005

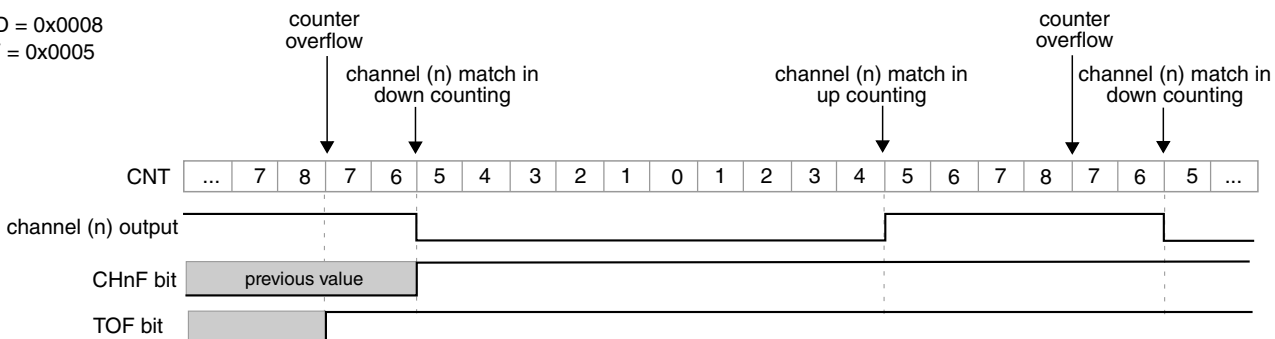


Figure 43-26. CPWM signal with ELSnB:ELSnA = X:1

If (CnV = 0x0000) or CnV is a negative value, that is (CnV[15] = 1), then the channel (n) output is a 0% duty cycle CPWM signal and CHnF bit is not set even when there is the channel (n) match.

If CnV is a positive value, that is (CnV[15] = 0), (CnV ≥ MOD), and (MOD ≠ 0x0000), then the channel (n) output is a 100% duty cycle CPWM signal and CHnF bit is not set even when there is the channel (n) match. This implies that the usable range of periods set by MOD is 0x0001 through 0x7FFE, 0x7FFF if you do not need to generate a 100% duty cycle CPWM signal. This is not a significant limitation because the resulting period is much longer than required for normal applications.

The CPWM mode must not be used when the FTM counter is a free running counter.

43.5.8 Combine mode

The Combine mode is selected when:

- QUADEN = 0
- DECAPEN = 0
- COMBINE = 1, and
- CPWMS = 0

In Combine mode, an even channel (n) and adjacent odd channel (n+1) are combined to generate a PWM signal in the channel (n) output.

In the Combine mode, the PWM period is determined by (MOD – CNTIN + 0x0001) and the PWM pulse width (duty cycle) is determined by (IC(n+1)V – C(n)V).

The CHnF bit is set and the channel (n) interrupt is generated (if CHnIE = 1) at the channel (n) match (FTM counter = C(n)V). The CH(n+1)F bit is set and the channel (n+1) interrupt is generated, if CH(n+1)IE = 1, at the channel (n+1) match (FTM counter = C(n+1)V).

If (ELSnB:ELSnA = 1:0), then the channel (n) output is forced low at the beginning of the period (FTM counter = CNTIN) and at the channel (n+1) match (FTM counter = C(n+1)V). It is forced high at the channel (n) match (FTM counter = C(n)V). See the following figure.

If (ELSnB:ELSnA = X:1), then the channel (n) output is forced high at the beginning of the period (FTM counter = CNTIN) and at the channel (n+1) match (FTM counter = C(n+1)V). It is forced low at the channel (n) match (FTM counter = C(n)V). See the following figure.

In Combine mode, the ELS(n+1)B and ELS(n+1)A bits are not used in the generation of the channels (n) and (n+1) output. However, if (ELSnB:ELSnA = 0:0) then the channel (n) output is not controlled by FTM, and if (ELSnB:ELSnA = 0:0) then the channel (n+1) output is not controlled by FTM.

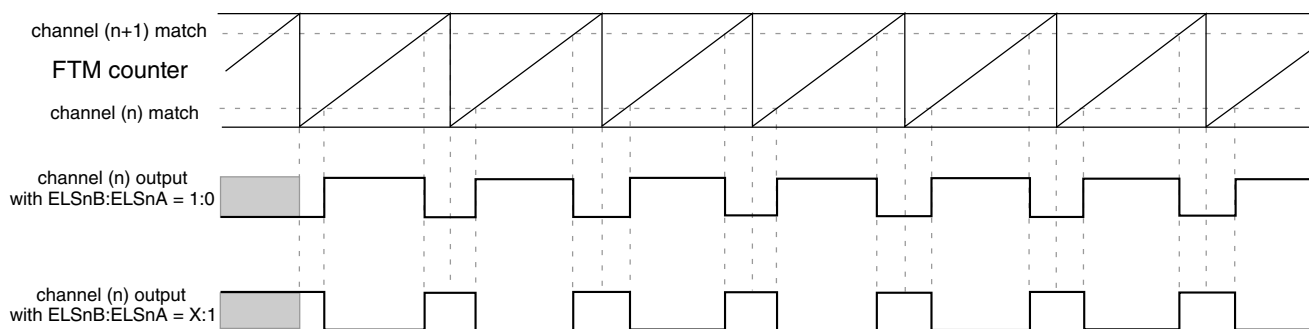


Figure 43-27. Combine mode

The following figures illustrate the PWM signals generation using Combine mode.

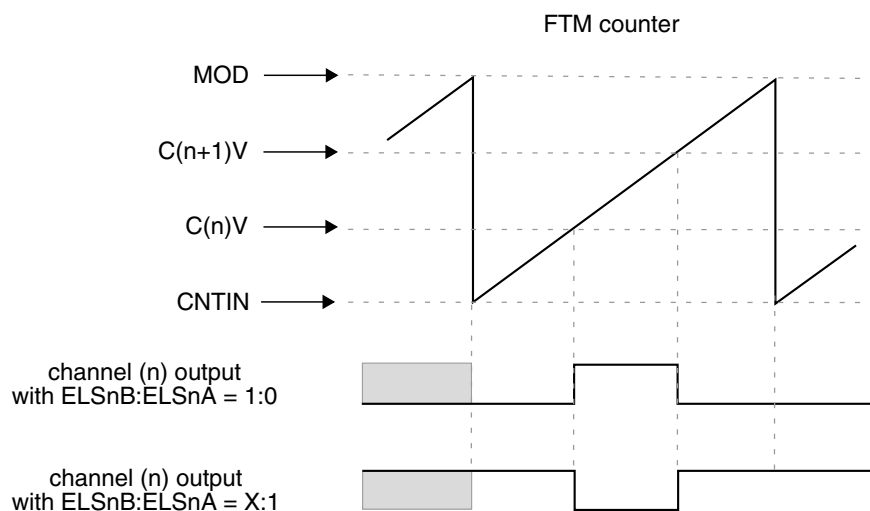


Figure 43-28. Channel (n) output if (CNTIN < C(n)V < MOD) and (CNTIN < C(n+1)V < MOD) and (C(n)V < C(n+1)V)

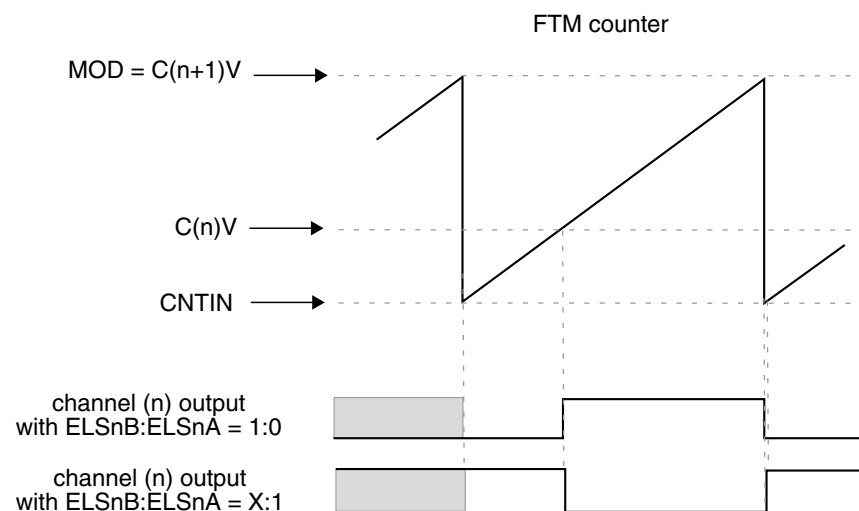


Figure 43-29. Channel (n) output if $(CNTIN < C(n)V < MOD)$ and $(C(n+1)V = MOD)$

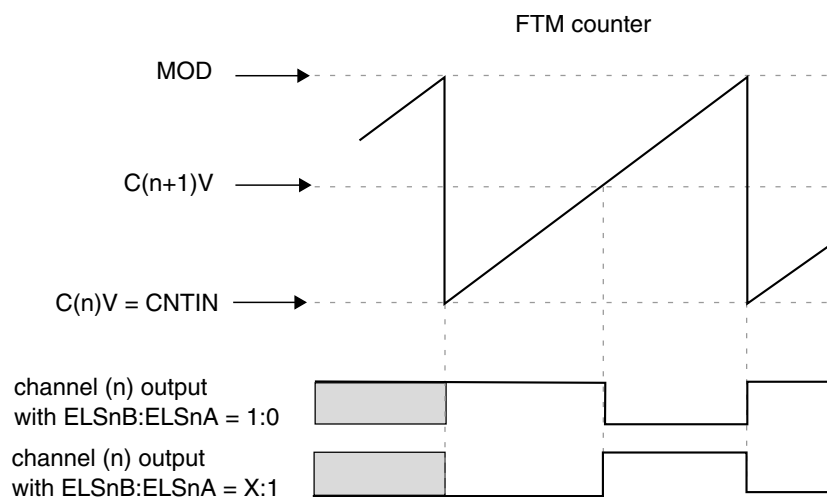


Figure 43-30. Channel (n) output if $(C(n)V = CNTIN)$ and $(CNTIN < C(n+1)V < MOD)$

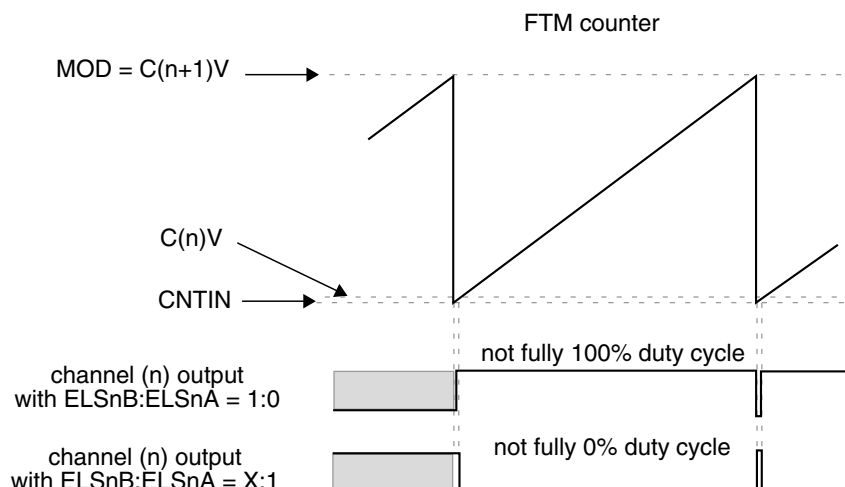


Figure 43-31. Channel (n) output if $(CNTIN < C(n)V < MOD)$ and $(C(n)V$ is Almost Equal to $CNTIN)$ and $(C(n+1)V = MOD)$

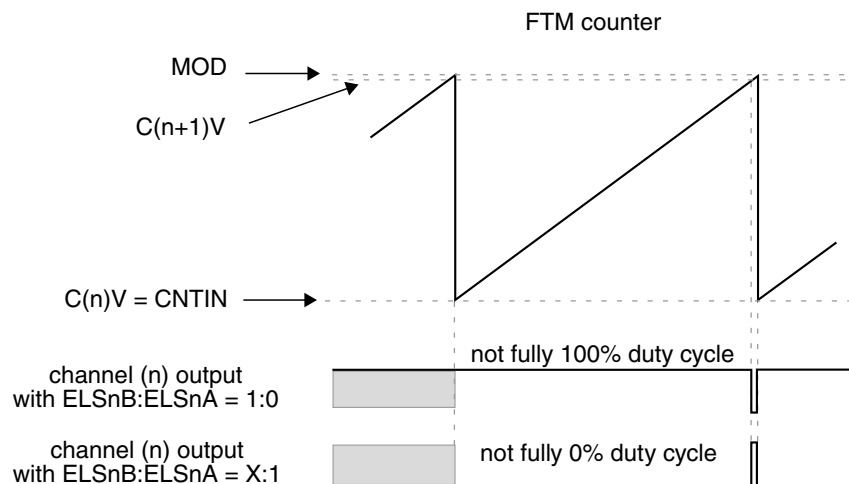


Figure 43-32. Channel (n) output if $C(n)V = CNTIN$ and $CNTIN < C(n+1)V < MOD$ and $C(n+1)V$ is Almost Equal to MOD)

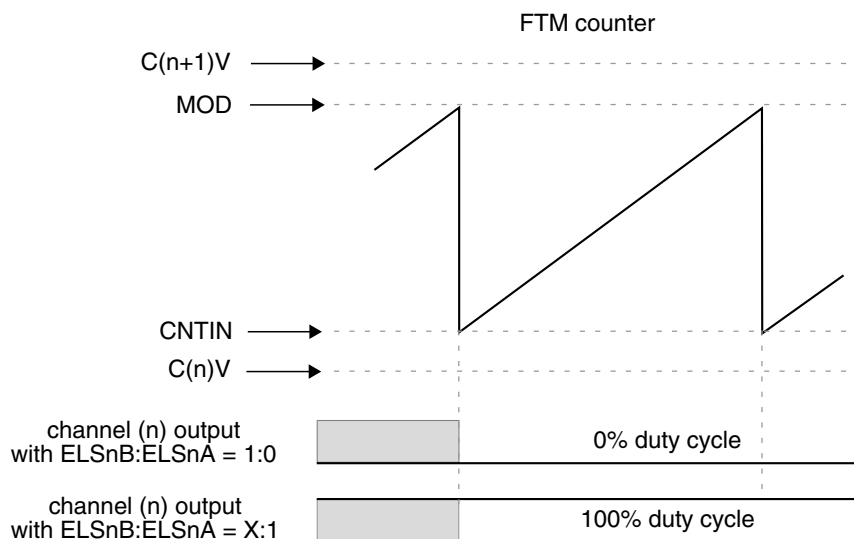


Figure 43-33. Channel (n) output if $C(n)V$ and $C(n+1)V$ are not between CNTIN and MOD

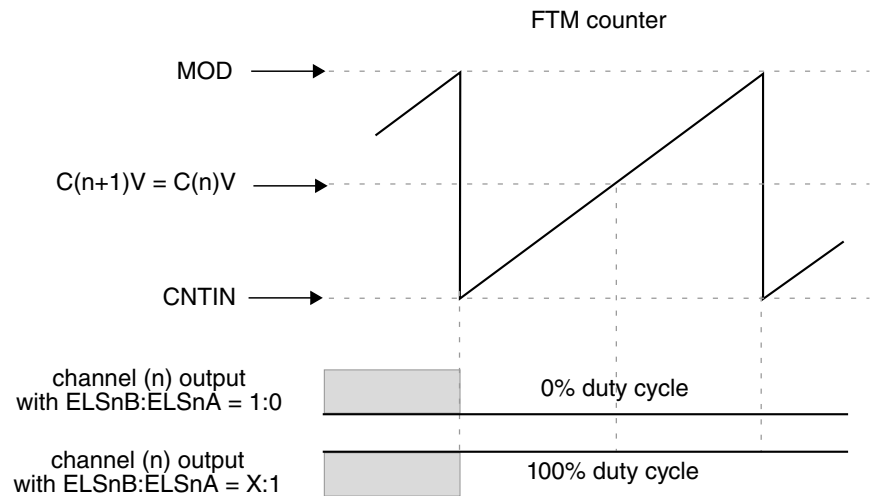


Figure 43-34. Channel (n) output if $(CNTIN < C(n)V < MOD)$ and $(CNTIN < C(n+1)V < MOD)$ and $C(n)V = C(n+1)V$

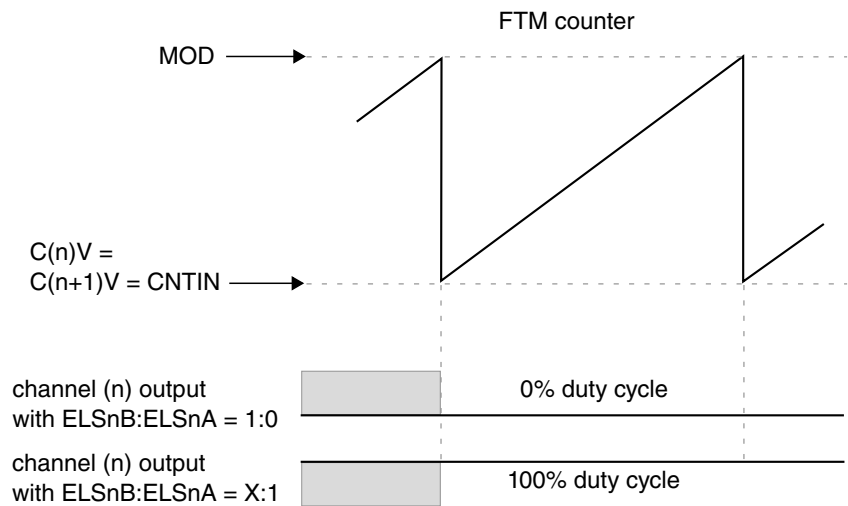


Figure 43-35. Channel (n) output if $C(n)V = C(n+1)V = CNTIN$

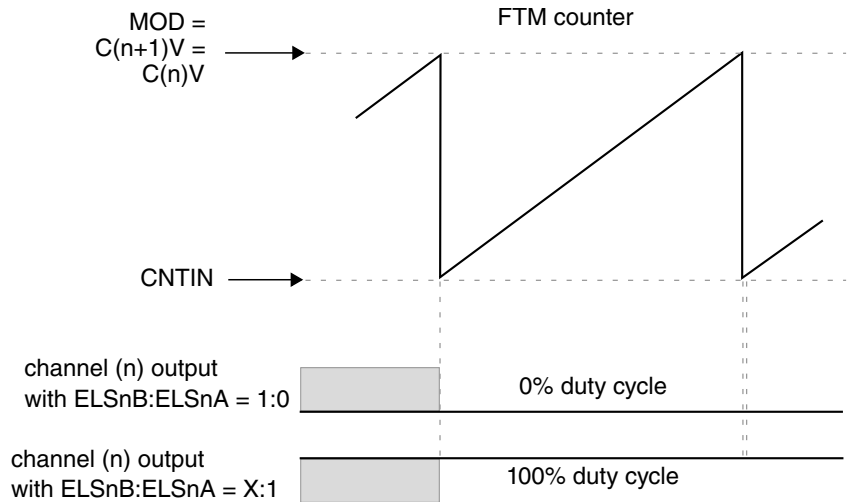


Figure 43-36. Channel (n) output if $C(n)V = C(n+1)V = MOD$

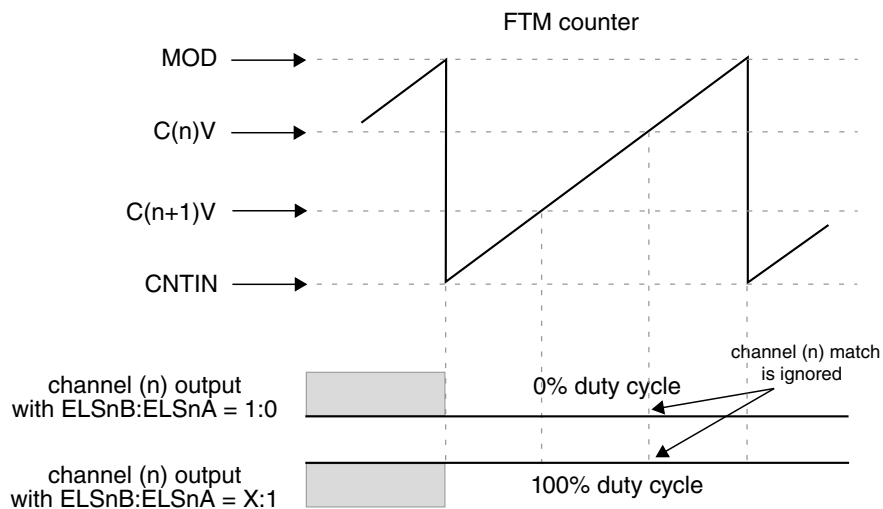


Figure 43-37. Channel (n) output if $(CNTIN < C(n)V < MOD)$ and $(CNTIN < C(n+1)V < MOD)$ and $(C(n)V > C(n+1)V)$

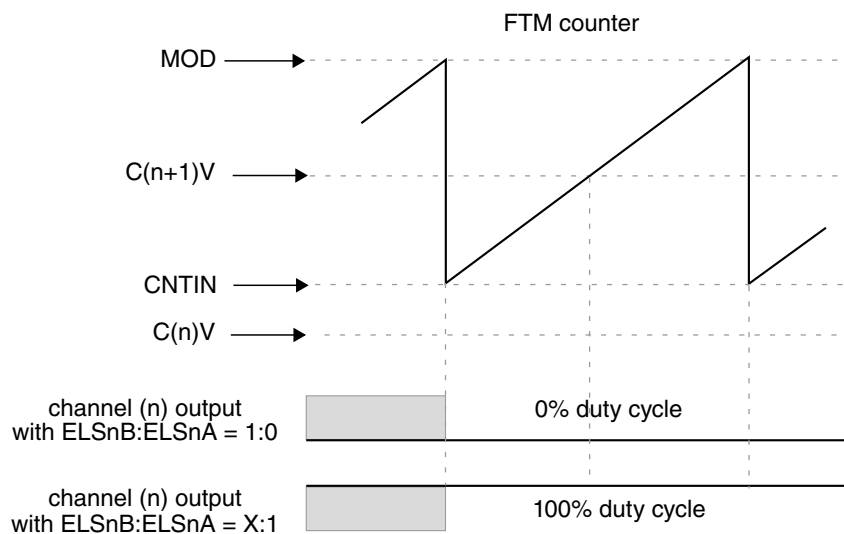


Figure 43-38. Channel (n) output if $(C(n)V < CNTIN)$ and $(CNTIN < C(n+1)V < MOD)$

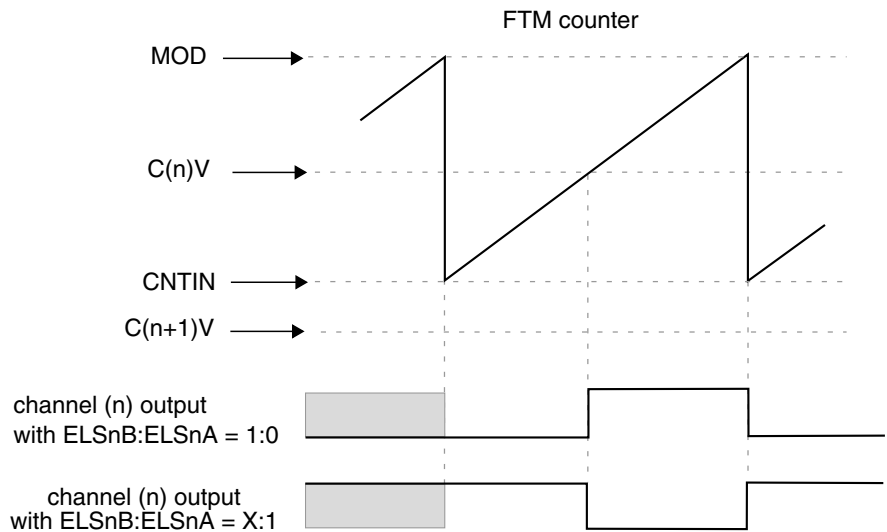


Figure 43-39. Channel (n) output if $(C(n+1)V < CNTIN)$ and $(CNTIN < C(n)V < MOD)$

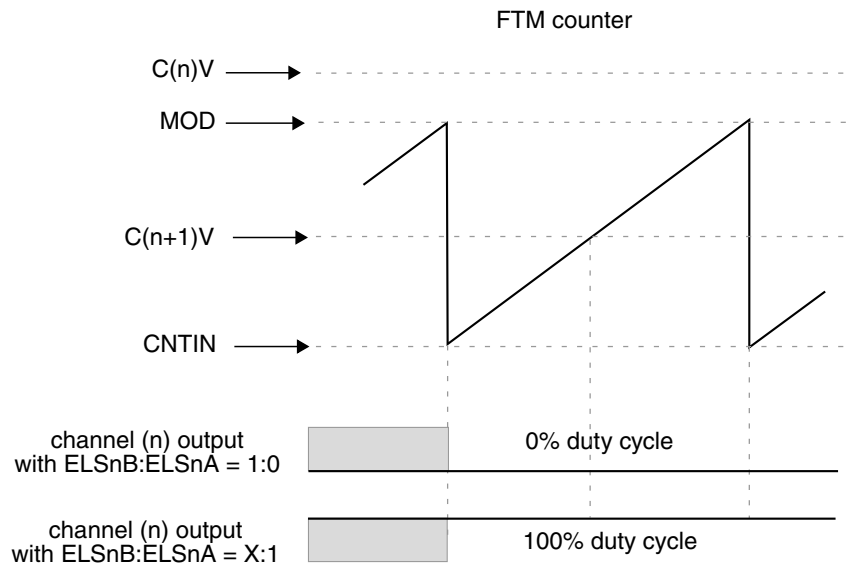


Figure 43-40. Channel (n) output if $(C(n)V > MOD)$ and $(CNTIN < C(n+1)V < MOD)$

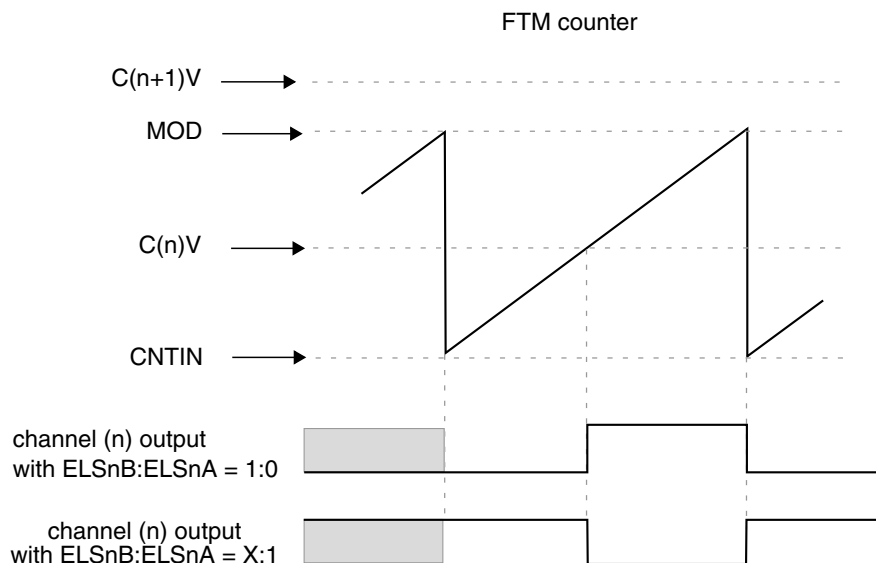


Figure 43-41. Channel (n) output if $(C(n+1)V > MOD)$ and $(CNTIN < C(n)V < MOD)$

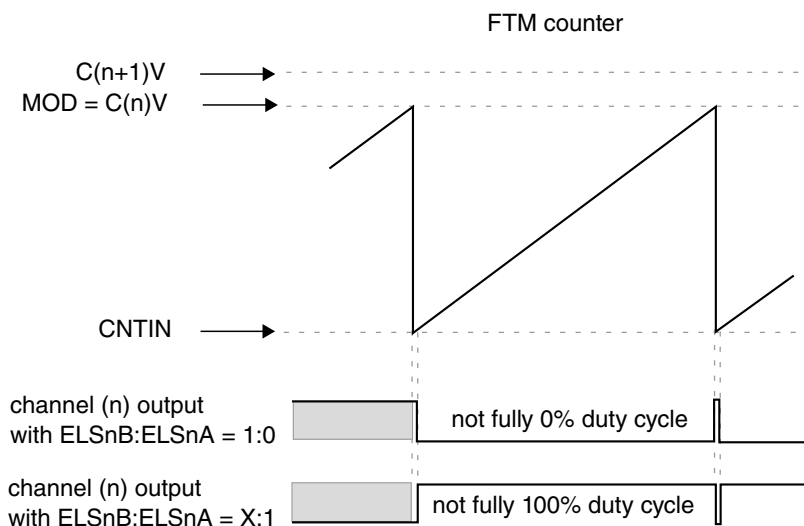


Figure 43-42. Channel (n) output if $(C(n+1)V > MOD)$ and $(CNTIN < C(n)V = MOD)$

43.5.8.1 Asymmetrical PWM

In Combine mode, the control of the PWM signal first edge, when the channel (n) match occurs, that is, FTM counter = $C(n)V$, is independent of the control of the PWM signal second edge, when the channel (n+1) match occurs, that is, FTM counter = $C(n+1)V$. So, Combine mode allows the generation of asymmetrical PWM signals.

43.5.9 Complementary mode

The Complementary mode is selected when:

functional description

- QUADEN = 0
- DECAPEN = 0
- COMP = 1

In Complementary mode, the channel (n+1) output is the inverse of the channel (n) output.

So, the channel (n+1) output is the same as the channel (n) output when:

- QUADEN = 0
- DECAPEN = 0
- COMP = 0

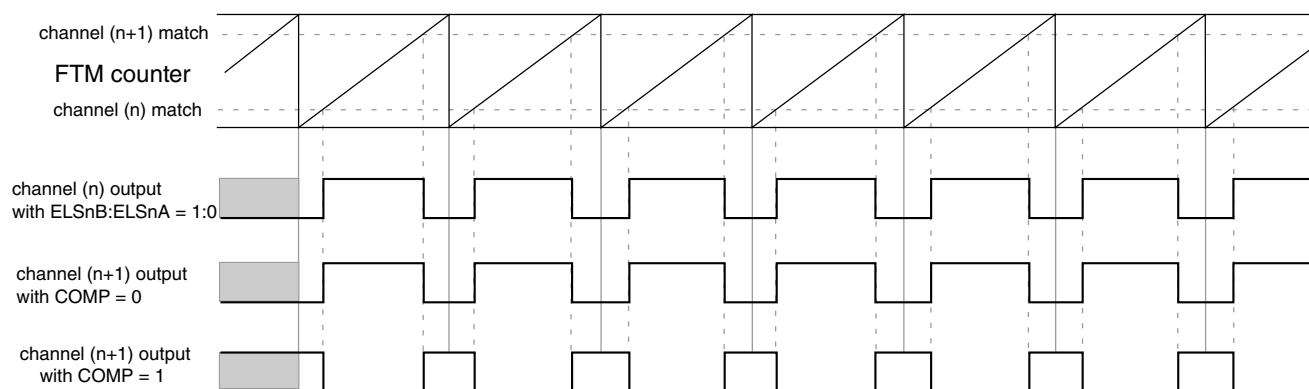


Figure 43-43. Channel (n+1) output in Complementary mode with $(ELSnB:ELSnA = 1:0)$

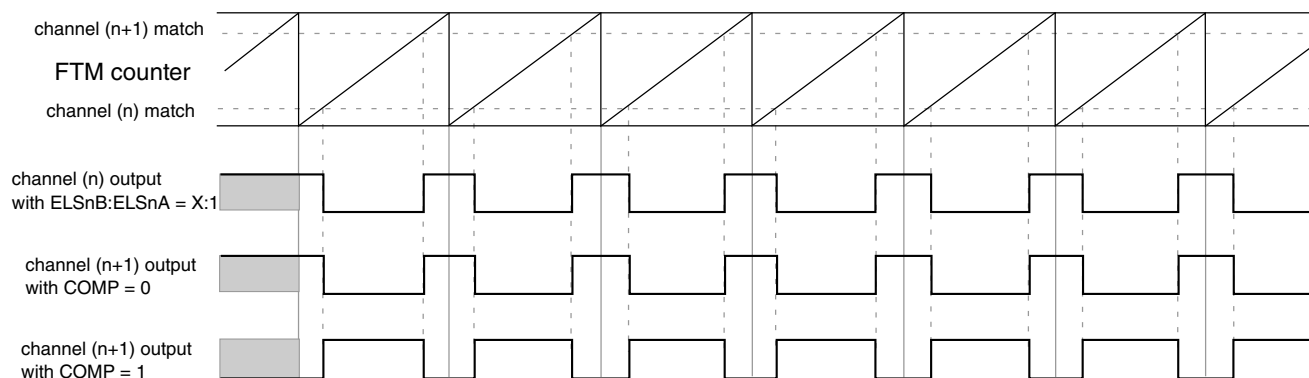


Figure 43-44. Channel (n+1) output in Complementary mode with $(ELSnB:ELSnA = X:1)$

NOTE

The complementary mode is not available in Output Compare mode.

43.5.10 Registers updated from write buffers

43.5.10.1 CNTIN register update

The following table describes when CNTIN register is updated:

Table 43-6. CNTIN register update

When	Then CNTIN register is updated
CLKS[1:0] = 0:0	When CNTIN register is written, independent of FTMEN bit.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> FTMEN = 0, or CNTINC = 0 	At the next system clock after CNTIN was written.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> FTMEN = 1, SYNCMODE = 1, and CNTINC = 1 	By the CNTIN register synchronization .

43.5.10.2 MOD register update

The following table describes when MOD register is updated:

Table 43-7. MOD register update

When	Then MOD register is updated
CLKS[1:0] = 0:0	When MOD register is written, independent of FTMEN bit.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CLKS[1:0] ≠ 0:0, and FTMEN = 0 	According to the CPWMS bit, that is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the selected mode is not CPWM then MOD register is updated after MOD register was written and the FTM counter changes from MOD to CNTIN. If the FTM counter is at free-running counter mode then this update occurs when the FTM counter changes from 0xFFFF to 0x0000. If the selected mode is CPWM then MOD register is updated after MOD register was written and the FTM counter changes from MOD to (MOD – 0x0001).
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CLKS[1:0] ≠ 0:0, and FTMEN = 1 	By the MOD register synchronization .

43.5.10.3 CnV register update

The following table describes when CnV register is updated:

Table 43-8. CnV register update

When	Then CnV register is updated
CLKS[1:0] = 0:0	When CnV register is written, independent of FTMEN bit.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CLKS[1:0] ≠ 0:0, and FTMEN = 0 	According to the selected mode, that is:

Table continues on the next page...

Table 43-8. CnV register update (continued)

When	Then CnV register is updated
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the selected mode is Output Compare, then CnV register is updated on the next FTM counter change, end of the prescaler counting, after CnV register was written. If the selected mode is EPWM, then CnV register is updated after CnV register was written and the FTM counter changes from MOD to CNTIN. If the FTM counter is at free-running counter mode then this update occurs when the FTM counter changes from 0xFFFF to 0x0000. If the selected mode is CPWM, then CnV register is updated after CnV register was written and the FTM counter changes from MOD to (MOD – 0x0001).
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CLKS[1:0] ≠ 0:0, and FTMEN = 1 	<p>According to the selected mode, that is:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the selected mode is output compare then CnV register is updated according to the SYNCEN bit. If (SYNCEN = 0) then CnV register is updated after CnV register was written at the next change of the FTM counter, the end of the prescaler counting. If (SYNCEN = 1) then CnV register is updated by the C(n)V and C(n+1)V register synchronization. If the selected mode is not output compare and (SYNCEN = 1) then CnV register is updated by the C(n)V and C(n+1)V register synchronization.

43.5.11 PWM synchronization

The PWM synchronization provides an opportunity to update the MOD, CNTIN, CnV, OUTMASK, INVCTRL and SWOCTRL registers with their buffered value and force the FTM counter to the CNTIN register value.

Note

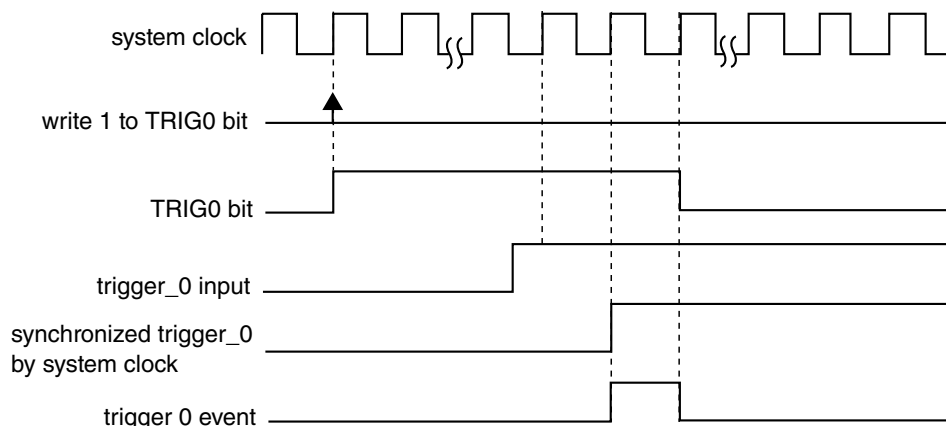
The legacy PWM synchronization (SYNCMODE = 0) is a subset of the enhanced PWM synchronization (SYNCMODE = 1). Thus, only the enhanced PWM synchronization must be used.

43.5.11.1 Hardware trigger

Three hardware trigger signal inputs of the FTM module are enabled when TRIGn = 1, where n = 0, 1 or 2 corresponding to each one of the input signals, respectively. The hardware trigger input n is synchronized by the system clock. The PWM synchronization with hardware trigger is initiated when a rising edge is detected at the enabled hardware trigger inputs.

If (HWTRIGMODE = 0) then the TRIGn bit is cleared when 0 is written to it or when the trigger n event is detected.

In this case, if two or more hardware triggers are enabled (for example, TRIG0 and TRIG1 = 1) and only trigger 1 event occurs, then only TRIG1 bit is cleared. If a trigger n event occurs together with a write setting TRIGn bit, then the synchronization is initiated, but TRIGn bit remains set due to the write operation.



Note
All hardware trigger inputs have the same behavior.

Figure 43-45. Hardware trigger event with HWTRIGMODE = 0

If HWTRIGMODE = 1, then the TRIGn bit is only cleared when 0 is written to it.

NOTE

The HWTRIGMODE bit must be 1 only with enhanced PWM synchronization (SYNCMODE = 1).

43.5.11.2 Software trigger

A software trigger event occurs when 1 is written to the SYNC[SWSYNC] bit. The SWSYNC bit is cleared when 0 is written to it or when the PWM synchronization, initiated by the software event, is completed.

If another software trigger event occurs (by writing another 1 to the SWSYNC bit) at the same time the PWM synchronization initiated by the previous software trigger event is ending, a new PWM synchronization is started and the SWSYNC bit remains equal to 1.

If SYNCMODE = 0 then the SWSYNC bit is also cleared by FTM according to PWMSYNC and REINIT bits. In this case if (PWMSYNC = 1) or (PWMSYNC = 0 and REINIT = 0) then SWSYNC bit is cleared at the next selected loading point after that the software trigger event occurred; see [Boundary cycle and loading points](#) and the following figure. If (PWMSYNC = 0) and (REINIT = 1) then SWSYNC bit is cleared when the software trigger event occurs.

If SYNCMODE = 1 then the SWSYNC bit is also cleared by FTM according to the SWRSTCNT bit. If SWRSTCNT = 0 then SWSYNC bit is cleared at the next selected loading point after that the software trigger event occurred; see the following figure. If SWRSTCNT = 1 then SWSYNC bit is cleared when the software trigger event occurs.

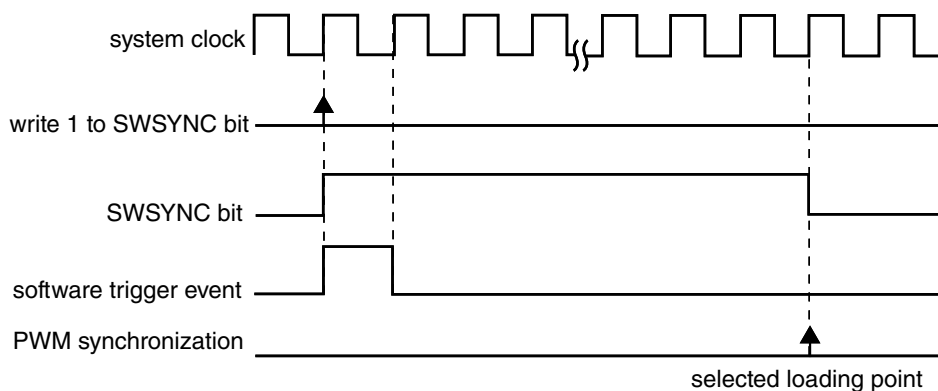


Figure 43-46. Software trigger event

43.5.11.3 Boundary cycle and loading points

The boundary cycle definition is important for the loading points for the registers MOD, CNTIN, and C(n)V.

In [Up counting](#) mode, the boundary cycle is defined as when the counter wraps to its initial value (CNTIN). If in [Up-down counting](#) mode, then the boundary cycle is defined as when the counter turns from down to up counting and when from up to down counting.

The following figure shows the boundary cycles and the loading points for the registers. In the Up Counting mode, the loading points are enabled if one of CNTMIN or CTMAX bits are 1. In the Up-Down Counting mode, the loading points are selected by CNTMIN and CNTMAX bits, as indicated in the figure. These loading points are safe places for register updates thus allowing a smooth transitions in PWM waveform generation.

For both counting modes, if neither CNTMIN nor CNTMAX are 1, then the boundary cycles are not used as loading points for registers updates. See the register synchronization descriptions in the following sections for details.

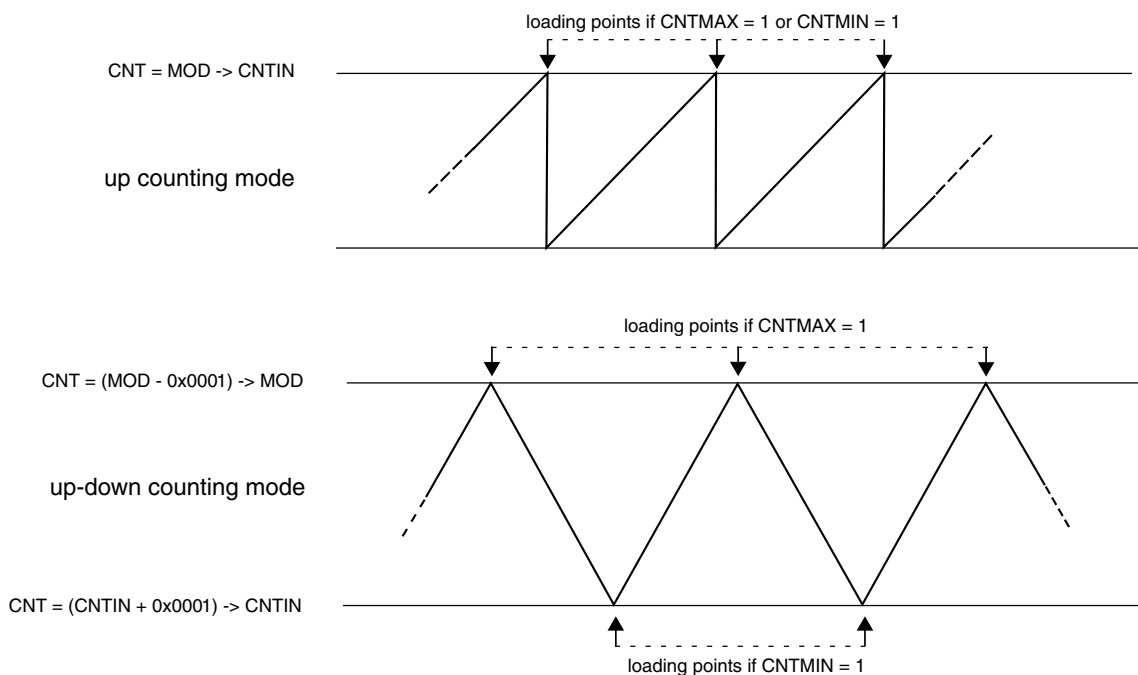


Figure 43-47. Boundary cycles and loading points

43.5.11.4 MOD register synchronization

The MOD register synchronization updates the MOD register with its buffer value. This synchronization is enabled if (FTMEN = 1).

The MOD register synchronization can be done by either the enhanced PWM synchronization (SYNCMODE = 1) or the legacy PWM synchronization (SYNCMODE = 0). However, it is expected that the MOD register be synchronized only by the enhanced PWM synchronization.

In the case of enhanced PWM synchronization, the MOD register synchronization depends on SWWRBUF, SWRSTCNT, HWWRBUF, and HWRSTCNT bits according to this flowchart:

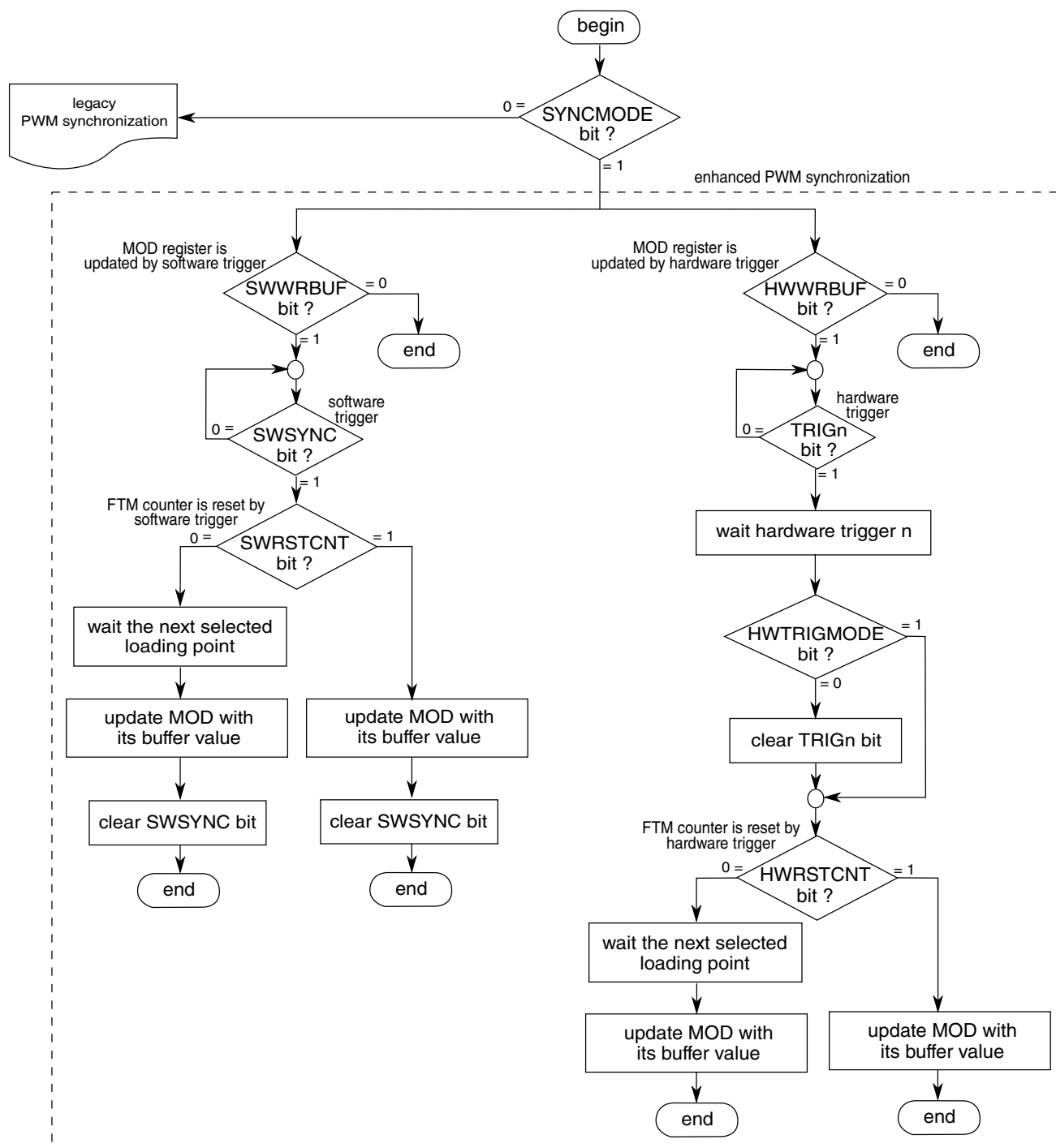


Figure 43-48. MOD register synchronization flowchart

In the case of legacy PWM synchronization, the MOD register synchronization depends on PWMSYNC and REINIT bits according to the following description.

If (SYNCMODE = 0), (PWMSYNC = 0), and (REINIT = 0), then this synchronization is made on the next selected loading point after an enabled trigger event takes place. If the trigger event was a software trigger, then the SWSYNC bit is cleared on the next selected

loading point. If the trigger event was a hardware trigger, then the trigger enable bit (TRIGn) is cleared according to [Hardware trigger](#). Examples with software and hardware triggers follow.

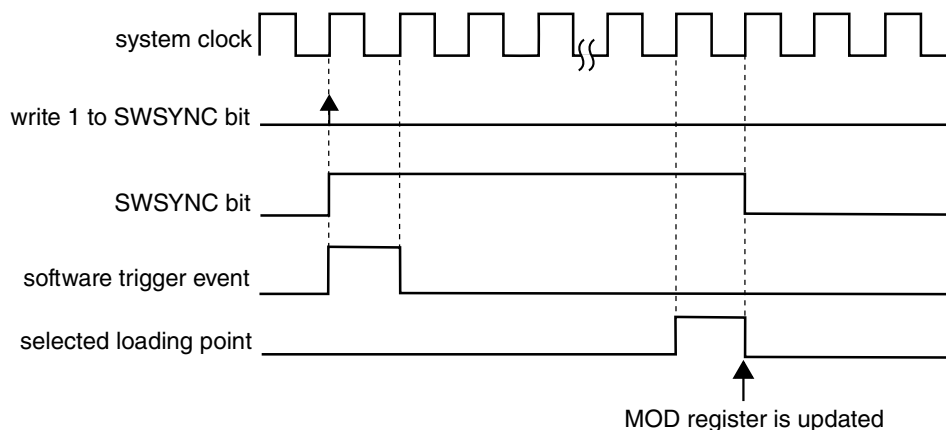


Figure 43-49. MOD synchronization with (SYNCMODE = 0), (PWMSYNC = 0), (REINIT = 0), and software trigger was used

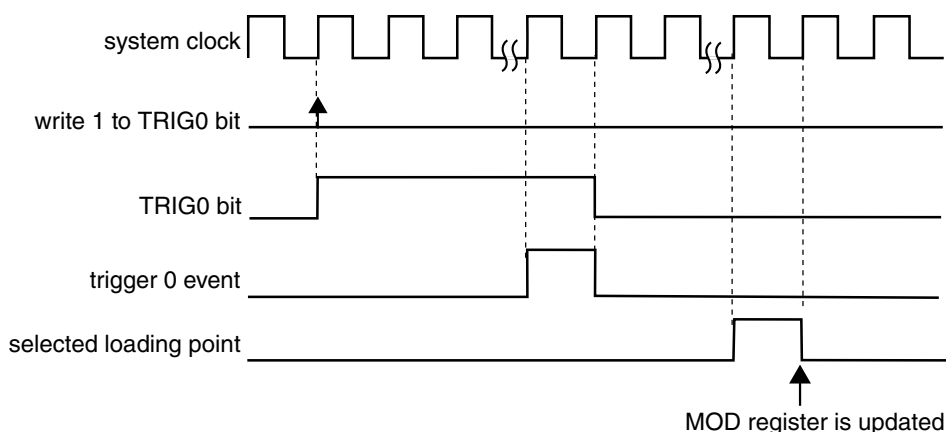


Figure 43-50. MOD synchronization with (SYNCMODE = 0), (HWTRIGMODE = 0), (PWMSYNC = 0), (REINIT = 0), and a hardware trigger was used

If (SYNCMODE = 0), (PWMSYNC = 0), and (REINIT = 1), then this synchronization is made on the next enabled trigger event. If the trigger event was a software trigger, then the SWSYNC bit is cleared according to the following example. If the trigger event was a hardware trigger, then the TRIGn bit is cleared according to [Hardware trigger](#). Examples with software and hardware triggers follow.

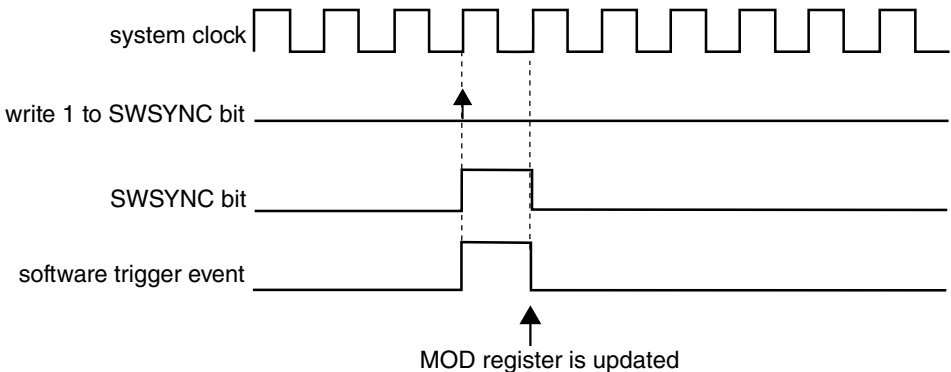


Figure 43-51. MOD synchronization with (SYNCMODE = 0), (PWMSYNC = 0), (REINIT = 1), and software trigger was used

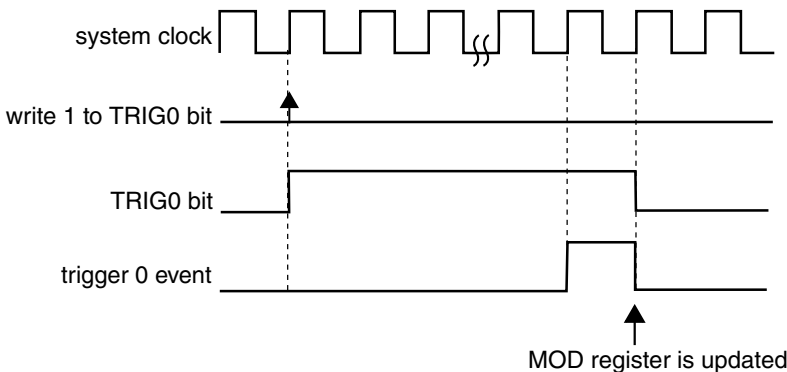


Figure 43-52. MOD synchronization with (SYNCMODE = 0), (HWTRIGMODE = 0), (PWMSYNC = 0), (REINIT = 1), and a hardware trigger was used

If (SYNCMODE = 0) and (PWMSYNC = 1), then this synchronization is made on the next selected loading point after the software trigger event takes place. The SWSYNC bit is cleared on the next selected loading point:

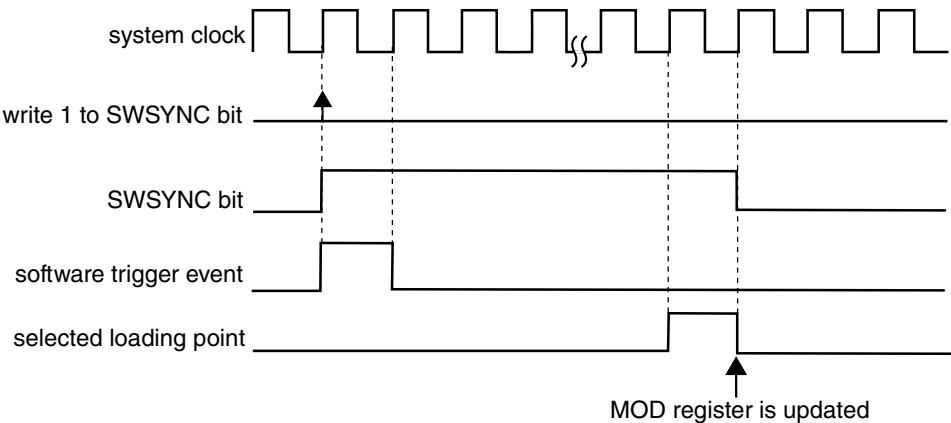


Figure 43-53. MOD synchronization with (SYNCMODE = 0) and (PWMSYNC = 1)

43.5.11.5 CNTIN register synchronization

The CNTIN register synchronization updates the CNTIN register with its buffer value.

This synchronization is enabled if (FTMEN = 1), (SYNCMODE = 1), and (CNTINC = 1). The CNTIN register synchronization can be done only by the enhanced PWM synchronization (SYNCMODE = 1). The synchronization mechanism is the same as the MOD register synchronization done by the enhanced PWM synchronization; see [MOD register synchronization](#).

43.5.11.6 C(n)V and C(n+1)V register synchronization

The C(n)V and C(n+1)V registers synchronization updates the C(n)V and C(n+1)V registers with their buffer values.

This synchronization is enabled if (FTMEN = 1) and (SYNCEN = 1). The synchronization mechanism is the same as the [MOD register synchronization](#). However, it is expected that the C(n)V and C(n+1)V registers be synchronized only by the enhanced PWM synchronization (SYNCMODE = 1).

43.5.11.7 OUTMASK register synchronization

The OUTMASK register synchronization updates the OUTMASK register with its buffer value.

The OUTMASK register can be updated at each rising edge of system clock (SYNCHOM = 0), by the enhanced PWM synchronization (SYNCHOM = 1 and SYNCMODE = 1) or by the legacy PWM synchronization (SYNCHOM = 1 and SYNCMODE = 0). However, it is expected that the OUTMASK register be synchronized only by the enhanced PWM synchronization.

In the case of enhanced PWM synchronization, the OUTMASK register synchronization depends on SWOM and HWOM bits. See the following flowchart:

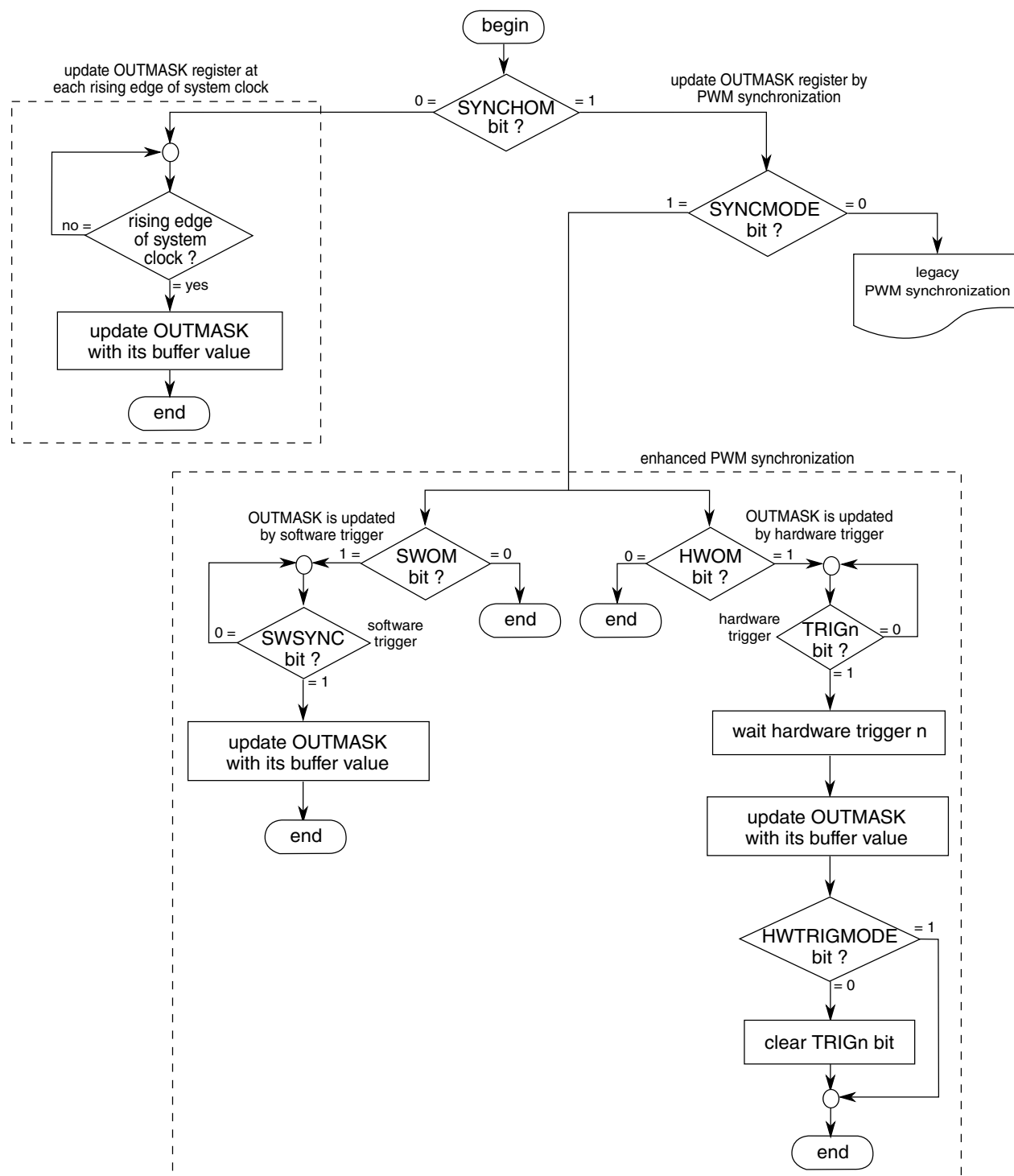


Figure 43-54. OUTMASK register synchronization flowchart

In the case of legacy PWM synchronization, the OUTMASK register synchronization depends on PWMSYNC bit according to the following description.

If (SYNCMODE = 0), (SYNCHOM = 1), and (PWMSYNC = 0), then this synchronization is done on the next enabled trigger event. If the trigger event was a software trigger, then the SWSYNC bit is cleared on the next selected loading point. If the trigger event was a hardware trigger, then the TRIGn bit is cleared according to [Hardware trigger](#). Examples with software and hardware triggers follow.

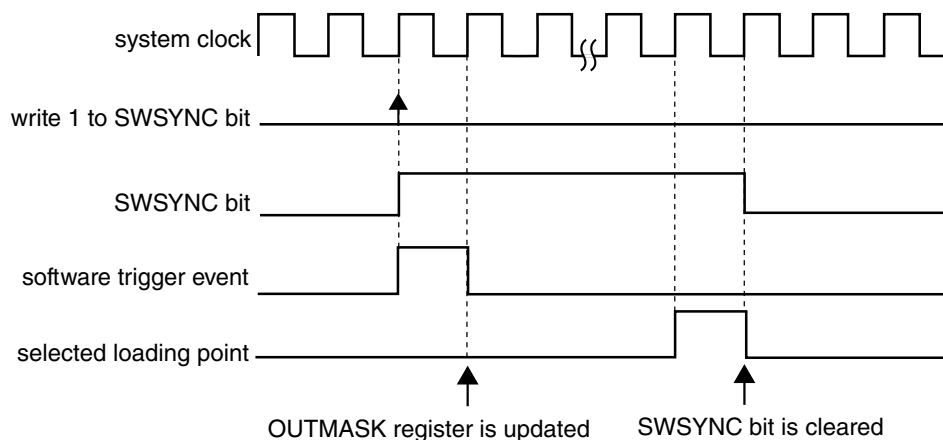


Figure 43-55. OUTMASK synchronization with (SYNCMODE = 0), (SYNCHOM = 1), (PWMSYNC = 0) and software trigger was used

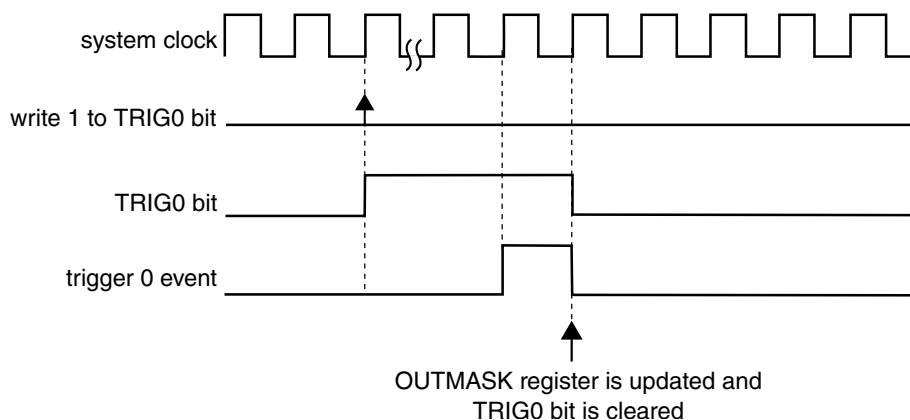


Figure 43-56. OUTMASK synchronization with (SYNCMODE = 0), (HWTRIGMODE = 0), (SYNCHOM = 1), (PWMSYNC = 0), and a hardware trigger was used

If (SYNCMODE = 0), (SYNCHOM = 1), and (PWMSYNC = 1), then this synchronization is made on the next enabled hardware trigger. The TRIGn bit is cleared according to [Hardware trigger](#). An example with a hardware trigger follows.

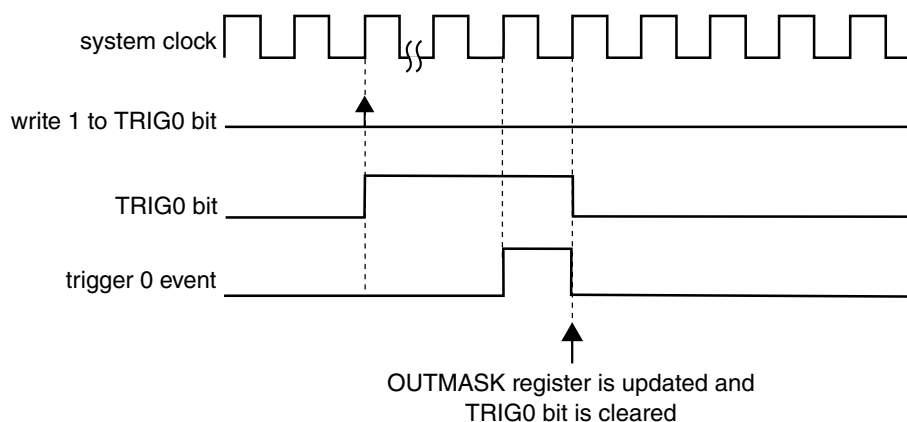


Figure 43-57. OUTMASK synchronization with (SYNCMODE = 0), (HWTRIGMODE = 0), (SYNCHOM = 1), (PWMSYNC = 1), and a hardware trigger was used

43.5.11.8 INVCTRL register synchronization

The INVCTRL register synchronization updates the INVCTRL register with its buffer value.

The INVCTRL register can be updated at each rising edge of system clock (INVC = 0) or by the enhanced PWM synchronization (INVC = 1 and SYNCMODE = 1) according to the following flowchart.

In the case of enhanced PWM synchronization, the INVCTRL register synchronization depends on SWINVC and HWINVC bits.

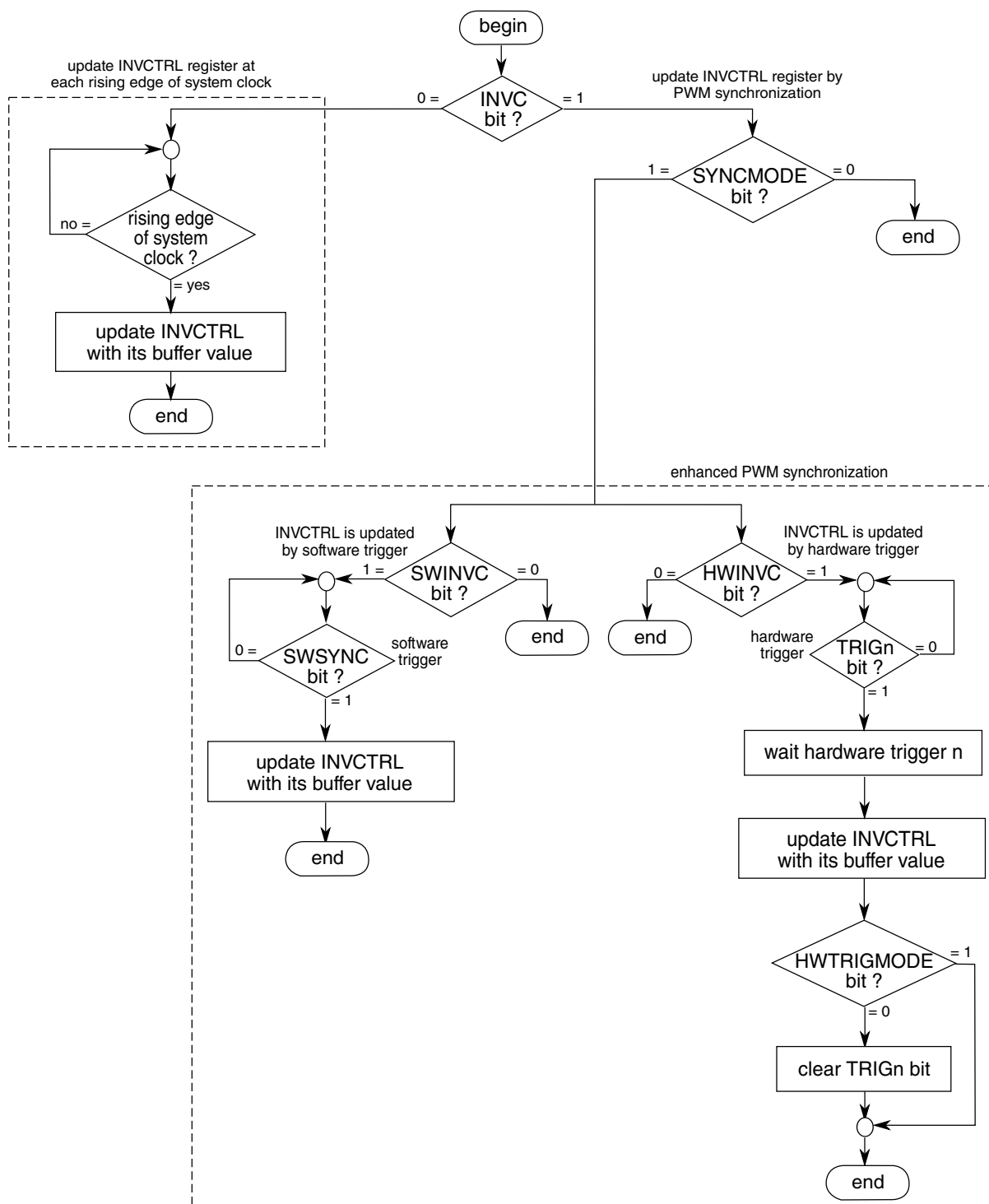


Figure 43-58. INVCTRL register synchronization flowchart

43.5.11.9 SWOCTRL register synchronization

The SWOCTRL register synchronization updates the SWOCTRL register with its buffer value.

The SWOCTRL register can be updated at each rising edge of system clock (SWOC = 0) or by the enhanced PWM synchronization (SWOC = 1 and SYNCMODE = 1) according to the following flowchart.

In the case of enhanced PWM synchronization, the SWOCTRL register synchronization depends on SWSOC and HWSOC bits.

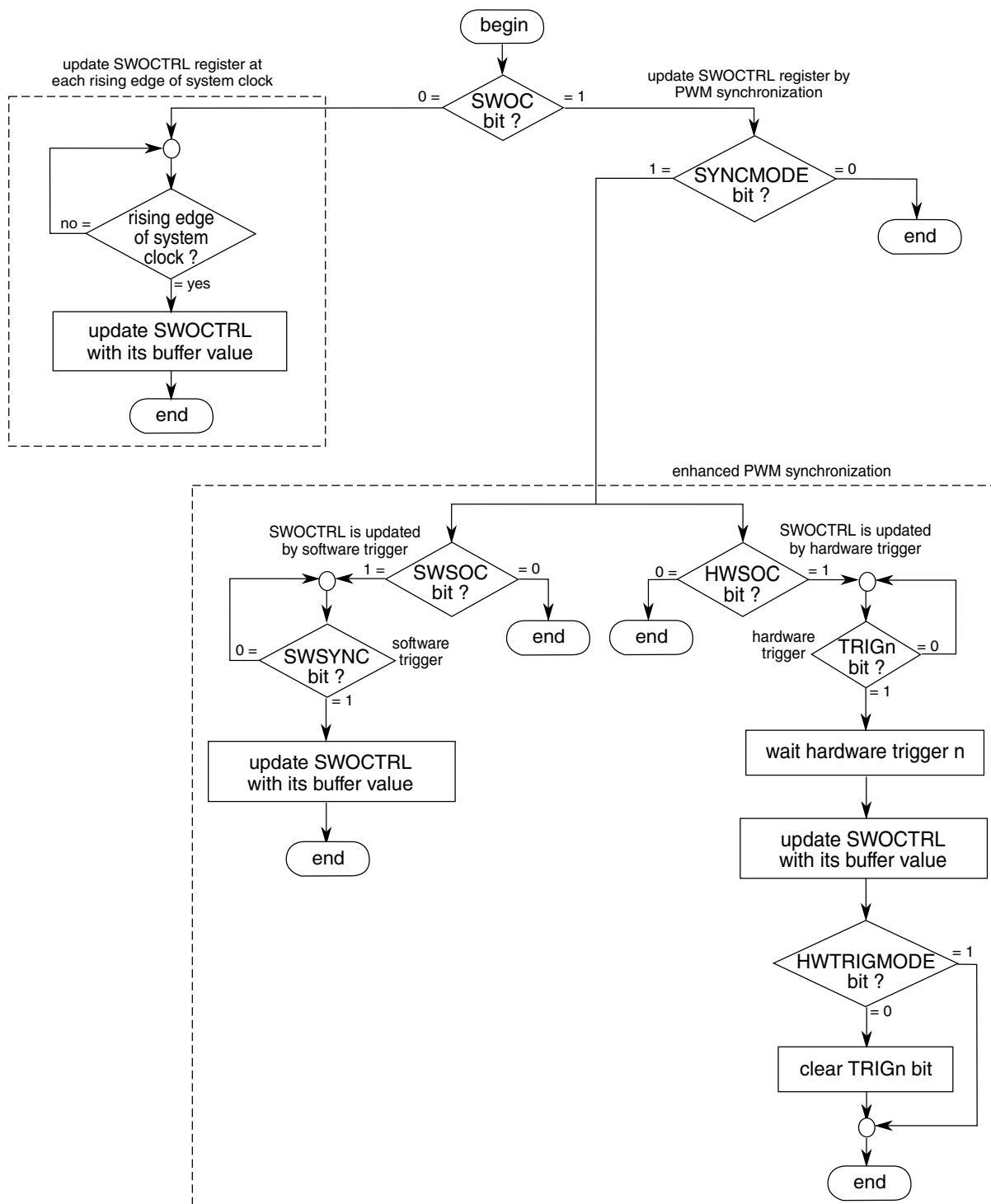


Figure 43-59. SWOCTRL register synchronization flowchart

43.5.11.10 FTM counter synchronization

The FTM counter synchronization is a mechanism that allows the FTM to restart the PWM generation at a certain point in the PWM period. The channels outputs are forced to their initial value, except for channels in Output Compare mode, and the FTM counter is forced to its initial counting value defined by CNTIN register.

The following figure shows the FTM counter synchronization. Note that after the synchronization event occurs, the channel (n) is set to its initial value and the channel (n+1) is not set to its initial value due to a specific timing of this figure in which the deadtime insertion prevents this channel output from transitioning to 1. If no deadtime insertion is selected, then the channel (n+1) transitions to logical value 1 immediately after the synchronization event occurs.

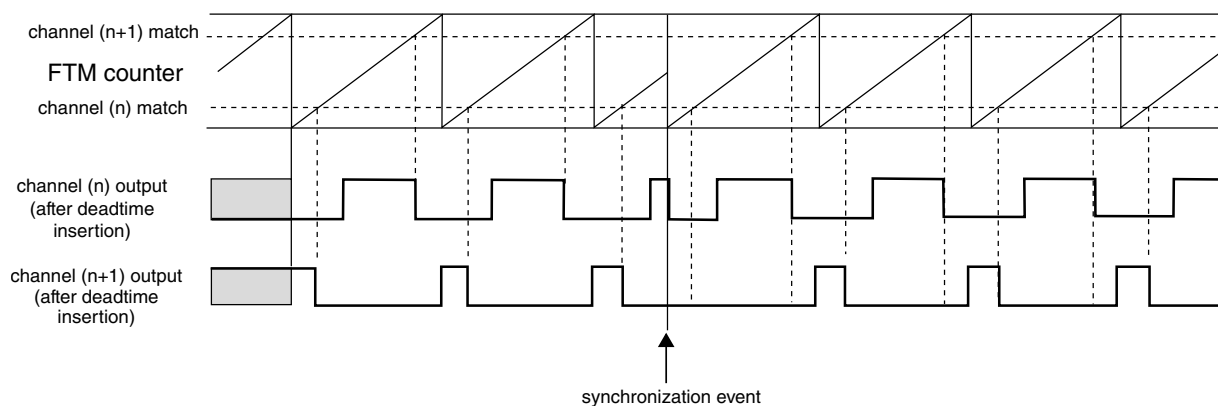


Figure 43-60. FTM counter synchronization

The FTM counter synchronization can be done by either the enhanced PWM synchronization (SYNCMODE = 1) or the legacy PWM synchronization (SYNCMODE = 0). However, the FTM counter must be synchronized only by the enhanced PWM synchronization.

In the case of enhanced PWM synchronization, the FTM counter synchronization depends on SWRSTCNT and HWRSTCNT bits according to the following flowchart.

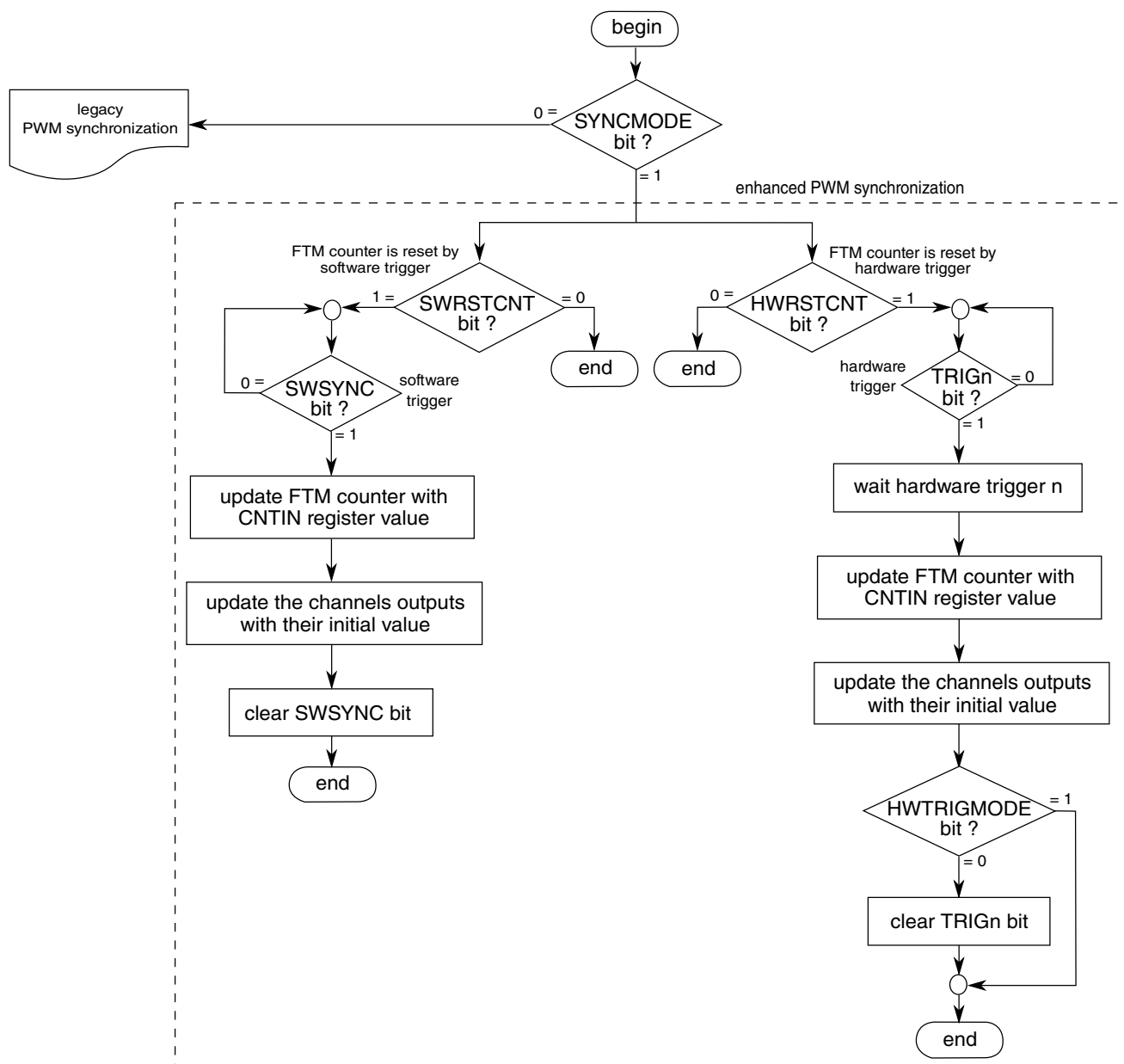


Figure 43-61. FTM counter synchronization flowchart

In the case of legacy PWM synchronization, the FTM counter synchronization depends on REINIT and PWMSYNC bits according to the following description.

If (SYNCMODE = 0), (REINIT = 1), and (PWMSYNC = 0) then this synchronization is made on the next enabled trigger event. If the trigger event was a software trigger then the SWSYNC bit is cleared according to the following example. If the trigger event was a hardware trigger then the TRIGN bit is cleared according to [Hardware trigger](#). Examples with software and hardware triggers follow.

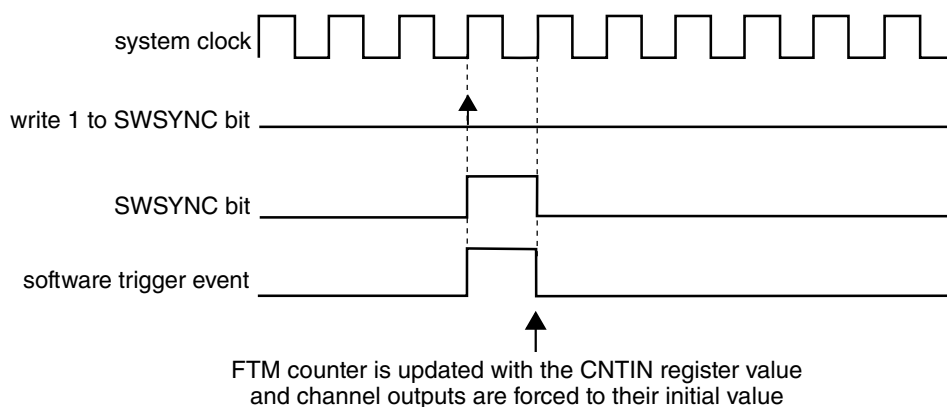


Figure 43-62. FTM counter synchronization with (SYNCMODE = 0), (REINIT = 1), (PWMSYNC = 0), and software trigger was used

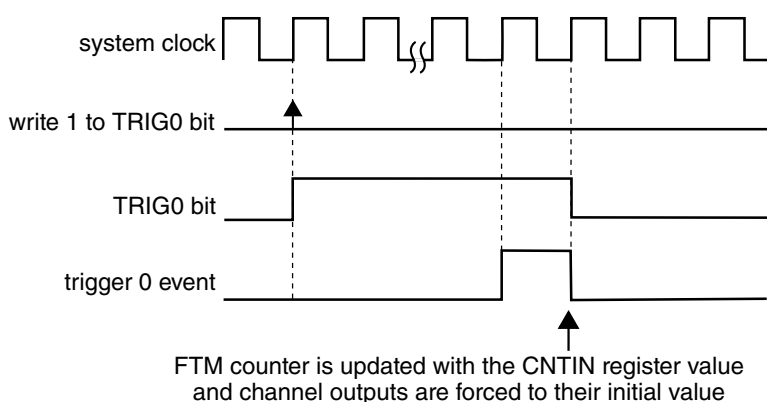


Figure 43-63. FTM counter synchronization with (SYNCMODE = 0), (HWTRIGMODE = 0), (REINIT = 1), (PWMSYNC = 0), and a hardware trigger was used

If (SYNCMODE = 0), (REINIT = 1), and (PWMSYNC = 1) then this synchronization is made on the next enabled hardware trigger. The TRIGn bit is cleared according to [Hardware trigger](#).

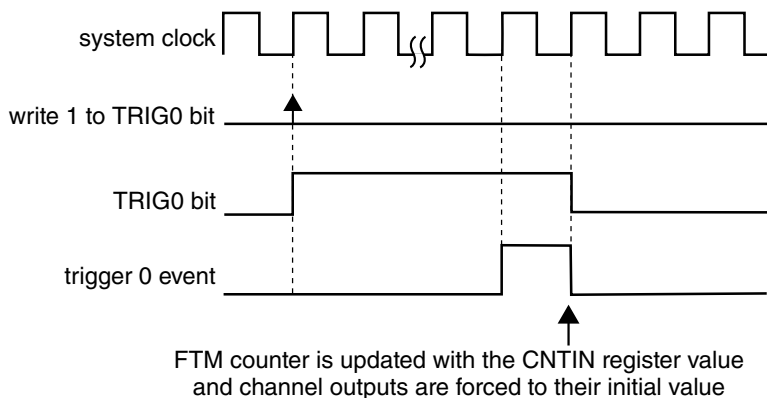


Figure 43-64. FTM counter synchronization with (SYNCMODE = 0), (HWTRIGMODE = 0), (REINIT = 1), (PWMSYNC = 1), and a hardware trigger was used

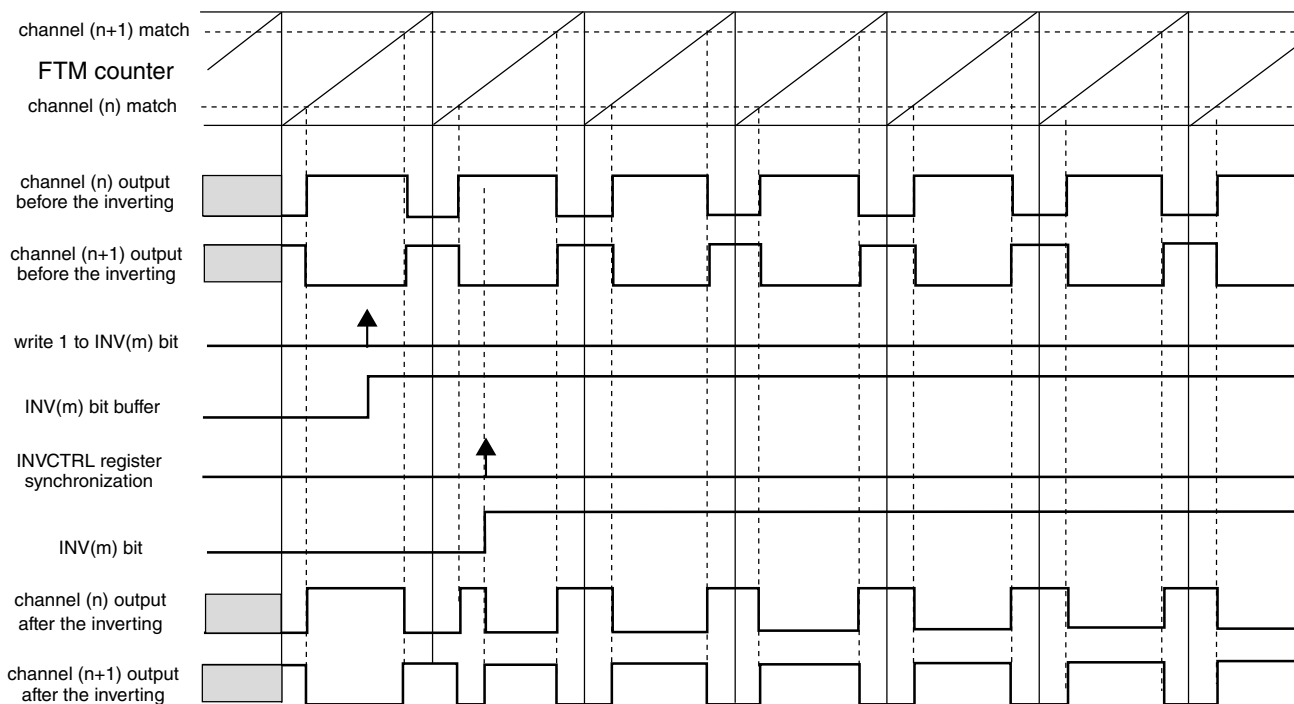
43.5.12 Inverting

The invert functionality swaps the signals between channel (n) and channel (n+1) outputs. The inverting operation is selected when:

- QUADEN = 0
- DECAPEN = 0
- COMP = 1, and
- INV_m = 1 (where m represents a channel pair)

The INV_m bit in INVCTRL register is updated with its buffer value according to [INVCTRL register synchronization](#)

In High-True (ELSnB:ELSnA = 1:0) Combine mode, the channel (n) output is forced low at the beginning of the period (FTM counter = CNTIN), forced high at the channel (n) match and forced low at the channel (n+1) match. If the inverting is selected, the channel (n) output behavior is changed to force high at the beginning of the PWM period, force low at the channel (n) match and force high at the channel (n+1) match. See the following figure.

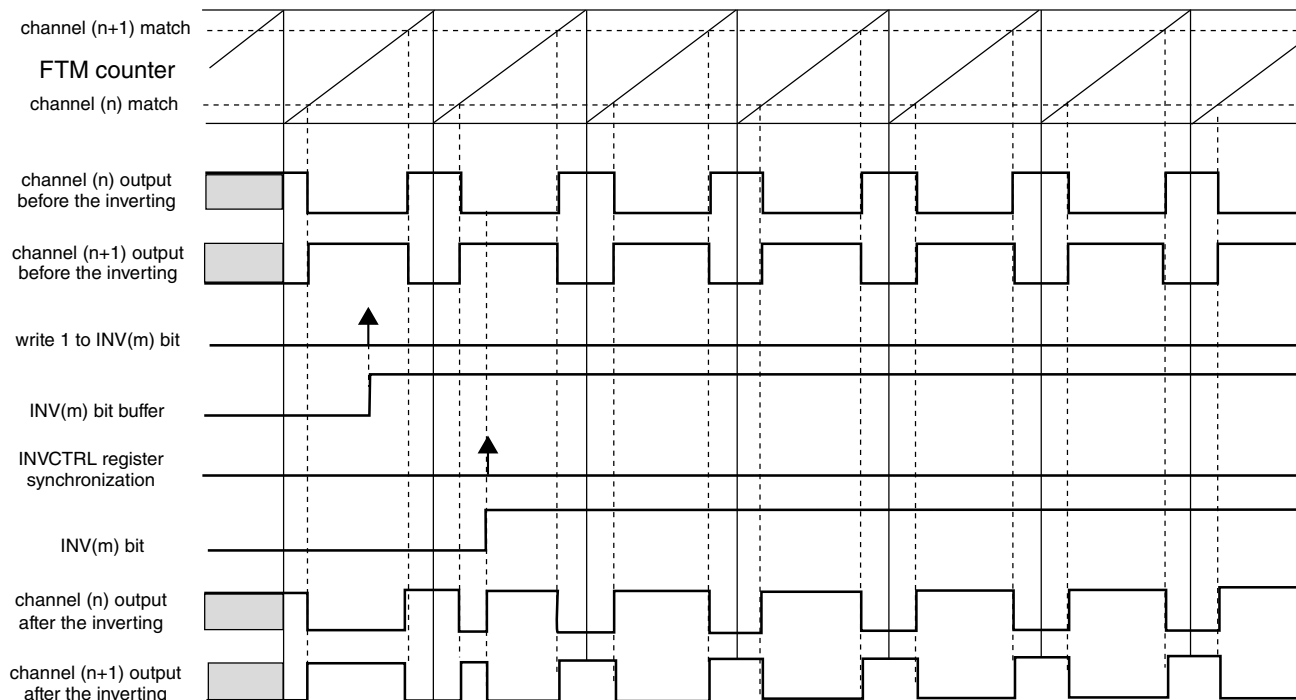


NOTE

INV_m bit selects the inverting to the pair channels (n) and (n+1).

Figure 43-65. Channels (n) and (n+1) outputs after the inverting in High-True (ELSnB:ELSnA = 1:0) Combine mode

Note that the ELSnB:ELSnA bits value should be considered because they define the active state of the channels outputs. In Low-True (ELSnB:ELSnA = X:1) Combine mode, the channel (n) output is forced high at the beginning of the period, forced low at the channel (n) match and forced high at the channel (n+1) match. When inverting is selected, the channels (n) and (n+1) present waveforms as shown in the following figure.



NOTE

INV(m) bit selects the inverting to the pair channels (n) and (n+1).

Figure 43-66. Channels (n) and (n+1) outputs after the inverting in Low-True (ELSnB:ELSnA = X:1) Combine mode

Note

The inverting feature is not available in Output Compare mode.

43.5.13 Software output control

The software output control forces the channel output according to software defined values at a specific time in the PWM generation.

The software output control is selected when:

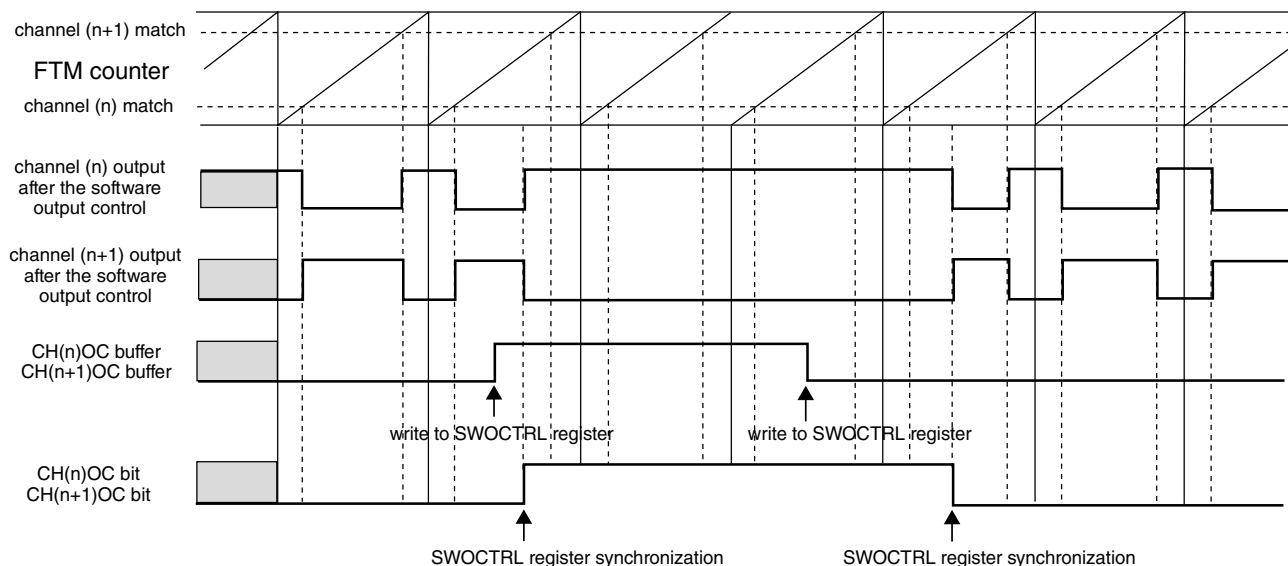
- QUADEN = 0
- DECAPEN = 0, and
- CHnOC = 1

functional description

The CHnOC bit enables the software output control for a specific channel output and the CHnOCV selects the value that is forced to this channel output.

Both CHnOC and CHnOCV bits in SWOCTRL register are buffered and updated with their buffer value according to [SWOCTRL register synchronization](#).

The following figure shows the channels (n) and (n+1) outputs signals when the software output control is used. In this case the channels (n) and (n+1) are set to Combine and Complementary mode.



NOTE
CH(n)OCV = 1 and CH(n+1)OCV = 0.

Figure 43-67. Example of software output control in Combine and Complementary mode

Software output control forces the following values on channels (n) and (n+1) when the COMP bit is zero.

Table 43-9. Software output control behavior when (COMP = 0)

CH(n)OC	CH(n+1)OC	CH(n)OCV	CH(n+1)OCV	Channel (n) Output	Channel (n+1) Output
0	0	X	X	is not modified by SWOC	is not modified by SWOC
1	1	0	0	is forced to zero	is forced to zero
1	1	0	1	is forced to zero	is forced to one
1	1	1	0	is forced to one	is forced to zero
1	1	1	1	is forced to one	is forced to one

Software output control forces the following values on channels (n) and (n+1) when the COMP bit is one.

Table 43-10. Software ouput control behavior when (COMP = 1)

CH(n)OC	CH(n+1)OC	CH(n)OCV	CH(n+1)OCV	Channel (n) Output	Channel (n+1) Output
0	0	X	X	is not modified by SWOC	is not modified by SWOC
1	1	0	0	is forced to zero	is forced to zero
1	1	0	1	is forced to zero	is forced to one
1	1	1	0	is forced to one	is forced to zero
1	1	1	1	is forced to one	is forced to zero

Note

- The CH(n)OC and CH(n+1)OC bits should be equal.
- The COMP bit must not be modified when software output control is enabled, that is, CH(n)OC = 1 and/or CH(n+1)OC = 1.
- Software output control has the same behavior with disabled or enabled FTM counter (see the CLKS field description in the Status and Control register).

43.5.14 Deadtime insertion

The deadtime insertion is enabled when (DTEN = 1) and (DTVAL[5:0] is non- zero).

DEADTIME register defines the deadtime delay that can be used for all FTM channels. The DTPS[1:0] bits define the prescaler for the system clock and the DTVAL[5:0] bits define the deadtime modulo, that is, the number of the deadtime prescaler clocks.

The deadtime delay insertion ensures that no two complementary signals (channels (n) and (n+1)) drive the active state at the same time.

If POL(n) = 0, POL(n+1) = 0, and the deadtime is enabled, then when the channel (n) match (FTM counter = C(n)V) occurs, the channel (n) output remains at the low value until the end of the deadtime delay when the channel (n) output is set. Similarly, when the channel (n+1) match (FTM counter = C(n+1)V) occurs, the channel (n+1) output remains at the low value until the end of the deadtime delay when the channel (n+1) output is set. See the following figures.

If POL(n) = 1, POL(n+1) = 1, and the deadtime is enabled, then when the channel (n) match (FTM counter = C(n)V) occurs, the channel (n) output remains at the high value until the end of the deadtime delay when the channel (n) output is cleared. Similarly,

functional description

when the channel (n+1) match (FTM counter = $C(n+1)V$) occurs, the channel (n+1) output remains at the high value until the end of the deadtime delay when the channel (n+1) output is cleared.

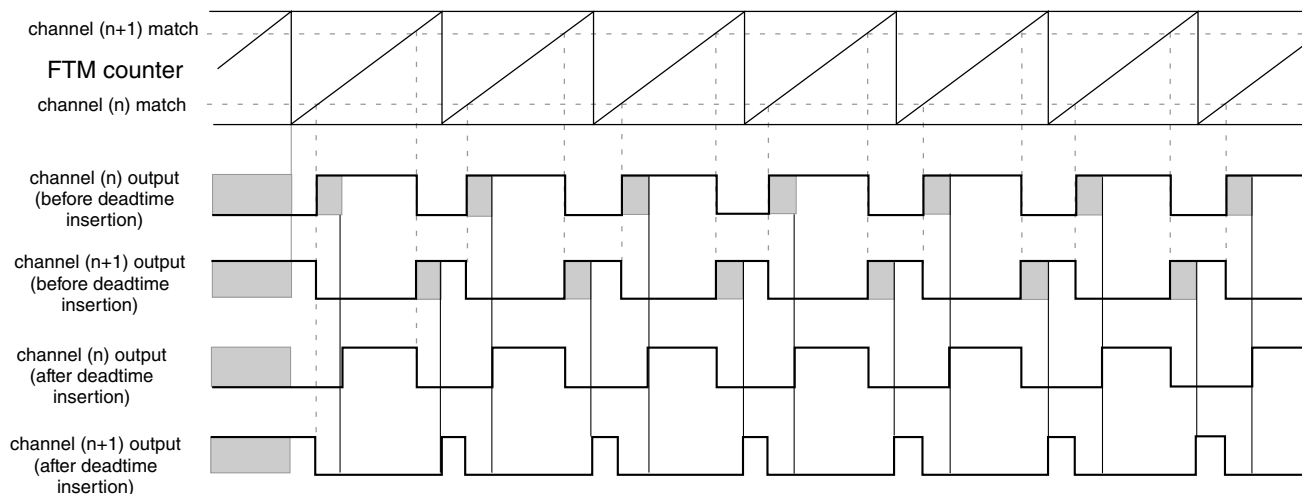


Figure 43-68. Deadtime insertion with $ELSnB:ELSnA = 1:0$, $POL(n) = 0$, and $POL(n+1) = 0$

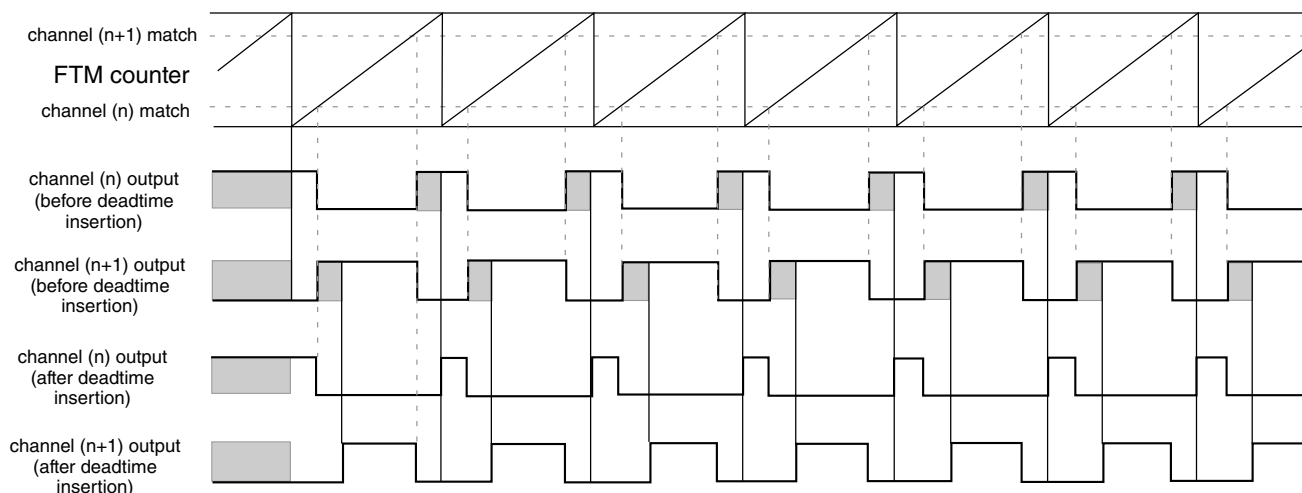


Figure 43-69. Deadtime insertion with $ELSnB:ELSnA = X:1$, $POL(n) = 0$, and $POL(n+1) = 0$

NOTE

- The deadtime feature must be used only in Complementary mode.
- The deadtime feature is not available in Output Compare mode.

43.5.14.1 Deadtime insertion corner cases

If (PS[2:0] is cleared), (DTPS[1:0] = 0:0 or DTPS[1:0] = 0:1):

- and the deadtime delay is greater than or equal to the channel (n) duty cycle ($((C(n)+1)V - C(n)V) \times \text{system clock}$), then the channel (n) output is always the inactive value (POL(n) bit value).
- and the deadtime delay is greater than or equal to the channel (n+1) duty cycle ($((\text{MOD} - \text{CNTIN} + 1 - (C(n+1)V - C(n)V)) \times \text{system clock})$), then the channel (n+1) output is always the inactive value (POL(n+1) bit value).

Although, in most cases the deadtime delay is not comparable to channels (n) and (n+1) duty cycle, the following figures show examples where the deadtime delay is comparable to the duty cycle.

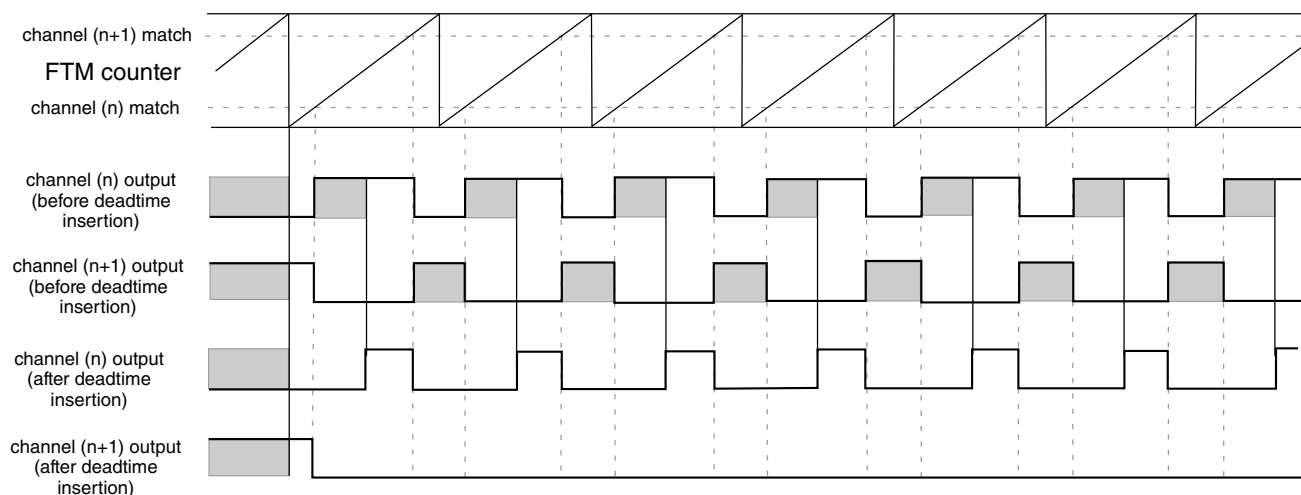


Figure 43-70. Example of the deadtime insertion (ELSnB:ELSnA = 1:0, POL(n) = 0, and POL(n+1) = 0) when the deadtime delay is comparable to channel (n+1) duty cycle

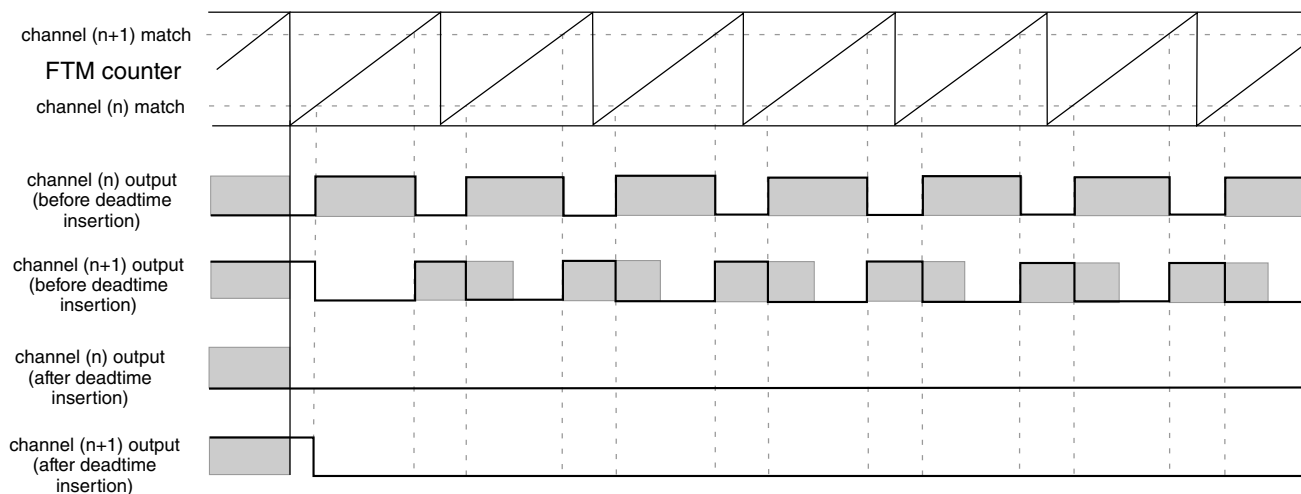


Figure 43-71. Example of the deadtime insertion (ELSnB:ELSnA = 1:0, POL(n) = 0, and POL(n+1) = 0) when the deadtime delay is comparable to channels (n) and (n+1) duty cycle

43.5.15 Output mask

The output mask can be used to force channels output to their inactive state through software. For example: to control a BLDC motor.

Any write to the OUTMASK register updates its write buffer. The OUTMASK register is updated with its buffer value by PWM synchronization; see [OUTMASK register synchronization](#).

If CHnOM = 1, then the channel (n) output is forced to its inactive state (POLn bit value). If CHnOM = 0, then the channel (n) output is unaffected by the output mask. See the following figure.

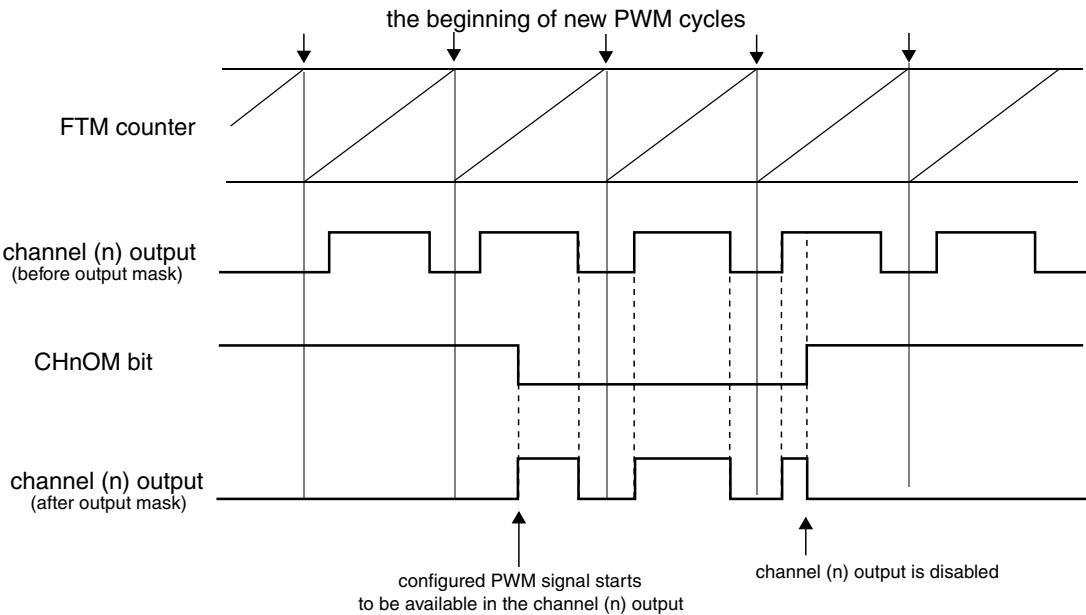


Figure 43-72. Output mask with POLn = 0

The following table shows the output mask result before the polarity control.

Table 43-11. Output mask result for channel (n) before the polarity control

CHnOM	Output Mask Input	Output Mask Result
0	inactive state	inactive state
	active state	active state
1	inactive state	inactive state
	active state	

43.5.16 Fault control

The fault control is enabled if (FAULTM[1:0] \neq 0:0).

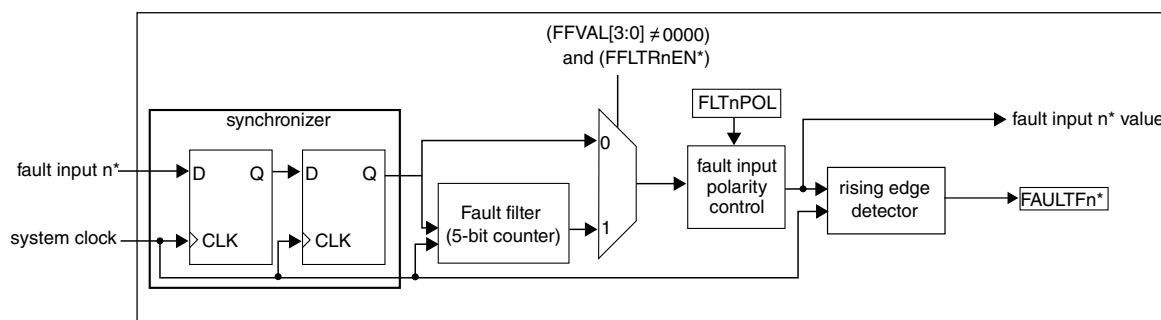
FTM can have up to four fault inputs. FAULTnEN bit (where n = 0, 1, 2, 3) enables the fault input n and FFLTRnEN bit enables the fault input n filter. FFVAL[3:0] bits select the value of the enabled filter in each enabled fault input.

First, each fault input signal is synchronized by the system clock; see the synchronizer block in the following figure. Following synchronization, the fault input n signal enters the filter block. When there is a state change in the fault input n signal, the 5-bit counter is reset and starts counting up. As long as the new state is stable on the fault input n, the counter continues to increment. If the 5-bit counter overflows, that is, the counter exceeds the value of the FFVAL[3:0] bits, the new fault input n value is validated. It is then transmitted as a pulse edge to the edge detector.

If the opposite edge appears on the fault input n signal before validation (counter overflow), the counter is reset. At the next input transition, the counter starts counting again. Any pulse that is shorter than the minimum value selected by FFVAL[3:0] bits (\times system clock) is regarded as a glitch and is not passed on to the edge detector.

The fault input n filter is disabled when the FFVAL[3:0] bits are zero or when FAULTnEN = 0. In this case, the fault input n signal is delayed 2 rising edges of the system clock and the FAULTFn bit is set on 3th rising edge of the system clock after a rising edge occurs on the fault input n.

If FFVAL[3:0] \neq 0000 and FAULTnEN = 1, then the fault input n signal is delayed (3 + FFVAL[3:0]) rising edges of the system clock, that is, the FAULTFn bit is set (4 + FFVAL[3:0]) rising edges of the system clock after a rising edge occurs on the fault input n.



* where n = 3, 2, 1, 0

Figure 43-73. Fault input n control block diagram

If the fault control and fault input n are enabled and a rising edge at the fault input n signal is detected, a fault condition has occurred and the FAULTFn bit is set. The FAULTF bit is the logic OR of FAULTFn[3:0] bits. See the following figure.

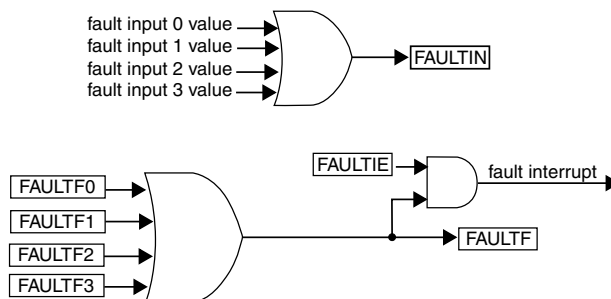


Figure 43-74. FAULTF and FAULTIN bits and fault interrupt

If the fault control is enabled ($\text{FAULTM}[1:0] \neq 0:0$), a fault condition has occurred and ($\text{FAULTEN} = 1$), then outputs are forced to their safe values:

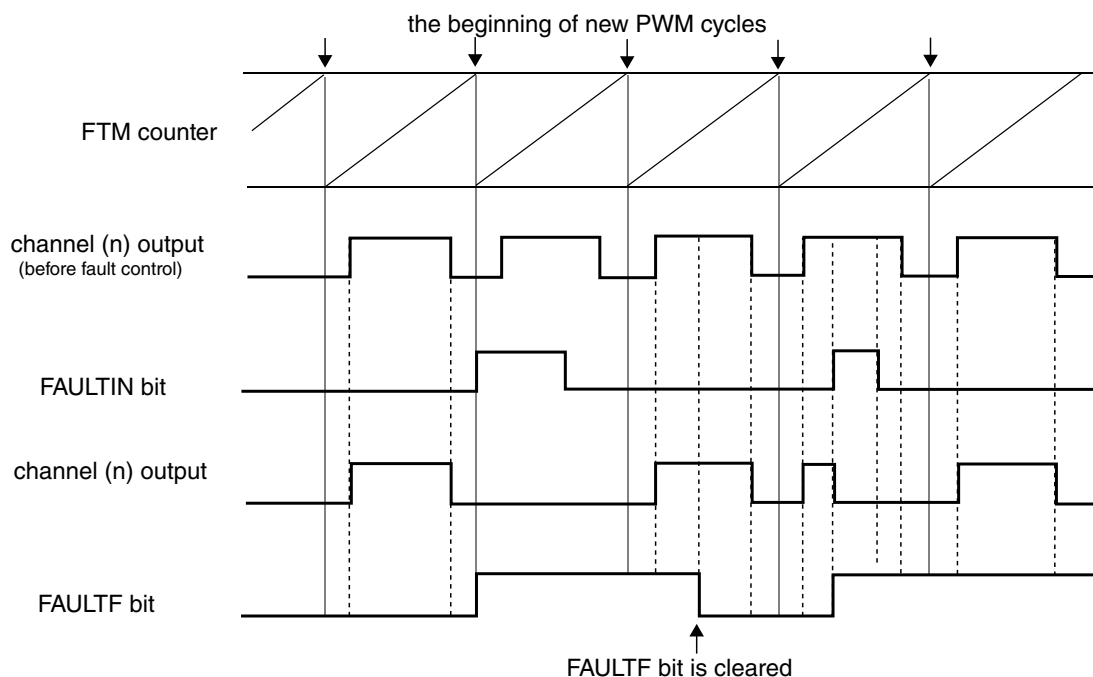
- Channel (n) output takes the value of $\text{POL}(n)$
- Channel (n+1) takes the value of $\text{POL}(n+1)$

The fault interrupt is generated when ($\text{FAULTF} = 1$) and ($\text{FAULTIE} = 1$). This interrupt request remains set until:

- Software clears the FAULTF bit by reading FAULTF bit as 1 and writing 0 to it
- Software clears the FAULTIE bit
- A reset occurs

43.5.16.1 Automatic fault clearing

If the automatic fault clearing is selected ($\text{FAULTM}[1:0] = 1:1$), then the channels output disabled by fault control is again enabled when the fault input signal (FAULTIN) returns to zero and a new PWM cycle begins. See the following figure.

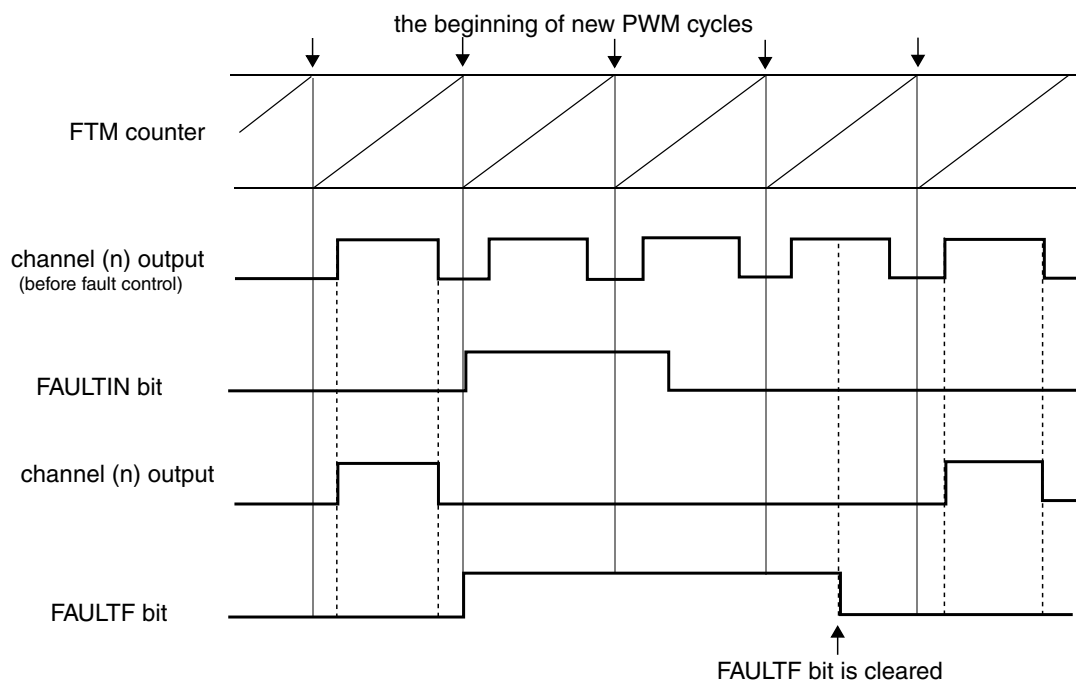


NOTE
The channel (n) output is after the fault control with automatic fault clearing and POLn = 0.

Figure 43-75. Fault control with automatic fault clearing

43.5.16.2 Manual fault clearing

If the manual fault clearing is selected (FAULTM[1:0] = 0:1 or 1:0), then the channels output disabled by fault control is again enabled when the FAULTF bit is cleared and a new PWM cycle begins. See the following figure.



NOTE
The channel (n) output is after the fault control with manual fault clearing and POLn = 0.

Figure 43-76. Fault control with manual fault clearing

43.5.16.3 Fault inputs polarity control

The FLTjPOL bit selects the fault input j polarity, where $j = 0, 1, 2, 3$:

- If FLTjPOL = 0, the fault j input polarity is high, so the logical one at the fault input j indicates a fault.
- If FLTjPOL = 1, the fault j input polarity is low, so the logical zero at the fault input j indicates a fault.

43.5.17 Polarity control

The POLn bit selects the channel (n) output polarity:

- If POLn = 0, the channel (n) output polarity is high, so the logical one is the active state and the logical zero is the inactive state.
- If POLn = 1, the channel (n) output polarity is low, so the logical zero is the active state and the logical one is the inactive state.

43.5.18 Initialization

The initialization forces the CHnOI bit value to the channel (n) output when a one is written to the INIT bit.

The initialization depends on COMP and DTEN bits. The following table shows the values that channels (n) and (n+1) are forced by initialization when the COMP and DTEN bits are zero.

Table 43-12. Initialization behavior when (COMP = 0 and DTEN = 0)

CH(n)OI	CH(n+1)OI	Channel (n) Output	Channel (n+1) Output
0	0	is forced to zero	is forced to zero
0	1	is forced to zero	is forced to one
1	0	is forced to one	is forced to zero
1	1	is forced to one	is forced to one

The following table shows the values that channels (n) and (n+1) are forced by initialization when (COMP = 1) or (DTEN = 1).

Table 43-13. Initialization behavior when (COMP = 1 or DTEN = 1)

CH(n)OI	CH(n+1)OI	Channel (n) Output	Channel (n+1) Output
0	X	is forced to zero	is forced to one
1	X	is forced to one	is forced to zero

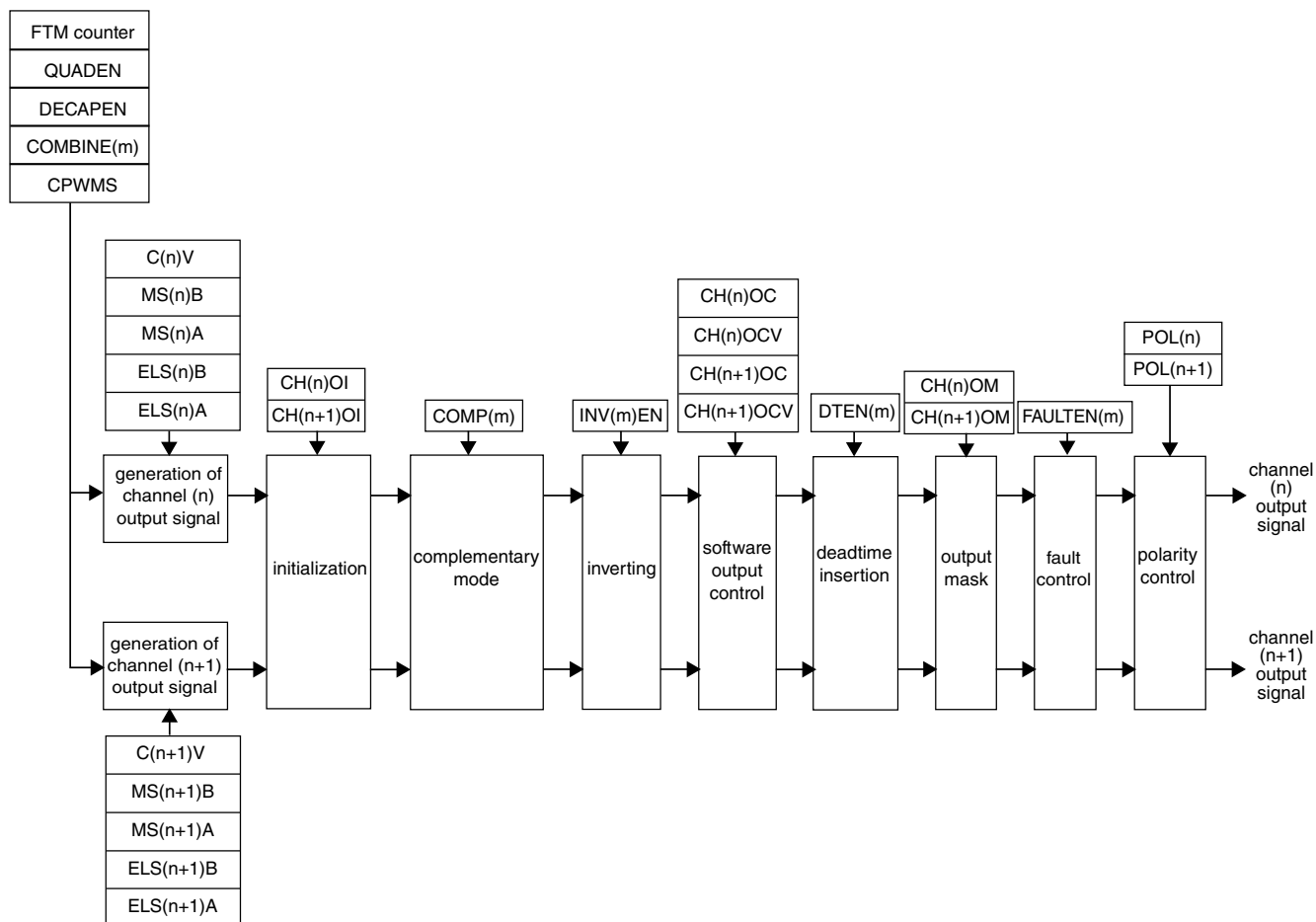
Note

The initialization feature must be used only with disabled FTM counter. See the description of the CLKS field in the Status and Control register.

43.5.19 Features priority

The following figure shows the priority of the features used at the generation of channels (n) and (n+1) outputs signals.

pair channels (m) - channels (n) and (n+1)



NOTE

The channels (n) and (n+1) are in output compare, EPWM, CPWM or combine modes.

Figure 43-77. Priority of the features used at the generation of channels (n) and (n+1) outputs signals

Note

The **Initialization** feature must not be used with **Inverting** and **Software output control** features.

43.5.20 Channel trigger output

If CH(j)TRIG bit of the FTM External Trigger (FTM_EXTTRIG) register is set, where $j = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4$, or 5 , then the FTM generates a trigger when the channel (j) match occurs (FTM counter = C(j)V).

The channel trigger output provides a trigger signal which has one FTM clock period width and is used for on-chip modules.

The FTM is able to generate multiple triggers in one PWM period. Because each trigger is generated for a specific channel, several channels are required to implement this functionality. This behavior is described in the following figure.

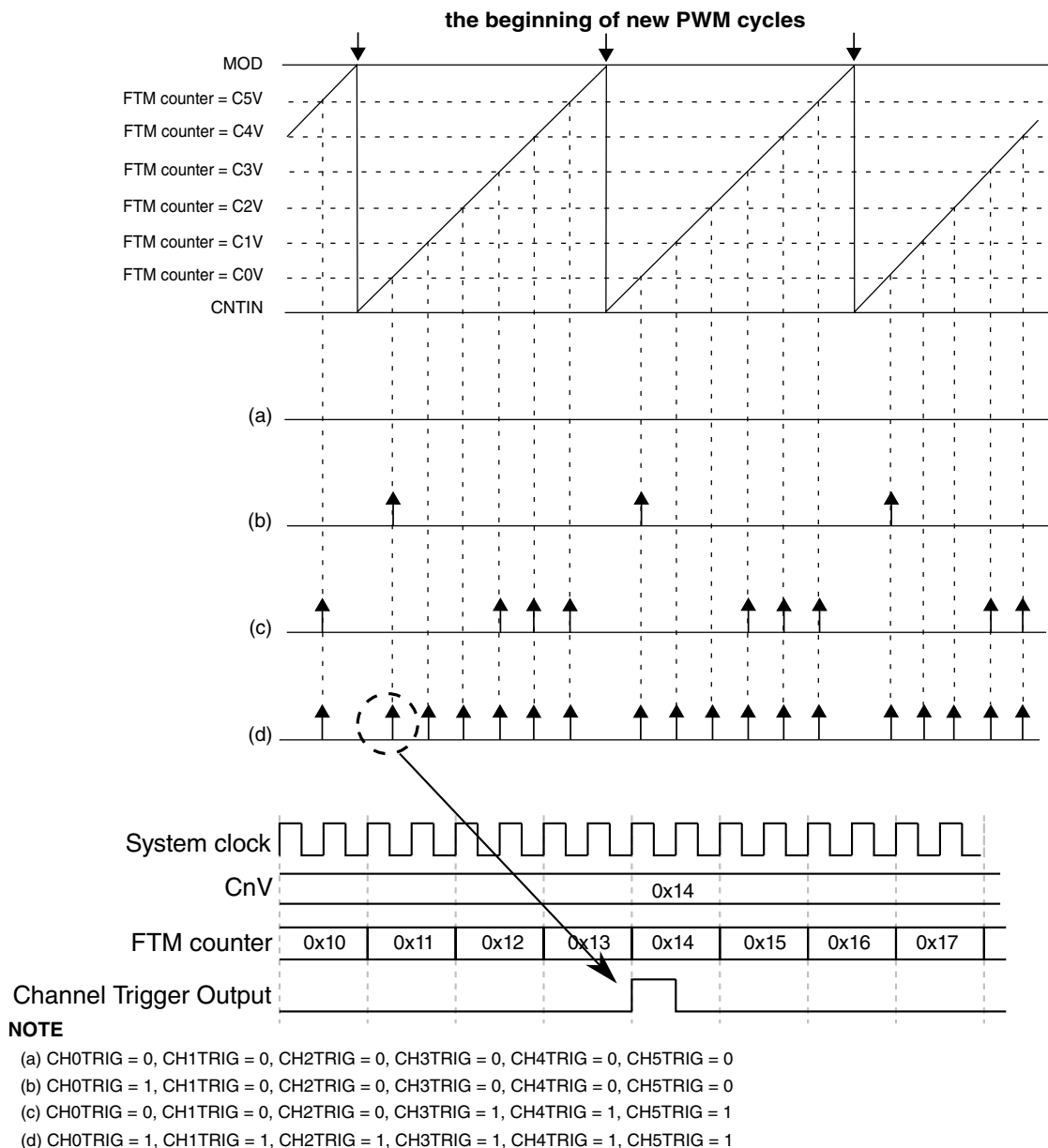


Figure 43-78. Channel match trigger

43.5.21 Initialization trigger

If INITTRIGEN = 1, then the FTM generates a trigger when the FTM counter is updated with the CNTIN register value in the following cases.

functional description

- The FTM counter is automatically updated with the CNTIN register value by the selected counting mode.
- When there is a write to CNT register.
- When there is the [FTM counter synchronization](#).
- If (CNT = CNTIN), (CLKS[1:0] = 0:0), and a value different from zero is written to CLKS[1:0] bits.
- If the channel (n) is in Input Capture mode, (ICRST = 1) and the selected input capture event occurs in the channel (n) input.

The following figures show these cases.

CNTIN = 0x0000
MOD = 0x000F
CPWMS = 0

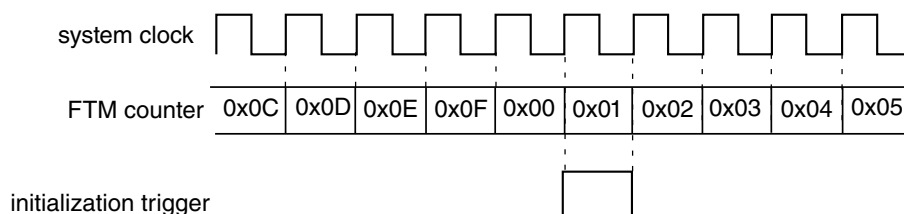


Figure 43-79. Initialization trigger is generated when the FTM counting achieves the CNTIN register value

CNTIN = 0x0000
MOD = 0x000F
CPWMS = 0

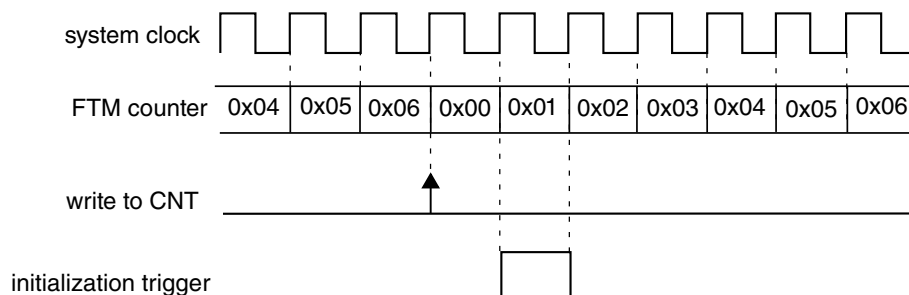


Figure 43-80. Initialization trigger is generated when there is a write to CNT register

CNTIN = 0x0000
MOD = 0x000F
CPWMS = 0

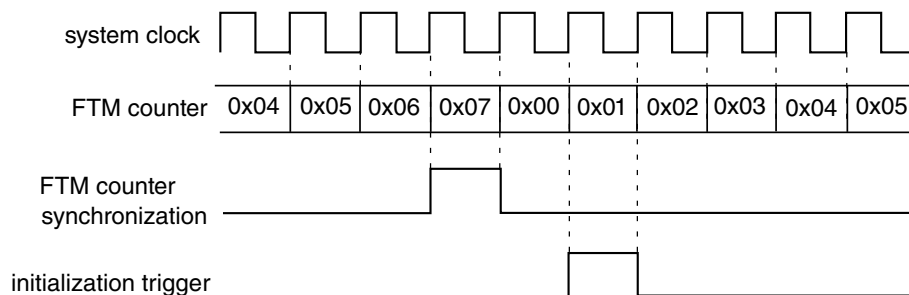


Figure 43-81. Initialization trigger is generated when there is the FTM counter synchronization

CNTIN = 0x0000
MOD = 0x000F
CPWMS = 0

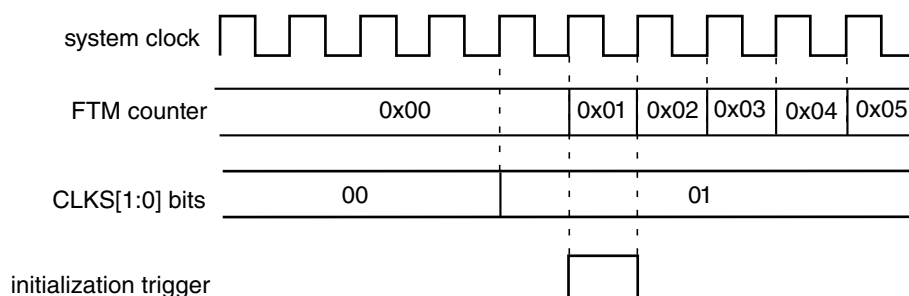
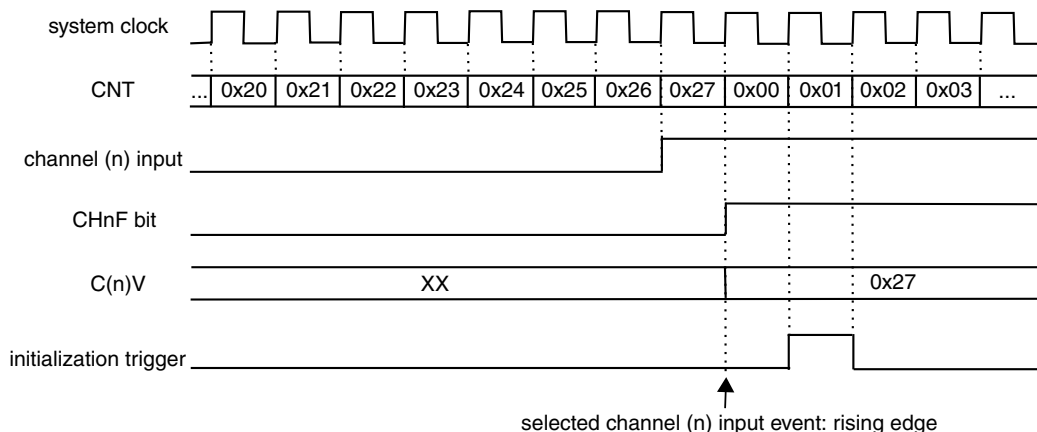


Figure 43-82. Initialization trigger is generated if (CNT = CNTIN), (CLKS[1:0] = 0:0), and a value different from zero is written to CLKS[1:0] bits



NOTE
Channel (n) input after its synchronizer and filter
MOD = 0xFFFF
CNTIN = 0x0000
PS[2:0] = 3'b000
ICRST = 1'b1

Figure 43-83. Initialization trigger is generated if the channel (n) is in Input Capture mode, ICRST = 1 and the selected input capture event occurs in the channel (n) input

The initialization trigger output provides a trigger signal that is used for on-chip modules.

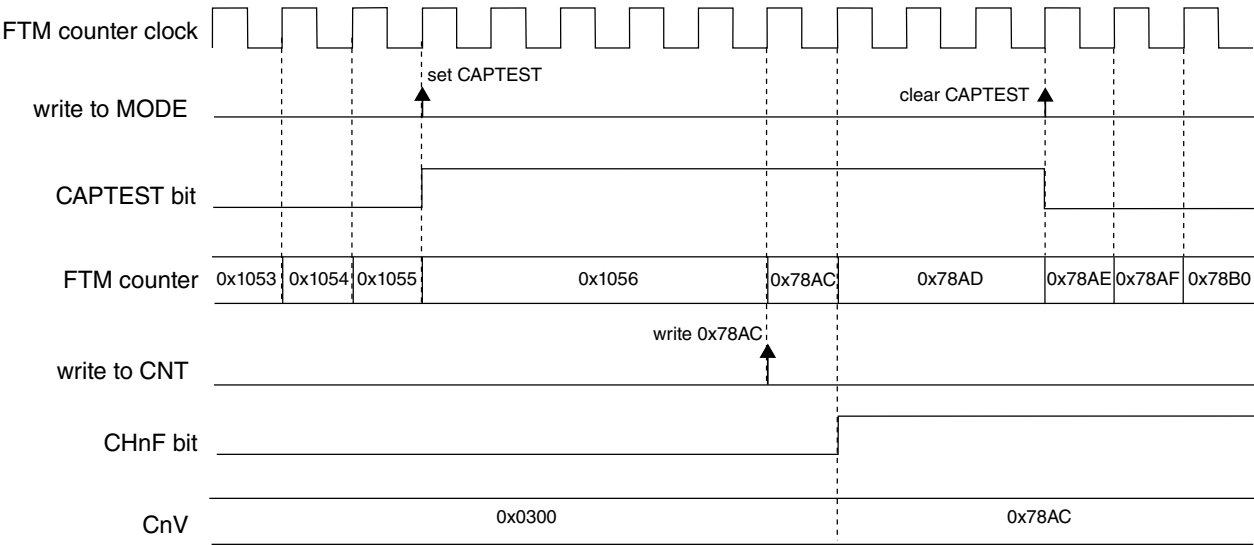
43.5.22 Capture Test mode

The Capture Test mode allows to test the CnV registers, the FTM counter and the interconnection logic between the FTM counter and CnV registers.

In this test mode, all channels must be configured for [Input Capture mode](#) and FTM counter must be configured to the [Up counting](#).

When the Capture Test mode is enabled (CAPTEST = 1), the FTM counter is frozen and any write to CNT register updates directly the FTM counter; see the following figure. After it was written, all CnV registers are updated with the written value to CNT register and CHnF bits are set. Therefore, the FTM counter is updated with its next value according to its configuration. Its next value depends on CNTIN, MOD, and the written value to FTM counter.

The next reads of CnV registers return the written value to the FTM counter and the next reads of CNT register return FTM counter next value.



NOTE

- FTM counter configuration: (FTMEN = 1), (QUADEN = 0), (CAPTEST = 1), (CPWMS = 0), (CNTIN = 0x0000), and (MOD = 0xFFFF)
- FTM channel n configuration: input capture mode - (DECAPEN = 0), (COMBINE = 0), and (MSnB:MSnA = 0:0)

Figure 43-84. Capture Test mode

43.5.23 DMA

The channel generates a DMA transfer request according to DMA and CHnIE bits. See the following table.

Table 43-14. Channel DMA transfer request

DMA	CHnIE	Channel DMA Transfer Request	Channel Interrupt
0	0	The channel DMA transfer request is not generated.	The channel interrupt is not generated.
0	1	The channel DMA transfer request is not generated.	The channel interrupt is generated if (CHnF = 1).
1	0	The channel DMA transfer request is not generated.	The channel interrupt is not generated.
1	1	The channel DMA transfer request is generated if (CHnF = 1).	The channel interrupt is not generated.

If DMA = 1, the CHnF bit is cleared either by channel DMA transfer done or reading CnSC while CHnF is set and then writing a zero to CHnF bit according to CHnIE bit. See the following table.

Table 43-15. Clear CHnF bit when DMA = 1

CHnIE	How CHnF Bit Can Be Cleared
0	CHnF bit is cleared either when the channel DMA transfer is done or by reading CnSC while CHnF is set and then writing a 0 to CHnF bit.
1	CHnF bit is cleared when the channel DMA transfer is done.

43.5.24 Dual Edge Capture mode

The Dual Edge Capture mode is selected if DECAPEN = 1. This mode allows to measure a pulse width or period of the signal on the input of channel (n) of a channel pair. The channel (n) filter can be active in this mode when n is 0 or 2.

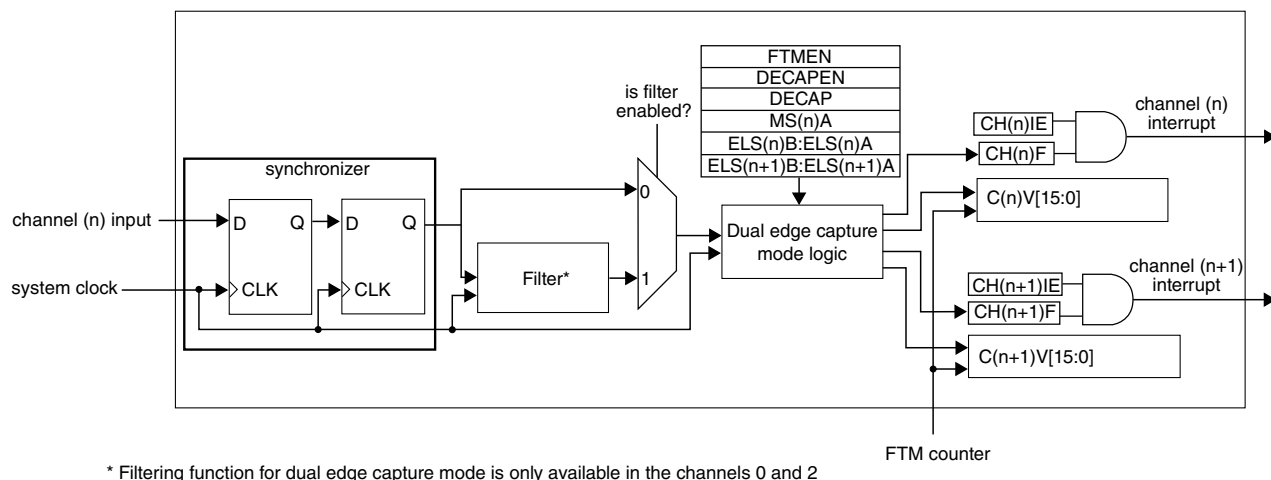


Figure 43-85. Dual Edge Capture mode block diagram

The MS(n)A bit defines if the Dual Edge Capture mode is one-shot or continuous.

The ELS(n)B:ELS(n)A bits select the edge that is captured by channel (n), and ELS(n+1)B:ELS(n+1)A bits select the edge that is captured by channel (n+1). If both ELS(n)B:ELS(n)A and ELS(n+1)B:ELS(n+1)A bits select the same edge, then it is the period measurement. If these bits select different edges, then it is a pulse width measurement.

In the Dual Edge Capture mode, only channel (n) input is used and channel (n+1) input is ignored.

If the selected edge by channel (n) bits is detected at channel (n) input, then CH(n)F bit is set and the channel (n) interrupt is generated (if CH(n)IE = 1). If the selected edge by channel (n+1) bits is detected at channel (n) input and (CH(n)F = 1), then CH(n+1)F bit is set and the channel (n+1) interrupt is generated (if CH(n+1)IE = 1).

The C(n)V register stores the value of FTM counter when the selected edge by channel (n) is detected at channel (n) input. The C(n+1)V register stores the value of FTM counter when the selected edge by channel (n+1) is detected at channel (n) input.

In this mode, a coherency mechanism ensures coherent data when the C(n)V and C(n+1)V registers are read. The only requirement is that C(n)V must be read before C(n+1)V.

Note

- The CH(n)F, CH(n)IE, MS(n)A, ELS(n)B, and ELS(n)A bits are channel (n) bits.

- The CH(n+1)F, CH(n+1)IE, MS(n+1)A, ELS(n+1)B, and ELS(n+1)A bits are channel (n+1) bits.
- The Dual Edge Capture mode must be used with ELS(n)B:ELS(n)A = 0:1 or 1:0, ELS(n+1)B:ELS(n+1)A = 0:1 or 1:0 and the FTM counter in [Free running counter](#).

43.5.24.1 One-Shot Capture mode

The One-Shot Capture mode is selected when (DECAPEN = 1), and (MS(n)A = 0). In this capture mode, only one pair of edges at the channel (n) input is captured. The ELS(n)B:ELS(n)A bits select the first edge to be captured, and ELS(n+1)B:ELS(n+1)A bits select the second edge to be captured.

The edge captures are enabled while DECAP bit is set. For each new measurement in One-Shot Capture mode, first the CH(n)F and CH(n+1) bits must be cleared, and then the DECAP bit must be set.

In this mode, the DECAP bit is automatically cleared by FTM when the edge selected by channel (n+1) is captured. Therefore, while DECAP bit is set, the one-shot capture is in process. When this bit is cleared, both edges were captured and the captured values are ready for reading in the C(n)V and C(n+1)V registers.

Similarly, when the CH(n+1)F bit is set, both edges were captured and the captured values are ready for reading in the C(n)V and C(n+1)V registers.

43.5.24.2 Continuous Capture mode

The Continuous Capture mode is selected when (DECAPEN = 1), and (MS(n)A = 1). In this capture mode, the edges at the channel (n) input are captured continuously. The ELS(n)B:ELS(n)A bits select the initial edge to be captured, and ELS(n+1)B:ELS(n+1)A bits select the final edge to be captured.

The edge captures are enabled while DECAP bit is set. For the initial use, first the CH(n)F and CH(n+1)F bits must be cleared, and then DECAP bit must be set to start the continuous measurements.

When the CH(n+1)F bit is set, both edges were captured and the captured values are ready for reading in the C(n)V and C(n+1)V registers. The latest captured values are always available in these registers even after the DECAP bit is cleared.

In this mode, it is possible to clear only the CH(n+1)F bit. Therefore, when the CH(n+1)F bit is set again, the latest captured values are available in C(n)V and C(n+1)V registers.

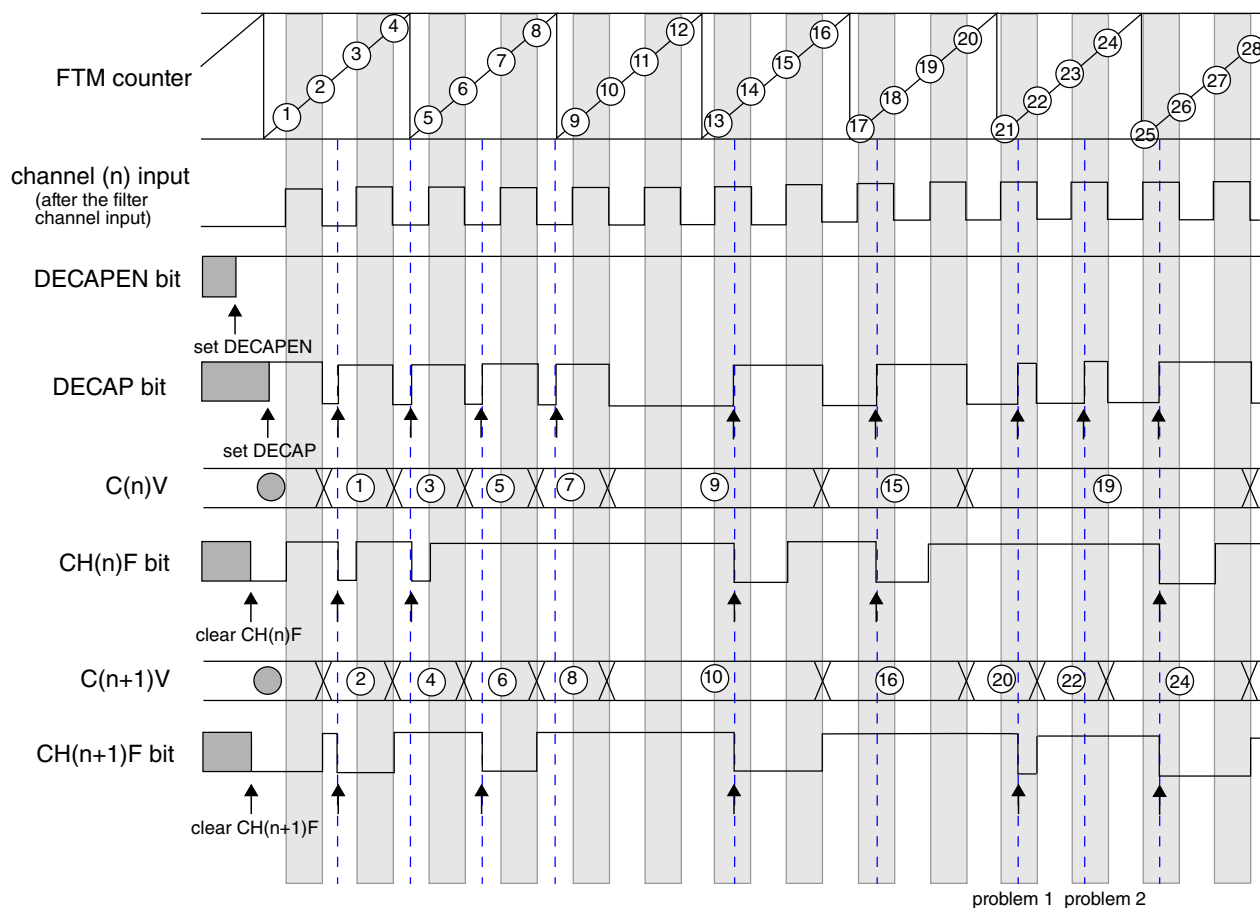
For a new sequence of the measurements in the Dual Edge Capture – Continuous mode, clear the CH(n)F and CH(n+1)F bits to start new measurements.

43.5.24.3 Pulse width measurement

If the channel (n) is configured to capture rising edges (ELS(n)B:ELS(n)A = 0:1) and the channel (n+1) to capture falling edges (ELS(n+1)B:ELS(n+1)A = 1:0), then the positive polarity pulse width is measured. If the channel (n) is configured to capture falling edges (ELS(n)B:ELS(n)A = 1:0) and the channel (n+1) to capture rising edges (ELS(n+1)B:ELS(n+1)A = 0:1), then the negative polarity pulse width is measured.

The pulse width measurement can be made in [One-Shot Capture mode](#) or [Continuous Capture mode](#).

The following figure shows an example of the Dual Edge Capture – One-Shot mode used to measure the positive polarity pulse width. The DECAPEN bit selects the Dual Edge Capture mode, so it remains set. The DECAP bit is set to enable the measurement of next positive polarity pulse width. The CH(n)F bit is set when the first edge of this pulse is detected, that is, the edge selected by ELS(n)B:ELS(n)A bits. The CH(n+1)F bit is set and DECAP bit is cleared when the second edge of this pulse is detected, that is, the edge selected by ELS(n+1)B:ELS(n+1)A bits. Both DECAP and CH(n+1)F bits indicate when two edges of the pulse were captured and the C(n)V and C(n+1)V registers are ready for reading.

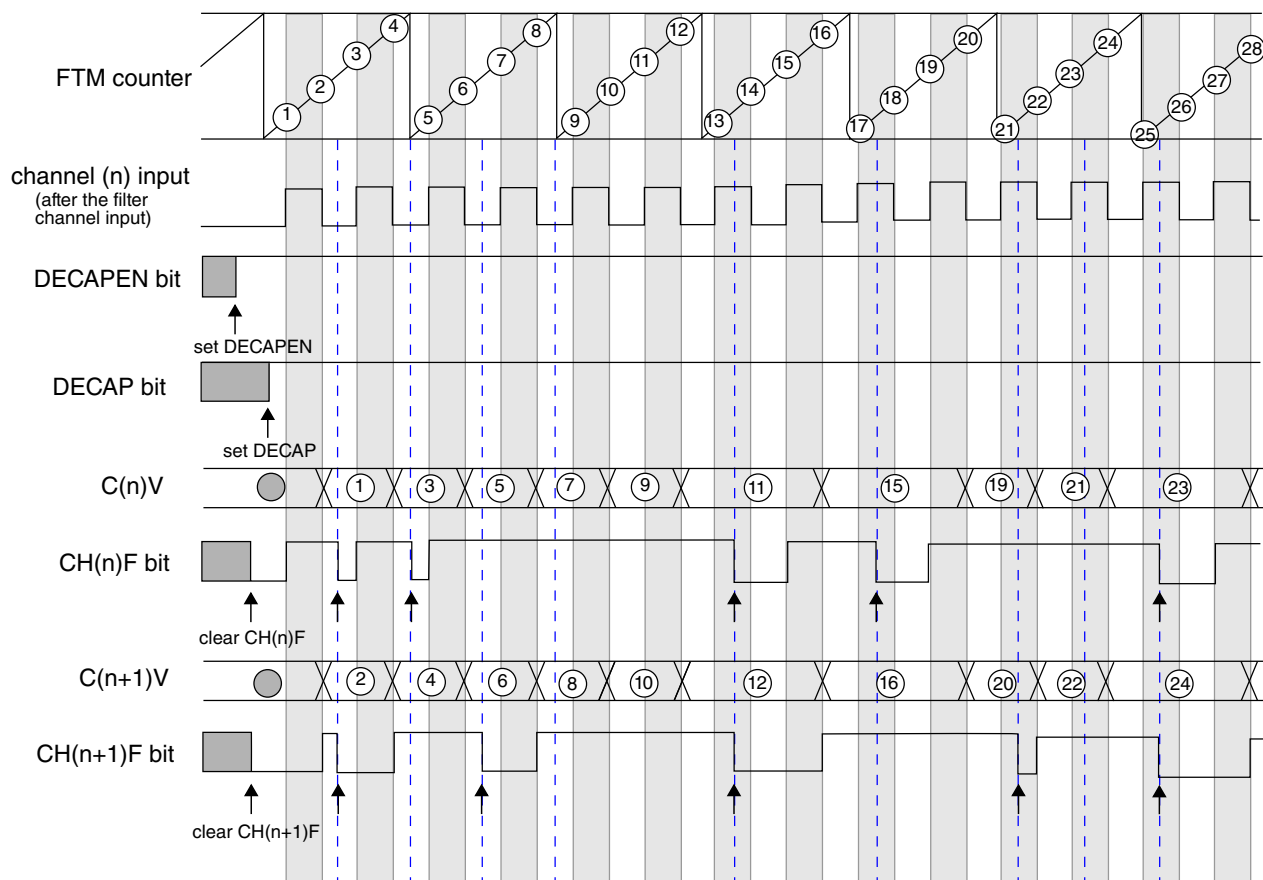


Note

- The commands set DECAPEN, set DECAP, clear CH(n)F, and clear CH(n+1)F are made by the user.
- Problem 1: channel (n) input = 1, set DECAP, not clear CH(n)F, and clear CH(n+1)F.
- Problem 2: channel (n) input = 1, set DECAP, not clear CH(n)F, and not clear CH(n+1)F.

Figure 43-86. Dual Edge Capture – One-Shot mode for positive polarity pulse width measurement

The following figure shows an example of the Dual Edge Capture – Continuous mode used to measure the positive polarity pulse width. The DECAPEN bit selects the Dual Edge Capture mode, so it remains set. While the DECAP bit is set the configured measurements are made. The CH(n)F bit is set when the first edge of the positive polarity pulse is detected, that is, the edge selected by ELS(n)B:ELS(n)A bits. The CH(n+1)F bit is set when the second edge of this pulse is detected, that is, the edge selected by ELS(n+1)B:ELS(n+1)A bits. The CH(n+1)F bit indicates when two edges of the pulse were captured and the C(n)V and C(n+1)V registers are ready for reading.



Note

- The commands set DECAPEN, set DECAP, clear CH(n)F, and clear CH(n+1)F are made by the user.

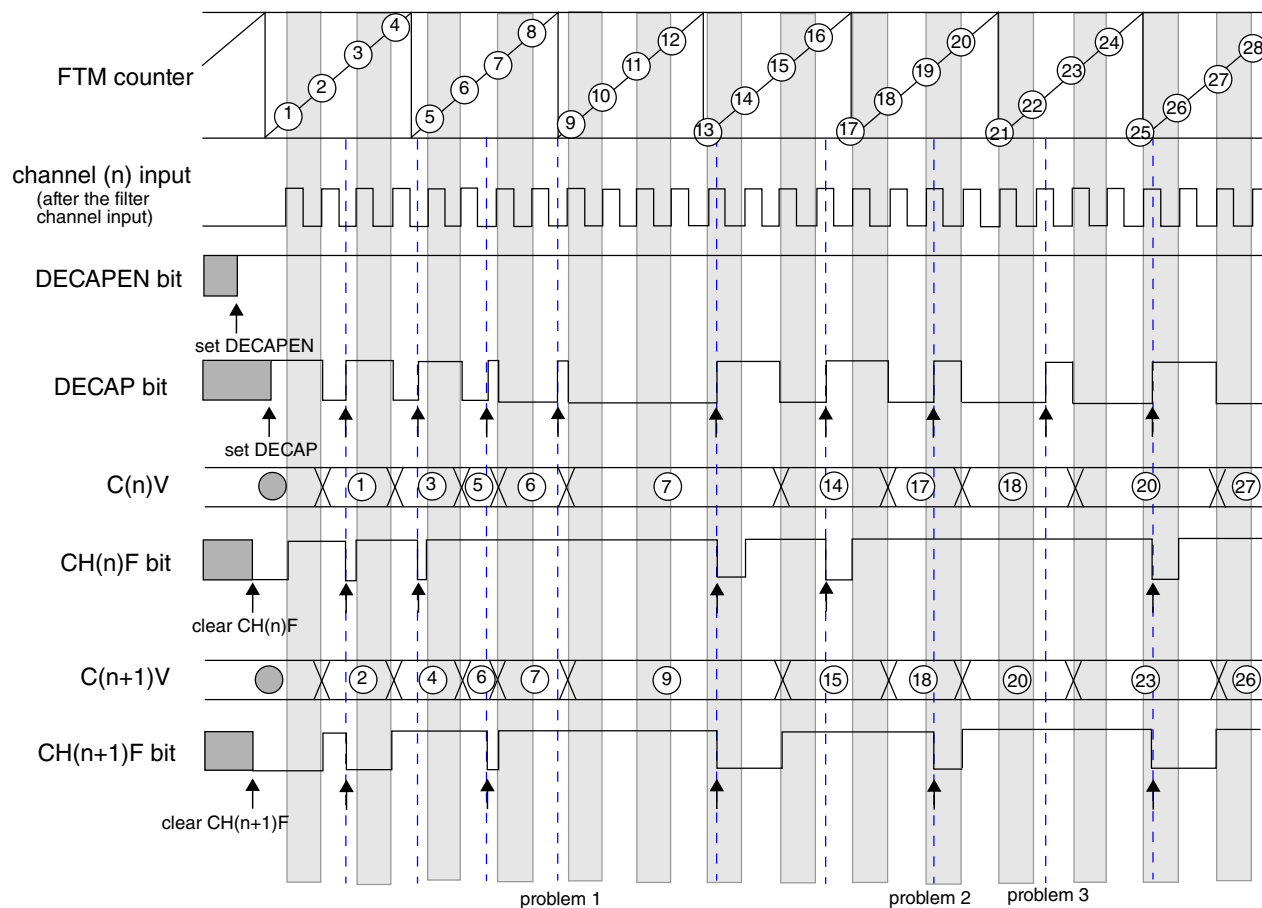
Figure 43-87. Dual Edge Capture – Continuous mode for positive polarity pulse width measurement

43.5.24.4 Period measurement

If the channels (n) and (n+1) are configured to capture consecutive edges of the same polarity, then the period of the channel (n) input signal is measured. If both channels (n) and (n+1) are configured to capture rising edges ($ELS(n)B:ELS(n)A = 0:1$ and $ELS(n+1)B:ELS(n+1)A = 0:1$), then the period between two consecutive rising edges is measured. If both channels (n) and (n+1) are configured to capture falling edges ($ELS(n)B:ELS(n)A = 1:0$ and $ELS(n+1)B:ELS(n+1)A = 1:0$), then the period between two consecutive falling edges is measured.

The period measurement can be made in [One-Shot Capture mode](#) or [Continuous Capture mode](#).

The following figure shows an example of the Dual Edge Capture – One-Shot mode used to measure the period between two consecutive rising edges. The DECAPEN bit selects the Dual Edge Capture mode, so it remains set. The DECAP bit is set to enable the measurement of next period. The CH(n)F bit is set when the first rising edge is detected, that is, the edge selected by ELS(n)B:ELS(n)A bits. The CH(n+1)F bit is set and DECAP bit is cleared when the second rising edge is detected, that is, the edge selected by ELS(n+1)B:ELS(n+1)A bits. Both DECAP and CH(n+1)F bits indicate when two selected edges were captured and the C(n)V and C(n+1)V registers are ready for reading.



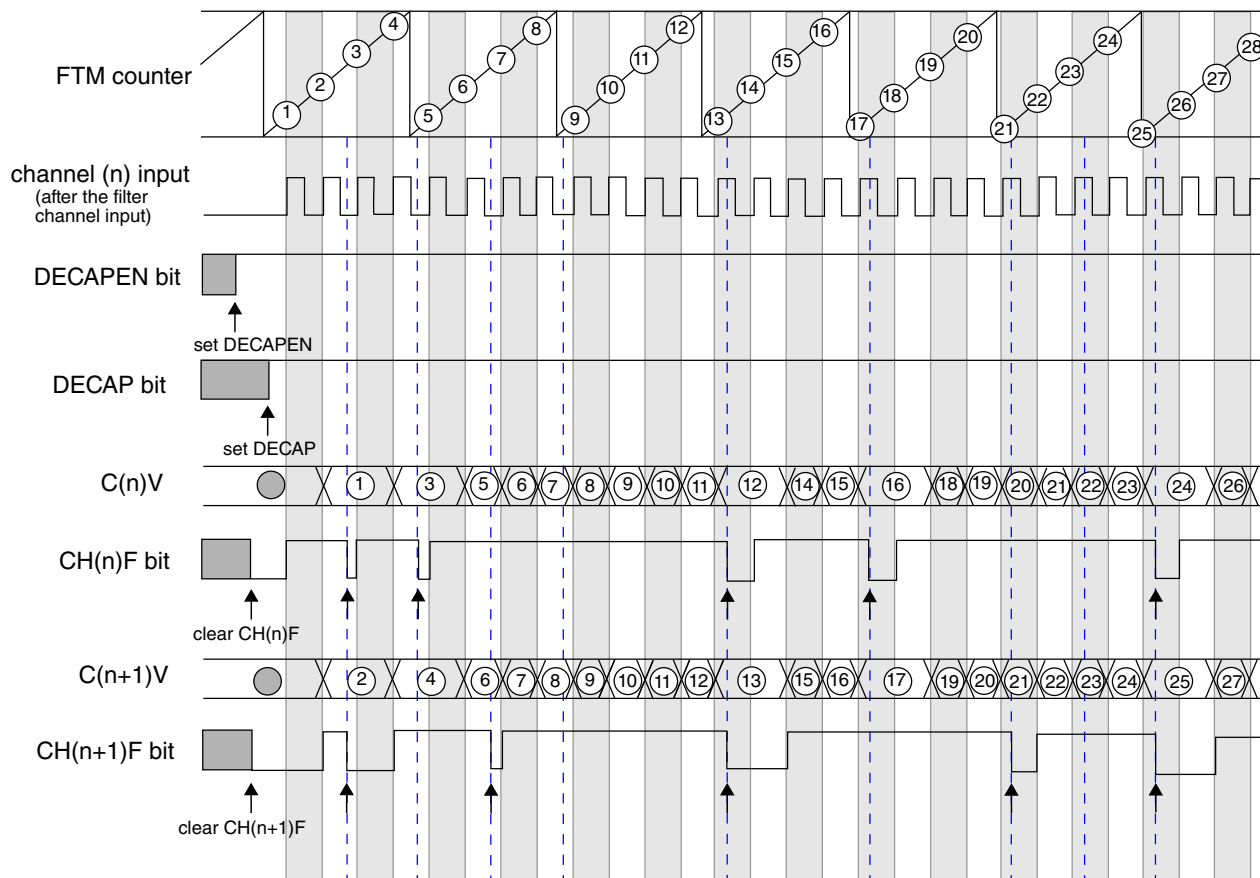
Note

- The commands set DECAPEN, set DECAP, clear CH(n)F, and clear CH(n+1)F are made by the user.
- Problem 1: channel (n) input = 0, set DECAP, not clear CH(n)F, and not clear CH(n+1)F.
- Problem 2: channel (n) input = 1, set DECAP, not clear CH(n)F, and clear CH(n+1)F.
- Problem 3: channel (n) input = 1, set DECAP, not clear CH(n)F, and not clear CH(n+1)F.

Figure 43-88. Dual Edge Capture – One-Shot mode to measure of the period between two consecutive rising edges

The following figure shows an example of the Dual Edge Capture – Continuous mode used to measure the period between two consecutive rising edges. The DECAPEN bit selects the Dual Edge Capture mode, so it remains set. While the DECAP bit is set the configured measurements are made. The CH(n)F bit is set when the first rising edge is detected, that is, the edge selected by ELS(n)B:ELS(n)A bits. The CH(n+1)F bit is set

when the second rising edge is detected, that is, the edge selected by $ELS(n+1)B:ELS(n+1)A$ bits. The $CH(n+1)F$ bit indicates when two edges of the period were captured and the $C(n)V$ and $C(n+1)V$ registers are ready for reading.



Note

- The commands set DECAPEN, set DECAP, clear $CH(n)F$, and clear $CH(n+1)F$ are made by the user.

Figure 43-89. Dual Edge Capture – Continuous mode to measure of the period between two consecutive rising edges

43.5.24.5 Read coherency mechanism

The Dual Edge Capture mode implements a read coherency mechanism between the FTM counter value captured in $C(n)V$ and $C(n+1)V$ registers. The read coherency mechanism is illustrated in the following figure. In this example, the channels (n) and (n+1) are in Dual Edge Capture – Continuous mode for positive polarity pulse width measurement. Thus, the channel (n) is configured to capture the FTM counter value when there is a rising edge at channel (n) input signal, and channel (n+1) to capture the FTM counter value when there is a falling edge at channel (n) input signal.

When a rising edge occurs in the channel (n) input signal, the FTM counter value is captured into channel (n) capture buffer. The channel (n) capture buffer value is transferred to C(n)V register when a falling edge occurs in the channel (n) input signal. C(n)V register has the FTM counter value when the previous rising edge occurred, and the channel (n) capture buffer has the FTM counter value when the last rising edge occurred.

When a falling edge occurs in the channel (n) input signal, the FTM counter value is captured into channel (n+1) capture buffer. The channel (n+1) capture buffer value is transferred to C(n+1)V register when the C(n)V register is read.

In the following figure, the read of C(n)V returns the FTM counter value when the event 1 occurred and the read of C(n+1)V returns the FTM counter value when the event 2 occurred.

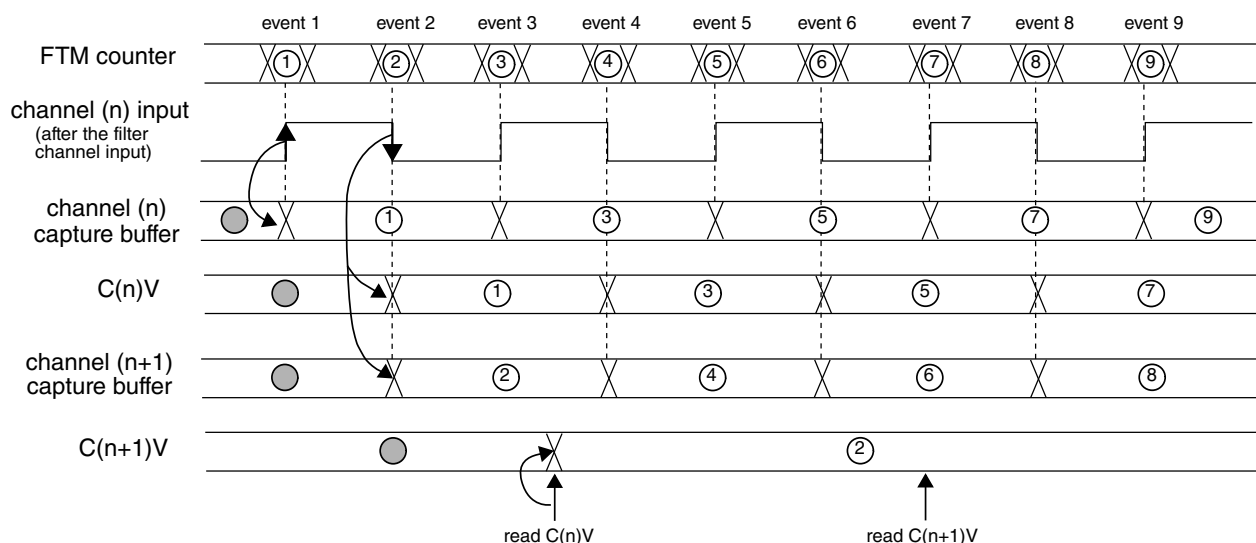


Figure 43-90. Dual Edge Capture mode read coherency mechanism

C(n)V register must be read prior to C(n+1)V register in dual edge capture one-shot and continuous modes for the read coherency mechanism works properly.

43.5.25 Quadrature Decoder mode

The Quadrature Decoder mode is selected if (QUADEN = 1). The Quadrature Decoder mode uses the input signals phase A and B to control the FTM counter increment and decrement. The following figure shows the quadrature decoder block diagram.

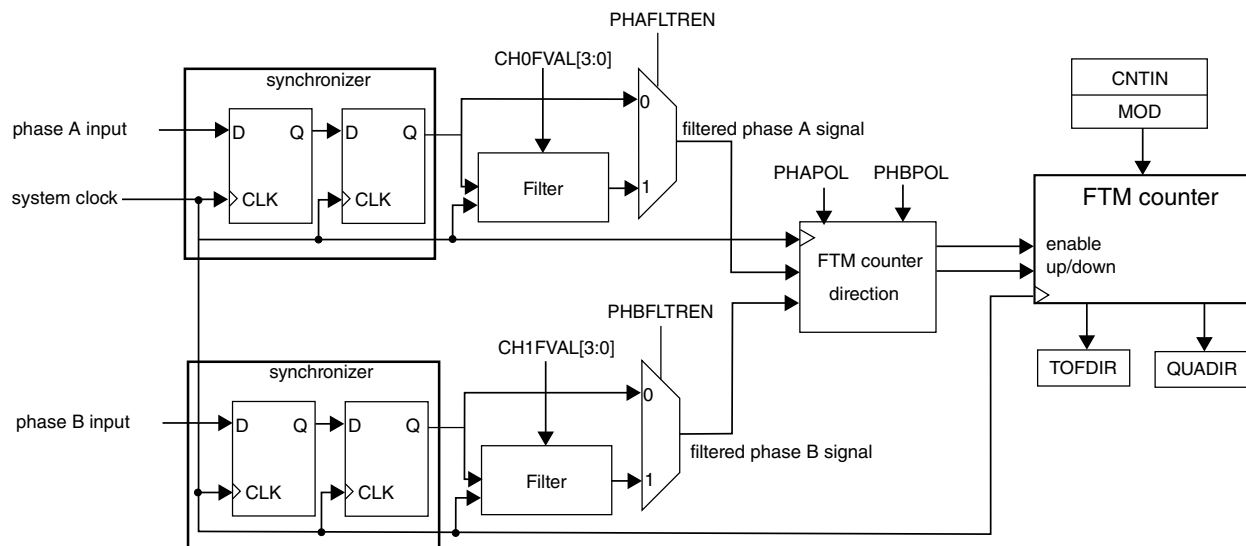


Figure 43-91. Quadrature Decoder block diagram

Each one of input signals phase A and B has a filter that is equivalent to the filter used in the channels input; [Filter for Input Capture mode](#). The phase A input filter is enabled by PHAFLTREN bit and this filter's value is defined by CH0FVAL[3:0] bits (CH(n)FVAL[3:0] bits in FILTER0 register). The phase B input filter is enabled by PHBFLTREN bit and this filter's value is defined by CH1FVAL[3:0] bits (CH(n+1)FVAL[3:0] bits in FILTER0 register).

Except for CH0FVAL[3:0] and CH1FVAL[3:0] bits, no channel logic is used in Quadrature Decoder mode.

Note

Notice that the FTM counter is clocked by the phase A and B input signals when quadrature decoder mode is selected. Therefore it is expected that the Quadrature Decoder be used only with the FTM channels in input capture or output compare modes.

Note

An edge at phase A must not occur together an edge at phase B and vice-versa.

The PHAPOL bit selects the polarity of the phase A input, and the PHBPOL bit selects the polarity of the phase B input.

The QUADMODE selects the encoding mode used in the Quadrature Decoder mode. If QUADMODE = 1, then the count and direction encoding mode is enabled; see the following figure. In this mode, the phase B input value indicates the counting direction, and the phase A input defines the counting rate. The FTM counter is updated when there is a rising edge at phase A input signal.

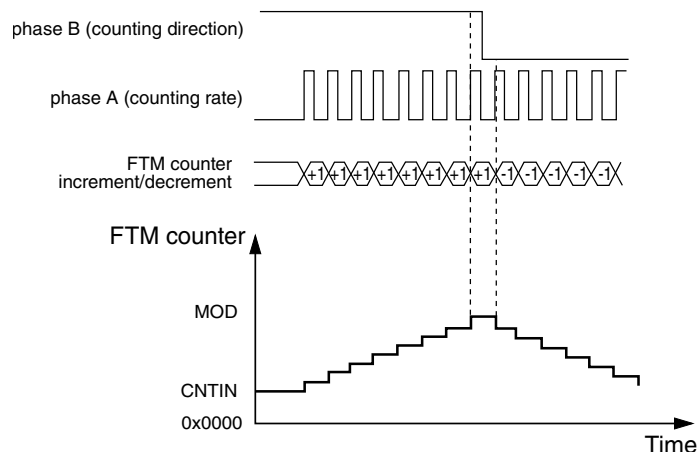


Figure 43-92. Quadrature Decoder – Count and Direction Encoding mode

If QUADMODE = 0, then the Phase A and Phase B Encoding mode is enabled; see the following figure. In this mode, the relationship between phase A and B signals indicates the counting direction, and phase A and B signals define the counting rate. The FTM counter is updated when there is an edge either at the phase A or phase B signals.

If PHAPOL = 0 and PHBPOL = 0, then the FTM counter increment happens when:

- there is a rising edge at phase A signal and phase B signal is at logic zero;
- there is a rising edge at phase B signal and phase A signal is at logic one;
- there is a falling edge at phase B signal and phase A signal is at logic zero;
- there is a falling edge at phase A signal and phase B signal is at logic one;

and the FTM counter decrement happens when:

- there is a falling edge at phase A signal and phase B signal is at logic zero;
- there is a falling edge at phase B signal and phase A signal is at logic one;
- there is a rising edge at phase B signal and phase A signal is at logic zero;
- there is a rising edge at phase A signal and phase B signal is at logic one.

functional description

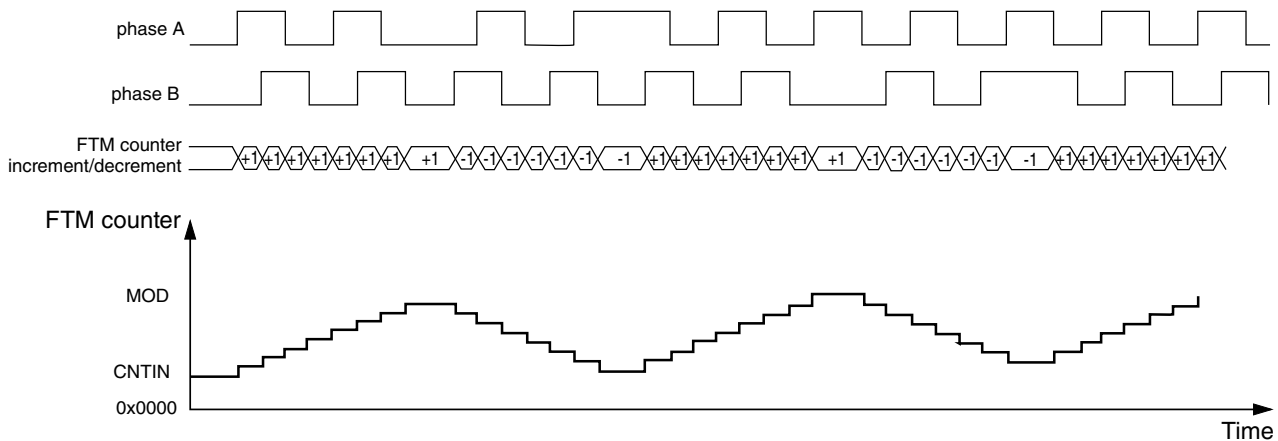


Figure 43-93. Quadrature Decoder – Phase A and Phase B Encoding mode

The following figure shows the FTM counter overflow in up counting. In this case, when the FTM counter changes from MOD to CNTIN, TOF and TOFDIR bits are set. TOF bit indicates the FTM counter overflow occurred. TOFDIR indicates the counting was up when the FTM counter overflow occurred.

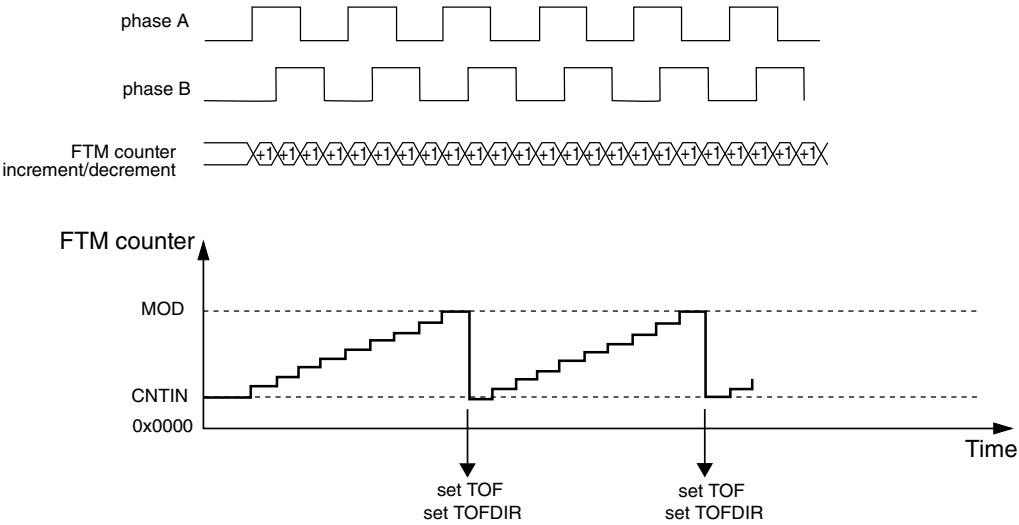


Figure 43-94. FTM Counter overflow in up counting for Quadrature Decoder mode

The following figure shows the FTM counter overflow in down counting. In this case, when the FTM counter changes from CNTIN to MOD, TOF bit is set and TOFDIR bit is cleared. TOF bit indicates the FTM counter overflow occurred. TOFDIR indicates the counting was down when the FTM counter overflow occurred.

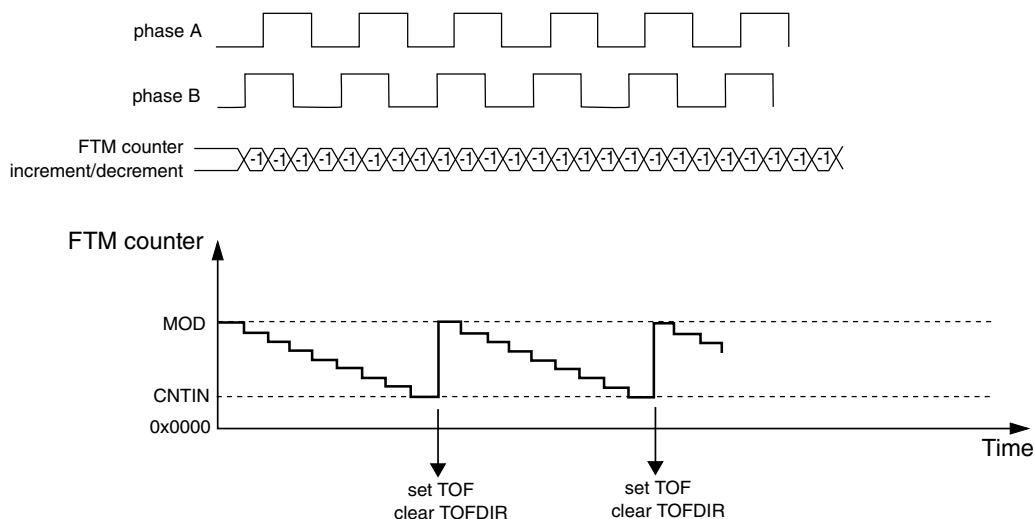


Figure 43-95. FTM counter overflow in down counting for Quadrature Decoder mode

43.5.25.1 Quadrature Decoder boundary conditions

The following figures show the FTM counter responding to motor jittering typical in motor position control applications.

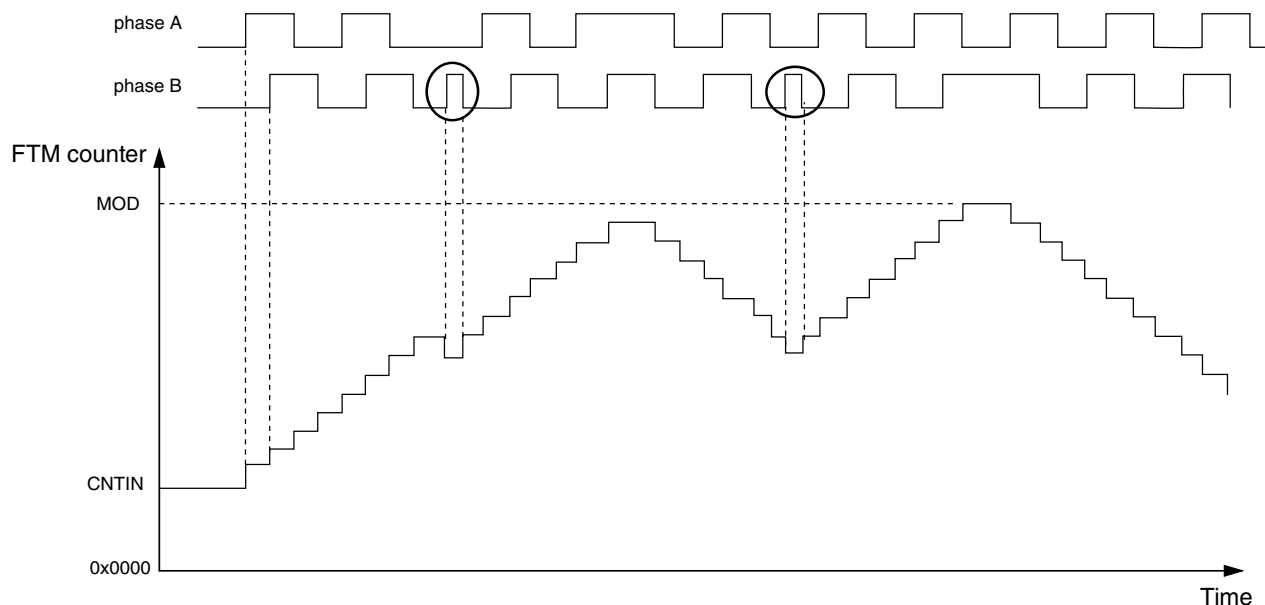


Figure 43-96. Motor position jittering in a mid count value

The following figure shows motor jittering produced by the phase B and A pulses respectively:

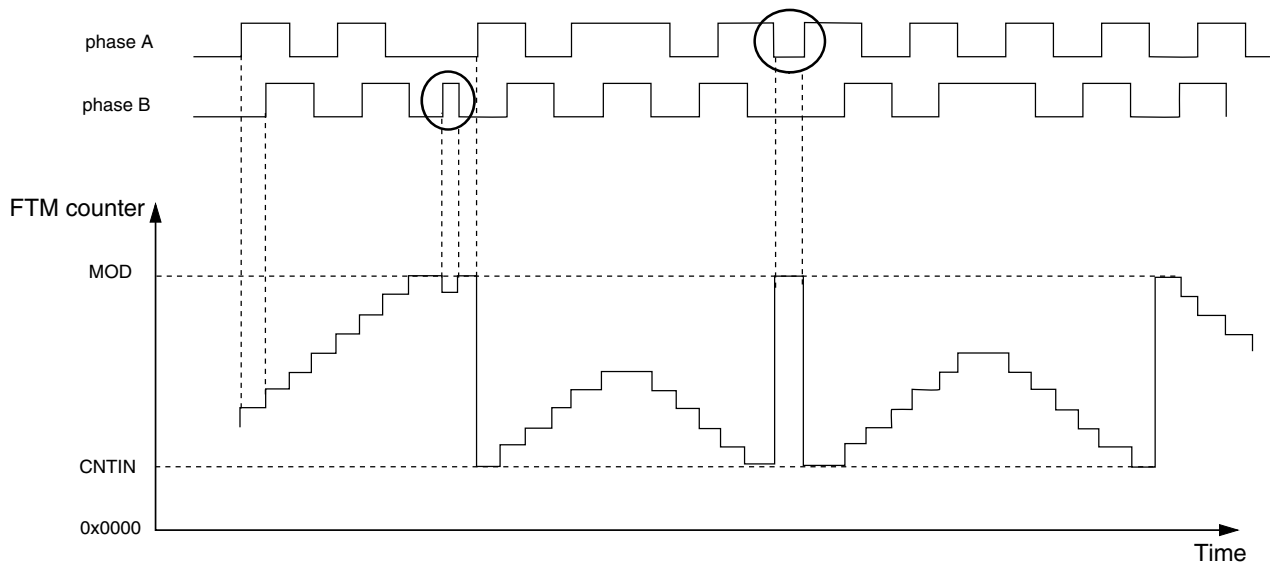


Figure 43-97. Motor position jittering near maximum and minimum count value

The first highlighted transition causes a jitter on the FTM counter value near the maximum count value (MOD). The second indicated transition occurs on phase A and causes the FTM counter transition between the maximum and minimum count values which are defined by MOD and CNTIN registers.

The appropriate settings of the phase A and phase B input filters are important to avoid glitches that may cause oscillation on the FTM counter value. The preceding figures show examples of oscillations that can be caused by poor input filter setup. Thus, it is important to guarantee a minimum pulse width to avoid these oscillations.

43.5.26 BDM mode

When the chip is in BDM mode, the BDMMODE[1:0] bits select the behavior of the FTM counter, the CH(n)F bit, the channels output, and the writes to the MOD, CNTIN, and C(n)V registers according to the following table.

Table 43-16. FTM behavior when the chip is in BDM mode

BDMMODE	FTM Counter	CH(n)F Bit	FTM Channels Output	Writes to MOD, CNTIN, and C(n)V Registers
00	Stopped	can be set	Functional mode	Writes to these registers bypass the registers buffers
01	Stopped	is not set	The channels outputs are forced to their safe value according to POLn bit	Writes to these registers bypass the registers buffers
10	Stopped	is not set	The channels outputs are frozen when the chip enters in BDM mode	Writes to these registers bypass the registers buffers

Table continues on the next page...

Table 43-16. FTM behavior when the chip is in BDM mode (continued)

BDMMODE	FTM Counter	CH(n)F Bit	FTM Channels Output	Writes to MOD, CNTIN, and C(n)V Registers
11	Functional mode	can be set	Functional mode	Functional mode

Note that if BDMMODE[1:0] = 2'b00 then the channels outputs remain at the value when the chip enters in BDM mode, because the FTM counter is stopped. However, the following situations modify the channels outputs in this BDM mode.

- Write any value to CNT register; see [Counter reset](#). In this case, the FTM counter is updated with the CNTIN register value and the channels outputs are updated to the initial value – except for those channels set to Output Compare mode.
- FTM counter is reset by PWM Synchronization mode; see [FTM counter synchronization](#). In this case, the FTM counter is updated with the CNTIN register value and the channels outputs are updated to the initial value – except for channels in Output Compare mode.
- In the channels outputs initialization, the channel (n) output is forced to the CH(n)OI bit value when the value 1 is written to INIT bit. See [Initialization](#).

Note

The BDMMODE[1:0] = 2'b00 must not be used with the [Fault control](#). Even if the fault control is enabled and a fault condition exists, the channels outputs values are updated as above.

Note

If CLKS[1:0] = 2'b00 in BDM, a non-zero value is written to CLKS in BDM, and CnV = CNTIN when the BDM is disabled, then the CHnF bit is set (since if the channel is a 0% EPWM signal) when the BDM is disabled.

43.5.27 Intermediate load

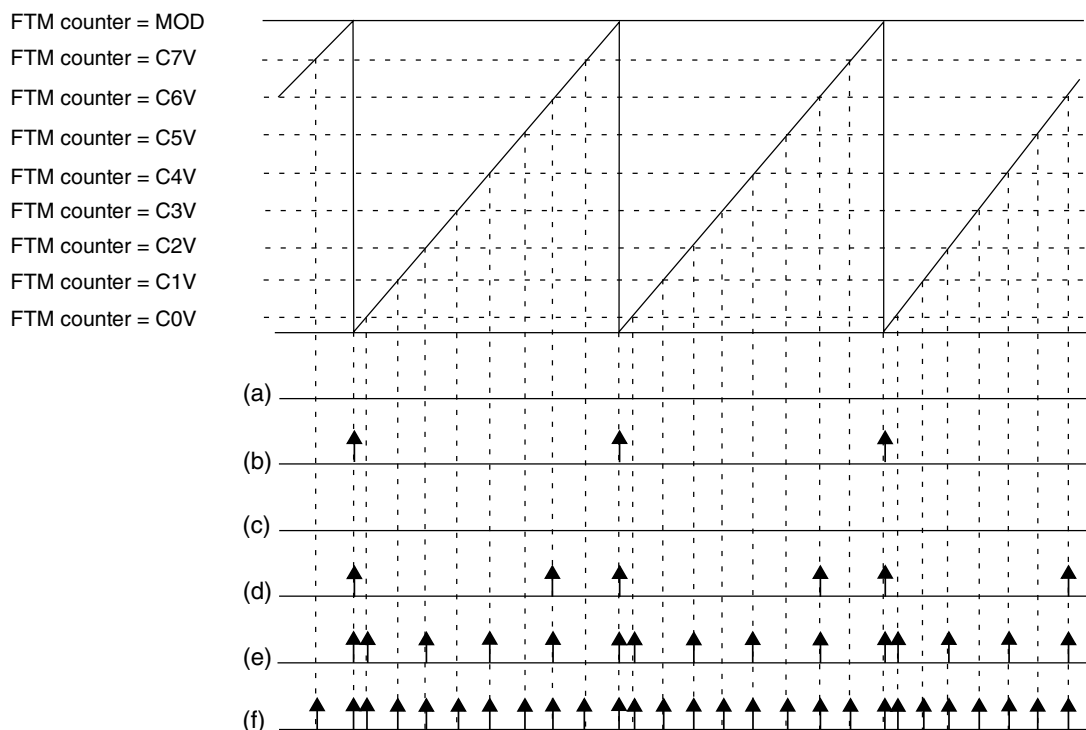
The PWMLOAD register allows to update the MOD, CNTIN, and C(n)V registers with the content of the register buffer at a defined load point. In this case, it is not required to use the PWM synchronization.

There are multiple possible loading points for intermediate load:

Table 43-17. When possible loading points are enabled

Loading point	Enabled
When the FTM counter wraps from MOD value to CNTIN value	Always
At the channel (j) match (FTM counter = C(j)V)	When CHjSEL = 1

The following figure shows some examples of enabled loading points.


NOTE

- (a) LDOK = 0, CH0SEL = 0, CH1SEL = 0, CH2SEL = 0, CH3SEL = 0, CH4SEL = 0, CH5SEL = 0, CH6SEL = 0, CH7SEL = 0
(b) LDOK = 1, CH0SEL = 0, CH1SEL = 0, CH2SEL = 0, CH3SEL = 0, CH4SEL = 0, CH5SEL = 0, CH6SEL = 0, CH7SEL = 0
(c) LDOK = 0, CH0SEL = 0, CH1SEL = 0, CH2SEL = 0, CH3SEL = 1, CH4SEL = 0, CH5SEL = 0, CH6SEL = 0, CH7SEL = 0
(d) LDOK = 1, CH0SEL = 0, CH1SEL = 0, CH2SEL = 0, CH3SEL = 0, CH4SEL = 0, CH5SEL = 0, CH6SEL = 1, CH7SEL = 0
(e) LDOK = 1, CH0SEL = 1, CH1SEL = 0, CH2SEL = 1, CH3SEL = 0, CH4SEL = 1, CH5SEL = 0, CH6SEL = 1, CH7SEL = 0
(f) LDOK = 1, CH0SEL = 1, CH1SEL = 1, CH2SEL = 1, CH3SEL = 1, CH4SEL = 1, CH5SEL = 1, CH6SEL = 1, CH7SEL = 1

Figure 43-98. Loading points for intermediate load

After enabling the loading points, the LDOK bit must be set for the load to occur. In this case, the load occurs at the next enabled loading point according to the following conditions:

Table 43-18. Conditions for loads occurring at the next enabled loading point

When a new value was written	Then
To the MOD register	The MOD register is updated with its write buffer value.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 43-18. Conditions for loads occurring at the next enabled loading point (continued)

When a new value was written	Then
To the CNTIN register and CNTINC = 1	The CNTIN register is updated with its write buffer value.
To the C(n)V register and SYNCENm = 1 – where m indicates the pair channels (n) and (n+1)	The C(n)V register is updated with its write buffer value.
To the C(n+1)V register and SYNCENm = 1 – where m indicates the pair channels (n) and (n+1)	The C(n+1)V register is updated with its write buffer value.

NOTE

- If ELSjB and ELSjA bits are different from zero, then the channel (j) output signal is generated according to the configured output mode. If ELSjB and ELSjA bits are zero, then the generated signal is not available on channel (j) output.
- If CHjIE = 1, then the channel (j) interrupt is generated when the channel (j) match occurs.
- At the intermediate load neither the channels outputs nor the FTM counter are changed. Software must set the intermediate load at a safe point in time.

43.5.28 Global time base (GTB)

The global time base (GTB) is a FTM function that allows the synchronization of multiple FTM modules on a chip. The following figure shows an example of the GTB feature used to synchronize two FTM modules. In this case, the FTM A and B channels can behave as if just one FTM module was used, that is, a global time base.

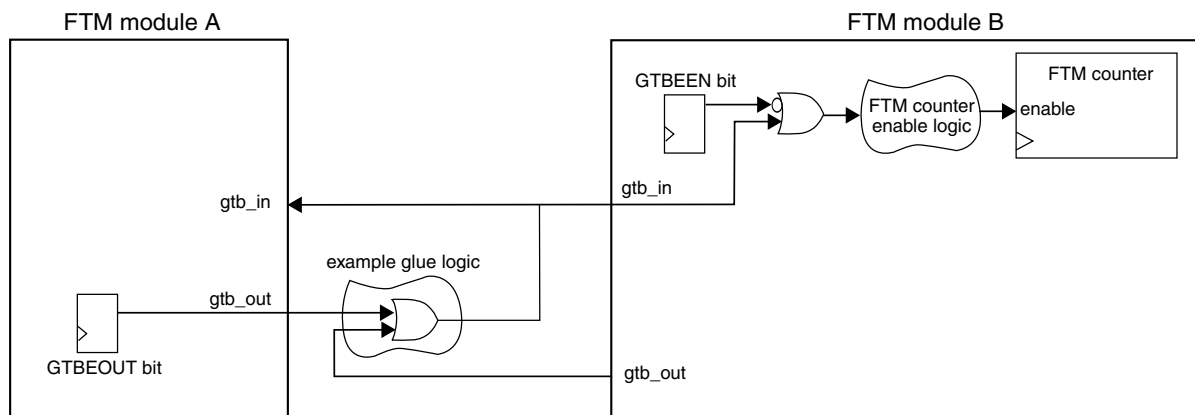


Figure 43-99. Global time base (GTB) block diagram

The GTB functionality is implemented by the GTBEEN and GTBEOUT bits in the CONF register, the input signal *gtb_in*, and the output signal *gtb_out*. The GTBEEN bit enables *gtb_in* to control the FTM counter enable signal:

- If GTBEEN = 0, each one of FTM modules works independently according to their configured mode.
- If GTBEEN = 1, the FTM counter update is enabled only when *gtb_in* is 1.

In the configuration described in the preceding figure, FTM modules A and B have their FTM counters enabled if at least one of the *gtb_out* signals from one of the FTM modules is 1. There are several possible configurations for the interconnection of the *gtb_in* and *gtb_out* signals, represented by the example glue logic shown in the figure. Note that these configurations are chip-dependent and implemented outside of the FTM modules. See the chip-specific FTM information for the chip's specific implementation.

NOTE

- In order to use the GTB signals to synchronize the FTM counter of different FTM modules, the configuration of each FTM module should guarantee that its FTM counter starts counting as soon as the *gtb_in* signal is 1.
- The GTB feature does not provide continuous synchronization of FTM counters, meaning that the FTM counters may lose synchronization during FTM operation. The GTB feature only allows the FTM counters to *start* their operation synchronously.

43.5.28.1 Enabling the global time base (GTB)

To enable the GTB feature, follow these steps for each participating FTM module:

1. Stop the FTM counter: Write 00b to SC[CLKS].
2. Program the FTM to the intended configuration. The FTM counter mode needs to be consistent across all participating modules.
3. Write 1 to CONF[GTBEEN] and write 0 to CONF[GTBEOUT] at the same time.
4. Select the intended FTM counter clock source in SC[CLKS]. The clock source needs to be consistent across all participating modules.
5. Reset the FTM counter: Write any value to the CNT register.

To initiate the GTB feature in the configuration described in the preceding figure, write 1 to CONF[GTBEOUT] in the FTM module used as the time base.

43.6 Reset overview

The FTM is reset whenever any chip reset occurs.

When the FTM exits from reset:

- the FTM counter and the prescaler counter are zero and are stopped (CLKS[1:0] = 00b);
- the timer overflow interrupt is zero, see [Timer Overflow Interrupt](#);
- the channels interrupts are zero, see [Channel \(n\) Interrupt](#);
- the fault interrupt is zero, see [Fault Interrupt](#);
- the channels are in input capture mode, see [Input Capture mode](#);
- the channels outputs are zero;
- the channels pins are not controlled by FTM (ELS(n)B:ELS(n)A = 0:0) (See the table in the description of CnSC register).

The following figure shows the FTM behavior after the reset. At the reset (item 1), the FTM counter is disabled (see the description of the CLKS field in the Status and Control register), its value is updated to zero and the pins are not controlled by FTM (See the table in the description of CnSC register).

After the reset, the FTM should be configured (item 2). It is necessary to define the FTM counter mode, the FTM counting limits (MOD and CNTIN registers value), the channels mode and CnV registers value according to the channels mode.

Thus, it is recommended to write any value to CNT register (item 3). This write updates the FTM counter with the CNTIN register value and the channels output with its initial value (except for channels in output compare mode) ([Counter reset](#)).

The next step is to select the FTM counter clock by the CLKS[1:0] bits (item 4). It is important to highlight that the pins are only controlled by FTM when CLKS[1:0] bits are different from zero (See the table in the description of CnSC register).

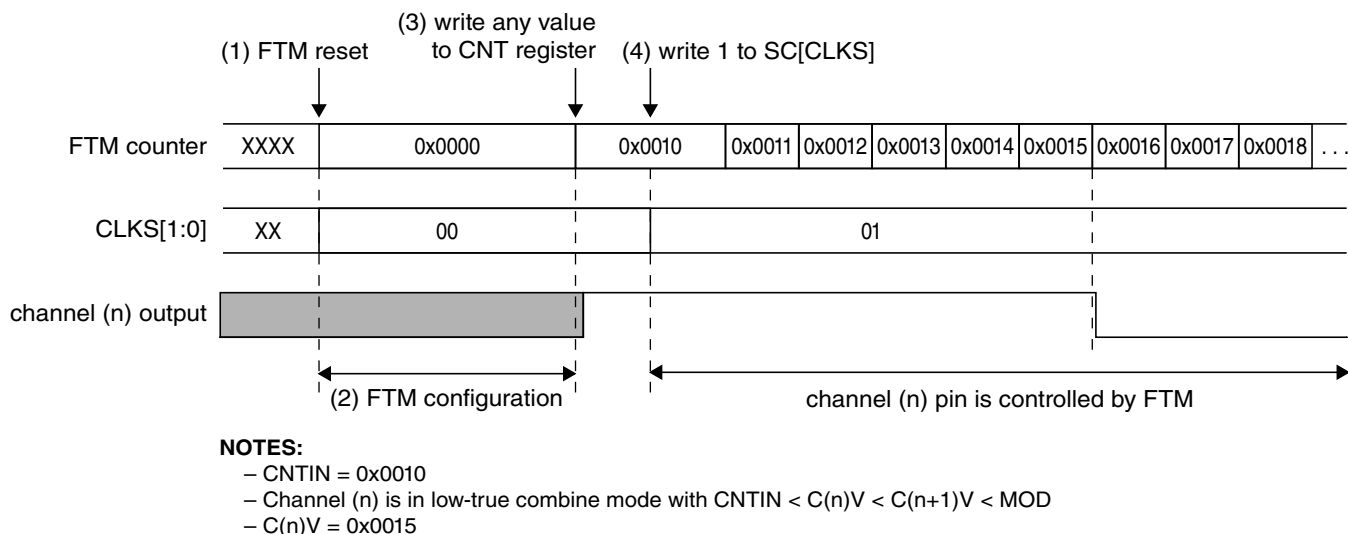


Figure 43-100. FTM behavior after reset when the channel (n) is in Combine mode

The following figure shows an example when the channel (n) is in Output Compare mode and the channel (n) output is toggled when there is a match. In the Output Compare mode, the channel output is not updated to its initial value when there is a write to CNT register (item 3). In this case, use the software output control ([Software output control](#)) or the initialization ([Initialization](#)) to update the channel output to the selected value (item 4).

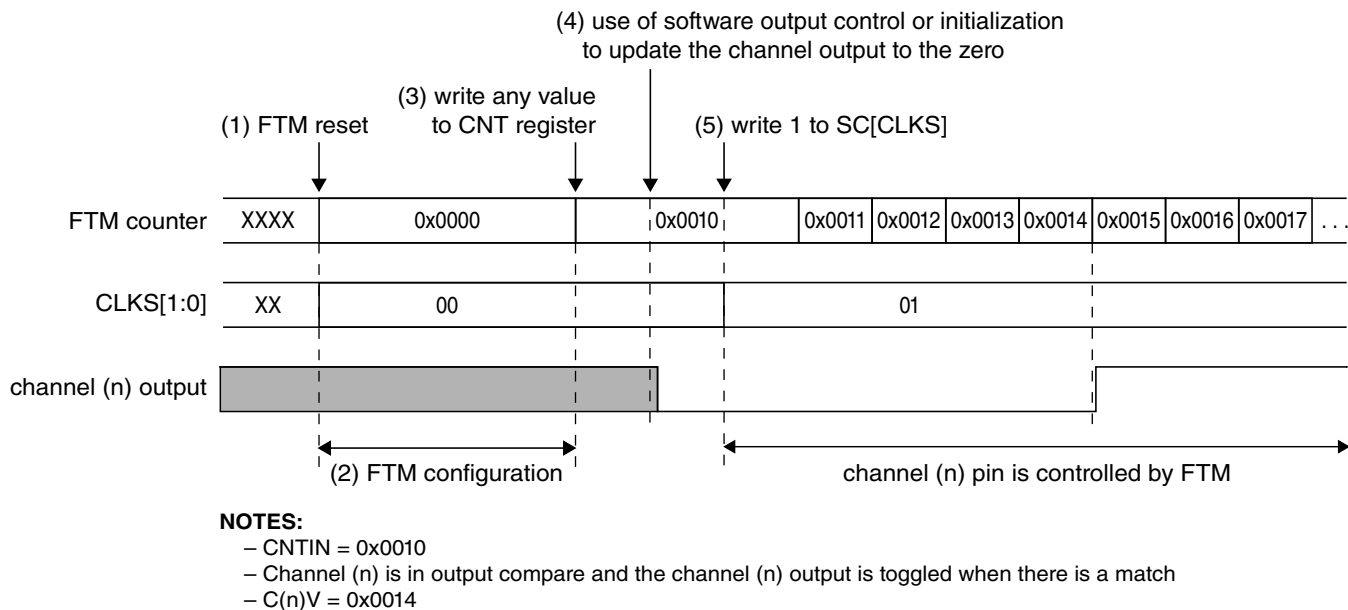


Figure 43-101. FTM behavior after reset when the channel (n) is in Output Compare mode

43.7 FTM Interrupts

43.7.1 Timer Overflow Interrupt

The timer overflow interrupt is generated when (TOIE = 1) and (TOF = 1).

43.7.2 Channel (n) Interrupt

The channel (n) interrupt is generated when (CHnIE = 1) and (CHnF = 1).

43.7.3 Fault Interrupt

The fault interrupt is generated when (FAULTIE = 1) and (FAULTF = 1).

43.8 Initialization Procedure

The following initialization procedure is recommended to configure the FlexTimer operation. This procedure can also be used to do a new configuration of the FlexTimer operation.

- Define the POL bits.
- Mask the channels outputs using SYNCHOM = 0. Two clocks after the write to OUTMASK, the channels output are in the safe value.
- (Re)Configuration FTM counter and channels to generation of periodic signals - Disable the clock. If the selected mode is Quadrature Decoder, then disable this mode. Examples of the (re)configuration:
 - Write to MOD.
 - Write to CNTIN.
 - Select OC, EPWM, CPWM, Combine, Complement modes for all channels that will be used
 - Select the high-true and low-true channels modes.
 - Write to CnV for all channels that will be used .
 - (Re)Configure deadtime and fault control.
 - Do not use the SWOC without SW synchronization (see item 6).
 - Do not use the Inverting without SW synchronization (see item 6).
 - Do not use the Initialization.
 - Do not change the polarity control.
 - Do not configure the HW synchronization

- Write any value to CNT. The FTM Counter is reset and the channels output are updated according to new configuration.
- Enable the clock. Write to CLKS[1:0] bits a value different from zero. If in the Quadrature Decoder mode, enable this mode.
- Configure the SW synchronization for SWOC (if it is necessary), Inverting (if it is necessary) and Output Mask (always)
 - Select synchronization for Output Mask Write to SYNC (SWSYNC = 0, TRIG2 = 0, TRIG1 = 0, TRIG0 = 0, SYNCHOM = 1, REINIT = 0, CNTMAX = 0, CNTMIN = 0)
 - Write to SYNCONF.
 - HW Synchronization can not be enabled (HWSOC = 0, HWINVC = 0, HWOM = 0, HWWRBUF = 0, HWRSTCNT = 0, HWTRIGMODE = 0).
 - SW Synchronization for SWOC (if it is necessary): SWSOC = [0/1] and SWOC = [0/1].
 - SW Synchronization for Inverting (if it is necessary): SWINVC = [0/1] and INVC = [0/1].
 - SW Synchronization for SWOM (always): SWOM = 1. No enable the SW Synchronization for write buffers (because the writes to registers with write buffer are done using CLKS[1:0] = 2'b00): SWWRBUF = 0 and CNTINC = 0.
 - SW Synchronization for counter reset (always): SWRSTCNT = 1.
 - Enhanced synchronization (always): SYNCMODE = 1
 - If the SWOC is used (SWSOC = 1 and SWOC = 1), then write to SWOCTRL register.
 - If the Inverting is used (SWINVC = 1 and INVC = 1), then write to INVCTRL register.
 - Write to OUTMASK to enable the masked channels.
- Generate the Software Trigger Write to SYNC (SWSYNC = 1, TRIG2 = 0, TRIG1 = 0, TRIG0 = 0, SYNCHOM = 1, REINIT = 0, CNTMAX = 0, CNTMIN = 0)

Chapter 44

Low-Power Timer (LPTMR)

44.1 Chip-specific LPTMR information

44.1.1 Low power timer instantiations

This device contains one LPTMR module with one 16-bit channel.

LPT/HSCMP0 pulse counting:

LPTMR_ALT0 input is the selectable source to count pulses resulting from HSCMP0 Output (LPT_ALT0 = HSCMP0 Output).

44.1.2 LPTMR prescaler/glitch filter clocking options

The prescaler and glitch filter of the LPTMR module can be clocked from one of four sources determined by the LPTMR0_PSR[PCS] bitfield. The following table shows the chip-specific clock assignments for this bitfield.

NOTE

The chosen clock must remain enabled if the LPTMR is to continue operating in all required low-power modes.

LPTMR0_PSR[PCS]	Prescaler/glitch filter clock number	Chip clock
00	0	MCGIRCLK — internal reference clock (not available in VLPS ¹ /VLLS modes)
01	1	LPO — 1 kHz clock (not available in VLLS0 mode)
10	2	ERCLK32K — secondary external reference clock

Table continues on the next page...

LPTMR0_PSR[PCS]	Prescaler/glitch filter clock number	Chip clock
11	3	OSCERCLK_UNDIV — Undivided external reference clock (not available in VLLS0 mode)

1. MCGIRCLK is optional in VLPS mode.

See [Clock Distribution](#) for more details on these clocks.

44.1.3 LPTMR pulse counter input options

The LPTMR_CSR[TPS] bitfield configures the input source used in pulse counter mode. The following table shows the chip-specific input assignments for this bitfield.

LPTMR_CSR[TPS]	Pulse counter input number	Chip input
00	0	CMP0 output
01	1	LPTMR_ALT1 pin
10	2	LPTMR_ALT2 pin
11	3	LPTMR_ALT3 pin

44.2 Introduction

The low-power timer (LPTMR) can be configured to operate as a time counter with optional prescaler, or as a pulse counter with optional glitch filter, across all power modes, including the low-leakage modes. It can also continue operating through most system reset events, allowing it to be used as a time of day counter.

44.2.1 Features

The features of the LPTMR module include:

- 16-bit time counter or pulse counter with compare
 - Optional interrupt can generate asynchronous wakeup from any low-power mode
 - Hardware trigger output
 - Counter supports free-running mode or reset on compare
- Configurable clock source for prescaler/glitch filter
- Configurable input source for pulse counter
 - Rising-edge or falling-edge

44.2.2 Modes of operation

The following table describes the operation of the LPTMR module in various modes.

Table 44-1. Modes of operation

Modes	Description
Run	The LPTMR operates normally.
Wait	The LPTMR continues to operate normally and may be configured to exit the low-power mode by generating an interrupt request.
Stop	The LPTMR continues to operate normally and may be configured to exit the low-power mode by generating an interrupt request.
Low-Leakage	The LPTMR continues to operate normally and may be configured to exit the low-power mode by generating an interrupt request.
Debug	The LPTMR operates normally in Pulse Counter mode, but counter does not increment in Time Counter mode.

44.3 LPTMR signal descriptions

Table 44-2. LPTMR signal descriptions

Signal	I/O	Description
LPTMR0_ALT <i>n</i>	I	Pulse Counter Input pin

44.3.1 Detailed signal descriptions

Table 44-3. LPTMR interface—detailed signal descriptions

Signal	I/O	Description	
LPTMR_ALT <i>n</i>	I	Pulse Counter Input The LPTMR can select one of the input pins to be used in Pulse Counter mode.	
		State meaning	Assertion—If configured for pulse counter mode with active-high input, then assertion causes the CNR to increment. Deassertion—If configured for pulse counter mode with active-low input, then deassertion causes the CNR to increment.
		Timing	Assertion or deassertion may occur at any time; input may assert asynchronously to the bus clock.

44.4 Memory map and register definition

LPTMR memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4004_0000	Low Power Timer Control Status Register (LPTMR0_CSR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.4.1/1222
4004_0004	Low Power Timer Prescale Register (LPTMR0_PSR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.4.2/1223
4004_0008	Low Power Timer Compare Register (LPTMR0_CMR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.4.3/1225
4004_000C	Low Power Timer Counter Register (LPTMR0_CNR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.4.4/1225

44.4.1 Low Power Timer Control Status Register (LPTMRx_CSR)

Address: 4004_0000h base + 0h offset = 4004_0000h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0								TCF							
W									w1c	TIE	TPS	TPP	TFC	TMS	TEN	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LPTMRx_CSR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7 TCF	Timer Compare Flag TCF is set when the LPTMR is enabled and the CNR equals the CMR and increments. TCF is cleared when the LPTMR is disabled or a logic 1 is written to it. 0 The value of CNR is not equal to CMR and increments. 1 The value of CNR is equal to CMR and increments.
6 TIE	Timer Interrupt Enable When TIE is set, the LPTMR Interrupt is generated whenever TCF is also set. 0 Timer interrupt disabled. 1 Timer interrupt enabled.
5–4 TPS	Timer Pin Select

Table continues on the next page...

LPTMRx_CSR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Configures the input source to be used in Pulse Counter mode. TPS must be altered only when the LPTMR is disabled. The input connections vary by device. See the chip-specific LPTMR information for information on the connections to these inputs. 00 Pulse counter input 0 is selected. 01 Pulse counter input 1 is selected. 10 Pulse counter input 2 is selected. 11 Pulse counter input 3 is selected.
3 TPP	Timer Pin Polarity Configures the polarity of the input source in Pulse Counter mode. TPP must be changed only when the LPTMR is disabled. 0 Pulse Counter input source is active-high, and the CNR will increment on the rising-edge. 1 Pulse Counter input source is active-low, and the CNR will increment on the falling-edge.
2 TFC	Timer Free-Running Counter When clear, TFC configures the CNR to reset whenever TCF is set. When set, TFC configures the CNR to reset on overflow. TFC must be altered only when the LPTMR is disabled. 0 CNR is reset whenever TCF is set. 1 CNR is reset on overflow.
1 TMS	Timer Mode Select Configures the mode of the LPTMR. TMS must be altered only when the LPTMR is disabled. 0 Time Counter mode. 1 Pulse Counter mode.
0 TEN	Timer Enable When TEN is clear, it resets the LPTMR internal logic, including the CNR and TCF. When TEN is set, the LPTMR is enabled. While writing 1 to this field, CSR[5:1] must not be altered. 0 LPTMR is disabled and internal logic is reset. 1 LPTMR is enabled.

44.4.2 Low Power Timer Prescale Register (LPTMRx_PSR)

Address: 4004_0000h base + 4h offset = 4004_0004h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0								PRESCALE				PBYP		PCS	
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LPTMRx_PSR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–7 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
6–3 PRESCALE	<p>Prescale Value</p> <p>Configures the size of the Prescaler in Time Counter mode or width of the glitch filter in Pulse Counter mode. PRESCALE must be altered only when the LPTMR is disabled.</p> <p>0000 Prescaler divides the prescaler clock by 2; glitch filter does not support this configuration.</p> <p>0001 Prescaler divides the prescaler clock by 4; glitch filter recognizes change on input pin after 2 rising clock edges.</p> <p>0010 Prescaler divides the prescaler clock by 8; glitch filter recognizes change on input pin after 4 rising clock edges.</p> <p>0011 Prescaler divides the prescaler clock by 16; glitch filter recognizes change on input pin after 8 rising clock edges.</p> <p>0100 Prescaler divides the prescaler clock by 32; glitch filter recognizes change on input pin after 16 rising clock edges.</p> <p>0101 Prescaler divides the prescaler clock by 64; glitch filter recognizes change on input pin after 32 rising clock edges.</p> <p>0110 Prescaler divides the prescaler clock by 128; glitch filter recognizes change on input pin after 64 rising clock edges.</p> <p>0111 Prescaler divides the prescaler clock by 256; glitch filter recognizes change on input pin after 128 rising clock edges.</p> <p>1000 Prescaler divides the prescaler clock by 512; glitch filter recognizes change on input pin after 256 rising clock edges.</p> <p>1001 Prescaler divides the prescaler clock by 1024; glitch filter recognizes change on input pin after 512 rising clock edges.</p> <p>1010 Prescaler divides the prescaler clock by 2048; glitch filter recognizes change on input pin after 1024 rising clock edges.</p> <p>1011 Prescaler divides the prescaler clock by 4096; glitch filter recognizes change on input pin after 2048 rising clock edges.</p> <p>1100 Prescaler divides the prescaler clock by 8192; glitch filter recognizes change on input pin after 4096 rising clock edges.</p> <p>1101 Prescaler divides the prescaler clock by 16,384; glitch filter recognizes change on input pin after 8192 rising clock edges.</p> <p>1110 Prescaler divides the prescaler clock by 32,768; glitch filter recognizes change on input pin after 16,384 rising clock edges.</p> <p>1111 Prescaler divides the prescaler clock by 65,536; glitch filter recognizes change on input pin after 32,768 rising clock edges.</p>
2 PBYP	<p>Prescaler Bypass</p> <p>When PBYP is set, the selected prescaler clock in Time Counter mode or selected input source in Pulse Counter mode directly clocks the CNR. When PBYP is clear, the CNR is clocked by the output of the prescaler/glitch filter. PBYP must be altered only when the LPTMR is disabled.</p> <p>0 Prescaler/glitch filter is enabled.</p> <p>1 Prescaler/glitch filter is bypassed.</p>
PCS	<p>Prescaler Clock Select</p> <p>Selects the clock to be used by the LPTMR prescaler/glitch filter. PCS must be altered only when the LPTMR is disabled. The clock connections vary by device.</p> <p>NOTE: See the chip configuration details for information on the connections to these inputs.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

LPTMRx_PSR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
00	Prescaler/glitch filter clock 0 selected.
01	Prescaler/glitch filter clock 1 selected.
10	Prescaler/glitch filter clock 2 selected.
11	Prescaler/glitch filter clock 3 selected.

44.4.3 Low Power Timer Compare Register (LPTMRx_CMRR)

Address: 4004_0000h base + 8h offset = 4004_0008h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																COMPARE															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

LPTMRx_CMRR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
COMPARE	Compare Value When the LPTMR is enabled and the CNR equals the value in the CMR and increments, TCF is set and the hardware trigger asserts until the next time the CNR increments. If the CMR is 0, the hardware trigger will remain asserted until the LPTMR is disabled. If the LPTMR is enabled, the CMR must be altered only when TCF is set.

44.4.4 Low Power Timer Counter Register (LPTMRx_CNR)

NOTE

See [LPTMR counter](#) for details on how to read counter value.

Address: 4004_0000h base + Ch offset = 4004_000Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																COUNTER															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

LPTMRx_CNR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

Table continues on the next page...

LPTMRx_CNR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
COUNTER	Counter Value

44.5 Functional description

44.5.1 LPTMR power and reset

The LPTMR remains powered in all power modes, including low-leakage modes. If the LPTMR is not required to remain operating during a low-power mode, then it must be disabled before entering the mode.

The LPTMR is reset only on global Power On Reset (POR) or Low Voltage Detect (LVD). When configuring the LPTMR registers, the CSR must be initially written with the timer disabled, before configuring the PSR and CMR. Then, CSR[TIE] must be set as the last step in the initialization. This ensures the LPTMR is configured correctly and the LPTMR counter is reset to zero following a warm reset.

44.5.2 LPTMR clocking

The LPTMR prescaler/glitch filter can be clocked by one of the four clocks. The clock source must be enabled before the LPTMR is enabled.

NOTE

The clock source selected need to be configured to remain enabled in low-power modes, otherwise the LPTMR will not operate during low-power modes.

In Pulse Counter mode with the prescaler/glitch filter bypassed, the selected input source directly clocks the CNR and no other clock source is required. To minimize power in this case, configure the prescaler clock source for a clock that is not toggling.

NOTE

The clock source or pulse input source selected for the LPTMR should not exceed the frequency f_{LPTMR} defined in the device datasheet.

44.5.3 LPTMR prescaler/glitch filter

The LPTMR prescaler and glitch filter share the same logic which operates as a prescaler in Time Counter mode and as a glitch filter in Pulse Counter mode.

NOTE

The prescaler/glitch filter configuration must not be altered when the LPTMR is enabled.

44.5.3.1 Prescaler enabled

In Time Counter mode, when the prescaler is enabled, the output of the prescaler directly clocks the CNR. When the LPTMR is enabled, the CNR will increment every 2^2 to 2^{16} prescaler clock cycles. After the LPTMR is enabled, the first increment of the CNR will take an additional one or two prescaler clock cycles due to synchronization logic.

44.5.3.2 Prescaler bypassed

In Time Counter mode, when the prescaler is bypassed, the selected prescaler clock increments the CNR on every clock cycle. When the LPTMR is enabled, the first increment will take an additional one or two prescaler clock cycles due to synchronization logic.

44.5.3.3 Glitch filter

In Pulse Counter mode, when the glitch filter is enabled, the output of the glitch filter directly clocks the CNR. When the LPTMR is first enabled, the output of the glitch filter is asserted, that is, logic 1 for active-high and logic 0 for active-low. The following table shows the change in glitch filter output with the selected input source.

If	Then
The selected input source remains deasserted for at least 2^1 to 2^{15} consecutive prescaler clock rising edges	The glitch filter output will also deassert.
The selected input source remains asserted for at least 2^1 to 2^{15} consecutive prescaler clock rising-edges	The glitch filter output will also assert.

NOTE

The input is only sampled on the rising clock edge.

The CNR will increment each time the glitch filter output asserts. In Pulse Counter mode, the maximum rate at which the CNR can increment is once every 2^2 to 2^{16} prescaler clock edges. When first enabled, the glitch filter will wait an additional one or two prescaler clock edges due to synchronization logic.

44.5.3.4 Glitch filter bypassed

In Pulse Counter mode, when the glitch filter is bypassed, the selected input source increments the CNR every time it asserts. Before the LPTMR is first enabled, the selected input source is forced to be asserted. This prevents the CNR from incrementing if the selected input source is already asserted when the LPTMR is first enabled.

44.5.4 LPTMR compare

When the CNR equals the value of the CMR and increments, the following events occur:

- CSR[TCF] is set.
- LPTMR interrupt is generated if CSR[TIE] is also set.
- LPTMR hardware trigger is generated.
- CNR is reset if CSR[TFC] is clear.

When the LPTMR is enabled, the CMR can be altered only when CSR[TCF] is set. When updating the CMR, the CMR must be written and CSR[TCF] must be cleared before the LPTMR counter has incremented past the new LPTMR compare value.

44.5.5 LPTMR counter

The CNR increments by one on every:

- Prescaler clock in Time Counter mode with prescaler bypassed
- Prescaler output in Time Counter mode with prescaler enabled
- Input source assertion in Pulse Counter mode with glitch filter bypassed
- Glitch filter output in Pulse Counter mode with glitch filter enabled

The CNR is reset when the LPTMR is disabled or if the counter register overflows. If CSR[TFC] is cleared, then the CNR is also reset whenever CSR[TCF] is set.

The CNR continues incrementing when the core is halted in Debug mode when configured for Pulse Counter mode, the CNR will stop incrementing when the core is halted in Debug mode when configured for Time Counter mode.

The CNR cannot be initialized, but can be read at any time. On each read of the CNR, software must first write to the CNR with any value. This will synchronize and register the current value of the CNR into a temporary register. The contents of the temporary register are returned on each read of the CNR.

When reading the CNR, the bus clock must be at least two times faster than the rate at which the LPTMR counter is incrementing, otherwise incorrect data may be returned.

44.5.6 LPTMR hardware trigger

The LPTMR hardware trigger asserts at the same time the CSR[TCF] is set and can be used to trigger hardware events in other peripherals without software intervention. The hardware trigger is always enabled.

When	Then
The CMR is set to 0 with CSR[TFC] clear	The LPTMR hardware trigger will assert on the first compare and does not deassert.
The CMR is set to a nonzero value, or, if CSR[TFC] is set	The LPTMR hardware trigger will assert on each compare and deassert on the following increment of the CNR.

44.5.7 LPTMR interrupt

The LPTMR interrupt is generated whenever CSR[TIE] and CSR[TCF] are set. CSR[TCF] is cleared by disabling the LPTMR or by writing a logic 1 to it.

CSR[TIE] can be altered and CSR[TCF] can be cleared while the LPTMR is enabled.

The LPTMR interrupt is generated asynchronously to the system clock and can be used to generate a wakeup from any low-power mode, including the low-leakage modes, provided the LPTMR is enabled as a wakeup source.



Chapter 45

Programmable Delay Block (PDB)

45.1 Chip-specific PDB information

45.1.1 PDB Instantiation

This chip has two PDBs that primarily provide delayed triggering from the FTMs to the ADCs. Each PDB has two channels, one pulse output and one DAC trigger. One channel of each PDB has two pre-trigger outputs for driving the 16bit SAR ADC. The input mux capability has been increased by having an XBARA output trigger the PDBs.

NOTE

- For the BB, TOS, and EN field in CHnC1 register, and the CF and ERR fields in the CHnS register, the lower two bits are valid, other bits are always 0.
- For the POEN field in the POEN register, the lower four bits are valid, other bits are always 0.

45.1.1.1 PDB0 Output Triggers

Table 45-1. PDB0 output triggers

Number of PDB channels	2
Number of pre-triggers per PDB	2 on CH1
PDB0_CH0_OUT	HSADC0A sync0 , DMA_MUX source 48, FTM0_TRIG1, XBARA_IN29, XBARB_IN12
PDB0_CH1_OUT	HSADC1B sync1, XBARA_IN28, XBARB_IN34, ADC0_ADHWT(via SIM_ADCCOPT control)
PDB0_ch1_pre-trigger-0	ADC0_ADHWTSA
PDB0_ch1_pre-trigger-1	ADC0_ADHWTSA

Table continues on the next page...

Table 45-1. PDB0 output triggers (continued)

PDB0_DAC trigger	DAC0_trigger
PDB0_DAC_ext_trigger_input	HSADC0A_Scan_complete
PDB0_PulseOut	Window control of CMP0, CMP1,CMP2,CMP3

45.1.1.2 PDB0 Input Trigger Connections

Table 45-2. PDB0 Input Trigger Options

PDB Trigger	PDB Input
0000	External Trigger (PDB0_EXTRG)
0001	CMP0_out
0010	CMP1_out
0011	CMP2_out
0100	PIT Ch 0 Output
0101	PIT Ch 1 Output
0110	PIT Ch 2 Output
0111	PIT Ch 3 Output
1000	FTM0 initialization trigger and channel triggers, as programmed in the FTM external trigger register (EXTTRIG)
1001	FTM1 initialization trigger and channel triggers, as programmed in the FTM external trigger register (EXTTRIG)
1010	FTM2 initialization trigger and channel triggers, as programmed in the FTM external trigger register (EXTTRIG)
1011	FTM3 initialization trigger and channel triggers, as programmed in the FTM external trigger register (EXTTRIG)
1100	XBARA_OUT38
1101	Reserved
1110	LPTMR Output
1111	Software Trigger

45.1.1.3 PDB1 Output Triggers

Table 45-3. PDB1 output triggers

Number of PDB channels	2
Number of pre-triggers	2 on CH0
PDB1_CH0_OUT	HSADC0B sync1, DMA_MUX source 47, FTM3_TRIG1,

Table continues on the next page...

Table 45-3. PDB1 output triggers (continued)

	XBARA_IN31, XBARB_IN26, ADC0_ADWT(via SIM_ADCOPT control)
PDB1_ch0_pre-trigger-0	ADC0_ADHWTSB
PDB1_ch0_pre-trigger-1	ADC0_ADHWTSB
PDB1_CH1_OUT	HSADC1A sync0, FTM3_TRIG1, XBARA_IN30, XBARB_IN35
PDB1_DAC trigger	DAC0_trigger
HSADC0B_scan_complete	HSADC0B_Scan_complete
PDB1_PulseOut	Window control of CMP0, CMP1,CMP2,CMP3

45.1.1.4 PDB1 Input Trigger Connections

Table 45-4. PDB1 Input Trigger Options

PDB Trigger	PDB Input
0000	Reserved
0001	CMP0_out
0010	CMP1_out
0011	CMP2_out
0100	PIT Ch 0 Output
0101	PIT Ch 1 Output
0110	PIT Ch 2 Output
0111	PIT Ch 3 Output
1000	FTM0 initialization trigger and channel triggers, as programmed in the FTM external trigger register (EXTTRIG)
1001	FTM1 initialization trigger and channel triggers, as programmed in the FTM external trigger register (EXTTRIG)
1010	FTM2 initialization trigger and channel triggers, as programmed in the FTM external trigger register (EXTTRIG)
1011	FTM3 initialization trigger and channel triggers, as programmed in the FTM external trigger register (EXTTRIG)
1100	XBARA_OUT41
1101	Reserved
1110	LPTMR Output
1111	Software Trigger

45.1.2 PDB's DAC External Trigger Input Connections

In this MCU, the following PDB's DAC external trigger inputs are implemented.

- PDB0's DAC external trigger input 0: ADCA_scan_complete
- PDB1's DAC external trigger input 0: ADCB_scan_complete

45.1.3 Pulse-Out Connection

45.1.4 Pulse-Out Enable Register Implementation

The following table shows the comparison of pulse-out enable register at the module and chip level. See SIM_MISCTRL0[COMPWINxSRC] for more information.

Table 45-5. PDB pulse-out enable register

Register	Module implementation	Chip implementation
POnEN	7:0 - POEN 31:8 - Reserved	0 - POEN[0] for CMP0 1 - POEN[1] for CMP1 2 - POEN[2] for CMP2 3 - POEN[3] for CMP3 31:4 - Reserved

45.2 Introduction

The Programmable Delay Block (PDB) provides controllable delays from either an internal or an external trigger, or a programmable interval tick, to the hardware trigger inputs of ADCs and/or generates the interval triggers to DACs, so that the precise timing between ADC conversions and/or DAC updates can be achieved. The PDB can optionally provide pulse outputs (Pulse-Out's) that are used as the sample window in the CMP block.

45.2.1 Features

- Up to 15 trigger input sources and one software trigger source
- Up to 8 configurable PDB channels for ADC hardware trigger

- One PDB channel is associated with one ADC
- One trigger output for ADC hardware trigger and up to 8 pre-trigger outputs for ADC trigger select per PDB channel
- Trigger outputs can be enabled or disabled independently
- One 16-bit delay register per pre-trigger output
- Optional bypass of the delay registers of the pre-trigger outputs
- Operation in One-Shot or Continuous modes
- Optional back-to-back mode operation, which enables the ADC conversions complete to trigger the next PDB channel
- One programmable delay interrupt
- One sequence error interrupt
- One channel flag and one sequence error flag per pre-trigger
- DMA support
- Up to 8 DAC interval triggers
 - One interval trigger output per DAC
 - One 16-bit delay interval register per DAC trigger output
 - Optional bypass of the delay interval trigger registers
 - Optional external triggers
- Up to 8 pulse outputs (pulse-out's)
 - Pulse-out's can be enabled or disabled independently
 - Programmable pulse width

NOTE

The number of PDB input and output triggers are chip-specific. See the chip-specific PDB information for details.

45.2.2 Implementation

In this section, the following letters refer to the number of output triggers:

- N—Total available number of PDB channels.

- n —PDB channel number, valid from 0 to $N-1$.
- M —Total available pre-trigger per PDB channel.
- m —Pre-trigger number, valid from 0 to $M-1$.
- X —Total number of DAC interval triggers.
- x —DAC interval trigger output number, valid from 0 to $X-1$.
- Y —Total number of Pulse-Out's.
- y —Pulse-Out number, valid value is from 0 to $Y-1$.

NOTE

The number of module output triggers to core is chip-specific. For module to core output triggers implementation, see the chip configuration information.

45.2.3 Back-to-back acknowledgment connections

PDB back-to-back operation acknowledgment connections are chip-specific. For implementation, see the chip configuration information.

45.2.4 DAC External Trigger Input Connections

The implementation of DAC external trigger inputs is chip-specific. See the chip configuration information for details.

45.2.5 Block diagram

This diagram illustrates the major components of the PDB.

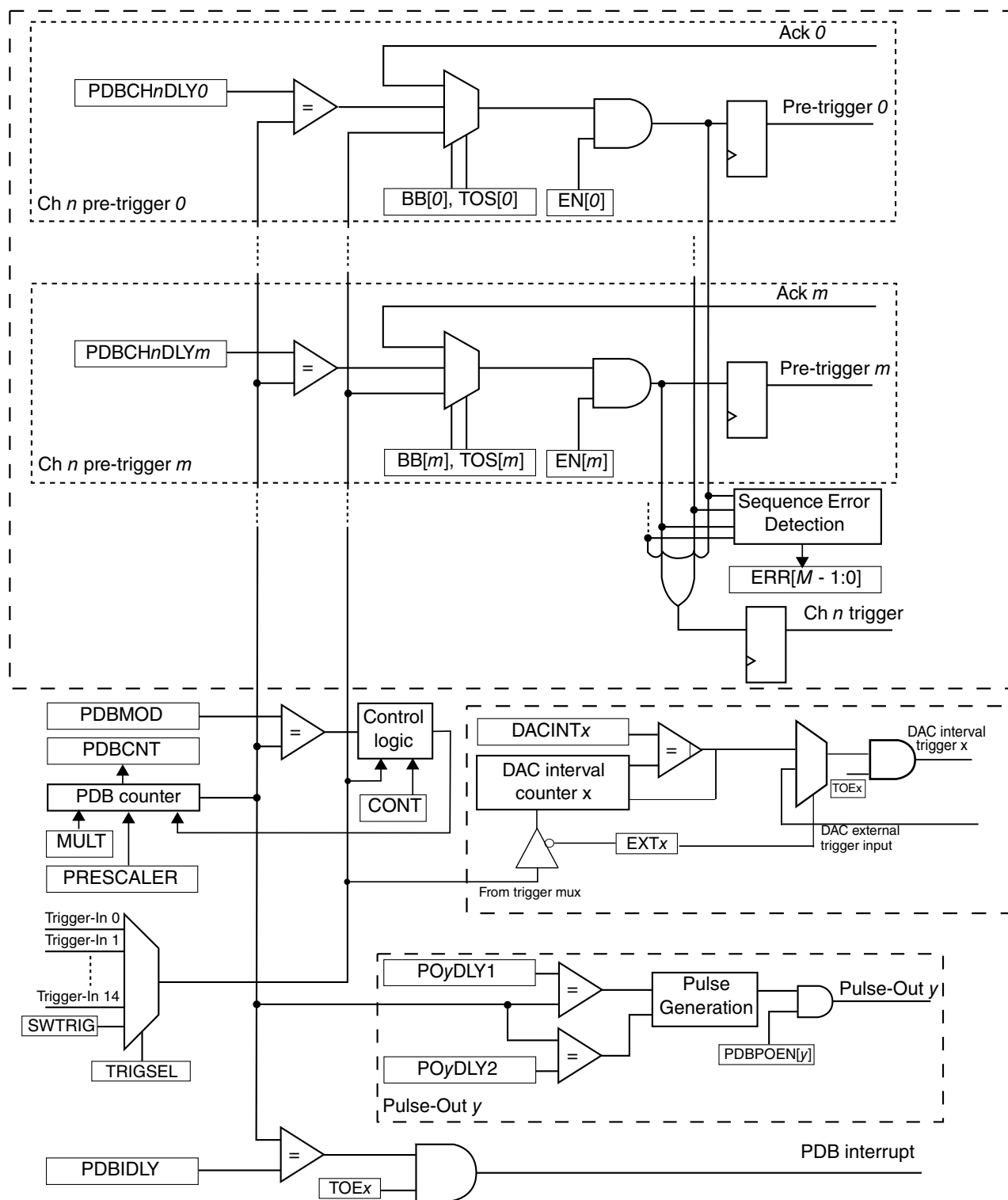


Figure 45-1. PDB block diagram

In this diagram, only one PDB channel n , one DAC interval trigger x , and one Pulse-Out y are shown. The PDB-enabled control logic and the sequence error interrupt logic are not shown.

45.2.6 Modes of operation

PDB ADC trigger operates in the following modes:

- Disabled—Counter is off, all pre-trigger and trigger outputs are low if PDB is not in back-to-back operation of Bypass mode.
- Debug—Counter is paused when processor is in Debug mode, and the counter for the DAC trigger is also paused in Debug mode.
- Enabled One-Shot—Counter is enabled and restarted at count zero upon receiving a positive edge on the selected trigger input source or software trigger is selected and SC[SWTRIG] is written with 1. In each PDB channel, an enabled pre-trigger asserts once per trigger input event. The trigger output asserts whenever any of the pre-triggers is asserted.
- Enabled Continuous—Counter is enabled and restarted at count zero. The counter is rolled over to zero again when the count reaches the value specified in the modulus register, and the counting is restarted. This enables a continuous stream of pre-triggers/trigger outputs as a result of a single trigger input event.
- Enabled Bypassed—The pre-trigger and trigger outputs assert immediately after a positive edge on the selected trigger input source or software trigger is selected and SC[SWTRIG] is written with 1, that is the delay registers are bypassed. It is possible to bypass any one or more of the delay registers; therefore, this mode can be used in conjunction with One-Shot or Continuous mode.

45.3 PDB signal descriptions

This table shows the detailed description of the external signal.

Table 45-6. PDB signal descriptions

Signal	Description	I/O
EXTRG	External Trigger Input Source If the PDB is enabled and external trigger input source is selected, a positive edge on the EXTRG signal resets and starts the counter.	I

45.4 Memory map and register definition

PDB memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4003_1000	Status and Control register (PDB1_SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	45.4.1/1240
4003_1004	Modulus register (PDB1_MOD)	32	R/W	0000_FFFFh	45.4.2/1243
4003_1008	Counter register (PDB1_CNT)	32	R	0000_0000h	45.4.3/1243
4003_100C	Interrupt Delay register (PDB1_IDLY)	32	R/W	0000_FFFFh	45.4.4/1243
4003_1010	Channel n Control register 1 (PDB1_CH0C1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	45.4.5/1244
4003_1014	Channel n Status register (PDB1_CH0S)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	45.4.6/1245
4003_1018	Channel n Delay 0 register (PDB1_CH0DLY0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	45.4.7/1245
4003_101C	Channel n Delay 1 register (PDB1_CH0DLY1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	45.4.8/1246
4003_1038	Channel n Control register 1 (PDB1_CH1C1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	45.4.5/1244
4003_103C	Channel n Status register (PDB1_CH1S)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	45.4.6/1245
4003_1040	Channel n Delay 0 register (PDB1_CH1DLY0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	45.4.7/1245
4003_1044	Channel n Delay 1 register (PDB1_CH1DLY1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	45.4.8/1246
4003_1150	DAC Interval Trigger n Control register (PDB1_DACINTC0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	45.4.9/1246
4003_1154	DAC Interval n register (PDB1_DACINT0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	45.4.10/1247
4003_1190	Pulse-Out n Enable register (PDB1_POEN)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	45.4.11/1247
4003_1194	Pulse-Out n Delay register (PDB1_PO0DLY)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	45.4.12/1248
4003_1198	Pulse-Out n Delay register (PDB1_PO1DLY)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	45.4.12/1248
4003_6000	Status and Control register (PDB0_SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	45.4.1/1240
4003_6004	Modulus register (PDB0_MOD)	32	R/W	0000_FFFFh	45.4.2/1243
4003_6008	Counter register (PDB0_CNT)	32	R	0000_0000h	45.4.3/1243
4003_600C	Interrupt Delay register (PDB0_IDLY)	32	R/W	0000_FFFFh	45.4.4/1243
4003_6010	Channel n Control register 1 (PDB0_CH0C1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	45.4.5/1244
4003_6014	Channel n Status register (PDB0_CH0S)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	45.4.6/1245
4003_6018	Channel n Delay 0 register (PDB0_CH0DLY0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	45.4.7/1245
4003_601C	Channel n Delay 1 register (PDB0_CH0DLY1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	45.4.8/1246
4003_6038	Channel n Control register 1 (PDB0_CH1C1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	45.4.5/1244
4003_603C	Channel n Status register (PDB0_CH1S)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	45.4.6/1245
4003_6040	Channel n Delay 0 register (PDB0_CH1DLY0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	45.4.7/1245
4003_6044	Channel n Delay 1 register (PDB0_CH1DLY1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	45.4.8/1246
4003_6150	DAC Interval Trigger n Control register (PDB0_DACINTC0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	45.4.9/1246
4003_6154	DAC Interval n register (PDB0_DACINT0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	45.4.10/1247
4003_6190	Pulse-Out n Enable register (PDB0_POEN)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	45.4.11/1247
4003_6194	Pulse-Out n Delay register (PDB0_PO0DLY)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	45.4.12/1248

Table continues on the next page...

PDB memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4003_6198	Pulse-Out n Delay register (PDB0_PO1DLY)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	45.4.12/1248

45.4.1 Status and Control register (PDBx_SC)

Address: Base address + 0h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0												LDMOD		PDBEIE	0
W																SWTRIG
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
R	DMAEN	PRESCALER				TRGSEL				PDBEN	PDBIF	PDBIE	0	MULT		CONT	LDOK
W																	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

PDBx_SC field descriptions

Field	Description
31–20 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
19–18 LDMOD	Load Mode Select Selects the mode to load the MOD, IDLY, CHnDLYm, INTx, and POyDLY registers, after 1 is written to LDOK. 00 The internal registers are loaded with the values from their buffers immediately after 1 is written to LDOK. 01 The internal registers are loaded with the values from their buffers when the PDB counter reaches the MOD register value after 1 is written to LDOK.

Table continues on the next page...

PDBx_SC field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>10 The internal registers are loaded with the values from their buffers when a trigger input event is detected after 1 is written to LDOK.</p> <p>11 The internal registers are loaded with the values from their buffers when either the PDB counter reaches the MOD register value or a trigger input event is detected, after 1 is written to LDOK.</p>
17 PDBEIE	<p>PDB Sequence Error Interrupt Enable</p> <p>Enables the PDB sequence error interrupt. When this field is set, any of the PDB channel sequence error flags generates a PDB sequence error interrupt.</p> <p>0 PDB sequence error interrupt disabled. 1 PDB sequence error interrupt enabled.</p>
16 SWTRIG	<p>Software Trigger</p> <p>When PDB is enabled and the software trigger is selected as the trigger input source, writing 1 to this field resets and restarts the counter. Writing 0 to this field has no effect. Reading this field results 0.</p>
15 DMAEN	<p>DMA Enable</p> <p>When DMA is enabled, the PDBIF flag generates a DMA request instead of an interrupt.</p> <p>0 DMA disabled. 1 DMA enabled.</p>
14–12 PRESCALER	<p>Prescaler Divider Select</p> <p>000 Counting uses the peripheral clock divided by multiplication factor selected by MULT. 001 Counting uses the peripheral clock divided by twice of the multiplication factor selected by MULT. 010 Counting uses the peripheral clock divided by four times of the multiplication factor selected by MULT. 011 Counting uses the peripheral clock divided by eight times of the multiplication factor selected by MULT. 100 Counting uses the peripheral clock divided by 16 times of the multiplication factor selected by MULT. 101 Counting uses the peripheral clock divided by 32 times of the multiplication factor selected by MULT. 110 Counting uses the peripheral clock divided by 64 times of the multiplication factor selected by MULT. 111 Counting uses the peripheral clock divided by 128 times of the multiplication factor selected by MULT.</p>
11–8 TRGSEL	<p>Trigger Input Source Select</p> <p>Selects the trigger input source for the PDB. The trigger input source can be internal or external (EXTRG pin), or the software trigger. Refer to chip configuration details for the actual PDB input trigger connections.</p> <p>0000 Trigger-In 0 is selected. 0001 Trigger-In 1 is selected. 0010 Trigger-In 2 is selected. 0011 Trigger-In 3 is selected. 0100 Trigger-In 4 is selected. 0101 Trigger-In 5 is selected. 0110 Trigger-In 6 is selected. 0111 Trigger-In 7 is selected.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

PDBx_SC field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>1000 Trigger-In 8 is selected.</p> <p>1001 Trigger-In 9 is selected.</p> <p>1010 Trigger-In 10 is selected.</p> <p>1011 Trigger-In 11 is selected.</p> <p>1100 Trigger-In 12 is selected.</p> <p>1101 Trigger-In 13 is selected.</p> <p>1110 Trigger-In 14 is selected.</p> <p>1111 Software trigger is selected.</p>
7 PDBEN	<p>PDB Enable</p> <p>0 PDB disabled. Counter is off.</p> <p>1 PDB enabled.</p>
6 PDBIF	<p>PDB Interrupt Flag</p> <p>This field is set when the counter value is equal to the IDLY register. Writing zero clears this field.</p>
5 PDBIE	<p>PDB Interrupt Enable</p> <p>Enables the PDB interrupt. When this field is set and DMAEN is cleared, PDBIF generates a PDB interrupt.</p> <p>0 PDB interrupt disabled.</p> <p>1 PDB interrupt enabled.</p>
4 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
3–2 MULT	<p>Multiplication Factor Select for Prescaler</p> <p>Selects the multiplication factor of the prescaler divider for the counter clock.</p> <p>00 Multiplication factor is 1.</p> <p>01 Multiplication factor is 10.</p> <p>10 Multiplication factor is 20.</p> <p>11 Multiplication factor is 40.</p>
1 CONT	<p>Continuous Mode Enable</p> <p>Enables the PDB operation in Continuous mode.</p> <p>0 PDB operation in One-Shot mode</p> <p>1 PDB operation in Continuous mode</p>
0 LDOK	<p>Load OK</p> <p>Writing 1 to this bit updates the internal registers of MOD, IDLY, CHnDLYm, DACINTx, and POyDLY with the values written to their buffers. The MOD, IDLY, CHnDLYm, DACINTx, and POyDLY will take effect according to the LDMOD.</p> <p>After 1 is written to the LDOK field, the values in the buffers of above registers are not effective and the buffers cannot be written until the values in buffers are loaded into their internal registers.</p> <p>LDOK can be written only when PDBEN is set or it can be written at the same time with PDBEN being written to 1. It is automatically cleared when the values in buffers are loaded into the internal registers or the PDBEN is cleared. Writing 0 to it has no effect.</p>

45.4.2 Modulus register (PDBx_MOD)

Address: Base address + 4h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																MOD															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

PDBx_MOD field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
MOD	PDB Modulus Specifies the period of the counter. When the counter reaches this value, it will be reset back to zero. If the PDB is in Continuous mode, the count begins anew. Reading this field returns the value of the internal register that is effective for the current cycle of PDB.

45.4.3 Counter register (PDBx_CNT)

Address: Base address + 8h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																CNT															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PDBx_CNT field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CNT	PDB Counter Contains the current value of the counter.

45.4.4 Interrupt Delay register (PDBx_IDLY)

Address: Base address + Ch offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																IDLY															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

PDBx_IDLY field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
IDLY	PDB Interrupt Delay Specifies the delay value to schedule the PDB interrupt. It can be used to schedule an independent interrupt at some point in the PDB cycle. If enabled, a PDB interrupt is generated, when the counter is equal to the IDLY. Reading this field returns the value of internal register that is effective for the current cycle of the PDB.

45.4.5 Channel n Control register 1 (PDBx_CHnC1)

Each PDB channel has one control register, CHnC1. The bits in this register control the functionality of each PDB channel operation.

Address: Base address + 10h offset + (40d × i), where i=0d to 1d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0								BB								TOS								EN							
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PDBx_CHnC1 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
23–16 BB	PDB Channel Pre-Trigger Back-to-Back Operation Enable These bits enable the PDB ADC pre-trigger operation as back-to-back mode. Only lower M pre-trigger bits are implemented in this MCU. Back-to-back operation enables the ADC conversions complete to trigger the next PDB channel pre-trigger and trigger output, so that the ADC conversions can be triggered on next set of configuration and results registers. Application code must only enable the back-to-back operation of the PDB pre-triggers at the leading of the back-to-back connection chain. 0 PDB channel's corresponding pre-trigger back-to-back operation disabled. 1 PDB channel's corresponding pre-trigger back-to-back operation enabled.
15–8 TOS	PDB Channel Pre-Trigger Output Select Selects the PDB ADC pre-trigger outputs. Only lower M pre-trigger fields are implemented in this MCU. 0 PDB channel's corresponding pre-trigger is in bypassed mode. The pre-trigger asserts one peripheral clock cycle after a rising edge is detected on selected trigger input source or software trigger is selected and SWTRIG is written with 1. 1 PDB channel's corresponding pre-trigger asserts when the counter reaches the channel delay register and one peripheral clock cycle after a rising edge is detected on selected trigger input source or software trigger is selected and SETRIG is written with 1.
EN	PDB Channel Pre-Trigger Enable

Table continues on the next page...

PDBx_CHnC1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	These bits enable the PDB ADC pre-trigger outputs. Only lower M pre-trigger bits are implemented in this MCU.
0	PDB channel's corresponding pre-trigger disabled.
1	PDB channel's corresponding pre-trigger enabled.

45.4.6 Channel n Status register (PDBx_CHnS)

Address: Base address + 14h offset + (40d × i), where i=0d to 1d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0								CF								0								ERR							
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PDBx_CHnS field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
23–16 CF	PDB Channel Flags The CF[m] bit is set when the PDB counter matches the CHnDLYm. Write 0 to clear these bits.
15–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
ERR	PDB Channel Sequence Error Flags Only the lower M bits are implemented in this MCU. 0 Sequence error not detected on PDB channel's corresponding pre-trigger. 1 Sequence error detected on PDB channel's corresponding pre-trigger. ADCn block can be triggered for a conversion by one pre-trigger from PDB channel n. When one conversion, which is triggered by one of the pre-triggers from PDB channel n, is in progress, new trigger from PDB channel's corresponding pre-trigger m cannot be accepted by ADCn, and ERR[m] is set. Writing 0's to clear the sequence error flags.

45.4.7 Channel n Delay 0 register (PDBx_CHnDLY0)

Address: Base address + 18h offset + (40d × i), where i=0d to 1d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																DLY															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

PDBx_CHnDLY0 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
DLY	PDB Channel Delay Specifies the delay value for the channel's corresponding pre-trigger. The pre-trigger asserts when the counter is equal to DLY. Reading this field returns the value of internal register that is effective for the current PDB cycle.

45.4.8 Channel n Delay 1 register (PDBx_CHnDLY1)

Address: Base address + 1Ch offset + (40d × i), where i=0d to 1d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																DLY															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PDBx_CHnDLY1 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
DLY	PDB Channel Delay These bits specify the delay value for the channel's corresponding pre-trigger. The pre-trigger asserts when the counter is equal to DLY. Reading these bits returns the value of internal register that is effective for the current PDB cycle.

45.4.9 DAC Interval Trigger n Control register (PDBx_DACINTCn)

Address: Base address + 150h offset + (8d × i), where i=0d to 0d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0														EXT	TOE
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PDBx_DACINTCn field descriptions

Field	Description
31–2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
1 EXT	DAC External Trigger Input Enable This bit enables the external trigger for DAC interval counter. 0 DAC external trigger input disabled. DAC interval counter is reset and started counting when a rising edge is detected on selected trigger input source or software trigger is selected and SWTRIG is written with 1. 1 DAC external trigger input enabled. DAC interval counter is bypassed and DAC external trigger input triggers the DAC interval trigger.
0 TOE	DAC Interval Trigger Enable Enables the DAC interval trigger. 0 DAC interval trigger disabled. 1 DAC interval trigger enabled.

45.4.10 DAC Interval n register (PDBx_DACINTn)

Address: Base address + 154h offset + (8d × i), where i=0d to 0d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																INT															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PDBx_DACINTn field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
INT	DAC Interval These bits specify the interval value for DAC interval trigger. DAC interval trigger triggers DAC[1:0] update when the DAC interval counter is equal to the DACINT. Reading these bits returns the value of internal register that is effective for the current PDB cycle.

45.4.11 Pulse-Out n Enable register (PDBx_POEN)

Address: Base address + 190h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																POEN															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PDBx_POEN field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
POEN	PDB Pulse-Out Enable Enables the pulse output. Only lower Y bits are implemented in this MCU. 0 PDB Pulse-Out disabled 1 PDB Pulse-Out enabled

45.4.12 Pulse-Out n Delay register (PDBx_POnDLY)

Address: Base address + 194h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 1d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	DLY1																DLY2															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

PDBx_POnDLY field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 DLY1	PDB Pulse-Out Delay 1 Specifies the delay 1 value for the PDB Pulse-Out. Pulse-Out goes high when the PDB counter is equal to the DLY1. Reading this field returns the value of internal register that is effective for the current PDB cycle.
DLY2	PDB Pulse-Out Delay 2 Specifies the delay 2 value for the PDB Pulse-Out. Pulse-Out goes low when the PDB counter is equal to the DLY2. Reading this field returns the value of internal register that is effective for the current PDB cycle.

45.5 Functional description

45.5.1 PDB pre-trigger and trigger outputs

The PDB contains a counter whose output is compared to several different digital values. If the PDB is enabled, then a trigger input event will reset the counter and make it start to count. A trigger input event is defined as a rising edge being detected on a selected trigger input source, or if a software trigger is selected and SC[SWTRIG] is written with 1. For each channel, a delay *m* determines the time between assertion of the trigger input event to the time at which changes in the pre-trigger *m* output signal are started. The time is defined as:

- Trigger input event to pre-trigger $m = (\text{prescaler} \times \text{multiplication factor} \times \text{delay } m) + 2$ peripheral clock cycles
- Add 1 additional peripheral clock cycle to determine the time when the channel trigger output changes.

Each channel is associated with 1 ADC block. PDB channel n pre-trigger outputs 0 to M ; each pre-trigger output is connected to ADC hardware trigger select and hardware trigger inputs. The pre-triggers are used to precondition the ADC block before the actual trigger occurs. When the ADC receives the rising edge of the trigger, the ADC will start the conversion according to the precondition determined by the pre-triggers. The ADC contains M sets of configuration and result registers, allowing it to alternate conversions between M different analog sources (like a ping-pong game). The pre-trigger outputs are used to specify which signal will be sampled next. When a pre-trigger m is asserted, the ADC conversion is triggered with set m of the configuration and result registers.

The waveforms shown in the following diagram show the pre-trigger and trigger outputs of PDB channel n . The delays can be independently set using the CHnDLYm registers, and the pre-triggers can be enabled or disabled in CHnC1[EN[m]] .

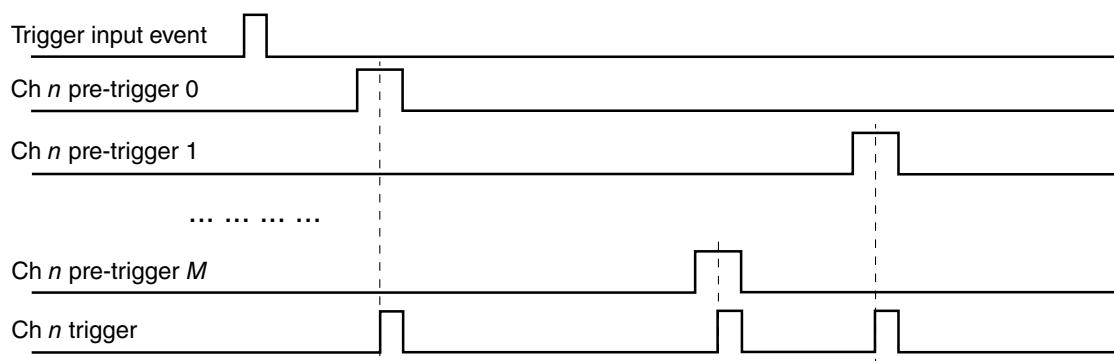


Figure 45-2. Pre-trigger and trigger outputs

The delay in CHnDLYm register can be optionally bypassed, if CHnC1[TOS[m]] is cleared. In this case, when the trigger input event occurs, the pre-trigger m is asserted after 2 peripheral clock cycles.

The PDB can be configured for back-to-back operation. Back-to-back operation enables the ADC conversion completions to trigger the next PDB channel pre-trigger and trigger outputs, so that the ADC conversions can be triggered on the next set of configuration and results registers. When back-to-back operation is enabled by setting CHnC1[BB[m]] , then the delay m is ignored and the pre-trigger m is asserted 2 peripheral cycles after the acknowledgment m is received. The acknowledgment connections in this MCU are described in [Back-to-back acknowledgment connections](#).

When a pre-trigger from a PDB channel n is asserted, the associated lock of the pre-trigger becomes active. The associated lock is released by the rising edge of the corresponding $\text{ADCnSC1}[\text{COCO}]$; the $\text{ADCnSC1}[\text{COCO}]$ should be cleared after the conversion result is read, so that the next rising edge of $\text{ADCnSC1}[\text{COCO}]$ can be generated to clear the lock later. The lock becomes inactive when:

- the rising edge of corresponding $\text{ADCnSC1}[\text{COCO}]$ occurs,
- or the corresponding PDB pre-trigger is disabled,
- or the PDB is disabled

The channel n trigger output is suppressed when any of the locks of the pre-triggers in channel n is active. If a new pre-trigger m asserts when there is active lock in the PDB channel n , then a register flag bit $\text{CHnS}[\text{ERR}[m]]$ (associated with the pre-trigger m) is set. If $\text{SC}[\text{PDBEIE}]$ is set, then the sequence error interrupt is generated. A sequence error typically happens because the delay m is set too short and the pre-trigger m asserts before the previously triggered ADC conversion finishes.

When the PDB counter reaches the value set in IDLY register, the $\text{SC}[\text{PDBIF}]$ flag is set. A PDB interrupt can be generated if $\text{SC}[\text{PDBIE}]$ is set and $\text{SC}[\text{DMAEN}]$ is cleared. If $\text{SC}[\text{DMAEN}]$ is set, then the PDB requests a DMA transfer when the $\text{SC}[\text{PDBIF}]$ flag is set.

The modulus value in the MOD register is used to reset the counter back to zero at the end of the count. If $\text{SC}[\text{CONT}]$ is set, then the counter will then resume a new count; otherwise, the counter operation will stop until the next trigger input event occurs.

45.5.2 PDB trigger input source selection

The PDB has up to 15 trigger input sources, namely Trigger-In 0 to Trigger-In 14. They are connected to on-chip or off-chip event sources. The PDB can be triggered by software through $\text{SC}[\text{SWTRIG}]$.

For the trigger input sources implemented in this MCU, see chip configuration information.

45.5.3 DAC interval trigger outputs

PDB can generate the interval triggers for DACs to update their outputs periodically. DAC interval counter x is reset and started when a trigger input event occurs if $\text{DACINTCx}[\text{EXT}]$ is cleared. When the interval counter x is equal to the value set in DACINTx register, the DAC interval trigger x output generates a pulse of one peripheral clock cycle width to update the DACx . If $\text{DACINTCx}[\text{EXT}]$ is set, the DAC interval

counter is bypassed and the interval trigger output x generates a pulse following the detection of a rising edge on the DAC external trigger input. The counter and interval trigger can be disabled by clearing the DACINTC $_x$ [TOE].

DAC interval counters are also reset when the PDB counter reaches the MOD register value; therefore, when the PDB counter rolls over to zero, the DAC interval counters starts anew.

The DAC interval trigger pulse and the ADC pre-trigger/trigger pulses together allow precise timing of DAC updates and ADC measurements. This is outlined in the typical use case described in the following diagram.

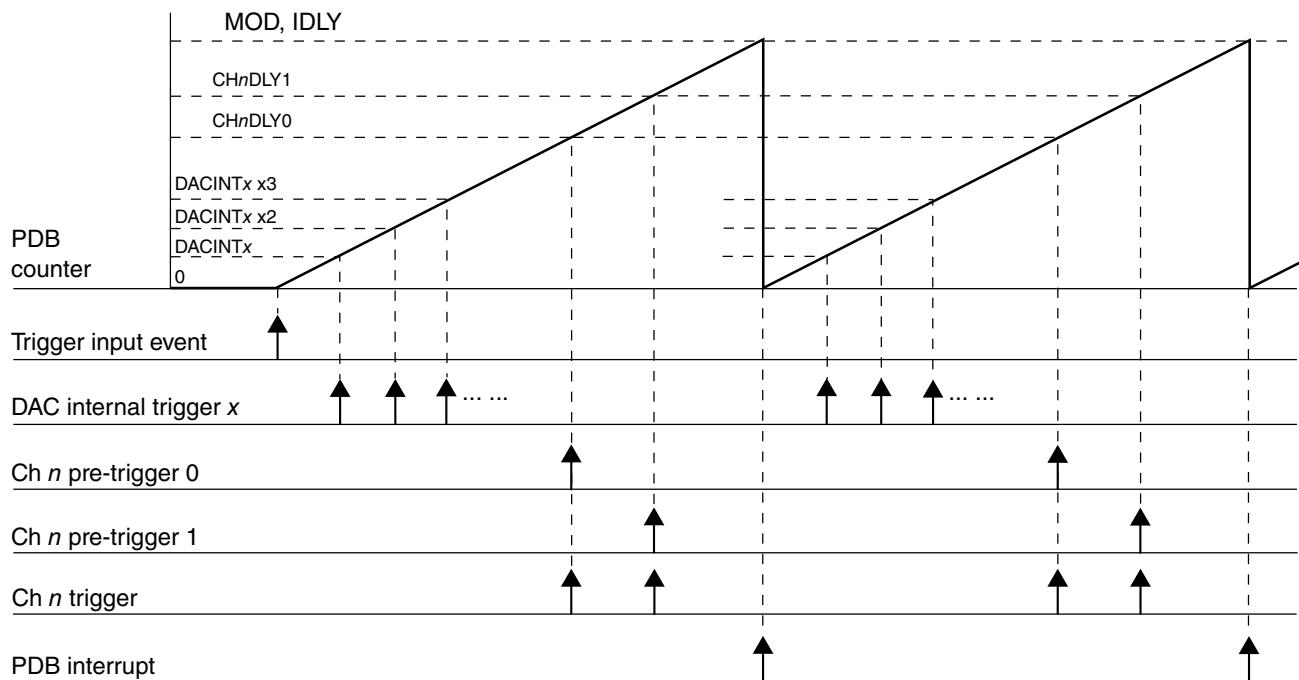


Figure 45-3. PDB ADC triggers and DAC interval triggers use case

NOTE

Because the DAC interval counters share the prescaler with PDB counter, PDB must be enabled if the DAC interval trigger outputs are used in the applications.

45.5.4 Pulse-Out's

PDB can generate pulse outputs of configurable width. When PDB counter reaches the value set in POyDLY[DLY1], the Pulse-Out goes high; when the counter reaches POyDLY[DLY2], it goes low. POyDLY[DLY2] can be set either greater or less than POyDLY[DLY1].

ADC pre-trigger/trigger outputs and Pulse-Out generation have the same time base, because they both share the PDB counter.

The pulse-out connections implemented in this MCU are described in the device's chip configuration details.

45.5.5 Updating the delay registers

The following registers control the timing of the PDB operation; and in some of the applications, they may need to become effective at the same time.

- PDB Modulus register (MOD)
- PDB Interrupt Delay register (IDLY)
- PDB Channel n Delay m register (CH n DLY m)
- DAC Interval x register (DACINT x)
- PDB Pulse-Out y Delay register (PO y DLY)

The internal registers of them are buffered and any values written to them are written first to their buffers. The circumstances that cause their internal registers to be updated with the values from the buffers are summarized as shown in the table below.

Table 45-7. Circumstances of update to the delay registers

SC[LDMOD]	Update to the delay registers
00	The internal registers are loaded with the values from their buffers immediately after 1 is written to SC[LDOK].
01	The PDB counter reaches the MOD register value after 1 is written to SC[LDOK].
10	A trigger input event is detected after 1 is written to SC[LDOK].
11	Either the PDB counter reaches the MOD register value, or a trigger input event is detected, after 1 is written to SC[LDOK].

After 1 is written to SC[LDOK], the buffers cannot be written until the values in buffers are loaded into their internal registers. SC[LDOK] is self-cleared when the internal registers are loaded, so the application code can read it to determine the updates to the internal registers.

The following diagrams show the cases of the internal registers being updated with SC[LDMOD] is 00 and x1.

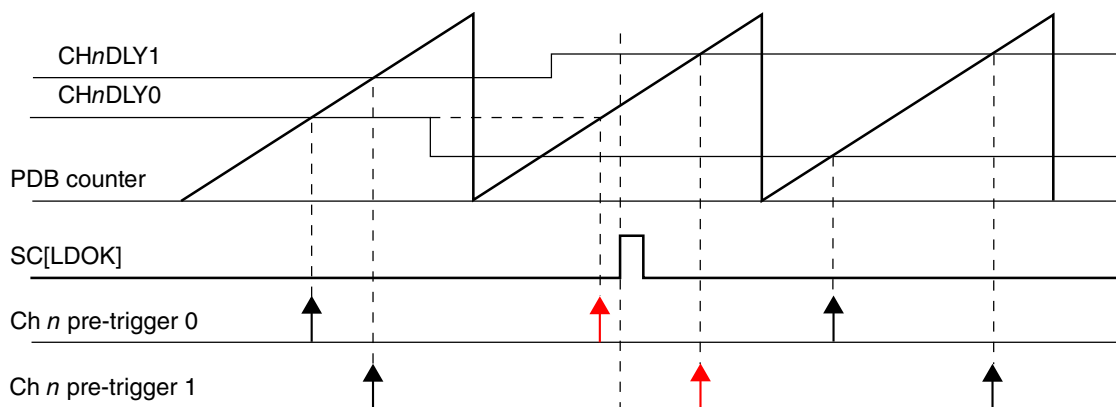


Figure 45-4. Registers update with SC[LDMOD] = 00

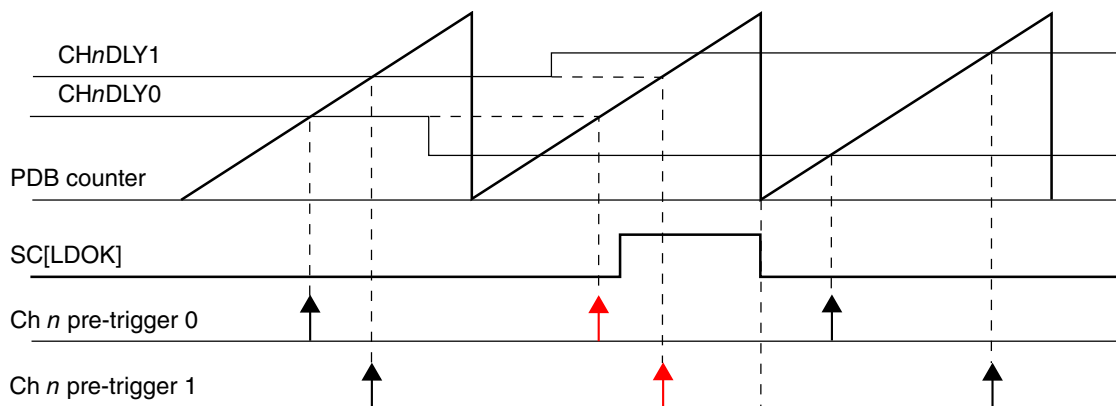


Figure 45-5. Registers update with SC[LDMOD] = x1

45.5.6 Interrupts

PDB can generate two interrupts: PDB interrupt and PDB sequence error interrupt. The following table summarizes the interrupts.

Table 45-8. PDB interrupt summary

Interrupt	Flags	Enable bit
PDB Interrupt	SC[PDBIF]	SC[PDBIE] = 1 and SC[DMAEN] = 0
PDB Sequence Error Interrupt	CHnS[ERRm]	SC[PDBEIE] = 1

45.5.7 DMA

If SC[DMAEN] is set, PDB can generate a DMA transfer request when SC[PDBIF] is set. When DMA is enabled, the PDB interrupt is not issued.

45.6 Application information

45.6.1 Impact of using the prescaler and multiplication factor on timing resolution

Use of prescaler and multiplication factor greater than 1 limits the count/delay accuracy in terms of peripheral clock cycles (to the modulus of the prescaler X multiplication factor). If the multiplication factor is set to 1 and the prescaler is set to 2 then the only values of total peripheral clocks that can be detected are even values; if prescaler is set to 4 then the only values of total peripheral clocks that can be decoded as detected are mod(4) and so forth. If the applications need a really long delay value and use a prescaler set to 128, then the resolution would be limited to 128 peripheral clock cycles.

Therefore, use the lowest possible prescaler and multiplication factor for a given application.

Chapter 46

Quadrature Encoder/Decoder (ENC)

46.1 Chip-specific ENC information

46.1.1 ENC signal assignment

This device contains one ENC module. The ENC module input signals and output signal are connected to the XBARA module which provides the capability to drive the ENC module from external pins or from a Timer. Using timer functions to drive the ENC inputs can provide a mechanism for customers to test the ENC module is functioning without connected in the intended "incremental position sensor" for motor control.

The following table shows how these modules are configured.

Table 46-1. ENC Signal Assignment

ENC Signal	Assignment	Features/usage
PHASEA	XBARA_OUT44	quadrature waveform input
PHASEB	XBARA_OUT45	quadrature waveform input
INDEX	XBARA_OUT46	refresh/reload input
HOME	XBARA_OUT47	home position input
TRIGGER	XBARA_OUT48	clear/snapshot input
POSMATCH	XBARA_IN45	compare trigger output

46.1.2 Clocks

The fast peripheral clock is the only clock required by this module in normal operation.

46.2 Introduction

The enhanced quadrature Encoder/ decoder module provides interfacing capability to position/speed sensors used in industrial motor control applications. It has five input signals: PHASEA, PHASEB, INDEX, TRIGGER, and HOME. This module is used to decode shaft position, revolution count and speed.

46.2.1 Features

- Includes logic to decode quadrature signals
- Configurable digital filter for inputs
- 32-bit position counter capable of modulo counting
- 16-bit position difference register
- Maximum count frequency equals the peripheral clock rate
- Position counter can be initialized by software or external events
- Preloadable 16-bit revolution counter
- Inputs can be connected to a general purpose timer to aid low speed velocity measurements
- Quadrature decoder filter can be bypassed
- A watchdog timer to detect a non-rotating shaft condition
- Compare function to indicate when shaft has reached a defined position
- Optional interrupt when both PHASEA and PHASEB inputs change in the same cycle

46.2.2 Decoder Block Diagram

The following figure shows the block diagram of the quadrature decoder module.

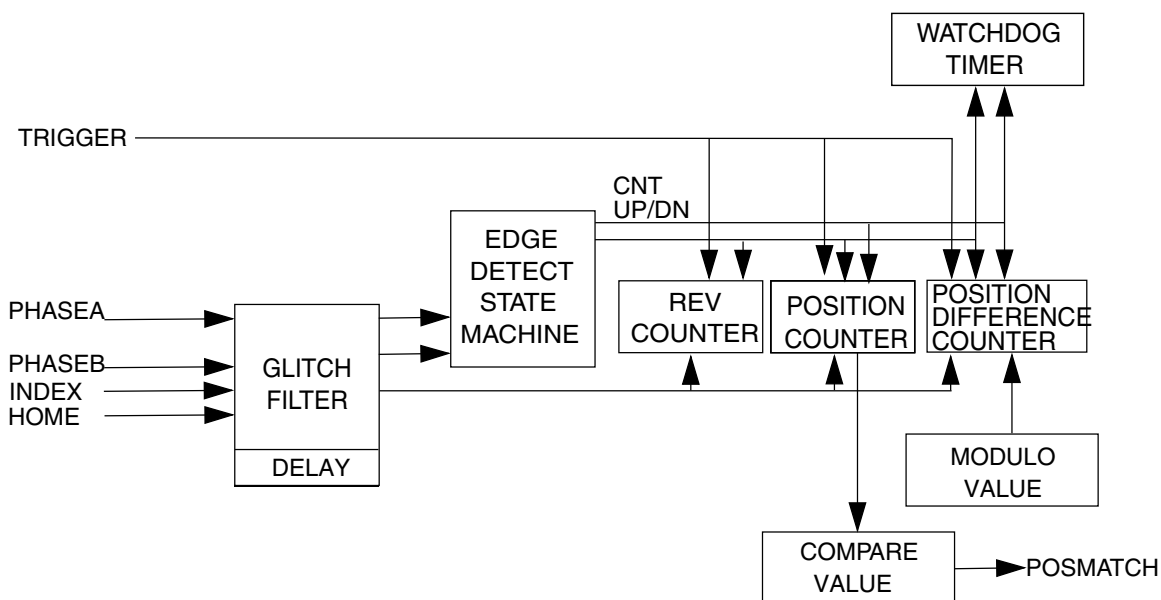


Figure 46-1. Quadrature Decoder Block Diagram

46.2.3 System Block Diagram

The following figure shows the block diagram of the quadrature decoder module integrated into an SoC.

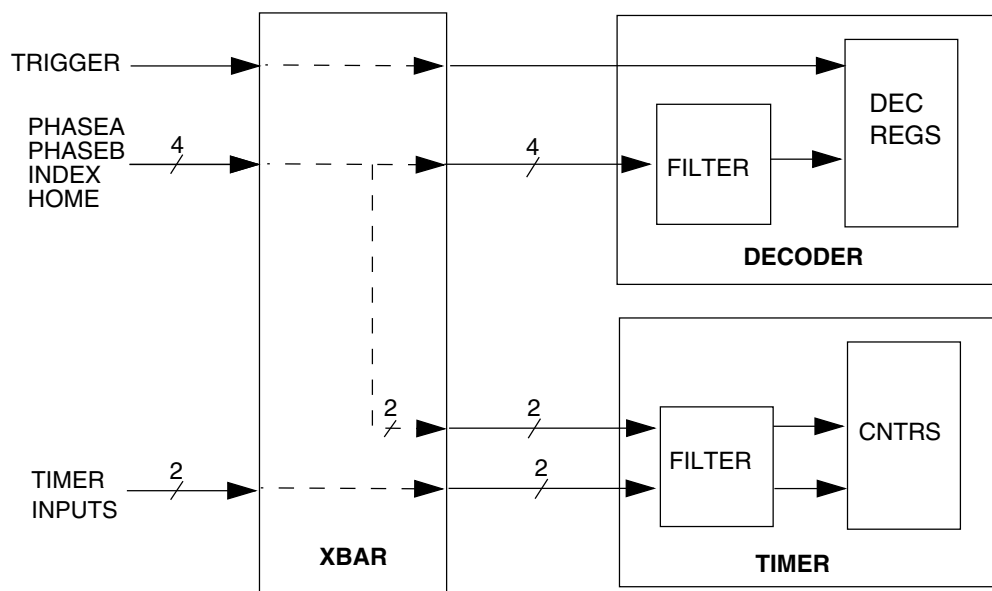


Figure 46-2. System Block Diagram

46.2.4 Glitch Filter

Because the logic of the quadrature decoder must sense transitions, the inputs are first run through a glitch filter. This filter has a digital delay line sampling multiple time points on the signal and verifying a stable new state before outputting this new state to the internal logic. The sample rate of this delay line is programmable to adapt to a variety of signal bandwidths.

46.2.5 Edge Detect State Machine

The edge detect state machine looks for changes in the four possible states of the filtered PHASEA and PHASEB inputs, calculating the direction of motion. This information is formatted as Count_Up and Count_Down signals. These signals are routed into up to three up/down counters:

1. Position counter
2. Revolution counter
3. Position difference counter

46.2.6 Position Counter

The 32-bit position counter calculates up or down on every count pulse, generated by the difference of PHASEA and PHASEB. This counter acts as an integrator, whose count value is proportional to position. The direction of the count is determined by the count up and count down signals. Position counters may be initialized to a predetermined value by one of three different methods:

1. Software-triggered event
2. INDEX signal transition
3. HOME signal transition

The INDEX and HOME signals can be programmed to interrupt the processor. Whenever the position counter is read, either UPOS or LPOS, a snapshot of the position counter, the position difference counter, and the revolution counters are each placed into their respective hold registers. The direction of the count is determined by Count_Up and Count_Down signals.

46.2.7 Position Difference Counter

The 16-bit position difference counter contains the position difference value occurring between each read of the position register. This register counts up or down on every count pulse. The counter acts as a differentiator whose count value is proportional to the change in position since the last time the position counter was read. When the position register, the position difference counter, or the revolution counter is read, the position difference of the counter's contents is copied into the position difference hold register (POSDH) and the position difference counter is cleared.

46.2.8 Position Difference Counter Hold

This register stores a copy of the position difference counter at the time the position register was read. When the position register is read, the position difference of the counter's contents is copied into the position difference hold register (POSDH) and the position difference counter is cleared.

46.2.9 Revolution Counter

The 16-bit up/down revolution counter is intended to count or integrate revolutions by counting index pulses. The direction of the count is determined by the Count_Up and Count_Down signals, determined by the Phase A and B inputs. A different count direction on the rising and falling edges of the index pulse indicates the quadrature encoder changed direction on the index pulse.

46.2.10 Pulse Accumulator Functionality

The logic can be programmed to integrate only selected transitions of the PHASEA signal. In this way the position counter is used as a pulse accumulator. The count direction is up. The pulse accumulator can also optionally be initialized by the INDEX input.

46.2.11 Watchdog Timer

A watchdog timer is included. It ensures the algorithm is indicating motion in the shaft. Two successive counts indicate proper operation and will reset the timer. The time-out value is programmable. When a time-out occurs, an interrupt to the processor can be generated.

46.3 Signal Descriptions

Four external signals are muxed to the four pins of a quad timer module. Two internal signals can be connected to other SoC resources.

46.3.1 Phase A Input (PHASEA)

The PHASEA input can be connected to one of the phases from a two-phase shaft quadrature encoder output. It is used by the quadrature decoder module in conjunction with the PHASEB input to indicate a decoder increment has passed, and to calculate its direction. PHASEA is the leading phase for a shaft rotating in the positive direction. PHASEA is the trailing phase for a shaft rotating in the negative direction. It can also be used as the single input when the quadrature decoder module is used as a single phase pulse accumulator.

The PHASEA input can also be an input capture channel for one of the timer modules via the Crossbar module (XBAR).

46.3.2 Phase B Input (PHASEB)

The PHASEB input is used as one of the phases from a two phase shaft quadrature encoder output. It is used by the quadrature decoder module in conjunction with the PHASEA input indicating a decoder increment has passed, and to calculate its direction. PHASEB is the trailing phase for a shaft rotating in the positive direction. PHASEB is the leading phase for a shaft rotating in the negative direction.

The PHASEB input can also be an input capture channel for one of the timer modules via the Crossbar module (XBAR).

46.3.3 Index Input (INDEX)

Normally connected to the index pulse output of a quadrature encoder, this pulse can optionally reset the position counter and the pulse accumulator of the quadrature decoder module. It also causes a change of state on the revolution counter. The direction of this change, increment or decrement, is calculated from the PHASEA and PHASEB inputs.

The INDEX input can also be an input capture channel for one of the timer modules via the Crossbar module (XBAR).

46.3.4 Home Switch Input (HOME)

The HOME input can be used by the quadrature decoder and the timer module. This input can be used to trigger the initialization of the position counters (UPOS and LPOS). Often this signal is connected to a sensor signaling the motor or machine, sending notification that it has reached a defined home position.

This general purpose signal can also be connected to the timer module via the Crossbar module (XBAR).

46.3.5 Trigger Input (TRIGGER)

The TRIGGER input can be used to clear the position counters (UPOS and LPOS) or to take a snapshot of the POS, REV, and POSD registers. Often this signal is connected to a periodic pulse generator or timer to indicate an elapsed time period.

46.3.6 Position Match Output (POSMATCH)

The POSMATCH output can be used to trigger a timer channel to record the time at which the position of the shaft matches the user defined compare value (COMP). Alternatively, it can be used to indicate when the position counters (UPOS and LPOS), revolution counter (REV), or position difference counter (POSD) registers are read in order to trigger a timer channel to record the time at which the position information was read.

46.4 Memory Map and Registers

The address of a register is the sum of a base address and an address offset. The base address is defined at the MCU level, while the address offset is defined at the module level. Refer to the specific chip documentation for the definition of the base address. All memory locations base and offsets are given in hex.

ENC memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4005_5000	Control Register (ENC_CTRL)	16	R/W	0000h	46.4.1/1263
4005_5002	Input Filter Register (ENC_FILT)	16	R/W	0000h	46.4.2/1265
4005_5004	Watchdog Timeout Register (ENC_WTR)	16	R/W	0000h	46.4.3/1266
4005_5006	Position Difference Counter Register (ENC_POSD)	16	R/W	0000h	46.4.4/1267
4005_5008	Position Difference Hold Register (ENC_POSDH)	16	R	0000h	46.4.5/1267
4005_500A	Revolution Counter Register (ENC_REV)	16	R/W	0000h	46.4.6/1268
4005_500C	Revolution Hold Register (ENC_REVH)	16	R	0000h	46.4.7/1268
4005_500E	Upper Position Counter Register (ENC_UPOS)	16	R/W	0000h	46.4.8/1268
4005_5010	Lower Position Counter Register (ENC_LPOS)	16	R/W	0000h	46.4.9/1269
4005_5012	Upper Position Hold Register (ENC_UPOSH)	16	R	0000h	46.4.10/1269
4005_5014	Lower Position Hold Register (ENC_LPOSH)	16	R	0000h	46.4.11/1269
4005_5016	Upper Initialization Register (ENC_UINIT)	16	R/W	0000h	46.4.12/1270
4005_5018	Lower Initialization Register (ENC_LINIT)	16	R/W	0000h	46.4.13/1270
4005_501A	Input Monitor Register (ENC_IMR)	16	R	0000h	46.4.14/1271
4005_501C	Test Register (ENC_TST)	16	R/W	0000h	46.4.15/1272
4005_501E	Control 2 Register (ENC_CTRL2)	16	R/W	0000h	46.4.16/1273
4005_5020	Upper Modulus Register (ENC_UMOD)	16	R/W	0000h	46.4.17/1275
4005_5022	Lower Modulus Register (ENC_LMOD)	16	R/W	0000h	46.4.18/1275
4005_5024	Upper Position Compare Register (ENC_UCOMP)	16	R/W	FFFFh	46.4.19/1276
4005_5026	Lower Position Compare Register (ENC_LCOMP)	16	R/W	FFFFh	46.4.20/1276

46.4.1 Control Register (ENC_CTRL)

Address: 4005_5000h base + 0h offset = 4005_5000h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Read	HIRQ	HIE	HIP	HNE	0	REV	PH1	XIRQ
Write	w1c				SWIP			w1c
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	XIE	XIP	XNE	DIRQ	DIE	WDE	CMPIRQ	CMPIE
Write				w1c			w1c	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENC_CTRL field descriptions

Field	Description
15 HIRQ	<p>HOME Signal Transition Interrupt Request</p> <p>This bit is set when a transition on the HOME signal occurs according to the CTRL[HNE] bit. If this bit is set and CTRL[HIE] is set, a HOME interrupt occurs. This bit will remain set until it is cleared by software. Write a one to this bit to clear.</p> <p>0 No interrupt 1 HOME signal transition interrupt request</p>
14 HIE	<p>HOME Interrupt Enable</p> <p>This read/write bit enables HOME signal interrupts.</p> <p>0 Disable HOME interrupts 1 Enable HOME interrupts</p>
13 HIP	<p>Enable HOME to Initialize Position Counters UPOS and LPOS</p> <p>This read/write bit allows the position counter to be initialized by the HOME signal.</p> <p>0 No action 1 HOME signal initializes the position counter</p>
12 HNE	<p>Use Negative Edge of HOME Input</p> <p>This read/write bit determines whether to use the positive or negative edge of the HOME input.</p> <p>0 Use positive going edge-to-trigger initialization of position counters UPOS and LPOS 1 Use negative going edge-to-trigger initialization of position counters UPOS and LPOS</p>
11 SWIP	<p>Software Triggered Initialization of Position Counters UPOS and LPOS</p> <p>Writing a one to this bit will transfer the UINIT and LINIT contents to UPOS and LPOS. This bit is always read as a zero.</p> <p>0 No action 1 Initialize position counter</p>

Table continues on the next page...

ENC_CTRL field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
10 REV	<p>Enable Reverse Direction Counting</p> <p>This read/write bit reverses the interpretation of the quadrature signal, changing the direction of count.</p> <p>0 Count normally 1 Count in the reverse direction</p>
9 PH1	<p>Enable Signal Phase Count Mode</p> <p>This read/write bit bypasses the quadrature decoder logic.</p> <p>0 Use standard quadrature decoder where PHASEA and PHASEB represent a two phase quadrature signal. 1 Bypass the quadrature decoder. A positive transition of the PHASEA input generates a count signal. The PHASEB input and the REV bit control the counter direction.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If CTRL[REV] = 0, PHASEB = 0, then count up • If CTRL[REV] = 0, PHASEB = 1, then count down • If CTRL[REV] = 1, PHASEB = 0, then count down • If CTRL[REV] = 1, PHASEB = 1, then count up
8 XIRQ	<p>INDEX Pulse Interrupt Request</p> <p>This bit is set when an INDEX interrupt occurs. It will remain set until cleared by software. The clearing procedure is to write a one to this bit.</p> <p>0 No interrupt has occurred 1 INDEX pulse interrupt has occurred</p>
7 XIE	<p>INDEX Pulse Interrupt Enable</p> <p>This read/write bit enables index interrupts.</p> <p>0 INDEX pulse interrupt is disabled 1 INDEX pulse interrupt is enabled</p>
6 XIP	<p>INDEX Triggered Initialization of Position Counters UPOS and LPOS</p> <p>This read/write bit enables the position counter to be initialized by the INDEX pulse.</p> <p>0 No action 1 INDEX pulse initializes the position counter</p>
5 XNE	<p>Use Negative Edge of INDEX Pulse</p> <p>This read/write bit determines the edge of the INDEX pulse used to initialize the position counter.</p> <p>0 Use positive transition edge of INDEX pulse 1 Use negative transition edge of INDEX pulse</p>
4 DIRQ	<p>Watchdog Timeout Interrupt Request</p> <p>This bit is set when a watchdog timeout interrupt occurs. It will remain set until cleared by software. Write a one to this bit to clear. This bit is also cleared when CTRL[WDE] is 0.</p> <p>0 No interrupt has occurred 1 Watchdog timeout interrupt has occurred</p>
3 DIE	<p>Watchdog Timeout Interrupt Enable</p> <p>This read/write bit enables watchdog timeout interrupts.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

ENC_CTRL field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Watchdog timer interrupt is disabled 1 Watchdog timer interrupt is enabled
2 WDE	Watchdog Enable This bit allows operation of the watchdog timer monitoring the PHASEA and PHASEB inputs for motor movement. 0 Watchdog timer is disabled 1 Watchdog timer is enabled
1 CMPIRQ	Compare Interrupt Request This bit is set when a match occurs between the counter and the COMP value. It will remain set until cleared by software. Write a one to this bit to clear. 0 No match has occurred 1 COMP match has occurred
0 CMPIE	Compare Interrupt Enable This read/write bit enables compare interrupts. 0 Compare interrupt is disabled 1 Compare interrupt is enabled

46.4.2 Input Filter Register (ENC_FILT)

This register sets the values of the input filter sample period (FILT_PER) and the input filter sample count (FILT_CNT).

The FILT_PER value should be set such that the sampling period is larger than the period of the expected noise. This way a noise spike will only corrupt one sample. The FILT_CNT value should be chosen to reduce the probability of noisy samples causing an incorrect transition to be recognized. The probability of an incorrect transition is defined as the probability of an incorrect sample raised to the power of FILT_CNT+3.

The values of FILT_PER and FILT_CNT must also be traded off against the desire for minimal latency in recognizing valid input transitions. Turning on the input filter (setting FILT_PER to a non-zero value) introduces a latency of ((FILT_CNT+3)*FILT_PER+2) IPBus clock periods.

The filter latency can be measured as follows: drive the quadrature decoder inputs, PHASEA, PHASEB, INDEX, and HOME monitoring the filtered output in the input monitor register (IMR). Determine how many IPBus clock cycles it takes before the output shows up, by using the following equations, where f is FILT_PER and s is FILT_CNT.

1. DELAY (IPBus clock cycles) = $f * (s+3) + 1$ (to read the filtered output)

2. $DELAY (IPBus \text{ clock cycles}) = f * (s+3) + 2$ (to monitor the output in the IMR)

One more additional IPBus clock cycle is needed to read the filtered output, and two more IPBus clock cycles are needed to monitor the filtered output in the IMR. The sample rate is set when it reaches the number f. The following examples employ the preceding equations:

- Example: when $f = 0$, the filter is bypassed. Therefore, $DELAY = 1$ or 2 clock cycles.
- Example: when $f = 5$ and $s = 2$, $DELAY = 5 * (2+3) + (1 \text{ or } 2) = 26$ or 27 clock cycles.

Address: $4005_5000h \text{ base} + 2h \text{ offset} = 4005_5002h$

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0					FILT_CNT			FILT_PER							
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENC_FILT field descriptions

Field	Description
15–11 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
10–8 FILT_CNT	Input Filter Sample Count These bits represent the number of consecutive samples that must agree prior to the input filter accepting an input transition. A value of 0x0 represents 3 samples. A value of 0x7 represents 10 samples. The value of FILT_CNT affects the input latency.
FILT_PER	Input Filter Sample Period These bits represent the sampling period (in IPBus clock cycles) of the decoder input signals. Each input is sampled multiple times at the rate specified by this field. If FILT_PER is 0x00 (default), then the input filter is bypassed. Bypassing the digital filter enables the position/position difference counters to operate with count rates up to the IPBus frequency. The value of FILT_PER affects the input latency. When changing FILT_PER from one non-zero value to another non-zero value, write a value of 0 first in order to clear the filter.

46.4.3 Watchdog Timeout Register (ENC_WTR)

This read/write register stores the timeout count for the quadrature decoder module watchdog timer. This timer is separate from the watchdog timer in the COP module.

Address: $4005_5000h \text{ base} + 4h \text{ offset} = 4005_5004h$

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	WDOG															
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENC_WTR field descriptions

Field	Description
WDOG	WDOG[15:0] is a binary representation of the number of clock cycles plus one that the watchdog timer counts before timing out and optionally generating an interrupt.

46.4.4 Position Difference Counter Register (ENC_POSD)

Address: 4005_5000h base + 6h offset = 4005_5006h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	POSD															
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENC_POSD field descriptions

Field	Description
POSD	<p>This read/write register contains the position change in value occurring between each read of the position register. The value of the position difference counter register (POSD) can be used to calculate velocity.</p> <p>The 16-bit position difference counter computes up or down on every count pulse. This counter acts as a differentiator whose count value is proportional to the change in position since the last time the position counter was read. When the position register, the position difference counter, or the revolution counter is read, the position difference counter's contents are copied into the position difference hold register (POSDH) and the position difference counter is cleared.</p>

46.4.5 Position Difference Hold Register (ENC_POSDH)

Address: 4005_5000h base + 8h offset = 4005_5008h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	POSDH															
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENC_POSDH field descriptions

Field	Description
POSDH	This read-only register contains a snapshot of the value of the POSD register. The value of the position difference hold register (POSDH) can be used to calculate velocity.

46.4.6 Revolution Counter Register (ENC_REV)

Address: 4005_5000h base + Ah offset = 4005_500Ah

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	REV															
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENC_REV field descriptions

Field	Description
REV	This read/write register contains the current value of the revolution counter.

46.4.7 Revolution Hold Register (ENC_REVH)

Address: 4005_5000h base + Ch offset = 4005_500Ch

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	REVH															
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENC_REVH field descriptions

Field	Description
REVH	This read-only register contains a snapshot of the value of the REV register.

46.4.8 Upper Position Counter Register (ENC_UPOS)

Address: 4005_5000h base + Eh offset = 4005_500Eh

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	POS[31:16]															
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENC_UPOS field descriptions

Field	Description
POS[31:16]	This read/write register contains the upper (most significant) half of the position counter. This is the binary count from the position counter.

46.4.9 Lower Position Counter Register (ENC_LPOS)

Address: 4005_5000h base + 10h offset = 4005_5010h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	POS[15:0]															
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENC_LPOS field descriptions

Field	Description
POS[15:0]	This read/write register contains the lower (least significant) half of the position counter. This is the binary count from the position counter.

46.4.10 Upper Position Hold Register (ENC_UPOSH)

Address: 4005_5000h base + 12h offset = 4005_5012h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	POSH[31:16]															
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENC_UPOSH field descriptions

Field	Description
POSH[31:16]	This read-only register contains a snapshot of the UPOS register.

46.4.11 Lower Position Hold Register (ENC_LPOSH)

Address: 4005_5000h base + 14h offset = 4005_5014h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	POSH[15:0]															
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENC_LPOSH field descriptions

Field	Description
POSH[15:0]	This read-only register contains a snapshot of the LPOS register.

46.4.12 Upper Initialization Register (ENC_UINIT)

Address: 4005_5000h base + 16h offset = 4005_5016h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	INIT[31:16]															
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENC_UINIT field descriptions

Field	Description
INIT[31:16]	This read/write register contains the value to be used to initialize the upper half of the position counter (UPOS).

46.4.13 Lower Initialization Register (ENC_LINIT)

Address: 4005_5000h base + 18h offset = 4005_5018h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	INIT[15:0]															
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENC_LINIT field descriptions

Field	Description
INIT[15:0]	This read/write register contains the value to be used to initialize the lower half of the position counter (LPOS).

46.4.14 Input Monitor Register (ENC_IMR)

This read-only register contains the values of the raw and filtered PHASEA, PHASEB, INDEX, and HOME input signals. The reset value depends on the values of the raw and filtered values of PHASEA, PHASEB, INDEX, and HOME. If these input pins are connected to a pull-up, bits 0–7 of the IMR are all ones. If these input pins are connected to a pull-down device, bits 0–7 are all zeros.

Address: 4005_5000h base + 1Ah offset = 4005_501Ah

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Read	0							
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	FPHA	FPHB	FIND	FHOM	PHA	PHB	INDEX	HOME
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENC_IMR field descriptions

Field	Description
15–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7 FPHA	This is the filtered version of PHASEA input.
6 FPHB	This is the filtered version of PHASEB input.
5 FIND	This is the filtered version of INDEX input.
4 FHOM	This is the filtered version of HOME input.
3 PHA	This is the raw PHASEA input.
2 PHB	This is the raw PHASEB input.
1 INDEX	This is the raw INDEX input.
0 HOME	This is the raw HOME input.

46.4.15 Test Register (ENC_TST)

This read/write register controls and sets the frequency of a quadrature signal generator. It provides a quadrature test signal to the inputs of the quadrature decoder module. The TEST_COUNT value is counted down to zero when the test module is enabled (TEN = 1) and the count is enabled (TCE = 1). Each count value of one represents a single quadrature cycle interpreted as a count of one by the position counter (UPOS and LPOS) if it is so enabled. Repeated writing of new values to TEST_COUNT can cause an extra phase transition and therefore an extra count by the position counter. The period field determines in IPBus clock cycles the length of each quadrature cycle phase. This register is a factory test feature; however, it may be useful to customers' software development and testing.

Address: 4005_5000h base + 1Ch offset = 4005_501Ch

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	TEN	TCE	QDN	TEST_PERIOD				TEST_COUNT								
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENC_TST field descriptions

Field	Description
15 TEN	Test Mode Enable This bit connects the test module to inputs of the quadrature decoder module. 0 Test module is not enabled 1 Test module is enabled
14 TCE	Test Counter Enable This bit connects the test counter to inputs of the quadrature decoder module. 0 Test count is not enabled 1 Test count is enabled
13 QDN	Quadrature Decoder Negative Signal When set, this bit generates a negative quadrature signal. Otherwise the signal is in a positive direction. 0 Leaves quadrature decoder signal in a positive direction 1 Generates a negative quadrature decoder signal
12–8 TEST_PERIOD	These bits hold the period of quadrature phase in IPBus clock cycles.
TEST_COUNT	These bits hold the number of quadrature advances to generate.

46.4.16 Control 2 Register (ENC_CTRL2)

Address: 4005_5000h base + 1Eh offset = 4005_501Eh

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Read	0				SABIRQ	SABIE	OUTCTL	REVMOD
Write					w1c			
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	ROIRQ	ROIE	RUIRQ	RUIE	DIR	MOD	UPDPOS	UPDHLD
Write	w1c		w1c					
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENC_CTRL2 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–12 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
11 SABIRQ	Simultaneous PHASEA and PHASEB Change Interrupt Request This bit indicates that the PHASEA and PHASEB inputs changed simultaneously (within a single clock period). This event typically indicates an error condition because quadrature coding requires only one of these inputs to change at a time. The bit remains set until it is cleared by software or a reset. Write 1 to this bit to clear it. 0 No simultaneous change of PHASEA and PHASEB has occurred. 1 A simultaneous change of PHASEA and PHASEB has occurred.
10 SABIE	Simultaneous PHASEA and PHASEB Change Interrupt Enable This read/write bit enables simultaneous PHASEA and PHASEB change interrupts based on SABIRQ being set. 0 Simultaneous PHASEA and PHASEB change interrupt disabled. 1 Simultaneous PHASEA and PHASEB change interrupt enabled.
9 OUTCTL	Output Control This bit is used to control the behavior of the POSMATCH output signal. This can control when a timer channel captures a time stamp. 0 POSMATCH pulses when a match occurs between the position counters (POS) and the compare value (COMP). 1 POSMATCH pulses when the UPOS, LPOS, REV, or POSD registers are read.
8 REVMOD	Revolution Counter Modulus Enable This bit is used to determine how the revolution counter (REV) is incremented/decremented. By default REV is controlled based on the count direction and the INDEX pulse. As an option, REV can be controlled using the roll-over/under detection during modulo counting. 0 Use INDEX pulse to increment/decrement revolution counter (REV). 1 Use modulus counting roll-over/under to increment/decrement revolution counter (REV).

Table continues on the next page...

ENC_CTRL2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
7 ROIRQ	<p>Roll-over Interrupt Request</p> <p>This bit is set when the position counter (POS) rolls over from the MOD value to the INIT value or from 0xffffffff to 0x00000000. It will remain set until cleared by software. Write a one to this bit to clear.</p> <p>0 No roll-over has occurred 1 Roll-over has occurred</p>
6 ROIE	<p>Roll-over Interrupt Enable</p> <p>This read/write bit enables roll-over interrupts based on CTRL2[ROIRQ] being set. This interrupt is combined with the index interrupt signal.</p> <p>0 Roll-over interrupt is disabled 1 Roll-over interrupt is enabled</p>
5 RUIRQ	<p>Roll-under Interrupt Request</p> <p>This bit is set when the position counter (POS) rolls under from the INIT value to the MOD value or from 0x00000000 to 0xffffffff. It will remain set until cleared by software. Write a one to this bit to clear.</p> <p>0 No roll-under has occurred 1 Roll-under has occurred</p>
4 RUIE	<p>Roll-under Interrupt Enable</p> <p>This read/write bit enables roll-under interrupts based on CTRL2[RUIRQ] being set. This interrupt is combined with the index interrupt signal.</p> <p>0 Roll-under interrupt is disabled 1 Roll-under interrupt is enabled</p>
3 DIR	<p>Count Direction Flag</p> <p>This read-only flag is used to indicate the direction of the last count.</p> <p>0 Last count was in the down direction 1 Last count was in the up direction</p>
2 MOD	<p>Enable Modulo Counting</p> <p>When set, this bit allows the position counters (UPOS and LPOS) to count in a modulo fashion using MOD and INIT as the upper and lower bounds of the counting range. During modulo counting when a count up is indicated and the position counter is equal to MOD, then the position counter will be reloaded with the value of INIT. When a count down is indicated and the position counter is equal to INIT, then the position counter will be reloaded with the value of MOD. When clear, then the values of MOD and INIT are ignored and the position counter wraps to zero when counting up from 0xffffffff and wraps to 0xffffffff when counting down from 0.</p> <p>0 Disable modulo counting 1 Enable modulo counting</p>
1 UPDPOS	<p>Update Position Registers</p> <p>When set, this bit allows the TRIGGER input to clear the POSD, REV, UPOS and LPOS registers. When clear, the POSD, REV, UPOS and LPOS registers ignore the TRIGGER input.</p> <p>0 No action for POSD, REV, UPOS and LPOS on rising edge of TRIGGER 1 Clear POSD, REV, UPOS and LPOS on rising edge of TRIGGER</p>

Table continues on the next page...

ENC_CTRL2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
0 UPDHLD	<p>Update Hold Registers</p> <p>When set, this bit allows the TRIGGER input to cause an update of the POSDH, REVH, UPOSH, and LPOSH registers. When clear, the hold registers are not updated by the TRIGGER input. Updating the POSDH register will also cause the POSD register to be cleared.</p> <p>0 Disable updates of hold registers on rising edge of TRIGGER 1 Enable updates of hold registers on rising edge of TRIGGER</p>

46.4.17 Upper Modulus Register (ENC_UMOD)

Address: 4005_5000h base + 20h offset = 4005_5020h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	MOD[31:16]															
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENC_UMOD field descriptions

Field	Description
MOD[31:16]	This read/write register contains the upper (most significant) half of the modulus register. MOD acts as the upper bound during modulo counting and as the upper reload value when rolling over from the lower bound.

46.4.18 Lower Modulus Register (ENC_LMOD)

Address: 4005_5000h base + 22h offset = 4005_5022h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	MOD[15:0]															
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENC_LMOD field descriptions

Field	Description
MOD[15:0]	This read/write register contains the lower (least significant) half of the modulus register. MOD acts as the upper bound during modulo counting and as the upper reload value when rolling over from the lower bound.

46.4.19 Upper Position Compare Register (ENC_UCOMP)

Address: 4005_5000h base + 24h offset = 4005_5024h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	COMP[31:16]															
Write																
Reset	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

ENC_UCOMP field descriptions

Field	Description
COMP[31:16]	This read/write register contains the upper (most significant) half of the position compare register. When the value of POS matches the value of COMP, the CTRL[CMPIRQ] flag is set and the POSMATCH output is asserted.

46.4.20 Lower Position Compare Register (ENC_LCOMP)

Address: 4005_5000h base + 26h offset = 4005_5026h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	COMP[15:0]															
Write																
Reset	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

ENC_LCOMP field descriptions

Field	Description
COMP[15:0]	This read/write register contains the lower (least significant) half of the position compare register. When the value of POS matches the value of COMP, the CTRL[CMPIRQ] flag is set and the POSMATCH output is asserted.

46.5 Functional Description

The following timing diagram shows the basic operation of a quadrature incremental position quadrature decoder.

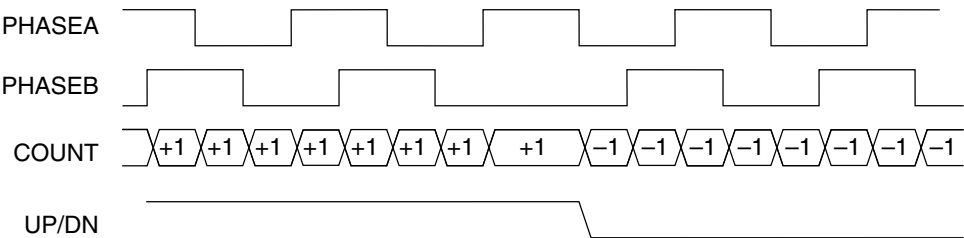


Figure 46-3. Quadrature Decoder Signals

46.5.1 Positive versus Negative Direction

A typical quadrature encoder has three outputs:

1. PHASEA signal
2. PHASEB signal
3. INDEX pulse (not shown)

If PHASEA leads PHASEB, then motion is in the positive direction. If PHASEA trails PHASEB, then motion is in the negative direction. Transitions on these phases can be integrated to yield position or differentiated to yield velocity. The quadrature decoder is designed to perform these functions in hardware.

46.5.2 Prescaler for Slow or Fast Speed Measurement

For a fast moving shaft encoder, the speed can be computed by calculating the change in the position counter per unit time, or by reading the position difference counter register (POSD) and calculating speed. For applications with slow motor speeds and low line count quadrature encoders, the timer module enables high resolution velocity measurements by measuring the time period between quadrature phases. The timer module uses a 16-bit free running counter operated from a prescaled version of the IPBus clock. The prescaler divides the IPBus clock by values ranging from 1 to 128. A 60 MHz IPBus clock frequency would yield a resolution of from 17 ns to 2.1 μ s and a maximum count period of from 1.09 ms to 140 ms. For example, with a 1000 tooth decoder, speeds could be calculated down to 0.11 rpm using a prescaler.

46.5.3 Holding Registers and Initializing Registers

Hold registers are associated with three counters:

1. Position
2. Position difference
3. Revolution

When any of the counter registers is read, the contents of each counter register is written to the corresponding hold register. Taking a snapshot of the counters' values provides a consistent view of a system position and a velocity to be attained. The POSMATCH output can be used in conjunction with a timer channel to capture a time stamp of when these registers are read.

The position counter is 32 bits wide. To ensure it can be reliably initialized with two 16-bit accesses, two registers, an upper and a lower initialization register, are provided. The upper initialization register (UNIT) and lower initialization register (LINIT) should be modified with the desired value. Next, the position counter can be loaded by writing 1 to CTRL[SWIP]. Alternatively, either CTRL[XIP] or CTRL[HIP] can enable the position counter to be initialized in response to a HOME or INDEX signal transition.

46.6 Resets

There are no special requirements. This module is reset by any system reset.

46.7 Clocks

The IPBus clock is the only clock required by this module in normal operation.

46.8 Interrupts

The following table lists the module interrupts.

Table 46-2. Interrupt Summary

Core Interrupt	Interrupt Flag	Interrupt Enable	Description
ipi_int_home	CTRL[HIRQ]	CTRL[HIE]	HOME signal transition interrupt
ipi_int_index	CTRL[XIRQ]	CTRL[XIE]	INDEX signal transition interrupt or roll-over/ under interrupt
	CTRL2[ROIRQ]	CTRL2[ROIE]	
	CTRL2[RUIRQ]	CTRL2[RUIE]	
ipi_int_wdog	CTRL[DIRQ]	CTRL[DIE]	Watchdog timeout interrupt
ipi_int_comp	CTRL[CMPIRQ]	CTRL[CMPIE]	Compare match interrupt
ipi_int_sab	CTRL2[SABIRQ]	CTRL2[SABIE]	Simultaneous PHASEA and PHASEB change interrupt

Chapter 47

Enhanced Flex Pulse Width Modulator (eFlexPWM)

47.1 Chip-specific eFlexPWM information

This device has two FlexPWM modules, FlexPWM0 and FlexPWM1.

47.1.1 PWM0 with nano-edge placement

47.1.1.1 PWM0 inputs

For this device, PWM0 has the following signal input connections.

Input synchronisation to the four submodules of the eFlexPWM are fed from the XBARA module, which provides flexible triggering and fault inputs from other peripherals.

PWM0 signal	Connected to
PWM0_EXT_A0	XBARA_OUT20
PWM0_EXT_A1	XBARA_OUT21
PWM0_EXT_A2	XBARA_OUT22
PWM0_EXT_A3	XBARA_OUT23
PWM0_EXT_SYNC0	XBARA_OUT24
PWM0_EXT_SYNC1	XBARA_OUT25
PWM0_EXT_SYNC2	XBARA_OUT26
PWM0_EXT_SYNC3	XBARA_OUT27
PWM0_EXT_CLK	XBARA_OUT28
PWM0_FAULT0	XBARA_OUT29
PWM0_FAULT1	XBARA_OUT30
PWM0_FAULT2	XBARA_OUT31
PWM0_FAULT3	XBARA_OUT32
PWM0_FORCE	XBARA_OUT33
PWM0_EXTB0	R0_PWM output of HSADC0

Table continues on the next page...

PWM0 signal	Connected to
PWM0_EXTB1	R1_PWM output of HSADC0
PWM0_EXTB2	R2_PWM output of HSADC0
PWM0_EXTB3	R3_PWM output of HSADC0

47.1.1.2 PWM0 outputs

For this device, PWM0 has the following signal output connections.

Output trigger events from PWM0 are used to trigger other peripherals to take action via the XBARA and XBARB and AOI module. Each of the four sub modules have two trigger outputs (TRIG0) and TRIG1).

- PWM0_OUT_TRIG0_0 output is connected to XBARA_IN20 and XBARB_IN8
- PWM0_OUT_TRIG0_1 output is connected to XBARA_IN21 and XBARB_IN8
- PWM0_OUT_TRIG1_0 output is connected to XBARA_IN22 and XBARB_IN9
- PWM0_OUT_TRIG1_1 output is connected to XBARA_IN23 and XBARB_IN9
- PWM0_OUT_TRIG2_0 output is connected to XBARA_IN24 and XBARB_IN10
- PWM0_OUT_TRIG2_1 output is connected to XBARA_IN25 and XBARB_IN10
- PWM0_OUT_TRIG3_0 output is connected to XBARA_IN26 and XBARB_IN11
- PWM0_OUT_TRIG3_1 output is connected to XBARA_IN27 and XBARB_IN11

Each submodule of the PWM0 can request a DMA transfer for updating their double buffered VALx registers.

- Submodule 0 , PWM0_WR0 output is connected to DMAMUX0 ch 6
- Submodule 1 , PWM0_WR1 output is connected to DMAMUX0 ch 7
- Submodule 2 , PWM0_WR2 output is connected to DMAMUX0 ch 8
- Submodule 3 , PWM0_WR3 output is connected to DMAMUX0 ch 9

Each submodule of the PWM0 can request a DMA transfer to read CVALx registers for captured values when configured as input captures.

- Submodule 0, PWM0_CP0 output is connected to DMAMUX0 ch 10
- Submodule 1, PWM0_CP1 output is connected to DMAMUX0 ch 11
- Submodule 2, PWM0_CP2 output is connected to DMAMUX0 ch 12
- Submodule 3, PWM0_CP3 output is connected to DMAMUX0 ch 13

47.1.2 PWM1 without nano-edge placement

47.1.2.1 PWM1 Inputs

For this device, the PWM1 has the following signal input connections.

Input synchronisation to the four submodules of the PWM1 are fed from the XBARA module, which provides flexible triggering and fault inputs from other peripherals.

PWM1 signal	Connected to
PWM1_EXT_A0	XBARA_OUT20
PWM1_EXT_A1	XBARA_OUT21
PWM1_EXT_A2	XBARA_OUT22
PWM1_EXT_A3	XBARA_OUT23
PWM1_EXT_SYNC0	XBARA_OUT53
PWM1_EXT_SYNC1	XBARA_OUT54
PWM1_EXT_SYNC2	XBARA_OUT55
PWM1_EXT_SYNC3	XBARA_OUT56
PWM1_EXT_CLK	XBARA_OUT28
PWM1_FAULT0	XBARA_OUT29
PWM1_FAULT1	XBARA_OUT30
PWM1_FAULT2	XBARA_OUT31
PWM1_FAULT3	XBARA_OUT32
PWM1_FORCE	XBARA_OUT57
PWM1_EXTB0	R0_PWM output of HSADC1
PWM1_EXTB1	R1_PWM output of HSADC1
PWM1_EXTB2	R2_PWM output of HSADC1
PWM1_EXTB3	R3_PWM output of HSADC1

47.1.2.2 PWM1 outputs

For this device, the PWM1 has the following signal output connections.

Output trigger events from the PWM1 are used to trigger other peripherals to take action via the XBARA and XBARB and AOI module. Each of the four sub modules have two trigger outputs (TRIG0) and TRIG1).

- PWM1_OUT_TRIG0_0 output is connected to XBARA_IN52 and XBARB_IN28
- PWM1_OUT_TRIG0_1 output is connected to XBARA_IN52 and XBARB_IN28
- PWM1_OUT_TRIG1_0 output is connected to XBARA_IN53 and XBARB_IN29

- PWM1_OUT_TRIG1_1 output is connected to XBARA_IN53 and XBARB_IN29
- PWM1_OUT_TRIG2_0 output is connected to XBARA_IN54 and XBARB_IN30
- PWM1_OUT_TRIG2_1 output is connected to XBARA_IN54 and XBARB_IN30
- PWM1_OUT_TRIG3_0 output is connected to XBARA_IN56 and XBARB_IN31
- PWM1_OUT_TRIG3_1 output is connected to XBARA_IN56 and XBARB_IN31

Each submodule of the PWM1 can request a DMA transfer for updating their double buffered CVALx registers.

- Submodule 0 , PWM1_WR0 output is connected to DMAMUX1 ch 6
- Submodule 1 , PWM1_WR1 output is connected to DMAMUX1 ch 7
- Submodule 2 , PWM1_WR2 output is connected to DMAMUX1 ch 8
- Submodule 3 , PWM1_WR3 output is connected to DMAMUX1 ch 9

Each submodule of the PWM1 can request a DMA transfer to read VALx registers for captured values when configured as input captures.

- Submodule 0, PWM1_CP0 output is connected to DMAMUX1 ch 10
- Submodule 1, PWM1_CP1 output is connected to DMAMUX1 ch 11
- Submodule 2, PWM1_CP2 output is connected to DMAMUX1 ch 12
- Submodule 3, PWM1_CP3 output is connected to DMAMUX1 ch 13

47.2 Introduction

The pulse width modulator (PWM) module contains PWM submodules, each of which is set up to control a single half-bridge power stage. Fault channel support is provided.

This PWM module can generate various switching patterns, including highly sophisticated waveforms. It can be used to control all known Switched Mode Power Supplies (SMPS) topologies.

The primary difference between PWM0 and PWM1 is that PWM0 supports nano-edge placement whereas PWM1 supports digital dithering.

47.2.1 Features

- 16 bits of resolution for center, edge-aligned, and asymmetrical PWMs
- Fractional PWM clock generation for enhanced resolution of the PWM period and duty cycle
- Dithering to simulate enhanced resolution when nano-edge placement is not available
- PWM outputs that can operate as complementary pairs or independent channels
- Ability to accept signed numbers for PWM generation

- Independent control of both edges of each PWM output
- Support for synchronization to external hardware or other PWM
- Double buffered PWM registers
 - Integral reload rates from 1 to 16
 - Half cycle reload capability
- Multiple output trigger events can be generated per PWM cycle via hardware
- Support for double switching PWM outputs
- Fault inputs can be assigned to control multiple PWM outputs
- Programmable filters for fault inputs
- Independently programmable PWM output polarity
- Independent top and bottom deadtime insertion
- Each complementary pair can operate with its own PWM frequency and deadtime values
- Individual software control for each PWM output
- All outputs can be programmed to change simultaneously via a FORCE_OUT event
- PWM_X pin can optionally output a third PWM signal from each submodule
- Channels not used for PWM generation can be used for buffered output compare functions
- Channels not used for PWM generation can be used for input capture functions
- Enhanced dual edge capture functionality
- The option to supply the source for each complementary PWM signal pair from any of the following:
 - Crossbar module outputs
 - External ADC input, taking into account values set in ADC high and low limit registers

47.2.2 Modes of Operation

Be careful when using this module in stop, wait and debug operating modes.

CAUTION

Some applications require regular software updates for proper operation. Failure to provide regular software updates could result in destroying the hardware setup.

To accommodate this situation, PWM outputs are placed in their inactive states in stop mode, and they can optionally be placed in inactive states in wait and debug (EOnCE) modes. PWM outputs are reactivated (assuming they were active beforehand) when these modes are exited.

Table 47-1. Modes when PWM Operation is Restricted

Mode	Description
Stop	PWM outputs are inactive.
Wait	PWM outputs are driven or inactive as a function of CTRL2[WAITEN].
Debug	CPU and peripheral clocks continue to run, but the CPU may stall for periods of time. PWM outputs are driven or inactive as a function of CTRL2[DBGEN].

47.2.3 Block Diagram

The following figure is a block diagram of the PWM.

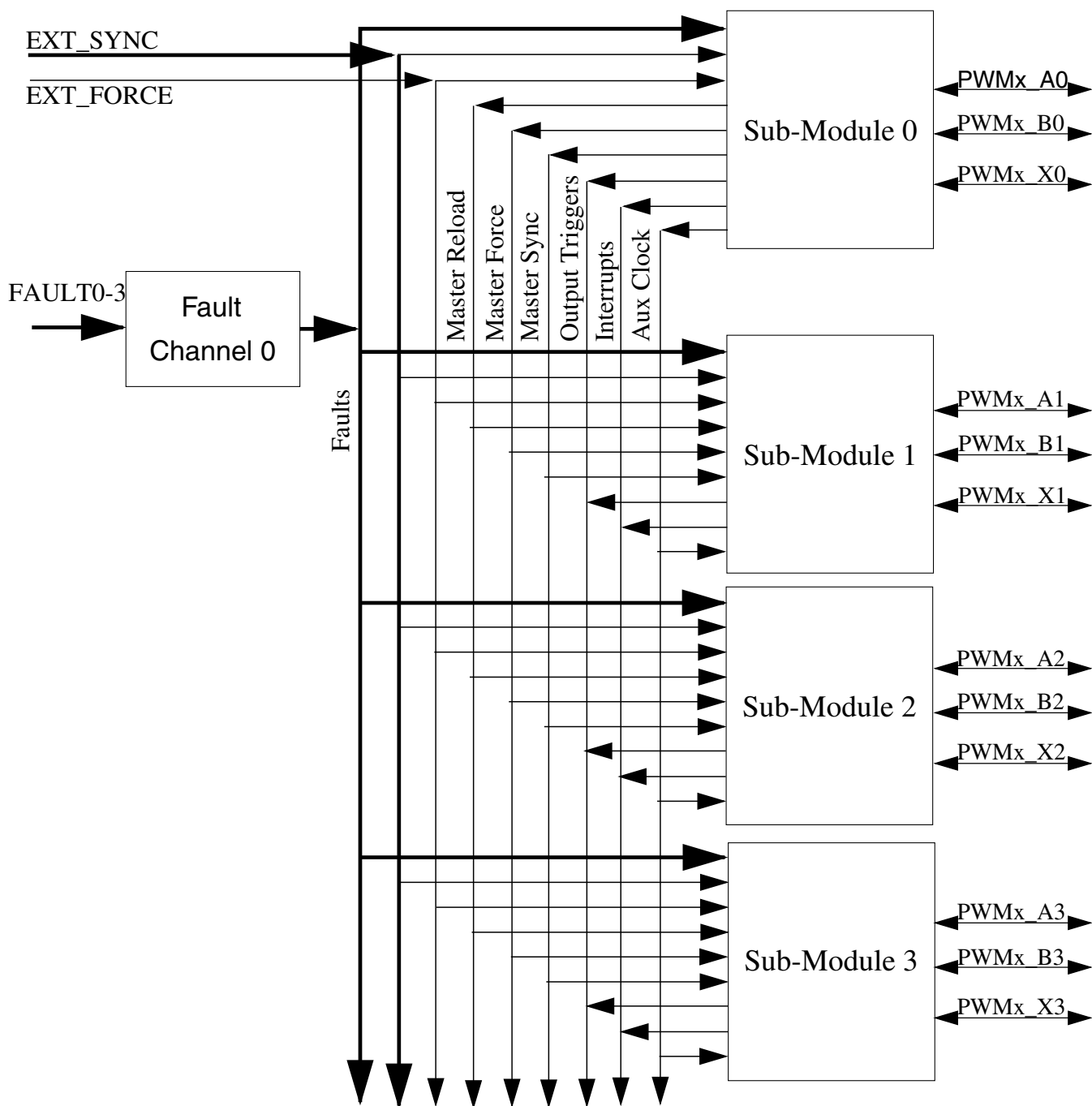


Figure 47-1. PWM Block Diagram

47.2.3.1 PWM Submodule

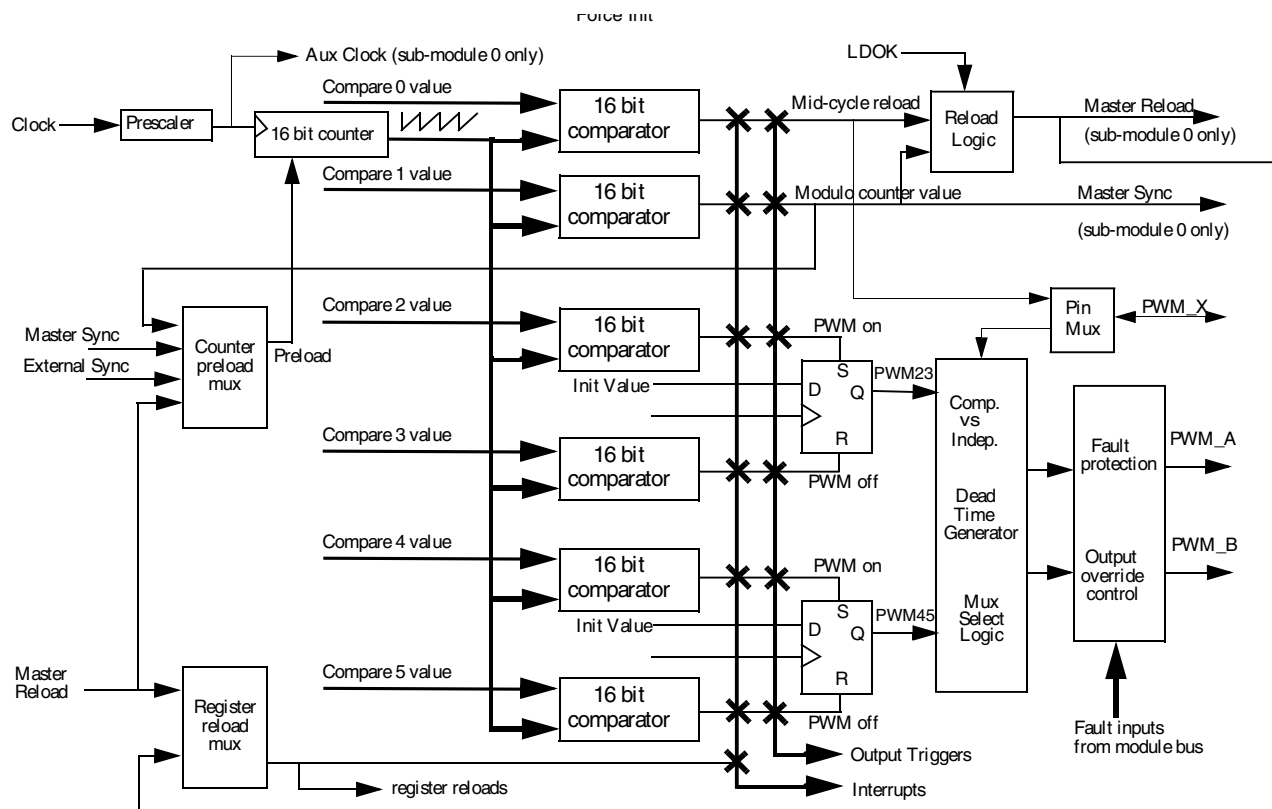


Figure 47-2. PWM Submodule Block Diagram

47.3 Signal Descriptions

The PWM has pins named PWMx_A[n], PWMx_B[n], PWMx_X[n], FAULT[n], PWMx_EXT[n]_SYNC, EXT_FORCE, PWMx_EXT_A[n], and PWMx_EXT_B[n]. The PWM also has an on-chip input called EXT_CLK and output signals called PWM[n]_OUT_TRIGx.

47.3.1 PWMx_A[n] and PWMx_B[n] - External PWM Output Pair

These pins are the output pins of the PWM channels. These pins can be independent PWM signals or a complementary pair. When not needed as an output, they can be used as inputs to the input capture circuitry.

47.3.2 PWMx_X[n] - Auxiliary PWM Output signal

These pins are the auxiliary output pins of the PWM channels. They can be independent PWM signals. When not needed as an output, they can be used as inputs to the input capture circuitry or used to detect the polarity of the current flowing through the complementary circuit at deadtime correction.

47.3.3 FAULT[n] - Fault Inputs

These are input pins for disabling selected PWM outputs.

47.3.4 PWMx_EXT_SYNC[n] - External Synchronization Signal

These input signals allow a source external to the PWM to initialize the PWM counter. In this manner, the PWM can be synchronized to external circuitry.

47.3.5 EXT_FORCE - External Output Force Signal

This input signal allows a source external to the PWM to force an update of the PWM outputs. In this manner, the PWM can be synchronized to external circuitry.

47.3.6 PWMx_EXT_A[n] and PWMx_EXT_B[n] - Alternate PWM Control Signals

These pins allow an alternate source to control the PWMx_A[n] and PWMx_B[n] outputs. Typically, either the PWMx_EXT_A[n] or PWMx_EXT_B[n] input (depending on the state of MCTRL0[IPOL]) is used for the generation of a complementary pair. Typical control signals include ADC conversion high/low limits, TMR outputs, GPIO inputs, and comparator outputs.

47.3.7 PWMx_OUT_TRIG0 and PWMx_OUT_TRIG1 - Output Triggers

These outputs allow the PWM submodules to control timing of ADC conversions. See the description of the Output Trigger Control Register for information about how to enable these outputs and how the compare registers match up to the output triggers.

47.3.8 EXT_CLK - External Clock Signal

This signal allows a source external to the PWM (typically a timer or an off-chip source) to control the PWM clocking. In this manner, the PWM can be synchronized to the timer, or multiple chips can be synchronized to each other.

47.4 Memory Map and Registers

The address of a register is the sum of a base address and an address offset. The base address is defined at the core level, and the address offset is defined at the module level. The PWM module has a set of registers for each PWM submodule, for the configuration logic, and for each fault channel. While the registers are 16-bit wide, they can be accessed in pairs as 32-bit registers.

Submodule registers are repeated for each PWM submodule. To designate which submodule they are in, register names are prefixed with SM0, SM1, SM2, and SM3. The base address of submodule 0 is the same as the base address for the PWM module as a whole. The base address of submodule 1 is offset \$30 from the base address for the PWM module as a whole. This \$30 offset is based on the number of registers in a submodule. The base address of submodule 2 is equal to the base address of submodule 1 plus this same \$30 offset. The pattern repeats for the base address of submodule 3.

The base address of the configuration registers is equal to the base address of the PWM module as a whole plus an offset of \$C0.

Fault channel registers are repeated for each fault channel. To designate which fault channel they are in, register names are prefixed with F0 and F1. The base address of fault channel 0 is equal to the base address of the PWM module as a whole plus an offset of \$C6. The base address of fault channel 1 is the base address of fault channel 0 + \$4. This \$4 offset is based on the number of registers in a fault channel. Each of the four fields in the fault channel registers corresponds to fault inputs 3-0.

PWM memory map

Address offset (hex)	Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
0	4003_3000	Counter Register (PWM0_SM0CNT)	16	R	0000h	47.4.1/1304
2	4003_3002	Initial Count Register (PWM0_SM0INIT)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.2/1304

Table continues on the next page...

PWM memory map (continued)

Address offset (hex)	Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4	4003_3004	Control 2 Register (PWM0_SM0CTRL2)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.3/1305
6	4003_3006	Control Register (PWM0_SM0CTRL)	16	R/W		47.4.4/1307
A	4003_300A	Value Register 0 (PWM0_SM0VAL0)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.5/1309
C	4003_300C	Fractional Value Register 1 (PWM0_SM0FRACVAL1)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.6/1310
E	4003_300E	Value Register 1 (PWM0_SM0VAL1)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.7/1311
10	4003_3010	Fractional Value Register 2 (PWM0_SM0FRACVAL2)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.8/1311
12	4003_3012	Value Register 2 (PWM0_SM0VAL2)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.9/1312
14	4003_3014	Fractional Value Register 3 (PWM0_SM0FRACVAL3)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.10/1312
16	4003_3016	Value Register 3 (PWM0_SM0VAL3)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.11/1313
18	4003_3018	Fractional Value Register 4 (PWM0_SM0FRACVAL4)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.12/1313
1A	4003_301A	Value Register 4 (PWM0_SM0VAL4)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.13/1314
1C	4003_301C	Fractional Value Register 5 (PWM0_SM0FRACVAL5)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.14/1314
1E	4003_301E	Value Register 5 (PWM0_SM0VAL5)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.15/1315
20	4003_3020	Fractional Control Register (PWM0_SM0FRCTRL)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.16/1315
22	4003_3022	Output Control Register (PWM0_SM0OCTRL)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.17/1317
24	4003_3024	Status Register (PWM0_SM0STS)	16	w1c	0000h	47.4.18/1319
26	4003_3026	Interrupt Enable Register (PWM0_SM0INTEN)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.19/1320
28	4003_3028	DMA Enable Register (PWM0_SM0DMAEN)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.20/1322
2A	4003_302A	Output Trigger Control Register (PWM0_SM0TCTRL)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.21/1323
2C	4003_302C	Fault Disable Mapping Register 0 (PWM0_SM0DISMAP0)	16	R/W	FFFFh	47.4.22/1325
30	4003_3030	Deadtime Count Register 0 (PWM0_SM0DTCNT0)	16	R/W	07FFh	47.4.23/1326
32	4003_3032	Deadtime Count Register 1 (PWM0_SM0DTCNT1)	16	R/W	07FFh	47.4.24/1326
34	4003_3034	Capture Control A Register (PWM0_SM0CAPTCTRLA)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.25/1327
36	4003_3036	Capture Compare A Register (PWM0_SM0CAPTCOMPA)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.26/1329

Table continues on the next page...

PWM memory map (continued)

Address offset (hex)	Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
38	4003_3038	Capture Control B Register (PWM0_SM0CAPCTRLB)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.27/1329
3A	4003_303A	Capture Compare B Register (PWM0_SM0CAPTCOMP)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.28/1331
3C	4003_303C	Capture Control X Register (PWM0_SM0CAPCTRLX)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.29/1332
3E	4003_303E	Capture Compare X Register (PWM0_SM0CAPTCOMPX)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.30/1333
40	4003_3040	Capture Value 0 Register (PWM0_SM0CVAL0)	16	R	0000h	47.4.31/1334
42	4003_3042	Capture Value 0 Cycle Register (PWM0_SM0CVAL0CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.32/1334
44	4003_3044	Capture Value 1 Register (PWM0_SM0CVAL1)	16	R	0000h	47.4.33/1335
46	4003_3046	Capture Value 1 Cycle Register (PWM0_SM0CVAL1CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.34/1335
48	4003_3048	Capture Value 2 Register (PWM0_SM0CVAL2)	16	R	0000h	47.4.35/1335
4A	4003_304A	Capture Value 2 Cycle Register (PWM0_SM0CVAL2CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.36/1336
4C	4003_304C	Capture Value 3 Register (PWM0_SM0CVAL3)	16	R	0000h	47.4.37/1336
4E	4003_304E	Capture Value 3 Cycle Register (PWM0_SM0CVAL3CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.38/1337
50	4003_3050	Capture Value 4 Register (PWM0_SM0CVAL4)	16	R	0000h	47.4.39/1337
52	4003_3052	Capture Value 4 Cycle Register (PWM0_SM0CVAL4CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.40/1337
54	4003_3054	Capture Value 5 Register (PWM0_SM0CVAL5)	16	R	0000h	47.4.41/1338
56	4003_3056	Capture Value 5 Cycle Register (PWM0_SM0CVAL5CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.42/1338
60	4003_3060	Counter Register (PWM0_SM1CNT)	16	R	0000h	47.4.1/1304
62	4003_3062	Initial Count Register (PWM0_SM1INIT)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.2/1304
64	4003_3064	Control 2 Register (PWM0_SM1CTRL2)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.3/1305
66	4003_3066	Control Register (PWM0_SM1CTRL)	16	R/W		47.4.4/1307
6A	4003_306A	Value Register 0 (PWM0_SM1VAL0)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.5/1309
6C	4003_306C	Fractional Value Register 1 (PWM0_SM1FRACVAL1)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.6/1310
6E	4003_306E	Value Register 1 (PWM0_SM1VAL1)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.7/1311
70	4003_3070	Fractional Value Register 2 (PWM0_SM1FRACVAL2)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.8/1311
72	4003_3072	Value Register 2 (PWM0_SM1VAL2)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.9/1312

Table continues on the next page...

PWM memory map (continued)

Address offset (hex)	Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
74	4003_3074	Fractional Value Register 3 (PWM0_SM1FRACVAL3)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.10/1312
76	4003_3076	Value Register 3 (PWM0_SM1VAL3)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.11/1313
78	4003_3078	Fractional Value Register 4 (PWM0_SM1FRACVAL4)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.12/1313
7A	4003_307A	Value Register 4 (PWM0_SM1VAL4)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.13/1314
7C	4003_307C	Fractional Value Register 5 (PWM0_SM1FRACVAL5)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.14/1314
7E	4003_307E	Value Register 5 (PWM0_SM1VAL5)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.15/1315
80	4003_3080	Fractional Control Register (PWM0_SM1FRCTRL)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.16/1315
82	4003_3082	Output Control Register (PWM0_SM1OCTRL)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.17/1317
84	4003_3084	Status Register (PWM0_SM1STS)	16	w1c	0000h	47.4.18/1319
86	4003_3086	Interrupt Enable Register (PWM0_SM1INTEN)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.19/1320
88	4003_3088	DMA Enable Register (PWM0_SM1DMAEN)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.20/1322
8A	4003_308A	Output Trigger Control Register (PWM0_SM1TCTRL)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.21/1323
8C	4003_308C	Fault Disable Mapping Register 0 (PWM0_SM1DISMAP0)	16	R/W	FFFFh	47.4.22/1325
90	4003_3090	Deadtime Count Register 0 (PWM0_SM1DTCNT0)	16	R/W	07FFh	47.4.23/1326
92	4003_3092	Deadtime Count Register 1 (PWM0_SM1DTCNT1)	16	R/W	07FFh	47.4.24/1326
94	4003_3094	Capture Control A Register (PWM0_SM1CAPTCTRLA)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.25/1327
96	4003_3096	Capture Compare A Register (PWM0_SM1CAPTCOMPA)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.26/1329
98	4003_3098	Capture Control B Register (PWM0_SM1CAPTCTRLB)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.27/1329
9A	4003_309A	Capture Compare B Register (PWM0_SM1CAPTCOMPB)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.28/1331
9C	4003_309C	Capture Control X Register (PWM0_SM1CAPTCTRLX)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.29/1332
9E	4003_309E	Capture Compare X Register (PWM0_SM1CAPTCOMPX)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.30/1333
A0	4003_30A0	Capture Value 0 Register (PWM0_SM1CVAL0)	16	R	0000h	47.4.31/1334

Table continues on the next page...

PWM memory map (continued)

Address offset (hex)	Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
A2	4003_30A2	Capture Value 0 Cycle Register (PWM0_SM1CVAL0CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.32/1334
A4	4003_30A4	Capture Value 1 Register (PWM0_SM1CVAL1)	16	R	0000h	47.4.33/1335
A6	4003_30A6	Capture Value 1 Cycle Register (PWM0_SM1CVAL1CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.34/1335
A8	4003_30A8	Capture Value 2 Register (PWM0_SM1CVAL2)	16	R	0000h	47.4.35/1335
AA	4003_30AA	Capture Value 2 Cycle Register (PWM0_SM1CVAL2CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.36/1336
AC	4003_30AC	Capture Value 3 Register (PWM0_SM1CVAL3)	16	R	0000h	47.4.37/1336
AE	4003_30AE	Capture Value 3 Cycle Register (PWM0_SM1CVAL3CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.38/1337
B0	4003_30B0	Capture Value 4 Register (PWM0_SM1CVAL4)	16	R	0000h	47.4.39/1337
B2	4003_30B2	Capture Value 4 Cycle Register (PWM0_SM1CVAL4CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.40/1337
B4	4003_30B4	Capture Value 5 Register (PWM0_SM1CVAL5)	16	R	0000h	47.4.41/1338
B6	4003_30B6	Capture Value 5 Cycle Register (PWM0_SM1CVAL5CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.42/1338
C0	4003_30C0	Counter Register (PWM0_SM2CNT)	16	R	0000h	47.4.1/1304
C2	4003_30C2	Initial Count Register (PWM0_SM2INIT)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.2/1304
C4	4003_30C4	Control 2 Register (PWM0_SM2CTRL2)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.3/1305
C6	4003_30C6	Control Register (PWM0_SM2CTRL)	16	R/W		47.4.4/1307
CA	4003_30CA	Value Register 0 (PWM0_SM2VAL0)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.5/1309
CC	4003_30CC	Fractional Value Register 1 (PWM0_SM2FRACVAL1)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.6/1310
CE	4003_30CE	Value Register 1 (PWM0_SM2VAL1)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.7/1311
D0	4003_30D0	Fractional Value Register 2 (PWM0_SM2FRACVAL2)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.8/1311
D2	4003_30D2	Value Register 2 (PWM0_SM2VAL2)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.9/1312
D4	4003_30D4	Fractional Value Register 3 (PWM0_SM2FRACVAL3)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.10/1312
D6	4003_30D6	Value Register 3 (PWM0_SM2VAL3)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.11/1313
D8	4003_30D8	Fractional Value Register 4 (PWM0_SM2FRACVAL4)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.12/1313
DA	4003_30DA	Value Register 4 (PWM0_SM2VAL4)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.13/1314
DC	4003_30DC	Fractional Value Register 5 (PWM0_SM2FRACVAL5)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.14/1314

Table continues on the next page...

PWM memory map (continued)

Address offset (hex)	Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
DE	4003_30DE	Value Register 5 (PWM0_SM2VAL5)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.15/1315
E0	4003_30E0	Fractional Control Register (PWM0_SM2FRCTRL)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.16/1315
E2	4003_30E2	Output Control Register (PWM0_SM2OCTRL)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.17/1317
E4	4003_30E4	Status Register (PWM0_SM2STS)	16	w1c	0000h	47.4.18/1319
E6	4003_30E6	Interrupt Enable Register (PWM0_SM2INTEN)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.19/1320
E8	4003_30E8	DMA Enable Register (PWM0_SM2DMAEN)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.20/1322
EA	4003_30EA	Output Trigger Control Register (PWM0_SM2TCTRL)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.21/1323
EC	4003_30EC	Fault Disable Mapping Register 0 (PWM0_SM2DISMAP0)	16	R/W	FFFFh	47.4.22/1325
F0	4003_30F0	Deadtime Count Register 0 (PWM0_SM2DTCNT0)	16	R/W	07FFh	47.4.23/1326
F2	4003_30F2	Deadtime Count Register 1 (PWM0_SM2DTCNT1)	16	R/W	07FFh	47.4.24/1326
F4	4003_30F4	Capture Control A Register (PWM0_SM2CAPTCTRLA)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.25/1327
F6	4003_30F6	Capture Compare A Register (PWM0_SM2CAPTCOMPA)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.26/1329
F8	4003_30F8	Capture Control B Register (PWM0_SM2CAPTCTRLB)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.27/1329
FA	4003_30FA	Capture Compare B Register (PWM0_SM2CAPTCOMPB)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.28/1331
FC	4003_30FC	Capture Control X Register (PWM0_SM2CAPTCTRLX)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.29/1332
FE	4003_30FE	Capture Compare X Register (PWM0_SM2CAPTCOMPX)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.30/1333
100	4003_3100	Capture Value 0 Register (PWM0_SM2CVAL0)	16	R	0000h	47.4.31/1334
102	4003_3102	Capture Value 0 Cycle Register (PWM0_SM2CVAL0CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.32/1334
104	4003_3104	Capture Value 1 Register (PWM0_SM2CVAL1)	16	R	0000h	47.4.33/1335
106	4003_3106	Capture Value 1 Cycle Register (PWM0_SM2CVAL1CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.34/1335
108	4003_3108	Capture Value 2 Register (PWM0_SM2CVAL2)	16	R	0000h	47.4.35/1335
10A	4003_310A	Capture Value 2 Cycle Register (PWM0_SM2CVAL2CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.36/1336

Table continues on the next page...

PWM memory map (continued)

Address offset (hex)	Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
10C	4003_310C	Capture Value 3 Register (PWM0_SM2CVAL3)	16	R	0000h	47.4.37/1336
10E	4003_310E	Capture Value 3 Cycle Register (PWM0_SM2CVAL3CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.38/1337
110	4003_3110	Capture Value 4 Register (PWM0_SM2CVAL4)	16	R	0000h	47.4.39/1337
112	4003_3112	Capture Value 4 Cycle Register (PWM0_SM2CVAL4CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.40/1337
114	4003_3114	Capture Value 5 Register (PWM0_SM2CVAL5)	16	R	0000h	47.4.41/1338
116	4003_3116	Capture Value 5 Cycle Register (PWM0_SM2CVAL5CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.42/1338
120	4003_3120	Counter Register (PWM0_SM3CNT)	16	R	0000h	47.4.1/1304
122	4003_3122	Initial Count Register (PWM0_SM3INIT)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.2/1304
124	4003_3124	Control 2 Register (PWM0_SM3CTRL2)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.3/1305
126	4003_3126	Control Register (PWM0_SM3CTRL)	16	R/W		47.4.4/1307
12A	4003_312A	Value Register 0 (PWM0_SM3VAL0)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.5/1309
12C	4003_312C	Fractional Value Register 1 (PWM0_SM3FRACVAL1)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.6/1310
12E	4003_312E	Value Register 1 (PWM0_SM3VAL1)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.7/1311
130	4003_3130	Fractional Value Register 2 (PWM0_SM3FRACVAL2)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.8/1311
132	4003_3132	Value Register 2 (PWM0_SM3VAL2)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.9/1312
134	4003_3134	Fractional Value Register 3 (PWM0_SM3FRACVAL3)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.10/1312
136	4003_3136	Value Register 3 (PWM0_SM3VAL3)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.11/1313
138	4003_3138	Fractional Value Register 4 (PWM0_SM3FRACVAL4)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.12/1313
13A	4003_313A	Value Register 4 (PWM0_SM3VAL4)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.13/1314
13C	4003_313C	Fractional Value Register 5 (PWM0_SM3FRACVAL5)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.14/1314
13E	4003_313E	Value Register 5 (PWM0_SM3VAL5)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.15/1315
140	4003_3140	Fractional Control Register (PWM0_SM3FRCTRL)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.16/1315
142	4003_3142	Output Control Register (PWM0_SM3OCTRL)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.17/1317
144	4003_3144	Status Register (PWM0_SM3STS)	16	w1c	0000h	47.4.18/1319
146	4003_3146	Interrupt Enable Register (PWM0_SM3INTEN)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.19/1320

Table continues on the next page...

PWM memory map (continued)

Address offset (hex)	Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
148	4003_3148	DMA Enable Register (PWM0_SM3DMAEN)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.20/1322
14A	4003_314A	Output Trigger Control Register (PWM0_SM3TCTRL)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.21/1323
14C	4003_314C	Fault Disable Mapping Register 0 (PWM0_SM3DISMAP0)	16	R/W	FFFFh	47.4.22/1325
150	4003_3150	Deadtime Count Register 0 (PWM0_SM3DTCNT0)	16	R/W	07FFh	47.4.23/1326
152	4003_3152	Deadtime Count Register 1 (PWM0_SM3DTCNT1)	16	R/W	07FFh	47.4.24/1326
154	4003_3154	Capture Control A Register (PWM0_SM3CAPTCTRLA)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.25/1327
156	4003_3156	Capture Compare A Register (PWM0_SM3CAPTCOMPA)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.26/1329
158	4003_3158	Capture Control B Register (PWM0_SM3CAPTCTRLB)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.27/1329
15A	4003_315A	Capture Compare B Register (PWM0_SM3CAPTCOMPB)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.28/1331
15C	4003_315C	Capture Control X Register (PWM0_SM3CAPTCTRLX)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.29/1332
15E	4003_315E	Capture Compare X Register (PWM0_SM3CAPTCOMPX)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.30/1333
160	4003_3160	Capture Value 0 Register (PWM0_SM3CVAL0)	16	R	0000h	47.4.31/1334
162	4003_3162	Capture Value 0 Cycle Register (PWM0_SM3CVAL0CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.32/1334
164	4003_3164	Capture Value 1 Register (PWM0_SM3CVAL1)	16	R	0000h	47.4.33/1335
166	4003_3166	Capture Value 1 Cycle Register (PWM0_SM3CVAL1CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.34/1335
168	4003_3168	Capture Value 2 Register (PWM0_SM3CVAL2)	16	R	0000h	47.4.35/1335
16A	4003_316A	Capture Value 2 Cycle Register (PWM0_SM3CVAL2CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.36/1336
16C	4003_316C	Capture Value 3 Register (PWM0_SM3CVAL3)	16	R	0000h	47.4.37/1336
16E	4003_316E	Capture Value 3 Cycle Register (PWM0_SM3CVAL3CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.38/1337
170	4003_3170	Capture Value 4 Register (PWM0_SM3CVAL4)	16	R	0000h	47.4.39/1337
172	4003_3172	Capture Value 4 Cycle Register (PWM0_SM3CVAL4CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.40/1337
174	4003_3174	Capture Value 5 Register (PWM0_SM3CVAL5)	16	R	0000h	47.4.41/1338

Table continues on the next page...

PWM memory map (continued)

Address offset (hex)	Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
176	4003_3176	Capture Value 5 Cycle Register (PWM0_SM3CVAL5CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.42/1338
180	4003_3180	Output Enable Register (PWM0_OUTEN)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.43/1339
182	4003_3182	Mask Register (PWM0_MASK)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.44/1340
184	4003_3184	Software Controlled Output Register (PWM0_SWCOUT)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.45/1341
186	4003_3186	PWM Source Select Register (PWM0_DTsrcSEL)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.46/1342
188	4003_3188	Master Control Register 0 (PWM0_MCTRL0)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.47/1344
18A	4003_318A	Master Control Register 1 (PWM0_MCTRL1)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.48/1345
18C	4003_318C	Fault Control Register (PWM0_FCTRL0)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.49/1346
18E	4003_318E	Fault Status Register (PWM0_FSTS0)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.50/1347
190	4003_3190	Fault Filter Register (PWM0_FFILT0)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.51/1348
192	4003_3192	Fault Test Register (PWM0_FTST0)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.52/1350
194	4003_3194	Fault Control 2 Register (PWM0_FCTRL20)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.53/1350
0	400B_3000	Counter Register (PWM1_SM0CNT)	16	R	0000h	47.4.1/1304
2	400B_3002	Initial Count Register (PWM1_SM0INIT)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.2/1304
4	400B_3004	Control 2 Register (PWM1_SM0CTRL2)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.3/1305
6	400B_3006	Control Register (PWM1_SM0CTRL)	16	R/W		47.4.4/1307
A	400B_300A	Value Register 0 (PWM1_SM0VAL0)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.5/1309
C	400B_300C	Fractional Value Register 1 (PWM1_SM0FRACVAL1)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.6/1310
E	400B_300E	Value Register 1 (PWM1_SM0VAL1)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.7/1311
10	400B_3010	Fractional Value Register 2 (PWM1_SM0FRACVAL2)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.8/1311
12	400B_3012	Value Register 2 (PWM1_SM0VAL2)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.9/1312
14	400B_3014	Fractional Value Register 3 (PWM1_SM0FRACVAL3)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.10/1312
16	400B_3016	Value Register 3 (PWM1_SM0VAL3)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.11/1313
18	400B_3018	Fractional Value Register 4 (PWM1_SM0FRACVAL4)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.12/1313
1A	400B_301A	Value Register 4 (PWM1_SM0VAL4)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.13/1314

Table continues on the next page...

PWM memory map (continued)

Address offset (hex)	Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
1C	400B_301C	Fractional Value Register 5 (PWM1_SM0FRACVAL5)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.14/1314
1E	400B_301E	Value Register 5 (PWM1_SM0VAL5)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.15/1315
20	400B_3020	Fractional Control Register (PWM1_SM0FRCTRL)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.16/1315
22	400B_3022	Output Control Register (PWM1_SM0OCTRL)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.17/1317
24	400B_3024	Status Register (PWM1_SM0STS)	16	w1c	0000h	47.4.18/1319
26	400B_3026	Interrupt Enable Register (PWM1_SM0INTEN)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.19/1320
28	400B_3028	DMA Enable Register (PWM1_SM0DMAEN)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.20/1322
2A	400B_302A	Output Trigger Control Register (PWM1_SM0TCTRL)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.21/1323
2C	400B_302C	Fault Disable Mapping Register 0 (PWM1_SM0DISMAP0)	16	R/W	FFFFh	47.4.22/1325
30	400B_3030	Deadtime Count Register 0 (PWM1_SM0DTCNT0)	16	R/W	07FFh	47.4.23/1326
32	400B_3032	Deadtime Count Register 1 (PWM1_SM0DTCNT1)	16	R/W	07FFh	47.4.24/1326
34	400B_3034	Capture Control A Register (PWM1_SM0CAPTCTRLA)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.25/1327
36	400B_3036	Capture Compare A Register (PWM1_SM0CAPTCOMPA)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.26/1329
38	400B_3038	Capture Control B Register (PWM1_SM0CAPTCTRLB)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.27/1329
3A	400B_303A	Capture Compare B Register (PWM1_SM0CAPTCOMPB)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.28/1331
3C	400B_303C	Capture Control X Register (PWM1_SM0CAPTCTRLX)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.29/1332
3E	400B_303E	Capture Compare X Register (PWM1_SM0CAPTCOMPX)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.30/1333
40	400B_3040	Capture Value 0 Register (PWM1_SM0CVAL0)	16	R	0000h	47.4.31/1334
42	400B_3042	Capture Value 0 Cycle Register (PWM1_SM0CVAL0CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.32/1334
44	400B_3044	Capture Value 1 Register (PWM1_SM0CVAL1)	16	R	0000h	47.4.33/1335
46	400B_3046	Capture Value 1 Cycle Register (PWM1_SM0CVAL1CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.34/1335
48	400B_3048	Capture Value 2 Register (PWM1_SM0CVAL2)	16	R	0000h	47.4.35/1335

Table continues on the next page...

PWM memory map (continued)

Address offset (hex)	Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4A	400B_304A	Capture Value 2 Cycle Register (PWM1_SM0CVAL2CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.36/1336
4C	400B_304C	Capture Value 3 Register (PWM1_SM0CVAL3)	16	R	0000h	47.4.37/1336
4E	400B_304E	Capture Value 3 Cycle Register (PWM1_SM0CVAL3CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.38/1337
50	400B_3050	Capture Value 4 Register (PWM1_SM0CVAL4)	16	R	0000h	47.4.39/1337
52	400B_3052	Capture Value 4 Cycle Register (PWM1_SM0CVAL4CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.40/1337
54	400B_3054	Capture Value 5 Register (PWM1_SM0CVAL5)	16	R	0000h	47.4.41/1338
56	400B_3056	Capture Value 5 Cycle Register (PWM1_SM0CVAL5CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.42/1338
60	400B_3060	Counter Register (PWM1_SM1CNT)	16	R	0000h	47.4.1/1304
62	400B_3062	Initial Count Register (PWM1_SM1INIT)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.2/1304
64	400B_3064	Control 2 Register (PWM1_SM1CTRL2)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.3/1305
66	400B_3066	Control Register (PWM1_SM1CTRL)	16	R/W		47.4.4/1307
6A	400B_306A	Value Register 0 (PWM1_SM1VAL0)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.5/1309
6C	400B_306C	Fractional Value Register 1 (PWM1_SM1FRACVAL1)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.6/1310
6E	400B_306E	Value Register 1 (PWM1_SM1VAL1)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.7/1311
70	400B_3070	Fractional Value Register 2 (PWM1_SM1FRACVAL2)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.8/1311
72	400B_3072	Value Register 2 (PWM1_SM1VAL2)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.9/1312
74	400B_3074	Fractional Value Register 3 (PWM1_SM1FRACVAL3)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.10/1312
76	400B_3076	Value Register 3 (PWM1_SM1VAL3)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.11/1313
78	400B_3078	Fractional Value Register 4 (PWM1_SM1FRACVAL4)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.12/1313
7A	400B_307A	Value Register 4 (PWM1_SM1VAL4)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.13/1314
7C	400B_307C	Fractional Value Register 5 (PWM1_SM1FRACVAL5)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.14/1314
7E	400B_307E	Value Register 5 (PWM1_SM1VAL5)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.15/1315
80	400B_3080	Fractional Control Register (PWM1_SM1FRCTRL)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.16/1315
82	400B_3082	Output Control Register (PWM1_SM1OCTRL)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.17/1317
84	400B_3084	Status Register (PWM1_SM1STS)	16	w1c	0000h	47.4.18/1319

Table continues on the next page...

PWM memory map (continued)

Address offset (hex)	Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
86	400B_3086	Interrupt Enable Register (PWM1_SM1INTEN)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.19/1320
88	400B_3088	DMA Enable Register (PWM1_SM1DMAEN)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.20/1322
8A	400B_308A	Output Trigger Control Register (PWM1_SM1TCTRL)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.21/1323
8C	400B_308C	Fault Disable Mapping Register 0 (PWM1_SM1DISMAP0)	16	R/W	FFFFh	47.4.22/1325
90	400B_3090	Deadtime Count Register 0 (PWM1_SM1DTCNT0)	16	R/W	07FFh	47.4.23/1326
92	400B_3092	Deadtime Count Register 1 (PWM1_SM1DTCNT1)	16	R/W	07FFh	47.4.24/1326
94	400B_3094	Capture Control A Register (PWM1_SM1CAPTCTRLA)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.25/1327
96	400B_3096	Capture Compare A Register (PWM1_SM1CAPTCOMPA)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.26/1329
98	400B_3098	Capture Control B Register (PWM1_SM1CAPTCTRLB)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.27/1329
9A	400B_309A	Capture Compare B Register (PWM1_SM1CAPTCOMPB)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.28/1331
9C	400B_309C	Capture Control X Register (PWM1_SM1CAPTCTRLX)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.29/1332
9E	400B_309E	Capture Compare X Register (PWM1_SM1CAPTCOMPX)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.30/1333
A0	400B_30A0	Capture Value 0 Register (PWM1_SM1CVAL0)	16	R	0000h	47.4.31/1334
A2	400B_30A2	Capture Value 0 Cycle Register (PWM1_SM1CVAL0CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.32/1334
A4	400B_30A4	Capture Value 1 Register (PWM1_SM1CVAL1)	16	R	0000h	47.4.33/1335
A6	400B_30A6	Capture Value 1 Cycle Register (PWM1_SM1CVAL1CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.34/1335
A8	400B_30A8	Capture Value 2 Register (PWM1_SM1CVAL2)	16	R	0000h	47.4.35/1335
AA	400B_30AA	Capture Value 2 Cycle Register (PWM1_SM1CVAL2CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.36/1336
AC	400B_30AC	Capture Value 3 Register (PWM1_SM1CVAL3)	16	R	0000h	47.4.37/1336
AE	400B_30AE	Capture Value 3 Cycle Register (PWM1_SM1CVAL3CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.38/1337
B0	400B_30B0	Capture Value 4 Register (PWM1_SM1CVAL4)	16	R	0000h	47.4.39/1337
B2	400B_30B2	Capture Value 4 Cycle Register (PWM1_SM1CVAL4CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.40/1337

Table continues on the next page...

PWM memory map (continued)

Address offset (hex)	Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
B4	400B_30B4	Capture Value 5 Register (PWM1_SM1CVAL5)	16	R	0000h	47.4.41/1338
B6	400B_30B6	Capture Value 5 Cycle Register (PWM1_SM1CVAL5CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.42/1338
C0	400B_30C0	Counter Register (PWM1_SM2CNT)	16	R	0000h	47.4.1/1304
C2	400B_30C2	Initial Count Register (PWM1_SM2INIT)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.2/1304
C4	400B_30C4	Control 2 Register (PWM1_SM2CTRL2)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.3/1305
C6	400B_30C6	Control Register (PWM1_SM2CTRL)	16	R/W		47.4.4/1307
CA	400B_30CA	Value Register 0 (PWM1_SM2VAL0)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.5/1309
CC	400B_30CC	Fractional Value Register 1 (PWM1_SM2FRACVAL1)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.6/1310
CE	400B_30CE	Value Register 1 (PWM1_SM2VAL1)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.7/1311
D0	400B_30D0	Fractional Value Register 2 (PWM1_SM2FRACVAL2)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.8/1311
D2	400B_30D2	Value Register 2 (PWM1_SM2VAL2)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.9/1312
D4	400B_30D4	Fractional Value Register 3 (PWM1_SM2FRACVAL3)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.10/1312
D6	400B_30D6	Value Register 3 (PWM1_SM2VAL3)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.11/1313
D8	400B_30D8	Fractional Value Register 4 (PWM1_SM2FRACVAL4)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.12/1313
DA	400B_30DA	Value Register 4 (PWM1_SM2VAL4)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.13/1314
DC	400B_30DC	Fractional Value Register 5 (PWM1_SM2FRACVAL5)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.14/1314
DE	400B_30DE	Value Register 5 (PWM1_SM2VAL5)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.15/1315
E0	400B_30E0	Fractional Control Register (PWM1_SM2FRCTRL)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.16/1315
E2	400B_30E2	Output Control Register (PWM1_SM2OCTRL)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.17/1317
E4	400B_30E4	Status Register (PWM1_SM2STS)	16	w1c	0000h	47.4.18/1319
E6	400B_30E6	Interrupt Enable Register (PWM1_SM2INTEN)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.19/1320
E8	400B_30E8	DMA Enable Register (PWM1_SM2DMAEN)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.20/1322
EA	400B_30EA	Output Trigger Control Register (PWM1_SM2TCTRL)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.21/1323
EC	400B_30EC	Fault Disable Mapping Register 0 (PWM1_SM2DISMAP0)	16	R/W	FFFFh	47.4.22/1325
F0	400B_30F0	Deadtime Count Register 0 (PWM1_SM2DTCNT0)	16	R/W	07FFh	47.4.23/1326

Table continues on the next page...

PWM memory map (continued)

Address offset (hex)	Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
F2	400B_30F2	Deadtime Count Register 1 (PWM1_SM2DTCNT1)	16	R/W	07FFh	47.4.24/1326
F4	400B_30F4	Capture Control A Register (PWM1_SM2CAPTCTRLA)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.25/1327
F6	400B_30F6	Capture Compare A Register (PWM1_SM2CAPTCOMPA)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.26/1329
F8	400B_30F8	Capture Control B Register (PWM1_SM2CAPTCTRLB)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.27/1329
FA	400B_30FA	Capture Compare B Register (PWM1_SM2CAPTCOMPB)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.28/1331
FC	400B_30FC	Capture Control X Register (PWM1_SM2CAPTCTRLX)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.29/1332
FE	400B_30FE	Capture Compare X Register (PWM1_SM2CAPTCOMPX)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.30/1333
100	400B_3100	Capture Value 0 Register (PWM1_SM2CVAL0)	16	R	0000h	47.4.31/1334
102	400B_3102	Capture Value 0 Cycle Register (PWM1_SM2CVAL0CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.32/1334
104	400B_3104	Capture Value 1 Register (PWM1_SM2CVAL1)	16	R	0000h	47.4.33/1335
106	400B_3106	Capture Value 1 Cycle Register (PWM1_SM2CVAL1CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.34/1335
108	400B_3108	Capture Value 2 Register (PWM1_SM2CVAL2)	16	R	0000h	47.4.35/1335
10A	400B_310A	Capture Value 2 Cycle Register (PWM1_SM2CVAL2CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.36/1336
10C	400B_310C	Capture Value 3 Register (PWM1_SM2CVAL3)	16	R	0000h	47.4.37/1336
10E	400B_310E	Capture Value 3 Cycle Register (PWM1_SM2CVAL3CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.38/1337
110	400B_3110	Capture Value 4 Register (PWM1_SM2CVAL4)	16	R	0000h	47.4.39/1337
112	400B_3112	Capture Value 4 Cycle Register (PWM1_SM2CVAL4CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.40/1337
114	400B_3114	Capture Value 5 Register (PWM1_SM2CVAL5)	16	R	0000h	47.4.41/1338
116	400B_3116	Capture Value 5 Cycle Register (PWM1_SM2CVAL5CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.42/1338
120	400B_3120	Counter Register (PWM1_SM3CNT)	16	R	0000h	47.4.1/1304
122	400B_3122	Initial Count Register (PWM1_SM3INIT)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.2/1304
124	400B_3124	Control 2 Register (PWM1_SM3CTRL2)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.3/1305
126	400B_3126	Control Register (PWM1_SM3CTRL)	16	R/W		47.4.4/1307
12A	400B_312A	Value Register 0 (PWM1_SM3VAL0)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.5/1309

Table continues on the next page...

PWM memory map (continued)

Address offset (hex)	Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
12C	400B_312C	Fractional Value Register 1 (PWM1_SM3FRACVAL1)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.6/1310
12E	400B_312E	Value Register 1 (PWM1_SM3VAL1)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.7/1311
130	400B_3130	Fractional Value Register 2 (PWM1_SM3FRACVAL2)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.8/1311
132	400B_3132	Value Register 2 (PWM1_SM3VAL2)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.9/1312
134	400B_3134	Fractional Value Register 3 (PWM1_SM3FRACVAL3)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.10/1312
136	400B_3136	Value Register 3 (PWM1_SM3VAL3)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.11/1313
138	400B_3138	Fractional Value Register 4 (PWM1_SM3FRACVAL4)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.12/1313
13A	400B_313A	Value Register 4 (PWM1_SM3VAL4)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.13/1314
13C	400B_313C	Fractional Value Register 5 (PWM1_SM3FRACVAL5)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.14/1314
13E	400B_313E	Value Register 5 (PWM1_SM3VAL5)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.15/1315
140	400B_3140	Fractional Control Register (PWM1_SM3FRCTRL)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.16/1315
142	400B_3142	Output Control Register (PWM1_SM3OCTRL)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.17/1317
144	400B_3144	Status Register (PWM1_SM3STS)	16	w1c	0000h	47.4.18/1319
146	400B_3146	Interrupt Enable Register (PWM1_SM3INTEN)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.19/1320
148	400B_3148	DMA Enable Register (PWM1_SM3DMAEN)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.20/1322
14A	400B_314A	Output Trigger Control Register (PWM1_SM3TCTRL)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.21/1323
14C	400B_314C	Fault Disable Mapping Register 0 (PWM1_SM3DISMAP0)	16	R/W	FFFFh	47.4.22/1325
150	400B_3150	Deadtime Count Register 0 (PWM1_SM3DTCNT0)	16	R/W	07FFh	47.4.23/1326
152	400B_3152	Deadtime Count Register 1 (PWM1_SM3DTCNT1)	16	R/W	07FFh	47.4.24/1326
154	400B_3154	Capture Control A Register (PWM1_SM3CAPTCTRLA)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.25/1327
156	400B_3156	Capture Compare A Register (PWM1_SM3CAPTCOMPA)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.26/1329
158	400B_3158	Capture Control B Register (PWM1_SM3CAPTCTRLB)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.27/1329
15A	400B_315A	Capture Compare B Register (PWM1_SM3CAPTCOMPB)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.28/1331

Table continues on the next page...

PWM memory map (continued)

Address offset (hex)	Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
15C	400B_315C	Capture Control X Register (PWM1_SM3CAPCTRLX)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.29/1332
15E	400B_315E	Capture Compare X Register (PWM1_SM3CAPTCOMPX)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.30/1333
160	400B_3160	Capture Value 0 Register (PWM1_SM3CVAL0)	16	R	0000h	47.4.31/1334
162	400B_3162	Capture Value 0 Cycle Register (PWM1_SM3CVAL0CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.32/1334
164	400B_3164	Capture Value 1 Register (PWM1_SM3CVAL1)	16	R	0000h	47.4.33/1335
166	400B_3166	Capture Value 1 Cycle Register (PWM1_SM3CVAL1CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.34/1335
168	400B_3168	Capture Value 2 Register (PWM1_SM3CVAL2)	16	R	0000h	47.4.35/1335
16A	400B_316A	Capture Value 2 Cycle Register (PWM1_SM3CVAL2CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.36/1336
16C	400B_316C	Capture Value 3 Register (PWM1_SM3CVAL3)	16	R	0000h	47.4.37/1336
16E	400B_316E	Capture Value 3 Cycle Register (PWM1_SM3CVAL3CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.38/1337
170	400B_3170	Capture Value 4 Register (PWM1_SM3CVAL4)	16	R	0000h	47.4.39/1337
172	400B_3172	Capture Value 4 Cycle Register (PWM1_SM3CVAL4CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.40/1337
174	400B_3174	Capture Value 5 Register (PWM1_SM3CVAL5)	16	R	0000h	47.4.41/1338
176	400B_3176	Capture Value 5 Cycle Register (PWM1_SM3CVAL5CYC)	16	R	0000h	47.4.42/1338
180	400B_3180	Output Enable Register (PWM1_OUTEN)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.43/1339
182	400B_3182	Mask Register (PWM1_MASK)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.44/1340
184	400B_3184	Software Controlled Output Register (PWM1_SWCOUT)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.45/1341
186	400B_3186	PWM Source Select Register (PWM1_DTSEL)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.46/1342
188	400B_3188	Master Control Register 0 (PWM1_MCTRL0)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.47/1344
18A	400B_318A	Master Control Register 1 (PWM1_MCTRL1)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.48/1345
18C	400B_318C	Fault Control Register (PWM1_FCTRL0)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.49/1346
18E	400B_318E	Fault Status Register (PWM1_FSTS0)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.50/1347

Table continues on the next page...

PWM memory map (continued)

Address offset (hex)	Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
190	400B_3190	Fault Filter Register (PWM1_FFILT0)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.51/1348
192	400B_3192	Fault Test Register (PWM1_FTST0)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.52/1350
194	400B_3194	Fault Control 2 Register (PWM1_FCTRL20)	16	R/W	0000h	47.4.53/1350

47.4.1 Counter Register (PWMx_SMnCNT)

This read-only register displays the state of the signed 16-bit submodule counter. This register is not byte accessible.

Address: Base address + 0h offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	CNT															
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnCNT field descriptions

Field	Description
CNT	Counter Register Bits

47.4.2 Initial Count Register (PWMx_SMnINIT)

The 16-bit signed value in this buffered, read/write register defines the initial count value for the PWM in PWM clock periods. This is the value loaded into the submodule counter when local sync, master sync, or master reload is asserted (based on the value of CTRL2[INIT_SEL]) or when CTRL2[FORCE] is asserted and force init is enabled. For PWM operation, the buffered contents of this register are loaded into the counter at the start of every PWM cycle. This register is not byte accessible.

NOTE

The INIT register is buffered. The value written does not take effect until MCTRL0[LDOK] is set and the next PWM load cycle begins or CTRL[LDMOD] is set. This register cannot be

written when MCTRL0[LDOK] is set. Reading INIT reads the value in a buffer and not necessarily the value the PWM generator is currently using.

Address: Base address + 2h offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	INIT															
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnINIT field descriptions

Field	Description
INIT	Initial Count Register Bits

47.4.3 Control 2 Register (PWMx_SMnCTRL2)

Address: Base address + 4h offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Read	DBGEN	WAITEN	INDEP	PWM23_ INIT	PWM45_ INIT	PWMX_ INIT	INIT_ SEL	
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	FRCEN	0	FORCE_ SEL			RELOAD_ SEL	CLK_ SEL	
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnCTRL2 field descriptions

Field	Description
15 DBGEN	<p>Debug Enable</p> <p>When set to one, the PWM will continue to run while the chip is in debug mode. If the device enters debug mode and this bit is zero, then the PWM outputs will be disabled until debug mode is exited. At that point the PWM pins will resume operation as programmed in the PWM registers.</p> <p>For certain types of motors (such as 3-phase AC), it is imperative that this bit be left in its default state (in which the PWM is disabled in debug mode). Failure to do so could result in damage to the motor or inverter. For other types of motors (example: DC motors), this bit might safely be set to one, enabling the PWM in debug mode. The key point is PWM parameter updates will not occur in debug mode. Any motors requiring such updates should be disabled during debug mode. If in doubt, leave this bit set to zero.</p>
14 WAITEN	<p>WAIT Enable</p> <p>When set to one, the PWM will continue to run while the chip is in WAIT mode. In this mode, the peripheral clock continues to run but the CPU clock does not. If the device enters WAIT mode and this bit is zero, then the PWM outputs will be disabled until WAIT mode is exited. At that point the PWM pins will resume operation as programmed in the PWM registers.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

PWMx_SMnCTRL2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	For certain types of motors (such as 3-phase AC), it is imperative that this bit be left in its default state (in which the PWM is disabled in WAIT mode). Failure to do so could result in damage to the motor or inverter. For other types of motors (example: DC motors), this bit might safely be set to one, enabling the PWM in WAIT mode. The key point is PWM parameter updates will not occur in this mode. Any motors requiring such updates should be disabled during WAIT mode. If in doubt, leave this bit set to zero.
13 INDEP	Independent or Complementary Pair Operation This bit determines if the PWM_A and PWM_B channels will be independent PWMs or a complementary PWM pair. 0 PWM_A and PWM_B form a complementary PWM pair. 1 PWM_A and PWM_B outputs are independent PWMs.
12 PWM23_INIT	PWM23 Initial Value This read/write bit determines the initial value for PWM23 and the value to which it is forced when FORCE_INIT is asserted.
11 PWM45_INIT	PWM45 Initial Value This read/write bit determines the initial value for PWM45 and the value to which it is forced when FORCE_INIT is asserted.
10 PWMX_INIT	PWM_X Initial Value This read/write bit determines the initial value for PWM_X and the value to which it is forced when FORCE_INIT is asserted.
9–8 INIT_SEL	Initialization Control Select These read/write bits control the source of the INIT signal which goes to the counter. 00 Local sync (PWM_X) causes initialization. 01 Master reload from submodule 0 causes initialization. This setting should not be used in submodule 0 as it will force the INIT signal to logic 0. The submodule counter will only reinitialize when a master reload occurs. 10 Master sync from submodule 0 causes initialization. This setting should not be used in submodule 0 as it will force the INIT signal to logic 0. 11 EXT_SYNC causes initialization.
7 FRCEN	This bit allows the CTRL2[FORCE] signal to initialize the counter without regard to the signal selected by CTRL2[INIT_SEL]. This is a software controlled initialization. A forced initialization will also assert the local reload if MCTRL0[LDOK] is set. 0 Initialization from a FORCE_OUT is disabled. 1 Initialization from a FORCE_OUT is enabled.
6 FORCE	Force Initialization If CTRL2[FORCE_SEL] is set to 000, writing a 1 to this bit results in a FORCE_OUT event. This causes the following actions to be taken: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The PWM_A and PWM_B output pins will assume values based on DTSRCSEL[SMxSEL23] and DTSRCSEL[SMxSEL45]. If CTRL2[FRCEN] is set, the counter value will be initialized with the INIT register value.
5–3 FORCE_SEL	This read/write bit determines the source of the FORCE OUTPUT signal for this submodule. 000 The local force signal, CTRL2[FORCE], from this submodule is used to force updates. 001 The master force signal from submodule 0 is used to force updates. This setting should not be used in submodule 0 as it will hold the FORCE OUTPUT signal to logic 0.

Table continues on the next page...

PWMx_SMnCTRL2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>010 The local reload signal from this submodule is used to force updates without regard to the state of LDOK.</p> <p>011 The master reload signal from submodule0 is used to force updates if LDOK is set. This setting should not be used in submodule0 as it will hold the FORCE OUTPUT signal to logic 0.</p> <p>100 The local sync signal from this submodule is used to force updates.</p> <p>101 The master sync signal from submodule0 is used to force updates. This setting should not be used in submodule0 as it will hold the FORCE OUTPUT signal to logic 0.</p> <p>110 The external force signal, EXT_FORCE, from outside the PWM module causes updates.</p> <p>111 The external sync signal, EXT_SYNC, from outside the PWM module causes updates.</p>
2 RELOAD_SEL	<p>Reload Source Select</p> <p>This read/write bit determines the source of the RELOAD signal for this submodule. When this bit is set, MCTRL0[LDOK[0]] for submodule 0 should be used since the local MCTRL0[LDOK] will be ignored.</p> <p>0 The local RELOAD signal is used to reload registers.</p> <p>1 The master RELOAD signal (from submodule 0) is used to reload registers. This setting should not be used in submodule 0 as it will force the RELOAD signal to logic 0.</p>
CLK_SEL	<p>Clock Source Select</p> <p>These read/write bits determine the source of the clock signal for this submodule.</p> <p>00 The IPBus clock is used as the clock for the local prescaler and counter.</p> <p>01 EXT_CLK is used as the clock for the local prescaler and counter.</p> <p>10 Submodule 0's clock (AUX_CLK) is used as the source clock for the local prescaler and counter. This setting should not be used in submodule 0 as it will force the clock to logic 0.</p> <p>11 reserved</p>

47.4.4 Control Register (PWMx_SMnCTRL)

Address: Base address + 6h offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Read	LDFQ				HALF	FULL	DT	
Write								
Reset	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	PRSC			0	LDMOD	DBLX	DBLEN
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnCTRL field descriptions

Field	Description
15–12 LDFQ	<p>Load Frequency</p> <p>These buffered read/write bits select the PWM load frequency. Reset clears LDFQ, selecting loading every PWM opportunity. A PWM opportunity is determined by HALF and FULL.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

PWMx_SMnCTRL field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>NOTE: LDFQ takes effect when the current load cycle is complete, regardless of the state of MCTRL0[LDOK]. Reading LDFQ reads the buffered values and not necessarily the values currently in effect.</p> <p>0000 Every PWM opportunity 0001 Every 2 PWM opportunities 0010 Every 3 PWM opportunities 0011 Every 4 PWM opportunities 0100 Every 5 PWM opportunities 0101 Every 6 PWM opportunities 0110 Every 7 PWM opportunities 0111 Every 8 PWM opportunities 1000 Every 9 PWM opportunities 1001 Every 10 PWM opportunities 1010 Every 11 PWM opportunities 1011 Every 12 PWM opportunities 1100 Every 13 PWM opportunities 1101 Every 14 PWM opportunities 1110 Every 15 PWM opportunities 1111 Every 16 PWM opportunities</p>
11 HALF	<p>Half Cycle Reload</p> <p>This read/write bit enables half-cycle reloads. A half cycle is defined by when the submodule counter matches the VAL0 register and does not have to be half way through the PWM cycle.</p> <p>0 Half-cycle reloads disabled. 1 Half-cycle reloads enabled.</p>
10 FULL	<p>Full Cycle Reload</p> <p>This read/write bit enables full-cycle reloads. A full cycle is defined by when the submodule counter matches the VAL1 register. Either CTRL[HALF] or CTRL[FULL] must be set in order to move the buffered data into the registers used by the PWM generators or CTRL[LDMOD] must be set. If both CTRL[HALF] and CTRL[FULL] are set, then reloads can occur twice per cycle.</p> <p>0 Full-cycle reloads disabled. 1 Full-cycle reloads enabled.</p>
9–8 DT	<p>Deadtime</p> <p>These read only bits reflect the sampled values of the PWM_X input at the end of each deadtime. Sampling occurs at the end of deadtime 0 for DT[0] and the end of deadtime 1 for DT[1]. Reset clears these bits.</p>
7 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
6–4 PRSC	<p>Prescaler</p> <p>These buffered read/write bits select the divide ratio of the PWM clock frequency selected by CTRL2[CLK_SEL].</p> <p>NOTE: Reading CTRL[PRSC] reads the buffered values and not necessarily the values currently in effect. CTRL[PRSC] takes effect at the beginning of the next PWM cycle and only when the load okay bit, MCTRL0[LDOK], is set or CTRL[LDMOD] is set. This field cannot be written when MCTRL0[LDOK] is set.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

PWMx_SMnCTRL field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	000 PWM clock frequency = f_{clk} 001 PWM clock frequency = $f_{clk}/2$ 010 PWM clock frequency = $f_{clk}/4$ 011 PWM clock frequency = $f_{clk}/8$ 100 PWM clock frequency = $f_{clk}/16$ 101 PWM clock frequency = $f_{clk}/32$ 110 PWM clock frequency = $f_{clk}/64$ 111 PWM clock frequency = $f_{clk}/128$
3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 LDMOD	Load Mode Select This read/write bit selects the timing of loading the buffered registers for this submodule. 0 Buffered registers of this submodule are loaded and take effect at the next PWM reload if MCTRL0[LDOK] is set. 1 Buffered registers of this submodule are loaded and take effect immediately upon MCTRL0[LDOK] being set. In this case it is not necessary to set CTRL[FULL] or CTRL[HALF].
1 DBLX	PWMX Double Switching Enable This read/write bit enables the double switching behavior on PWMX. When this bit is set, the PWMX output shall be the exclusive OR combination of PWM0 and PWM1 prior to polarity and masking considerations. 0 PWMX double pulse disabled. 1 PWMX double pulse enabled.
0 DBLEN	Double Switching Enable This read/write bit enables the double switching PWM behavior(See Double Switching PWMs). Double switching is not compatible with fractional PWM clock generation. Make sure this bit is clear when setting FRCTRL[FRAC23_EN], FRCTRL[FRAC45_EN], or FRCTRL[FRAC1_EN]. 0 Double switching disabled. 1 Double switching enabled.

47.4.5 Value Register 0 (PWMx_SMnVAL0)

Address: Base address + Ah offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	VAL0															
Write	VAL0															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnVAL0 field descriptions

Field	Description
VAL0	Value Register 0

PWMx_SMnVAL0 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>The 16-bit signed value in this buffered, read/write register defines the mid-cycle reload point for the PWM in PWM clock periods. This value also defines when the PWM_X signal is set and the local sync signal is reset. This register is not byte accessible.</p> <p>NOTE: The VAL0 register is buffered. The value written does not take effect until MCTRL0[LDOK] is set and the next PWM load cycle begins or CTRL[LDMOD] is set. VAL0 cannot be written when MCTRL0[LDOK] is set. Reading VAL0 reads the value in a buffer. It is not necessarily the value the PWM generator is currently using.</p>

47.4.6 Fractional Value Register 1 (PWMx_SMnFRACVAL1)

Address: Base address + Ch offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	FRACVAL1					0										
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnFRACVAL1 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–11 FRACVAL1	<p>Fractional Value 1 Register</p> <p>These bits act as a fractional addition to the value in the VAL1 register which controls the PWM period width. The PWM period is computed in terms of IPBus clock cycles. This fractional portion is accumulated at the end of every cycle until an additional whole IPBus cycle is reached. At this time the value being used for VAL1 is temporarily incremented and the PWM cycle is extended by one clock period to compensate for the accumulated fractional values.</p> <p>NOTE: The FRACVAL1 register is buffered. The value written does not take effect until MCTRL0[LDOK] is set and the next PWM load cycle begins or CTRL[LDMOD] is set. FRACVAL1 cannot be written when MCTRL0[LDOK] is set. Reading FRACVAL1 reads the value in a buffer and not necessarily the value the PWM generator is currently using.</p> <p>NOTE: If the VAL1 register defines the timer period (Local Sync is selected as the counter initialization signal), a 100% duty cycle cannot be achieved on the PWMX output. After the count reaches VAL1, the PWMX output is low for a minimum of one count every cycle. When the Master Sync signal (only originated by the Local Sync from sub-module 0) is used to control the timer period, the VAL1 register can be free for other functions such as PWM generation without the duty cycle limitation.</p>
Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>

47.4.7 Value Register 1 (PWMx_SMnVAL1)

Address: Base address + Eh offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	VAL1															
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnVAL1 field descriptions

Field	Description
VAL1	<p>Value Register 1</p> <p>The 16-bit signed value written to this buffered, read/write register defines the modulo count value (maximum count) for the submodule counter. Upon reaching this count value, the counter reloads itself with the contents of the INIT register and asserts the local sync signal while resetting PWM_X. This register is not byte accessible.</p> <p>NOTE: The VAL1 register is buffered. The value written does not take effect until MCTRL0[LDOK] is set and the next PWM load cycle begins or CTRL[LDMOD] is set. VAL1 cannot be written when MCTRL0[LDOK] is set. Reading VAL1 reads the value in a buffer. It is not necessarily the value the PWM generator is currently using.</p> <p>NOTE: When using FRACVAL1, limit the maximum value of VAL1 to 0xFFFE for unsigned applications or to 0x7FFE for signed applications, to avoid counter rollovers caused by accumulating the fractional period defined by FRACVAL1.</p> <p>NOTE: If the VAL1 register defines the timer period (Local Sync is selected as the counter initialization signal), a 100% duty cycle cannot be achieved on the PWMX output. After the count reaches VAL1, the PWMX output is low for a minimum of one count every cycle. When the Master Sync signal (only originated by the Local Sync from sub-module 0) is used to control the timer period, the VAL1 register can be free for other functions such as PWM generation without the duty cycle limitation.</p>

47.4.8 Fractional Value Register 2 (PWMx_SMnFRACVAL2)

Address: Base address + 10h offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	FRACVAL2						0									
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnFRACVAL2 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–11 FRACVAL2	<p>Fractional Value 2</p> <p>These bits act as a fractional addition to the value in the VAL2 register which controls the PWM_A turn on timing. It is also used to control the fractional addition to the turn off delay of PWM_B when MCTRL0[IPOLx]=0 in complementary mode, CTRL2[INDEP]=0.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

PWMx_SMnFRACVAL2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>NOTE: The FRACVAL2 register is buffered. The value written does not take effect until MCTRL0[LDOK] is set and the next PWM load cycle begins or CTRL[LDMOD] is set. FRACVAL2 cannot be written when MCTRL0[LDOK] is set. Reading FRACVAL2 reads the value in a buffer and not necessarily the value the PWM generator is currently using.</p> <p>NOTE: FRCTRL[FRAC23_EN] should be set to 0 when the values of VAL2 and VAL3 cause the high or low time of the PWM output to be 3 cycles or less.</p>
Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>

47.4.9 Value Register 2 (PWMx_SMnVAL2)

Address: Base address + 12h offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	VAL2															
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnVAL2 field descriptions

Field	Description
VAL2	<p>Value Register 2</p> <p>The 16-bit signed value in this buffered, read/write register defines the count value to set PWM23 high. This register is not byte accessible.</p> <p>NOTE: The VAL2 register is buffered. The value written does not take effect until MCTRL0[LDOK] is set and the next PWM load cycle begins or CTRL[LDMOD] is set. VAL2 cannot be written when MCTRL0[LDOK] is set. Reading VAL2 reads the value in a buffer and not necessarily the value the PWM generator is currently using.</p>

47.4.10 Fractional Value Register 3 (PWMx_SMnFRACVAL3)

Address: Base address + 14h offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	FRACVAL3								0							
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnFRACVAL3 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–11 FRACVAL3	<p>Fractional Value 3</p> <p>These bits act as a fractional addition to the value in the VAL3 register which controls the PWM_A turn off timing. It is also used to control the fractional addition to the turn on delay of PWM_B when MCTRL0[IPOLx]=0 in complementary mode, CTRL2[INDEP]=0.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

PWMx_SMnFRACVAL3 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>NOTE: The FRACVAL3 register is buffered. The value written does not take effect until MCTRL0[LDOK] is set and the next PWM load cycle begins or CTRL[LDMOD] is set. FRACVAL3 cannot be written when MCTRL0[LDOK] is set. Reading FRACVAL3 reads the value in a buffer and not necessarily the value the PWM generator is currently using.</p> <p>NOTE: FRCTRL[FRAC23_EN] should be set to 0 when the values of VAL2 and VAL3 cause the high or low time of the PWM output to be 3 cycles or less.</p>
Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>

47.4.11 Value Register 3 (PWMx_SMnVAL3)

Address: Base address + 16h offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	VAL3															
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnVAL3 field descriptions

Field	Description
VAL3	<p>Value Register 3</p> <p>The 16-bit signed value in this buffered, read/write register defines the count value to set PWM23 low. This register is not byte accessible.</p> <p>NOTE: The VAL3 register is buffered. The value written does not take effect until MCTRL0[LDOK] is set and the next PWM load cycle begins or CTRL[LDMOD] is set. VAL3 cannot be written when MCTRL0[LDOK] is set. Reading VAL3 reads the value in a buffer and not necessarily the value the PWM generator is currently using.</p>

47.4.12 Fractional Value Register 4 (PWMx_SMnFRACVAL4)

Address: Base address + 18h offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	FRACVAL4								0							
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnFRACVAL4 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–11 FRACVAL4	<p>Fractional Value 4</p> <p>These bits act as a fractional addition to the value in the VAL4 register which controls the PWM_B turn on timing. It is also used to control the fractional addition to the turn off delay of PWM_A when MCTRL0[IPOLx]=1 in complementary mode, CTRL2[INDEP]=0.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

PWMx_SMnFRACVAL4 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>NOTE: The FRACVAL4 register is buffered. The value written does not take effect until MCTRL0[LDOK] is set and the next PWM load cycle begins or CTRL[LDMOD] is set. FRACVAL4 cannot be written when MCTRL0[LDOK] is set. Reading FRACVAL4 reads the value in a buffer and not necessarily the value the PWM generator is currently using.</p> <p>NOTE: FRCTRL[FRAC45_EN] should be set to 0 when the values of VAL4 and VAL5 cause the high or low time of the PWM output to be 3 cycles or less.</p>
Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>

47.4.13 Value Register 4 (PWMx_SMnVAL4)

Address: Base address + 1Ah offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	VAL4															
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnVAL4 field descriptions

Field	Description
VAL4	<p>Value Register 4</p> <p>The 16-bit signed value in this buffered, read/write register defines the count value to set PWM45 high. This register is not byte accessible.</p> <p>NOTE: The VAL4 register is buffered. The value written does not take effect until MCTRL0[LDOK] is set and the next PWM load cycle begins or CTRL[LDMOD] is set. VAL4 cannot be written when MCTRL0[LDOK] is set. Reading VAL4 reads the value in a buffer and not necessarily the value the PWM generator is currently using.</p>

47.4.14 Fractional Value Register 5 (PWMx_SMnFRACVAL5)

Address: Base address + 1Ch offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	FRACVAL5								0							
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnFRACVAL5 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–11 FRACVAL5	<p>Fractional Value 5</p> <p>These bits act as a fractional addition to the value in the VAL5 register which controls the PWM_B turn off timing. It is also used to control the fractional addition to the turn on delay of PWM_A when MCTRL0[IPOLx]=1 in complementary mode, CTRL2[INDEP]=0.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

PWMx_SMnFRACVAL5 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>NOTE: The FRACVAL5 register is buffered. The value written does not take effect until MCTRL0[LDOK] is set and the next PWM load cycle begins or CTRL[LDMOD] is set. FRACVAL5 cannot be written when MCTRL0[LDOK] is set. Reading FRACVAL5 reads the value in a buffer and not necessarily the value the PWM generator is currently using.</p> <p>NOTE: FRCTRL[FRAC45_EN] should be set to 0 when the values of VAL4 and VAL5 cause the high or low time of the PWM output to be 3 cycles or less.</p>
Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>

47.4.15 Value Register 5 (PWMx_SMnVAL5)

Address: Base address + 1Eh offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	VAL5															
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnVAL5 field descriptions

Field	Description
VAL5	<p>Value Register 5</p> <p>The 16-bit signed value in this buffered, read/write register defines the count value to set PWM45 low. This register is not byte accessible.</p> <p>NOTE: The VAL5 register is buffered. The value written does not take effect until MCTRL0[LDOK] is set and the next PWM load cycle begins or CTRL[LDMOD] is set. VAL5 cannot be written when MCTRL0[LDOK] is set. Reading VAL5 reads the value in a buffer and not necessarily the value the PWM generator is currently using.</p>

47.4.16 Fractional Control Register (PWMx_SMnFRCTRL)

Address: Base address + 20h offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Read	TEST	0						FRAC_PU
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0			FRAC45_EN	0	FRAC23_EN	FRAC1_EN	0
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnFRCTRL field descriptions

Field	Description
15 TEST	Test Status Bit This is a read only test bit for factory use. This bit will reset to 0 but may be either 0 or 1 during PWM operation.
14–9 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
8 FRAC_PU	Fractional Delay Circuit Power Up This bit is used to power up the fractional delay analog block. The fractional delay block takes 25 us to power up after the first FRAC_PU bit in any submodule is set. The fractional delay block only powers down when the FRAC_PU bits in all submodules are 0. The fractional delay logic can only be used when the IPBus clock is running at 100 MHz. When turned off, fractional placement is disabled. After setting this bit and waiting the 25usec, load the PWM VAL* registers with values to create a PWM output with greater than 0% duty cycle and run for at least one PWM period. This can be done without the outputs enabled and is used to clear the state of the analog block that produces the fractional delays. NOTE: This bit is functional only in PWMs that support nano-edge placement. 0 Turn off fractional delay logic. 1 Power up fractional delay logic.
7–5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
4 FRAC45_EN	Fractional Cycle Placement Enable for PWM_B This bit is used to enable the fractional cycle edge placement of PWM_B using the FRACVAL4 and FRACVAL5 registers. When disabled, the fractional cycle edge placement of PWM_B is bypassed. NOTE: The FRAC45_EN bit is buffered. The value written does not take effect until MCTRL0[LDOK] is set and the next PWM load cycle begins or CTRL[LDMOD] is set. FRAC45_EN cannot be written when MCTRL0[LDOK] is set. Reading FRAC45_EN reads the value in a buffer and not necessarily the value the PWM generator is currently using. 0 Disable fractional cycle placement for PWM_B. 1 Enable fractional cycle placement for PWM_B.
3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 FRAC23_EN	Fractional Cycle Placement Enable for PWM_A This bit is used to enable the fractional cycle edge placement of PWM_A using the FRACVAL2 and FRACVAL3 registers. When disabled, the fractional cycle edge placement of PWM_A is bypassed. NOTE: The FRAC23_EN bit is buffered. The value written does not take effect until MCTRL0[LDOK] is set and the next PWM load cycle begins or CTRL[LDMOD] is set. FRAC23_EN cannot be written when MCTRL0[LDOK] is set. Reading FRAC23_EN reads the value in a buffer and not necessarily the value the PWM generator is currently using. 0 Disable fractional cycle placement for PWM_A. 1 Enable fractional cycle placement for PWM_A.
1 FRAC1_EN	Fractional Cycle PWM Period Enable This bit is used to enable the fractional cycle length of the PWM period using the FRACVAL1 register. When disabled, the fractional cycle length of the PWM period is bypassed.

Table continues on the next page...

PWMx_SMnFRCTRL field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>NOTE: The FRAC1_EN bit is buffered. The value written does not take effect until MCTRL0[LDOK] is set and the next PWM load cycle begins or CTRL[LDMOD] is set. FRAC1_EN cannot be written when MCTRL0[LDOK] is set. Reading FRAC1_EN reads the value in a buffer and not necessarily the value the PWM generator is currently using.</p> <p>0 Disable fractional cycle length for the PWM period. 1 Enable fractional cycle length for the PWM period.</p>
0 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>

47.4.17 Output Control Register (PWMx_SMnOCTRL)

Address: Base address + 22h offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Read	PWMA_IN	PWMB_IN	PWMX_IN	0		POLA	POLB	POLX
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		PWMAFS		PWMBFS		PWMXFS	
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnOCTRL field descriptions

Field	Description
15 PWMA_IN	<p>PWM_A Input</p> <p>This read only bit shows the logic value currently being driven into the PWM_A input. The bit's reset state is undefined.</p>
14 PWMB_IN	<p>PWM_B Input</p> <p>This read only bit shows the logic value currently being driven into the PWM_B input. The bit's reset state is undefined.</p>
13 PWMX_IN	<p>PWM_X Input</p> <p>This read only bit shows the logic value currently being driven into the PWM_X input. The bit's reset state is undefined.</p>
12–11 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
10 POLA	<p>PWM_A Output Polarity</p> <p>This bit inverts the PWM_A output polarity.</p> <p>0 PWM_A output not inverted. A high level on the PWM_A pin represents the "on" or "active" state. 1 PWM_A output inverted. A low level on the PWM_A pin represents the "on" or "active" state.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

PWMx_SMnOCTRL field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
9 POLB	<p>PWM_B Output Polarity</p> <p>This bit inverts the PWM_B output polarity.</p> <p>0 PWM_B output not inverted. A high level on the PWM_B pin represents the "on" or "active" state.</p> <p>1 PWM_B output inverted. A low level on the PWM_B pin represents the "on" or "active" state.</p>
8 POLX	<p>PWM_X Output Polarity</p> <p>This bit inverts the PWM_X output polarity.</p> <p>0 PWM_X output not inverted. A high level on the PWM_X pin represents the "on" or "active" state.</p> <p>1 PWM_X output inverted. A low level on the PWM_X pin represents the "on" or "active" state.</p>
7–6 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
5–4 PWMAFS	<p>PWM_A Fault State</p> <p>These bits determine the fault state for the PWM_A output during fault conditions and STOP mode. It may also define the output state during WAIT and DEBUG modes depending on the settings of CTRL2[WAITEN] and CTRL2[DBGEN].</p> <p>00 Output is forced to logic 0 state prior to consideration of output polarity control.</p> <p>01 Output is forced to logic 1 state prior to consideration of output polarity control.</p> <p>10 Output is tristated.</p> <p>11 Output is tristated.</p>
3–2 PWMBFS	<p>PWM_B Fault State</p> <p>These bits determine the fault state for the PWM_B output during fault conditions and STOP mode. It may also define the output state during WAIT and DEBUG modes depending on the settings of CTRL2[WAITEN] and CTRL2[DBGEN].</p> <p>00 Output is forced to logic 0 state prior to consideration of output polarity control.</p> <p>01 Output is forced to logic 1 state prior to consideration of output polarity control.</p> <p>10 Output is tristated.</p> <p>11 Output is tristated.</p>
PWMXFS	<p>PWM_X Fault State</p> <p>These bits determine the fault state for the PWM_X output during fault conditions and STOP mode. It may also define the output state during WAIT and DEBUG modes depending on the settings of CTRL2[WAITEN] and CTRL2[DBGEN].</p> <p>00 Output is forced to logic 0 state prior to consideration of output polarity control.</p> <p>01 Output is forced to logic 1 state prior to consideration of output polarity control.</p> <p>10 Output is tristated.</p> <p>11 Output is tristated.</p>

47.4.18 Status Register (PWMx_SMnSTS)

Address: Base address + 24h offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Read	0	RUF	REF	RF	CFA1	CFA0	CFB1	CFB0
Write			w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	CFX1	CFX0	CMPF					
Write	w1c	w1c	w1c					
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnSTS field descriptions

Field	Description
15 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
14 RUF	Registers Updated Flag This read-only flag is set when one of the INIT, VALx, FRACVALx, or CTRL[PRSC] registers has been written, which indicates potentially non-coherent data in the set of double buffered registers. Clear this bit by a proper reload sequence consisting of a reload signal while MCTRL0[LDOK] = 1. Reset clears this bit. 0 No register update has occurred since last reload. 1 At least one of the double buffered registers has been updated since the last reload.
13 REF	Reload Error Flag This read/write flag is set when a reload cycle occurs while MCTRL0[LDOK] is 0 and the double buffered registers are in a non-coherent state (STS[RUF] = 1). Clear this bit by writing a logic one to this location. Reset clears this bit. 0 No reload error occurred. 1 Reload signal occurred with non-coherent data and MCTRL0[LDOK] = 0.
12 RF	Reload Flag This read/write flag is set at the beginning of every reload cycle regardless of the state of MCTRL0[LDOK]. Clear this bit by writing a logic one to this location when DMAEN[VALDE] is clear (non-DMA mode). This flag can also be cleared by the DMA done signal when DMAEN[VALDE] is set (DMA mode). Reset clears this bit. 0 No new reload cycle since last STS[RF] clearing 1 New reload cycle since last STS[RF] clearing
11 CFA1	Capture Flag A1 This bit is set when a capture event occurs on the Capture A1 circuit. This bit is cleared by writing a one to this bit position if DMAEN[CA1DE] is clear (non-DMA mode) or by the DMA done signal if DMAEN[CA1DE] is set (DMA mode). Reset clears this bit.
10 CFA0	Capture Flag A0

Table continues on the next page...

PWMx_SMnSTS field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	This bit is set when a capture event occurs on the Capture A0 circuit. This bit is cleared by writing a one to this bit position if DMAEN[CA0DE] is clear (non-DMA mode) or by the DMA done signal if DMAEN[CA0DE] is set (DMA mode). Reset clears this bit.
9 CFB1	Capture Flag B1 This bit is set when a capture event occurs on the Capture B1 circuit. This bit is cleared by writing a one to this bit position if DMAEN[CB1DE] is clear (non-DMA mode) or by the DMA done signal if DMAEN[CB1DE] is set (DMA mode). Reset clears this bit.
8 CFB0	Capture Flag B0 This bit is set when a capture event occurs on the Capture B0 circuit. This bit is cleared by writing a one to this bit position if DMAEN[CB0DE] is clear (non-DMA mode) or by the DMA done signal if DMAEN[CB0DE] is set (DMA mode). Reset clears this bit.
7 CFX1	Capture Flag X1 This bit is set when a capture event occurs on the Capture X1 circuit. This bit is cleared by writing a one to this bit position if DMAEN[CX1DE] is clear (non-DMA mode) or by the DMA done signal if DMAEN[CX1DE] is set (DMA mode). Reset clears this bit.
6 CFX0	Capture Flag X0 This bit is set when a capture event occurs on the Capture X0 circuit. This bit is cleared by writing a one to this bit position if DMAEN[CX0DE] is clear (non-DMA mode) or by the DMA done signal if DMAEN[CX0DE] is set (DMA mode). Reset clears this bit.
CMPF	Compare Flags These bits are set when the submodule counter value matches the value of one of the VALx registers. Clear these bits by writing a 1 to a bit position. 0 No compare event has occurred for a particular VALx value. 1 A compare event has occurred for a particular VALx value.

47.4.19 Interrupt Enable Register (PWMx_SMnINTEN)

Address: Base address + 26h offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Read	0		REIE	RIE	CA1IE	CA0IE	CB1IE	CB0IE
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	CX1IE	CX0IE	CMPIE					
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnINTEN field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

Table continues on the next page...

PWMx_SMnINTEN field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
13 REIE	<p>Reload Error Interrupt Enable</p> <p>This read/write bit enables the reload error flag, STS[REF], to generate CPU interrupt requests. Reset clears this bit.</p> <p>0 STS[REF] CPU interrupt requests disabled 1 STS[REF] CPU interrupt requests enabled</p>
12 RIE	<p>Reload Interrupt Enable</p> <p>This read/write bit enables the reload flag, STS[RF], to generate CPU interrupt requests. Reset clears this bit.</p> <p>0 STS[RF] CPU interrupt requests disabled 1 STS[RF] CPU interrupt requests enabled</p>
11 CA1IE	<p>Capture A 1 Interrupt Enable</p> <p>This bit allows the STS[CFA1] flag to create an interrupt request to the CPU. Do not set both this bit and DMAEN[CA1DE].</p> <p>0 Interrupt request disabled for STS[CFA1]. 1 Interrupt request enabled for STS[CFA1].</p>
10 CA0IE	<p>Capture A 0 Interrupt Enable</p> <p>This bit allows the STS[CFA0] flag to create an interrupt request to the CPU. Do not set both this bit and DMAEN[CA0DE].</p> <p>0 Interrupt request disabled for STS[CFA0]. 1 Interrupt request enabled for STS[CFA0].</p>
9 CB1IE	<p>Capture B 1 Interrupt Enable</p> <p>This bit allows the STS[CFB1] flag to create an interrupt request to the CPU. Do not set both this bit and DMAEN[CB1DE].</p> <p>0 Interrupt request disabled for STS[CFB1]. 1 Interrupt request enabled for STS[CFB1].</p>
8 CB0IE	<p>Capture B 0 Interrupt Enable</p> <p>This bit allows the STS[CFB0] flag to create an interrupt request to the CPU. Do not set both this bit and DMAEN[CB0DE].</p> <p>0 Interrupt request disabled for STS[CFB0]. 1 Interrupt request enabled for STS[CFB0].</p>
7 CX1IE	<p>Capture X 1 Interrupt Enable</p> <p>This bit allows the STS[CFX1] flag to create an interrupt request to the CPU. Do not set both this bit and DMAEN[CX1DE].</p> <p>0 Interrupt request disabled for STS[CFX1]. 1 Interrupt request enabled for STS[CFX1].</p>
6 CX0IE	<p>Capture X 0 Interrupt Enable</p> <p>This bit allows the STS[CFX0] flag to create an interrupt request to the CPU. Do not set both this bit and DMAEN[CX0DE].</p>

Table continues on the next page...

PWMx_SMnINTEN field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Interrupt request disabled for STS[CFX0]. 1 Interrupt request enabled for STS[CFX0].
CMPIE	Compare Interrupt Enables These bits enable the STS[CMPIE] flags to cause a compare interrupt request to the CPU. 0 The corresponding STS[CMPIE] bit will not cause an interrupt request. 1 The corresponding STS[CMPIE] bit will cause an interrupt request.

47.4.20 DMA Enable Register (PWMx_SMnDMAEN)

Address: Base address + 28h offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Read	0						VALDE	FAND
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	CAPTDE		CA1DE	CA0DE	CB1DE	CB0DE	CX1DE	CX0DE
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnDMAEN field descriptions

Field	Description
15–10 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
9 VALDE	Value Registers DMA Enable This read/write bit enables DMA write requests for the VALx and FRACVALx registers when STS[RF] is set. Reset clears this bit. 0 DMA write requests disabled 1 DMA write requests for the VALx and FRACVALx registers enabled
8 FAND	FIFO Watermark AND Control This read/write bit works in conjunction with the DMAEN[CAPTDE] field when it is set to watermark mode (DMAEN[CAPTDE] = 01). While DMAEN[CAXDE], DMAEN[CBXDE], and DMAEN[CXXDE] determine which FIFO watermarks the DMA read request is sensitive to, this bit determines if the selected watermarks are AND'ed together or OR'ed together in order to create the request. 0 Selected FIFO watermarks are OR'ed together. 1 Selected FIFO watermarks are AND'ed together.
7–6 CAPTDE	Capture DMA Enable Source Select These read/write bits select the source of enabling the DMA read requests for the capture FIFOs. Reset clears these bits. 00 Read DMA requests disabled.

Table continues on the next page...

PWMx_SMnDMAEN field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
01	Exceeding a FIFO watermark sets the DMA read request. This requires at least one of DMAEN[CA1DE], DMAEN[CA0DE], DMAEN[CB1DE], DMAEN[CB0DE], DMAEN[CX1DE], or DMAEN[CX0DE] to also be set in order to determine to which watermark(s) the DMA request is sensitive.
10	A local sync (VAL1 matches counter) sets the read DMA request.
11	A local reload (STS[RF] being set) sets the read DMA request.
5 CA1DE	Capture A1 FIFO DMA Enable This read/write bit enables DMA read requests for the Capture A1 FIFO data when STS[CFA1] is set. Reset clears this bit. Do not set both this bit and INTEN[CA1IE].
4 CA0DE	Capture A0 FIFO DMA Enable This read/write bit enables DMA read requests for the Capture A0 FIFO data when STS[CFA0] is set. Reset clears this bit. Do not set both this bit and INTEN[CA0IE].
3 CB1DE	Capture B1 FIFO DMA Enable This read/write bit enables DMA read requests for the Capture B1 FIFO data when STS[CFB1] is set. Reset clears this bit. Do not set both this bit and INTEN[CB1IE].
2 CB0DE	Capture B0 FIFO DMA Enable This read/write bit enables DMA read requests for the Capture B0 FIFO data when STS[CFB0] is set. Reset clears this bit. Do not set both this bit and INTEN[CB0IE].
1 CX1DE	Capture X1 FIFO DMA Enable This read/write bit enables DMA read requests for the Capture X1 FIFO data when STS[CFX1] is set. Reset clears this bit. Do not set both this bit and INTEN[CX1IE].
0 CX0DE	Capture X0 FIFO DMA Enable This read/write bit enables DMA read requests for the Capture X0 FIFO data when STS[CFX0] is set. Reset clears this bit. Do not set both this bit and INTEN[CX0IE].

47.4.21 Output Trigger Control Register (PWMx_SMnTCTRL)

Address: Base address + 2Ah offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Read	PWAOT0	PWBOT1	0	TRGFRQ	0			
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		OUT_TRIG_EN					
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnTCTRL field descriptions

Field	Description
15 PWAOT0	<p>Output Trigger 0 Source Select</p> <p>This bit selects which signal to bring out on the PWM's PWM_OUT_TRIG0 port. The output trigger port is often connected to routing logic on the chip. This control bit allows the PWM0 output signal to be driven onto the output trigger port so it can be sent to the chip routing logic.</p> <p>0 Route the PWM_OUT_TRIG0 signal to PWM_OUT_TRIG0 port. 1 Route the PWM0 output to the PWM_OUT_TRIG0 port.</p>
14 PWBOT1	<p>Output Trigger 1 Source Select</p> <p>This bit selects which signal to bring out on the PWM's PWM_OUT_TRIG1 port. The output trigger port is often connected to routing logic on the chip. This control bit allows the PWM1 output signal to be driven onto the output trigger port so it can be sent to the chip routing logic.</p> <p>0 Route the PWM_OUT_TRIG1 signal to PWM_OUT_TRIG1 port. 1 Route the PWM1 output to the PWM_OUT_TRIG1 port.</p>
13 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
12 TRGFRQ	<p>Trigger frequency</p> <p>This read/write bit allows control over the frequency of the trigger outputs when using non-zero values of CTRL[LDFQ].</p> <p>0 Trigger outputs are generated during every PWM period even if the PWM is not reloaded every period due to CTRL[LDFQ] being non-zero. 1 Trigger outputs are generated only during the final PWM period prior to a reload opportunity when the PWM is not reloaded every period due to CTRL[LDFQ] being non-zero.</p>
11–6 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
OUT_TRIG_EN	<p>Output Trigger Enables</p> <p>These bits enable the generation of PWM_OUT_TRIG0 and PWM_OUT_TRIG1 outputs based on the counter value matching the value in one or more of the VAL0-5 registers. VAL0, VAL2, and VAL4 are used to generate PWM_OUT_TRIG0, and VAL1, VAL3, and VAL5 are used to generate PWM_OUT_TRIG1. The PWM_OUT_TRIGx signals are only asserted as long as the counter value matches the VALx value; therefore, up to six triggers can be generated (three each on PWM_OUT_TRIG0 and PWM_OUT_TRIG1) per PWM cycle per submodule.</p> <p>NOTE: Due to delays in creating the PWM outputs, the output trigger signals will lead the PWM output edges by 2-3 clock cycles depending on the fractional cycle value being used.</p> <p>0 PWM_OUT_TRIGx will not set when the counter value matches the VALx value. 1 PWM_OUT_TRIGx will set when the counter value matches the VALx value.</p>

47.4.22 Fault Disable Mapping Register 0 (PWMx_SMnDISMAP0)

This register determines which PWM pins are disabled by the fault protection inputs. Reset sets all of the bits in the fault disable mapping register.

Address: Base address + 2Ch offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	1				DIS0X				DIS0B				DIS0A			
Write																
Reset	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

PWMx_SMnDISMAP0 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–12 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 1.
11–8 DIS0X	PWM_X Fault Disable Mask 0 Each of the four bits of this read/write field is one-to-one associated with the four FAULTx inputs of fault channel 0. The PWM_X output is turned off if there is a logic 1 on a FAULTx input and a 1 in the corresponding bit of this field. A reset sets all bits in this field.
7–4 DIS0B	PWM_B Fault Disable Mask 0 Each of the four bits of this read/write field is one-to-one associated with the four FAULTx inputs of fault channel 0. The PWM_B output is turned off if there is a logic 1 on a FAULTx input and a 1 in the corresponding bit of this field. A reset sets all bits in this field.
DIS0A	PWM_A Fault Disable Mask 0 Each of the four bits of this read/write field is one-to-one associated with the four FAULTx inputs of fault channel 0. The PWM_A output is turned off if there is a logic 1 on a FAULTx input and a 1 in the corresponding bit of this field. A reset sets all bits in this field.

47.4.23 Deadtime Count Register 0 (PWMx_SMnDTCNT0)

Deadtime operation applies only to complementary channel operation. The values written to the DTCNTx registers are in terms of IPBus clock cycles regardless of the setting of CTRL[PRSC] and/or CTRL2[CLK_SEL]. Reset sets the deadtime count registers to a default value of 0x07FF, selecting a deadtime of 2047 IPBus clock cycles. The DTCNTx registers are not byte accessible.

Address: Base address + 30h offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	DTCNT0															
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

PWMx_SMnDTCNT0 field descriptions

Field	Description
DTCNT0	<p>The DTCNT0 field is interpreted differently depending on whether or not the fractional delays are being used (FRCNTL[FRAC23_EN] is set). If the fractional delays are off, then the upper 5 bits of DTCNT0 are ignored and the remaining 11 bits are used to specify the number of cycles of deadtime. In this case the maximum value is 0x07FF which indicates 2047 cycles of deadtime. If the fractional delays are being used, then the upper 11 bits of DTCNT0 represent the number of whole cycles of deadtime and the lower 5 bits of each register represent the fractional cycle added to the whole number. In this case the maximum value is 0xFFFF which represents 2047 31/32 cycles of deadtime.</p> <p>The DTCNT0 field is used to control the deadtime during 0 to 1 transitions of the PWM_A output (assuming normal polarity).</p>

47.4.24 Deadtime Count Register 1 (PWMx_SMnDTCNT1)

Deadtime operation applies only to complementary channel operation. The values written to the DTCNTx registers are in terms of IPBus clock cycles regardless of the setting of CTRL[PRSC] and/or CTRL2[CLK_SEL]. Reset sets the deadtime count registers to a default value of 0x07FF, selecting a deadtime of 2047 IPBus clock cycles. The DTCNTx registers are not byte accessible.

Address: Base address + 32h offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	DTCNT1															
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

PWMx_SMnDTCNT1 field descriptions

Field	Description
DTCNT1	<p>The DTCNT1 field is interpreted differently depending on whether or not the fractional delays are being used (FRCNTRL[FRAC45_EN] is set). If the fractional delays are off, then the upper 5 bits of DTCNT1 are ignored and the remaining 11 bits are used to specify the number of cycles of deadtime. In this case the maximum value is 0x07FF which indicates 2047 cycles of deadtime. If the fractional delays are being used, then the upper 11 bits of DTCNT1 represent the number of whole cycles of deadtime and the lower 5 bits of each register represent the fractional cycle added to the whole number. In this case the maximum value is 0xFFFF which represents 2047 31/32 cycles of deadtime.</p> <p>The DTCNT1 field is used to control the deadtime during 0 to 1 transitions of the PWM_B output (assuming normal polarity).</p>

47.4.25 Capture Control A Register (PWMx_SMnCAPTCTRLA)

Address: Base address + 34h offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	CA1CNT					CA0CNT										
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnCAPTCTRLA field descriptions

Field	Description
15–13 CA1CNT	<p>Capture A1 FIFO Word Count</p> <p>This field reflects the number of words in the Capture A1 FIFO. (FIFO depth is 1)</p>
12–10 CA0CNT	<p>Capture A0 FIFO Word Count</p> <p>This field reflects the number of words in the Capture A0 FIFO. (FIFO depth is 1)</p>
9–8 CFAWM	<p>Capture A FIFOs Water Mark</p> <p>This field represents the water mark level for capture A FIFOs. The capture flags, STS[CFA1] and STS[CFA0], are not set until the word count of the corresponding FIFO is greater than this water mark level. (FIFO depth is 1)</p>
7 EDGCNTA_EN	<p>Edge Counter A Enable</p> <p>This bit enables the edge counter which counts rising and falling edges on the PWM_A input signal.</p> <p>0 Edge counter disabled and held in reset 1 Edge counter enabled</p>
6 INP_SELA	Input Select A

Table continues on the next page...

PWMx_SMnCAPTCTRLA field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>This bit selects between the raw PWM_A input signal and the output of the edge counter/compare circuitry as the source for the input capture circuit.</p> <p>0 Raw PWM_A input signal selected as source. 1 Output of edge counter/compare selected as source.</p> <p>NOTE: When this bitfield is set to 1, the internal edge counter is enabled and the rising and/or falling edges specified by the CAPTCTRLA[EDGA0] and CAPTCTRLA[EDGA1] fields are ignored. The software must still place a value other than 00 in either or both of the CAPTCTRLA[EDGA0] and/or CAPTCTRLA[EDGA1] fields in order to enable one or both of the capture registers.</p>
5–4 EDGA1	<p>Edge A 1</p> <p>These bits control the input capture 1 circuitry by determining which input edges cause a capture event.</p> <p>00 Disabled 01 Capture falling edges 10 Capture rising edges 11 Capture any edge</p>
3–2 EDGA0	<p>Edge A 0</p> <p>These bits control the input capture 0 circuitry by determining which input edges cause a capture event.</p> <p>00 Disabled 01 Capture falling edges 10 Capture rising edges 11 Capture any edge</p>
1 ONESHOTA	<p>One Shot Mode A</p> <p>This bit selects between free running and one shot mode for the input capture circuitry.</p> <p>0 Free running mode is selected.</p> <p>If both capture circuits are enabled, then capture circuit 0 is armed first after CAPTCTRLA[ARMA] is set. Once a capture occurs, capture circuit 0 is disarmed and capture circuit 1 is armed. After capture circuit 1 performs a capture, it is disarmed and capture circuit 0 is re-armed. The process continues indefinitely.</p> <p>If only one of the capture circuits is enabled, then captures continue indefinitely on the enabled capture circuit.</p> <p>1 One shot mode is selected.</p> <p>If both capture circuits are enabled, then capture circuit 0 is armed first after CAPTCTRLA[ARMA] is set. Once a capture occurs, capture circuit 0 is disarmed and capture circuit 1 is armed. After capture circuit 1 performs a capture, it is disarmed and CAPTCTRLA[ARMA] is cleared. No further captures will be performed until CAPTCTRLA[ARMA] is set again.</p> <p>If only one of the capture circuits is enabled, then a single capture will occur on the enabled capture circuit and CAPTCTRLA[ARMA] is then cleared.</p>
0 ARMA	<p>Arm A</p> <p>Setting this bit high starts the input capture process. This bit can be cleared at any time to disable input capture operation. This bit is self-cleared when in one shot mode and one or more of the enabled capture circuits has had a capture event.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

PWMx_SMnCAPTCTRLA field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
0	Input capture operation is disabled.
1	Input capture operation as specified by CAPTCTRLA[EDGAX] is enabled.

47.4.26 Capture Compare A Register (PWMx_SMnCAPTCOMPA)

Address: Base address + 36h offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	EDGCNTA								EDGCMPIA							
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnCAPTCOMPA field descriptions

Field	Description
15–8 EDGCNTA	Edge Counter A This read-only field contains the edge counter value for the PWM_A input capture circuitry.
EDGCMPIA	Edge Compare A This read/write field is the compare value associated with the edge counter for the PWM_A input capture circuitry.

47.4.27 Capture Control B Register (PWMx_SMnCAPTCTRLB)

Address: Base address + 38h offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Read	CB1CNT				CB0CNT			CFBWM
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	EDGCNTB_EN	INP_SELB	EDGB1		EDGB0		ONESHOTB	ARMB
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnCAPTCTRLB field descriptions

Field	Description
15–13 CB1CNT	Capture B1 FIFO Word Count This field reflects the number of words in the Capture B1 FIFO. (FIFO depth is 1)

Table continues on the next page...

PWMx_SMnCAPTCTRLB field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
12–10 CB0CNT	Capture B0 FIFO Word Count This field reflects the number of words in the Capture B0 FIFO. (FIFO depth is 1)
9–8 CFBWM	Capture B FIFOs Water Mark This field represents the water mark level for capture B FIFOs. The capture flags, STS[CFB1] and STS[CFB0], won't be set until the word count of the corresponding FIFO is greater than this water mark level. (FIFO depth is 1)
7 EDGCBTB_EN	Edge Counter B Enable This bit enables the edge counter which counts rising and falling edges on the PWM_B input signal. 0 Edge counter disabled and held in reset 1 Edge counter enabled
6 INP_SELB	Input Select B This bit selects between the raw PWM_B input signal and the output of the edge counter/compare circuitry as the source for the input capture circuit. 0 Raw PWM_B input signal selected as source. 1 Output of edge counter/compare selected as source. NOTE: When this bitfield is set to 1, the internal edge counter is enabled and the rising and/or falling edges specified by the CAPTCTRLB[EDGB0] and CAPTCTRLB[EDGB1] fields are ignored. The software must still place a value other than 00 in either or both of the CAPTCTRLB[EDGB0] and/or CAPTCTRLB[EDGB1] fields in order to enable one or both of the capture registers.
5–4 EDGB1	Edge B 1 These bits control the input capture 1 circuitry by determining which input edges cause a capture event. 00 Disabled 01 Capture falling edges 10 Capture rising edges 11 Capture any edge
3–2 EDGB0	Edge B 0 These bits control the input capture 0 circuitry by determining which input edges cause a capture event. 00 Disabled 01 Capture falling edges 10 Capture rising edges 11 Capture any edge
1 ONESHOTB	One Shot Mode B This bit selects between free running and one shot mode for the input capture circuitry. 0 Free running mode is selected. If both capture circuits are enabled, then capture circuit 0 is armed first after CAPTCTRLB[ARMB] is set. Once a capture occurs, capture circuit 0 is disarmed and capture circuit 1 is armed. After capture circuit 1 performs a capture, it is disarmed and capture circuit 0 is re-armed. The process continues indefinitely.

Table continues on the next page...

PWMx_SMnCAPTCTRLB field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>If only one of the capture circuits is enabled, then captures continue indefinitely on the enabled capture circuit.</p> <p>1 One shot mode is selected.</p> <p>If both capture circuits are enabled, then capture circuit 0 is armed first after CAPTCTRLB[ARMB] is set. Once a capture occurs, capture circuit 0 is disarmed and capture circuit 1 is armed. After capture circuit 1 performs a capture, it is disarmed and CAPTCTRLB[ARMB] is cleared. No further captures will be performed until CAPTCTRLB[ARMB] is set again.</p> <p>If only one of the capture circuits is enabled, then a single capture will occur on the enabled capture circuit and CAPTCTRLB[ARMB] is then cleared.</p>
0 ARMB	<p>Arm B</p> <p>Setting this bit high starts the input capture process. This bit can be cleared at any time to disable input capture operation. This bit is self-cleared when in one shot mode and one or more of the enabled capture circuits has had a capture event.</p> <p>0 Input capture operation is disabled.</p> <p>1 Input capture operation as specified by CAPTCTRLB[EDGBx] is enabled.</p>

47.4.28 Capture Compare B Register (PWMx_SMnCAPTCOMP B)

Address: Base address + 3Ah offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	EDGCNTB								EDGCMPB							
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnCAPTCOMP B field descriptions

Field	Description
15–8 EDGCNTB	<p>Edge Counter B</p> <p>This read-only field contains the edge counter value for the PWM_B input capture circuitry.</p>
EDGCMPB	<p>Edge Compare B</p> <p>This read/write field is the compare value associated with the edge counter for the PWM_B input capture circuitry.</p>

47.4.29 Capture Control X Register (PWMx_SMnCAPTCTRLX)

Address: Base address + 3Ch offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Read	CX1CNT				CX0CNT			
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	EDGCNTX_EN	INP_SELX	EDGX1		EDGX0		ONESHOTX	ARMX
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnCAPTCTRLX field descriptions

Field	Description
15–13 CX1CNT	Capture X1 FIFO Word Count This field reflects the number of words in the Capture X1 FIFO. (FIFO depth is 1)
12–10 CX0CNT	Capture X0 FIFO Word Count This field reflects the number of words in the Capture X0 FIFO. (FIFO depth is 1)
9–8 CFXWM	Capture X FIFOs Water Mark This field represents the water mark level for capture X FIFOs. The capture flags, STS[CFX1] and STS[CFX0], won't be set until the word count of the corresponding FIFO is greater than this water mark level. (FIFO depth is 1)
7 EDGCNTX_EN	Edge Counter X Enable This bit enables the edge counter which counts rising and falling edges on the PWM_X input signal. 0 Edge counter disabled and held in reset 1 Edge counter enabled
6 INP_SELX	Input Select X This bit selects between the raw PWM_X input signal and the output of the edge counter/compare circuitry as the source for the input capture circuit. 0 Raw PWM_X input signal selected as source. 1 Output of edge counter/compare selected as source. NOTE: When this bitfield is set to 1, the internal edge counter is enabled and the rising and/or falling edges specified by the CAPTCTRLX[EDGX0] and CAPTCTRLX[EDGX1] fields are ignored. The software must still place a value other than 00 in either or both of the CAPTCTRLX[EDGX0] and/or CAPTCTRLX[EDGX1] fields in order to enable one or both of the capture registers.
5–4 EDGX1	Edge X 1 These bits control the input capture 1 circuitry by determining which input edges cause a capture event. 00 Disabled

Table continues on the next page...

PWMx_SMnCAPTCTRLX field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	01 Capture falling edges 10 Capture rising edges 11 Capture any edge
3–2 EDGX0	Edge X 0 These bits control the input capture 0 circuitry by determining which input edges cause a capture event. 00 Disabled 01 Capture falling edges 10 Capture rising edges 11 Capture any edge
1 ONESHOTX	One Shot Mode Aux This bit selects between free running and one shot mode for the input capture circuitry. 0 Free running mode is selected. If both capture circuits are enabled, then capture circuit 0 is armed first after the ARMX bit is set. Once a capture occurs, capture circuit 0 is disarmed and capture circuit 1 is armed. After capture circuit 1 performs a capture, it is disarmed and capture circuit 0 is re-armed. The process continues indefinitely. If only one of the capture circuits is enabled, then captures continue indefinitely on the enabled capture circuit. 1 One shot mode is selected. If both capture circuits are enabled, then capture circuit 0 is armed first after the ARMX bit is set. Once a capture occurs, capture circuit 0 is disarmed and capture circuit 1 is armed. After capture circuit 1 performs a capture, it is disarmed and the ARMX bit is cleared. No further captures will be performed until the ARMX bit is set again. If only one of the capture circuits is enabled, then a single capture will occur on the enabled capture circuit and the ARMX bit is then cleared.
0 ARMX	Arm X Setting this bit high starts the input capture process. This bit can be cleared at any time to disable input capture operation. This bit is self-cleared when in one shot mode and one or more of the enabled capture circuits has had a capture event. 0 Input capture operation is disabled. 1 Input capture operation as specified by CAPTCTRLX[EDGXx] is enabled.

47.4.30 Capture Compare X Register (PWMx_SMnCAPTCOMPX)

Address: Base address + 3Eh offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	EDGCNTX								EDGCOMPX							
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnCAPTCOMPX field descriptions

Field	Description
15–8 EDGCNTX	Edge Counter X This read-only field contains the edge counter value for the PWM_X input capture circuitry.
EDGCMPLX	Edge Compare X This read/write field is the compare value associated with the edge counter for the PWM_X input capture circuitry.

47.4.31 Capture Value 0 Register (PWMx_SMnCVAL0)

Address: Base address + 40h offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	CAPTVAL0															
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnCVAL0 field descriptions

Field	Description
CAPTVAL0	This read-only register stores the value captured from the submodule counter. Exactly when this capture occurs is defined by CAPTCTRLX[EDGX0]. Each capture will increase the value of CAPTCTRLX[CX0CNT] by 1 until the maximum value is reached. Each read of this register will decrease the value of CAPTCTRLX[CX0CNT] by 1 until 0 is reached. This register is not byte accessible.

47.4.32 Capture Value 0 Cycle Register (PWMx_SMnCVAL0CYC)

Address: Base address + 42h offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0												CVAL0CYC			
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnCVAL0CYC field descriptions

Field	Description
15–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CVAL0CYC	This read-only register stores the cycle number corresponding to the value captured in CVAL0. This register is incremented each time the counter is loaded with the INIT value at the end of a PWM modulo cycle.

47.4.33 Capture Value 1 Register (PWMx_SMnCVAL1)

Address: Base address + 44h offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	CAPTVAL1															
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnCVAL1 field descriptions

Field	Description
CAPTVAL1	This read-only register stores the value captured from the submodule counter. Exactly when this capture occurs is defined by CAPTCTRLX[EDGX1]. Each capture increases the value of CAPTCTRLX[CX1CNT] by 1 until the maximum value is reached. Each read of this register decreases the value of CAPTCTRLX[CX1CNT] by 1 until 0 is reached. This register is not byte accessible.

47.4.34 Capture Value 1 Cycle Register (PWMx_SMnCVAL1CYC)

Address: Base address + 46h offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0												CVAL1CYC			
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnCVAL1CYC field descriptions

Field	Description
15–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CVAL1CYC	This read-only register stores the cycle number corresponding to the value captured in CVAL1. This register is incremented each time the counter is loaded with the INIT value at the end of a PWM modulo cycle.

47.4.35 Capture Value 2 Register (PWMx_SMnCVAL2)

Address: Base address + 48h offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	CAPTVAL2															
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnCVAL2 field descriptions

Field	Description
CAPTVAL2	This read-only register stores the value captured from the submodule counter. Exactly when this capture occurs is defined by CAPTCTRLA[EDGA0]. Each capture increases the value of CAPTCTRLA[CA0CNT] by 1 until the maximum value is reached. Each read of this register decreases the value of CAPTCTRLA[CA0CNT] by 1 until 0 is reached. This register is not byte accessible.

47.4.36 Capture Value 2 Cycle Register (PWMx_SMnCVAL2CYC)

Address: Base address + 4Ah offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0												CVAL2CYC			
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnCVAL2CYC field descriptions

Field	Description
15–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CVAL2CYC	This read-only register stores the cycle number corresponding to the value captured in CVAL2. This register is incremented each time the counter is loaded with the INIT value at the end of a PWM modulo cycle.

47.4.37 Capture Value 3 Register (PWMx_SMnCVAL3)

Address: Base address + 4Ch offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	CAPTVAL3															
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnCVAL3 field descriptions

Field	Description
CAPTVAL3	This read-only register stores the value captured from the submodule counter. Exactly when this capture occurs is defined by CAPTCTRLA[EDGA1]. Each capture increases the value of CAPTCTRLA[CA1CNT] by 1 until the maximum value is reached. Each read of this register decreases the value of CAPTCTRLA[CA1CNT] by 1 until 0 is reached. This register is not byte accessible.

47.4.38 Capture Value 3 Cycle Register (PWMx_SMnCVAL3CYC)

Address: Base address + 4Eh offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0												CVAL3CYC			
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnCVAL3CYC field descriptions

Field	Description
15–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CVAL3CYC	This read-only register stores the cycle number corresponding to the value captured in CVAL3. This register is incremented each time the counter is loaded with the INIT value at the end of a PWM modulo cycle.

47.4.39 Capture Value 4 Register (PWMx_SMnCVAL4)

Address: Base address + 50h offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	CAPTVAL4															
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnCVAL4 field descriptions

Field	Description
CAPTVAL4	This read-only register stores the value captured from the submodule counter. Exactly when this capture occurs is defined by CAPTCTRLB[EDGB0]. Each capture increases the value of CAPTCTRLB[CB0CNT] by 1 until the maximum value is reached. Each read of this register decreases the value of CAPTCTRLB[CB0CNT] by 1 until 0 is reached. This register is not byte accessible.

47.4.40 Capture Value 4 Cycle Register (PWMx_SMnCVAL4CYC)

Address: Base address + 52h offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0												CVAL4CYC			
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnCVAL4CYC field descriptions

Field	Description
15–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CVAL4CYC	This read-only register stores the cycle number corresponding to the value captured in CVAL4. This register is incremented each time the counter is loaded with the INIT value at the end of a PWM modulo cycle.

47.4.41 Capture Value 5 Register (PWMx_SMnCVAL5)

Address: Base address + 54h offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	CAPTVAL5															
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnCVAL5 field descriptions

Field	Description
CAPTVAL5	This read-only register stores the value captured from the submodule counter. Exactly when this capture occurs is defined by CAPTCTRLB[EDGB1]. Each capture increases the value of CAPTCTRLB[CB1CNT] by 1 until the maximum value is reached. Each read of this register decreases the value of CAPTCTRLB[CB1CNT] by 1 until 0 is reached. This register is not byte accessible.

47.4.42 Capture Value 5 Cycle Register (PWMx_SMnCVAL5CYC)

Address: Base address + 56h offset + (96d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0												CVAL5CYC			
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SMnCVAL5CYC field descriptions

Field	Description
15–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CVAL5CYC	This read-only register stores the cycle number corresponding to the value captured in CVAL5. This register is incremented each time the counter is loaded with the INIT value at the end of a PWM modulo cycle.

47.4.43 Output Enable Register (PWMx_OUTEN)

Address: Base address + 180h offset

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0				PWMA_EN				PWMB_EN				PWMX_EN			
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_OUTEN field descriptions

Field	Description
15–12 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
11–8 PWMA_EN	PWM_A Output Enables The four bits of this field enable the PWM_A outputs of submodules 3-0, respectively. These bits should be set to 0 (output disabled) when a PWM_A pin is being used for input capture. 0 PWM_A output disabled. 1 PWM_A output enabled.
7–4 PWMB_EN	PWM_B Output Enables The four bits of this field enable the PWM_B outputs of submodules 3-0, respectively. These bits should be set to 0 (output disabled) when a PWM_B pin is being used for input capture. 0 PWM_B output disabled. 1 PWM_B output enabled.
PWMX_EN	PWM_X Output Enables The four bits of this field enable the PWM_X outputs of submodules 3-0, respectively. These bits should be set to 0 (output disabled) when a PWM_X pin is being used for input capture or deadtime correction. 0 PWM_X output disabled. 1 PWM_X output enabled.

47.4.44 Mask Register (PWMx_MASK)

MASK is double buffered and does not take effect until a FORCE_OUT event occurs within the appropriate submodule. Reading MASK reads the buffered values and not necessarily the values currently in effect. This double buffering can be overridden by setting the UPDATE_MASK bits.

Address: Base address + 182h offset

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read					MASKA				MASKB				MASKX			
Write	UPDATE_MASK															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_MASK field descriptions

Field	Description
15–12 UPDATE_MASK	<p>Update Mask Bits Immediately</p> <p>The four bits mask the PWM_X outputs of submodules 3-0, respectively. The four bits of this field force the MASK* bits to be immediately updated within submodules 3-0, respectively, without waiting for a FORCE_OUT event. These self-clearing bits always read as zero. Software may write to any or all of these bits and may set these bits in the same write operation that updates the MASKA, MASKB, and MASKX fields of this register.</p> <p>0 Normal operation. MASK* bits within the corresponding submodule are not updated until a FORCE_OUT event occurs within the submodule.</p> <p>1 Immediate operation. MASK* bits within the corresponding submodule are updated on the following clock edge after setting this bit.</p>
11–8 MASKA	<p>PWM_A Masks</p> <p>The four bits of this field mask the PWM_A outputs of submodules 3-0, respectively, forcing the output to logic 0 prior to consideration of the output polarity.</p> <p>0 PWM_A output normal.</p> <p>1 PWM_A output masked.</p>
7–4 MASKB	<p>PWM_B Masks</p> <p>The four bits of this field mask the PWM_B outputs of submodules 3-0, respectively, forcing the output to logic 0 prior to consideration of the output polarity.</p> <p>0 PWM_B output normal.</p> <p>1 PWM_B output masked.</p>
MASKX	<p>PWM_X Masks</p> <p>The four bits of this field mask the PWM_X outputs of submodules 3-0, respectively, forcing the output to logic 0 prior to consideration of the output polarity.</p> <p>0 PWM_X output normal.</p> <p>1 PWM_X output masked.</p>

47.4.45 Software Controlled Output Register (PWMx_SWCOUT)

These bits are double buffered and do not take effect until a FORCE_OUT event occurs within the appropriate submodule. Reading these bits reads the buffered value and not necessarily the value currently in effect.

Address: Base address + 184h offset

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Read	0							
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	SM3OUT23	SM3OUT45	SM2OUT23	SM2OUT45	SM1OUT23	SM1OUT45	SM0OUT23	SM0OUT45
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_SWCOUT field descriptions

Field	Description
15–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7 SM3OUT23	Submodule 3 Software Controlled Output 23 This bit is only used when DTSSRCSEL[SM3SEL23] is set to 0b10. It allows software control of which signal is supplied to the deadtime generator of that submodule. 0 A logic 0 is supplied to the deadtime generator of submodule 3 instead of PWM23. 1 A logic 1 is supplied to the deadtime generator of submodule 3 instead of PWM23.
6 SM3OUT45	Submodule 3 Software Controlled Output 45 This bit is only used when DTSSRCSEL[SM3SEL45] is set to b10. It allows software control of which signal is supplied to the deadtime generator of that submodule. 0 A logic 0 is supplied to the deadtime generator of submodule 3 instead of PWM45. 1 A logic 1 is supplied to the deadtime generator of submodule 3 instead of PWM45.
5 SM2OUT23	Submodule 2 Software Controlled Output 23 This bit is only used when DTSSRCSEL[SM2SEL23] is set to b10. It allows software control of which signal is supplied to the deadtime generator of that submodule. 0 A logic 0 is supplied to the deadtime generator of submodule 2 instead of PWM23. 1 A logic 1 is supplied to the deadtime generator of submodule 2 instead of PWM23.
4 SM2OUT45	Submodule 2 Software Controlled Output 45 This bit is only used when DTSSRCSEL[SM2SEL45] is set to b10. It allows software control of which signal is supplied to the deadtime generator of that submodule. 0 A logic 0 is supplied to the deadtime generator of submodule 2 instead of PWM45. 1 A logic 1 is supplied to the deadtime generator of submodule 2 instead of PWM45.

Table continues on the next page...

PWMx_SWCOUT field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
3 SM1OUT23	Submodule 1 Software Controlled Output 23 This bit is only used when DTSRCSEL[SM1SEL23] is set to b10. It allows software control of which signal is supplied to the deadtime generator of that submodule. 0 A logic 0 is supplied to the deadtime generator of submodule 1 instead of PWM23. 1 A logic 1 is supplied to the deadtime generator of submodule 1 instead of PWM23.
2 SM1OUT45	Submodule 1 Software Controlled Output 45 This bit is only used when DTSRCSEL[SM1SEL45] is set to b10. It allows software control of which signal is supplied to the deadtime generator of that submodule. 0 A logic 0 is supplied to the deadtime generator of submodule 1 instead of PWM45. 1 A logic 1 is supplied to the deadtime generator of submodule 1 instead of PWM45.
1 SM0OUT23	Submodule 0 Software Controlled Output 23 This bit is only used when DTSRCSEL[SM0SEL23] is set to b10. It allows software control of which signal is supplied to the deadtime generator of that submodule. 0 A logic 0 is supplied to the deadtime generator of submodule 0 instead of PWM23. 1 A logic 1 is supplied to the deadtime generator of submodule 0 instead of PWM23.
0 SM0OUT45	Submodule 0 Software Controlled Output 45 This bit is only used when DTSRCSEL[SM0SEL45] is set to b10. It allows software control of which signal is supplied to the deadtime generator of that submodule. 0 A logic 0 is supplied to the deadtime generator of submodule 0 instead of PWM45. 1 A logic 1 is supplied to the deadtime generator of submodule 0 instead of PWM45.

47.4.46 PWM Source Select Register (PWMx_DTSRCSEL)

The PWM source select bits are double buffered and do not take effect until a FORCE_OUT event occurs within the appropriate submodule. Reading these bits reads the buffered value and not necessarily the value currently in effect.

Address: Base address + 186h offset

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	SM3SEL23	SM3SEL45	SM2SEL23	SM2SEL45	SM1SEL23	SM1SEL45	SM0SEL23	SM0SEL45								
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_DTSRCSEL field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 SM3SEL23	Submodule 3 PWM23 Control Select This field selects possible over-rides to the generated SM3PWM23 signal that will be passed to the deadtime logic upon the occurrence of a FORCE_OUT event in that submodule.

Table continues on the next page...

PWMx_DTsrcSEL field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	00 Generated SM3PWM23 signal is used by the deadtime logic. 01 Inverted generated SM3PWM23 signal is used by the deadtime logic. 10 SWCOUT[SM3OUT23] is used by the deadtime logic. 11 PWMx_EXTa3 signal is used by the deadtime logic.
13–12 SM3SEL45	Submodule 3 PWM45 Control Select This field selects possible over-rides to the generated SM3PWM45 signal that will be passed to the deadtime logic upon the occurrence of a FORCE_OUT event in that submodule. 00 Generated SM3PWM45 signal is used by the deadtime logic. 01 Inverted generated SM3PWM45 signal is used by the deadtime logic. 10 SWCOUT[SM3OUT45] is used by the deadtime logic. 11 PWMx_EXTb3 signal is used by the deadtime logic.
11–10 SM2SEL23	Submodule 2 PWM23 Control Select This field selects possible over-rides to the generated SM2PWM23 signal that will be passed to the deadtime logic upon the occurrence of a FORCE_OUT event in that submodule. 00 Generated SM2PWM23 signal is used by the deadtime logic. 01 Inverted generated SM2PWM23 signal is used by the deadtime logic. 10 SWCOUT[SM2OUT23] is used by the deadtime logic. 11 PWMx_EXTa2 signal is used by the deadtime logic.
9–8 SM2SEL45	Submodule 2 PWM45 Control Select This field selects possible over-rides to the generated SM2PWM45 signal that will be passed to the deadtime logic upon the occurrence of a FORCE_OUT event in that submodule. 00 Generated SM2PWM45 signal is used by the deadtime logic. 01 Inverted generated SM2PWM45 signal is used by the deadtime logic. 10 SWCOUT[SM2OUT45] is used by the deadtime logic. 11 PWMx_EXTb2 signal is used by the deadtime logic.
7–6 SM1SEL23	Submodule 1 PWM23 Control Select This field selects possible over-rides to the generated SM1PWM23 signal that will be passed to the deadtime logic upon the occurrence of a FORCE_OUT event in that submodule. 00 Generated SM1PWM23 signal is used by the deadtime logic. 01 Inverted generated SM1PWM23 signal is used by the deadtime logic. 10 SWCOUT[SM1OUT23] is used by the deadtime logic. 11 PWMx_EXTa1 signal is used by the deadtime logic.
5–4 SM1SEL45	Submodule 1 PWM45 Control Select This field selects possible over-rides to the generated SM1PWM45 signal that will be passed to the deadtime logic upon the occurrence of a FORCE_OUT event in that submodule. 00 Generated SM1PWM45 signal is used by the deadtime logic. 01 Inverted generated SM1PWM45 signal is used by the deadtime logic. 10 SWCOUT[SM1OUT45] is used by the deadtime logic. 11 PWMx_EXTb1 signal is used by the deadtime logic.

Table continues on the next page...

PWMx_DTsrcSEL field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
3–2 SM0SEL23	<p>Submodule 0 PWM23 Control Select</p> <p>This field selects possible over-rides to the generated SM0PWM23 signal that will be passed to the deadtime logic upon the occurrence of a FORCE_OUT event in that submodule.</p> <p>00 Generated SM0PWM23 signal is used by the deadtime logic. 01 Inverted generated SM0PWM23 signal is used by the deadtime logic. 10 SWCOUT[SM0OUT23] is used by the deadtime logic. 11 PWMx_EXTa0 signal is used by the deadtime logic.</p>
SM0SEL45	<p>Submodule 0 PWM45 Control Select</p> <p>This field selects possible over-rides to the generated SM0PWM45 signal that will be passed to the deadtime logic upon the occurrence of a FORCE_OUT event in that submodule.</p> <p>00 Generated SM0PWM45 signal is used by the deadtime logic. 01 Inverted generated SM0PWM45 signal is used by the deadtime logic. 10 SWCOUT[SM0OUT45] is used by the deadtime logic. 11 PWMx_EXTb0 signal is used by the deadtime logic.</p>

47.4.47 Master Control Register 0 (PWMx_MCTRL0)

In every 4-bit field in this register, each bit acts on a separate submodule. Accordingly, the description of every bitfield refers to the effect of an individual bit.

Address: Base address + 188h offset

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	IPOL				RUN				0				LDOK			
Write									CLDOK							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_MCTRL0 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–12 IPOL	<p>Current Polarity</p> <p>The four buffered read/write bits of this field correspond to submodules 3-0, respectively. Each bit selects between PWM23 and PWM45 as the source for the generation of the complementary PWM pair output for the corresponding submodule. MCTRL0[IPOL] is ignored in independent mode.</p> <p>MCTRL0[IPOL] does not take effect until a FORCE_OUT event takes place in the appropriate submodule. Reading MCTRL0[IPOL] reads the buffered value and not necessarily the value currently in effect.</p> <p>0 PWM23 is used to generate complementary PWM pair in the corresponding submodule. 1 PWM45 is used to generate complementary PWM pair in the corresponding submodule.</p>
11–8 RUN	Run

Table continues on the next page...

PWMx_MCTRL0 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>The four read/write bits of this field enable the clocks to the PWM generator of submodules 3-0, respectively. The corresponding MCTRL0[RUN] bit must be set for each submodule that is using its input capture functions or is using the local reload as its reload source. When this bit equals zero, the submodule counter is reset. A reset clears this field.</p> <p>0 PWM generator is disabled in the corresponding submodule. 1 PWM generator is enabled in the corresponding submodule.</p>
7–4 CLDOK	<p>Clear Load Okay</p> <p>The 4 bits of CLDOK field correspond to submodules 3-0, respectively. Each write-only bit is used to clear the corresponding bit of MCTRL0[LDOK]. Write a 1 to CLDOK to clear the corresponding MCTRL0[LDOK] bit. If a reload occurs within a submodule with the corresponding MCTRL0[LDOK] bit set at the same time that MCTRL0[CLDOK] is written, then the reload in that submodule will not be performed and MCTRL0[LDOK] will be cleared. CLDOK bit is self-clearing and always reads as a 0.</p>
LDOK	<p>Load Okay</p> <p>The 4 bits of LDOK field correspond to submodules 3-0, respectively. Each read/set bit loads CTRL[PRSC] and the INIT, FRACVALx, and VALx registers of the corresponding submodule into a set of buffers. The buffered prescaler divisor, submodule counter modulus value, and PWM pulse width take effect at the next PWM reload if CTRL[LDMOD] is clear or immediately if CTRL[LDMOD] is set. Set the corresponding MCTRL0[LDOK] bit by reading it when it is logic zero and then writing a logic one to it. The VALx, FRACVALx, INIT, and CTRL[PRSC] registers of the corresponding submodule cannot be written while the the corresponding MCTRL0[LDOK] bit is set.</p> <p>In Master Reload Mode (CTRL2[RELOAD_SEL]=1), it is only necessary to set the LDOK bit corresponding to submodule0; however, it is recommended to also set the LDOK bit of the slave submodules, to prevent unwanted writes to the registers in the slave submodules.</p> <p>The MCTRL0[LDOK] bit is automatically cleared after the new values are loaded, or it can be manually cleared before a reload by writing a logic 1 to the appropriate MCTRL0[CLDOK] bit. LDOK bits cannot be written with a zero. MCTRL0[LDOK] can be set in DMA mode when the DMA indicates that it has completed the update of all CTRL[PRSC], INIT, FRACVALx, and VALx registers in the corresponding submodule. Reset clears LDOK field.</p> <p>0 Do not load new values. 1 Load prescaler, modulus, and PWM values of the corresponding submodule.</p>

47.4.48 Master Control Register 1 (PWMx_MCTRL1)

NOTE

This register is optional and may not be available on all PWM instances. See the chip-specific information for details.

Address: Base address + 18Ah offset

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0							0	0							MONPLL
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_MCTRL1 field descriptions

Field	Description
15–9 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7–2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
MONPLL	<p>Monitor PLL State</p> <p>These bits are used to control disabling of the fractional delay block when the chip PLL is unlocked and/or missing its input reference. The fractional delay block requires a continuous MHz clock from the PLL. If this clock turns off when the fractional delay block is being used, then the output of the fractional delay block can be stuck high or low even if the PLL restarts. When this control bit is set, PLL problems cause the fractional delay block to be disabled until the PLL returns to a locked state. Once the PLL is receiving a proper reference and is locked, the fractional delay block requires a 25 µs startup time just as if the FRCTRL[FRAC*_EN] bits had been turned off and turned on again.</p> <p>If PLL monitoring is disabled, then software should manually clear and then set the FRCTRL[FRAC*_EN] bits when the PLL loses its reference or loses lock. This will cause the fractional delay block to be disabled and restarted.</p> <p>If the fractional delay block is not being used, then the value of these bits do not matter.</p> <p>00 Not locked. Do not monitor PLL operation. Resetting of the fractional delay block in case of PLL losing lock will be controlled by software.</p> <p>01 Not locked. Monitor PLL operation to automatically disable the fractional delay block when the PLL encounters problems.</p> <p>10 Locked. Do not monitor PLL operation. Resetting of the fractional delay block in case of PLL losing lock will be controlled by software. These bits are write protected until the next reset.</p> <p>11 Locked. Monitor PLL operation to automatically disable the fractional delay block when the PLL encounters problems. These bits are write protected until the next reset.</p>

47.4.49 Fault Control Register (PWMx_FCTRLn)

For every 4-bit field in this register, the bits act on the fault inputs in order. For example, FLVL bits 15-12 act on faults 3-0, respectively.

Address: Base address + 18Ch offset + (5d × i), where i=0d to 0d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	FLVL				FAUTO				FSAFE				FIE			
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_FCTRLn field descriptions

Field	Description
15–12 FLVL	<p>Fault Level</p> <p>The four read/write bits of this field select the active logic level of the individual fault inputs 3-0, respectively. A reset clears this field.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

PWMx_FCTRLn field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>0 A logic 0 on the fault input indicates a fault condition.</p> <p>1 A logic 1 on the fault input indicates a fault condition.</p>
11–8 FAUTO	<p>Automatic Fault Clearing</p> <p>The four read/write bits of this field select automatic or manual clearing of faults 3-0, respectively. A reset clears this field.</p> <p>0 Manual fault clearing. PWM outputs disabled by this fault are not enabled until FSTS[FFLAGx] is clear at the start of a half cycle or full cycle depending the state of FSTS[FFULL]. This is further controlled by FCTRL[FSAFE].</p> <p>1 Automatic fault clearing. PWM outputs disabled by this fault are enabled when FSTS[FFPINx] is clear at the start of a half cycle or full cycle depending on the state of FSTS[FFULL] without regard to the state of FSTS[FFLAGx].</p>
7–4 FSAFE	<p>Fault Safety Mode</p> <p>These read/write bits select the safety mode during manual fault clearing. A reset clears this field.</p> <p>FSTS[FFPINx] may indicate a fault condition still exists even though the actual fault signal at the FAULTx pin is clear due to the fault filter latency.</p> <p>0 Normal mode. PWM outputs disabled by this fault are not enabled until FSTS[FFLAGx] is clear at the start of a half cycle or full cycle depending on the state of FSTS[FFULL] without regard to the state of FSTS[FFPINx]. The PWM outputs disabled by this fault input will not be re-enabled until the actual FAULTx input signal de-asserts since the fault input will combinationally disable the PWM outputs (as programmed in DISMAPn).</p> <p>1 Safe mode. PWM outputs disabled by this fault are not enabled until FSTS[FFLAGx] is clear and FSTS[FFPINx] is clear at the start of a half cycle or full cycle depending on the state of FSTS[FFULL].</p>
FIE	<p>Fault Interrupt Enables</p> <p>This read/write field enables CPU interrupt requests generated by the FAULTx pins. A reset clears this field.</p> <p>NOTE: The fault protection circuit is independent of the FIEEx bit and is always active. If a fault is detected, the PWM outputs are disabled according to the disable mapping register.</p> <p>0 FAULTx CPU interrupt requests disabled.</p> <p>1 FAULTx CPU interrupt requests enabled.</p>

47.4.50 Fault Status Register (PWMx_FSTS_n)

Address: Base address + 18Eh offset + (10d × i), where i=0d to 0d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	FHALF				FFPIN				FFULL				FFLAG			
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_FSTSn field descriptions

Field	Description
15–12 FHALF	<p>Half Cycle Fault Recovery</p> <p>These read/write bits are used to control the timing for re-enabling the PWM outputs after a fault condition. These bits apply to both automatic and manual clearing of a fault condition.</p> <p>NOTE: Both FHALF and FFULL can be set so that the fault recovery occurs at the start of a full cycle and at the start of a half cycle (as defined by VAL0). If neither FHALF nor FFULL is set, then no fault recovery is possible.</p> <p>0 PWM outputs are not re-enabled at the start of a half cycle. 1 PWM outputs are re-enabled at the start of a half cycle (as defined by VAL0).</p>
11–8 FFPIN	<p>Filtered Fault Pins</p> <p>These read-only bits reflect the current state of the filtered FAULTx pins converted to high polarity. A logic 1 indicates a fault condition exists on the filtered FAULTx pin. A reset has no effect on this field.</p>
7–4 FFULL	<p>Full Cycle</p> <p>These read/write bits are used to control the timing for re-enabling the PWM outputs after a fault condition. These bits apply to both automatic and manual clearing of a fault condition.</p> <p>NOTE: Both FHALF and FFULL can be set so that the fault recovery occurs at the start of a full cycle and at the start of a half cycle (as defined by VAL0). If neither FHALF nor FFULL is set, then no fault recovery is possible.</p> <p>0 PWM outputs are not re-enabled at the start of a full cycle 1 PWM outputs are re-enabled at the start of a full cycle</p>
FFLAG	<p>Fault Flags</p> <p>These read-only flag is set within two CPU cycles after a transition to active on the FAULTx pin. Clear this bit by writing a logic one to it. A reset clears this field. While the reset value is 0, these bits may be set to 1 by the time they can be read depending on the state of the fault input signals.</p> <p>0 No fault on the FAULTx pin. 1 Fault on the FAULTx pin.</p>

47.4.51 Fault Filter Register (PWMx_FFILTn)

The settings in this register are shared among each of the fault input filters within the fault channel.

Input filter considerations include:

- The FILT_PER value should be set such that the sampling period is larger than the period of the expected noise. This way a noise spike will only corrupt one sample. The FILT_CNT value should be chosen to reduce the probability of noisy samples

causing an incorrect transition to be recognized. The probability of an incorrect transition is defined as the probability of an incorrect sample raised to the $FILT_CNT+3$ power.

- The values of $FILT_PER$ and $FILT_CNT$ must also be traded off against the desire for minimal latency in recognizing input transitions. Turning on the input filter (setting $FILT_PER$ to a non-zero value) introduces a latency of $((FILT_CNT+4) \times FILT_PER \times IPBus \text{ clock period})$. Note that even when the filter is enabled, there is a combinational path to disable the PWM outputs. This is to ensure rapid response to fault conditions and also to ensure fault response if the PWM module loses its clock. The latency induced by the filter will be seen in the time to set $FSTS[FFLAG]$ and $FSTS[FFPIN]$.

Address: Base address + 190h offset + $(10d \times i)$, where $i=0d$ to $0d$

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	GSTR	0				FILT_CNT			FILT_PER							
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_FFILTn field descriptions

Field	Description
15 GSTR	<p>Fault Glitch Stretch Enable</p> <p>This bit is used to enable the fault glitch stretching logic. This logic ensures that narrow fault glitches are stretched to be at least 2 IPBus clock cycles wide. In some cases a narrow fault input can cause problems due to the short PWM output shutdown/re-activation time. The stretching logic ensures that a glitch on the fault input, when the fault filter is disabled, will be registered in the fault flags.</p> <p>0 Fault input glitch stretching is disabled. 1 Input fault signals will be stretched to at least 2 IPBus clock cycles.</p>
14–11 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
10–8 FILT_CNT	<p>Fault Filter Count</p> <p>These bits represent the number of consecutive samples that must agree prior to the input filter accepting an input transition. The number of samples is the decimal value of this field plus three: the bitfield value of 0-7 represents 3-10 samples, respectively. The value of $FILT_CNT$ affects the input latency.</p>
FILT_PER	<p>Fault Filter Period</p> <p>This 8-bit field applies universally to all fault inputs.</p> <p>These bits represent the sampling period (in IPBus clock cycles) of the fault pin input filter. Each input is sampled multiple times at the rate specified by this field. If $FILT_PER$ is 0x00 (default), then the input filter is bypassed. The value of $FILT_PER$ affects the input latency.</p> <p>NOTE: When changing values for $FILT_PER$ from one non-zero value to another non-zero value, first write a value of zero to clear the filter.</p>

47.4.52 Fault Test Register (PWMx_FTSTn)

Address: Base address + 192h offset + (10d × i), where i=0d to 0d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Read	0							
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0							FTEST
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_FTSTn field descriptions

Field	Description
15–1 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
0 FTEST	Fault Test This read/write bit is used to simulate a fault condition. Setting this bit causes a simulated fault to be sent into all of the fault filters. The condition propagates to the fault flags and possibly the PWM outputs depending on the DISMAPn settings. Clearing this bit removes the simulated fault condition. 0 No fault 1 Cause a simulated fault

47.4.53 Fault Control 2 Register (PWMx_FCTRL2n)

Address: Base address + 194h offset + (5d × i), where i=0d to 0d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0								NOCOMB							
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PWMx_FCTRL2n field descriptions

Field	Description
15–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
NOCOMB	No Combinational Path From Fault Input To PWM Output This read/write field is used to control the combinational path from the fault inputs to the PWM outputs. When these bits are low (default), the corresponding fault inputs have a combinational path to the PWM outputs that are sensitive to these fault inputs (as defined by DISMAP0 and DISMAP1). This combinational path is a safety feature that ensures the output is disabled even if the SOC has a failure of its clocking system. The combinational path also means that a pulse on the fault input can cause a brief disable of the PWM output even if the fault pulse is not wide enough to get through the input filter and be

Table continues on the next page...

PWMx_FCTRL2n field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	latched in the fault logic. Setting these bits removes the combinational path and uses the filtered and latched fault signals as the fault source to disable the PWM outputs. This eliminates fault glitches from creating PWM output glitches but also increases the latency to respond to a real fault.
0	There is a combinational link from the fault inputs to the PWM outputs. The fault inputs are combined with the filtered and latched fault signals to disable the PWM outputs.
1	The direct combinational path from the fault inputs to the PWM outputs is disabled and the filtered and latched fault signals are used to disable the PWM outputs.

47.5 Functional Description

47.5.1 PWM Capabilities

This section describes some capabilities of the PWM module.

47.5.1.1 Center Aligned PWMs

Each submodule has its own timer that is capable of generating PWM signals on two output pins. The edges of each of these signals are controlled independently as shown in [Figure 47-3](#).

functional Description

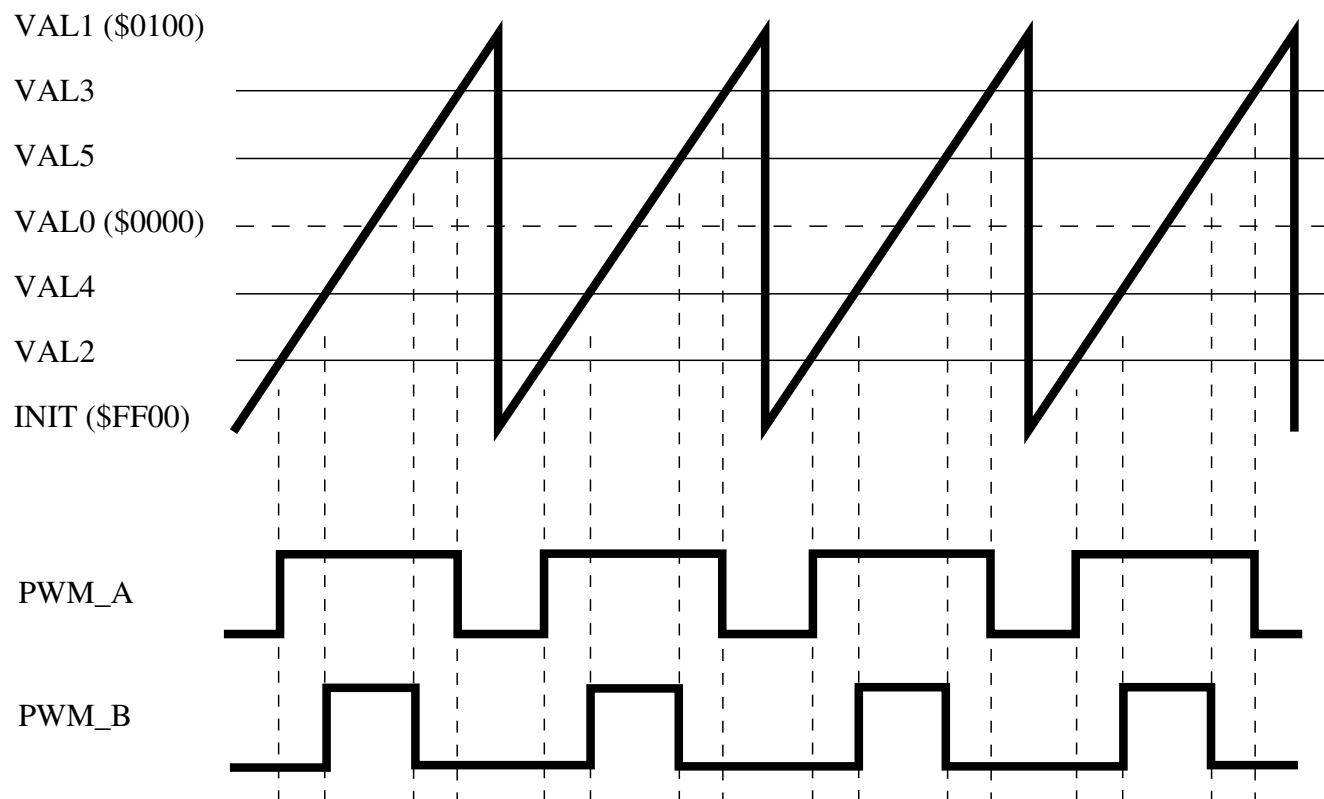


Figure 47-3. Center Aligned Example

The submodule timers only count in the up direction and then reset to the INIT value. Instead of having a single value that determines pulse width, there are two values that must be specified: the turn on edge and the turn off edge. This double action edge generation not only gives the user control over the pulse width, but over the relative alignment of the signal as well. As a result, there is no need to support separate PWM alignment modes since the PWM alignment mode is inherently a function of the turn on and turn off edge values.

Figure 47-3 also illustrates an additional enhancement to the PWM generation process. When the counter resets, it is reloaded with a user specified value, which may or may not be zero. If the value chosen happens to be the 2's complement of the modulus value, then the PWM generator operates in "signed" mode. This means that if each PWM's turn on and turn off edge values are also the same number but only different in their sign, the "on" portion of the output signal will be centered around a count value of zero. Therefore, only one PWM value needs to be calculated in software and then this value and its negative are provided to the submodule as the turn off and turn on edges respectively. This technique will result in a pulse width that always consists of an odd number of timer counts. If all PWM signal edge calculations follow this same convention, then the signals will be center aligned with respect to each other, which is the goal. Of course, center

alignment between the signals is not restricted to symmetry around the zero count value, as any other number would also work. However, centering on zero provides the greatest range in signed mode and also simplifies the calculations.

47.5.1.2 Edge Aligned PWMs

When the turn on edge for each pulse is specified to be the INIT value, then edge aligned operation results, as the following figure shows. Therefore, only the turn off edge value needs to be periodically updated to change the pulse width.

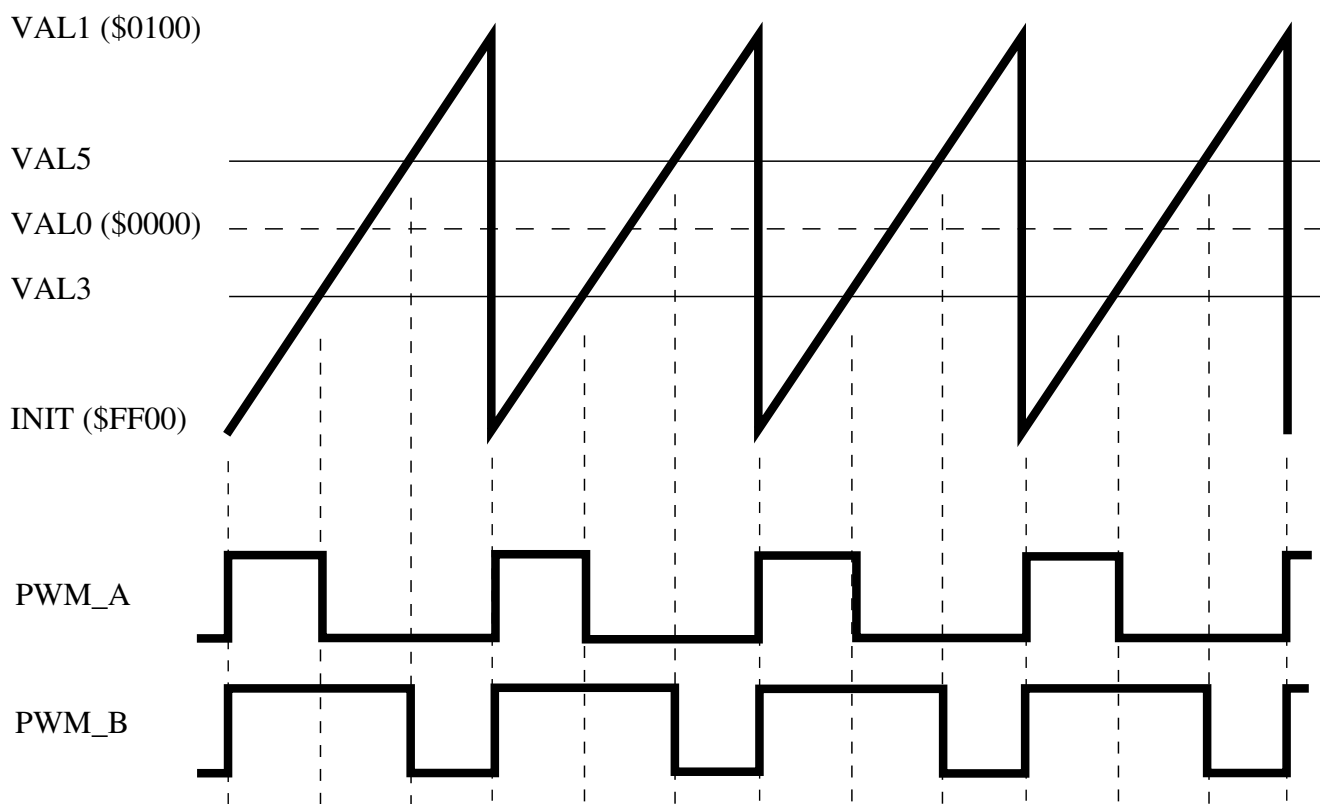


Figure 47-4. Edge Aligned Example (INIT=VAL2=VAL4)

With edge aligned PWMs, another example of the benefits of signed mode can be seen. A common way to drive an H-bridge is to use a technique called "bipolar" PWMs where a 50% duty cycle results in zero volts on the load. Duty cycles less than 50% result in negative load voltages and duty cycles greater than 50% generate positive load voltages. If the module is set to signed mode operation (the INIT and VAL1 values are the same number with opposite signs), then there is a direct proportionality between the PWM turn off edge value and the voltage, INCLUDING the sign. So once again, signed mode of operation simplifies the software interface to the PWM module since no offset calculations are required to translate the output variable control algorithm to the voltage on an H-Bridge load.

47.5.1.3 Phase Shifted PWMs

In the previous sections, the benefits of signed mode of operation were discussed in the context of simplifying the required software calculations by eliminating the requirement to bias up signed variables before applying them to the module. However, if numerical biases are applied to the turn on and turn off edges of different PWM signal, the signals will be phase shifted with respect to each other, as the following figure shows. This results in certain advantages when applied to a power stage. For example, when operating a multi-phase inverter at a low modulation index, all of the PWM switching edges from the different phases occur at nearly the same time. This can be troublesome from a noise standpoint, especially if ADC readings of the inverter must be scheduled near those times. Phase shifting the PWM signals can open up timing windows between the switching edges to allow a signal to be sampled by the ADC. However, phase shifting does NOT affect the duty cycle so average load voltage is not affected.

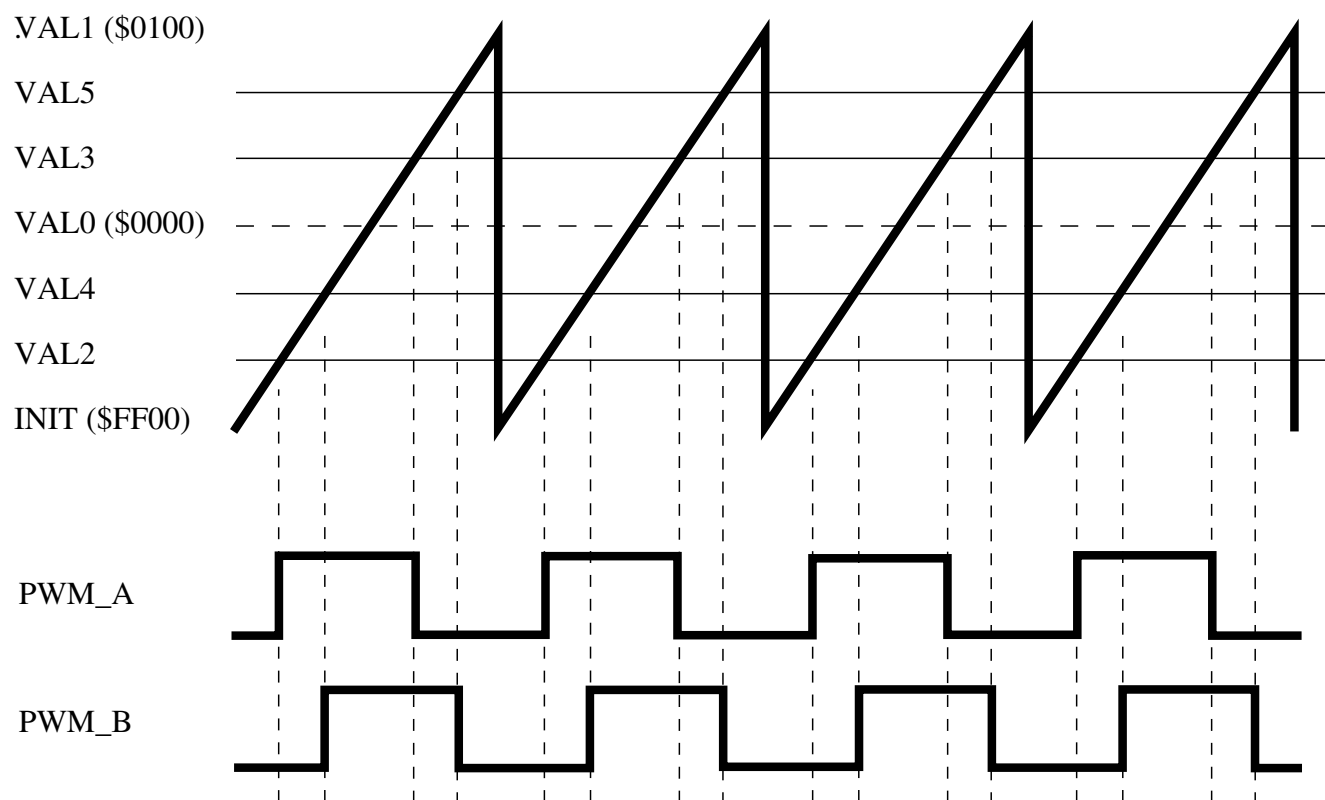


Figure 47-5. Phase Shifted Outputs Example

An additional benefit of phase shifted PWMs appears in [Figure 47-6](#). In this case, an H-Bridge circuit is driven by 4 PWM signals to control the voltage waveform on the primary of a transformer. Both left and right side PWMs are configured to always generate a square wave with 50% duty cycle. This works out nicely for the H-Bridge since no narrow pulse widths are generated reducing the high frequency switching

requirements of the transistors. Notice that the square wave on the right side of the H-Bridge is phase shifted compared to the left side of the H-Bridge. As a result, the transformer primary sees the bottom waveform across its terminals. The RMS value of this waveform is directly controlled by the amount of phase shift of the square waves. Regardless of the phase shift, no DC component appears in the load voltage as long as the duty cycle of each square wave remains at 50% making this technique ideally suited for transformer loads. As a result, this topology is frequently used in industrial welders to adjust the amount of energy delivered to the weld arc.

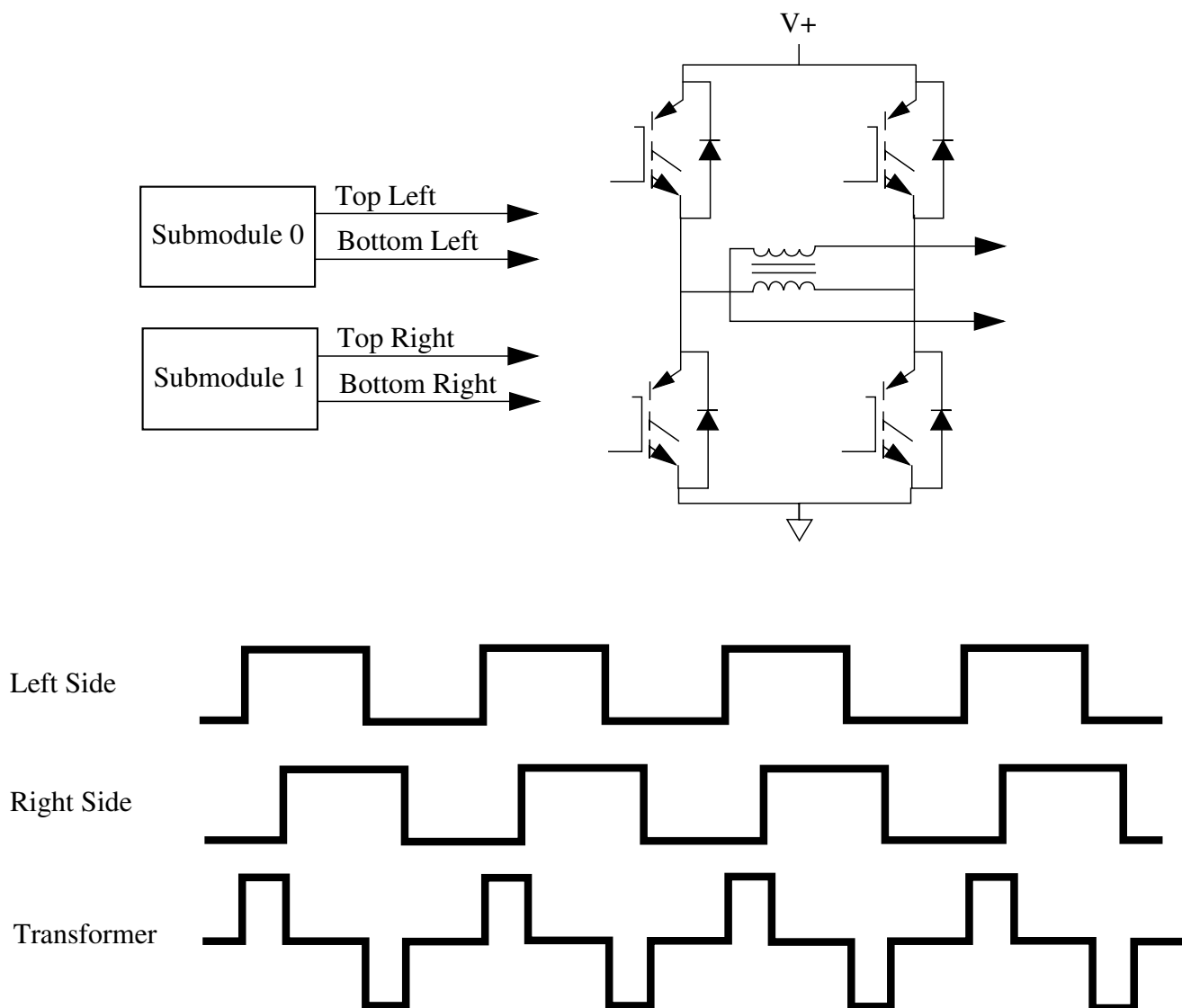


Figure 47-6. Phase Shifted PWMs Applied to a Transformer Primary

47.5.1.4 Double Switching PWMs

Double switching PWM output is supported to aid in single shunt current measurement and three phase reconstruction. This method support two independent rising edges and two independent falling edges per PWM cycle. The VAL2 and VAL3 registers are used to generate the even channel (labelled as PWM_A in the figure) while VAL4 and VAL5 are used to generate the odd channel. The two channels are combined using XOR logic (force out logic) as the following figure shows. The DBLPWM signal can be run through the deadtime insertion logic.

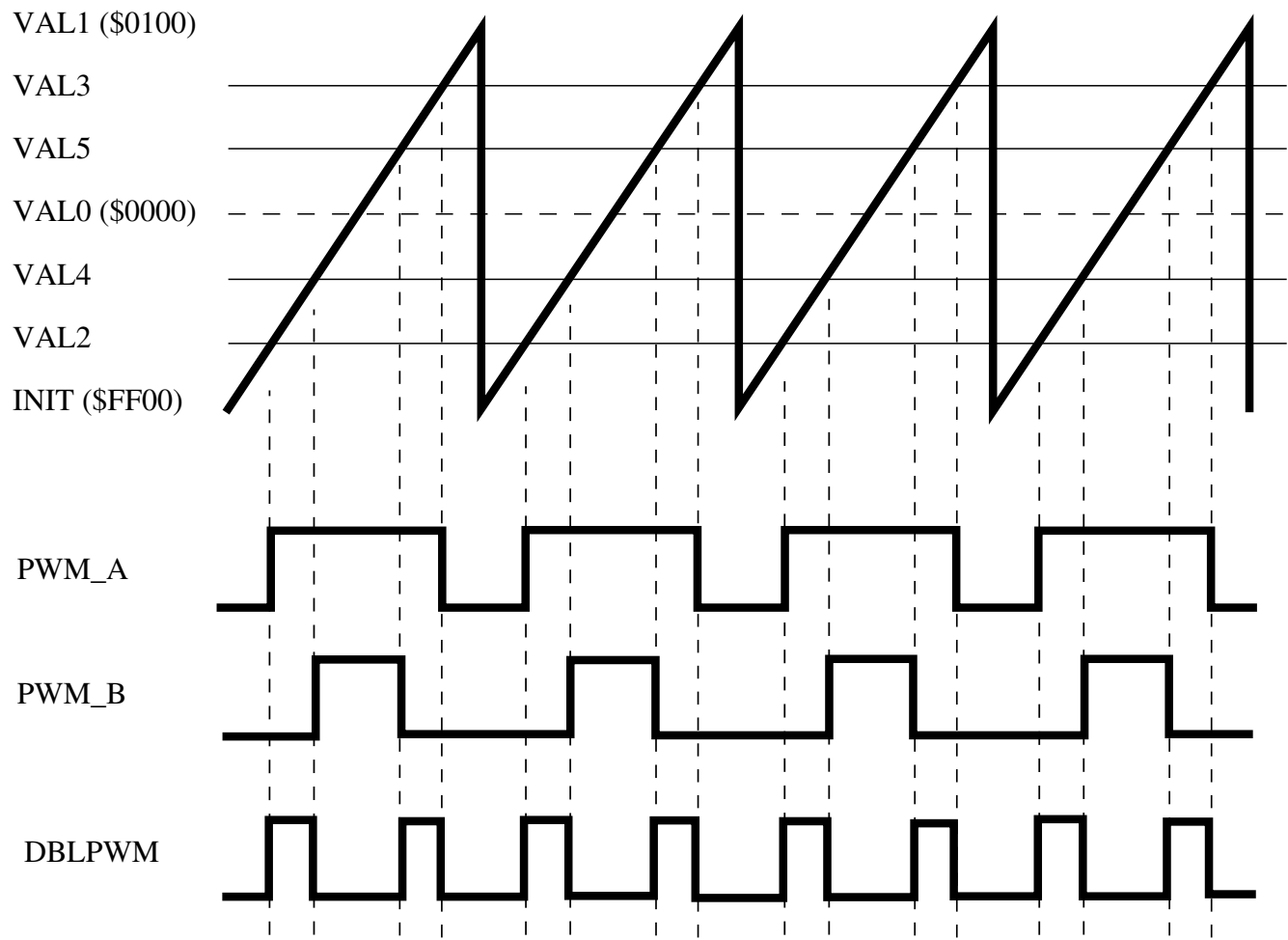


Figure 47-7. Double Switching Output Example

47.5.1.5 ADC Triggering

In cases where the timing of the ADC triggering is critical, it must be scheduled as a hardware event instead of software activated. With this PWM module, multiple ADC triggers can be generated in hardware per PWM cycle without the requirement of another timer module. [Figure 47-8](#) shows how this is accomplished. When specifying

complementary mode of operation, only two edge comparators are required to generate the output PWM signals for a given submodule. This means that the other comparators are free to perform other functions. In this example, the software does not need to quickly respond after the first conversion to set up other conversions that must occur in the same PWM cycle.

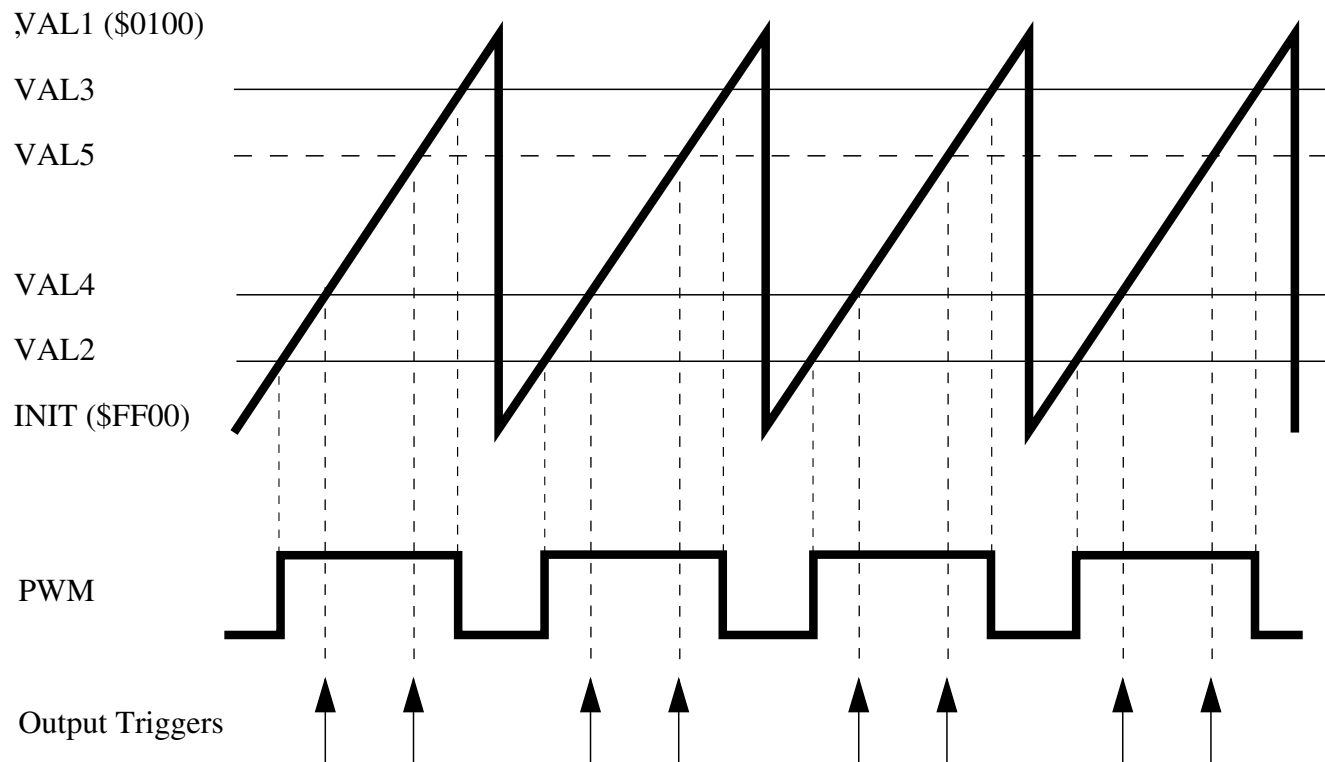


Figure 47-8. Multiple Output Trigger Generation in Hardware

Because each submodule has its own timer, it is possible for each submodule to run at a different frequency. One of the options possible with this PWM module is to have one or more submodules running at a lower frequency, but still synchronized to the timer in submodule0. [Figure 47-9](#) shows how this feature can be used to schedule ADC triggers over multiple PWM cycles. A suggested use for this configuration would be to use the lower-frequency submodule to control the sampling frequency of the software control algorithm where multiple ADC triggers can now be scheduled over the entire sampling period. In [Figure 47-9](#), *all* submodule comparators are shown being used for ADC trigger generation.

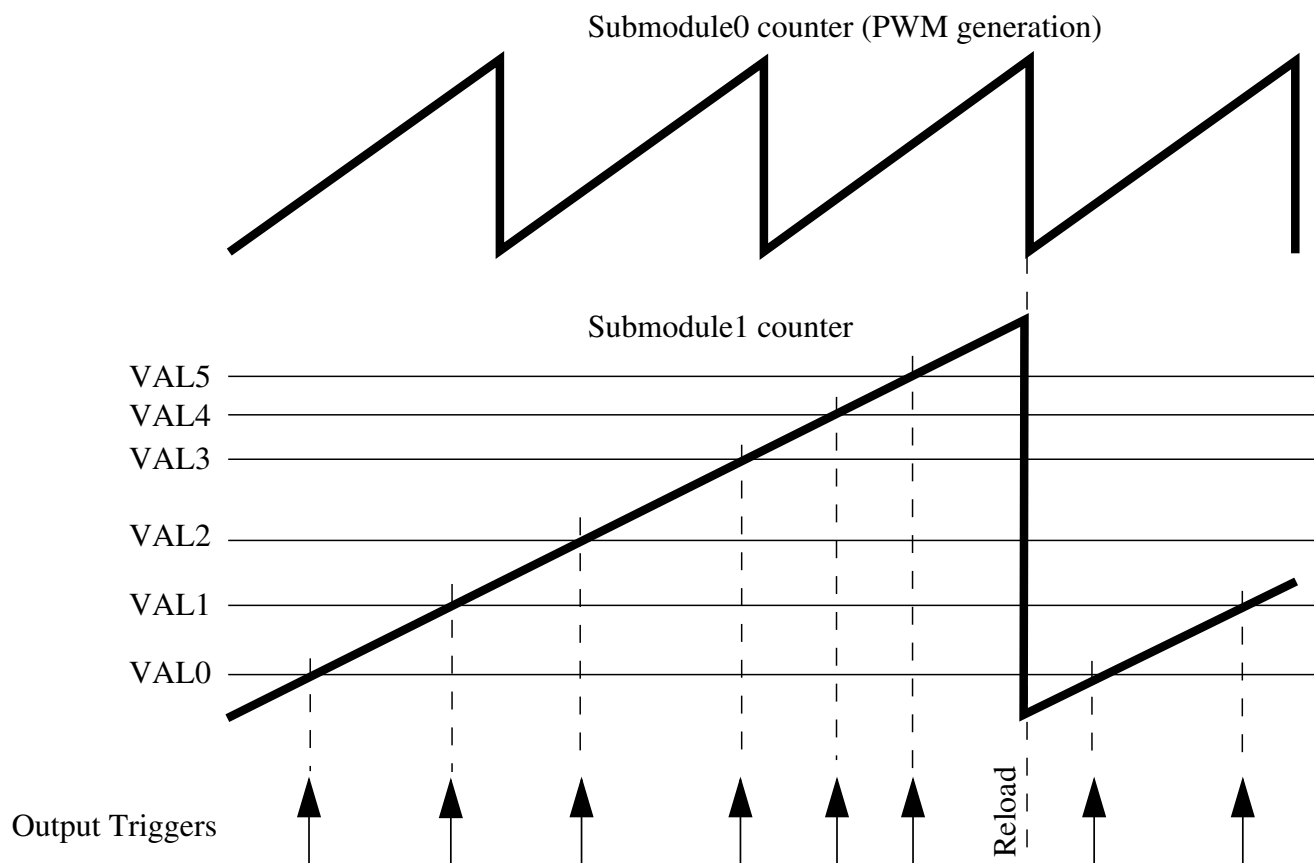


Figure 47-9. Multiple Output Triggers Over Several PWM Cycles

47.5.1.6 Enhanced Capture Capabilities (E-Capture)

When a PWM pin is not being used for PWM generation, it can be used to perform input captures. Recall that for PWM generation BOTH edges of the PWM signal are specified via separate compare register values. When programmed for input capture, both of these registers work on the same pin to capture multiple edges, toggling from one to the other in either a free running or one-shot fashion. By simply programming the desired edge of each capture circuit, period and pulse width of an input signal can easily be measured without the requirement to re-arm the circuit. In addition, each edge of the input signal can clock an 8 bit counter where the counter output is compared to a user specified value (EDGCMP). When the counter output equals EDGCMP, the value of the submodule timer is captured and the counter is automatically reset. This feature allows the module to count a specified number of edge events and then perform a capture and interrupt. The following figure illustrates some of the functionality of the E-Capture circuit.

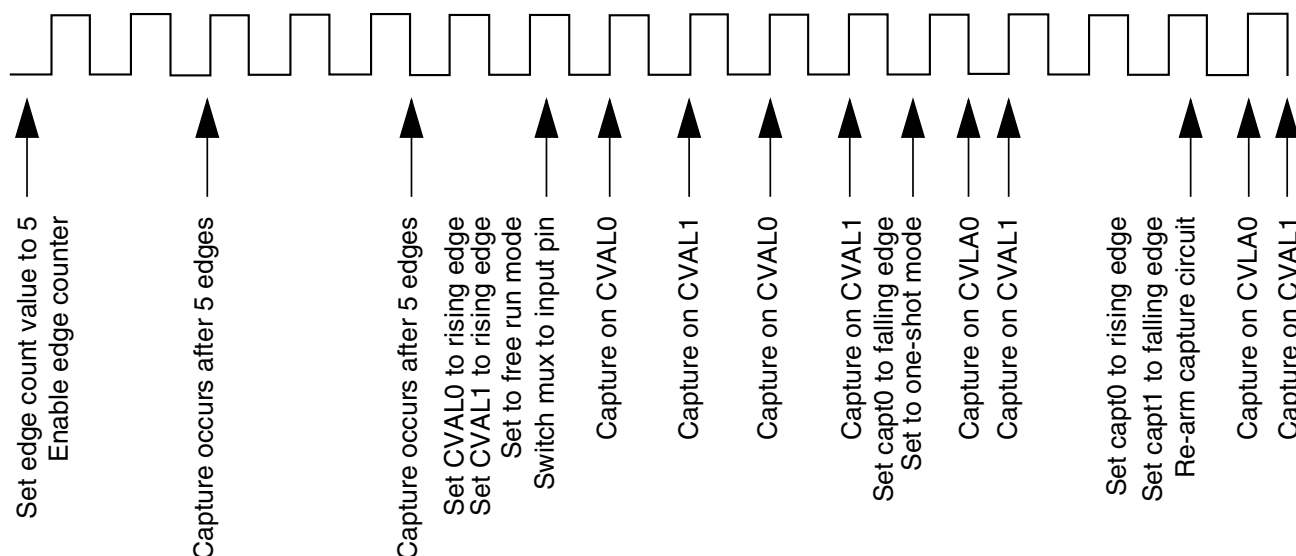


Figure 47-10. Capture Capabilities of the E-Capture Circuit

When a submodule is being used for PWM generation, its timer counts up to the modulus value used to specify the PWM frequency and then is re-initialized. Therefore, using this timer for input captures on one of the other pins (for example, PWM_X) has limited utility since it does not count through all of the numbers and the timer reset represents a discontinuity in the 16 bit number range. However, when measuring a signal that is synchronous to the PWM frequency, the timer modulus range is perfectly suited for the application. Consider the following figure as an example. In this application the output of a PWM power stage is connected to the PWM_X pin that is configured for free running input captures. Specifically, the CVAL0 capture circuitry is programmed for rising edges and the CVAL1 capture circuitry is set for falling edges. This will result in new load pulse width data being acquired every PWM cycle. To calculate the pulse width, simply subtract the CVAL0 register value from the CVAL1 register value. This measurement is extremely beneficial when performing dead-time distortion correction on a half bridge circuit driving an inductive load. Also, these values can be directly compared to the VALx registers responsible for generating the PWM outputs to obtain a measurement of system propagation delays. For details, refer to the separate discussion of deadtime distortion correction.

During deadtime, load inductance drives voltage with polarity that keeps inductive current flowing through diodes.

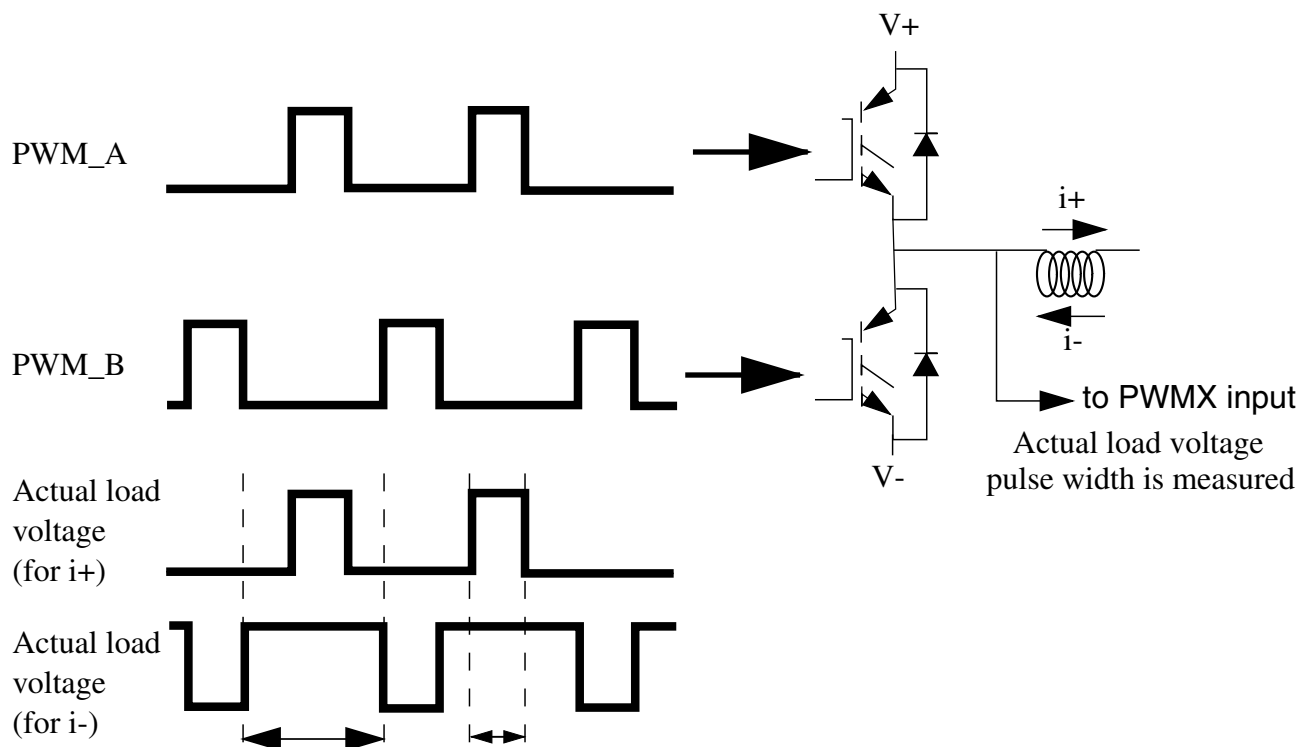


Figure 47-11. Output Pulse Width Measurement Possible with the E-Capture Circuit

47.5.1.7 Synchronous Switching of Multiple Outputs

Before the PWM signals are routed to the output pins, they are processed by a hardware block that permits all submodule outputs to be switched synchronously. Not only do all the changes occur synchronously on all submodule outputs, but they occur IMMEDIATELY after the trigger event occurs eliminating any interrupt latency.

The synchronous output switching is accomplished via a signal called FORCE_OUT. This signal originates from the local FORCE bit within the submodule, from submodule0, or from external to the PWM module and, in most cases, is supplied from an external timer channel configured for output compare. In a typical application, software sets up the desired states of the output pins in preparation for the next FORCE_OUT event. This selection lays dormant until the FORCE_OUT signal transitions and then all outputs are switched simultaneously. The signal switching is performed upstream from the deadtime generator so that any abrupt changes that might occur do not violate deadtime on the power stage when in complementary mode.

47.5.2 Functional Details

This section describes the implementation of various sections of the PWM in greater detail.

The following figure is a high-level block diagram of output PWM generation.

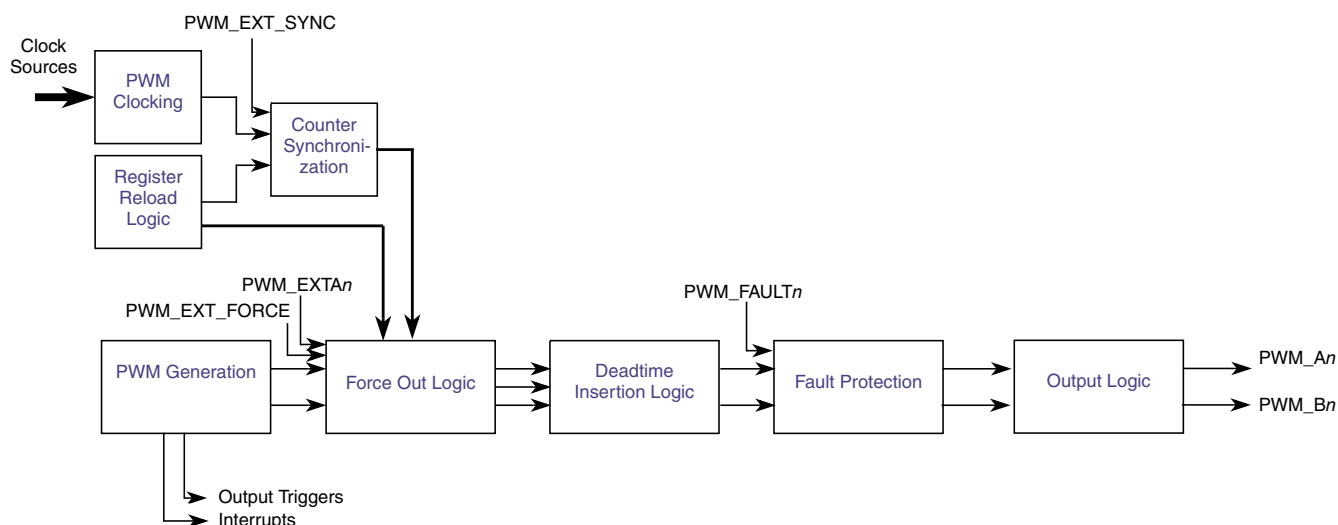


Figure 47-12. High-Level Output PWM Generation Block Diagram

47.5.2.1 PWM Clocking

Figure 47-13 shows the logic used to generate the main counter clock. Each submodule can select between three clock signals: the IPBus clock, EXT_CLK, and AUX_CLK. The EXT_CLK goes to all of the submodules. The AUX_CLK signal is broadcast from submodule0 and can be selected as the clock source by other submodules so that the 8-bit prescaler and MCTRL0[RUN] from submodule0 can control all of the submodules.

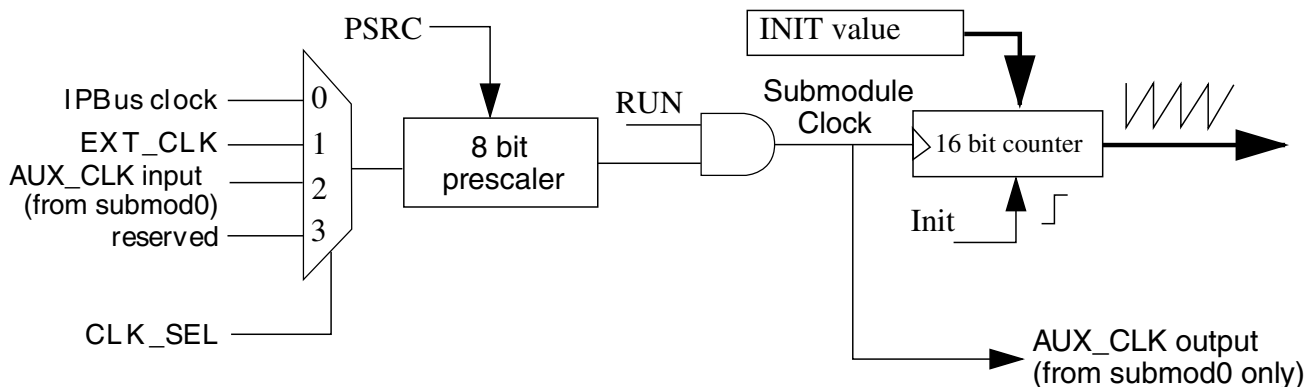


Figure 47-13. Clocking Block Diagram for Each PWM Submodule

To permit lower PWM frequencies, the prescaler produces the PWM clock frequency by dividing the IPBus clock frequency by 1-128. The prescaler bits, CTRL[PRSC], select the prescaler divisor. This prescaler is buffered and will not be used by the PWM generator until MCTRL0[LDOK] is set and a new PWM reload cycle begins or CTRL[LDMOD] is set.

47.5.2.2 Register Reload Logic

The register reload logic is used to determine when the outer set of registers for all double buffered register pairs will be transferred to the inner set of registers. The register reload event can be scheduled to occur every "n" PWM cycles using CTRL[LDFQ] and CTRL[FULL]. A half cycle reload option is also supported (CTRL[HALF]) where the reload can take place in the middle of a PWM cycle. The half cycle point is defined by the VAL0 register and does not have to be exactly in the middle of the PWM cycle.

As illustrated in [Figure 47-14](#) the reload signal from submodule0 can be broadcast as the Master Reload signal allowing the reload logic from submodule0 to control the reload of registers in other submodules.

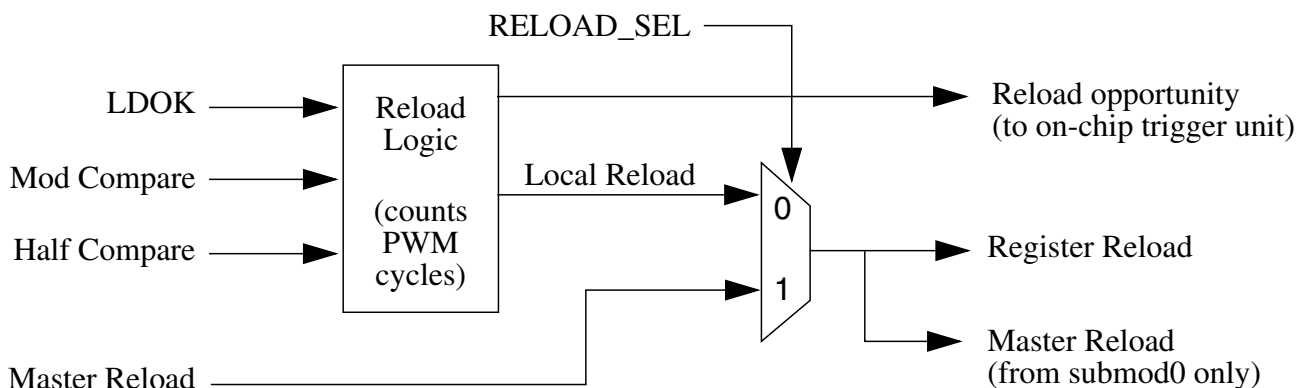


Figure 47-14. Register Reload Logic

47.5.2.3 Counter Synchronization

In the following figure, the 16 bit counter will count up until its output equals VAL1 which is used to specify the counter modulus value. The resulting compare causes a rising edge to occur on the Local Sync signal which is one of four possible sources used to cause the 16 bit counter to be initialized with INIT. If Local Sync is selected as the counter initialization signal, then VAL1 within the submodule effectively controls the timer period (and thus the PWM frequency generated by that submodule) and everything works on a local level.

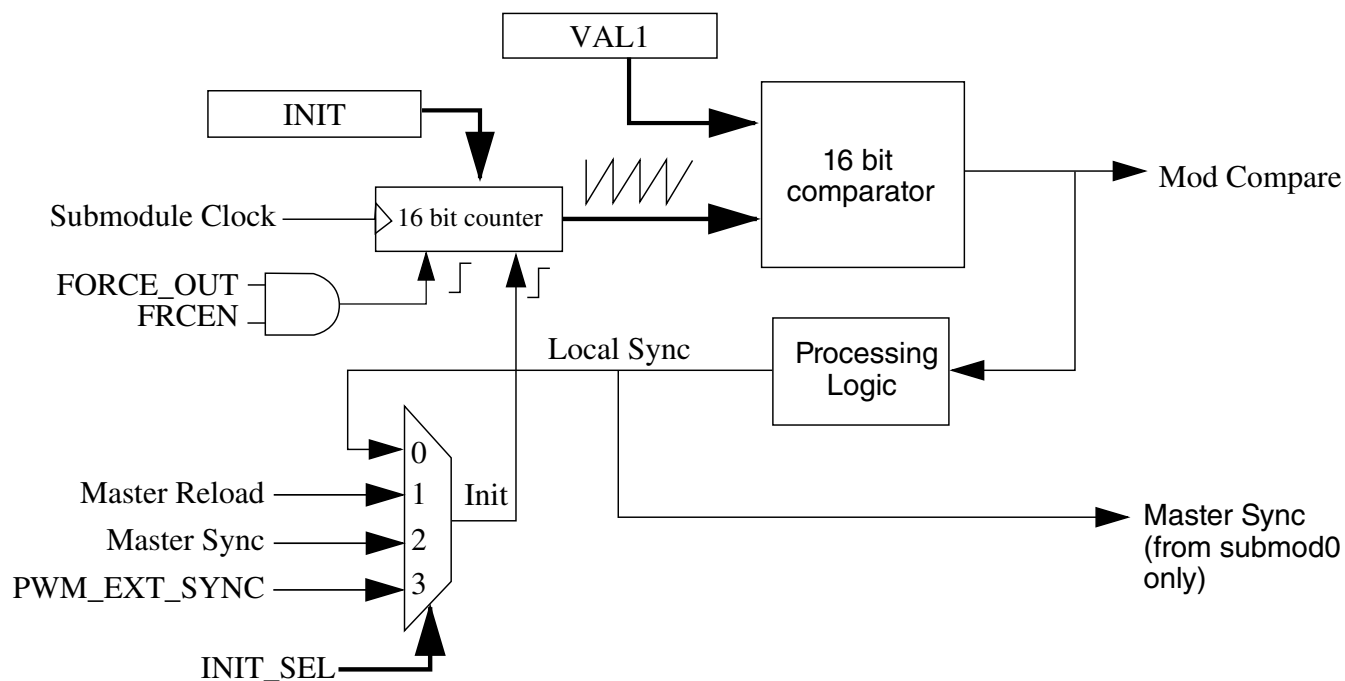


Figure 47-15. Submodule Timer Synchronization

The Master Sync signal originates as the Local Sync from submodule0. If configured to do so, the timer period of any submodule can be locked to the period of the timer in submodule0.

The PWM_EXT_SYNC signal originates on chip or off chip depending on the system architecture. This signal may be selected as the source for counter initialization so that an external source can control the period of all submodules.

If the Master Reload signal is selected as the source for counter initialization, then the period of the counter will be locked to the register reload frequency of submodule0. Since the reload frequency is usually commensurate to the sampling frequency of the software control algorithm, the submodule counter period will therefore equal the sampling period. As a result, this timer can be used to generate output compares or output triggers over the entire sampling period which may consist of several PWM cycles. The Master Reload signal can only originate from submodule0.

The counter can optionally initialize upon the assertion of the FORCE_OUT signal assuming that CTRL2[FRCEN] is set. As indicated by the preceding figure, this constitutes a second init input into the counter which will cause the counter to initialize regardless of which signal is selected as the counter init signal.

47.5.2.4 PWM Generation

Figure 47-16 illustrates how PWM generation is accomplished in each submodule. In each case, two comparators and associated VALx registers are utilized for each PWM output signal. One comparator and VALx register are used to control the turn-on edge, while a second comparator and VALx register control the turn-off edge.

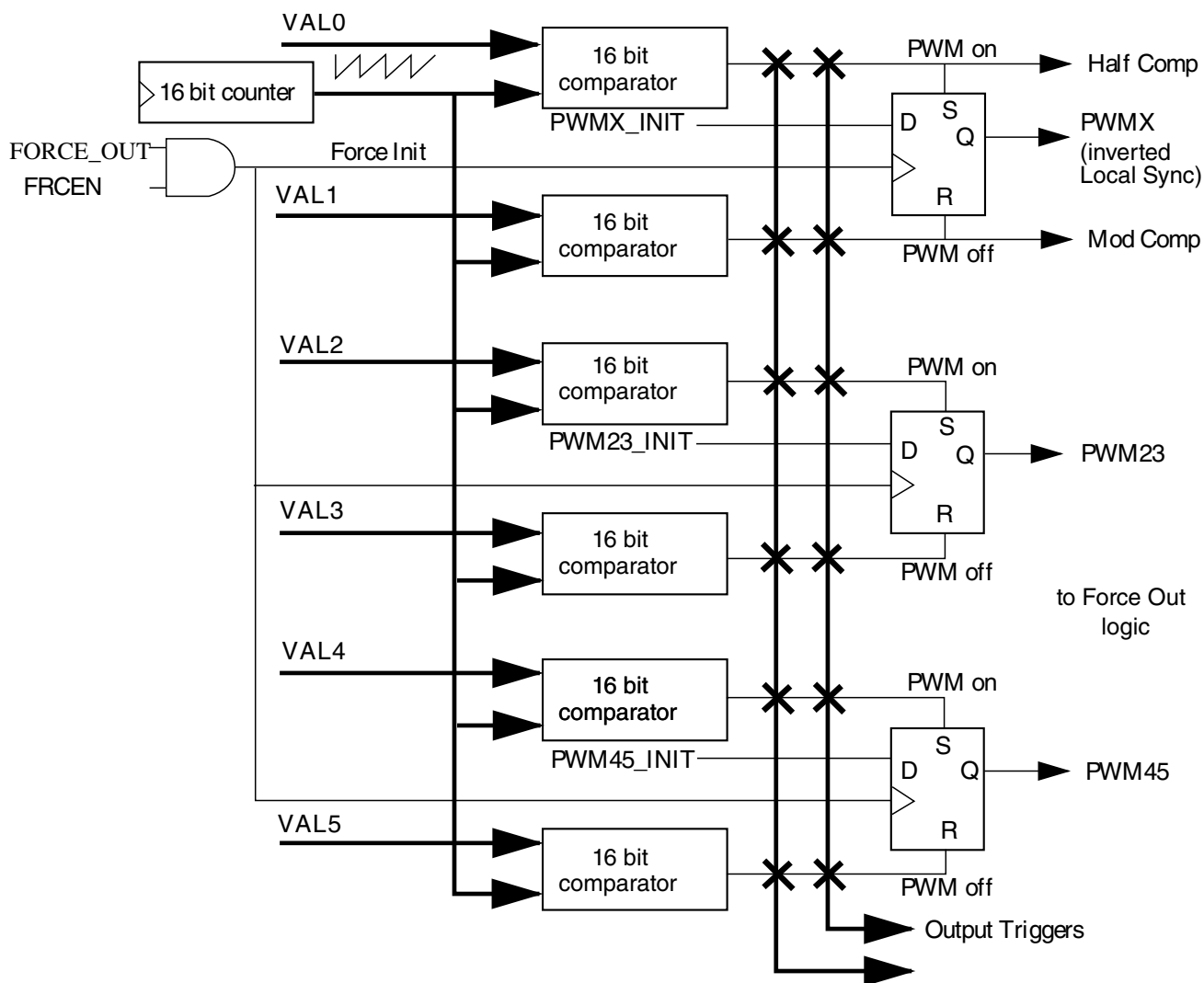


Figure 47-16. PWM Generation Hardware

The generation of the Local Sync signal is performed exactly the same way as the other PWM signals in the submodule. While comparator 0 causes a falling edge of the Local Sync signal, comparator 1 generates a rising edge. Comparator 1 is also hardwired to the reload logic to generate the full cycle reload indicator.

If VAL1 is controlling the modulus of the counter and VAL0 is half of the VAL1 register minus the INIT value, then the half cycle reload pulse will occur exactly half way through the timer count period and the Local Sync will have a 50% duty cycle. On the other hand, if the VAL1 and VAL0 registers are not required for register reloading or

counter initialization, they can be used to modulate the duty cycle of the Local Sync signal, effectively turning it into an auxiliary PWM signal (PWM_X) assuming that the PWM_X pin is not being used for another function such as input capture or deadtime distortion correction. Including the Local Sync signal, each submodule is capable of generating three PWM signals where software has complete control over each edge of each of the signals.

If the comparators and edge value registers are not required for PWM generation, they can also be used for other functions such as output compares, generating output triggers, or generating interrupts at timed intervals.

The 16-bit comparators shown in [Figure 47-16](#) In addition, if both the set and reset of the flip-flop are asserted, then the flop output goes to 0.

47.5.2.5 Output Compare Capabilities

By using the VALx registers in conjunction with the submodule timer and 16 bit comparators, buffered output compare functionality can be achieved with no additional hardware required. Specifically, the following output compare functions are possible:

- An output compare sets the output high
- An output compare sets the output low
- An output compare generates an interrupt
- An output compare generates an output trigger

In PWM generation, an output compare is initiated by programming a VALx register for a timer compare, which in turn causes the output of the D flip-flop to either set or reset. For example, if an output compare is desired on the PWM_A signal that sets it high, VAL2 would be programmed with the counter value where the output compare should take place. However, to prevent the D flip-flop from being reset again after the compare has occurred, the VAL3 register must be programmed to a value outside of the modulus range of the counter. Therefore, a compare that would result in resetting the D flip-flop output would never occur. Conversely, if an output compare is desired on the PWM_A signal that sets it low, the VAL3 register is programmed with the appropriate count value and the VAL2 register is programmed with a value outside the counter modulus range. Regardless of whether a high compare or low compare is programmed, an interrupt or output trigger can be generated when the compare event occurs.

47.5.2.6 Force Out Logic

For each submodule, software can select between eight signal sources for the FORCE_OUT signal: local CTRL2[FORCE], the Master Force signal from submodule0, the local Reload signal, the Master Reload signal from submodule0, the Local Sync signal, the Master Sync signal from submodule0, the EXT_SYNC signal from on- or off-chip, or the EXT_FORCE signal from on- or off-chip depending on the chip architecture. The local signals are used when the user simply wants to change the signals on the output pins of the submodule without regard for synchronization with other submodules. However, if it is required that all signals on all submodule outputs change at the same time, the Master, EXT_SYNC, or EXT_FORCE signals should be selected.

Figure 47-17 illustrates the Force logic. The SEL23 and SEL45 fields each choose from one of four signals that can be supplied to the submodule outputs: the PWM signal, the inverted PWM signal, a binary level specified by software via the OUT23 and OUT45 bits, or the PWM_EXT_A or PWM_EXT_B alternate external control signals. The selection can be determined ahead of time and, when a FORCE_OUT event occurs, these values are presented to the signal selection mux that immediately switches the requested signal to the output of the mux for further processing downstream.

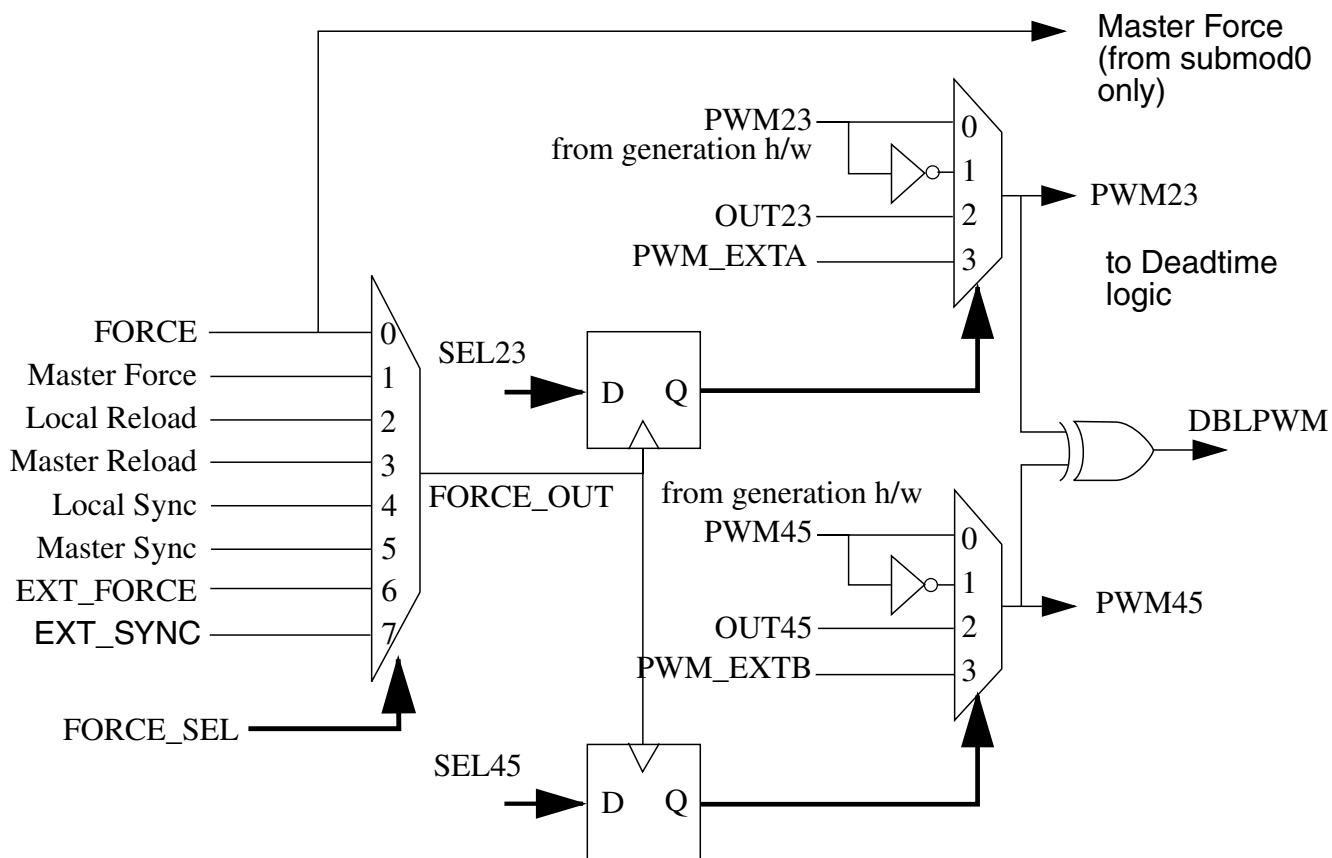


Figure 47-17. Force Out Logic

The local CTRL2[FORCE] signal of submodule0 can be broadcast as the Master Force signal to other submodules. This feature allows the CTRL2[FORCE] of submodule0 to synchronously update all of the submodule outputs at the same time. The EXT_FORCE signal originates from outside the PWM module from a source such as a timer or digital comparators in the Analog-to-Digital Converter.

47.5.2.7 Independent or Complementary Channel Operation

Writing a logic one to CTRL2[INDEP] configures the pair of PWM outputs as two independent PWM channels. Each PWM output is controlled by its own VALx pair operating independently of the other output.

Writing a logic zero to CTRL2[INDEP] configures the PWM output as a pair of complementary channels. The PWM pins are paired as shown in [Figure 47-18](#) in complementary channel operation. Which signal is connected to the output pin (PWM23 or PWM45) is determined by MCTRL0[IPOL].

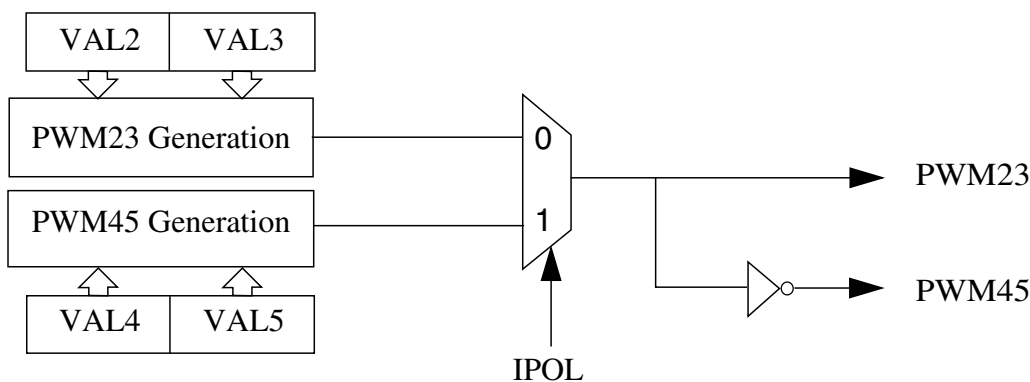


Figure 47-18. Complementary Channel Pair

Complementary operation allows the use of the deadtime insertion feature.

47.5.2.8 Deadtime Insertion Logic

The following figure shows the deadtime insertion logic of each submodule which is used to create non-overlapping complementary signals when not in independent mode.

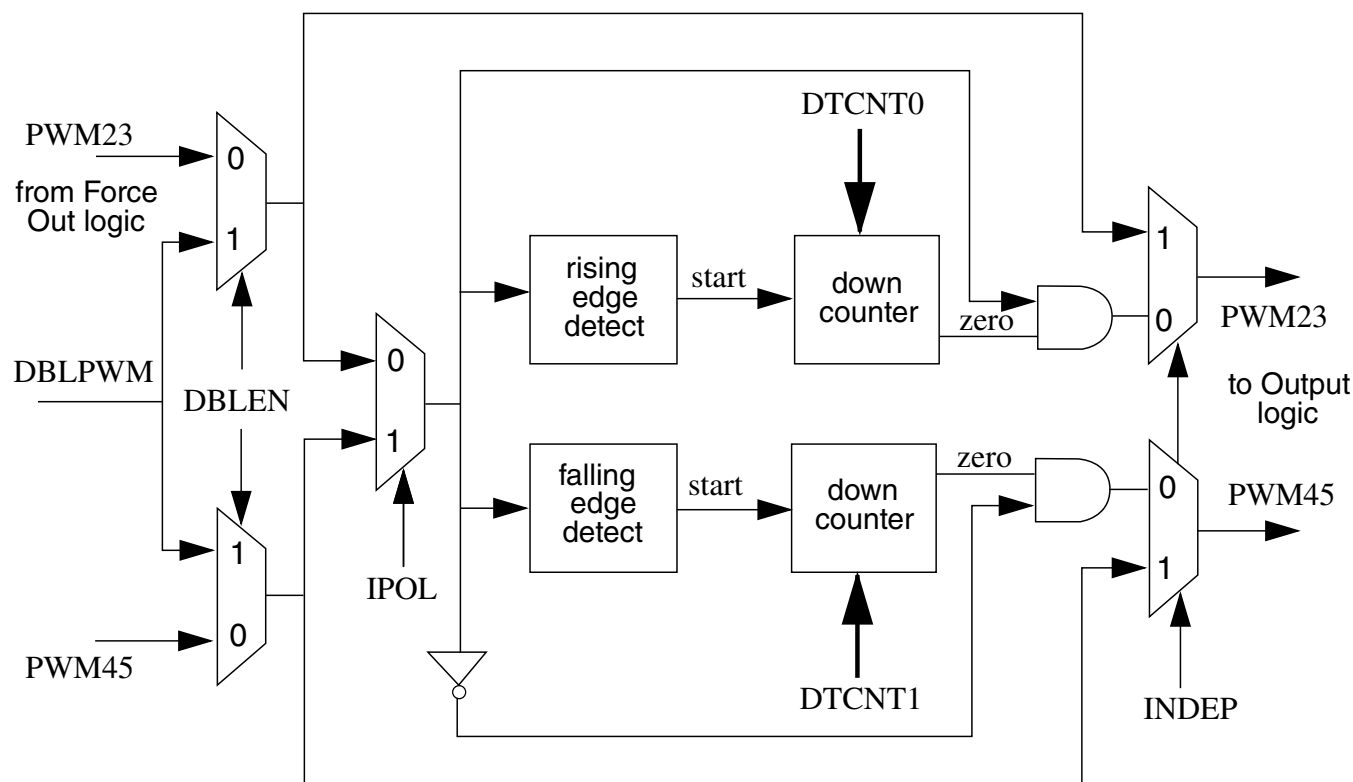


Figure 47-19. Deadtime Insertion Logic

While in the complementary mode, a PWM pair can be used to drive top/bottom transistors, as shown in the figure. When the top PWM channel is active, the bottom PWM channel is inactive, and vice versa.

Note

To avoid short circuiting the DC bus and endangering the transistor, there must be no overlap of conducting intervals between top and bottom transistor. But the transistor's characteristics may make its switching-off time longer than switching-on time. To avoid the conducting overlap of top and bottom transistors, deadtime needs to be inserted in the switching period, as illustrated in the following figure.

The deadtime generators automatically insert software-selectable activation delays into the pair of PWM outputs. The deadtime registers (DTCNT0 and DTCNT1) specify the number of IPBus clock cycles to use for deadtime delay. Every time the deadtime generator inputs change state, deadtime is inserted. Deadtime forces both PWM outputs in the pair to the inactive state.

When deadtime is inserted in complementary PWM signals connected to an inverter driving an inductive load, the PWM waveform on the inverter output will have a different duty cycle than what appears on the output pins of the PWM module. This results in a distortion in the voltage applied to the load. A method of correcting this, adding to or subtracting from the PWM value used, is discussed next.

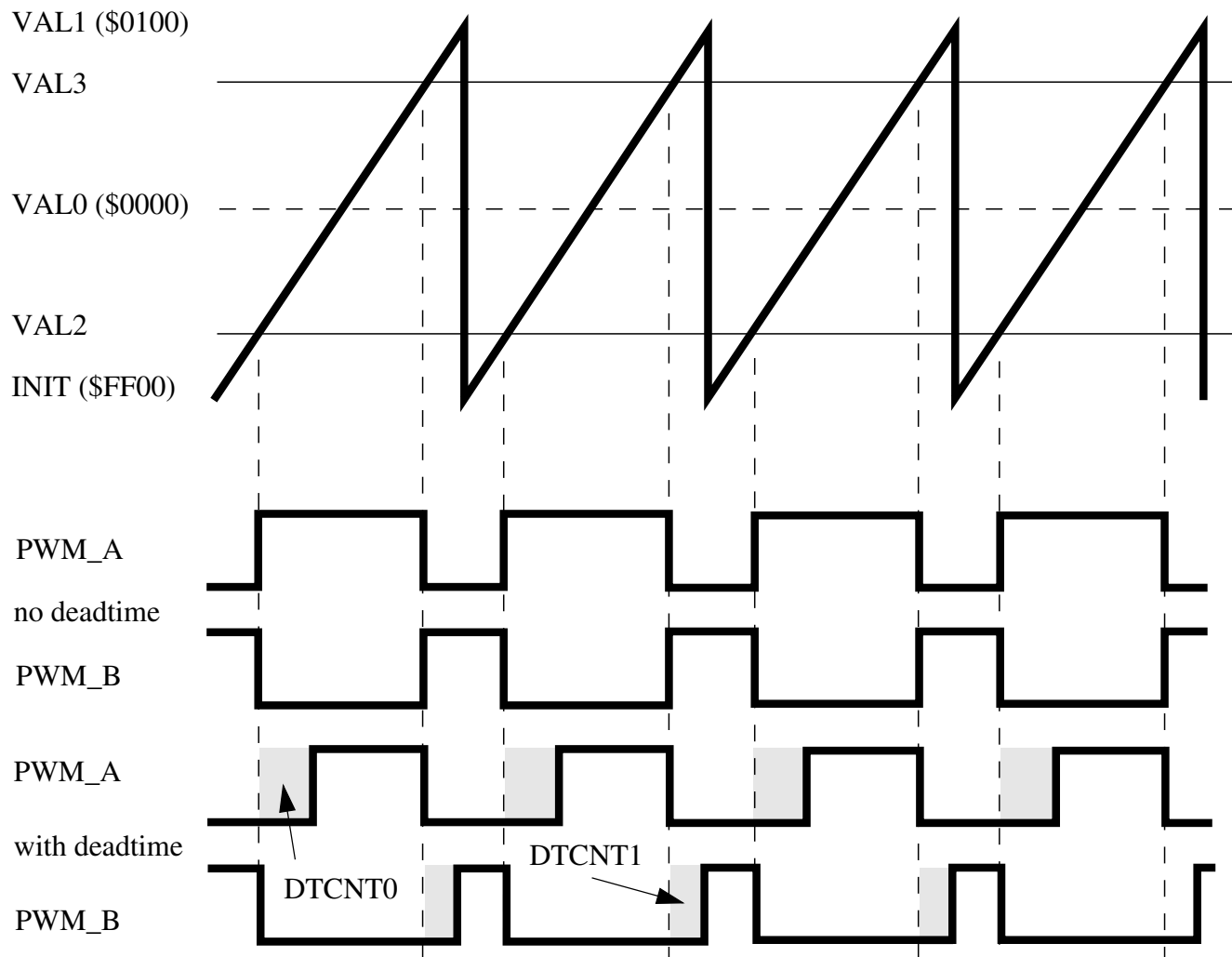


Figure 47-20. Deadtime Insertion

47.5.2.8.1 Top/Bottom Correction

In complementary mode, either the top or the bottom transistor controls the output voltage. However, deadtime has to be inserted to avoid overlap of conducting interval between the top and bottom transistor. Both transistors in complementary mode are off during deadtime, allowing the output voltage to be determined by the current status of load and introduce distortion in the output voltage. See the following figure.

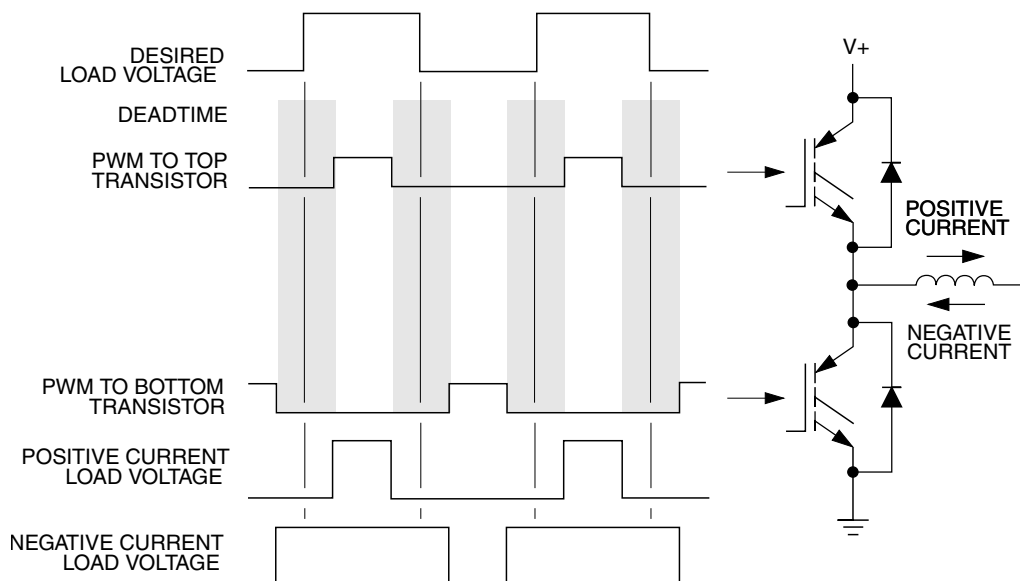


Figure 47-21. Deadtime Distortion

During deadtime, load inductance distorts output voltage by keeping current flowing through the diodes. This deadtime current flow creates a load voltage that varies with current direction. With a positive current flow, the load voltage during deadtime is equal to the bottom supply, putting the top transistor in control. With a negative current flow, the load voltage during deadtime is equal to the top supply putting the bottom transistor in control.

Remembering that the original PWM pulse widths were shortened by deadtime insertion, the averaged sinusoidal output will be less than the desired value. However, when deadtime is inserted, it creates a distortion in the . This distortion is aggravated by dissimilar turn-on and turn-off delays of each of the transistors. By giving the PWM module information on which transistor is controlling at a given time this distortion can be corrected.

For a typical circuit in complementary channel operation, only one of the transistors will be effective in controlling the output voltage at any given time. This depends on the direction of the current for that pair, as the preceding figure shows. To correct distortion one of two different factors must be added to the desired PWM value, depending on whether the top or bottom transistor is controlling the output voltage. Therefore, the software is responsible for calculating both compensated PWM values prior to placing them in the VALx registers. Either the VAL2/VAL3 or the VAL4/VAL5 register pair controls the pulse width at any given time. For a given PWM pair, whether the VAL2/VAL3 or VAL4/VAL5 pair is active depends on either:

- The state of the current status pin, PWMX, for that driver
- The state of the odd/even correction bit, MCTRL0[IPOL], for that driver

To correct deadtime distortion, software can decrease or increase the value in the appropriate VALx register.

- In edge-aligned operation, decreasing or increasing the PWM value by a correction value equal to the deadtime typically compensates for deadtime distortion.
- In center-aligned operation, decreasing or increasing the PWM value by a correction value equal to one-half the deadtime typically compensates for deadtime distortion.

47.5.2.8.2 Manual Correction

To detect the current status, the voltage on each PWMX pin is sampled twice in a PWM period, at the end of each deadtime. The value is stored in CTRL[DT]. CTRL[DT] is a timing marker especially indicating when to toggle between PWM value registers. Software can then set MCTRL0[IPOL] to switch between VAL2/VAL3 and VAL4/VAL5 register pairs according to CTRL[DT] values.

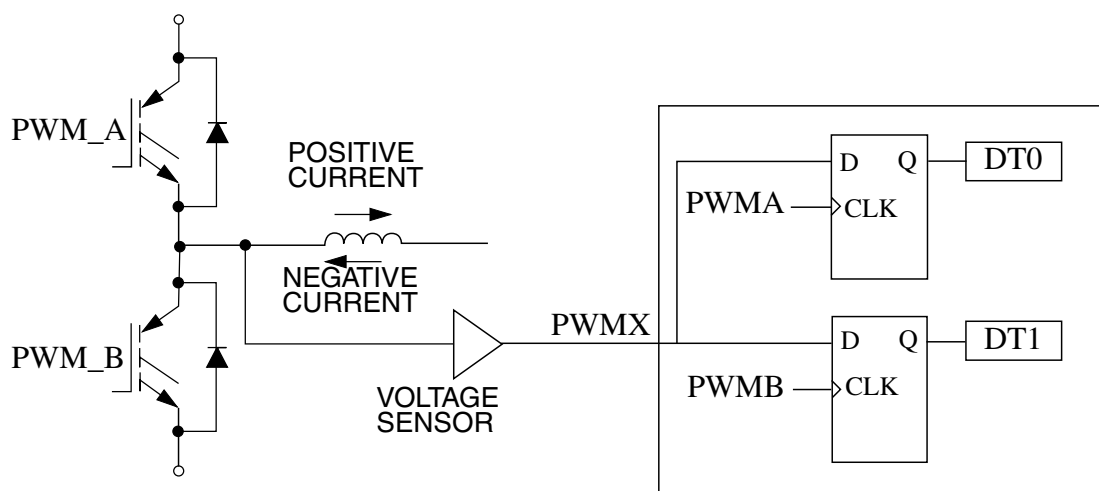


Figure 47-22. Current-status Sense Scheme for Deadtime Correction

Both D flip-flops latch low, CTRL[DT] = 00, during deadtime periods if current is large and flowing out of the complementary circuit. See the preceding figure. Both D flip-flops latch the high, CTRL[DT] = 11, during deadtime periods if current is also large and flowing into the complementary circuit.

However, under low-current, the output voltage of the complementary circuit during deadtime is somewhere between the high and low levels. The current cannot free-wheel through the opposition anti-body diode, regardless of polarity, giving additional distortion when the current crosses zero. Sampled results will be CTRL[DT] = b10. Thus, the best time to change one PWM value register to another is just before the current zero crossing.

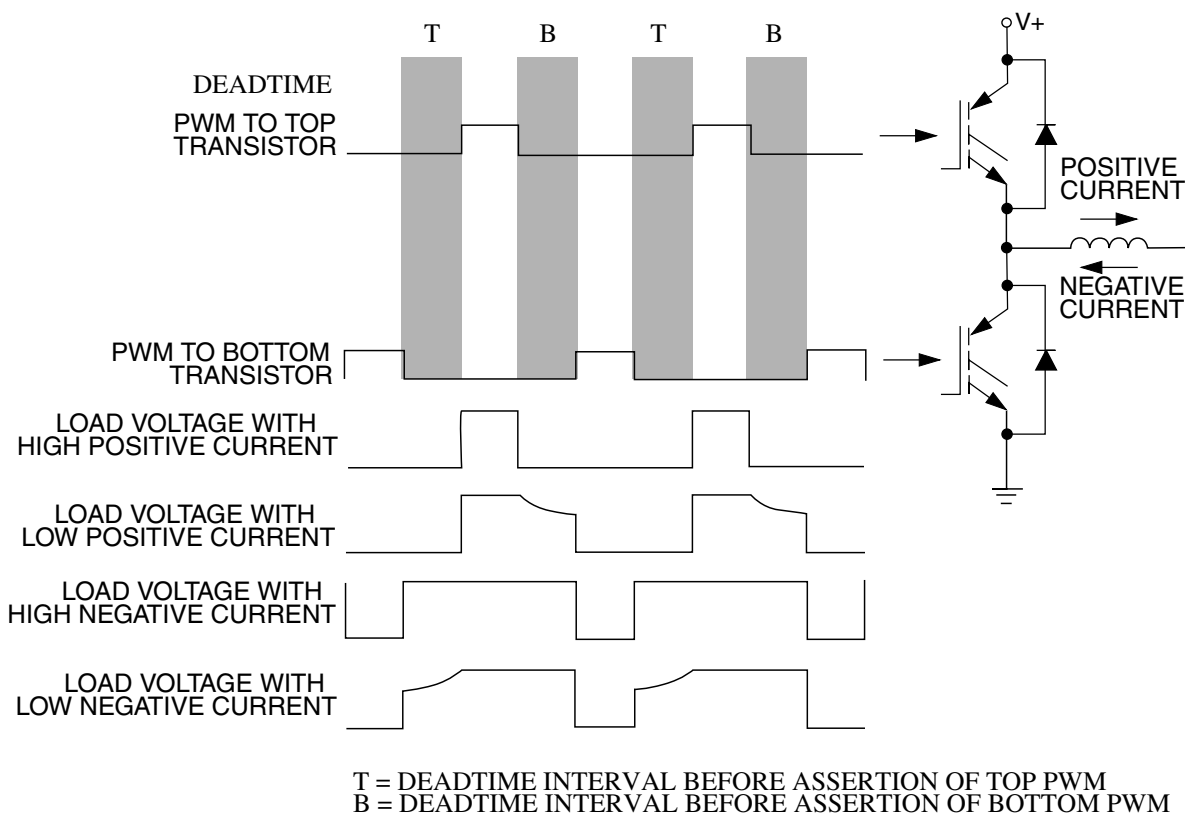


Figure 47-23. Output Voltage Waveforms

47.5.2.9 Fractional Delay Logic

For applications where more resolution than a single IPBus clock period is needed, the fractional delay logic can be used to achieve fine resolution on the rising and falling edges of the PWM_A and PWM_B outputs and fine resolution for the PWM period. Enable the use of the fractional delay logic by setting FRCTRL[FRACx_EN]. The FRACVALx registers act as a fractional clock cycle addition to the turn on and turn off count specified by the VAL2, VAL3, VAL4, or VAL5 registers. The FRACVAL1 register acts as a fractional increase in the PWM period as defined by VAL1. If FRACVAL1 is programmed to a non-zero value, then the largest value for the VAL1 register is 0xFFFFE for unsigned usage or 0x7FFE for signed usage. This limit is needed in order to avoid counter rollovers when accumulating the fractional additional period.

The results of the fractional delay logic depend on whether or not the PWM submodule has an analog nano-edge placer block available.

47.5.2.9.1 Fractional Delay Logic with Nano-Edge Placement Block

Using the micro-edge placer block requires that the IPBus clock to the PWM be set at a defined frequency. The nano-edge placer is powered up by setting `FRCTRL[FRAC_PU]`. Enable fine edge control on the various PWM edges by setting `FRCTRL[FRACx_EN]`. The fractional values in the `FRACVALx` registers allow placing the PWM edge or PWM period to a granularity of 1/32 of the IPBus clock period. For example, if you desire the rising edge of the PWMA output to occur at a count of 12.25, then program `VAL2` with 0x000C and `FRACVAL2` with 0x4000. Using `FRACVAL1` will adjust the PWM period with the same granularity of 1/32 of a clock period.

If the `FRCTRL[FRAC_PU]` bits in all of the submodules are clear, then the nano-edge placer is powered down, and alternate clock frequencies can be used without the nano-edge placement feature.

47.5.2.9.2 Fractional Delay Logic without Nano-Edge Placement Block

For submodules that are not supported by the nano-edge placer, the PWM can use dithering to simulate fine edge control. Enable this feature by setting the `FRCTRL[FRAC1_EN]`, `FRCTRL[FRAC23_EN]`, and `FRCTRL[FRAC45_EN]` bits. It is unnecessary to set `FRCTRL[FRAC_PU]`. The PWM period or the PWM edges will dither from the nearest whole number values to achieve an average value that is equivalent to the programmed fractional value. The added cycles are based on the accumulation of the fractional component. For example, if you want the PWM period to be 50.25 clock cycles, then program `VAL1` with 0x0032 and `FRACVAL1` with 0x4000. The PWM period will be 50 cycles long most of the time, but will occasionally be 51 cycles long to achieve a long-term average of 50.25 cycles.

In submodules that are not supported by a nano-edge placer, the clock frequency is not required to be any specific value to achieve proper operation.

47.5.2.10 Output Logic

The following figure shows the output logic of each submodule including how each PWM output has individual fault disabling, polarity control, and output enable. This allows for maximum flexibility when interfacing to the external circuitry.

The PWM23 and PWM45 signals which are output from the deadtime logic (refer to the figure) are positive true signals. In other words, a high level on these signals should result in the corresponding transistor in the PWM inverter being turned ON. The voltage level required at the PWM output pin to turn the transistor ON or OFF is a function of the logic between the pin and the transistor. Therefore, it is imperative that the user program

OCTRL[POLA] and OCTRL[POLB] before enabling the output pins. A fault condition can result in the PWM output being tristated, forced to a logic 1, or forced to a logic 0 depending on the values programmed into the OCTRL[PWMxFS] fields.

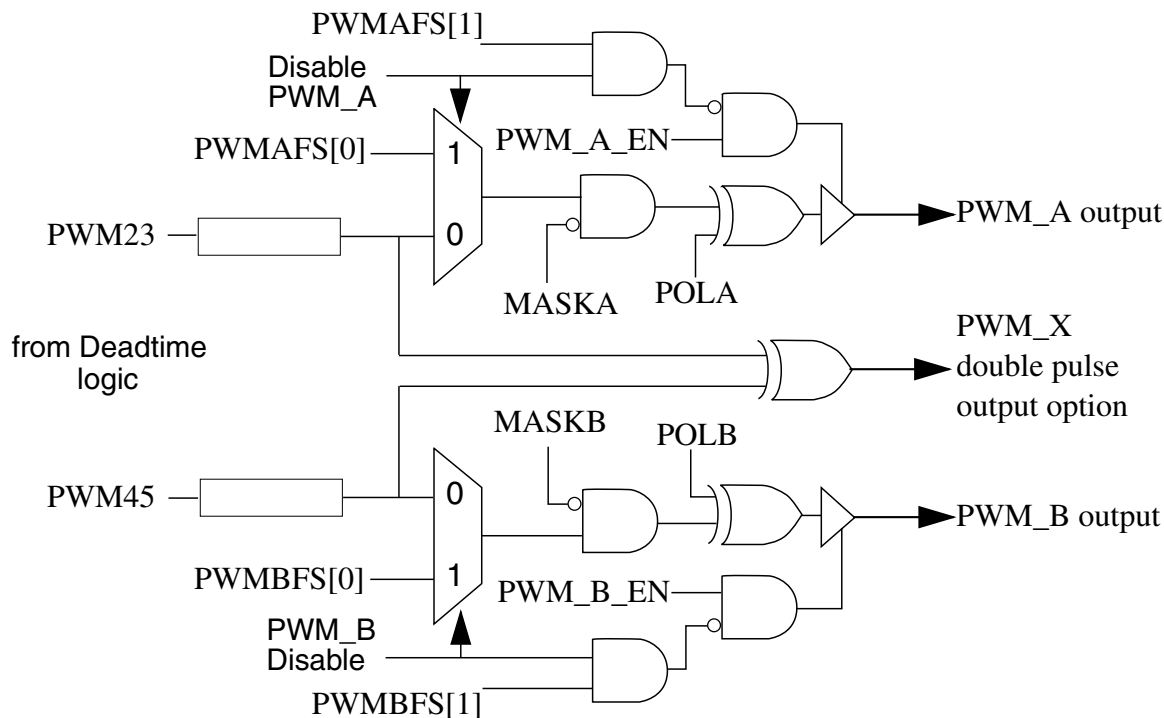


Figure 47-24. Output Logic

47.5.2.11 E-Capture

Commensurate with the idea of controlling both edges of an output signal, the Enhanced Capture (E-Capture) logic is designed to measure both edges of an input signal. As a result, when a submodule pin is configured for input capture, the CVALx registers associated with that pin are used to record the edge values.

The following figure is a block diagram of the E-Capture circuit. Upon entering the pin input, the signal is split into two paths. One goes straight to a mux input where software can select to pass the signal directly to the capture logic for processing. The other path connects the signal to an 8 bit counter which counts both the rising and falling edges of the signal. The output of this counter is compared to an 8 bit value that is specified by the user (EDGCMPlx) and when the two values are equal, the comparator generates a pulse that resets the counter. This pulse is also supplied to the mux input where software can select it to be processed by the capture logic. This feature permits the E-Capture circuit to count up to 256 edge events before initiating a capture event. this feature is useful for

dividing down high frequency signals for capture processing so that capture interrupts don't overwhelm the CPU. Also, this feature can be used to simply generate an interrupt after "n" events have been counted.

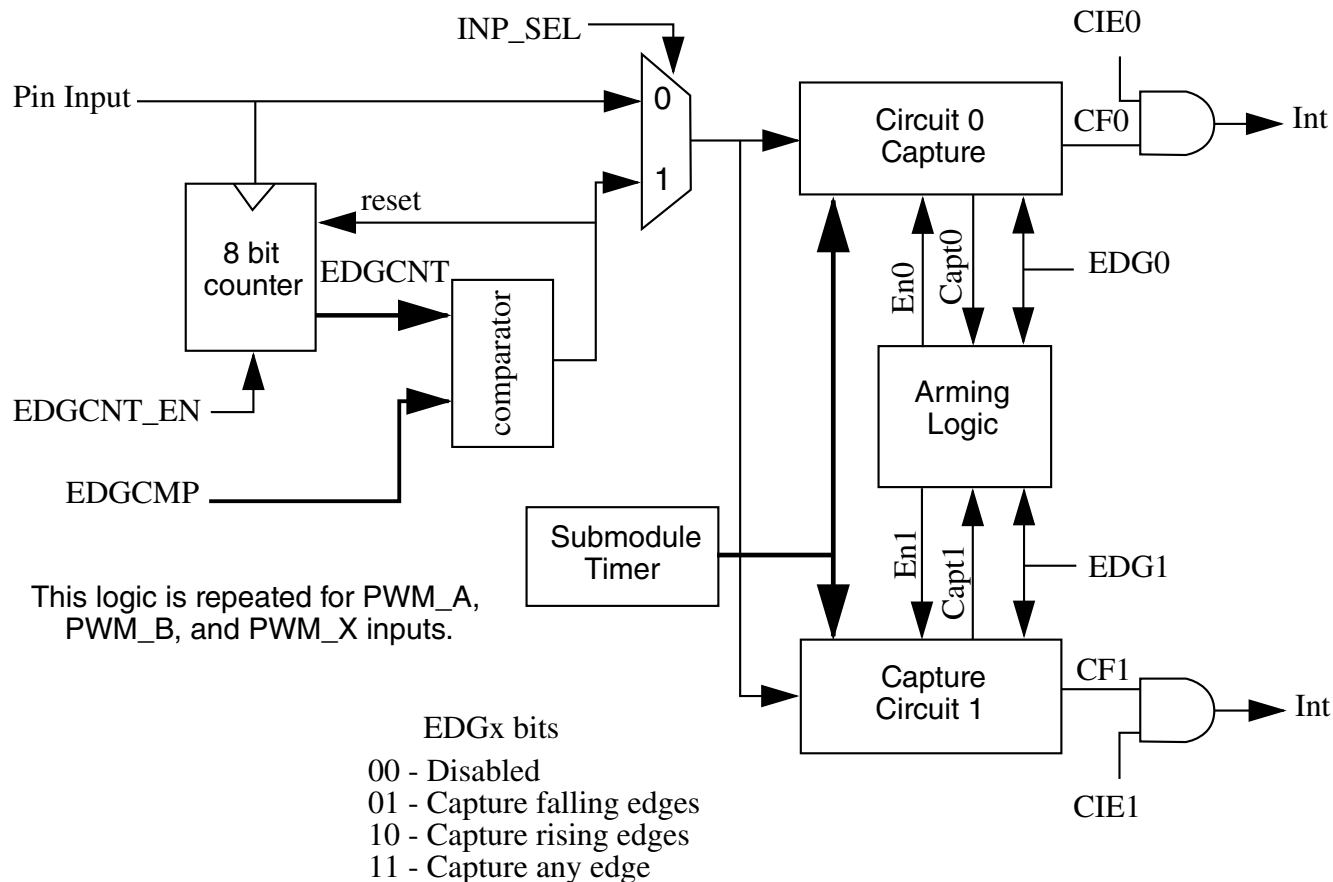


Figure 47-25. Enhanced Capture (E-Capture) Logic

Based on the mode selection, the mux selects either the pin input or the compare output from the count/compare circuit to be processed by the capture logic. The selected signal is routed to two separate capture circuits which work in tandem to capture sequential edges of the signal. The type of edge to be captured by each circuit is determined by CAPTCTRLx[EDGx1] and CAPTCTRLx[EDGx0], whose functionality is listed in the preceding figure. Also, controlling the operation of the capture circuits is the arming logic which allows captures to be performed in a free running (continuous) or one shot fashion. In free running mode, the capture sequences will be performed indefinitely. If both capture circuits are enabled, they will work together in a ping-pong style where a capture event from one circuit leads to the arming of the other and vice versa. In one shot mode, only one capture sequence will be performed. If both capture circuits are enabled, capture circuit 0 is first armed and when a capture event occurs, capture circuit 1 is armed. Once the second capture occurs, further captures are disabled until another capture sequence is initiated. Both capture circuits are also capable of generating an interrupt to the CPU.

47.5.2.12 Fault Protection

Fault protection can control any combination of PWM output pins. Faults are generated by a logic one on any of the FAULTx pins. This polarity can be changed via FCTRL[FLVL]. Each FAULTx pin can be mapped arbitrarily to any of the PWM outputs. When fault protection hardware disables PWM outputs, the PWM generator continues to run, only the output pins are forced to logic 0, logic 1, or tristated depending the values of OCTRL[PWMxFS].

The fault decoder disables PWM pins selected by the fault logic and the disable mapping (DISMAPn) registers. The following figure shows an example of the fault disable logic. Each bank of bits in DISMAPn control the mapping for a single PWM pin. See the following table.

The fault protection is enabled even when the PWM module is not enabled; therefore, a fault will be latched in and must be cleared in order to prevent an interrupt when the PWM is enabled.

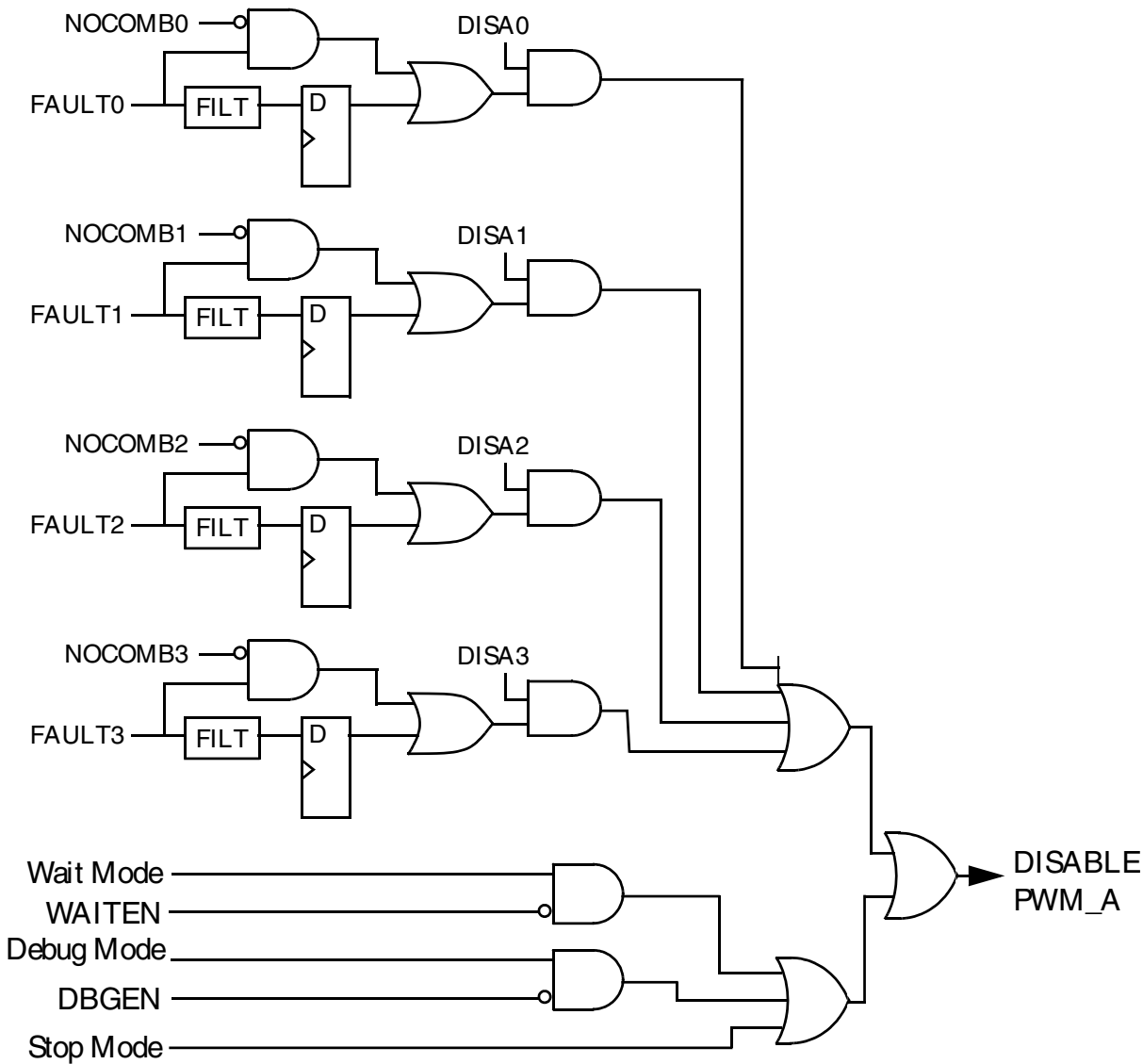


Figure 47-26. Fault Decoder for PWM_A

Table 47-2. Fault Mapping

PWM Pin	Controlling Register Bits
PWM_A	DISMAP0[DIS0A]
PWM_B	DISMAP0[DIS0B]
PWM_X	DISMAP0[DIS0X]

47.5.2.12.1 Fault Pin Filter

Each fault pin has a programmable filter that can be bypassed. The sampling period of the filter can be adjusted with FFILT[FILT_PER]. The number of consecutive samples that must agree before an input transition is recognized can be adjusted using FFILT[FILT_CNT]. Setting FFILT[FILT_PER] to all 0 disables the input filter for a given FAULTx pin.

Upon detecting a logic 0 on the filtered FAULTx pin (or a logic 1 if FCTRL[FLVLx] is set), the corresponding FSTS[FFPINx] and fault flag, FSTS[FFLAGx], bits are set. FSTS[FFPINx] remains set as long as the filtered FAULTx pin is zero. Clear FSTS[FFLAGx] by writing a logic 1 to FSTS[FFLAGx].

If the FIE_x, FAULTx pin interrupt enable bit is set, FSTS[FFLAGx] generates a CPU interrupt request. The interrupt request latch remains set until:

- Software clears FSTS[FFLAGx] by writing a logic one to the bit
- Software clears the FIE_x bit by writing a logic zero to it
- A reset occurs

Even with the filter enabled, there is a combinational path from the FAULTx inputs to the PWM pins. This logic is also capable of holding a fault condition in the event of loss of clock to the PWM module.

47.5.2.12.2 Automatic Fault Clearing

Setting an automatic clearing mode bit, FCTRL[FAUTOx], configures faults from the FAULTx pin for automatic clearing.

When FCTRL[FAUTOx] is set, disabled PWM pins are enabled when the FAULTx pin returns to logic one and a new PWM full or half cycle begins. See the following figure. If FSTS[FFULLx] is set, then the disabled PWM pins are enabled at the start of a full cycle. If FSTS[FHALFx] is set, then the disabled PWM pins are enabled at the start of a half cycle. Clearing FSTS[FFLAGx] does not affect disabled PWM pins when FCTRL[FAUTOx] is set.

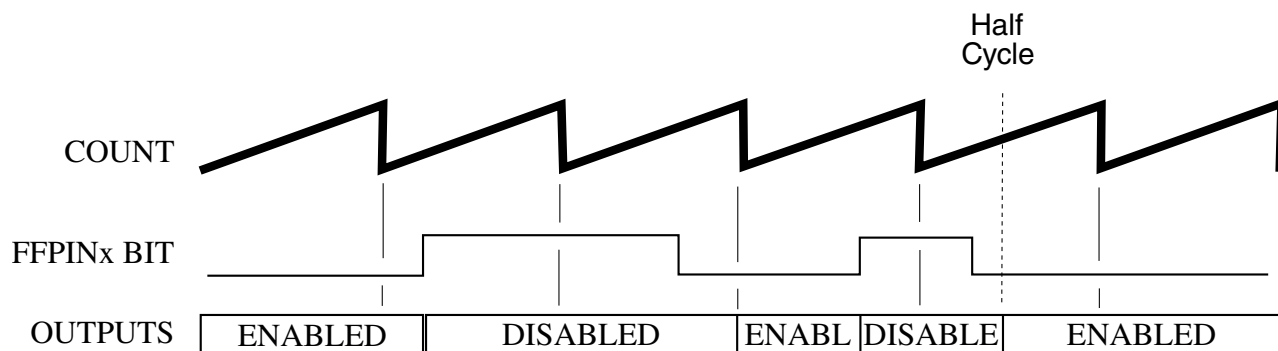


Figure 47-27. Automatic Fault Clearing

47.5.2.12.3 Manual Fault Clearing

Clearing the automatic clearing mode bit, FCTRL[FAUTOx], configures faults from the FAULTx pin for manual clearing:

- If the fault safety mode bits, FCTRL[FSAFEx], are clear, then PWM pins disabled by the FAULTx pins are enabled when:
 - Software clears the corresponding FSTS[FFLAGx] flag
 - The pins are enabled when the next PWM full or half cycle begins regardless of the logic level detected by the filter at the FAULTx pin. See the first following figure. If FSTS[FFULLx] is set, then the disabled PWM pins are enabled at the start of a full cycle. If FSTS[FHALFx] is set, then the disabled PWM pins are enabled at the start of a half cycle.
- If the fault safety mode bits, FCTRL[FSAFEx], are set, then PWM pins disabled by the FAULTx pins are enabled when:
 - Software clears the corresponding FSTS[FFLAGx] flag
 - The filter detects a logic one on the FAULTx pin at the start of the next PWM full or half cycle boundary. See the second following figure. If FSTS[FFULLx] is set, then the disabled PWM pins are enabled at the start of a full cycle. If FSTS[FHALFx] is set, then the disabled PWM pins are enabled at the start of a half cycle.

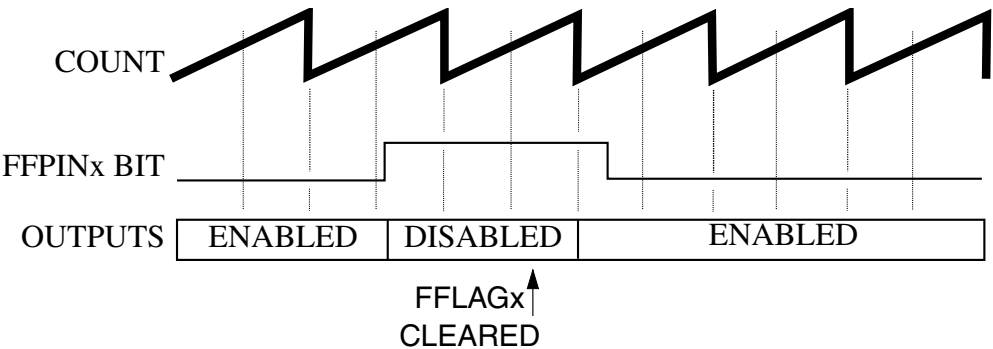


Figure 47-28. Manual Fault Clearing (FCTRL[FSAFE]=0)

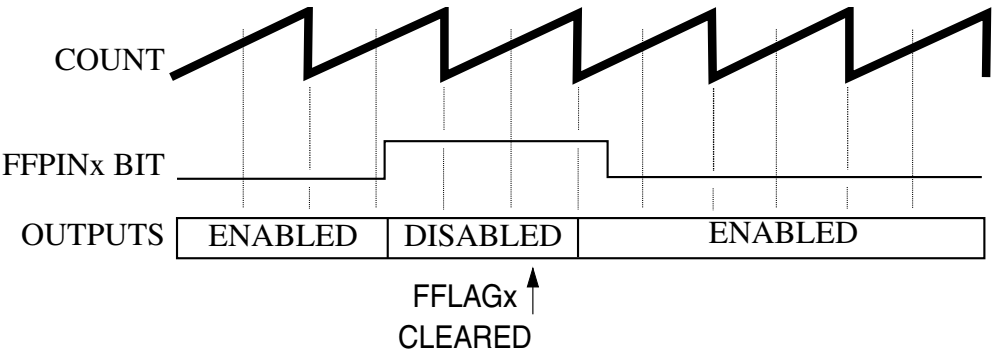


Figure 47-29. Manual Fault Clearing (FCTRL[FSAFE]=1)

Note

Fault protection also applies during software output control when the SEL23 and SEL45 fields are set to select OUT23 and OUT45 bits or PWM_EXT_A and PWM_EXT_B. Fault clearing still occurs at half PWM cycle boundaries while the PWM generator is engaged, MCTRL0[RUN] equals one. But the OUTx bits can control the PWM pins while the PWM generator is off, MCTRL0[RUN] equals zero. Thus, fault clearing occurs at IPBus cycles while the PWM generator is off and at the start of PWM cycles when the generator is engaged.

47.5.2.12.4 Fault Testing

FTST[FTEST] is used to simulate a fault condition on each of the fault inputs within that fault channel.

47.5.3 PWM Generator Loading

47.5.3.1 Load Enable

MCTRL0[LDOK] enables loading of the following PWM generator parameters:

- The prescaler divisor—from CTRL[PRSC]
- The PWM period and pulse width—from the INIT and VALx registers

MCTRL0[LDOK] allows software to finish calculating all of these PWM parameters so they can be synchronously updated. The CTRL[PRSC], INIT, and VALx registers are loaded by software into a set of outer buffers. When MCTRL0[LDOK] is set, these values are transferred to an inner set of registers at the beginning of the next PWM reload cycle to be used by the PWM generator. These values can be transferred to the inner set of registers immediately upon setting MCTRL0[LDOK] if CTRL[LDMOD] is set. Set MCTRL0[LDOK] by reading it when it is a logic zero and then writing a logic one to it. After loading, MCTRL0[LDOK] is automatically cleared.

47.5.3.2 Load Frequency

CTRL[LDFQ] selects an integral loading frequency of one to 16 PWM reload opportunities. CTRL[LDFQ] takes effect at every PWM reload opportunity, regardless the state of MCTRL0[LDOK]. CTRL[HALF] and CTRL[FULL] control reload timing. If CTRL[FULL] is set, a reload opportunity occurs at the end of every PWM cycle when the count equals VAL1. If CTRL[HALF] is set, a reload opportunity occurs at the half cycle when the count equals VAL0. If both CTRL[HALF] and CTRL[FULL] are set, a reload opportunity occurs twice per PWM cycle when the count equals VAL1 and when it equals VAL0.

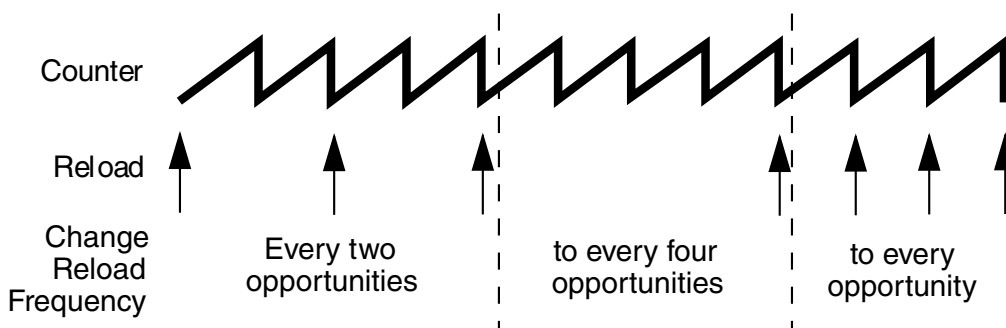


Figure 47-30. Full Cycle Reload Frequency Change

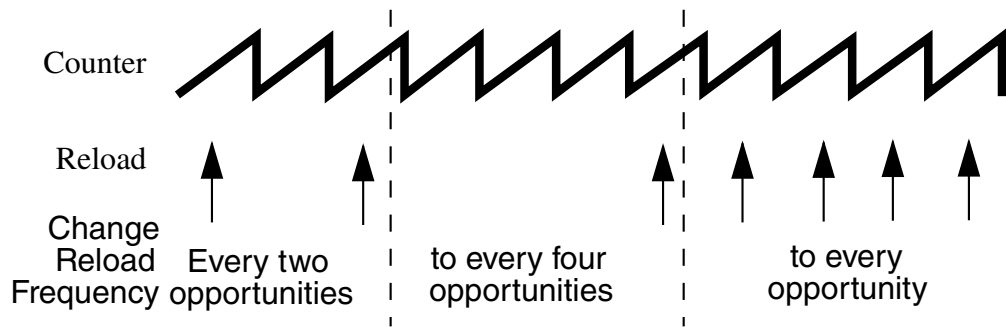


Figure 47-31. Half Cycle Reload Frequency Change

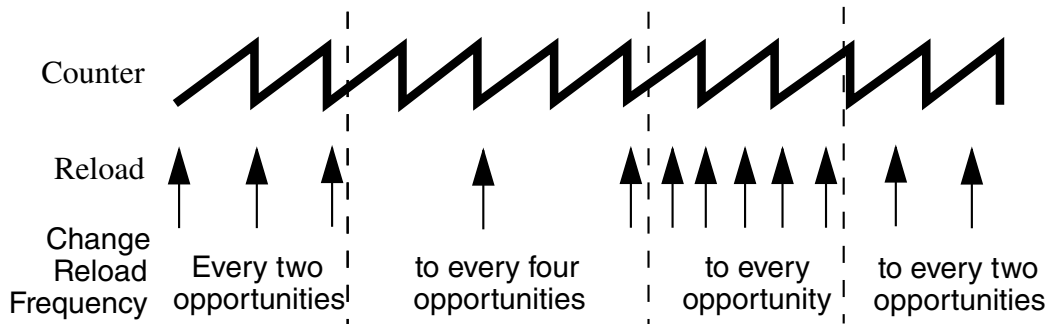


Figure 47-32. Full and Half Cycle Reload Frequency Change

47.5.3.3 Reload Flag

At every reload opportunity the PWM Reload Flag (STS[RF]) is set. Setting STS[RF] happens even if an actual reload is prevented by MCTRL0[LDOK]. If the PWM reload interrupt enable bit, INTEN[RIE], is set, the STS[RF] flag generates CPU interrupt requests allowing software to calculate new PWM parameters in real time. When INTEN[RIE] is not set, reloads still occur at the selected reload rate without generating CPU interrupt requests.

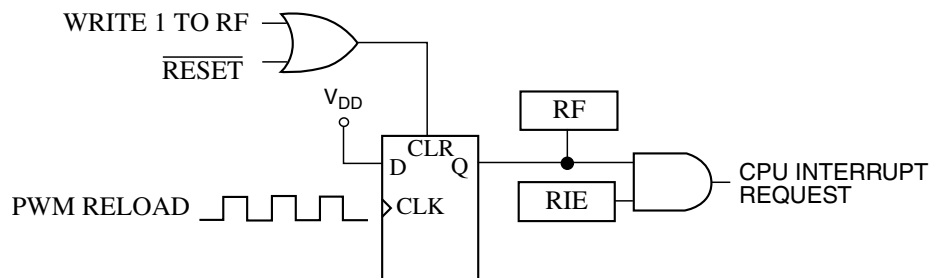


Figure 47-33. PWMF Reload Interrupt Request

47.5.3.4 Reload Errors

Whenever one of the VALx, FRACVALx, or CTRL[PRSC] registers is updated, the STS[RUF] flag is set to indicate that the data is not coherent. STS[RUF] will be cleared by a successful reload which consists of the reload signal while MCTRL0[LDOK] is set. If STS[RUF] is set and MCTRL0[LDOK] is clear when the reload signal occurs, a reload error has taken place and STS[REF] is set. If STS[RUF] is clear when a reload signal asserts, then the data is coherent and no error will be flagged.

47.5.3.5 Initialization

Initialize all registers and set MCTRL0[LDOK] before setting MCTRL0[RUN].

Note

Even if MCTRL0[LDOK] is not set, setting MCTRL0[RUN] also sets the STS[RF] flag. To prevent a CPU interrupt request, clear INTEN[RIE] before setting MCTRL0[RUN].

The PWM generator uses the last values loaded if MCTRL0[RUN] is cleared and then set while MCTRL0[LDOK] equals zero.

When MCTRL0[RUN] is cleared:

- The STS[RF] flag and pending CPU interrupt requests are not cleared
- All fault circuitry remains active
- Software/external output control remains active
- Deadtime insertion continues during software/external output control

47.6 Resets

All PWM registers are reset to their default values upon any system reset.

The reset forces all registers to their reset states and tri-states the PWM outputs.

47.7 Interrupts

Each of the submodules within the eFlexPWM module can generate an interrupt from several sources. The fault logic can also generate interrupts. The interrupt service routine (ISR) must check the related interrupt enables and interrupt flags to determine the actual cause of the interrupt.

Table 47-3. Interrupt Summary

Core Interrupt	Interrupt Flag	Interrupt Enable	Name	Description
PWM_CMP0	SM0STS[CMPIE]	SM0INTEN[CMPIE]	Submodule 0 compare interrupt	Compare event has occurred
PWM_CAP0	SM0STS[CFA1], SM0STS[CFA0], SM0STS[CFB1], SM0STS[CFB0], SM0STS[CFX1], SM0STS[CFX0]	SM0INTEN[CFA1IE], SM0INTEN[CFA0IE], SM0INTEN[CFB1IE], SM0INTEN[CFB0IE], SM0INTEN[CFX1IE], SM0INTEN[CFX0IE]	Submodule 0 input capture interrupt	Input capture event has occurred
PWM_RELOAD0	SM0STS[RF]	SM0INTEN[RIE]	Submodule 0 reload interrupt	Reload event has occurred
PWM_CMP1	SM1STS[CMPIE]	SM1INTEN[CMPIE]	Submodule 1 compare interrupt	Compare event has occurred
PWM_CAP1	SM1STS[CFA1], SM1STS[CFA0], SM1STS[CFB1], SM1STS[CFB0], SM1STS[CFX1], SM1STS[CFX0]	SM1INTEN[CFA1IE], SM1INTEN[CFA0IE], SM1INTEN[CFB1IE], SM1INTEN[CFB0IE], SM1INTEN[CFX1IE], SM1INTEN[CFX0IE]	Submodule 1 input capture interrupt	Input capture event has occurred
PWM_RELOAD1	SM1STS[RF]	SM1INTEN[RIE]	Submodule 1 reload interrupt	Reload event has occurred
PWM_CMP2	SM2STS[CMPIE]	SM2INTEN[CMPIE]	Submodule 2 compare interrupt	Compare event has occurred
PWM_CAP2	SM2STS[CFA1], SM2STS[CFA0], SM2STS[CFB1], SM2STS[CFB0], SM2STS[CFX1], SM2STS[CFX0]	SM2INTEN[CFA1IE], SM2INTEN[CFA0IE], SM2INTEN[CFB1IE], SM2INTEN[CFB0IE], SM2INTEN[CFX1IE], SM2INTEN[CFX0IE]	Submodule 2 input capture interrupt	Input capture event has occurred
PWM_RELOAD2	SM2STS[RF]	SM2INTEN[RIE]	Submodule 2 reload interrupt	Reload event has occurred
PWM_CMP3	SM3STS[CMPIE]	SM3INTEN[CMPIE]	Submodule 3 compare interrupt	Compare event has occurred

Table continues on the next page...

Table 47-3. Interrupt Summary (continued)

Core Interrupt	Interrupt Flag	Interrupt Enable	Name	Description
PWM_CAP3	SM3STS[CFA1], SM3STS[CFA0], SM3STS[CFB1], SM3STS[CFB0], SM3STS[CFX1], SM3STS[CFX0]	SM3INTEN[CFA1IE], SM3INTEN[CFA0IE], SM3INTEN[CFB1IE], SM3INTEN[CFB0IE], SM3INTEN[CFX1IE], SM3INTEN[CFX0IE]	Submodule 3 input capture interrupt	Input capture event has occurred
PWM_RELOAD3	SM3STS[RF]	SM3INTEN[RIE]	Submodule 3 reload interrupt	Reload event has occurred
PWM_RERR	SM0STS[REF]	SM0INTEN[REIE]	Submodule 0 reload error interrupt	Reload error has occurred
	SM1STS[REF]	SM1INTEN[REIE]	Submodule 1 reload error interrupt	
	SM2STS[REF]	SM2INTEN[REIE]	Submodule 2 reload error interrupt	
	SM3STS[REF]	SM3INTEN[REIE]	Submodule 3 reload error interrupt	
PWM_FAULT	FSTS[FFLAG]	FCTRL[FIE]	Fault input interrupt	Fault condition has been detected

47.8 DMA

Each submodule can request a DMA read access for its capture FIFOs and a DMA write request for its double buffered VALx registers.

Table 47-4. DMA Summary

DMA Request	DMA Enable	Name	Description
Submodule 0 read request	SM0DMAEN[CX0DE]	SM0 Capture FIFO X0 read request	SM0CVAL0 contains a value to be read
	SM0DMAEN[CX1DE]	SM0 Capture FIFO X1 read request	SM0CVAL1 contains a value to be read
	SM0DMAEN[CA0DE]	SM0 Capture FIFO A0 read request	SM0CVAL2 contains a value to be read
	SM0DMAEN[CA1DE]	SM0 Capture FIFO A1 read request	SM0CVAL3 contains a value to be read
	SM0DMAEN[CB0DE]	SM0 Capture FIFO B0 read request	SM0CVAL4 contains a value to be read
	SM0DMAEN[CB1DE]	SM0 Capture FIFO B1 read request	SM0CVAL5 contains a value to be read
	SM0DMAEN[CAPTDE]	SM0 Capture FIFO read request source select	Selects source of submodule0 read DMA request

Table continues on the next page...

Table 47-4. DMA Summary (continued)

DMA Request	DMA Enable	Name	Description
Submodule 0 write request	SM0DMAEN[VALDE]	SM0VALx write request	SM0VALx registers need to be updated
Submodule 1 read request	SM1DMAEN[CX0DE]	SM1 Capture FIFO X0 read request	SM1CVAL0 contains a value to be read
	SM1DMAEN[CX1DE]	SM1 Capture FIFO X1 read request	SM1CVAL1 contains a value to be read
	SM1DMAEN[CA0DE]	SM1 Capture FIFO A0 read request	SM1CVAL2 contains a value to be read
	SM1DMAEN[CA1DE]	SM1 Capture FIFO A1 read request	SM1CVAL3 contains a value to be read
	SM1DMAEN[CB0DE]	SM1 Capture FIFO B0 read request	SM1CVAL4 contains a value to be read
	SM1DMAEN[CB1DE]	SM1 Capture FIFO B1 read request	SM1CVAL5 contains a value to be read
	SM1DMAEN[CAPTDE]	SM1 Capture FIFO read request source select	Selects source of submodule1 read DMA request
Submodule 1 write request	SM1DMAEN[VALDE]	SM1VALx write request	SM1VALx registers need to be updated
Submodule 2 read request	SM2DMAEN[CX0DE]	SM2 Capture FIFO X0 read request	SM2CVAL0 contains a value to be read
	SM2DMAEN[CX1DE]	SM2 Capture FIFO X1 read request	SM2CVAL1 contains a value to be read
	SM2DMAEN[CA0DE]	SM2 Capture FIFO A0 read request	SM2CVAL2 contains a value to be read
	SM2DMAEN[CA1DE]	SM2 Capture FIFO A1 read request	SM2CVAL3 contains a value to be read
	SM2DMAEN[CB0DE]	SM2 Capture FIFO B0 read request	SM2CVAL4 contains a value to be read
	SM2DMAEN[CB1DE]	SM2 Capture FIFO B1 read request	SM2CVAL5 contains a value to be read
	SM2DMAEN[CAPTDE]	SM2 Capture FIFO read request source select	Selects source of submodule2 read DMA request
Submodule 2 write request	SM2DMAEN[VALDE]	SM2VALx write request	SM2VALx registers need to be updated
Submodule 3 read request	SM3DMAEN[CX0DE]	SM3 Capture FIFO X0 read request	SM3CVAL0 contains a value to be read
	SM3DMAEN[CX1DE]	SM3 Capture FIFO X1 read request	SM3CVAL1 contains a value to be read
	SM3DMAEN[CA0DE]	SM3 Capture FIFO A0 read request	SM3CVAL2 contains a value to be read
	SM3DMAEN[CA1DE]	SM3 Capture FIFO A1 read request	SM3CVAL3 contains a value to be read
	SM3DMAEN[CB0DE]	SM3 Capture FIFO B0 read request	SM3CVAL4 contains a value to be read

Table continues on the next page...

Table 47-4. DMA Summary (continued)

DMA Request	DMA Enable	Name	Description
	SM3DMAEN[CB1DE]	SM3 Capture FIFO B1 read request	SM3CVAL5 contains a value to be read
	SM3DMAEN[CAPTDE]	SM3 Capture FIFO read request source select	Selects source of submodule3 read DMA request
Submodule 3 write request	SM3DMAEN[VALDE]	SM3VALx write request	SM3VALx registers need to be updated



Chapter 48

Periodic Interrupt Timer (PIT)

48.1 Chip-specific PIT information

48.1.1 PIT Instantiations

This device contains one PIT module with four channels.

48.1.2 PIT/DMA Periodic Trigger Assignments

The PIT generates periodic trigger events to the DMA Mux as shown in the table below.

Table 48-1. PIT channel assignments for periodic DMA triggering

DMA Channel Number	PIT Channel
DMA Channel 0	PIT Channel 0
DMA Channel 1	PIT Channel 1
DMA Channel 2	PIT Channel 2
DMA Channel 3	PIT Channel 3

48.1.3 PIT/ADC Triggers

PIT triggers are selected as ADCx trigger sources using the SIM_SOPT7[ADCxTRGSEL] fields. For more details, refer to SIM chapter.

48.1.4 PIT Trigger Output Assignments

The PIT timer channels are used to trigger other peripheral events such as ADC acquisitions or DMA transfers. On this device the following assignments have been made for each of the PIT channels.

PIT channel 0 output - XBARA_IN42, XBARB_IN24

PIT channel 1 output - XBARA_IN43 , XBARB_IN25

PIT channel 2 output - XBARA_IN50

PIT channel 3 output - XBARA_IN51

Routing the PIT channel outputs via XBARA/B provide options to periodically trigger events on other peripherals such as ADC, CMPs, Timers.

48.2 Introduction

The PIT module is an array of timers that can be used to raise interrupts and trigger DMA channels.

48.2.1 Block diagram

The following figure shows the block diagram of the PIT module.

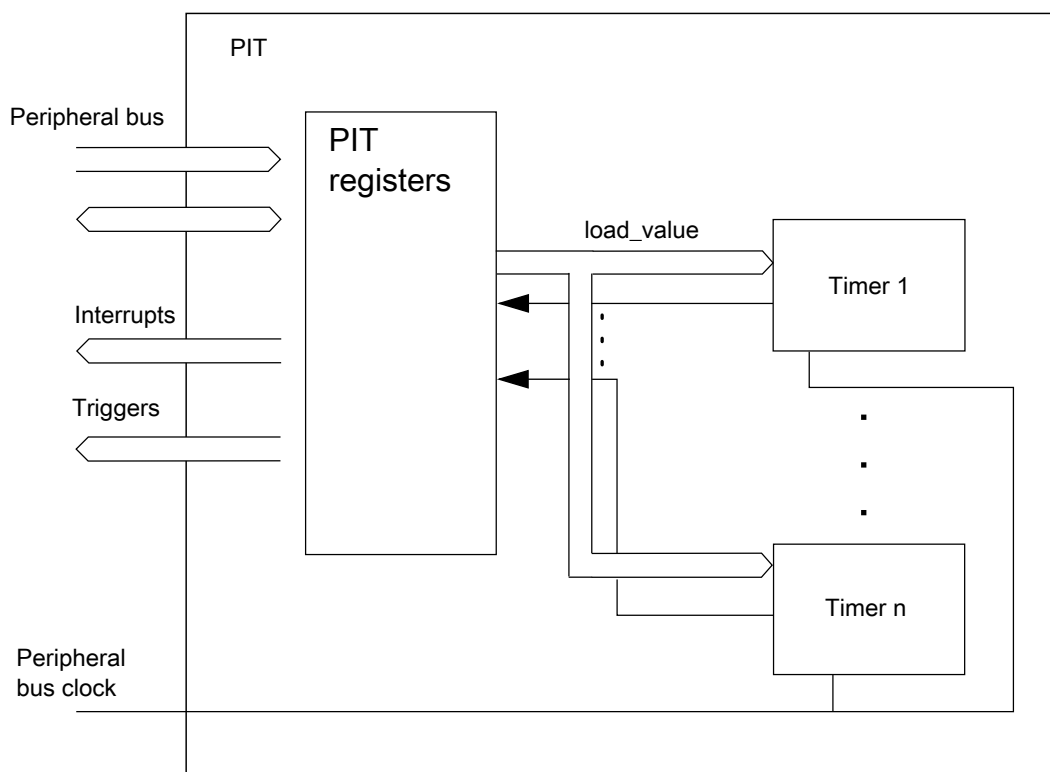


Figure 48-1. Block diagram of the PIT

NOTE

See the chip-specific PIT information for the number of PIT channels used in this MCU.

48.2.2 Features

The main features of this block are:

- Ability of timers to generate DMA trigger pulses
- Ability of timers to generate interrupts
- Maskable interrupts
- Independent timeout periods for each timer

48.3 Signal description

The PIT module has no external pins.

48.4 Memory map/register description

This section provides a detailed description of all registers accessible in the PIT module.

- Reserved registers will read as 0, writes will have no effect.
- See the chip-specific PIT information for the number of PIT channels used in this MCU.

PIT memory map

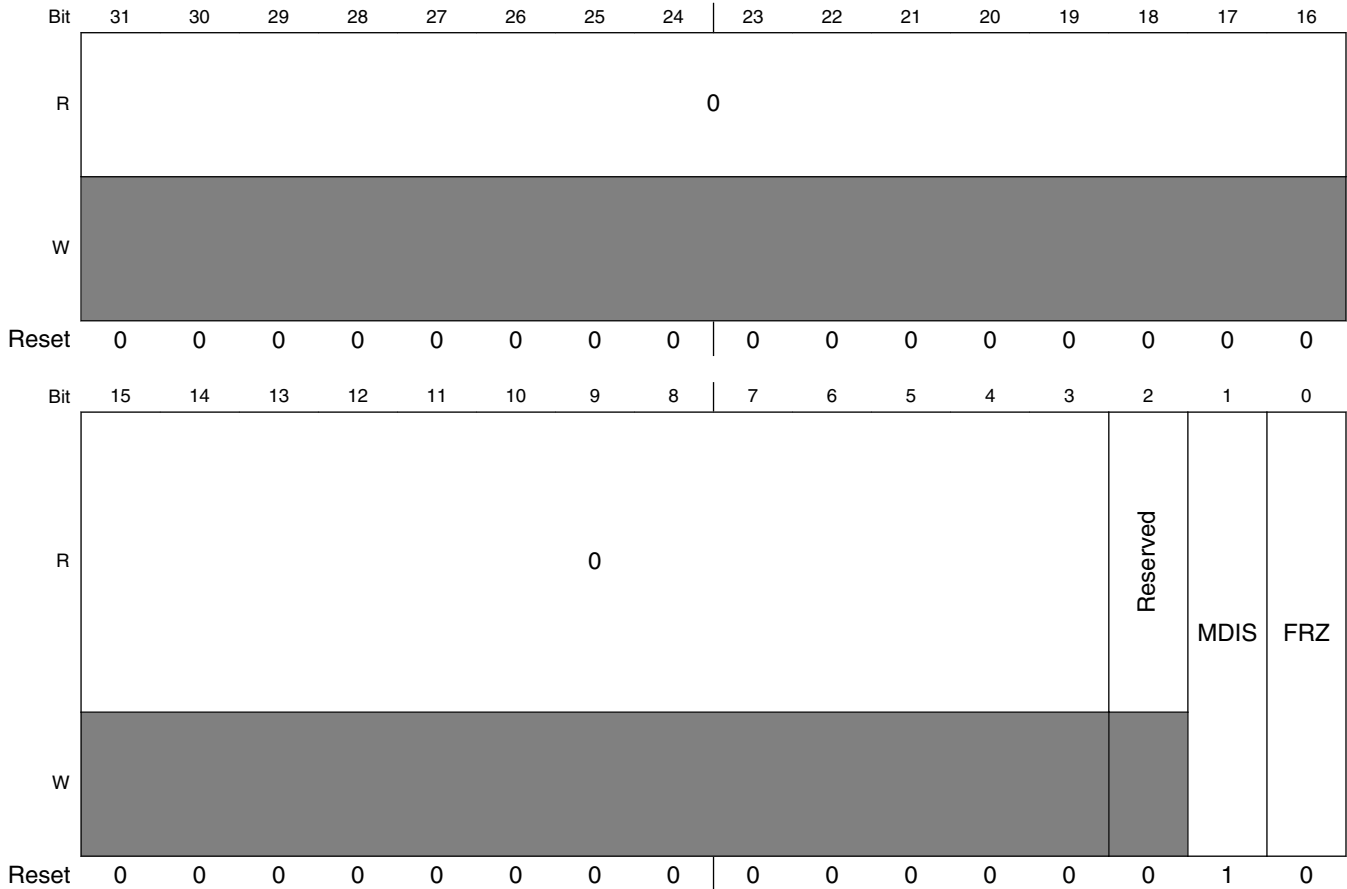
Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4003_7000	PIT Module Control Register (PIT_MCR)	32	R/W	0000_0002h	48.4.1/1392
4003_70E0	PIT Upper Lifetime Timer Register (PIT_LTMR64H)	32	R	0000_0000h	48.4.2/1394
4003_70E4	PIT Lower Lifetime Timer Register (PIT_LTMR64L)	32	R	0000_0000h	48.4.3/1394
4003_7100	Timer Load Value Register (PIT_LDVAL0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.4/1395
4003_7104	Current Timer Value Register (PIT_CVAL0)	32	R	0000_0000h	48.4.5/1395
4003_7108	Timer Control Register (PIT_TCTRL0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.6/1396
4003_710C	Timer Flag Register (PIT_TFLG0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.7/1396
4003_7110	Timer Load Value Register (PIT_LDVAL1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.4/1395
4003_7114	Current Timer Value Register (PIT_CVAL1)	32	R	0000_0000h	48.4.5/1395
4003_7118	Timer Control Register (PIT_TCTRL1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.6/1396
4003_711C	Timer Flag Register (PIT_TFLG1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.7/1396
4003_7120	Timer Load Value Register (PIT_LDVAL2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.4/1395
4003_7124	Current Timer Value Register (PIT_CVAL2)	32	R	0000_0000h	48.4.5/1395
4003_7128	Timer Control Register (PIT_TCTRL2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.6/1396
4003_712C	Timer Flag Register (PIT_TFLG2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.7/1396
4003_7130	Timer Load Value Register (PIT_LDVAL3)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.4/1395
4003_7134	Current Timer Value Register (PIT_CVAL3)	32	R	0000_0000h	48.4.5/1395
4003_7138	Timer Control Register (PIT_TCTRL3)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.6/1396
4003_713C	Timer Flag Register (PIT_TFLG3)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.7/1396

48.4.1 PIT Module Control Register (PIT_MCR)

This register enables or disables the PIT timer clocks and controls the timers when the PIT enters the Debug mode.

Access: User read/write

Address: 4003_7000h base + 0h offset = 4003_7000h



PIT_MCR field descriptions

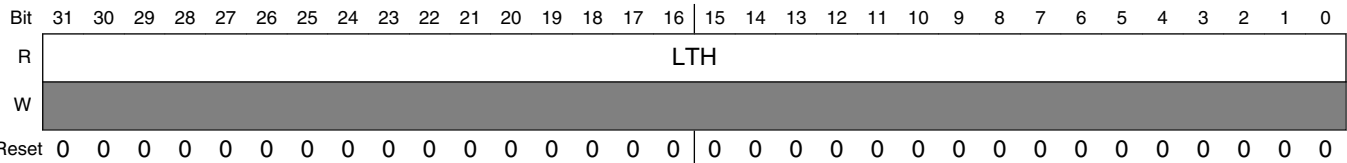
Field	Description
31–3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 Reserved	This field is reserved.
1 MDIS	Module Disable - (PIT section) Disables the standard timers. This field must be enabled before any other setup is done. 0 Clock for standard PIT timers is enabled. 1 Clock for standard PIT timers is disabled.
0 FRZ	Freeze Allows the timers to be stopped when the device enters the Debug mode. 0 Timers continue to run in Debug mode. 1 Timers are stopped in Debug mode.

48.4.2 PIT Upper Lifetime Timer Register (PIT_LTMR64H)

This register is intended for applications that chain timer 0 and timer 1 to build a 64-bit lifetimer.

Access: User read only

Address: 4003_7000h base + E0h offset = 4003_70E0h



PIT_LTMR64H field descriptions

Field	Description
LTH	Life Timer value Shows the timer value of timer 1. If this register is read at a time t1, LTMR64L shows the value of timer 0 at time t1.

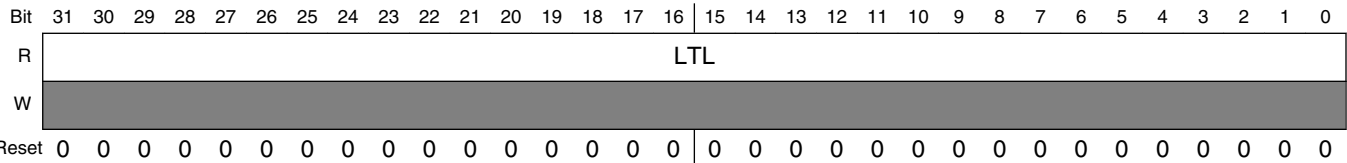
48.4.3 PIT Lower Lifetime Timer Register (PIT_LTMR64L)

This register is intended for applications that chain timer 0 and timer 1 to build a 64-bit lifetimer.

To use LTMR64H and LTMR64L, timer 0 and timer 1 need to be chained. To obtain the correct value, first read LTMR64H and then LTMR64L. LTMR64H will have the value of CVAL1 at the time of the first access, LTMR64L will have the value of CVAL0 at the time of the first access, therefore the application does not need to worry about carry-over effects of the running counter.

Access: User read only

Address: 4003_7000h base + E4h offset = 4003_70E4h



PIT_LTMR64L field descriptions

Field	Description
LTL	Life Timer value

PIT_LTMR64L field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Shows the value of timer 0 at the time LTMR64H was last read. It will only update if LTMR64H is read.

48.4.4 Timer Load Value Register (PIT_LDVALn)

These registers select the timeout period for the timer interrupts.

Access: User read/write

Address: 4003_7000h base + 100h offset + (16d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

PIT_LDVALn field descriptions

Field	Description
TSV	<p>Timer Start Value</p> <p>Sets the timer start value. The timer will count down until it reaches 0, then it will generate an interrupt and load this register value again. Writing a new value to this register will not restart the timer; instead the value will be loaded after the timer expires. To abort the current cycle and start a timer period with the new value, the timer must be disabled and enabled again.</p>

48.4.5 Current Timer Value Register (PIT_CVALn)

These registers indicate the current timer position.

Access: User read only

Address: 4003_7000h base + 104h offset + (16d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	TVL																															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PIT_CVALn field descriptions

Field	Description
TVL	<p>Current Timer Value</p> <p>Represents the current timer value, if the timer is enabled.</p> <p>NOTE:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the timer is disabled, do not use this field as its value is unreliable. The timer uses a downcounter. The timer values are frozen in Debug mode if MCR[FRZ] is set.

48.4.6 Timer Control Register (PIT_TCTRLn)

These registers contain the control bits for each timer.

Access: User read/write

Address: 4003_7000h base + 108h offset + (16d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0														CHN	TIE
W																TEN
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PIT_TCTRLn field descriptions

Field	Description
31–3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 CHN	Chain Mode When activated, Timer n-1 needs to expire before timer n can decrement by 1. Timer 0 cannot be chained. 0 Timer is not chained. 1 Timer is chained to previous timer. For example, for Channel 2, if this field is set, Timer 2 is chained to Timer 1.
1 TIE	Timer Interrupt Enable When an interrupt is pending, or, TFLGn[TIF] is set, enabling the interrupt will immediately cause an interrupt event. To avoid this, the associated TFLGn[TIF] must be cleared first. 0 Interrupt requests from Timer n are disabled. 1 Interrupt will be requested whenever TIF is set.
0 TEN	Timer Enable Enables or disables the timer. 0 Timer n is disabled. 1 Timer n is enabled.

48.4.7 Timer Flag Register (PIT_TFLGn)

These registers hold the PIT interrupt flags.

Access: User read/write

Address: 4003_7000h base + 10Ch offset + (16d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0															TIF
W																w1c
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PIT_TFLGn field descriptions

Field	Description
31–1 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
0 TIF	Timer Interrupt Flag Sets to 1 at the end of the timer period. Writing 1 to this flag clears it. Writing 0 has no effect. If enabled, or, when TCTRLn[TIE] = 1, TIF causes an interrupt request. 0 Timeout has not yet occurred. 1 Timeout has occurred.

48.5 Functional description

This section provides the functional description of the module.

48.5.1 General operation

This section gives detailed information on the internal operation of the module. Each timer can be used to generate trigger pulses and interrupts. Each interrupt is available on a separate interrupt line.

48.5.1.1 Timers

The timers generate triggers at periodic intervals, when enabled. The timers load the start values as specified in their LDVAL registers, count down to 0 and then load the respective start value again. Each time a timer reaches 0, it will generate a trigger pulse and set the interrupt flag.

All interrupts can be enabled or masked by setting TCTRLn[TIE]. A new interrupt can be generated only after the previous one is cleared.

If desired, the current counter value of the timer can be read via the CVAL registers.

The counter period can be restarted, by first disabling, and then enabling the timer with TCTRLn[TEN]. See the following figure.

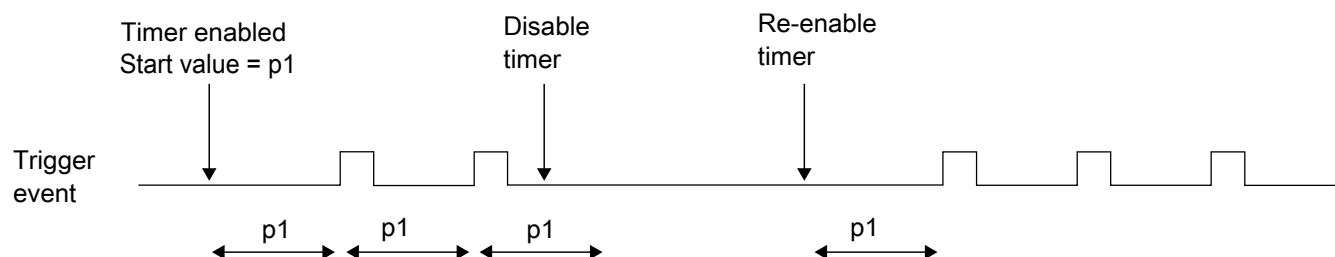


Figure 48-2. Stopping and starting a timer

The counter period of a running timer can be modified, by first disabling the timer, setting a new load value, and then enabling the timer again. See the following figure.

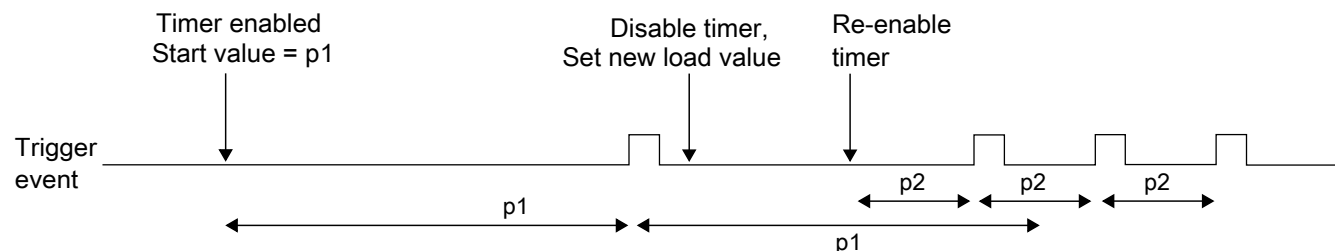


Figure 48-3. Modifying running timer period

It is also possible to change the counter period without restarting the timer by writing LDVAL with the new load value. This value will then be loaded after the next trigger event. See the following figure.

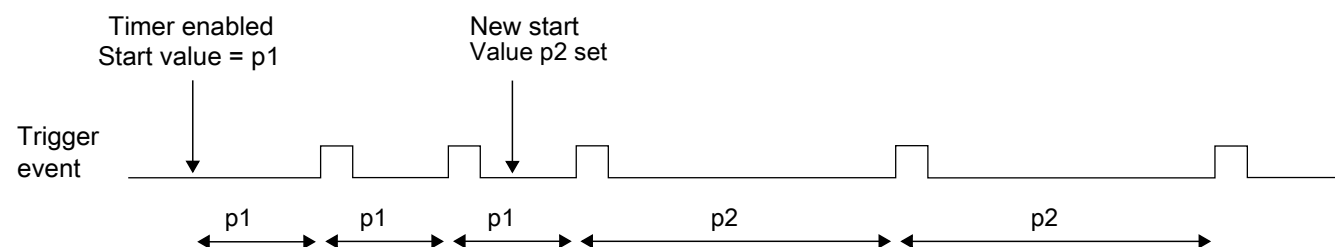


Figure 48-4. Dynamically setting a new load value

48.5.1.2 Debug mode

In Debug mode, the timers will be frozen based on MCR[FRZ]. This is intended to aid software development, allowing the developer to halt the processor, investigate the current state of the system, for example, the timer values, and then continue the operation.

48.5.2 Interrupts

All the timers support interrupt generation. See the MCU specification for related vector addresses and priorities.

Timer interrupts can be enabled by setting TCTRLn[TIE]. TFLGn[TIF] are set to 1 when a timeout occurs on the associated timer, and are cleared to 0 by writing a 1 to the corresponding TFLGn[TIF].

48.5.3 Chained timers

When a timer has chain mode enabled, it will only count after the previous timer has expired. So if timer n-1 has counted down to 0, counter n will decrement the value by one. This allows to chain some of the timers together to form a longer timer. The first timer (timer 0) cannot be chained to any other timer.

48.6 Initialization and application information

In the example configuration:

- The PIT clock has a frequency of 50 MHz.
- Timer 1 creates an interrupt every 5.12 ms.
- Timer 3 creates a trigger event every 30 ms.

The PIT module must be activated by writing a 0 to MCR[MDIS].

The 50 MHz clock frequency equates to a clock period of 20 ns. Timer 1 needs to trigger every $5.12 \text{ ms} / 20 \text{ ns} = 256,000$ cycles and Timer 3 every $30 \text{ ms} / 20 \text{ ns} = 1,500,000$ cycles. The value for the LDVAL register trigger is calculated as:

$\text{LDVAL trigger} = (\text{period} / \text{clock period}) - 1$

This means LDVAL1 and LDVAL3 must be written with 0x0003E7FF and 0x0016E35F respectively.

The interrupt for Timer 1 is enabled by setting TCTRL1[TIE]. The timer is started by writing 1 to TCTRL1[TEN].

Timer 3 shall be used only for triggering. Therefore, Timer 3 is started by writing a 1 to TCTRL3[TEN]. TCTRL3[TIE] stays at 0.

The following example code matches the described setup:

```
// turn on PIT
PIT_MCR = 0x00;

// Timer 1
PIT_LDVAL1 = 0x0003E7FF; // setup timer 1 for 256000 cycles
PIT_TCTRL1 = TIE; // enable Timer 1 interrupts
PIT_TCTRL1 |= TEN; // start Timer 1

// Timer 3
PIT_LDVAL3 = 0x0016E35F; // setup timer 3 for 1500000 cycles
PIT_TCTRL3 |= TEN; // start Timer 3
```

48.7 Example configuration for chained timers

In the example configuration:

- The PIT clock has a frequency of 100 MHz.
- Timers 1 and 2 are available.
- An interrupt shall be raised every 1 minute.

The PIT module needs to be activated by writing a 0 to MCR[MDIS].

The 100 MHz clock frequency equates to a clock period of 10 ns, so the PIT needs to count for 6000 million cycles, which is more than a single timer can do. So, Timer 1 is set up to trigger every 6 s (600 million cycles). Timer 2 is chained to Timer 1 and programmed to trigger 10 times.

The value for the LDVAL register trigger is calculated as number of cycles-1, so LDVAL1 receives the value 0x23C345FF and LDVAL2 receives the value 0x00000009.

The interrupt for Timer 2 is enabled by setting TCTRL2[TIE], the Chain mode is activated by setting TCTRL2[CHN], and the timer is started by writing a 1 to TCTRL2[TEN]. TCTRL1[TEN] needs to be set, and TCTRL1[CHN] and TCTRL1[TIE] are cleared.

The following example code matches the described setup:

```
// turn on PIT
PIT_MCR = 0x00;

// Timer 2
PIT_LDVAL2 = 0x00000009; // setup Timer 2 for 10 counts
PIT_TCTRL2 = TIE; // enable Timer 2 interrupt
PIT_TCTRL2 |= CHN; // chain Timer 2 to Timer 1
PIT_TCTRL2 |= TEN; // start Timer 2

// Timer 1
PIT_LDVAL1 = 0x23C345FF; // setup Timer 1 for 600 000 000 cycles
PIT_TCTRL1 = TEN; // start Timer 1
```

48.8 Example configuration for the lifetime timer

To configure the lifetime timer, channels 0 and 1 need to be chained together.

First the PIT module needs to be activated by writing a 0 to the MDIS bit in the CTRL register, then the LDVAL registers need to be set to the maximum value.

The timer is a downcounter.

The following example code matches the described setup:

```
// turn on PIT
PIT_MCR = 0x00;

// Timer 1
PIT_LDVAL1 = 0xFFFFFFFF; // setup timer 1 for maximum counting period
PIT_TCTRL1 = 0x0; // disable timer 1 interrupts
PIT_TCTRL1 |= CHN; // chain timer 1 to timer 0
PIT_TCTRL1 |= TEN; // start timer 1

// Timer 0
PIT_LDVAL0 = 0xFFFFFFFF; // setup timer 0 for maximum counting period
PIT_TCTRL0 = TEN; // start timer 0
```

To access the lifetime, read first LTMR64H and then LTMR64L.

```
current_uptime = PIT_LTMR64H<<32;
current_uptime = current_uptime + PIT_LTMR64L;
```



Chapter 49

Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI)

49.1 Chip-specific SPI information

49.1.1 SPI instantiation information

This chip contains three SPI modules. Each has RX and TX FIFO depth of 4 and the width for each entry is 4-byte, as well as DMA support.

49.1.2 SPI clocking

The SPI module is clocked by the fast peripheral clock (the SPI refers to it as system clock). The module has an internal divider, with a minimum divide of two. So, the SPI can run at a maximum frequency of fast peripheral clock/2.

49.1.3 Number of CTARs

SPI CTAR registers define different transfer attribute configurations. The SPI module supports up to eight CTAR registers. This device supports two CTARs on the instances of the SPI.

In master mode, the CTAR registers define combinations of transfer attributes, such as frame size, clock phase, clock polarity, data bit ordering, baud rate, and various delays. In slave mode only CTAR0 is used, and a subset of its bitfields sets the slave transfer attributes.

49.1.4 TX FIFO size

Table 49-1. SPI transmit FIFO size

SPI Module	Transmit FIFO size
SPI0	4
SPI1	4
SPI2	4

49.1.5 RX FIFO Size

SPI supports up to 16-bit frame size during reception.

Table 49-2. SPI receive FIFO size

SPI Module	Receive FIFO size
SPI0	4
SPI1	4
SPI2	4

49.1.6 Number of PCS signals

The following table shows the number of peripheral chip select signals available per SPI module.

Table 49-3. SPI PCS signals

SPI Module	PCS Signals
SPI0	SPI_PCS[5:0]

49.1.7 SPI Operation in Low Power Modes

In VLPR and VLPW modes the SPI is functional; however, the reduced system frequency also reduces the max frequency of operation for the SPI. In VLPR and VLPW modes the max SPI_CLK frequency is 2MHz.

In stop and VLPS modes, the clocks to the SPI module are disabled. The module is not functional, but it is powered so that it retains state.

There is one way to wake from stop mode via the SPI, which is explained in the following section.

49.1.7.1 Using GPIO Interrupt to Wake from stop mode

Here are the steps to use a GPIO to create a wakeup upon reception of SPI data in slave mode:

1. Point the GPIO interrupt vector to the desired interrupt handler.
2. Enable the GPIO input to generate an interrupt on either the rising or falling edge (depending on the polarity of the chip select signal).
3. Enter Stop or VLPS mode and Wait for the GPIO interrupt.

NOTE

It is likely that in using this approach the first word of data from the SPI host might not be received correctly. This is dependent on the transfer rate used for the SPI, the delay between chip select assertion and presentation of data, and the system interrupt latency.

49.1.8 SPI Doze Mode

The Doze mode for the SPI module is the same as the Wait and VLPW modes for the chip.

49.1.9 SPI Interrupts

The SPI has multiple sources of interrupt requests. However, these sources are OR'd together to generate a single interrupt request per SPI module to the interrupt controller. When an SPI interrupt occurs, read the SPI_SR to determine the exact interrupt source.

49.1.10 SPI clocks

This table shows the SPI module clocks and the corresponding chip clocks.

Table 49-4. SPI clock connections

Module clock	Chip clock
System Clock	Bus Clock

49.1.11 Writing SPI Transmit FIFO

In Master mode, only 32-bit write accesses are supported for the PUSHHR register, the top TX FIFO entry. In Slave mode, 8-bit, 16-bit and 32-bit write accesses are supported for the PUSHHR register, although each write increments the write pointer.

49.1.12 Receive buffer overflow

Upon receive buffer overflow condition ($\text{SPIx_SR[RFOF]} = 1$), follow these steps:

1. Save the RX FIFO registers if desired
2. Perform a POP operation
3. Clear the FIFO

This avoids shifting in unwanted data into the receive FIFO after the FIFO has been cleared.

49.1.13 Back to back frames when using Modified SPI/DSI Transfer Format

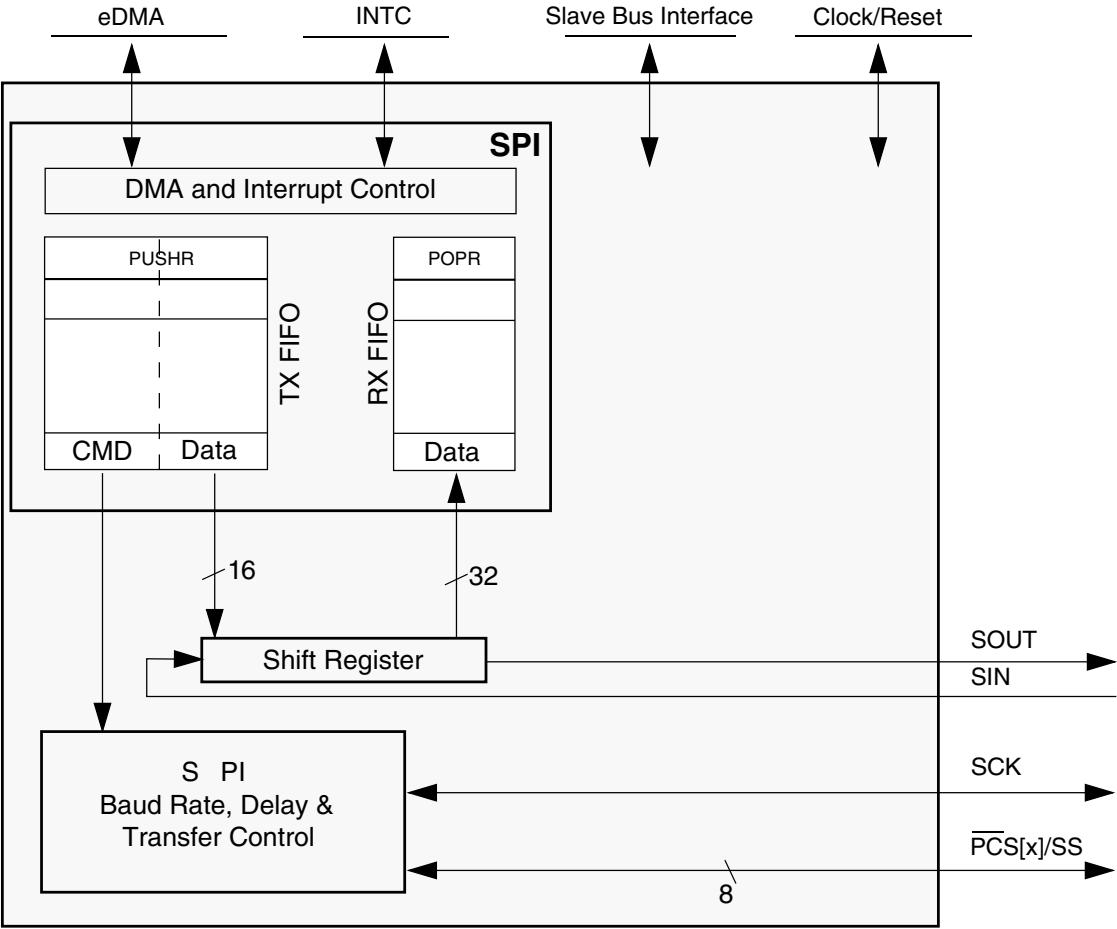
When using the Modified SPI/DSI Transfer Format ($\text{MTFE} = 1$) and sending back to back frames by configuring $\text{MCR[CONT_SCKE]} = 1$ and $\text{PUSHHR[CONT]} = 1$, always configure the two frame sizes to be equal. If sending equal frame sizes is not possible, then the frame size of the first frame must be less than the frame size of the second frame for correct operation. Note that software may still need to account for extra data in the POP operation of the smaller frame.

49.2 Introduction

The serial peripheral interface (SPI) module provides a synchronous serial bus for communication between a chip and an external peripheral device.

49.2.1 Block Diagram

The block diagram of this module is as follows:



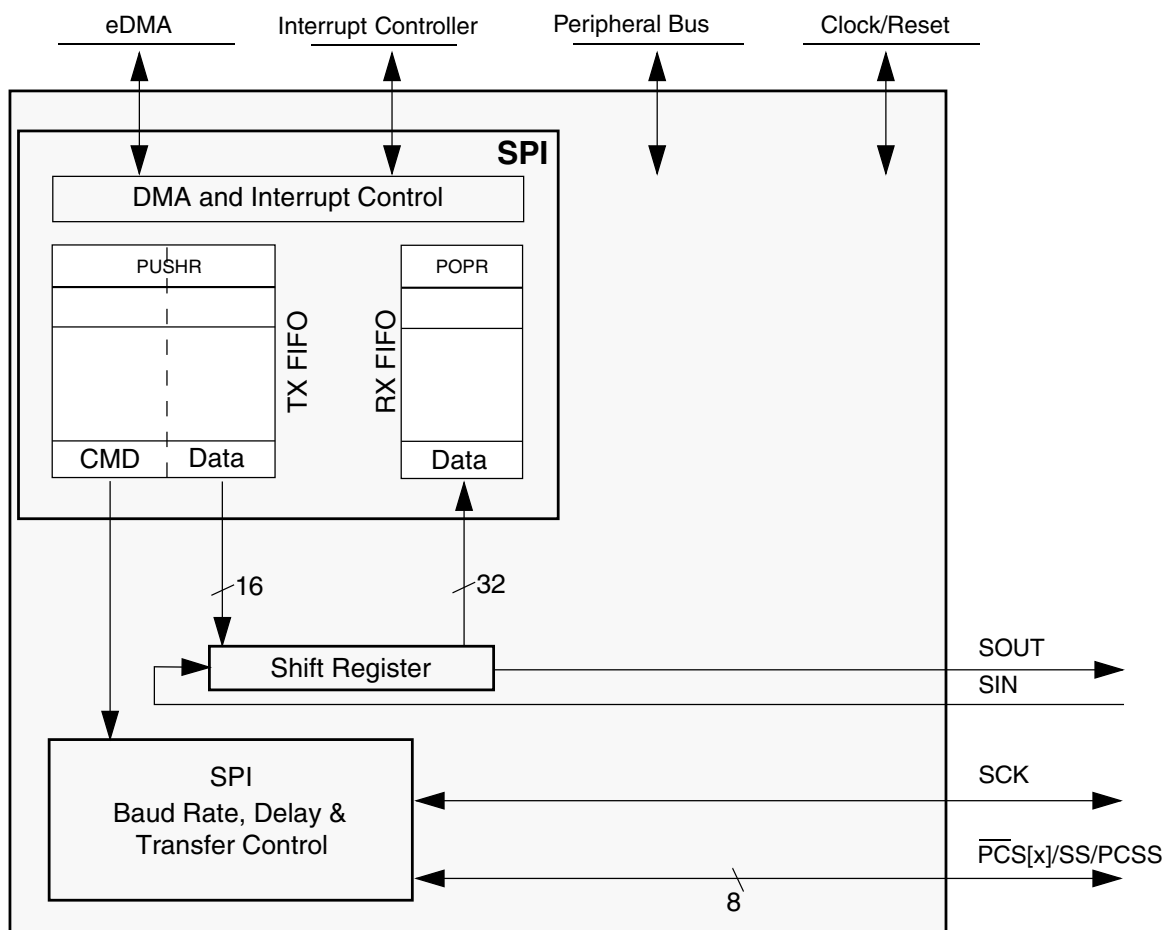


Figure 49-1. SPI Block Diagram

49.2.2 Features

The module supports the following features:

- Full-duplex, three-wire synchronous transfers
- Master mode
- Slave mode
- Data streaming operation in Slave mode with continuous slave selection
- Buffered transmit operation using the transmit first in first out (TX FIFO) with depth of 4 entries
- Buffered receive operation using the receive FIFO (RX FIFO) with depth of 4 entries
- TX and RX FIFOs can be disabled individually for low-latency updates to SPI queues

- Visibility into TX and RX FIFOs for ease of debugging
- Programmable transfer attributes on a per-frame basis:
 - two transfer attribute registers
 - Serial clock (SCK) with programmable polarity and phase
 - Various programmable delays
 - Programmable serial frame size: 4 to 16 bits
 - SPI frames longer than 16 bits can be supported using the continuous selection format.
 - Continuously held chip select capability
- 6 peripheral chip selects (PCSeS), expandable to 64 with external demultiplexer
- Deglitching support for up to 32 peripheral chip selects (PCSeS) with external demultiplexer
- DMA support for adding entries to TX FIFO and removing entries from RX FIFO:
 - TX FIFO is not full (TFFF)
 - RX FIFO is not empty (RFDF)
- Interrupt conditions:
 - End of Queue reached (EOQF)
 - TX FIFO is not full (TFFF)
 - Transfer of current frame complete (TCF)
 - Attempt to transmit with an empty Transmit FIFO (TFUF)
 - RX FIFO is not empty (RFDF)
 - Frame received while Receive FIFO is full (RFOF)
- Modified SPI transfer formats for communication with slower peripheral devices
- Power-saving architectural features:
 - Support for Stop mode
 - Support for Doze mode

49.2.3 Interface configurations

49.2.3.1 SPI configuration

The Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) configuration allows the module to send and receive serial data. This configuration allows the module to operate as a basic SPI block with internal FIFOs supporting external queue operation. Transmitted data and received data reside in separate FIFOs. The host CPU or a DMA controller read the received data from the Receive FIFO and write transmit data to the Transmit FIFO.

For queued operations, the SPI queues can reside in system RAM, external to the module. Data transfers between the queues and the module FIFOs are accomplished by a DMA controller or host CPU. The following figure shows a system example with DMA, SPI, and external queues in system RAM.

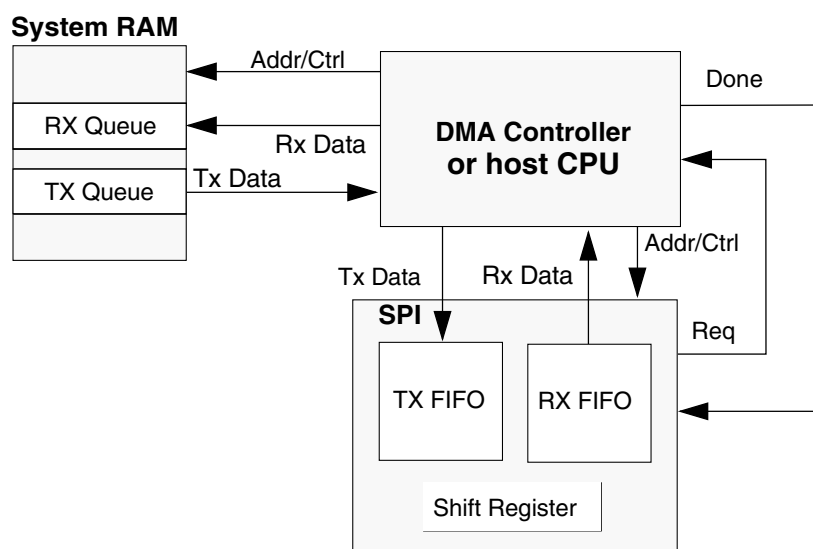


Figure 49-2. SPI with queues and DMA

49.2.4 Modes of Operation

The module supports the following modes of operation that can be divided into two categories:

- Module-specific modes:
 - Master mode

- Slave mode
- Module Disable mode
- Chip-specific modes:
 - External Stop mode
 - Debug mode

The module enters module-specific modes when the host writes a module register. The chip-specific modes are controlled by signals external to the module. The chip-specific modes are modes that a chip may enter in parallel to the block-specific modes.

49.2.4.1 Master Mode

Master mode allows the module to initiate and control serial communication. In this mode, these signals are controlled by the module and configured as outputs:

- SCK
- SOUT
- PCS[x]

49.2.4.2 Slave Mode

Slave mode allows the module to communicate with SPI bus masters. In this mode, the module responds to externally controlled serial transfers. The SCK signal and the PCS[0]/ $\overline{\text{SS}}$ signals are configured as inputs and driven by an SPI bus master.

49.2.4.3 Module Disable Mode

The Module Disable mode can be used for chip power management. The clock to the non-memory mapped logic in the module can be stopped while in the Module Disable mode.

49.2.4.4 External Stop Mode

External Stop mode is used for chip power management. The module supports the Peripheral Bus Stop mode mechanism. When a request is made to enter External Stop mode, it acknowledges the request and completes the transfer that is in progress. When the module reaches the frame boundary, it signals that the protocol clock to the module may be shut off.

49.2.4.5 Debug Mode

Debug mode is used for system development and debugging. The MCR[FRZ] bit controls module behavior in the Debug mode:

- If the bit is set, the module stops all serial transfers, when the chip is in debug mode.
- If the bit is cleared, the chip debug mode has no effect on the module.

49.3 Module signal descriptions

This table describes the signals on the boundary of the module that may connect off chip (in alphabetical order).

Table 49-5. Module signal descriptions

Signal	Master mode	Slave mode	I/O
PCS0/SS	Peripheral Chip Select 0 (O)	Slave Select (I)	I/O
PCS[1:3]	Peripheral Chip Selects 1–3	(Unused)	O
PCS4	Peripheral Chip Select 4	(Unused)	O
PCS5/ $\overline{\text{PCSS}}$	Peripheral Chip Select 5 /Peripheral Chip Select Strobe	(Unused)	O
SCK	Serial Clock (O)	Serial Clock (I)	I/O
SIN	Serial Data In	Serial Data In	I
SOUT	Serial Data Out	Serial Data Out	O

49.3.1 PCS0/SS—Peripheral Chip Select/Slave Select

Master mode: Peripheral Chip Select 0 (O)—Selects an SPI slave to receive data transmitted from the module.

Slave mode: Slave Select (I)—Selects the module to receive data transmitted from an SPI master.

49.3.2 PCS1–PCS3—Peripheral Chip Selects 1–3

Master mode: Peripheral Chip Selects 1–3 (O)—Select an SPI slave to receive data transmitted by the module.

Slave mode: Unused

49.3.3 PCS4—Peripheral Chip Select 4

Master mode: Peripheral Chip Select 4 (O)—Selects an SPI slave to receive data transmitted by the module.

Slave mode: Unused

49.3.4 PCS5/ $\overline{\text{PCSS}}$ —Peripheral Chip Select 5/Peripheral Chip Select Strobe

Master mode:

- Peripheral Chip Select 5 (O)—Used only when the peripheral-chip-select strobe is disabled (MCR[PCSSE]). Selects an SPI slave to receive data transmitted by the module.
- Peripheral Chip Select Strobe (O)—Used only when the peripheral-chip-select strobe is enabled (MCR[PCSSE]). Strokes an off-module peripheral-chip-select demultiplexer, which decodes the module's PCS signals other than PCS5, preventing glitches on the demultiplexer outputs.

Slave mode: Unused

49.3.5 SCK—Serial Clock

Master mode: Serial Clock (O)—Supplies a clock signal from the module to SPI slaves.

Slave mode: Serial Clock (I)—Supplies a clock signal to the module from an SPI master.

49.3.6 SIN—Serial Input

Master mode: Serial Input (I)—Receives serial data.

Slave mode: Serial Input (I)—Receives serial data.

49.3.7 SOUT—Serial Output

Master mode: Serial Output (O)—Transmits serial data.

Slave mode: Serial Output (O)—Transmits serial data.

NOTE

Serial Data Out output buffers are controlled through SIU (or SIUL) and cannot be controlled through the module.

49.4 Memory Map/Register Definition

Register accesses to memory addresses that are reserved or undefined result in a transfer error. Write access to the POPR and RXFRn also results in a transfer error.

SPI memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4002_C000	Module Configuration Register (SPI0_MCR)	32	R/W	0000_4001h	49.4.1/1417
4002_C008	Transfer Count Register (SPI0_TCR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	49.4.2/1420
4002_C00C	Clock and Transfer Attributes Register (In Master Mode) (SPI0_CTAR0)	32	R/W	7800_0000h	49.4.3/1420
4002_C00C	Clock and Transfer Attributes Register (In Slave Mode) (SPI0_CTAR0_SLAVE)	32	R/W	7800_0000h	49.4.4/1425
4002_C010	Clock and Transfer Attributes Register (In Master Mode) (SPI0_CTAR1)	32	R/W	7800_0000h	49.4.3/1420
4002_C02C	Status Register (SPI0_SR)	32	R/W	0200_0000h	49.4.5/1427
4002_C030	DMA/Interrupt Request Select and Enable Register (SPI0_RSER)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	49.4.6/1430
4002_C034	PUSH TX FIFO Register In Master Mode (SPI0_PUSHR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	49.4.7/1432
4002_C034	PUSH TX FIFO Register In Slave Mode (SPI0_PUSHR_SLAVE)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	49.4.8/1434
4002_C038	POP RX FIFO Register (SPI0_POPR)	32	R	0000_0000h	49.4.9/1434
4002_C03C	Transmit FIFO Registers (SPI0_TXFR0)	32	R	0000_0000h	49.4.10/1435
4002_C040	Transmit FIFO Registers (SPI0_TXFR1)	32	R	0000_0000h	49.4.10/1435
4002_C044	Transmit FIFO Registers (SPI0_TXFR2)	32	R	0000_0000h	49.4.10/1435
4002_C048	Transmit FIFO Registers (SPI0_TXFR3)	32	R	0000_0000h	49.4.10/1435

Table continues on the next page...

SPI memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4002_C07C	Receive FIFO Registers (SPI0_RXFR0)	32	R	0000_0000h	49.4.11/1435
4002_C080	Receive FIFO Registers (SPI0_RXFR1)	32	R	0000_0000h	49.4.11/1435
4002_C084	Receive FIFO Registers (SPI0_RXFR2)	32	R	0000_0000h	49.4.11/1435
4002_C088	Receive FIFO Registers (SPI0_RXFR3)	32	R	0000_0000h	49.4.11/1435
4002_D000	Module Configuration Register (SPI1_MCR)	32	R/W	0000_4001h	49.4.1/1417
4002_D008	Transfer Count Register (SPI1_TCR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	49.4.2/1420
4002_D00C	Clock and Transfer Attributes Register (In Master Mode) (SPI1_CTAR0)	32	R/W	7800_0000h	49.4.3/1420
4002_D00C	Clock and Transfer Attributes Register (In Slave Mode) (SPI1_CTAR0_SLAVE)	32	R/W	7800_0000h	49.4.4/1425
4002_D010	Clock and Transfer Attributes Register (In Master Mode) (SPI1_CTAR1)	32	R/W	7800_0000h	49.4.3/1420
4002_D02C	Status Register (SPI1_SR)	32	R/W	0200_0000h	49.4.5/1427
4002_D030	DMA/Interrupt Request Select and Enable Register (SPI1_RSER)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	49.4.6/1430
4002_D034	PUSH TX FIFO Register In Master Mode (SPI1_PUSHR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	49.4.7/1432
4002_D034	PUSH TX FIFO Register In Slave Mode (SPI1_PUSHR_SLAVE)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	49.4.8/1434
4002_D038	POP RX FIFO Register (SPI1_POPR)	32	R	0000_0000h	49.4.9/1434
4002_D03C	Transmit FIFO Registers (SPI1_TXFR0)	32	R	0000_0000h	49.4.10/1435
4002_D040	Transmit FIFO Registers (SPI1_TXFR1)	32	R	0000_0000h	49.4.10/1435
4002_D044	Transmit FIFO Registers (SPI1_TXFR2)	32	R	0000_0000h	49.4.10/1435
4002_D048	Transmit FIFO Registers (SPI1_TXFR3)	32	R	0000_0000h	49.4.10/1435
4002_D07C	Receive FIFO Registers (SPI1_RXFR0)	32	R	0000_0000h	49.4.11/1435
4002_D080	Receive FIFO Registers (SPI1_RXFR1)	32	R	0000_0000h	49.4.11/1435
4002_D084	Receive FIFO Registers (SPI1_RXFR2)	32	R	0000_0000h	49.4.11/1435
4002_D088	Receive FIFO Registers (SPI1_RXFR3)	32	R	0000_0000h	49.4.11/1435
400A_C000	Module Configuration Register (SPI2_MCR)	32	R/W	0000_4001h	49.4.1/1417
400A_C008	Transfer Count Register (SPI2_TCR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	49.4.2/1420
400A_C00C	Clock and Transfer Attributes Register (In Master Mode) (SPI2_CTAR0)	32	R/W	7800_0000h	49.4.3/1420

Table continues on the next page...

SPI memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
400A_C00C	Clock and Transfer Attributes Register (In Slave Mode) (SPI2_CTAR0_SLAVE)	32	R/W	7800_0000h	49.4.4/1425
400A_C010	Clock and Transfer Attributes Register (In Master Mode) (SPI2_CTAR1)	32	R/W	7800_0000h	49.4.3/1420
400A_C02C	Status Register (SPI2_SR)	32	R/W	0200_0000h	49.4.5/1427
400A_C030	DMA/Interrupt Request Select and Enable Register (SPI2_RSER)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	49.4.6/1430
400A_C034	PUSH TX FIFO Register In Master Mode (SPI2_PUSHR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	49.4.7/1432
400A_C034	PUSH TX FIFO Register In Slave Mode (SPI2_PUSHR_SLAVE)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	49.4.8/1434
400A_C038	POP RX FIFO Register (SPI2_POPR)	32	R	0000_0000h	49.4.9/1434
400A_C03C	Transmit FIFO Registers (SPI2_TXFR0)	32	R	0000_0000h	49.4.10/1435
400A_C040	Transmit FIFO Registers (SPI2_TXFR1)	32	R	0000_0000h	49.4.10/1435
400A_C044	Transmit FIFO Registers (SPI2_TXFR2)	32	R	0000_0000h	49.4.10/1435
400A_C048	Transmit FIFO Registers (SPI2_TXFR3)	32	R	0000_0000h	49.4.10/1435
400A_C07C	Receive FIFO Registers (SPI2_RXFR0)	32	R	0000_0000h	49.4.11/1435
400A_C080	Receive FIFO Registers (SPI2_RXFR1)	32	R	0000_0000h	49.4.11/1435
400A_C084	Receive FIFO Registers (SPI2_RXFR2)	32	R	0000_0000h	49.4.11/1435
400A_C088	Receive FIFO Registers (SPI2_RXFR3)	32	R	0000_0000h	49.4.11/1435

49.4.1 Module Configuration Register (SPIx_MCR)

Contains bits to configure various attributes associated with the module operations. The HALT and MDIS bits can be changed at any time, but the effect takes place only on the next frame boundary. Only the HALT and MDIS bits in the MCR can be changed, while the module is in the Running state.

Address: Base address + 0h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	MSTR	CONT_SCKE	DCONF		FRZ	MTFE	PCSSE	ROOE	Reserved		PCISIS					
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	DOZE	MDIS	DIS_TXF	DIS_RXF	0	0	SMPL_PT		0				Reserved		Reserved	HALT
W					CLR_TXF	CLR_RXF										
Reset	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

SPIx_MCR field descriptions

Field	Description
31 MSTR	Master/Slave Mode Select Enables either Master mode (if supported) or Slave mode (if supported) operation. 0 Enables Slave mode 1 Enables Master mode
30 CONT_SCKE	Continuous SCK Enable Enables the Serial Communication Clock (SCK) to run continuously.

Table continues on the next page...

SPIx_MCR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Continuous SCK disabled. 1 Continuous SCK enabled.
29–28 DCONF	SPI Configuration. Selects among the different configurations of the module. 00 SPI 01 Reserved 10 Reserved 11 Reserved
27 FRZ	Freeze Enables transfers to be stopped on the next frame boundary when the device enters Debug mode. 0 Do not halt serial transfers in Debug mode. 1 Halt serial transfers in Debug mode.
26 MTFE	Modified Transfer Format Enable Enables a modified transfer format to be used. 0 Modified SPI transfer format disabled. 1 Modified SPI transfer format enabled.
25 PCSSE	Peripheral Chip Select Strobe Enable Enables the PCS5/ $\overline{\text{PCSS}}$ to operate as a PCS Strobe output signal. 0 PCS5/ $\overline{\text{PCSS}}$ is used as the Peripheral Chip Select[5] signal. 1 PCS5/ $\overline{\text{PCSS}}$ is used as an active-low PCS Strobe signal.
24 ROOE	Receive FIFO Overflow Overwrite Enable In the RX FIFO overflow condition, configures the module to ignore the incoming serial data or overwrite existing data. If the RX FIFO is full and new data is received, the data from the transfer, generating the overflow, is ignored or shifted into the shift register. 0 Incoming data is ignored. 1 Incoming data is shifted into the shift register.
23–22 Reserved	Always write the reset value to this field. This field is reserved.
21–16 PCSIS	Peripheral Chip Select x Inactive State Determines the inactive state of PCSx. Refer to the chip-specific SPI information for the number of PCS signals used in this chip. NOTE: The effect of this bit only takes place when module is enabled. Ensure that this bit is configured correctly before enabling the DSPI interface. 0 The inactive state of PCSx is low. 1 The inactive state of PCSx is high.
15 DOZE	Doze Enable Provides support for an externally controlled Doze mode power-saving mechanism.

Table continues on the next page...

SPIx_MCR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>0 Doze mode has no effect on the module.</p> <p>1 Doze mode disables the module.</p>
14 MDIS	<p>Module Disable</p> <p>Allows the clock to be stopped to the non-memory mapped logic in the module effectively putting it in a software-controlled power-saving state. The reset value of the MDIS bit is parameterized, with a default reset value of 1. When the module is used in Slave Mode, it is recommended to leave this bit 0, because a slave doesn't have control over master transactions.</p> <p>0 Enables the module clocks.</p> <p>1 Allows external logic to disable the module clocks.</p>
13 DIS_TXF	<p>Disable Transmit FIFO</p> <p>When the TX FIFO is disabled, the transmit part of the module operates as a simplified double-buffered SPI. This bit can be written only when the MDIS bit is cleared.</p> <p>0 TX FIFO is enabled.</p> <p>1 TX FIFO is disabled.</p>
12 DIS_RXF	<p>Disable Receive FIFO</p> <p>When the RX FIFO is disabled, the receive part of the module operates as a simplified double-buffered SPI. This bit can only be written when the MDIS bit is cleared.</p> <p>0 RX FIFO is enabled.</p> <p>1 RX FIFO is disabled.</p>
11 CLR_TXF	<p>Clear TX FIFO</p> <p>Flushes the TX FIFO. Writing a 1 to CLR_TXF clears the TX FIFO Counter. The CLR_TXF bit is always read as zero.</p> <p>0 Do not clear the TX FIFO counter.</p> <p>1 Clear the TX FIFO counter.</p>
10 CLR_RXF	<p>CLR_RXF</p> <p>Flushes the RX FIFO. Writing a 1 to CLR_RXF clears the RX Counter. The CLR_RXF bit is always read as zero.</p> <p>0 Do not clear the RX FIFO counter.</p> <p>1 Clear the RX FIFO counter.</p>
9–8 SMPL_PT	<p>Sample Point</p> <p>Controls when the module master samples SIN in Modified Transfer Format. This field is valid only when CPHA bit in CTARn[CPHA] is 0.</p> <p>00 0 protocol clock cycles between SCK edge and SIN sample</p> <p>01 1 protocol clock cycle between SCK edge and SIN sample</p> <p>10 2 protocol clock cycles between SCK edge and SIN sample</p> <p>11 Reserved</p>
7–3 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

SPIx_MCR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
2 Reserved	This field is reserved.
1 Reserved	This field is reserved.
0 HALT	<p>Halt</p> <p>The HALT bit starts and stops frame transfers. See Start and Stop of Module transfers</p> <p>0 Start transfers.</p> <p>1 Stop transfers.</p>

49.4.2 Transfer Count Register (SPIx_TCR)

TCR contains a counter that indicates the number of SPI transfers made. The transfer counter is intended to assist in queue management. Do not write the TCR when the module is in the Running state.

Address: Base address + 8h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

SPIx_TCR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 SPI_TCNT	<p>SPI Transfer Counter</p> <p>Counts the number of SPI transfers the module makes. The SPI_TCNT field increments every time the last bit of an SPI frame is transmitted. A value written to SPI_TCNT presets the counter to that value. SPI_TCNT is reset to zero at the beginning of the frame when the CTCNT field is set in the executing SPI command. The Transfer Counter wraps around; incrementing the counter past 65535 resets the counter to zero.</p>
Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>

49.4.3 Clock and Transfer Attributes Register (In Master Mode) (SPIx_CTARn)

CTAR registers are used to define different transfer attributes. Do not write to the CTAR registers while the module is in the Running state.

In Master mode, the CTAR registers define combinations of transfer attributes such as frame size, clock phase and polarity, data bit ordering, baud rate, and various delays. In slave mode, a subset of the bitfields in CTAR0 are used to set the slave transfer attributes.

When the module is configured as an SPI master, the CTAS field in the command portion of the TX FIFO entry selects which of the CTAR registers is used. When the module is configured as an SPI bus slave, it uses the CTAR0 register.

Address: Base address + Ch offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 1d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R																
W																
Reset	0	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

SPIx_CTARn field descriptions

Field	Description																																								
31 DBR	<p>Double Baud Rate</p> <p>Doubles the effective baud rate of the Serial Communications Clock (SCK). This field is used only in master mode. It effectively halves the Baud Rate division ratio, supporting faster frequencies, and odd division ratios for the Serial Communications Clock (SCK). When the DBR bit is set, the duty cycle of the Serial Communications Clock (SCK) depends on the value in the Baud Rate Prescaler and the Clock Phase bit as listed in the following table. See the BR field description for details on how to compute the baud rate.</p> <p>Table 49-6. SPI SCK Duty Cycle</p> <table><tr><th>DBR</th><th>CPHA</th><th>PBR</th><th>SCK Duty Cycle</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>any</td><td>any</td><td>50/50</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>00</td><td>50/50</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>01</td><td>33/66</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>10</td><td>40/60</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>11</td><td>43/57</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>00</td><td>50/50</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>01</td><td>66/33</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>10</td><td>60/40</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>11</td><td>57/43</td></tr></table>	DBR	CPHA	PBR	SCK Duty Cycle	0	any	any	50/50	1	0	00	50/50	1	0	01	33/66	1	0	10	40/60	1	0	11	43/57	1	1	00	50/50	1	1	01	66/33	1	1	10	60/40	1	1	11	57/43
DBR	CPHA	PBR	SCK Duty Cycle																																						
0	any	any	50/50																																						
1	0	00	50/50																																						
1	0	01	33/66																																						
1	0	10	40/60																																						
1	0	11	43/57																																						
1	1	00	50/50																																						
1	1	01	66/33																																						
1	1	10	60/40																																						
1	1	11	57/43																																						

Table continues on the next page...

SPIx_CTARn field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>0 The baud rate is computed normally with a 50/50 duty cycle.</p> <p>1 The baud rate is doubled with the duty cycle depending on the Baud Rate Prescaler.</p>
30–27 FMSZ	<p>Frame Size</p> <p>The number of bits transferred per frame is equal to the FMSZ value plus 1. Regardless of the transmission mode, the minimum valid frame size value is 4.</p>
26 CPOL	<p>Clock Polarity</p> <p>Selects the inactive state of the Serial Communications Clock (SCK). This bit is used in both master and slave mode. For successful communication between serial devices, the devices must have identical clock polarities. When the Continuous Selection Format is selected, switching between clock polarities without stopping the module can cause errors in the transfer due to the peripheral device interpreting the switch of clock polarity as a valid clock edge.</p> <p>NOTE: In case of Continuous SCK mode, when the module goes in low power mode(disabled), inactive state of SCK is not guaranteed.</p> <p>0 The inactive state value of SCK is low.</p> <p>1 The inactive state value of SCK is high.</p>
25 CPHA	<p>Clock Phase</p> <p>Selects which edge of SCK causes data to change and which edge causes data to be captured. This bit is used in both master and slave mode. For successful communication between serial devices, the devices must have identical clock phase settings. In Continuous SCK mode, the bit value is ignored and the transfers are done as if the CPHA bit is set to 1.</p> <p>0 Data is captured on the leading edge of SCK and changed on the following edge.</p> <p>1 Data is changed on the leading edge of SCK and captured on the following edge.</p>
24 LSBFE	<p>LSB First</p> <p>Specifies whether the LSB or MSB of the frame is transferred first.</p> <p>0 Data is transferred MSB first.</p> <p>1 Data is transferred LSB first.</p>
23–22 PCSSCK	<p>PCS to SCK Delay Prescaler</p> <p>Selects the prescaler value for the delay between assertion of PCS and the first edge of the SCK. See the CSSCK field description for information on how to compute the PCS to SCK Delay. Refer PCS to SCK Delay (t_{CSC}) for more details.</p> <p>00 PCS to SCK Prescaler value is 1.</p> <p>01 PCS to SCK Prescaler value is 3.</p> <p>10 PCS to SCK Prescaler value is 5.</p> <p>11 PCS to SCK Prescaler value is 7.</p>
21–20 PASC	<p>After SCK Delay Prescaler</p> <p>Selects the prescaler value for the delay between the last edge of SCK and the negation of PCS. See the ASC field description for information on how to compute the After SCK Delay. Refer After SCK Delay (t_{ASC}) for more details.</p> <p>00 Delay after Transfer Prescaler value is 1.</p> <p>01 Delay after Transfer Prescaler value is 3.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

SPIx_CTARn field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description																												
	10 Delay after Transfer Prescaler value is 5. 11 Delay after Transfer Prescaler value is 7.																												
19–18 PDT	<p>Delay after Transfer Prescaler</p> <p>Selects the prescaler value for the delay between the negation of the PCS signal at the end of a frame and the assertion of PCS at the beginning of the next frame. The PDT field is only used in master mode. See the DT field description for details on how to compute the Delay after Transfer. Refer Delay after Transfer (t_{DT}) for more details.</p> 100 Delay after Transfer Prescaler value is 1. 101 Delay after Transfer Prescaler value is 3. 110 Delay after Transfer Prescaler value is 5. 111 Delay after Transfer Prescaler value is 7.																												
17–16 PBR	<p>Baud Rate Prescaler</p> <p>Selects the prescaler value for the baud rate. This field is used only in master mode. The baud rate is the frequency of the SCK. The protocol clock is divided by the prescaler value before the baud rate selection takes place. See the BR field description for details on how to compute the baud rate.</p> 100 Baud Rate Prescaler value is 2. 101 Baud Rate Prescaler value is 3. 110 Baud Rate Prescaler value is 5. 111 Baud Rate Prescaler value is 7.																												
15–12 CSSCK	<p>PCS to SCK Delay Scaler</p> <p>Selects the scaler value for the PCS to SCK delay. This field is used only in master mode. The PCS to SCK Delay is the delay between the assertion of PCS and the first edge of the SCK. The delay is a multiple of the protocol clock period, and it is computed according to the following equation:</p> $t_{CSC} = (1/f_P) \times PCSSCK \times CSSCK.$ <p>The following table lists the delay scaler values.</p> <p>Table 49-7. Delay Scaler Encoding</p> <table> <tr> <th>Field Value</th><th>Delay Scaler Value</th></tr> <tr><td>0000</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>0001</td><td>4</td></tr> <tr><td>0010</td><td>8</td></tr> <tr><td>0011</td><td>16</td></tr> <tr><td>0100</td><td>32</td></tr> <tr><td>0101</td><td>64</td></tr> <tr><td>0110</td><td>128</td></tr> <tr><td>0111</td><td>256</td></tr> <tr><td>1000</td><td>512</td></tr> <tr><td>1001</td><td>1024</td></tr> <tr><td>1010</td><td>2048</td></tr> <tr><td>1011</td><td>4096</td></tr> <tr><td>1100</td><td>8192</td></tr> </table>	Field Value	Delay Scaler Value	0000	2	0001	4	0010	8	0011	16	0100	32	0101	64	0110	128	0111	256	1000	512	1001	1024	1010	2048	1011	4096	1100	8192
Field Value	Delay Scaler Value																												
0000	2																												
0001	4																												
0010	8																												
0011	16																												
0100	32																												
0101	64																												
0110	128																												
0111	256																												
1000	512																												
1001	1024																												
1010	2048																												
1011	4096																												
1100	8192																												

Table continues on the next page...

SPIx_CTARn field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description																		
	Table 49-7. Delay Scaler Encoding (continued) <table><tr><th>Field Value</th><th>Delay Scaler Value</th></tr><tr><td>1101</td><td>16384</td></tr><tr><td>1110</td><td>32768</td></tr><tr><td>1111</td><td>65536</td></tr></table> <p>Refer PCS to SCK Delay (t_{CSC}) for more details.</p>	Field Value	Delay Scaler Value	1101	16384	1110	32768	1111	65536										
Field Value	Delay Scaler Value																		
1101	16384																		
1110	32768																		
1111	65536																		
11–8 ASC	<p>After SCK Delay Scaler</p> <p>Selects the scaler value for the After SCK Delay. This field is used only in master mode. The After SCK Delay is the delay between the last edge of SCK and the negation of PCS. The delay is a multiple of the protocol clock period, and it is computed according to the following equation:</p> $t_{ASC} = (1/f_P) \times PASC \times ASC$ <p>See Delay Scaler Encoding table in CTARn[CSSCK] bit field description for scaler values. Refer After SCK Delay (t_{ASC}) for more details.</p>																		
7–4 DT	<p>Delay After Transfer Scaler</p> <p>Selects the Delay after Transfer Scaler. This field is used only in master mode. The Delay after Transfer is the time between the negation of the PCS signal at the end of a frame and the assertion of PCS at the beginning of the next frame.</p> <p>In the Continuous Serial Communications Clock operation, the DT value is fixed to one SCK clock period, The Delay after Transfer is a multiple of the protocol clock period, and it is computed according to the following equation:</p> $t_{DT} = (1/f_P) \times PDT \times DT$ <p>See Delay Scaler Encoding table in CTARn[CSSCK] bit field description for scaler values.</p>																		
BR	<p>Baud Rate Scaler</p> <p>Selects the scaler value for the baud rate. This field is used only in master mode. The prescaled protocol clock is divided by the Baud Rate Scaler to generate the frequency of the SCK. The baud rate is computed according to the following equation:</p> $SCK \text{ baud rate} = (f_P /PBR) \times [(1+DBR)/BR]$ <p>The following table lists the baud rate scaler values.</p> <p>Table 49-8. Baud Rate Scaler</p> <table><tr><th>CTARn[BR]</th><th>Baud Rate Scaler Value</th></tr><tr><td>0000</td><td>2</td></tr><tr><td>0001</td><td>4</td></tr><tr><td>0010</td><td>6</td></tr><tr><td>0011</td><td>8</td></tr><tr><td>0100</td><td>16</td></tr><tr><td>0101</td><td>32</td></tr><tr><td>0110</td><td>64</td></tr><tr><td>0111</td><td>128</td></tr></table>	CTARn[BR]	Baud Rate Scaler Value	0000	2	0001	4	0010	6	0011	8	0100	16	0101	32	0110	64	0111	128
CTARn[BR]	Baud Rate Scaler Value																		
0000	2																		
0001	4																		
0010	6																		
0011	8																		
0100	16																		
0101	32																		
0110	64																		
0111	128																		

Table continues on the next page...

SPIx_CTARn field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description	
	Table 49-8. Baud Rate Scaler (continued)	
	CTARn[BR]	Baud Rate Scaler Value
	1000	256
	1001	512
	1010	1024
	1011	2048
	1100	4096
	1101	8192
	1110	16384
	1111	32768

49.4.4 Clock and Transfer Attributes Register (In Slave Mode) (SPIx CTARn SLAVE)

When the module is configured as an SPI bus slave, the CTAR0 register is used.

Address: Base address + Ch offset + (0d × i), where i=0d to 0d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Reserved	FMSZ					CPOL	CPHA	0	Reserved	Reserved					
W																
Reset	0	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

SPIx_CTARn_SLAVE field descriptions

Field	Description
31 Reserved	Always write the reset value to this field. This field is reserved.
30–27 FMSZ	Frame Size

Table continues on the next page...

SPIx_CTARn_SLAVE field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	The number of bits transferred per frame is equal to the FMSZ field value plus 1. Note that the minimum valid value of frame size is 4.
26 CPOL	<p>Clock Polarity</p> <p>Selects the inactive state of the Serial Communications Clock (SCK).</p> <p>NOTE: In case of Continuous SCK mode, when the module goes in low power mode(disabled), inactive state of SCK is not guaranteed.</p> <p>0 The inactive state value of SCK is low. 1 The inactive state value of SCK is high.</p>
25 CPHA	<p>Clock Phase</p> <p>Selects which edge of SCK causes data to change and which edge causes data to be captured. This bit is used in both master and slave mode. For successful communication between serial devices, the devices must have identical clock phase settings. In Continuous SCK mode, the bit value is ignored and the transfers are done as if the CPHA bit is set to 1.</p> <p>0 Data is captured on the leading edge of SCK and changed on the following edge. 1 Data is changed on the leading edge of SCK and captured on the following edge.</p>
24–23 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
22 Reserved	This field is reserved.
Reserved	This field is reserved.

49.4.5 Status Register (SPIx_SR)

SR contains status and flag bits. The bits reflect the status of the module and indicate the occurrence of events that can generate interrupt or DMA requests. Software can clear flag bits in the SR by writing a 1 to them. Writing a 0 to a flag bit has no effect. This register may not be writable in Module Disable mode due to the use of power saving mechanisms.

Address: Base address + 2Ch offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	TCF	TXRXS	0	EOQF	TFUF	0	TFFF	0	0	0	0	0	RFOF	0	RFDF	0
W	w1c	w1c		w1c	w1c		w1c						w1c		w1c	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	TXCTR				TXNXTPTR				RXCTR				POPNXTPTR			
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

SPIx_SR field descriptions

Field	Description
31 TCF	Transfer Complete Flag Indicates that all bits in a frame have been shifted out. TCF remains set until it is cleared by writing a 1 to it. 0 Transfer not complete. 1 Transfer complete.
30 TXRXS	TX and RX Status Reflects the run status of the module. 0 Transmit and receive operations are disabled (The module is in Stopped state). 1 Transmit and receive operations are enabled (The module is in Running state).
29 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

Table continues on the next page...

SPIx_SR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
28 EOQF	<p>End of Queue Flag</p> <p>Indicates that the last entry in a queue has been transmitted when the module is in Master mode. The EOQF bit is set when the TX FIFO entry has the EOQ bit set in the command halfword and the end of the transfer is reached. The EOQF bit remains set until cleared by writing a 1 to it. When the EOQF bit is set, the TXRXS bit is automatically cleared.</p> <p>0 EOQ is not set in the executing command. 1 EOQ is set in the executing SPI command.</p>
27 TFUF	<p>Transmit FIFO Underflow Flag</p> <p>Indicates an underflow condition in the TX FIFO. The transmit underflow condition is detected only for SPI blocks operating in Slave mode and SPI configuration. TFUF is set when the TX FIFO of the module operating in SPI Slave mode is empty and an external SPI master initiates a transfer. The TFUF bit remains set until cleared by writing 1 to it.</p> <p>0 No TX FIFO underflow. 1 TX FIFO underflow has occurred.</p>
26 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
25 TFFF	<p>Transmit FIFO Fill Flag</p> <p>Provides a method for the module to request more entries to be added to the TX FIFO. The TFFF bit is set while the TX FIFO is not full. The TFFF bit can be cleared by writing 1 to it or by acknowledgement from the DMA controller to the TX FIFO full request.</p> <p>NOTE: The reset value of this bit is 0 when the module is disabled,(MCR[MDIS]=1).</p> <p>0 TX FIFO is full. 1 TX FIFO is not full.</p>
24 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
23 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
22 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
21 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
20 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
19 RFOF	<p>Receive FIFO Overflow Flag</p> <p>Indicates an overflow condition in the RX FIFO. The field is set when the RX FIFO and shift register are full and a transfer is initiated. The bit remains set until it is cleared by writing a 1 to it.</p> <p>0 No Rx FIFO overflow. 1 Rx FIFO overflow has occurred.</p>
18 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
17 RFDF	<p>Receive FIFO Drain Flag</p>

Table continues on the next page...

SPIx_SR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Provides a method for the module to request that entries be removed from the RX FIFO. The bit is set while the RX FIFO is not empty. The RFDF bit can be cleared by writing 1 to it or by acknowledgement from the DMA controller when the RX FIFO is empty. 0 RX FIFO is empty. 1 RX FIFO is not empty.
16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
15–12 TXCTR	TX FIFO Counter Indicates the number of valid entries in the TX FIFO. The TXCTR is incremented every time the PUSHX is written. The TXCTR is decremented every time an SPI command is executed and the SPI data is transferred to the shift register.
11–8 TXNXTPTR	Transmit Next Pointer Indicates which TX FIFO entry is transmitted during the next transfer. The TXNXTPTR field is updated every time SPI data is transferred from the TX FIFO to the shift register.
7–4 RXCTR	RX FIFO Counter Indicates the number of entries in the RX FIFO. The RXCTR is decremented every time the POPR is read. The RXCTR is incremented every time data is transferred from the shift register to the RX FIFO.
POPXTPTR	Pop Next Pointer Contains a pointer to the RX FIFO entry to be returned when the POPR is read. The POPXTPTR is updated when the POPR is read.

49.4.6 DMA/Interrupt Request Select and Enable Register (SPIx_RSER)

RSER controls DMA and interrupt requests. Do not write to the RSER while the module is in the Running state.

Address: Base address + 30h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	TCF_RE	Reserved	Reserved	EOQF_RE	TFUF_RE	Reserved	TFFF_RE	TFFF_DIRS	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	RFOF_RE	Reserved	RFDF_RE	RFDF_DIRS
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved	Reserved	0													
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

SPIx_RSER field descriptions

Field	Description
31 TCF_RE	Transmission Complete Request Enable Enables TCF flag in the SR to generate an interrupt request. 0 TCF interrupt requests are disabled. 1 TCF interrupt requests are enabled.
30 Reserved	Always write the reset value to this field. This field is reserved.
29 Reserved	Always write the reset value to this field. This field is reserved.
28 EOQF_RE	Finished Request Enable Enables the EOQF flag in the SR to generate an interrupt request. 0 EOQF interrupt requests are disabled. 1 EOQF interrupt requests are enabled.
27 TFUF_RE	Transmit FIFO Underflow Request Enable Enables the TFUF flag in the SR to generate an interrupt request.

Table continues on the next page...

SPIx_RSER field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 TFUF interrupt requests are disabled. 1 TFUF interrupt requests are enabled.
26 Reserved	Always write the reset value to this field. This field is reserved.
25 TFFF_RE	Transmit FIFO Fill Request Enable Enables the TFFF flag in the SR to generate a request. The TFFF_DIRS bit selects between generating an interrupt request or a DMA request. 0 TFFF interrupts or DMA requests are disabled. 1 TFFF interrupts or DMA requests are enabled.
24 TFFF_DIRS	Transmit FIFO Fill DMA or Interrupt Request Select Selects between generating a DMA request or an interrupt request. When SR[TFFF] and RSER[TFFF_RE] are set, this field selects between generating an interrupt request or a DMA request. 0 TFFF flag generates interrupt requests. 1 TFFF flag generates DMA requests.
23 Reserved	Always write the reset value to this field. This field is reserved.
22 Reserved	Always write the reset value to this field. This field is reserved.
21 Reserved	Always write the reset value to this field. This field is reserved.
20 Reserved	Always write the reset value to this field. This field is reserved.
19 RFOF_RE	Receive FIFO Overflow Request Enable Enables the RFOF flag in the SR to generate an interrupt request. 0 RFOF interrupt requests are disabled. 1 RFOF interrupt requests are enabled.
18 Reserved	Always write the reset value to this field. This field is reserved.
17 RFDF_RE	Receive FIFO Drain Request Enable Enables the RFDF flag in the SR to generate a request. The RFDF_DIRS bit selects between generating an interrupt request or a DMA request. 0 RFDF interrupt or DMA requests are disabled. 1 RFDF interrupt or DMA requests are enabled.
16 RFDF_DIRS	Receive FIFO Drain DMA or Interrupt Request Select

Table continues on the next page...

SPIx_RSER field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Selects between generating a DMA request or an interrupt request. When the RFDF flag bit in the SR is set, and the RFDF_RE bit in the RSER is set, the RFDF_DIRS bit selects between generating an interrupt request or a DMA request. 0 Interrupt request. 1 DMA request.
15 Reserved	Always write the reset value to this field. This field is reserved.
14 Reserved	Always write the reset value to this field. This field is reserved.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

49.4.7 PUSH TX FIFO Register In Master Mode (SPIx_PUSHR)

Specifies data to be transferred to the TX FIFO. An 8- or 16-bit write access transfers all 32 bits to the TX FIFO. In Master mode, the register transfers 16 bits of data and 16 bits of command information. A read access of PUSHR returns the topmost TX FIFO entry.

When the module is disabled, writing to this register does not update the FIFO. Therefore, any reads performed while the module is disabled return the last PUSHR write performed while the module was still enabled.

Address: Base address + 34h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R																
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

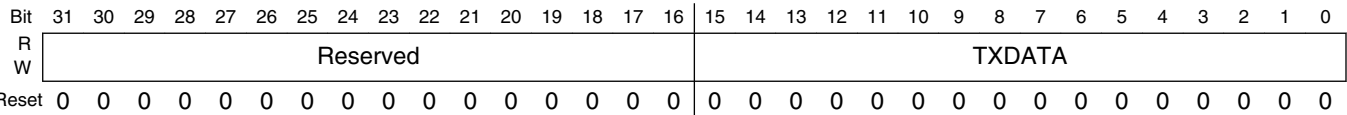
SPIx_PUSHR field descriptions

Field	Description
31 CONT	<p>Continuous Peripheral Chip Select Enable</p> <p>Selects a continuous selection format. The bit is used in SPI Master mode. The bit enables the selected PCS signals to remain asserted between transfers.</p> <p>0 Return PCSn signals to their inactive state between transfers. 1 Keep PCSn signals asserted between transfers.</p>
30–28 CTAS	<p>Clock and Transfer Attributes Select</p> <p>Selects which CTAR to use in master mode to specify the transfer attributes for the associated SPI frame. In SPI Slave mode, CTAR0 is used. See the chip specific section for details to determine how many CTARs this device has. You should not program a value in this field for a register that is not present.</p> <p>000 CTAR0 001 CTAR1 010 Reserved 011 Reserved 100 Reserved 101 Reserved 110 Reserved 111 Reserved</p>
27 EOQ	<p>End Of Queue</p> <p>Host software uses this bit to signal to the module that the current SPI transfer is the last in a queue. At the end of the transfer, the EOQF bit in the SR is set.</p> <p>0 The SPI data is not the last data to transfer. 1 The SPI data is the last data to transfer.</p>
26 CTCNT	<p>Clear Transfer Counter</p> <p>Clears the TCNT field in the TCR register. The TCNT field is cleared before the module starts transmitting the current SPI frame.</p> <p>0 Do not clear the TCR[TCNT] field. 1 Clear the TCR[TCNT] field.</p>
25–24 Reserved	<p>Always write the reset value to this field.</p> <p>This field is reserved.</p>
23–22 Reserved	<p>Always write the reset value to this field.</p> <p>This field is reserved.</p>
21–16 PCS	<p>Select which PCS signals are to be asserted for the transfer. Refer to the chip-specific SPI information for the number of PCS signals used in this chip.</p> <p>0 Negate the PCS[x] signal. 1 Assert the PCS[x] signal.</p>
TXDATA	<p>Transmit Data</p> <p>Holds SPI data to be transferred according to the associated SPI command.</p>

49.4.8 PUSH TX FIFO Register In Slave Mode (SPIx_PUSHR_SLAVE)

Specifies data to be transferred to the TX FIFO in slave mode. An 8- or 16-bit write access to PUSHR transfers the 16-bit TXDATA field to the TX FIFO.

Address: Base address + 34h offset



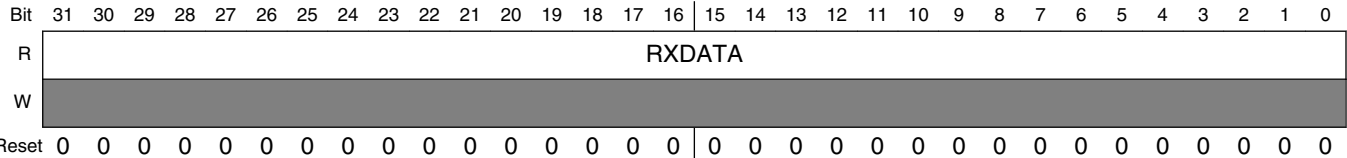
SPIx_PUSHR_SLAVE field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved.
TXDATA	Transmit Data Holds SPI data to be transferred according to the associated SPI command.

49.4.9 POP RX FIFO Register (SPIx_POPR)

POPR is used to read the RX FIFO. Eight- or sixteen-bit read accesses to the POPR have the same effect on the RX FIFO as 32-bit read accesses. A write to this register will generate a Transfer Error.

Address: Base address + 38h offset



SPIx_POPR field descriptions

Field	Description
RXDATA	Received Data Contains the SPI data from the RX FIFO entry to which the Pop Next Data Pointer points.

49.4.10 Transmit FIFO Registers (SPIx_TXFRn)

TXFRn registers provide visibility into the TX FIFO for debugging purposes. Each register is an entry in the TX FIFO. The registers are read-only and cannot be modified. Reading the TXFRx registers does not alter the state of the TX FIFO.

Address: Base address + 3Ch offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	TXCMD_TXDATA																TXDATA															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

SPIx_TXFRn field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 TXCMD_ TXDATA	Transmit Command or Transmit Data In Master mode the TXCMD field contains the command that sets the transfer attributes for the SPI data. In Slave mode, this field is reserved.
TXDATA	Transmit Data Contains the SPI data to be shifted out.

49.4.11 Receive FIFO Registers (SPIx_RXFRn)

RXFRn provide visibility into the RX FIFO for debugging purposes. Each register is an entry in the RX FIFO. The RXFR registers are read-only. Reading the RXFRx registers does not alter the state of the RX FIFO.

Address: Base address + 7Ch offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	RXDATA																															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

SPIx_RXFRn field descriptions

Field	Description
RXDATA	Receive Data Contains the received SPI data.

SPIx_RXFRn field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
-------	-------------

49.5 Functional description

The module supports full-duplex, synchronous serial communications between chips and peripheral devices. The SPI configuration transfers data serially using a shift register and a selection of programmable transfer attributes.

The module has the following configuration

- The SPI Configuration in which the module operates as a basic SPI or a queued SPI.

The DCONF field in the Module Configuration Register (MCR) determines the module Configuration. SPI configuration is selected when DCONF within SPIx_MCR is 0b00.

The CTARn registers hold clock and transfer attributes. The SPI configuration allows to select which CTAR to use on a frame by frame basis by setting a field in the SPI command.

See [Clock and Transfer Attributes Register \(In Master Mode\) \(SPI_CTARn\)](#) for information on the fields of CTAR registers.

Typical master to slave connections are shown in the following figure. When a data transfer operation is performed, data is serially shifted a predetermined number of bit positions. Because the modules are linked, data is exchanged between the master and the slave. The data that was in the master shift register is now in the shift register of the slave, and vice versa. At the end of a transfer, the Transfer Control Flag(TCF) bit in the Shift Register(SR) is set to indicate a completed frame transfer.

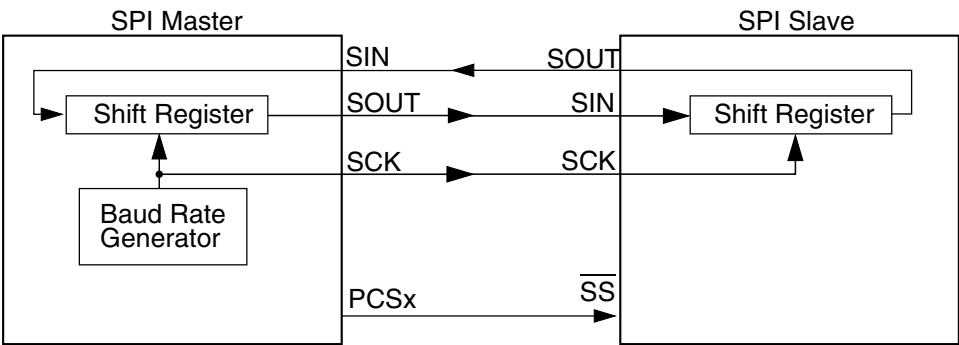


Figure 49-3. Serial protocol overview

Generally, more than one slave device can be connected to the module master. 6 Peripheral Chip Select (PCS) signals of the module masters can be used to select which of the slaves to communicate with. Refer to the chip specific section for details on the number of PCS signals used in this chip.

The SPI configuration shares transfer protocol and timing properties which are described independently of the configuration in [Transfer formats](#). The transfer rate and delay settings are described in [Module baud rate and clock delay generation](#).

49.5.1 Start and Stop of module transfers

The module has two operating states: Stopped and Running. Both the states are independent of it's configuration. The default state of the module is Stopped. In the Stopped state, no serial transfers are initiated in Master mode and no transfers are responded to in Slave mode. The Stopped state is also a safe state for writing the various configuration registers of the module without causing undetermined results. In the Running state serial transfers take place.

The TXRXS bit in the SR indicates the state of module. The bit is set if the module is in Running state.

The module starts or transitions to Running when all of the following conditions are true:

- SR[EOQF] bit is clear
- Chip is not in the Debug mode or the MCR[FRZ] bit is clear
- MCR[HALT] bit is clear

The module stops or transitions from Running to Stopped after the current frame when any one of the following conditions exist:

- SR[EOQF] bit is set
- Chip in the Debug mode and the MCR[FRZ] bit is set
- MCR[HALT] bit is set

State transitions from Running to Stopped occur on the next frame boundary if a transfer is in progress, or immediately if no transfers are in progress.

49.5.2 Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) configuration

The SPI configuration transfers data serially using a shift register and a selection of programmable transfer attributes. The module is in SPI configuration when the DCONF field in the MCR is 0b00. The SPI frames can be 32 bits long. The host CPU or a DMA controller transfers the SPI data from the external to the module RAM queues to a TX FIFO buffer. The received data is stored in entries in the RX FIFO buffer. The host CPU or the DMA controller transfers the received data from the RX FIFO to memory external to the module. The operation of FIFO buffers is described in the following sections:

- [Transmit First In First Out \(TX FIFO\) buffering mechanism](#)
- [Transmit First In First Out \(TX FIFO\) buffering mechanism](#)
- [Receive First In First Out \(RX FIFO\) buffering mechanism](#)

The interrupt and DMA request conditions are described in [Interrupts/DMA requests](#).

The SPI configuration supports two block-specific modes—Master mode and Slave mode. In Master mode the module initiates and controls the transfer according to the fields of the executing SPI Command. In Slave mode, the module responds only to transfers initiated by a bus master external to it and the SPI command field space is reserved.

49.5.2.1 Master mode

In SPI Master mode, the module initiates the serial transfers by controlling the SCK and the PCS signals. The executing SPI Command determines which CTARs will be used to set the transfer attributes and which PCS signals to assert. The command field also contains various bits that help with queue management and transfer protocol. See [PUSH TX FIFO Register In Master Mode \(SPI_PUSHR\)](#) for details on the SPI command fields. The data in the executing TX FIFO entry is loaded into the shift register and shifted out on the Serial Out (SOUT) pin. In SPI Master mode, each SPI frame to be transmitted has a command associated with it, allowing for transfer attribute control on a frame by frame basis.

49.5.2.2 Slave mode

In SPI Slave mode the module responds to transfers initiated by an SPI bus master. It does not initiate transfers. Certain transfer attributes such as clock polarity, clock phase, and frame size must be set for successful communication with an SPI master. The SPI Slave mode transfer attributes are set in the CTAR0. The data is shifted out with MSB first. Shifting out of LSB is not supported in this mode.

49.5.2.3 FIFO disable operation

The FIFO disable mechanisms allow SPI transfers without using the TX FIFO or RX FIFO. The module operates as a double-buffered simplified SPI when the FIFOs are disabled. The Transmit and Receive side of the FIFOs are disabled separately. Setting the MCR[DIS_TXF] bit disables the TX FIFO, and setting the MCR[DIS_RXF] bit disables the RX FIFO.

The FIFO disable mechanisms are transparent to the user and to host software. Transmit data and commands are written to the PUSHHR and received data is read from the POPR.

When the TX FIFO is disabled:

- SR[TFFF], SR[TFUF] and SR[TXCTR] behave as if there is a one-entry FIFO
- The contents of TXFRs, SR[TXNXTPTR] are undefined

Similarly, when the RX FIFO is disabled, the RFDF, RFOF, and RXCTR fields in the SR behave as if there is a one-entry FIFO, but the contents of the RXFR registers and POPNXTPTR are undefined.

49.5.2.4 Transmit First In First Out (TX FIFO) buffering mechanism

The TX FIFO functions as a buffer of SPI data for transmission. The TX FIFO holds 4 words, each consisting of SPI data. The number of entries in the TX FIFO is device-specific. SPI data is added to the TX FIFO by writing to the Data Field of module PUSH FIFO Register (PUSHHR). TX FIFO entries can only be removed from the TX FIFO by being shifted out or by flushing the TX FIFO.

The TX FIFO Counter field (TXCTR) in the module Status Register (SR) indicates the number of valid entries in the TX FIFO. The TXCTR is updated every time a 8- or 16-bit write takes place to PUSHHR[TXDATA] or SPI data is transferred into the shift register from the TX FIFO.

The TXNXTPTR field indicates the TX FIFO Entry that will be transmitted during the next transfer. The TXNXTPTR field is incremented every time SPI data is transferred from the TX FIFO to the shift register. The maximum value of the field is equal to the maximum implemented TXFR number and it rolls over after reaching the maximum.

49.5.2.4.1 Filling the TX FIFO

Host software or other intelligent blocks can add (push) entries to the TX FIFO by writing to the PUSHHR. When the TX FIFO is not full, the TX FIFO Fill Flag (TFFF) in the SR is set. The TFFF bit is cleared when TX FIFO is full and the DMA controller

indicates that a write to PUSHHR is complete. Writing a '1' to the TFFF bit also clears it. The TFFF can generate a DMA request or an interrupt request. See [Transmit FIFO Fill Interrupt or DMA Request](#) for details.

The module ignores attempts to push data to a full TX FIFO, and the state of the TX FIFO does not change and no error condition is indicated.

49.5.2.4.2 Draining the TX FIFO

The TX FIFO entries are removed (drained) by shifting SPI data out through the shift register. Entries are transferred from the TX FIFO to the shift register and shifted out as long as there are valid entries in the TX FIFO. Every time an entry is transferred from the TX FIFO to the shift register, the TX FIFO Counter decrements by one. At the end of a transfer, the TCF bit in the SR is set to indicate the completion of a transfer. The TX FIFO is flushed by writing a '1' to the CLR_TXF bit in MCR.

If an external bus master initiates a transfer with a module slave while the slave's TX FIFO is empty, the Transmit FIFO Underflow Flag (TFUF) in the slave's SR is set. See [Transmit FIFO Underflow Interrupt Request](#) for details.

49.5.2.5 Receive First In First Out (RX FIFO) buffering mechanism

The RX FIFO functions as a buffer for data received on the SIN pin. The RX FIFO holds 4 received SPI data frames. The number of entries in the RX FIFO is device-specific. SPI data is added to the RX FIFO at the completion of a transfer when the received data in the shift register is transferred into the RX FIFO. SPI data are removed (popped) from the RX FIFO by reading the module POP RX FIFO Register (POPR). RX FIFO entries can only be removed from the RX FIFO by reading the POPR or by flushing the RX FIFO.

The RX FIFO Counter field (RXCTR) in the module's Status Register (SR) indicates the number of valid entries in the RX FIFO. The RXCTR is updated every time the POPR is read or SPI data is copied from the shift register to the RX FIFO.

The POPNXTPTR field in the SR points to the RX FIFO entry that is returned when the POPR is read. The POPNXTPTR contains the positive offset from RXFR0 in a number of 32-bit registers. For example, POPNXTPTR equal to two means that the RXFR2 contains the received SPI data that will be returned when the POPR is read. The POPNXTPTR field is incremented every time the POPR is read. The maximum value of the field is equal to the maximum implemented RXFR number and it rolls over after reaching the maximum.

49.5.2.5.1 Filling the RX FIFO

The RX FIFO is filled with the received SPI data from the shift register. While the RX FIFO is not full, SPI frames from the shift register are transferred to the RX FIFO. Every time an SPI frame is transferred to the RX FIFO, the RX FIFO Counter is incremented by one.

If the RX FIFO and shift register are full and a transfer is initiated, the RFOF bit in the SR is set indicating an overflow condition. Depending on the state of the ROOE bit in the MCR, the data from the transfer that generated the overflow is either ignored or shifted in to the shift register. If the ROOE bit is set, the incoming data is shifted in to the shift register. If the ROOE bit is cleared, the incoming data is ignored.

49.5.2.5.2 Draining the RX FIFO

Host CPU or a DMA can remove (pop) entries from the RX FIFO by reading the module POP RX FIFO Register (POPR). A read of the POPR decrements the RX FIFO Counter by one. Attempts to pop data from an empty RX FIFO are ignored and the RX FIFO Counter remains unchanged. The data, read from the empty RX FIFO, is undetermined.

When the RX FIFO is not empty, the RX FIFO Drain Flag (RFDF) in the SR is set. The RFDF bit is cleared when the RX_FIFO is empty and the DMA controller indicates that a read from POPR is complete or by writing a 1 to it.

49.5.3 Module baud rate and clock delay generation

The SCK frequency and the delay values for serial transfer are generated by dividing the system clock frequency by a prescaler and a scaler with the option for doubling the baud rate. The following figure shows conceptually how the SCK signal is generated.

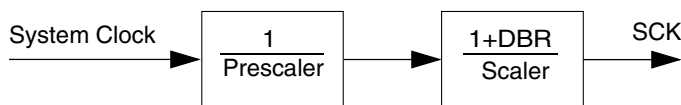


Figure 49-4. Communications clock prescalers and scalers

49.5.3.1 Baud rate generator

The baud rate is the frequency of the SCK. The protocol clock is divided by a prescaler (PBR) and scaler (BR) to produce SCK with the possibility of halving the scaler division. The DBR, PBR, and BR fields in the CTARs select the frequency of SCK by the formula in the BR field description. The following table shows an example of how to compute the baud rate.

Table 49-9. Baud rate computation example

f_p	PBR	Prescaler	BR	Scaler	DBR	Baud rate
100 MHz	0b00	2	0b0000	2	0	25 Mb/s
20 MHz	0b00	2	0b0000	2	1	10 Mb/s

NOTE

The clock frequencies mentioned in the preceding table are given as an example. Refer to the clocking chapter for the frequency used to drive this module in the device.

49.5.3.2 PCS to SCK Delay (t_{csc})

The PCS to SCK delay is the length of time from assertion of the PCS signal to the first SCK edge. See [Figure 49-6](#) for an illustration of the PCS to SCK delay. The PCSSCK and CSSCK fields in the CTAR_x registers select the PCS to SCK delay by the formula in the CSSCK field description. The following table shows an example of how to compute the PCS to SCK delay.

Table 49-10. PCS to SCK delay computation example

f_{sys}	PCSSCK	Prescaler	CSSCK	Scaler	PCS to SCK Delay
100 MHz	0b01	3	0b0100	32	0.96 μ s

NOTE

The clock frequency mentioned in the preceding table is given as an example. Refer to the clocking chapter for the frequency used to drive this module in the device.

49.5.3.3 After SCK Delay (t_{ASC})

The After SCK Delay is the length of time between the last edge of SCK and the negation of PCS. See [Figure 49-6](#) and [Figure 49-7](#) for illustrations of the After SCK delay. The PASC and ASC fields in the CTAR_x registers select the After SCK Delay by the formula in the ASC field description. The following table shows an example of how to compute the After SCK delay.

Table 49-11. After SCK Delay computation example

f_p	PASC	Prescaler	ASC	Scaler	After SCK Delay
100 MHz	0b01	3	0b0100	32	0.96 μ s

NOTE

The clock frequency mentioned in the preceding table is given as an example. Refer to the clocking chapter for the frequency used to drive this module in the device.

49.5.3.4 Delay after Transfer (t_{DT})

The Delay after Transfer is the minimum time between negation of the PCS signal for a frame and the assertion of the PCS signal for the next frame. See [Figure 49-6](#) for an illustration of the Delay after Transfer. The PDT and DT fields in the CTAR_x registers select the Delay after Transfer by the formula in the DT field description. The following table shows an example of how to compute the Delay after Transfer.

Table 49-12. Delay after Transfer computation example

f_p	PDT	Prescaler	DT	Scaler	Delay after Transfer
100 MHz	0b01	3	0b1110	32768	0.98 ms

NOTE

The clock frequency mentioned in the preceding table is given as an example. Refer to the clocking chapter for the frequency used to drive this module in the device.

When in Non-Continuous Clock mode the t_{DT} delay is configured according to the equation specified in the CTAR[DT] field description. When in Continuous Clock mode, the delay is fixed at 1 SCK period.

49.5.3.5 Peripheral Chip Select Strobe Enable ($\overline{\text{PCSS}}$)

The $\overline{\text{PCSS}}$ signal provides a delay to allow the PCS signals to settle after a transition occurs thereby avoiding glitches. When the Module is in Master mode and the PCSSE bit is set in the MCR, $\overline{\text{PCSS}}$ provides a signal for an external demultiplexer to decode peripheral chip selects other than PCS5 into glitch-free PCS signals. The following figure shows the timing of the $\overline{\text{PCSS}}$ signal relative to PCS signals.

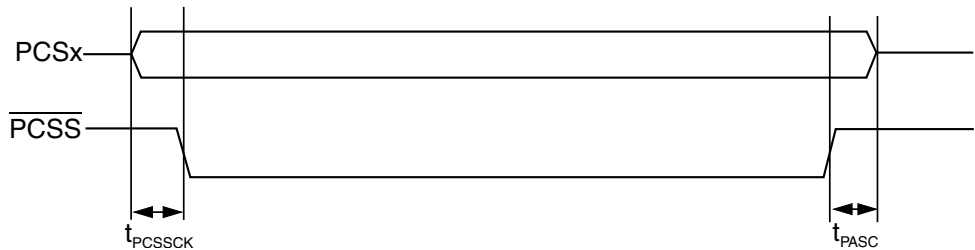


Figure 49-5. Peripheral Chip Select Strobe timing

The delay between the assertion of the PCS signals and the assertion of $\overline{\text{PCSS}}$ is selected by the PCSSCK field in the CTAR based on the following formula:

$$t_{\text{PCSSCK}} = \frac{1}{f_{\text{P}}} \times \text{PCSSCK}$$

At the end of the transfer, the delay between $\overline{\text{PCSS}}$ negation and PCS negation is selected by the PASC field in the CTAR based on the following formula:

$$t_{\text{PASC}} = \frac{1}{f_{\text{P}}} \times \text{PASC}$$

The following table shows an example of how to compute the t_{pcssck} delay.

Table 49-13. Peripheral Chip Select Strobe Assert computation example

f_{P}	PCSSCK	Prescaler	Delay before Transfer
100 MHz	0b11	7	70.0 ns

The following table shows an example of how to compute the t_{pasc} delay.

Table 49-14. Peripheral Chip Select Strobe Negate computation example

f_{P}	PASC	Prescaler	Delay after Transfer
100 MHz	0b11	7	70.0 ns

The $\overline{\text{PCSS}}$ signal is not supported when Continuous Serial Communication SCK mode is enabled.

NOTE

The clock frequency mentioned in the preceding tables is given as an example. Refer to the clocking chapter for the frequency used to drive this module in the device.

49.5.4 Transfer formats

The SPI serial communication is controlled by the Serial Communications Clock (SCK) signal and the PCS signals. The SCK signal provided by the master device synchronizes shifting and sampling of the data on the SIN and SOUT pins. The PCS signals serve as enable signals for the slave devices.

In Master mode, the CPOL and CPHA bits in the Clock and Transfer Attributes Registers (CTARn) select the polarity and phase of the serial clock, SCK.

- CPOL - Selects the idle state polarity of the SCK
- CPHA - Selects if the data on SOUT is valid before or on the first SCK edge

Even though the bus slave does not control the SCK signal, in Slave mode the values of CPOL and CPHA must be identical to the master device settings to ensure proper transmission. In SPI Slave mode, only CTAR0 is used.

The module supports four different transfer formats:

- Classic SPI with CPHA=0
- Classic SPI with CPHA=1
- Modified Transfer Format with CPHA = 0
- Modified Transfer Format with CPHA = 1

A modified transfer format is supported to allow for high-speed communication with peripherals that require longer setup times. The module can sample the incoming data later than halfway through the cycle to give the peripheral more setup time. The MTFE bit in the MCR selects between Classic SPI Format and Modified Transfer Format.

In the interface configurations, the module provides the option of keeping the PCS signals asserted between frames. See [Continuous Selection Format](#) for details.

49.5.4.1 Classic SPI Transfer Format (CPHA = 0)

The transfer format shown in following figure is used to communicate with peripheral SPI slave devices where the first data bit is available on the first clock edge. In this format, the master and slave sample their SIN pins on the odd-numbered SCK edges and change the data on their SOUT pins on the even-numbered SCK edges.

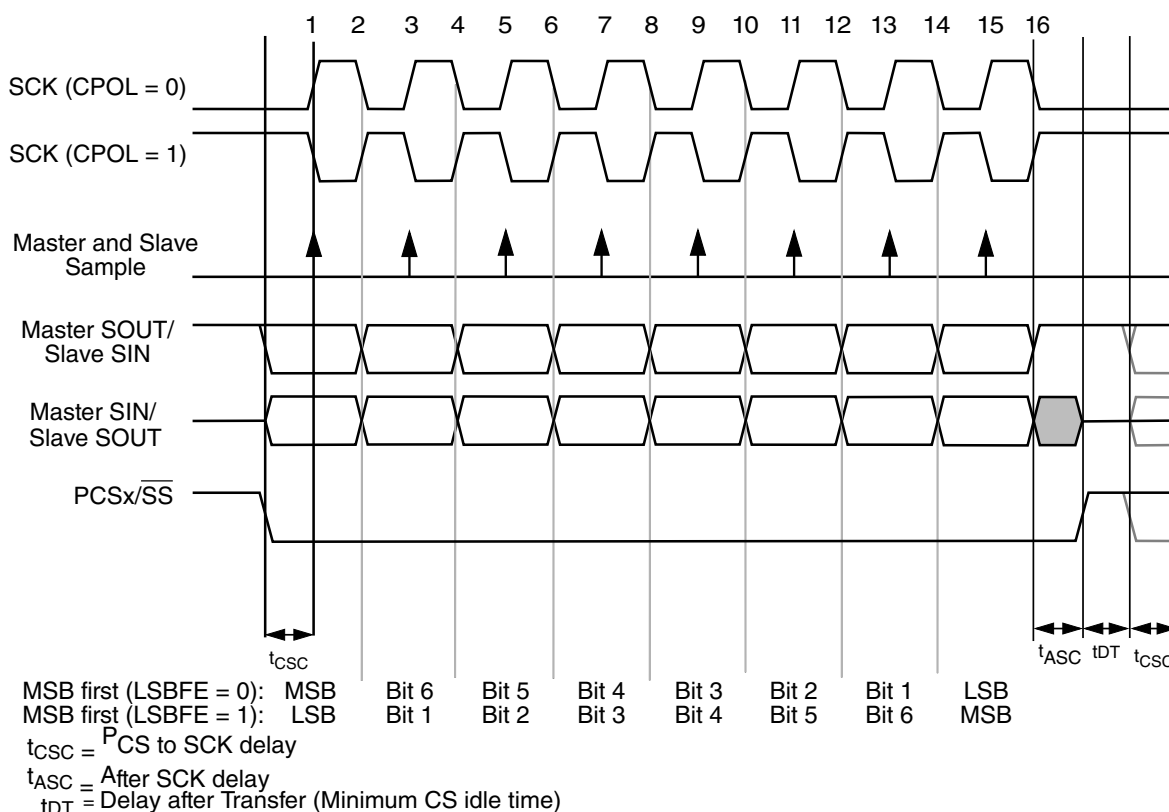


Figure 49-6. Module transfer timing diagram (MTFE=0, CPHA=0, FMSZ=8)

The master initiates the transfer by placing its first data bit on the SOUT pin and asserting the appropriate peripheral chip select signals to the slave device. The slave responds by placing its first data bit on its SOUT pin. After the t_{CSC} delay elapses, the master outputs the first edge of SCK. The master and slave devices use this edge to sample the first input data bit on their serial data input signals. At the second edge of the SCK, the master and slave devices place their second data bit on their serial data output signals. For the rest of the frame the master and the slave sample their SIN pins on the odd-numbered clock edges and changes the data on their SOUT pins on the even-numbered clock edges. After the last clock edge occurs, a delay of t_{ASC} is inserted before the master negates the PCS signals. A delay of t_{DT} is inserted before a new frame transfer can be initiated by the master.

49.5.4.2 Classic SPI Transfer Format (CPHA = 1)

This transfer format shown in the following figure is used to communicate with peripheral SPI slave devices that require the first SCK edge before the first data bit becomes available on the slave SOUT pin. In this format, the master and slave devices change the data on their SOUT pins on the odd-numbered SCK edges and sample the data on their SIN pins on the even-numbered SCK edges.

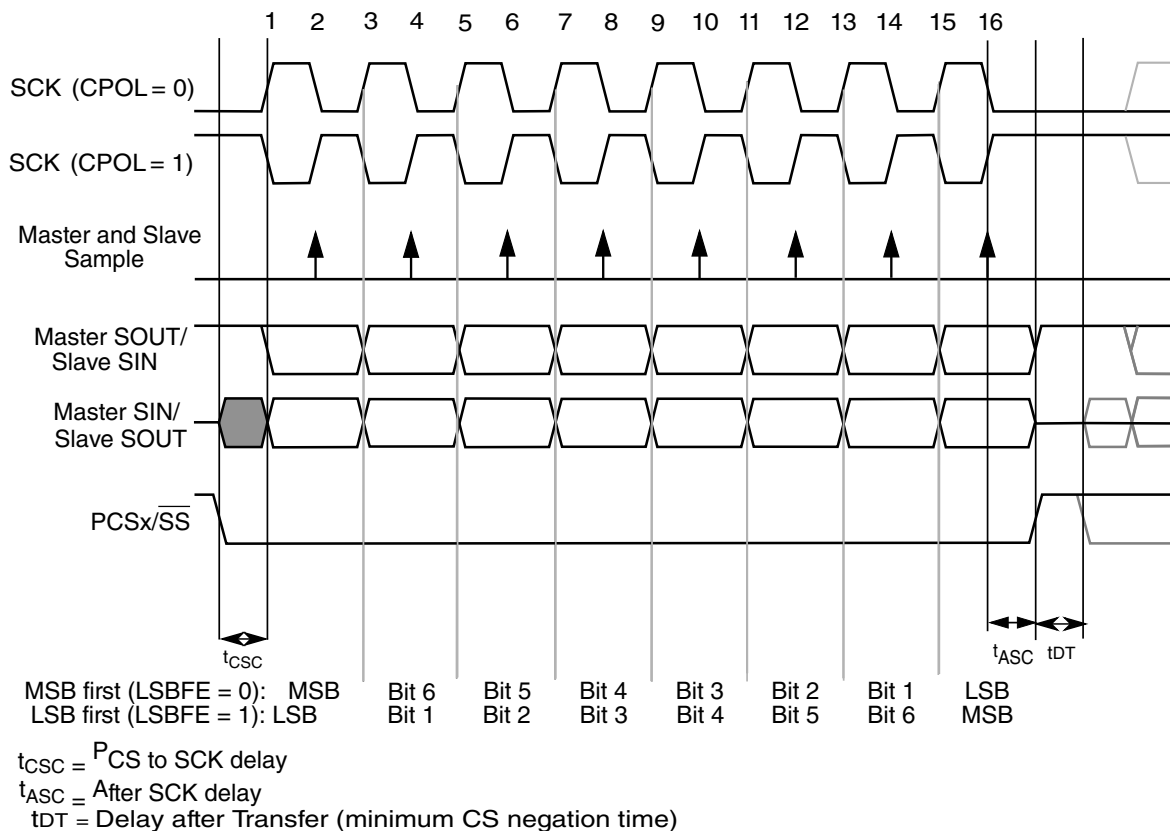


Figure 49-7. Module transfer timing diagram (MTFE=0, CPHA=1, FMSZ=8)

The master initiates the transfer by asserting the PCS signal to the slave. After the t_{CSC} delay has elapsed, the master generates the first SCK edge and at the same time places valid data on the master SOUT pin. The slave responds to the first SCK edge by placing its first data bit on its slave SOUT pin.

At the second edge of the SCK the master and slave sample their SIN pins. For the rest of the frame the master and the slave change the data on their SOUT pins on the odd-numbered clock edges and sample their SIN pins on the even-numbered clock edges. After the last clock edge occurs, a delay of t_{ASC} is inserted before the master negates the PCS signal. A delay of t_{DT} is inserted before a new frame transfer can be initiated by the master.

49.5.4.3 Modified SPI Transfer Format (MTFE = 1, CPHA = 0)

In this Modified Transfer Format both the master and the slave sample later in the SCK period than in Classic SPI mode to allow the logic to tolerate more delays in device pads and board traces. These delays become a more significant fraction of the SCK period as the SCK period decreases with increasing baud rates.

The master and the slave place data on the SOUT pins at the assertion of the PCS signal. After the PCS to SCK delay has elapsed the first SCK edge is generated. The slave samples the master SOUT signal on every odd numbered SCK edge. The DSPI in the slave mode when the MTFE bit is set also places new data on the slave SOUT on every odd numbered clock edge. Regular external slave, configured with CPHA=0 format drives its SOUT output at every even numbered SCK clock edge.

The DSPI master places its second data bit on the SOUT line one protocol clock after odd numbered SCK edge if the protocol clock frequency to SCK frequency ratio is higher than three. If this ratio is below four the master changes SOUT at odd numbered SCK edge. The point where the master samples the SIN is selected by the DSPI_MCR[SMPL_PT] field. The master sample point can be delayed by one or two protocol clock cycles. The SMPL_PT field should be set to 0 if the protocol to SCK frequency ratio is less than 4. However if this ratio is less than 4, the actual sample point is delayed by one protocol clock cycle automatically by the design.

The following timing diagrams illustrate the DSPI operation with MTFE=1. Timing delays shown are:

- T_{csc} - PCS to SCK assertion delay
- T_{acs} - After SCK PCS negation delay
- $T_{su_{ms}}$ - master SIN setup time
- $T_{hd_{ms}}$ - master SIN hold time
- $T_{vd_{sl}}$ - slave data output valid time, time between slave data output SCK driving edge and data becomes valid.
- $T_{su_{sl}}$ - data setup time on slave data input
- $T_{hd_{sl}}$ - data hold time on slave data input
- T_{sys} - protocol clock period.

The following figure shows the modified transfer format for CPHA = 0 and $F_{sys}/F_{sck} = 4$. Only the condition where CPOL = 0 is illustrated. Solid triangles show the data sampling clock edges. The two possible slave behavior are shown.

- Signal, marked "SOUT of Ext Slave", presents regular SPI slave serial output.
- Signal, marked "SOUT of DSPI Slave", presents DSPI in the slave mode with MTFE bit set.

Other MTFE = 1 diagrams show DSPI SIN input as being driven by a regular external SPI slave, configured according DSPI master CPHA programming.

Note

In the following diagrams, f_{sys} represents the protocol clock frequency from which the Baud frequency f_{sck} is derived.

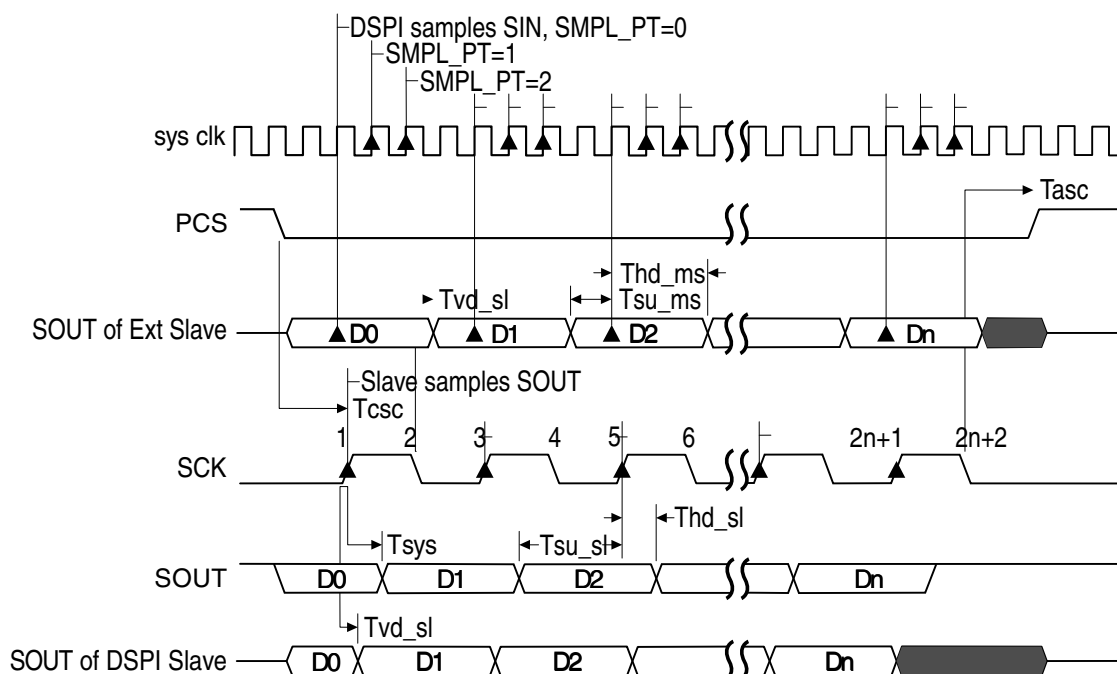


Figure 49-8. DSPI Modified Transfer Format (MTFE=1, CPHA=0, $f_{\text{sck}} = f_{\text{sys}}/4$)

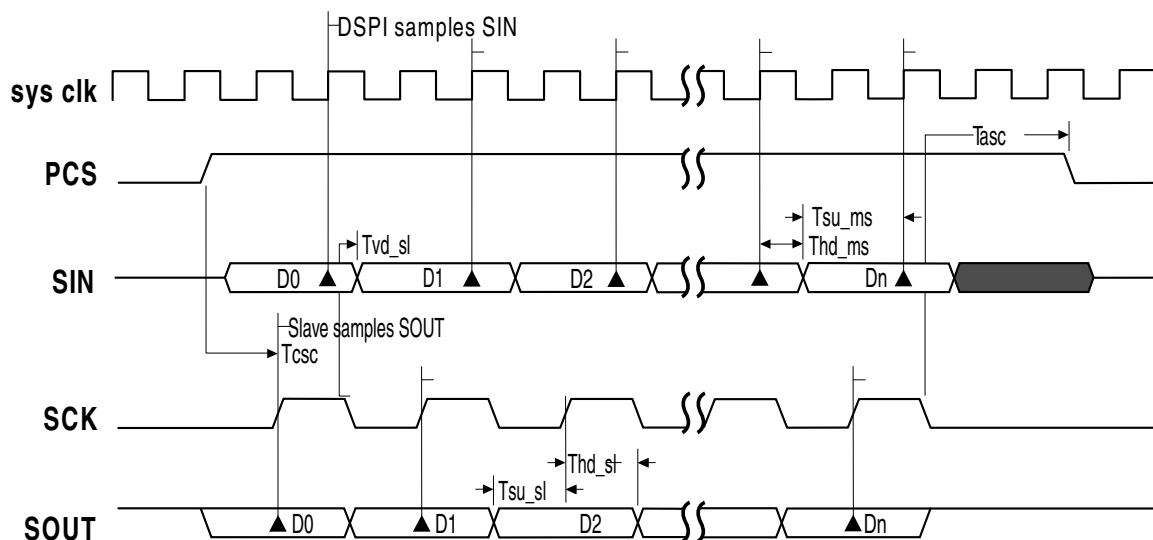


Figure 49-9. DSPI Modified Transfer Format (MTFE=1, CPHA=0, $f_{sck} = f_{sys}/2$)

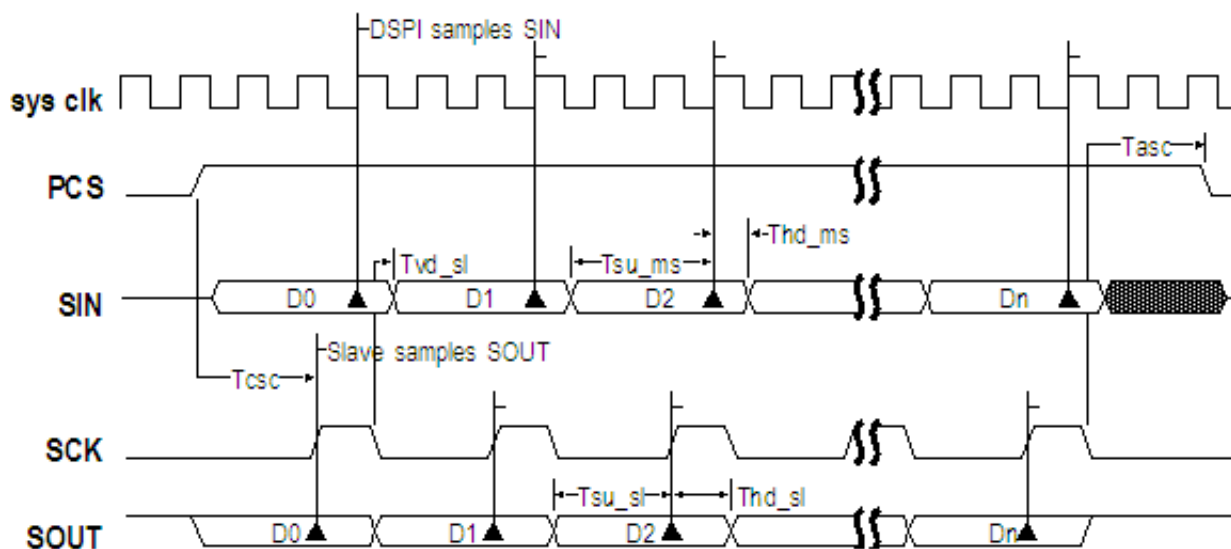


Figure 49-10. DSPI Modified Transfer Format (MTFE=1, CPHA=0, $f_{sck} = f_{sys}/3$)

49.5.4.4 Modified SPI Transfer Format (MTFE = 1, CPHA = 1)

The following figures show the Modified Transfer Format for CPHA = 1. Only the condition, where CPOL = 0 is shown. At the start of a transfer the DSPI asserts the PCS signal to the slave device. After the PCS to SCK delay has elapsed the master and the slave put data on their SOUT pins at the first edge of SCK. The slave samples the master SOUT signal on the even numbered edges of SCK. The master samples the slave SOUT

signal on the odd numbered SCK edges starting with the third SCK edge. The slave samples the last bit on the last edge of the SCK. The master samples the last slave SOUT bit one half SCK cycle after the last edge of SCK. No clock edge will be visible on the master SCK pin during the sampling of the last bit. **The SCK to PCS delay and the After SCK delay must be greater or equal to half of the SCK period.**

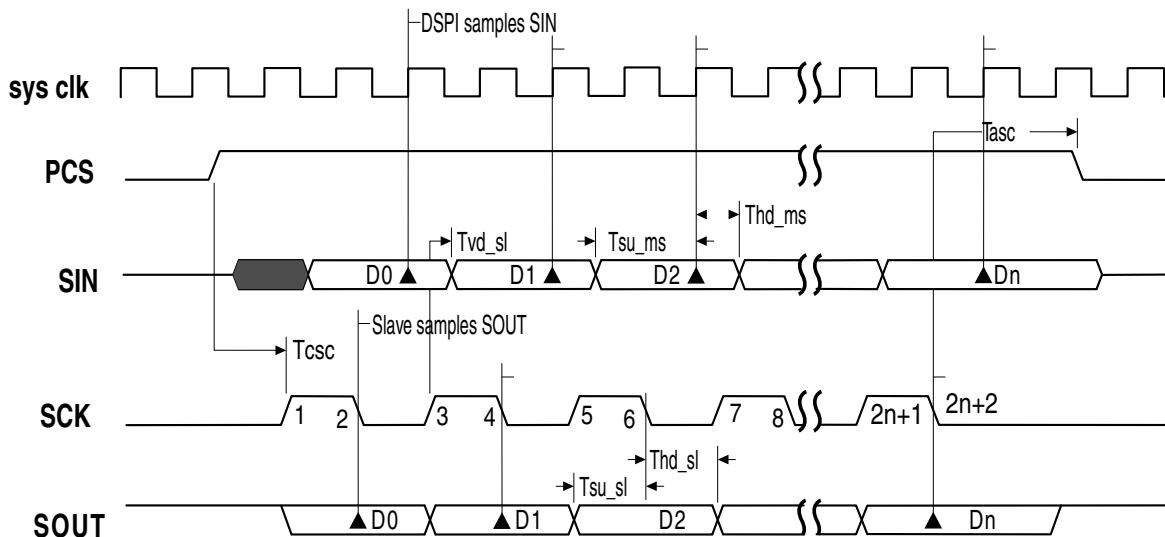


Figure 49-11. DSPI Modified Transfer Format (MTFE=1, CPHA=1, $f_{sck} = f_{sys}/2$)

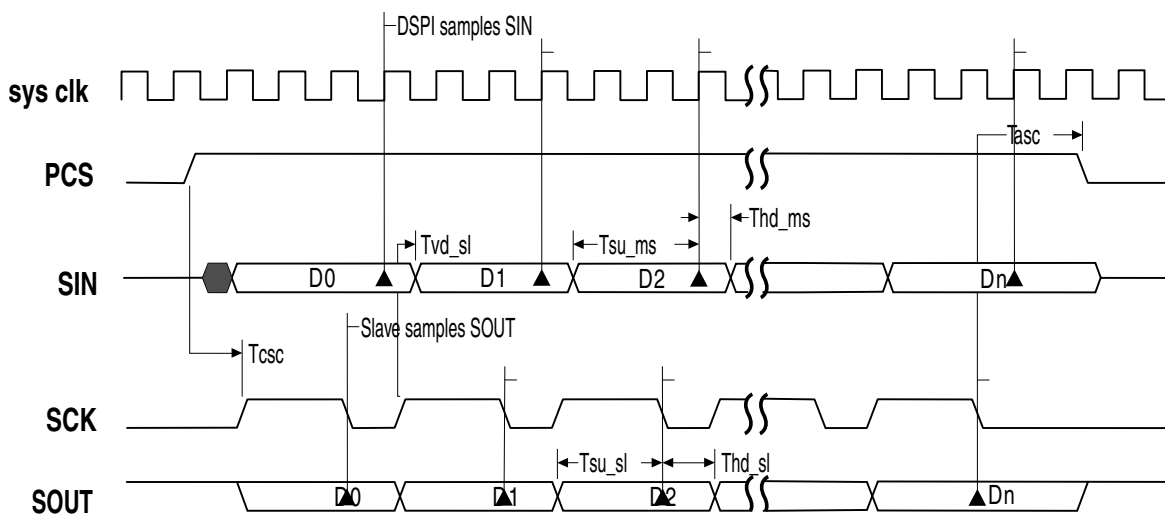


Figure 49-12. DSPI Modified Transfer Format (MTFE=1, CPHA=1, $f_{sck} = f_{sys}/3$)

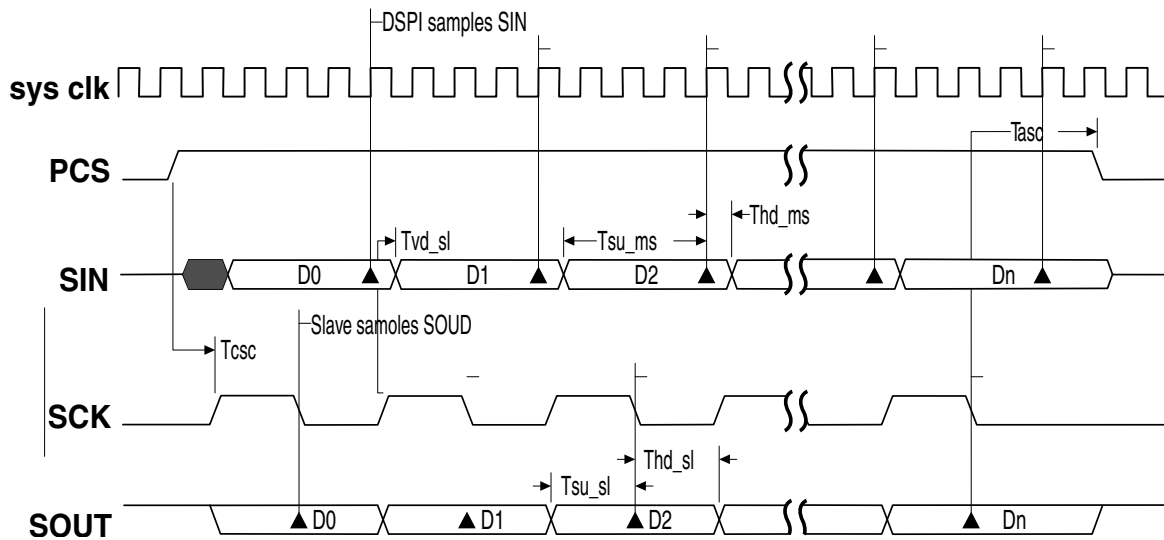


Figure 49-13. DSPI Modified Transfer Format (MTFE=1, CPHA=1, $f_{sck} = f_{sys}/4$)

49.5.4.5 Continuous Selection Format

Some peripherals must be deselected between every transfer. Other peripherals must remain selected between several sequential serial transfers. The Continuous Selection Format provides the flexibility to handle the following case. The Continuous Selection Format is enabled for the SPI configuration by setting the CONT bit in the SPI command.

When the CONT bit = 0, the module drives the asserted Chip Select signals to their idle states in between frames. The idle states of the Chip Select signals are selected by the PCSISn bits in the MCR. The following timing diagram is for two four-bit transfers with CPHA = 1 and CONT = 0.

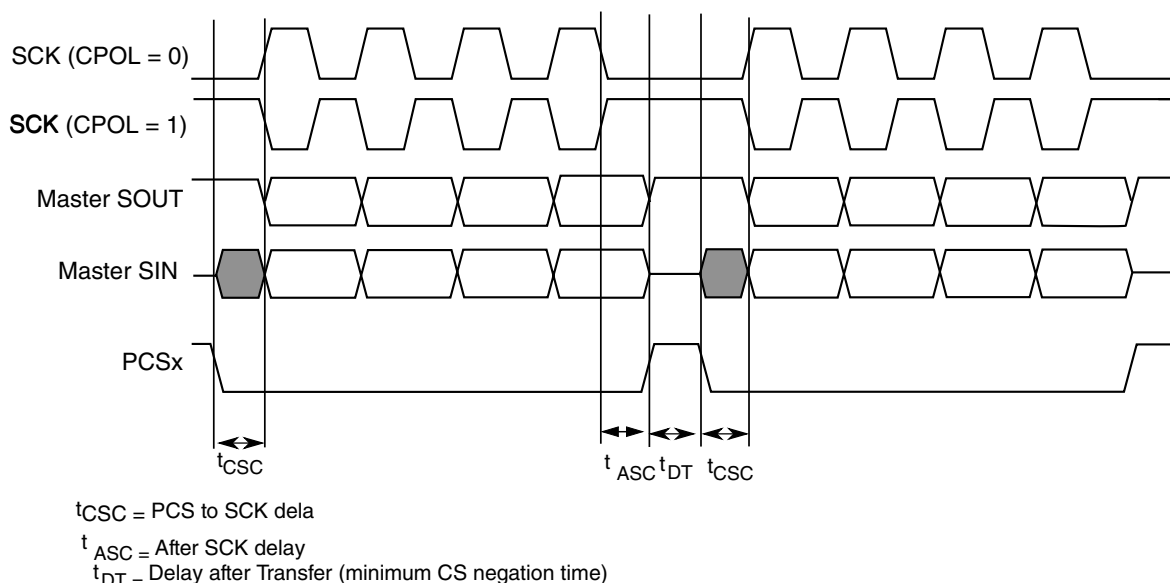


Figure 49-14. Example of non-continuous format (CPHA=1, CONT=0)

When the CONT bit = 1, the PCS signal remains asserted for the duration of the two transfers. The Delay between Transfers (t_{DT}) is not inserted between the transfers. The following figure shows the timing diagram for two four-bit transfers with CPHA = 1 and CONT = 1.

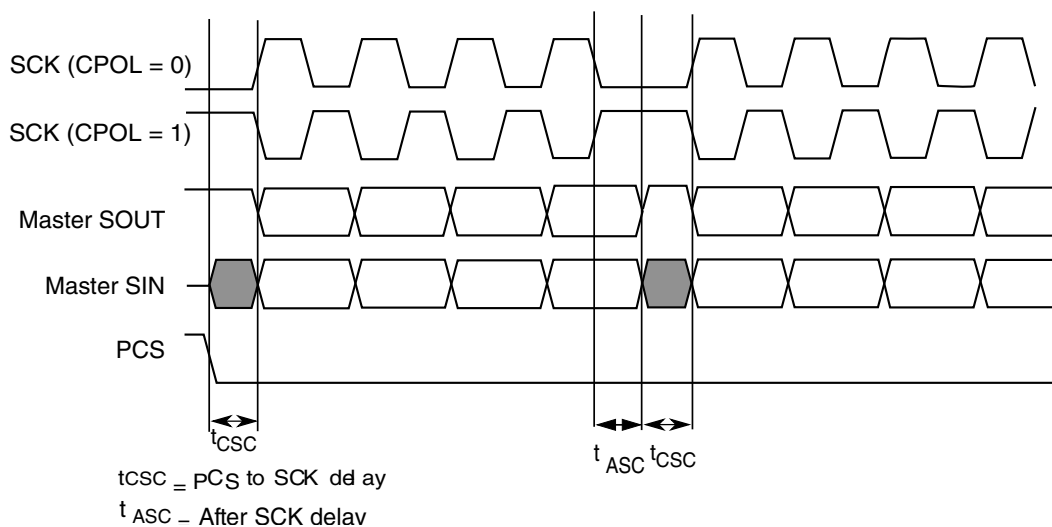


Figure 49-15. Example of continuous transfer (CPHA=1, CONT=1)

When using the module with continuous selection follow these rules:

- All transmit commands must have the same PCSn bits programming.
- The CTARs, selected by transmit commands, must be programmed with the same transfer attributes. Only FMSZ field can be programmed differently in these CTARs.

- When transmitting multiple frames in this mode, the user software must ensure that the last frame has the PUSHHR[CONT] bit deasserted in Master mode and the user software must provide sufficient frames in the TX_FIFO to be sent out in Slave mode and the master deasserts the PCSn at end of transmission of the last frame.
- PUSHHR[CONT] must be deasserted before asserting MCR[HALT] in master mode. This will make sure that the PCSn signals are deasserted. Asserting MCR[HALT] during continuous transfer will cause the PCSn signals to remain asserted and hence Slave Device cannot transition from Running to Stopped state.

NOTE

User must fill the TX FIFO with the number of entries that will be concatenated together under one PCS assertion for both master and slave before the TX FIFO becomes empty.

When operating in Slave mode, ensure that when the last entry in the TX FIFO is completely transmitted, that is, the corresponding TCF flag is asserted and TXFIFO is empty, the slave is deselected for any further serial communication; otherwise, an underflow error occurs.

49.5.5 Continuous Serial Communications Clock

The module provides the option of generating a Continuous SCK signal for slave peripherals that require a continuous clock.

Continuous SCK is enabled by setting the CONT_SCKE bit in the MCR. Enabling this bit generates the Continuous SCK only if MCR[HALT] bit is low. Continuous SCK is valid in all configurations.

Continuous SCK is only supported for CPHA=1. Clearing CPHA is ignored if the CONT_SCKE bit is set. Continuous SCK is supported for Modified Transfer Format.

Clock and transfer attributes for the Continuous SCK mode are set according to the following rules:

- When the module is in SPI configuration, CTAR0 is used initially. At the start of each SPI frame transfer, the CTAR specified by the CTAS for the frame is used.
- In all configurations, the currently selected CTAR remains in use until the start of a frame with a different CTAR specified, or the Continuous SCK mode is terminated.

It is recommended to keep the baud rate the same while using the Continuous SCK. Switching clock polarity between frames while using Continuous SCK can cause errors in the transfer. Continuous SCK operation is not guaranteed if the module is put into the External Stop mode or Module Disable mode.

Enabling Continuous SCK disables the PCS to SCK delay and the Delay after Transfer (t_{DT}) is fixed to one SCK cycle. The following figure is the timing diagram for Continuous SCK format with Continuous Selection disabled.

NOTE

In Continuous SCK mode, for the SPI transfer CTAR0 should always be used, and the TX FIFO must be cleared using the MCR[CLR_TXF] field before initiating transfer.

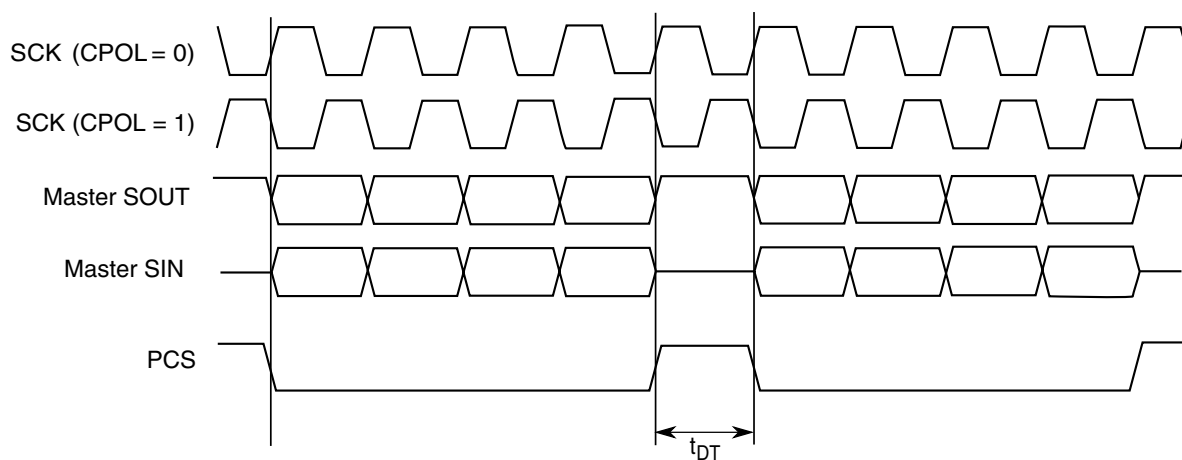


Figure 49-16. Continuous SCK Timing Diagram (CONT=0)

If the CONT bit in the TX FIFO entry is set, PCS remains asserted between the transfers. Under certain conditions, SCK can continue with PCS asserted, but with no data being shifted out of SOUT, that is, SOUT pulled high. This can cause the slave to receive incorrect data. Those conditions include:

- Continuous SCK with CONT bit set, but no data in the TX FIFO.
- Continuous SCK with CONT bit set and entering Stopped state (refer to [Start and Stop of module transfers](#)).
- Continuous SCK with CONT bit set and entering Stop mode or Module Disable mode.

The following figure shows timing diagram for Continuous SCK format with Continuous Selection enabled.

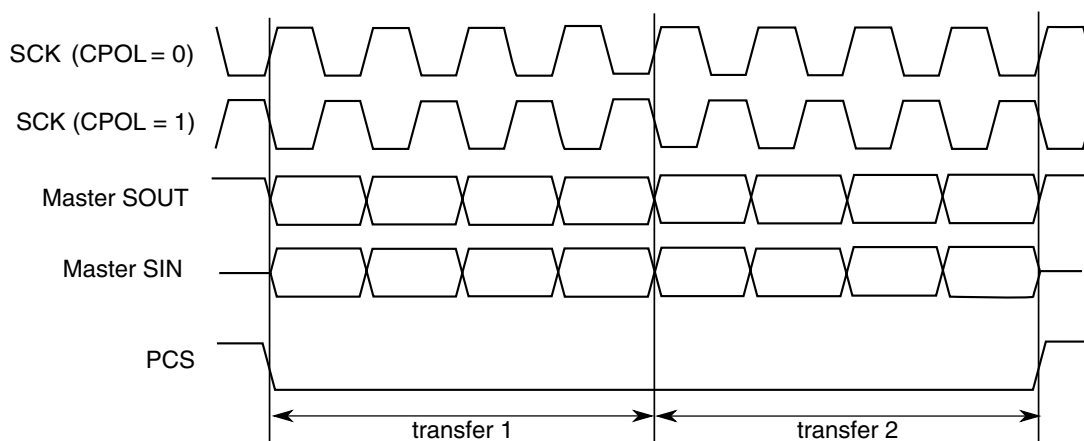


Figure 49-17. Continuous SCK timing diagram (CONT=1)

49.5.6 Slave Mode Operation Constraints

Slave mode logic shift register is buffered. This allows data streaming operation, when the module is permanently selected and data is shifted in with a constant rate.

The transmit data is transferred at second SCK clock edge of the each frame to the shift register if the \overline{SS} signal is asserted and any time when transmit data is ready and \overline{SS} signal is negated.

Received data is transferred to the receive buffer at last SCK edge of each frame, defined by frame size programmed to the CTAR0/1 register. Then the data from the buffer is transferred to the RXFIFO or DDR register.

If the \overline{SS} negates before that last SCK edge, the data from shift register is lost.

49.5.7 Interrupts/DMA requests

The module has several conditions that can generate only interrupt requests and two conditions that can generate interrupt or DMA requests. The following table lists these conditions.

Table 49-15. Interrupt and DMA request conditions

Condition	Flag	Interrupt	DMA
End of Queue (EOQ)	EOQF	Yes	-
TX FIFO Fill	TFFF	Yes	Yes
Transfer Complete	TCF	Yes	-
TX FIFO Underflow	TFUF	Yes	-

Table continues on the next page...

Table 49-15. Interrupt and DMA request conditions (continued)

Condition	Flag	Interrupt	DMA
RX FIFO Drain	RFDF	Yes	Yes
RX FIFO Overflow	RFOF	Yes	-

Each condition has a flag bit in the module Status Register (SR) and a Request Enable bit in the DMA/Interrupt Request Select and Enable Register (RSER). Certain flags (as shown in above table) generate interrupt requests or DMA requests depending on configuration of RSER register.

49.5.7.1 End Of Queue interrupt request

The End Of Queue (EOQ) interrupt request indicates that the end of a transmit queue is reached. The module generates the interrupt request when EOQ interrupt requests are enabled (RSER[EOQF_RE]) and the EOQ bit in the executing SPI command is 1.

The module generates the interrupt request when the last bit of the SPI frame with EOQ bit set is transmitted.

49.5.7.2 Transmit FIFO Fill Interrupt or DMA Request

The Transmit FIFO Fill Request indicates that the TX FIFO is not full. The Transmit FIFO Fill Request is generated when the number of entries in the TX FIFO is less than the maximum number of possible entries, and the TFFF_RE bit in the RSER is set. The TFFF_DIRS bit in the RSER selects whether a DMA request or an interrupt request is generated.

NOTE

TFFF flag clears automatically when DMA is used to fill TX FIFO.

To clear TFFF when not using DMA, follow these steps for every PUSH performed using CPU to fill TX FIFO:

1. Wait until TFFF = 1.
2. Write data to PUSHR using CPU.
3. Clear TFFF by writing a 1 to its location. If TX FIFO is not full, this flag will not clear.

49.5.7.3 Transfer Complete Interrupt Request

The Transfer Complete Request indicates the end of the transfer of a serial frame. The Transfer Complete Request is generated at the end of each frame transfer when the TCF_RE bit is set in the RSER.

49.5.7.4 Transmit FIFO Underflow Interrupt Request

The Transmit FIFO Underflow Request indicates that an underflow condition in the TX FIFO has occurred. The transmit underflow condition is detected only for the module operating in Slave mode and SPI configuration. The TFUF bit is set when the TX FIFO of the module is empty, and a transfer is initiated from an external SPI master. If the TFUF bit is set while the TFUF_RE bit in the RSER is set, an interrupt request is generated.

49.5.7.5 Receive FIFO Drain Interrupt or DMA Request

The Receive FIFO Drain Request indicates that the RX FIFO is not empty. The Receive FIFO Drain Request is generated when the number of entries in the RX FIFO is not zero, and the RFDF_RE bit in the RSER is set. The RFDF_DIRS bit in the RSER selects whether a DMA request or an interrupt request is generated.

49.5.7.6 Receive FIFO Overflow Interrupt Request

The Receive FIFO Overflow Request indicates that an overflow condition in the RX FIFO has occurred. A Receive FIFO Overflow request is generated when RX FIFO and shift register are full and a transfer is initiated. The RFOF_RE bit in the RSER must be set for the interrupt request to be generated.

Depending on the state of the ROOE bit in the MCR, the data from the transfer that generated the overflow is either ignored or shifted in to the shift register. If the ROOE bit is set, the incoming data is shifted in to the shift register. If the ROOE bit is cleared, the incoming data is ignored.

49.5.8 Power saving features

The module supports following power-saving strategies:

- External Stop mode
- Module Disable mode – Clock gating of non-memory mapped logic

49.5.8.1 Stop mode (External Stop mode)

This module supports the Stop mode protocol. When a request is made to enter External Stop mode, the module acknowledges the request. If a serial transfer is in progress, then this module waits until it reaches the frame boundary before it is ready to have its clocks shut off. While the clocks are shut off, this module's memory-mapped logic is not accessible. This also puts the module in STOPPED state. The SR[TXRXS] bit is cleared to indicate STOPPED state. The states of the interrupt and DMA request signals cannot be changed while in External Stop mode.

49.5.8.2 Module Disable mode

Module Disable mode is a block-specific mode that the module can enter to save power. Host CPU can initiate the Module Disable mode by setting the MDIS bit in the MCR. The Module Disable mode can also be initiated by hardware.

When the MDIS bit is set, the module negates the Clock Enable signal at the next frame boundary. Once the Clock Enable signal is negated, it is said to have entered Module Disable Mode. This also puts the module in STOPPED state. The SR[TXRXS] bit is cleared to indicate STOPPED state. If implemented, the Clock Enable signal can stop the clock to the non-memory mapped logic. When Clock Enable is negated, the module is in a dormant state, but the memory mapped registers are still accessible. Certain read or write operations have a different effect when the module is in the Module Disable mode. Reading the RX FIFO Pop Register does not change the state of the RX FIFO. Similarly, writing to the PUSHR Register does not change the state of the TX FIFO. Clearing either of the FIFOs has no effect in the Module Disable mode. Changes to the DIS_TXF and DIS_RXF fields of the MCR have no effect in the Module Disable mode. In the Module Disable mode, all status bits and register flags in the module return the correct values when read, but writing to them has no effect. Writing to the TCR during Module Disable mode has no effect. Interrupt and DMA request signals cannot be cleared while in the Module Disable mode.

49.6 Initialization/application information

This section describes how to initialize the module.

49.6.1 How to manage queues

The queues are not part of the module, but it includes features in support of queue management. Queues are primarily supported in SPI configuration.

1. When module executes last command word from a queue, the EOQ bit in the command word is set to indicate it that this is the last entry in the queue.
2. At the end of the transfer, corresponding to the command word with EOQ set is sampled, the EOQ flag (EOQF) in the SR is set.
3. The setting of the EOQF flag disables serial transmission and reception of data, putting the module in the Stopped state. The TXRXS bit is cleared to indicate the Stopped state.
4. The DMA can continue to fill TX FIFO until it is full or step 5 occurs.
5. Disable DMA transfers by disabling the DMA enable request for the DMA channel assigned to TX FIFO and RX FIFO. This is done by clearing the corresponding DMA enable request bits in the DMA Controller.
6. Ensure all received data in RX FIFO has been transferred to memory receive queue by reading the RXCNT in SR or by checking RFDF in the SR after each read operation of the POPR.
7. Modify DMA descriptor of TX and RX channels for new queues
8. Flush TX FIFO by writing a 1 to the CLR_TXF bit in the MCR. Flush RX FIFO by writing a '1' to the CLR_RXF bit in the MCR.
9. Clear transfer count either by setting CTCNT bit in the command word of the first entry in the new queue or via CPU writing directly to SPI_TCNT field in the TCR.
10. Enable DMA channel by enabling the DMA enable request for the DMA channel assigned to the module TX FIFO, and RX FIFO by setting the corresponding DMA set enable request bit.
11. Enable serial transmission and serial reception of data by clearing the EOQF bit.

49.6.2 Switching Master and Slave mode

When changing modes in the module, follow the steps below to guarantee proper operation.

1. Halt it by setting MCR[HALT].
2. Clear the transmit and receive FIFOs by writing a 1 to the CLR_TXF and CLR_RXF bits in MCR.
3. Set the appropriate mode in MCR[MSTR] and enable it by clearing MCR[HALT].

49.6.3 Initializing Module in Master/Slave Modes

Once the appropriate mode in MCR[MSTR] is configured, the module is enabled by clearing MCR[HALT]. It should be ensured that module Slave is enabled before enabling it's Master. This ensures the Slave is ready to be communicated with, before Master initializes communication.

49.6.4 Baud rate settings

The following table shows the baud rate that is generated based on the combination of the baud rate prescaler PBR and the baud rate scaler BR in the CTARs. The values calculated assume a 100 MHz protocol frequency and the double baud rate DBR bit is cleared.

NOTE

The clock frequency mentioned above is given as an example in this chapter. See the clocking chapter for the frequency used to drive this module in the device.

Table 49-16. Baud rate values (bps)

		Baud rate divider prescaler values			
		2	3	5	7
Baud Rate Scaler Values	2	25.0M	16.7M	10.0M	7.14M
	4	12.5M	8.33M	5.00M	3.57M
	6	8.33M	5.56M	3.33M	2.38M
	8	6.25M	4.17M	2.50M	1.79M
	16	3.12M	2.08M	1.25M	893k
	32	1.56M	1.04M	625k	446k
	64	781k	521k	312k	223k
	128	391k	260k	156k	112k
	256	195k	130k	78.1k	55.8k
	512	97.7k	65.1k	39.1k	27.9k
	1024	48.8k	32.6k	19.5k	14.0k
	2048	24.4k	16.3k	9.77k	6.98k

Table continues on the next page...

Table 49-16. Baud rate values (bps) (continued)

		Baud rate divider prescaler values			
		2	3	5	7
	4096	12.2k	8.14k	4.88k	3.49k
	8192	6.10k	4.07k	2.44k	1.74k
	16384	3.05k	2.04k	1.22k	872
	32768	1.53k	1.02k	610	436

49.6.5 Delay settings

The following table shows the values for the Delay after Transfer (t_{DT}) and CS to SCK Delay (T_{CSC}) that can be generated based on the prescaler values and the scaler values set in the CTARs. The values calculated assume a 100 MHz protocol frequency.

NOTE

The clock frequency mentioned above is given as an example in this chapter. See the clocking chapter for the frequency used to drive this module in the device.

Table 49-17. Delay values

		Delay prescaler values			
		1	3	5	7
Delay scaler values	2	20.0 ns	60.0 ns	100.0 ns	140.0 ns
	4	40.0 ns	120.0 ns	200.0 ns	280.0 ns
	8	80.0 ns	240.0 ns	400.0 ns	560.0 ns
	16	160.0 ns	480.0 ns	800.0 ns	1.1 μ s
	32	320.0 ns	960.0 ns	1.6 μ s	2.2 μ s
	64	640.0 ns	1.9 μ s	3.2 μ s	4.5 μ s
	128	1.3 μ s	3.8 μ s	6.4 μ s	9.0 μ s
	256	2.6 μ s	7.7 μ s	12.8 μ s	17.9 μ s
	512	5.1 μ s	15.4 μ s	25.6 μ s	35.8 μ s
	1024	10.2 μ s	30.7 μ s	51.2 μ s	71.7 μ s
	2048	20.5 μ s	61.4 μ s	102.4 μ s	143.4 μ s
	4096	41.0 μ s	122.9 μ s	204.8 μ s	286.7 μ s
	8192	81.9 μ s	245.8 μ s	409.6 μ s	573.4 μ s
	16384	163.8 μ s	491.5 μ s	819.2 μ s	1.1 ms
	32768	327.7 μ s	983.0 μ s	1.6 ms	2.3 ms
	65536	655.4 μ s	2.0 ms	3.3 ms	4.6 ms

49.6.6 Calculation of FIFO pointer addresses

Complete visibility of the FIFO contents is available through the FIFO registers, and valid entries can be identified through a memory-mapped pointer and counter for each FIFO. The pointer to the first-in entry in each FIFO is memory mapped. For the TX FIFO the first-in pointer is the Transmit Next Pointer (TXNXTPTR). For the RX FIFO the first-in pointer is the Pop Next Pointer (POPNXTPTR). The following figure illustrates the concept of first-in and last-in FIFO entries along with the FIFO Counter. The TX FIFO is chosen for the illustration, but the concepts carry over. See [Transmit First In First Out \(TX FIFO\) buffering mechanism](#) and [Receive First In First Out \(RX FIFO\) buffering mechanism](#) for details on the FIFO operation.

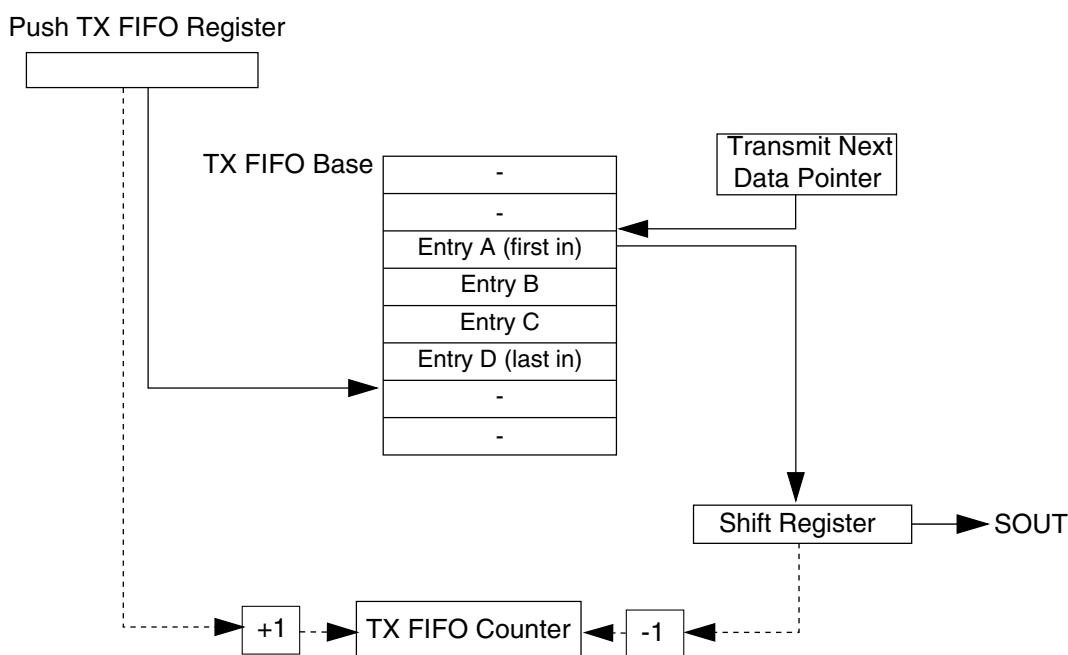


Figure 49-18. TX FIFO pointers and counter

49.6.6.1 Address Calculation for the First-in Entry and Last-in Entry in the TX FIFO

The memory address of the first-in entry in the TX FIFO is computed by the following equation:

$$\text{First-in EntryAddress} = \text{TXFIFOBase} + (4 \times \text{TXNXTPTR})$$

The memory address of the last-in entry in the TX FIFO is computed by the following equation:

$$\text{Last-inEntryaddress} = \text{TXFIFOBase} + 4 \times (\text{TXCTR} + \text{TXNXTPTR} - 1) \bmod (\text{TXFIFOdepth})$$

TX FIFO Base - Base address of TX FIFO

TXCTR - TX FIFO Counter

TXNXTPTR - Transmit Next Pointer

TX FIFO Depth - Transmit FIFO depth, implementation specific

49.6.6.2 Address Calculation for the First-in Entry and Last-in Entry in the RX FIFO

The memory address of the first-in entry in the RX FIFO is computed by the following equation:

$$\text{First-in EntryAddress} = \text{RX FIFOBBase} + (4 \times \text{POPNXTPTR})$$

The memory address of the last-in entry in the RX FIFO is computed by the following equation:

$$\text{Last-inEntryaddress} = \text{RX FIFO Base} + 4 \times (\text{RXCTR} + \text{POPNXTPTR} - 1) \bmod (\text{RXFIFOdepth})$$

RX FIFO Base - Base address of RX FIFO

RXCTR - RX FIFO counter

POPNXTPTR - Pop Next Pointer

RX FIFO Depth - Receive FIFO depth, implementation specific

Chapter 50

10/100-Mbps Ethernet MAC (ENET)

50.1 Chip-specific ENET information

50.1.1 Ethernet Clocking Options

The Ethernet module uses the following clocks:

- The device's system clock is connected to the module clock, as named in the [Ethernet chapter](#). The minimum system clock frequency for 100 Mbps operation is
- An externally-supplied 25 MHz MII clock or 50 MHz RMII clock. This clock is used as the timing reference for the external MII or RMII interface.
- A time-stamping clock for the IEEE 1588 timers.

For more details on the Ethernet module clocking options, see [Ethernet Clocking](#).

50.1.2 RMII Clocking

On this device, RMII_REF_CLK is internally tied to EXTAL. See [Clock Distribution](#) for clocking requirements.

50.1.3 IEEE 1588 Timers

The ethernet module includes a four channel timer module for IEEE 1588 timestamping. The timer supports input capture (rising, falling, or both edges), output compare (toggle or pulse with programmable polarity). The timer matches on greater than or equal (the 1588 can skip numbers, so the counter might not ever exactly match the compare value).

The counter is able to operate asynchronously to the ethernet bus by using one of four clock sources. See [Ethernet Clocking](#) for more details.

50.1.4 Ethernet Operation in Low Power Modes

The Ethernet module is not fully operational in any low power modes. However, the module does support magic packet detection that can generate a wakeup in stop mode if enabled.

During low power operation:

- The MAC transmit logic is disabled
- The core FIFO receive/transmit functions are disabled
- The MAC receive logic is kept in normal mode, but it ignores all traffic from the line except magic packets.

The receive logic needed for magic packet detection is clocked using the externally-supplied MII or RMII clock. This allows for the wakeup functionality in stop mode. No Ethernet operation, including magic packet wakeup, is supported in VLPx modes.

50.1.4.1 IEEE 1588 Timer Operation in Low Power Modes

The 1588 counter and 1588 timer channels can continue operating in low power modes provided their clock is enabled in that mode.

The 1588 timer channels can also generate an interrupt to exit the low power mode if the clock is enabled in that mode.

50.1.5 Ethernet Doze Mode

The doze mode for the Ethernet module is the same as the wait and VLPW modes for the chip.

50.1.6 Ethernet Interrupts

The Ethernet has multiple sources of interrupt requests. However, some of these sources are OR'd together to generate an interrupt request. See below for a summary:

Interrupt request	Interrupt source
IEEE 1588 timer interrupt	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Time stamp available• 1588 timer interrupt

Table continues on the next page...

Interrupt request	Interrupt source
Transmit interrupt	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Transmit frame interrupt • Transmit buffer interrupt
Receive interrupt	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Receive frame interrupt • Receive buffer interrupt
Error and miscellaneous interrupt	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wake-up • Payload receive error • Babbling receive error • Babbling transmit error • Graceful stop complete • MII interrupt – Data transfer done • Ethernet bus error • Late collision • Collision retry limit

50.1.7 Ethernet event signal

The event signal output is not supported on this device. Therefore, ATCR[PINPER] has no effect.

10/100-Mbps Ethernet MAC (ENET)Ethernet MAC-NET Core

50.3 Features

The MAC-NET core includes the following features.

50.3.1 Ethernet MAC features

- Implements the full 802.3 specification with preamble/SFD generation, frame padding generation, CRC generation and checking
- Supports zero-length preamble
- Dynamically configurable to support 10/100-Mbit/s operation
- Supports 10/100 Mbit/s full-duplex and configurable half-duplex operation
- Compliant with the AMD magic packet detection with interrupt for node remote power management
- Seamless interface to commercial ethernet PHY devices via one of the following:
 - a 4-bit Media Independent Interface (MII) operating at 2.5/25 MHz.
 - a 4-bit non-standard MII-Lite (MII without the CRS and COL signals) operating at 2.5/25 MHz.
 - a 2-bit Reduced MII (RMII) operating at 50 MHz.
- Simple 64-Bit FIFO user-application interface

- CRC-32 checking at full speed with optional forwarding of the frame check sequence (FCS) field to the client
- CRC-32 generation and append on transmit or forwarding of user application provided FCS selectable on a per-frame basis
- In full-duplex mode:
 - Implements automated pause frame (802.3 x31A) generation and termination, providing flow control without user application intervention
 - Pause quanta used to form pause frames — dynamically programmable
 - Pause frame generation additionally controllable by user application offering flexible traffic flow control
 - Optional forwarding of received pause frames to the user application
 - Implements standard flow-control mechanism
- In half-duplex mode: provides full collision support, including jamming, backoff, and automatic retransmission
- Supports VLAN-tagged frames according to IEEE 802.1Q
- Programmable MAC address: Insertion on transmit; discards frames with mismatching destination address on receive (except broadcast and pause frames)
- Programmable promiscuous mode support to omit MAC destination address checking on receive
- Multicast and unicast address filtering on receive based on 64-entry hash table, reducing higher layer processing load
- Programmable frame maximum length providing support for any standard or proprietary frame length
- Statistics indicators for frame traffic and errors (alignment, CRC, length) and pause frames providing for IEEE 802.3 basic and mandatory management information database (MIB) package and remote network monitoring (RFC 2819)
- Simple handshake user application FIFO interface with fully programmable depth and threshold levels
- Provides separate status word for each received frame on the user interface providing information such as frame length, frame type, VLAN tag, and error information
- Multiple internal loopback options
- MDIO master interface for PHY device configuration and management supports two programmable MDIO base addresses, and standard (IEEE 802.3 Clause 22) and extended (Clause 45) MDIO frame formats
- Supports legacy FEC buffer descriptors

50.3.2 IP protocol performance optimization features

- Operates on TCP/IP and UDP/IP and ICMP/IP protocol data or IP header only

- Enables wire-speed processing
- Supports IPv4 and IPv6
- Transparent passing of frames of other types and protocols
- Supports VLAN tagged frames according to IEEE 802.1q with transparent forwarding of VLAN tag and control field
- Automatic IP-header and payload (protocol specific) checksum calculation and verification on receive
- Automatic IP-header and payload (protocol specific) checksum generation and automatic insertion on transmit configurable on a per-frame basis
- Supports IP and TCP, UDP, ICMP data for checksum generation and checking
- Supports full header options for IPv4 and TCP protocol headers
- Provides IPv6 support to datagrams with base header only — datagrams with extension headers are passed transparently unmodified/unchecked
- Provides statistics information for received IP and protocol errors
- Configurable automatic discard of erroneous frames
- Configurable automatic host-to-network (RX) and network-to-host (TX) byte order conversion for IP and TCP/UDP/ICMP headers within the frame
- Configurable padding remove for short IP datagrams on receive
- Configurable Ethernet payload alignment to allow for 32-bit word-aligned header and payload processing
- Programmable store-and-forward operation with clock and rate decoupling FIFOs

50.3.3 IEEE 1588 features

- Supports all IEEE 1588 frames.
- Allows reference clock to be chosen independently of network speed.
- Software-programmable precise time-stamping of ingress and egress frames
- Timer monitoring capabilities for system calibration and timing accuracy management
- Precise time-stamping of external events with programmable interrupt generation

Block diagram

- Programmable event and interrupt generation for external system control
- Supports hardware- and software-controllable timer synchronization.
- Provides a 4-channel IEEE 1588 timer. Each channel supports input capture and output compare using the 1588 counter.

50.4 Block diagram

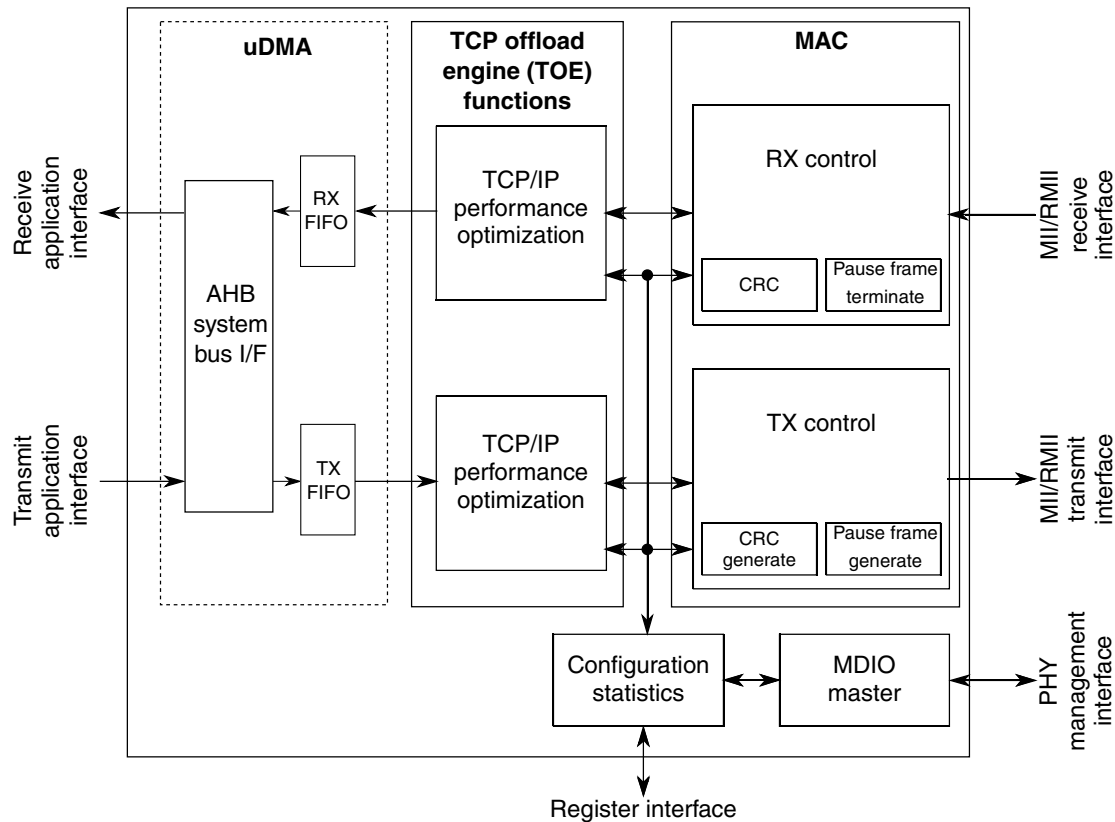


Figure 50-1. Ethernet MAC-NET core block diagram

ENET memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
400C_0004	Interrupt Event Register (ENET_EIR)	32	w1c	0000_0000h	50.7.7/1475
400C_0008	Interrupt Mask Register (ENET_EIMR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	50.7.8/1478
400C_0010	Receive Descriptor Active Register (ENET_RDAR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	50.7.9/1481
400C_0014	Transmit Descriptor Active Register (ENET_TDAR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	50.7.10/1481
400C_0024	Ethernet Control Register (ENET_ECR)	32	R/W	F000_0000h	50.7.11/1482

Table continues on the next page...

ENET memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/page
400C_0040	MII Management Frame Register (ENET_MMFR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	50.7.12/1484
400C_0044	MII Speed Control Register (ENET_MSCR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	50.7.13/1485
400C_0064	MIB Control Register (ENET_MIBC)	32	R/W	C000_0000h	50.7.14/1487
400C_0084	Receive Control Register (ENET_RCR)	32	R/W	05EE_0001h	50.7.15/1488
400C_00C4	Transmit Control Register (ENET_TCR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	50.7.16/1491
400C_00E4	Physical Address Lower Register (ENET_PALR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	50.7.17/1493
400C_00E8	Physical Address Upper Register (ENET_PAUR)	32	R/W	0000_8808h	50.7.18/1493
400C_00EC	Opcode/Pause Duration Register (ENET_OPD)	32	R/W	0001_0000h	50.7.19/1494
400C_0118	Descriptor Individual Upper Address Register (ENET_IAUR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	50.7.20/1494
400C_011C	Descriptor Individual Lower Address Register (ENET_IALR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	50.7.21/1495
400C_0120	Descriptor Group Upper Address Register (ENET_GAUR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	50.7.22/1495
400C_0124	Descriptor Group Lower Address Register (ENET_GALR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	50.7.23/1496
400C_0144	Transmit FIFO Watermark Register (ENET_TFWR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	50.7.24/1496
400C_0180	Receive Descriptor Ring Start Register (ENET_RDSCR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	50.7.25/1497
400C_0184	Transmit Buffer Descriptor Ring Start Register (ENET_TDSR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	50.7.26/1498
400C_0188	Maximum Receive Buffer Size Register (ENET_MRBR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	50.7.27/1499
400C_0190	Receive FIFO Section Full Threshold (ENET_RSFL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	50.7.28/1500
400C_0194	Receive FIFO Section Empty Threshold (ENET_RSEM)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	50.7.29/1500
400C_0198	Receive FIFO Almost Empty Threshold (ENET_RAEM)	32	R/W	0000_0004h	50.7.30/1501
400C_019C	Receive FIFO Almost Full Threshold (ENET_RAFL)	32	R/W	0000_0004h	50.7.31/1501
400C_01A0	Transmit FIFO Section Empty Threshold (ENET_TSEM)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	50.7.32/1502
400C_01A4	Transmit FIFO Almost Empty Threshold (ENET_TAEM)	32	R/W	0000_0004h	50.7.33/1502

Table continues on the next page...

ENET memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/page
400C_01A8	Transmit FIFO Almost Full Threshold (ENET_TAFL)	32	R/W	0000_0008h	50.7.34/1503
400C_01AC	Transmit Inter-Packet Gap (ENET_TIPG)	32	R/W	0000_000Ch	50.7.35/1503
400C_01B0	Frame Truncation Length (ENET_FTRL)	32	R/W	0000_07FFh	50.7.36/1504
400C_01C0	Transmit Accelerator Function Configuration (ENET_TACC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	50.7.37/1504
400C_01C4	Receive Accelerator Function Configuration (ENET_RACC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	50.7.38/1505
400C_0200	Reserved Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_T_DROP)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.39/1506
400C_0204	Tx Packet Count Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_T_PACKETS)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.40/1507
400C_0208	Tx Broadcast Packets Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_T_BC_PKT)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.41/1507
400C_020C	Tx Multicast Packets Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_T_MC_PKT)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.42/1508
400C_0210	Tx Packets with CRC/Align Error Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_T_CRC_ALIGN)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.43/1508
400C_0214	Tx Packets Less Than Bytes and Good CRC Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_T_UNDERSIZE)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.44/1508
400C_0218	Tx Packets GT MAX_FL bytes and Good CRC Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_T_OVERSIZE)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.45/1509
400C_021C	Tx Packets Less Than 64 Bytes and Bad CRC Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_T_FRAG)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.46/1509
400C_0220	Tx Packets Greater Than MAX_FL bytes and Bad CRC Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_T_JAB)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.47/1510
400C_0224	Tx Collision Count Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_T_COL)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.48/1510
400C_0228	Tx 64-Byte Packets Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_T_P64)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.49/1510
400C_022C	Tx 65- to 127-byte Packets Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_T_P65TO127)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.50/1511
400C_0230	Tx 128- to 255-byte Packets Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_T_P128TO255)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.51/1511
400C_0234	Tx 256- to 511-byte Packets Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_T_P256TO511)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.52/1512
400C_0238	Tx 512- to 1023-byte Packets Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_T_P512TO1023)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.53/1512
400C_023C	Tx 1024- to 2047-byte Packets Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_T_P1024TO2047)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.54/1513
400C_0240	Tx Packets Greater Than 2048 Bytes Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_T_P_GTE2048)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.55/1513

Table continues on the next page...

ENET memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/page
400C_0244	Tx Octets Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_T_OCTETS)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.56/1513
400C_0248	Reserved Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_T_DROP)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.57/1514
400C_024C	Frames Transmitted OK Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_T_FRAME_OK)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.58/1514
400C_0250	Frames Transmitted with Single Collision Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_T_1COL)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.59/1515
400C_0254	Frames Transmitted with Multiple Collisions Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_T_MCOL)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.60/1515
400C_0258	Frames Transmitted after Deferral Delay Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_T_DEF)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.61/1515
400C_025C	Frames Transmitted with Late Collision Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_T_LCOL)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.62/1516
400C_0260	Frames Transmitted with Excessive Collisions Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_T_EXCOL)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.63/1516
400C_0264	Frames Transmitted with Tx FIFO Underrun Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_T_MACERR)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.64/1517
400C_0268	Frames Transmitted with Carrier Sense Error Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_T_CSERR)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.65/1517
400C_026C	Reserved Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_T_SQE)	32	R (reads 0)	0000_0000h	50.7.66/1517
400C_0270	Flow Control Pause Frames Transmitted Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_T_FDXFC)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.67/1518
400C_0274	Octet Count for Frames Transmitted w/o Error Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_T_OCTETS_OK)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.68/1518
400C_0284	Rx Packet Count Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_R_PACKETS)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.69/1519
400C_0288	Rx Broadcast Packets Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_R_BC_PKT)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.70/1519
400C_028C	Rx Multicast Packets Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_R_MC_PKT)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.71/1519
400C_0290	Rx Packets with CRC/Align Error Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_R_CRC_ALIGN)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.72/1520
400C_0294	Rx Packets with Less Than 64 Bytes and Good CRC Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_R_UNDERSIZE)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.73/1520
400C_0298	Rx Packets Greater Than MAX_FL and Good CRC Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_R_OVERSIZE)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.74/1521
400C_029C	Rx Packets Less Than 64 Bytes and Bad CRC Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_R_FRAG)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.75/1521
400C_02A0	Rx Packets Greater Than MAX_FL Bytes and Bad CRC Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_R_JAB)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.76/1521
400C_02A4	Reserved Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_R_RESVD_0)	32	R (reads 0)	0000_0000h	50.7.77/1522

Table continues on the next page...

ENET memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/page
400C_02A8	Rx 64-Byte Packets Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_R_P64)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.78/1522
400C_02AC	Rx 65- to 127-Byte Packets Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_R_P65TO127)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.79/1523
400C_02B0	Rx 128- to 255-Byte Packets Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_R_P128TO255)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.80/1523
400C_02B4	Rx 256- to 511-Byte Packets Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_R_P256TO511)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.81/1523
400C_02B8	Rx 512- to 1023-Byte Packets Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_R_P512TO1023)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.82/1524
400C_02BC	Rx 1024- to 2047-Byte Packets Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_R_P1024TO2047)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.83/1524
400C_02C0	Rx Packets Greater than 2048 Bytes Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_R_P_GTE2048)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.84/1525
400C_02C4	Rx Octets Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_R_OCTETS)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.85/1525
400C_02C8	Frames not Counted Correctly Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_R_DROP)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.86/1525
400C_02CC	Frames Received OK Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_R_FRAME_OK)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.87/1526
400C_02D0	Frames Received with CRC Error Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_R_CRC)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.88/1526
400C_02D4	Frames Received with Alignment Error Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_R_ALIGN)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.89/1527
400C_02D8	Receive FIFO Overflow Count Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_R_MACERR)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.90/1527
400C_02DC	Flow Control Pause Frames Received Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_R_FDXFC)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.91/1527
400C_02E0	Octet Count for Frames Received without Error Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_R_OCTETS_OK)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.92/1528
400C_0400	Adjustable Timer Control Register (ENET_ATCR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	50.7.93/1529
400C_0404	Timer Value Register (ENET_ATVR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	50.7.94/1531
400C_0408	Timer Offset Register (ENET_ATOFF)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	50.7.95/1531
400C_040C	Timer Period Register (ENET_ATPER)	32	R/W	3B9A_CA00h	50.7.96/1531
400C_0410	Timer Correction Register (ENET_ATCOR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	50.7.97/1532
400C_0414	Time-Stamping Clock Period Register (ENET_ATINC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	50.7.98/1532
400C_0418	Timestamp of Last Transmitted Frame (ENET_ATSTMP)	32	R	0000_0000h	50.7.99/1533

Table continues on the next page...

ENET memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/page
400C_0604	Timer Global Status Register (ENET_TGSR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	50.7.100/1533
400C_0608	Timer Control Status Register (ENET_TCSR0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	50.7.101/1534
400C_060C	Timer Compare Capture Register (ENET_TCCR0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	50.7.102/1535
400C_0610	Timer Control Status Register (ENET_TCSR1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	50.7.101/1534
400C_0614	Timer Compare Capture Register (ENET_TCCR1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	50.7.102/1535
400C_0618	Timer Control Status Register (ENET_TCSR2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	50.7.101/1534
400C_061C	Timer Compare Capture Register (ENET_TCCR2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	50.7.102/1535
400C_0620	Timer Control Status Register (ENET_TCSR3)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	50.7.101/1534
400C_0624	Timer Compare Capture Register (ENET_TCCR3)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	50.7.102/1535

50.7.7 Interrupt Event Register (ENET_EIR)

When an event occurs that sets a bit in EIR, an interrupt occurs if the corresponding bit in the interrupt mask register (EIMR) is also set. Writing a 1 to an EIR bit clears it; writing 0 has no effect. This register is cleared upon hardware reset.

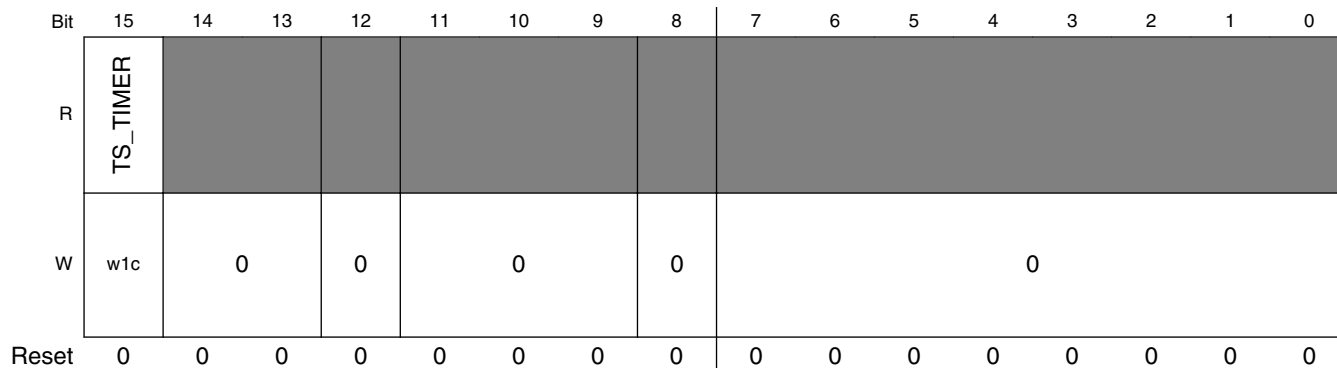
NOTE

TxBD[INT] and RxBD[INT] must be set to 1 to allow setting the corresponding EIR register flags in enhanced mode, ENET_ECR[EN1588] = 1. Legacy mode does not require these flags to be enabled.

Address: 400C_0000h base + 4h offset = 400C_0004h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0	BABR	BABT	GRA	TXF	TXB	RXF	RXB	MII	EBERR	LC	RL	UN	PLR	WAKEUP	TS_AVAIL
W		w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Block diagram



ENET_EIR field descriptions

Field	Description
31 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
30 BABR	Babbling Receive Error Indicates a frame was received with length in excess of RCR[MAX_FL] bytes.
29 BABT	Babbling Transmit Error Indicates the transmitted frame length exceeds RCR[MAX_FL] bytes. Usually this condition is caused when a frame that is too long is placed into the transmit data buffer(s). Truncation does not occur.
28 GRA	Graceful Stop Complete This interrupt is asserted after the transmitter is put into a pause state after completion of the frame currently being transmitted. See Graceful Transmit Stop (GTS) for conditions that lead to graceful stop. NOTE: The GRA interrupt is asserted only when the TX transitions into the stopped state. If this bit is cleared by writing 1 and the TX is still stopped, the bit is not set again.
27 TXF	Transmit Frame Interrupt Indicates a frame has been transmitted and the last corresponding buffer descriptor has been updated.
26 TXB	Transmit Buffer Interrupt Indicates a transmit buffer descriptor has been updated.
25 RXF	Receive Frame Interrupt Indicates a frame has been received and the last corresponding buffer descriptor has been updated.
24 RXB	Receive Buffer Interrupt Indicates a receive buffer descriptor is not the last in the frame has been updated.
23 MII	MII Interrupt. Indicates that the MII has completed the data transfer requested.
22 EBERR	Ethernet Bus Error Indicates a system bus error occurred when a uDMA transaction is underway. When this bit is set, ECR[ETHEREN] is cleared, halting frame processing by the MAC. When this occurs, software must ensure proper actions, possibly resetting the system, to resume normal operation.
21 LC	Late Collision

Table continues on the next page...

ENET_EIR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Indicates a collision occurred beyond the collision window (slot time) in half-duplex mode. The frame truncates with a bad CRC and the remainder of the frame is discarded.
20 RL	Collision Retry Limit Indicates a collision occurred on each of 16 successive attempts to transmit the frame. The frame is discarded without being transmitted and transmission of the next frame commences. This error can only occur in half-duplex mode.
19 UN	Transmit FIFO Underrun Indicates the transmit FIFO became empty before the complete frame was transmitted. A bad CRC is appended to the frame fragment and the remainder of the frame is discarded.
18 PLR	Payload Receive Error Indicates a frame was received with a payload length error. See Frame Length/Type Verification: Payload Length Check for more information.
17 WAKEUP	Node Wakeup Request Indication Read-only status bit to indicate that a magic packet has been detected. Will act only if ECR[MAGICEN] is set.
16 TS_AVAIL	Transmit Timestamp Available Indicates that the timestamp of the last transmitted timing frame is available in the ATSTMP register.
15 TS_TIMER	Timestamp Timer The adjustable timer reached the period event. A period event interrupt can be generated if ATCR[PEREN] is set and the timer wraps according to the periodic setting in the ATPER register. Set the timer period value before setting ATCR[PEREN].
14–13 Reserved	This field is reserved. This write-only field is reserved. It must always be written with the value 0.
12 Reserved	This field is reserved. This write-only field is reserved. It must always be written with the value 0.
11–9 Reserved	This field is reserved. This write-only field is reserved. It must always be written with the value 0.
8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This write-only field is reserved. It must always be written with the value 0.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This write-only field is reserved. It must always be written with the value 0.

50.7.8 Interrupt Mask Register (ENET_EIMR)

EIMR controls which interrupt events are allowed to generate actual interrupts. A hardware reset clears this register. If the corresponding bits in the EIR and EIMR registers are set, an interrupt is generated. The interrupt signal remains asserted until a 1 is written to the EIR field (write 1 to clear) or a 0 is written to the EIMR field.

Address: 400C_0000h base + 8h offset = 400C_0008h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R																
W	0	BABR	BABT	GRA	TXF	TXB	RXF	RXB	MII	EBERR	LC	RL	UN	PLR	WAKEUP	TS_AVAIL
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	TS_TIMER															
W	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_EIMR field descriptions

Field	Description
31 Reserved	This field is reserved. This write-only field is reserved. It must always be written with the value 0.
30 BABR	BABR Interrupt Mask Corresponds to interrupt source EIR[BABR] and determines whether an interrupt condition can generate an interrupt. At every module clock, the EIR samples the signal generated by the interrupting source. The corresponding EIR BABR field reflects the state of the interrupt signal even if the corresponding EIMR field is cleared. 0 The corresponding interrupt source is masked. 1 The corresponding interrupt source is not masked.
29 BABT	BABT Interrupt Mask Corresponds to interrupt source EIR[BABT] and determines whether an interrupt condition can generate an interrupt. At every module clock, the EIR samples the signal generated by the interrupting source. The corresponding EIR BABT field reflects the state of the interrupt signal even if the corresponding EIMR field is cleared. 0 The corresponding interrupt source is masked. 1 The corresponding interrupt source is not masked.
28 GRA	GRA Interrupt Mask Corresponds to interrupt source EIR[GRA] and determines whether an interrupt condition can generate an interrupt. At every module clock, the EIR samples the signal generated by the interrupting source. The

Table continues on the next page...

ENET_EIMR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>corresponding EIR GRA field reflects the state of the interrupt signal even if the corresponding EIMR field is cleared.</p> <p>0 The corresponding interrupt source is masked. 1 The corresponding interrupt source is not masked.</p>
27 TXF	<p>TXF Interrupt Mask</p> <p>Corresponds to interrupt source EIR[TXF] and determines whether an interrupt condition can generate an interrupt. At every module clock, the EIR samples the signal generated by the interrupting source. The corresponding EIR TXF field reflects the state of the interrupt signal even if the corresponding EIMR field is cleared.</p> <p>0 The corresponding interrupt source is masked. 1 The corresponding interrupt source is not masked.</p>
26 TXB	<p>TXB Interrupt Mask</p> <p>Corresponds to interrupt source EIR[TXB] and determines whether an interrupt condition can generate an interrupt. At every module clock, the EIR samples the signal generated by the interrupting source. The corresponding EIR TXF field reflects the state of the interrupt signal even if the corresponding EIMR field is cleared.</p> <p>0 The corresponding interrupt source is masked. 1 The corresponding interrupt source is not masked.</p>
25 RXF	<p>RXF Interrupt Mask</p> <p>Corresponds to interrupt source EIR[RXF] and determines whether an interrupt condition can generate an interrupt. At every module clock, the EIR samples the signal generated by the interrupting source. The corresponding EIR RXF field reflects the state of the interrupt signal even if the corresponding EIMR field is cleared.</p>
24 RXB	<p>RXB Interrupt Mask</p> <p>Corresponds to interrupt source EIR[RXB] and determines whether an interrupt condition can generate an interrupt. At every module clock, the EIR samples the signal generated by the interrupting source. The corresponding EIR RXB field reflects the state of the interrupt signal even if the corresponding EIMR field is cleared.</p>
23 MII	<p>MII Interrupt Mask</p> <p>Corresponds to interrupt source EIR[MII] and determines whether an interrupt condition can generate an interrupt. At every module clock, the EIR samples the signal generated by the interrupting source. The corresponding EIR MII field reflects the state of the interrupt signal even if the corresponding EIMR field is cleared.</p>
22 EBERR	<p>EBERR Interrupt Mask</p> <p>Corresponds to interrupt source EIR[EBERR] and determines whether an interrupt condition can generate an interrupt. At every module clock, the EIR samples the signal generated by the interrupting source. The corresponding EIR EBERR field reflects the state of the interrupt signal even if the corresponding EIMR field is cleared.</p>
21 LC	<p>LC Interrupt Mask</p> <p>Corresponds to interrupt source EIR[LC] and determines whether an interrupt condition can generate an interrupt. At every module clock, the EIR samples the signal generated by the interrupting source. The corresponding EIR LC field reflects the state of the interrupt signal even if the corresponding EIMR field is cleared.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

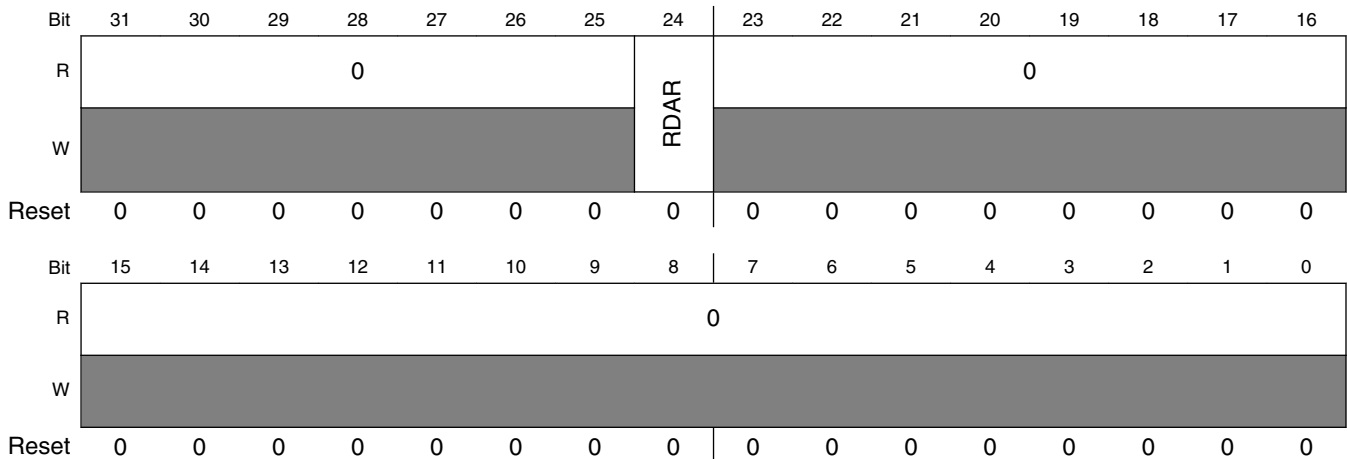
ENET_EIMR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
20 RL	<p>RL Interrupt Mask</p> <p>Corresponds to interrupt source EIR[RL] and determines whether an interrupt condition can generate an interrupt. At every module clock, the EIR samples the signal generated by the interrupting source. The corresponding EIR RL field reflects the state of the interrupt signal even if the corresponding EIMR field is cleared.</p>
19 UN	<p>UN Interrupt Mask</p> <p>Corresponds to interrupt source EIR[UN] and determines whether an interrupt condition can generate an interrupt. At every module clock, the EIR samples the signal generated by the interrupting source. The corresponding EIR UN field reflects the state of the interrupt signal even if the corresponding EIMR field is cleared.</p>
18 PLR	<p>PLR Interrupt Mask</p> <p>Corresponds to interrupt source EIR[PLR] and determines whether an interrupt condition can generate an interrupt. At every module clock, the EIR samples the signal generated by the interrupting source. The corresponding EIR PLR field reflects the state of the interrupt signal even if the corresponding EIMR field is cleared.</p>
17 WAKEUP	<p>WAKEUP Interrupt Mask</p> <p>Corresponds to interrupt source EIR[WAKEUP] register and determines whether an interrupt condition can generate an interrupt. At every module clock, the EIR samples the signal generated by the interrupting source. The corresponding EIR WAKEUP field reflects the state of the interrupt signal even if the corresponding EIMR field is cleared.</p>
16 TS_AVAIL	<p>TS_AVAIL Interrupt Mask</p> <p>Corresponds to interrupt source EIR[TS_AVAIL] register and determines whether an interrupt condition can generate an interrupt. At every module clock, the EIR samples the signal generated by the interrupting source. The corresponding EIR TS_AVAIL field reflects the state of the interrupt signal even if the corresponding EIMR field is cleared.</p>
15 TS_TIMER	<p>TS_TIMER Interrupt Mask</p> <p>Corresponds to interrupt source EIR[TS_TIMER] register and determines whether an interrupt condition can generate an interrupt. At every module clock, the EIR samples the signal generated by the interrupting source. The corresponding EIR TS_TIMER field reflects the state of the interrupt signal even if the corresponding EIMR field is cleared.</p>
14–13 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This write-only field is reserved. It must always be written with the value 0.</p>
12 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This write-only field is reserved. It must always be written with the value 0.</p>
11–9 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This write-only field is reserved. It must always be written with the value 0.</p>
8 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This write-only field is reserved. It must always be written with the value 0.</p>
Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This write-only field is reserved. It must always be written with the value 0.</p>

50.7.9 Receive Descriptor Active Register (ENET_RDAR)

RDAR is a command register, written by the user, to indicate that the receive descriptor ring has been updated, that is, that the driver produced empty receive buffers with the empty bit set.

Address: 400C_0000h base + 10h offset = 400C_0010h



ENET_RDAR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–25 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
24 RDAR	Receive Descriptor Active Always set to 1 when this register is written, regardless of the value written. This field is cleared by the MAC device when no additional empty descriptors remain in the receive ring. It is also cleared when ECR[ETHEREN] transitions from set to cleared or when ECR[RESET] is set.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

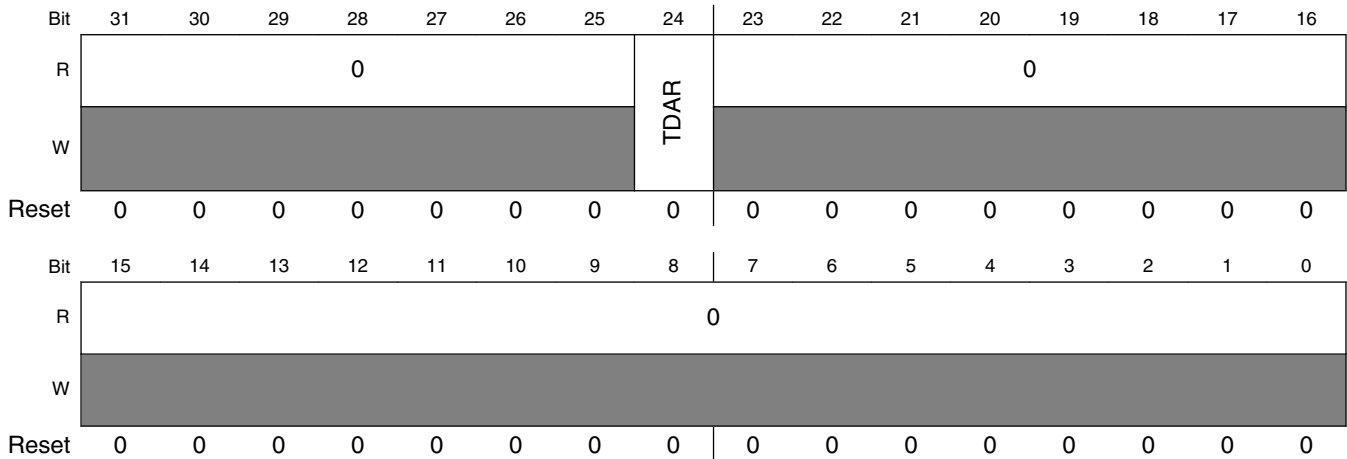
50.7.10 Transmit Descriptor Active Register (ENET_TDAR)

The TDAR is a command register that the user writes to indicate that the transmit descriptor ring has been updated, that is, that transmit buffers have been produced by the driver with the ready bit set in the buffer descriptor.

The TDAR register is cleared at reset, when ECR[ETHEREN] transitions from set to cleared, or when ECR[RESET] is set.

Block diagram

Address: 400C_0000h base + 14h offset = 400C_0014h



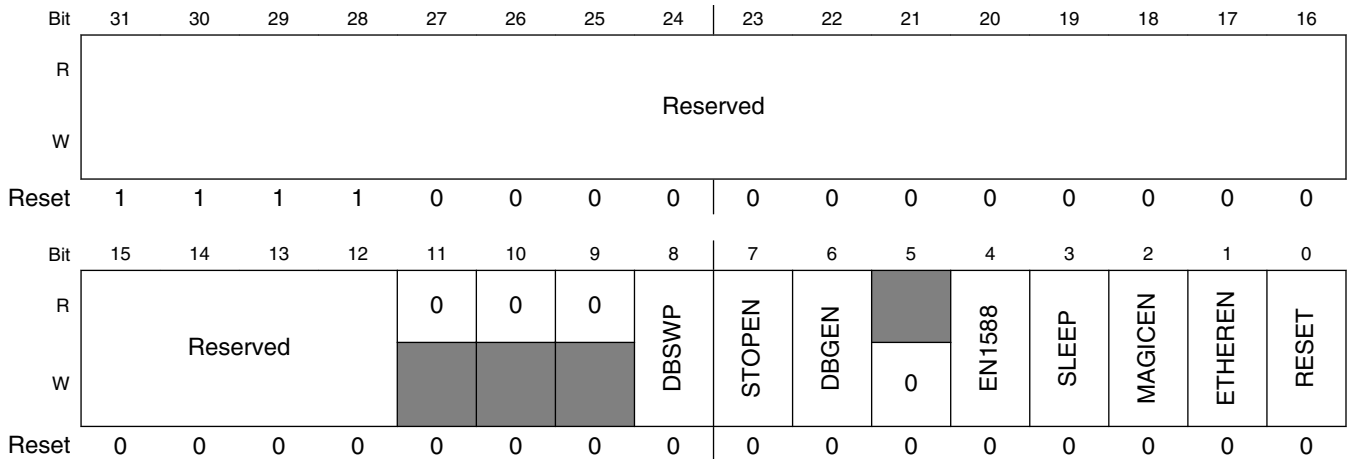
ENET_TDAR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–25 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
24 TDAR	Transmit Descriptor Active Always set to 1 when this register is written, regardless of the value written. This bit is cleared by the MAC device when no additional ready descriptors remain in the transmit ring. Also cleared when ECR[ETHEREN] transitions from set to cleared or when ECR[RESET] is set.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

50.7.11 Ethernet Control Register (ENET_ECR)

ECR is a read/write user register, though hardware may also alter fields in this register. It controls many of the high level features of the Ethernet MAC, including legacy FEC support through the EN1588 field.

Address: 400C_0000h base + 24h offset = 400C_0024h



ENET_ECR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–12 Reserved	This field is reserved. This field must be set to F_0000h.
11 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
10 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
9 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
8 DBSWP	Descriptor Byte Swapping Enable Swaps the byte locations of the buffer descriptors. NOTE: This field must be written to 1 after reset. 0 The buffer descriptor bytes are not swapped to support big-endian devices. 1 The buffer descriptor bytes are swapped to support little-endian devices.
7 STOPEN	STOPEN Signal Control Controls device behavior in doze mode. In doze mode, if this field is set then all the clocks of the ENET assembly are disabled, except the RMII /MII clock. Doze mode is similar to a conditional stop mode entry for the ENET assembly depending on ECR[STOPEN]. NOTE: If module clocks are gated in this mode, the module can still wake the system after receiving a magic packet in stop mode. MAGICEN must be set prior to entering sleep/stop mode.
6 DBGEN	Debug Enable Enables the MAC to enter hardware freeze mode when the device enters debug mode. 0 MAC continues operation in debug mode. 1 MAC enters hardware freeze mode when the processor is in debug mode.
5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This write-only field is reserved. It must always be written with the value 0.
4 EN1588	EN1588 Enable Enables enhanced functionality of the MAC. 0 Legacy FEC buffer descriptors and functions enabled. 1 Enhanced frame time-stamping functions enabled.
3 SLEEP	Sleep Mode Enable 0 Normal operating mode. 1 Sleep mode.
2 MAGICEN	Magic Packet Detection Enable Enables/disables magic packet detection. NOTE: MAGICEN is relevant only if the SLEEP field is set. If MAGICEN is set, changing the SLEEP field enables/disables sleep mode and magic packet detection. 0 Magic detection logic disabled. 1 The MAC core detects magic packets and asserts EIR[WAKEUP] when a frame is detected.

Table continues on the next page...

ENET_ECR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
1 ETHEREN	<p>Ethernet Enable</p> <p>Enables/disables the Ethernet MAC. When the MAC is disabled, the buffer descriptors for an aborted transmit frame are not updated. The uDMA, buffer descriptor, and FIFO control logic are reset, including the buffer descriptor and FIFO pointers.</p> <p>Hardware clears this field under the following conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RESET is set by software • An error condition causes the EBERR field to set. <p>NOTE:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ETHEREN must be set at the very last step during ENET configuration/setup/initialization, only <i>after</i> all other ENET-related registers have been configured. • If ETHEREN is cleared to 0 by software then next time ETHEREN is set, the EIR interrupts must cleared to 0 due to previous pending interrupts. <p>0 Reception immediately stops and transmission stops after a bad CRC is appended to any currently transmitted frame.</p> <p>1 MAC is enabled, and reception and transmission are possible.</p>
0 RESET	<p>Ethernet MAC Reset</p> <p>When this field is set, it clears the ETHEREN field.</p>

50.7.12 MII Management Frame Register (ENET_MMFR)

Writing to MMFR triggers a management frame transaction to the PHY device unless MSCR is programmed to zero.

If MSCR is changed from zero to non-zero during a write to MMFR, an MII frame is generated with the data previously written to the MMFR. This allows MMFR and MSCR to be programmed in either order if MSCR is currently zero.

If the MMFR register is written while frame generation is in progress, the frame contents are altered. Software must use the EIR[MII] interrupt indication to avoid writing to the MMFR register while frame generation is in progress.

Address: 400C_0000h base + 40h offset = 400C_0040h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	ST		OP		PA				RA				TA		DATA																	
W	ST		OP		PA				RA				TA		DATA																	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

ENET_MMFR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–30 ST	<p>Start Of Frame Delimiter</p> <p>See Table 50-38 (Clause 22) or Table 50-40 (Clause 45) for correct value.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

ENET_MMFR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
29–28 OP	Operation Code See Table 50-38 (Clause 22) or Table 50-40 (Clause 45) for correct value.
27–23 PA	PHY Address See Table 50-38 (Clause 22) or Table 50-40 (Clause 45) for correct value.
22–18 RA	Register Address See Table 50-38 (Clause 22) or Table 50-40 (Clause 45) for correct value.
17–16 TA	Turn Around This field must be programmed to 10 to generate a valid MII management frame.
DATA	Management Frame Data This is the field for data to be written to or read from the PHY register.

50.7.13 MII Speed Control Register (ENET_MSCR)

MSCR provides control of the MII clock (MDC pin) frequency and allows a preamble drop on the MII management frame.

The MII_SPEED field must be programmed with a value to provide an MDC frequency of less than or equal to 2.5 MHz to be compliant with the IEEE 802.3 MII specification. The MII_SPEED must be set to a non-zero value to source a read or write management frame. After the management frame is complete, the MSCR register may optionally be cleared to turn off MDC. The MDC signal generated has a 50% duty cycle except when MII_SPEED changes during operation. This change takes effect following a rising or falling edge of MDC.

For example, if the internal module clock (i.e., IPS bus clock) is 25 MHz, programming MII_SPEED to 0x4 results in an MDC as given in the following equation:

$$\text{MII clock frequency} = 25 \text{ MHz} / ((4 + 1) \times 2) = 2.5 \text{ MHz}$$

The following table shows the optimum values for MII_SPEED as a function of IPS bus clock frequency.

Table 50-1. Programming Examples for MSCR

Internal module clock frequency	MSCR [MII_SPEED]	MDC frequency
25 MHz	0x4	2.50 MHz
33 MHz	0x6	2.36 MHz
40 MHz	0x7	2.50 MHz
50 MHz	0x9	2.50 MHz

Table continues on the next page...

Table 50-1. Programming Examples for MSCR (continued)

Internal module clock frequency	MSCR [MII_SPEED]	MDC frequency
66 MHz	0xD	2.36 MHz

Address: 400C_0000h base + 44h offset = 400C_0044h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0					HOLDTIME			DIS_PRE	MII_SPEED						0
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

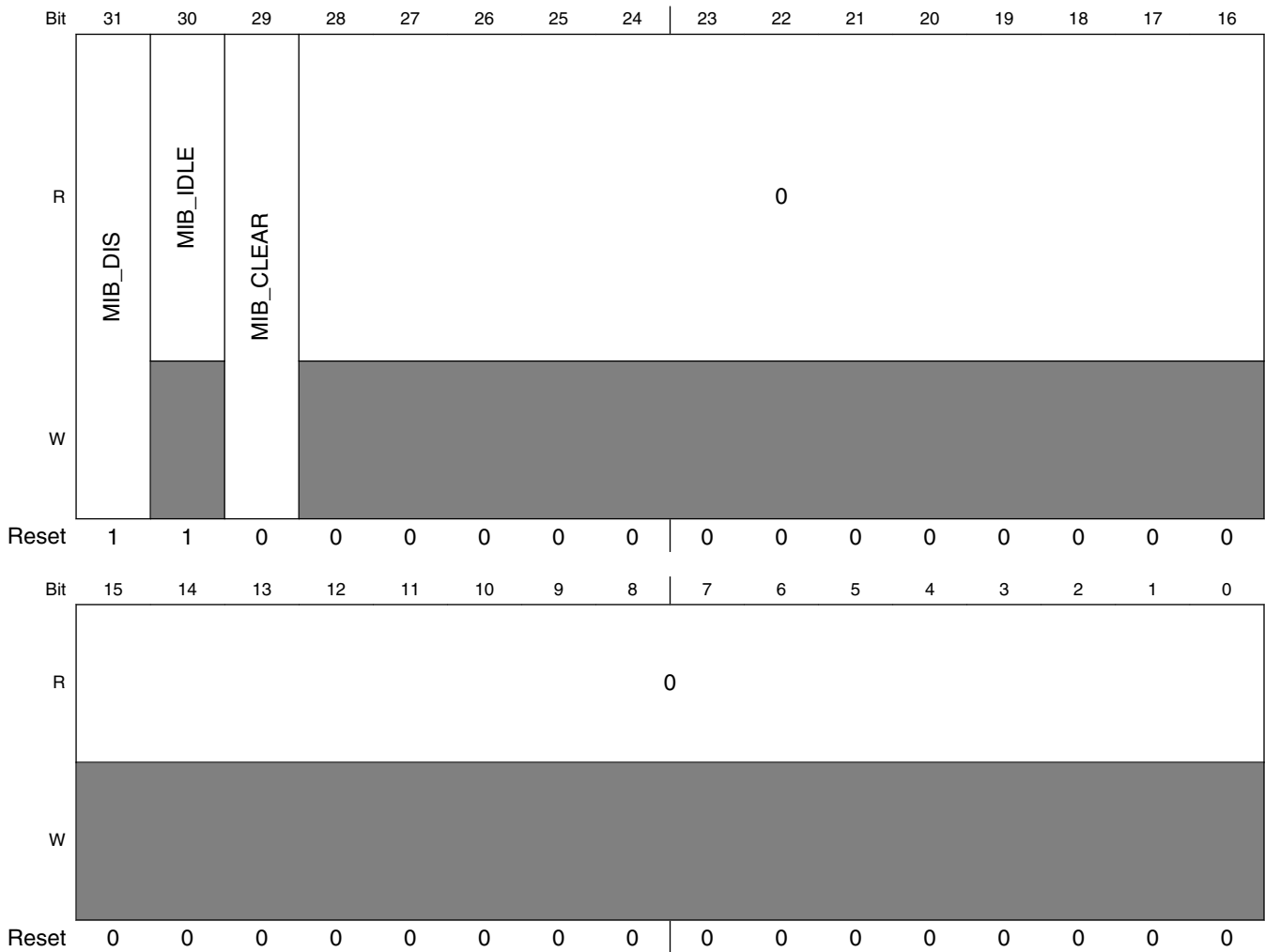
ENET_MSCR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–11 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
10–8 HOLDTIME	Hold time On MDIO Output IEEE802.3 clause 22 defines a minimum of 10 ns for the hold time on the MDIO output. Depending on the host bus frequency, the setting may need to be increased. 000 1 internal module clock cycle 001 2 internal module clock cycles 010 3 internal module clock cycles 111 8 internal module clock cycles
7 DIS_PRE	Disable Preamble Enables/disables prepending a preamble to the MII management frame. The MII standard allows the preamble to be dropped if the attached PHY devices do not require it. 0 Preamble enabled. 1 Preamble (32 ones) is not prepended to the MII management frame.
6–1 MII_SPEED	MII Speed Controls the frequency of the MII management interface clock (MDC) relative to the internal module clock. A value of 0 in this field turns off MDC and leaves it in low voltage state. Any non-zero value results in the MDC frequency of: $1/((\text{MII_SPEED} + 1) \times 2)$ of the internal module clock frequency
0 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

50.7.14 MIB Control Register (ENET_MIBC)

MIBC is a read/write register controlling and observing the state of the MIB block. Access this register to disable the MIB block operation or clear the MIB counters. The MIB_DIS field resets to 1.

Address: 400C_0000h base + 64h offset = 400C_0064h



ENET_MIBC field descriptions

Field	Description
31 MIB_DIS	<p>Disable MIB Logic</p> <p>If this control field is set,</p> <p>0 MIB logic is enabled.</p> <p>1 MIB logic is disabled. The MIB logic halts and does not update any MIB counters.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

ENET_MIBC field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
30 MIB_IDLE	MIB Idle 0 The MIB block is updating MIB counters. 1 The MIB block is not currently updating any MIB counters.
29 MIB_CLEAR	MIB Clear NOTE: This field is not self-clearing. To clear the MIB counters set and then clear this field. 0 See note above. 1 All statistics counters are reset to 0.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

50.7.15 Receive Control Register (ENET_RCR)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 84h offset = 400C_0084h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	GRS		NLC		MAX_FL											
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	CFEN	CRCFWD	PAUFWD	PADEN			RMIL_10T	RMIL_MODE			FCE	BC_REJ	PROM	MIL_MODE	DRT	LOOP
W					0				0	0						
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

ENET_RCR field descriptions

Field	Description
31 GRS	Graceful Receive Stopped Read-only status indicating that the MAC receive datapath is stopped.
30 NLC	Payload Length Check Disable Enables/disables a payload length check. 0 The payload length check is disabled. 1 The core checks the frame's payload length with the frame length/type field. Errors are indicated in the EIR[PLC] field.
29–16 MAX_FL	Maximum Frame Length Resets to decimal 1518. Length is measured starting at DA and includes the CRC at the end of the frame. Transmit frames longer than MAX_FL cause the BABT interrupt to occur. Receive frames longer than MAX_FL cause the BABR interrupt to occur and set the LG field in the end of frame receive buffer descriptor. The recommended default value to be programmed is 1518 or 1522 if VLAN tags are supported.
15 CFEN	MAC Control Frame Enable Enables/disables the MAC control frame. 0 MAC control frames with any opcode other than 0x0001 (pause frame) are accepted and forwarded to the client interface. 1 MAC control frames with any opcode other than 0x0001 (pause frame) are silently discarded.
14 CRCFWD	Terminate/Forward Received CRC Specifies whether the CRC field of received frames is transmitted or stripped. NOTE: If padding function is enabled (PADEN = 1), CRCFWD is ignored and the CRC field is checked and always terminated and removed. 0 The CRC field of received frames is transmitted to the user application. 1 The CRC field is stripped from the frame.
13 PAUFWD	Terminate/Forward Pause Frames Specifies whether pause frames are terminated or forwarded. 0 Pause frames are terminated and discarded in the MAC. 1 Pause frames are forwarded to the user application.
12 PADEN	Enable Frame Padding Remove On Receive Specifies whether the MAC removes padding from received frames. 0 No padding is removed on receive by the MAC. 1 Padding is removed from received frames.
11–10 Reserved	This field is reserved. This write-only field is reserved. It must always be written with the value 0.
9 RMII_10T	Enables 10-Mbit/s mode of the RMII . 0 100-Mbit/s operation. 1 10-Mbit/s operation.

Table continues on the next page...

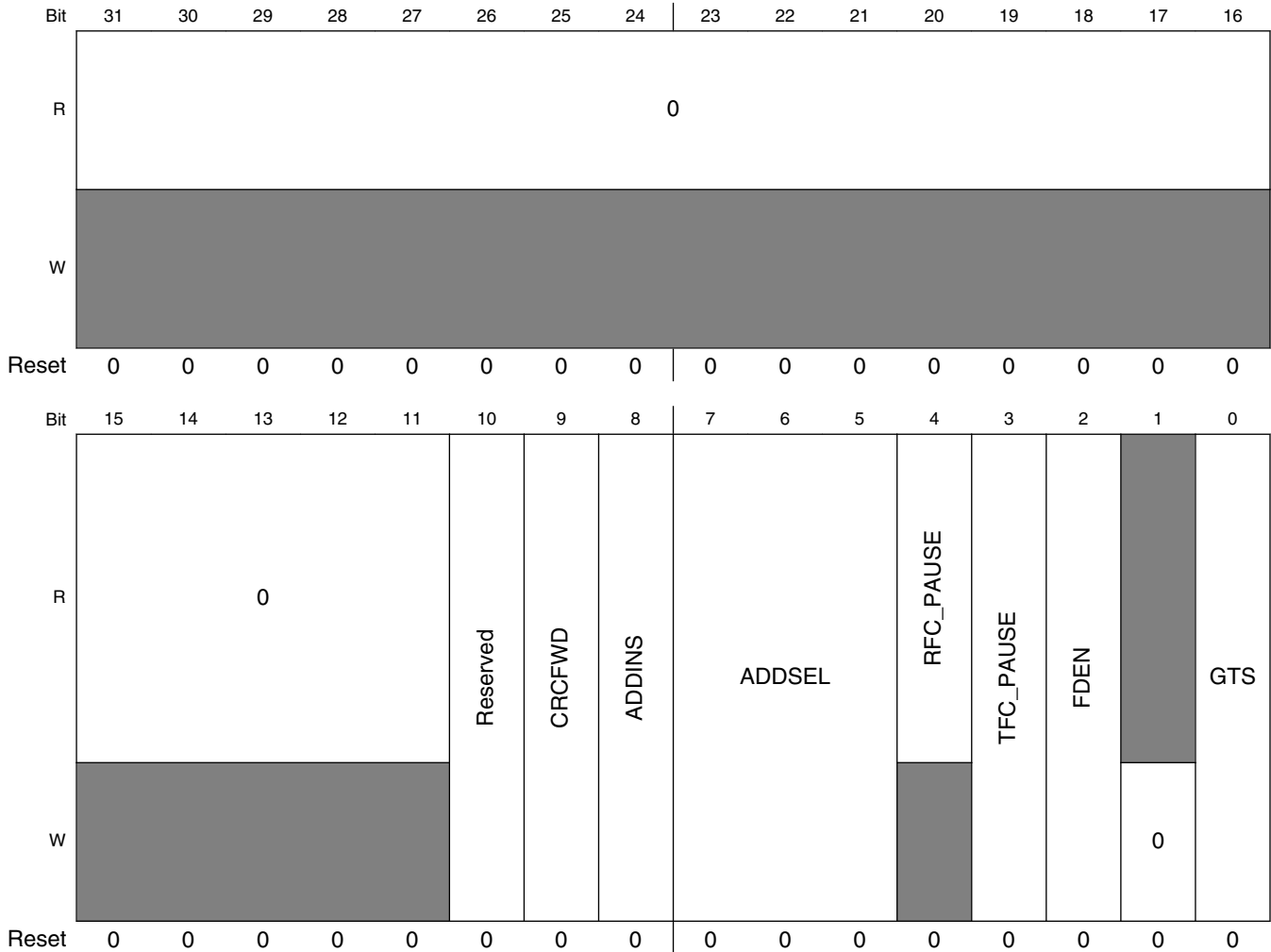
ENET_RCR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
8 RMII_MODE	<p>RMII Mode Enable</p> <p>Specifies whether the MAC is configured for MII mode or RMII operation .</p> <p>0 MAC configured for MII mode. 1 MAC configured for RMII operation.</p>
7 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This write-only field is reserved. It must always be written with the value 0.</p>
6 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This write-only field is reserved. It must always be written with the value 0.</p>
5 FCE	<p>Flow Control Enable</p> <p>If set, the receiver detects PAUSE frames. Upon PAUSE frame detection, the transmitter stops transmitting data frames for a given duration.</p>
4 BC_REJ	<p>Broadcast Frame Reject</p> <p>If set, frames with destination address (DA) equal to 0xFFFF_FFFF_FFFF are rejected unless the PROM field is set. If BC_REJ and PROM are set, frames with broadcast DA are accepted and the MISS (M) is set in the receive buffer descriptor.</p>
3 PROM	<p>Promiscuous Mode</p> <p>All frames are accepted regardless of address matching.</p> <p>0 Disabled. 1 Enabled.</p>
2 MII_MODE	<p>Media Independent Interface Mode</p> <p>This field must always be set.</p> <p>0 Reserved. 1 MII or RMII mode, as indicated by the RMII_MODE field.</p>
1 DRT	<p>Disable Receive On Transmit</p> <p>0 Receive path operates independently of transmit. Used for full-duplex or to monitor transmit activity in half-duplex mode. 1 Disable reception of frames while transmitting. Normally used for half-duplex mode.</p>
0 LOOP	<p>Internal Loopback</p> <p>This is an MII internal loopback, therefore MII_MODE must be written to 1 and RMII_MODE must be written to 0.</p> <p>0 Loopback disabled. 1 Transmitted frames are looped back internal to the device and transmit MII output signals are not asserted. DRT must be cleared.</p>

50.7.16 Transmit Control Register (ENET_TCR)

TCR is read/write and configures the transmit block. This register is cleared at system reset. FDEN can only be modified when ECR[ETHEREN] is cleared.

Address: 400C_0000h base + C4h offset = 400C_00C4h



ENET_TCR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–11 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
10 Reserved	This field is reserved. This field is read/write and must be set to 0.
9 CRCFWD	Forward Frame From Application With CRC

Table continues on the next page...

ENET_TCR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>0 TxBD[TC] controls whether the frame has a CRC from the application.</p> <p>1 The transmitter does not append any CRC to transmitted frames, as it is expecting a frame with CRC from the application.</p>
8 ADDINS	<p>Set MAC Address On Transmit</p> <p>0 The source MAC address is not modified by the MAC.</p> <p>1 The MAC overwrites the source MAC address with the programmed MAC address according to ADDSEL.</p>
7–5 ADDSEL	<p>Source MAC Address Select On Transmit</p> <p>If ADDINS is set, indicates the MAC address that overwrites the source MAC address.</p> <p>000 Node MAC address programmed on PADDR1/2 registers.</p> <p>100 Reserved.</p> <p>101 Reserved.</p> <p>110 Reserved.</p>
4 RFC_PAUSE	<p>Receive Frame Control Pause</p> <p>This status field is set when a full-duplex flow control pause frame is received and the transmitter pauses for the duration defined in this pause frame. This field automatically clears when the pause duration is complete.</p>
3 TFC_PAUSE	<p>Transmit Frame Control Pause</p> <p>Pauses frame transmission. When this field is set, EIR[GRA] is set. With transmission of data frames stopped, the MAC transmits a MAC control PAUSE frame. Next, the MAC clears TFC_PAUSE and resumes transmitting data frames. If the transmitter pauses due to user assertion of GTS or reception of a PAUSE frame, the MAC may continue transmitting a MAC control PAUSE frame.</p> <p>0 No PAUSE frame transmitted.</p> <p>1 The MAC stops transmission of data frames after the current transmission is complete.</p>
2 FDEN	<p>Full-Duplex Enable</p> <p>If this field is set, frames transmit independent of carrier sense and collision inputs. Only modify this bit when ECR[ETHEREN] is cleared.</p>
1 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This write-only field is reserved. It must always be written with the value 0.</p>
0 GTS	<p>Graceful Transmit Stop</p> <p>When this field is set, MAC stops transmission after any frame currently transmitted is complete and EIR[GRA] is set. If frame transmission is not currently underway, the GRA interrupt is asserted immediately. After transmission finishes, clear GTS to restart. The next frame in the transmit FIFO is then transmitted. If an early collision occurs during transmission when GTS is set, transmission stops after the collision. The frame is transmitted again after GTS is cleared. There may be old frames in the transmit FIFO that transmit when GTS is reasserted. To avoid this, clear ECR[ETHEREN] following the GRA interrupt.</p>

50.7.17 Physical Address Lower Register (ENET_PALR)

PALR contains the lower 32 bits (bytes 0, 1, 2, 3) of the 48-bit address used in the address recognition process to compare with the destination address (DA) field of receive frames with an individual DA. In addition, this register is used in bytes 0 through 3 of the six-byte source address field when transmitting PAUSE frames.

Address: 400C_0000h base + E4h offset = 400C_00E4h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_PALR field descriptions

Field	Description
PADDR1	Pause Address Bytes 0 (bits 31:24), 1 (bits 23:16), 2 (bits 15:8), and 3 (bits 7:0) of the 6-byte individual address are used for exact match and the source address field in PAUSE frames.

50.7.18 Physical Address Upper Register (ENET_PAUR)

PAUR contains the upper 16 bits (bytes 4 and 5) of the 48-bit address used in the address recognition process to compare with the destination address (DA) field of receive frames with an individual DA. In addition, this register is used in bytes 4 and 5 of the six-byte source address field when transmitting PAUSE frames. Bits 15:0 of PAUR contain a constant type field (0x8808) for transmission of PAUSE frames.

Address: 400C_0000h base + E8h offset = 400C_00E8h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0

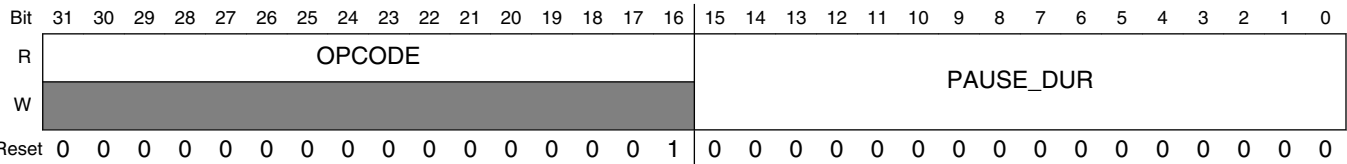
ENET_PAUR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 PADDR2	Bytes 4 (bits 31:24) and 5 (bits 23:16) of the 6-byte individual address used for exact match, and the source address field in PAUSE frames.
TYPE	Type Field In PAUSE Frames These fields have a constant value of 0x8808.

50.7.19 Opcode/Pause Duration Register (ENET_OPD)

OPD is read/write accessible. This register contains the 16-bit opcode and 16-bit pause duration fields used in transmission of a PAUSE frame. The opcode field is a constant value, 0x0001. When another node detects a PAUSE frame, that node pauses transmission for the duration specified in the pause duration field. The lower 16 bits of this register are not reset and you must initialize it.

Address: 400C_0000h base + ECh offset = 400C_00ECh



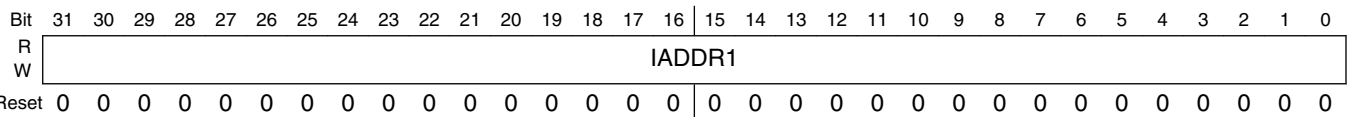
ENET_OPD field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 OPCODE	Opcode Field In PAUSE Frames These fields have a constant value of 0x0001.
PAUSE_DUR	Pause Duration Pause duration field used in PAUSE frames.

50.7.20 Descriptor Individual Upper Address Register (ENET_IAUR)

IAUR contains the upper 32 bits of the 64-bit individual address hash table. The address recognition process uses this table to check for a possible match with the destination address (DA) field of receive frames with an individual DA. This register is not reset and you must initialize it.

Address: 400C_0000h base + 118h offset = 400C_0118h



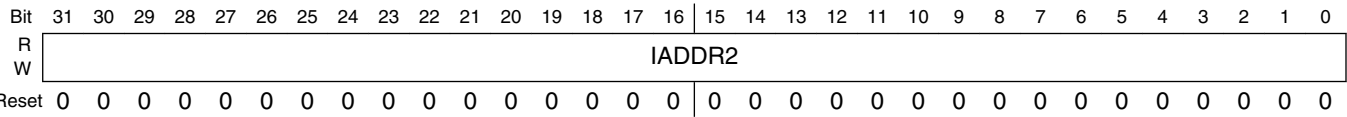
ENET_IAUR field descriptions

Field	Description
IADDR1	Contains the upper 32 bits of the 64-bit hash table used in the address recognition process for receive frames with a unicast address. Bit 31 of IADDR1 contains hash index bit 63. Bit 0 of IADDR1 contains hash index bit 32.

50.7.21 Descriptor Individual Lower Address Register (ENET_IALR)

IALR contains the lower 32 bits of the 64-bit individual address hash table. The address recognition process uses this table to check for a possible match with the DA field of receive frames with an individual DA. This register is not reset and you must initialize it.

Address: 400C_0000h base + 11Ch offset = 400C_011Ch



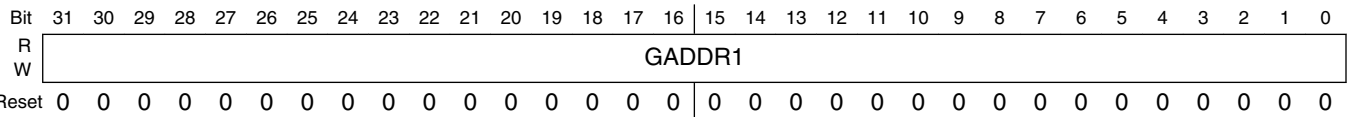
ENET_IALR field descriptions

Field	Description
IADDR2	Contains the lower 32 bits of the 64-bit hash table used in the address recognition process for receive frames with a unicast address. Bit 31 of IADDR2 contains hash index bit 31. Bit 0 of IADDR2 contains hash index bit 0.

50.7.22 Descriptor Group Upper Address Register (ENET_GAUR)

GAUR contains the upper 32 bits of the 64-bit hash table used in the address recognition process for receive frames with a multicast address. You must initialize this register.

Address: 400C_0000h base + 120h offset = 400C_0120h



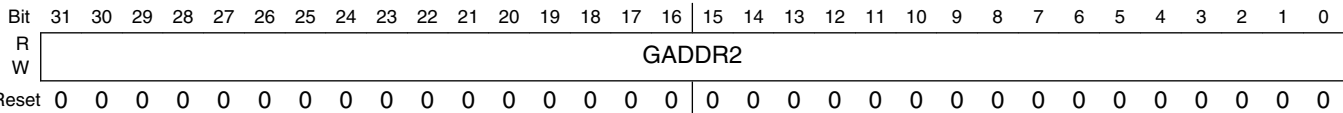
ENET_GAUR field descriptions

Field	Description
GADDR1	Contains the upper 32 bits of the 64-bit hash table used in the address recognition process for receive frames with a multicast address. Bit 31 of GADDR1 contains hash index bit 63. Bit 0 of GADDR1 contains hash index bit 32.

50.7.23 Descriptor Group Lower Address Register (ENET_GALR)

GALR contains the lower 32 bits of the 64-bit hash table used in the address recognition process for receive frames with a multicast address. You must initialize this register.

Address: 400C_0000h base + 124h offset = 400C_0124h



ENET_GALR field descriptions

Field	Description
GADDR2	Contains the lower 32 bits of the 64-bit hash table used in the address recognition process for receive frames with a multicast address. Bit 31 of GADDR2 contains hash index bit 31. Bit 0 of GADDR2 contains hash index bit 0.

50.7.24 Transmit FIFO Watermark Register (ENET_TFWR)

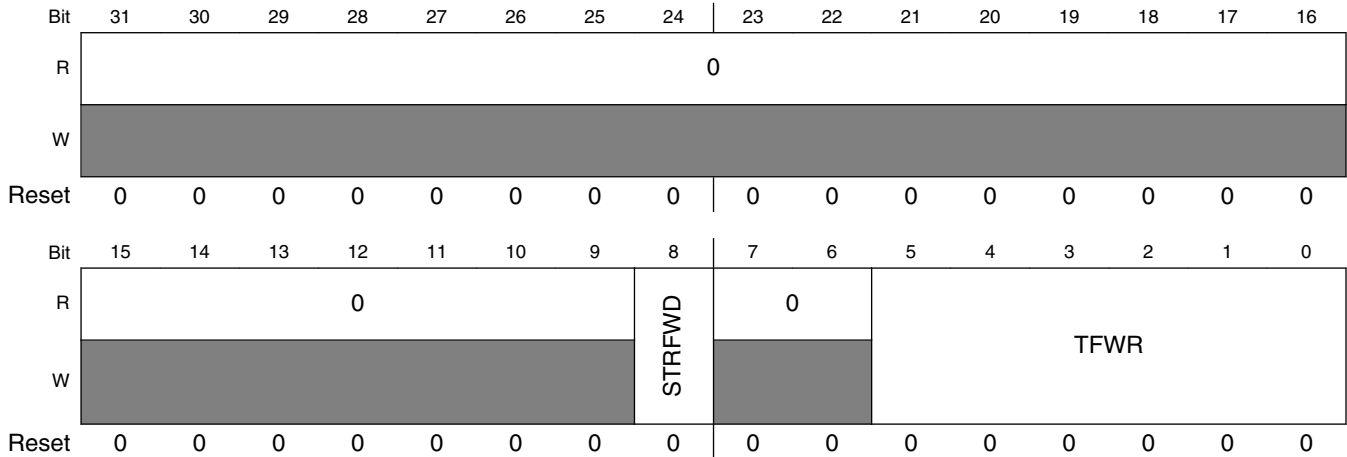
If TFWR[STRFWD] is cleared, TFWR[TFWR] controls the amount of data required in the transmit FIFO before transmission of a frame can begin. This allows you to minimize transmit latency (TFWR = 00 or 01) or allow for larger bus access latency (TFWR = 11) due to contention for the system bus. Setting the watermark to a high value minimizes the risk of transmit FIFO underrun due to contention for the system bus. The byte counts associated with the TFWR field may need to be modified to match a given system requirement, for example, worst-case bus access latency by the transmit data uDMA channel.

When the FIFO level reaches the value the TFWR field and when the STR_FWD is set to '0', the MAC transmit control logic starts frame transmission even before the end-of-frame is available in the FIFO (cut-through operation).

If a complete frame has a size smaller than the threshold programmed with TFWR, the MAC also transmits the Frame to the line.

To enable store and forward on the Transmit path, set STR_FWD to '1'. In this case, the MAC starts to transmit data only when a complete frame is stored in the Transmit FIFO.

Address: 400C_0000h base + 144h offset = 400C_0144h



ENET_TFWR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–9 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
8 STRFWD	Store And Forward Enable 0 Reset. The transmission start threshold is programmed in TFWR[TFWR]. 1 Enabled.
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
TFWR	Transmit FIFO Write If TFWR[STRFWD] is cleared, this field indicates the number of bytes, in steps of 64 bytes, written to the transmit FIFO before transmission of a frame begins. NOTE: If a frame with less than the threshold is written, it is still sent independently of this threshold setting. The threshold is relevant only if the frame is larger than the threshold given. 000000 64 bytes written. 000001 64 bytes written. 000010 128 bytes written. 000011 192 bytes written. 011111 1984 bytes written.

50.7.25 Receive Descriptor Ring Start Register (ENET_RDSR)

RDSR points to the beginning of the circular receive buffer descriptor queue in external memory. This pointer must be 64-bit aligned (bits 2–0 must be zero); however, it is recommended to be 128-bit aligned, that is, evenly divisible by 16.

NOTE

This register must be initialized prior to operation

Block diagram

Address: 400C_0000h base + 180h offset = 400C_0180h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	R_DES_START															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	R_DES_START														0	
W															0	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_RDSR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–3 R_DES_START	Pointer to the beginning of the receive buffer descriptor queue.
2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This write-only field is reserved. It must always be written with the value 0.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

50.7.26 Transmit Buffer Descriptor Ring Start Register (ENET_TDSR)

TDSR provides a pointer to the beginning of the circular transmit buffer descriptor queue in external memory. This pointer must be 64-bit aligned (bits 2–0 must be zero); however, it is recommended to be 128-bit aligned, that is, evenly divisible by 16.

NOTE

This register must be initialized prior to operation.

Address: 400C_0000h base + 184h offset = 400C_0184h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	X_DES_START															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	X_DES_START														0	
W															0	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_TDSR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–3 X_DES_START	Pointer to the beginning of the transmit buffer descriptor queue.

Table continues on the next page...

ENET_TDSR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This write-only field is reserved. It must always be written with the value 0.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

50.7.27 Maximum Receive Buffer Size Register (ENET_MRBR)

The MRBR is a user-programmable register that dictates the maximum size of all receive buffers. This value should take into consideration that the receive CRC is always written into the last receive buffer.

- R_BUF_SIZE is concatenated with the four least-significant bits of this register and are used as the maximum receive buffer size.
- To allow one maximum size frame per buffer, MRBR must be set to RCR[MAX_FL] or larger.
- To properly align the buffer, MRBR must be evenly divisible by 16. To ensure this, the lower four bits are set to zero by the device.
- To minimize bus usage (descriptor fetches), set MRBR greater than or equal to 256 bytes.

NOTE

This register must be initialized before operation.

Address: 400C_0000h base + 188h offset = 400C_0188h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																R_BUF_SIZE								0							
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

ENET_MRBR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–11 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
10–4 R_BUF_SIZE	Receive buffer size in bytes. This value, concatenated with the four least-significant bits of this register (which are always zero), is the effective maximum receive buffer size.
Reserved	This field, which is always zero, is the four least-significant bits of the maximum receive buffer size. This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

50.7.28 Receive FIFO Section Full Threshold (ENET_RSFL)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 190h offset = 400C_0190h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																RX_SECTION_FULL															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_RSFL field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
RX_SECTION_FULL	Value Of Receive FIFO Section Full Threshold Value, in 64-bit words, of the receive FIFO section full threshold. Clear this field to enable store and forward on the RX FIFO. When programming a value greater than 0 (cut-through operation), it must be greater than RAEM[RX_ALMOST_EMPTY]. When the FIFO level reaches the value in this field, data is available in the Receive FIFO (cut-through operation).

50.7.29 Receive FIFO Section Empty Threshold (ENET_RSEM)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 194h offset = 400C_0194h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0												STAT_SECTION_EMPTY				0								RX_SECTION_EMPTY							
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_RSEM field descriptions

Field	Description
31–21 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
20–16 STAT_SECTION_EMPTY	RX Status FIFO Section Empty Threshold Defines number of frames in the receive FIFO, independent of its size, that can be accepted. If the limit is reached, reception will continue normally, however a pause frame will be triggered to indicate a possible congestion to the remote device to avoid FIFO overflow. A value of 0 disables automatic pause frame generation
15–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
RX_SECTION_EMPTY	Value Of The Receive FIFO Section Empty Threshold Value, in 64-bit words, of the receive FIFO section empty threshold. When the FIFO has reached this level, a pause frame will be issued.

Table continues on the next page...

ENET_RSEM field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>A value of 0 disables automatic pause frame generation.</p> <p>When the FIFO level goes below the value programmed in this field, an XON pause frame is issued to indicate the FIFO congestion is cleared to the remote Ethernet client.</p> <p>NOTE: The section-empty threshold indications from both FIFOs are OR'ed to cause XOFF pause frame generation.</p>

50.7.30 Receive FIFO Almost Empty Threshold (ENET_RAEM)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 198h offset = 400C_0198h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																RX_ALMOST_EMPTY															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	

ENET_RAEM field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
RX_ALMOST_EMPTY	<p>Value Of The Receive FIFO Almost Empty Threshold</p> <p>Value, in 64-bit words, of the receive FIFO almost empty threshold. When the FIFO level reaches the value programmed in this field and the end-of-frame has not been received for the frame yet, the core receive read control stops FIFO read (and subsequently stops transferring data to the MAC client application). It continues to deliver the frame, if again more data than the threshold or the end-of-frame is available in the FIFO. A minimum value of 4 should be set.</p>

50.7.31 Receive FIFO Almost Full Threshold (ENET_RAFL)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 19Ch offset = 400C_019Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																RX_ALMOST_FULL															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	

ENET_RAFL field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
RX_ALMOST_FULL	Value Of The Receive FIFO Almost Full Threshold

Table continues on the next page...

ENET_RAFL field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Value, in 64-bit words, of the receive FIFO almost full threshold. When the FIFO level comes close to the maximum, so that there is no more space for at least RX_ALMOST_FULL number of words, the MAC stops writing data in the FIFO and truncates the received frame to avoid FIFO overflow. The corresponding error status will be set when the frame is delivered to the application. A minimum value of 4 should be set.

50.7.32 Transmit FIFO Section Empty Threshold (ENET_TSEM)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 1A0h offset = 400C_01A0h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																TX_SECTION_EMPTY															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

ENET_TSEM field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
TX_SECTION_EMPTY	Value Of The Transmit FIFO Section Empty Threshold Value, in 64-bit words, of the transmit FIFO section empty threshold. See Transmit FIFO for more information.

50.7.33 Transmit FIFO Almost Empty Threshold (ENET_TAEM)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 1A4h offset = 400C_01A4h

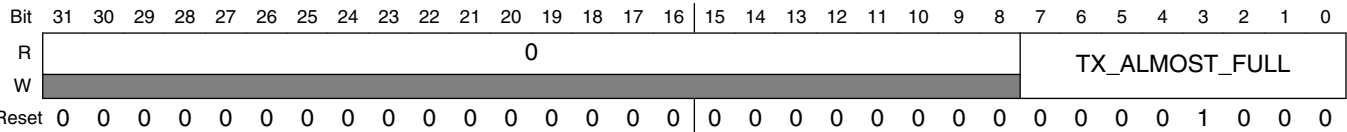
Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																TX_ALMOST_EMPTY															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0

ENET_TAEM field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
TX_ALMOST_EMPTY	Value of Transmit FIFO Almost Empty Threshold Value, in 64-bit words, of the transmit FIFO almost empty threshold. When the FIFO level reaches the value programmed in this field, and no end-of-frame is available for the frame, the MAC transmit logic, to avoid FIFO underflow, stops reading the FIFO and transmits a frame with an MII error indication. See Transmit FIFO for more information. A minimum value of 4 should be set.

50.7.34 Transmit FIFO Almost Full Threshold (ENET_TAFL)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 1A8h offset = 400C_01A8h

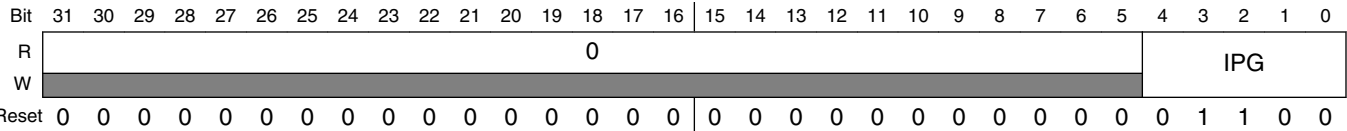


ENET_TAFL field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
TX_ALMOST_FULL	<p>Value Of The Transmit FIFO Almost Full Threshold</p> <p>Value, in 64-bit words, of the transmit FIFO almost full threshold. A minimum value of six is required . A recommended value of at least 8 should be set allowing a latency of two clock cycles to the application. If more latency is required the value can be increased as necessary (latency = TAFL - 5).</p> <p>When the FIFO level comes close to the maximum, so that there is no more space for at least TX_ALMOST_FULL number of words, the pin ff_tx_rdy is deasserted. If the application does not react on this signal, the FIFO write control logic, to avoid FIFO overflow, truncates the current frame and sets the error status. As a result, the frame will be transmitted with an GMII/MII error indication. See Transmit FIFO for more information.</p> <p>NOTE: A FIFO overflow is a fatal error and requires a global reset on the transmit datapath or at least deassertion of ETHEREN.</p>

50.7.35 Transmit Inter-Packet Gap (ENET_TIPG)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 1ACh offset = 400C_01ACh

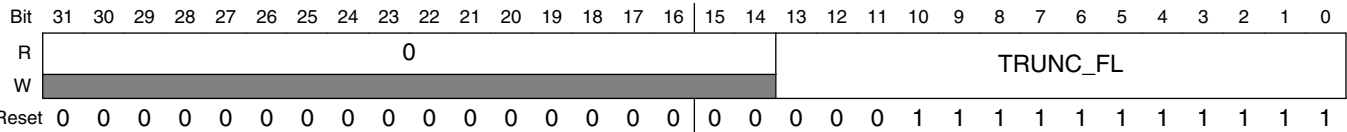


ENET_TIPG field descriptions

Field	Description
31–5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
IPG	<p>Transmit Inter-Packet Gap</p> <p>Indicates the IPG, in bytes, between transmitted frames. Valid values range from 8 to 26. If the written value is less than 8 or greater than 26, the internal (effective) IPG is 12.</p> <p>NOTE: The IPG value read will be the value that was written, even if it is out of range.</p>

50.7.36 Frame Truncation Length (ENET_FTRL)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 1B0h offset = 400C_01B0h



ENET_FTRL field descriptions

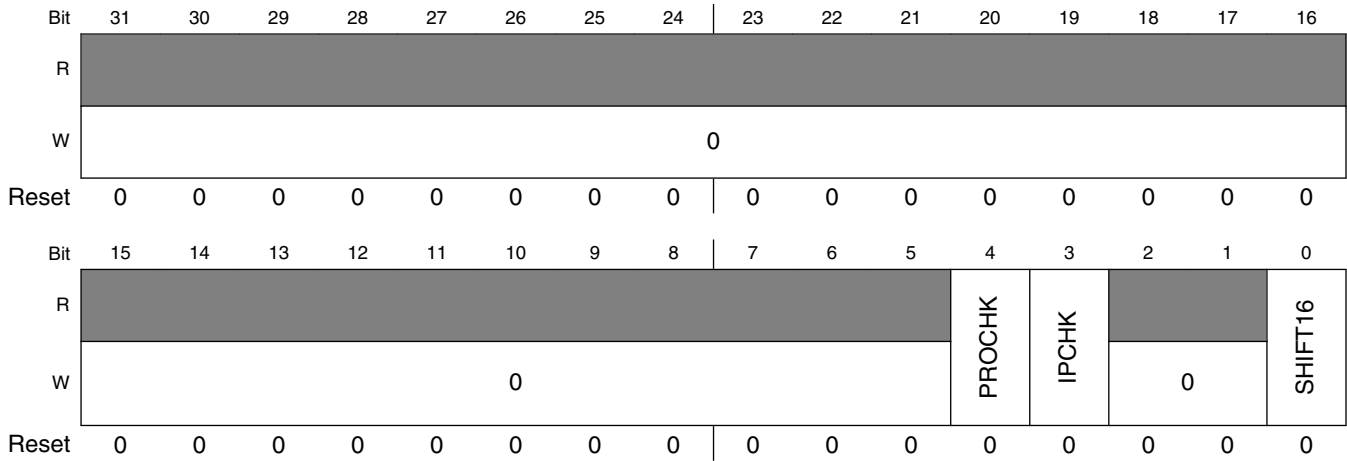
Field	Description
31–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
TRUNC_FL	Frame Truncation Length Indicates the value a receive frame is truncated, if it is greater than this value. Must be greater than or equal to RCR[MAX_FL]. NOTE: Truncation happens at TRUNC_FL. However, when truncation occurs, the application (FIFO) may receive less data, guaranteeing that it never receives more than the set limit.

50.7.37 Transmit Accelerator Function Configuration (ENET_TACC)

TACC controls accelerator actions when sending frames. The register can be changed before or after each frame, but it must remain unmodified during frame writes into the transmit FIFO.

The TFWR[STRFWD] field must be set to use the checksum feature.

Address: 400C_0000h base + 1C0h offset = 400C_01C0h



ENET_TACC field descriptions

Field	Description
31–5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This write-only field is reserved. It must always be written with the value 0.
4 PROCHK	Enables insertion of protocol checksum. 0 Checksum not inserted. 1 If an IP frame with a known protocol is transmitted, the checksum is inserted automatically into the frame. The checksum field must be cleared. The other frames are not modified.
3 IPCHK	Enables insertion of IP header checksum. 0 Checksum is not inserted. 1 If an IP frame is transmitted, the checksum is inserted automatically. The IP header checksum field must be cleared. If a non-IP frame is transmitted the frame is not modified.
2–1 Reserved	This field is reserved. This write-only field is reserved. It must always be written with the value 0.
0 SHIFT16	TX FIFO Shift-16 0 Disabled. 1 Indicates to the transmit data FIFO that the written frames contain two additional octets before the frame data. This means the actual frame begins at bit 16 of the first word written into the FIFO. This function allows putting the frame payload on a 32-bit boundary in memory, as the 14-byte Ethernet header is extended to a 16-byte header.

50.7.38 Receive Accelerator Function Configuration (ENET_RACC)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 1C4h offset = 400C_01C4h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R																
W	0															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
R									SHIFT16	LINEDIS					PRODIS	IPDIS	PADREM
W	0										0						
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

ENET_RACC field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This write-only field is reserved. It must always be written with the value 0.

Table continues on the next page...

ENET_RACC field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
7 SHIFT16	<p>RX FIFO Shift-16</p> <p>When this field is set, the actual frame data starts at bit 16 of the first word read from the RX FIFO aligning the Ethernet payload on a 32-bit boundary.</p> <p>NOTE: This function only affects the FIFO storage and has no influence on the statistics, which use the actual length of the frame received.</p> <p>0 Disabled.</p> <p>1 Instructs the MAC to write two additional bytes in front of each frame received into the RX FIFO.</p>
6 LINEDIS	<p>Enable Discard Of Frames With MAC Layer Errors</p> <p>0 Frames with errors are not discarded.</p> <p>1 Any frame received with a CRC, length, or PHY error is automatically discarded and not forwarded to the user application interface.</p>
5–3 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This write-only field is reserved. It must always be written with the value 0.</p>
2 PRODIS	<p>Enable Discard Of Frames With Wrong Protocol Checksum</p> <p>0 Frames with wrong checksum are not discarded.</p> <p>1 If a TCP/IP, UDP/IP, or ICMP/IP frame is received that has a wrong TCP, UDP, or ICMP checksum, the frame is discarded. Discarding is only available when the RX FIFO operates in store and forward mode (RSFL cleared).</p>
1 IPDIS	<p>Enable Discard Of Frames With Wrong IPv4 Header Checksum</p> <p>0 Frames with wrong IPv4 header checksum are not discarded.</p> <p>1 If an IPv4 frame is received with a mismatching header checksum, the frame is discarded. IPv6 has no header checksum and is not affected by this setting. Discarding is only available when the RX FIFO operates in store and forward mode (RSFL cleared).</p>
0 PADREM	<p>Enable Padding Removal For Short IP Frames</p> <p>0 Padding not removed.</p> <p>1 Any bytes following the IP payload section of the frame are removed from the frame.</p>

50.7.39 Reserved Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_T_DROP)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 200h offset = 400C_0200h

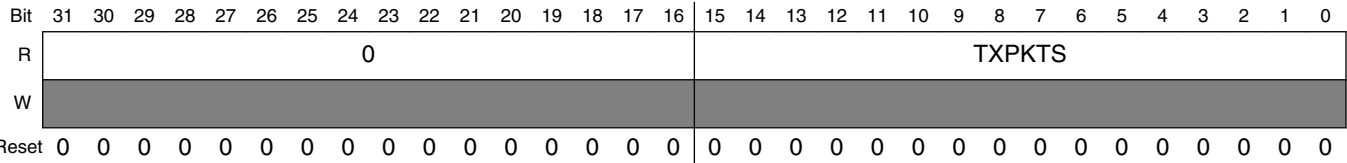
Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved																															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_RMON_T_DROP field descriptions

Field	Description
Reserved	<p>This read-only field always has the value 0.</p> <p>This field is reserved.</p>

50.7.40 Tx Packet Count Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_T_PACKETS)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 204h offset = 400C_0204h



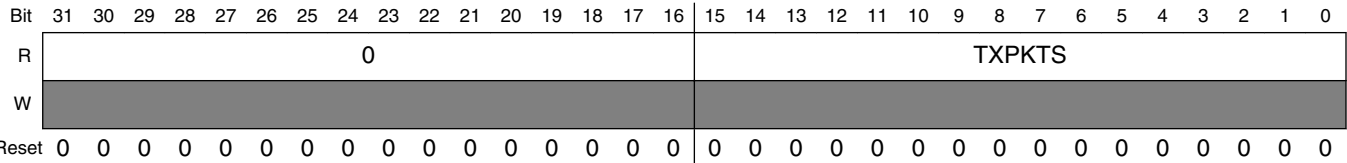
ENET_RMON_T_PACKETS field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
TXPKTS	Packet count Transmit packet count

50.7.41 Tx Broadcast Packets Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_T_BC_PKT)

RMON Tx Broadcast Packets

Address: 400C_0000h base + 208h offset = 400C_0208h

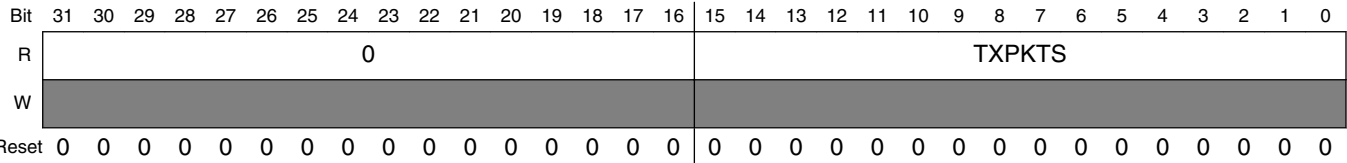


ENET_RMON_T_BC_PKT field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
TXPKTS	Broadcast packets

50.7.42 Tx Multicast Packets Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_T_MC_PKT)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 20Ch offset = 400C_020Ch

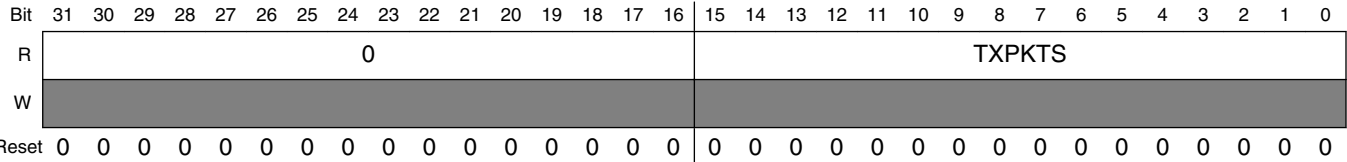


ENET_RMON_T_MC_PKT field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
TXPKTS	Multicast packets

50.7.43 Tx Packets with CRC/Align Error Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_T_CRC_ALIGN)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 210h offset = 400C_0210h

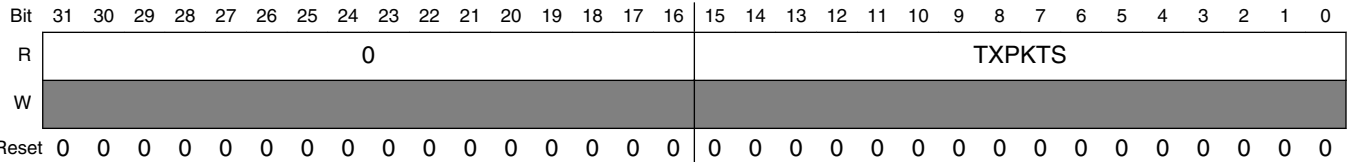


ENET_RMON_T_CRC_ALIGN field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
TXPKTS	Packets with CRC/align error

50.7.44 Tx Packets Less Than Bytes and Good CRC Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_T_UNDERSIZE)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 214h offset = 400C_0214h



ENET_RMON_T_UNDERSIZE field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
TXPKTS	Number of transmit packets less than 64 bytes with good CRC

50.7.45 Tx Packets GT MAX_FL bytes and Good CRC Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_T_OVERSIZE)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 218h offset = 400C_0218h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																TXPKTS															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_RMON_T_OVERSIZE field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
TXPKTS	Number of transmit packets greater than MAX_FL bytes with good CRC

50.7.46 Tx Packets Less Than 64 Bytes and Bad CRC Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_T_FRAG)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 21Ch offset = 400C_021Ch

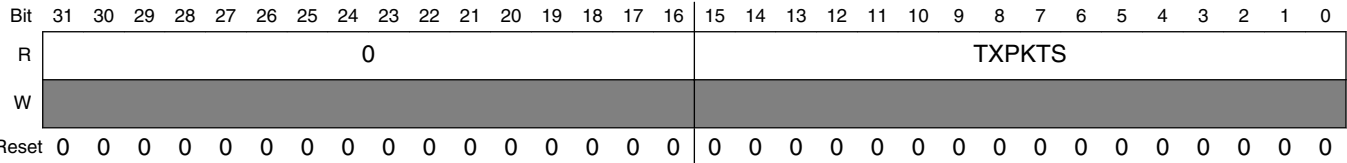
Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																TXPKTS															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_RMON_T_FRAG field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
TXPKTS	Number of packets less than 64 bytes with bad CRC

50.7.47 Tx Packets Greater Than MAX_FL bytes and Bad CRC Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_T_JAB)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 220h offset = 400C_0220h

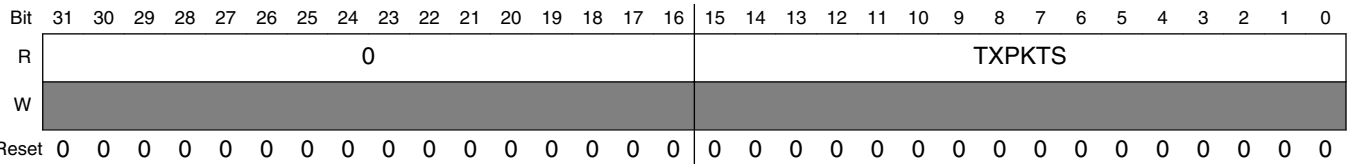


ENET_RMON_T_JAB field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
TXPKTS	Number of transmit packets greater than MAX_FL bytes and bad CRC

50.7.48 Tx Collision Count Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_T_COL)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 224h offset = 400C_0224h



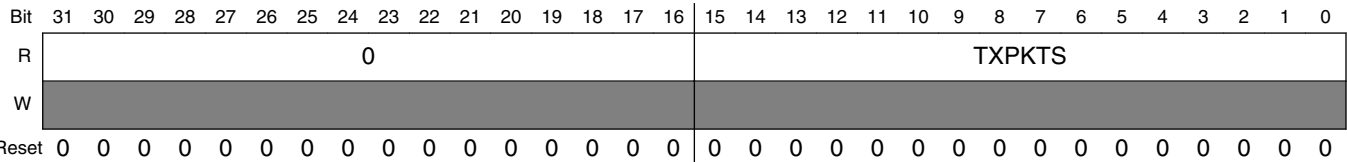
ENET_RMON_T_COL field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
TXPKTS	Number of transmit collisions

50.7.49 Tx 64-Byte Packets Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_T_P64)

.

Address: 400C_0000h base + 228h offset = 400C_0228h



ENET_RMON_T_P64 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
TXPKTS	Number of 64-byte transmit packets

50.7.50 Tx 65- to 127-byte Packets Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_T_P65TO127)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 22Ch offset = 400C_022Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																TXPKTS															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_RMON_T_P65TO127 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
TXPKTS	Number of 65- to 127-byte transmit packets

50.7.51 Tx 128- to 255-byte Packets Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_T_P128TO255)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 230h offset = 400C_0230h

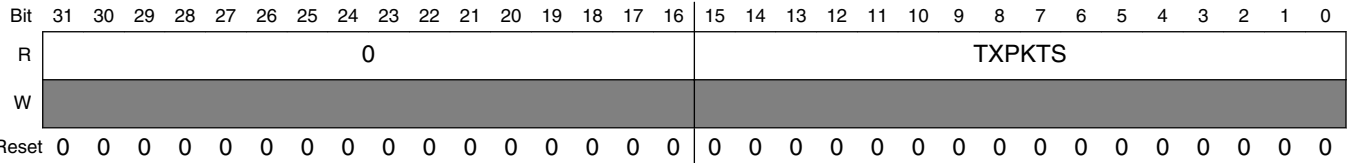
Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																TXPKTS															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_RMON_T_P128TO255 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
TXPKTS	Number of 128- to 255-byte transmit packets

50.7.52 Tx 256- to 511-byte Packets Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_T_P256TO511)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 234h offset = 400C_0234h

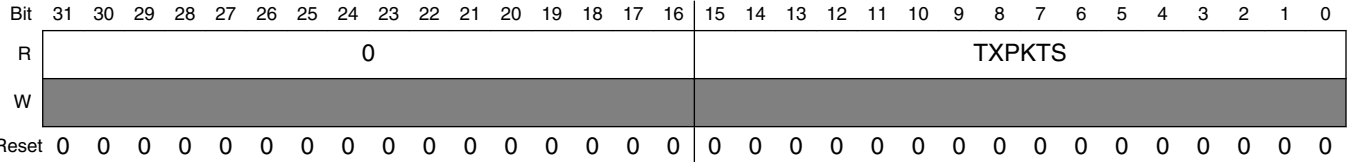


ENET_RMON_T_P256TO511 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
TXPKTS	Number of 256- to 511-byte transmit packets

50.7.53 Tx 512- to 1023-byte Packets Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_T_P512TO1023)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 238h offset = 400C_0238h



ENET_RMON_T_P512TO1023 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
TXPKTS	Number of 512- to 1023-byte transmit packets

50.7.54 Tx 1024- to 2047-byte Packets Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_T_P1024TO2047)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 23Ch offset = 400C_023Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																TXPKTS															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_RMON_T_P1024TO2047 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
TXPKTS	Number of 1024- to 2047-byte transmit packets

50.7.55 Tx Packets Greater Than 2048 Bytes Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_T_P_GTE2048)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 240h offset = 400C_0240h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																TXPKTS															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_RMON_T_P_GTE2048 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
TXPKTS	Number of transmit packets greater than 2048 bytes

50.7.56 Tx Octets Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_T_OCTETS)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 244h offset = 400C_0244h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	TXOCTS																															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_RMON_T_OCTETS field descriptions

Field	Description
TXOCTS	Number of transmit octets

50.7.57 Reserved Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_T_DROP)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 248h offset = 400C_0248h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved																															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

ENET_IEEE_T_DROP field descriptions

Field	Description
Reserved	This read-only field always has the value 0. This field is reserved.

50.7.58 Frames Transmitted OK Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_T_FRAME_OK)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 24Ch offset = 400C_024Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																COUNT															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

ENET_IEEE_T_FRAME_OK field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
COUNT	Number of frames transmitted OK NOTE: Does not increment for the broadcast frames when broadcast reject is enabled and promiscuous mode is disabled within the receive control register (RCR).

50.7.59 Frames Transmitted with Single Collision Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_T_1COL)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 250h offset = 400C_0250h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																COUNT															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_IEEE_T_1COL field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
COUNT	Number of frames transmitted with one collision

50.7.60 Frames Transmitted with Multiple Collisions Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_T_MCOL)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 254h offset = 400C_0254h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																COUNT															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_IEEE_T_MCOL field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
COUNT	Number of frames transmitted with multiple collisions

50.7.61 Frames Transmitted after Deferral Delay Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_T_DEF)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 258h offset = 400C_0258h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																COUNT															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_IEEE_T_DEF field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
COUNT	Number of frames transmitted with deferral delay

50.7.62 Frames Transmitted with Late Collision Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_T_LCOL)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 25Ch offset = 400C_025Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																COUNT															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_IEEE_T_LCOL field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
COUNT	Number of frames transmitted with late collision

50.7.63 Frames Transmitted with Excessive Collisions Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_T_EXCOL)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 260h offset = 400C_0260h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																COUNT															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_IEEE_T_EXCOL field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
COUNT	Number of frames transmitted with excessive collisions

50.7.64 Frames Transmitted with Tx FIFO Underrun Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_T_MACERR)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 264h offset = 400C_0264h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																COUNT															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_IEEE_T_MACERR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
COUNT	Number of frames transmitted with transmit FIFO underrun

50.7.65 Frames Transmitted with Carrier Sense Error Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_T_CSERR)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 268h offset = 400C_0268h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																COUNT															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_IEEE_T_CSERR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
COUNT	Number of frames transmitted with carrier sense error

50.7.66 Reserved Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_T_SQE)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 26Ch offset = 400C_026Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																COUNT															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_IEEE_T_SQE field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
COUNT	This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0. NOTE: Counter not implemented as no SQE information is available.

50.7.67 Flow Control Pause Frames Transmitted Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_T_FDXFC)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 270h offset = 400C_0270h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																COUNT															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

ENET_IEEE_T_FDXFC field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
COUNT	Number of flow-control pause frames transmitted

50.7.68 Octet Count for Frames Transmitted w/o Error Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_T_OCTETS_OK)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 274h offset = 400C_0274h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	COUNT																															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_IEEE_T_OCTETS_OK field descriptions

Field	Description
COUNT	Octet count for frames transmitted without error NOTE Counts total octets (includes header and FCS fields).

50.7.69 Rx Packet Count Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_R_PACKETS)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 284h offset = 400C_0284h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																COUNT															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_RMON_R_PACKETS field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
COUNT	Number of packets received

50.7.70 Rx Broadcast Packets Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_R_BC_PKT)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 288h offset = 400C_0288h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																COUNT															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_RMON_R_BC_PKT field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
COUNT	Number of receive broadcast packets

50.7.71 Rx Multicast Packets Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_R_MC_PKT)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 28Ch offset = 400C_028Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																COUNT															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_RMON_R_MC_PKT field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
COUNT	Number of receive multicast packets

50.7.72 Rx Packets with CRC/Align Error Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_R_CRC_ALIGN)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 290h offset = 400C_0290h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																COUNT															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_RMON_R_CRC_ALIGN field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
COUNT	Number of receive packets with CRC or align error

50.7.73 Rx Packets with Less Than 64 Bytes and Good CRC Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_R_UNDERSIZE)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 294h offset = 400C_0294h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																COUNT															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_RMON_R_UNDERSIZE field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
COUNT	Number of receive packets with less than 64 bytes and good CRC

50.7.74 Rx Packets Greater Than MAX_FL and Good CRC Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_R_OVERSIZE)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 298h offset = 400C_0298h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																COUNT															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_RMON_R_OVERSIZE field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
COUNT	Number of receive packets greater than MAX_FL and good CRC

50.7.75 Rx Packets Less Than 64 Bytes and Bad CRC Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_R_FRAG)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 29Ch offset = 400C_029Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																COUNT															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_RMON_R_FRAG field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
COUNT	Number of receive packets with less than 64 bytes and bad CRC

50.7.76 Rx Packets Greater Than MAX_FL Bytes and Bad CRC Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_R_JAB)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 2A0h offset = 400C_02A0h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																COUNT															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_RMON_R_JAB field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
COUNT	Number of receive packets greater than MAX_FL and bad CRC

50.7.77 Reserved Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_R_RESVD_0)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 2A4h offset = 400C_02A4h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																0															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

ENET_RMON_R_RESVD_0 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

50.7.78 Rx 64-Byte Packets Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_R_P64)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 2A8h offset = 400C_02A8h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																COUNT															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

ENET_RMON_R_P64 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
COUNT	Number of 64-byte receive packets

50.7.79 Rx 65- to 127-Byte Packets Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_R_P65TO127)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 2ACh offset = 400C_02ACh

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																COUNT															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_RMON_R_P65TO127 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
COUNT	Number of 65- to 127-byte recieve packets

50.7.80 Rx 128- to 255-Byte Packets Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_R_P128TO255)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 2B0h offset = 400C_02B0h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																COUNT															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_RMON_R_P128TO255 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
COUNT	Number of 128- to 255-byte recieve packets

50.7.81 Rx 256- to 511-Byte Packets Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_R_P256TO511)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 2B4h offset = 400C_02B4h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																COUNT															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_RMON_R_P256TO511 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
COUNT	Number of 256- to 511-byte receive packets

50.7.82 Rx 512- to 1023-Byte Packets Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_R_P512TO1023)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 2B8h offset = 400C_02B8h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																COUNT															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_RMON_R_P512TO1023 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
COUNT	Number of 512- to 1023-byte receive packets

50.7.83 Rx 1024- to 2047-Byte Packets Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_R_P1024TO2047)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 2BCh offset = 400C_02BCh

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																COUNT															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_RMON_R_P1024TO2047 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
COUNT	Number of 1024- to 2047-byte receive packets

50.7.84 Rx Packets Greater than 2048 Bytes Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_R_P_GTE2048)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 2C0h offset = 400C_02C0h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																COUNT															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_RMON_R_P_GTE2048 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
COUNT	Number of greater-than-2048-byte receive packets

50.7.85 Rx Octets Statistic Register (ENET_RMON_R_OCTETS)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 2C4h offset = 400C_02C4h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	COUNT																															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_RMON_R_OCTETS field descriptions

Field	Description
COUNT	Number of receive octets

50.7.86 Frames not Counted Correctly Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_R_DROP)

Counter increments if a frame with invalid or missing SFD character is detected and has been dropped. None of the other counters increments if this counter increments.

Address: 400C_0000h base + 2C8h offset = 400C_02C8h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																COUNT															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_IEEE_R_DROP field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
COUNT	Frame count

50.7.87 Frames Received OK Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_R_FRAME_OK)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 2CCh offset = 400C_02CCh

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																COUNT															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

ENET_IEEE_R_FRAME_OK field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
COUNT	Number of frames received OK

50.7.88 Frames Received with CRC Error Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_R_CRC)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 2D0h offset = 400C_02D0h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																COUNT															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

ENET_IEEE_R_CRC field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
COUNT	Number of frames received with CRC error

50.7.89 Frames Received with Alignment Error Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_R_ALIGN)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 2D4h offset = 400C_02D4h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																COUNT															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_IEEE_R_ALIGN field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
COUNT	Number of frames received with alignment error

50.7.90 Receive FIFO Overflow Count Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_R_MACERR)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 2D8h offset = 400C_02D8h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																COUNT															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_IEEE_R_MACERR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
COUNT	Receive FIFO overflow count

50.7.91 Flow Control Pause Frames Received Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_R_FDXFC)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 2DCh offset = 400C_02DCh

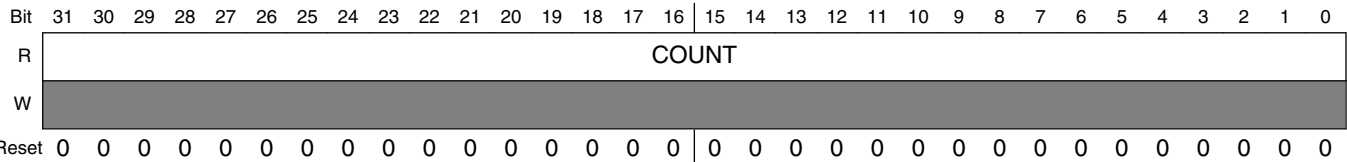
Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																COUNT															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_IEEE_R_FDXFC field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
COUNT	Number of flow-control pause frames received

50.7.92 Octet Count for Frames Received without Error Statistic Register (ENET_IEEE_R_OCTETS_OK)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 2E0h offset = 400C_02E0h



ENET_IEEE_R_OCTETS_OK field descriptions

Field	Description
COUNT	Number of octets for frames received without error NOTE: Counts total octets (includes header and FCS fields). Does not increment for the broadcast frames when broadcast reject is enabled and promiscuous mode is disabled within the receive control register (RCR).

50.7.93 Adjustable Timer Control Register (ENET_ATCR)

ATCR command fields can trigger the corresponding events directly. It is not necessary to preserve any of the configuration fields when a command field is set in the register, that is, no read-modify-write is required.

Address: 400C_0000h base + 400h offset = 400C_0400h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0		SLAVE	0	CAPTURE	0	RESTART		PINPER			PEREN	OFFRST	OFFEN		EN
W								0		0	1				0	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_ATCR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13 SLAVE	Enable Timer Slave Mode 0 The timer is active and all configuration fields in this register are relevant. 1 The internal timer is disabled and the externally provided timer value is used. All other fields, except CAPTURE, in this register have no effect. CAPTURE can still be used to capture the current timer value.
12 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
11 CAPTURE	Capture Timer Value When this field is set, all other fields are ignored during a write. This field automatically clears to 0 after the command completes. NOTE: To ensure that the correct time value is read from the ATVR register, a minimum amount of time must elapse from issuing this command to reading the ATVR register. This minimum time is defined by the greater of either six register clock cycles or six 1588/timestamp clock cycles. 0 No effect. 1 The current time is captured and can be read from the ATVR register.
10 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

Table continues on the next page...

ENET_ATCR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
9 RESTART	<p>Reset Timer</p> <p>Resets the timer to zero. This has no effect on the counter enable. If the counter is enabled when this field is set, the timer is reset to zero and starts counting from there. When set, all other fields are ignored during a write. This field automatically clears to 0 after the command completes.</p> <p>NOTE: The Reset Timer command requires at least 6 clock cycles of either the register clock or the 1588/timestamp clock, whichever is greater, to complete.</p>
8 Reserved	This field is reserved.
7 PINPER	<p>Enables event signal output assertion on period event.</p> <p>NOTE: Not all devices contain the event signal output. See the chip configuration details.</p> <p>0 Disable. 1 Enable.</p>
6 Reserved	This field is reserved.
5 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>NOTE: This field must be written always with one.</p>
4 PEREN	<p>Enable Periodical Event</p> <p>0 Disable. 1 A period event interrupt can be generated (EIR[TS_TIMER]) and the event signal output is asserted when the timer wraps around according to the periodic setting ATPER. The timer period value must be set before setting this bit.</p> <p>NOTE: Not all devices contain the event signal output. See the chip configuration details.</p>
3 OFFRST	<p>Reset Timer On Offset Event</p> <p>0 The timer is not affected and no action occurs, besides clearing OFFEN, when the offset is reached. 1 If OFFEN is set, the timer resets to zero when the offset setting is reached. The offset event does not cause a timer interrupt.</p>
2 OFFEN	<p>Enable One-Shot Offset Event</p> <p>0 Disable. 1 The timer can be reset to zero when the given offset time is reached (offset event). The field is cleared when the offset event is reached, so no further event occurs until the field is set again. The timer offset value must be set before setting this field.</p>
1 Reserved	This field is reserved.
0 EN	<p>Enable Timer</p> <p>0 The timer stops at the current value. 1 The timer starts incrementing.</p>

50.7.94 Timer Value Register (ENET_ATVR)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 404h offset = 400C_0404h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_ATVR field descriptions

Field	Description
ATIME	A write sets the timer. A read returns the last captured value. To read the current value, issue a capture command (i.e., set ATCR[CAPTURE]) prior to reading this register.

50.7.95 Timer Offset Register (ENET_ATOFF)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 408h offset = 400C_0408h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_ATOFF field descriptions

Field	Description
OFFSET	Offset value for one-shot event generation. When the timer reaches the value, an event can be generated to reset the counter. If the increment value in ATINC is given in true nanoseconds, this value is also given in true nanoseconds.

50.7.96 Timer Period Register (ENET_ATPER)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 40Ch offset = 400C_040Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																
	PERIOD																															
Reset	0	0	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	0	1	1	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_ATPER field descriptions

Field	Description
PERIOD	Value for generating periodic events. Each instance the timer reaches this value, the period event occurs and the timer restarts. If the increment value in ATINC is given in true nanoseconds, this value is also given in true nanoseconds. The value should be initialized to 1,000,000,000 (1×10 ⁹) to represent a timer wrap around of one second. The increment value set in ATINC should be set to the true nanoseconds of the period of clock ts_clk, hence implementing a true 1 second counter.

ENET_ATPER field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	NOTE: The value of PERIOD has the following constraint: $2^{32} - \text{ENET_ATINC}[\text{INC_COR}] - 3 \times \text{ENET_ATINC}[\text{INC}] \geq \text{PERIOD} > 0.$

50.7.97 Timer Correction Register (ENET_ATCOR)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 410h offset = 400C_0410h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_ATCOR field descriptions

Field	Description
31 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
COR	Correction Counter Wrap-Around Value Defines after how many timer clock cycles (ts_clk) the correction counter should be reset and trigger a correction increment on the timer. The amount of correction is defined in ATINC[INC_CORR]. A value of 0 disables the correction counter and no corrections occur. NOTE: This value is given in clock cycles, not in nanoseconds as all other values.

50.7.98 Time-Stamping Clock Period Register (ENET_ATINC)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 414h offset = 400C_0414h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R																
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0								0							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_ATINC field descriptions

Field	Description
31–15 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
14–8 INC_CORR	Correction Increment Value This value is added every time the correction timer expires (every clock cycle given in ATCOR). A value less than INC slows down the timer. A value greater than INC speeds up the timer.
7 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
INC	Clock Period Of The Timestamping Clock (ts_clk) In Nanoseconds The timer increments by this amount each clock cycle. For example, set to 10 for 100 MHz, 8 for 125 MHz, 5 for 200 MHz. NOTE: For highest precision, use a value that is an integer fraction of the period set in ATPER.

50.7.99 Timestamp of Last Transmitted Frame (ENET_ATSTMP)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 418h offset = 400C_0418h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	TIMESTAMP																															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_ATSTMP field descriptions

Field	Description
TIMESTAMP	Timestamp of the last frame transmitted by the core that had TxBD[TS] set . This register is only valid when EIR[TS_AVAIL] is set.

50.7.100 Timer Global Status Register (ENET_TGSR)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 604h offset = 400C_0604h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0												TF3	TF2	TF1	TF0
W													w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_TGSR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3 TF3	Copy Of Timer Flag For Channel 3 0 Timer Flag for Channel 3 is clear 1 Timer Flag for Channel 3 is set
2 TF2	Copy Of Timer Flag For Channel 2 0 Timer Flag for Channel 2 is clear 1 Timer Flag for Channel 2 is set
1 TF1	Copy Of Timer Flag For Channel 1 0 Timer Flag for Channel 1 is clear 1 Timer Flag for Channel 1 is set
0 TF0	Copy Of Timer Flag For Channel 0 0 Timer Flag for Channel 0 is clear 1 Timer Flag for Channel 0 is set

50.7.101 Timer Control Status Register (ENET_TCSRn)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 608h offset + (8d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0								TF	TIE	TMODE				0	TDRE
W									w1c							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ENET_TCSRn field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7 TF	Timer Flag Sets when input capture or output compare occurs. This flag is double buffered between the module clock and 1588 clock domains. When this field is 1, it can be cleared to 0 by writing 1 to it. 0 Input Capture or Output Compare has not occurred. 1 Input Capture or Output Compare has occurred.

Table continues on the next page...

ENET_TCSRn field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
6 TIE	Timer Interrupt Enable 0 Interrupt is disabled 1 Interrupt is enabled
5–2 TMODE	Timer Mode Updating the Timer Mode field takes a few cycles to register because it is synchronized to the 1588 clock. The version of Timer Mode returned on a read is from the 1588 clock domain. When changing Timer Mode, always disable the channel and read this register to verify the channel is disabled first. 0000 Timer Channel is disabled. 0001 Timer Channel is configured for Input Capture on rising edge. 0010 Timer Channel is configured for Input Capture on falling edge. 0011 Timer Channel is configured for Input Capture on both edges. 0100 Timer Channel is configured for Output Compare - software only. 0101 Timer Channel is configured for Output Compare - toggle output on compare. 0110 Timer Channel is configured for Output Compare - clear output on compare. 0111 Timer Channel is configured for Output Compare - set output on compare. 1000 Reserved 1010 Timer Channel is configured for Output Compare - clear output on compare, set output on overflow. 10X1 Timer Channel is configured for Output Compare - set output on compare, clear output on overflow. 110X Reserved 1110 Timer Channel is configured for Output Compare - pulse output low on compare for one 1588-clock cycle. 1111 Timer Channel is configured for Output Compare - pulse output high on compare for one 1588-clock cycle.
1 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
0 TDRE	Timer DMA Request Enable 0 DMA request is disabled 1 DMA request is enabled

50.7.102 Timer Compare Capture Register (ENET_TCCRn)

Address: 400C_0000h base + 60Ch offset + (8d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																
	TCC																															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

ENET_TCCRn field descriptions

Field	Description
TCC	Timer Capture Compare

ENET_TCCR n field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>This register is double buffered between the module clock and 1588 clock domains.</p> <p>When configured for compare, the 1588 clock domain updates with the value in the module clock domain whenever the Timer Channel is first enabled and on each subsequent compare. Write to this register with the first compare value before enabling the Timer Channel. When the Timer Channel is enabled, write the second compare value either immediately, or at least before the first compare occurs. After each compare, write the next compare value before the previous compare occurs and before clearing the Timer Flag.</p> <p>The compare occurs one 1588 clock cycle after the IEEE 1588 Counter increments past the compare value in the 1588 clock domain. If the compare value is less than the value of the 1588 Counter when the Timer Channel is first enabled, then the compare does not occur until following the next overflow of the 1588 Counter. If the compare value is greater than the IEEE 1588 Counter when the 1588 Counter overflows, or the compare value is less than the value of the IEEE 1588 Counter after the overflow, then the compare occurs one 1588 clock cycle following the overflow.</p> <p>When configured for capture, the value of the IEEE 1588 Counter is captured into the 1588 clock domain and then updated into the module clock domain, provided the Timer Flag is clear. Always read the capture value before clearing the Timer Flag.</p>

50.104 Ethernet MAC frame formats

The IEEE 802.3 standard defines the Ethernet frame format as follows:

- Minimum length of 64 bytes
- Maximum length of 1518 bytes excluding the preamble and the start frame delimiter (SFD) bytes

An Ethernet frame consists of the following fields:

- Seven bytes preamble
- Start frame delimiter (SFD)
- Two address fields
- Length or type field
- Data field
- Frame check sequence (CRC value)

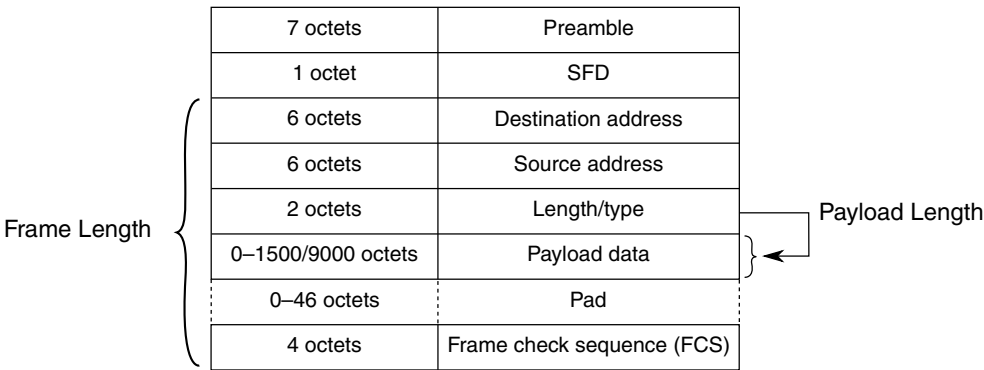


Figure 50-2. MAC frame format overview

Optionally, MAC frames can be VLAN-tagged with an additional four-byte field inserted between the MAC source address and the type/length field. VLAN tagging is defined by the IEEE P802.1q specification. VLAN-tagged frames have a maximum length of 1522 bytes, excluding the preamble and the SFD bytes.

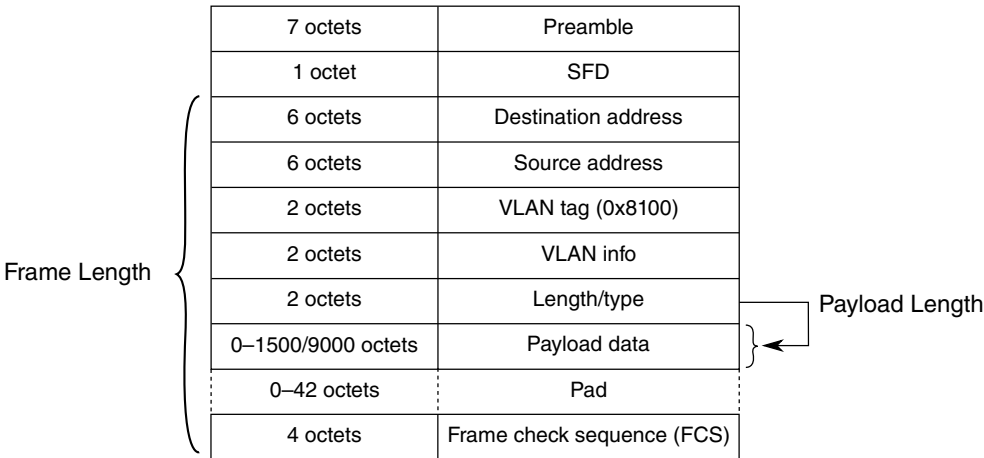


Figure 50-3. VLAN-tagged MAC frame format overview

Table 50-2. MAC frame definition

Term	Description
Frame length	Defines the length, in octets, of the complete frame without preamble and SFD. A frame has a valid length if it contains at least 64 octets and does not exceed the programmed maximum length.
Payload length	<p>The length/type field indicates the length of the frame's payload section. The most significant byte is sent/received first.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the length/type field is set to a value less than 46, the payload is padded so that the minimum frame length requirement (64 bytes) is met. For VLAN-tagged frames, a value less than 42 indicates a padded frame. If the length/type field is set to a value larger than the programmed frame maximum length (e.g. 1518) it is interpreted as a type field.
Destination and source address	48-bit MAC addresses. The least significant byte is sent/received first and the first two least significant bits of the MAC address distinguish MAC frames, as detailed in MAC address check .

Note

Although the IEEE specification defines a maximum frame length, the MAC core provides the flexibility to program any value for the frame maximum length.

50.104.1 Pause Frames

The receiving device generates a pause frame to indicate a congestion to the emitting device, which should stop sending data.

Pause frames are indicated by the length/type set to 0x8808. The two first bytes of a pause frame following the type, defines a 16-bit opcode field set to 0x0001 always. A 16-bit pause quanta is defined in the frame payload bytes 2 (P1) and 3 (P2) as defined in the following table. The P1 pause quanta byte is the most significant.

Table 50-3. Pause Frame Format (Values in Hex)

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
55	55	55	55	55	55	55	D5	01	80	C2	00	00	01
Preamble							SFD	Multicast Destination Address					
15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27 –68	
00	00	00	00	00	00	88	08	00	01	hi	lo	00	
Source Address						Type		Opcode		P1	P2	pad (42)	
69	70	71	72										
26	6B	AE	0A										
CRC-32													

There is no payload length field found within a pause frame and a pause frame is always padded with 42 bytes (0x00).

If a pause frame with a pause value greater than zero (XOFF condition) is received, the MAC stops transmitting data as soon the current frame transfer is completed. The MAC stops transmitting data for the value defined in pause quanta. One pause quanta fraction refers to 512 bit times.

If a pause frame with a pause value of zero (XON condition) is received, the transmitter is allowed to send data immediately (see [Full-duplex flow control operation](#) for details).

50.104.2 Magic packets

A magic packet is a unicast, multicast, or broadcast packet, which carries a defined sequence in the payload section.

Magic packets are received and inspected only under specific conditions as described in [Magic packet detection](#).

The defined sequence to decode a magic packet is formed with a synchronization stream which consists of six consecutive 0xFF bytes, and is followed by sequence of sixteen consecutive unicast MAC addresses of the node to be awakened.

This sequence can be located anywhere in the magic packet payload. The magic packet is formed with a standard Ethernet header, optional padding, and CRC.

50.105 IP and higher layers frame format

The following sections use the term datagram to describe the protocol specific data unit that is found within the payload section of its container entity.

For example, an IP datagram specifies the payload section of an Ethernet frame. A TCP datagram specifies the payload section within an IP datagram.

50.105.1 Ethernet types

IP datagrams are carried in the payload section of an Ethernet frame. The Ethernet frame type/length field discriminates several datagram types.

The following table lists the types of interest:

Table 50-4. Ethernet type value examples

Type	Description
0x8100	VLAN-tagged frame. The actual type is found 4 octets later in the frame.
0x0800	IPv4
0x0806	ARP
0x86DD	IPv6

50.105.2 IPv4 datagram format

The following figure shows the IP Version 4 (IPv4) header, which is located at the beginning of an IP datagram. It is organized in 32-bit words. The first byte sent/received is the leftmost byte of the first word (in other words, version/IHL field).

The IP header can contain further options, which are always padded if necessary to guarantee the payload following the header is aligned to a 32-bit boundary.

The IP header is immediately followed by the payload, which can contain further protocol headers (for example, TCP or UDP, as indicated by the protocol field value). The complete IP datagram is transported in the payload section of an Ethernet frame.

Table 50-5. IPv4 header format

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Version				IHL				TOS								Length															
Fragment ID																Flags				Fragment offset											
TTL								Protocol								Header checksum															
Source address																															
Destination address																															
Options																															

Table 50-6. IPv4 header fields

Field name	Description
Version	4-bit IP version information. 0x4 for IPv4 frames.
IHL	4-bit Internet header length information. Determines number of 32-bit words found within the IP header. If no options are present, the default value is 0x5.
TOS	Type of service/DiffServ field.
Length	Total length of the datagram in bytes, including all octets of header and payload.
Fragment ID, flags, fragment offset	Fields used for IP fragmentation.
TTL	Time-to-live. In effect, is decremented at each router arrival. If zero, datagram must be discarded.
Protocol	Identifier of protocol that follows in the datagram.
Header checksum	Checksum of IP header. For computational purposes, this field's value is zero.
Source address	Source IP address.
Destination address	Destination IP address.

50.105.3 IPv6 datagram format

The following figure shows the IP version 6 (IPv6) header, which is located at the beginning of an IP datagram. It is organized in 32-bit words and has a fixed length of ten words (40 bytes). The next header field identifies the type of the header that follows the IPv6 header. It is defined similar to the protocol identifier within IPv4, with new definitions for identifying extension headers. These headers can be inserted between the IPv6 header and the protocol header, which will shift the protocol header accordingly. The accelerator currently only supports IPv6 without extension headers (in other words, the next header specifies TCP, UDP, or IMCP).

The first byte sent/received is the leftmost byte of the first word (in other words, version/traffic class fields).

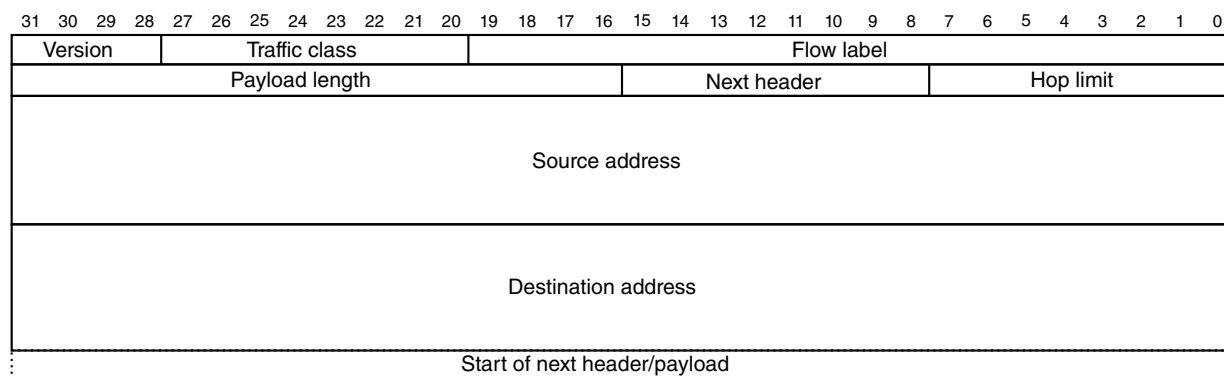


Figure 50-4. IPv6 header format

Table 50-7. IPv6 header fields

Field name	Description
Version	4-bit IP version information. 0x6 for all IPv6 frames.
Traffic class	8-bit field defining the traffic class.
Flow label	20-bit flow label identifying frames of the same flow.
Payload length	16-bit length of the datagram payload in bytes. It includes all octets following the IPv6 header.
Next header	Identifies the header that follows the IPv6 header. This can be the protocol header or any IPv6 defined extension header.
Hop limit	Hop counter, decremented by one by each station that forwards the frame. If hop limit is 0 the frame must be discarded.
Source address	128-bit IPv6 source address.
Destination address	128-bit IPv6 destination address.

50.105.4 Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) datagram format

An internet control message protocol (ICMP) is found following the IP header, if the protocol identifier is 1. The ICMP datagram has a four-octet header followed by additional message data.

Table 50-8. ICMP header format

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Type								Code								Checksum															
ICMP message data																															

Table 50-9. IP header fields

Field name	Description
Type	8-bit type information
Code	8-bit code that is related to the message type
Checksum	16-bit one's complement checksum over the complete ICMP datagram

50.105.5 User Datagram Protocol (UDP) datagram format

A user datagram protocol header is found after the IP header, when the protocol identifier is 17.

The payload of the datagram is after the UDP header. The header byte order follows the conventions given for the IP header above.

Table 50-10. UDP header format

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Source port																Destination port															
Length																Checksum															

Table 50-11. UDP header fields

Field name	Description
Source port	Source application port
Destination port	Destination application port
Length	Length of user data which immediately follows the header, including the UDP header (that is, minimum value is 8)
Checksum	Checksum over the complete datagram and some IP header information

50.105.6 TCP datagram format

A TCP header is found following the IP header, when the protocol identifier has a value of 6.

The TCP payload immediately follows the TCP header.

Table 50-12. TCP header format

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0		
Source port																Destination port																	
Sequence number																																	
Acknowledgement number																																	
Offset				Reserved								Flags								Window													
Checksum																Urgent pointer																	
Options																																	

Table 50-13. TCP header fields

Field name	Description
Source port	Source application port
Destination port	Destination application port
Sequence number	Transmit sequence number
Ack. number	Receive sequence number
Offset	Data offset, which is number of 32-bit words within TCP header — if no options selected, defaults to value of 5
Flags	URG, ACK, PSH, RST, SYN, FIN flags
Window	TCP receive window size information
Checksum	Checksum over the complete datagram (TCP header and data) and IP header information
Options	Additional 32-bit words for protocol options

50.106 IEEE 1588 message formats

The following sections describe the IEEE 1588 message formats.

50.106.1 Transport encapsulation

The precision time protocol (PTP) datagrams are encapsulated in Ethernet frames using the UDP/IP transport mechanism, or optionally, with the newer 1588v2 directly in Ethernet frames (layer 2).

Typically, multicast addresses are used to allow efficient distribution of the synchronization messages.

50.106.1.1 UDP/IP

The 1588 messages (v1 and v2) can be transported using UDP/IP multicast messages.

Table 50-14 shows IP multicast groups defined for PTP. The table also shows their respective MAC layer multicast address mapping according to RFC 1112 (last three octets of IP follow the fixed value of 01-00-5E).

Table 50-14. UDP/IP multicast domains

Name	IP Address	MAC Address mapping
DefaultPTPdomain	224.0.1.129	01-00-5E-00-01-81
AlternatePTPdomain1	224.0.1.130	01-00-5E-00-01-82
AlternatePTPdomain2	224.0.1.131	01-00-5E-00-01-83
AlternatePTPdomain3	224.0.1.132	01-00-5E-00-01-84

Table 50-15. UDP port numbers

Message type	UDP port	Note
Event	319	Used for SYNC and DELAY_REQUEST messages
General	320	All other messages (for example, follow-up, delay-response)

50.106.1.2 Native Ethernet (PTPv2)

In addition to using UDP/IP frames, IEEE 1588v2 defines a native Ethernet frame format that uses ethertype = 0x88F7. The payload of the Ethernet frame immediately contains the PTP datagram, starting with the PTPv2 header.

Besides others, version 2 adds a peer delay mechanism to allow delay measurements between individual point-to-point links along a path over multiple nodes. The following multicast domains are also defined in PTPv2.

Table 50-16. PTPv2 multicast domains

Name	MAC address
Normal messages	01-1B-19-00-00-00
Peer delay messages	01-80-C2-00-00-0E

50.106.2 PTP header

All PTP frames contain a common header that determines the protocol version and the type of message, which defines the remaining content of the message.

All multi-octet fields are transmitted in big-endian order (the most significant byte is transmitted/received first).

The last four bits of versionPTP are at the same position (second byte) for PTPv1 and PTPv2 headers. This allows accurate identification by inspecting the first two bytes of the message.

50.106.2.1 PTPv1 header

Table 50-17. Common PTPv1 message header

Offset	Octets	Bits							
		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	2	versionPTP = 0x0001							
2	2	versionNetwork							
4	16	subdomain							
20	1	messageType							
21	1	sourceCommunicationTechnology							
22	6	sourceUuid							
28	2	sourcePortId							
30	2	sequenceId							
32	1	control							
33	1	0x00							
34	2	flags							
36	4	reserved							

The type of message is encoded in the messageType and control fields as shown in [Table 50-18](#) :

Table 50-18. PTPv1 message type identification

messageType	control	Message Name	Message
0x01	0x0	SYNC	Event message
0x01	0x1	DELAY_REQ	Event message
0x02	0x2	FOLLOW_UP	General message
0x02	0x3	DELAY_RESP	General message
0x02	0x4	MANAGEMENT	General message
other	other	—	Reserved

The field sequenceId is used to non-ambiguously identify a message.

50.106.2.2 PTPv2 header

Table 50-19. Common PTPv2 message header

Offset	Octets	Bits							
		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	1	transportSpecific				messageId			
1	1	reserved				versionPTP = 0x2			
2	2	messageLength							
4	1	domainNumber							
5	1	reserved							
6	2	flags							
8	8	correctionField							
16	4	reserved							
20	10	sourcePortIdentity							
30	2	sequenceId							
32	1	control							
33	1	logMeanMessageInterval							

The type of message is encoded in the field messageId as follows:

Table 50-20. PTPv2 message type identification

messageId	Message name	Message
0x0	SYNC	Event message
0x1	DELAY_REQ	Event message
0x2	PATH_DELAY_REQ	Event message
0x3	PATH_DELAY_RESP	Event message
0x4–0x7	—	Reserved
0x8	FOLLOW_UP	General message

Table continues on the next page...

Table 50-20. PTPv2 message type identification (continued)

messageld	Message name	Message
0x9	DELAY_RESP	General message
0xa	PATH_DELAY_FOLLOW_UP	General message
0xb	ANNOUNCE	General message
0xc	SIGNALING	General message
0xd	MANAGEMENT	General message

The PTPv2 flags field contains further details on the type of message, especially if one-step or two-step implementations are used. The one- or two-step implementation is controlled by the TWO_STEP bit in the first octet of the flags field as shown below. Reserved bits are cleared.

Table 50-21. PTPv2 message flags field definitions

Bit	Name	Description
0	ALTERNATE_MASTER	See IEEE 1588 Clause 17.4
1	TWO_STEP	1 Two-step clock 0 One-step clock
2	UNICAST	1 Transport layer address uses a unicast destination address 0 Multicast is used
3	—	Reserved
4	—	Reserved
5	Profile specific	
6	Profile specific	
7	—	Reserved

50.107 MAC receive

The MAC receive engine performs the following tasks:

- Check frame framing
- Remove frame preamble and frame SFD field
- Discard frame based on frame destination address field
- Terminate pause frames
- Check frame length
- Remove payload padding if it exists

- Calculate and verify CRC-32
- Write received frames in the core receive FIFO

If the MAC is programmed to operate in half-duplex mode, it will also check if the frame is received with a collision.

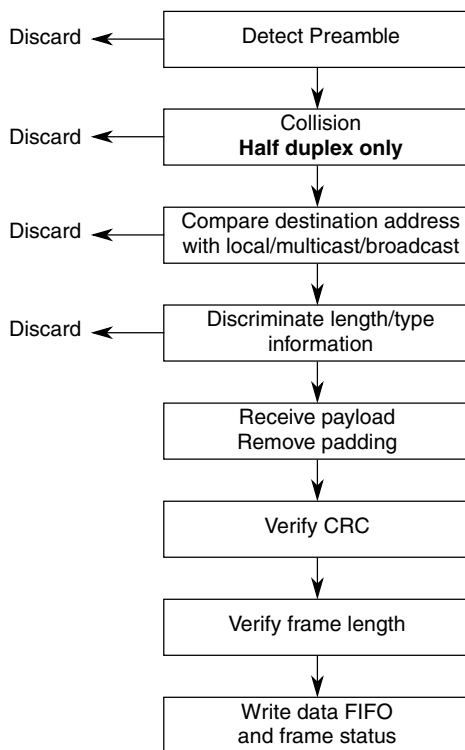


Figure 50-5. MAC receive flow

50.107.1 Collision detection in half-duplex mode

If the packet is received with a collision detected during reception of the first 64 bytes, the packet is discarded (if frame size was less than ~14 octets) or transmitted to the user application with an error and RxBD[CE] set.

50.107.2 Preamble processing

The IEEE 802.3 standard allows a maximum size of 56 bits (seven bytes) for the preamble, while the MAC core allows any preamble length, including zero length preamble.

The MAC core checks for the start frame delimiter (SFD) byte. If the next byte of the preamble, which is different from 0x55, is not 0xD5, the frame is discarded.

Although the IEEE specification dictates that the inner-packet gap should be at least 96 bits, the MAC core is designed to accept frames separated by only 64 10/100-Mbit/s operation (MII) bits.

The MAC core removes the preamble and SFD bytes.

50.107.3 MAC address check

The destination address bit 0 differentiates between multicast and unicast addresses.

- If bit 0 is 0, the MAC address is an individual (unicast) address.
- If bit 0 is 1, the MAC address defines a group (multicast) address.
- If all 48 bits of the MAC address are set, it indicates a broadcast address.

50.107.3.1 Unicast address check

If a unicast address is received, the destination MAC address is compared to the node MAC address programmed by the host in the PADDR1/2 registers.

If the destination address matches any of the programmed MAC addresses, the frame is accepted.

If Promiscuous mode is enabled ($\text{RCR}[\text{PROM}] = 1$) no address checking is performed and all unicast frames are accepted.

50.107.3.2 Multicast and unicast address resolution

The hash table algorithm used in the group and individual hash filtering operates as follows.

- The 48-bit destination address is mapped into one of 64 bits, represented by 64 bits in $\text{ENET}_n_GAUR/GALR$ (group address hash match) or $\text{ENET}_n_IAUR/IALR$ (individual address hash match).
- This mapping is performed by passing the 48-bit address through the on-chip 32-bit CRC generator and selecting the six most significant bits of the CRC-encoded result to generate a number between 0 and 63.
- The msb of the CRC result selects ENET_n_GAUR (msb = 1) or ENET_n_GALR (msb = 0).

- The five lsbs of the hash result select the bit within the selected register.
- If the CRC generator selects a bit set in the hash table, the frame is accepted; else, it is rejected.

For example, if eight group addresses are stored in the hash table and random group addresses are received, the hash table prevents roughly 56/64 (or 87.5%) of the group address frames from reaching memory. Those that do reach memory must be further filtered by the processor to determine if they truly contain one of the eight desired addresses.

The effectiveness of the hash table declines as the number of addresses increases.

The user must initialize the hash table registers. Use this CRC32 polynomial to compute the hash:

$$\bullet \text{ FCS}(x) = x^{32} + x^{26} + x^{23} + x^{22} + x^{16} + x^{12} + x^{11} + x^{10} + x^8 + x^7 + x^5 + x^4 + x^2 + x^1 + 1$$

If Promiscuous mode is enabled ($\text{ENETn_RCR}[\text{PROM}] = 1$) all unicast and multicast frames are accepted regardless of ENETn_GAUR/GALR and ENETn_IAUR/IALR settings.

50.107.3.3 Broadcast address reject

All broadcast frames are accepted if BC_REJ is cleared or $\text{ENETn_RCR}[\text{PROM}]$ is set. If PROM is cleared when $\text{ENETn_RCR}[\text{BC_REJ}]$ is set, all broadcast frames are rejected.

Table 50-22. Broadcast address reject programming

PROM	BC_REJ	Broadcast frames
0	0	Accepted
0	1	Rejected
1	0	Accepted
1	1	Accepted

50.107.3.4 Miss-bit implementation

For higher layer filtering purposes, $\text{RxBD}[\text{M}]$ indicates an address miss when the MAC operates in promiscuous mode and accepts a frame that would otherwise be rejected.

If a group/individual hash or exact match does not occur and Promiscuous mode is enabled ($\text{RCR}[\text{PROM}] = 1$), the frame is accepted and the M bit is set in the buffer descriptor; otherwise, the frame is rejected.

This means the status bit is set in any of the following conditions during Promiscuous mode:

- A broadcast frame is received when BC_REJ is set
- A unicast is received that does not match either:
 - Node address ($\text{PALR}[\text{PADDR1}]$ and $\text{PAUR}[\text{PADDR2}]$)
 - Hash table for unicast ($\text{IAUR}[\text{IADDR1}]$ and $\text{IALR}[\text{IADDR2}]$)
- A multicast is received that does not match the $\text{GAUR}[\text{GADDR1}]$ and $\text{GALR}[\text{GADDR2}]$ hash table entries

50.107.4 Frame length/type verification: payload length check

If the length/type is less than 0x600 and NLC is set, the MAC checks the payload length and reports any error in the frame status word and interrupt bit PLR.

If the length/type is greater than or equal to 0x600, the MAC interprets the field as a type and no payload length check is performed.

The length check is performed on VLAN and stacked VLAN frames. If a padded frame is received, no length check can be performed due to the extended frame payload because padded frames can never have a payload length error.

50.107.5 Frame length/type verification: frame length check

When the receive frame length exceeds MAX_FL bytes, the BABR interrupt is generated and the $\text{RxBD}[\text{LG}]$ bit is set.

The frame is not truncated unless the frame length exceeds the value programmed in $\text{ENET}_n\text{_FTRL}[\text{TRUNC_FL}]$. If the frame is truncated, $\text{RxBD}[\text{TR}]$ is set. In addition, a truncated frame always has the CRC error indication set ($\text{RxBD}[\text{CR}]$).

50.107.6 VLAN frames processing

VLAN frames have a length/type field set to 0x8100 immediately followed by a 16-Bit VLAN control information field.

VLAN-tagged frames are received as normal frames because the VLAN tag is not interpreted by the MAC function, and are pushed complete with the VLAN tag to the user application. If the length/type field of the VLAN-tagged frame, which is found four octets later in the frame, is less than 42, the padding is removed. In addition, the frame status word (RxBD[NO]) indicates that the current frame is VLAN tagged.

50.107.7 Pause frame termination

The receive engine terminates pause frames and does not transfer them to the receive FIFO. The quanta is extracted and sent to the MAC transmit path via a small internal clock rate decoupling asynchronous FIFO.

The quanta is written only if a correct CRC and frame length are detected by the control state machine. If not, the quanta is discarded and the MAC transmit path is not paused.

Good pause frames are ignored if ENET n _RCR[FCE] is cleared and are forwarded to the client interface when ENET n _RCR[PAUFWD] is set.

50.107.8 CRC check

The CRC-32 field is checked and forwarded to the core FIFO interface if ENET n _RCR[CRCFWD] is cleared and ENET n _RCR[PADEN] is set.

When CRCFWD is set (regardless of PADEN), the CRC-32 field is checked and terminated (not transmitted to the FIFO).

The CRC polynomial, as specified in the 802.3 standard, is:

- $$\text{FCS}(x) = x^{32} + x^{26} + x^{23} + x^{22} + x^{16} + x^{12} + x^{11} + x^{10} + x^8 + x^7 + x^5 + x^4 + x^2 + x^1 + 1$$

The 32 bits of the CRC value are placed in the frame check sequence (FCS) field with the x^{31} term as right-most bit of the first octet. The CRC bits are thus received in the following order: x^{31} , x^{30} , ..., x^1 , x^0 .

If a CRC error is detected, the frame is marked invalid and RxBD[CR] is set.

50.107.9 Frame padding removal

When a frame is received with a payload length field set to less than 46 (42 for VLAN-tagged frames and 38 for frames with stacked VLANs), the zero padding can be removed before the frame is written into the data FIFO depending on the setting of `ENETn_RCR[PADEN]`.

Note

If a frame is received with excess padding (in other words, the length field is set as mentioned above, but the frame has more than 64 octets) and padding removal is enabled, then the padding is removed as normal and no error is reported if the frame is otherwise correct (for example: good CRC, less than maximum length, and no other error).

50.108 MAC transmit

Frame transmission starts when the transmit FIFO holds enough data.

After a transfer starts, the MAC transmit function performs the following tasks:

- Generates preamble and SFD field before frame transmission
- Generates XOFF pause frames if the receive FIFO reports a congestion or if `ENETn_TCR[TFC_PAUSE]` is set with `ENETn_OPD[PAUSE_DUR]` set to a non-zero value
- Generates XON pause frames if the receive FIFO congestion condition is cleared or if `TFC_PAUSE` is set with `PAUSE_DUR` cleared
- Suspends Ethernet frame transfer (XOFF) if a non-zero pause quanta is received from the MAC receive path
- Adds padding to the frame if required
- Calculates and appends CRC-32 to the transmitted frame
- Sends the frame with correct inter-packet gap (IPG) (deferring)

When the MAC is configured to operate in half-duplex mode, the following additional tasks are performed:

- Collision detection
- Frame retransmit after back-off timer expires

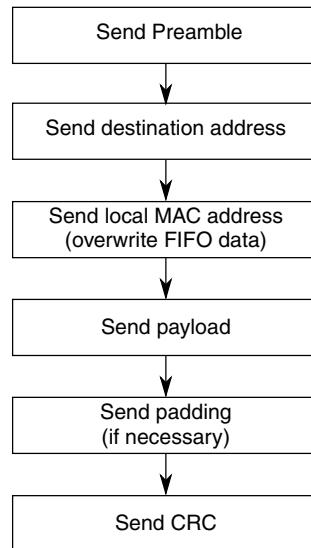


Figure 50-6. Frame transmit overview

50.108.1 Frame payload padding

The IEEE specification defines a minimum frame length of 64 bytes.

If the frame sent to the MAC from the user application has a size smaller than 60 bytes, the MAC automatically adds padding bytes (0x00) to comply with the Ethernet minimum frame length specification. Transmit padding is always performed and cannot be disabled.

If the MAC is not allowed to append a CRC (TxBD[TC] = 1), the user application is responsible for providing frames with a minimum length of 64 octets.

50.108.2 MAC address insertion

On each frame received from the core transmit FIFO interface, the source MAC address is either:

- Replaced by the address programmed in the PADDR1/2 fields (ENET n _TCR[ADDINS] = 1)
- Transparently forwarded to the Ethernet line (ENET n _TCR[ADDINS] = 0)

50.108.3 CRC-32 generation

The CRC-32 field is optionally generated and appended at the end of a frame.

The CRC polynomial, as specified in the 802.3 standard, is:

- $FCS(x) = x^{32} + x^{26} + x^{23} + x^{22} + x^{16} + x^{12} + x^{11} + x^{10} + x^8 + x^7 + x^5 + x^4 + x^2 + x^1 + 1$

The 32 bits of the CRC value are placed in the FCS field so that the x^{31} term is the right-most bit of the first octet. The CRC bits are thus transmitted in the following order: x^{31} , x^{30} , ..., x^1 , x^0 .

50.108.4 Inter-packet gap (IPG)

In full-duplex mode, after frame transmission and before transmission of a new frame, an IPG (programmed in `ENETn_TIPG`) is maintained. The minimum IPG can be programmed between 8 and 26 byte-times (64 and 208 bit-times).

In half-duplex mode, the core constantly monitors the line. Actual transmission of the data onto the network occurs only if it has been idle for a 96-bit time period, and any back-off time requirements have been satisfied. In accordance with the standard, the core begins to measure the IPG from CRS de-assertion.

50.108.5 Collision detection and handling — half-duplex operation only

A collision occurs on a half-duplex network when concurrent transmissions from two or more nodes take place. During transmission, the core monitors the line condition and detects a collision when the PHY device asserts COL.

When the core detects a collision while transmitting, it stops transmission of the data and transmits a 32-bit jam pattern. If the collision is detected during the preamble or the SFD transmission, the jam pattern is transmitted after completing the SFD, which results in a minimum 96-bit fragment. The jam pattern is a fixed pattern that is not compared to the actual frame CRC, and has a very low probability (0.532) of having a jam pattern identical to the CRC.

If a collision occurs before transmission of 64 bytes (including preamble and SFD), the MAC core waits for the backoff period and retransmits the packet data (stored in a 64-byte re-transmit buffer) that has already been sent on the line. The backoff period is generated from a pseudo-random process (truncated binary exponential backoff).

If a collision occurs after transmission of 64 bytes (including preamble and SFD), the MAC discards the remainder of the frame, optionally sets the LC interrupt bit, and sets TxBD[LCE].

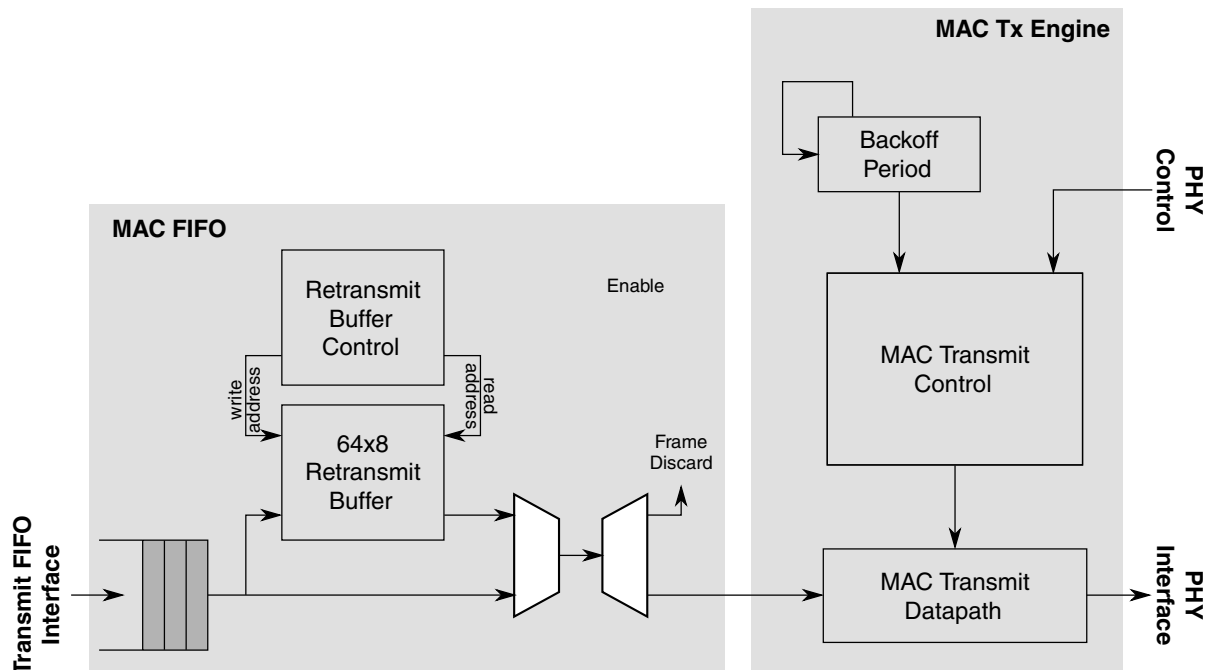


Figure 50-7. Packet re-transmit overview

The backoff time is represented by an integer multiple of slot times. One slot is equal to a 512-bit time period. The number of the delay slot times, before the n^{th} re-transmission attempt, is chosen as a uniformly-distributed random integer in the range:

- $0 < r < 2^k$
- $k = \min(n, N)$; where n is the number of retransmissions and $N = 10$

For example, after the first collision, the backoff period is 0 or 1 slot time. If a collision occurs on the first retransmission, the backoff period is 0, 1, 2, or 3, and so on.

The maximum backoff time (in 512-bit time slots) is limited by $N = 10$ as specified in the IEEE 802.3 standard.

If a collision occurs after 16 consecutive retransmissions, the core reports an excessive collision condition (ENET n _EIR[RL] interrupt field and TxBD[EE]) and discards the current packet from the FIFO.

In networks violating the standard requirements, a collision may occur after transmission of the first 64 bytes. In this case, the core stops the current packet transmission and discards the rest of the packet from the transmit FIFO. The core resumes transmission with the next packet available in the core transmit FIFO.

warning

Ethernet PHYs that support the SQE Test, or "heartbeat," feature must disable this feature. When this feature is enabled, the PHY asserts the collision signal after a frame is transmitted to indicate to the ENET that the PHY's collision logic is working. This may cause data corruption in the next frame from the ENET. This corrupted frame contains up to 21 zero bytes which start somewhere within the MAC destination address field. The ENET, however, will still generate a good FCS (CRC-32) but with corrupted data.

50.109 Full-duplex flow control operation

Three conditions are handled by the core's flow control engine:

- Remote device congestion — The remote device connected to the same Ethernet segment as the core reports congestion and requests that the core stop sending data.
- Core FIFO congestion — When the core's receive FIFO reaches a user-programmable threshold (RX section empty), the core sends a pause frame back to the remote device requesting the data transfer to stop.
- Local device congestion — Any device connected to the core can request (typically, via the host processor) the remote device to stop transmitting data.

50.109.1 Remote device congestion

When the MAC transmit control gets a valid pause quanta from the receive path and if `ENETn_RCR[FCE]` is set, the MAC transmit logic:

- Completes the transfer of the current frame.
- Stops sending data for the amount of time specified by the pause quanta in 512 bit time increments.
- Sets `ENETn_TCR[RFC_PAUSE]`.

Frame transfer resumes when the time specified by the quanta expires and if no new quanta value is received, or if a new pause frame with a quanta value set to 0x0000 is received. The MAC also resets `RFC_PAUSE` to zero.

If `ENETn_RCR[FCE]` cleared, the MAC ignores received pause frames.

Optionally and independent of ENET n _RCR[FCE], pause frames are forwarded to the client interface if PAUFWD is set.

50.109.2 Local device/FIFO congestion

The MAC transmit engine generates pause frames when the local receive FIFO is not able to receive more than a pre-defined number of words (FIFO programmable threshold) or when pause frame generation is requested by the local host processor.

- To generate a pause frame, the host processor sets ENET n _TCR[TFC_PAUSE]. A single pause frame is generated when the current frame transfer is completed and TFC_PAUSE is automatically cleared. Optionally, an interrupt is generated.
- An XOFF pause frame is generated when the receive FIFO asserts its section empty flag (internal). An XOFF pause frame is generated automatically, when the current frame transfer completes.
- An XON pause frame is generated when the receive FIFO deasserts its section empty flag (internal). An XON pause frame is generated automatically, when the current frame transfer completes.

When an XOFF pause frame is generated, the pause quanta (payload byte P1 and P2) is filled with the value programmed in ENET n _OPD[PAUSE_DUR].

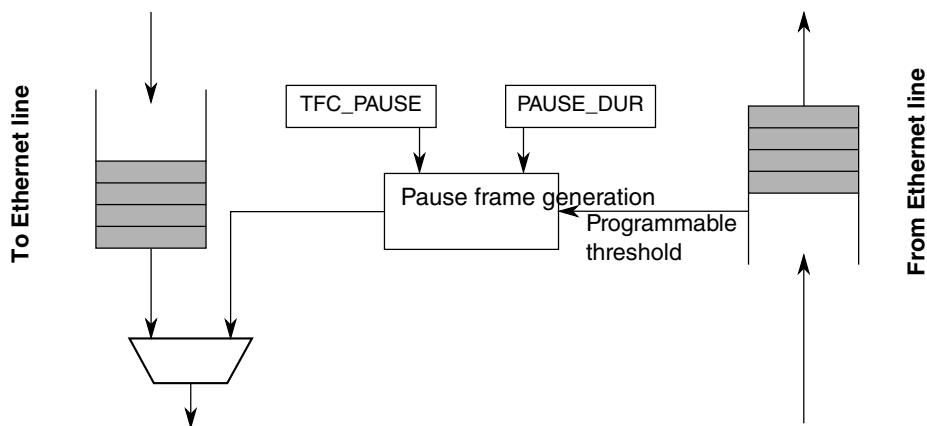


Figure 50-8. Pause frame generation overview

Note

Although the flow control mechanism should prevent any FIFO overflow on the MAC core receive path, the core receive FIFO is protected. When an overflow is detected on the receive FIFO,

the current frame is truncated with an error indication set in the frame status word. The frame should subsequently be discarded by the user application.

50.110 Magic packet detection

Magic packet detection wakes a node that is put in power-down mode by the node management agent. Magic packet detection is supported only if the MAC is configured in sleep mode.

50.110.1 Sleep mode

To put the MAC in Sleep mode, set `ENETn_ECR[SLEEP]`. At the same time `ENETn_ECR[MAGICEN]` should also be set to enable magic packet detection.

In addition, when the processor is in Stop mode, Sleep mode is entered, without affecting the `ENETn_ECR` register bits.

When the MAC is in Sleep mode:

- The transmit logic is disabled.
- The FIFO receive/transmit functions are disabled.
- The receive logic is kept in Normal mode, but it ignores all traffic from the line except magic packets. They are detected so that a remote agent can wake the node.

50.110.2 Magic packet detection

The core is designed to detect magic packets (see [Magic packets](#)) with the destination address set to:

- Any multicast address
- The broadcast address
- The unicast address programmed in `PADDR1/2`

When a magic packet is detected, `EIR[WAKEUP]` is set and none of the statistic registers are incremented.

50.110.3 Wakeup

When a magic packet is detected, indicated by `ENETn_EIR[WAKEUP]`, `ENETn_ECR[SLEEP]` should be cleared to resume normal operation of the MAC. Clearing the SLEEP bit automatically masks `ENETn_ECR[MAGICEN]`, disabling magic packet detection.

50.111 IP accelerator functions

The following sections describe the IP accelerator functions.

50.111.1 Checksum calculation

The IP and ICMP, TCP, UDP checksums are calculated with one's complement arithmetic summing up 16-bit values.

- For ICMP, the checksum is calculated over the complete ICMP datagram, in other words without IP header.
- For TCP and UDP, the checksums contain the header and data sections and values from the IP header, which can be seen as a pseudo-header that is not actually present in the data stream.

Table 50-23. IPv4 pseudo-header for checksum calculation

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Source address																															
Destination address																															
Zero								Protocol								TCP/UDP length															

Table 50-24. IPv6 pseudo-header for checksum calculation

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Source address																															
Destination address																															
TCP/UDP length																															
Zero																								Next header							

The TCP/UDP length value is the length of the TCP or UDP datagram, which is equal to the payload of an IP datagram. It is derived by subtracting the IP header length from the complete IP datagram length that is given in the IP header (IPv4), or directly taken from the IP header (IPv6). The protocol field is the corresponding value from the IP header. The Zero fields are all zeroes.

For IPv6, the complete 128-bit addresses are considered. The next header value identifies the upper layer protocol as either TCP or UDP. It may differ from the next header value of the IPv6 header if extension headers are inserted before the protocol header.

The checksum calculation uses 16-bit words in network byte order: The first byte sent/received is the MSB, and the second byte sent/received is the LSB of the 16-bit value to add to the checksum. If the frame ends on an odd number of bytes, a zero byte is appended for checksum calculation only, and is not actually transmitted.

50.111.2 Additional padding processing

According to IEEE 802.3, any Ethernet frame must have a minimum length of 64 octets.

The MAC usually removes padding on receive when a frame with length information is received. Because IP frames have a type value instead of length, the MAC does not remove padding for short IP frames, as it is not aware of the frame contents.

The IP accelerator function can be configured to remove the Ethernet padding bytes that might follow the IP datagram.

On transmit, the MAC automatically adds padding as necessary to fill any frame to a 64-byte length.

50.111.3 32-bit Ethernet payload alignment

The data FIFOs allow inserting two additional arbitrary bytes in front of a frame. This extends the 14-byte Ethernet header to a 16-byte header, which leads to alignment of the Ethernet payload, following the Ethernet header, on a 32-bit boundary.

This function can be enabled for transmit and receive independently with the corresponding SHIFT16 bits in the ENET_n_TACC and ENET_n_RACC registers.

When enabled, the valid frame data is arranged as shown in [Table 50-25](#).

Table 50-25. 64-bit interface data structure with SHIFT16 enabled

63	56	55	48	47	40	39	32	31	24	23	16	15	8	7	0
----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	---	---	---

Table continues on the next page...

Table 50-25. 64-bit interface data structure with SHIFT16 enabled (continued)

Byte 5	Byte 4	Byte 3	Byte 2	Byte 1	Byte 0	Any value	Any value
Byte 13	Byte 12	Byte 11	Byte 10	Byte 9	Byte 8	Byte 7	Byte 6
...							

50.111.3.1 Receive processing

When $\text{ENET}_n\text{_RACC}[\text{SHIFT16}]$ is set, each frame is received with two additional bytes in front of the frame.

The user application must ignore these first two bytes and find the first byte of the frame in bits 23–16 of the first word from the RX FIFO.

Note

SHIFT16 must be set during initialization and kept set during the complete operation, because it influences the FIFO write behavior.

50.111.3.2 Transmit processing

When $\text{ENET}_n\text{_TACC}[\text{SHIFT16}]$ is set, the first two bytes of the first word written (bits 15–0) are discarded immediately by the FIFO write logic.

The SHIFT16 bit can be enabled/disabled for each frame individually if required, but can be changed only between frames.

50.111.4 Received frame discard

Because the receive FIFO must be operated in store and forward mode ($\text{ENET}_n\text{_RSFL}$ cleared), received frames can be discarded based on the following errors:

- The MAC function receives the frame with an error:
 - The frame has an invalid payload length
 - Frame length is greater than MAX_FL
 - Frame received with a CRC-32 error

- Frame truncated due to receive FIFO overflow
- Frame is corrupted as PHY signaled an error (RX_ERR asserted during reception)
- An IP frame is detected and the IP header checksum is wrong
- An IP frame with a valid IP header and a valid IP header checksum is detected, the protocol is known but the protocol-specific checksum is wrong

If one of the errors occurs and the IP accelerator function is configured to discard frames (ENET n _RACC), the frame is automatically discarded. Statistics are maintained normally and are not affected by this discard function.

50.111.5 IPv4 fragments

When an IPv4 IP fragment frame is received, only the IP header is inspected and its checksum verified. 32-bit alignment operates the same way on fragments as it does on normal IP frames, as specified above.

The IP fragment frame payload is not inspected for any protocol headers. As such, a protocol header would only exist in the very first fragment. To assist in protocol-specific checksum verification, the one's-complement sum is calculated on the IP payload (all bytes following the IP header) and provided with the frame status word.

The frame fragment status field (RxBDFRAG) is set to indicate a fragment reception, and the one's-complement sum of the IP payload is available in RxBDFragment checksum].

Note

After all fragments have been received and reassembled, the application software can take advantage of the payload checksum delivered with the frame's status word to calculate the protocol-specific checksum of the datagram.

For example, if a TCP payload is delivered by multiple IP fragments, the application software can calculate the pseudo-header checksum value from the first fragment, and add the payload checksums delivered with the status for all fragments to verify the TCP datagram checksum.

50.111.6 IPv6 support

The following sections describe the IPv6 support.

50.111.6.1 Receive processing

An Ethernet frame of type 0x86DD identifies an IP Version 6 frame (IPv6) frame. If an IPv6 frame is received, the first IP header is inspected (first ten words), which is available in every IPv6 frame.

If the receive SHIFT16 function is enabled, the IP header is aligned on a 32-bit boundary allowing more efficient processing (see [32-bit Ethernet payload alignment](#)).

For TCP and UDP datagrams, the pseudo-header checksum calculation is performed and verified.

To assist in protocol-specific checksum verification, the one's-complement sum is always calculated on the IP payload (all bytes following the IP header) and provided with the frame status word. For example, if extension headers were present, their sums can be subtracted in software from the checksum to isolate the TCP/UDP datagram checksum, if required.

50.111.6.2 Transmit processing

For IPv6 transmission, the SHIFT16 function is supported to process 32-bit aligned datagrams.

IPv6 has no IP header checksum; therefore, the IP checksum insertion configuration is ignored.

The protocol checksum is inserted only if the next header of the IP header is a known protocol (TCP, UDP, or ICMP). If a known protocol is detected, the checksum over all bytes following the IP header is calculated and inserted in the correct position.

The pseudo-header checksum calculation is performed for TCP and UDP datagrams accordingly.

50.112 Resets and stop controls

The following sections describe the resets and stop controls.

50.112.1 Hardware reset

To reset the Ethernet module, set ENET n _ECR[RESET].

50.112.2 Soft reset

When ENET n _ECR[ETHER_EN] is cleared during operation, the following occurs:

- uDMA, buffer descriptor, and FIFO control logic are reset, including the buffer descriptor and FIFO pointers.
- A currently ongoing transmit is terminated by asserting TXER to the PHY.
- A currently ongoing transmit FIFO write from the application is terminated by stopping the write to the FIFO, and all further data from the application is ignored. All subsequent writes are ignored until re-enabled.
- A currently ongoing receive FIFO read is terminated. The RxBD has arbitrary values in this case.

50.112.3 Hardware freeze

When the processor enters debug mode and ECR[DBGEN] is set, the MAC enters a freeze state where it stops all transmit and receive activities gracefully.

The following happens when the MAC enters hardware freeze:

- A currently ongoing receive transaction on the receive application interface is completed as normal. No further frames are read from the FIFO.
- A currently ongoing transmit transaction on the transmit application interface is completed as normal (in other words, until writing end-of-packet (EOP)).
- A currently ongoing frame receive is completed normally, after which no further frames are accepted from the MII.
- A currently ongoing frame transmit is completed normally, after which no further frames are transmitted.

50.112.4 Graceful stop

During a graceful stop, any currently ongoing transactions are completed normally and no further frames are accepted. The MAC can resume from a graceful stop without the need for a reset (for example, clearing ETHER_EN is not required).

The following conditions lead to a graceful stop of the MAC transmit or receive datapaths.

50.112.4.1 Graceful transmit stop (GTS)

When gracefully stopped, the MAC is no longer reading frame data from the transmit FIFO and has completed any ongoing transmission.

In any of the following conditions, the transmit datapath stops after an ongoing frame transmission has been completed normally.

- ENET n _TCR[GTS] is set by software.
- ENET n _TCR[TFC_PAUSE] is set by software requesting a pause frame transmission. The status (and register bit) is cleared after the pause frame has been sent.
- A pause frame was received stopping the transmitter. The stopped situation is terminated when the pause timer expires or a pause frame with zero quanta is received.
- MAC is placed in Sleep mode by software or the processor entering Stop mode (see [Sleep mode](#)).
- The MAC is in Hardware Freeze mode.

When the transmitter has reached its stopped state, the following events occur:

- The GRA interrupt is asserted, when transitioned into stopped.
- In Hardware Freeze mode, the GRA interrupt does not wait for the application write completion and asserts when the transmit state machine (in other words, line side of TX FIFO) reaches its stopped state.

50.112.4.2 Graceful receive stop (GRS)

When gracefully stopped, the MAC is no longer writing frames into the receive FIFO.

The receive datapath stops after any ongoing frame reception has been completed normally, if any of the following conditions occur:

- MAC is placed in Sleep mode either by the software or the processor is in Stop mode). The MAC continues to receive frames and search for magic packets if enabled (see [Magic packet detection](#)). However, no frames are written into the receive FIFO, and therefore are not forwarded to the application.
- The MAC is in Hardware Freeze mode. The MAC does not accept any frames from the MII.

When the receive datapath is stopped, the following events occur:

- If the RX is in the stopped state, RCR[GRS] is set
- The GRA interrupt is asserted when the transmitter and receiver are stopped
- Any ongoing receive transaction to the application (RX FIFO read) continues normally until the frame end of package (EOP) is reached. After this, the following occurs:
 - When Sleep mode is active, all further frames are discarded, flushing the RX FIFO
 - In Hardware Freeze mode, no further frames are delivered to the application and they stay in the receive FIFO.

Note

The assertion of GRS does not wait for an ongoing FIFO read transaction on the application side of the FIFO (FIFO read).

50.112.4.3 Graceful stop interrupt (GRA)

The graceful stopped interrupt (GRA) is asserted for the following conditions:

- In Sleep mode, the interrupt asserts only after both TX and RX datapaths are stopped.
- In Hardware Freeze mode, the interrupt asserts only after both TX and RX datapaths are stopped.
- The MAC transmit datapath is stopped for any other condition (GTS, TFC_PAUSE, pause received).

The GRA interrupt is triggered only once when the stopped state is entered. If the interrupt is cleared while the stop condition persists, no further interrupt is triggered.

50.113 IEEE 1588 functions

To allow for IEEE 1588 or similar time synchronization protocol implementations, the MAC is combined with a time-stamping module to support precise time-stamping of incoming and outgoing frames. Set `ENETn_ECR[EN1588]` to enable 1588 support.

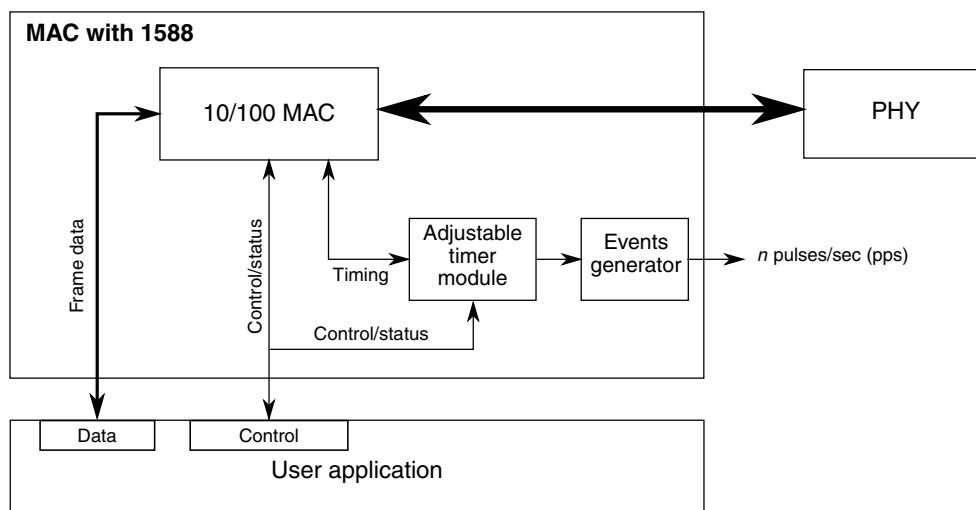


Figure 50-9. IEEE 1588 functions overview

50.113.1 Adjustable timer module

The adjustable timer module (TSM) implements the free-running counter (FRC), which generates the timestamps. The FRC operates with the time-stamping clock, which can be set to any value depending on your system requirements.

Through dedicated correction logic, the timer can be adjusted to allow synchronization to a remote master and provide a synchronized timing reference to the local system. The timer can be configured to cause an interrupt after a fixed time period, to allow synchronization of software timers or perform other synchronized system functions.

The timer is typically used to implement a period of one second; hence, its value ranges from 0 to $(1 \times 10^9) - 1$. The period event can trigger an interrupt, and software can maintain the seconds and hours time values as necessary.

50.113.1.1 Adjustable timer implementation

The adjustable timer consists of a programmable counter/accumulator and a correction counter. The periods of both counters and their increment rates are freely configurable, allowing very fine tuning of the timer.

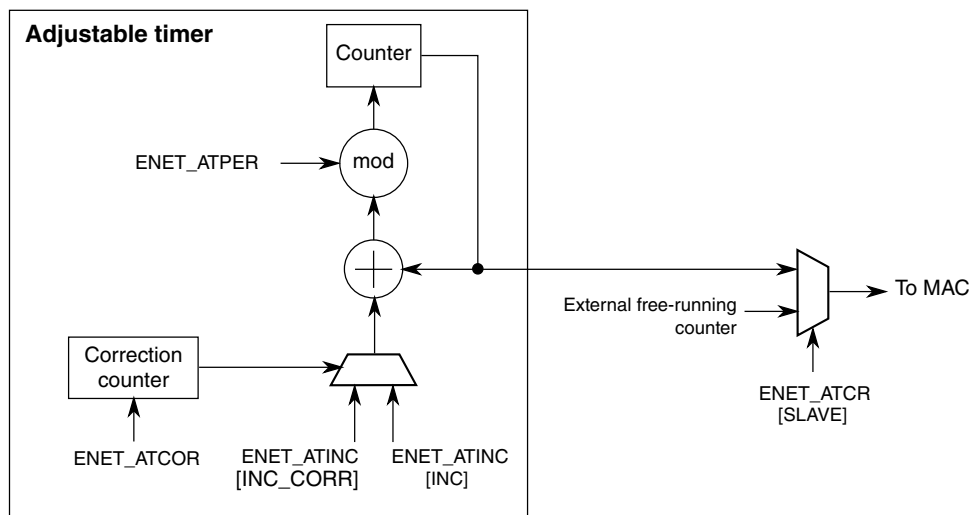


Figure 50-10. Adjustable timer implementation detail

The counter produces the current time. During each time-stamping clock cycle, a constant value is added to the current time as programmed in ENET_n_ATINC . The value depends on the chosen time-stamping clock frequency. For example, if it operates at 125 MHz, setting the increment to eight represents 8 ns.

The period, configured in ENET_n_ATPER , defines the modulo when the counter wraps. In a typical implementation, the period is set to 1×10^9 so that the counter wraps every second, and hence all timestamps represent the absolute nanoseconds within the one second period. When the period is reached, the counter wraps to start again respecting the period modulo. This means it does not necessarily start from zero, but instead the counter is loaded with the value $(\text{Current} + \text{Inc} - (1 \times 10^9))$, assuming the period is set to 1×10^9 .

The correction counter operates fully independently, and increments by one with each time-stamping clock cycle. When it reaches the value configured in ENET_n_ATCOR , it restarts and instructs the timer once to increment by the correction value, instead of the normal value.

The normal and correction increments are configured in ENET_n_ATINC . To speed up the timer, set the correction increment more than the normal increment value. To slow down the timer, set the correction increment less than the normal increment value.

The correction counter only defines the distance of the corrective actions, not the amount. This allows very fine corrections and low jitter (in the range of 1 ns) independent of the chosen clock frequency.

By enabling slave mode ($\text{ENET}_n\text{ATCR}[\text{SLAVE}] = 1$), the timer is ignored and the current time is externally provided from one of the external modules. See the Chip Configuration details for which clock source is used. This is useful if multiple modules within the system must operate from a single timer. When slave mode is enabled, you still must set $\text{ENET}_n\text{ATINC}[\text{INC}]$ to the value of the master, since it is used for internal comparisons.

50.113.2 Transmit timestamping

Only 1588 event frames need to be time-stamped on transmit. The client application (for example, the MAC driver) should detect 1588 event frames and set $\text{TxBD}[\text{TS}]$ together with the frame.

If $\text{TxBD}[\text{TS}]$ is set, the MAC records the timestamp for the frame in $\text{ENET}_n\text{ATSTMP}$. $\text{ENET}_n\text{EIR}[\text{TS_AVAIL}]$ is set to indicate that a new timestamp is available.

Software implements a handshaking procedure by setting $\text{TxBD}[\text{TS}]$ when it transmits the frame for which a timestamp is needed, and then waits for $\text{ENET}_n\text{EIR}[\text{TS_AVAIL}]$ to determine when the timestamp is available. The timestamp is then read from $\text{ENET}_n\text{ATSTMP}$. This is done for all event frames. Other frames do not use $\text{TxBD}[\text{TS}]$ and, therefore, do not interfere with the timestamp capture.

50.113.3 Receive timestamping

When a frame is received, the MAC latches the value of the timer when the frame's start of frame delimiter (SFD) field is detected, and provides the captured timestamp on $\text{RxBD}[1588 \text{ timestamp}]$. This is done for all received frames.

50.113.4 Time synchronization

The adjustable timer module is available to synchronize the local clock of a node to a remote master. It implements a free running 32-bit counter, and also contains an additional correction counter.

The correction counter increases or decreases the rate of the free running counter, enabling very fine granular changes of the timer for synchronization, yet adding only very low jitter when performing corrections.

The application software implements, in a slave scenario, the required control algorithm, setting the correction to compensate for local oscillator drifts and locking the timer to the remote master clock on the network.

The timer and all timestamp-related information should be configured to show the true nanoseconds value of a second (in other words, the timer is configured to have a period of one second). Hence, the values range from 0 to $(1 \times 10^9) - 1$. In this application, the seconds counter is implemented in software using an interrupt function that is executed when the nanoseconds counter wraps at 1×10^9 .

50.113.5 Input Capture and Output Compare

The Input Capture Output Compare block can be used to provide precise hardware timing for input and output events.

50.113.5.1 Input capture

The $TCCR_n$ capture registers latch the time value when the corresponding external event occurs. An event can be a rising-, falling-, or either-edge of one of the 1588_TMR_n signals. An event will cause the corresponding $TCSR_n[TF]$ timer flag to be set, indicating that an input capture has occurred. If the corresponding interrupt is enabled with the $TCSR_n[TIE]$ field, an interrupt can be generated.

50.113.5.2 Output compare

The $TCCR_n$ compare registers are loaded with the time at which the corresponding event should occur. When the ENET free-running counter value matches the output compare reference value in the $TCCR_n$ register, the corresponding flag, $TCSR_n[TF]$, is set, indicating that an output compare has occurred. The corresponding interrupt, if enabled by $TCSR_n[TIE]$, will be generated. The corresponding 1588_TMR_n output signal will be asserted according to $TCSR_n[TMODE]$.

50.113.5.3 DMA requests

A DMA request can be enabled by setting $TCSR_n[TDRE]$. The corresponding DMA request is generated when the $TCSR_n[TF]$ timer flag is set. When the DMA has completed, the corresponding $TCSR_n[TF]$ flag is cleared.

50.114 FIFO thresholds

The core FIFO thresholds are fully programmable to dynamically change the FIFO operation.

For example, store and forward transfer can be enabled by a simple change in the FIFO threshold registers.

The thresholds are defined in 64-bit words.

The receive and transmit FIFOs both have a depth of 256 words.

50.114.1 Receive FIFO

Four programmable thresholds are available, which can be set to any value to control the core operation as follows.

Table 50-26. Receive FIFO thresholds definition

Register	Description
ENET n _RSFL [RX_SECTION_F ULL]	<p>When the FIFO level reaches the ENETn_RSFL value, the MAC status signal is asserted to indicate that data is available in the receive FIFO (cut-through operation). Once asserted, if the FIFO empties below the threshold set with ENETn_RAEM and if the end-of-frame is not yet stored in the FIFO, the status signal is deasserted again.</p> <p>If a frame has a size smaller than the threshold (in other words, an end-of-frame is available for the frame), the status is also asserted.</p> <p>To enable store and forward on the receive path, clear ENETn_RSFL. The MAC status signal is asserted only when a complete frame is stored in the receive FIFO.</p> <p>When programming a non-zero value to ENETn_RSFL (cut-through operation) it should be greater than ENETn_RAEM.</p>
ENET n _RAEM [RX_ALMOST_E MPTY]	<p>When the FIFO level reaches the ENETn_RAEM value, and the end-of-frame has not been received, the core receive read control stops the FIFO read (and subsequently stops transferring data to the MAC client application).</p> <p>It continues to deliver the frame, if again more data than the threshold or the end-of-frame is available in the FIFO.</p> <p>Set ENETn_RAEM to a minimum of six.</p>
ENET n _RAFL [RX_ALMOST_F ULL]	<p>When the FIFO level approaches the maximum and there is no more space remaining for at least ENETn_RAFL number of words, the MAC control logic stops writing data in the FIFO and truncates the receive frame to avoid FIFO overflow.</p> <p>The corresponding error status is set when the frame is delivered to the application.</p> <p>Set ENETn_RAFL to a minimum of 4.</p>
ENET n _RSEM [RX_SECTION_E MPTY]	<p>When the FIFO level reaches the ENETn_RSEM value, an indication is sent to the MAC transmit logic, which generates an XOFF pause frame. This indicates FIFO congestion to the remote Ethernet client.</p>

Table 50-26. Receive FIFO thresholds definition

Register	Description
	When the FIFO level goes below the value programmed in ENET n _RSEM, an indication is sent to the MAC transmit logic, which generates an XON pause frame. This indicates the FIFO congestion is cleared to the remote Ethernet client. Clearing ENET n _RSEM disables any pause frame generation.

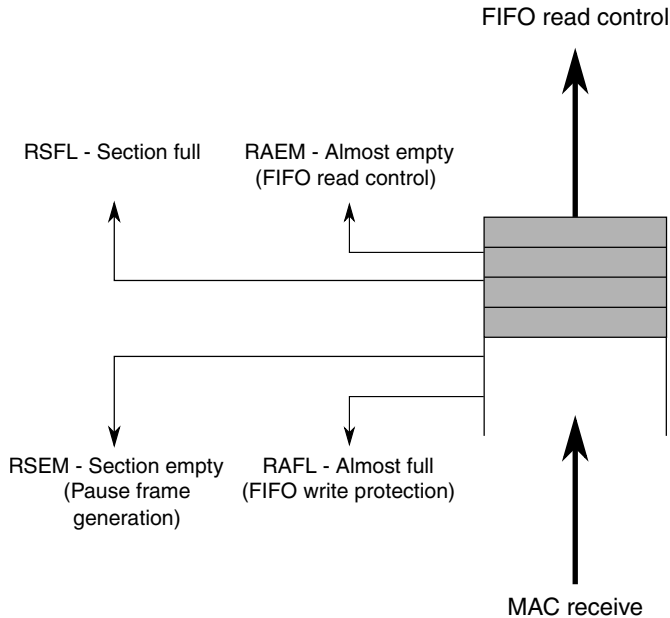


Figure 50-11. Receive FIFO overview

50.114.2 Transmit FIFO

Four programmable thresholds are available which control the core operation as described below.

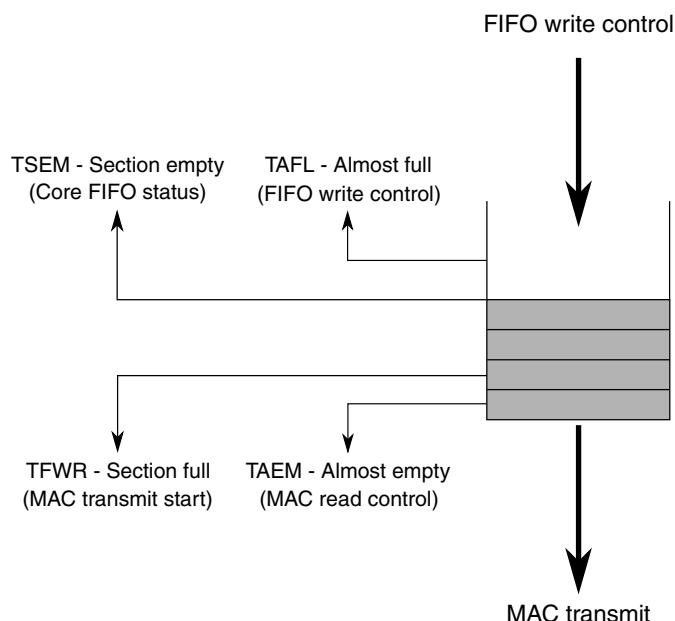
Table 50-27. Transmit FIFO thresholds definition

Register	Description
ENET n _TAEM [TX_ALMOST_EMPTY]	When the FIFO level reaches the ENET n _TAEM value and no end-of-frame is available for the frame, the MAC transmit logic avoids a FIFO underflow by stopping FIFO reads and transmitting the Ethernet frame with an MII error indication. Set ENET n _TAEM to a minimum of 4.
ENET n _TAFL [TX_ALMOST_FULL]	When the FIFO level approaches the maximum, so that there is no more space for at least ENET n _TAFL number of words, the MAC deasserts its control signal to the application. If the application does not react on this signal, the FIFO write control logic avoids FIFO overflow by truncating the current frame and setting the error status. As a result, the frame is transmitted with an MII error indication.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 50-27. Transmit FIFO thresholds definition (continued)

Register	Description
	Set ENET n _TAFL to a minimum of 4. Larger values allow more latency for the application to react on the MAC control signal deassertion, before the frame is truncated. A typical setting is 8, which offers 3–4 clock cycles of latency to the application to react on the MAC control signal deassertion.
ENET n _TSEM [TX_SECTION_EMPTY]	When the FIFO level reaches the ENET n _TSEM value, a MAC status signal is deasserted to indicate that the transmit FIFO is getting full. This gives the ENET module an indication to slow or stop its write transaction to avoid a buffer overflow. This is a pure indication function to the application. It has no effect within the MAC. When ENET n _TSEM is 0, the signal is never deasserted.
ENET n _TFWR	When the FIFO level reaches the ENET n _TFWR value and when STRFWD is cleared, the MAC transmit control logic starts frame transmission before the end-of-frame is available in the FIFO (cut-through operation). If a complete frame has a size smaller than the ENET n _TFWR threshold, the MAC also transmits the frame to the line. To enable store and forward on the transmit path, set STRFWD. In this case, the MAC starts to transmit data only when a complete frame is stored in the transmit FIFO.


Figure 50-12. Transmit FIFO overview

50.115 Loopback options

The core implements external and internal loopback options, which are controlled by the ENET n _RCR register fields found here.

The core implements external and internal loopback options, which are controlled by the following ENET n _RCR register fields:

Table 50-28. Loopback options

Register field	Description
LOOP	<p>Internal MII loopback. The MAC transmit is returned to the MAC receive. No data is transmitted to the external interfaces.</p> <p>In MII internal loopback, MII_TXCLK and MII_RXCLK must be provided with a clock signal (2.5 MHz for 10 Mbit/s, and 25 MHz for 100 Mbit/s))</p>

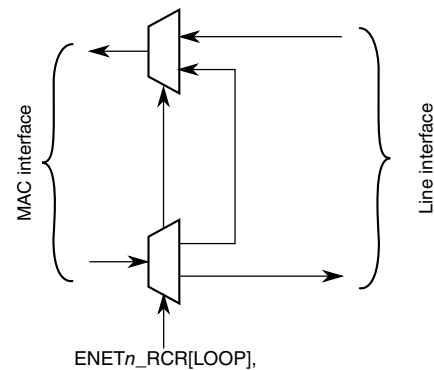


Figure 50-13. Loopback options

50.116 Legacy buffer descriptors

To support the Ethernet controller on previous Freescale devices, legacy FEC buffer descriptors are available. To enable legacy support, clear ENETn_ECR[1588EN].

NOTE

- The legacy buffer descriptor tables show the byte order for little-endian chips. DBSWP must be set to 1 after reset to enable little-endian mode.

50.116.1 Legacy receive buffer descriptor

The following table shows the legacy FEC receive buffer descriptor. Table 50-32 contains the descriptions for each field.

Table 50-29. Legacy FEC receive buffer descriptor (RxBD)

Offset + 0	Byte 1								Byte 0							
	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	Data length															

Table continues on the next page...

Table 50-29. Legacy FEC receive buffer descriptor (RxBD) (continued)

Offset + 2	E	RO1	W	RO2	L	—	—	M	BC	MC	LG	NO	—	CR	OV	TR
Offset + 4	Rx data buffer pointer — low halfword															
Offset + 6	Rx data buffer pointer — high halfword															

50.116.2 Legacy transmit buffer descriptor

The following table shows the legacy FEC transmit buffer descriptor. [Table 50-34](#) contains the descriptions for each field.

Table 50-30. Legacy FEC transmit buffer descriptor (TxBD)

	Byte 1								Byte 0							
	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Offset + 0	Data Length															
Offset + 2	R	TO1	W	TO2	L	TC	ABC ¹	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Offset + 4	Tx Data Buffer Pointer — low halfword															
Offset + 6	Tx Data Buffer Pointer — high halfword															

1. This field is not supported by the uDMA.

50.117 Enhanced buffer descriptors

This section provides a description of the enhanced operation of the driver/uDMA via the buffer descriptors.

It is followed by a detailed description of the receive and transmit descriptor fields. To enable the enhanced features, set ENET n _ECR[1588EN].

NOTE

The enhanced buffer descriptor tables show the byte order for little-endian chips. [DBSWP](#) must be set to 1 after reset to enable little-endian mode.

50.117.1 Enhanced receive buffer descriptor

The following table shows the enhanced uDMA receive buffer descriptor. [Table 50-32](#) contains the descriptions for each field.

Table 50-31. Enhanced uDMA receive buffer descriptor (RxBD)

	Byte 1								Byte 0							
	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Offset + 0	Data length															
Offset + 2	E	RO1	W	RO2	L	—	—	M	BC	MC	LG	NO	—	CR	OV	TR
Offset + 4	Rx data buffer pointer – low halfword															
Offset + 6	Rx data buffer pointer – high halfword															
Offset + 8	VPCP			—	—	—	—	—	—	—	ICE	PCR	—	VLAN	IPV6	FRA G
Offset + A	ME	—	—	—	—	PE	CE	UC	INT	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Offset + C	Payload checksum															
Offset + E	Header length					—	—	—	Protocol type							
Offset + 10	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Offset + 12	BDU	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Offset + 14	1588 timestamp – low halfword															
Offset + 16	1588 timestamp – high halfword															
Offset + 18	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Offset + 1A	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Offset + 1C	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Offset + 1E	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

Table 50-32. Receive buffer descriptor field definitions

Word	Field	Description
Offset + 0	15–0 Data Length	Data length. Written by the MAC. Data length is the number of octets written by the MAC into this BD's data buffer if L is cleared (the value is equal to EMRBR), or the length of the frame including CRC if L is set. It is written by the MAC once as the BD is closed.
Offset + 2	15 E	Empty. Written by the MAC (= 0) and user (= 1). 0 The data buffer associated with this BD is filled with received data, or data reception has aborted due to an error condition. The status and length fields have been updated as required. 1 The data buffer associated with this BD is empty, or reception is currently in progress.
Offset + 2	14 RO1	Receive software ownership. This field is reserved for use by software. This read/write field is not modified by hardware, nor does its value affect hardware.
Offset + 2	13 W	Wrap. Written by user. 0 The next buffer descriptor is found in the consecutive location. 1 The next buffer descriptor is found at the location defined in ENET _n _RDSR.
Offset + 2	12 RO2	Receive software ownership. This field is reserved for use by software. This read/write field is not modified by hardware, nor does its value affect hardware.
Offset + 2	11 L	Last in frame. Written by the uDMA. 0 The buffer is not the last in a frame. 1 The buffer is the last in a frame.
Offset + 2	10–9	Reserved, must be cleared.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 50-32. Receive buffer descriptor field definitions (continued)

Word	Field	Description
Offset + 2	8 M	Miss. Written by the MAC. This field is set by the MAC for frames accepted in promiscuous mode, but flagged as a miss by the internal address recognition. Therefore, while in promiscuous mode, you can use the this field to quickly determine whether the frame was destined to this station. This field is valid only if the L and PROM bits are set. 0 The frame was received because of an address recognition hit. 1 The frame was received because of promiscuous mode. The information needed for this field comes from the promiscuous_miss(ff_rx_err_stat[26]) sideband signal.
Offset + 2	7 BC	Set if the DA is broadcast (FFFF_FFFF_FFFF).
Offset + 2	6 MC	Set if the DA is multicast and not BC.
Offset + 2	5 LG	Receive frame length violation. Written by the MAC. A frame length greater than RCR[MAX_FL] was recognized. This field is valid only if the L field is set. The receive data is not altered in any way unless the length exceeds TRUNC_FL bytes.
Offset + 2	4 NO	Receive non-octet aligned frame. Written by the MAC. A frame that contained a number of bits not divisible by 8 was received, and the CRC check that occurred at the preceding byte boundary generated an error or a PHY error occurred. This field is valid only if the L field is set. If this field is set, the CR field is not set.
Offset + 2	3	Reserved, must be cleared.
Offset + 2	2 CR	Receive CRC or frame error. Written by the MAC. This frame contains a PHY or CRC error and is an integral number of octets in length. This field is valid only if the L field is set.
Offset + 2	1 OV	Overflow. Written by the MAC. A receive FIFO overflow occurred during frame reception. If this field is set, the other status fields, M, LG, NO, and CR, lose their normal meaning and are zero. This field is valid only if the L field is set.
Offset + 2	0 TR	Set if the receive frame is truncated (frame length >TRUNC_FL). If the TR field is set, the frame must be discarded and the other error fields must be ignored because they may be incorrect.
Offset + 4	15–0 Data buffer pointer low	Receive data buffer pointer, low halfword
Offset + 6	15–0 Data buffer pointer high	Receive data buffer pointer, high halfword ¹
Offset + 8	15–13 VPCP	VLAN priority code point. This field is written by the uDMA to indicate the frame priority level. Valid values are from 0 (best effort) to 7 (highest). This value can be used to prioritize different classes of traffic (e.g., voice, video, data). This field is only valid if the L field is set.
Offset + 8	12–6	Reserved, must be cleared.
Offset + 8	5 ICE	IP header checksum error. This is an accelerator option. This field is written by the uDMA. Set when either a non-IP frame is received or the IP header checksum was invalid. An IP frame with less than 3 bytes of payload is considered to be an invalid IP frame. This field is only valid if the L field is set.
Offset + 8	4 PCR	Protocol checksum error. This is an accelerator option. This field is written by the uDMA. Set when the checksum of the protocol is invalid or an unknown protocol is found and checksumming could not be performed. This field is only valid if the L field is set.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 50-32. Receive buffer descriptor field definitions (continued)

Word	Field	Description
Offset + 8	3	Reserved, must be cleared.
Offset + 8	2 VLAN	VLAN. This is an accelerator option. This field is written by the uDMA. It means that the frame has a VLAN tag. This field is valid only if the L field is set.
Offset + 8	1 IPV6	IPV6 Frame. This field is written by the uDMA. This field indicates that the frame has an IPv6 frame type. If this field is not set it means that an IPv4 or other protocol frame was received. This field is valid only if the L field is set.
Offset + 8	0 FRAG	IPv4 Fragment. This is an accelerator option. This field is written by the uDMA. It indicates that the frame is an IPv4 fragment frame. This field is only valid when the L field is set.
Offset + A	15 ME	MAC error. This field is written by the uDMA. This field means that the frame stored in the system memory was received with an error (typically, a receive FIFO overflow). This field is only valid when the L field is set.
Offset + A	14–11	Reserved, must be cleared.
Offset + A	10 PE	PHY Error. This field is written by the uDMA. Set to "1" when the frame was received with an Error character on the PHY interface. The frame is invalid. This field is valid only when the L field is set.
Offset + A	9 CE	Collision. This field is written by the uDMA. Set when the frame was received with a collision detected during reception. The frame is invalid and sent to the user application. This field is valid only when the L field is set.
Offset + A	8 UC	Unicast. This field is written by the uDMA, and means that the frame is unicast. This field is valid regardless of whether the L field is set.
Offset + A	7 INT	Generate RXB/RXF interrupt. This field is set by the user to indicate that the uDMA is to generate an interrupt on the <i>dma_int_rxb</i> / <i>dma_int_rxfevent</i> .
Offset + A	6–0	Reserved, must be cleared.
Offset + C	15–0 Payload checksum	Internet payload checksum. This is an accelerator option. It is the one's complement sum of the payload section of the IP frame. The sum is calculated over all data following the IP header until the end of the IP payload. This field is valid only when the L field is set.
Offset + E	15–11 Header length	Header length. This is an accelerator option. This field is written by the uDMA. This field is the sum of 32-bit words found within the IP and its following protocol headers. If an IP datagram with an unknown protocol is found, then the value is the length of the IP header. If no IP frame or an erroneous IP header is found, the value is 0. The following values are minimum values if no header options exist in the respective headers: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ICMP/IP: 6 (5 IP header, 1 ICMP header) • UDP/IP: 7 (5 IP header, 2 UDP header) • TCP/IP: 10 (5 IP header, 5 TCP header) This field is only valid if the L field is set.
Offset + E	10–8	Reserved, must be cleared.
Offset + E	7–0 Protocol type	Protocol type. This is an accelerator option. The 8-bit protocol field found within the IP header of the frame. It is valid only when ICE is cleared. This field is valid only when the L field is set.
Offset + 10	15–0	Reserved, must be cleared.
Offset + 12	15 BDU	Last buffer descriptor update done. Indicates that the last BD data has been updated by uDMA. This field is written by the user (=0) and uDMA (=1).

Table continues on the next page...

Table 50-32. Receive buffer descriptor field definitions (continued)

Word	Field	Description
Offset + 12	14–0	Reserved, must be cleared.
Offset + 14	15–0	This value is written by the uDMA. It is only valid if the L field is set.
Offset + 16	1588 timestamp	
Offset + 18	15–0	Reserved, must be cleared.
–		
Offset + 1E		

1. The receive buffer pointer, containing the address of the associated data buffer, must always be evenly divisible by 16. The buffer must reside in memory external to the MAC. The Ethernet controller never modifies this value.

50.117.2 Enhanced transmit buffer descriptor

Table 50-33. Enhanced transmit buffer descriptor (TxBD)

	Byte 1								Byte 0							
	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Offset + 0	Data length															
Offset + 2	R	TO1	W	TO2	L	TC	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Offset + 4	Tx Data Buffer Pointer – low halfword															
Offset + 6	Tx Data Buffer Pointer – high halfword															
Offset + 8	TXE	—	UE	EE	FE	LCE	OE	TSE	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Offset + A	—	INT	TS	PINS	IINS	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Offset + C	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Offset + E	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Offset + 10	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Offset + 12	BDU	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Offset + 14	1588 timestamp – low halfword															
Offset + 16	1588 timestamp – high halfword															
Offset + 18	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Offset + 1A	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Offset + 1C	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Offset + 1E	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

Table 50-34. Enhanced transmit buffer descriptor field definitions

Word	Field	Description
Offset + 0	15–0	Data length, written by user.
	Data Length	Data length is the number of octets the MAC should transmit from this BD's data buffer. It is never modified by the MAC.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 50-34. Enhanced transmit buffer descriptor field definitions (continued)

Word	Field	Description
Offset + 2	15 R	Ready. Written by the MAC and you. 0 The data buffer associated with this BD is not ready for transmission. You are free to manipulate this BD or its associated data buffer. The MAC clears this field after the buffer has been transmitted or after an error condition is encountered. 1 The data buffer, prepared for transmission by you, has not been transmitted or currently transmits. You may write no fields of this BD after this field is set.
Offset + 2	14 TO1	Transmit software ownership. This field is reserved for software use. This read/write field is not modified by hardware and its value does not affect hardware.
Offset + 2	13 W	Wrap. Written by user. 0 The next buffer descriptor is found in the consecutive location 1 The next buffer descriptor is found at the location defined in ETDSR.
Offset + 2	12 TO2	Transmit software ownership. This field is reserved for use by software. This read/write field is not modified by hardware and its value does not affect hardware.
Offset + 2	11 L	Last in frame. Written by user. 0 The buffer is not the last in the transmit frame 1 The buffer is the last in the transmit frame
Offset + 2	10 TC	Transmit CRC. Written by user, and valid only when L is set. 0 End transmission immediately after the last data byte 1 Transmit the CRC sequence after the last data byte This field is valid only when the L field is set.
Offset + 2	9 ABC	Append bad CRC. Note: This field is not supported by the uDMA and is ignored.
Offset + 2	8–0	Reserved, must be cleared.
Offset + 4	15–0 Data buffer pointer low	Tx data buffer pointer, low halfword
Offset + 6	15–0 Data buffer pointer high	Tx data buffer pointer, high halfword. The transmit buffer pointer, containing the address of the associated data buffer, must always be evenly divisible by 8. The buffer must reside in memory external to the MAC. This value is never modified by the Ethernet controller.
Offset + 8	15 TXE	Transmit error occurred. This field is written by the uDMA. This field indicates that there was a transmit error of some sort reported with the frame. Effectively this field is an OR of the other error fields including UE, EE, FE, LCE, OE, and TSE. This field is valid only when the L field is set.
Offset + 8	14	Reserved, must be cleared.
Offset + 8	13 UE	Underflow error. This field is written by the uDMA. This field indicates that the MAC reported an underflow error on transmit. This field is valid only when the L field is set.
Offset + 8	12 EE	Excess Collision error. This field is written by the uDMA. This field indicates that the MAC reported an excess collision error on transmit. This field is valid only when the L field is set.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 50-34. Enhanced transmit buffer descriptor field definitions (continued)

Word	Field	Description
Offset + 8	11 FE	Frame with error. This field is written by the uDMA. This field indicates that the MAC reported that the uDMA reported an error when providing the packet. This field is valid only when the L field is set.
Offset + 8	10 LCE	Late collision error. This field is written by the uDMA. This field indicates that the MAC reported that there was a Late Collision on transmit. This field is valid only when the L field is set.
Offset + 8	9 OE	Overflow error. This field is written by the uDMA. This field indicates that the MAC reported that there was a FIFO overflow condition on transmit. This field is only valid when the L field is set.
Offset + 8	8 TSE	Timestamp error. This field is written by the uDMA. This field indicates that the MAC reported a different frame type then a timestamp frame. This field is valid only when the L field is set.
Offset + 8	7–0	Reserved, must be cleared.
Offset + A	15	Reserved, must be cleared.
Offset + A	14 INT	Generate interrupt flags. This field is written by the user. This field is valid regardless of the L field and must be the same for all EBD for a given frame. The uDMA does not update this value.
Offset + A	13 TS	Timestamp. This field is written by the user. This indicates that the uDMA is to generate a timestamp frame to the MAC. This field is valid regardless of the L field and must be the same for all EBD for the given frame. The uDMA does not update this value.
Offset + A	12 PINS	Insert protocol specific checksum. This field is written by the user. If set, the MAC's IP accelerator calculates the protocol checksum and overwrites the corresponding checksum field with the calculated value. The checksum field must be cleared by the application generating the frame. The uDMA does not update this value. This field is valid regardless of the L field and must be the same for all EBD for a given frame.
Offset + A	11 IINS	Insert IP header checksum. This field is written by the user. If set, the MAC's IP accelerator calculates the IP header checksum and overwrites the corresponding header field with the calculated value. The checksum field must be cleared by the application generating the frame. The uDMA does not update this value. This field is valid regardless of the L field and must be the same for all EBD for a given frame.
Offset + A	10–0	Reserved, must be cleared.
Offset + C	15–0	Reserved, must be cleared.
Offset + E	15–0	Reserved, must be cleared.
Offset + 10	15–0	Reserved, must be cleared.
Offset + 12	15 BDU	Last buffer descriptor update done. Indicates that the last BD data has been updated by uDMA. This field is written by the user (=0) and uDMA (=1).
Offset + 12	14–0	Reserved, must be cleared.
Offset + 14	1588 timestamp	This value is written by the uDMA . It is valid only when the L field is set.
Offset + 16		
Offset + 18–Offset + 1E	15–0	Reserved, must be cleared.

50.118 Client FIFO application interface

The FIFO interface is completely asynchronous from the Ethernet line, and the transmit and receive interface can operate at a different clock rate.

All transfers to/from the user application are handled independently of the core operation, and the core provides a simple interface to user applications based on a two-signal handshake.

50.118.1 Data structure description

The data structure defined in the following tables for the FIFO interface must be respected to ensure proper data transmission on the Ethernet line. Byte 0 is sent to and received from the line first.

Table 50-35. FIFO interface data structure

	63	56 55	48 47	40 39	32 31	24 23	16 15	8 7	0
Word 0	Byte 7	Byte 6	Byte 5	Byte 4	Byte 3	Byte 2	Byte 1	Byte 0	
Word 1	Byte 15	Byte 14	Byte 13	Byte 12	Byte 11	Byte 10	Byte 9	Byte 8	
...	...								

The size of a frame on the FIFO interface may not be a modulo of 64-bit.

The user application may not care about the Ethernet frame formats in full detail. It needs to provide and receive an Ethernet frame with the following structure:

- Ethernet MAC destination address
- Ethernet MAC source address
- Optional 802.1q VLAN tag (VLAN type and info field)
- Ethernet length/type field
- Payload

Frames on the FIFO interface do not contain preamble and SFD fields, which are inserted and discarded by the MAC on transmit and receive, respectively.

- On receive, CRC and frame padding can be stripped or passed through transparently.
- On transmit, padding and CRC can be provided by the user application, or appended automatically by the MAC independently for each frame. No size restrictions apply.

Note

On transmit, if ENET n _TCR[ADDINS] is set, bytes 6–11 of each frame can be set to any value, since the MAC overwrites the bytes with the MAC address programmed in the ENET n _PAUR and ENET n _PALR registers.

Table 50-36. FIFO interface frame format

Byte number	Field
0–5	Destination MAC address
6–11	Source MAC address
12–13	Length/type field
14–N	Payload data

VLAN-tagged frames are supported on both transmit and receive, and implement additional information (VLAN type and info).

Table 50-37. FIFO interface VLAN frame format

Byte number	Field
0–5	Destination MAC address
6–11	Source MAC address
12–15	VLAN tag and info
16–17	Length/type field
18–N	Payload data

Note

The standard defines that the LSB of the MAC address is sent/received first, while for all the other header fields — in other words, length/type, VLAN tag, VLAN info, and pause quanta — the MSB is sent/received first.

50.118.2 Data structure examples

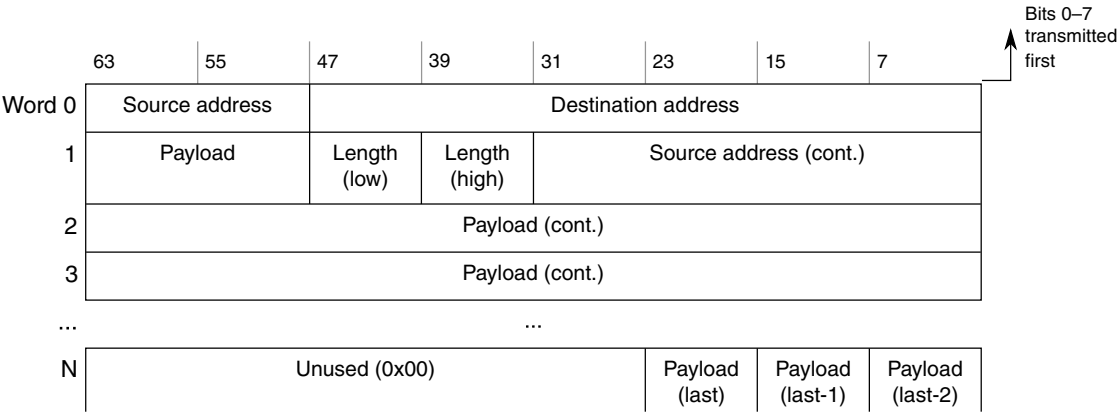


Figure 50-14. Normal Ethernet frame 64-bit mapping example

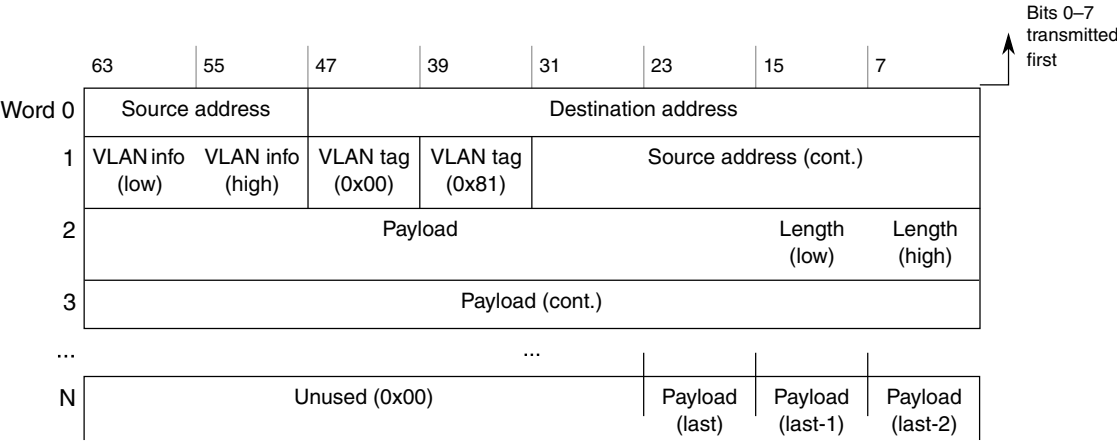


Figure 50-15. VLAN-tagged frame 64-bit mapping example

If CRC forwarding is enabled (CRCFWD = 0), the last four valid octets of the frame contain the FCS field. The non-significant bytes of the last word can have any value.

50.118.3 Frame status

A MAC layer status word and an accelerator status word is available in the receive buffer descriptor.

See [Enhanced buffer descriptors](#) for details.

The status is available with each frame with the last data of the frame.

If the frame status contains a MAC layer error (for example, CRC or length error), RxB[ME] is also set with the last data of the frame.

50.119 FIFO protection

The following sections describe the FIFO protection mechanisms.

50.119.1 Transmit FIFO underflow

During a frame transfer, when the transmit FIFO reaches the almost empty threshold with no end-of-frame indication stored in the FIFO, the MAC logic:

- Stops reading data from the FIFO
- Asserts the MII error signal (MII_TXER) (1 in [Figure 50-16](#)) to indicate that the fragment already transferred is not valid
- Deasserts the MII transmit enable signal (MII_TXEN) to terminate the frame transfer (2)

After an underflow, when the application completes the frame transfer (3), the MAC transmit logic discards any new data available in the FIFO until the end of packet is reached (4) and sets the enhanced TxBD[UE] field.

The MAC starts to transfer data on the MII interface when the application sends a new frame with a start of frame indication (5).

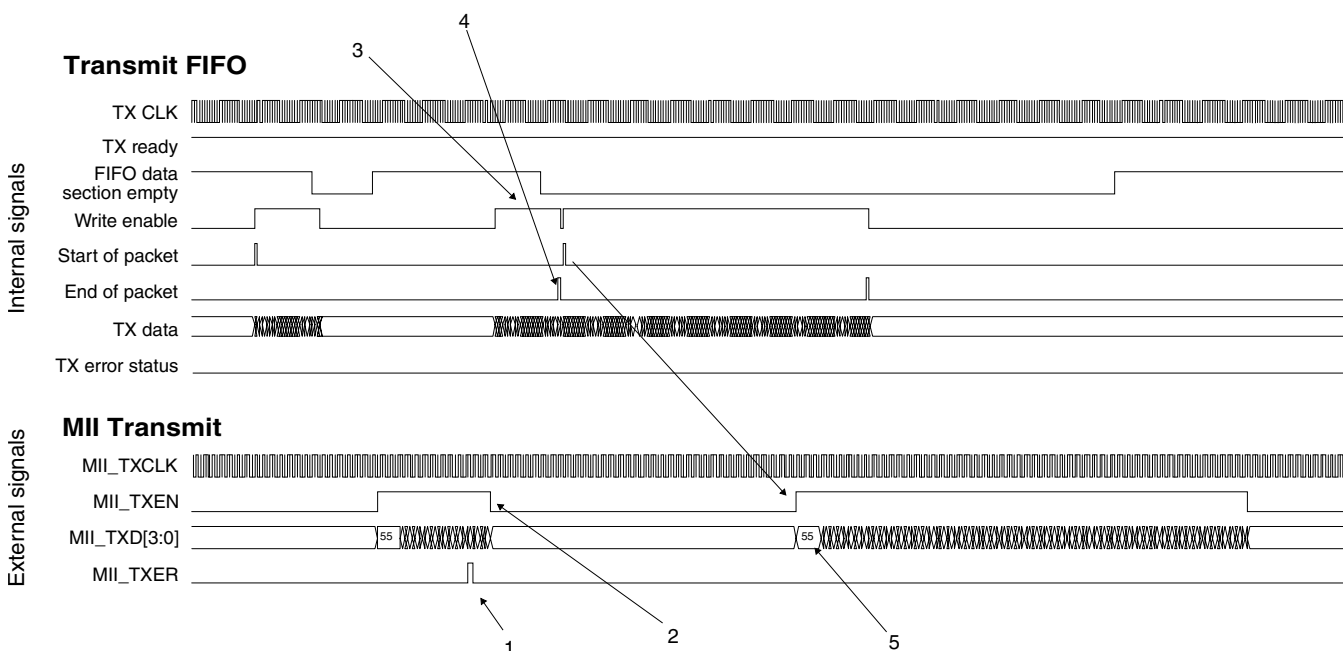


Figure 50-16. Transmit FIFO underflow protection

50.119.2 Transmit FIFO overflow

On the transmit path, when the FIFO reaches the programmable almost full threshold, the internal MAC ready signal is deasserted. The application should stop sending new data.

However, if the application keeps sending data, the transmit FIFO overflows, corrupting contents that were previously stored. The core logic sets the enhanced TxBD[OE] field for the next frame transmitted to indicate this overflow occurrence.

Note

Overflow is a fatal error and must be addressed by resetting the core or clearing ENET n _ECR[ETHER_EN], to clear the FIFOs and prepare for normal operation again.

50.119.3 Receive FIFO overflow

During a frame reception, if the client application is not able to receive data (1), the MAC receive control truncates the incoming frame when the FIFO reaches the programmable almost-full threshold to avoid an overflow.

The frame is subsequently received on the FIFO interface with an error indication (enhanced RxBD[ME] field set together with receive end-of-packet) (2) with the truncation error status field set (3).

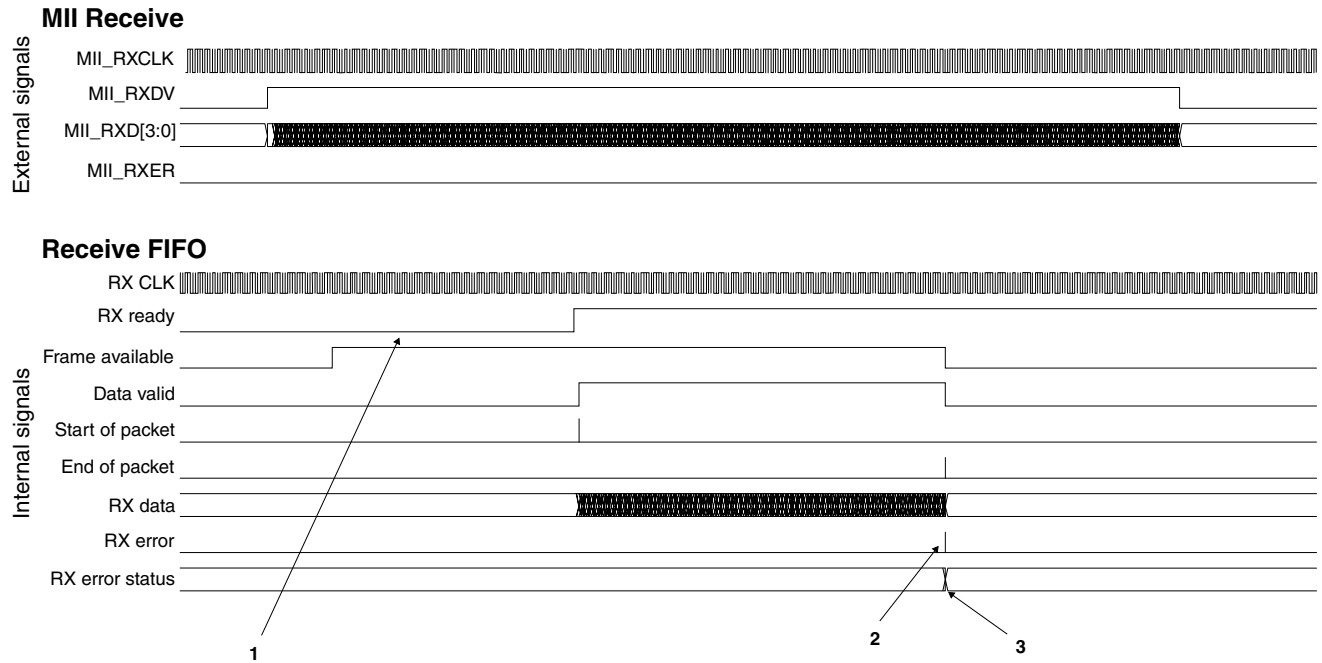


Figure 50-17. Receive FIFO overflow protection

50.120 Reference clock

The input clocks to the ENET module must meet the specifications in the following table.

Ethernet speed mode	Ethernet bus clock	Minimum ENET system clock
10 Mbit/s	2.5 MHz	5 MHz
100 Mbit/s	25.0 MHz	50 MHz

50.121 PHY management interface

The MDIO interface is a two-wire management interface. The MDIO management interface implements a standardized method to access the PHY device management registers.

The core implements a master MDIO interface, which can be connected to up to 32 PHY devices.

50.121.1 MDIO clause 22 frame format

The core MDIO master controller communicates with the slave (PHY device) using frames that are defined in the following table.

A complete frame has a length of 64 bits made up of an optional 32-bit preamble, 14-bit command, 2-bit bus direction change, and 16-bit data. Each bit is transferred on the rising edge of the MDIO clock (MDC signal). The MDIO data signal is tri-stated between frames.

The core PHY management interface supports the standard MDIO specification (IEEE 802.3 Clause 22).

Table 50-38. MDIO clause 22 frame structure

ST	OP	PHYADR	REGADR	TA	DATA
----	----	--------	--------	----	------

Table 50-39. MDIO frame field descriptions

Field	Description
ST (2 bits)	Start indication field, programmed with ENET _n _MMFR[ST] and equal to 01 for Standard MDIO (Clause 22).
OP (2 bits)	Opcode defines type of operation. Programmed with ENET _n _MMFR[OP]. 01 Write operation 10 Read operation
PHYADR (5 bits)	Five-bit PHY device address, programmed with ENET _n _MMFR[PA]. Up to 32 devices can be addressed.
REGADR (5 bits)	Five-bit register address, programmed with ENET _n _MMFR[RA]. Each PHY can implement up to 32 registers.
TA (2 bits)	Turnaround time, programmed with ENET _n _MMFR[TA]. Two bit-times are reserved for read operations to switch the data bus from write to read. The PHY device presents its register contents in the data phase and drives the bus from the second bit of the turnaround phase.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 50-39. MDIO frame field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
Data (16 bits)	Data, set by ENETn_MMFR[DATA]. Written to or read from the PHY

50.121.2 MDIO clause 45 frame format

The extended MDIO frame structure defined in IEEE 802.3 Clause 45 introduces indirect addressing. First, a write transaction to an address register is done, followed by a write or read transaction which will put the 16-bit data in the register or retrieve the register contents respectively. A preamble of 32 bits of logical ones is sent prior to every transaction. The MDIO data signal is tri-stated between frames.

The extended MDIO defines four transactions, which are determined by the two-bit opcode field.

Table 50-40. MDIO clause 45 frame structure

ST	OP	PRTAD	DEVAD	TA	ADDR/DATA
----	----	-------	-------	----	-----------

All bits are transmitted from left to right (Preamble bits first) and all fields have their Most-Significant bit sent first (leftmost in above table). The complete frame has a length of 64 bits (32-bit preamble, 14-bit command, 2-bit bus direction change, 16-bit data). Each bit is transferred with the rising edge of the MDIO clock (MDC).

The fields and transactions are summarized in the following tables.

Table 50-41. MDIO clause 45 frame field descriptions

Field	Description
ST	Start indication. Indicates the end of the preamble and start of the frame. This value is 00 for extended MDIO (Clause 45) frames.
OP	Opcode defines if a read or write operation is performed and is programmed with ENETn_MMFR[OP]. See Table 50-42 for more information. 00 Address write 01 Write operation 10 Read inc. operation 11 Read operation
PRTAD	The port address specifies a MDIO port. Each Port can have up to 32 devices which each can have a separate set of registers.
DEVAD	Device address. Up to 32 devices can be addressed (within a port).

Table continues on the next page...

Table 50-41. MDIO clause 45 frame field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
TA	Turnaround time, programmed with ENET n _MMFR[TA]. Two bit-times are reserved for read operations to switch the data bus from write to read. The PHY device presents its register contents in the data phase and drives the bus from the second bit of the turnaround phase.
ADDR/DATA	16-bit address (for address write) or data, set by ENET n _MMFR[DATA], written to or read from the PHY.

Table 50-42. MDIO Clause 45 Transactions

Transaction Type	Description
Address	A write transaction to the internal address register of the device/port. The data section of the frame contains the value to be stored in the device's internal address "pointer" register for further transactions.
Write	Data write to a register. The 16 bit data will be written to the register identified by the device-internal address.
Read	Data is read from the register identified by the device-internal address.
Read inc.	Read with address postincrement. The register identified by the device-internal address is read. After this, the device-internal address is incremented. If the address register is all '1' (0xFFFF) no increment is done (i.e. increment does not wrap around).

50.121.3 MDIO clock generation

The MDC clock is generated from the internal bus clock (i.e., IPS bus clock) divided by the value programmed in ENET n _MSCR[MII_SPEED].

50.121.4 MDIO operation

To perform an MDIO access, set the MDIO command register (ENET n _MMFR) according to the description provided in MII Management Frame Register (ENET n _MMFR).

To check when the programmed access completes, read the ENET n _EIR[MII] field.

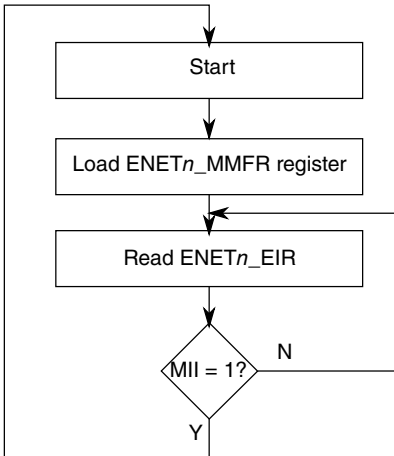


Figure 50-18. MDIO access overview

50.122 Ethernet interfaces

The following Ethernet interfaces are implemented:

- Fast Ethernet MII (Media Independent Interface)
- RMII 10/100 using interface converters/gaskets

The following table shows how to configure ENET registers to select each interface.

Mode	ECR[SLEEP]	RCR[RMII_10T]	RCR[RMII_MODE]
MII - 10 Mbit/s	0	—	0
MII - 100 Mbit/s	0	—	0
RMII - 10 Mbit/s	0	1	1
RMII - 100 Mbit/s	0	0	1

50.122.1 RMII interface

In RMII receive mode, for normal reception following assertion of CRS_DV, RXD[1:0] is 00 until the receiver determines that the receive event has a proper start-of-stream delimiter (SSD).

The preamble appears (RXD[1:0]=01) and the MACs begin capturing data following detection of SFD.

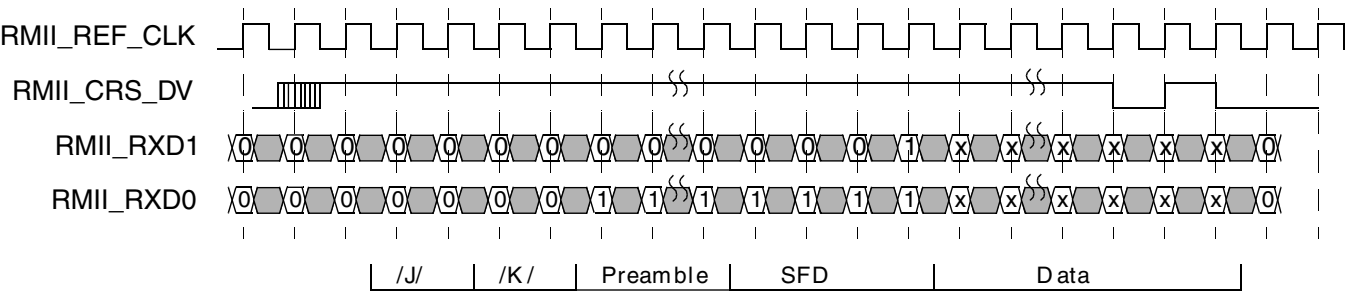


Figure 50-19. RMII receive operation

If a false carrier is detected (bad SSD), then RXD[1:0] is 10 until the end of the receive event. This is a unique pattern since a false carrier can only occur at the beginning of a packet where the preamble is decoded (RXD[1:0] = 01).

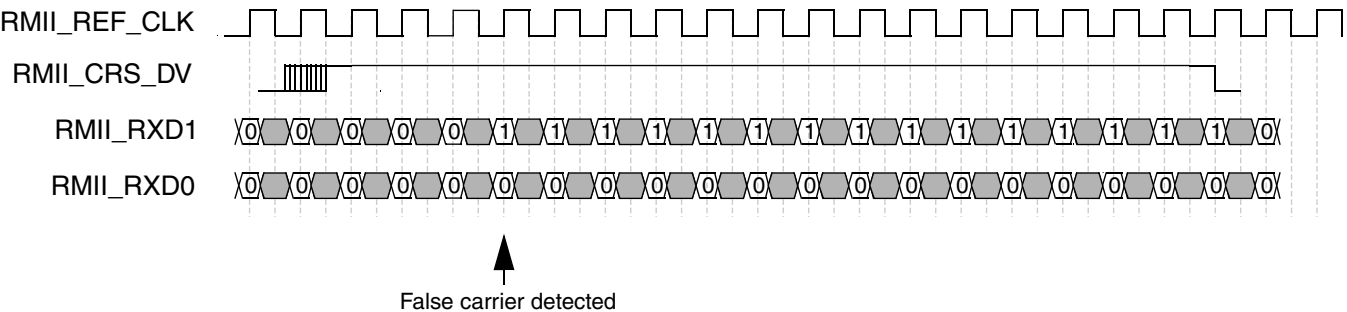


Figure 50-20. RMII receive operation with false carrier

In RMII transmit mode, TXD[1:0] provides valid data for each REF_CLK period while TXEN is asserted.

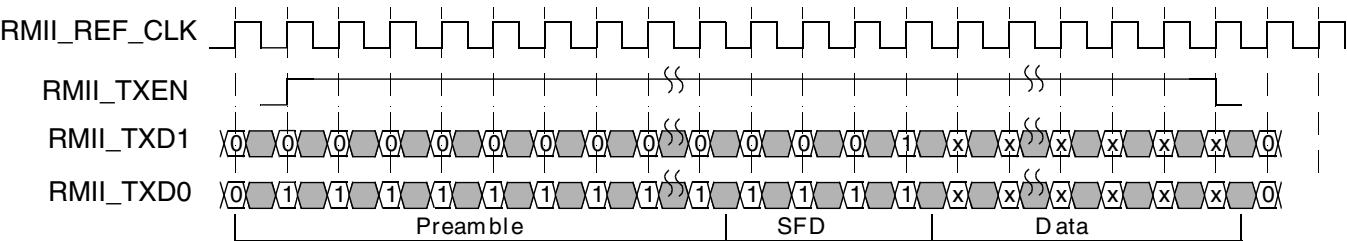


Figure 50-21. RMII transmit operation

50.122.2 MII Interface — transmit

On transmit, all data transfers are synchronous to MII_TXCLK rising edge. The MII data enable signal MII_TXEN is asserted to indicate the start of a new frame, and remains asserted until the last byte of the frame is present on the MII_TXD[3:0] bus.

Between frames, MII_TXEN remains deasserted.

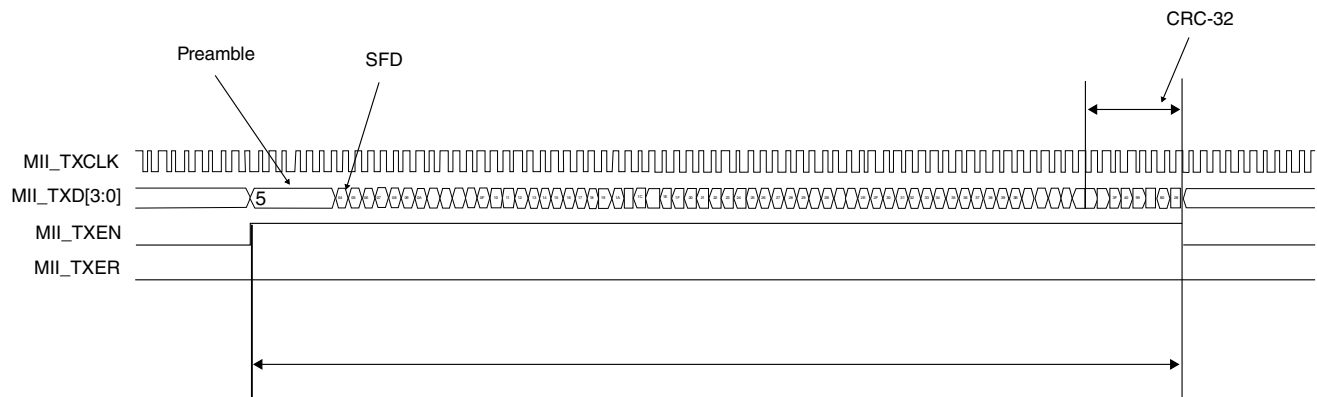


Figure 50-22. MII transmit operation

If a frame is received on the FIFO interface with an error (for example, RxBD[ME] set) the frame is subsequently transmitted with the MII_TXER error signal for one clock cycle at any time during the packet transfer.

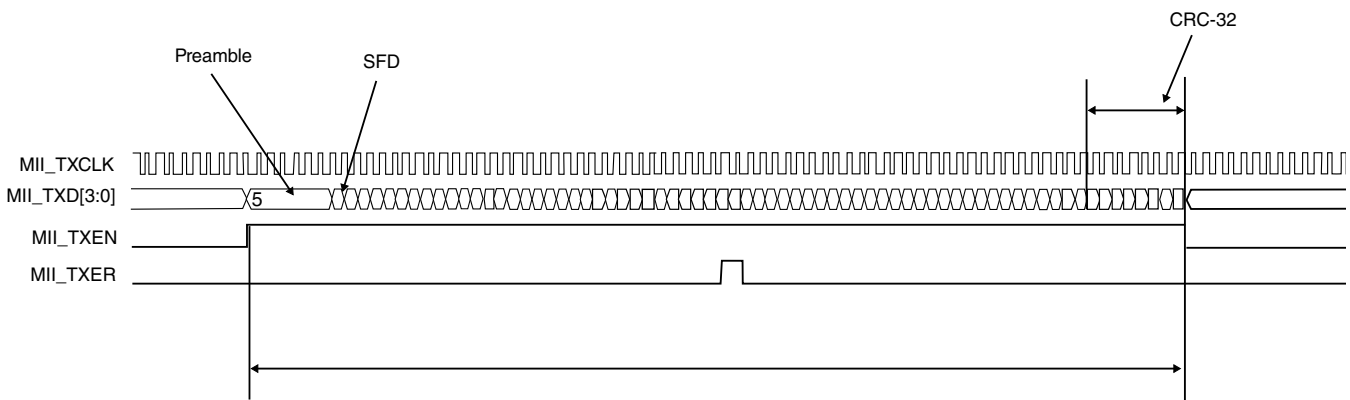


Figure 50-23. MII transmit operation — errored frame

50.122.2.1 Transmit with collision — half-duplex

When a collision is detected during a frame transmission (MII_COL asserted), the MAC stops the current transmission, sends a 32-bit jam pattern, and re-transmits the current frame.

(See [Collision detection in half-duplex mode](#) for details)

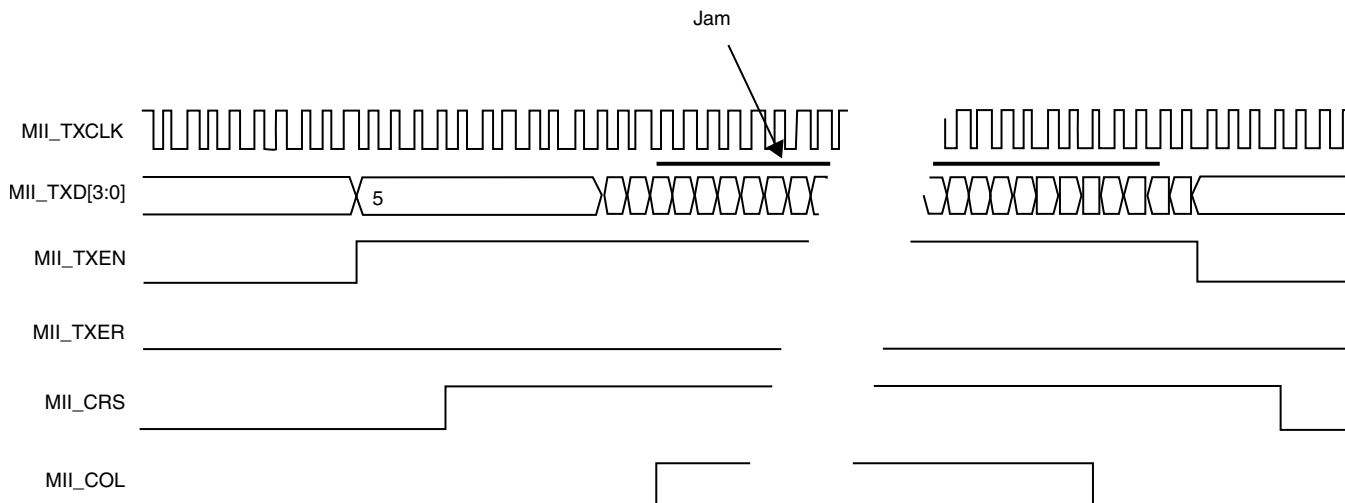


Figure 50-24. MII transmit operation — transmission with collision

50.122.3 MII interface — receive

On receive, all signals are sampled on the MII_RXCLK rising edge. The MII data enable signal, MII_RXDV, is asserted by the PHY to indicate the start of a new frame and remains asserted until the last byte of the frame is present on MII_RXD[3:0] bus.

Between frames, MII_RXDV remains deasserted.

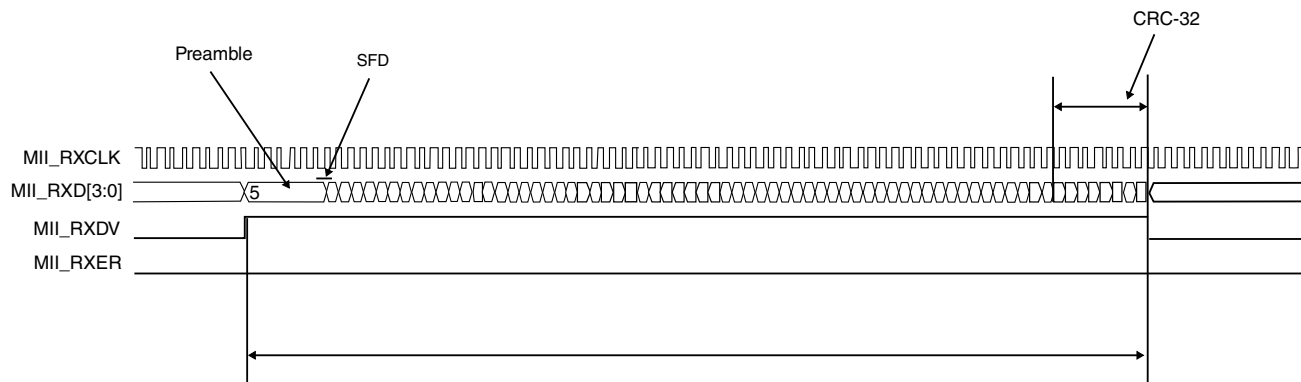


Figure 50-25. MII receive operation

If the PHY detects an error on the frame received from the line, the PHY asserts the MII error signal, MII_RXER, for at least one clock cycle at any time during the packet transfer.

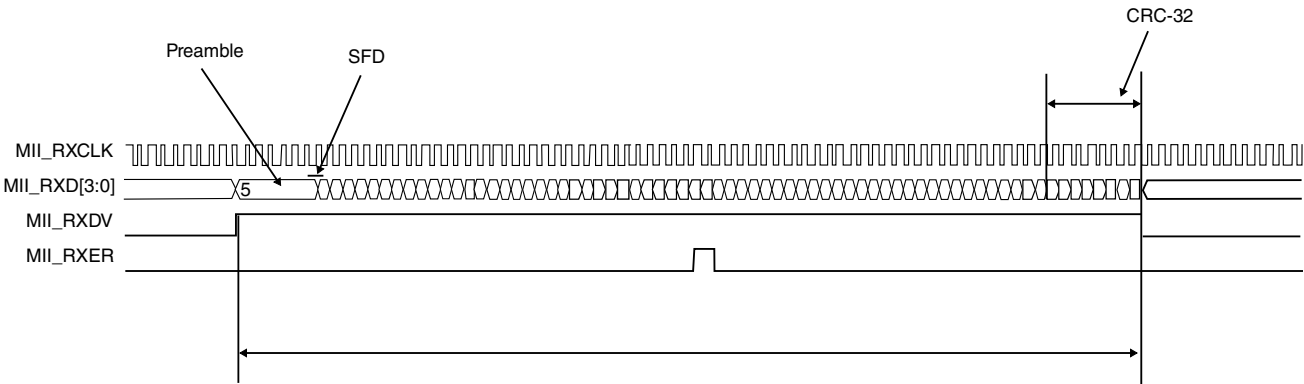


Figure 50-26. MII receive operation — errored frame

A frame received on the MII interface with a PHY error indication is subsequently transferred on the FIFO interface with RxBD[ME] set.

50.123.10.1.1 Adjustable Timer Implementation

Chapter 51

Inter-Integrated Circuit (I2C)

51.1 Chip-specific I2C information

51.1.1 Number of I2C modules

This device has two I²C modules.

51.2 Introduction

The inter-integrated circuit (I²C, I2C, or IIC) module provides a method of communication between a number of devices.

The interface is designed to operate up to 100 kbit/s with maximum bus loading and timing. The I2C device is capable of operating at higher baud rates, up to a maximum of clock/20, with reduced bus loading. The maximum communication length and the number of devices that can be connected are limited by a maximum bus capacitance of 400 pF. The I2C module also complies with the *System Management Bus (SMBus) Specification, version 2*.

51.2.1 Features

The I2C module has the following features:

- Compatible with *The I²C-Bus Specification*
- Multimaster operation
- Software programmable for one of 64 different serial clock frequencies
- Software-selectable acknowledge bit
- Interrupt-driven byte-by-byte data transfer

- Arbitration-lost interrupt with automatic mode switching from master to slave
- Calling address identification interrupt
- START and STOP signal generation and detection
- Repeated START signal generation and detection
- Acknowledge bit generation and detection
- Bus busy detection
- General call recognition
- 10-bit address extension
- Support for *System Management Bus (SMBus) Specification, version 2*
- Programmable input glitch filter
- Low power mode wakeup on slave address match
- Range slave address support
- DMA support

51.2.2 Modes of operation

The I2C module's operation in various low power modes is as follows:

- Run mode: This is the basic mode of operation. To conserve power in this mode, disable the module.
- Wait mode: The module continues to operate when the core is in Wait mode and can provide a wakeup interrupt.
- Stop mode: The module is inactive in Stop mode for reduced power consumption, except that address matching is enabled in Stop mode. The STOP instruction does not affect the I2C module's register states.

51.2.3 Block diagram

The following figure is a functional block diagram of the I2C module.

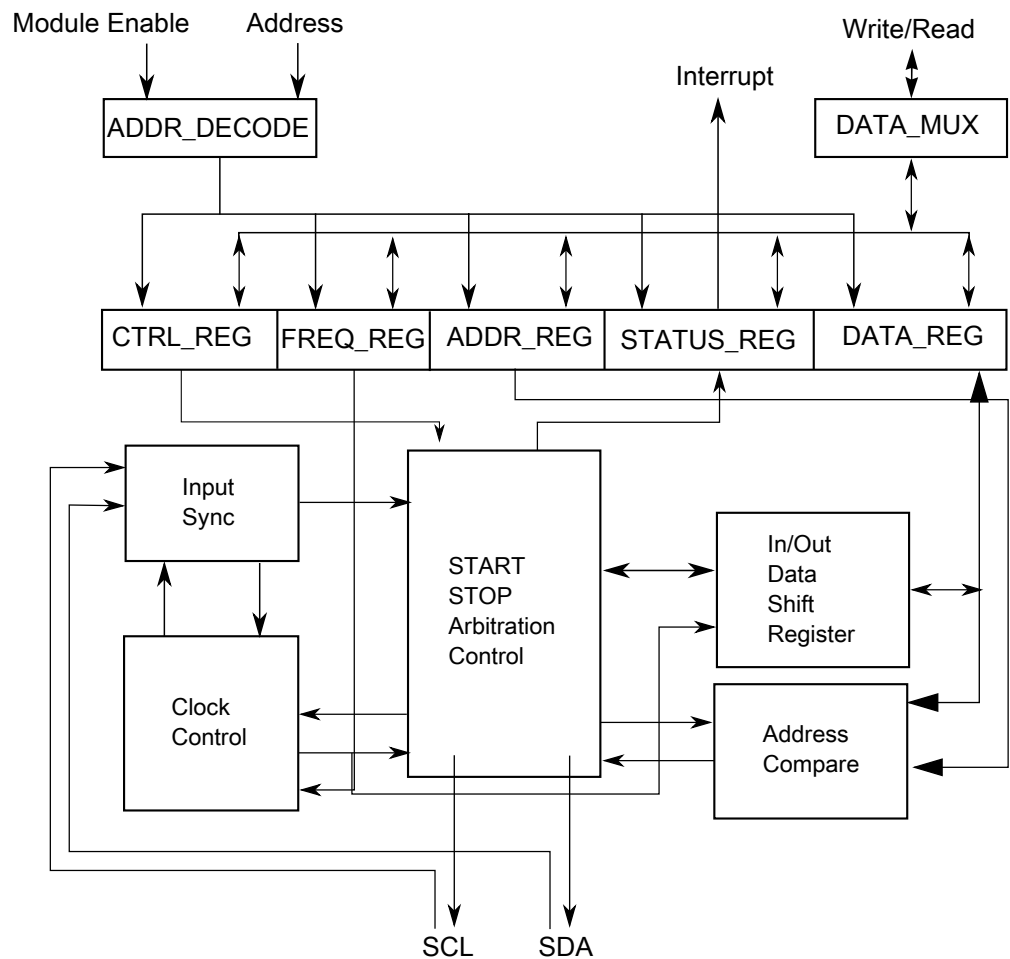


Figure 51-1. I2C Functional block diagram

51.3 I²C signal descriptions

The signal properties of I²C are shown in the table found here.

Table 51-1. I²C signal descriptions

Signal	Description	I/O
SCL	Bidirectional serial clock line of the I ² C system.	I/O
SDA	Bidirectional serial data line of the I ² C system.	I/O

51.4 Memory map/register definition

This section describes in detail all I2C registers accessible to the end user.

I2C memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4006_6000	I2C Address Register 1 (I2C0_A1)	8	R/W	00h	51.4.1/1601
4006_6001	I2C Frequency Divider register (I2C0_F)	8	R/W	00h	51.4.2/1601
4006_6002	I2C Control Register 1 (I2C0_C1)	8	R/W	00h	51.4.3/1602
4006_6003	I2C Status register (I2C0_S)	8	R/W	80h	51.4.4/1604
4006_6004	I2C Data I/O register (I2C0_D)	8	R/W	00h	51.4.5/1606
4006_6005	I2C Control Register 2 (I2C0_C2)	8	R/W	00h	51.4.6/1606
4006_6006	I2C Programmable Input Glitch Filter Register (I2C0_FLT)	8	R/W	00h	51.4.7/1607
4006_6007	I2C Range Address register (I2C0_RA)	8	R/W	00h	51.4.8/1609
4006_6008	I2C SMBus Control and Status register (I2C0_SMB)	8	R/W	00h	51.4.9/1609
4006_6009	I2C Address Register 2 (I2C0_A2)	8	R/W	C2h	51.4.10/1611
4006_600A	I2C SCL Low Timeout Register High (I2C0_SLTH)	8	R/W	00h	51.4.11/1611
4006_600B	I2C SCL Low Timeout Register Low (I2C0_SLTL)	8	R/W	00h	51.4.12/1612
4006_7000	I2C Address Register 1 (I2C1_A1)	8	R/W	00h	51.4.1/1601
4006_7001	I2C Frequency Divider register (I2C1_F)	8	R/W	00h	51.4.2/1601
4006_7002	I2C Control Register 1 (I2C1_C1)	8	R/W	00h	51.4.3/1602
4006_7003	I2C Status register (I2C1_S)	8	R/W	80h	51.4.4/1604
4006_7004	I2C Data I/O register (I2C1_D)	8	R/W	00h	51.4.5/1606
4006_7005	I2C Control Register 2 (I2C1_C2)	8	R/W	00h	51.4.6/1606
4006_7006	I2C Programmable Input Glitch Filter Register (I2C1_FLT)	8	R/W	00h	51.4.7/1607
4006_7007	I2C Range Address register (I2C1_RA)	8	R/W	00h	51.4.8/1609
4006_7008	I2C SMBus Control and Status register (I2C1_SMB)	8	R/W	00h	51.4.9/1609
4006_7009	I2C Address Register 2 (I2C1_A2)	8	R/W	C2h	51.4.10/1611
4006_700A	I2C SCL Low Timeout Register High (I2C1_SLTH)	8	R/W	00h	51.4.11/1611
4006_700B	I2C SCL Low Timeout Register Low (I2C1_SLTL)	8	R/W	00h	51.4.12/1612

51.4.1 I2C Address Register 1 (I2Cx_A1)

This register contains the slave address to be used by the I2C module.

Address: Base address + 0h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	AD[7:1]							0
Write								0
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

I2Cx_A1 field descriptions

Field	Description
7–1 AD[7:1]	Address Contains the primary slave address used by the I2C module when it is addressed as a slave. This field is used in the 7-bit address scheme and the lower seven bits in the 10-bit address scheme.
0 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

51.4.2 I2C Frequency Divider register (I2Cx_F)

Address: Base address + 1h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	MULT		ICR					
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

I2Cx_F field descriptions

Field	Description
7–6 MULT	Multiplier Factor Defines the multiplier factor (mul). This factor is used along with the SCL divider to generate the I2C baud rate. 00 mul = 1 01 mul = 2 10 mul = 4 11 Reserved
ICR	ClockRate Prescales the I2C module clock for bit rate selection. This field and the MULT field determine the I2C baud rate, the SDA hold time, the SCL start hold time, and the SCL stop hold time. For a list of values corresponding to each ICR setting, see I2C divider and hold values . The SCL divider multiplied by multiplier factor (mul) determines the I2C baud rate. $\text{I2C baud rate} = \text{I2C module clock speed (Hz)} / (\text{mul} \times \text{SCL divider})$

Table continues on the next page...

I2Cx_F field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description																																	
	<p>The SDA hold time is the delay from the falling edge of SCL (I2C clock) to the changing of SDA (I2C data).</p> <p>$\text{SDA hold time} = \text{I2C module clock period (s)} \times \text{mul} \times \text{SDA hold value}$</p> <p>The SCL start hold time is the delay from the falling edge of SDA (I2C data) while SCL is high (start condition) to the falling edge of SCL (I2C clock).</p> <p>$\text{SCL start hold time} = \text{I2C module clock period (s)} \times \text{mul} \times \text{SCL start hold value}$</p> <p>The SCL stop hold time is the delay from the rising edge of SCL (I2C clock) to the rising edge of SDA (I2C data) while SCL is high (stop condition).</p> <p>$\text{SCL stop hold time} = \text{I2C module clock period (s)} \times \text{mul} \times \text{SCL stop hold value}$</p> <p>For example, if the I2C module clock speed is 8 MHz, the following table shows the possible hold time values with different ICR and MULT selections to achieve an I²C baud rate of 100 kbit/s.</p> <table><tr><th rowspan="2">MULT</th><th rowspan="2">ICR</th><th colspan="3">Hold times (μs)</th></tr><tr><th>SDA</th><th>SCL Start</th><th>SCL Stop</th></tr><tr><td>2h</td><td>00h</td><td>3.500</td><td>3.000</td><td>5.500</td></tr><tr><td>1h</td><td>07h</td><td>2.500</td><td>4.000</td><td>5.250</td></tr><tr><td>1h</td><td>0Bh</td><td>2.250</td><td>4.000</td><td>5.250</td></tr><tr><td>0h</td><td>14h</td><td>2.125</td><td>4.250</td><td>5.125</td></tr><tr><td>0h</td><td>18h</td><td>1.125</td><td>4.750</td><td>5.125</td></tr></table>	MULT	ICR	Hold times (μs)			SDA	SCL Start	SCL Stop	2h	00h	3.500	3.000	5.500	1h	07h	2.500	4.000	5.250	1h	0Bh	2.250	4.000	5.250	0h	14h	2.125	4.250	5.125	0h	18h	1.125	4.750	5.125
MULT	ICR			Hold times (μs)																														
		SDA	SCL Start	SCL Stop																														
2h	00h	3.500	3.000	5.500																														
1h	07h	2.500	4.000	5.250																														
1h	0Bh	2.250	4.000	5.250																														
0h	14h	2.125	4.250	5.125																														
0h	18h	1.125	4.750	5.125																														

51.4.3 I2C Control Register 1 (I2Cx_C1)

Address: Base address + 2h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	IICEN	IICIE	MST	TX	TXAK	0	WUEN	DMAEN
Write						RSTA		
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

I2Cx_C1 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 IICEN	<p>I2C Enable</p> <p>Enables I2C module operation.</p> <p>0 Disabled 1 Enabled</p>
6 IICIE	<p>I2C Interrupt Enable</p> <p>Enables I2C interrupt requests.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

I2Cx_C1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Disabled 1 Enabled
5 MST	Master Mode Select When MST is changed from 0 to 1, a START signal is generated on the bus and master mode is selected. When this bit changes from 1 to 0, a STOP signal is generated and the mode of operation changes from master to slave. 0 Slave mode 1 Master mode
4 TX	Transmit Mode Select Selects the direction of master and slave transfers. In master mode this bit must be set according to the type of transfer required. Therefore, for address cycles, this bit is always set. When addressed as a slave this bit must be set by software according to the SRW bit in the status register. 0 Receive 1 Transmit
3 TXAK	Transmit Acknowledge Enable Specifies the value driven onto the SDA during data acknowledge cycles for both master and slave receivers. The value of SMB[FACK] affects NACK/ACK generation. NOTE: SCL is held low until TXAK is written. 0 An acknowledge signal is sent to the bus on the following receiving byte (if FACK is cleared) or the current receiving byte (if FACK is set). 1 No acknowledge signal is sent to the bus on the following receiving data byte (if FACK is cleared) or the current receiving data byte (if FACK is set).
2 RSTA	Repeat START Writing 1 to this bit generates a repeated START condition provided it is the current master. This bit will always be read as 0. Attempting a repeat at the wrong time results in loss of arbitration.
1 WUEN	Wakeup Enable The I2C module can wake the MCU from low power mode with no peripheral bus running when slave address matching occurs. 0 Normal operation. No interrupt generated when address matching in low power mode. 1 Enables the wakeup function in low power mode.
0 DMAEN	DMA Enable Enables or disables the DMA function. 0 All DMA signalling disabled. 1 DMA transfer is enabled. While SMB[FACK] = 0, the following conditions trigger the DMA request: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a data byte is received, and either address or data is transmitted. (ACK/NACK is automatic) the first byte received matches the A1 register or is a general call address.

Table continues on the next page...

I2Cx_C1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>If any address matching occurs, S[IAAS] and S[TCF] are set. If the direction of transfer is known from master to slave, then it is not required to check S[SRW]. With this assumption, DMA can also be used in this case. In other cases, if the master reads data from the slave, then it is required to rewrite the C1 register operation. With this assumption, DMA cannot be used.</p> <p>When FACK = 1, an address or a data byte is transmitted.</p>

51.4.4 I2C Status register (I2Cx_S)

Address: Base address + 3h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	TCF	IAAS	BUSY	ARBL	RAM	SRW	IICIF	RXAK
Write				w1c			w1c	
Reset	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

I2Cx_S field descriptions

Field	Description
7 TCF	<p>Transfer Complete Flag</p> <p>Acknowledges a byte transfer; TCF is set on the completion of a byte transfer. This bit is valid only during or immediately following a transfer to or from the I2C module. TCF is cleared by reading the I2C data register in receive mode or by writing to the I2C data register in transmit mode.</p> <p>0 Transfer in progress 1 Transfer complete</p>
6 IAAS	<p>Addressed As A Slave</p> <p>This bit is set by one of the following conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The calling address matches the programmed primary slave address in the A1 register, or matches the range address in the RA register (which must be set to a nonzero value and under the condition I2C_C2[RMEN] = 1). C2[GCAEN] is set and a general call is received. SMB[SIICAEN] is set and the calling address matches the second programmed slave address. ALERTEN is set and an SMBus alert response address is received RMEN is set and an address is received that is within the range between the values of the A1 and RA registers. <p>IAAS sets before the ACK bit. The CPU must check the SRW bit and set TX/RX accordingly. Writing the C1 register with any value clears this bit.</p> <p>0 Not addressed 1 Addressed as a slave</p>
5 BUSY	<p>Bus Busy</p> <p>Indicates the status of the bus regardless of slave or master mode. This bit is set when a START signal is detected and cleared when a STOP signal is detected.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

I2Cx_S field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Bus is idle 1 Bus is busy
4 ARBL	<p>Arbitration Lost</p> <p>This bit is set by hardware when the arbitration procedure is lost. The ARBL bit must be cleared by software, by writing 1 to it.</p> 0 Standard bus operation. 1 Loss of arbitration.
3 RAM	<p>Range Address Match</p> <p>This bit is set to 1 by any of the following conditions, if I2C_C2[RMEN] = 1:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Any nonzero calling address is received that matches the address in the RA register. The calling address is within the range of values of the A1 and RA registers. <p>NOTE: For the RAM bit to be set to 1 correctly, C1[IICIE] must be set to 1.</p> <p>Writing the C1 register with any value clears this bit to 0.</p> 0 Not addressed 1 Addressed as a slave
2 SRW	<p>Slave Read/Write</p> <p>When addressed as a slave, SRW indicates the value of the R/W command bit of the calling address sent to the master.</p> 0 Slave receive, master writing to slave 1 Slave transmit, master reading from slave
1 IICIF	<p>Interrupt Flag</p> <p>This bit sets when an interrupt is pending. This bit must be cleared by software by writing 1 to it, such as in the interrupt routine. One of the following events can set this bit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> One byte transfer, including ACK/NACK bit, completes if FACK is 0. An ACK or NACK is sent on the bus by writing 0 or 1 to TXAK after this bit is set in receive mode. One byte transfer, excluding ACK/NACK bit, completes if FACK is 1. Match of slave address to calling address including primary slave address, range slave address, alert response address, second slave address, or general call address. Arbitration lost In SMBus mode, any timeouts except SCL and SDA high timeouts I2C bus stop or start detection if the SSIE bit in the Input Glitch Filter register is 1 <p>NOTE: To clear the I2C bus stop or start detection interrupt: In the interrupt service routine, first clear the STOPF or STARTF bit in the Input Glitch Filter register by writing 1 to it, and then clear the IICIF bit. If this sequence is reversed, the IICIF bit is asserted again.</p> 0 No interrupt pending 1 Interrupt pending
0 RXAK	<p>Receive Acknowledge</p> 0 Acknowledge signal was received after the completion of one byte of data transmission on the bus 1 No acknowledge signal detected

51.4.5 I2C Data I/O register (I2Cx_D)

Address: Base address + 4h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	DATA							
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

I2Cx_D field descriptions

Field	Description
DATA	<p>Data</p> <p>In master transmit mode, when data is written to this register, a data transfer is initiated. The most significant bit is sent first. In master receive mode, reading this register initiates receiving of the next byte of data.</p> <p>NOTE: When making the transition out of master receive mode, switch the I2C mode before reading the Data register to prevent an inadvertent initiation of a master receive data transfer.</p> <p>In slave mode, the same functions are available after an address match occurs.</p> <p>The C1[TX] bit must correctly reflect the desired direction of transfer in master and slave modes for the transmission to begin. For example, if the I2C module is configured for master transmit but a master receive is desired, reading the Data register does not initiate the receive.</p> <p>Reading the Data register returns the last byte received while the I2C module is configured in master receive or slave receive mode. The Data register does not reflect every byte that is transmitted on the I2C bus, and neither can software verify that a byte has been written to the Data register correctly by reading it back.</p> <p>In master transmit mode, the first byte of data written to the Data register following assertion of MST (start bit) or assertion of RSTA (repeated start bit) is used for the address transfer and must consist of the calling address (in bits 7-1) concatenated with the required R/W bit (in position bit 0).</p>

51.4.6 I2C Control Register 2 (I2Cx_C2)

Address: Base address + 5h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	GCAEN	ADEXT	HDRS	SBRC	RMEN	AD[10:8]		
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

I2Cx_C2 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 GCAEN	<p>General Call Address Enable</p> <p>Enables general call address.</p> <p>0 Disabled</p> <p>1 Enabled</p>

Table continues on the next page...

I2Cx_C2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
6 ADEXT	Address Extension Controls the number of bits used for the slave address. 0 7-bit address scheme 1 10-bit address scheme
5 HDSR	High Drive Select Controls the drive capability of the I2C pads. 0 Normal drive mode 1 High drive mode
4 SBRC	Slave Baud Rate Control Enables independent slave mode baud rate at maximum frequency, which forces clock stretching on SCL in very fast I2C modes. To a slave, an example of a "very fast" mode is when the master transfers at 40 kbit/s but the slave can capture the master's data at only 10 kbit/s. 0 The slave baud rate follows the master baud rate and clock stretching may occur 1 Slave baud rate is independent of the master baud rate
3 RMEN	Range Address Matching Enable This bit controls the slave address matching for addresses between the values of the A1 and RA registers. When this bit is set, a slave address matching occurs for any address greater than the value of the A1 register and less than or equal to the value of the RA register. 0 Range mode disabled. No address matching occurs for an address within the range of values of the A1 and RA registers. 1 Range mode enabled. Address matching occurs when a slave receives an address within the range of values of the A1 and RA registers.
AD[10:8]	Slave Address Contains the upper three bits of the slave address in the 10-bit address scheme. This field is valid only while the ADEXT bit is set.

51.4.7 I2C Programmable Input Glitch Filter Register (I2Cx_FLT)

Address: Base address + 6h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	SHEN	STOPF	SSIE	STARTF	FLT			
Write		w1c		w1c				
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

I2Cx_FLT field descriptions

Field	Description
7 SHEN	Stop Hold Enable Set this bit to hold off entry to stop mode when any data transmission or reception is occurring.

Table continues on the next page...

I2Cx_FLT field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>The following scenario explains the holdoff functionality:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The I2C module is configured for a basic transfer, and the SHEN bit is set to 1. 2. A transfer begins. 3. The MCU signals the I2C module to enter stop mode. 4. The byte currently being transferred, including both address and data, completes its transfer. 5. The I2C slave or master acknowledges that the in-transfer byte completed its transfer and acknowledges the request to enter stop mode. 6. After receiving the I2C module's acknowledgment of the request to enter stop mode, the MCU determines whether to shut off the I2C module's clock. <p>If the SHEN bit is set to 1 and the I2C module is in an idle or disabled state when the MCU signals to enter stop mode, the module immediately acknowledges the request to enter stop mode.</p> <p>If SHEN is cleared to 0 and the overall data transmission or reception that was suspended by stop mode entry was incomplete: To resume the overall transmission or reception after the MCU exits stop mode, software must reinitialize the transfer by resending the address of the slave.</p> <p>If the I2C Control Register 1's IICIE bit was set to 1 before the MCU entered stop mode, system software will receive the interrupt triggered by the I2C Status Register's TCF bit after the MCU wakes from the stop mode.</p> <p>0 Stop holdoff is disabled. The MCU's entry to stop mode is not gated. 1 Stop holdoff is enabled.</p>
6 STOPF	<p>I2C Bus Stop Detect Flag</p> <p>Hardware sets this bit when the I2C bus's stop status is detected. The STOPF bit must be cleared by writing 1 to it.</p> <p>NOTE: The stop flag is only for the matched slave devices, therefore the master will not respond for it.</p> <p>0 No stop happens on I2C bus 1 Stop detected on I2C bus</p>
5 SSIE	<p>I2C Bus Stop or Start Interrupt Enable</p> <p>This bit enables the interrupt for I2C bus stop or start detection.</p> <p>NOTE: To clear the I2C bus stop or start detection interrupt: In the interrupt service routine, first clear the STOPF or STARTF bit by writing 1 to it, and then clear the IICIF bit in the status register. If this sequence is reversed, the IICIF bit is asserted again.</p> <p>0 Stop or start detection interrupt is disabled 1 Stop or start detection interrupt is enabled</p>
4 STARTF	<p>I2C Bus Start Detect Flag</p> <p>Hardware sets this bit when the I2C bus's start status is detected. The STARTF bit must be cleared by writing 1 to it.</p> <p>0 No start happens on I2C bus 1 Start detected on I2C bus</p>
FLT	<p>I2C Programmable Filter Factor</p> <p>Controls the width of the glitch, in terms of I2C module clock cycles, that the filter must absorb. For any glitch whose size is less than or equal to this width setting, the filter does not allow the glitch to pass.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

I2Cx_FLT field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
0h	No filter/bypass
1-Fh	Filter glitches up to width of n I2C module clock cycles, where $n=1-15d$

51.4.8 I2C Range Address register (I2Cx_RA)

Address: Base address + 7h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	RAD							0
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

I2Cx_RA field descriptions

Field	Description
7–1 RAD	Range Slave Address This field contains the slave address to be used by the I2C module. The field is used in the 7-bit address scheme. If I2C_C2[RMEN] is set to 1, any nonzero value write enables this register. This register value can be considered as a maximum boundary in the range matching mode.
0 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

51.4.9 I2C SMBus Control and Status register (I2Cx_SMB)

NOTE

When the SCL and SDA signals are held high for a length of time greater than the high timeout period, the SHTF1 flag sets. Before reaching this threshold, while the system is detecting how long these signals are being held high, a master assumes that the bus is free. However, the SHTF1 bit is set to 1 in the bus transmission process with the idle bus state.

NOTE

When the TCKSEL bit is set, there is no need to monitor the SHTF1 bit because the bus speed is too high to match the protocol of SMBus.

memory map/register definition

Address: Base address + 8h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	FA CK	ALERTEN	SIICAEN	TCKSEL	SLTF	SHTF1	SHTF2	SHTF2IE
Write					w1c		w1c	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

I2Cx_SMB field descriptions

Field	Description
7 FA CK	<p>Fast NACK/ACK Enable</p> <p>For SMBus packet error checking, the CPU must be able to issue an ACK or NACK according to the result of receiving data byte.</p> <p>0 An ACK or NACK is sent on the following receiving data byte 1 Writing 0 to TXAK after receiving a data byte generates an ACK. Writing 1 to TXAK after receiving a data byte generates a NACK.</p>
6 ALERTEN	<p>SMBus Alert Response Address Enable</p> <p>Enables or disables SMBus alert response address matching.</p> <p>NOTE: After the host responds to a device that used the alert response address, you must use software to put the device's address on the bus. The alert protocol is described in the SMBus specification.</p> <p>0 SMBus alert response address matching is disabled 1 SMBus alert response address matching is enabled</p>
5 SIICAEN	<p>Second I2C Address Enable</p> <p>Enables or disables SMBus device default address.</p> <p>0 I2C address register 2 matching is disabled 1 I2C address register 2 matching is enabled</p>
4 TCKSEL	<p>Timeout Counter Clock Select</p> <p>Selects the clock source of the timeout counter.</p> <p>0 Timeout counter counts at the frequency of the I2C module clock / 64 1 Timeout counter counts at the frequency of the I2C module clock</p>
3 SLTF	<p>SCL Low Timeout Flag</p> <p>This bit is set when the SLT register (consisting of the SLTH and SLTL registers) is loaded with a non-zero value (LoValue) and an SCL low timeout occurs. Software clears this bit by writing a logic 1 to it.</p> <p>NOTE: The low timeout function is disabled when the SLT register's value is 0.</p> <p>0 No low timeout occurs 1 Low timeout occurs</p>
2 SHTF1	<p>SCL High Timeout Flag 1</p> <p>This read-only bit sets when SCL and SDA are held high more than clock × LoValue / 512, which indicates the bus is free. This bit is cleared automatically.</p> <p>0 No SCL high and SDA high timeout occurs 1 SCL high and SDA high timeout occurs</p>

Table continues on the next page...

I2Cx_SMB field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
1 SHTF2	SCL High Timeout Flag 2 This bit sets when SCL is held high and SDA is held low more than $\text{clock} \times \text{LoValue} / 512$. Software clears this bit by writing 1 to it. 0 No SCL high and SDA low timeout occurs 1 SCL high and SDA low timeout occurs
0 SHTF2IE	SHTF2 Interrupt Enable Enables SCL high and SDA low timeout interrupt. 0 SHTF2 interrupt is disabled 1 SHTF2 interrupt is enabled

51.4.10 I2C Address Register 2 (I2Cx_A2)

Address: Base address + 9h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	SAD							0
Write								
Reset	1	1	0	0	0	0	1	0

I2Cx_A2 field descriptions

Field	Description
7–1 SAD	SMBus Address Contains the slave address used by the SMBus. This field is used on the device default address or other related addresses.
0 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

51.4.11 I2C SCL Low Timeout Register High (I2Cx_SLTH)

Address: Base address + Ah offset

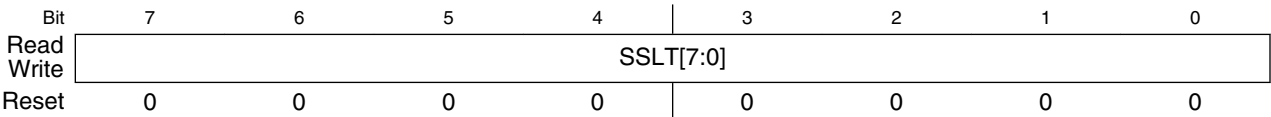
Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	SSLT[15:8]							
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

I2Cx_SLTH field descriptions

Field	Description
SSLT[15:8]	SSLT[15:8] Most significant byte of SCL low timeout value that determines the timeout period of SCL low.

51.4.12 I2C SCL Low Timeout Register Low (I2Cx_SLTL)

Address: Base address + Bh offset



I2Cx_SLTL field descriptions

Field	Description
SSLT[7:0]	SSLT[7:0] Least significant byte of SCL low timeout value that determines the timeout period of SCL low.

51.5 Functional description

This section provides a comprehensive functional description of the I2C module.

51.5.1 I2C protocol

The I2C bus system uses a serial data line (SDA) and a serial clock line (SCL) for data transfers.

All devices connected to it must have open drain or open collector outputs. A logic AND function is exercised on both lines with external pull-up resistors. The value of these resistors depends on the system.

Normally, a standard instance of communication is composed of four parts:

1. START signal
2. Slave address transmission
3. Data transfer
4. STOP signal

The STOP signal should not be confused with the CPU STOP instruction. The following figure illustrates I2C bus system communication.

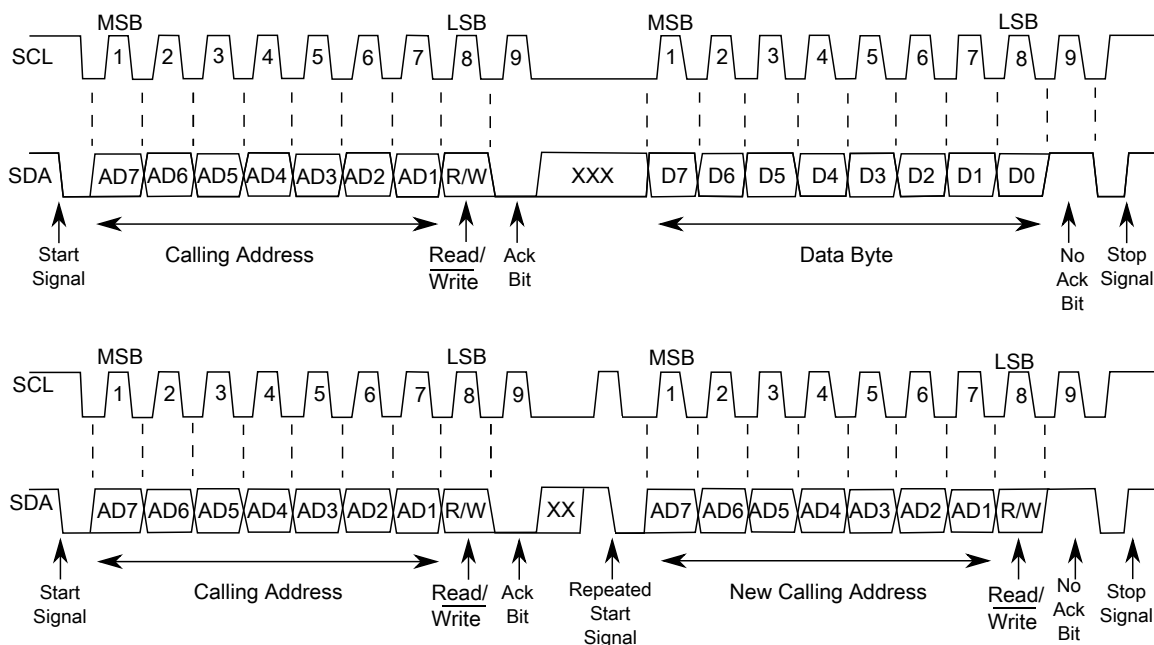


Figure 51-2. I2C bus transmission signals

51.5.1.1 START signal

The bus is free when no master device is engaging the bus (both SCL and SDA are high). When the bus is free, a master may initiate communication by sending a START signal. A START signal is defined as a high-to-low transition of SDA while SCL is high. This signal denotes the beginning of a new data transfer—each data transfer might contain several bytes of data—and brings all slaves out of their idle states.

51.5.1.2 Slave address transmission

Immediately after the START signal, the first byte of a data transfer is the slave address transmitted by the master. This address is a 7-bit calling address followed by an R/\overline{W} bit. The R/\overline{W} bit tells the slave the desired direction of data transfer.

- 1 = Read transfer: The slave transmits data to the master
- 0 = Write transfer: The master transmits data to the slave

Only the slave with a calling address that matches the one transmitted by the master responds by sending an acknowledge bit. The slave sends the acknowledge bit by pulling SDA low at the ninth clock.

No two slaves in the system can have the same address. If the I2C module is the master, it must not transmit an address that is equal to its own slave address. The I2C module cannot be master and slave at the same time. However, if arbitration is lost during an address cycle, the I2C module reverts to slave mode and operates correctly even if it is being addressed by another master.

51.5.1.3 Data transfers

When successful slave addressing is achieved, data transfer can proceed on a byte-by-byte basis in the direction specified by the $\overline{R/W}$ bit sent by the calling master.

All transfers that follow an address cycle are referred to as data transfers, even if they carry subaddress information for the slave device.

Each data byte is 8 bits long. Data may be changed only while SCL is low. Data must be held stable while SCL is high. There is one clock pulse on SCL for each data bit, and the MSB is transferred first. Each data byte is followed by a ninth (acknowledge) bit, which is signaled from the receiving device by pulling SDA low at the ninth clock. In summary, one complete data transfer needs nine clock pulses.

If the slave receiver does not acknowledge the master in the ninth bit, the slave must leave SDA high. The master interprets the failed acknowledgement as an unsuccessful data transfer.

If the master receiver does not acknowledge the slave transmitter after a data byte transmission, the slave interprets it as an end to data transfer and releases the SDA line.

In the case of a failed acknowledgement by either the slave or master, the data transfer is aborted and the master does one of two things:

- Relinquishes the bus by generating a STOP signal.
- Commences a new call by generating a repeated START signal.

51.5.1.4 STOP signal

The master can terminate the communication by generating a STOP signal to free the bus. A STOP signal is defined as a low-to-high transition of SDA while SCL is asserted.

The master can generate a STOP signal even if the slave has generated an acknowledgement, at which point the slave must release the bus.

51.5.1.5 Repeated START signal

The master may generate a START signal followed by a calling command without generating a STOP signal first. This action is called a repeated START. The master uses a repeated START to communicate with another slave or with the same slave in a different mode (transmit/receive mode) without releasing the bus.

51.5.1.6 Arbitration procedure

The I2C bus is a true multimaster bus that allows more than one master to be connected on it.

If two or more masters try to control the bus at the same time, a clock synchronization procedure determines the bus clock. The bus clock's low period is equal to the longest clock low period, and the high period is equal to the shortest one among the masters.

The relative priority of the contending masters is determined by a data arbitration procedure. A bus master loses arbitration if it transmits logic level 1 while another master transmits logic level 0. The losing masters immediately switch to slave receive mode and stop driving SDA output. In this case, the transition from master to slave mode does not generate a STOP condition. Meanwhile, hardware sets a status bit to indicate the loss of arbitration.

51.5.1.7 Clock synchronization

Because wire AND logic is performed on SCL, a high-to-low transition on SCL affects all devices connected on the bus. The devices start counting their low period and, after a device's clock has gone low, that device holds SCL low until the clock reaches its high state. However, the change of low to high in this device clock might not change the state of SCL if another device clock is still within its low period. Therefore, the synchronized clock SCL is held low by the device with the longest low period. Devices with shorter low periods enter a high wait state during this time; see the following diagram. When all applicable devices have counted off their low period, the synchronized clock SCL is released and pulled high. Afterward there is no difference between the device clocks and the state of SCL, and all devices start counting their high periods. The first device to complete its high period pulls SCL low again.

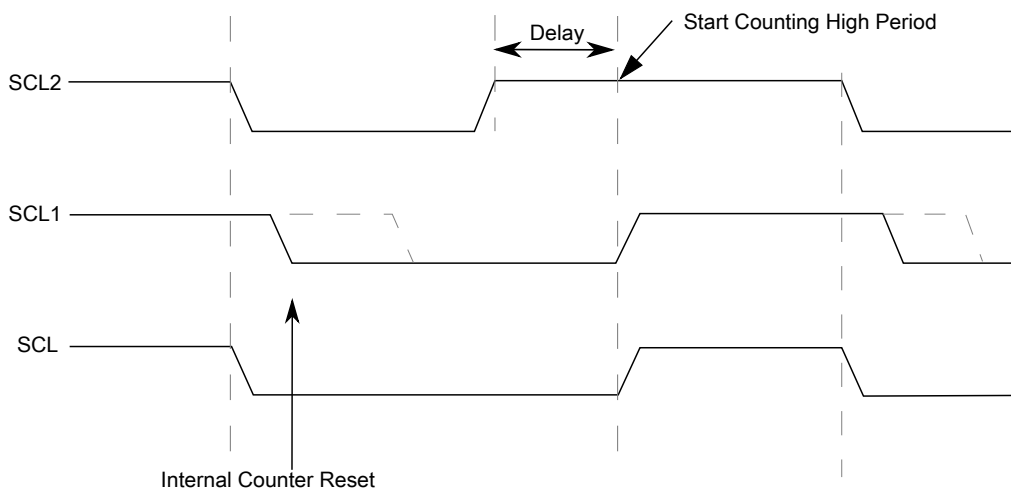


Figure 51-3. I2C clock synchronization

51.5.1.8 Handshaking

The clock synchronization mechanism can be used as a handshake in data transfers. A slave device may hold SCL low after completing a single byte transfer (9 bits). In this case, it halts the bus clock and forces the master clock into wait states until the slave releases SCL.

51.5.1.9 Clock stretching

The clock synchronization mechanism can be used by slaves to slow down the bit rate of a transfer. After the master drives SCL low, a slave can drive SCL low for the required period and then release it. If the slave's SCL low period is greater than the master's SCL low period, the resulting SCL bus signal's low period is stretched. In other words, the SCL bus signal's low period is increased to be the same length as the slave's SCL low period.

51.5.1.10 I2C divider and hold values

NOTE

For some cases on some devices, the SCL divider value may vary by ± 2 or ± 4 when ICR's value ranges from 00h to 0Fh. These potentially varying SCL divider values are highlighted in the following table. For the actual SCL divider values for your device, see the chip-specific details about the I2C module.

Table 51-2. I2C divider and hold values

ICR (hex)	SCL divider	SDA hold value	SCL hold (start) value	SCL hold (stop) value	ICR (hex)	SCL divider (clocks)	SDA hold (clocks)	SCL hold (start) value	SCL hold (stop) value
00	20	7	6	11	20	160	17	78	81
01	22	7	7	12	21	192	17	94	97
02	24	8	8	13	22	224	33	110	113
03	26	8	9	14	23	256	33	126	129
04	28	9	10	15	24	288	49	142	145
05	30	9	11	16	25	320	49	158	161
06	34	10	13	18	26	384	65	190	193
07	40	10	16	21	27	480	65	238	241
08	28	7	10	15	28	320	33	158	161
09	32	7	12	17	29	384	33	190	193
0A	36	9	14	19	2A	448	65	222	225
0B	40	9	16	21	2B	512	65	254	257
0C	44	11	18	23	2C	576	97	286	289
0D	48	11	20	25	2D	640	97	318	321
0E	56	13	24	29	2E	768	129	382	385
0F	68	13	30	35	2F	960	129	478	481
10	48	9	18	25	30	640	65	318	321
11	56	9	22	29	31	768	65	382	385
12	64	13	26	33	32	896	129	446	449
13	72	13	30	37	33	1024	129	510	513
14	80	17	34	41	34	1152	193	574	577
15	88	17	38	45	35	1280	193	638	641
16	104	21	46	53	36	1536	257	766	769
17	128	21	58	65	37	1920	257	958	961
18	80	9	38	41	38	1280	129	638	641
19	96	9	46	49	39	1536	129	766	769
1A	112	17	54	57	3A	1792	257	894	897
1B	128	17	62	65	3B	2048	257	1022	1025
1C	144	25	70	73	3C	2304	385	1150	1153
1D	160	25	78	81	3D	2560	385	1278	1281
1E	192	33	94	97	3E	3072	513	1534	1537
1F	240	33	118	121	3F	3840	513	1918	1921

51.5.2 10-bit address

For 10-bit addressing, 0x11110 is used for the first 5 bits of the first address byte. Various combinations of read/write formats are possible within a transfer that includes 10-bit addressing.

51.5.2.1 Master-transmitter addresses a slave-receiver

The transfer direction is not changed. When a 10-bit address follows a START condition, each slave compares the first 7 bits of the first byte of the slave address (11110XX) with its own address and tests whether the eighth bit (R/\overline{W} direction bit) is 0. It is possible that more than one device finds a match and generates an acknowledge (A1). Each slave that finds a match compares the 8 bits of the second byte of the slave address with its own address, but only one slave finds a match and generates an acknowledge (A2). The matching slave remains addressed by the master until it receives a STOP condition (P) or a repeated START condition (Sr) followed by a different slave address.

Table 51-3. Master-transmitter addresses slave-receiver with a 10-bit address

S	Slave address first 7 bits 11110 + AD10 + AD9	R/ \overline{W} 0	A1	Slave address second byte AD[8:1]	A2	Data	A	...	Data	A/A	P
---	---	---------------------	----	-----------------------------------	----	------	---	-----	------	-----	---

After the master-transmitter has sent the first byte of the 10-bit address, the slave-receiver sees an I2C interrupt. User software must ensure that for this interrupt, the contents of the Data register are ignored and not treated as valid data.

51.5.2.2 Master-receiver addresses a slave-transmitter

The transfer direction is changed after the second R/\overline{W} bit. Up to and including acknowledge bit A2, the procedure is the same as that described for a master-transmitter addressing a slave-receiver. After the repeated START condition (Sr), a matching slave remembers that it was addressed before. This slave then checks whether the first seven bits of the first byte of the slave address following Sr are the same as they were after the START condition (S), and it tests whether the eighth (R/\overline{W}) bit is 1. If there is a match, the slave considers that it has been addressed as a transmitter and generates acknowledge A3. The slave-transmitter remains addressed until it receives a STOP condition (P) or a repeated START condition (Sr) followed by a different slave address.

After a repeated START condition (Sr), all other slave devices also compare the first seven bits of the first byte of the slave address with their own addresses and test the eighth (R/\overline{W}) bit. However, none of them are addressed because $R/\overline{W} = 1$ (for 10-bit devices), or the 11110XX slave address (for 7-bit devices) does not match.

Table 51-4. Master-receiver addresses a slave-transmitter with a 10-bit address

S	Slave address first 7 bits 11110 + AD10 + AD9	R/\overline{W} 0	A1	Slave address second byte AD[8:1]	A2	Sr	Slave address first 7 bits 11110 + AD10 + AD9	R/\overline{W} 1	A3	Data	A	...	Data	A	P
---	--	-----------------------	----	--------------------------------------	----	----	--	-----------------------	----	------	---	-----	------	---	---

After the master-receiver has sent the first byte of the 10-bit address, the slave-transmitter sees an I2C interrupt. User software must ensure that for this interrupt, the contents of the Data register are ignored and not treated as valid data.

51.5.3 Address matching

All received addresses can be requested in 7-bit or 10-bit address format.

- AD[7:1] in Address Register 1, which contains the I2C primary slave address, always participates in the address matching process. It provides a 7-bit address.
- If the ADEXT bit is set, AD[10:8] in Control Register 2 participates in the address matching process. It extends the I2C primary slave address to a 10-bit address.

Additional conditions that affect address matching include:

- If the GCAEN bit is set, general call participates the address matching process.
- If the ALERTEN bit is set, alert response participates the address matching process.
- If the SIICAEN bit is set, Address Register 2 participates in the address matching process.
- If the RMEN bit is set, when the Range Address register is programmed to a nonzero value, any address within the range of values of Address Register 1 (excluded) and the Range Address register (included) participates in the address matching process. The Range Address register must be programmed to a value greater than the value of Address Register 1.

When the I2C module responds to one of these addresses, it acts as a slave-receiver and the IAAS bit is set after the address cycle. Software must read the Data register after the first byte transfer to determine that the address is matched.

51.5.4 System management bus specification

SMBus provides a control bus for system and power management related tasks. A system can use SMBus to pass messages to and from devices instead of tripping individual control lines.

Removing the individual control lines reduces pin count. Accepting messages ensures future expandability. With the system management bus, a device can provide manufacturer information, tell the system what its model/part number is, save its state for a suspend event, report different types of errors, accept control parameters, and return its status.

51.5.4.1 Timeouts

The $T_{\text{TIMEOUT,MIN}}$ parameter allows a master or slave to conclude that a defective device is holding the clock low indefinitely or a master is intentionally trying to drive devices off the bus. The slave device must release the bus (stop driving the bus and let SCL and SDA float high) when it detects any single clock held low longer than $T_{\text{TIMEOUT,MIN}}$. Devices that have detected this condition must reset their communication and be able to receive a new START condition within the timeframe of $T_{\text{TIMEOUT,MAX}}$.

SMBus defines a clock low timeout, T_{TIMEOUT} , of 35 ms, specifies $T_{\text{LOW:SEXT}}$ as the cumulative clock low extend time for a slave device, and specifies $T_{\text{LOW:MEXT}}$ as the cumulative clock low extend time for a master device.

51.5.4.1.1 SCL low timeout

If the SCL line is held low by a slave device on the bus, no further communication is possible. Furthermore, the master cannot force the SCL line high to correct the error condition. To solve this problem, the SMBus protocol specifies that devices participating in a transfer must detect any clock cycle held low longer than a timeout value condition. Devices that have detected the timeout condition must reset the communication. When the I2C module is an active master, if it detects that SMBCLK low has exceeded the value of $T_{\text{TIMEOUT,MIN}}$, it must generate a stop condition within or after the current data byte in the transfer process. When the I2C module is a slave, if it detects the $T_{\text{TIMEOUT,MIN}}$ condition, it resets its communication and is then able to receive a new START condition.

51.5.4.1.2 SCL high timeout

When the I2C module has determined that the SMBCLK and SMBDAT signals have been high for at least $T_{\text{HIGH:MAX}}$, it assumes that the bus is idle.

A HIGH timeout occurs after a START condition appears on the bus but before a STOP condition appears on the bus. Any master detecting this scenario can assume the bus is free when either of the following occurs:

- SHTF1 rises.
- The BUSY bit is high and SHTF1 is high.

When the SMBDAT signal is low and the SMBCLK signal is high for a period of time, another kind of timeout occurs. The time period must be defined in software. SHTF2 is used as the flag when the time limit is reached. This flag is also an interrupt resource, so it triggers IICIF.

51.5.4.1.3 CSMBCLK TIMEOUT MEXT and CSMBCLK TIMEOUT SEXT

The following figure illustrates the definition of the timeout intervals $T_{\text{LOW:SEXT}}$ and $T_{\text{LOW:MEXT}}$. When in master mode, the I2C module must not cumulatively extend its clock cycles for a period greater than $T_{\text{LOW:MEXT}}$ within a byte, where each byte is defined as START-to-ACK, ACK-to-ACK, or ACK-to-STOP. When CSMBCLK TIMEOUT MEXT occurs, SMBus MEXT rises and also triggers the SLTF.

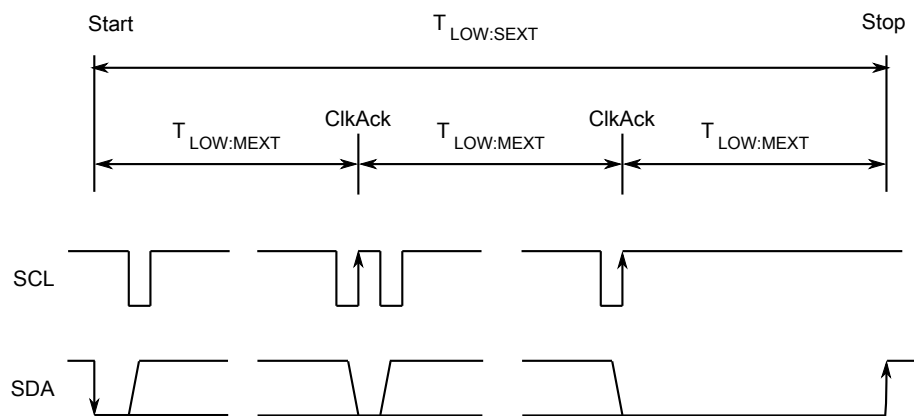


Figure 51-4. Timeout measurement intervals

A master is allowed to abort the transaction in progress to any slave that violates the $T_{\text{LOW:SEXT}}$ or $T_{\text{TIMEOUT,MIN}}$ specifications. To abort the transaction, the master issues a STOP condition at the conclusion of the byte transfer in progress. When a slave, the I2C module must not cumulatively extend its clock cycles for a period greater than $T_{\text{LOW:SEXT}}$ during any message from the initial START to the STOP. When CSMBCLK TIMEOUT SEXT occurs, SEXT rises and also triggers SLTF.

NOTE

CSMBCLK TIMEOUT SEXT and CSMBCLK TIMEOUT MEXT are optional functions that are implemented in the second step.

51.5.4.2 FAST ACK and NACK

To improve reliability and communication robustness, implementation of packet error checking (PEC) by SMBus devices is optional for SMBus devices but required for devices participating in and only during the address resolution protocol (ARP) process. The PEC is a CRC-8 error checking byte, calculated on all the message bytes. The PEC is appended to the message by the device that supplied the last data byte. If the PEC is present but not correct, a NACK is issued by the receiver. Otherwise an ACK is issued. To calculate the CRC-8 by software, this module can hold the SCL line low after receiving the eighth SCL (8th bit) if this byte is a data byte. So software can determine whether an ACK or NACK should be sent to the bus by setting or clearing the TXAK bit if the FACK (fast ACK/NACK enable) bit is enabled.

SMBus requires a device always to acknowledge its own address, as a mechanism to detect the presence of a removable device (such as a battery or docking station) on the bus. In addition to indicating a slave device busy condition, SMBus uses the NACK mechanism to indicate the reception of an invalid command or invalid data. Because such a condition may occur on the last byte of the transfer, SMBus devices are required to have the ability to generate the not acknowledge after the transfer of each byte and before the completion of the transaction. This requirement is important because SMBus does not provide any other resend signaling. This difference in the use of the NACK signaling has implications on the specific implementation of the SMBus port, especially in devices that handle critical system data such as the SMBus host and the SBS components.

NOTE

In the last byte of master receive slave transmit mode, the master must send a NACK to the bus, so FACK must be switched off before the last byte transmits.

51.5.5 Resets

The I2C module is disabled after a reset. The I2C module cannot cause a core reset.

51.5.6 Interrupts

The I2C module generates an interrupt when any of the events in the table found here occur, provided that the IICIE bit is set.

The interrupt is driven by the IICIF bit (of the I2C Status Register) and masked with the IICIE bit (of the I2C Control Register 1). The IICIF bit must be cleared (by software) by writing 1 to it in the interrupt routine. The SMBus timeouts interrupt is driven by SLTF and masked with the IICIE bit. The SLTF bit must be cleared by software by writing 1 to it in the interrupt routine. You can determine the interrupt type by reading the Status Register.

NOTE

In master receive mode, the FACK bit must be set to zero before the last byte transfer.

Table 51-5. Interrupt summary

Interrupt source	Status	Flag	Local enable
Complete 1-byte transfer	TCF	IICIF	IICIE
Match of received calling address	IAAS	IICIF	IICIE
Arbitration lost	ARBL	IICIF	IICIE
I ² C bus stop detection	STOPF	IICIF	IICIE & SSIE
I ² C bus start detection	STARTF	IICIF	IICIE & SSIE
SMBus SCL low timeout	SLTF	IICIF	IICIE
SMBus SCL high SDA low timeout	SHTF2	IICIF	IICIE & SHTF2IE
Wakeup from stop or wait mode	IAAS	IICIF	IICIE & WUEN

51.5.6.1 Byte transfer interrupt

The Transfer Complete Flag (TCF) bit is set at the falling edge of the ninth clock to indicate the completion of a byte and acknowledgement transfer. When FACK is enabled, TCF is then set at the falling edge of eighth clock to indicate the completion of byte.

51.5.6.2 Address detect interrupt

When the calling address matches the programmed slave address (I2C Address Register) or when the GCAEN bit is set and a general call is received, the IAAS bit in the Status Register is set. The CPU is interrupted, provided the IICIE bit is set. The CPU must check the SRW bit and set its Tx mode accordingly.

51.5.6.3 Stop Detect Interrupt

When the stop status is detected on the I²C bus, the STOPF bit is set to 1. The CPU is interrupted, provided the IICIE and SSIE bits are both set to 1.

51.5.6.4 Exit from low-power/stop modes

The slave receive input detect circuit and address matching feature are still active on low power modes (wait and stop). An asynchronous input matching slave address or general call address brings the CPU out of low power/stop mode if the interrupt is not masked. Therefore, TCF and IAAS both can trigger this interrupt.

51.5.6.5 Arbitration lost interrupt

The I2C is a true multimaster bus that allows more than one master to be connected on it. If two or more masters try to control the bus at the same time, the relative priority of the contending masters is determined by a data arbitration procedure. The I2C module asserts the arbitration-lost interrupt when it loses the data arbitration process and the ARBL bit in the Status Register is set.

Arbitration is lost in the following circumstances:

1. SDA is sampled as low when the master drives high during an address or data transmit cycle.
2. SDA is sampled as low when the master drives high during the acknowledge bit of a data receive cycle.
3. A START cycle is attempted when the bus is busy.
4. A repeated START cycle is requested in slave mode.
5. A STOP condition is detected when the master did not request it.

The ARBL bit must be cleared (by software) by writing 1 to it.

51.5.6.6 Timeout interrupt in SMBus

When the IICIE bit is set, the I2C module asserts a timeout interrupt (outputs SLTF and SHTF2) upon detection of any of the mentioned timeout conditions, with one exception. The SCL high and SDA high TIMEOUT mechanism must not be used to influence the timeout interrupt output, because this timeout indicates an idle condition on the bus. SHTF1 rises when it matches the SCL high and SDA high TIMEOUT and falls automatically just to indicate the bus status. The SHTF2's timeout period is the same as that of SHTF1, which is short compared to that of SLTF, so another control bit, SHTF2IE, is added to enable or disable it.

51.5.7 Programmable input glitch filter

An I2C glitch filter has been added outside legacy I2C modules but within the I2C package. This filter can absorb glitches on the I2C clock and data lines for the I2C module.

The width of the glitch to absorb can be specified in terms of the number of (half) I2C module clock cycles. A single Programmable Input Glitch Filter control register is provided. Effectively, any down-up-down or up-down-up transition on the data line that occurs within the number of clock cycles programmed in this register is ignored by the I2C module. The programmer must specify the size of the glitch (in terms of I2C module clock cycles) for the filter to absorb and not pass.

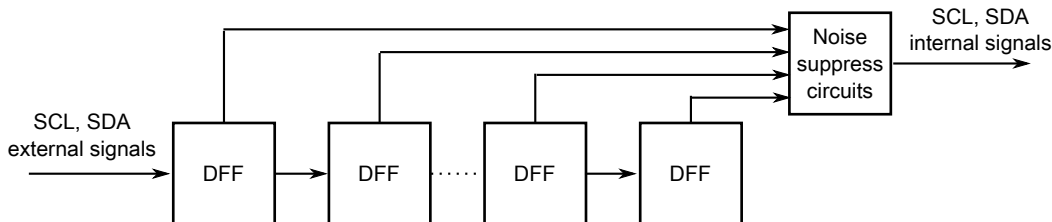


Figure 51-5. Programmable input glitch filter diagram

51.5.8 Address matching wake-up

When a primary, range, or general call address match occurs when the I2C module is in slave receive mode, the MCU wakes from a low power mode where no peripheral bus is running.

Data sent on the bus that is the same as a target device address might also wake the target MCU.

After the address matching IAAS bit is set, an interrupt is sent at the end of address matching to wake the core. The IAAS bit must be cleared after the clock recovery.

NOTE

After the system recovers and is in Run mode, restart the I2C module if it is needed to transfer packets. To avoid I2C transfer problems resulting from the situation, firmware should prevent the MCU execution of a STOP instruction when the I2C module is in the middle of a transfer unless the Stop mode holdoff feature is used during this period (set FLT[SHEN] to 1).

51.5.9 DMA support

If the DMAEN bit is cleared and the IICIE bit is set, an interrupt condition generates an interrupt request.

If the DMAEN bit is set and the IICIE bit is set, an interrupt condition generates a DMA request instead. DMA requests are generated by the transfer complete flag (TCF).

If the DMAEN bit is set, only the TCF initiates a DMA request. All other events generate CPU interrupts.

NOTE

Before the last byte of master receive mode, TXAK must be set to send a NACK after the last byte's transfer. Therefore, the DMA must be disabled before the last byte's transfer.

NOTE

In 10-bit address mode transmission, the addresses to send occupy 2–3 bytes. During this transfer period, the DMA must be disabled because the C1 register is written to send a repeat start or to change the transfer direction.

51.6 Initialization/application information

Module Initialization (Slave)

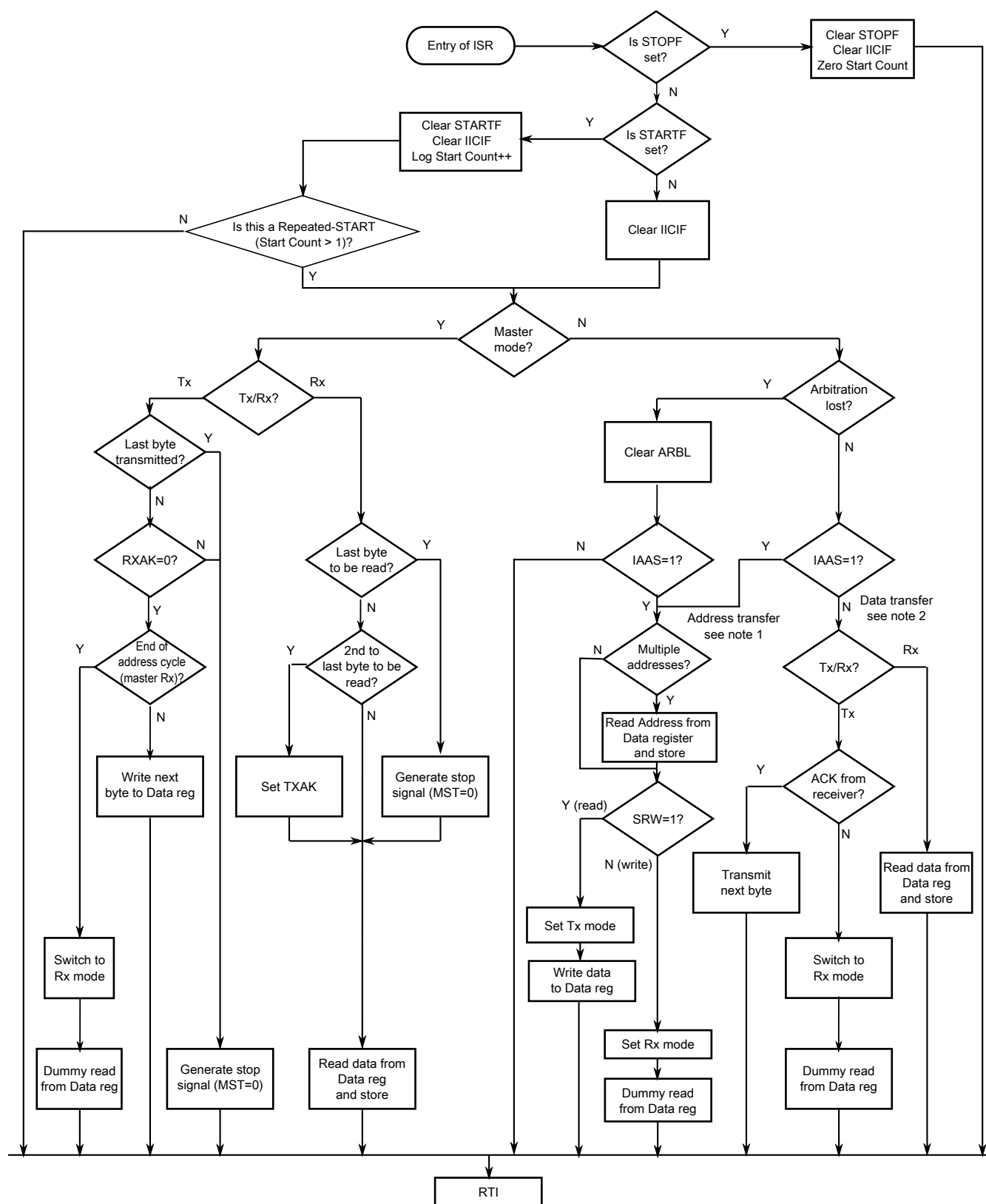
1. Write: Control Register 2
 - to enable or disable general call
 - to select 10-bit or 7-bit addressing mode
2. Write: Address Register 1 to set the slave address

3. Write: Control Register 1 to enable the I2C module and interrupts
4. Initialize RAM variables (IICEN = 1 and IICIE = 1) for transmit data
5. Initialize RAM variables used to achieve the routine shown in the following figure

Module Initialization (Master)

1. Write: Frequency Divider register to set the I2C baud rate (see example in description of [ICR](#))
2. Write: Control Register 1 to enable the I2C module and interrupts
3. Initialize RAM variables (IICEN = 1 and IICIE = 1) for transmit data
4. Initialize RAM variables used to achieve the routine shown in the following figure
5. Write: Control Register 1 to enable TX
6. Write: Control Register 1 to enable MST (master mode)
7. Write: Data register with the address of the target slave (the LSB of this byte determines whether the communication is master receive or transmit)

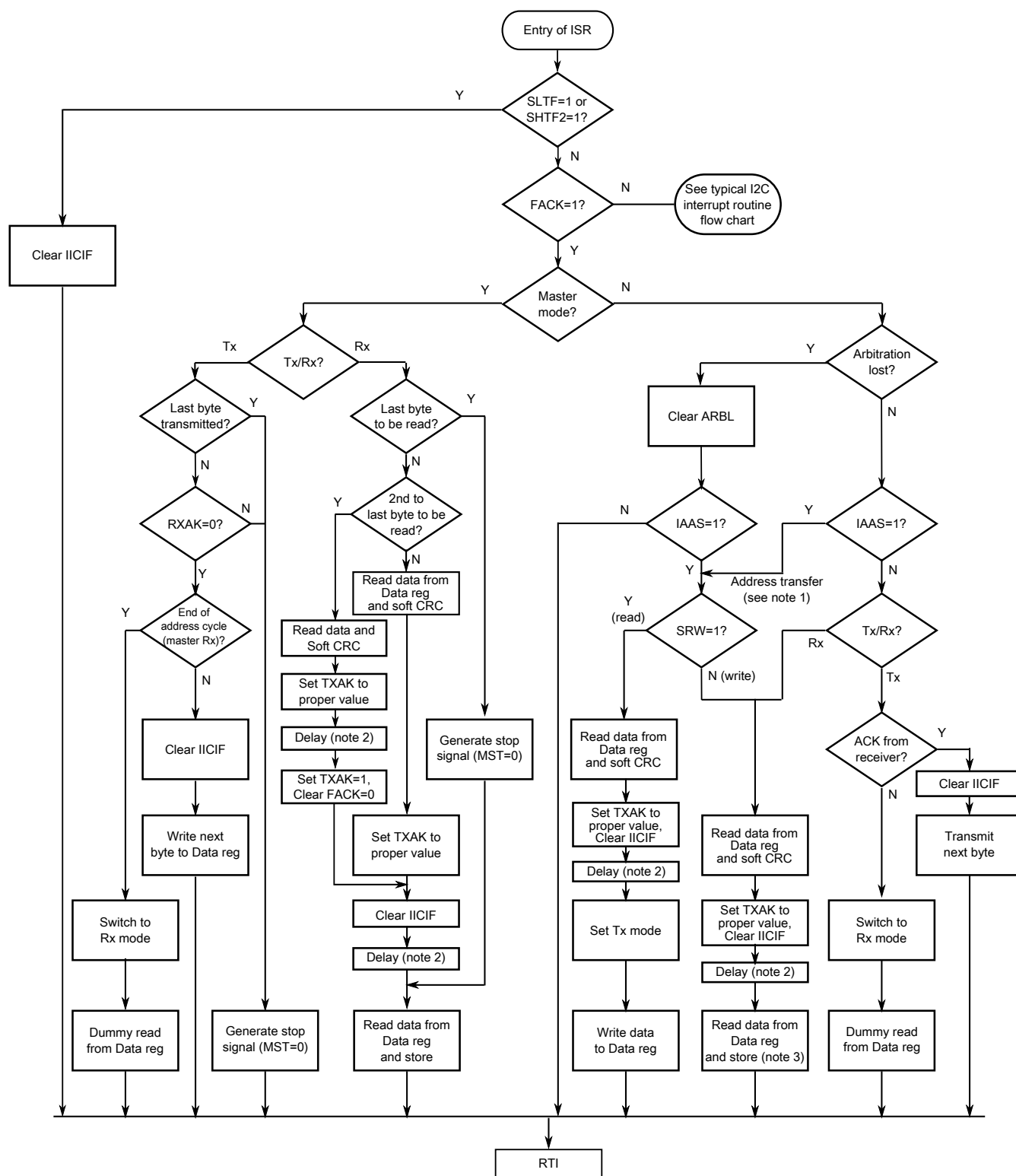
The routine shown in the following figure encompasses both master and slave I2C operations. For slave operation, an incoming I2C message that contains the proper address begins I2C communication. For master operation, communication must be initiated by writing the Data register. An example of an I2C driver which implements many of the steps described here is available in [AN4342: Using the Inter-Integrated Circuit on ColdFire+ and Kinetis](#) .



Notes:

1. If general call is enabled, check to determine if the received address is a general call address (0x00).
If the received address is a general call address, the general call must be handled by user software.
2. When 10-bit addressing addresses a slave, the slave sees an interrupt following the first byte of the extended address.
Ensure that for this interrupt, the contents of the Data register are ignored and not treated as a valid data transfer.

Figure 51-6. Typical I2C interrupt routine



Notes:

1. If general call or SIICAEN is enabled, check to determine if the received address is a general call address (0x00) or an SMBus device default address. In either case, they must be handled by user software.
2. In receive mode, one bit time delay may be needed before the first and second data reading, to wait for the possible longest time period (in worst case) of the 9th SCL cycle.
3. This read is a dummy read in order to reset the SMBus receiver state machine.

Figure 51-7. Typical I2C SMBus interrupt routine



Chapter 52

Universal Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter (UART) / FlexSCI

52.1 Chip-specific UART information

52.1.1 UART configuration

This chip contains six UART modules.

1. Standard features of all UARTs:
 - RS-485 support
 - Hardware flow control (RTS/CTS)
 - 9-bit UART to support address mark with parity
 - MSB/LSB configuration on data
2. All UARTs are clocked from the fast peripheral clock. The maximum baud rate is 1/16 of related source clock frequency.
3. IrDA is available on all UARTs
4. UART0 and UART1 contains the standard features plus ISO7816
5. UART0 and UART1 contain 8-entry transmit and 8-entry receive FIFOs
6. All other UARTs contain a 1-entry transmit and 1-entry receive FIFOs

52.1.2 UART signals

Signal	I/O	Connected to
UART0		
Receive complete	Output	DMA_MUX0 source 2
Transmit complete	Output	DMA_MUX0 source 3
UART0RXSRC	Input	UART0_RX pin or CMP0_OUT or CMP1_OUT
UART0TXSRC	Input	UART0_TX pin or UART0_TX pin modulated with FTM1 channel 0 output
UART1		

Table continues on the next page...

Cmp-specific UART information

Signal	I/O	Connected to
Receive complete	Output	DMA_MUX0 source 4
Transmit complete	Output	DMA_MUX0 source 5
UART1RXSRC	Input	UART1_RX pin or CMP0_OUT or CMP1_OUT
UART1TXSRC	Input	UART1_TX pin or UART1_TX pin modulated with FTM1 channel 0 output
UART2		
Receive complete	Output	DMA_MUX1 source 2
Transmit complete	Output	DMA_MUX1 source 3
UART1RXSRC	Input	UART2_RX pin
UART1TXSRC	Input	UART2_TX pin
UART3		
Receive complete	Output	DMA_MUX1 source 4
Transmit complete	Output	DMA_MUX1 source 5
UART1RXSRC	Input	UART3_RX pin
UART1TXSRC	Input	UART3_TX pin
UART4		
Receive complete	Output	DMA_MUX1 source 54
Transmit complete	Output	DMA_MUX1 source 55
UART1RXSRC	Input	UART4_RX pin
UART1TXSRC	Input	UART4_TX pin
UART5		
Receive complete	Output	DMA_MUX1 source 56
Transmit complete	Output	DMA_MUX1 source 57
UART1RXSRC	Input	UART5_RX pin
UART1TXSRC	Input	UART5_TX pin

52.1.3 UART wakeup

The UART can be configured to generate an interrupt/wakeup on the first active edge that it receives.

52.1.4 UART interrupts

The UART has multiple sources of interrupt requests. However, some of these sources are OR'd together to generate a single interrupt request. See below for the mapping of the individual interrupt sources to the interrupt request:

The status interrupt combines the following interrupt sources:

Source	UART 0	UART 1	UART 2	UART 3	UART 4	UART 5
Transmit data empty	x	x	x	x	x	x
Transmit complete	x	x	x	x	x	x
Idle line	x	x	x	x	x	x
Receive data full	x	x	x	x	x	x
LIN break detect	x	x	x	x	x	x
RxD pin active edge	x	x	x	x	x	x
Initial character detect	x		—	—	—	—

The error interrupt combines the following interrupt sources:

Source	UART 0	UART 1	UART 2	UART 3	UART 4	UART 5
Receiver overrun	x	x	x	x	x	x
Noise flag	x	x	x	x	x	x
Framing error	x	x	x	x	x	x
Parity error	x	x	x	x	x	x
Transmitter buffer overflow	x	x	x	x	x	x
Receiver buffer overflow	x	x	x	x	x	x
Receiver buffer underflow	x	x	x	x	x	x
Transmit threshold (ISO7816)	x		—	—	—	—
Receiver threshold (ISO7816)	x		—	—	—	—
Wait timer (ISO7816)	x		—	—	—	—
Character wait timer (ISO7816)	x		—	—	—	—
Block wait timer (ISO7816)	x		—	—	—	—
Guard time violation (ISO7816)	x		—	—	—	—
ATR duration timer (ISO7816)	x		—	—	—	—

52.2 Introduction

The UART allows asynchronous serial communication with peripheral devices and CPUs.

52.2.1 Features

The UART includes the following features:

- Full-duplex operation
- Standard mark/space non-return-to-zero (NRZ) format
- Selectable IrDA 1.4 return-to-zero-inverted (RZI) format with programmable pulse width
- 13-bit baud rate selection with /32 fractional divide, based on the module clock frequency
- Programmable 8-bit or 9-bit data format
- Programmable 1 or 2 stop bits in a data frame.
- Separately enabled transmitter and receiver
- Programmable transmitter output polarity
- Programmable receive input polarity
- Up to 16-bit break character transmission.
- 11-bit break character detection option
- Independent FIFO structure for transmit and receive
- Two receiver wakeup methods:
 - Idle line wakeup
 - Address mark wakeup
- Address match feature in the receiver to reduce address mark wakeup ISR overhead
- Ability to select MSB or LSB to be first bit on wire
- Hardware flow control support for request to send (RTS) and clear to send (CTS) signals

- Support for ISO 7816 protocol to interface with SIM cards and smart cards
 - Support for T=0 and T=1 protocols
 - Automatic retransmission of NACK'd packets with programmable retry threshold
 - Support for 11 and 12 ETU transfers
 - Detection of initial packet and automated transfer parameter programming
 - Interrupt-driven operation with seven ISO-7816 specific interrupts:
 - Wait time violated
 - Character wait time violated
 - Block wait time violated
 - Initial frame detected
 - Transmit error threshold exceeded
 - Receive error threshold exceeded
 - Guard time violated
- Interrupt-driven operation with flags, not specific to ISO-7816 support
 - Transmitter data buffer at or below watermark
 - Transmission complete
 - Receiver data buffer at or above watermark
 - Idle receiver input
 - Receiver data buffer overrun
 - Receiver data buffer underflow
 - Transmit data buffer overflow
 - Noise error
 - Framing error
 - Parity error
 - Active edge on receive pin
 - LIN break detect

- Receiver framing error detection
- Hardware parity generation and checking
- 1/16 bit-time noise detection
- DMA interface

52.2.2 Modes of operation

The UART functions in the same way in all the normal modes.

It has the following low power modes:

- Wait mode
- Stop mode

52.2.2.1 Run mode

This is the normal mode of operation.

52.2.2.2 Wait mode

UART operation in the Wait mode depends on the state of the C1[UARTSWAI] field.

- If C1[UARTSWAI] is cleared, and the CPU is in Wait mode, the UART operates normally.
- If C1[UARTSWAI] is set, and the CPU is in Wait mode, the UART clock generation ceases and the UART module enters a power conservation state.

C1[UARTSWAI] does not initiate any power down or power up procedures for the ISO-7816 smartcard interface.

Setting C1[UARTSWAI] does not affect the state of the C2[RE] or C2[TE].

If C1[UARTSWAI] is set, any ongoing transmission or reception stops at the Wait mode entry. The transmission or reception resumes when either an internal or external interrupt brings the CPU out of Wait mode. Bringing the CPU out of Wait mode by reset aborts any ongoing transmission or reception and resets the UART.

52.2.2.3 Stop mode

The UART is inactive during Stop mode for reduced power consumption. The STOP instruction does not affect the UART register states, but the UART module clock is disabled. The UART operation resumes after an external interrupt brings the CPU out of Stop mode. Bringing the CPU out of Stop mode by reset aborts any ongoing transmission or reception and resets the UART. Entering or leaving Stop mode does not initiate any power down or power up procedures for the ISO-7816 smartcard interface.

52.3 UART signal descriptions

The UART signals are shown in the following table.

Table 52-1. UART signal descriptions

Signal	Description	I/O
CTS	Clear to send	I
RTS	Request to send	O
RXD	Receive data	I
TXD	Transmit data	O

52.3.1 Detailed signal descriptions

The detailed signal descriptions of the UART are shown in the following table.

Table 52-2. UART—Detailed signal descriptions

Signal	I/O	Description
CTS	I	Clear to send. Indicates whether the UART can start transmitting data when flow control is enabled.
		State meaning Asserted—Data transmission can start. Negated—Data transmission cannot start.
		Timing Assertion—When transmitting device's RTS asserts. Negation—When transmitting device's RTS deasserts.
RTS	O	Request to send. When driven by the receiver, indicates whether the UART is ready to receive data. When driven by the transmitter, can enable an external transceiver during transmission.
		State meaning Asserted—When driven by the receiver, ready to receive data. When driven by the transmitter, enable the external transmitter. Negated—When driven by the receiver, not ready to receive data. When driven by the transmitter, disable the external transmitter.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 52-2. UART—Detailed signal descriptions (continued)

Signal	I/O	Description	
		Timing	Assertion—Can occur at any time; can assert asynchronously to the other input signals. Negation—Can occur at any time; can deassert asynchronously to the other input signals.
RXD	I		Receive data. Serial data input to receiver.
		State meaning	Whether RXD is interpreted as a 1 or 0 depends on the bit encoding method along with other configuration settings.
		Timing	Sampled at a frequency determined by the module clock divided by the baud rate.
TXD	O		Transmit data. Serial data output from transmitter.
		State meaning	Whether TXD is interpreted as a 1 or 0 depends on the bit encoding method along with other configuration settings.
		Timing	Driven at the beginning or within a bit time according to the bit encoding method along with other configuration settings. Otherwise, transmissions are independent of reception timing.

52.4 Memory map and registers

This section provides a detailed description of all memory and registers.

Accessing reserved addresses within the memory map results in a transfer error. None of the contents of the implemented addresses are modified as a result of that access.

Only byte accesses are supported.

UART memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4006_A000	UART Baud Rate Registers: High (UART0_BDH)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.1/1648
4006_A001	UART Baud Rate Registers: Low (UART0_BDL)	8	R/W	04h	52.4.2/1649
4006_A002	UART Control Register 1 (UART0_C1)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.3/1649
4006_A003	UART Control Register 2 (UART0_C2)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.4/1651
4006_A004	UART Status Register 1 (UART0_S1)	8	R	C0h	52.4.5/1653
4006_A005	UART Status Register 2 (UART0_S2)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.6/1656
4006_A006	UART Control Register 3 (UART0_C3)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.7/1658
4006_A007	UART Data Register (UART0_D)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.8/1659
4006_A008	UART Match Address Registers 1 (UART0_MA1)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.9/1660
4006_A009	UART Match Address Registers 2 (UART0_MA2)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.10/1661

Table continues on the next page...

UART memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/page
4006_A00A	UART Control Register 4 (UART0_C4)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.11/1661
4006_A00B	UART Control Register 5 (UART0_C5)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.12/1662
4006_A00C	UART Extended Data Register (UART0_ED)	8	R	00h	52.4.13/1663
4006_A00D	UART Modem Register (UART0_MODEM)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.14/1664
4006_A00E	UART Infrared Register (UART0_IR)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.15/1665
4006_A010	UART FIFO Parameters (UART0_PFIFO)	8	R/W	See section	52.4.16/1666
4006_A011	UART FIFO Control Register (UART0_CFIFO)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.17/1667
4006_A012	UART FIFO Status Register (UART0_SFIFO)	8	R/W	C0h	52.4.18/1668
4006_A013	UART FIFO Transmit Watermark (UART0_TWFIFO)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.19/1670
4006_A014	UART FIFO Transmit Count (UART0_TCFIFO)	8	R	00h	52.4.20/1670
4006_A015	UART FIFO Receive Watermark (UART0_RWFIFO)	8	R/W	01h	52.4.21/1671
4006_A016	UART FIFO Receive Count (UART0_RCFIFO)	8	R	00h	52.4.22/1671
4006_A018	UART 7816 Control Register (UART0_C7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.23/1672
4006_A019	UART 7816 Interrupt Enable Register (UART0_IE7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.24/1673
4006_A01A	UART 7816 Interrupt Status Register (UART0_IS7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.25/1674
4006_A01B	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register (UART0_WP7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.26/1676
4006_A01C	UART 7816 Wait N Register (UART0_WN7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.27/1677
4006_A01D	UART 7816 Wait FD Register (UART0_WF7816)	8	R/W	01h	52.4.28/1677
4006_A01E	UART 7816 Error Threshold Register (UART0_ET7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.29/1678
4006_A01F	UART 7816 Transmit Length Register (UART0_TL7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.30/1678
4006_A03A	UART 7816 ATR Duration Timer Register A (UART0_AP7816A_T0)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.31/1679
4006_A03B	UART 7816 ATR Duration Timer Register B (UART0_AP7816B_T0)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.32/1680

Table continues on the next page...

UART memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4006_A03C	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register A (UART0_WP7816A_T0)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.33/1680
4006_A03C	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register A (UART0_WP7816A_T1)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.34/1681
4006_A03D	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register B (UART0_WP7816B_T0)	8	R/W	14h	52.4.35/1681
4006_A03D	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register B (UART0_WP7816B_T1)	8	R/W	14h	52.4.36/1682
4006_A03E	UART 7816 Wait and Guard Parameter Register (UART0_WGP7816_T1)	8	R/W	06h	52.4.37/1682
4006_A03F	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register C (UART0_WP7816C_T1)	8	R/W	0Bh	52.4.38/1683
4006_B000	UART Baud Rate Registers: High (UART1_BDH)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.1/1648
4006_B001	UART Baud Rate Registers: Low (UART1_BDL)	8	R/W	04h	52.4.2/1649
4006_B002	UART Control Register 1 (UART1_C1)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.3/1649
4006_B003	UART Control Register 2 (UART1_C2)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.4/1651
4006_B004	UART Status Register 1 (UART1_S1)	8	R	C0h	52.4.5/1653
4006_B005	UART Status Register 2 (UART1_S2)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.6/1656
4006_B006	UART Control Register 3 (UART1_C3)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.7/1658
4006_B007	UART Data Register (UART1_D)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.8/1659
4006_B008	UART Match Address Registers 1 (UART1_MA1)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.9/1660
4006_B009	UART Match Address Registers 2 (UART1_MA2)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.10/1661
4006_B00A	UART Control Register 4 (UART1_C4)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.11/1661
4006_B00B	UART Control Register 5 (UART1_C5)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.12/1662
4006_B00C	UART Extended Data Register (UART1_ED)	8	R	00h	52.4.13/1663
4006_B00D	UART Modem Register (UART1_MODEM)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.14/1664
4006_B00E	UART Infrared Register (UART1_IR)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.15/1665
4006_B010	UART FIFO Parameters (UART1_PFIFO)	8	R/W	See section	52.4.16/1666
4006_B011	UART FIFO Control Register (UART1_CFIFO)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.17/1667
4006_B012	UART FIFO Status Register (UART1_SFIFO)	8	R/W	C0h	52.4.18/1668
4006_B013	UART FIFO Transmit Watermark (UART1_TWFIFO)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.19/1670
4006_B014	UART FIFO Transmit Count (UART1_TCFIFO)	8	R	00h	52.4.20/1670

Table continues on the next page...

UART memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4006_B015	UART FIFO Receive Watermark (UART1_RWFIFO)	8	R/W	01h	52.4.21/1671
4006_B016	UART FIFO Receive Count (UART1_RCFIFO)	8	R	00h	52.4.22/1671
4006_B018	UART 7816 Control Register (UART1_C7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.23/1672
4006_B019	UART 7816 Interrupt Enable Register (UART1_IE7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.24/1673
4006_B01A	UART 7816 Interrupt Status Register (UART1_IS7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.25/1674
4006_B01B	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register (UART1_WP7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.26/1676
4006_B01C	UART 7816 Wait N Register (UART1_WN7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.27/1677
4006_B01D	UART 7816 Wait FD Register (UART1_WF7816)	8	R/W	01h	52.4.28/1677
4006_B01E	UART 7816 Error Threshold Register (UART1_ET7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.29/1678
4006_B01F	UART 7816 Transmit Length Register (UART1_TL7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.30/1678
4006_B03A	UART 7816 ATR Duration Timer Register A (UART1_AP7816A_T0)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.31/1679
4006_B03B	UART 7816 ATR Duration Timer Register B (UART1_AP7816B_T0)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.32/1680
4006_B03C	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register A (UART1_WP7816A_T0)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.33/1680
4006_B03C	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register A (UART1_WP7816A_T1)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.34/1681
4006_B03D	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register B (UART1_WP7816B_T0)	8	R/W	14h	52.4.35/1681
4006_B03D	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register B (UART1_WP7816B_T1)	8	R/W	14h	52.4.36/1682
4006_B03E	UART 7816 Wait and Guard Parameter Register (UART1_WGP7816_T1)	8	R/W	06h	52.4.37/1682
4006_B03F	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register C (UART1_WP7816C_T1)	8	R/W	0Bh	52.4.38/1683
4006_C000	UART Baud Rate Registers: High (UART2_BDH)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.1/1648
4006_C001	UART Baud Rate Registers: Low (UART2_BDL)	8	R/W	04h	52.4.2/1649
4006_C002	UART Control Register 1 (UART2_C1)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.3/1649
4006_C003	UART Control Register 2 (UART2_C2)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.4/1651
4006_C004	UART Status Register 1 (UART2_S1)	8	R	C0h	52.4.5/1653
4006_C005	UART Status Register 2 (UART2_S2)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.6/1656
4006_C006	UART Control Register 3 (UART2_C3)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.7/1658

Table continues on the next page...

UART memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/page
4006_C007	UART Data Register (UART2_D)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.8/1659
4006_C008	UART Match Address Registers 1 (UART2_MA1)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.9/1660
4006_C009	UART Match Address Registers 2 (UART2_MA2)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.10/1661
4006_C00A	UART Control Register 4 (UART2_C4)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.11/1661
4006_C00B	UART Control Register 5 (UART2_C5)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.12/1662
4006_C00C	UART Extended Data Register (UART2_ED)	8	R	00h	52.4.13/1663
4006_C00D	UART Modem Register (UART2_MODEM)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.14/1664
4006_C00E	UART Infrared Register (UART2_IR)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.15/1665
4006_C010	UART FIFO Parameters (UART2_PFIFO)	8	R/W	See section	52.4.16/1666
4006_C011	UART FIFO Control Register (UART2_CFIFO)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.17/1667
4006_C012	UART FIFO Status Register (UART2_SFIFO)	8	R/W	C0h	52.4.18/1668
4006_C013	UART FIFO Transmit Watermark (UART2_TWFIFO)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.19/1670
4006_C014	UART FIFO Transmit Count (UART2_TCFIFO)	8	R	00h	52.4.20/1670
4006_C015	UART FIFO Receive Watermark (UART2_RWFIFO)	8	R/W	01h	52.4.21/1671
4006_C016	UART FIFO Receive Count (UART2_RCFIFO)	8	R	00h	52.4.22/1671
4006_C018	UART 7816 Control Register (UART2_C7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.23/1672
4006_C019	UART 7816 Interrupt Enable Register (UART2_IE7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.24/1673
4006_C01A	UART 7816 Interrupt Status Register (UART2_IS7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.25/1674
4006_C01B	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register (UART2_WP7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.26/1676
4006_C01C	UART 7816 Wait N Register (UART2_WN7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.27/1677
4006_C01D	UART 7816 Wait FD Register (UART2_WF7816)	8	R/W	01h	52.4.28/1677
4006_C01E	UART 7816 Error Threshold Register (UART2_ET7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.29/1678
4006_C01F	UART 7816 Transmit Length Register (UART2_TL7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.30/1678

Table continues on the next page...

UART memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/page
4006_C03A	UART 7816 ATR Duration Timer Register A (UART2_AP7816A_T0)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.31/1679
4006_C03B	UART 7816 ATR Duration Timer Register B (UART2_AP7816B_T0)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.32/1680
4006_C03C	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register A (UART2_WP7816A_T0)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.33/1680
4006_C03C	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register A (UART2_WP7816A_T1)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.34/1681
4006_C03D	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register B (UART2_WP7816B_T0)	8	R/W	14h	52.4.35/1681
4006_C03D	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register B (UART2_WP7816B_T1)	8	R/W	14h	52.4.36/1682
4006_C03E	UART 7816 Wait and Guard Parameter Register (UART2_WGP7816_T1)	8	R/W	06h	52.4.37/1682
4006_C03F	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register C (UART2_WP7816C_T1)	8	R/W	0Bh	52.4.38/1683
4006_D000	UART Baud Rate Registers: High (UART3_BDH)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.1/1648
4006_D001	UART Baud Rate Registers: Low (UART3_BDL)	8	R/W	04h	52.4.2/1649
4006_D002	UART Control Register 1 (UART3_C1)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.3/1649
4006_D003	UART Control Register 2 (UART3_C2)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.4/1651
4006_D004	UART Status Register 1 (UART3_S1)	8	R	C0h	52.4.5/1653
4006_D005	UART Status Register 2 (UART3_S2)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.6/1656
4006_D006	UART Control Register 3 (UART3_C3)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.7/1658
4006_D007	UART Data Register (UART3_D)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.8/1659
4006_D008	UART Match Address Registers 1 (UART3_MA1)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.9/1660
4006_D009	UART Match Address Registers 2 (UART3_MA2)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.10/1661
4006_D00A	UART Control Register 4 (UART3_C4)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.11/1661
4006_D00B	UART Control Register 5 (UART3_C5)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.12/1662
4006_D00C	UART Extended Data Register (UART3_ED)	8	R	00h	52.4.13/1663
4006_D00D	UART Modem Register (UART3_MODEM)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.14/1664
4006_D00E	UART Infrared Register (UART3_IR)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.15/1665
4006_D010	UART FIFO Parameters (UART3_PFIFO)	8	R/W	See section	52.4.16/1666
4006_D011	UART FIFO Control Register (UART3_CFIFO)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.17/1667
4006_D012	UART FIFO Status Register (UART3_SFIFO)	8	R/W	C0h	52.4.18/1668

Table continues on the next page...

UART memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4006_D013	UART FIFO Transmit Watermark (UART3_TWFIFO)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.19/1670
4006_D014	UART FIFO Transmit Count (UART3_TCFIFO)	8	R	00h	52.4.20/1670
4006_D015	UART FIFO Receive Watermark (UART3_RWFIFO)	8	R/W	01h	52.4.21/1671
4006_D016	UART FIFO Receive Count (UART3_RCFIFO)	8	R	00h	52.4.22/1671
4006_D018	UART 7816 Control Register (UART3_C7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.23/1672
4006_D019	UART 7816 Interrupt Enable Register (UART3_IE7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.24/1673
4006_D01A	UART 7816 Interrupt Status Register (UART3_IS7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.25/1674
4006_D01B	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register (UART3_WP7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.26/1676
4006_D01C	UART 7816 Wait N Register (UART3_WN7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.27/1677
4006_D01D	UART 7816 Wait FD Register (UART3_WF7816)	8	R/W	01h	52.4.28/1677
4006_D01E	UART 7816 Error Threshold Register (UART3_ET7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.29/1678
4006_D01F	UART 7816 Transmit Length Register (UART3_TL7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.30/1678
4006_D03A	UART 7816 ATR Duration Timer Register A (UART3_AP7816A_T0)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.31/1679
4006_D03B	UART 7816 ATR Duration Timer Register B (UART3_AP7816B_T0)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.32/1680
4006_D03C	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register A (UART3_WP7816A_T0)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.33/1680
4006_D03C	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register A (UART3_WP7816A_T1)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.34/1681
4006_D03D	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register B (UART3_WP7816B_T0)	8	R/W	14h	52.4.35/1681
4006_D03D	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register B (UART3_WP7816B_T1)	8	R/W	14h	52.4.36/1682
4006_D03E	UART 7816 Wait and Guard Parameter Register (UART3_WGP7816_T1)	8	R/W	06h	52.4.37/1682
4006_D03F	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register C (UART3_WP7816C_T1)	8	R/W	0Bh	52.4.38/1683
400E_A000	UART Baud Rate Registers: High (UART4_BDH)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.1/1648
400E_A001	UART Baud Rate Registers: Low (UART4_BDL)	8	R/W	04h	52.4.2/1649
400E_A002	UART Control Register 1 (UART4_C1)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.3/1649
400E_A003	UART Control Register 2 (UART4_C2)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.4/1651

Table continues on the next page...

UART memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
400E_A004	UART Status Register 1 (UART4_S1)	8	R	C0h	52.4.5/1653
400E_A005	UART Status Register 2 (UART4_S2)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.6/1656
400E_A006	UART Control Register 3 (UART4_C3)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.7/1658
400E_A007	UART Data Register (UART4_D)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.8/1659
400E_A008	UART Match Address Registers 1 (UART4_MA1)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.9/1660
400E_A009	UART Match Address Registers 2 (UART4_MA2)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.10/1661
400E_A00A	UART Control Register 4 (UART4_C4)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.11/1661
400E_A00B	UART Control Register 5 (UART4_C5)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.12/1662
400E_A00C	UART Extended Data Register (UART4_ED)	8	R	00h	52.4.13/1663
400E_A00D	UART Modem Register (UART4_MODEM)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.14/1664
400E_A00E	UART Infrared Register (UART4_IR)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.15/1665
400E_A010	UART FIFO Parameters (UART4_PFIPO)	8	R/W	See section	52.4.16/1666
400E_A011	UART FIFO Control Register (UART4_CFIPO)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.17/1667
400E_A012	UART FIFO Status Register (UART4_SFIPO)	8	R/W	C0h	52.4.18/1668
400E_A013	UART FIFO Transmit Watermark (UART4_TWFIPO)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.19/1670
400E_A014	UART FIFO Transmit Count (UART4_TCFIPO)	8	R	00h	52.4.20/1670
400E_A015	UART FIFO Receive Watermark (UART4_RWFIPO)	8	R/W	01h	52.4.21/1671
400E_A016	UART FIFO Receive Count (UART4_RCFIPO)	8	R	00h	52.4.22/1671
400E_A018	UART 7816 Control Register (UART4_C7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.23/1672
400E_A019	UART 7816 Interrupt Enable Register (UART4_IE7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.24/1673
400E_A01A	UART 7816 Interrupt Status Register (UART4_IS7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.25/1674
400E_A01B	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register (UART4_WP7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.26/1676
400E_A01C	UART 7816 Wait N Register (UART4_WN7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.27/1677
400E_A01D	UART 7816 Wait FD Register (UART4_WF7816)	8	R/W	01h	52.4.28/1677

Table continues on the next page...

UART memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/page
400E_A01E	UART 7816 Error Threshold Register (UART4_ET7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.29/1678
400E_A01F	UART 7816 Transmit Length Register (UART4_TL7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.30/1678
400E_A03A	UART 7816 ATR Duration Timer Register A (UART4_AP7816A_T0)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.31/1679
400E_A03B	UART 7816 ATR Duration Timer Register B (UART4_AP7816B_T0)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.32/1680
400E_A03C	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register A (UART4_WP7816A_T0)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.33/1680
400E_A03C	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register A (UART4_WP7816A_T1)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.34/1681
400E_A03D	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register B (UART4_WP7816B_T0)	8	R/W	14h	52.4.35/1681
400E_A03D	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register B (UART4_WP7816B_T1)	8	R/W	14h	52.4.36/1682
400E_A03E	UART 7816 Wait and Guard Parameter Register (UART4_WGP7816_T1)	8	R/W	06h	52.4.37/1682
400E_A03F	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register C (UART4_WP7816C_T1)	8	R/W	0Bh	52.4.38/1683
400E_B000	UART Baud Rate Registers: High (UART5_BDH)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.1/1648
400E_B001	UART Baud Rate Registers: Low (UART5_BDL)	8	R/W	04h	52.4.2/1649
400E_B002	UART Control Register 1 (UART5_C1)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.3/1649
400E_B003	UART Control Register 2 (UART5_C2)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.4/1651
400E_B004	UART Status Register 1 (UART5_S1)	8	R	C0h	52.4.5/1653
400E_B005	UART Status Register 2 (UART5_S2)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.6/1656
400E_B006	UART Control Register 3 (UART5_C3)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.7/1658
400E_B007	UART Data Register (UART5_D)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.8/1659
400E_B008	UART Match Address Registers 1 (UART5_MA1)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.9/1660
400E_B009	UART Match Address Registers 2 (UART5_MA2)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.10/1661
400E_B00A	UART Control Register 4 (UART5_C4)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.11/1661
400E_B00B	UART Control Register 5 (UART5_C5)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.12/1662
400E_B00C	UART Extended Data Register (UART5_ED)	8	R	00h	52.4.13/1663
400E_B00D	UART Modem Register (UART5_MODEM)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.14/1664
400E_B00E	UART Infrared Register (UART5_IR)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.15/1665
400E_B010	UART FIFO Parameters (UART5_PFIPO)	8	R/W	See section	52.4.16/1666

Table continues on the next page...

UART memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
400E_B011	UART FIFO Control Register (UART5_CFIFO)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.17/1667
400E_B012	UART FIFO Status Register (UART5_SFIFO)	8	R/W	C0h	52.4.18/1668
400E_B013	UART FIFO Transmit Watermark (UART5_TWFIFO)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.19/1670
400E_B014	UART FIFO Transmit Count (UART5_TCFIFO)	8	R	00h	52.4.20/1670
400E_B015	UART FIFO Receive Watermark (UART5_RWFIFO)	8	R/W	01h	52.4.21/1671
400E_B016	UART FIFO Receive Count (UART5_RCFIFO)	8	R	00h	52.4.22/1671
400E_B018	UART 7816 Control Register (UART5_C7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.23/1672
400E_B019	UART 7816 Interrupt Enable Register (UART5_IE7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.24/1673
400E_B01A	UART 7816 Interrupt Status Register (UART5_IS7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.25/1674
400E_B01B	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register (UART5_WP7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.26/1676
400E_B01C	UART 7816 Wait N Register (UART5_WN7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.27/1677
400E_B01D	UART 7816 Wait FD Register (UART5_WF7816)	8	R/W	01h	52.4.28/1677
400E_B01E	UART 7816 Error Threshold Register (UART5_ET7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.29/1678
400E_B01F	UART 7816 Transmit Length Register (UART5_TL7816)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.30/1678
400E_B03A	UART 7816 ATR Duration Timer Register A (UART5_AP7816A_T0)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.31/1679
400E_B03B	UART 7816 ATR Duration Timer Register B (UART5_AP7816B_T0)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.32/1680
400E_B03C	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register A (UART5_WP7816A_T0)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.33/1680
400E_B03C	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register A (UART5_WP7816A_T1)	8	R/W	00h	52.4.34/1681
400E_B03D	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register B (UART5_WP7816B_T0)	8	R/W	14h	52.4.35/1681
400E_B03D	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register B (UART5_WP7816B_T1)	8	R/W	14h	52.4.36/1682
400E_B03E	UART 7816 Wait and Guard Parameter Register (UART5_WGP7816_T1)	8	R/W	06h	52.4.37/1682
400E_B03F	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register C (UART5_WP7816C_T1)	8	R/W	0Bh	52.4.38/1683

52.4.1 UART Baud Rate Registers: High (UARTx_BDH)

This register, along with the BDL register, controls the prescale divisor for UART baud rate generation. To update the 13-bit baud rate setting (SBR[12:0]), first write to BDH to buffer the high half of the new value and then write to BDL. The working value in BDH does not change until BDL is written.

BDL is reset to a nonzero value, but after reset, the baud rate generator remains disabled until the first time the receiver or transmitter is enabled, that is, when C2[RE] or C2[TE] is set.

Address: Base address + 0h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	LBKDIE	RXEDGIE	SBNS					
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_BDH field descriptions

Field	Description
7 LBKDIE	<p>LIN Break Detect Interrupt or DMA Request Enable</p> <p>Enables the LIN break detect flag, LBKDIF, to generate interrupt requests based on the state of LBKDDMAS. or DMA transfer requests,</p> <p>0 LBKDIF interrupt and DMA transfer requests disabled.</p> <p>1 LBKDIF interrupt or DMA transfer requests enabled.</p>
6 RXEDGIE	<p>RxD Input Active Edge Interrupt Enable</p> <p>Enables the receive input active edge, RXEDGIF, to generate interrupt requests.</p> <p>0 Hardware interrupts from RXEDGIF disabled using polling.</p> <p>1 RXEDGIF interrupt request enabled.</p>
5 SBNS	<p>Stop Bit Number Select</p> <p>SBNS selects the number of stop bits present in a data frame. This field valid for all 8, 9 and 10 bit data formats available. This field is not valid when C7816[ISO7816E] is enabled.</p> <p>0 Data frame consists of a single stop bit.</p> <p>1 Data frame consists of two stop bits.</p>
SBR	<p>UART Baud Rate Bits</p> <p>The baud rate for the UART is determined by the 13 SBR fields. See Baud rate generation for details.</p> <p>NOTE:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The baud rate generator is disabled until C2[TE] or C2[RE] is set for the first time after reset. The baud rate generator is disabled when SBR = 0. Writing to BDH has no effect without writing to BDL, because writing to BDH puts the data in a temporary location until BDL is written.

52.4.2 UART Baud Rate Registers: Low (UARTx_BDL)

This register, along with the BDH register, controls the prescale divisor for UART baud rate generation. To update the 13-bit baud rate setting, SBR[12:0], first write to BDH to buffer the high half of the new value and then write to BDL. The working value in BDH does not change until BDL is written. BDL is reset to a nonzero value, but after reset, the baud rate generator remains disabled until the first time the receiver or transmitter is enabled, that is, when C2[RE] or C2[TE] is set.

Address: Base address + 1h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read								
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0

UARTx_BDL field descriptions

Field	Description
SBR	<p>UART Baud Rate Bits</p> <p>The baud rate for the UART is determined by the 13 SBR fields. See Baud rate generation for details.</p> <p>NOTE:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The baud rate generator is disabled until C2[TE] or C2[RE] is set for the first time after reset. The baud rate generator is disabled when SBR = 0. Writing to BDH has no effect without writing to BDL, because writing to BDH puts the data in a temporary location until BDL is written. When the 1/32 narrow pulse width is selected for infrared (IrDA), the baud rate fields must be even, the least significant bit is 0. See MODEM register for more details.

52.4.3 UART Control Register 1 (UARTx_C1)

This read/write register controls various optional features of the UART system.

Address: Base address + 2h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read								
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_C1 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 LOOPS	<p>Loop Mode Select</p> <p>When LOOPS is set, the RxD pin is disconnected from the UART and the transmitter output is internally connected to the receiver input. The transmitter and the receiver must be enabled to use the loop function.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

UARTx_C1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Normal operation. 1 Loop mode where transmitter output is internally connected to receiver input. The receiver input is determined by RSRC.
6 UARTSWAI	UART Stops in Wait Mode 0 UART clock continues to run in Wait mode. 1 UART clock freezes while CPU is in Wait mode.
5 RSRC	Receiver Source Select This field has no meaning or effect unless the LOOPS field is set. When LOOPS is set, the RSRC field determines the source for the receiver shift register input. 0 Selects internal loop back mode. The receiver input is internally connected to transmitter output. 1 Single wire UART mode where the receiver input is connected to the transmit pin input signal.
4 M	9-bit or 8-bit Mode Select This field must be set when C7816[ISO_7816E] is set/enabled. 0 Normal—start + 8 data bits (MSB/LSB first as determined by MSBF) + stop. 1 Use—start + 9 data bits (MSB/LSB first as determined by MSBF) + stop.
3 WAKE	Receiver Wakeup Method Select Determines which condition wakes the UART: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Address mark in the most significant bit position of a received data character, or An idle condition on the receive pin input signal. 0 Idle line wakeup. 1 Address mark wakeup.
2 ILT	Idle Line Type Select Determines when the receiver starts counting logic 1s as idle character bits. The count begins either after a valid start bit or after the stop bit. If the count begins after the start bit, then a string of logic 1s preceding the stop bit can cause false recognition of an idle character. Beginning the count after the stop bit avoids false idle character recognition, but requires properly synchronized transmissions. NOTE: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> In case the UART is programmed with ILT = 1, a logic of 1'b0 is automatically shifted after a received stop bit, therefore resetting the idle count. In case the UART is programmed for IDLE line wakeup (RWU = 1 and WAKE = 0), ILT has no effect on when the receiver starts counting logic 1s as idle character bits. In idle line wakeup, an idle character is recognized at anytime the receiver sees 10, 11, or 12 1s depending on the M, PE, and C4[M10] fields. 0 Idle character bit count starts after start bit. 1 Idle character bit count starts after stop bit.
1 PE	Parity Enable Enables the parity function. When parity is enabled, parity function inserts a parity bit in the bit position immediately preceding the stop bit. This field must be set when C7816[ISO_7816E] is set/enabled. 0 Parity function disabled. 1 Parity function enabled.

Table continues on the next page...

UARTx_C1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
0 PT	<p>Parity Type</p> <p>Determines whether the UART generates and checks for even parity or odd parity. With even parity, an even number of 1s clears the parity bit and an odd number of 1s sets the parity bit. With odd parity, an odd number of 1s clears the parity bit and an even number of 1s sets the parity bit. This field must be cleared when C7816[ISO_7816E] is set/enabled.</p> <p>0 Even parity. 1 Odd parity.</p>

52.4.4 UART Control Register 2 (UARTx_C2)

This register can be read or written at any time.

Address: Base address + 3h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	TIE	TCIE	RIE	ILIE	TE	RE	RWU	SBK
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_C2 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 TIE	<p>Transmitter Interrupt or DMA Transfer Enable.</p> <p>Enables S1[TDRE] to generate interrupt requests or DMA transfer requests, based on the state of C5[TDMAS].</p> <p>NOTE: If C2[TIE] and C5[TDMAS] are both set, then TCIE must be cleared, and D[D] must not be written unless servicing a DMA request.</p> <p>0 TDRE interrupt and DMA transfer requests disabled. 1 TDRE interrupt or DMA transfer requests enabled.</p>
6 TCIE	<p>Transmission Complete Interrupt Enable</p> <p>Enables the transmission complete flag, S1[TC], to generate interrupt requests .</p> <p>0 TC interrupt requests disabled. 1 TC interrupt requests enabled.</p>
5 RIE	<p>Receiver Full Interrupt or DMA Transfer Enable</p> <p>Enables S1[RDRF] to generate interrupt requests or DMA transfer requests, based on the state of C5[RDMAS].</p> <p>0 RDRF interrupt and DMA transfer requests disabled. 1 RDRF interrupt or DMA transfer requests enabled.</p>
4 ILIE	<p>Idle Line Interrupt Enable</p> <p>Enables the idle line flag, S1[IDLE], to generate interrupt requests</p>

Table continues on the next page...

UARTx_C2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 IDLE interrupt requests disabled. 1 IDLE interrupt requests enabled.
3 TE	<p>Transmitter Enable</p> <p>Enables the UART transmitter. TE can be used to queue an idle preamble by clearing and then setting TE. When C7816[ISO_7816E] is set/enabled and C7816[TTYTYPE] = 1, this field is automatically cleared after the requested block has been transmitted. This condition is detected when TL7816[TLEN] = 0 and four additional characters are transmitted.</p> 0 Transmitter off. 1 Transmitter on.
2 RE	<p>Receiver Enable</p> <p>Enables the UART receiver.</p> 0 Receiver off. 1 Receiver on.
1 RWU	<p>Receiver Wakeup Control</p> <p>This field can be set to place the UART receiver in a standby state. RWU automatically clears when an RWU event occurs, that is, an IDLE event when C1[WAKE] is clear or an address match when C1[WAKE] is set. This field must be cleared when C7816[ISO_7816E] is set.</p> <p>NOTE: RWU must be set only with C1[WAKE] = 0 (wakeup on idle) if the channel is currently not idle. This can be determined by S2[RAF]. If the flag is set to wake up an IDLE event and the channel is already idle, it is possible that the UART will discard data. This is because the data must be received or a LIN break detected after an IDLE is detected before IDLE is allowed to reasserted.</p> 0 Normal operation. 1 RWU enables the wakeup function and inhibits further receiver interrupt requests. Normally, hardware wakes the receiver by automatically clearing RWU.
0 SBK	<p>Send Break</p> <p>Toggling SBK sends one break character from the following: See Transmitting break characters for the number of logic 0s for the different configurations. Toggling implies clearing the SBK field before the break character has finished transmitting. As long as SBK is set, the transmitter continues to send complete break characters (10, 11, or 12 bits, or 13 or 14 bits). Ensure that C2[TE] is asserted atleast 1 clock before assertion of this bit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 10, 11, or 12 logic 0s if S2[BRK13] is cleared 13 or 14 logic 0s if S2[BRK13] is set. <p>This field must be cleared when C7816[ISO_7816E] is set.</p> 0 Normal transmitter operation. 1 Queue break characters to be sent.

52.4.5 UART Status Register 1 (UARTx_S1)

The S1 register provides inputs to the MCU for generation of UART interrupts or DMA requests. This register can also be polled by the MCU to check the status of its fields. To clear a flag, the status register should be read followed by a read or write to D register, depending on the interrupt flag type. Other instructions can be executed between the two steps as long the handling of I/O is not compromised, but the order of operations is important for flag clearing. When a flag is configured to trigger a DMA request, assertion of the associated DMA done signal from the DMA controller clears the flag.

NOTE

- If the condition that results in the assertion of the flag, interrupt, or DMA request is not resolved prior to clearing the flag, the flag, and interrupt/DMA request, reasserts. For example, if the DMA or interrupt service routine fails to write sufficient data to the transmit buffer to raise it above the watermark level, the flag reasserts and generates another interrupt or DMA request.
- Reading an empty data register to clear one of the flags of the S1 register causes the FIFO pointers to become misaligned. A receive FIFO flush reinitializes the pointers. A better way to prevent this situation is to always leave one byte in FIFO and this byte will be read eventually in clearing the flag bit.

Address: Base address + 4h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	TDRE	TC	RDRF	IDLE	OR	NF	FE	PF
Write								
Reset	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_S1 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 TDRE	<p>Transmit Data Register Empty Flag</p> <p>TDRE will set when the number of datawords in the transmit buffer (D and C3[T8]) is equal to or less than the number indicated by TWFIPO[TXWATER]. A character that is in the process of being transmitted is not included in the count. To clear TDRE, read S1 when TDRE is set and then write to the UART data register (D). For more efficient interrupt servicing, all data except the final value to be written to the buffer must be written to D/C3[T8]. Then S1 can be read before writing the final data value, resulting in the clearing of the TDRE flag. This is more efficient because the TDRE reasserts until the watermark has been exceeded. So, attempting to clear the TDRE with every write will be ineffective until sufficient data has been written.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

UARTx_S1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>0 The amount of data in the transmit buffer is greater than the value indicated by TWFIPO[TXWATER].</p> <p>1 The amount of data in the transmit buffer is less than or equal to the value indicated by TWFIPO[TXWATER] at some point in time since the flag has been cleared.</p>
6 TC	<p>Transmit Complete Flag</p> <p>TC is set when the transmit buffer is empty and no data, preamble, or break character is being transmitted. When TC is set, the transmit data output signal becomes idle (logic 1). TC is cleared by reading S1 with TC set and then doing one of the following: When C7816[ISO_7816E] is set/enabled, this field is set after any NACK signal has been received, but prior to any corresponding guard times expiring.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Writing to D to transmit new data. • Queuing a preamble by clearing and then setting C2[TE]. • Queuing a break character by writing 1 to SBK in C2. <p>0 Transmitter active (sending data, a preamble, or a break).</p> <p>1 Transmitter idle (transmission activity complete).</p>
5 RDRF	<p>Receive Data Register Full Flag</p> <p>RDRF is set when the number of datawords in the receive buffer is equal to or more than the number indicated by RWFIFO[RXWATER]. A dataword that is in the process of being received is not included in the count. To clear RDRF, read S1 when RDRF is set and then read D. For more efficient interrupt and DMA operation, read all data except the final value from the buffer, using D/C3[T8]/ED. Then read S1 and the final data value, resulting in the clearing of the RDRF flag. Even if RDRF is set, data will continue to be received until an overrun condition occurs. RDRF is prevented from setting while S2[LBKDE] is set. Additionally, when S2[LBKDE] is set, the received datawords are stored in the receive buffer but over-write each other.</p> <p>0 The number of datawords in the receive buffer is less than the number indicated by RXWATER.</p> <p>1 The number of datawords in the receive buffer is equal to or greater than the number indicated by RXWATER at some point in time since this flag was last cleared.</p>
4 IDLE	<p>Idle Line Flag</p> <p>After the IDLE flag is cleared, a frame must be received (although not necessarily stored in the data buffer, for example if C2[RWU] is set), or a LIN break character must set the S2[LBKDIF] flag before an idle condition can set the IDLE flag. To clear IDLE, read UART status S1 with IDLE set and then read D. IDLE is set when either of the following appear on the receiver input:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 10 consecutive logic 1s if C1[M] = 0 • 11 consecutive logic 1s if C1[M] = 1 and C4[M10] = 0 • 12 consecutive logic 1s if C1[M] = 1, C4[M10] = 1, and C1[PE] = 1 <p>Idle detection is not supported when 7816E is set/enabled and hence this flag is ignored.</p> <p>NOTE: When RWU is set and WAKE is cleared, an idle line condition sets the IDLE flag if RWUID is set, else the IDLE flag does not become set.</p> <p>0 Receiver input is either active now or has never become active since the IDLE flag was last cleared.</p> <p>1 Receiver input has become idle or the flag has not been cleared since it last asserted.</p>
3 OR	<p>Receiver Overrun Flag</p> <p>OR is set when software fails to prevent the receive data register from overflowing with data. The OR bit is set immediately after the stop bit has been completely received for the dataword that overflows the buffer and all the other error flags (FE, NF, and PF) are prevented from setting. The data in the shift register is lost, but the data already in the UART data registers is not affected. If the OR flag is set, no data is stored in the data buffer even if sufficient room exists. Additionally, while the OR flag is set, the RDRF and IDLE flags are blocked from asserting, that is, transition from an inactive to an active state. To clear OR, read S1 when OR is set and then read D. See functional description for more details regarding the operation of</p>

Table continues on the next page...

UARTx_S1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>the OR bit.If LBKDE is enabled and a LIN Break is detected, the OR field asserts if S2[LBKDIF] is not cleared before the next data character is received. In 7816 mode, it is possible to configure a NACK to be returned by programming C7816[ONACK].</p> <p>0 No overrun has occurred since the last time the flag was cleared.</p> <p>1 Overrun has occurred or the overrun flag has not been cleared since the last overrun occurred.</p>
2 NF	<p>Noise Flag</p> <p>NF is set when the UART detects noise on the receiver input. NF does not become set in the case of an overrun or while the LIN break detect feature is enabled (S2[LBKDE] = 1). When NF is set, it indicates only that a dataword has been received with noise since the last time it was cleared. There is no guarantee that the first dataword read from the receive buffer has noise or that there is only one dataword in the buffer that was received with noise unless the receive buffer has a depth of one. To clear NF, read S1 and then read D.</p> <p>0 No noise detected since the last time this flag was cleared. If the receive buffer has a depth greater than 1 then there may be data in the receiver buffer that was received with noise.</p> <p>1 At least one dataword was received with noise detected since the last time the flag was cleared.</p>
1 FE	<p>Framing Error Flag</p> <p>FE is set when a logic 0 is accepted as the stop bit. When BDH[SBNS] is set, then FE will set when a logic 0 is accepted for either of the two stop bits. FE does not set in the case of an overrun or while the LIN break detect feature is enabled (S2[LBKDE] = 1). FE inhibits further data reception until it is cleared. To clear FE, read S1 with FE set and then read D. The last data in the receive buffer represents the data that was received with the frame error enabled. Framing errors are not supported when 7816E is set/enabled. However, if this flag is set, data is still not received in 7816 mode.</p> <p>0 No framing error detected.</p> <p>1 Framing error.</p>
0 PF	<p>Parity Error Flag</p> <p>PF is set when PE is set and the parity of the received data does not match its parity bit. The PF is not set in the case of an overrun condition. When PF is set, it indicates only that a dataword was received with parity error since the last time it was cleared. There is no guarantee that the first dataword read from the receive buffer has a parity error or that there is only one dataword in the buffer that was received with a parity error, unless the receive buffer has a depth of one. To clear PF, read S1 and then read D., S2[LBKDE] is disabled,Within the receive buffer structure the received dataword is tagged if it is received with a parity error. This information is available by reading the ED register prior to reading the D register.</p> <p>0 No parity error detected since the last time this flag was cleared. If the receive buffer has a depth greater than 1, then there may be data in the receive buffer what was received with a parity error.</p> <p>1 At least one dataword was received with a parity error since the last time this flag was cleared.</p>

52.4.6 UART Status Register 2 (UARTx_S2)

The S2 register provides inputs to the MCU for generation of UART interrupts or DMA requests. Also, this register can be polled by the MCU to check the status of these bits. This register can be read or written at any time, with the exception of the MSBF and RXINV bits, which should be changed by the user only between transmit and receive packets.

Address: Base address + 5h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	LBKDIF	RXEDGIF	MSBF	RXINV	RWUID	BRK13	LBKDE	RAF
Write	w1c	w1c						
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_S2 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 LBKDIF	<p>LIN Break Detect Interrupt Flag</p> <p>LBKDIF is set when LBKDE is set and a LIN break character is detected on the receiver input. The LIN break characters are 11 consecutive logic 0s if C1[M] = 0 or 12 consecutive logic 0s if C1[M] = 1. LBKDIF is set after receiving the last LIN break character. LBKDIF is cleared by writing a 1 to it.</p> <p>0 No LIN break character detected. 1 LIN break character detected.</p>
6 RXEDGIF	<p>RxD Pin Active Edge Interrupt Flag</p> <p>RXEDGIF is set when an active edge occurs on the RxD pin. The active edge is falling if RXINV = 0, and rising if RXINV=1. RXEDGIF is cleared by writing a 1 to it. See for additional details. RXEDGIF description</p> <p>NOTE: The active edge is detected only in two wire mode and on receiving data coming from the RxD pin.</p> <p>0 No active edge on the receive pin has occurred. 1 An active edge on the receive pin has occurred.</p>
5 MSBF	<p>Most Significant Bit First</p> <p>Setting this field reverses the order of the bits that are transmitted and received on the wire. This field does not affect the polarity of the bits, the location of the parity bit, or the location of the start or stop bits. This field is automatically set when C7816[INIT] and C7816[ISO7816E] are enabled and an initial character is detected in T = 0 protocol mode.</p> <p>0 LSB (bit0) is the first bit that is transmitted following the start bit. Further, the first bit received after the start bit is identified as bit0. 1 MSB (bit8, bit7 or bit6) is the first bit that is transmitted following the start bit, depending on the setting of C1[M] and C1[PE]. Further, the first bit received after the start bit is identified as bit8, bit7, or bit6, depending on the setting of C1[M] and C1[PE].</p>
4 RXINV	<p>Receive Data Inversion</p>

Table continues on the next page...

UARTx_S2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>Setting this field reverses the polarity of the received data input. In NRZ format, a one is represented by a mark and a zero is represented by a space for normal polarity, and the opposite for inverted polarity. In IrDA format, a zero is represented by short high pulse in the middle of a bit time remaining idle low for a one for normal polarity. A zero is represented by a short low pulse in the middle of a bit time remaining idle high for a one for inverted polarity. This field is automatically set when C7816[INIT] and C7816[ISO7816E] are enabled and an initial character is detected in T = 0 protocol mode.</p> <p>NOTE: Setting RXINV inverts the RxD input for data bits, start and stop bits, break, and idle. When C7816[ISO7816E] is set/enabled, only the data bits and the parity bit are inverted.</p> <p>0 Receive data is not inverted. 1 Receive data is inverted.</p>
3 RWUID	<p>Receive Wakeup Idle Detect</p> <p>When RWU is set and WAKE is cleared, this field controls whether the idle character that wakes the receiver sets S1[IDLE]. This field must be cleared when C7816[ISO7816E] is set/enabled.</p> <p>0 S1[IDLE] is not set upon detection of an idle character. 1 S1[IDLE] is set upon detection of an idle character.</p>
2 BRK13	<p>Break Transmit Character Length</p> <p>Determines whether the transmit break character is 10, 11, or 12 bits long, or 13 or 14 bits long. See for the length of the break character for the different configurations. The detection of a framing error is not affected by this field. Transmitting break characters</p> <p>0 Break character is 10, 11, or 12 bits long. 1 Break character is 13 or 14 bits long.</p>
1 LBKDE	<p>LIN Break Detection Enable</p> <p>Enables the LIN Break detection feature. While LBKDE is set, S1[RDRF], S1[NF], S1[FE], and S1[PF] are prevented from setting. When LBKDE is set, see . Overrun operationLBKDE must be cleared when C7816[ISO7816E] is set.</p> <p>0 Break character detection is disabled. 1 Break character is detected at length of 11 bit times if C1[M] = 0 or 12 bits time if C1[M] = 1.</p>
0 RAF	<p>Receiver Active Flag</p> <p>RAF is set when the UART receiver detects a logic 0 during the RT1 time period of the start bit search. RAF is cleared when the receiver detects an idle character when C7816[ISO7816E] is cleared/disabled. When C7816[ISO7816E] is enabled, the RAF is cleared if the C7816[TTYE] = 0 expires or the C7816[TTYE] = 1 expires.</p> <p>NOTE: In case C7816[ISO7816E] is set and C7816[TTYE] = 0, it is possible to configure the guard time to 12. However, if a NACK is required to be transmitted, the data transfer actually takes 13 ETU with the 13th ETU slot being an inactive buffer. Therefore, in this situation, the RAF may deassert one ETU prior to actually being inactive.</p> <p>0 UART receiver idle/inactive waiting for a start bit. 1 UART receiver active, RxD input not idle.</p>

52.4.7 UART Control Register 3 (UARTx_C3)

Writing R8 does not have any effect. TXDIR and TXINV can be changed only between transmit and receive packets.

Address: Base address + 6h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	R8	T8	TXDIR	TXINV	ORIE	NEIE	FEIE	PEIE
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_C3 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 R8	Received Bit 8 R8 is the ninth data bit received when the UART is configured for 9-bit data format, that is, if C1[M] = 1 or C4[M10] = 1. The R8 value corresponds to the current data value in the UARTx_D register. To read the 9th bit, read the value of UARTx_C3[R8], then read the UARTx_D register.
6 T8	Transmit Bit 8 T8 is the ninth data bit transmitted when the UART is configured for 9-bit data format, that is, if C1[M] = 1 or C4[M10] = 1. NOTE: If the value of T8 is the same as in the previous transmission, T8 does not have to be rewritten. The same value is transmitted until T8 is rewritten. To correctly transmit the 9th bit, write UARTx_C3[T8] to the desired value, then write the UARTx_D register with the remaining data.
5 TXDIR	Transmitter Pin Data Direction in Single-Wire mode Determines whether the TXD pin is used as an input or output in the single-wire mode of operation. This field is relevant only to the single wire mode. When C7816[ISO7816E] is set/enabled and C7816[TTYTYPE] = 1, this field is automatically cleared after the requested block is transmitted. This condition is detected when TL7816[TLEN] = 0 and 4 additional characters are transmitted. Additionally, if C7816[ISO7816E] is set/enabled and C7816[TTYTYPE] = 0 and a NACK is being transmitted, the hardware automatically overrides this field as needed. In this situation, TXDIR does not reflect the temporary state associated with the NACK. 0 TXD pin is an input in single wire mode. 1 TXD pin is an output in single wire mode.
4 TXINV	Transmit Data Inversion. Setting this field reverses the polarity of the transmitted data output. In NRZ format, a one is represented by a mark and a zero is represented by a space for normal polarity, and the opposite for inverted polarity. In IrDA format, a zero is represented by short high pulse in the middle of a bit time remaining idle low for a one for normal polarity, and a zero is represented by short low pulse in the middle of a bit time remaining idle high for a one for inverted polarity. This field is automatically set when C7816[INIT] and C7816[ISO7816E] are enabled and an initial character is detected in T = 0 protocol mode. NOTE: Setting TXINV inverts all transmitted values, including idle, break, start, and stop bits. In loop mode, if TXINV is set, the receiver gets the transmit inversion bit when RXINV is disabled. When C7816[ISO7816E] is set/enabled then only the transmitted data bits and parity bit are inverted.

Table continues on the next page...

UARTx_C3 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Transmit data is not inverted. 1 Transmit data is inverted.
3 ORIE	Overrun Error Interrupt Enable Enables the overrun error flag, S1[OR], to generate interrupt requests. 0 OR interrupts are disabled. 1 OR interrupt requests are enabled.
2 NEIE	Noise Error Interrupt Enable Enables the noise flag, S1[NF], to generate interrupt requests. 0 NF interrupt requests are disabled. 1 NF interrupt requests are enabled.
1 FEIE	Framing Error Interrupt Enable Enables the framing error flag, S1[FE], to generate interrupt requests. 0 FE interrupt requests are disabled. 1 FE interrupt requests are enabled.
0 PEIE	Parity Error Interrupt Enable Enables the parity error flag, S1[PF], to generate interrupt requests. 0 PF interrupt requests are disabled. 1 PF interrupt requests are enabled.

52.4.8 UART Data Register (UARTx_D)

This register is actually two separate registers. Reads return the contents of the read-only receive data register and writes go to the write-only transmit data register.

NOTE

- In 8-bit or 9-bit data format, only UART data register (D) needs to be accessed to clear the S1[RDRF] bit (assuming receiver buffer level is less than RWFIFO[RXWATER]). The C3 register needs to be read, prior to the D register, only if the ninth bit of data needs to be captured. Similarly, the ED register needs to be read, prior to the D register, only if the additional flag data for the dataword needs to be captured.
- In the normal 8-bit mode (M bit cleared) if the parity is enabled, you get seven data bits and one parity bit. That one parity bit is loaded into the D register. So, for the data

bits, mask off the parity bit from the value you read out of this register.

- When transmitting in 9-bit data format and using 8-bit write instructions, write first to transmit bit 8 in UART control register 3 (C3[T8]), then D. A write to C3[T8] stores the data in a temporary register. If D register is written first, and then the new data on data bus is stored in D, the temporary value written by the last write to C3[T8] gets stored in the C3[T8] register.

Address: Base address + 7h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	RT							
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_D field descriptions

Field	Description
RT	Reads return the contents of the read-only receive data register and writes go to the write-only transmit data register.

52.4.9 UART Match Address Registers 1 (UARTx_MA1)

The MA1 and MA2 registers are compared to input data addresses when the most significant bit is set and the associated C4[MAEN] field is set. If a match occurs, the following data is transferred to the data register. If a match fails, the following data is discarded. These registers can be read and written at anytime.

Address: Base address + 8h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	MA							
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_MA1 field descriptions

Field	Description
MA	Match Address

52.4.10 UART Match Address Registers 2 (UARTx_MA2)

These registers can be read and written at anytime. The MA1 and MA2 registers are compared to input data addresses when the most significant bit is set and the associated C4[MAEN] field is set. If a match occurs, the following data is transferred to the data register. If a match fails, the following data is discarded.

Address: Base address + 9h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	MA							
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_MA2 field descriptions

Field	Description
MA	Match Address

52.4.11 UART Control Register 4 (UARTx_C4)

Address: Base address + Ah offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	MAEN1	MAEN2	M10	BRFA				
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_C4 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 MAEN1	<p>Match Address Mode Enable 1</p> <p>See Match address operation for more information.</p> <p>0 All data received is transferred to the data buffer if MAEN2 is cleared.</p> <p>1 All data received with the most significant bit cleared, is discarded. All data received with the most significant bit set, is compared with contents of MA1 register. If no match occurs, the data is discarded. If a match occurs, data is transferred to the data buffer. This field must be cleared when C7816[ISO7816E] is set/enabled.</p>
6 MAEN2	<p>Match Address Mode Enable 2</p> <p>See Match address operation for more information.</p> <p>0 All data received is transferred to the data buffer if MAEN1 is cleared.</p> <p>1 All data received with the most significant bit cleared, is discarded. All data received with the most significant bit set, is compared with contents of MA2 register. If no match occurs, the data is discarded. If a match occurs, data is transferred to the data buffer. This field must be cleared when C7816[ISO7816E] is set/enabled.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

UARTx_C4 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
5 M10	<p>10-bit Mode select</p> <p>Causes a tenth, non-memory mapped bit to be part of the serial transmission. This tenth bit is generated and interpreted as a parity bit. The M10 field does not affect the LIN send or detect break behavior. If M10 is set, then both C1[M] and C1[PE] must also be set. This field must be cleared when C7816[ISO7816E] is set/enabled.</p> <p>See Data format (non ISO-7816) for more information.</p> <p>0 The parity bit is the ninth bit in the serial transmission. 1 The parity bit is the tenth bit in the serial transmission.</p>
BRFA	<p>Baud Rate Fine Adjust</p> <p>This bit field is used to add more timing resolution to the average baud frequency, in increments of 1/32. See Baud rate generation for more information.</p>

52.4.12 UART Control Register 5 (UARTx_C5)

Address: Base address + Bh offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	TDMAS	0	RDMAS	0	LBKDDMAS		0	
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_C5 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 TDMAS	<p>Transmitter DMA Select</p> <p>Configures the transmit data register empty flag, S1[TDRE], to generate interrupt or DMA requests if C2[TIE] is set.</p> <p>NOTE:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If C2[TIE] is cleared, TDRE DMA and TDRE interrupt request signals are not asserted when the TDRE flag is set, regardless of the state of TDMAS. If C2[TIE] and TDMAS are both set, then C2[TCIE] must be cleared, and D must not be written unless a DMA request is being serviced. <p>0 If C2[TIE] is set and the S1[TDRE] flag is set, the TDRE interrupt request signal is asserted to request interrupt service. 1 If C2[TIE] is set and the S1[TDRE] flag is set, the TDRE DMA request signal is asserted to request a DMA transfer.</p>
6 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
5 RDMAS	<p>Receiver Full DMA Select</p> <p>Configures the receiver data register full flag, S1[RDRF], to generate interrupt or DMA requests if C2[RIE] is set.</p> <p>NOTE: If C2[RIE] is cleared, and S1[RDRF] is set, the RDRF DMA and RDRF interrupt request signals are not asserted, regardless of the state of RDMAS.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

UARTx_C5 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>0 If C2[RIE] and S1[RDRF] are set, the RDRF interrupt request signal is asserted to request an interrupt service.</p> <p>1 If C2[RIE] and S1[RDRF] are set, the RDRF DMA request signal is asserted to request a DMA transfer.</p>
4 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
3 LBKDDMAS	<p>LIN Break Detect DMA Select Bit</p> <p>Configures the LIN break detect flag, S2[LBKDIF], to generate interrupt or DMA requests if BDH[LBKDIE] is set.</p> <p>NOTE: If BDH[LBKDIE] is cleared, and S2[LBKDIF] is set, the LBKDIF DMA and LBKDIF interrupt signals are not asserted, regardless of the state of LBKDDMAS.</p> <p>0 If BDH[LBKDIE] and S2[LBKDIF] are set, the LBKDIF interrupt signal is asserted to request an interrupt service.</p> <p>1 If BDH[LBKDIE] and S2[LBKDIF] are set, the LBKDIF DMA request signal is asserted to request a DMA transfer.</p>
Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>

52.4.13 UART Extended Data Register (UARTx_ED)

This register contains additional information flags that are stored with a received dataword. This register may be read at any time but contains valid data only if there is a dataword in the receive FIFO.

NOTE

- The data contained in this register represents additional information regarding the conditions on which a dataword was received. The importance of this data varies with the application, and in some cases maybe completely optional. These fields automatically update to reflect the conditions of the next dataword whenever D is read.
- If S1[NF] and S1[PF] have not been set since the last time the receive buffer was empty, the NOISY and PARITYE fields will be zero.

Address: Base address + Ch offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	NOISY	PARITYE	0					
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_ED field descriptions

Field	Description
7 NOISY	The current received dataword contained in D and C3[R8] was received with noise. 0 The dataword was received without noise. 1 The data was received with noise.
6 PARITYE	The current received dataword contained in D and C3[R8] was received with a parity error. 0 The dataword was received without a parity error. 1 The dataword was received with a parity error.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

52.4.14 UART Modem Register (UARTx_MODEM)

The MODEM register controls options for setting the modem configuration.

NOTE

RXRTSE, TXRTSPOL, TXRTSE, and TXCTSE must all be cleared when C7816[ISO7816EN] is enabled. This will cause the RTS to deassert during ISO-7816 wait times. The ISO-7816 protocol does not use the RTS and CTS signals.

Address: Base address + Dh offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0				RXRTSE	TXRTSPOL	TXRTSE	TXCTSE
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_MODEM field descriptions

Field	Description
7–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3 RXRTSE	Receiver request-to-send enable Allows the RTS output to control the CTS input of the transmitting device to prevent receiver overrun. NOTE: Do not set both RXRTSE and TXRTSE. 0 The receiver has no effect on RTS. 1 RTS is deasserted if the number of characters in the receiver data register (FIFO) is equal to or greater than RWFIFO[RXWATER]. RTS is asserted when the number of characters in the receiver data register (FIFO) is less than RWFIFO[RXWATER]. See Hardware flow control
2 TXRTSPOL	Transmitter request-to-send polarity Controls the polarity of the transmitter RTS. TXRTSPOL does not affect the polarity of the receiver RTS. RTS will remain negated in the active low state unless TXRTSE is set.

Table continues on the next page...

UARTx_MODEM field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Transmitter RTS is active low. 1 Transmitter RTS is active high.
1 TXRTSE	Transmitter request-to-send enable Controls RTS before and after a transmission. 0 The transmitter has no effect on RTS. 1 When a character is placed into an empty transmitter data buffer , RTS asserts one bit time before the start bit is transmitted. RTS deasserts one bit time after all characters in the transmitter data buffer and shift register are completely sent, including the last stop bit. (FIFO) NOTE: Ensure that C2[TE] is asserted before assertion of this bit.
0 TXCTSE	Transmitter clear-to-send enable TXCTSE controls the operation of the transmitter. TXCTSE can be set independently from the state of TXRTSE and RXRTSE. 0 CTS has no effect on the transmitter. 1 Enables clear-to-send operation. The transmitter checks the state of CTS each time it is ready to send a character. If CTS is asserted, the character is sent. If CTS is deasserted, the signal TXD remains in the mark state and transmission is delayed until CTS is asserted. Changes in CTS as a character is being sent do not affect its transmission.

52.4.15 UART Infrared Register (UARTx_IR)

The IR register controls options for setting the infrared configuration.

Address: Base address + Eh offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read			0					
Write						IREN		TNP
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_IR field descriptions

Field	Description
7–3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 IREN	Infrared enable Enables/disables the infrared modulation/demodulation. 0 IR disabled. 1 IR enabled.
TNP	Transmitter narrow pulse Enables whether the UART transmits a 1/16, 3/16, 1/32, or 1/4 narrow pulse. 00 3/16.

Table continues on the next page...

UARTx_IR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
01	1/16.
10	1/32.
11	1/4.

52.4.16 UART FIFO Parameters (UARTx_PFIFO)

This register provides the ability for the programmer to turn on and off FIFO functionality. It also provides the size of the FIFO that has been implemented. This register may be read at any time. This register must be written only when C2[RE] and C2[TE] are cleared/not set and when the data buffer/FIFO is empty.

Address: Base address + 10h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	TXFE	TXFIFOSIZE			RXFE	RXFIFOSIZE		
Write								
Reset	0	*	*	*	0	*	*	*

* Notes:

- TXFIFOSIZE field: The reset value depends on whether the specific UART instance supports the FIFO and on the size of that FIFO. See the Chip Configuration details for more information on the FIFO size supported for each UART instance.
- RXFIFOSIZE field: The reset value depends on whether the specific UART instance supports the FIFO and on the size of that FIFO. See the Chip Configuration details for more information on the FIFO size supported for each UART instance.

UARTx_PFIFO field descriptions

Field	Description
7 TXFE	Transmit FIFO Enable When this field is set, the built in FIFO structure for the transmit buffer is enabled. The size of the FIFO structure is indicated by TXFIFOSIZE. If this field is not set, the transmit buffer operates as a FIFO of depth one dataword regardless of the value in TXFIFOSIZE. Both C2[TE] and C2[RE] must be cleared prior to changing this field. Additionally, TXFLUSH and RXFLUSH commands must be issued immediately after changing this field. 0 Transmit FIFO is not enabled. Buffer is depth 1. (Legacy support). 1 Transmit FIFO is enabled. Buffer is depth indicated by TXFIFOSIZE.
6–4 TXFIFOSIZE	Transmit FIFO. Buffer Depth The maximum number of transmit datawords that can be stored in the transmit buffer. This field is read only. 000 Transmit FIFO/Buffer depth = 1 dataword. 001 Transmit FIFO/Buffer depth = 4 datawords. 010 Transmit FIFO/Buffer depth = 8 datawords.

Table continues on the next page...

UARTx_PFIFO field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	011 Transmit FIFO/Buffer depth = 16 datawords. 100 Transmit FIFO/Buffer depth = 32 datawords. 101 Transmit FIFO/Buffer depth = 64 datawords. 110 Transmit FIFO/Buffer depth = 128 datawords. 111 Reserved.
3 RXFE	Receive FIFO Enable When this field is set, the built in FIFO structure for the receive buffer is enabled. The size of the FIFO structure is indicated by the RXFIFOSIZE field. If this field is not set, the receive buffer operates as a FIFO of depth one dataword regardless of the value in RXFIFOSIZE. Both C2[TE] and C2[RE] must be cleared prior to changing this field. Additionally, TXFLUSH and RXFLUSH commands must be issued immediately after changing this field. 0 Receive FIFO is not enabled. Buffer is depth 1. (Legacy support) 1 Receive FIFO is enabled. Buffer is depth indicted by RXFIFOSIZE.
RXFIFOSIZE	Receive FIFO. Buffer Depth The maximum number of receive datawords that can be stored in the receive buffer before an overrun occurs. This field is read only. 000 Receive FIFO/Buffer depth = 1 dataword. 001 Receive FIFO/Buffer depth = 4 datawords. 010 Receive FIFO/Buffer depth = 8 datawords. 011 Receive FIFO/Buffer depth = 16 datawords. 100 Receive FIFO/Buffer depth = 32 datawords. 101 Receive FIFO/Buffer depth = 64 datawords. 110 Receive FIFO/Buffer depth = 128 datawords. 111 Reserved.

52.4.17 UART FIFO Control Register (UARTx_CFIFO)

This register provides the ability to program various control fields for FIFO operation. This register may be read or written at any time. Note that writing to TXFLUSH and RXFLUSH may result in data loss and requires careful action to prevent unintended/unpredictable behavior. Therefore, it is recommended that TE and RE be cleared prior to flushing the corresponding FIFO.

Address: Base address + 11h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	0	0	0	0	RXOFE	TXOFE	RXUFE
Write	TXFLUSH	RXFLUSH						
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_CFIFO field descriptions

Field	Description
7 TXFLUSH	Transmit FIFO/Buffer Flush Writing to this field causes all data that is stored in the transmit FIFO/buffer to be flushed. This does not affect data that is in the transmit shift register. 0 No flush operation occurs. 1 All data in the transmit FIFO/Buffer is cleared out.
6 RXFLUSH	Receive FIFO/Buffer Flush Writing to this field causes all data that is stored in the receive FIFO/buffer to be flushed. This does not affect data that is in the receive shift register. 0 No flush operation occurs. 1 All data in the receive FIFO/buffer is cleared out.
5–3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 RXOFE	Receive FIFO Overflow Interrupt Enable When this field is set, the RXOF flag generates an interrupt to the host. 0 RXOF flag does not generate an interrupt to the host. 1 RXOF flag generates an interrupt to the host.
1 TXOFE	Transmit FIFO Overflow Interrupt Enable When this field is set, the TXOF flag generates an interrupt to the host. 0 TXOF flag does not generate an interrupt to the host. 1 TXOF flag generates an interrupt to the host.
0 RXUFE	Receive FIFO Underflow Interrupt Enable When this field is set, the RXUF flag generates an interrupt to the host. 0 RXUF flag does not generate an interrupt to the host. 1 RXUF flag generates an interrupt to the host.

52.4.18 UART FIFO Status Register (UARTx_SFIFO)

This register provides status information regarding the transmit and receiver buffers/FIFOs, including interrupt information. This register may be written to or read at any time.

Address: Base address + 12h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	TXEMPT	RXEMPT	0			RXOF	TXOF	RXUF
Write						w1c	w1c	w1c
Reset	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0

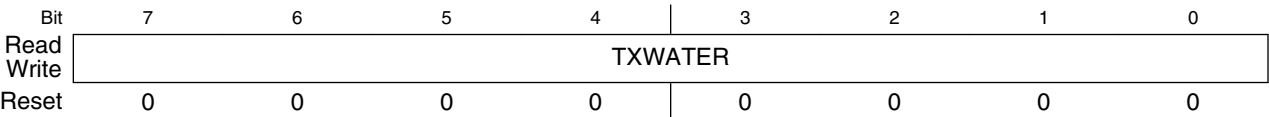
UARTx_SFIFO field descriptions

Field	Description
7 TXEMPT	<p>Transmit Buffer/FIFO Empty</p> <p>Asserts when there is no data in the Transmit FIFO/buffer. This field does not take into account data that is in the transmit shift register.</p> <p>0 Transmit buffer is not empty. 1 Transmit buffer is empty.</p>
6 RXEMPT	<p>Receive Buffer/FIFO Empty</p> <p>Asserts when there is no data in the receive FIFO/Buffer. This field does not take into account data that is in the receive shift register.</p> <p>0 Receive buffer is not empty. 1 Receive buffer is empty.</p>
5–3 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
2 RXOF	<p>Receiver Buffer Overflow Flag</p> <p>Indicates that more data has been written to the receive buffer than it can hold. This field will assert regardless of the value of CFIFO[RXOFE]. However, an interrupt will be issued to the host only if CFIFO[RXOFE] is set. This flag is cleared by writing a 1.</p> <p>0 No receive buffer overflow has occurred since the last time the flag was cleared. 1 At least one receive buffer overflow has occurred since the last time the flag was cleared.</p>
1 TXOF	<p>Transmitter Buffer Overflow Flag</p> <p>Indicates that more data has been written to the transmit buffer than it can hold. This field will assert regardless of the value of CFIFO[TXOFE]. However, an interrupt will be issued to the host only if CFIFO[TXOFE] is set. This flag is cleared by writing a 1.</p> <p>0 No transmit buffer overflow has occurred since the last time the flag was cleared. 1 At least one transmit buffer overflow has occurred since the last time the flag was cleared.</p>
0 RXUF	<p>Receiver Buffer Underflow Flag</p> <p>Indicates that more data has been read from the receive buffer than was present. This field will assert regardless of the value of CFIFO[RXUFE]. However, an interrupt will be issued to the host only if CFIFO[RXUFE] is set. This flag is cleared by writing a 1.</p> <p>0 No receive buffer underflow has occurred since the last time the flag was cleared. 1 At least one receive buffer underflow has occurred since the last time the flag was cleared.</p>

52.4.19 UART FIFO Transmit Watermark (UARTx_TWFIFO)

This register provides the ability to set a programmable threshold for notification of needing additional transmit data. This register may be read at any time but must be written only when C2[TE] is not set. Changing the value of the watermark will not clear the S1[TDRE] flag.

Address: Base address + 13h offset



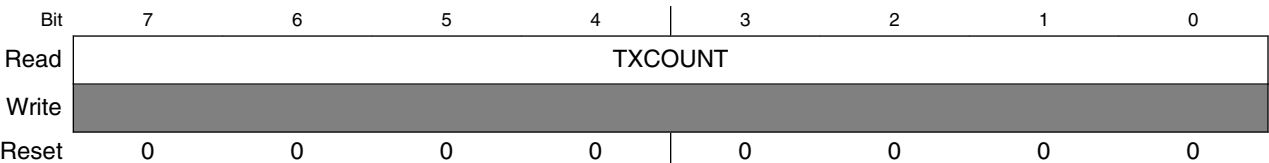
UARTx_TWFIFO field descriptions

Field	Description
TXWATER	<p>Transmit Watermark</p> <p>When the number of datawords in the transmit FIFO/buffer is equal to or less than the value in this register field, an interrupt via S1[TDRE] or a DMA request via C5[TDMA5] is generated as determined by C5[TDMA5] and C2[TIE]. For proper operation, the value in TXWATER must be set to be less than the size of the transmit buffer/FIFO size as indicated by PFIFO[TXFIFOSIZE] and PFIFO[TXFE].</p>

52.4.20 UART FIFO Transmit Count (UARTx_TCFIFO)

This is a read only register that indicates how many datawords are currently in the transmit buffer/FIFO. It may be read at any time.

Address: Base address + 14h offset



UARTx_TCFIFO field descriptions

Field	Description
TXCOUNT	<p>Transmit Counter</p> <p>The value in this register indicates the number of datawords that are in the transmit FIFO/buffer. If a dataword is being transmitted, that is, in the transmit shift register, it is not included in the count. This value may be used in conjunction with PFIFO[TXFIFOSIZE] to calculate how much room is left in the transmit FIFO/buffer.</p>

52.4.21 UART FIFO Receive Watermark (UARTx_RWFIFO)

This register provides the ability to set a programmable threshold for notification of the need to remove data from the receiver FIFO/buffer. This register may be read at any time but must be written only when C2[RE] is not asserted. Changing the value in this register will not clear S1[RDRF].

Address: Base address + 15h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	RXWATER							
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

UARTx_RWFIFO field descriptions

Field	Description
RXWATER	<p>Receive Watermark</p> <p>When the number of datawords in the receive FIFO/buffer is equal to or greater than the value in this register field, an interrupt via S1[RDRF] or a DMA request via C5[RDMA5] is generated as determined by C5[RDMA5] and C2[RIF]. For proper operation, the value in RXWATER must be set to be less than the receive FIFO/buffer size as indicated by PFIFO[RXFIFOSIZE] and PFIFO[RXFE] and must be greater than 0.</p>

52.4.22 UART FIFO Receive Count (UARTx_RCFIFO)

This is a read only register that indicates how many datawords are currently in the receive FIFO/buffer. It may be read at any time.

Address: Base address + 16h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	RXCOUNT							
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_RCFIFO field descriptions

Field	Description
RXCOUNT	<p>Receive Counter</p> <p>The value in this register indicates the number of datawords that are in the receive FIFO/buffer. If a dataword is being received, that is, in the receive shift register, it is not included in the count. This value may be used in conjunction with PFIFO[RXFIFOSIZE] to calculate how much room is left in the receive FIFO/buffer.</p>

52.4.23 UART 7816 Control Register (UARTx_C7816)

The C7816 register is the primary control register for ISO-7816 specific functionality. This register is specific to 7816 functionality and the values in this register have no effect on UART operation and should be ignored if ISO_7816E is not set/enabled. This register may be read at any time but values must be changed only when ISO_7816E is not set.

Address: Base address + 18h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0			ONACK	ANACK	INIT	TTYTYPE	ISO_7816E
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_C7816 field descriptions

Field	Description
7–5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
4 ONACK	Generate NACK on Overflow When this field is set, the receiver automatically generates a NACK response if a receive buffer overrun occurs, as indicated by S1[OR]. In many systems, this results in the transmitter resending the packet that overflowed until the retransmit threshold for that transmitter is reached. A NACK is generated only if TTYPE=0. This field operates independently of ANACK. See . Overrun NACK considerations 0 The received data does not generate a NACK when the receipt of the data results in an overflow event. 1 If the receiver buffer overflows, a NACK is automatically sent on a received character.
3 ANACK	Generate NACK on Error When this field is set, the receiver automatically generates a NACK response if a parity error occurs or if INIT is set and an invalid initial character is detected. A NACK is generated only if TTYPE = 0. If ANACK is set, the UART attempts to retransmit the data indefinitely. To stop retransmission attempts, clear C2[TE] or ISO_7816E and do not set until S1[TC] sets C2[TE] again. 0 No NACK is automatically generated. 1 A NACK is automatically generated if a parity error is detected or if an invalid initial character is detected.
2 INIT	Detect Initial Character When this field is set, all received characters are searched for a valid initial character. If an invalid initial character is identified, and ANACK is set, a NACK is sent. All received data is discarded and error flags blocked (S1[NF], S1[OR], S1[FE], S1[PF], IS7816[WT], IS7816[CWT], IS7816[BWT], IS7816[ADT], IS7816[GTV]) until a valid initial character is detected. Upon detecting a valid initial character, the configuration values S2[MSBF], C3[TXINV], and S2[RXINV] are automatically updated to reflect the initial character that was received. The actual INIT data value is not stored in the receive buffer. Additionally, upon detection of a valid initial character, IS7816[INITD] is set and an interrupt issued as programmed by IE7816[INITDE]. When a valid initial character is detected, INIT is automatically cleared. This Initial Character Detect feature is supported only in T = 0 protocol mode. 0 Normal operating mode. Receiver does not seek to identify initial character. 1 Receiver searches for initial character.

Table continues on the next page...

UARTx_C7816 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
1 TTYE	Transfer Type Indicates the transfer protocol being used. See ISO-7816 / smartcard support for more details. 0 T = 0 per the ISO-7816 specification. 1 T = 1 per the ISO-7816 specification.
0 ISO_7816E	ISO-7816 Functionality Enabled Indicates that the UART is operating according to the ISO-7816 protocol. NOTE: This field must be modified only when no transmit or receive is occurring. If this field is changed during a data transfer, the data being transmitted or received may be transferred incorrectly. 0 ISO-7816 functionality is turned off/not enabled. 1 ISO-7816 functionality is turned on/enabled.

52.4.24 UART 7816 Interrupt Enable Register (UARTx_IE7816)

The IE7816 register controls which flags result in an interrupt being issued. This register is specific to 7816 functionality, the corresponding flags that drive the interrupts are not asserted when 7816E is not set/enabled. However, these flags may remain set if they are asserted while 7816E was set and not subsequently cleared. This register may be read or written to at any time.

Address: Base address + 19h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	WTE	CWTE	BWTE	INITDE	ADTE	GTVE	TXTE	RXTE
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_IE7816 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 WTE	Wait Timer Interrupt Enable 0 The assertion of IS7816[WT] does not result in the generation of an interrupt. 1 The assertion of IS7816[WT] results in the generation of an interrupt.
6 CWTE	Character Wait Timer Interrupt Enable 0 The assertion of IS7816[CWT] does not result in the generation of an interrupt. 1 The assertion of IS7816[CWT] results in the generation of an interrupt.
5 BWTE	Block Wait Timer Interrupt Enable 0 The assertion of IS7816[BWT] does not result in the generation of an interrupt. 1 The assertion of IS7816[BWT] results in the generation of an interrupt.

Table continues on the next page...

UARTx_IE7816 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
4 INITDE	Initial Character Detected Interrupt Enable 0 The assertion of IS7816[INITD] does not result in the generation of an interrupt. 1 The assertion of IS7816[INITD] results in the generation of an interrupt.
3 ADTE	ATR Duration Timer Interrupt Enable 0 The assertion of IS7816[ADT] does not result in the generation of an interrupt. 1 The assertion of IS7816[ADT] results in the generation of an interrupt.
2 GTVE	Guard Timer Violated Interrupt Enable 0 The assertion of IS7816[GTV] does not result in the generation of an interrupt. 1 The assertion of IS7816[GTV] results in the generation of an interrupt.
1 TXTE	Transmit Threshold Exceeded Interrupt Enable 0 The assertion of IS7816[TXT] does not result in the generation of an interrupt. 1 The assertion of IS7816[TXT] results in the generation of an interrupt.
0 RXTE	Receive Threshold Exceeded Interrupt Enable 0 The assertion of IS7816[RXT] does not result in the generation of an interrupt. 1 The assertion of IS7816[RXT] results in the generation of an interrupt.

52.4.25 UART 7816 Interrupt Status Register (UARTx_IS7816)

The IS7816 register provides a mechanism to read and clear the interrupt flags. All flags/ interrupts are cleared by writing a 1 to the field location. Writing a 0 has no effect. All bits are "sticky", meaning they indicate that only the flag condition that occurred since the last time the bit was cleared, not that the condition currently exists. The status flags are set regardless of whether the corresponding field in the IE7816 is set or cleared. The IE7816 controls only if an interrupt is issued to the host processor. This register is specific to 7816 functionality and the values in this register have no affect on UART operation and should be ignored if 7816E is not set/enabled. This register may be read or written at anytime.

Address: Base address + 1Ah offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	WT	CWT	BWT	INITD	ADT	GTV	TXT	RXT
Write	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_IS7816 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 WT	Wait Timer Interrupt

Table continues on the next page...

UARTx_IS7816 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>Indicates that the wait time, the time between the leading edge of a character being transmitted and the leading edge of the next response character, has exceeded the programmed value. This flag asserts only when C7816[TTYPE] = 0. This interrupt is cleared by writing 1.</p> <p>0 Wait time (WT) has not been violated. 1 Wait time (WT) has been violated.</p>
6 CWT	<p>Character Wait Timer Interrupt</p> <p>Indicates that the character wait time, the time between the leading edges of two consecutive characters in a block, has exceeded the programmed value. This flag asserts only when C7816[TTYPE] = 1. This interrupt is cleared by writing 1.</p> <p>0 Character wait time (CWT) has not been violated. 1 Character wait time (CWT) has been violated.</p>
5 BWT	<p>Block Wait Timer Interrupt</p> <p>Indicates that the block wait time, the time between the leading edge of first received character of a block and the leading edge of the last character the previously transmitted block, has exceeded the programmed value. This flag asserts only when C7816[TTYPE] = 1. This interrupt is cleared by writing 1.</p> <p>0 Block wait time (BWT) has not been violated. 1 Block wait time (BWT) has been violated.</p>
4 INITD	<p>Initial Character Detected Interrupt</p> <p>Indicates that a valid initial character is received. This interrupt is cleared by writing 1.</p> <p>0 A valid initial character has not been received. 1 A valid initial character has been received.</p>
3 ADT	<p>ATR Duration Time Interrupt</p> <p>Indicates that the ATR duration time, the time between the leading edge of the TS character being received and the leading edge of the next response character, has exceeded the programmed value. This flag asserts only when C7816[TTYPE] = 0. This interrupt is cleared by writing 1.</p> <p>0 ATR Duration time (ADT) has not been violated. 1 ATR Duration time (ADT) has been violated.</p>
2 GTV	<p>Guard Timer Violated Interrupt</p> <p>Indicates that one or more of the character guard time, block guard time, or guard time are violated. This interrupt is cleared by writing 1.</p> <p>0 A guard time (GT, CGT, or BGT) has not been violated. 1 A guard time (GT, CGT, or BGT) has been violated.</p>
1 TXT	<p>Transmit Threshold Exceeded Interrupt</p> <p>Indicates that the transmit NACK threshold has been exceeded as indicated by ET7816[TXTHRESHOLD]. Regardless of whether this flag is set, the UART continues to retransmit indefinitely. This flag asserts only when C7816[TTYPE] = 0. If 7816E is cleared/disabled, ANACK is cleared/disabled, C2[TE] is cleared/disabled, C7816[TTYPE] = 1, or packet is transferred without receiving a NACK, the internal NACK detection counter is cleared and the count restarts from zero on the next received NACK. This interrupt is cleared by writing 1.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

UARTx_IS7816 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>0 The number of retries and corresponding NACKS does not exceed the value in ET7816[TXTHRESHOLD].</p> <p>1 The number of retries and corresponding NACKS exceeds the value in ET7816[TXTHRESHOLD].</p>
0 RXT	<p>Receive Threshold Exceeded Interrupt</p> <p>Indicates that there are more than ET7816[RXTHRESHOLD] consecutive NACKS generated in response to parity errors on received data. This flag requires ANACK to be set. Additionally, this flag asserts only when C7816[TTYPE] = 0. Clearing this field also resets the counter keeping track of consecutive NACKS. The UART will continue to attempt to receive data regardless of whether this flag is set. If 7816E is cleared/disabled, RE is cleared/disabled, C7816[TTYPE] = 1, or packet is received without needing to issue a NACK, the internal NACK detection counter is cleared and the count restarts from zero on the next transmitted NACK. This interrupt is cleared by writing 1.</p> <p>0 The number of consecutive NACKS generated as a result of parity errors and buffer overruns is less than or equal to the value in ET7816[RXTHRESHOLD].</p> <p>1 The number of consecutive NACKS generated as a result of parity errors and buffer overruns is greater than the value in ET7816[RXTHRESHOLD].</p>

52.4.26 UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register (UARTx_WP7816)

The WP7816 register contains the WTX variable used in the generation of the block wait timer. This register may be read at any time. This register must be written to only when C7816[ISO_7816E] is not set.

Address: Base address + 1Bh offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	WTX							
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_WP7816 field descriptions

Field	Description
WTX	<p>Wait Time Multiplier (C7816[TTYPE] = 1)</p> <p>Used to calculate the value used for the BWT counter. It represents a value between 0 and 255. This value is used only when C7816[TTYPE] = 1. See Wait time and guard time parameters.</p>

52.4.27 UART 7816 Wait N Register (UARTx_WN7816)

The WN7816 register contains a parameter that is used in the calculation of the guard time counter. This register may be read at any time. This register must be written to only when C7816[ISO_7816E] is not set.

Address: Base address + 1Ch offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	GTN							
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_WN7816 field descriptions

Field	Description
GTN	Guard Band N Defines a parameter used in the calculation of GT, CGT, and BGT counters. The value represents an integer number between 0 and 255. See Wait time and guard time parameters .

52.4.28 UART 7816 Wait FD Register (UARTx_WF7816)

The WF7816 contains parameters that are used in the generation of various counters including GT, CGT, BGT, WT, and BWT. This register may be read at any time. This register must be written to only when C7816[ISO_7816E] is not set.

Address: Base address + 1Dh offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	GTFD							
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

UARTx_WF7816 field descriptions

Field	Description
GTFD	FD Multiplier Used as another multiplier in the calculation of BWT. This value represents a number between 1 and 255. The value of 0 is invalid. This value is not used in baud rate generation. See Wait time and guard time parameters and Baud rate generation .

52.4.29 UART 7816 Error Threshold Register (UARTx_ET7816)

The ET7816 register contains fields that determine the number of NACKs that must be received or transmitted before the host processor is notified. This register may be read at anytime. This register must be written to only when C7816[ISO_7816E] is not set.

Address: Base address + 1Eh offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	TXTHRESHOLD				RXTHRESHOLD			
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_ET7816 field descriptions

Field	Description
7–4 TXTHRESHOLD	<p>Transmit NACK Threshold</p> <p>The value written to this field indicates the maximum number of failed attempts (NACKs) a transmitted character can have before the host processor is notified. This field is meaningful only when C7816[TTYPE] = 0 and C7816[ANACK] = 1. The value read from this field represents the number of consecutive NACKs that have been received since the last successful transmission. This counter saturates at 4'hF and does not wrap around. Regardless of how many NACKs that are received, the UART continues to retransmit indefinitely. This flag only asserts when C7816[TTYPE] = 0. For additional information see the IS7816[TXT] field description.</p> <p>0 TXT asserts on the first NACK that is received. 1 TXT asserts on the second NACK that is received.</p>
RXTHRESHOLD	<p>Receive NACK Threshold</p> <p>The value written to this field indicates the maximum number of consecutive NACKs generated as a result of a parity error or receiver buffer overruns before the host processor is notified. After the counter exceeds that value in the field, the IS7816[RXT] is asserted. This field is meaningful only when C7816[TTYPE] = 0. The value read from this field represents the number of consecutive NACKs that have been transmitted since the last successful reception. This counter saturates at 4'hF and does not wrap around. Regardless of the number of NACKs sent, the UART continues to receive valid packets indefinitely. For additional information, see IS7816[RXT] field description.</p>

52.4.30 UART 7816 Transmit Length Register (UARTx_TL7816)

The TL7816 register is used to indicate the number of characters contained in the block being transmitted. This register is used only when C7816[TTYPE] = 1. This register may be read at anytime. This register must be written only when C2[TE] is not enabled.

Address: Base address + 1Fh offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	TLEN							
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_TL7816 field descriptions

Field	Description
TLEN	<p>Transmit Length</p> <p>This value plus four indicates the number of characters contained in the block being transmitted. This register is automatically decremented by 1 for each character in the information field portion of the block. Additionally, this register is automatically decremented by 1 for the first character of a CRC in the epilogue field. Therefore, this register must be programmed with the number of bytes in the data packet if an LRC is being transmitted, and the number of bytes + 1 if a CRC is being transmitted. This register is not decremented for characters that are assumed to be part of the Prologue field, that is, the first three characters transmitted in a block, or the LRC or last CRC character in the Epilogue field, that is, the last character transmitted. This field must be programed or adjusted only when C2[TE] is cleared.</p>

52.4.31 UART 7816 ATR Duration Timer Register A (UARTx_AP7816A_T0)

The AP7816A_T0 register contains variables used in the generation of the ATR Duration Timer. This register may be read at any time. This register must be written to only when C7816[ISO_7816E] is not set, except when writing 0 to clear the ADT Counter.

NOTE

The ADT Counter starts counting on detection of the complete TS Character. It must be noted that by this time, exactly 10 ETUs have elapsed since the start bit of the TS character. The user must take this into account while programming this register.

Address: Base address + 3Ah offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	ADTI_H							
Write	ADTI_H							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_AP7816A_T0 field descriptions

Field	Description
ADTI_H	<p>ATR Duration Time Integer High (C7816[TTYPE] = 0)</p> <p>Used to calculate the value used for the ADT Counter. This register field provides the most significant byte of the 16 bit ATR Duration Time Integer field ADTI formed by {AP7816A_T0[ADTI_H], AP7816B_T0[ADTI_L]}. Programming a value of ADTI = 0 disables the ADT counter. This value is used only when C7816[TTYPE] = 0. See ATR Duration Time Counter.</p>

52.4.32 UART 7816 ATR Duration Timer Register B (UARTx_AP7816B_T0)

The AP7816B_T0 register contains variables used in the generation of the ATR Duration Timer. This register may be read at any time. This register must be written to only when C7816[ISO_7816E] is not set, except when writing 0 to clear the ADT Counter.

NOTE

The ADT Counter starts counting on detection of the complete TS Character. It must be noted that by this time, exactly 10 ETUs have elapsed since the start bit of the TS character. The user must take this into account while programming this register.

Address: Base address + 3Bh offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	ADTI_L							
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_AP7816B_T0 field descriptions

Field	Description
ADTI_L	<p>ATR Duration Time Integer Low (C7816[TTYTYPE] = 0)</p> <p>Used to calculate the value used for the ADT counter. This register field provides the least significant byte of the 16 bit ATR Duration Time Integer field ADTI formed by {AP7816A_T0[ADTI_H], AP7816B_T0[ADTI_L]}. Programming a value of ADTI = 0 disables the ADT counter. This value is used only when C7816[TTYTYPE] = 0. See ATR Duration Time Counter.</p>

52.4.33 UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register A (UARTx_WP7816A_T0)

The WP7816A_T0 register contains constants used in the generation of various wait time counters. To save register space, this register is used differently when C7816[TTYTYPE] = 0 and C7816[TTYTYPE] = 1. This register may be read at any time. This register must be written to only when C7816[ISO_7816E] is not set.

Address: Base address + 3Ch offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	WI_H							
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_WP7816A_T0 field descriptions

Field	Description
WI_H	Wait Time Integer High (C7816[TTYPE] = 0) Used to calculate the value used for the WT counter. This register field provides the most significant byte of the 16 bit Wait Time Integer field WI formed by {WP7816A_T0[WI_H], WP7816B_T0[WI_L]}. The value of WI = 0 is invalid and must not be programmed. This value is used only when C7816[TTYPE] = 0. See Wait time and guard time parameters .

52.4.34 UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register A (UARTx_WP7816A_T1)

The WP7816A_T1 register contains constants used in the generation of various wait time counters. To save register space, this register is used differently when C7816[TTYPE] = 0 and C7816[TTYPE] = 1. This register may be read at any time. This register must be written to only when C7816[ISO_7816E] is not set.

Address: Base address + 3Ch offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read								
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_WP7816A_T1 field descriptions

Field	Description
BWI_H	Block Wait Time Integer High (C7816[TTYPE] = 1) Used to calculate the value used for the BWT counter. This register field provides the most significant byte of the 16 bit Block Wait Time Integer field BWI formed by {WP7816A_T1[BWI_H], WP7816B_T1[BWI_L]}. The value of BWI = 0 is invalid and should not be programmed. This value is used only when C7816[TTYPE] = 1. See Wait time and guard time parameters .

52.4.35 UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register B (UARTx_WP7816B_T0)

The WP7816B_T0 register contains constants used in the generation of various wait time counters. To save register space, this register is used differently when C7816[TTYPE] = 0 and C7816[TTYPE] = 1. This register may be read at any time. This register must be written to only when C7816[ISO_7816E] is not set.

Address: Base address + 3Dh offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read								
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0

UARTx_WP7816B_T0 field descriptions

Field	Description
WI_L	Wait Time Integer Low (C7816[TTYTYPE] = 0) Used to calculate the value used for the WT counter. This register field provides the least significant byte of the 16 bit Wait Time Integer field WI formed by {WP7816A_T0[WI_H], WP7816B_T0[WI_L]}. The value of WI = 0 is invalid and must not be programmed. This value is used only when C7816[TTYTYPE] = 0. See Wait time and guard time parameters .

52.4.36 UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register B (UARTx_WP7816B_T1)

The WP7816B_T1 register contains constants used in the generation of various wait time counters. To save register space, this register is used differently when C7816[TTYTYPE] = 0 and C7816[TTYTYPE] = 1. This register may be read at any time. This register must be written to only when C7816[ISO_7816E] is not set.

Address: Base address + 3Dh offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	BWI_L							
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0

UARTx_WP7816B_T1 field descriptions

Field	Description
BWI_L	Block Wait Time Integer Low (C7816[TTYTYPE] = 1) Used to calculate the value used for the BWT counter. This register field provides the least significant byte of the 16 bit Block Wait Time Integer field BWI formed by {WP7816A_T1[BWI_H], WP7816B_T1[BWI_L]}. The value of BWI = 0 is invalid and should not be programmed. This value is used only when C7816[TTYTYPE] = 1. See Wait time and guard time parameters .

52.4.37 UART 7816 Wait and Guard Parameter Register (UARTx_WGP7816_T1)

The WGP7816_T1 register contains constants used in the generation of various wait and guard timer counters. This register may be read at any time. This register must be written to only when C7816[ISO_7816E] is not set.

Address: Base address + 3Eh offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	CWI1				BGI			
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0

UARTx_WGP7816_T1 field descriptions

Field	Description
7–4 CWI1	Character Wait Time Integer 1 (C7816[TTYPE] = 1) Used to calculate the value used for the CWT counter. It represents a value between 0 and 15. This value is used only when C7816[TTYPE] = 1. See Wait time and guard time parameters .
BGI	Block Guard Time Integer (C7816[TTYPE] = 1) Used to calculate the value used for the BGT counter. It represent a value between 0 and 15. This value is used only when C7816[TTYPE] = 1. See Wait time and guard time parameters .

52.4.38 UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register C (UARTx_WP7816C_T1)

The WP7816C_T1 register contains constants used in the generation of various wait timer counters. This register may be read at any time. This register must be written to only when C7816[ISO_7816E] is not set.

Address: Base address + 3Fh offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0				CWI2			
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1

UARTx_WP7816C_T1 field descriptions

Field	Description
7–5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CWI2	Character Wait Time Integer 2 (C7816[TTYPE] = 1) Used to calculate the value used for the CWT counter. It represents a value between 0 and 31. This value is used only when C7816[TTYPE] = 1. See Wait time and guard time parameters .

52.5 Functional description

This section provides a complete functional description of the UART block.

The UART allows full duplex, asynchronous, NRZ serial communication between the CPU and remote devices, including other CPUs. The UART transmitter and receiver operate independently, although they use the same baud rate generator. The CPU monitors the status of the UART, writes the data to be transmitted, and processes received data.

52.5.1 Transmitter

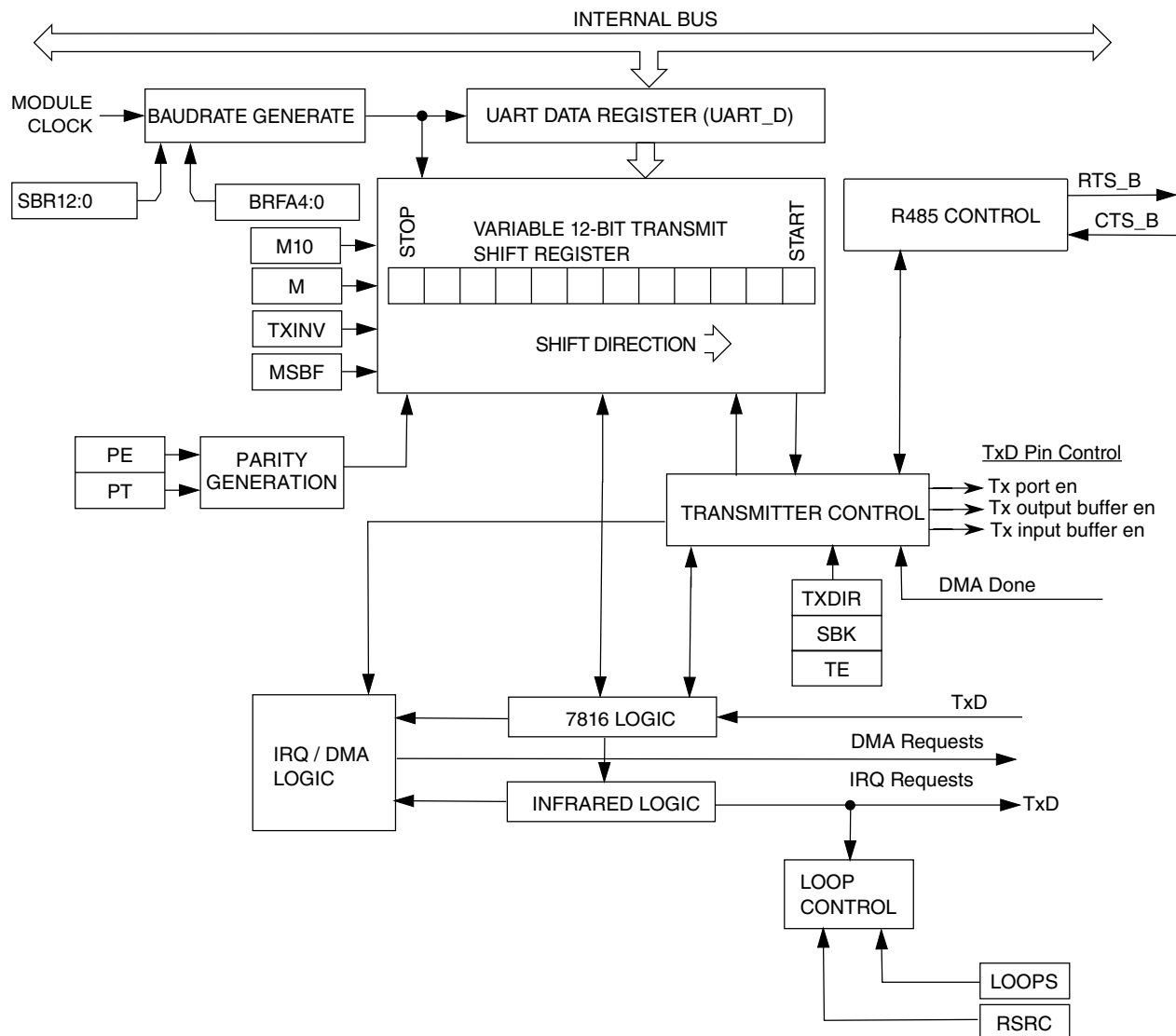


Figure 52-1. Transmitter Block Diagram

52.5.1.1 Transmitter character length

The UART transmitter can accommodate either 8, 9, or 10-bit data characters. The state of the C1[M] and C1[PE] bits and the C4[M10] bit determine the length of data characters. When transmitting 9-bit data, bit C3[T8] is the ninth bit (bit 8).

52.5.1.2 Transmission bit order

When S2[MSBF] is set, the UART automatically transmits the MSB of the data word as the first bit after the start bit. Similarly, the LSB of the data word is transmitted immediately preceding the parity bit, or the stop bit if parity is not enabled. All necessary bit ordering is handled automatically by the module. Therefore, the format of the data written to D for transmission is completely independent of the S2[MSBF] setting.

52.5.1.3 Character transmission

To transmit data, the MCU writes the data bits to the UART transmit buffer using UART data registers C3[T8] and D. Data in the transmit buffer is then transferred to the transmitter shift register as needed. The transmit shift register then shifts a frame out through the transmit data output signal after it has prefaced it with any required start and stop bits. The UART data registers, C3[T8] and D, provide access to the transmit buffer structure.

The UART also sets a flag, the transmit data register empty flag S1[TDRE], and generates an interrupt or DMA request (C5[TDMAS]) whenever the number of datawords in the transmit buffer is equal to or less than the value indicated by TWFIPO[TXWATER]. The transmit driver routine may respond to this flag by writing additional datawords to the transmit buffer using C3[T8]/D as space permits.

See [Application information](#) for specific programing sequences.

Setting C2[TE] automatically loads the transmit shift register with the following preamble:

Table 52-3. Transmit preamble length

BDH[SBNS]	C1[M]	C4[M10]	C1[PE]	Bits transmitted
0	0	—	—	10
1	0	—	—	11
0	1	0	—	11
1	1	0	—	12
0	1	1	1	12
1	1	1	1	13

After the preamble shifts out, control logic transfers the data from the D register into the transmit shift register. The transmitter automatically transmits the correct start bit and stop bit before and after the dataword. The number of stop bits transmitted after the dataword can be programmed using BDH[SBNS] field.

When C7816[ISO_7816E] = 1, setting C2[TE] does not result in a preamble being generated. The transmitter starts transmitting as soon as the corresponding guard time expires. When C7816[TTYTYPE] = 0, the value in GT is used. When C7816[TTYTYPE] = 1, the value in BGT is used, because C2[TE] will remain asserted until the end of the block transfer. C2[TE] is automatically cleared when C7816[TTYTYPE] = 1 and the block being transmitted has completed. When C7816[TTYTYPE] = 0, the transmitter listens for a NACK indication. If no NACK is received, it is assumed that the character was correctly received. If a NACK is received, the transmitter resends the data, assuming that the number of retries for that character, that is, the number of NACKs received, is less than or equal to the value in ET7816[TXTHRESHOLD].

Hardware supports odd or even parity. When parity is enabled, the bit immediately preceding the stop bit is the parity bit.

When the transmit shift register is not transmitting a frame, the transmit data output signal goes to the idle condition, logic 1. If at any time software clears C2[TE], the transmitter enable signal goes low and the transmit signal goes idle.

If the software clears C2[TE] while a transmission is in progress, the character in the transmit shift register continues to shift out, provided S1[TC] was cleared during the data write sequence. To clear S1[TC], the S1 register must be read followed by a write to D register.

If S1[TC] is cleared during character transmission and C2[TE] is cleared, the transmission enable signal is deasserted at the completion of the current frame. Following this, the transmit data out signal enters the idle state even if there is data pending in the UART transmit data buffer. To ensure that all the data written in the FIFO is transmitted on the link before clearing C2[TE], wait for S1[TC] to set. Alternatively, the same can be achieved by setting TWFIPO[TXWATER] to 0x0 and waiting for S1[TDRE] to set.

52.5.1.4 Transmitting break characters

Setting C2[SBK] loads the transmit shift register with a break character. A break character contains all logic 0s and has no start, stop, or parity bit. Break character length depends on C1[M], C1[PE], S2[BRK13], BDH[SBNS] and C4[M10]. See the following table.

Table 52-4. Transmit break character length

S2[BRK13]	BDH[SBNS]	C1[M]	C4[M10]	C1[PE]	Bits transmitted
0	0	0	—	—	10
0	1	0	—	—	11
0	0	1	0	—	11

Table continues on the next page...

Table 52-4. Transmit break character length (continued)

S2[BRK13]	BDH[SBNS]	C1[M]	C4[M10]	C1[PE]	Bits transmitted
0	1	1	0	—	12
0	0	1	1	1	12
0	1	1	1	1	13
1	0	0	—	—	13
1	0	1	—	—	14
1	1	0	—	—	15
1	1	1	—	—	16

As long as C2[SBK] is set, the transmitter logic continuously loads break characters into the transmit shift register. After the software clears C2[SBK], the shift register finishes transmitting the last break character and then transmits at least one logic 1. The automatic logic 1 at the end of a break character guarantees the recognition of the start bit of the next character. Break bits are not supported when C7816[ISO_7816E] is set/enabled.

NOTE

When queuing a break character, it will be transmitted following the completion of the data value currently being shifted out from the shift register. This means that, if data is queued in the data buffer to be transmitted, the break character preempts that queued data. The queued data is then transmitted after the break character is complete.

52.5.1.5 Idle characters

An idle character contains all logic 1s and has no start, stop, or parity bit. Idle character length depends on C1[M], C1[PE], BDH[SBNS] and C4[M10]. The preamble is a synchronizing idle character that begins the first transmission initiated after setting C2[TE]. When C7816[ISO_7816E] is set/enabled, idle characters are not sent or detected. When data is not being transmitted, the data I/O line is in an inactive state.

If C2[TE] is cleared during a transmission, the transmit data output signal becomes idle after completion of the transmission in progress. Clearing and then setting C2[TE] during a transmission queues an idle character to be sent after the dataword currently being transmitted.

Note

When queuing an idle character, the idle character will be transmitted following the completion of the data value currently being shifted out from the shift register. This means that if data

is queued in the data buffer to be transmitted, the idle character preempts that queued data. The queued data is then transmitted after the idle character is complete.

If C2[TE] is cleared and the transmission is completed, the UART is not the master of the TXD pin.

52.5.1.6 Hardware flow control

The transmitter supports hardware flow control by gating the transmission with the value of CTS. If the clear-to-send operation is enabled, the character is transmitted when CTS is asserted. If CTS is deasserted in the middle of a transmission with characters remaining in the receiver data buffer, the character in the shift register is sent and TXD remains in the mark state until CTS is reasserted.

If the clear-to-send operation is disabled, the transmitter ignores the state of CTS. Also, if the transmitter is forced to send a continuous low condition because it is sending a break character, the transmitter ignores the state of CTS regardless of whether the clear-to-send operation is enabled.

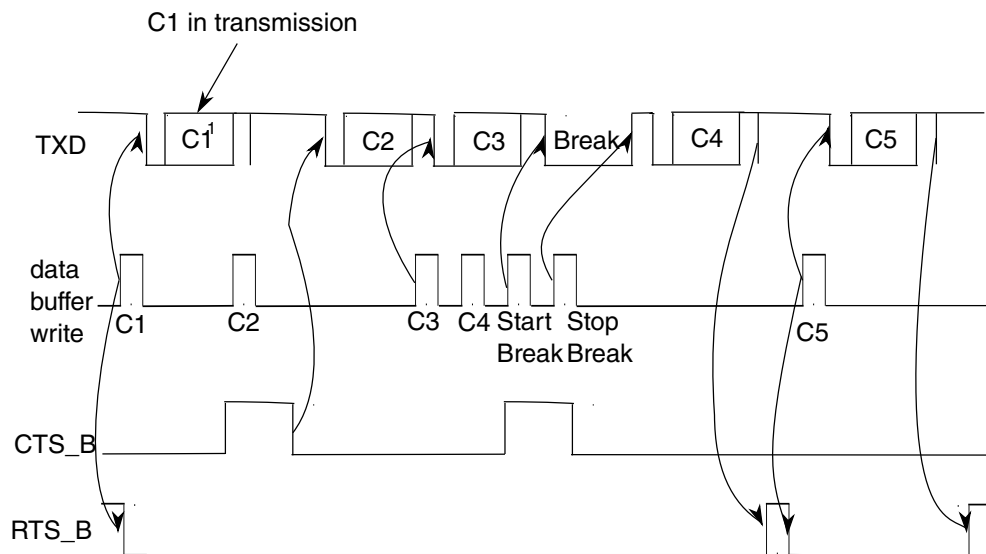
The transmitter's CTS signal can also be enabled even if the same UART receiver's RTS signal is disabled.

52.5.1.7 Transceiver driver enable

The transmitter can use RTS as an enable signal for the driver of an external transceiver. See [Transceiver driver enable using RTS](#) for details. If the request-to-send operation is enabled, when a character is placed into an empty transmitter data buffer, RTS asserts one bit time before the start bit is transmitted. RTS remains asserted for the whole time that the transmitter data buffer has any characters. RTS deasserts one bit time after all characters in the transmitter data buffer and shift register are completely sent, including the last stop bit. Transmitting a break character also asserts RTS, with the same assertion and deassertion timing as having a character in the transmitter data buffer.

The transmitter's RTS signal asserts only when the transmitter is enabled. However, the transmitter's RTS signal is unaffected by its CTS signal. RTS will remain asserted until the transfer is completed, even if the transmitter is disabled mid-way through a data transfer.

The following figure shows the functional timing information for the transmitter. Along with the actual character itself, TXD shows the start bit. The stop bit is also indicated, with a dashed line if necessary.



1. Cn = transmit characters

Figure 52-2. Transmitter RTS and CTS timing diagram

52.5.2 Receiver

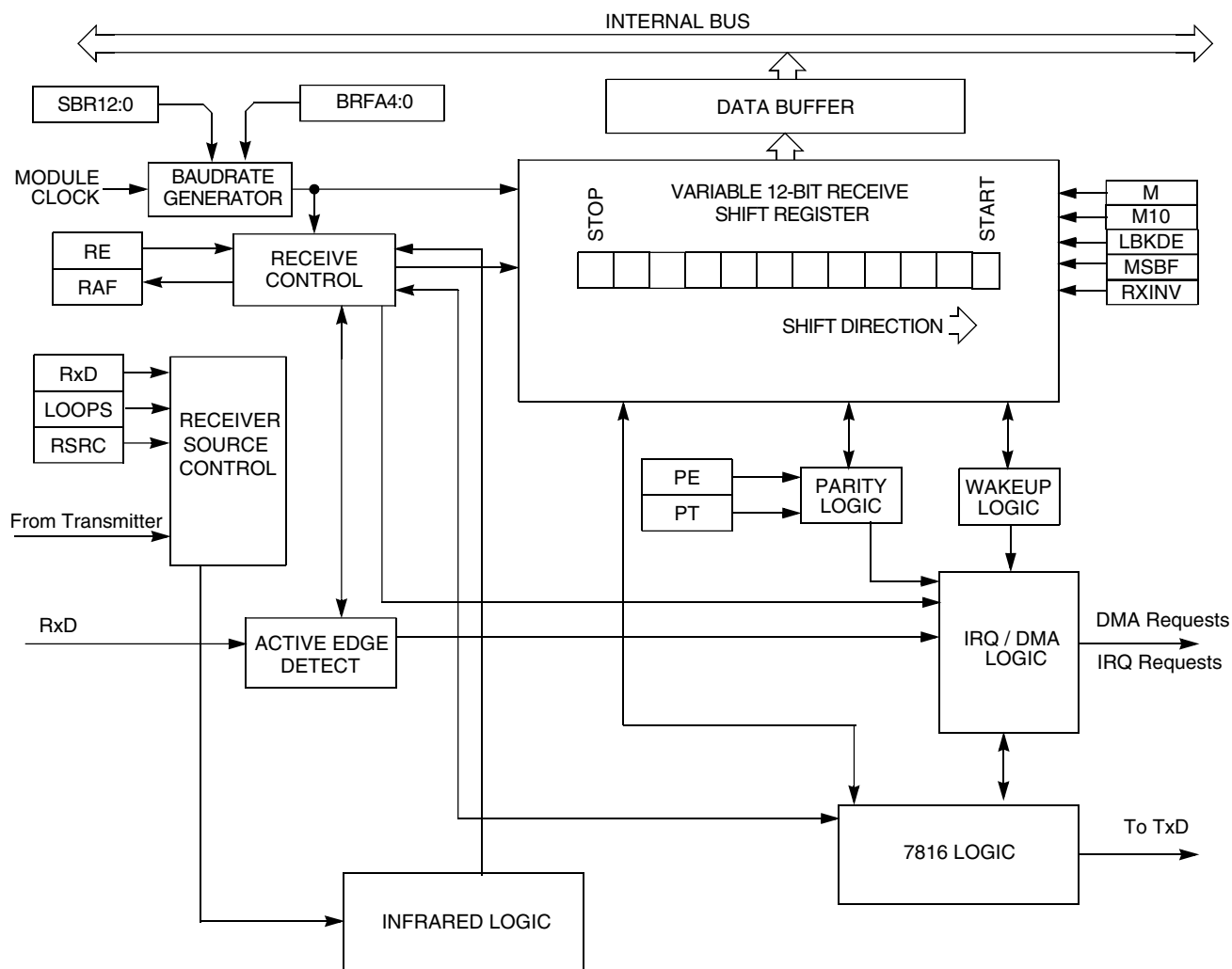


Figure 52-3. UART receiver block diagram

52.5.2.1 Receiver character length

The UART receiver can accommodate 8-, 9-, or 10-bit data characters. The states of C1[M], C1[PE], BDH[SBNS] and C4[M10] determine the length of data characters. When receiving 9 or 10-bit data, C3[R8] is the ninth bit (bit 8).

52.5.2.2 Receiver bit ordering

When S2[MSBF] is set, the receiver operates such that the first bit received after the start bit is the MSB of the dataword. Similarly, the bit received immediately preceding the parity bit, or the stop bit if parity is not enabled, is treated as the LSB for the dataword. All necessary bit ordering is handled automatically by the module. Therefore, the format of the data read from receive data buffer is completely independent of S2[MSBF].

52.5.2.3 Character reception

During UART reception, the receive shift register shifts a frame in from the unsynchronized receiver input signal. After a complete frame shifts into the receive shift register, the data portion of the frame transfers to the UART receive buffer. Additionally, the noise and parity error flags that are calculated during the receive process are also captured in the UART receive buffer. The receive data buffer is accessible via the D and C3[T8] registers. Additional received information flags regarding the receive dataword can be read in ED register. S1[RDRF] is set if the number of resulting datawords in the receive buffer is equal to or greater than the number indicated by RWFIFO[RXWATER]. If the C2[RIE] is also set, RDRF generates an RDRF interrupt request. Alternatively, by programming C5[RDMAS], a DMA request can be generated.

When C7816[ISO_7816E] is set/enabled and C7816[TTYPE] = 0, character reception operates slightly differently. Upon receipt of the parity bit, the validity of the parity bit is checked. If C7816[ANACK] is set and the parity check fails, or if INIT and the received character is not a valid initial character, then a NACK is sent by the receiver. If the number of consecutive receive errors exceeds the threshold set by ET7816[RXTHRESHOLD], then IS7816[RXT] is set and an interrupt generated if IE7816[RXTE] is set. If an error is detected due to parity or an invalid initial character, the data is not transferred from the receive shift register to the receive buffer. Instead, the data is overwritten by the next incoming data.

When the C7816[ISO_7816E] is set/enabled, C7816[ONACK] is set/enabled, and the received character results in the receive buffer overflowing, a NACK is issued by the receiver. Additionally, S1[OR] is set and an interrupt is issued if required, and the data in the shift register is discarded.

52.5.2.4 Data sampling

The receiver samples the unsynchronized receiver input signal at the RT clock rate. The RT clock is an internal signal with a frequency 16 times the baud rate. To adjust for baud rate mismatch, the RT clock (see the following figure) is re-synchronized:

- After every start bit.
- After the receiver detects a data bit change from logic 1 to logic 0 (after the majority of data bit samples at RT8, RT9, and RT10 returns a valid logic 1 and the majority of the next RT8, RT9, and RT10 samples returns a valid logic 0).

To locate the start bit, data recovery logic does an asynchronous search for a logic 0 preceded by three logic 1s. When the falling edge of a possible start bit occurs, the RT clock begins to count to 16.

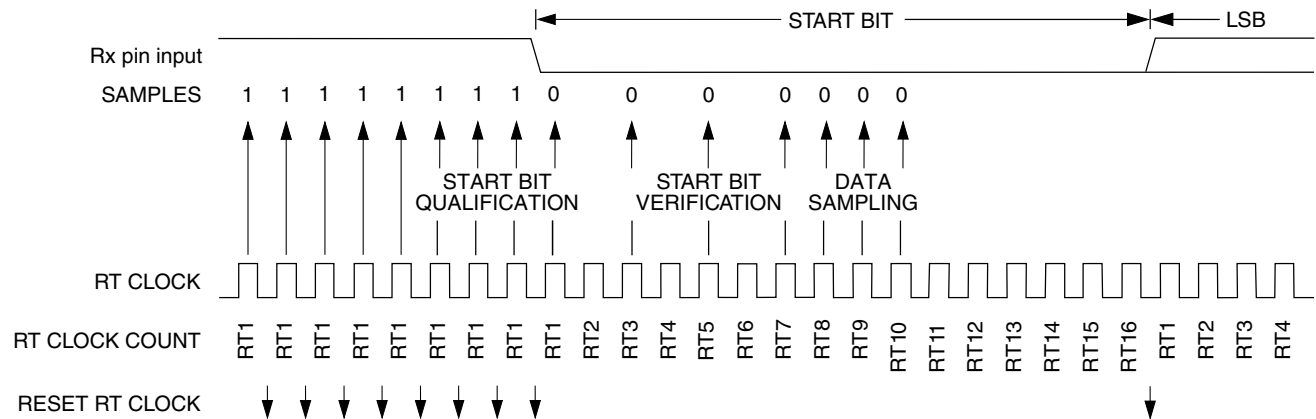


Figure 52-4. Receiver data sampling

To verify the start bit and to detect noise, data recovery logic takes samples at RT3, RT5, and RT7 when C7816[ISO_7816E] is cleared/disabled and RT8, RT9 and RT10 when C7816[ISO_7816E] is set/enabled. The following table summarizes the results of the start bit verification samples.

Table 52-5. Start bit verification

RT3, RT5, and RT7 samples RT8, RT9, RT10 samples when 7816E	Start bit verification	Noise flag
000	Yes	0
001	Yes	1
010	Yes	1
011	No	0
100	Yes	1
101	No	0
110	No	0
111	No	0

If start bit verification is not successful, the RT clock is reset and a new search for a start bit begins.

To determine the value of a data bit and to detect noise, recovery logic takes samples at RT8, RT9, and RT10. The following table summarizes the results of the data bit samples.

Table 52-6. Data bit recovery

RT8, RT9, and RT10 samples	Data bit determination	Noise flag
000	0	0
001	0	1
010	0	1
011	1	1
100	0	1
101	1	1
110	1	1
111	1	0

Note

The RT8, RT9, and RT10 samples do not affect start bit verification. If any or all of the RT8, RT9, and RT10 start bit samples are logic 1s following a successful start bit verification, the noise flag (S1[NF]) is set and the receiver assumes that the bit is a start bit (logic 0). With the exception of when C7816[ISO_7816E] is set/enabled, where the values of RT8, RT9 and RT10 exclusively determine if a start bit exists.

To verify a stop bit and to detect noise, recovery logic takes samples at RT8, RT9, and RT10. The following table summarizes the results of the stop bit samples. In the event that C7816[ISO_7816E] is set/enabled and C7816[TTYPE] = 0, verification of a stop bit does not take place. Rather, starting with RT8 the receiver transmits a NACK as programmed until time RT9 of the following time period. Framing Error detection is not supported when C7816[ISO_7816E] is set/enabled.

Table 52-7. Stop bit recovery

RT8, RT9, and RT10 samples	Framing error flag	Noise flag
000	1	0
001	1	1
010	1	1
011	0	1
100	1	1
101	0	1
110	0	1
111	0	0

functional description

In the following figure, the verification samples RT3 and RT5 determine that the first low detected was noise and not the beginning of a start bit. In this example $C7816[ISO_7816E] = 0$. The RT clock is reset and the start bit search begins again. The noise flag is not set because the noise occurred before the start bit was found.

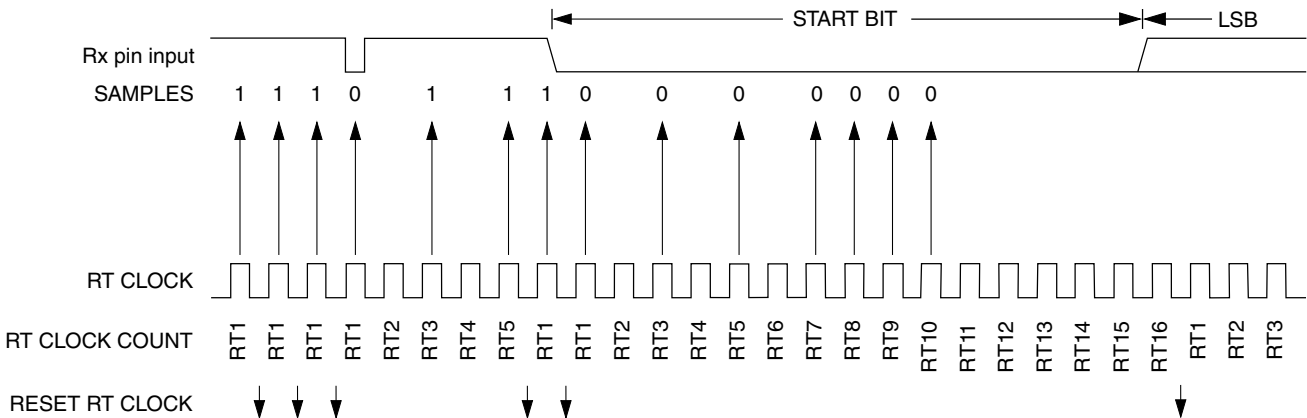


Figure 52-5. Start bit search example 1 ($C7816[ISO_7816E] = 0$)

In the following figure, verification sample at RT3 is high. In this example $C7816[ISO_7816E] = 0$. The RT3 sample sets the noise flag. Although the perceived bit time is misaligned, the data samples RT8, RT9, and RT10 are within the bit time and data recovery is successful.

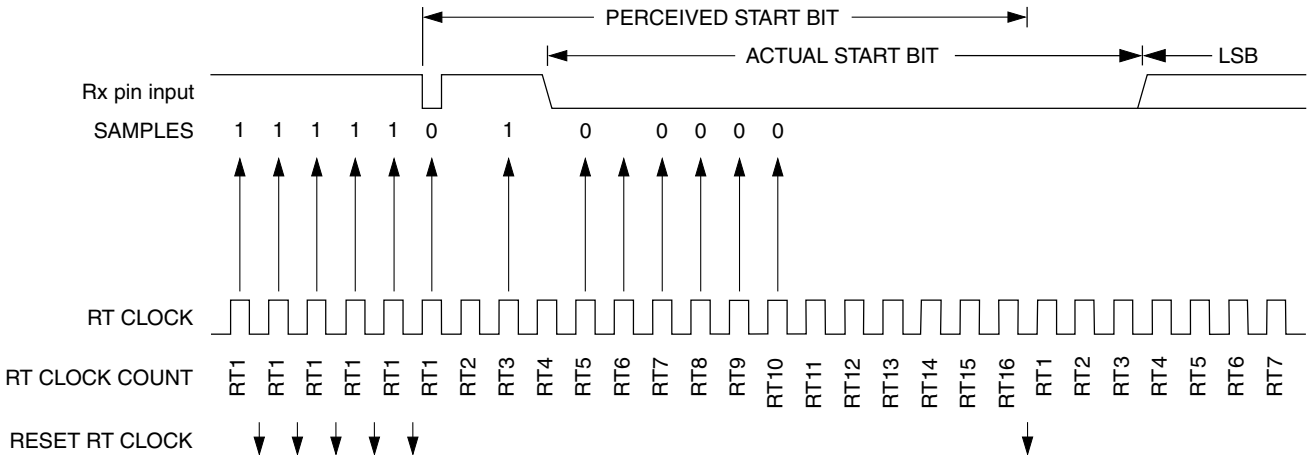


Figure 52-6. Start bit search example 2 ($C7816[ISO_7816E] = 0$)

In the following figure, a large burst of noise is perceived as the beginning of a start bit, although the test sample at RT5 is high. In this example $C7816[ISO_7816E] = 0$. The RT5 sample sets the noise flag. Although this is a worst-case misalignment of perceived bit time, the data samples RT8, RT9, and RT10 are within the bit time and data recovery is successful.

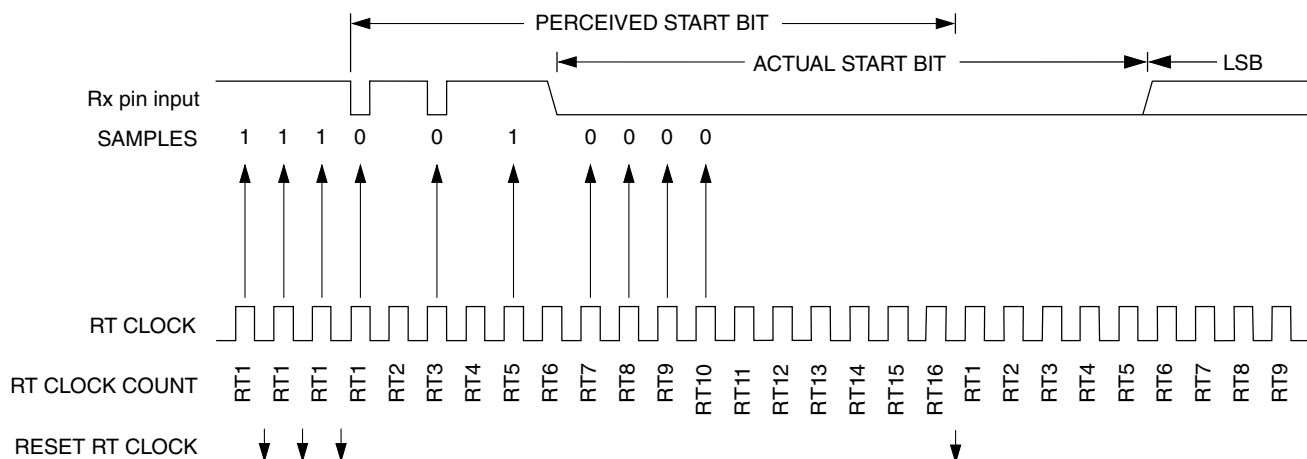


Figure 52-7. Start bit search example 3 (C7816[ISO_7816E] = 0)

The following figure shows the effect of noise early in the start bit time. In this example C7816[ISO_7816E] = 0. Although this noise does not affect proper synchronization with the start bit time, it does set the noise flag.

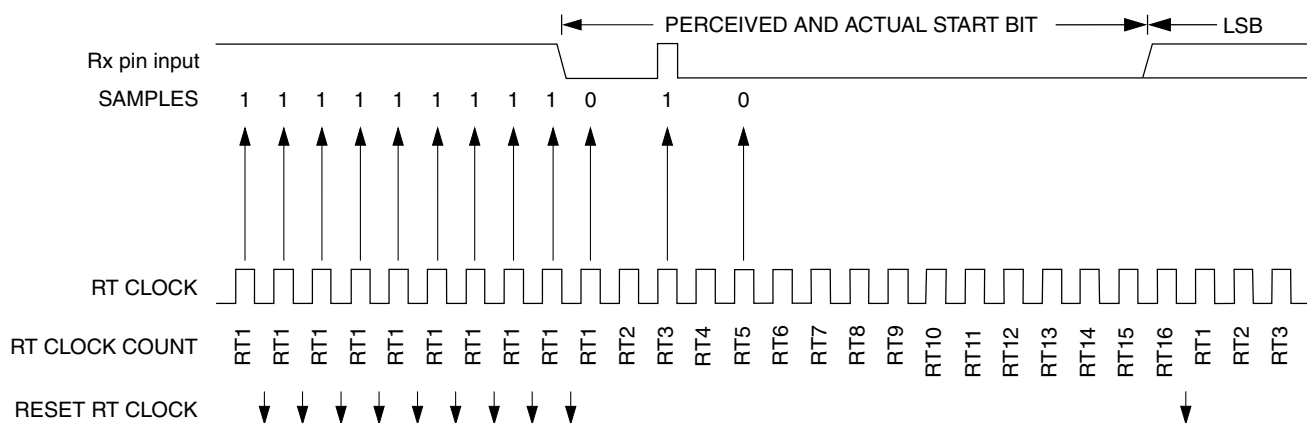


Figure 52-8. Start bit search example 4 (C7816[ISO_7816E] = 0)

The following figure shows a burst of noise near the beginning of the start bit that resets the RT clock. In this example C7816[ISO_7816E] = 0. The sample after the reset is low but is not preceded by three high samples that would qualify as a falling edge. Depending on the timing of the start bit search and on the data, the frame may be missed entirely or it may set the framing error flag.

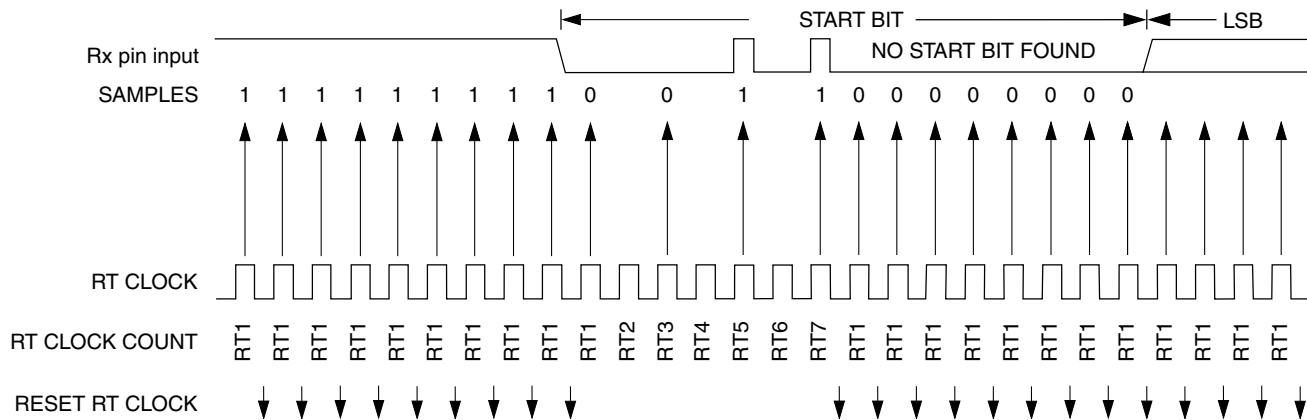


Figure 52-9. Start bit search example 5 (C7816[ISO_7816E] = 0)

In the following figure, a noise burst makes the majority of data samples RT8, RT9, and RT10 high. In this example C7816[ISO_7816E] = 0. This sets the noise flag but does not reset the RT clock. In start bits only, the RT8, RT9, and RT10 data samples are ignored. In this example, if C7816[ISO_7816E] = 1 then a start bit would not have been detected at all since at least two of the three samples (RT8, RT9, RT10) were high.

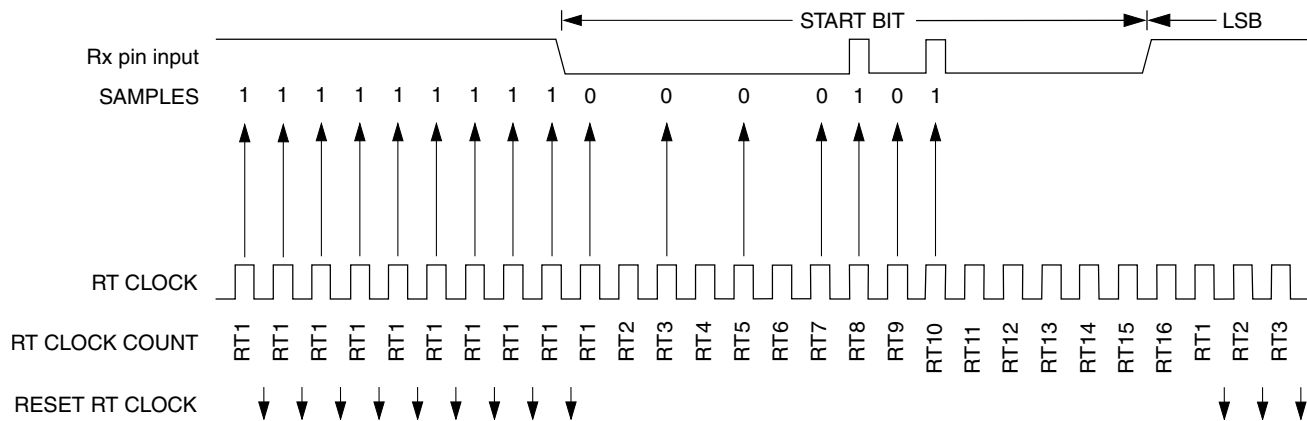


Figure 52-10. Start bit search example 6

52.5.2.5 Framing errors

If the data recovery logic does not detect a logic 1 where the stop bit should be in an incoming frame, it sets the framing error flag, S1[FE], if S2[LBKDE] is disabled. When S2[LBKDE] is disabled, a break character also sets the S1[FE] because a break character has no stop bit. S1[FE] is set at the same time that received data is placed in the receive data buffer. Framing errors are not supported when C7816[ISO7816E] is set/enabled. However, if S1[FE] is set, data will not be received when C7816[ISO7816E] is set.

52.5.2.6 Receiving break characters

The UART recognizes a break character when a start bit is followed by eight, nine, or ten logic 0 data bits and a logic 0 where the stop bit should be. Receiving a break character has these effects on UART registers:

- Sets the framing error flag, S1[FE].
- Writes an all 0 dataword to the data buffer, which may cause S1[RDRF] to set, depending on the watermark and number of values in the data buffer.
- May set the overrun flag, S1[OR], noise flag, S1[NF], parity error flag, S1[PE], or the receiver active flag, S2[RAF].

The detection threshold for a break character can be adjusted when using an internal oscillator in a LIN system by setting S2[LBKDE]. The UART break character detection threshold depends on C1[M], C1[PE], S2[LBKDE] and C4[M10]. See the following table.

Table 52-8. Receive break character detection threshold

LBKDE	SBNS	M	M10	PE	Threshold (bits)
0	0	0	—	—	10
0	1	0	—	—	11
0	0	1	0	—	11
0	1	1	0	—	12
0	0	1	1	1	12
0	1	1	1	1	13
1	—	0	—	—	11
1	—	1	—	—	12

While S2[LBKDE] is set, it will have these effects on the UART registers:

- Prevents S1[RDRF], S1[FE], S1[NF], and S1[PF] from being set. However, if they are already set, they will remain set.
- Sets the LIN break detect interrupt flag, S2[LBKDIF], if a LIN break character is received.

Break characters are not detected or supported when C7816[ISO_7816E] is set/enabled.

52.5.2.7 Hardware flow control

To support hardware flow control, the receiver can be programmed to automatically deassert and assert RTS.

- RTS remains asserted until the transfer is complete, even if the transmitter is disabled midway through a data transfer. See [Transceiver driver enable using RTS](#) for more details.
- If the receiver request-to-send functionality is enabled, the receiver automatically deasserts RTS if the number of characters in the receiver data register is equal to or greater than receiver data buffer's watermark, RWFIFO[RXWATER].
- The receiver asserts RTS when the number of characters in the receiver data register is less than the watermark. It is not affected if RDRF is asserted.
- Even if RTS is deasserted, the receiver continues to receive characters until the receiver data buffer is full or is overrun.
- If the receiver request-to-send functionality is disabled, the receiver RTS remains deasserted.

The following figure shows receiver hardware flow control functional timing. Along with the actual character itself, RXD shows the start bit. The stop bit can also indicated, with a dashed line, if necessary. The watermark is set to 2.

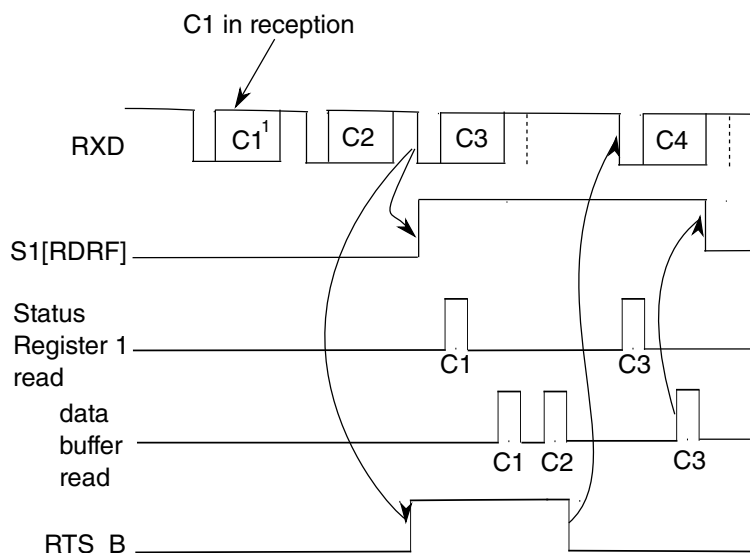


Figure 52-11. Receiver hardware flow control timing diagram

52.5.2.8 Infrared decoder

The infrared decoder converts the received character from the IrDA format to the NRZ format used by the receiver. It also has a 16-RT clock counter that filters noise and indicates when a 1 is received.

52.5.2.8.1 Start bit detection

When S2[RXINV] is cleared, the first rising edge of the received character corresponds to the start bit. The infrared decoder resets its counter. At this time, the receiver also begins its start bit detection process. After the start bit is detected, the receiver synchronizes its bit times to this start bit time. For the rest of the character reception, the infrared decoder's counter and the receiver's bit time counter count independently from each other.

52.5.2.8.2 Noise filtering

Any further rising edges detected during the first half of the infrared decoder counter are ignored by the decoder. Any pulses less than one RT clocks can be undetected by it regardless of whether it is seen in the first or second half of the count.

52.5.2.8.3 Low-bit detection

During the second half of the decoder count, a rising edge is decoded as a 0, which is sent to the receiver. The decoder counter is also reset.

52.5.2.8.4 High-bit detection

At 16-RT clocks after the previous rising edge, if a rising edge is not seen, then the decoder sends a 1 to the receiver.

If the next bit is a 0, which arrives late, then a low-bit is detected according to [Low-bit detection](#). The value sent to the receiver is changed from 1 to a 0. Then, if a noise pulse occurs outside the receiver's bit time sampling period, then the delay of a 0 is not recorded as noise.

52.5.2.9 Baud rate tolerance

A transmitting device may be operating at a baud rate below or above the receiver baud rate. Accumulated bit time misalignment can cause one of the three stop bit data samples (RT8, RT9, and RT10) to fall outside the actual stop bit. A noise error will occur if the

RT8, RT9, and RT10 samples are not all the same logical values. A framing error will occur if the receiver clock is misaligned in such a way that the majority of the RT8, RT9, and RT10 stop bit samples are a logic 0.

As the receiver samples an incoming frame, it resynchronizes the RT clock on any valid falling edge within the frame. Resynchronization within frames corrects a misalignment between transmitter bit times and receiver bit times.

52.5.2.9.1 Slow data tolerance

The following figure shows how much a slow received frame can be misaligned without causing a noise error or a framing error. The slow stop bit begins at RT8 instead of RT1 but arrives in time for the stop bit data samples at RT8, RT9, and RT10.

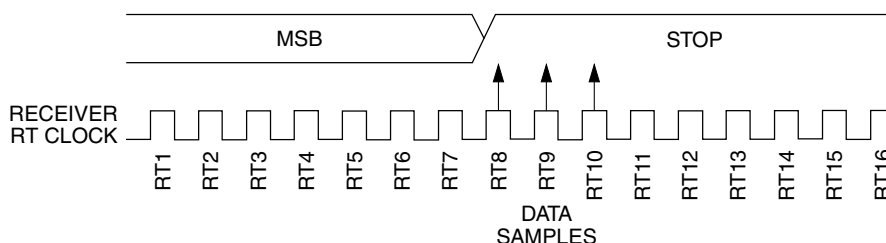


Figure 52-12. Slow data

For an 8-bit data character, data sampling of the stop bit takes the receiver 154 RT cycles (9 bit times \times 16 RT cycles + 10 RT cycles).

With the misaligned character shown in the [Figure 52-12](#), the receiver counts 154 RT cycles at the point when the count of the transmitting device is 147 RT cycles (9 bit times \times 16 RT cycles + 3 RT cycles).

The maximum percent difference between the receiver count and the transmitter count of a slow 8-bit data character with no errors is:

$$((154 - 147) \div 154) \times 100 = 4.54\%$$

For a 9-bit data character, data sampling of the stop bit takes the receiver 170 RT cycles (10 bit times \times 16 RT cycles + 10 RT cycles).

With the misaligned character shown in the [Figure 52-12](#), the receiver counts 170 RT cycles at the point when the count of the transmitting device is 163 RT cycles (10 bit times \times 16 RT cycles + 3 RT cycles).

The maximum percent difference between the receiver count and the transmitter count of a slow 9-bit character with no errors is:

$$((170 - 163) \div 170) \times 100 = 4.12\%$$

52.5.2.9.2 Fast data tolerance

The following figure shows how much a fast received frame can be misaligned. The fast stop bit ends at RT10 instead of RT16 but is still sampled at RT8, RT9, and RT10.

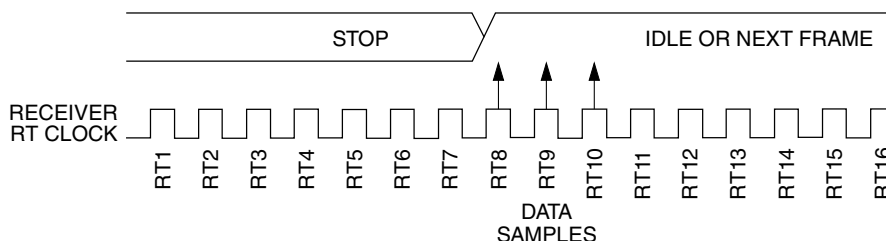


Figure 52-13. Fast data

For an 8-bit data character, data sampling of the stop bit takes the receiver 154 RT cycles (9 bit times \times 16 RT cycles + 10 RT cycles).

With the misaligned character shown in the [Figure 52-13](#), the receiver counts 154 RT cycles at the point when the count of the transmitting device is 160 RT cycles (10 bit times \times 16 RT cycles).

The maximum percent difference between the receiver count and the transmitter count of a fast 8-bit character with no errors is:

$$((154 - 160) \div 154) \times 100 = 3.90\%$$

For a 9-bit data character, data sampling of the stop bit takes the receiver 170 RT cycles (10 bit times \times 16 RT cycles + 10 RT cycles).

With the misaligned character shown in the [Figure 52-13](#), the receiver counts 170 RT cycles at the point when the count of the transmitting device is 176 RT cycles (11 bit times \times 16 RT cycles).

The maximum percent difference between the receiver count and the transmitter count of a fast 9-bit character with no errors is:

$$((170 - 176) \div 170) \times 100 = 3.53\%$$

52.5.2.10 Receiver wakeup

C1[WAKE] determines how the UART is brought out of the standby state to process an incoming message. C1[WAKE] enables either idle line wakeup or address mark wakeup.

Receiver wakeup is not supported when C7816[ISO_7816E] is set/enabled because multi-receiver systems are not allowed.

52.5.2.10.1 Idle input line wakeup (C1[WAKE] = 0)

In this wakeup method, an idle condition on the unsynchronized receiver input signal clears C2[RWU] and wakes the UART. The initial frame or frames of every message contain addressing information. All receivers evaluate the addressing information, and receivers for which the message is addressed process the frames that follow. Any receiver for which a message is not addressed can set its C2[RWU] and return to the standby state. C2[RWU] remains set and the receiver remains in standby until another idle character appears on the unsynchronized receiver input signal.

Idle line wakeup requires that messages be separated by at least one idle character and that no message contains idle characters.

When C2[RWU] is 1 and S2[RWUID] is 0, the idle character that wakes the receiver does not set S1[IDLE] or the receive data register full flag, S1[RDRF]. The receiver wakes and waits for the first data character of the next message which is stored in the receive data buffer. When S2[RWUID] and C2[RWU] are set and C1[WAKE] is cleared, any idle condition sets S1[IDLE] and generates an interrupt if enabled.

Idle input line wakeup is not supported when C7816[ISO_7816E] is set/enabled.

52.5.2.10.2 Address mark wakeup (C1[WAKE] = 1)

In this wakeup method, a logic 1 in the bit position immediately preceding the stop bit of a frame clears C2[RWU] and wakes the UART. A logic 1 in the bit position immediately preceding the stop bit marks a frame as an address frame that contains addressing information. All receivers evaluate the addressing information, and the receivers for which the message is addressed process the frames that follow. Any receiver for which a message is not addressed can set its C2[RWU] and return to the standby state. C2[RWU] remains set and the receiver remains in standby until another address frame appears on the unsynchronized receiver input signal.

A logic 1 in the bit position immediately preceding the stop bit clears the receiver's C2[RWU] after the stop bit is received and places the received data into the receiver data buffer. Note that if Match Address operation is enabled i.e. C4[MAEN1] or C4[MAEN2] is set, then received frame is transferred to receive buffer only if the comparison matches.

Address mark wakeup allows messages to contain idle characters but requires that the bit position immediately preceding the stop bit be reserved for use in address frames.

If module is in standby mode and nothing triggers to wake the UART, no error flag is set even if an invalid error condition is detected on the receiving data line.

Address mark wakeup is not supported when C7816[ISO_7816E] is set/enabled.

52.5.2.10.3 Match address operation

Match address operation is enabled when C4[MAEN1] or C4[MAEN2] is set. In this function, a frame received by the RX pin with a logic 1 in the bit position of the address mark is considered an address and is compared with the associated MA1 or MA2 register. The frame is transferred to the receive buffer, and S1[RDRF] is set, only if the comparison matches. All subsequent frames received with a logic 0 in the bit position of the address mark are considered to be data associated with the address and are transferred to the receive data buffer. If no marked address match occurs, then no transfer is made to the receive data buffer, and all following frames with logic 0 in the bit position of the address mark are also discarded. If both C4[MAEN1] and C4[MAEN2] are negated, the receiver operates normally and all data received is transferred to the receive data buffer.

Match address operation functions in the same way for both MA1 and MA2 registers. Note that the position of the address mark is the same as the Parity Bit when parity is enabled for 8 bit and 9 bit data formats.

- If only one of C4[MAEN1] and C4[MAEN2] is asserted, a marked address is compared only with the associated match register and data is transferred to the receive data buffer only on a match.
- If C4[MAEN1] and C4[MAEN2] are asserted, a marked address is compared with both match registers and data is transferred only on a match with either register.

Address match operation is not supported when C7816[ISO_7816E] is set/enabled.

52.5.3 Baud rate generation

A 13-bit modulus counter and a 5-bit fractional fine-adjust counter in the baud rate generator derive the baud rate for both the receiver and the transmitter. The value from 1 to 8191 written to SBR[12:0] determines the module clock divisor. The SBR bits are in the UART baud rate registers, BDH and BDL. The baud rate clock is synchronized with the module clock and drives the receiver. The fractional fine-adjust counter adds fractional delays to the baud rate clock to allow fine trimming of the baud rate to match the system baud rate. The transmitter is driven by the baud rate clock divided by 16. The receiver has an acquisition rate of 16 samples per bit time.

Baud rate generation is subject to two sources of error:

functional description

- Integer division of the module clock may not give the exact target frequency. This error can be reduced with the fine-adjust counter.
- Synchronization with the module clock can cause phase shift.

The [Table 52-9](#) lists the available baud divisor fine adjust values.

$$\text{UART baud rate} = \text{UART module clock} / (16 \times (\text{SBR}[12:0] + \text{BRFD}))$$

The following table lists some examples of achieving target baud rates with a module clock frequency of 10.2 MHz, with and without fractional fine adjustment.

Table 52-9. Baud rates (example: module clock = 10.2 MHz)

Bits SBR (decimal)	Bits BRFA	BRFD value	Receiver clock (Hz)	Transmitter clock (Hz)	Target Baud rate	Error (%)
17	00000	0	600,000.0	37,500.0	38,400	2.3
16	10011	19/32=0.59375	614,689.3	38,418.08	38,400	0.047
33	00000	0	309,090.9	19,318.2	19,200	0.62
33	00110	6/32=0.1875	307,344.6	19,209.04	19,200	0.047
66	00000	0	154,545.5	9659.1	9600	0.62
133	00000	0	76,691.7	4793.2	4800	0.14
266	00000	0	38,345.9	2396.6	2400	0.14
531	00000	0	19,209.0	1200.6	1200	0.11
1062	00000	0	9604.5	600.3	600	0.05
2125	00000	0	4800.0	300.0	300	0.00
4250	00000	0	2400.0	150.0	150	0.00
5795	00000	0	1760.1	110.0	110	0.00

Table 52-10. Baud rate fine adjust

BRFA	Baud Rate Fractional Divisor (BRFD)
0 0 0 0 0	0/32 = 0
0 0 0 0 1	1/32 = 0.03125
0 0 0 1 0	2/32 = 0.0625
0 0 0 1 1	3/32 = 0.09375
0 0 1 0 0	4/32 = 0.125
0 0 1 0 1	5/32 = 0.15625
0 0 1 1 0	6/32 = 0.1875
0 0 1 1 1	7/32 = 0.21875
0 1 0 0 0	8/32 = 0.25
0 1 0 0 1	9/32 = 0.28125
0 1 0 1 0	10/32 = 0.3125

Table continues on the next page...

Table 52-10. Baud rate fine adjust (continued)

BRFA	Baud Rate Fractional Divisor (BRFD)
0 1 0 1 1	11/32 = 0.34375
0 1 1 0 0	12/32 = 0.375
0 1 1 0 1	13/32 = 0.40625
0 1 1 1 0	14/32 = 0.4375
0 1 1 1 1	15/32 = 0.46875
1 0 0 0 0	16/32 = 0.5
1 0 0 0 1	17/32 = 0.53125
1 0 0 1 0	18/32 = 0.5625
1 0 0 1 1	19/32 = 0.59375
1 0 1 0 0	20/32 = 0.625
1 0 1 0 1	21/32 = 0.65625
1 0 1 1 0	22/32 = 0.6875
1 0 1 1 1	23/32 = 0.71875
1 1 0 0 0	24/32 = 0.75
1 1 0 0 1	25/32 = 0.78125
1 1 0 1 0	26/32 = 0.8125
1 1 0 1 1	27/32 = 0.84375
1 1 1 0 0	28/32 = 0.875
1 1 1 0 1	29/32 = 0.90625
1 1 1 1 0	30/32 = 0.9375
1 1 1 1 1	31/32 = 0.96875

52.5.4 Data format (non ISO-7816)

Each data character is contained in a frame that includes a start bit and a stop bit. The rest of the data format depends upon C1[M], C1[PE], S2[MSBF], BDH[SBNS] and C4[M10].

52.5.4.1 Eight-bit configuration

Clearing C1[M] configures the UART for 8-bit data characters, that is, eight bits are memory mapped in D. A frame with eight data bits has a total of 10 bits (This becomes 11 bits if BDH[SBNS] = 1). The most significant bit of the eight data bits can be used as an address mark to wake the receiver. If the most significant bit is used in this way, then it serves as an address or data indication, leaving the remaining seven bits as actual data. When C1[PE] is set, the eighth data bit is automatically calculated as the parity bit. See the following table.

Table 52-11. Configuration of 8-bit data format

UART_C1[PE]	Start bit	Data bits	Address bits	Parity bits	Stop bit
0	1	8	0	0	1
0	1	7	1 ¹	0	1
1	1	7	0	1	1

1. The address bit identifies the frame as an address character. See [Receiver wakeup](#).

NOTE

In the last column of the above table, the number of stop bits become 2 when BDH[SBNS] is set.

52.5.4.2 Nine-bit configuration

When C1[M] is set and C4[M10] is cleared and BDH[SBNS] is cleared, the UART is configured for 9-bit data characters. If C1[PE] is enabled, the ninth bit is either C3[T8/R8] or the internally generated parity bit. This results in a frame consisting of a total of 11 bits. In the event that the ninth data bit is selected to be C3[T8], it will remain unchanged after transmission and can be used repeatedly without rewriting it, unless the value needs to be changed. This feature may be useful when the ninth data bit is being used as an address mark.

When C1[M] and C4[M10] are set and BDH[SBNS] is cleared, the UART is configured for 9-bit data characters, but the frame consists of a total of 12 bits. The 12 bits include the start and stop bits, the 9 data character bits, and a tenth internal data bit. Note that if C4[M10] is set, C1[PE] must also be set. In this case, the tenth bit is the internally generated parity bit. The ninth bit can either be used as an address mark or a ninth data bit.

See the following table.

Table 52-12. Configuration of 9-bit data formats

C1[PE]	UC1[M]	C1[M10]	Start bit	Data bits	Address bits	Parity bits	Stop bit
0	0	0	See Eight-bit configuration				
0	0	1	Invalid configuration				
0	1	0	1	9	0	0	1
0	1	0	1	8	1 ¹	0	1
0	1	1	Invalid Configuration				
1	0	0	See Eight-bit configuration				

Table continues on the next page...

Table 52-12. Configuration of 9-bit data formats (continued)

C1[PE]	UC1[M]	C1[M10]	Start bit	Data bits	Address bits	Parity bits	Stop bit
1	0	1	Invalid Configuration				
1	1	0	1	8	0	1	1
1	1	1	1	9	0	1	1
1	1	1	1	8	1 ¹	1	1

1. The address bit identifies the frame as an address character.

NOTE

In the last column of the above table, the number of stop bits become 2 when BDH[SBNS] is set.

Note

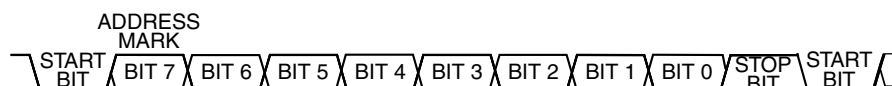
Unless in 9-bit mode with M10 set, do not use address mark wakeup with parity enabled.

52.5.4.3 Timing examples

Timing examples of these configurations in the NRZ mark/space data format are illustrated in the following figures. The timing examples show all of the configurations in the following sub-sections along with the LSB and MSB first variations. This section explains the data formats available assuming single stop bit mode is selected.

52.5.4.3.1 Eight-bit format with parity disabled

The most significant bit can be used for address mark wakeup.


Figure 52-14. Eight bits of data with LSB first

Figure 52-15. Eight bits of data with MSB first

52.5.4.3.2 Eight-bit format with parity enabled


Figure 52-16. Seven bits of data with LSB first and parity



Figure 52-17. Seven bits of data with MSB first and parity

52.5.4.3.3 Nine-bit format with parity disabled

The most significant bit can be used for address mark wakeup.



Figure 52-18. Nine bits of data with LSB first



Figure 52-19. Nine bits of data with MSB first

52.5.4.3.4 Nine-bit format with parity enabled

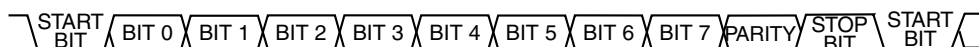


Figure 52-20. Eight bits of data with LSB first and parity

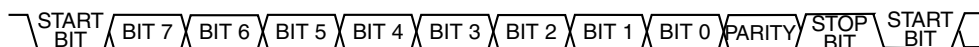


Figure 52-21. Eight bits of data with MSB first and parity

52.5.4.3.5 Non-memory mapped tenth bit for parity

The most significant memory-mapped bit can be used for address mark wakeup.

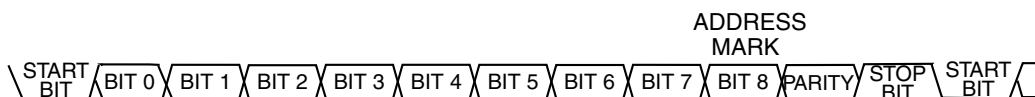


Figure 52-22. Nine bits of data with LSB first and parity

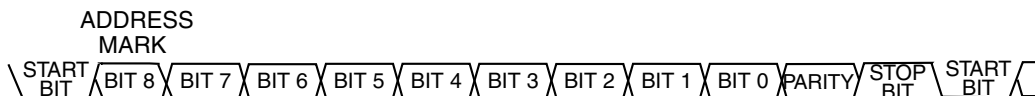


Figure 52-23. Nine bits of data with MSB first and parity

52.5.5 Single-wire operation

Normally, the UART uses two pins for transmitting and receiving. In single wire operation, the RXD pin is disconnected from the UART and the UART implements a half-duplex serial connection. The UART uses the TXD pin for both receiving and transmitting.

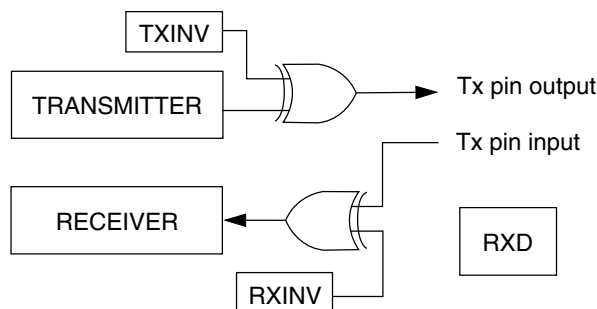


Figure 52-24. Single-wire operation (C1[LOOPS] = 1, C1[RSRC] = 1)

Enable single wire operation by setting C1[LOOPS] and the receiver source field, C1[RSRC]. Setting C1[LOOPS] disables the path from the unsynchronized receiver input signal to the receiver. Setting C1[RSRC] connects the receiver input to the output of the TXD pin driver. Both the transmitter and receiver must be enabled (C2[TE] = 1 and C2[RE] = 1). When C7816[ISO_7816EN] is set, it is not required that both C2[TE] and C2[RE] are set.

52.5.6 Loop operation

In loop operation, the transmitter output goes to the receiver input. The unsynchronized receiver input signal is disconnected from the UART.

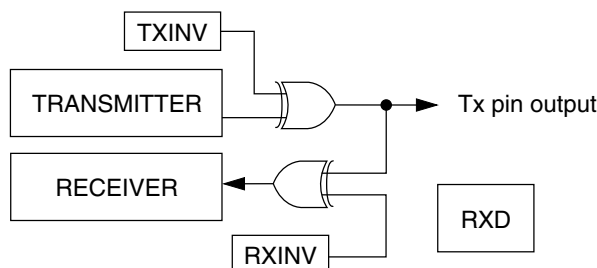


Figure 52-25. Loop operation (C1[LOOPS] = 1, C1[RSRC] = 0)

Enable loop operation by setting C1[LOOPS] and clearing C1[RSRC]. Setting C1[LOOPS] disables the path from the unsynchronized receiver input signal to the receiver. Clearing C1[RSRC] connects the transmitter output to the receiver input. Both the transmitter and receiver must be enabled (C2[TE] = 1 and C2[RE] = 1). When C7816[ISO_7816EN] is set, it is not required that both C2[TE] and C2[RE] are set.

52.5.7 ISO-7816/smartcard support

The UART provides mechanisms to support the ISO-7816 protocol that is commonly used to interface with smartcards. The ISO-7816 protocol is an NRZ, single wire, half-duplex interface. The TxD pin is used in open-drain mode because the data signal is used for both transmitting and receiving. There are multiple subprotocols within the ISO-7816 standard. The UART supports both $T = 0$ and $T = 1$ protocols. The module also provides for automated initial character detection and configuration, which allows for support of both direct convention and inverse convention data formats. A variety of interrupts specific to 7816 are provided in addition to the general interrupts to assist software. Additionally, the module is able to provide automated NACK responses and has programmed automated retransmission of failed packets. An assortment of programmable timeouts and guard band times are also supported.

The term elemental time unit (ETU) is frequently used in the context of ISO-7816. This concept is used to relate the frequency that the system (UART) is running at and the frequency that data is being transmitted and received. One ETU represents the time it takes to transmit or receive a single bit. For example, a standard 7816 packet, excluding any guard time or NACK elements is 10 ETUs (start bit, 8 data bits, and a parity bit). Guard times and wait times are also measured in ETUs.,

NOTE

The ISO-7816 specification may have certain configuration options that are reserved. To maintain maximum flexibility to support future 7816 enhancements or devices that may not strictly conform to the specification, the UART does not prevent those options being used. Further, the UART may provide configuration options that exceed the flexibility of options explicitly allowed by the 7816 specification. Failure to correctly configure the UART may result in unexpected behavior or incompatibility with the ISO-7816 specification.

52.5.7.1 Initial characters

In ISO-7816 with $T = 0$ mode, the UART can be configured to use C7816[INIT] to detect the next valid initial character, referred to by the ISO-7816 specifically as a TS character. When the initial character is detected, the UART provides the host processor with an interrupt if IE7816[INITDE] is set. Additionally, the UART will alter S2[MSBF],

C3[TXINV], and S2[RXINV] automatically, based on the initial character. The corresponding initial character and resulting register settings are listed in the following table.

Table 52-13. Initial character automated settings

Initial character (bit 1-10)	Initial character (hex)	MSBF	TXINV	RXINV
LHHL LLL LLH inverse convention	3F	1	1	1
LHHL HHH LLH direct convention	3B	0	0	0

S2[MSBF], C3[TXINV], and S2[RXINV] must be reset to their default values before C7816[INIT] is set. Once C7816[INIT] is set, the receiver searches all received data for the first valid initial character. Detecting a Direct Convention Initial Character will cause no change to S2[MSBF], C3[TXINV], and S2[RXINV], while detecting an Inverse Convention Initial Character will cause these fields to set automatically. All data received, which is not a valid initial character, is ignored and all flags resulting from the invalid data are blocked from asserting. If C7816[ANACK] is set, a NACK is returned for invalid received initial characters and an RXT interrupt is generated as programmed.

52.5.7.2 Protocol T = 0

When T = 0 protocol is selected, a relatively complex error detection scheme is used. Data characters are formatted as illustrated in the following figure. This scheme is also used for answer to reset and Peripheral Pin Select (PPS) formats.

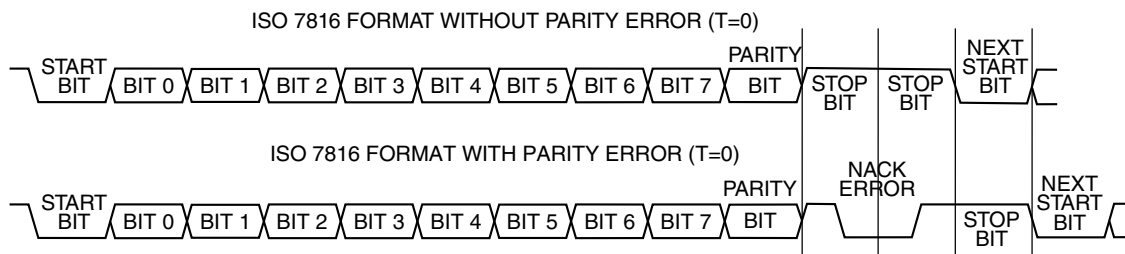


Figure 52-26. ISO-7816 T = 0 data format

As with other protocols supported by the UART, the data character includes a start bit. However, in this case, there are two stop bits rather than the typical single stop bit. In addition to a standard even parity check, the receiver has the ability to generate and return a NACK during the second half of the first stop bit period. The NACK must be at least

one time period (ETU) in length and no more than two time periods (ETU) in length. The transmitter must wait for at least two time units (ETU) after detection of the error signal before attempting to retransmit the character.

It is assumed that the UART and the device (smartcard) know in advance which device is receiving and which is transmitting. No special mechanism is supplied by the UART to control receive and transmit in the mode other than C2[TE] and C2[RE]. Initial Character Detect feature is also supported in this mode.

52.5.7.3 Protocol T = 1

When T = 1 protocol is selected, the NACK error detection scheme is not used. Rather, the parity bit is used on a character basis and a CRC or LRC is used on the block basis, that is, for each group of characters. In this mode, the data format allows for a single stop bit although additional inactive bit periods may be present between the stop bit and the next start bit. Data characters are formatted as illustrated in the following figure.

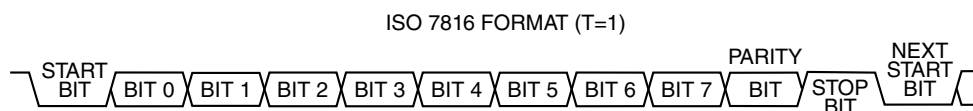


Figure 52-27. ISO 7816 T=1 data format

The smallest data unit that is transferred is a block. A block is made up of several data characters and may vary in size depending on the block type. The UART does not provide a mechanism to decode the block type. As part of the block, an LRC or CRC is included. The UART does not calculate the CRC or LRC for transmitted blocks, nor does it verify the validity of the CRC or LRC for received blocks. The 7816 protocol requires that the initiator and the smartcard (device) takes alternate turns in transmitting and receiving blocks. When the UART detects that the last character in a block has been transmitted it will automatically clear C2[TE], C3[TXDIR] and enter receive mode. Therefore, the software must program the transmit buffer with the next data to be transmitted and then enable C2[TE] and set C3[TXDIR], once the software has determined that the last character of the received block has been received. The UART detects that the last character of the transmit block has been sent when TL7816[TLEN] = 0 and four additional characters have been sent. The four additional characters are made up of three prior to TL7816[TLEN] decrementing (prologue) and one after TL7816[TLEN] = 0, the final character of the epilogue.

52.5.7.4 Wait time and guard time parameters

The ISO-7816 specification defines several wait time and guard time parameters. The UART allows for flexible configuration and violation detection of these settings. On reset, the wait time (IS7816[WT]) defaults to 9600 ETUs and guard time (GT) to 12 ETUs. These values are controlled by parameters in the WP7816, WN7816, and WF7816 registers. Additionally, the value of C7816[TTYTYPE] also factors into the calculation. The formulae used to calculate the number ETUs for each wait time and guard time value are shown in [Table 52-14](#).

Wait time (WT) is defined as the maximum allowable time between the leading edge of a character transmitted by the smartcard device and the leading edge of the previous character that was transmitted by the UART or the device. Similarly, character wait time (CWT) is defined as the maximum allowable time between the leading edge of two characters within the same block. Block wait time (BWT) is defined as the maximum time between the leading edge character of the last block received by the smartcard device and the leading edge of the first character transmitted by the smartcard device.

Guard time (GT) is defined as the minimum allowable time between the leading edge of two consecutive characters. Character guard time (CGT) is the minimum allowable time between the leading edges of two consecutive characters in the same direction, that is, transmission or reception. Block guard time (BGT) is the minimum allowable time between the leading edges of two consecutive characters in opposite directions, that is, transmission then reception or reception then transmission.

The GT and WT counters reset whenever C7816[TTYTYPE] = 1 or C7816[ISO_7816E] = 0 or a new dataword start bit has been received or transmitted as specified by the counter descriptions. The CWT, CGT, BWT, BGT counters reset whenever C7816[TTYTYPE] = 0 or C7816[ISO_7816E] = 0 or a new dataword start bit is received or transmitted as specified by the counter descriptions. When C7816[TTYTYPE] = 1, some of the counter values require an assumption regarding the first data transferred when the UART first starts. This assumption is required when the 7816E is disabled, when transition from C7816[TTYTYPE] = 0 to C7816[TTYTYPE] = 1 or when coming out of reset. In this case, it is assumed that the previous non-existent transfer was a received transfer.

The UART will automatically handle GT, CGT, and BGT such that the UART will not send a packet before the corresponding guard time expiring.

Table 52-14. Wait and guard time calculations

Parameter	Reset value [ETU]	C7816[TTYTYPE] = 0 [ETU]	C7816[TTYTYPE] = 1 [ETU]
Wait time (WT)	9600	$WI \times 480$	Not used
Character wait time (CWT)	Not used	Not used	$2^{(CWI1)} + CWI2$

Table continues on the next page...

Table 52-14. Wait and guard time calculations (continued)

Parameter	Reset value [ETU]	C7816[TTYPE] = 0 [ETU]	C7816[TTYPE] = 1 [ETU]
Block wait time (BWT)	Not used	Not used	$(11 + (BWI \times 960 \times GTFD)) * (WTX + 1)$
Guard time (GT)	12	GTN not equal to 255 $12 + GTN$ GTN equal to 255 12	Not used
Character guard time (CGT)	Not used	Not used	GTN not equal to 255 $12 + GTN$ GTN equal to 255 11
Block guard time (BGT)	Not used	Not used	$16 + BGI$

NOTE

- User must ensure that the Character Wait time (CWT) programmed using the formula above is atleast 12. Values smaller than 12 are invalid and will lead to unexpected CWT interrupts.
- The 16 bit Wait Time integer WI is formed by concatenation of {WP7816A_T0[WI_H], WP7816B_T0[WI_L]}.
- The 16 bit Block Wait Time integer BWI is formed by concatenation of {WP7816A_T1[BWI_H], WP7816B_T1[BWI_L]}.

52.5.7.5 ATR Duration Time Counter

The ISO-7816 specification defines a specific time (in etus) within which the terminal must receive the ATR (Answer to Reset), failing which the terminal must abort the card session by initiating the deactivation sequence.

UART supports this in hardware via the ATR Duration Time (ATD) Counter which can be programmed using AP7816a_T0 and AP7816b_T0 registers. The value loaded into the ADT (ATR Duration Time) counter is given by the concatenation of the register fields as shown; $ADT = \{AP7816a_T0[ADTI_H], AP7816a_T0[ADTI_L]\}$. This counter begins to count on detection of the TS character which is detected when IS7816[INITD] flag is

set. Once the ATR process is completed, the ATD Counter must be disabled by writing 0 to AP7816x_T0 registers, in order to prevent the false occurrence of the ATD Duration Time interrupt IS7816[ATD]. Note that this feature is only supported in T = 0 mode.

NOTE

The ADT counter starts counting on detection of the complete TS Character. It must be noted that by this time, exactly 10 ETUs have elapsed since the start bit of the TS character. The user must take this into account while programming AP7816a_T0 and AP7816b_T0 registers.

52.5.7.6 Baud rate generation

The value in WF7816[GTFD] does not impact the clock frequency. SBR and BRFD are used to generate the clock frequency. This clock frequency is used by the UART only and is not seen by the smartcard device. The transmitter clocks operates at 1/16 the frequency of the receive clock so that the receiver is able to sample the received value 16 times during the ETU.

52.5.7.7 UART restrictions in ISO-7816 operation

Due to the flexibility of the UART module, there are several features and interrupts that are not supported while running in ISO-7816 mode. These restrictions are documented within the register field definitions.

52.5.8 Infrared interface

The UART provides the capability of transmitting narrow pulses to an IR LED and receiving narrow pulses and transforming them to serial bits, which are sent to the UART. The IrDA physical layer specification defines a half-duplex infrared communication link for exchanging data. The full standard includes data rates up to 16 Mbits/s. This design covers data rates only between 2.4 kbits/s and 115.2 kbits/s.

The UART has an infrared transmit encoder and receive decoder. The UART transmits serial bits of data that are encoded by the infrared submodule to transmit a narrow pulse for every zero bit. No pulse is transmitted for every one bit. When receiving data, the IR pulses are detected using an IR photo diode and transformed to CMOS levels by the IR receive decoder, external from the MCU. The narrow pulses are then stretched by the infrared receive decoder to get back to a serial bit stream to be received by the UART.

The polarity of transmitted pulses and expected receive pulses can be inverted so that a direct connection can be made to external IrDA transceiver modules that use active low pulses.

The infrared submodule receives its clock sources from the UART. One of these two clocks are selected in the infrared submodule to generate either 3/16, 1/16, 1/32, or 1/4 narrow pulses during transmission.

52.5.8.1 Infrared transmit encoder

The infrared transmit encoder converts serial bits of data from transmit shift register to the TXD signal. A narrow pulse is transmitted for a zero bit and no pulse for a one bit. The narrow pulse is sent in the middle of the bit with a duration of 1/32, 1/16, 3/16, or 1/4 of a bit time. A narrow high pulse is transmitted for a zero bit when C3[TXINV] is cleared, while a narrow low pulse is transmitted for a zero bit when C3[TXINV] is set.

52.5.8.2 Infrared receive decoder

The infrared receive block converts data from the RXD signal to the receive shift register. A narrow pulse is expected for each zero received and no pulse is expected for each one received. A narrow high pulse is expected for a zero bit when S2[RXINV] is cleared, while a narrow low pulse is expected for a zero bit when S2[RXINV] is set. This receive decoder meets the edge jitter requirement as defined by the IrDA serial infrared physical layer specification.

52.6 Reset

All registers reset to a particular value are indicated in [Memory map and registers](#).

52.7 System level interrupt sources

There are several interrupt signals that are sent from the UART. The following table lists the interrupt sources generated by the UART. The local enables for the UART interrupt sources are described in this table. Details regarding the individual operation of each interrupt are contained under various sub-sections of [Memory map and registers](#).

However, [RXEDGIF description](#) also outlines additional details regarding the RXEDGIF interrupt because of its complexity of operation. Any of the UART interrupt requests listed in the table can be used to bring the CPU out of Wait mode.

Table 52-15. UART interrupt sources

Interrupt Source	Flag	Local enable	DMA select
Transmitter	TDRE	TIE	TDMA5 = 0
Transmitter	TC	TCIE	-
Receiver	IDLE	ILIE	-
Receiver	RDRF	RIE	RDMA5 = 0
Receiver	LBKDIF	LBKDIE	LBKD DMA5 = 0
Receiver	RXEDGIF	RXEDGIE	-
Receiver	OR	ORIE	-
Receiver	NF	NEIE	-
Receiver	FE	FEIE	-
Receiver	PF	PEIE	-
Receiver	RXUF	RXUFE	-
Transmitter	TXOF	TXOFE	-
Receiver	WT	WTWE	-
Receiver	CWT	CWTE	-
Receiver	BWT	BWTE	-
Receiver	INITD	INITDE	-
Receiver	TXT	TXTE	-
Receiver	RXT	RXTE	-
Receiver	GTV	GTVE	-

52.7.1 RXEDGIF description

S2[RXEDGIF] is set when an active edge is detected on the RxD pin. Therefore, the active edge can be detected only when in two wire mode. A RXEDGIF interrupt is generated only when S2[RXEDGIF] is set. If RXEDGIE is not enabled before S2[RXEDGIF] is set, an interrupt is not generated.

52.7.1.1 RxD edge detect sensitivity

Edge sensitivity can be software programmed to be either falling or rising. The polarity of the edge sensitivity is selected using S2[RXINV]. To detect the falling edge, S2[RXINV] is programmed to 0. To detect the rising edge, S2[RXINV] is programmed to 1.

Synchronizing logic is used prior to detect edges. Prior to detecting an edge, the receive data on RxD input must be at the deasserted logic level. A falling edge is detected when the RxD input signal is seen as a logic 1 (the deasserted level) during one module clock

cycle, and then a logic 0 (the asserted level) during the next cycle. A rising edge is detected when the input is seen as a logic 0 during one module clock cycle and then a logic 1 during the next cycle.

52.7.1.2 Clearing RXEDGIF interrupt request

Writing a logic 1 to S2[RXEDGIF] immediately clears the RXEDGIF interrupt request even if the RxD input remains asserted. S2[RXEDGIF] remains set if another active edge is detected on RxD while attempting to clear S2[RXEDGIF] by writing a 1 to it.

52.7.1.3 Exit from low-power modes

The receive input active edge detect circuit is still active on low power modes (Wait and Stop). An active edge on the receive input brings the CPU out of low power mode if the interrupt is not masked (S2[RXEDGIF] = 1).

52.8 DMA operation

In the transmitter, S1[TDRE] can be configured to assert a DMA transfer request. In the receiver, S1[RDRF], and S2[LBKDIF] can be configured to assert a DMA transfer request. The following table shows the configuration field settings required to configure each flag for DMA operation.

Table 52-16. DMA configuration

Flag	Request enable bit	DMA select bit
TDRE	TIE = 1	TDMAS = 1
RDRF	RIE = 1	RDMAS = 1
LBKDIF	LBKDIE = 1	LBKDDMAS = 1

When a flag is configured for a DMA request, its associated DMA request is asserted when the flag is set. When S1[RDRF] is configured as a DMA request, the clearing mechanism of reading S1, followed by reading D, does not clear the associated flag. The DMA request remains asserted until an indication is received that the DMA transactions are done. When this indication is received, the flag bit and the associated DMA request is cleared. If the DMA operation failed to remove the situation that caused the DMA request, another request is issued.

52.9 Application information

This section describes the UART application information.

52.9.1 Transmit/receive data buffer operation

The UART has independent receive and transmit buffers. The size of these buffers may vary depending on the implementation of the module. The implemented size of the buffers is a fixed constant via PFIFO[TXFIFOSIZE] and PFIFO[RXFIFOSIZE]. Additionally, legacy support is provided that allows for the FIFO structure to operate as a depth of one. This is the default/reset behavior of the module and can be adjusted using the PFIFO[RXFE] and PFIFO[TXFE] bits. Individual watermark levels are also provided for transmit and receive.

There are multiple ways to ensure that a data block, which is a set of characters, has completed transmission. These methods include:

1. Set TXFIFO[TXWATER] to 0. TDRE asserts when there is no further data in the transmit buffer. Alternatively the S1[TC] flag can be used to indicate when the transmit shift register is also empty.
2. Poll TCFIFO[TXCOUNT]. Assuming that only data for a data block has been put into the data buffer, when TCFIFO[TXCOUNT] = 0, all data has been transmitted or is in the process of transmission.
3. S1[TC] can be monitored. When S1[TC] asserts, it indicates that all data has been transmitted and there is no data currently being transmitted in the shift register.

52.9.2 ISO-7816 initialization sequence

This section outlines how to program the UART for ISO-7816 operation. Elements such as procedures to power up or power down the smartcard, and when to take those actions, are beyond the scope of this description. To set up the UART for ISO-7816 operation:

1. Select a baud rate. Write this value to the UART baud registers (BDH/L) to begin the baud rate generator. Remember that the baud rate generator is disabled when the baud rate is zero. Writing to the BDH has no effect without also writing to BDL. According to the 7816 specification the initial (default) baud rating setting should be $F_i = 372$ and $D_i = 1$ and a maximum frequency of 5 MHz. In other words, the BDH,

BDL, and C4 registers should be programmed such that the transmission frequency provided to the smartcard device must be 1/372th of the clock and must not exceed 5 MHz.

2. Write to set BDH[LBKDIE] = 0.
3. Write to C1 to configure word length, parity, and other configuration fields (LOOPS, RSRC) and set C1[M] = 1, C1[PE] = 1, and C1[PT] = 0.
4. Write to set S2[RWUID] = 0 and S2[LBKDE] = 0.
5. Write to set MODEM[RXRTSE] = 0, MODEM[TXRTSPOL] = 0, MODEM[TXRTSE] = 0, and MODEM[TXCTSE] = 0.
6. Write to set up interrupt enable fields desired (C3[ORIE], C3[NEIE], C3[PEIE], and C3[FEIE])
7. Write to set C4[MAEN1] = 0 and C4[MAEN2] = 0.
8. Write to C5 register and configure DMA control register fields as desired for application.
9. Write to set C7816[INIT] = 1, C7816[TTYPE] = 0, and C7816[ISO_7816E] = 1. Program C7816[ONACK] and C7816[ANACK] as desired.
10. Write to IE7816 to set interrupt enable parameters as desired.
11. Write to ET7816 and set as desired.
12. Write to set C2[ILIE] = 0, C2[RE] = 1, C2[TE] = 1, C2[RWU] = 0, and C2[SBK] = 0. Set up interrupt enables C2[TIE], C2[TCIE], and C2[RIE] as desired.

At this time, the UART will start listening for an initial character. After being identified, it will automatically adjust S2[MSBF], C3[TXINV], and S2[RXINV]. The software must then receive and process an answer to reset. Upon processing the answer to reset, the software must write to set C2[RE] = 0 and C2[TE] = 0. The software should then adjust 7816 specific and UART generic parameters to match and configure data that was received during the answer on reset period. After the new settings have been programmed, including the new baud rate and C7816[TTYPE], C2[RE] and C2[TE] can be reenabled as required.

52.9.2.1 Transmission procedure for (C7816[TTYPE] = 0)

When the protocol selected is C7816[TTYPE] = 0, it is assumed that the software has a prior knowledge of who should be transmitting and receiving. Therefore, no mechanism is provided for automated transmission/receipt control. The software must monitor

S1[TDRE], or configure for an interrupt, and provide additional data for transmission, as appropriate. Additionally, software should set C2[TE] = 1 and control TXDIR whenever it is the UART's turn to transmit information. For ease of monitoring, it is suggested that only data be transmitted until the next receiver/transmit switchover is loaded into the transmit FIFO/buffer.

52.9.2.2 Transmission procedure for (C7816[TTYPE] = 1)

When the protocol selected is C7816[TTYPE] = 1, data is transferred in blocks. Before starting a transmission, the software must write the size, in number of bytes, for the Information Field portion of the block into TLEN. If a CRC is being transmitted for the block, the value in TLEN must be one more than the size of the information field. The software must then set C2[TE] = 1 and C2[RE] = 1. The software must then monitor S1[TDRE]/interrupt and write the prologue, information, and epilogue field to the transmit buffer. TLEN automatically decrements, except for prologue bytes and the final epilogue byte. When the final epilogue byte has been transmitted, the UART automatically clears C2[TE] and C3[TXDIR] to 0, and the UART automatically starts capturing the response to the block that was transmitted. After the software has detected the receipt of the response, the transmission process must be repeated as needed with sufficient urgency to ensure that the block wait time and character wait times are not violated.

52.9.3 Initialization sequence (non ISO-7816)

To initiate a UART transmission:

1. Configure the UART.
 - a. Select a baud rate. Write this value to the UART baud registers (BDH/L) to begin the baud rate generator. Remember that the baud rate generator is disabled when the baud rate is zero. Writing to the BDH has no effect without also writing to BDL.
 - b. Write to C1 to configure word length, parity, and other configuration bits (LOOPS, RSRC, M, WAKE, ILT, PE, and PT). Write to C4, MA1, and MA2 to configure.
 - c. Enable the transmitter, interrupts, receiver, and wakeup as required, by writing to C2 (TIE, TCIE, RIE, ILIE, TE, RE, RWU, and SBK), S2 (MSBF and BRK13), and C3 (ORIE, NEIE, PEIE, and FEIE). A preamble or idle character is then shifted out of the transmitter shift register.

2. Transmit procedure for each byte.
 - a. Monitor S1[TDRE] by reading S1 or responding to the TDRE interrupt. The amount of free space in the transmit buffer directly using TCFIFO[TXCOUNT] can also be monitored.
 - b. If the TDRE flag is set, or there is space in the transmit buffer, write the data to be transmitted to (C3[T8]/D). A new transmission will not result until data exists in the transmit buffer.
3. Repeat step 2 for each subsequent transmission.

Note

During normal operation, S1[TDRE] is set when the shift register is loaded with the next data to be transmitted from the transmit buffer and the number of datawords contained in the transmit buffer is less than or equal to the value in TWFIPO[TXWATER]. This occurs 9/16ths of a bit time after the start of the stop bit of the previous frame.

To separate messages with preambles with minimum idle line time, use this sequence between messages.

1. Write the last dataword of the first message to C3[T8]/D.
2. Wait for S1[TDRE] to go high with TWFIPO[TXWATER] = 0, indicating the transfer of the last frame to the transmit shift register.
3. Queue a preamble by clearing and then setting C2[TE].
4. Write the first and subsequent datawords of the second message to C3[T8]/D.

52.9.4 Overrun (OR) flag implications

To be flexible, the overrun flag (OR) operates slightly differently depending on the mode of operation. There may be implications that need to be carefully considered. This section clarifies the behavior and the resulting implications. Regardless of mode, if a dataword is received while S1[OR] is set, S1[RDRF] and S1[IDLE] are blocked from asserting. If S1[RDRF] or S1[IDLE] were previously asserted, they will remain asserted until cleared.

52.9.4.1 Overrun operation

The assertion of S1[OR] indicates that a significant event has occurred. The assertion indicates that received data has been lost because there was a lack of room to store it in the data buffer. Therefore, while S1[OR] is set, no further data is stored in the data buffer until S1[OR] is cleared. This ensures that the application will be able to handle the overrun condition.

In most applications, because the total amount of lost data is known, the application will attempt to return the system to a known state. Before S1[OR] is cleared, all received data will be dropped. For this, the software does the following.

1. Remove data from the receive data buffer. This could be done by reading data from the data buffer and processing it if the data in the FIFO was still valuable when the overrun event occurred, or using CFIFO[RXFLUSH] to clear the buffer.
2. Clear S1[OR]. Note that if data was cleared using CFIFO[RXFLUSH], then clearing S1[OR] will result in SFIFO[RXUF] asserting. This is because the only way to clear S1[OR] requires reading additional information from the FIFO. Care should be taken to disable the SFIFO[RXUF] interrupt prior to clearing the OR flag and then clearing SFIFO[RXUF] after the OR flag has been cleared.

Note that, in some applications, if an overrun event is responded to fast enough, the lost data can be recovered. For example, when C7816[ISO_7816E] is asserted, C7816[TTYTYPE]=1 and C7816[ONACK] = 1, the application may reasonably be able to determine whether the lost data will be resent by the device. In this scenario, flushing the receiver data buffer may not be required. Rather, if S1[OR] is cleared, the lost data may be resent and therefore may be recoverable.

When LIN break detect (LBKDE) is asserted, S1[OR] has significantly different behavior than in other modes. S1[OR] will be set, regardless of how much space is actually available in the data buffer, if a LIN break character has been detected and the corresponding flag, S2[LBKDIF], is not cleared before the first data character is received after S2[LBKDIF] asserted. This behavior is intended to allow the software sufficient time to read the LIN break character from the data buffer to ensure that a break character was actually detected. The checking of the break character was used on some older implementations and is therefore supported for legacy reasons. Applications that do not require this checking can simply clear S2[LBKDIF] without checking the stored value to ensure it is a break character.

52.9.5 Overrun NACK considerations

When C7816[ISO_7816E] is enabled and C7816[TTYTYPE] = 0, the retransmission feature of the 7816 protocol can be used to help avoid lost data when the data buffer overflows. Using C7816[ONACK], the module can be programmed to issue a NACK on an overflow event. Assuming that the smartcard device has implemented retransmission, the lost data will be retransmitted. While useful, there is a programming implication that may require special consideration. The need to transmit a NACK must be determined and committed to prior to the dataword being fully received. While the NACK is being received, it is possible that the application code will read the data buffer such that sufficient room will be made to store the dataword that is being NACK'ed. Even if room has been made in the data buffer after the transmission of a NACK is completed, the received data will always be discarded as a result of an overflow and the ET7816[RXTHRESHOLD] value will be incremented by one. However, if sufficient space now exists to write the received data which was NACK'ed, S1[OR] will be blocked and kept from asserting.

52.9.6 Match address registers

The two match address registers allow a second match address function for a broadcast or general call address to the serial bus, as an example.

52.9.7 Modem feature

This section describes the modem features.

52.9.7.1 Ready-to-receive using RTS

To help to stop overrun of the receiver data buffer, the RTS signal can be used by the receiver to indicate to another UART that it is ready to receive data. The other UART can send the data when its CTS signal is asserted. This handshaking conforms to the TIA-232-E standard. A transceiver is necessary if the required voltage levels of the communication link do not match the voltage levels of the UART's RTS and CTS signals.

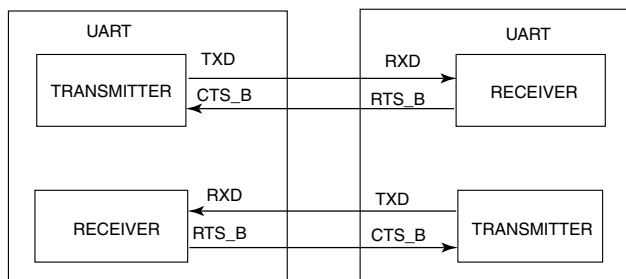


Figure 52-28. Ready-to-receive

The transmitter's CTS signal can be used for hardware flow control whether its RTS signal is used for hardware flow control, transceiver driver enable, or not at all.

52.9.7.2 Transceiver driver enable using RTS

RS-485 is a multiple drop communication protocol in which the UART transceiver's driver is 3-stated unless the UART is driving. The RTS signal can be used by the transmitter to enable the driver of a transceiver. The polarity of RTS can be matched to the polarity of the transceiver's driver enable signal. See the following figure.

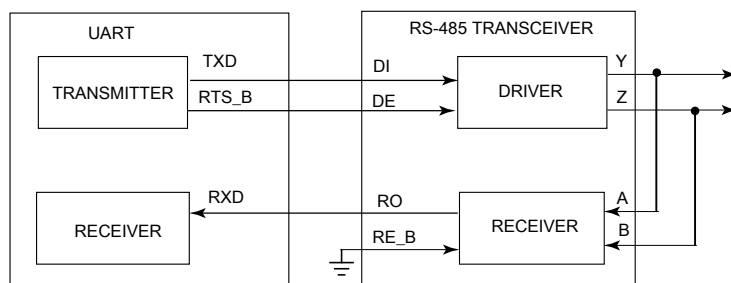


Figure 52-29. Transceiver driver enable using RTS

In the figure, the receiver enable signal is asserted. Another option for this connection is to connect RTS_B to both DE and RE_B. The transceiver's receiver is disabled while driving. A pullup can pull RXD to a non-floating value during this time. This option can be refined further by operating the UART in single wire mode, freeing the RXD pin for other uses.

52.9.8 IrDA minimum pulse width

The IrDA specifies a minimum pulse width of 1.6 μ s. The UART hardware does not include a mechanism to restrict/force the pulse width to be greater than or equal to 1.6 μ s. However, configuring the baud rate to 115.2 kbit/s and the narrow pulse width to 3/16 of a bit time results in a pulse width of 1.6 μ s.

52.9.9 Clearing 7816 wait timer (WT, BWT, CWT) interrupts

The 7816 wait timer interrupts associated with IS7816[WT], IS7816[BWT], and IS7816[CWT] will automatically reassert if they are cleared and the wait time is still violated. This behavior is similar to most of the other interrupts on the UART. In most cases, if the condition that caused the interrupt to trigger still exists when the interrupt is cleared, then the interrupt will reassert. For example, consider the following scenario:

1. IS7816[WT] is programmed to assert after 9600 cycles of unresponsiveness.
2. The 9600 cycles pass without a response resulting in the WT interrupt asserting.
3. The IS7816[WT] is cleared at cycle 9700 by the interrupt service routine.
4. After the WT interrupt has been cleared, the smartcard remains unresponsive. At cycle 9701 the WT interrupt will be reasserted.

If the intent of clearing the interrupt is such that it does not reassert, the interrupt service routine must remove or clear the condition that originally caused the interrupt to assert prior to clearing the interrupt. There are multiple ways that this can be accomplished, including ensuring that an event that results in the wait timer resetting occurs, such as, the transmission of another packet.

52.9.10 Legacy and reverse compatibility considerations

Recent versions of the UART have added several new features. Whenever reasonably possible, reverse compatibility was maintained. However, in some cases this was either not feasible or the behavior was deemed as not intended. This section describes several differences to legacy operation that resulted from these recent enhancements. If application code from previous versions is used, it must be reviewed and modified to take the following items into account. Depending on the application code, additional items that are not listed here may also need to be considered.

1. Various reserved registers and register bits are used, such as, MSFB and M10.
2. This module now generates an error when invalid address spaces are used.
3. While documentation indicated otherwise, in some cases it was possible for S1[IDLE] to assert even if S1[OR] was set.
4. S1[OR] will be set only if the data buffer (FIFO) does not have sufficient room. Previously, the data buffer was always a fixed size of one and the S1[OR] flag would set so long as S1[RDRF] was set even if there was room in the data buffer. While the clearing mechanism has remained the same for S1[RDRF], keeping the OR flag assertion tied to the RDRF event rather than the data buffer being full would have greatly reduced the usefulness of the buffer when its size is larger than one.

5. Previously, when C2[RWU] was set (and WAKE = 0), the IDLE flag could reassert up to every bit period causing an interrupt and requiring the host processor to reassert C2[RWU]. This behavior has been modified. Now, when C2[RWU] is set (and WAKE = 0), at least one non-idle bit must be detected before an idle can be detected.



Chapter 53

Flex Controller Area Network (FlexCAN)

53.1 Chip-specific FlexCAN information

53.1.1 Instantiation information

This device contains three FlexCAN modules.

53.1.2 FlexCAN glitch filter

This chip supports wakeup from the FlexCAN module's Stop and Doze mode through a CAN wakeup interrupt. Any recessive to dominant transition on the CAN bus (CAN_RX) can wake the chip from Stop or Doze mode. An optional glitch filter is connected on CAN_RX to the interrupt generation logic path.

The glitch filter provides the following functionality:

- Filtering out of unwanted noise on the CAN bus
- Selection of the wakeup source, either from the filtered or unfiltered CAN bus
- Routing of the wakeup source to either the synchronous (Doze) or asynchronous (Stop) wakeup path within the FlexCAN module

The reference clock for the glitch filter is a 4 MHz clock derived from the MCGIRCLK. The MCGIRCLK must be configured to be 4 MHz and must remain on if the user wants a low power wakeup through the glitch filter. The glitch filter counts 11 cycles of the 4 MHz clock before recognizing it as a valid recessive to dominant transition.

53.1.3 FlexCAN Supervisor Mode

The module's MCR[SUPV] field configures the FlexCAN to be in either Supervisor or User Mode. On this chip:

- MCR[SUPV] is always 1: the FlexCAN is in Supervisor Mode.
- Writes to MCR[SUPV] have no effect.

53.2 Introduction

The FlexCAN module is a communication controller implementing the CAN protocol according to the ISO 11898-1 standard and CAN 2.0 B protocol specifications. A general block diagram is shown in the following figure, which describes the main subblocks implemented in the FlexCAN module, including one associated memory for storing message buffers, Receive Global Mask registers, Receive Individual Mask registers, Receive FIFO filters, and Receive FIFO ID filters. The functions of the submodules are described in subsequent sections.

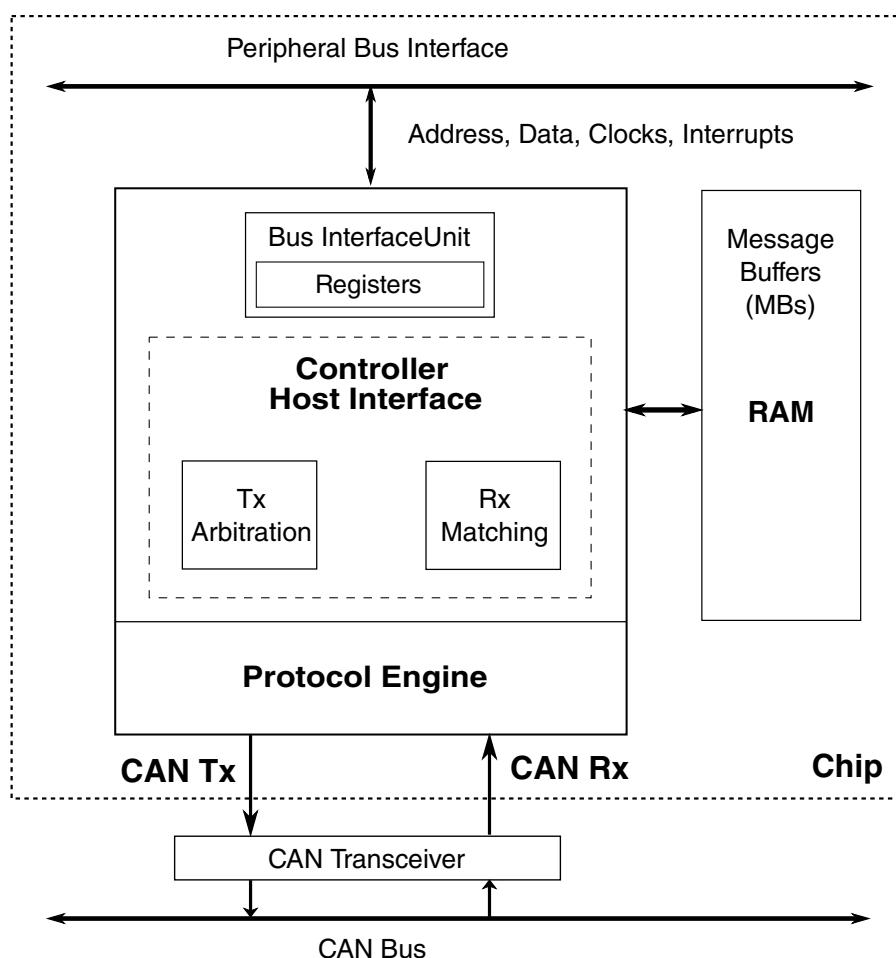


Figure 53-1. FlexCAN block diagram

53.2.1 Overview

The CAN protocol was primarily designed to be used as a vehicle serial data bus, meeting the specific requirements of this field:

- Real-time processing
- Reliable operation in the EMI environment of a vehicle
- Cost-effectiveness
- Required bandwidth

The FlexCAN module is a full implementation of the CAN protocol specification, the CAN 2.0 version B protocol, which supports both standard and extended message frames. The message buffers are stored in an embedded RAM dedicated to the FlexCAN module. See the chip configuration details for the actual number of message buffers configured in the chip.

The Protocol Engine (PE) submodule manages the serial communication on the CAN bus:

- Requesting RAM access for receiving and transmitting message frames
- Validating received messages
- Performing error handling

The Controller Host Interface (CHI) sub-module handles message buffer selection for reception and transmission, taking care of arbitration and ID matching algorithms.

The Bus Interface Unit (BIU) sub-module controls the access to and from the internal interface bus, in order to establish connection to the CPU and to other blocks. Clocks, address and data buses, interrupt outputs, DMA and test signals are accessed through the BIU.

53.2.2 FlexCAN module features

The FlexCAN module includes these distinctive features:

- Full implementation of the CAN protocol specification, Version 2.0 B
 - Standard data frames
 - Extended data frames
 - Zero to eight bytes data length
 - Programmable bit rate up to 1 Mb/sec
 - Content-related addressing

- Compliant with the ISO 11898-1 standard
- Flexible mailboxes of zero to eight bytes data length
- Each mailbox configurable as receive or transmit, all supporting standard and extended messages
- Individual Rx Mask registers per mailbox
- Full-featured Rx FIFO with storage capacity for up to six frames and automatic internal pointer handling with DMA support
- Transmission abort capability
- Flexible message buffers (MBs), totaling 16 message buffers of 8 bytes data length each, configurable as Rx or Tx
- Programmable clock source to the CAN Protocol Interface, either peripheral clock or oscillator clock
- RAM not used by reception or transmission structures can be used as general purpose RAM space
- Listen-Only mode capability
- Programmable Loop-Back mode supporting self-test operation
- Programmable transmission priority scheme: lowest ID, lowest buffer number, or highest priority
- Time stamp based on 16-bit free-running timer
- Global network time, synchronized by a specific message
- Maskable interrupts
- Independence from the transmission medium (an external transceiver is assumed)
- Short latency time due to an arbitration scheme for high-priority messages
- Low power modes, with programmable wake up on bus activity
- Remote request frames may be handled automatically or by software
- CAN bit time settings and configuration bits can only be written in Freeze mode
- Tx mailbox status (Lowest priority buffer or empty buffer)
- Identifier Acceptance Filter Hit Indicator (IDHIT) register for received frames

- SYNCH bit available in Error in Status 1 register to inform that the module is synchronous with CAN bus
- CRC status for transmitted message
- Rx FIFO Global Mask register
- Selectable priority between mailboxes and Rx FIFO during matching process
- Powerful Rx FIFO ID filtering, capable of matching incoming IDs against either 128 extended, 256 standard, or 512 partial (8 bit) IDs, with up to 32 individual masking capability
- 100% backward compatibility with previous FlexCAN version

53.2.3 Modes of operation

The FlexCAN module has these functional modes:

- Normal mode (User or Supervisor):

In Normal mode, the module operates receiving and/or transmitting message frames, errors are handled normally, and all CAN Protocol functions are enabled. User and Supervisor Modes differ in the access to some restricted control registers.

- Freeze mode:

Freeze mode is enabled when the FRZ bit in MCR is asserted. If enabled, Freeze mode is entered when MCR[HALT] is set or when Debug mode is requested at chip level and MCR[FRZ_ACK] is asserted by the FlexCAN. In this mode, no transmission or reception of frames is done and synchronicity to the CAN bus is lost. See [Freeze mode](#) for more information.

- Loop-Back mode:

The module enters this mode when the LPB field in the Control 1 Register is asserted. In this mode, FlexCAN performs an internal loop back that can be used for self-test operation. The bit stream output of the transmitter is internally fed back to the receiver input. The Rx CAN input pin is ignored and the Tx CAN output goes to the recessive state (logic '1'). FlexCAN behaves as it normally does when transmitting and treats its own transmitted message as a message received from a remote node. In this mode, FlexCAN ignores the bit sent during the ACK slot in the CAN frame acknowledge field to ensure proper reception of its own message. Both transmit and receive interrupts are generated.

- Listen-Only mode:

The module enters this mode when the LOM field in the Control 1 Register is asserted. In this mode, transmission is disabled, all error counters are frozen, and the module operates in a CAN Error Passive mode. Only messages acknowledged by another CAN station will be received. If FlexCAN detects a message that has not been acknowledged, it will flag a BIT0 error (without changing the REC), as if it was trying to acknowledge the message.

For low-power operation, the FlexCAN module has:

- Module Disable mode:

This low-power mode is entered when the MDIS bit in the MCR Register is asserted by the CPU and the LPM_ACK is asserted by the FlexCAN. When disabled, the module requests to disable the clocks to the CAN Protocol Engine and Controller Host Interface submodules. Exit from this mode is done by negating the MDIS bit in the MCR register. See [Module Disable mode](#) for more information.

- Doze mode:

This low power mode is entered when the DOZE bit in MCR is asserted and Doze mode is requested at chip level and the LPM_ACK bit in the MCR Register is asserted by the FlexCAN. When in Doze mode, the module requests to disable the clocks to the CAN Protocol Engine and the CAN Controller-Host Interface submodules. Exit from this mode happens when the DOZE bit in MCR is negated, when the chip is removed from Doze mode, or when activity is detected on the CAN bus and the Self Wake Up mechanism is enabled. See [Doze mode](#) for more information.

- Stop mode:

This low power mode is entered when Stop mode is requested at chip level and the LPM_ACK bit in the MCR Register is asserted by the FlexCAN. When in Stop Mode, the module puts itself in an inactive state and then informs the CPU that the clocks can be shut down globally. Exit from this mode happens when the Stop mode request is removed, or when activity is detected on the CAN bus and the Self Wake Up mechanism is enabled. See [Stop mode](#) for more information.

53.3 FlexCAN signal descriptions

The FlexCAN module has two I/O signals connected to the external chip pins. These signals are summarized in the following table and described in more detail in the next subsections.

Table 53-1. FlexCAN signal descriptions

Signal	Description	I/O
CAN Rx	CAN Receive Pin	Input
CAN Tx	CAN Transmit Pin	Output

53.3.1 CAN Rx

This pin is the receive pin from the CAN bus transceiver. Dominant state is represented by logic level 0. Recessive state is represented by logic level 1.

53.3.2 CAN Tx

This pin is the transmit pin to the CAN bus transceiver. Dominant state is represented by logic level 0. Recessive state is represented by logic level 1.

53.4 Memory map/register definition

This section describes the registers and data structures in the FlexCAN module. The base address of the module depends on the particular memory map of the chip.

53.4.1 FlexCAN memory mapping

The memory map for the FlexCAN module is shown in the following table.

The address space occupied by FlexCAN has 128 bytes for registers starting at the module base address, followed by embedded RAM starting at address offset 0x0080.

Each individual register is identified by its complete name and the corresponding mnemonic. The access type can be Supervisor (S) or Unrestricted (U). Most of the registers can be configured to have either Supervisor or Unrestricted access by programming the SUPV field in the MCR register. These registers are identified as S/U in the Access column of [Table 53-2](#).

Table 53-2. Register access and reset information

Register	Access type	Affected by hard reset	Affected by soft reset
Module Configuration Register (CAN_MCR)	S	Yes	Yes

Table continues on the next page...

Table 53-2. Register access and reset information (continued)

Register	Access type	Affected by hard reset	Affected by soft reset
Control 1 register (CAN_CTRL1)	S/U	Yes	No
Free Running Timer register (CAN_TIMER)	S/U	Yes	Yes
Rx Mailboxes Global Mask register (CAN_RXMGMASK)	S/U	No	No
Rx Buffer 14 Mask register (CAN_RX14MASK)	S/U	No	No
Rx Buffer 15 Mask register (CAN_RX15MASK)	S/U	No	No
Error Counter Register (CAN_ECR)	S/U	Yes	Yes
Error and Status 1 Register (CAN_ESR1)	S/U	Yes	Yes
Interrupt Masks 1 register (CAN_IMASK1)	S/U	Yes	Yes
Interrupt Flags 1 register (CAN_IFLAG1)	S/U	Yes	Yes
Control 2 Register (CAN_CTRL2)	S/U	Yes	No
Error and Status 2 Register (CAN_ESR2)	S/U	Yes	Yes
CRC Register (CAN_CRCCR)	S/U	Yes	Yes
Rx FIFO Global Mask register (CAN_RXFGMASK)	S/U	No	No
Rx FIFO Information Register (CAN_RXFIR)	S/U	No	No
CAN Bit Timing Register (CAN_CBT)	S/U	Yes	No
Message buffers	S/U	No	No
Rx Individual Mask Registers	S/U	No	No

The FlexCAN module can store CAN messages for transmission and reception using mailboxes and Rx FIFO structures.

The table below shows the FlexCAN memory map.

The address range from offset 0x80 to 0x17F allocates the sixteen 128-bit Message Buffers (MBs).

CAN memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4002_4000	Module Configuration Register (CAN0_MCR)	32	R/W	See section	53.4.2/1741
4002_4004	Control 1 register (CAN0_CTRL1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	53.4.3/1746
4002_4008	Free Running Timer (CAN0_TIMER)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	53.4.4/1750
4002_4010	Rx Mailboxes Global Mask Register (CAN0_RXMGMASK)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.5/1751
4002_4014	Rx 14 Mask register (CAN0_RX14MASK)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.6/1752
4002_4018	Rx 15 Mask register (CAN0_RX15MASK)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.7/1753
4002_401C	Error Counter (CAN0_ECR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	53.4.8/1753
4002_4020	Error and Status 1 register (CAN0_ESR1)	32	R/W	See section	53.4.9/1755

Table continues on the next page...

CAN memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/page
4002_4028	Interrupt Masks 1 register (CAN0_IMASK1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	53.4.10/1761
4002_4030	Interrupt Flags 1 register (CAN0_IFLAG1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	53.4.11/1761
4002_4034	Control 2 register (CAN0_CTRL2)	32	R/W	See section	53.4.12/1764
4002_4038	Error and Status 2 register (CAN0_ESR2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	53.4.13/1768
4002_4044	CRC Register (CAN0_CRCCR)	32	R	0000_0000h	53.4.14/1769
4002_4048	Rx FIFO Global Mask register (CAN0_RXFGMASK)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.15/1770
4002_404C	Rx FIFO Information Register (CAN0_RXFIR)	32	R	Undefined	53.4.16/1771
4002_4050	CAN Bit Timing Register (CAN0_CBT)	32	R/W	See section	53.4.17/1771
4002_4880	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN0_RXIMR0)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
4002_4884	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN0_RXIMR1)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
4002_4888	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN0_RXIMR2)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
4002_488C	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN0_RXIMR3)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
4002_4890	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN0_RXIMR4)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
4002_4894	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN0_RXIMR5)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
4002_4898	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN0_RXIMR6)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
4002_489C	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN0_RXIMR7)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
4002_48A0	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN0_RXIMR8)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
4002_48A4	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN0_RXIMR9)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
4002_48A8	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN0_RXIMR10)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
4002_48AC	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN0_RXIMR11)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
4002_48B0	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN0_RXIMR12)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
4002_48B4	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN0_RXIMR13)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773

Table continues on the next page...

CAN memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/page
4002_48B8	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN0_RXIMR14)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
4002_48BC	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN0_RXIMR15)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
4002_5000	Module Configuration Register (CAN1_MCR)	32	R/W	See section	53.4.2/1741
4002_5004	Control 1 register (CAN1_CTRL1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	53.4.3/1746
4002_5008	Free Running Timer (CAN1_TIMER)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	53.4.4/1750
4002_5010	Rx Mailboxes Global Mask Register (CAN1_RXMGMASK)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.5/1751
4002_5014	Rx 14 Mask register (CAN1_RX14MASK)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.6/1752
4002_5018	Rx 15 Mask register (CAN1_RX15MASK)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.7/1753
4002_501C	Error Counter (CAN1_ECR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	53.4.8/1753
4002_5020	Error and Status 1 register (CAN1_ESR1)	32	R/W	See section	53.4.9/1755
4002_5028	Interrupt Masks 1 register (CAN1_IMASK1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	53.4.10/1761
4002_5030	Interrupt Flags 1 register (CAN1_IFLAG1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	53.4.11/1761
4002_5034	Control 2 register (CAN1_CTRL2)	32	R/W	See section	53.4.12/1764
4002_5038	Error and Status 2 register (CAN1_ESR2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	53.4.13/1768
4002_5044	CRC Register (CAN1_CRCCR)	32	R	0000_0000h	53.4.14/1769
4002_5048	Rx FIFO Global Mask register (CAN1_RXFGMASK)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.15/1770
4002_504C	Rx FIFO Information Register (CAN1_RXFIR)	32	R	Undefined	53.4.16/1771
4002_5050	CAN Bit Timing Register (CAN1_CBT)	32	R/W	See section	53.4.17/1771
4002_5880	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN1_RXIMR0)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
4002_5884	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN1_RXIMR1)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
4002_5888	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN1_RXIMR2)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
4002_588C	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN1_RXIMR3)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
4002_5890	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN1_RXIMR4)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
4002_5894	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN1_RXIMR5)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
4002_5898	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN1_RXIMR6)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773

Table continues on the next page...

CAN memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4002_589C	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN1_RXIMR7)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
4002_58A0	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN1_RXIMR8)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
4002_58A4	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN1_RXIMR9)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
4002_58A8	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN1_RXIMR10)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
4002_58AC	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN1_RXIMR11)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
4002_58B0	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN1_RXIMR12)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
4002_58B4	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN1_RXIMR13)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
4002_58B8	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN1_RXIMR14)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
4002_58BC	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN1_RXIMR15)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
400A_4000	Module Configuration Register (CAN2_MCR)	32	R/W	See section	53.4.2/1741
400A_4004	Control 1 register (CAN2_CTRL1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	53.4.3/1746
400A_4008	Free Running Timer (CAN2_TIMER)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	53.4.4/1750
400A_4010	Rx Mailboxes Global Mask Register (CAN2_RXMGMASK)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.5/1751
400A_4014	Rx 14 Mask register (CAN2_RX14MASK)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.6/1752
400A_4018	Rx 15 Mask register (CAN2_RX15MASK)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.7/1753
400A_401C	Error Counter (CAN2_ECR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	53.4.8/1753
400A_4020	Error and Status 1 register (CAN2_ESR1)	32	R/W	See section	53.4.9/1755
400A_4028	Interrupt Masks 1 register (CAN2_IMASK1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	53.4.10/1761
400A_4030	Interrupt Flags 1 register (CAN2_IFLAG1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	53.4.11/1761
400A_4034	Control 2 register (CAN2_CTRL2)	32	R/W	See section	53.4.12/1764
400A_4038	Error and Status 2 register (CAN2_ESR2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	53.4.13/1768
400A_4044	CRC Register (CAN2_CRCCR)	32	R	0000_0000h	53.4.14/1769
400A_4048	Rx FIFO Global Mask register (CAN2_RXFGMASK)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.15/1770
400A_404C	Rx FIFO Information Register (CAN2_RXFIR)	32	R	Undefined	53.4.16/1771
400A_4050	CAN Bit Timing Register (CAN2_CBT)	32	R/W	See section	53.4.17/1771

Table continues on the next page...

CAN memory map (continued)

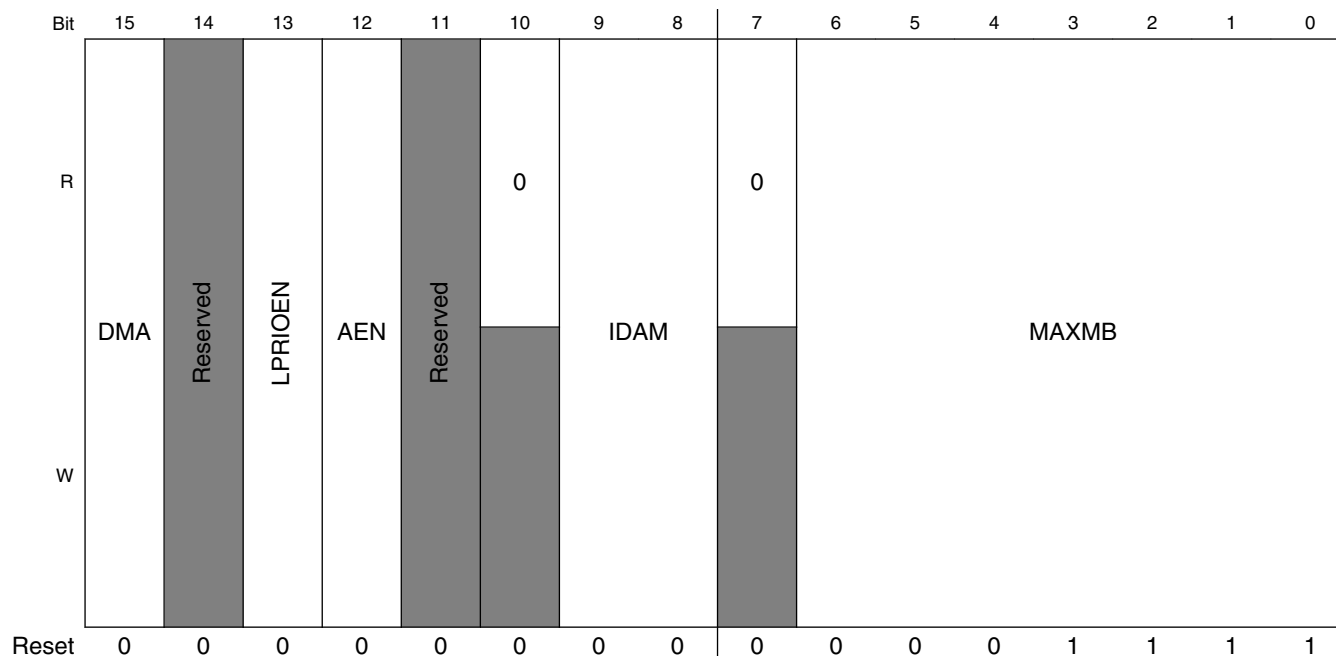
Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/page
400A_4880	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN2_RXIMR0)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
400A_4884	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN2_RXIMR1)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
400A_4888	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN2_RXIMR2)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
400A_488C	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN2_RXIMR3)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
400A_4890	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN2_RXIMR4)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
400A_4894	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN2_RXIMR5)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
400A_4898	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN2_RXIMR6)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
400A_489C	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN2_RXIMR7)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
400A_48A0	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN2_RXIMR8)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
400A_48A4	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN2_RXIMR9)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
400A_48A8	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN2_RXIMR10)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
400A_48AC	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN2_RXIMR11)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
400A_48B0	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN2_RXIMR12)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
400A_48B4	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN2_RXIMR13)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
400A_48B8	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN2_RXIMR14)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773
400A_48BC	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN2_RXIMR15)	32	R/W	Undefined	53.4.18/1773

53.4.2 Module Configuration Register (CANx_MCR)

This register defines global system configurations, such as the module operation modes and the maximum message buffer configuration.

Address: Base address + 0h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R																
	MDIS	FRZ	RFEN	HALT	NOTRDY	WAKMSK	SOFTTRST	FRZACK	SUPV	SLFWAK	WRNEN	LPMACK	WAKSRC	DOZE	SRXDIS	IRMQ
W																
Reset	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0



CANx_MCR field descriptions

Field	Description
31 MDIS	<p>Module Disable</p> <p>This bit controls whether FlexCAN is enabled or not. When disabled, FlexCAN disables the clocks to the CAN Protocol Engine and Controller Host Interface sub-modules. This bit is not affected by soft reset.</p> <p>0 Enable the FlexCAN module. 1 Disable the FlexCAN module.</p>
30 FRZ	<p>Freeze Enable</p> <p>The FRZ bit specifies the FlexCAN behavior when the HALT bit in the CAN_MCR Register is set or when Debug mode is requested at chip level. When FRZ is asserted, FlexCAN is enabled to enter Freeze mode. Negation of this bit field causes FlexCAN to exit from Freeze mode.</p> <p>0 Not enabled to enter Freeze mode. 1 Enabled to enter Freeze mode.</p>
29 RFEN	<p>Rx FIFO Enable</p> <p>This bit controls whether the Rx FIFO feature is enabled or not. When RFEN is set, MBs 0 to 5 cannot be used for normal reception and transmission because the corresponding memory region (0x80-0xDC) is used by the FIFO engine as well as additional MBs (up to 32, depending on CAN_CTRL2[RFFN] setting) which are used as Rx FIFO ID Filter Table elements. RFEN also impacts the definition of the minimum number of peripheral clocks per CAN bit as described in the table "Minimum Ratio Between Peripheral Clock Frequency and CAN Bit Rate" (see Arbitration and matching timing). This bit can be written in Freeze mode only because it is blocked by hardware in other modes.</p> <p>0 Rx FIFO not enabled. 1 Rx FIFO enabled.</p>
28 HALT	Halt FlexCAN

Table continues on the next page...

CANx_MCR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>Assertion of this bit puts the FlexCAN module into Freeze mode. The CPU should clear it after initializing the Message Buffers and the Control Registers CAN_CTRL1 and CAN_CTRL2. No reception or transmission is performed by FlexCAN before this bit is cleared. Freeze mode cannot be entered while FlexCAN is in a low power mode.</p> <p>0 No Freeze mode request. 1 Enters Freeze mode if the FRZ bit is asserted.</p>
27 NOTRDY	<p>FlexCAN Not Ready</p> <p>This read-only bit indicates that FlexCAN is either in Disable mode, Doze mode, Stop mode or Freeze mode. It is negated once FlexCAN has exited these modes. This bit is not affected by soft reset.</p> <p>0 FlexCAN module is either in Normal mode, Listen-Only mode or Loop-Back mode. 1 FlexCAN module is either in Disable mode, Doze mode, Stop mode or Freeze mode.</p>
26 WAKMSK	<p>Wake Up Interrupt Mask</p> <p>This bit enables the Wake Up Interrupt generation under Self Wake Up mechanism.</p> <p>0 Wake Up Interrupt is disabled. 1 Wake Up Interrupt is enabled.</p>
25 SOFTRST	<p>Soft Reset</p> <p>When this bit is asserted, FlexCAN resets its internal state machines and some of the memory mapped registers.</p> <p>The SOFTRST bit can be asserted directly by the CPU when it writes to the MCR Register, but it is also asserted when global soft reset is requested at chip level. Because soft reset is synchronous and has to follow a request/acknowledge procedure across clock domains, it may take some time to fully propagate its effect. The SOFTRST bit remains asserted while reset is pending, and is automatically negated when reset completes. Therefore, software can poll this bit to know when the soft reset has completed.</p> <p>Soft reset cannot be applied while clocks are shut down in a low power mode. The module should be first removed from low power mode, and then soft reset can be applied. This bit is not affected by soft reset.</p> <p>0 No reset request. 1 Resets the registers affected by soft reset.</p>
24 FRZACK	<p>Freeze Mode Acknowledge</p> <p>This read-only bit indicates that FlexCAN is in Freeze mode and its prescaler is stopped. The Freeze mode request cannot be granted until current transmission or reception processes have finished. Therefore the software can poll the FRZACK bit to know when FlexCAN has actually entered Freeze mode. If Freeze Mode request is negated, then this bit is negated after the FlexCAN prescaler is running again. If Freeze mode is requested while FlexCAN is in a low power mode, then the FRZACK bit will be set only when the low-power mode is exited. See Section "Freeze Mode". This bit is not affected by soft reset.</p> <p>NOTE: FRZACK will be asserted within 178 CAN bits from the freeze mode request by the CPU, and negated within 2 CAN bits after the freeze mode request removal (see Section "Protocol Timing").</p> <p>0 FlexCAN not in Freeze mode, prescaler running. 1 FlexCAN in Freeze mode, prescaler stopped.</p>
23 SUPV	<p>Supervisor Mode</p> <p>This bit configures the FlexCAN to be either in Supervisor or User mode. The registers affected by this bit are marked as S/U in the Access Type column of the module memory map. Reset value of this bit is 1, so</p>

Table continues on the next page...

CANx_MCR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>the affected registers start with Supervisor access allowance only. This bit can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes.</p> <p>0 FlexCAN is in User mode. Affected registers allow both Supervisor and Unrestricted accesses.</p> <p>1 FlexCAN is in Supervisor mode. Affected registers allow only Supervisor access. Unrestricted access behaves as though the access was done to an unimplemented register location.</p>
22 SLFWAK	<p>Self Wake Up</p> <p>This bit enables the Self Wake Up feature when FlexCAN is in a low-power mode other than Disable mode. When this feature is enabled, the FlexCAN module monitors the bus for wake up event, that is, a recessive-to-dominant transition.</p> <p>If a wake up event is detected during Doze mode, FlexCAN requests to resume its clocks and, if enabled to do so, generates a Wake Up interrupt to the CPU.</p> <p>If a wake up event is detected during Stop mode, then FlexCAN generates, if enabled to do so, a Wake Up interrupt to the CPU so that it can exit Stop mode globally and FlexCAN can request to resume the clocks.</p> <p>When FlexCAN is in a low-power mode other than Disable mode, this bit cannot be written as it is blocked by hardware.</p> <p>0 FlexCAN Self Wake Up feature is disabled.</p> <p>1 FlexCAN Self Wake Up feature is enabled.</p>
21 WRNEN	<p>Warning Interrupt Enable</p> <p>When asserted, this bit enables the generation of the TWRNINT and RWRNINT flags in the Error and Status Register 1 (ESR1). If WRNEN is negated, the TWRNINT and RWRNINT flags will always be zero, independent of the values of the error counters, and no warning interrupt will ever be generated. This bit can be written in Freeze mode only because it is blocked by hardware in other modes.</p> <p>0 TWRNINT and RWRNINT bits are zero, independent of the values in the error counters.</p> <p>1 TWRNINT and RWRNINT bits are set when the respective error counter transitions from less than 96 to greater than or equal to 96.</p>
20 LPMACK	<p>Low-Power Mode Acknowledge</p> <p>This read-only bit indicates that FlexCAN is in a low-power mode (Disable mode, Doze mode, Stop mode). A low-power mode cannot be entered until all current transmission or reception processes have finished, so the CPU can poll the LPMACK bit to know when FlexCAN has actually entered low power mode. This bit is not affected by soft reset.</p> <p>NOTE: LPMACK will be asserted within 180 CAN bits from the low-power mode request by the CPU, and negated within 2 CAN bits after the low-power mode request removal (see Section "Protocol Timing").</p> <p>0 FlexCAN is not in a low-power mode.</p> <p>1 FlexCAN is in a low-power mode.</p>
19 WAKSRC	<p>Wake Up Source</p> <p>This bit defines whether the integrated low-pass filter is applied to protect the Rx CAN input from spurious wake up. This bit can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes.</p> <p>0 FlexCAN uses the unfiltered Rx input to detect recessive to dominant edges on the CAN bus.</p> <p>1 FlexCAN uses the filtered Rx input to detect recessive to dominant edges on the CAN bus.</p>
18 DOZE	<p>Doze Mode Enable</p>

Table continues on the next page...

CANx_MCR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>This bit defines whether FlexCAN is allowed to enter low-power mode when Doze mode is requested at chip level. This bit is automatically reset when FlexCAN wakes up from Doze mode upon detecting activity on the CAN bus (self wake-up enabled).</p> <p>0 FlexCAN is not enabled to enter low-power mode when Doze mode is requested.</p> <p>1 FlexCAN is enabled to enter low-power mode when Doze mode is requested.</p>
17 SRXDIS	<p>Self Reception Disable</p> <p>This bit defines whether FlexCAN is allowed to receive frames transmitted by itself. If this bit is asserted, frames transmitted by the module will not be stored in any MB, regardless if the MB is programmed with an ID that matches the transmitted frame, and no interrupt flag or interrupt signal will be generated due to the frame reception. This bit can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes.</p> <p>0 Self reception enabled.</p> <p>1 Self reception disabled.</p>
16 IRMQ	<p>Individual Rx Masking And Queue Enable</p> <p>This bit indicates whether Rx matching process will be based either on individual masking and queue or on masking scheme with CAN_RXMGMASK, CAN_RX14MASK, CAN_RX15MASK and CAN_RXFGMASK. This bit can be written in Freeze mode only because it is blocked by hardware in other modes.</p> <p>0 Individual Rx masking and queue feature are disabled. For backward compatibility with legacy applications, the reading of C/S word locks the MB even if it is EMPTY.</p> <p>1 Individual Rx masking and queue feature are enabled.</p>
15 DMA	<p>DMA Enable</p> <p>The DMA Enable bit controls whether the DMA feature is enabled or not. The DMA feature can only be used in Rx FIFO, consequently the bit CAN_MCR[RFEN] must be asserted. When DMA and RFEN are set, the CAN_IFLAG1[BUF5I] generates the DMA request and no RX FIFO interrupt is generated. This bit can be written in Freeze mode only as it is blocked by hardware in other modes.</p> <p>0 DMA feature for RX FIFO disabled.</p> <p>1 DMA feature for RX FIFO enabled.</p>
14 Reserved	This field is reserved.
13 LPRIOEN	<p>Local Priority Enable</p> <p>This bit is provided for backwards compatibility with legacy applications. It controls whether the local priority feature is enabled or not. It is used to expand the ID used during the arbitration process. With this expanded ID concept, the arbitration process is done based on the full 32-bit word, but the actual transmitted ID still has 11-bit for standard frames and 29-bit for extended frames. This bit can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes.</p> <p>0 Local Priority disabled.</p> <p>1 Local Priority enabled.</p>
12 AEN	<p>Abort Enable</p> <p>When asserted, this bit enables the Tx abort mechanism. This mechanism guarantees a safe procedure for aborting a pending transmission, so that no frame is sent in the CAN bus without notification. This bit can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

CANx_MCR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>NOTE: When CAN_MCR[AEN] is asserted, only the abort mechanism (see Transmission abort mechanism) must be used for updating Mailboxes configured for transmission.</p> <p>CAUTION: Writing the Abort code into Rx Mailboxes can cause unpredictable results when the CAN_MCR[AEN] is asserted.</p> <p>0 Abort disabled. 1 Abort enabled.</p>
11 Reserved	This field is reserved.
10 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
9–8 IDAM	<p>ID Acceptance Mode</p> <p>This 2-bit field identifies the format of the Rx FIFO ID Filter Table elements. Note that all elements of the table are configured at the same time by this field (they are all the same format). See Section "Rx FIFO Structure". This field can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes.</p> <p>00 Format A: One full ID (standard and extended) per ID Filter Table element. 01 Format B: Two full standard IDs or two partial 14-bit (standard and extended) IDs per ID Filter Table element. 10 Format C: Four partial 8-bit Standard IDs per ID Filter Table element. 11 Format D: All frames rejected.</p>
7 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
MAXMB	<p>Number Of The Last Message Buffer</p> <p>This 7-bit field defines the number of the last Message Buffers that will take part in the matching and arbitration processes. The reset value (0x0F) is equivalent to a 16 MB configuration. This field can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes.</p> <p>Number of the last MB = MAXMB</p> <p>NOTE: MAXMB must be programmed with a value smaller than or equal to the number of available Message Buffers.</p> <p>Additionally, the definition of MAXMB value must take into account the region of MBs occupied by Rx FIFO and its ID filters table space defined by RFFN bit in CAN_CTRL2 register. MAXMB also impacts the definition of the minimum number of peripheral clocks per CAN bit as described in Table "Minimum Ratio Between Peripheral Clock Frequency and CAN Bit Rate" (see Arbitration and matching timing).</p>

53.4.3 Control 1 register (CANx_CTRL1)

This register is defined for specific FlexCAN control features related to the CAN bus, such as bit-rate, programmable sampling point within an Rx bit, Loop Back mode, Listen-Only mode, Bus Off recovery behavior and interrupt enabling (Bus-Off, Error, Warning). It also determines the Division Factor for the clock prescaler.

The CAN bit timing variables (PRESDIV, PROPSEG, PSEG1, PSEG2 and RJW) can also be configured in CAN_CBT register, which extends the range of all these variables. If CAN_CBT[BTF] is set, PRESDIV, PROPSEG, PSEG1, PSEG2 and RJW fields of CAN_CTRL1 become read only.

The contents of this register are not affected by soft reset.

NOTE

The CAN bit variables in CAN_CTRL1 and in CAN_CBT are stored in the same register.

Address: Base address + 4h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	PRESDIV								RJW		PSEG1			PSEG2		
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	BOFFMSK	ERRMSK	CLKSRC	LPB	TWRNMSK	RWRNMSK	Reserved	Reserved	SMP	BOFFREC	TSYN	LBUF	LOM	PROPSEG		
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

CANx_CTRL1 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 PRESDIV	<p>Prescaler Division Factor</p> <p>This 8-bit field defines the ratio between the PE clock frequency and the Serial Clock (Sclock) frequency. The Sclock period defines the time quantum of the CAN protocol. For the reset value, the Sclock frequency is equal to the PE clock frequency. The Maximum value of this field is 0xFF, that gives a minimum Sclock frequency equal to the PE clock frequency divided by 256. See Section "Protocol Timing". This field can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes.</p> <p>Sclock frequency = PE clock frequency / (PRESDIV + 1)</p>
23–22 RJW	<p>Resync Jump Width</p> <p>This 2-bit field defines the maximum number of time quanta that a bit time can be changed by one re-synchronization. One time quantum is equal to the Sclock period. The valid programmable values are 0–3. This field can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

CANx_CTRL1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Resync Jump Width = RJW + 1.
21–19 PSEG1	<p>Phase Segment 1</p> <p>This 3-bit field defines the length of Phase Segment 1 in the bit time. The valid programmable values are 0–7. This field can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes.</p> <p>Phase Buffer Segment 1 = (PSEG1 + 1) × Time-Quanta.</p>
18–16 PSEG2	<p>Phase Segment 2</p> <p>This 3-bit field defines the length of Phase Segment 2 in the bit time. The valid programmable values are 1–7. This field can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes.</p> <p>Phase Buffer Segment 2 = (PSEG2 + 1) × Time-Quanta.</p>
15 BOFFMSK	<p>Bus Off Interrupt Mask</p> <p>This bit provides a mask for the Bus Off Interrupt BOFFINT in CAN_ESR1 register.</p> <p>0 Bus Off interrupt disabled. 1 Bus Off interrupt enabled.</p>
14 ERRMSK	<p>Error Interrupt Mask</p> <p>This bit provides a mask for the Error Interrupt ERRINT in the CAN_ESR1 register.</p> <p>0 Error interrupt disabled. 1 Error interrupt enabled.</p>
13 CLKSRC	<p>CAN Engine Clock Source</p> <p>This bit selects the clock source to the CAN Protocol Engine (PE) to be either the peripheral clock or the oscillator clock. The selected clock is the one fed to the prescaler to generate the Serial Clock (Sclock). In order to guarantee reliable operation, this bit can be written only in Disable mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes. See Protocol timing".</p> <p>0 The CAN engine clock source is the oscillator clock. Under this condition, the oscillator clock frequency must be lower than the bus clock. 1 The CAN engine clock source is the peripheral clock.</p>
12 LPB	<p>Loop Back Mode</p> <p>This bit configures FlexCAN to operate in Loop-Back mode. In this mode, FlexCAN performs an internal loop back that can be used for self test operation. The bit stream output of the transmitter is fed back internally to the receiver input. The Rx CAN input pin is ignored and the Tx CAN output goes to the recessive state (logic 1). FlexCAN behaves as it normally does when transmitting, and treats its own transmitted message as a message received from a remote node.</p> <p>In this mode, FlexCAN ignores the bit sent during the ACK slot in the CAN frame acknowledge field, generating an internal acknowledge bit to ensure proper reception of its own message. Both transmit and receive interrupts are generated. This bit can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes.</p> <p>NOTE: In this mode, the CAN_MCR[SRXDIS] cannot be asserted because this will impede the self reception of a transmitted message.</p> <p>0 Loop Back disabled. 1 Loop Back enabled.</p>
11 TWRNMSK	Tx Warning Interrupt Mask

Table continues on the next page...

CANx_CTRL1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>This bit provides a mask for the Tx Warning Interrupt associated with the TWRNINT flag in the Error and Status Register 1 (ESR1). This bit is read as zero when CAN_MCR[WRNEN] bit is negated. This bit can be written only if CAN_MCR[WRNEN] bit is asserted.</p> <p>0 Tx Warning Interrupt disabled. 1 Tx Warning Interrupt enabled.</p>
10 RWRNMSK	<p>Rx Warning Interrupt Mask</p> <p>This bit provides a mask for the Rx Warning Interrupt associated with the RWRNINT flag in the Error and Status Register 1 (ESR1). This bit is read as zero when CAN_MCR[WRNEN] bit is negated. This bit can be written only if CAN_MCR[WRNEN] bit is asserted.</p> <p>0 Rx Warning Interrupt disabled. 1 Rx Warning Interrupt enabled.</p>
9 Reserved	This field is reserved.
8 Reserved	This field is reserved.
7 SMP	<p>CAN Bit Sampling</p> <p>This bit defines the sampling mode of CAN bits at the Rx input. It can be written in Freeze mode only because it is blocked by hardware in other modes.</p> <p>NOTE: For proper operation, to assert SMP it is necessary to guarantee a minimum value of 2 TQs in CAN_CTRL1[PSEG1] (or CAN_CBT[EPSEG1]).</p> <p>0 Just one sample is used to determine the bit value. 1 Three samples are used to determine the value of the received bit: the regular one (sample point) and 2 preceding samples; a majority rule is used.</p>
6 BOFFREC	<p>Bus Off Recovery</p> <p>This bit defines how FlexCAN recovers from Bus Off state. If this bit is negated, automatic recovering from Bus Off state occurs according to the CAN Specification 2.0B. If the bit is asserted, automatic recovering from Bus Off is disabled and the module remains in Bus Off state until the bit is negated by the user. If the negation occurs before 128 sequences of 11 recessive bits are detected on the CAN bus, then Bus Off recovery happens as if the BOFFREC bit had never been asserted. If the negation occurs after 128 sequences of 11 recessive bits occurred, then FlexCAN will re-synchronize to the bus by waiting for 11 recessive bits before joining the bus. After negation, the BOFFREC bit can be re-asserted again during Bus Off, but it will be effective only the next time the module enters Bus Off. If BOFFREC was negated when the module entered Bus Off, asserting it during Bus Off will not be effective for the current Bus Off recovery.</p> <p>0 Automatic recovering from Bus Off state enabled. 1 Automatic recovering from Bus Off state disabled.</p>
5 TSYN	<p>Timer Sync</p> <p>This bit enables a mechanism that resets the free-running timer each time a message is received in Message Buffer 0. This feature provides means to synchronize multiple FlexCAN stations with a special "SYNC" message, that is, global network time. If the RFEN bit in CAN_MCR is set (Rx FIFO enabled), the first available Mailbox, according to CAN_CTRL2[RFFN] setting, is used for timer synchronization instead of MB0. This bit can be written in Freeze mode only because it is blocked by hardware in other modes.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

CANx_CTRL1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Timer Sync feature disabled 1 Timer Sync feature enabled
4 LBUF	Lowest Buffer Transmitted First This bit defines the ordering mechanism for Message Buffer transmission. When asserted, the CAN_MCR[LPRIOEN] bit does not affect the priority arbitration. This bit can be written in Freeze mode only because it is blocked by hardware in other modes. 0 Buffer with highest priority is transmitted first. 1 Lowest number buffer is transmitted first.
3 LOM	Listen-Only Mode This bit configures FlexCAN to operate in Listen-Only mode. In this mode, transmission is disabled, all error counters described in CAN_ECR register are frozen and the module operates in a CAN Error Passive mode. Only messages acknowledged by another CAN station will be received. If FlexCAN detects a message that has not been acknowledged, it will flag a BIT0 error without changing the receive error counter (RXERRCNT) in CAN_ECR register, as if it was trying to acknowledge the message. Listen-Only mode is acknowledged by the state of CAN_ESR1[FLTCONF] field indicating Passive Error. There can be some delay between the Listen-Only mode request and acknowledge. This bit can be written in Freeze mode only because it is blocked by hardware in other modes. 0 Listen-Only mode is deactivated. 1 FlexCAN module operates in Listen-Only mode.
PROPSEG	Propagation Segment This 3-bit field defines the length of the Propagation Segment in the bit time. The valid programmable values are 0–7. This field can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes. Propagation Segment Time = (PROPSEG + 1) × Time-Quanta. Time-Quantum = one Sclock period.

53.4.4 Free Running Timer (CANx_TIMER)

This register represents a 16-bit free running counter that can be read and written by the CPU. The timer starts from 0x0 after Reset, counts linearly to 0xFFFF, and wraps around.

The timer is incremented by the CAN bit clock, which defines the baud rate on the CAN bus. During a message transmission/reception, it increments by one for each bit that is received or transmitted. When there is no message on the bus, it counts using the previously programmed baud rate. The timer is not incremented during Disable, Doze, Stop and Freeze modes.

The timer value is captured when the second bit of the identifier field of any frame is on the CAN bus. This captured value is written into the Time Stamp entry in a message buffer after a successful reception or transmission of a message.

If bit CAN_CTRL1[TSYN] is asserted, the Timer is reset whenever a message is received in the first available Mailbox, according to CAN_CTRL2[RFFN] setting.

The CPU can write to this register anytime. However, if the write occurs at the same time that the Timer is being reset by a reception in the first Mailbox, then the write value is discarded.

Reading this register affects the Mailbox Unlocking procedure, see Section "Mailbox Lock Mechanism".

Address: Base address + 8h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																TIMER															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

CANx_TIMER field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
TIMER	Timer Value Contains the free-running counter value.

53.4.5 Rx Mailboxes Global Mask Register (CANx_RXMGMASK)

This register is located in RAM.

RXMGMASK is provided for legacy application support.

- When the CAN_MCR[IRMQ] bit is negated, RXMGMASK is always in effect (the bits in the MG field will mask the Mailbox filter bits).
- When the CAN_MCR[IRMQ] bit is asserted, RXMGMASK has no effect (the bits in the MG field will not mask the Mailbox filter bits).

RXMGMASK is used to mask the filter fields of all Rx MBs, excluding MBs 14-15, which have individual mask registers.

This register can only be written in Freeze mode as it is blocked by hardware in other modes.

Address: Base address + 10h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	MG																															
W																																
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:

- x = Undefined at reset.

CANx_RXMGMASK field descriptions

Field	Description																																														
MG	<p>Rx Mailboxes Global Mask Bits</p> <p>These bits mask the Mailbox filter bits. Note that the alignment with the ID word of the Mailbox is not perfect as the two most significant MG bits affect the fields RTR and IDE, which are located in the Control and Status word of the Mailbox. The following table shows in detail which MG bits mask each Mailbox filter field.</p> <table><tr><th rowspan="2">SMB[RTR] ¹</th><th rowspan="2">CAN_CTRL2[RRS]</th><th rowspan="2">CAN_CTRL2[EACEN]</th><th colspan="4">Mailbox filter fields</th></tr><tr><th>MB[RTR]</th><th>MB[IDE]</th><th>MB[ID]</th><th>Reserved</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>-</td><td>0</td><td>note ²</td><td>note ³</td><td>MG[28:0]</td><td>MG[31:29]</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>-</td><td>1</td><td>MG[31]</td><td>MG[30]</td><td>MG[28:0]</td><td>MG[29]</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>-</td><td>-</td><td>-</td><td>-</td><td>MG[31:0]</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>-</td><td>-</td><td>MG[28:0]</td><td>MG[31:29]</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>MG[31]</td><td>MG[30]</td><td>MG[28:0]</td><td>MG[29]</td></tr></table> <p>0 The corresponding bit in the filter is "don't care." 1 The corresponding bit in the filter is checked.</p>	SMB[RTR] ¹	CAN_CTRL2[RRS]	CAN_CTRL2[EACEN]	Mailbox filter fields				MB[RTR]	MB[IDE]	MB[ID]	Reserved	0	-	0	note ²	note ³	MG[28:0]	MG[31:29]	0	-	1	MG[31]	MG[30]	MG[28:0]	MG[29]	1	0	-	-	-	-	MG[31:0]	1	1	0	-	-	MG[28:0]	MG[31:29]	1	1	1	MG[31]	MG[30]	MG[28:0]	MG[29]
SMB[RTR] ¹	CAN_CTRL2[RRS]				CAN_CTRL2[EACEN]	Mailbox filter fields																																									
		MB[RTR]	MB[IDE]	MB[ID]		Reserved																																									
0	-	0	note ²	note ³	MG[28:0]	MG[31:29]																																									
0	-	1	MG[31]	MG[30]	MG[28:0]	MG[29]																																									
1	0	-	-	-	-	MG[31:0]																																									
1	1	0	-	-	MG[28:0]	MG[31:29]																																									
1	1	1	MG[31]	MG[30]	MG[28:0]	MG[29]																																									

1. RTR bit of the Incoming Frame. It is saved into an auxiliary MB called Rx Serial Message Buffer (Rx SMB).
2. If the CTRL2[EACEN] bit is negated, the RTR bit of Mailbox is never compared with the RTR bit of the incoming frame.
3. If the CAN_CTRL2[EACEN] bit is negated, the IDE bit of Mailbox is always compared with the IDE bit of the incoming frame.

53.4.6 Rx 14 Mask register (CANx_RX14MASK)

This register is located in RAM.

RX14MASK is provided for legacy application support. When the CAN_MCR[IRMQ] bit is asserted, RX14MASK has no effect.

RX14MASK is used to mask the filter fields of Message Buffer 14.

This register can only be programmed while the module is in Freeze mode as it is blocked by hardware in other modes.

Address: Base address + 14h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	RX14M																															
W																																
Reset	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	X*	

* Notes:

- x = Undefined at reset.

CANx_RX14MASK field descriptions

Field	Description
RX14M	<p>Rx Buffer 14 Mask Bits</p> <p>Each mask bit masks the corresponding Mailbox 14 filter field in the same way that RXMGMASK masks other Mailboxes' filters. See the description of the CAN_RXMGMASK register.</p> <p>0 The corresponding bit in the filter is "don't care." 1 The corresponding bit in the filter is checked.</p>

53.4.7 Rx 15 Mask register (CANx_RX15MASK)

This register is located in RAM.

RX15MASK is provided for legacy application support. When the CAN_MCR[IRMQ] bit is asserted, RX15MASK has no effect.

RX15MASK is used to mask the filter fields of Message Buffer 15.

This register can be programmed only while the module is in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes.

Address: Base address + 18h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	

- * Notes:
- x = Undefined at reset.

CANx_RX15MASK field descriptions

Field	Description
RX15M	<p>Rx Buffer 15 Mask Bits</p> <p>Each mask bit masks the corresponding Mailbox 15 filter field in the same way that RXMGMASK masks other Mailboxes' filters. See the description of the CAN_RXMGMASK register.</p> <p>0 The corresponding bit in the filter is "don't care." 1 The corresponding bit in the filter is checked.</p>

53.4.8 Error Counter (CANx_ECR)

This register has two 8-bit fields reflecting the value of the FlexCAN error counters:

- Transmit Error Counter (TXERRCNT field)
- Receive Error Counter (RXERRCNT field)

The Fault Confinement State (FLTCONF field in Error and Status Register 1 - CAN_ESR1) is updated based on TXERRCNT and RXERRCNT counters. TXERRCNT and RXERRCNT counters can be written in Freeze mode only. The rules for increasing and decreasing these counters are described in the CAN protocol and are completely implemented in the FlexCAN module.

The following are the basic rules for FlexCAN bus state transitions:

- If the value of TXERRCNT or RXERRCNT increases to be greater than or equal to 128, the FLTCONF field in the Error and Status Register is updated to reflect "Error Passive" state.
- If the FlexCAN state is "Error Passive", and either TXERRCNT or RXERRCNT decrements to a value less than or equal to 127 while the other already satisfies this condition, the FLTCONF field in the Error and Status Register is updated to reflect "Error Active" state.
- If the value of TXERRCNT increases to be greater than 255, the FLTCONF field in the Error and Status Register is updated to reflect "Bus Off" state, and an interrupt may be issued. The value of TXERRCNT is then reset to zero.
- If FlexCAN is in "Bus Off" state, then TXERRCNT is cascaded together with another internal counter to count the 128th occurrences of 11 consecutive recessive bits on the bus. Hence, TXERRCNT is reset to zero and counts in a manner where the internal counter counts 11 such bits and then wraps around while incrementing the TXERRCNT. When TXERRCNT reaches the value of 128, the FLTCONF field in the Error and Status Register is updated to be "Error Active" and both error counters are reset to zero. At any instance of dominant bit following a stream of less than 11 consecutive recessive bits, the internal counter resets itself to zero without affecting the TXERRCNT value.
- If during system start-up, only one node is operating, then its TXERRCNT increases in each message it is trying to transmit, as a result of acknowledge errors (indicated by the ACKERR bit in the Error and Status Register). After the transition to "Error Passive" state, the TXERRCNT does not increment anymore by acknowledge errors. Therefore the device never goes to the "Bus Off" state.
- If the RXERRCNT increases to a value greater than 127, it is not incremented further, even if more errors are detected while being a receiver. At the next successful message reception, the counter is set to a value between 119 and 127 to resume to "Error Active" state.

Address: Base address + 1Ch offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved								Reserved								RXERRCNT								TXERRCNT							
W	Reserved								Reserved								RXERRCNT								TXERRCNT							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

CANx_ECR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 Reserved	This field is reserved.
23–16 Reserved	This field is reserved.
15–8 RXERRCNT	Receive Error Counter Receive Error Counter for all errors detected in received messages. The RXERRCNT counter is read-only except in Freeze mode, where it can be written by the CPU.
TXERRCNT	Transmit Error Counter Transmit Error Counter for all errors detected in transmitted messages. The TXERRCNT counter is read-only except in Freeze mode, where it can be written by the CPU.

53.4.9 Error and Status 1 register (CANx_ESR1)

This register reports various error conditions detected in the reception and transmission of a CAN frame, some general status of the device and it is the source of some interrupts to the CPU.

The reported error conditions are BIT1ERR, BIT0ERR, ACKKERR, CRCERR, FRMERR and STFERR.

An error detected in a single CAN frame may be reported by one or more error flags. Also, error reporting is cummulative in case more error events happen in the next frames while the CPU does not attempt to read this register.

TXWRN, RXWRN, IDLE, TX, FLTCONF, RX and SYNCH are status bits.

BOFFINT, BOFFDONEINT, ERRINT, WAKINT, TWRNINT and RWRNINT are interrupt bits. It is recommended the CPU to use the following procedure when servicing interrupt requests generated by these bits:

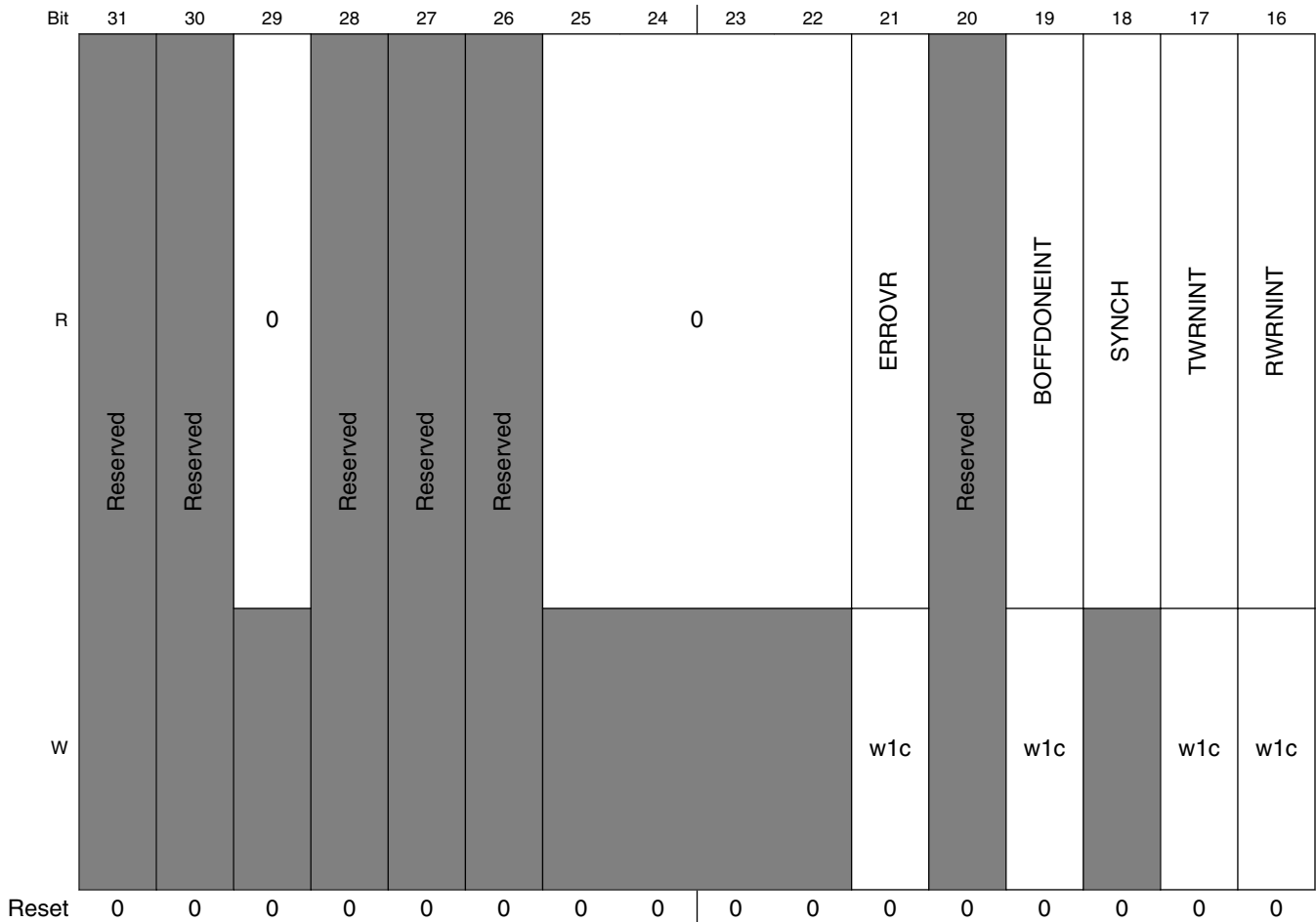
- Read this register to capture all error condition and status bits. This action clear the respective bits that were set since the last read access.
- Write 1 to clear the interrupt bit that has triggered the interrupt request.
- Write 1 to clear the ERR_OVR bit if it is set.

memory map/register definition

Starting from all error flags cleared, a first error event sets the ERRINT (provided the corresponding mask bit is asserted). If other error events in subsequent frames happen before the CPU to serve the interrupt request, the ERR_OVR bit is set to indicate that errors from different frames had accumulated.

SYNCH	IDLE	TX	RX	FlexCAN State
0	0	0	0	Not synchronized to CAN bus
1	1	x	x	Idle
1	0	1	0	Transmitting
1	0	0	1	Receiving

Address: Base address + 20h offset



Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	BIT1ERR	BIT0ERR	ACKERR	CRCERR	FRMERR	STFERR	TXWRN	RXWRN	IDLE	TX	FLTCONF		RX	BOFFINT	ERRINT	WAKINT
W														w1c	w1c	w1c
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

CANx_ESR1 field descriptions

Field	Description
31 Reserved	This field is reserved.
30 Reserved	This field is reserved.
29 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
28 Reserved	This field is reserved.
27 Reserved	This field is reserved.
26 Reserved	This field is reserved.
25–22 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
21 ERROVR	Error Overrun bit This bit indicates that an error condition occurred when any error flag is already set. This bit is cleared by writing it to 1.

Table continues on the next page...

CANx_ESR1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Overrun has not occurred. 1 Overrun has occurred.
20 Reserved	This field is reserved.
19 BOFFDONEINT	<p>Bus Off Done Interrupt</p> <p>This bit is set when the Tx Error Counter (TXERRCNT) has finished counting 128 occurrences of 11 consecutive recessive bits on the CAN bus and is ready to leave Bus Off. If the corresponding mask bit in the Control 2 Register (BOFFDONEMSK) is set, an interrupt is generated to the CPU. This bit is cleared by writing it to 1. Writing 0 has no effect.</p> 0 No such occurrence. 1 FlexCAN module has completed Bus Off process.
18 SYNCH	<p>CAN Synchronization Status</p> <p>This read-only flag indicates whether the FlexCAN is synchronized to the CAN bus and able to participate in the communication process. It is set and cleared by the FlexCAN. See the table in the overall CAN_ESR1 register description.</p> 0 FlexCAN is not synchronized to the CAN bus. 1 FlexCAN is synchronized to the CAN bus.
17 TWRNINT	<p>Tx Warning Interrupt Flag</p> <p>If the WRNEN bit in CAN_MCR is asserted, the TWRNINT bit is set when the TXWRN flag transitions from 0 to 1, meaning that the Tx error counter reached 96. If the corresponding mask bit in the Control 1 Register (CAN_CTRL1[TWRNMSK]) is set, an interrupt is generated to the CPU. This bit is cleared by writing it to 1. When WRNEN is negated, this flag is masked. CPU must clear this flag before disabling the bit. Otherwise it will be set when the WRNEN is set again. Writing 0 has no effect. This flag is not generated during Bus Off state. This bit is not updated during Freeze mode.</p> 0 No such occurrence. 1 The Tx error counter transitioned from less than 96 to greater than or equal to 96.
16 RWRNINT	<p>Rx Warning Interrupt Flag</p> <p>If the WRNEN bit in CAN_MCR is asserted, the RWRNINT bit is set when the RXWRN flag transitions from 0 to 1, meaning that the Rx error counters reached 96. If the corresponding mask bit in the Control 1 Register (CAN_CTRL1[RWRNMSK]) is set, an interrupt is generated to the CPU. This bit is cleared by writing it to 1. When WRNEN is negated, this flag is masked. CPU must clear this flag before disabling the bit. Otherwise it will be set when the WRNEN is set again. Writing 0 has no effect. This bit is not updated during Freeze mode.</p> 0 No such occurrence. 1 The Rx error counter transitioned from less than 96 to greater than or equal to 96.
15 BIT1ERR	<p>Bit1 Error</p> <p>This bit indicates when an inconsistency occurs between the transmitted and the received bit in a message.</p> <p>NOTE: This bit is not set by a transmitter in case of arbitration field or ACK slot, or in case of a node sending a passive error flag that detects dominant bits.</p> 0 No such occurrence. 1 At least one bit sent as recessive is received as dominant.

Table continues on the next page...

CANx_ESR1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
14 BIT0ERR	<p>Bit0 Error</p> <p>This bit indicates when an inconsistency occurs between the transmitted and the received bit in a message.</p> <p>0 No such occurrence. 1 At least one bit sent as dominant is received as recessive.</p>
13 ACKERR	<p>Acknowledge Error</p> <p>This bit indicates that an Acknowledge Error has been detected by the transmitter node, that is, a dominant bit has not been detected during the ACK SLOT.</p> <p>0 No such occurrence. 1 An ACK error occurred since last read of this register.</p>
12 CRCERR	<p>Cyclic Redundancy Check Error</p> <p>This bit indicates that a CRC Error has been detected by the receiver node, that is, the calculated CRC is different from the received.</p> <p>0 No such occurrence. 1 A CRC error occurred since last read of this register.</p>
11 FRMERR	<p>Form Error</p> <p>This bit indicates that a Form Error has been detected by the receiver node, that is, a fixed-form bit field contains at least one illegal bit.</p> <p>0 No such occurrence. 1 A Form Error occurred since last read of this register.</p>
10 STFERR	<p>Stuffing Error</p> <p>This bit indicates that a Stuffing Error has been detected by the receiver node.</p> <p>0 No such occurrence. 1 A Stuffing Error occurred since last read of this register.</p>
9 TXWRN	<p>TX Error Warning</p> <p>This bit indicates when repetitive errors are occurring during message transmission and is affected by the value of TXERRCNT in CAN_ECR register only. This bit is not updated during Freeze mode.</p> <p>0 No such occurrence. 1 TXERRCNT is greater than or equal to 96.</p>
8 RXWRN	<p>Rx Error Warning</p> <p>This bit indicates when repetitive errors are occurring during message reception and is affected by the value of RXERRCNT in CAN_ECR register only. This bit is not updated during Freeze mode.</p> <p>0 No such occurrence. 1 RXERRCNT is greater than or equal to 96.</p>
7 IDLE	<p>This bit indicates when CAN bus is in IDLE state. See the table in the overall CAN_ESR1 register description.</p> <p>0 No such occurrence. 1 CAN bus is now IDLE.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

CANx_ESR1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
6 TX	<p>FlexCAN In Transmission</p> <p>This bit indicates if FlexCAN is transmitting a message. See the table in the overall CAN_ESR1 register description.</p> <p>0 FlexCAN is not transmitting a message. 1 FlexCAN is transmitting a message.</p>
5–4 FLTCONF	<p>Fault Confinement State</p> <p>This 2-bit field indicates the Confinement State of the FlexCAN module.</p> <p>If the LOM bit in the Control Register 1 is asserted, after some delay that depends on the CAN bit timing the FLTCONF field will indicate "Error Passive". The very same delay affects the way how FLTCONF reflects an update to CAN_ECR register by the CPU. It may be necessary up to one CAN bit time to get them coherent again.</p> <p>This bit field is affected by soft reset, but if the LOM bit is asserted, its reset value lasts just one CAN bit. After this time, FLTCONF reports "Error Passive".</p> <p>00 Error Active 01 Error Passive 1x Bus Off</p>
3 RX	<p>FlexCAN In Reception</p> <p>This bit indicates if FlexCAN is receiving a message. See the table in the overall CAN_ESR1 register description.</p> <p>0 FlexCAN is not receiving a message. 1 FlexCAN is receiving a message.</p>
2 BOFFINT	<p>Bus Off Interrupt</p> <p>This bit is set when FlexCAN enters 'Bus Off' state. If the corresponding mask bit in the Control Register 1 (CAN_CTRL1[BOFFMSK]) is set, an interrupt is generated to the CPU. This bit is cleared by writing it to 1. Writing 0 has no effect.</p> <p>0 No such occurrence. 1 FlexCAN module entered Bus Off state.</p>
1 ERRINT	<p>Error Interrupt</p> <p>This bit indicates that at least one of the Error Bits (BIT1ERR, BIT0ERR, ACKERR, CRCERR, FRMERR or STFERR) is set. If the corresponding mask bit CAN_CTRL1[ERRMSK] is set, an interrupt is generated to the CPU. This bit is cleared by writing it to 1. Writing 0 has no effect.</p> <p>0 No such occurrence. 1 Indicates setting of any Error Bit in the Error and Status Register.</p>
0 WAKINT	<p>Wake-Up Interrupt</p> <p>This field applies when FlexCAN is in low-power mode under Self Wake Up mechanism:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Doze mode Stop mode <p>When a recessive-to-dominant transition is detected on the CAN bus and if the CAN_MCR[WAKMSK] bit is set, an interrupt is generated to the CPU. This bit is cleared by writing it to 1.</p> <p>When CAN_MCR[SLFWAK] is negated, this flag is masked. The CPU must clear this flag before disabling the bit. Otherwise it will be set when the SLFWAK is set again. Writing 0 has no effect.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

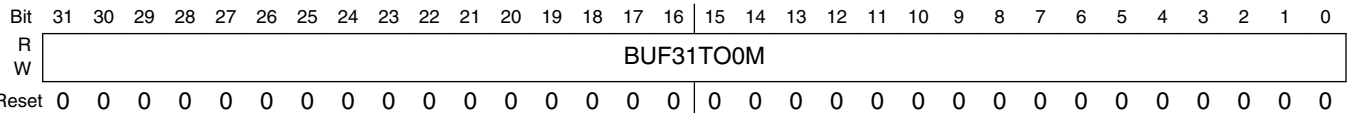
CANx_ESR1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
0	No such occurrence.
1	Indicates a recessive to dominant transition was received on the CAN bus.

53.4.10 Interrupt Masks 1 register (CANx_IMASK1)

This register allows any number of a range of the 16 Message Buffer Interrupts to be enabled or disabled for MB15 to MB0. It contains one interrupt mask bit per buffer, enabling the CPU to determine which buffer generates an interrupt after a successful transmission or reception, that is, when the corresponding CAN_IFLAG1 bit is set.

Address: Base address + 28h offset



CANx_IMASK1 field descriptions

Field	Description
BUF31TO0M	<p>Buffer MB_i Mask</p> <p>Each bit enables or disables the corresponding FlexCAN Message Buffer Interrupt for MB31 to MB0.</p> <p>NOTE: Setting or clearing a bit in the CAN_IMASK1 Register can assert or negate an interrupt request, if the corresponding IFLAG1 bit is set.</p> <p>0 The corresponding buffer Interrupt is disabled.</p> <p>1 The corresponding buffer Interrupt is enabled.</p>

53.4.11 Interrupt Flags 1 register (CANx_IFLAG1)

This register defines the flags for the 16 Message Buffer interrupts for MB15 to MB0. It contains one interrupt flag bit per buffer. Each successful transmission or reception sets the corresponding CAN_IFLAG1 bit. If the corresponding CAN_IMASK1 bit is set, an interrupt will be generated. The interrupt flag must be cleared by writing 1 to it. Writing 0 has no effect. There is an exception when DMA for Rx FIFO is enabled, as described below.

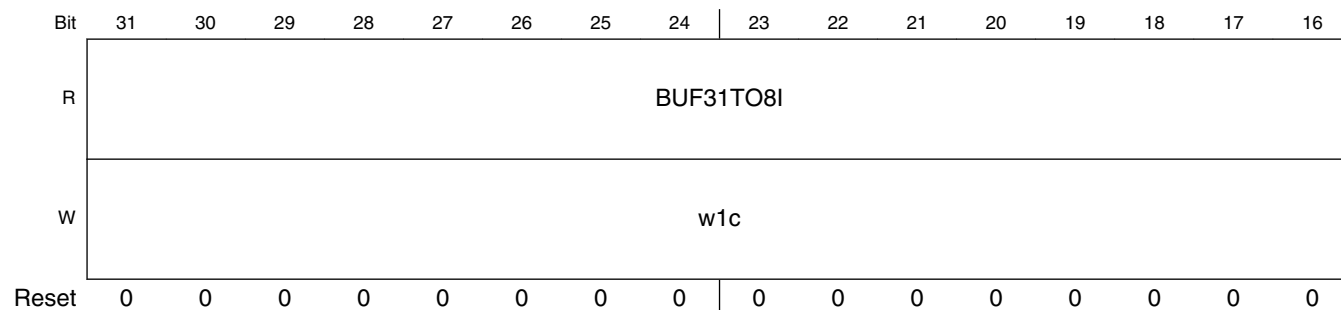
The BUF7I to BUF5I flags are also used to represent FIFO interrupts when the Rx FIFO is enabled. When the bit CAN_MCR[RFEN] is set and the bit CAN_MCR[DMA] is negated, the function of the 8 least significant interrupt flags changes: BUF7I, BUF6I and BUF5I indicate operating conditions of the FIFO, BUF0I is used to empty FIFO, and BUF4I to BUF1I bits are reserved.

Before enabling the CAN_MCR[RFEN], the CPU must service the IFLAG bits asserted in the Rx FIFO region; see Section "Rx FIFO". Otherwise, these IFLAG bits will mistakenly show the related MBs now belonging to FIFO as having contents to be serviced. When the CAN_MCR[RFEN] bit is negated, the FIFO flags must be cleared. The same care must be taken when an CAN_CTRL2[RFFN] value is selected extending Rx FIFO filters beyond MB7. For example, when RFFN is 0x8, the MB0-23 range is occupied by Rx FIFO filters and related IFLAG bits must be cleared.

When both the CAN_MCR[RFEN] and CAN_MCR[DMA] bits are asserted (DMA feature for Rx FIFO enabled), the function of the 8 least significant interrupt flags (BUF7I - BUF0I) are changed to support the DMA operation. BUF7I and BUF6I are not used, as well as, BUF4I to BUF1I. BUF5I indicates operating condition of FIFO, and BUF0I is used to empty FIFO. Moreover, BUF5I does not generate a CPU interrupt, but generates a DMA request. IMASK1 bits in Rx FIFO region are not considered when bit CAN_MCR[DMA] is enabled. In addition the CPU must not clear the flag BUF5I when DMA is enabled. Before enabling the bit CAN_MCR[DMA], the CPU must service the IFLAGs asserted in the Rx FIFO region. When the bit CAN_MCR[DMA] is negated, the FIFO must be empty.

Before updating CAN_MCR[MAXMB] field, CPU must service the CAN_IFLAG1 bits whose MB value is greater than the CAN_MCR[MAXMB] to be updated; otherwise, they will remain set and be inconsistent with the number of MBs available.

Address: Base address + 30h offset



Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	BUF31TO8I								BUF7I	BUF6I	BUF5I	BUF4TO1I				BUF0I
W	w1c								w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c				w1c
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

CANx_IFLAG1 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 BUF31TO8I	<p>Buffer MB_i Interrupt</p> <p>Each bit flags the corresponding FlexCAN Message Buffer interrupt for MB15 to MB8.</p> <p>0 The corresponding buffer has no occurrence of successfully completed transmission or reception. 1 The corresponding buffer has successfully completed transmission or reception.</p>
7 BUF7I	<p>Buffer MB7 Interrupt Or "Rx FIFO Overflow"</p> <p>When the RFEN bit in the CAN_MCR register is cleared (Rx FIFO disabled), this bit flags the interrupt for MB7.</p> <p>NOTE: This flag is cleared by the FlexCAN whenever the bit CAN_MCR[RFEN] is changed by CPU writes.</p> <p>The BUF7I flag represents "Rx FIFO Overflow" when CAN_MCR[RFEN] is set. In this case, the flag indicates that a message was lost because the Rx FIFO is full. Note that the flag will not be asserted when the Rx FIFO is full and the message was captured by a Mailbox.</p> <p>0 No occurrence of MB7 completing transmission/reception when MCR[RFEN]=0, or of Rx FIFO overflow when MCR[RFEN]=1 1 MB7 completed transmission/reception when MCR[RFEN]=0, or Rx FIFO overflow when MCR[RFEN]=1</p>
6 BUF6I	<p>Buffer MB6 Interrupt Or "Rx FIFO Warning"</p> <p>When the RFEN bit in the CAN_MCR register is cleared (Rx FIFO disabled), this bit flags the interrupt for MB6.</p> <p>NOTE: This flag is cleared by the FlexCAN whenever the bit CAN_MCR[RFEN] is changed by CPU writes.</p> <p>The BUF6I flag represents "Rx FIFO Warning" when CAN_MCR[RFEN] is set. In this case, the flag indicates when the number of unread messages within the Rx FIFO is increased to 5 from 4 due to the reception of a new one, meaning that the Rx FIFO is almost full. Note that if the flag is cleared while the number of unread messages is greater than 4, it does not assert again until the number of unread messages within the Rx FIFO is decreased to be equal to or less than 4.</p> <p>0 No occurrence of MB6 completing transmission/reception when MCR[RFEN]=0, or of Rx FIFO almost full when MCR[RFEN]=1 1 MB6 completed transmission/reception when MCR[RFEN]=0, or Rx FIFO almost full when MCR[RFEN]=1</p>
5 BUF5I	<p>Buffer MB5 Interrupt Or "Frames available in Rx FIFO"</p> <p>When the RFEN bit in the MCR is cleared (Rx FIFO disabled), this bit flags the interrupt for MB5.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

CANx_IFLAG1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<p>NOTE: This flag is cleared by the FlexCAN whenever the bit MCR[RFEN] is changed by CPU writes.</p> <p>When MCR[RFEN] is set (Rx FIFO enabled), the BUF5I flag represents "Frames available in Rx FIFO" and indicates that at least one frame is available to be read from the Rx FIFO. When the MCR[DMA] bit is enabled, this flag generates a DMA request and the CPU must not clear this bit by writing 1 in BUF5I.</p> <p>0 No occurrence of MB5 completing transmission/reception when MCR[RFEN]=0, or of frame(s) available in the FIFO, when MCR[RFEN]=1</p> <p>1 MB5 completed transmission/reception when MCR[RFEN]=0, or frame(s) available in the Rx FIFO when MCR[RFEN]=1. It generates a DMA request in case of MCR[RFEN] and MCR[DMA] are enabled.</p>
4–1 BUF4TO1I	<p>Buffer MB_i Interrupt Or "reserved"</p> <p>When the RFEN bit in the CAN_MCR register is cleared (Rx FIFO disabled), these bits flag the interrupts for MB4 to MB1.</p> <p>NOTE: These flags are cleared by the FlexCAN whenever the bit CAN_MCR[RFEN] is changed by CPU writes.</p> <p>The BUF4TO1I flags are reserved when CAN_MCR[RFEN] is set.</p> <p>0 The corresponding buffer has no occurrence of successfully completed transmission or reception when MCR[RFEN]=0.</p> <p>1 The corresponding buffer has successfully completed transmission or reception when MCR[RFEN]=0.</p>
0 BUF0I	<p>Buffer MB0 Interrupt Or Clear FIFO bit</p> <p>When the RFEN bit in MCR is cleared (Rx FIFO disabled), this bit flags the interrupt for MB0. If the Rx FIFO is enabled, this bit is used to trigger the clear FIFO operation. This operation empties FIFO contents. Before performing this operation the CPU must service all FIFO related IFLAGS. When the bit MCR[DMA] is enabled this operation also clears the BUF5I flag and consequently abort the DMA request. The clear FIFO operation occurs when the CPU writes 1 in BUF0I. It is only allowed in Freeze Mode and is blocked by hardware in other conditions.</p> <p>0 The corresponding buffer has no occurrence of successfully completed transmission or reception when MCR[RFEN]=0.</p> <p>1 The corresponding buffer has successfully completed transmission or reception when MCR[RFEN]=0.</p>

53.4.12 Control 2 register (CANx_CTRL2)

This register complements Control1 Register providing control bits for memory write access in Freeze Mode, for extending FIFO filter quantity, and for adjust the operation of internal FlexCAN processes like matching and arbitration.

The contents of this register are not affected by soft reset.

Address: Base address + 34h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Reserved	BOFFDONEMSK	0	0	RFFN				TASD				MRP		RRS	EACEN
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved	0	0	0	0	0								Reserved		Reserved
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

CANx_CTRL2 field descriptions

Field	Description
31 Reserved	This field is reserved.
30 BOFFDONEMSK	Bus Off Done Interrupt Mask This bit provides a mask for the Bus Off Done Interrupt in CAN_ESR1 register. 0 Bus Off Done interrupt disabled. 1 Bus Off Done interrupt enabled.
29 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
28 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
27–24 RFFN	Number Of Rx FIFO Filters This 4-bit field defines the number of Rx FIFO filters, as shown in the following table. The maximum selectable number of filters is determined by the chip. This field can only be written in Freeze mode as it is blocked by hardware in other modes. This field must not be programmed with values that make the number of Message Buffers occupied by Rx FIFO and ID Filter exceed the number of Mailboxes present, defined by CAN_MCR[MAXMB]. NOTE: Each group of eight filters occupies a memory space equivalent to two Message Buffers which means that the more filters are implemented the less Mailboxes will be available. Considering that the Rx FIFO occupies the memory space originally reserved for MB0-5, RFFN should be programmed with a value corresponding to a number of filters not greater than the number of available memory words which can be calculated as follows:

Table continues on the next page...

CANx_CTRL2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description																																																																																																						
	<p>$(\text{SETUP_MB} - 6) \times 4$</p> <p>where SETUP_MB is the least between the parameter NUMBER_OF_MB and CAN_MCR[MAXMB].</p> <p>The number of remaining Mailboxes available will be:</p> <p>$(\text{SETUP_MB} - 8) - (\text{RFFN} \times 2)$</p> <p>If the Number of Rx FIFO Filters programmed through RFFN exceeds the SETUP_MB value (memory space available) the exceeding ones will not be functional.</p> <p>NOTE:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• The number of the last remaining available mailboxes is defined by the least value between the NUMBER_OF_MB minus 1 and the CAN_MCR[MAXMB] field.• If Rx Individual Mask Registers are not enabled then all Rx FIFO filters are affected by the Rx FIFO Global Mask. <table><tr><th>RFFN[3:0]</th><th>Number of Rx FIFO filter elements</th><th>Message Buffers occupied by Rx FIFO and ID Filter Table</th><th>Remaining Available Mailboxes</th><th>Rx FIFO ID Filter Table Elements Affected by Rx Individual Masks</th><th>Rx FIFO ID Filter Table Elements Affected by Rx FIFO Global Mask</th></tr><tr><td>0x0</td><td>8</td><td>MB 0-7</td><td>MB 8-63</td><td>Elements 0-7</td><td>none</td></tr><tr><td>0x1</td><td>16</td><td>MB 0-9</td><td>MB 10-63</td><td>Elements 0-9</td><td>Elements 10-15</td></tr><tr><td>0x2</td><td>24</td><td>MB 0-11</td><td>MB 12-63</td><td>Elements 0-11</td><td>Elements 12-23</td></tr><tr><td>0x3</td><td>32</td><td>MB 0-13</td><td>MB 14-63</td><td>Elements 0-13</td><td>Elements 14-31</td></tr><tr><td>0x4</td><td>40</td><td>MB 0-15</td><td>MB 16-63</td><td>Elements 0-15</td><td>Elements 16-39</td></tr><tr><td>0x5</td><td>48</td><td>MB 0-17</td><td>MB 18-63</td><td>Elements 0-17</td><td>Elements 18-47</td></tr><tr><td>0x6</td><td>56</td><td>MB 0-19</td><td>MB 20-63</td><td>Elements 0-19</td><td>Elements 20-55</td></tr><tr><td>0x7</td><td>64</td><td>MB 0-21</td><td>MB 22-63</td><td>Elements 0-21</td><td>Elements 22-63</td></tr><tr><td>0x8</td><td>72</td><td>MB 0-23</td><td>MB 24-63</td><td>Elements 0-23</td><td>Elements 24-71</td></tr><tr><td>0x9</td><td>80</td><td>MB 0-25</td><td>MB 26-63</td><td>Elements 0-25</td><td>Elements 26-79</td></tr><tr><td>0xA</td><td>88</td><td>MB 0-27</td><td>MB 28-63</td><td>Elements 0-27</td><td>Elements 28-87</td></tr><tr><td>0xB</td><td>96</td><td>MB 0-29</td><td>MB 30-63</td><td>Elements 0-29</td><td>Elements 30-95</td></tr><tr><td>0xC</td><td>104</td><td>MB 0-31</td><td>MB 32-63</td><td>Elements 0-31</td><td>Elements 32-103</td></tr><tr><td>0xD</td><td>112</td><td>MB 0-33</td><td>MB 34-63</td><td>Elements 0-31</td><td>Elements 32-111</td></tr><tr><td>0xE</td><td>120</td><td>MB 0-35</td><td>MB 36-63</td><td>Elements 0-31</td><td>Elements 32-119</td></tr><tr><td>0xF</td><td>128</td><td>MB 0-37</td><td>MB 38-63</td><td>Elements 0-31</td><td>Elements 32-127</td></tr></table>	RFFN[3:0]	Number of Rx FIFO filter elements	Message Buffers occupied by Rx FIFO and ID Filter Table	Remaining Available Mailboxes	Rx FIFO ID Filter Table Elements Affected by Rx Individual Masks	Rx FIFO ID Filter Table Elements Affected by Rx FIFO Global Mask	0x0	8	MB 0-7	MB 8-63	Elements 0-7	none	0x1	16	MB 0-9	MB 10-63	Elements 0-9	Elements 10-15	0x2	24	MB 0-11	MB 12-63	Elements 0-11	Elements 12-23	0x3	32	MB 0-13	MB 14-63	Elements 0-13	Elements 14-31	0x4	40	MB 0-15	MB 16-63	Elements 0-15	Elements 16-39	0x5	48	MB 0-17	MB 18-63	Elements 0-17	Elements 18-47	0x6	56	MB 0-19	MB 20-63	Elements 0-19	Elements 20-55	0x7	64	MB 0-21	MB 22-63	Elements 0-21	Elements 22-63	0x8	72	MB 0-23	MB 24-63	Elements 0-23	Elements 24-71	0x9	80	MB 0-25	MB 26-63	Elements 0-25	Elements 26-79	0xA	88	MB 0-27	MB 28-63	Elements 0-27	Elements 28-87	0xB	96	MB 0-29	MB 30-63	Elements 0-29	Elements 30-95	0xC	104	MB 0-31	MB 32-63	Elements 0-31	Elements 32-103	0xD	112	MB 0-33	MB 34-63	Elements 0-31	Elements 32-111	0xE	120	MB 0-35	MB 36-63	Elements 0-31	Elements 32-119	0xF	128	MB 0-37	MB 38-63	Elements 0-31	Elements 32-127
RFFN[3:0]	Number of Rx FIFO filter elements	Message Buffers occupied by Rx FIFO and ID Filter Table	Remaining Available Mailboxes	Rx FIFO ID Filter Table Elements Affected by Rx Individual Masks	Rx FIFO ID Filter Table Elements Affected by Rx FIFO Global Mask																																																																																																		
0x0	8	MB 0-7	MB 8-63	Elements 0-7	none																																																																																																		
0x1	16	MB 0-9	MB 10-63	Elements 0-9	Elements 10-15																																																																																																		
0x2	24	MB 0-11	MB 12-63	Elements 0-11	Elements 12-23																																																																																																		
0x3	32	MB 0-13	MB 14-63	Elements 0-13	Elements 14-31																																																																																																		
0x4	40	MB 0-15	MB 16-63	Elements 0-15	Elements 16-39																																																																																																		
0x5	48	MB 0-17	MB 18-63	Elements 0-17	Elements 18-47																																																																																																		
0x6	56	MB 0-19	MB 20-63	Elements 0-19	Elements 20-55																																																																																																		
0x7	64	MB 0-21	MB 22-63	Elements 0-21	Elements 22-63																																																																																																		
0x8	72	MB 0-23	MB 24-63	Elements 0-23	Elements 24-71																																																																																																		
0x9	80	MB 0-25	MB 26-63	Elements 0-25	Elements 26-79																																																																																																		
0xA	88	MB 0-27	MB 28-63	Elements 0-27	Elements 28-87																																																																																																		
0xB	96	MB 0-29	MB 30-63	Elements 0-29	Elements 30-95																																																																																																		
0xC	104	MB 0-31	MB 32-63	Elements 0-31	Elements 32-103																																																																																																		
0xD	112	MB 0-33	MB 34-63	Elements 0-31	Elements 32-111																																																																																																		
0xE	120	MB 0-35	MB 36-63	Elements 0-31	Elements 32-119																																																																																																		
0xF	128	MB 0-37	MB 38-63	Elements 0-31	Elements 32-127																																																																																																		
23–19 TASD	<p>Tx Arbitration Start Delay</p> <p>This 5-bit field indicates how many CAN bits the Tx arbitration process start point can be delayed from the first bit of CRC field on CAN bus. See Tx Arbitration start delay for more details. This field can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes.</p>																																																																																																						
18 MRP	<p>Mailboxes Reception Priority</p> <p>If this bit is set the matching process starts from the Mailboxes and if no match occurs the matching continues on the Rx FIFO. This bit can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes.</p>																																																																																																						

Table continues on the next page...

CANx_CTRL2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Matching starts from Rx FIFO and continues on Mailboxes. 1 Matching starts from Mailboxes and continues on Rx FIFO.
17 RRS	Remote Request Storing If this bit is asserted Remote Request Frame is submitted to a matching process and stored in the corresponding Message Buffer in the same fashion of a Data Frame. No automatic Remote Response Frame will be generated. If this bit is negated the Remote Request Frame is submitted to a matching process and an automatic Remote Response Frame is generated if a Message Buffer with CODE=0b1010 is found with the same ID. This bit can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes. 0 Remote Response Frame is generated. 1 Remote Request Frame is stored.
16 EACEN	Entire Frame Arbitration Field Comparison Enable For Rx Mailboxes This bit controls the comparison of IDE and RTR bits within Rx Mailboxes filters with their corresponding bits in the incoming frame by the matching process. This bit does not affect matching for Rx FIFO. This bit can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes. 0 Rx Mailbox filter's IDE bit is always compared and RTR is never compared despite mask bits. 1 Enables the comparison of both Rx Mailbox filter's IDE and RTR bit with their corresponding bits within the incoming frame. Mask bits do apply.
15 Reserved	This field is reserved. When writing to this field, always write the reset value.
14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
12 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
11 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
10–2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
1 Reserved	This field is reserved. When writing to this field, always write the reset value.
0 Reserved	This field is reserved. When writing to this field, always write the reset value.

53.4.13 Error and Status 2 register (CANx_ESR2)

This register reports some general status information.

Address: Base address + 38h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0									LPTM						
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0	VPS	IMB	0												
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

CANx_ESR2 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–23 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
22–16 LPTM	Lowest Priority Tx Mailbox If CAN_ESR2[VPS] is asserted, this field indicates the lowest number inactive Mailbox (see the CAN_ESR2[IMB] bit description). If there is no inactive Mailbox then the Mailbox indicated depends on CAN_CTRL1[LBUF] bit value. If CAN_CTRL1[LBUF] bit is negated then the Mailbox indicated is the one that has the greatest arbitration value (see the "Highest priority Mailbox first" section). If CAN_CTRL1[LBUF] bit is asserted then the Mailbox indicated is the highest number active Tx Mailbox. If a Tx Mailbox is being transmitted it is not considered in LPTM calculation. If CAN_ESR2[IMB] is not asserted and a frame is transmitted successfully, LPTM is updated with its Mailbox number.
15 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
14 VPS	Valid Priority Status This bit indicates whether CAN_ESR2[IMB] and CAN_ESR2[LPTM] contents are currently valid or not. It is asserted upon every complete Tx arbitration process unless the CPU writes to Control and Status word of a Mailbox that has already been scanned, that is, it is behind Tx Arbitration Pointer, during the Tx arbitration process. If there is no inactive Mailbox and only one Tx Mailbox that is being transmitted then VPS is not asserted. This bit is negated upon the start of every Tx arbitration process or upon a write to Control and Status word of any Mailbox. NOTE: CAN_ESR2[VPS] is not affected by any CPU write into Control Status (C/S) of a MB that is blocked by abort mechanism. When CAN_MCR[AEN] is asserted, the abort code write in C/S of a MB that is being transmitted (pending abort), or any write attempt into a Tx MB with CAN_IFLAG set is blocked. 0 Contents of IMB and LPTM are invalid. 1 Contents of IMB and LPTM are valid.
13 IMB	Inactive Mailbox If ESR2[VPS] is asserted, this bit indicates whether there is any inactive Mailbox (CODE field is either 0b1000 or 0b0000). This bit is asserted in the following cases:

Table continues on the next page...

CANx_ESR2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> During arbitration, if an CAN_ESR2[LPTM] is found and it is inactive. If CAN_ESR2[IMB] is not asserted and a frame is transmitted successfully. <p>This bit is cleared in all start of arbitration (see Section "Arbitration process").</p> <p>NOTE: CAN_ESR2[LPTM] mechanism have the following behavior: if an MB is successfully transmitted and CAN_ESR2[IMB]=0 (no inactive Mailbox), then CAN_ESR2[VPS] and CAN_ESR2[IMB] are asserted and the index related to the MB just transmitted is loaded into CAN_ESR2[LPTM].</p> <p>0 If ESR2[VPS] is asserted, the ESR2[LPTM] is not an inactive Mailbox. 1 If ESR2[VPS] is asserted, there is at least one inactive Mailbox. LPTM content is the number of the first one.</p>
Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>

53.4.14 CRC Register (CANx_CRCCR)

This register provides information about the CRC of transmitted messages. This register is updated at the same time the Tx Interrupt Flag is asserted.

Address: Base address + 44h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0									MBCRC						
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0	TXCRC														
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

CANx_CRCCR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–23 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
22–16 MBCRC	<p>CRC Mailbox</p> <p>This field indicates the number of the Mailbox corresponding to the value in CAN_CRCCR[TXCRC] field.</p>
15 Reserved	<p>This field is reserved.</p> <p>This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.</p>
TXCRC	<p>Transmitted CRC value</p> <p>This field indicates the CRC value of the last transmitted message.</p>

53.4.15 Rx FIFO Global Mask register (CANx_RXFGMASK)

This register is located in RAM.

If Rx FIFO is enabled, RXFGMASK is used to mask the Rx FIFO ID Filter Table elements that do not have a corresponding RXIMR according to CAN_CTRL2[RFFN] field setting.

This register can only be written in Freeze mode as it is blocked by hardware in other modes.

Address: Base address + 48h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																
	FGM																															
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:

- x = Undefined at reset.

CANx_RXFGMASK field descriptions

Field	Description																																		
FGM	<p>Rx FIFO Global Mask Bits</p> <p>These bits mask the ID Filter Table elements bits in a perfect alignment.</p> <p>The following table shows how the FGM bits correspond to each IDAF field.</p> <table><tr><th rowspan="2">Rx FIFO ID Filter Table Elements Format (CAN_MCR[IDAM])</th><th colspan="6">Identifier Acceptance Filter Fields</th></tr><tr><th>RTR</th><th>IDE</th><th>RXIDA</th><th>RXIDB ¹</th><th>RXIDC ²</th><th>Reserved</th></tr><tr><td>A</td><td>FGM[31]</td><td>FGM[30]</td><td>FGM[29:1]</td><td>-</td><td>-</td><td>FGM[0]</td></tr><tr><td>B</td><td>FGM[31], FGM[15]</td><td>FGM[30], FGM[14]</td><td>-</td><td>FGM[29:16], FGM[13:0]</td><td></td><td>-</td></tr><tr><td>C</td><td>-</td><td>-</td><td></td><td>-</td><td>FGM[31:24], FGM[23:16], FGM[15:8], FGM[7:0]</td><td></td></tr></table> <p>0 The corresponding bit in the filter is "don't care."</p> <p>1 The corresponding bit in the filter is checked.</p>	Rx FIFO ID Filter Table Elements Format (CAN_MCR[IDAM])	Identifier Acceptance Filter Fields						RTR	IDE	RXIDA	RXIDB ¹	RXIDC ²	Reserved	A	FGM[31]	FGM[30]	FGM[29:1]	-	-	FGM[0]	B	FGM[31], FGM[15]	FGM[30], FGM[14]	-	FGM[29:16], FGM[13:0]		-	C	-	-		-	FGM[31:24], FGM[23:16], FGM[15:8], FGM[7:0]	
Rx FIFO ID Filter Table Elements Format (CAN_MCR[IDAM])	Identifier Acceptance Filter Fields																																		
	RTR	IDE	RXIDA	RXIDB ¹	RXIDC ²	Reserved																													
A	FGM[31]	FGM[30]	FGM[29:1]	-	-	FGM[0]																													
B	FGM[31], FGM[15]	FGM[30], FGM[14]	-	FGM[29:16], FGM[13:0]		-																													
C	-	-		-	FGM[31:24], FGM[23:16], FGM[15:8], FGM[7:0]																														

1. If CAN_MCR[IDAM] field is equivalent to the format B only the fourteen most significant bits of the Identifier of the incoming frame are compared with the Rx FIFO filter.
2. If CAN_MCR[IDAM] field is equivalent to the format C only the eight most significant bits of the Identifier of the incoming frame are compared with the Rx FIFO filter.

53.4.16 Rx FIFO Information Register (CANx_RXFIR)

RXFIR provides information on Rx FIFO.

This register is the port through which the CPU accesses the output of the RXFIR FIFO located in RAM. The RXFIR FIFO is written by the FlexCAN whenever a new message is moved into the Rx FIFO as well as its output is updated whenever the output of the Rx FIFO is updated with the next message. See Section "Rx FIFO" for instructions on reading this register.

Address: Base address + 4Ch offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																IDHIT															
W																																
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	

- * Notes:
- x = Undefined at reset.

CANx_RXFIR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–9 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
IDHIT	Identifier Acceptance Filter Hit Indicator This field indicates which Identifier Acceptance Filter was hit by the received message that is in the output of the Rx FIFO. If multiple filters match the incoming message ID then the first matching IDAF found (lowest number) by the matching process is indicated. This field is valid only while the CAN_IFLAG1[BUF5I] is asserted.

53.4.17 CAN Bit Timing Register (CANx_CBT)

This register is an alternative way to store the CAN bit timing variables described in CAN_CTRL1 register. EPRESDIV, EPROPSEG, EPSEG1, EPSEG2 and ERJW are extended versions of PRESDIV, PROPSEG, PSEG1, PSEG2 and RJW bit fields respectively.

The BTF bit selects the use of the timing variables defined in this register.

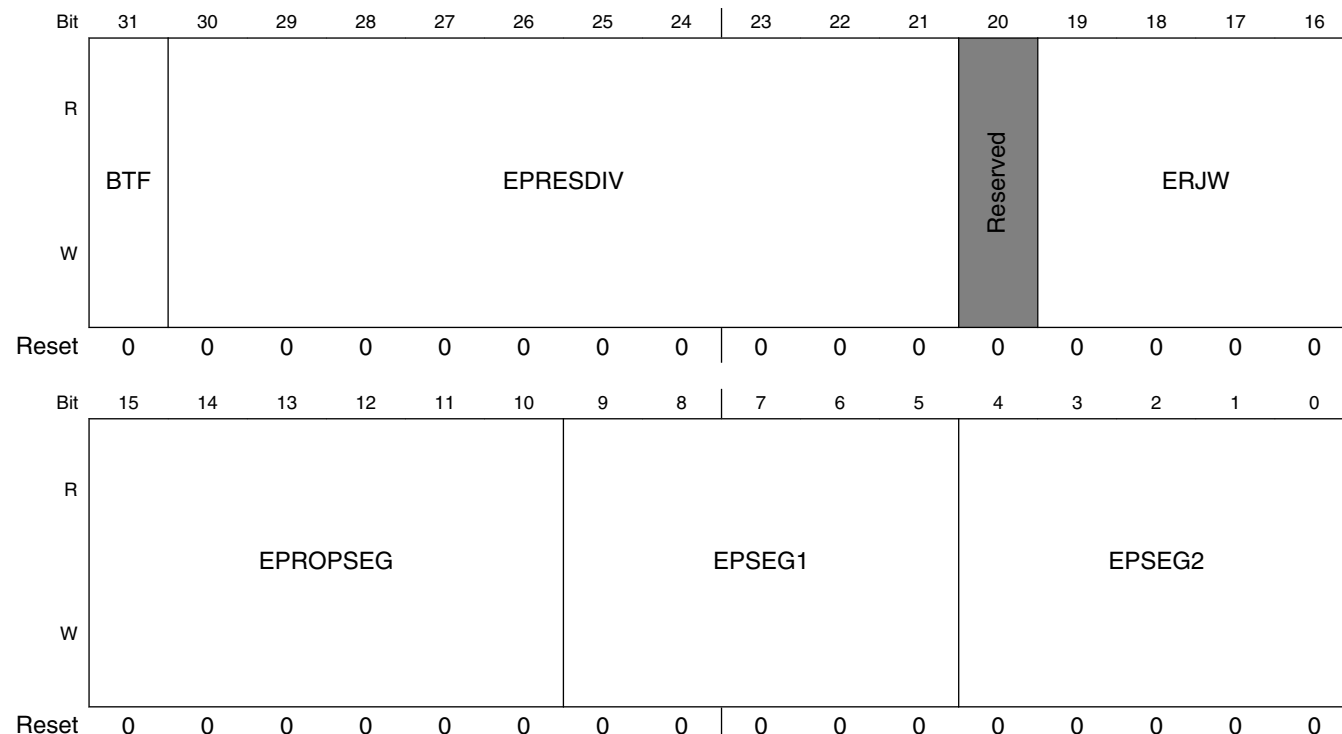
The contents of this register are not affected by soft reset.

NOTE

The CAN bit variables in CAN_CTRL1 and in CAN_CBT are stored in the same register.

memory map/register definition

Address: Base address + 50h offset



CANx_CBT field descriptions

Field	Description
31 BTF	<p>Bit Timing Format Enable</p> <p>Enables the use of extended CAN bit timing fields EPRES DIV, EPROPSEG, EPSEG1, EPSEG2 and ERJW replacing the CAN bit timing variables defined in CAN_CTRL1 register. This field can be written in Freeze mode only.</p> <p>0 Extended bit time definitions disabled. 1 Extended bit time definitions enabled.</p>
30–21 EPRES DIV	<p>Extended Prescaler Division Factor</p> <p>This 10-bit field defines the ratio between the PE clock frequency and the Serial Clock (Sclck) frequency when CAN_CBT[BTF] bit is asserted, otherwise it has no effect. It extends the CAN_CTRL1[PRES DIV] value range.</p> <p>The Sclck period defines the time quantum of the CAN protocol. For the reset value, the Sclck frequency is equal to the PE clock frequency (see Protocol timing). This field can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes.</p> <p>$Sclck\ frequency = PE\ clock\ frequency / (EPRES DIV + 1)$</p>
20 Reserved	This field is reserved.
19–16 ERJW	<p>Extended Resync Jump Width</p> <p>This 4-bit field defines the maximum number of time quanta that a bit time can be changed by one re-synchronization when CAN_CBT[BTF] bit is asserted, otherwise it has no effect. It extends the CAN_CTRL1[RJW] value range.</p> <p>One time quantum is equal to the Sclck period. This field can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes.</p>

Table continues on the next page...

CANx_CBT field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Resync Jump Width = ERJW + 1.
15–10 EPROPSEG	<p>Extended Propagation Segment</p> <p>This 6-bit field defines the length of the Propagation Segment in the bit time when CAN_CBT[BTF] bit is asserted, otherwise it has no effect. It extends the CAN_CTRL1[PROPSEG] value range. This field can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes.</p> <p>Propagation Segment Time = (EPROPSEG + 1) × Time-Quanta.</p> <p>Time-Quantum = one Sclock period.</p>
9–5 EPSEG1	<p>Extended Phase Segment 1</p> <p>This 5-bit field defines the length of Phase Segment 1 in the bit time when CAN_CBT[BTF] bit is asserted, otherwise it has no effect. It extends the CAN_CTRL1[PSEG1] value range. This field can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes.</p> <p>Phase Buffer Segment 1 = (EPSEG1 + 1) × Time-Quanta.</p> <p>Time-Quantum = one Sclock period.</p>
EPSEG2	<p>Extended Phase Segment 2</p> <p>This 5-bit field defines the length of Phase Segment 2 in the bit time when CAN_CBT[BTF] bit is asserted, otherwise it has no effect. It extends the CAN_CTRL1[PSEG2] value range. This field can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes.</p> <p>Phase Buffer Segment 1 = (EPSEG2 + 1) × Time-Quanta.</p> <p>Time-Quantum = one Sclock period.</p>

53.4.18 Rx Individual Mask Registers (CANx_RXIMRn)

The RX Individual Mask Registers are used to store the acceptance masks for ID filtering in Rx MBs and the Rx FIFO.

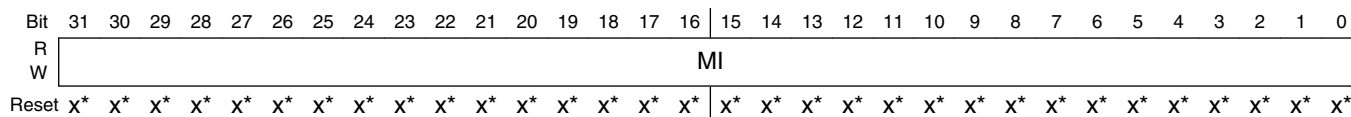
When the Rx FIFO is disabled (CAN_MCR[RFEN] bit is negated), an individual mask is provided for each available Rx Mailbox on a one-to-one correspondence. When the Rx FIFO is enabled (CAN_MCR[RFEN] bit is asserted), an individual mask is provided for each Rx FIFO ID Filter Table Element on a one-to-one correspondence depending on the setting of CAN_CTRL2[RFFN] (see [Rx FIFO](#)).

CAN_RXIMR0 stores the individual mask associated to either MB0 or ID Filter Table Element 0, CAN_RXIMR1 stores the individual mask associated to either MB1 or ID Filter Table Element 1 and so on.

CAN_RXIMR registers can only be accessed by the CPU while the module is in Freeze mode, otherwise, they are blocked by hardware. These registers are not affected by reset. They are located in RAM and must be explicitly initialized prior to any reception.

memory map/register definition

Address: Base address + 880h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 15d



* Notes:

- $x = \text{Undefined}$ at reset.

CANx_RXIMRn field descriptions

Field	Description
MI	<p>Individual Mask Bits</p> <p>Each Individual Mask Bit masks the corresponding bit in both the Mailbox filter and Rx FIFO ID Filter Table element in distinct ways.</p> <p>For Mailbox filters, see the RXMGMASK register description.</p> <p>For Rx FIFO ID Filter Table elements, see the RXFGMASK register description.</p> <p>0 The corresponding bit in the filter is "don't care."</p> <p>1 The corresponding bit in the filter is checked.</p>

53.4.70 Message buffer structure

The message buffer structure used by the FlexCAN module is represented in the following figure. Both Extended (29-bit identifier) and Standard (11-bit identifier) frames used in the CAN specification (Version 2.0 Part B) are represented. Each individual MB is formed by 16 bytes.

The memory area from 0x80 to 0x17F is used by the mailboxes.

Table 53-3. Message buffer structure

	31	30	29	28	27	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	8	7	0	
0x0	EDL	BRS	ESI		CODE		SRR	IDE	RTR	DLC					TIME STAMP				
0x4	PRIO			ID (Standard/Extended)										ID (Extended)					
0x8	Data Byte 0						Data Byte 1						Data Byte 2			Data Byte 3			
0xC	Data Byte 4						Data Byte 5						Data Byte 6			Data Byte 7			
	= Unimplemented or Reserved																		

CODE - Message Buffer Code

This 4-bit field can be accessed (read or write) by the CPU and by the FlexCAN module itself, as part of the message buffer matching and arbitration process. The encoding is shown in [Table 53-4](#) and [Table 53-5](#). See [Functional description](#) for additional information.

Table 53-4. Message buffer code for Rx buffers

CODE description	Rx code BEFORE receive new frame	SRV ¹	Rx code AFTER successful reception ²	RRS ³	Comment
0b0000: INACTIVE - MB is not active.	INACTIVE	-	-	-	MB does not participate in the matching process.
0b0100: EMPTY - MB is active and empty.	EMPTY	-	FULL	-	When a frame is received successfully (after the Move-in process), the CODE field is automatically updated to FULL.
0b0010: FULL - MB is full.	FULL	Yes	FULL	-	The act of reading the C/S word followed by unlocking the MB (SRV) does not make the code return to EMPTY. It remains FULL. If a new frame is moved to the MB after the MB was serviced, the code still remains FULL. See Matching process for matching details related to FULL code.
		No	OVERRUN	-	If the MB is FULL and a new frame is moved to this MB before the CPU services it, the CODE field is automatically updated to OVERRUN. See Matching process for details about overrun behavior.
0b0110: OVERRUN - MB is being overwritten into a full buffer.	OVERRUN	Yes	FULL	-	If the CODE field indicates OVERRUN and CPU has serviced

Table continues on the next page...

Table 53-4. Message buffer code for Rx buffers (continued)

CODE description	Rx code BEFORE receive new frame	SRV ¹	Rx code AFTER successful reception ²	RRS ³	Comment
					the MB, when a new frame is moved to the MB then the code returns to FULL.
		No	OVERRUN	-	If the CODE field already indicates OVERRUN, and another new frame must be moved, the MB will be overwritten again, and the code will remain OVERRUN. See Matching process for details about overrun behavior.
0b1010: RANSWER ⁴ - A frame was configured to recognize a Remote Request Frame and transmit a Response Frame in return.	RANSWER	-	TANSWER(0b1110)	0	A Remote Answer was configured to recognize a remote request frame received. After that an MB is set to transmit a response frame. The code is automatically changed to TANSWER (0b1110). See Matching process for details. If CAN_CTRL2[RRS] is negated, transmit a response frame whenever a remote request frame with the same ID is received.
		-	-	1	This code is ignored during matching and arbitration process. See Matching process for details.
CODE[0]=1: BUSY - FlexCAN is updating the contents of the MB. The CPU must not access the MB.	BUSY ⁵	-	FULL	-	Indicates that the MB is being updated. It will be negated automatically and does not interfere
		-	OVERRUN	-	

Table 53-4. Message buffer code for Rx buffers

CODE description	Rx code BEFORE receive new frame	SRV ¹	Rx code AFTER successful reception ²	RRS ³	Comment
					with the next CODE.

1. SRV: Serviced MB. MB was read and unlocked by reading TIMER or other MB.
2. A frame is considered a successful reception after the frame to be moved to MB (move-in process). See [Move-in](#) for details.
3. Remote Request Stored bit, see "Control 2 Register (CAN_CTRL2)" for details.
4. Code 0b1010 is not considered Tx and an MB with this code should not be aborted.
5. Note that for Tx MBs, the BUSY bit should be ignored upon read, except when AEN bit is set in the MCR register. If this bit is asserted, the corresponding MB does not participate in the matching process.

Table 53-5. Message buffer code for Tx buffers

CODE Description	Tx Code BEFORE tx frame	MB RTR	Tx Code AFTER successful transmission	Comment
0b1000: INACTIVE - MB is not active	INACTIVE	-	-	MB does not participate in arbitration process.
0b1001: ABORT - MB is aborted	ABORT	-	-	MB does not participate in arbitration process.
0b1100: DATA - MB is a Tx Data Frame (MB RTR must be 0)	DATA	0	INACTIVE	Transmit data frame unconditionally once. After transmission, the MB automatically returns to the INACTIVE state.
0b1100: REMOTE - MB is a Tx Remote Request Frame (MB RTR must be 1)	REMOTE	1	EMPTY	Transmit remote request frame unconditionally once. After transmission, the MB automatically becomes an Rx Empty MB with the same ID.
0b1110: TANSWER - MB is a Tx Response Frame from an incoming Remote Request Frame	TANSWER	-	RANSWER	This is an intermediate code that is automatically written to the MB by the CHI as a result of a match to a remote request frame. The remote response frame will be transmitted unconditionally once, and then the code will automatically return to RANSWER (0b1010). The CPU can also write this code with the same effect. The remote response frame can be either a data frame or

Table 53-5. Message buffer code for Tx buffers

CODE Description	Tx Code BEFORE tx frame	MB RTR	Tx Code AFTER successful transmission	Comment
				another remote request frame depending on the RTR bit value. See Matching process and Arbitration process for details.

SRR - Substitute Remote Request

Fixed recessive bit, used only in extended format. It must be set to one by the user for transmission (Tx Buffers) and will be stored with the value received on the CAN bus for Rx receiving buffers. It can be received as either recessive or dominant. If FlexCAN receives this bit as dominant, then it is interpreted as an arbitration loss.

1 = Recessive value is compulsory for transmission in extended format frames

0 = Dominant is not a valid value for transmission in extended format frames

IDE - ID Extended Bit

This field identifies whether the frame format is standard or extended.

1 = Frame format is extended

0 = Frame format is standard

RTR - Remote Transmission Request

This bit affects the behavior of remote frames and is part of the reception filter. See [Table 53-4](#), [Table 53-5](#), and the description of the RRS bit in Control 2 Register (CAN_CTRL2) for additional details.

If FlexCAN transmits this bit as '1' (recessive) and receives it as '0' (dominant), it is interpreted as an arbitration loss. If this bit is transmitted as '0' (dominant), then if it is received as '1' (recessive), the FlexCAN module treats it as a bit error. If the value received matches the value transmitted, it is considered a successful bit transmission.

1 = Indicates the current MB may have a remote request frame to be transmitted if MB is Tx. If the MB is Rx then incoming remote request frames may be stored.

0 = Indicates the current MB has a data frame to be transmitted. In Rx MB it may be considered in matching processes.

DLC - Length of Data in Bytes

This 4-bit field is the length (in bytes) of the Rx or Tx data, which is located in offset 0x8 through 0xF of the MB space (see [Table 53-3](#)). In reception, this field is written by the FlexCAN module, copied from the DLC (Data Length Code) field of the received frame. In transmission, this field is written by the CPU and corresponds to the DLC field value of the frame to be transmitted. When RTR = 1, the frame to be transmitted is a remote frame and does not include the data field, regardless of the DLC field (see [Table 53-6](#)).

TIME STAMP - Free-Running Counter Time Stamp

This 16-bit field is a copy of the Free-Running Timer, captured for Tx and Rx frames at the time when the beginning of the Identifier field appears on the CAN bus.

PRIO - Local priority

This 3-bit field is used only when LPRIO_EN bit is set in CAN_MCR, and it only makes sense for Tx mailboxes. These bits are not transmitted. They are appended to the regular ID to define the transmission priority. See [Arbitration process](#).

ID - Frame Identifier

In standard frame format, only the 11 most significant bits (28 to 18) are used for frame identification in both receive and transmit cases. The 18 least significant bits are ignored. In extended frame format, all bits are used for frame identification in both receive and transmit cases.

DATA BYTE 0 to 7 - Data Field

Up to eight bytes can be used for a data frame.

For Rx frames, the data is stored as it is received from the CAN bus. DATA BYTE (*n*) is valid only if *n* is less than DLC as shown in the table below.

Table 53-6. DATA BYTEs validity

DLC	Valid DATA BYTEs
0	none
1	DATA BYTE 0
2	DATA BYTE 0 to 1
3	DATA BYTE 0 to 2
4	DATA BYTE 0 to 3
5	DATA BYTE 0 to 4
6	DATA BYTE 0 to 5
7	DATA BYTE 0 to 6
8 or above	DATA BYTE 0 to 7

53.4.71 Rx FIFO structure

When the CAN_MCR[RFEN] bit is set, the memory area from 0x80 to 0xDC (which is normally occupied by MBs 0–5) is used by the reception FIFO engine.

The region 0x80-0x8C contains the output of the FIFO which must be read by the CPU as a message buffer. This output contains the oldest message that has been received but not yet read. The region 0x90-0xDC is reserved for internal use of the FIFO engine.

An additional memory area, which starts at 0xE0 and may extend up to 0x17C (normally occupied by MBs 6–15) depending on the CAN_CTRL2[RFFN] field setting, contains the ID filter table (configurable from 8 to 40 table elements) that specifies filtering criteria for accepting frames into the FIFO.

Out of reset, the ID filter table flexible memory area defaults to 0xE0 and extends only to 0xFC, which corresponds to MBs 6 to 7 for RFFN = 0, for backward compatibility with previous versions of FlexCAN.

The following shows the Rx FIFO data structure.

Table 53-7. Rx FIFO structure

	31	28	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	8	7	0	
0x80	IDHIT				SRR	IDE	RTR	DLC				TIME STAMP				
0x84		ID standard								ID extended						
0x88	Data byte 0				Data byte 1								Data byte 2		Data byte 3	
0x8C	Data byte 4				Data byte 5								Data byte 6		Data byte 7	
0x90	Reserved															
to																
0xDC																
0xE0	ID filter table element 0															
0xE4	ID filter table element 1															
0xE8	ID filter table elements 2 to 125															
to																
0x2D4																
0x2D8	ID filter table element 126															
0x2DC	ID filter table element 127															
		= Unimplemented or reserved														

Each ID filter table element occupies an entire 32-bit word and can be compounded by one, two, or four Identifier Acceptance Filters (IDAF) depending on the CAN_MCR[IDAM] field setting. The following figures show the IDAF indexation.

The following table shows the three different formats of the ID table elements. Note that all elements of the table must have the same format. See [Rx FIFO](#) for more information.

Table 53-8. ID table structure

Format	31	30	29	24	23	16	15	14	13	8	7	1	0
A	RTR	IDE	RXIDA (standard = 29–19, extended = 29–1)										
B	RTR	IDE	RXIDB_0 (standard = 29–19, extended = 29–16)				RTR	IDE	RXIDB_1 (standard = 13–3, extended = 13–0)				
C	RXIDC_0 (std/ext = 31–24)				RXIDC_1 (std/ext = 23–16)			RXIDC_2 (std/ext = 15–8)				RXIDC_3 (std/ext = 7–0)	
	= Unimplemented or Reserved												

RTR — Remote Frame

This bit specifies if Remote Frames are accepted into the FIFO if they match the target ID.

1 = Remote Frames can be accepted and data frames are rejected

0 = Remote Frames are rejected and data frames can be accepted

IDE — Extended Frame

Specifies whether extended or standard frames are accepted into the FIFO if they match the target ID.

1 = Extended frames can be accepted and standard frames are rejected

0 = Extended frames are rejected and standard frames can be accepted

RXIDA — Rx Frame Identifier (Format A)

Specifies an ID to be used as acceptance criteria for the FIFO. In the standard frame format, only the 11 most significant bits (29 to 19) are used for frame identification. In the extended frame format, all bits are used.

RXIDB_0, RXIDB_1 — Rx Frame Identifier (Format B)

Specifies an ID to be used as acceptance criteria for the FIFO. In the standard frame format, the 11 most significant bits (a full standard ID) (29 to 19 and 13 to 3) are used for frame identification. In the extended frame format, all 14 bits of the field are compared to the 14 most significant bits of the received ID.

RXIDC_0, RXIDC_1, RXIDC_2, RXIDC_3 — Rx Frame Identifier (Format C)

Specifies an ID to be used as acceptance criteria for the FIFO. In both standard and extended frame formats, all 8 bits of the field are compared to the 8 most significant bits of the received ID.

IDHIT — Identifier Acceptance Filter Hit Indicator

This 9-bit field indicates which Identifier Acceptance Filter was hit by the received message that is in the output of the Rx FIFO. See [Rx FIFO](#) for more information.

53.5 Functional description

The FlexCAN module is a CAN protocol engine with a very flexible mailbox system for transmitting and receiving CAN frames. The mailbox system is composed by a set of Message Buffers (MB) that store configuration and control data, time stamp, message ID and data (see [Message buffer structure](#)). The memory corresponding to the first 38 MBs can be configured to support a FIFO reception scheme with a powerful ID filtering mechanism, capable of checking incoming frames against a table of IDs (up to 128 extended IDs or 256 standard IDs or 512 8-bit ID slices), with individual mask register for up to 32 ID Filter Table elements.

Simultaneous reception through FIFO and mailbox is supported. For mailbox reception, a matching algorithm makes it possible to store received frames only into MBs that have the same ID programmed on its ID field. A masking scheme makes it possible to match the ID programmed on the MB with a range of IDs on received CAN frames. For transmission, an arbitration algorithm decides the prioritization of MBs to be transmitted based on the message ID (optionally augmented by 3 local priority bits) or the MB ordering.

Before proceeding with the functional description, an important concept must be explained. A Message Buffer is said to be "active" at a given time if it can participate in both the Matching and Arbitration processes. An Rx MB with a 0b0000 code is inactive (refer to [Table 53-4](#)). Similarly, a Tx MB with a 0b1000 or 0b1001 code is also inactive (refer to [Table 53-5](#)).

53.5.1 Transmit process

To transmit a CAN frame, the CPU must prepare a Message Buffer for transmission by executing the following procedure:

1. Check whether the respective interrupt bit is set and clear it.

2. If the MB is active (transmission pending), write the ABORT code (0b1001) to the CODE field of the Control and Status word to request an abortion of the transmission. Wait for the corresponding IFLAG bit to be asserted by polling the CAN_IFLAG register or by the interrupt request if enabled by the respective IMASK bit. Then read back the CODE field to check if the transmission was aborted or transmitted (see [Transmission abort mechanism](#)). If backwards compatibility is desired (CAN_MCR[AEN] bit is negated), just write the INACTIVE code (0b1000) to the CODE field to inactivate the MB but then the pending frame may be transmitted without notification (see [Mailbox inactivation](#)).
3. Write the ID word.
4. Write the data bytes.
5. Write the DLC, Control, and CODE fields of the Control and Status word to activate the MB.

When the MB is activated, it participates in the arbitration process and is eventually transmitted according to its priority.

At the end of the successful transmission, the value of the Free Running Timer is written into the Time Stamp field, the CODE field in the Control and Status word is updated, the CRC Register is updated, a status flag is set in the Interrupt Flag Register and an interrupt is generated if allowed by the corresponding Interrupt Mask Register bit. The new CODE field after transmission depends on the code that was used to activate the MB (see [Table 53-4](#) and [Table 53-5](#) in [Message buffer structure](#)).

When the Abort feature is enabled (CAN_MCR[AEN] is asserted), after the Interrupt Flag is asserted for a Mailbox configured as transmit buffer, the Mailbox is blocked. Therefore the CPU is not able to update it until the Interrupt Flag is negated by CPU. This means that the CPU must clear the corresponding IFLAG bit before starting to prepare this MB for a new transmission or reception.

53.5.2 Arbitration process

The arbitration process scans the Mailboxes searching the Tx one that holds the message to be sent in the next opportunity. This Mailbox is called the *arbitration winner*.

The scan starts from the lowest number Mailbox and runs toward the higher ones.

The arbitration process is triggered in the following events:

- From the CRC field of the CAN frame. The start point depends on the CAN_CTRL2[TASD] field value.

- During the Error Delimiter field of a CAN frame.
- During the Overload Delimiter field of a CAN frame.
- When the winner is inactivated and the CAN bus has still not reached the first bit of the Intermission field.
- When there is CPU write to the C/S word of a winner MB and the CAN bus has still not reached the first bit of the Intermission field.
- When CHI is in Idle state and the CPU writes to the C/S word of any MB.
- When FlexCAN exits Bus Off state.
- Upon leaving Freeze mode or Low Power mode.

If the arbitration process does not manage to evaluate all Mailboxes before the CAN bus has reached the first bit of the Intermission field the temporary arbitration winner is invalidated and the FlexCAN will not compete for the CAN bus in the next opportunity.

The arbitration process selects the winner among the active Tx Mailboxes at the end of the scan according to both CAN_CTRL1[LBUF] and CAN_MCR[LPRIOEN] bits settings.

53.5.2.1 Lowest-number Mailbox first

If CAN_CTRL1[LBUF] bit is asserted the first (lowest number) active Tx Mailbox found is the arbitration winner. CAN_MCR[LPRIOEN] bit has no effect when CAN_CTRL1[LBUF] is asserted.

53.5.2.2 Highest-priority Mailbox first

If CAN_CTRL1[LBUF] bit is negated, then the arbitration process searches the active Tx Mailbox with the highest priority, which means that this Mailbox's frame would have a higher probability to win the arbitration on CAN bus when multiple external nodes compete for the bus at the same time.

The sequence of bits considered for this arbitration is called the *arbitration value* of the Mailbox. The highest-priority Tx Mailbox is the one that has the lowest arbitration value among all Tx Mailboxes.

If two or more Mailboxes have equivalent arbitration values, the Mailbox with the lowest number is the arbitration winner.

The composition of the arbitration value depends on CAN_MCR[LPRIOEN] bit setting.

53.5.2.2.1 Local Priority disabled

If CAN_MCR[LPRIOEN] bit is negated the arbitration value is built in the exact sequence of bits as they would be transmitted in a CAN frame (see the following table) in such a way that the Local Priority is disabled.

Table 53-9. Composition of the arbitration value when Local Priority is disabled

Format	Mailbox Arbitration Value (32 bits)				
Standard (IDE = 0)	Standard ID (11 bits)	RTR (1 bit)	IDE (1 bit)	- (18 bits)	- (1 bit)
Extended (IDE = 1)	Extended ID[28:18] (11 bits)	SRR (1 bit)	IDE (1 bit)	Extended ID[17:0] (18 bits)	RTR (1 bit)

53.5.2.2.2 Local Priority enabled

If Local Priority is desired CAN_MCR[LPRIOEN] must be asserted. In this case the Mailbox PRIO field is included at the very left of the arbitration value (see the following table).

Table 53-10. Composition of the arbitration value when Local Priority is enabled

Format	Mailbox Arbitration Value (35 bits)					
Standard (IDE = 0)	PRIO (3 bits)	Standard ID (11 bits)	RTR (1 bit)	IDE (1 bit)	- (18 bits)	- (1 bit)
Extended (IDE = 1)	PRIO (3 bits)	Extended ID[28:18] (11 bits)	SRR (1 bit)	IDE (1 bit)	Extended ID[17:0] (18 bits)	RTR (1 bit)

As the PRIO field is the most significant part of the arbitration value Mailboxes with low PRIO values have higher priority than Mailboxes with high PRIO values regardless the rest of their arbitration values.

Note that the PRIO field is not part of the frame on the CAN bus. Its purpose is only to affect the internal arbitration process.

53.5.2.3 Arbitration process (continued)

After the arbitration winner is found, its content is copied to a hidden auxiliary MB called Tx Serial Message Buffer (Tx SMB), which has the same structure as a normal MB but is not user accessible. This operation is called move-out and after it is done, write access to the C/S word of the corresponding MB is blocked (if the AEN bit in CAN_MCR register is asserted). Write access is restored in the following events:

- After the MB is transmitted and the corresponding IFLAG bit is cleared by the CPU
- FlexCAN enters in Freeze mode or Bus Off
- FlexCAN loses the bus arbitration or there is an error during the transmission

At the first opportunity window on the CAN bus, the message on the Tx SMB is transmitted according to the CAN protocol rules.

Arbitration process can be triggered in the following situations:

- During Rx and Tx frames from CAN CRC field to end of frame. CAN_CTRL2[TASD] bit value may be changed to optimize the arbitration start point.
- During CAN BusOff state from TX_ERR_CNT=124 to 128. CAN_CTRL2[TASD] bit value may be changed to optimize the arbitration start point.
- During C/S write by CPU in BusIdle. First C/S write starts arbitration process and a second C/S write during this same arbitration restarts the process. If other C/S writes are performed, Tx arbitration process is pending. If there is no arbitration winner after the arbitration process has finished, then the TX arbitration machine begins a new arbitration process. If there is a pending arbitration and BusIdle state starts then an arbitration process is triggered. In this case the first and second C/S write in BusIdle will not restart the arbitration process. It is possible that there is not enough time to finish arbitration in WaitForBusIdle state and the next state is Idle. In this case the scan is not interrupted, and it is completed during BusIdle state. During this arbitration C/S write does not cause arbitration restart.
- Arbitration winner deactivation during a valid arbitration window.
- Upon exiting Freeze mode (first bit of the WaitForBusIdle state). If there is a re-synchronization during WaitForBusIdle, the arbitration process is restarted.

Arbitration process stops in the following situations:

- All Mailboxes were scanned
- A Tx active Mailbox is found in case of Lowest Buffer feature enabled
- Arbitration winner inactivation or abort during any arbitration process
- There was not enough time to finish Tx arbitration process (for instance, when a deactivation was performed near the end of frame). In this case arbitration process is pending.

- Error or Overload flag in the bus
- Low Power or Freeze mode request in Idle state

Arbitration is considered pending as described below:

- It was not possible to finish arbitration process in time
- C/S write during arbitration if write is performed in a MB whose number is lower than the Tx arbitration pointer
- Any C/S write if there is no Tx Arbitration process in progress
- Rx Match has just updated a Rx Code to Tx Code
- Entering Busoff state

C/S write during arbitration has the following effect:

- If C/S write is performed in the arbitration winner, a new process is restarted immediately.
- If C/S write is performed in a MB whose number is higher than the Tx arbitration pointer, the ongoing arbitration process will scan this MB as normal.

53.5.3 Receive process

To be able to receive CAN frames into a Mailbox, the CPU must prepare it for reception by executing the following steps:

1. If the Mailbox is active (either Tx or Rx) inactivate the Mailbox (see [Mailbox inactivation](#)), preferably with a safe inactivation (see [Transmission abort mechanism](#)).
2. Write the ID word
3. Write the EMPTY code (0b0100) to the CODE field of the Control and Status word to activate the Mailbox.

After the MB is activated, it will be able to receive frames that match the programmed filter. At the end of a successful reception, the Mailbox is updated by the *move-in* process (see [Move-in](#)) as follows:

1. The received Data field (8 bytes at most for Classical CAN message format) is stored.
2. The received Identifier field is stored.
3. The value of the Free Running Timer at the time of the second bit of frame's Identifier field is written into the Mailbox's Time Stamp field.

4. The received SRR, IDE, RTR and DLC fields are stored.
5. The CODE field in the Control and Status word is updated (see [Table 53-4](#) and [Table 53-5](#) in Section [Message buffer structure](#)).
6. A status flag is set in the Interrupt Flag Register and an interrupt is generated if allowed by the corresponding Interrupt Mask Register bit.

The recommended way for CPU servicing (read) the frame received in an Mailbox is using the following procedure:

1. Read the Control and Status word of that Mailbox.
2. Check if the BUSY bit is deasserted, indicating that the Mailbox is locked. Repeat step 1) while it is asserted. See [Mailbox lock mechanism](#).
3. Read the contents of the Mailbox. Once Mailbox is locked now, its contents won't be modified by FlexCAN Move-in processes. See [Move-in](#).
4. Acknowledge the proper flag at IFLAG registers.
5. Read the Free Running Timer. It is optional but recommended to unlock Mailbox as soon as possible and make it available for reception.

The CPU should poll for frame reception by the status flag bit for the specific Mailbox in one of the IFLAG Registers and not by the CODE field of that Mailbox. Polling the CODE field does not work because once a frame was received and the CPU services the Mailbox (by reading the C/S word followed by unlocking the Mailbox), the CODE field will not return to EMPTY. It will remain FULL, as explained in [Table 53-4](#) . If the CPU tries to workaround this behavior by writing to the C/S word to force an EMPTY code after reading the Mailbox without a prior *safe inactivation*, a newly received frame matching the filter of that Mailbox may be lost.

CAUTION

In summary: never do polling by reading directly the C/S word of the Mailboxes. Instead, read the IFLAG registers.

Note that the received frame's Identifier field is always stored in the matching Mailbox, thus the contents of the ID field in an Mailbox may change if the match was due to masking. When CAN_MCR[SRXDIS] bit is asserted, FlexCAN will not store frames transmitted by itself in any MB, even if it contains a matching Rx Mailbox, and no interrupt flag or interrupt signal will be generated. Otherwise, when CAN_MCR[SRXDIS] bit is deasserted, FlexCAN can receive frames transmitted by itself if there exists a matching Rx Mailbox.

To be able to receive CAN frames through the Rx FIFO, the CPU must enable and configure the Rx FIFO during Freeze mode (see [Rx FIFO](#)). Upon receiving the Frames Available in Rx FIFO interrupt (see the description of the BUF5I bit "Frames available in Rx FIFO" bit in the CAN_IFLAG1 register), the CPU should service the received frame using the following procedure:

1. Read the Control and Status word (optional: needed only if a mask was used for IDE and RTR bits)
2. Read the ID field (optional: needed only if a mask was used)
3. Read the Data field
4. Read the CAN_RXFIR register (optional)
5. Clear the Frames Available in Rx FIFO interrupt by writing 1 to CAN_IFLAG1[BUF5I] bit (mandatory: releases the MB and allows the CPU to read the next Rx FIFO entry)

When CAN_MCR[DMA] is asserted, upon receiving a frame in FIFO, CAN_IFLAG1[BUF5I] generates a DMA request and does not generate a CPU interrupt (see [Rx FIFO under DMA Operation](#)). The CAN_IMASK1 bits in Rx FIFO region are not used.

The DMA controller must service the received frame using the following procedure:

1. Read the Control and Status word (read 0x80 address, optional)
2. Read the ID field (read 0x84 address, optional)
3. Read all Data Bytes (start read at 0x88 address, optional)
4. Read the last Data Bytes (read 0x8C address is mandatory)

53.5.4 Matching process

The matching process scans the MB memory looking for Rx MBs programmed with the same ID as the one received from the CAN bus. If the FIFO is enabled, the priority of scanning can be selected between Mailboxes and FIFO filters. The matching starts from the lowest number Message Buffer toward the higher ones. If no match is found within the first structure then the other is scanned subsequently. In the event that the FIFO is full, the matching algorithm always looks for a matching MB outside the FIFO region.

As the frame is being received, it is stored in a hidden auxiliary MB called Rx Serial Message Buffer (Rx SMB).

The matching process start point depends on the following conditions:

- If the received frame is a remote frame, the start point is the CRC field of the frame
- If the received frame is a data frame with DLC field equal to zero, the start point is the CRC field of the frame
- If the received frame is a data frame with DLC field different than zero, the start point is the DATA field of the frame

If a matching ID is found in the FIFO table or in one of the Mailboxes, the contents of the Rx SMB are transferred to the FIFO or to the matched Mailbox by the move-in process. If any CAN protocol error is detected then no match results are transferred to the FIFO or to the matched Mailbox at the end of reception.

The matching process scans all matching elements of both Rx FIFO (if enabled) and the active Rx Mailboxes (CODE is EMPTY, FULL, OVERRUN or RANSWER) in search of a successful comparison with the matching elements of the Rx SMB that is receiving the frame on the CAN bus. The Rx SMB has the same structure of a Mailbox. The reception structures (Rx FIFO or Mailboxes) associated with the matching elements that had a successful comparison are the *matched structures*. The *matching winner* is selected at the end of the scan among those matched structures and depends on conditions described ahead. See the following table.

Table 53-11. Matching architecture

Structure	SMB[RTR]	CTRL2[RRS]	CTRL2[EAC EN]	MB[IDE]	MB[RTR]	MB[ID ¹]	MB[CODE]
Mailbox	0	-	0	cmp ²	no_cmp ³	cmp_msk ⁴	EMPTY or FULL or OVERRUN
Mailbox	0	-	1	cmp_msk	cmp_msk	cmp_msk	EMPTY or FULL or OVERRUN
Mailbox	1	0	-	cmp	no_cmp	cmp	RANSWER
Mailbox	1	1	0	cmp	no_cmp	cmp_msk	EMPTY or FULL or OVERRUN
Mailbox	1	1	1	cmp_msk	cmp_msk	cmp_msk	EMPTY or FULL or OVERRUN
FIFO ⁵	-	-	-	cmp_msk	cmp_msk	cmp_msk	-

1. For Mailbox structure, If SMB[IDE] is asserted, the ID is 29 bits (ID Standard + ID Extended). If SMB[IDE] is negated, the ID is only 11 bits (ID Standard). For FIFO structure, the ID depends on IDAM.
2. cmp: Compares the Rx SMB contents with the MB contents regardless the masks.
3. no_cmp: The Rx SMB contents are not compared with the MB contents.
4. cmp_msk: Compares the Rx SMB contents with MB contents taking into account the masks.
5. SMB[IDE] and SMB[RTR] are not taken into account when IDAM is type C.

A reception structure is *free-to-receive* when any of the following conditions is satisfied:

- The CODE field of the Mailbox is EMPTY
- The CODE field of the Mailbox is either FULL or OVERRUN and it has already been serviced (the C/S word was read by the CPU and unlocked as described in [Mailbox lock mechanism](#))
- The CODE field of the Mailbox is either FULL or OVERRUN and an inactivation (see [Mailbox inactivation](#)) is performed
- The Rx FIFO is not full

The scan order for Mailboxes and Rx FIFO is from the matching element with lowest number to the higher ones.

The matching winner search for Mailboxes is affected by the CAN_MCR[IRMQ] bit. If it is negated, the matching winner is the first matched Mailbox regardless if it is free-to-receive or not. If it is asserted, the matching winner is selected according to the priority below:

1. the first free-to-receive matched Mailbox;
2. the last non free-to-receive matched Mailbox.

It is possible to select the priority of scan between Mailboxes and Rx FIFO by the CAN_CTRL2[MRP] bit.

If the selected priority is Rx FIFO first:

- If the Rx FIFO is a matched structure and is free-to-receive, then the Rx FIFO is the matching winner regardless of the scan for Mailboxes
- Otherwise (the Rx FIFO is not a matched structure or is not free-to-receive), then the matching winner is searched among Mailboxes as described above

If the selected priority is Mailboxes first:

- If a free-to-receive matched Mailbox is found, it is the matching winner regardless of the scan for Rx FIFO
- If no matched Mailbox is found, then the matching winner is searched in the scan for the Rx FIFO
- If both conditions above are not satisfied and a non free-to-receive matched Mailbox is found, then the matching winner determination is conditioned by the CAN_MCR[IRMQ] bit:
 - If CAN_MCR[IRMQ] bit is negated, the matching winner is the first matched Mailbox
 - If CAN_MCR[IRMQ] bit is asserted, the matching winner is the Rx FIFO if it is a free-to-receive matched structure; otherwise, the matching winner is the last non free-to-receive matched Mailbox

See the following table for a summary of matching possibilities.

Table 53-12. Matching possibilities and resulting reception structures

RFEN	IRMQ	MRP	Matched in MB	Matched in FIFO	Reception structure	Description
No FIFO, only MB, match is always MB first						
0	0	X ¹	None ²	- ³	None	Frame lost by no match
0	0	X	Free ⁴	-	FirstMB	
0	1	X	None	-	None	Frame lost by no match
0	1	X	Free	-	FirstMb	
0	1	X	NotFree	-	LastMB	Overrun
FIFO enabled, no match in FIFO is as if FIFO does not exist						
1	0	X	None	None ⁵	None	Frame lost by no match
1	0	X	Free	None	FirstMB	
1	1	X	None	None	None	Frame lost by no match
1	1	X	Free	None	FirstMb	
1	1	X	NotFree	None	LastMB	Overrun
FIFO enabled, Queue disabled						
1	0	0	X	NotFull ⁶	FIFO	
1	0	0	None	Full ⁷	None	Frame lost by FIFO full (FIFO Overflow)
1	0	0	Free	Full	FirstMB	
1	0	0	NotFree	Full	FirstMB	
1	0	1	None	NotFull	FIFO	
1	0	1	None	Full	None	Frame lost by FIFO full (FIFO Overflow)
1	0	1	Free	X	FirstMB	
1	0	1	NotFree	X	FirtsMb	Overrun
FIFO enabled, Queue enabled						
1	1	0	X	NotFull	FIFO	
1	1	0	None	Full	None	Frame lost by FIFO full (FIFO Overflow)
1	1	0	Free	Full	FirstMB	
1	1	0	NotFree	Full	LastMb	Overrun
1	1	1	None	NotFull	FIFO	
1	1	1	Free	X	FirstMB	
1	1	1	NotFree	NotFull	FIFO	
1	1	1	NotFree	Full	LastMb	Overrun

1. This is a don't care condition.
2. Matched in MB "None" means that the frame has not matched any MB (free-to-receive or non-free-to-receive).
3. This is a forbidden condition.
4. Matched in MB "Free" means that the frame matched at least one MB free-to-receive regardless of whether it has matched MBs non-free-to-receive.
5. Matched in FIFO "None" means that the frame has not matched any filter in FIFO. It is as if the FIFO didn't exist (CAN_CTRL2[RFEN]=0).
6. Matched in FIFO "NotFull" means that the frame has matched a FIFO filter and has empty slots to receive it.
7. Matched in FIFO "Full" means that the frame has matched a FIFO filter but couldn't store it because it has no empty slots to receive it.

If a non-safe Mailbox inactivation (see [Mailbox inactivation](#)) occurs during matching process and the Mailbox inactivated is the temporary matching winner, then the temporary matching winner is invalidated. The matching elements scan is not stopped nor restarted, it continues normally. The consequence is that the current matching process works as if the matching elements compared before the inactivation did not exist, therefore a message may be lost.

Suppose, for example, that the FIFO is disabled, IRMQ is enabled and there are two MBs with the same ID, and FlexCAN starts receiving messages with that ID. Let us say that these MBs are the second and the fifth in the array. When the first message arrives, the matching algorithm finds the first match in MB number 2. The code of this MB is EMPTY, so the message is stored there. When the second message arrives, the matching algorithm finds MB number 2 again, but it is not "free-to-receive", so it keeps looking, finds MB number 5 and stores the message there. If yet another message with the same ID arrives, the matching algorithm finds out that there are no matching MBs that are "free-to-receive", so it decides to overwrite the last matched MB, which is number 5. In doing so, it sets the CODE field of the MB to indicate OVERRUN.

The ability to match the same ID in more than one MB can be exploited to implement a reception queue (in addition to the full featured FIFO) to allow more time for the CPU to service the MBs. By programming more than one MB with the same ID, received messages are queued into the MBs. The CPU can examine the Time Stamp field of the MBs to determine the order in which the messages arrived.

Matching to a range of IDs is possible by using ID Acceptance Masks. FlexCAN supports individual masking per MB. See the description of the Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN_RXIMRx). During the matching algorithm, if a mask bit is asserted, then the corresponding ID bit is compared. If the mask bit is negated, the corresponding ID bit is a "don't care". Note that the Individual Mask Registers are implemented in RAM, so they are not initialized out of reset. Also, they can only be programmed while the module is in Freeze mode; otherwise, they are blocked by hardware.

FlexCAN also supports an alternate masking scheme with only four mask registers (CAN_RXFGMASK, CAN_RXMGMASK, CAN_RX14MASK and CAN_RX15MASK) for backwards compatibility with legacy applications. This alternate masking scheme is enabled when the IRMQ bit in the CAN_MCR Register is negated.

53.5.5 Move process

There are two types of move process: move-in and move-out.

53.5.5.1 Move-in

The move-in process is the copy of a message received by an Rx SMB to a Rx Mailbox or FIFO that has matched it. If the move destination is the Rx FIFO, attributes of the message are also copied to the CAN_RXFIR FIFO. Each Rx SMB has its own move-in process, but only one is performed at a given time as described ahead. The move-in starts only when the message held by the Rx SMB has a corresponding matching winner (see [Matching process](#)) and all of the following conditions are true:

- The CAN bus has reached or let past either:
 - The second bit of Intermission field next to the frame that carried the message that is in the Rx SMB
 - The first bit of an overload frame next to the frame that carried the message that is in the Rx SMB
- There is no ongoing matching process
- The destination Mailbox is not locked by the CPU
- There is no ongoing move-in process from another Rx SMB. If more than one move-in processes are to be started at the same time both are performed and the newest substitutes the oldest.

The term *pending move-in* is used throughout the documentation and stands for a move-to-be that still does not satisfy all of the aforementioned conditions.

The move-in is cancelled and the Rx SMB is able to receive another message if any of the following conditions is satisfied:

- The destination Mailbox is inactivated after the CAN bus has reached the first bit of Intermission field next to the frame that carried the message and its matching process has finished
- There is a previous pending move-in to the same destination Mailbox
- The Rx SMB is receiving a frame transmitted by the FlexCAN itself and the self-reception is disabled (CAN_MCR[SRXDIS] bit is asserted)
- Any CAN protocol error is detected

Note that the pending move-in is not cancelled if the module enters Freeze or Low-Power mode. It only stays on hold waiting for exiting Freeze and Low-Power mode and to be unlocked. If an MB is unlocked during Freeze mode, the move-in happens immediately.

The move-in process is the execution by the FlexCAN of the following steps:

1. Push IDHIT into the RXFIR FIFO if the message is destined to the Rx FIFO.
2. Read DATA0-3 and DATA4-7 words from the Rx SMB.
3. Write DATA0-3 and DATA4-7 words to the Rx Mailbox
4. Read the Control/Status and ID words from the Rx SMB.
5. Write Control/Status and ID words to the Rx Mailbox, and update the CODE field.

The move-in process is not atomic, in such a way that it is immediately cancelled by the inactivation of the destination Mailbox (see [Mailbox inactivation](#)) and in this case the Mailbox may be left partially updated, thus incoherent. The exception is if the move-in destination is an Rx FIFO Message Buffer, then the process cannot be cancelled.

The BUSY Bit (least significant bit of the CODE field) of the destination Message Buffer is asserted while the move-in is being performed to alert the CPU that the Message Buffer content is temporarily incoherent.

53.5.5.2 Move-out

The move-out process is the copy of the content from a Tx Mailbox to the Tx SMB when a message for transmission is available (see Section "Arbitration process"). The move-out occurs in the following conditions:

- The first bit of Intermission field
- During Bus Off state when TX Error Counter is in the 124 to 128 range
- During Bus Idle state
- During Wait For Bus Idle state

The move-out process is not atomic. Only the CPU has priority to access the memory concurrently out of Bus Idle state. In Bus Idle, the move-out has the lowest priority to the concurrent memory accesses.

53.5.6 Data coherence

In order to maintain data coherency and FlexCAN proper operation, the CPU must obey the rules described in [Transmit process](#) and [Receive process](#).

53.5.6.1 Transmission abort mechanism

The abort mechanism provides a safe way to request the abortion of a pending transmission. A feedback mechanism is provided to inform the CPU if the transmission was aborted or if the frame could not be aborted and was transmitted instead.

Two primary conditions must be fulfilled in order to abort a transmission:

- CAN_MCR[AEN] bit must be asserted
- The first CPU action must be the writing of abort code (0b1001) into the CODE field of the Control and Status word.

Active MBs configured for transmission must be aborted first before they can be updated. If the abort code is written to a Mailbox that is currently being transmitted or to a Mailbox that was already loaded into the Tx SMB for transmission, the write operation is blocked and the transmission is not disturbed. However, the abort request is captured and kept pending until one of the following conditions is satisfied:

- The module loses the bus arbitration
- There is an error during the transmission
- The module is put into Freeze mode
- The module enters the BusOff state
- There is an overload frame

If none of the conditions above are reached, the MB is transmitted correctly, the interrupt flag is set in the IFLAG register, and an interrupt to the CPU is generated (if enabled). The abort request is automatically cleared when the interrupt flag is set. On the other hand, if one of the above conditions is reached, the frame is not transmitted; therefore, the abort code is written into the CODE field, the interrupt flag is set in the IFLAG, and an interrupt is (optionally) generated to the CPU.

If the CPU writes the abort code before the transmission begins internally, then the write operation is not blocked; therefore, the MB is updated and the interrupt flag is set. In this way the CPU just needs to read the abort code to make sure the active MB was *safely inactivated*. Although the AEN bit is asserted and the CPU wrote the abort code, in this case the MB is inactivated and not aborted, because the transmission did not start yet. One Mailbox is only aborted when the abort request is captured and kept pending until one of the previous conditions are satisfied.

The abort procedure can be summarized as follows:

- CPU checks the corresponding IFLAG and clears it, if asserted.

- CPU writes 0b1001 into the CODE field of the C/S word.
- CPU waits for the corresponding IFLAG indicating that the frame was either transmitted or aborted.
- CPU reads the CODE field to check if the frame was either transmitted (CODE=0b1000) or aborted (CODE=0b1001).
- It is necessary to clear the corresponding IFLAG in order to allow the MB to be reconfigured.

53.5.6.2 Mailbox inactivation

Inactivation is a mechanism provided to protect the Mailbox against updates by the FlexCAN internal processes, thus allowing the CPU to rely on Mailbox data coherence after having updated it, even in Normal mode.

Inactivation of transmission Mailboxes must be performed just when MCR[AEN] bit is deasserted.

If a Mailbox is inactivated, it participates in neither the arbitration process nor the matching process until it is reactivated. See [Transmit process](#) and [Receive process](#) for more detailed instructions on how to inactivate and reactivate a Mailbox.

To inactivate a Mailbox, the CPU must update its CODE field to INACTIVE (either 0b0000 or 0b1000).

Because the user is not able to synchronize the CODE field update with the FlexCAN internal processes, an inactivation can have the following consequences:

- A frame in the bus that matches the filtering of the inactivated Rx Mailbox may be lost without notice, even if there are other Mailboxes with the same filter
- A frame containing the message within the inactivated Tx Mailbox may be transmitted without setting the respective IFLAG

In order to perform a *safe inactivation* and avoid the above consequences for Tx Mailboxes, the CPU must use the Transmission Abort mechanism (see [Transmission abort mechanism](#)).

The inactivation automatically unlocks the Mailbox (see [Mailbox lock mechanism](#)).

NOTE

Message Buffers that are part of the Rx FIFO cannot be inactivated. There is no write protection on the FIFO region by

FlexCAN. CPU must maintain data coherency in the FIFO region when RFEN is asserted.

53.5.6.3 Mailbox lock mechanism

Other than Mailbox inactivation, FlexCAN has another data coherence mechanism for the receive process. When the CPU reads the Control and Status word of an Rx MB with codes FULL or OVERRUN, FlexCAN assumes that the CPU wants to read the whole MB in an atomic operation, and therefore it sets an internal lock flag for that MB. The lock is released when the CPU reads the Free Running Timer (global unlock operation), or when it reads the Control and Status word of another MB regardless of its code. A CPU write into the C/S word also unlocks the MB, but this procedure is not recommended for normal unlock use because it cancels a pending-move and potentially may lose a received message. The MB locking prevents a new frame from being written into the MB while the CPU is reading it.

NOTE

The locking mechanism applies only to Rx MBs that are not part of the FIFO and have a code different than INACTIVE (0b0000) or EMPTY¹ (0b0100). Also, Tx MBs can not be locked.

Suppose, for example, that the FIFO is disabled and the second and the fifth MBs of the array are programmed with the same ID, and FlexCAN has already received and stored messages into these two MBs. Suppose now that the CPU decides to read MB number 5 and at the same time another message with the same ID is arriving. When the CPU reads the Control and Status word of MB number 5, this MB is locked. The new message arrives and the matching algorithm finds out that there are no "free-to-receive" MBs, so it decides to override MB number 5. However, this MB is locked, so the new message can not be written there. It will remain in the Rx SMB waiting for the MB to be unlocked, and only then will be written to the MB.

If the MB is not unlocked in time and yet another new message with the same ID arrives, then the new message overwrites the one on the Rx SMB and there will be no indication of lost messages either in the CODE field of the MB or in the Error and Status Register.

While the message is being moved-in from the Rx SMB to the MB, the BUSY bit on the CODE field is asserted. If the CPU reads the Control and Status word and finds out that the BUSY bit is set, it should defer accessing the MB until the BUSY bit is negated.

1. In previous FlexCAN versions, reading the C/S word locked the MB even if it was EMPTY. This behavior is maintained when the IRMQ bit is negated.

Note

If the BUSY bit is asserted or if the MB is empty, then reading the Control and Status word does not lock the MB.

Inactivation takes precedence over locking. If the CPU inactivates a locked Rx MB, then its lock status is negated and the MB is marked as invalid for the current matching round. Any pending message on the Rx SMB will not be transferred anymore to the MB. An MB is unlocked when the CPU reads the Free Running Timer Register (see Section "Free Running Timer Register (CAN_TIMER)"), or the C/S word of another MB.

Lock and unlock mechanisms have the same functionality in both Normal and Freeze modes.

An unlock during Normal or Freeze mode results in the move-in of the pending message. However, the move-in is postponed if an unlock occurs during a low power mode (see [Modes of operation](#)), and it takes place only when the module resumes to Normal or Freeze modes.

53.5.7 Rx FIFO

The Rx FIFO is receive-only and is enabled by asserting the CAN_MCR[RFEN] bit. The reset value of this bit is zero to maintain software backward compatibility with previous versions of the module that did not have the FIFO feature.

The FIFO is 6-message deep. The memory region occupied by the FIFO structure (both Message Buffers and FIFO engine) is described in [Rx FIFO structure](#). The CPU can read the received messages sequentially, in the order they were received, by repeatedly reading a Message Buffer structure at the output of the FIFO.

The CAN_IFLAG1[BUF5I] (Frames available in Rx FIFO) is asserted when there is at least one frame available to be read from the FIFO. An interrupt is generated if it is enabled by the corresponding mask bit. Upon receiving the interrupt, the CPU can read the message (accessing the output of the FIFO as a Message Buffer) and the CAN_RXFIR register and then clear the interrupt. If there are more messages in the FIFO the act of clearing the interrupt updates the output of the FIFO with the next message and update the CAN_RXFIR with the attributes of that message, reissuing the interrupt to the CPU. Otherwise, the flag remains negated. The output of the FIFO is only valid whilst the CAN_IFLAG1[BUF5I] is asserted.

The CAN_IFLAG1[BUF6I] (Rx FIFO Warning) is asserted when the number of unread messages within the Rx FIFO is increased to 5 from 4 due to the reception of a new one, meaning that the Rx FIFO is almost full. The flag remains asserted until the CPU clears it.

The CAN_IFLAG1[BUF7I] (Rx FIFO Overflow) is asserted when an incoming message was lost because the Rx FIFO is full. Note that the flag will not be asserted when the Rx FIFO is full and the message was captured by a Mailbox. The flag remains asserted until the CPU clears it.

Clearing one of those three flags does not affect the state of the other two.

An interrupt is generated if an IFLAG bit is asserted and the corresponding mask bit is asserted too.

A powerful filtering scheme is provided to accept only frames intended for the target application, reducing the interrupt servicing work load. The filtering criteria is specified by programming a table of up to 128 32-bit registers, according to CAN_CTRL2[RFFN] setting, that can be configured to one of the following formats (see also [Rx FIFO structure](#)):

- Format A: 128 IDAFs (extended or standard IDs including IDE and RTR)
- Format B: 256 IDAFs (standard IDs or extended 14-bit ID slices including IDE and RTR)
- Format C: 512 IDAFs (standard or extended 8-bit ID slices)

Note

A chosen format is applied to all entries of the filter table. It is not possible to mix formats within the table.

Every frame available in the FIFO has a corresponding IDHIT (Identifier Acceptance Filter Hit Indicator) that can read in the IDHIT field from C/S word, as shown in the Rx FIFO Structure description. Another way the CPU can obtain this information is by accessing the CAN_RXFIR register. The CAN_RXFIR[IDHIT] field refers to the message at the output of the FIFO and is valid while the CAN_IFLAG1[BUF5I] flag is asserted. The CAN_RXFIR register must be read only before clearing the flag, which guarantees that the information refers to the correct frame within the FIFO.

Up to 16 elements of the filter table are individually affected by the Individual Mask Registers (CAN_RXIMRx), according to the setting of CAN_CTRL2[RFFN], allowing very powerful filtering criteria to be defined. If the CAN_MCR[IRMQ] bit is negated, then the FIFO filter table is affected by CAN_RXFGMASK.

53.5.7.1 Rx FIFO under DMA Operation

The receive-only FIFO can support DMA, this feature is enabled by asserting both the CAN_MCR[RFEN] and CAN_MCR[DMA] bits. The reset value of CAN_MCR[DMA] bit is zero to maintain backward compatibility with previous versions of the module that did not have the DMA feature.

The DMA controller can read the received message by reading a Message Buffer structure at the FIFO output port at the 0x80-0x8C address range.

When CAN_MCR[DMA] is asserted the CPU must not access the FIFO output port address range. Before enabling the CAN_MCR[DMA], the CPU must service the IFLAGs asserted in the Rx FIFO region. Otherwise, these IFLAGs may show that the FIFO has data to be serviced, and mistakenly generate a DMA request. Before disabling the CAN_MCR[DMA], the CPU must perform a clear FIFO operation.

The CAN_IFLAG1[BUF5I] (Frames available in Rx FIFO) is asserted when there is at least one frame available to be read from the FIFO, consequently a DMA request is generated simultaneously. Upon receiving the request, the DMA controller can read the message (accessing the output of the FIFO as a Message Buffer). The DMA reading process must end by reading address 0x8C, which clears the CAN_IFLAG1[BUF5I] and updates both the FIFO output with the next message (if FIFO is not empty) and the CAN_RXFIR register with the attributes of the new message. If there are more messages stored in the FIFO, the CAN_IFLAG1[BUF5I] will be re-asserted and another DMA request is issued. Otherwise, the flag remains negated.

NOTE

CAN_RXFIR register contents cannot be read after DMA completes the FIFO read. The IDHIT information is also available in the C/S word at address 0x080 (see [Rx FIFO structure](#)).

The CAN_IFLAG1[BUF6I] and CAN_IFLAG1[BUF7I] are not used when the DMA feature is enabled.

When FlexCAN is working with DMA, the CPU does not receive any Rx FIFO interruption and must not clear the related IFLAGs. In addition, the related IMASKs are not used to mask the generation of DMA requests.

53.5.7.2 Clear FIFO Operation

When CAN_MCR[RFEN] is asserted, the clear FIFO operation is a feature used to empty FIFO contents. With CAN_MCR[RFEN] asserted the Clear FIFO occurs when the CPU writes 1 in CAN_IFLAG1[BUF0I]. This operation can only be performed in Freeze

Mode and is blocked by hardware in other modes. This operation does not clear the FIFO IFLAGs, consequently the CPU must service all FIFO IFLAGs before execute the clear FIFO task.

When Rx FIFO is working with DMA, the clear FIFO operation clears the CAN_IFLAG1[BUF5I] and the DMA request is canceled.

CAUTION

Clear FIFO operation does not clear IFLAGs, except when CAN_MCR[DMA] is asserted, in this case only the CAN_IFLAG1[BUF5I] is cleared.

53.5.8 CAN protocol related features

This section describes the CAN protocol related features.

53.5.8.1 Remote frames

Remote frame is a special kind of frame. The user can program a mailbox to be a Remote Request Frame by configuring the mailbox as Transmit with the RTR bit set to '1'. After the remote request frame is transmitted successfully, the mailbox becomes a Receive Message Buffer, with the same ID as before.

When a remote request frame is received by FlexCAN, it can be treated in three ways, depending on Remote Request Storing (CTRL2[RRS]) and Rx FIFO Enable (MCR[RFEN]) bits:

- If RRS is negated the frame's ID is compared to the IDs of the Transmit Message Buffers with the CODE field 0b1010. If there is a matching ID, then this mailbox frame will be transmitted. Note that if the matching mailbox has the RTR bit set, then FlexCAN will transmit a remote frame as a response. The received remote request frame is not stored in a receive buffer. It is only used to trigger a transmission of a frame in response. The mask registers are not used in remote frame matching, and all ID bits (except RTR) of the incoming received frame should match. In the case that a remote request frame is received and matches a mailbox, this message buffer immediately enters the internal arbitration process, but is considered as a normal Tx mailbox, with no higher priority. The data length of this frame is independent of the DLC field in the remote frame that initiated its transmission.

- If RRS is asserted the frame's ID is compared to the IDs of the receive mailboxes with the CODE field 0b0100, 0b0010 or 0b0110. If there is a matching ID, then this mailbox will store the remote frame in the same fashion of a data frame. No automatic remote response frame will be generated. The mask registers are used in the matching process.
- If RFEN is asserted FlexCAN will not generate an automatic response for remote request frames that match the FIFO filtering criteria. If the remote frame matches one of the target IDs, it will be stored in the FIFO and presented to the CPU. Note that for filtering formats A and B, it is possible to select whether remote frames are accepted or not. For format C, remote frames are always accepted (if they match the ID). Remote Request Frames are considered as normal frames, and generate a FIFO overflow when a successful reception occurs and the FIFO is already full.

53.5.8.2 Overload frames

FlexCAN does transmit overload frames due to detection of following conditions on CAN bus:

- Detection of a dominant bit in the first/second bit of Intermission
- Detection of a dominant bit at the 7th bit (last) of End of Frame field (Rx frames)
- Detection of a dominant bit at the 8th bit (last) of Error Frame Delimiter or Overload Frame Delimiter

53.5.8.3 Time stamp

The value of the Free Running Timer is sampled at the beginning of the Identifier field on the CAN bus, and is stored at the end of "move-in" in the TIME STAMP field, providing network behavior with respect to time.

The Free Running Timer is clocked by the FlexCAN bit-clock, which defines the baud rate on the CAN bus. During a message transmission/reception, it increments by one for each bit that is received or transmitted. When there is no message on the bus, it counts using the previously programmed baud rate.

The Free Running Timer is not incremented during Disable, Doze, Stop, and Freeze modes. It can be reset upon a specific frame reception, enabling network time synchronization. See the TSYN description in Control 1 Register (CAN_CTRL1).

53.5.8.4 Protocol timing

The following figure shows the structure of the clock generation circuitry that feeds the CAN Protocol Engine (PE) submodule. The clock source bit CLKSRC in the CAN_CTRL1 Register defines whether the internal clock is connected to the output of a crystal oscillator (Oscillator Clock) or to the Peripheral Clock. In order to guarantee reliable operation, the clock source should be selected while the module is in Disable Mode (MDIS bit set in the Module Configuration Register).

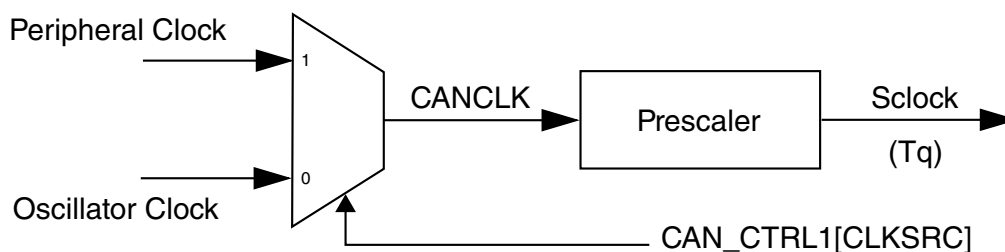


Figure 53-2. CAN engine clocking scheme

The oscillator clock should be selected whenever a tight tolerance (up to 0.1%) is required in the CAN bus timing. The crystal oscillator clock has better jitter performance than the peripheral clock.

The FlexCAN module supports a variety of means to setup bit timing parameters that are required by the CAN protocol. The Control 1 Register (CAN_CTRL1) has various fields used to control bit timing parameters: PRESDIV, PROPSEG, PSEG1, PSEG2 and RJW.

The CAN Bit Timing register (CAN_CBT) extends the range of the CAN bit timing variables in CAN_CTRL1.

The PRESDIV field (as well as its extended range EPRESDIV) defines the Prescaler Value (see the equation below) that generates the Serial Clock (Sclock), whose period defines the 'time quantum' used to compose the CAN waveform. A time quantum (Tq) is the atomic unit of time handled by the CAN engine.

$$Tq = \frac{(PRESDIV + 1)}{f_{CANCLK}}$$

The bit rate, which defines the rate the CAN message is either received or transmitted, is given by the formula:

CAN Bit Time = (Number of Time Quanta in 1 bit time) * T_q

$$\text{Bit Rate} = \frac{1}{\text{CAN Bit Time}}$$

A bit time is subdivided into three segments¹ (see [Figure 53-3](#) and [Table 53-13](#)):

- SYNC_SEG: This segment has a fixed length of one time quantum. Signal edges are expected to happen within this section
- Time Segment 1: This segment includes the Propagation Segment and the Phase Segment 1 of the CAN standard. It can be programmed by setting the PROPSEG and the PSEG1 fields of the CAN_CTRL1 Register so that their sum (plus 2) is in the range of 4 to 16 time quanta. When CAN_CBT[BTF] bit is asserted, FlexCAN uses EPROPSEG and EPSEG1 fields from CAN_CBT register so that their sum (plus 2) is in the range of 2 to 96 time quanta.
- Time Segment 2: This segment represents the Phase Segment 2 of the CAN standard. It can be programmed by setting the PSEG2 field of the CAN_CTRL1 Register (plus 1) to be 2 to 8 time quanta long. When CAN_CBT[BTF] bit is asserted, FlexCAN uses EPSEG2 fields of CAN_CBT register so that its value (plus 1) is in the range of 2 to 32 time quanta. The Time Segment 2 cannot be smaller than the Information Processing Time (IPT), which value is 2 time quanta in FlexCAN.

NOTE

The bit time defined by the above time segments must not be smaller than 5 time quanta. For bit time calculations, use an Information Processing Time (IPT) of 2, which is the value implemented in the FlexCAN module.

1. For further explanation of the underlying concepts, see ISO 11898-1. See also the CAN 2.0A/B protocol specification for bit timing.

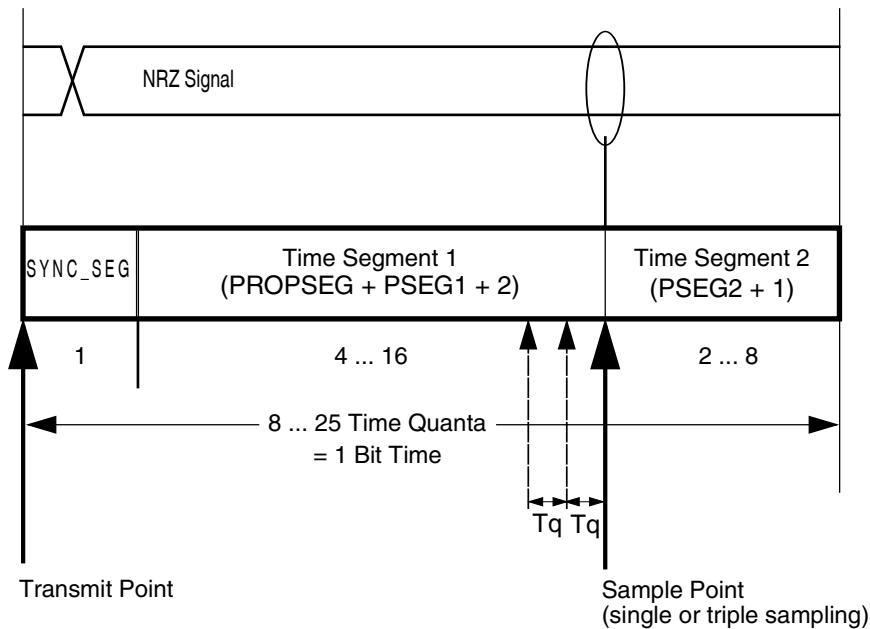


Figure 53-3. Segments within the bit time (example using CAN_CTRL1 bit timing variables for Classical CAN format)

Table 53-13. Time segment syntax

Syntax	Description
SYNC_SEG	System expects transitions to occur on the bus during this period.
TSEG1	Corresponds to the sum of PROPSEG and PSEG1.
TSEG2	Corresponds to the PSEG2 value.
Transmit Point	A node in transmit mode transfers a new value to the CAN bus at this point.
Sample Point	A node samples the bus at this point. If the three samples per bit option is selected, then this point marks the position of the third sample.

The following table gives some examples of the CAN compliant segment settings for Classical CAN format (Bosch CAN 2.0B) messages.

Table 53-14. Bosch CAN 2.0B standard compliant bit time segment settings

Time segment 1	Time segment 2	Re-synchronization jump width
5 .. 10	2	1 .. 2
4 .. 11	3	1 .. 3
5 .. 12	4	1 .. 4
6 .. 13	5	1 .. 4
7 .. 14	6	1 .. 4
8 .. 15	7	1 .. 4
9 .. 16	8	1 .. 4

Note

The user must ensure the bit time settings are in compliance with the CAN Protocol standard (ISO 11898-1).

Whenever CAN bit is used as a measure of time duration (e.g. estimating the occurrence of a CAN bit event in a message), the number of peripheral clocks in one CAN bit (NumClkBit) can be calculated as:

$$\text{NumClkBit} = \frac{f_{\text{SYS}}}{f_{\text{CANCLK}}} \times (\text{PRES DIV} + 1) \times (\text{PROPSEG} + \text{PSEG1} + \text{PSEG2} + 4)$$

where:

- NumClkBit is the number of peripheral clocks in one CAN bit;
- f_{CANCLK} is the Protocol Engine (PE) Clock (see Figure "CAN Engine Clocking Scheme"), in Hz;
- f_{SYS} is the frequency of operation of the system (CHI) clock, in Hz;
- PSEG1 is the value in CAN_CTRL1[PSEG1] field;
- PSEG2 is the value in CAN_CTRL1[PSEG2] field;
- PROPSEG is the value in CAN_CTRL1[PROPSEG] field;
- PRES DIV is the value in CAN_CTRL1[PRES DIV] field.

The formula above is also applicable to the alternative CAN bit timing variables described in the CAN Bit Timing Register (CAN_CBT).

For example, 180 CAN bits = (180 x NumClkBit) peripheral clock periods.

53.5.8.5 Arbitration and matching timing

During normal reception and transmission, the matching, arbitration, move-in and move-out processes are executed during certain time windows inside the CAN frame, as shown in the following figures.

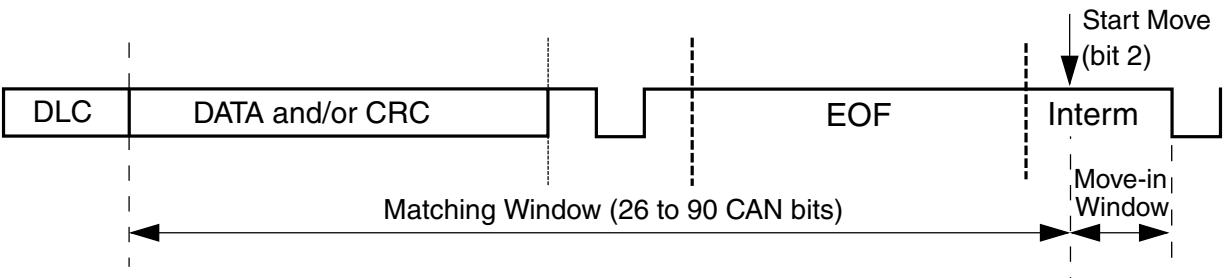


Figure 53-4. Matching and move-in time windows

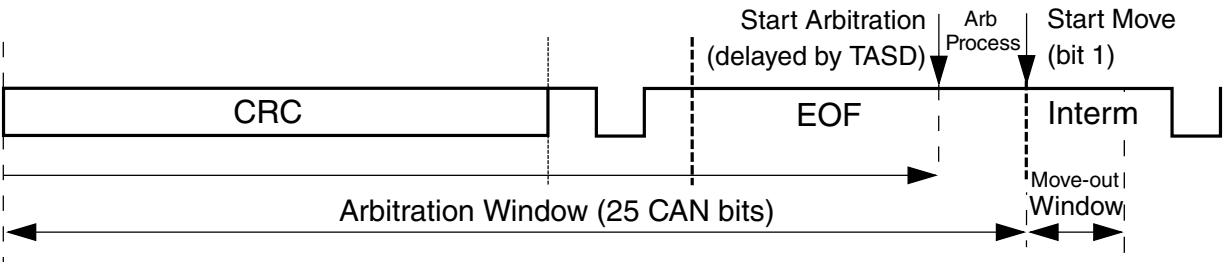


Figure 53-5. Arbitration and move-out time windows

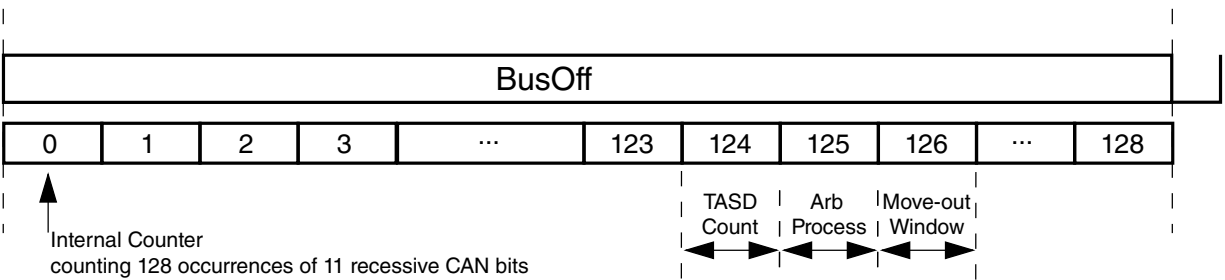


Figure 53-6. Arbitration at the end of bus off and move-out time windows

NOTE

In the preceding figures, the matching and arbitration timing does not take into account the delay caused by the concurrent memory access due to the CPU or other internal FlexCAN sub-blocks.

53.5.8.6 Tx Arbitration start delay

The Tx Arbitration Start Delay (TASD) bit field in Control 2 register (CAN_CTRL2[TASD]) is a variable that indicates the number of CAN bits used by FlexCAN to delay the Tx Arbitration process start point from the first bit of CRC field of the current frame. This variable can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes.

The transmission performance is impacted by the ability of the CPU to reconfigure Message Buffers (MBs) for transmission after the end of the internal Arbitration process, where FlexCAN finds the winner MB for transmission (see [Arbitration process](#)). If the Arbitration ends too early before the first bit of Intermission field, then there is a chance that the CPU reconfigures some Tx MBs and the winner MB is no longer the best candidate to be transmitted.

TASD is useful to optimize the transmission performance by defining the Arbitration start point, as shown in the next figure, based on factors such as:

- The peripheral-to-oscillator clock ratio
- CAN bit timing variables that determine the CAN bit rate
- The number of Message Buffers (MBs) in use by the Matching and Arbitration processes.

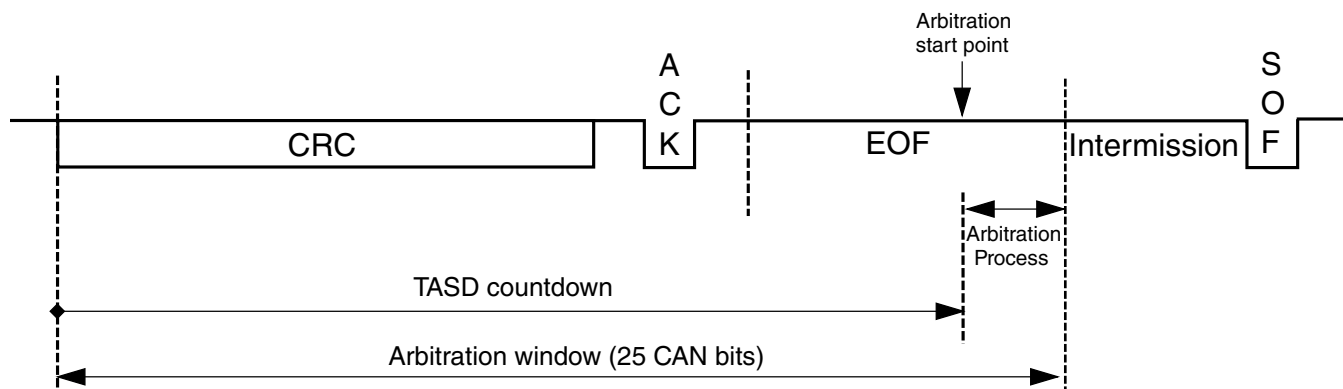


Figure 53-7. Optimal Tx Arbitration start point

The duration of an Arbitration process, in terms of CAN bits, is directly proportional to the number of available MBs and to the CAN bit rate, and inversely proportional to the peripheral clock frequency.

The optimal Arbitration timing is that in which the last MB is scanned right before the first bit of the Intermission field of a CAN frame. For instance, if there are few MBs and the peripheral/oscillator clock ratio is high and the CAN baud rate is low, then the Arbitration can be placed closer to the frame's end, adding more delay to its start point, and vice-versa.

If TASD is set to 0 then the Arbitration start is not delayed and more time is reserved for Arbitration. On the other hand, if TASD is close to 24 then the CPU can configure a Tx MB later and less time is reserved for Arbitration. If too little time is reserved for Arbitration the FlexCAN may be not be able to find a winner MB in time to be transmitted with the best chance to win the bus arbitration against external nodes on the CAN bus.

The optimal TASD value can be calculated as follows:

$$TASD = 25 - \left(\frac{f_{CANCLK} \times [MAXMB + 3 - (RFEN \times 8) - (RFEN \times RFFN \times 2)] \times 2}{f_{SYS} \times [1 + (PSEG1 + 1) + (PSEG2 + 1) + (PROPSEG + 1)] \times (PRES DIV + 1)} \right)$$

where:

- MAXMB is the value in CAN_CTRL1[MAXMB] field
- f_{CANCLK} is the oscillator clock, in Hz
- f_{SYS} is the peripheral clock, in Hz
- RFEN is the value in CAN_CTRL1[RFEN] bit
- RFFN is the value in CAN_CTRL2[RFFN] field
- PSEG1 is the value in CAN_CTRL1[PSEG1] field
- PSEG2 is the value in CAN_CTRL1[PSEG2] field
- PROPSEG is the value in CAN_CTRL1[PROPSEG] field
- PRES DIV is the value in CAN_CTRL1[PRES DIV] field

See also [Protocol timing](#) for more details.

53.5.9 Clock domains and restrictions

The FlexCAN module has two clock domains asynchronous to each other:

- The Bus Domain feeds the Control Host Interface (CHI) submodule and is derived from the peripheral clock.
- The Oscillator Domain feeds the CAN Protocol Engine (PE) submodule and is derived directly from a crystal oscillator clock, so that very low jitter performance can be achieved on the CAN bus.

When CAN_CTRL1[CLKSRC] bit is set, synchronous operation occurs because both domains are connected to the peripheral clock (creating a 1:1 ratio between the peripheral and oscillator clocks).

When the two domains are connected to clocks with different frequencies and/or phases, there are restrictions on the frequency relationship between the two clock domains. In the case of asynchronous operation, the Bus Domain clock frequency must always be greater than the Oscillator Domain clock frequency.

NOTE

Asynchronous operation with a 1:1 ratio between peripheral and oscillator clocks is not allowed.

When doing matching and arbitration, FlexCAN needs to scan the whole Message Buffer memory during the time slot of one CAN frame, comprised of a number of CAN bits. In order to have sufficient time to do that, the following requirements must be observed:

- The peripheral clock frequency can not be smaller than the oscillator clock frequency
- For 16 Mailboxes, the minimum number of peripheral clocks per CAN bit is 16

The minimum number of peripheral clocks per CAN bit determines the minimum peripheral clock frequency for an expected CAN bit rate. The CAN bit rate depends on the number of time quanta in a CAN bit, that can be defined by adjusting one or more of the bit timing values contained in either the Control 1 Register (CAN_CTRL1) or CAN Bit Time register (CAN_CBT). The time quantum (Tq) is defined in [Protocol timing](#). The minimum number of time quanta per CAN bit must be 8; therefore, the oscillator clock frequency should be at least 8 times the CAN bit rate.

53.5.10 Modes of operation details

The FlexCAN module has functional modes and low-power modes. See [Modes of operation](#) for an introductory description of all the modes of operation. The following sub-sections contain functional details on Freeze mode and the low-power modes.

CAUTION

"Permanent Dominant" failure on CAN Bus line is not supported by FlexCAN. If a Low-Power request or Freeze mode request is done during a "Permanent Dominant", the corresponding acknowledge can never be asserted.

53.5.10.1 Freeze mode

This mode is requested either by the CPU through the assertion of the HALT bit in the CAN_MCR Register or when the chip is put into Debug mode. In both cases it is also necessary that the FRZ bit is asserted in the CAN_MCR Register and the module is not in a low-power mode.

The acknowledgement is obtained through the assertion by the FlexCAN of FRZ_ACK bit in the same register. The CPU must only consider the FlexCAN in Freeze mode when both request and acknowledgement conditions are satisfied.

When Freeze mode is requested, FlexCAN does the following:

- Waits to be in either Intermission, Passive Error, Bus Off or Idle state

- Waits for all internal activities like arbitration, matching, move-in and move-out to finish. A pending move-in does not prevent going to Freeze mode.
- Ignores the Rx input pin and drives the Tx pin as recessive
- Stops the prescaler, thus halting all CAN protocol activities
- Grants write access to the Error Counters Register, which is read-only in other modes
- Sets the NOT_RDY and FRZ_ACK bits in CAN_MCR

After requesting Freeze mode, the user must wait for the FRZ_ACK bit to be asserted in CAN_MCR before executing any other action, otherwise FlexCAN may operate in an unpredictable way. In Freeze mode, all memory mapped registers are accessible, except for CAN_CTRL1[CLKSRC] bit that can be read but cannot be written.

Exiting Freeze mode is done in one of the following ways:

- CPU negates the FRZ bit in the CAN_MCR Register
- The chip is removed from Debug Mode and/or the HALT bit is negated

The FRZ_ACK bit is negated after the protocol engine recognizes the negation of the freeze request. When out of Freeze mode, FlexCAN tries to re-synchronize to the CAN bus by waiting for 11 consecutive recessive bits.

53.5.10.2 Module Disable mode

This low power mode is normally used to temporarily disable a complete FlexCAN block, with no power consumption. It is requested by the CPU through the assertion of the CAN_MCR[MDIS] bit, and the acknowledgement is obtained through the assertion by the FlexCAN of the CAN_MCR[LPMACK] bit. The CPU must only consider the FlexCAN in Disable mode when both request and acknowledgement conditions are satisfied.

If the module is disabled during Freeze mode, it requests to disable the clocks to the PE and CHI sub-modules, sets the LPMACK bit and negates the FRZACK bit.

If the module is disabled during transmission or reception, FlexCAN does the following:

- Waits to be in either Idle or Bus Off state, or else waits for the third bit of Intermission and then checks it to be recessive
- Waits for all internal activities like arbitration, matching, move-in and move-out to finish. A pending move-in is not taken into account.

- Ignores its Rx input pin and drives its Tx pin as recessive
- Shuts down the clocks to the PE and CHI sub-modules
- Sets the NOTRDY and LPMACK bits in CAN_MCR

The Bus Interface Unit continues to operate, enabling the CPU to access memory mapped registers, except the Rx Mailboxes Global Mask Registers, the Rx Buffer 14 Mask Register, the Rx Buffer 15 Mask Register, the Rx FIFO Global Mask Register. The Rx FIFO Information Register, the Message Buffers, the Rx Individual Mask Registers, and the reserved words within RAM may not be accessed when the module is in Disable Mode. Exiting from this mode is done by negating the MDIS bit by the CPU, which causes the FlexCAN to request to resume the clocks and negate the LPMACK bit after the CAN protocol engine recognizes the negation of disable mode requested by the CPU.

53.5.10.3 Doze mode

This is a system low power mode in which the CPU bus is kept alive and a global Doze mode request is sent to all peripherals asking them to enter low-power mode. When Doze mode is globally requested, the DOZE bit in CAN_MCR Register needs to have been asserted previously for Doze mode to be triggered. The acknowledgement is obtained through the assertion by the FlexCAN of the LPMACK bit in the same register. The CPU must only consider the FlexCAN in Doze mode when both request and acknowledgement conditions are satisfied.

If Doze mode is triggered during Freeze mode, FlexCAN requests to shut down the clocks to the PE and CHI sub-modules, sets the LPMACK bit and negates the FRZACK bit. If Doze Mode is triggered during transmission or reception, FlexCAN does the following:

- Waits to be in either Idle or Bus Off state, or else waits for the third bit of Intermission and checks it to be recessive
- Waits for all internal activities like arbitration, matching, move-in and move-out to finish. A pending move-in is not taken into account.
- Ignores its Rx input pin and drives its Tx pin as recessive
- Shuts down the clocks to the PE and CHI sub-modules
- Sets the NOTRDY and LPMACK bits in CAN_MCR

The Bus Interface Unit continues to operate, enabling the CPU to access memory mapped registers, except the Rx Mailboxes Global Mask Registers, the Rx Buffer 14 Mask Register, the Rx Buffer 15 Mask Register, the Rx FIFO Global Mask Register. The Rx FIFO Information Register, the Message Buffers, the Rx Individual Mask Registers, and the reserved words within RAM may not be accessed when the module is in Doze Mode.

Exiting Doze mode is done in one of the following ways:

- CPU removing the Doze mode request
- CPU negating the DOZE bit of the CAN_MCR Register
- Self Wake mechanism

In the Self Wake mechanism, if the SLFWAK bit in CAN_MCR Register was set at the time FlexCAN entered Doze mode, then upon detection of a recessive to dominant transition on the CAN bus, FlexCAN negates the DOZE bit, requests to resume its clocks and negates the LPMACK after the CAN protocol engine recognizes the negation of the Doze mode request. It also sets the WAKINT bit in the ESR Register and, if enabled by the WAKMSK bit in CAN_MCR, generates a Wake Up interrupt to the CPU. FlexCAN will then wait for 11 consecutive recessive bits to synchronize to the CAN bus. As a consequence, it will not receive the frame that woke it up. The following table details the effect of SLFWAK and WAKMSK upon wake-up from Doze mode.

Table 53-15. Wake-up from Doze mode

SLFWAK	WAKINT	WAKMSK	FlexCAN clocks enabled	Wake-up interrupt generated
0	-	-	No	No
0	-	-	No	No
1	0	0	No	No
1	0	1	No	No
1	1	0	Yes	No
1	1	1	Yes	Yes

The sensitivity to CAN bus activity can be modified by applying a low-pass filter function to the Rx CAN input line while in Doze Mode. See the WAKSRC bit in the description of the Module Configuration Register (CAN_MCR). This feature can be used to protect FlexCAN from waking up due to short glitches on the CAN bus lines. Such glitches can result from electromagnetic interference within noisy environments.

53.5.10.4 Stop mode

This is a system low-power mode in which all chip clocks can be stopped for maximum power savings. The Stop mode is globally requested by the CPU and the acknowledgement is obtained through the assertion by the FlexCAN of a Stop Acknowledgement signal. The CPU must only consider the FlexCAN in Stop mode when both request and acknowledgement conditions are satisfied.

If FlexCAN receives the global Stop mode request during Freeze mode, it sets the LPMACK bit, negates the FRZACK bit and then sends the Stop Acknowledge signal to the CPU, in order to shut down the clocks globally.

If Stop mode is requested during transmission or reception, FlexCAN does the following:

- Waits to be in either Idle or Bus Off state, or else waits for the third bit of Intermission and checks it to be recessive
- Waits for all internal activities like arbitration, matching, move-in and move-out to finish. A pending move-in is not taken into account.
- Ignores its Rx input pin and drives its Tx pin as recessive
- Sets the NOTRDY and LPMACK bits in CAN_MCR
- Sends a Stop Acknowledge signal to the CPU, so that it can shut down the clocks globally

Stop mode is exited when the CPU resumes the clocks and removes the Stop Mode request. This can be as a result of the Self Wake mechanism.

In the Self Wake mechanism, if the SLFWAK bit in CAN_MCR Register was set at the time FlexCAN entered Stop mode, then upon detection of a recessive to dominant transition on the CAN bus, FlexCAN sets the WAKINT bit in the CAN_ESR Register and, if enabled by the WAKMSK bit in CAN_MCR, generates a Wake Up interrupt to the CPU. Upon receiving the interrupt, the CPU should resume the clocks and remove the Stop mode request. FlexCAN will then wait for 11 consecutive recessive bits to synchronize to the CAN bus. As a consequence, it will not receive the frame that woke it up. The following table details the effect of SLFWAK and WAKMSK upon wake-up from Stop mode. Note that wake-up from Stop mode only works when both bits are asserted.

After the CAN protocol engine recognizes the negation of the Stop mode request, the FlexCAN negates the LPMACK bit. FlexCAN will then wait for 11 consecutive recessive bits to synchronize to the CAN bus. As a consequence, it will not receive the frame that woke it up.

Table 53-16. Wake-up from Stop Mode

SLFWAK	WAKINT	WAKMSK	Chip clocks enabled	Wake-up interrupt generated
0	-	-	No	No
0	-	-	No	No
1	0	0	No	No
1	0	1	No	No
1	1	0	No	No
1	1	1	Yes	Yes

The sensitivity to CAN bus activity can be modified by applying a low-pass filter function to the Rx CAN input line while in Stop mode. See the WAKSRC bit in the description of the Module Configuration Register (CAN_MCR). This feature can be used to protect FlexCAN from waking up due to short glitches on the CAN bus lines. Such glitches can result from electromagnetic interference within noisy environments.

53.5.11 Interrupts

The module has many interrupt sources: interrupts due to message buffers and interrupts due to the ORed interrupts from MBs, Bus Off, Bus Off Done, Error, Wake Up, Tx Warning, and Rx Warning.

Each one of the message buffers can be an interrupt source, if its corresponding IMASK bit is set. There is no distinction between Tx and Rx interrupts for a particular buffer, under the assumption that the buffer is initialized for either transmission or reception. Each of the buffers has an assigned flag bit in the CAN_IFLAG registers. The bit is set when the corresponding buffer completes a successful transfer and is cleared when the CPU writes it to 1 (unless another interrupt is generated at the same time).

Note

It must be guaranteed that the CPU clears only the bit causing the current interrupt. For this reason, bit manipulation instructions (BSET) must not be used to clear interrupt flags. These instructions may cause accidental clearing of interrupt flags which are set after entering the current interrupt service routine.

If the Rx FIFO is enabled (CAN_MCR[RFEN] = 1) and DMA is disabled (CAN_MCR[DMA] = 0), the interrupts corresponding to MBs 0 to 7 have different meanings. Bit 7 of the CAN_IFLAG1 register becomes the "FIFO Overflow" flag; bit 6

becomes the "FIFO Warning" flag, bit 5 becomes the "Frames Available in FIFO" flag and bits 4-0 are unused. See the description of the Interrupt Flags 1 Register (CAN_IFLAG1) for more information.

If both Rx FIFO and DMA are enabled (CAN_MCR[RFEN] and CAN_MCR[DMA] = 1) the FlexCAN does not generate any FIFO interrupt. The bit 5 of the CAN_IFLAG1 register still indicates "Frames Available in FIFO" and generates a DMA request. The bits 7, 6, 4-0 are unused.

For a combined interrupt where multiple MB interrupt sources are OR'd together, the interrupt is generated when any of the associated MBs (or FIFO, if applicable) generates an interrupt. In this case, the CPU must read the CAN_IFLAG registers to determine which MB or FIFO source caused the interrupt.

The interrupt sources for Bus Off, Bus Off Done, Error, Wake Up, Tx Warning and Rx Warning generate interrupts like the MB interrupt sources, and can be read from CAN_ESR1 register. The Bus Off, Error, Tx Warning, and Rx Warning interrupt mask bits are located in the CAN_CTRL1 Register; the Wake-Up interrupt mask bit is located in the CAN_MCR.

53.5.12 Bus interface

The CPU access to FlexCAN registers are subject to the following rules:

- Unrestricted read and write access to supervisor registers (registers identified with S/U in Table "Module Memory Map" in Supervisor Mode or with S only) results in access error.
- Read and write access to implemented reserved address space results in access error.
- Write access to positions whose bits are all currently read-only results in access error. If at least one of the bits is not read-only then no access error is issued. Write permission to positions or some of their bits can change depending on the mode of operation or transitory state. Refer to register and bit descriptions for details.
- Read and write access to unimplemented address space results in access error.
- Read and write access to RAM located positions during Low Power Mode results in access error.
- If MAXMB in CAN MCR register is programmed with a value smaller than the available number of MBs, then the unused memory space can be used as general purpose RAM space. Note that reserved words within RAM cannot be used. As an example, suppose FlexCAN's RAM can support up to 16 MBs,

CAN_CTRL2[RFFN] is 0x0, and CAN_MCR[MAXMB] is programmed with zero. The maximum number of MBs in this case becomes one. The RAM starts at 0x0080, and the space from 0x0080 to 0x008F is used by the one MB. The memory space from 0x0090 to 0x017F is available. The space between 0x0180 and 0x087F is reserved. The space from 0x0880 to 0x0883 is used by the one Individual Mask and the available memory in the Mask Registers space would be from 0x0884 to 0x08BF. From 0x08C0 through 0x09DF there are reserved words for internal use which cannot be used as general purpose RAM. As a general rule, free memory space for general purpose depends only on MAXMB.

53.6 Initialization/application information

This section provide instructions for initializing the FlexCAN module.

53.6.1 FlexCAN initialization sequence

The FlexCAN module may be reset in three ways:

- Chip level hard reset, which resets all memory mapped registers asynchronously
- SOFTRST bit in MCR, which resets some of the memory mapped registers synchronously. See [Table 53-2](#) to see what registers are affected by soft reset.
- Chip level soft reset, which has the same effect as the SOFTRST bit in MCR

Soft reset is synchronous and has to follow an internal request/acknowledge procedure across clock domains. Therefore, it may take some time to fully propagate its effects. The CAN_MCR[SOFTRST] bit remains asserted while soft reset is pending, so software can poll this bit to know when the reset has completed. Also, soft reset can not be applied while clocks are shut down in a low power mode. The low power mode should be exited and the clocks resumed before applying soft reset.

The clock source should be selected while the module is in Disable mode (see CAN_CTRL1[CLKSRC] bit). After the clock source is selected and the module is enabled (CAN_MCR[MDIS] bit negated), FlexCAN automatically goes to Freeze mode. In Freeze mode, FlexCAN is un-synchronized to the CAN bus, the HALT and FRZ bits in CAN_MCR Register are set, the internal state machines are disabled and the FRZACK and NOTRDY bits in the CAN_MCR Register are set. The Tx pin is in recessive state

and FlexCAN does not initiate any transmission or reception of CAN frames. Note that the Message Buffers and the Rx Individual Mask Registers are not affected by reset, so they are not automatically initialized.

For any configuration change/initialization it is required that FlexCAN is put into Freeze mode (see [Freeze mode](#)). The following is a generic initialization sequence applicable to the FlexCAN module:

- Initialize the Module Configuration Register (CAN_MCR)
 - Enable the individual filtering per MB and reception queue features by setting the IRMQ bit
 - Enable the warning interrupts by setting the WRNEN bit
 - If required, disable frame self reception by setting the SRXDIS bit
 - Enable the Rx FIFO by setting the RFEN bit
 - If Rx FIFO is enabled and DMA is required, set DMA bit
 - Enable the abort mechanism by setting the AEN bit
 - Enable the local priority feature by setting the LPRIOEN bit
- Initialize the Control 1 Register (CAN_CTRL1) and optionally the CAN Bit Timing Register (CAN_CBT).
 - Determine the bit timing parameters: PROPSEG, PSEG1, PSEG2, RJW
 - Optionally determine the bit timing parameters: EPROPSEG, EPSEG1, EPSEG2, ERJW
 - Determine the bit rate by programming the PRESDIV field and optionally the EPRESDIV field
 - Determine the internal arbitration mode (LBUF bit)
- Initialize the Message Buffers
 - The Control and Status word of all Message Buffers must be initialized
 - If Rx FIFO was enabled, the ID filter table must be initialized
 - Other entries in each Message Buffer should be initialized as required
- Initialize the Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN_RXIMRn)

- Set required interrupt mask bits in the CAN_IMASK Registers (for all MB interrupts), in CAN_MCR Register for Wake-Up interrupt and in CAN_CTRL1 / CAN_CTRL2 Registers (for Bus Off and Error interrupts)
- Negate the HALT bit in CAN_MCR

After the last step listed above, FlexCAN attempts to synchronize to the CAN bus.

Chapter 54

General-Purpose Input/Output (GPIO)

54.1 Chip-specific GPIO information

54.1.1 GPIO access protection

The GPIO module does not have access protection because it is not connected to a peripheral bridge slot.

54.1.2 Number of GPIO signals

The number of GPIO signals available on the devices covered by this document are detailed in [Orderable part numbers](#).

Eight GPIO pins support a high drive capability - PTB0, PTB1, PTD4, PTD5, PTD6, PTD7, PTC3, and PTC4. All other GPIO support normal drive option only.

PTA4 includes a passive input filter that is enabled or disabled by PORTA_PCR4[PFE] control. This reset default is to have this function disabled.

54.2 Introduction

The GPIO registers support 8-bit, 16-bit or 32-bit accesses.

The GPIO data direction and output data registers control the direction and output data of each pin when the pin is configured for the GPIO function. The GPIO input data register displays the logic value on each pin when the pin is configured for any digital function, provided the corresponding Port Control and Interrupt module for that pin is enabled.

Efficient bit manipulation of the general-purpose outputs is supported through the addition of set, clear, and toggle write-only registers for each port output data register.

54.2.1 Features

Features of the GPIO module include:

- Port Data Input register visible in all digital pin-multiplexing modes
- Port Data Output register with corresponding set/clear/toggle registers
- Port Data Direction register

NOTE

The GPIO module is clocked by system clock.

54.2.2 Modes of operation

The following table depicts different modes of operation and the behavior of the GPIO module in these modes.

Table 54-1. Modes of operation

Modes of operation	Description
Run	The GPIO module operates normally.
Wait	The GPIO module operates normally.
Stop	The GPIO module is disabled.
Debug	The GPIO module operates normally.

54.2.3 GPIO signal descriptions

Table 54-2. GPIO signal descriptions

GPIO signal descriptions	Description	I/O
PORTA31–PORTA0	General-purpose input/output	I/O
PORTB31–PORTB0	General-purpose input/output	I/O
PORTC31–PORTC0	General-purpose input/output	I/O
PORTD31–PORTD0	General-purpose input/output	I/O
PORTE31–PORTE0	General-purpose input/output	I/O

NOTE

Not all pins within each port are implemented on each device. See the chapter on signal multiplexing for the number of GPIO ports available in the device.

54.2.3.1 Detailed signal description

Table 54-3. GPIO interface-detailed signal descriptions

Signal	I/O	Description	
PORTA31–PORTA0 PORTB31–PORTB0 PORTC31–PORTC0 PORTD31–PORTD0 PORTE31–PORTE0	I/O	General-purpose input/output	
		State meaning	Asserted: The pin is logic 1. Deasserted: The pin is logic 0.
		Timing	Assertion: When output, this signal occurs on the rising-edge of the system clock. For input, it may occur at any time and input may be asserted asynchronously to the system clock. Deassertion: When output, this signal occurs on the rising-edge of the system clock. For input, it may occur at any time and input may be asserted asynchronously to the system clock.

NOTE

Not all pins within each port are implemented on each device.
See the chapter on signal multiplexing for the number of GPIO ports available in the device.

54.3 Memory map and register definition

Any read or write access to the GPIO memory space that is outside the valid memory map results in a bus error.

GPIO memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/page
400F_F000	Port Data Output Register (GPIOA_PDOR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	54.3.1/1825
400F_F004	Port Set Output Register (GPIOA_PSOR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	54.3.2/1826
400F_F008	Port Clear Output Register (GPIOA_PCOR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	54.3.3/1826

Table continues on the next page...

GPIO memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
400F_F00C	Port Toggle Output Register (GPIOA_PTOR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	54.3.4/1827
400F_F010	Port Data Input Register (GPIOA_PDIR)	32	R	0000_0000h	54.3.5/1827
400F_F014	Port Data Direction Register (GPIOA_PDDR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	54.3.6/1828
400F_F040	Port Data Output Register (GPIOB_PDOR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	54.3.1/1825
400F_F044	Port Set Output Register (GPIOB_PSOR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	54.3.2/1826
400F_F048	Port Clear Output Register (GPIOB_PCOR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	54.3.3/1826
400F_F04C	Port Toggle Output Register (GPIOB_PTOR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	54.3.4/1827
400F_F050	Port Data Input Register (GPIOB_PDIR)	32	R	0000_0000h	54.3.5/1827
400F_F054	Port Data Direction Register (GPIOB_PDDR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	54.3.6/1828
400F_F080	Port Data Output Register (GPIOC_PDOR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	54.3.1/1825
400F_F084	Port Set Output Register (GPIOC_PSOR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	54.3.2/1826
400F_F088	Port Clear Output Register (GPIOC_PCOR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	54.3.3/1826
400F_F08C	Port Toggle Output Register (GPIOC_PTOR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	54.3.4/1827
400F_F090	Port Data Input Register (GPIOC_PDIR)	32	R	0000_0000h	54.3.5/1827
400F_F094	Port Data Direction Register (GPIOC_PDDR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	54.3.6/1828
400F_F0C0	Port Data Output Register (GPIOD_PDOR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	54.3.1/1825
400F_F0C4	Port Set Output Register (GPIOD_PSOR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	54.3.2/1826
400F_F0C8	Port Clear Output Register (GPIOD_PCOR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	54.3.3/1826
400F_F0CC	Port Toggle Output Register (GPIOD_PTOR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	54.3.4/1827
400F_F0D0	Port Data Input Register (GPIOD_PDIR)	32	R	0000_0000h	54.3.5/1827
400F_F0D4	Port Data Direction Register (GPIOD_PDDR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	54.3.6/1828
400F_F100	Port Data Output Register (GPIOE_PDOR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	54.3.1/1825

Table continues on the next page...

GPIO memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
400F_F104	Port Set Output Register (GPIOE_PSOR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	54.3.2/1826
400F_F108	Port Clear Output Register (GPIOE_PCOR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	54.3.3/1826
400F_F10C	Port Toggle Output Register (GPIOE_PTOR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	54.3.4/1827
400F_F110	Port Data Input Register (GPIOE_PDIR)	32	R	0000_0000h	54.3.5/1827
400F_F114	Port Data Direction Register (GPIOE_PDDR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	54.3.6/1828

54.3.1 Port Data Output Register (GPIOx_PDOR)

This register configures the logic levels that are driven on each general-purpose output pins.

NOTE

Do not modify pin configuration registers associated with pins not available in your selected package. All unbonded pins not available in your package will default to DISABLE state for lowest power consumption.

Address: Base address + 0h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R																																
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

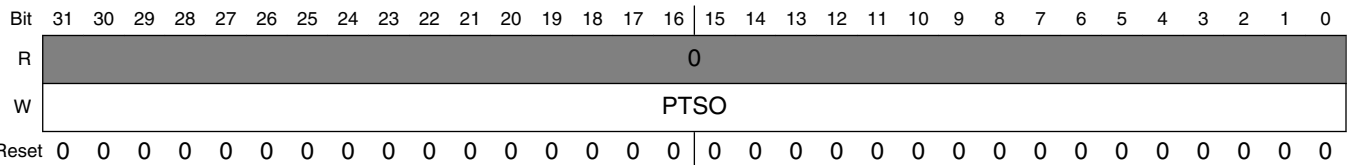
GPIOx_PDOR field descriptions

Field	Description
PDO	<p>Port Data Output</p> <p>Register bits for unbonded pins return a undefined value when read.</p> <p>0 Logic level 0 is driven on pin, provided pin is configured for general-purpose output.</p> <p>1 Logic level 1 is driven on pin, provided pin is configured for general-purpose output.</p>

54.3.2 Port Set Output Register (GPIOx_PSOR)

This register configures whether to set the fields of the PDOR.

Address: Base address + 4h offset



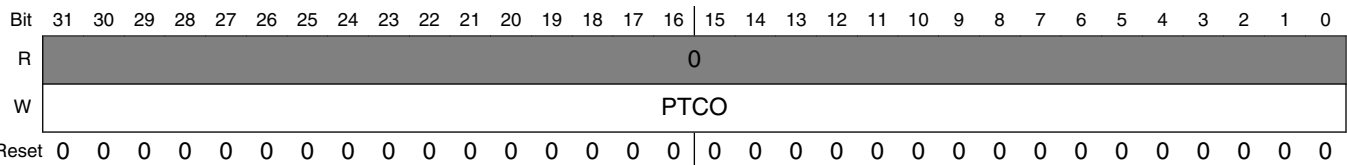
GPIOx_PSOR field descriptions

Field	Description
PTSO	Port Set Output Writing to this register will update the contents of the corresponding bit in the PDOR as follows: 0 Corresponding bit in PDORn does not change. 1 Corresponding bit in PDORn is set to logic 1.

54.3.3 Port Clear Output Register (GPIOx_PCOR)

This register configures whether to clear the fields of PDOR.

Address: Base address + 8h offset

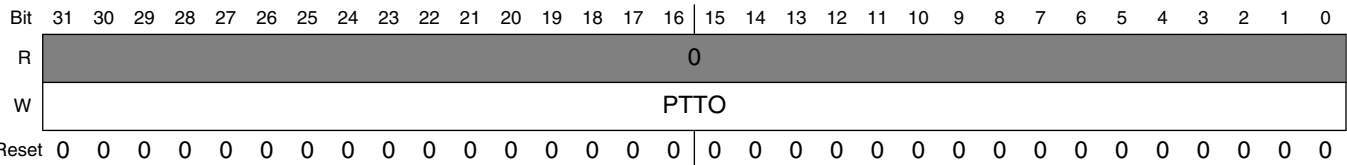


GPIOx_PCOR field descriptions

Field	Description
PTCO	Port Clear Output Writing to this register will update the contents of the corresponding bit in the Port Data Output Register (PDOR) as follows: 0 Corresponding bit in PDORn does not change. 1 Corresponding bit in PDORn is cleared to logic 0.

54.3.4 Port Toggle Output Register (GPIOx_PTOR)

Address: Base address + Ch offset



GPIOx_PTOR field descriptions

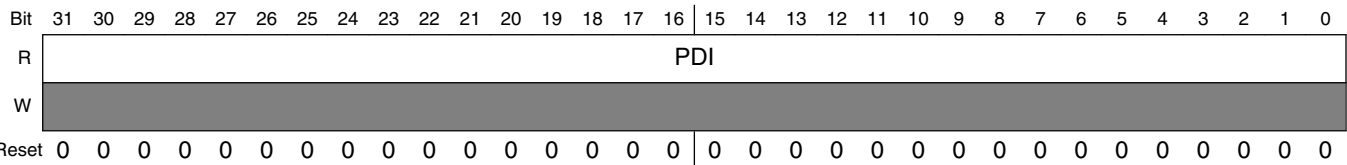
Field	Description
PTTO	<p>Port Toggle Output</p> <p>Writing to this register will update the contents of the corresponding bit in the PDOR as follows:</p> <p>0 Corresponding bit in PDORn does not change.</p> <p>1 Corresponding bit in PDORn is set to the inverse of its existing logic state.</p>

54.3.5 Port Data Input Register (GPIOx_PDIR)

NOTE

Do not modify pin configuration registers associated with pins not available in your selected package. All unbonded pins not available in your package will default to DISABLE state for lowest power consumption.

Address: Base address + 10h offset



GPIOx_PDIR field descriptions

Field	Description
PDI	<p>Port Data Input</p> <p>Reads 0 at the unimplemented pins for a particular device. Pins that are not configured for a digital function read 0. If the Port Control and Interrupt module is disabled, then the corresponding bit in PDIR does not update.</p> <p>0 Pin logic level is logic 0, or is not configured for use by digital function.</p> <p>1 Pin logic level is logic 1.</p>

54.3.6 Port Data Direction Register (GPIOx_PDDR)

The PDDR configures the individual port pins for input or output.

Address: Base address + 14h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	PDD																															
W	PDD																															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

GPIOx_PDDR field descriptions

Field	Description
PDD	<p>Port Data Direction</p> <p>Configures individual port pins for input or output.</p> <p>0 Pin is configured as general-purpose input, for the GPIO function.</p> <p>1 Pin is configured as general-purpose output, for the GPIO function.</p>

54.4 Functional description

54.4.1 General-purpose input

The logic state of each pin is available via the Port Data Input registers, provided the pin is configured for a digital function and the corresponding Port Control and Interrupt module is enabled.

The Port Data Input registers return the synchronized pin state after any enabled digital filter in the Port Control and Interrupt module. The input pin synchronizers are shared with the Port Control and Interrupt module, so that if the corresponding Port Control and Interrupt module is disabled, then synchronizers are also disabled. This reduces power consumption when a port is not required for general-purpose input functionality.

54.4.2 General-purpose output

The logic state of each pin can be controlled via the port data output registers and port data direction registers, provided the pin is configured for the GPIO function. The following table depicts the conditions for a pin to be configured as input/output.

If	Then
----	------

Table continues on the next page...

A pin is configured for the GPIO function and the corresponding port data direction register bit is clear.	The pin is configured as an input.
A pin is configured for the GPIO function and the corresponding port data direction register bit is set.	The pin is configured as an output and the logic state of the pin is equal to the corresponding port data output register.

To facilitate efficient bit manipulation on the general-purpose outputs, pin data set, pin data clear, and pin data toggle registers exist to allow one or more outputs within one port to be set, cleared, or toggled from a single register write.

The corresponding Port Control and Interrupt module does not need to be enabled to update the state of the port data direction registers and port data output registers including the set/clear/toggle registers.



Chapter 55

JTAG Controller (JTAGC)

55.1 Introduction

The JTAGC block provides the means to test chip functionality and connectivity while remaining transparent to system logic when not in test mode. Testing is performed via a boundary scan technique, as defined in the IEEE 1149.1-2001 standard. All data input to and output from the JTAGC block is communicated in serial format.

55.1.1 Block diagram

The following is a simplified block diagram of the JTAG Controller (JTAGC) block. Refer to the chip-specific configuration information as well as [Register description](#) for more information about the JTAGC registers.

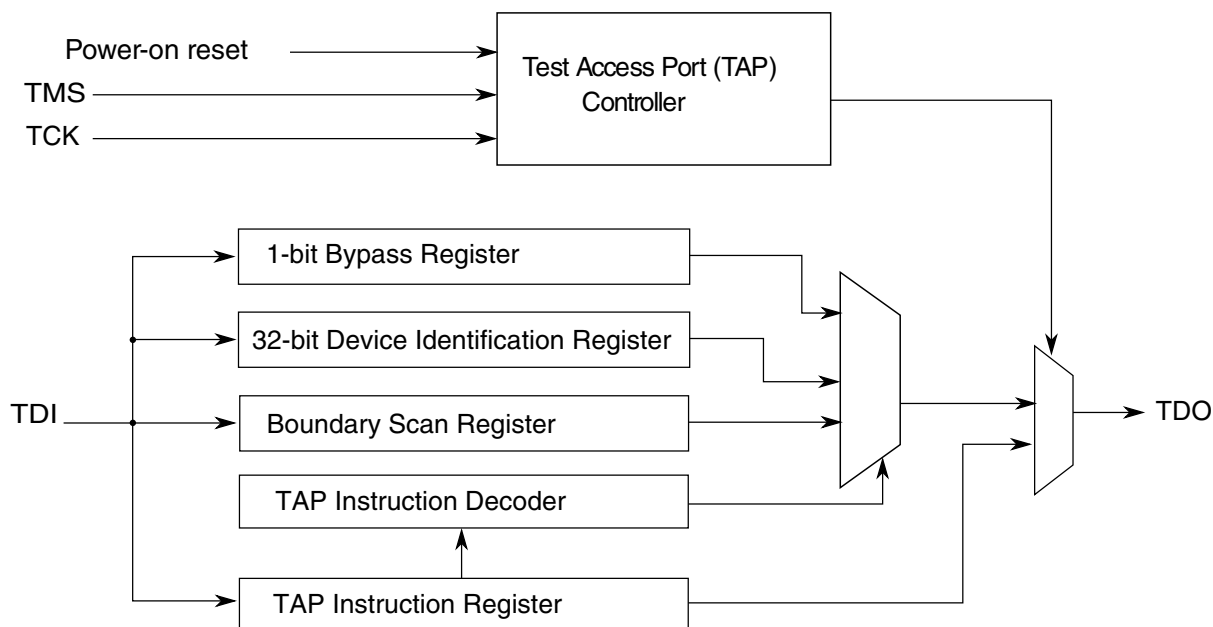


Figure 55-1. JTAG (IEEE 1149.1) block diagram

55.1.2 Features

The JTAGC block is compliant with the IEEE 1149.1-2001 standard, and supports the following features:

- IEEE 1149.1-2001 Test Access Port (TAP) interface
 - 4 pins (TDI, TMS, TCK, and TDO)
- Instruction register that supports several IEEE 1149.1-2001 defined instructions as well as several public and private device-specific instructions. Refer to [Table 55-3](#) for a list of supported instructions.
- Bypass register, boundary scan register, and device identification register.
- TAP controller state machine that controls the operation of the data registers, instruction register and associated circuitry.

55.1.3 Modes of operation

The JTAGC block uses a power-on reset indication as its primary reset signals. Several IEEE 1149.1-2001 defined test modes are supported, as well as a bypass mode.

55.1.3.1 Reset

The JTAGC block is placed in reset when either power-on reset is asserted, or the TMS input is held high for enough consecutive rising edges of TCK to sequence the TAP controller state machine into the Test-Logic-Reset state. Holding TMS high for five consecutive rising edges of TCK guarantees entry into the Test-Logic-Reset state regardless of the current TAP controller state. Asserting power-on reset results in asynchronous entry into the reset state. While in reset, the following actions occur:

- The TAP controller is forced into the Test-Logic-Reset state, thereby disabling the test logic and allowing normal operation of the on-chip system logic to continue unhindered
- The instruction register is loaded with the IDCODE instruction

55.1.3.2 IEEE 1149.1-2001 defined test modes

The JTAGC block supports several IEEE 1149.1-2001 defined test modes. A test mode is selected by loading the appropriate instruction into the instruction register while the JTAGC is enabled. Supported test instructions include EXTEST, HIGHZ, CLAMP, SAMPLE and SAMPLE/PRELOAD. Each instruction defines the set of data register(s) that may operate and interact with the on-chip system logic while the instruction is current. Only one test data register path is enabled to shift data between TDI and TDO for each instruction.

The boundary scan register is enabled for serial access between TDI and TDO when the EXTEST, SAMPLE or SAMPLE/PRELOAD instructions are active. The single-bit bypass register shift stage is enabled for serial access between TDI and TDO when the BYPASS, HIGHZ, CLAMP or reserved instructions are active. The functionality of each test mode is explained in more detail in [JTAGC block instructions](#).

55.1.3.3 Bypass mode

When no test operation is required, the BYPASS instruction can be loaded to place the JTAGC block into bypass mode. While in bypass mode, the single-bit bypass shift register is used to provide a minimum-length serial path to shift data between TDI and TDO.

55.2 External signal description

The JTAGC consists of a set of signals that connect to off chip development tools and allow access to test support functions. The JTAGC signals are outlined in the following table and described in the following sections.

Table 55-1. JTAG signal properties

Name	I/O	Function	Reset State	Pull
TCK	Input	Test Clock	—	Down
TDI	Input	Test Data In	—	Up
TDO	Output	Test Data Out	High Z ¹	—
TMS	Input	Test Mode Select	—	Up

1. TDO output buffer enable is negated when the JTAGC is not in the Shift-IR or Shift-DR states. A weak pull may be implemented at the TDO pad for use when JTAGC is inactive.

55.2.1 TCK—Test clock input

Test Clock Input (TCK) is an input pin used to synchronize the test logic and control register access through the TAP.

55.2.2 TDI—Test data input

Test Data Input (TDI) is an input pin that receives serial test instructions and data. TDI is sampled on the rising edge of TCK.

55.2.3 TDO—Test data output

Test Data Output (TDO) is an output pin that transmits serial output for test instructions and data. TDO is three-stateable and is actively driven only in the Shift-IR and Shift-DR states of the TAP controller state machine, which is described in [TAP controller state machine](#).

55.2.4 TMS—Test mode select

Test Mode Select (TMS) is an input pin used to sequence the IEEE 1149.1-2001 test control state machine. TMS is sampled on the rising edge of TCK.

55.3 Register description

This section provides a detailed description of the JTAGC block registers accessible through the TAP interface, including data registers and the instruction register. Individual bit-level descriptions and reset states of each register are included. These registers are not memory-mapped and can only be accessed through the TAP.

55.3.1 Instruction register

The JTAGC block uses a 4-bit instruction register as shown in the following figure. The instruction register allows instructions to be loaded into the block to select the test to be performed or the test data register to be accessed or both. Instructions are shifted in through TDI while the TAP controller is in the Shift-IR state, and latched on the falling edge of TCK in the Update-IR state. The latched instruction value can only be changed in the Update-IR and Test-Logic-Reset TAP controller states. Synchronous entry into the

Test-Logic-Reset state results in the IDCODE instruction being loaded on the falling edge of TCK. Asynchronous entry into the Test-Logic-Reset state results in asynchronous loading of the IDCODE instruction. During the Capture-IR TAP controller state, the instruction shift register is loaded with the value 0001b , making this value the register's read value when the TAP controller is sequenced into the Shift-IR state.

	3	2	1	0
R	0	0	0	1
W	Instruction Code			
Reset:	0	0	0	1

Figure 55-2. Instruction register

55.3.2 Bypass register

The bypass register is a single-bit shift register path selected for serial data transfer between TDI and TDO when the BYPASS, CLAMP, HIGHZ or reserve instructions are active. After entry into the Capture-DR state, the single-bit shift register is set to a logic 0. Therefore, the first bit shifted out after selecting the bypass register is always a logic 0.

55.3.3 Device identification register

The device identification (JTAG ID) register, shown in the following figure, allows the revision number, part number, manufacturer, and design center responsible for the design of the part to be determined through the TAP. The device identification register is selected for serial data transfer between TDI and TDO when the IDCODE instruction is active. Entry into the Capture-DR state while the device identification register is selected loads the IDCODE into the shift register to be shifted out on TDO in the Shift-DR state. No action occurs in the Update-DR state.

	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Part Revision Number				Design Center						Part Identification Number					
W																
Reset	PRN				DC						PIN					
	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Part Identification Number				Manufacturer Identity Code											1
W																
Reset	PIN (contd.)				MIC											1

The following table describes the device identification register functions.

Table 55-2. Device identification register field descriptions

Field	Description
PRN	Part Revision Number. Contains the revision number of the part. Value is .
DC	Design Center. Indicates the design center. Value is .
PIN	Part Identification Number. Contains the part number of the device. .
MIC	Manufacturer Identity Code. Contains the reduced Joint Electron Device Engineering Council (JEDEC) ID. Value is 0x00E.
IDCODE ID	IDCODE Register ID. Identifies this register as the device identification register and not the bypass register. Always set to 1.

55.3.4 Boundary scan register

The boundary scan register is connected between TDI and TDO when the EXTEST, SAMPLE or SAMPLE/PRELOAD instructions are active. It is used to capture input pin data, force fixed values on output pins, and select a logic value and direction for bidirectional pins. Each bit of the boundary scan register represents a separate boundary scan register cell, as described in the IEEE 1149.1-2001 standard and discussed in [Boundary scan](#). The size of the boundary scan register and bit ordering is device-dependent and can be found in the device BSDL file.

55.4 Functional description

This section explains the JTAGC functional description.

55.4.1 JTAGC reset configuration

While in reset, the TAP controller is forced into the Test-Logic-Reset state, thus disabling the test logic and allowing normal operation of the on-chip system logic. In addition, the instruction register is loaded with the IDCODE instruction.

55.4.2 IEEE 1149.1-2001 (JTAG) Test Access Port

The JTAGC block uses the IEEE 1149.1-2001 TAP for accessing registers. This port can be shared with other TAP controllers on the MCU. Ownership of the port is determined by the value of the currently loaded instruction.

Data is shifted between TDI and TDO through the selected register starting with the least significant bit, as illustrated in the following figure. This applies for the instruction register, test data registers, and the bypass register.

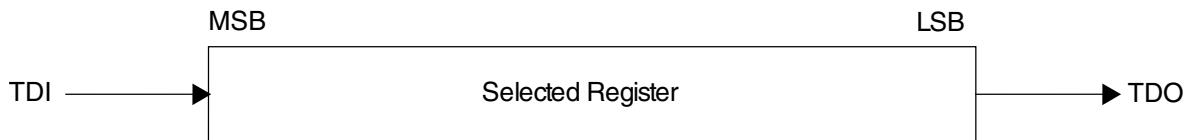
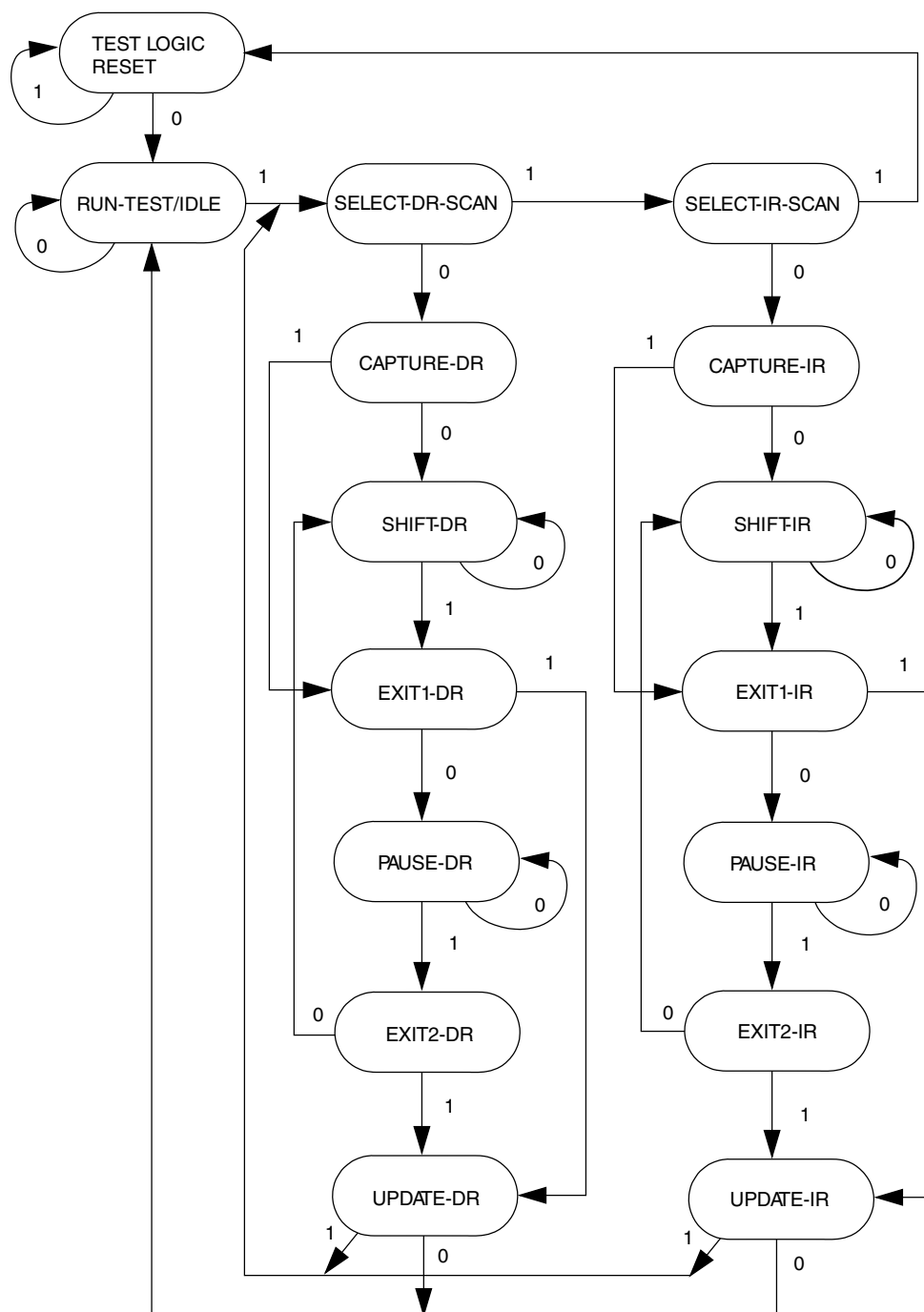


Figure 55-3. Shifting data through a register

55.4.3 TAP controller state machine

The TAP controller is a synchronous state machine that interprets the sequence of logical values on the TMS pin. The following figure shows the machine's states. The value shown next to each state is the value of the TMS signal sampled on the rising edge of the TCK signal. As the following figure shows, holding TMS at logic 1 while clocking TCK through a sufficient number of rising edges also causes the state machine to enter the Test-Logic-Reset state.



The value shown adjacent to each state transition in this figure represents the value of TMS at the time of a rising edge of TCK.

Figure 55-4. IEEE 1149.1-2001 TAP controller finite state machine

55.4.3.1 Enabling the TAP controller

The JTAGC TAP controller is enabled by setting the JTAGC enable to a logic 1 value.

55.4.3.2 Selecting an IEEE 1149.1-2001 register

Access to the JTAGC data registers is achieved by loading the instruction register with any of the JTAGC block instructions while the JTAGC is enabled. Instructions are shifted in via the Select-IR-Scan path and loaded in the Update-IR state. At this point, all data register access is performed via the Select-DR-Scan path.

The Select-DR-Scan path is used to read or write the register data by shifting in the data (LSB first) during the Shift-DR state. When reading a register, the register value is loaded into the IEEE 1149.1-2001 shifter during the Capture-DR state. When writing a register, the value is loaded from the IEEE 1149.1-2001 shifter to the register during the Update-DR state. When reading a register, there is no requirement to shift out the entire register contents. Shifting may be terminated once the required number of bits have been acquired.

55.4.4 JTAGC block instructions

The JTAGC block implements the IEEE 1149.1-2001 defined instructions listed in the following table. This section gives an overview of each instruction; refer to the IEEE 1149.1-2001 standard for more details. All undefined opcodes are reserved.

Table 55-3. 4-bit JTAG instructions

Instruction	Code[3:0]	Instruction summary
IDCODE	0000	Selects device identification register for shift
SAMPLE/PRELOAD	0010	Selects boundary scan register for shifting, sampling, and preloading without disturbing functional operation
SAMPLE	0011	Selects boundary scan register for shifting and sampling without disturbing functional operation
EXTEST	0100	Selects boundary scan register and applies preloaded values to output pins. NOTE: Execution of this instruction asserts functional reset.
Factory debug reserved	0101	Intended for factory debug only
Factory debug reserved	0110	Intended for factory debug only
Factory debug reserved	0111	Intended for factory debug only
ARM JTAG-DP Reserved	1000	This instruction goes the ARM JTAG-DP controller. See the ARM JTAG-DP documentation for more information.
HIGHZ	1001	Selects bypass register and three-states all output pins. NOTE: Execution of this instruction asserts functional reset.
ARM JTAG-DP Reserved	1010	This instruction goes the ARM JTAG-DP controller. See the ARM JTAG-DP documentation for more information.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 55-3. 4-bit JTAG instructions (continued)

Instruction	Code[3:0]	Instruction summary
ARM JTAG-DP Reserved	1011	This instruction goes the ARM JTAG-DP controller. See the ARM JTAG-DP documentation for more information.
CLAMP	1100	Selects bypass register and applies preloaded values to output pins. NOTE: Execution of this instruction asserts functional reset.
ARM JTAG-DP Reserved	1110	This instruction goes the ARM JTAG-DP controller. See the ARM JTAG-DP documentation for more information.
BYPASS	1111	Selects bypass register for data operations

55.4.4.1 IDCODE instruction

IDCODE selects the 32-bit device identification register as the shift path between TDI and TDO. This instruction allows interrogation of the MCU to determine its version number and other part identification data. IDCODE is the instruction placed into the instruction register when the JTAGC block is reset.

55.4.4.2 SAMPLE/PRELOAD instruction

The SAMPLE/PRELOAD instruction has two functions:

- The SAMPLE portion of the instruction obtains a sample of the system data and control signals present at the MCU input pins and just before the boundary scan register cells at the output pins. This sampling occurs on the rising edge of TCK in the Capture-DR state when the SAMPLE/PRELOAD instruction is active. The sampled data is viewed by shifting it through the boundary scan register to the TDO output during the Shift-DR state. Both the data capture and the shift operation are transparent to system operation.
- The PRELOAD portion of the instruction initializes the boundary scan register cells before selecting the EXTEST or CLAMP instructions to perform boundary scan tests. This is achieved by shifting in initialization data to the boundary scan register during the Shift-DR state. The initialization data is transferred to the parallel outputs of the boundary scan register cells on the falling edge of TCK in the Update-DR state. The data is applied to the external output pins by the EXTEST or CLAMP instruction. System operation is not affected.

55.4.4.3 SAMPLE instruction

The SAMPLE instruction obtains a sample of the system data and control signals present at the MCU input pins and just before the boundary scan register cells at the output pins. This sampling occurs on the rising edge of TCK in the Capture-DR state when the SAMPLE instruction is active. The sampled data is viewed by shifting it through the boundary scan register to the TDO output during the Shift-DR state. There is no defined action in the Update-DR state. Both the data capture and the shift operation are transparent to system operation.

55.4.4.4 EXTEST External test instruction

EXTEST selects the boundary scan register as the shift path between TDI and TDO. It allows testing of off-chip circuitry and board-level interconnections by driving preloaded data contained in the boundary scan register onto the system output pins. Typically, the preloaded data is loaded into the boundary scan register using the SAMPLE/PRELOAD instruction before the selection of EXTEST. EXTEST asserts the internal system reset for the MCU to force a predictable internal state while performing external boundary scan operations.

55.4.4.5 HIGHZ instruction

HIGHZ selects the bypass register as the shift path between TDI and TDO. While HIGHZ is active all output drivers are placed in an inactive drive state (e.g., high impedance). HIGHZ also asserts the internal system reset for the MCU to force a predictable internal state.

55.4.4.6 CLAMP instruction

CLAMP allows the state of signals driven from MCU pins to be determined from the boundary scan register while the bypass register is selected as the serial path between TDI and TDO. CLAMP enhances test efficiency by reducing the overall shift path to a single bit (the bypass register) while conducting an EXTEST type of instruction through the boundary scan register. CLAMP also asserts the internal system reset for the MCU to force a predictable internal state.

55.4.4.7 BYPASS instruction

BYPASS selects the bypass register, creating a single-bit shift register path between TDI and TDO. BYPASS enhances test efficiency by reducing the overall shift path when no test operation of the MCU is required. This allows more rapid movement of test data to and from other components on a board that are required to perform test functions. While the BYPASS instruction is active the system logic operates normally.

55.4.5 Boundary scan

The boundary scan technique allows signals at component boundaries to be controlled and observed through the shift-register stage associated with each pad. Each stage is part of a larger boundary scan register cell, and cells for each pad are interconnected serially to form a shift-register chain around the border of the design. The boundary scan register consists of this shift-register chain, and is connected between TDI and TDO when the EXTEST, SAMPLE, or SAMPLE/PRELOAD instructions are loaded. The shift-register chain contains a serial input and serial output, as well as clock and control signals.

55.5 Initialization/Application information

The test logic is a static logic design, and TCK can be stopped in either a high or low state without loss of data. However, the system clock is not synchronized to TCK internally. Any mixed operation using both the test logic and the system functional logic requires external synchronization.

To initialize the JTAGC block and enable access to registers, the following sequence is required:

1. Place the JTAGC in reset through TAP controller state machine transitions controlled by TMS
2. Load the appropriate instruction for the test or action to be performed

Chapter 56

Release Notes for Revision 2 and 2.1

56.1 General changes throughout document

- Updated reset value of PMC_REGSC register to 0x24
- Removed references to LON support throughout the document
- Removed LLWU_FILT3 and LLWU_FILT4 registers
- For MSCM_OCMDRn register, changed bit 16 from "RO" to "Reserved"

56.2 About This Document chapter changes

- No substantial content changes

56.3 Introduction chapter changes

- In table "Module functional categories", updated the list of modules for the "System" module category
- Updated [Orderable part numbers](#) section with new part numbers and removed columns for which information is common for all parts.

56.4 Core Overview changes

- No substantial content changes

56.5 Memories and Memory Interfaces changes

- In section [SRAM retention in low power modes](#), added the following to the fourth bullet - "ITCM contents are retained if SMC_STOPCTRL[RAM2PO] is set. DTCM RAM contents in the first half of the DTCM address range (0x2000_0000 - 0x2000_ffff) are retained."
- In table "System Memory Map", removed "Bitband region for" from address range 0x400F_F000–0x400F_FFFF

56.6 Memory Map changes

- No substantial content changes

56.7 Clock Distribution changes

- Updated clock names in section [Internal clocking requirements](#)
- In table "Module clocks", updated the bus interface clock for 16-bit SAR ADC to Fast Peripheral clock
- In section [VLPR mode clocking](#), removed the footnote and updated flash frequency from 1 MHz to 500 kHz

56.8 Reset and Boot chapter changes

- Removed section "Kinetis Flash Bootloader" and added it to the Kinetis Flashloader chapter.

56.9 Power Management chapter changes

- In table "Chip power modes", for VLPR mode, changed flash frequency from 1 Mhz to 500 kHz
- In table "Module operation in low power modes", for Bus/Flash clock in VLPR mode, changed flash frequency from 1 Mhz to 500 kHz

56.10 Security chapter changes

- No substantial content changes

56.11 Debug chapter changes

- No substantial content changes

56.12 Signal Multiplexing and Signal Descriptions chapter changes

- Updated [Pinout](#) section to reflect changes in XBARA, XBARB, and FlexBus functions

56.13 PORT changes

56.13.1 Chip-specific PORT information changes

- No substantial content changes

56.13.2 PORT changes

- No substantial content changes

56.14 SIM changes

- Updated description of SIM_CLKDIV1[OUTDIV2]

56.15 Kinetis Flashloader changes

56.15.1 Chip-specific Kinetis Flashloader information changes

- Added section [Kinetis Flashloader pin configuration](#)
- Added information about FlexCAN support throughout the chapter:
- Added following commands:
 - FlashEraseAllUnsecure

RCM changes

- FlashProgramOnce
- FlashReadOnce
- FlashReadResource
- Call
- Updated the addresses in section [Memory Maps](#)
- In section [Get/SetProperty Command Properties](#), added the following properties:
 - UniqueDeviceId
 - FacSupport
 - FlashAccessSegmentSize
 - FlashAccessSegmentCount
 - FlashReadMargin

56.15.2 Kinetis Flash Bootloader changes

- In topic "Start-up Process," updated labels in the figure "Kinetis Bootloader Start-up Flowchart" and added a note.
- In topics "The Kinetis Bootloader Configuration Area (BCA)" and "CRC-32 Check on Application Data": added notes.

56.16 RCM changes

- No substantial content changes

56.17 SMC changes

- No substantial content changes

56.18 MCM changes

- No substantial content changes

56.19 MSCM changes

- No substantial content changes
- For OCMDRn register, changed bit 16 from "RO" to "Reserved"

56.20 PMC changes

- No substantial content changes

56.21 LLWU changes

56.21.1 Chip-specific LLWU information changes

- No substantial content changes

56.21.2 LLWU changes

- No substantial content changes

56.22 AXBS changes

56.22.1 Chip-specific AXBS information changes

- No substantial content changes

56.22.2 Crossbar switch module changes

- Removed bullet beginning with, "Operation at a 1-to-1 clock frequency..." from [Features](#).

56.23 AIPS-Lite changes

56.23.1 Chip-specific AIPS-Lite information changes

- No substantial content changes

56.23.2 AIPS module changes

- No substantial content changes

56.24 MPU changes

56.24.1 Chip-specific MPU information changes

- Added the following topics:
 - [MPU access violation indications](#)
 - [Reset values for RGD0 registers](#)
 - [Write access restrictions for RGD0 registers](#)

56.24.2 MPU module changes

- In [Region Descriptor n, Word 2 \(MPU_RGDn_WORD2\)](#) field [M3UM](#) description, added text: "In M3UM[2:0]: M3UM[2] controls read permissions, M3UM[1] controls write permissions, and M3UM[0] controls execute permissions."
- In [Region Descriptor Alternate Access Control n \(MPU_RGDAACn\)](#) field [M3UM](#) description, changed text:
 - from: "The bit assignment sequence is as M3UM[2:0] -> rwx."
 - to: "In M3UM[2:0]: M3UM[2] controls read permissions, M3UM[1] controls write permissions, and M3UM[0] controls execute permissions."

56.25 DMAMUX changes

56.25.1 Chip-specific DMAMUX information changes

- No substantial content changes

56.25.2 DMAMUX module changes

- No substantial content changes

56.26 eDMA module changes

- [Error Status Register \(DMA_ES\)](#) : Added two causes of channel errors to list in register description.

56.27 EWM changes

56.27.1 Chip-specific EWM information changes

- Added the following note to [EWM clocks](#) :
In CLKCTRL[CLKSEL] of this device, lpo_clk[0] is the only available low power clock source. lpo_clk[3:1] are reserved.

56.27.2 EWM changes

- No substantial content changes

56.28 WDOG changes

56.28.1 Chip-specific WDOG information changes

- No substantial content changes

56.28.2 WDOG changes

- No substantial content changes

56.29 AOI changes

56.29.1 Chip-specific AOI information changes

- No substantial content changes

56.29.2 AOI changes

- No substantial content changes

56.30 XBARA changes

56.30.1 Chip-specific XBARA information changes

- In section [XBARA signal output assignment](#), changed names HSADCxA_TRIG to HSADCxA_SYNC and HSADCxB_TRIG to HSADCxB_SYNC

56.30.2 XBARA changes

- No substantial content changes

56.31 XBARB changes

56.31.1 Chip-specific XBARB information changes

- No substantial content changes

56.31.2 XBARB changes

- No substantial content changes

56.32 MCG changes

56.32.1 Chip-specific MCG information changes

- No substantial content changes

56.32.2 MCG changes

- No substantial content changes

56.33 OSC changes

56.33.1 Chip-specific OSC information changes

- No substantial content changes

56.33.2 OSC changes

- No substantial content changes

56.34 FMC changes

56.34.1 Chip-specific ADC information changes

- No substantial content changes

56.34.2 FMC changes

- PFB0CR register: added S_INV bit (Invalidate Prefetch Speculation Buffer)
- Removed PFB1CR register

56.35 FTFE changes

- No substantial content changes

56.36 FlexBus changes

56.36.1 Chip-specific FlexBus information changes

- No substantial content changes

56.36.2 FlexBus changes

- No substantial content changes

56.37 CRC changes

- No substantial content changes

56.38 MMCAU changes

- No substantial content changes

56.39 SA-TRNG changes

- No substantial content changes

56.40 16-bit ADC changes

56.40.1 Chip-specific ADC information changes

- In section [ADC Reference Options](#), removed the bullet on 1.2 V VREF_OUT
- Updated section [Alternate clock](#)

56.40.2 ADC changes

- No substantial content changes

56.41 HSADC changes

56.41.1 Chip-specific HSADC information changes

- Updated the table in section [HSADC interconnect assignments](#)
- Added a new section [HSADC clock sources](#)

56.41.2 SAR ADC 12b5Msps changes

- In section [HSADC Calibration](#), updated the bit field references
- In section [Stop Mode of Operation](#), added the text "When clearing the STOP bit and asserting START bit again, the conversion sequence restarts from the first command (SAMPLE0)."

56.42 CMP changes

56.42.1 Chip-specific CMP information changes

- No substantial content changes

56.42.2 CMP changes

- No substantial content changes

56.43 DAC changes

56.43.1 Chip-specific DAC information changes

- No substantial content changes

56.43.2 DAC changes

- No substantial content changes

56.44 FlexTimer changes

56.44.1 Chip-specific FlexTimer information changes

- In section [Instantiation Information](#), changed number of instances from three to four
- Added FTM2 options and updated FTM1 options in section [Input capture options for FTM module instances](#)
- Added references to PDB, XBARA, and XBARB chapters to section [FTM output triggers for other modules](#)

56.44.2 FTM changes

- Added more details about input capture delay on section "Filter for Input Capture mode".
- Corrected "Channel input filter example" figure on section "Filter for Input Capture mode".

56.45 LPTMR changes

56.45.1 Chip-specific LPTMR information changes

- No substantial content changes

56.45.2 LPTMR changes

Added a note to the LPTMR_CNR register.

56.46 PDB changes

56.46.1 Chip-specific PDB information changes

- In section [PDB Instantiation](#), added note
- In table "PDB0 output triggers", changed HSADC0A_syncA and HSADC1B_syncB to PDB0_CH0_OUT and PDB0_CH1_OUT respectively
- In table "PDB0 Input Trigger Options", changed XBAR_OUT 38 to XBARA_OUT38
- In table "PDB1 output triggers", changed HSADC0B_syncB and HSADC1A_syncA to PDB1_CH0_OUT and PDB1_CH1_OUT respectively
- In table "PDB1 Input Trigger Options", changed XBAR_OUT 41 to XBARA_OUT41
- In section [Pulse-Out Enable Register Implementation](#), added chip implementation information.

56.46.2 PDB changes

- No substantial content changes

56.47 ENC changes

56.47.1 Chip-specific ENC information changes

- No substantial content changes

56.47.2 ENC changes

- No substantial content changes

56.48 eFlexPWM changes

56.48.1 Chip-specific eFlexPWM information changes

- No substantial content changes

56.48.2 eFlexPWM changes

- No substantial content changes

56.49 PIT changes

56.49.1 Chip-specific PIT information changes

- No substantial content changes

56.49.2 PIT module changes

- No substantial content changes

56.50 SPI changes

56.50.1 Chip-specific SPI information changes

- Added the following topics:
 - Back to back frames when using Modified SPI/DSI Transfer Format
 - Receive buffer overflow

56.50.2 SPI module changes

- Added note to SPI_SR[TFFF] bit field.

56.51 ENET changes

56.51.1 Chip-specific ENET information changes

- No substantial content changes

56.51.2 ENET module changes

- [Timer Period Register \(ENET_ATPER\)](#) : Added note to PERIOD description about value.
- [MII Speed Control Register \(ENET_MSCR\)](#) :
 - Changed "internal module clock" to "internal module clock (i.e., IPS bus clock)".
 - Edited MII clock frequency calculation example.
 - In header of "Programming Examples for MSCR" table, changed "Internal MAC clock frequency" to "Internal module clock frequency".
- [Receive FIFO overflow](#) : In MII Receive portion of diagram, changed "MII_RXEN" to "MII_RXDV".
- [MDIO clock generation](#) : Changed "internal bus clock" to "internal bus clock (i.e., IPS bus clock)".
- [Reserved Statistic Register \(ENET_IEEE_T_DROP\)](#) : Changed register name to "Reserved Statistic Register".
- [Reserved Statistic Register \(ENET_IEEE_T_SQE\)](#) :
 - Changed register name to "Reserved Statistic Register".
 - Edited the COUNT field description for consistency with other reserved fields.

56.52 I2C changes

56.52.1 Chip-specific I2C information changes

- No substantial content changes

56.52.2 I2C changes

- No substantial content changes

56.53 UART changes

56.53.1 Chip-specific UART information changes

- No substantial content changes

56.53.2 UART changes

- No substantial content changes

56.54 FlexCAN changes

56.54.1 Chip-specific FlexCAN information changes

- Changed instances of "FlexCAN3" to "FlexCAN"

56.54.2 FlexCAN module changes

- In [Message buffer structure](#), removed note about configuring CAN FD frames.
- In [CAN_CTRL2](#), changed access type and descriptions for two new reserved fields at bit locations 1 and 0.
- Changed access type and description for reserved field at bit location 15 in [CAN_CTRL2](#).

56.55 GPIO changes

56.55.1 Chip-specific GPIO information changes

- Removed the text "PTC6 and PTC7 have true open-drain outputs thus when enabled as outputs, an external pull-resistor is required if output is logic 1." from section [Number of GPIO signals](#)

56.55.2 GPIO changes

- No substantial content changes

56.56 JTAGC module changes

- No substantial content changes



How to Reach Us:**Home Page:**freescale.com**Web Support:**freescale.com/support

Information in this document is provided solely to enable system and software implementers to use Freescale products. There are no express or implied copyright licenses granted hereunder to design or fabricate any integrated circuits based on the information in this document.

Freescale reserves the right to make changes without further notice to any products herein.

Freescale makes no warranty, representation, or guarantee regarding the suitability of its products for any particular purpose, nor does Freescale assume any liability arising out of the application or use of any product or circuit, and specifically disclaims any and all liability, including without limitation consequential or incidental damages.

“Typical” parameters that may be provided in Freescale data sheets and/or specifications can and do vary in different applications, and actual performance may vary over time. All operating parameters, including “typicals,” must be validated for each customer application by customer's technical experts. Freescale does not convey any license under its patent rights nor the rights of others. Freescale sells products pursuant to standard terms and conditions of sale, which can be found at the following address: freescale.com/SalesTermsandConditions.

Freescale, the Freescale logo, and Kinetis are trademarks of Freescale Semiconductor, Inc., Reg. U.S. Pat. & Tm. Off. All other product or service names are the property of their respective owners. ARM, the ARM Powered logo, and Cortex are registered trademarks of ARM Limited (or its subsidiaries) in the EU and/or elsewhere. All rights reserved

© 2015 Freescale Semiconductor, Inc.